This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

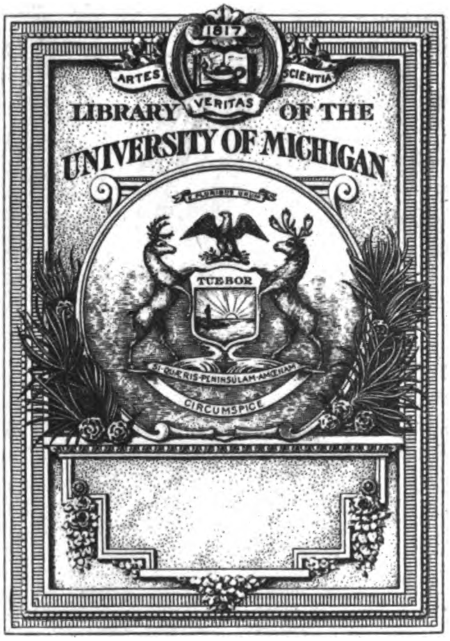
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



RECEIVED IN EXCHANGE
FROM
N.Y. State Library

S
95
A3

New York. Dept. of agriculture
Annual report 25th, v 2, pt. 1

Thirtieth Annual Report

of the

New York State College of Agriculture at Cornell University

and of the

Agricultural Experiment Station

Established under the Direction
of Cornell University
Ithaca, New York

1917

VOLUME I

Transmitted to the Legislature January 15, 1918

J. B. Lyon Company, Printers
Albany, 1918

STATE OF NEW YORK

No. 26

IN ASSEMBLY

THIRTIETH ANNUAL REPORT

OF THE

New York State College of Agriculture at Cornell University and of the Agricultural Experiment Station Established under the Direction of Cornell University

STATE OF NEW YORK

DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE

ALBANY, January 15, 1918

To the Honorable the Legislature of the State of New York:

In accordance with the provisions of the statutes relating thereto, I have the honor to transmit herewith the Thirtieth Annual Report of the New York State College of Agriculture at Cornell University, as a part of the Twenty-fifth Annual Report of the Commissioner of Agriculture.

CHARLES S. WILSON,
Commissioner of Agriculture.

Exchange
N.Y. State Library
3/24/31

NEW YORK STATE COLLEGE OF AGRICULTURE

STAFF OF INSTRUCTION AND EXTENSION WORK

Jacob Gould Schurman, A.M., D.Sc., LL.D., President of the University.
Albert Russell Mann, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Dean of the College of Agriculture, Director of the Experiment Station, and Director of Extension.
Isaac Phillips Roberts, M.Agr., Professor of Agriculture, Emeritus.
John Henry Comstock, B.S., Professor of Entomology and General Invertebrate Zoology, Emeritus.
Henry Hiram Wing, M.S. in Agr., Professor of Animal Husbandry.
Thomas Lyttleton Lyon, Ph.D., Professor of Soil Technology.
John Lemuel Stone, B.Agr., Professor of Farm Practice.
James Edward Rice, B.S.A., Professor of Poultry Husbandry.
George Walter Cavanaugh, B.S., Professor of Chemistry in its Relations to Agriculture.
George Nieman Lauman, B.S.A., Professor of Rural Economy.
Herbert Hice Whetzel, M.A., Professor of Plant Pathology.
Elmer O. Fippin, B.S.A., Extension Professor of Soil Technology.
George Frederick Warren, Ph.D., Professor of Farm Management.
William Alonzo Stocking, jr., M.S.A., Professor of Dairy Industry.
Wilford Murry Wilson, M.D., Professor of Meteorology.
Ralph Sheldon Hosmer, B.A.S., M.F., Professor of Forestry.
James George Needham, Ph.D., Professor of Entomology and Limnology.
Rollins Adams Emerson, D.Sc., Professor of Plant Breeding.
Harry Houser Love, Ph.D., Professor of Plant Breeding Investigations.
Donald Reddick, Ph.D., Professor of Plant Pathology.
Edward Gerrard Montgomery, M.A., Professor of Farm Crops.
George Alan Works, B.Ph., M.S. in Agr., Professor of Rural Education.
Flora Rose, B.S., M.A., Professor of Home Economics.
Martha Van Rensselaer, A.B., Professor of Home Economics.
William Albert Riley, Ph.D., Professor of Insect Morphology and Parasitology.
James Adrian Bizzell, Ph.D., Professor of Soil Technology.
Glenn Washington Herrick, B.S.A., Professor of Economic Entomology and Entomologist of the Experiment Station.
Howard Wait Riley, M.E., Professor of Rural Engineering.
Harold Ellis Ross, M.S.A., Professor of Dairy Industry.
Hugh Charles Troy, B.S.A., Professor of Dairy Industry.
Samuel Newton Spring, B.A., M.F., Professor of Silviculture.
Karl McKay Wiegand, B.S., Ph.D., Professor of Botany.
William Henry Chandler, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Professor of Pomology.
Arthur Bernhard Recknagel, B.A., M.F., Professor of Forest Management and Utilization.
Merritt Wesley Harper, M.S., Professor of Animal Husbandry.
Cyrus Richard Crosby, A.B., Extension Professor of Entomology.
Elmer Seth Savage, M.S.A., Ph.D., Professor of Animal Husbandry.
Kenneth Carter Livermore, M.S. in Agr., Professor of Farm Management.
Edward Albert White, B.Sc., Professor of Floriculture.
Alvin Casey Beal, Ph.D., Professor of Floriculture.
Herbert Andrew Hopper, B.S.A., M.S., Extension Professor of Animal Husbandry.
Edward Sewall Guthrie, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Professor of Dairy Industry.
Maurice Chase Burritt, M.S. in Agr., Professor, and Vice Director of Extension.
William Charles Baker, B.S.A., Professor of Drawing.
Mortier Franklin Barrus, Ph.D., Extension Professor of Plant Pathology.
Lewis Josephus Cross, B.A., Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry in Its Relations to Agriculture.
Oskar Augustus Johannsen, A.M., Ph.D., Professor of General Biology.
Clyde Hadley Myers, Ph.D., Professor of Plant Breeding.
Bristow Adams, B.A., Professor, and Editor and Chief of Publications.
Dick J. Crosby, M.S., Professor in Extension Service.

Asa Carlton King, B.S.A., Professor of Farm Practice.
Cornelius Betten, Ph.D., Professor, Secretary, and Registrar.
George Abram Everett, A.B., LL.B., Professor of Extension Teaching.
Frederick Llewellyn Griffin, B.S., M.S., Professor of Rural Education.
Lewis Knudson, B.S.A., Ph.D., Professor of Botany.
E. Gorton Davis, B.S., Professor of Landscape Art.
Ralph Wright Curtis, M.S.A., Professor of Landscape Art.
Claude Burton Hutchison, M.S. in Agr., Professor of Plant Breeding.
Ralph Waldo Rees, B.S., Extension Professor of Pomology.
Jacob Richard Schramm, A.B., Ph.D., Professor of Botany.
Harry Oliver Buckman, M.S.A., Ph.D., Professor of Soil Technology.
Ralph Hicks Wheeler, B.S., Professor in Extension Service.
William Foster Lusk, B.Ph., M.S.A., Professor of Rural Education.
Ralph Clement Bryant, F. E., Manufacturers' Association Professor of Lumbering, Yale University. Third term, 1917.
James Chester Bradley, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Systematic Entomology, Exchange Professor at University of California, 1917–18.
John Bentley, jr., B.S., M.F., Assistant Professor of Forest Engineering.
George Charles Embody, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Aquiculture.
Mrs. Helen Binkerd Young, B.Arch., Assistant Professor of Home Economics.
Mrs. Anna Botsford Comstock, B.S., Assistant Professor of Nature Study.
Harry Morton Fitzpatrick, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Plant Pathology.
Byron Burnett Robb, B.S. in Agr., M.S. in Agr., Assistant Professor of Rural Engineering.
Walter Warner Fisk, M.S. in Agr., Assistant Professor of Dairy Industry.
Vern Bonham Stewart, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Plant Pathology.
Annette J. Warner, Assistant Professor of Home Economics.
Arthur Lee Thompson, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Farm Management.
Royal Gilkey, B.S.A., Assistant Professor in Extension Service, and Supervisor of Reading Course for the Farm.
Charles Truman Gregory, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Plant Pathology.
Lex Ray Hesler, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Plant Pathology.
William Howard Rankin, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Plant Pathology.
Earl Whitney Benjamin, B.S. in Agr., M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Poultry Husbandry.
Arthur Johnson Eames, A.B., A.M., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Botany.
James Kenneth Wilson, B.S., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Soil Technology.
Elmer Eugene Barker, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Plant Breeding.
Edward Mowbray Tuttle, B.S. in Agr., A.B., Assistant Extension Professor of Rural Education.
Robert Matheson, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Economic Entomology and Assistant Entomologist of the Experiment Station.
Blanche Evans Hazard, A.B., M.A., Assistant Professor of Home Economics.
David Lumsden, Assistant Professor of Floriculture.
John Hall Barron, B.S.A., Assistant Extension Professor of Farm Crops.
Gad Parker Scoville, B.S. in Agr., Assistant Extension Professor of Farm Management.
Arthur Augustus Allen, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Ornithology.
Leonard Amby Maynard, A.B., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Animal Husbandry.
Forest Milo Blodgett, Ph.D., Assistant Extension Professor of Plant Pathology.
Miriam Birdseye, Ph.B., Assistant Professor, and State Leader of County Agents.
Howard Edward Babcock, Ph.B., Assistant Professor, and State Leader of County Agents.
Edward Riley King, B.S., Assistant Professor of Entomology.
Frank Elmore Rice, A.B., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Chemistry in Its Relations to Agriculture.
Lester Whyland Sharp, B.S., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Botany.
John Clarence McCurdy, B.S., C.E., Assistant Professor of Rural Engineering.
Clarence A. Boutelle, Assistant Extension Professor of Animal Husbandry.
Charles Howard Royce, M.S.A., Assistant Extension Professor of Animal Husbandry.
George Harris Collingwood, B.S., A.M., Assistant Extension Professor of Forestry.
Montgomery Robinson, Litt.B., B.S., Assistant Professor in Extension Service.
Wesley Worth Warsaw, B.S. in A.E., Assistant Extension Professor of Soil Technology.
Paul Work, A.B., M.S. in Agr., Acting Professor of Vegetable Gardening.

Edwin Cooper VanDyke, B.S., M.D., Assistant Professor of Entomology, University of California. Exchange Professor, 1917–18.
Bertha E. Titsworth, B.S., Assistant Extension Professor of Home Economics.
Otis Freeman Curtis, A.B., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Botany.
Thomas Joseph McInerney, M.S. in Agr., Assistant Professor of Dairy Industry.
Eugene Davis Montillon, B.Arch., Assistant Professor of Landscape Art.
Juan Estevan Reyna, E.E., Assistant Professor of Drawing.
Leslie Eugene Hazen, B.S. in Agr., M.E., Assistant Professor of Farm Mechanics.
Earl Long Overholser, M.A., Assistant Professor of Pomology.
Arthur John Heinicke, B.S.A., M.A., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Pomology.
Olney Brown Kent, B.S., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Poultry Husbandry.
Henry William Schneck, B.S., M.S.A., Assistant Professor of Vegetable Gardening.
Karl John Seulke, M.S.A., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Animal Husbandry.
Louis Melville Massey, A.B., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Plant Pathology.
Ellis Lore Kirkpatrick, B.S.A., Assistant Professor of Vegetable Gardening.
Beulah Blackmore, Assistant Professor of Home Economics.
Paul J. Kruse, A.B., Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Rural Education.
Bernard Albert Chandler, B.S., M.F., Assistant Professor of Forest Utilization. First and second terms, 1917–18.
Layton S. Hawkins, B.A., Specialist in Agricultural Education, Lecturer in Rural Education.
George Walter Tailby, jr., B.S.A., Instructor, and Stockman in Animal Husbandry.
Cecil Calvert Thomas, A.B., M.A., Instructor in Botany.
Earle Volcart Hardenburg, B.S., M.S. in Agr., Instructor in Farm Crops.
Richard Alan Mordoff, B.S. in Agr., Instructor in Meteorology.
Oliver Wesley Dynes, M.S. in Agr., Instructor in Farm Crops.
Albert Edmund Wilkinson, B.S., M.S., Extension Instructor in Vegetable Gardening.
James Lewis Strahan, B.S. in Agr., M.S. in Agr., Instructor in Farm Structures.
Cass Ward Whitney, B.S., Instructor in Extension Service.
Royal Josylin Haskell, B.S., Ph.D., Extension Instructor in Plant Pathology.
Laurence Howland MacDaniels, A.B., Ph.D., Instructor in Botany.
Allan Cameron Fraser, B.S., Instructor in Plant Breeding.
Lua Alice Minns, B.S., Instructor in Floriculture.
George Cornell Supplee, M.S.A., Instructor in Dairy Industry.
Anna Elizabeth Hunn, B.S., Instructor in Home Economics.
William Thomas Craig, Instructor in Plant Breeding.
Harold Deane Phillips, A.B., B.S. in Agr., Instructor in Rural Economy.
DeVoe Meade, B.S., Instructor in Animal Husbandry.
Edward Gardner Misner, B.S., Instructor in Farm Management.
Arthur Merle Besemer, B.S., Instructor in Dairy Industry.
Archie Byron Dann, B.S., Instructor in Poultry Husbandry.
Edwin Sleight Ham, B.S., Instructor in Animal Husbandry.
Thomas Alexander Baker, B.S., Instructor in Animal Husbandry.
Winfred Enos Ayres, Extension Instructor in Dairy Industry.
Albert Scott Kenerson, B.S., M.S. in Agr., Instructor in Vegetable Gardening.
Clark Leonard Thayer, B.Sc., Instructor in Floriculture.
Ralph Sylvanus Moseley, Extension Instructor in Poultry Husbandry.
Lewis Merwin Hurd, Extension Instructor in Poultry Husbandry.
William Irving Myers, B.S., Instructor in Farm Management.
Lew Ellsworth Harvey, B.S., Extension Instructor in Farm Management.
Cedric Hay Guise, B.S., M.F., Extension Instructor in Forestry.
Emil Volz, B.Sc., Instructor in Floriculture.
Gilbert Warren Peck, B.S., Extension Instructor in Pomology.
Albert Reiff Bechtel, B.S., A.M., Instructor in Botany.
James Marshall Brannon, B.A., M.A., Instructor in Botany.
Frank Burkett Wann, A.B., Instructor in Botany.
Wallace Larkin Chandler, B.S., M.S., Instructor in Parasitology.
Mary Frances Henry, A.B., Instructor in Home Economics.
Clara Louise Garrett, B.S., Instructor in Drawing.
Clarence Vernon Noble, B.S., Instructor in Farm Management.
Sarah Lucile Brewer, B.S., Instructor in Home Economics.
Charles Parsons Clark, B.S., Extension Instructor in Farm Management.
Anson Wright Gibson, B.S., Assistant Farm Superintendent.

Anna Jane Hancy, A.B., M.A., Instructor in Botany.
Edwin Fraser Hopkins, B.S., Instructor in Plant Pathology.
Louis Arthur Zimm, B.S., Instructor in Plant Pathology.
Fleming Bates Sherwood, B.S., Analyst in Soil Technology.
Frederick Gardner Behrends, B.S., Instructor in Farm Mechanics.
Walter Gernet Krum, Extension Instructor in Poultry Husbandry.
Howard Campbell Jackson, B.S., Instructor in Dairy Industry.
Julia Gleason, Instructor in Home Economics.
Harry Hazelton Knight, B.Pd., B.S., Instructor in Entomology.
Elmo Hamilton Lott, B.S., B.S.A., Instructor in Extension Service.
Walter Norton Hess, A.B., Instructor in Entomology.
Claribel Nye, B.S., Extension Instructor in Home Economics.
Mortimer Demarest Leonard, B.S., Extension Instructor in Entomology.
Walton I. Fisher, Instructor in Plant Breeding.
Winifred Moses, B.S., Instructor in Home Economics.
Helen Canon, B.A., B.S., Extension Instructor in Home Economics.
Harry E. Knowlton, B.S., Instructor in Botany.
George Robinson Phipps, B.S., Instructor in Extension Service.
Gustave Frederick Heuser, B.S., Instructor in Poultry Husbandry.
Clarence Hamilton Kennedy, A.B., M.A., Instructor in Limnology.
Edwina Maria Smiley, A.B., Instructor in Plant Pathology.
Edward Henry Dusham, A.B., M.S., Instructor in Biology.
Mrs. Edith Fleming Bradford, B.S., Instructor in Home Economics.
Sara Buchanan Huff, Instructor in Home Economics.
George Clayton Dutton, Extension Instructor in Dairy Industry.
Benjamin P. Young, B.S., Instructor in Entomology.
Peter Walter Claassen, M.A., Instructor in Natural History.
Roy Glen Wiggans, M.A., Instructor in Farm Crops.
Marshall Evarts Farnham, B.S., Instructor in Floriculture.
Frank P. Bussell, B.A., Extension Instructor in Plant Breeding.
Roy Lewis Gillett, B.S., Instructor in Farm Management.
Mrs. Jessie A. Boys, B.S., Instructor in Home Economics.
Howard Jerome Ludington, B.S., Instructor in Extension Service.
Laurence Joseph Norton, B. S., Instructor in Farm Management.
Ralph Waldo Green, B.S., Instructor, and Assistant Chief of Publications.
Olin Whitney Smith, B.S., Assistant Registrar.
Ada Eljiva Georgia, Assistant in Natural History.
Emmons William Leland, B.S.A., Superintendent of Field Experiments in Soil Technology.
Ward Benjamin White, A.B., Assistant in Dairy Industry.
Stuart Ward Frost, B.S., Assistant in Entomology.
Charles Edward Hunn, Assistant in Plant Propagation.
Mary Ellen Hill, B.S., Assistant in Biology.
Lawrance Erickson, A.B., Assistant in Botany.
Ralph Waldo Emerson Cowan, B.S., Assistant in Dairy Industry.
Ernest Gustaf Anderson, B.Sc., Assistant in Plant Breeding.
Charles Loring Allen, B.A., Assistant in Animal Husbandry.
Thomas Bregger, B.S., Assistant in Plant Breeding.
John Phineus Benson, B.S., Assistant in Botany.
Walter Conrad Muenscher, A.B., M.A., Assistant in Botany.
Chester Columbus Demaree, A.B., Assistant in Botany.
Lawrence Glenn Brown, B.S., Assistant in Biology.
Clyde C. Hamilton, B.S., M.S., Assistant in Natural History.
George Hirst Bradley, B.S., Assistant in Biology.
Vernon R. Haber, B.S., M.A., Assistant in Biology.
Ralph Simpson Nanz, B.S., Assistant in Botany.
Victor Ferdinand Tapke, B.S., Assistant in Plant Pathology.
Kenneth Clark Fox, B.S., Assistant in Poultry Husbandry.
Walter Sprague Frost, B.S., Assistant in Agricultural Chemistry.
Harry Earl Bremer, B.S., Assistant in Dairy Industry.
Ernest Dorsey, B.S., Assistant in Plant Breeding.
Laura Florence, B.Sc., M.A., Assistant in Entomology.
Benjamin Harrison Smith, A.B., Assistant in Plant Pathology.

Henry Vroom DeMott, B.S. in Agr., M.S. in Agr., Assistant in Pomology.
William H. Wood Komp, B.Sc., M.Sc., Assistant in Biology.
Walter Ohlendorf, B.S., Assistant in Entomology.
Walter W. Wellhouse, M.A., Assistant in Entomology.
Claude Willard Leister, B.S., Assistant in Ornithology.
Carl Petty Blackwell, M.A., Assistant in Farm Crops.
Harold H. Clum, A.B., Assistant in Botany.
Raymond Stratton Smith, B.S., B.S. in Agr., M.S., Assistant in Soil Technology.
R. J. Morgan, Assistant in Soil Technology.
Clarke Bernard Loudenslager, B.S., Assistant in Extension Service.
Frank Patrick Cullinan, B.S., Assistant in Pomology.
Thomas Lysons Martin, B.A., Assistant in Soil Technology.
Elbert Ernest Conklin, jr., B.S., Assistant in Vegetable Gardening.
Asa E. McKinney, A.B., A.M., Assistant in Agricultural Chemistry.
Eleanor Hillhouse, B.S., Assistant in Home Economics.
Gladys Smith, B.S., Assistant in Home Economics.

CORNELL UNIVERSITY AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
JAMES K. WILSON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
LEX R. HESLER, A.B., Ph.D.. Plant Pathology.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
HARRY H. KNIGHT, B.Pd., B.S., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
CHARLES H. HADLEY, Jr., B.S., Entomology.
DANIEL S. FOX, B.S., Farm Management.
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

PRESIDENT'S LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL

December 10, 1917

The Governor of the State of New York,
Albany, New York.

The Secretary of the Treasury,
Washington, D. C.

The Secretary of Agriculture,
Washington, D. C.

The Commissioner of Agriculture,
Albany, New York.

The Act of Congress, approved March 2, 1887, establishing Agricultural College Experiment Stations in connection with the Land Grant Colleges, contains the following provision: " It shall be the duty of each of said stations, annually, on or before the first day of February, to make to the Governor of the State or Territory in which it is located, a full and detailed report of its operations, including a statement of receipts and expenditures, a copy of which report shall be sent to each of said stations, to the said Commissioner of Agriculture, and to the Secretary of the Treasury of the United States."

And the Act of the Legislature of the State of New York, approved April 12, 1906, providing for the administration of the New York State College of Agriculture at Cornell University, contains the following provision: " The said University shall expend such moneys and use such property of the State in administering said College of Agriculture as above provided, and shall report to the Commissioner of Agriculture in each year on or before the first day of December, a detailed statement of such expenditures and of the general operations of the said College of Agriculture for the year ending the thirtieth day of September then next preceding." This was amended by the act of April 3, 1916, which changed the fiscal year to end June 30.

In conformity with these mandates I have the honor to submit on behalf of Cornell University the report of the New York State College of Agriculture for the year 1916–17.

I commend this report to the careful consideration of the Governor and the Legislature. The State makes liberal (if not always quite adequate) appropriations for the maintenance of its College of Agriculture, and it is the duty of the authorities of the State to satisfy themselves that the appropriations have been wisely and economically administered. This is a standing reason for careful scrutiny of the annual report of the State College of Agriculture. This year, however, there is an additional, special, and momentous reason due to the existence of war and the imperative demand for an increased production of foodstuffs, on which, indeed, the issues of the war may finally depend. And there is no other agency in the State of New York which can do so much, or which, in my opinion, is doing so much, to stimulate and enlarge agricultural production as the State College of Agriculture, including the young men and women who have studied in the institution in the past, the present student body, and, above all, the members of the faculty of the College, whose ability, zeal, and devotion to the cause, whether before students in classrooms and laboratories, or in conferences and meetings of farmers throughout the State, are beyond all praise.

Respectfully submitted,

JACOB GOULD SCHURMAN,
President of Cornell University.

REPORT OF THE ACTING DEAN OF THE NEW YORK STATE COLLEGE OF AGRICULTURE

June 30, 1917

To the President of the University:

Sir: I have the honor to submit herewith a report of the work of the New York State College of Agriculture for the academic year 1916-17.

The opening of the year was marked by the retirement of Dean Beverly T. Galloway, who had guided the affairs of the College during the years 1914-15 and 1915-16 and who resigned to accept a position with the United States Department of Agriculture. Dean Galloway left on July 31, 1916, and the undersigned entered upon his duties as Acting Dean of the College on August 1.

The financial affairs of the College

The first large administrative problem which presented itself was the preparation of an itemized and detailed budget of the appropriations to be requested of the 1917 Legislature, the estimates being called for in the month of August by the Joint Legislative Budget Committee. As the Governor's Tentative Budget Bureau and the State Comptroller also called for itemized budgets, but in different form from each other and from that of the Joint Legislative Budget Committee, a very large part of the time of the administrative officers during the months of September and October had to be devoted to this work.

Because the appropriation for 1916-17 was not sufficient for the needs of the College, it was necessary for the Trustees to file a request for an emergency item amounting to $55,910, to meet the necessary expenditures during the current year. This request the Legislature granted, affording much-needed relief.

The regular appropriation bill for 1917-18, which has been signed by the Governor, carries $779,401 for the State College of Agriculture, of which $743,651 is for the year 1917-18, and the remainder, $35,750, is to cover specific deficiencies in previous appropriations. The appropriation made by the 1916 Legislature to cover the current year's expenses was $518,325.66. It is seen, therefore, that the Legislature has this year made much more adequate provision for the work of the College.

Included in the appropriation bill are the following items: $12,000 for an additional unit for the heating plant; $8000 for remodeling the old boiler room in Roberts Hall; $7000 for the construction of a piggery with detached pens; $5000 for the construction of sidewalks, roads, and drains;

$1000 for the erection of a packing shed on the pomological grounds; and small items, aggregating $1000, for the construction of storage and irrigation facilities for the plant-breeding grounds. These provide greatly needed additions to the facilities of the College.

Registration of students

The registration of students during the current year, shown in comparison with the two preceding years, is as follows:

	1914–15		1915–16		1916–17	
Undergraduate students		1,544		1,591		1,485
Seniors	275		309		326	
Juniors	331		345		343	
Sophomores	388		422		400	
Freshmen	550		515		416	
Special		124		123		86
Winter courses		549		425		282
Summer school in agriculture		388		445		382
Third term (not included in other terms)		41		194		262
Totals		2,646		2,778		2,497

There has been a marked decrease in the registration of new students in each of the past two years. There is evident also a decline in the winter courses, which can be explained on the ground that there are now six secondary schools of agriculture and approximately eighty high schools in the State in which instruction in agriculture may be obtained. The number of regular students enrolling from outside the State has remained substantially unchanged, the decreased registration being accounted for by a lessened enrollment of students from the urban centers. Abnormal industrial conditions also have affected the registration. The decline in enrollment has been very general in agricultural colleges throughout the country. Our own records of recent years reveal a constantly increasing number and proportion of farm-reared students.

The summer school in agriculture

The attendance in the summer school in agriculture increased year by year until the session of 1916. There was a decrease in attendance at that session because of the very late date, about June 1, at which the announcement was issued, due to the uncertainty of the legislative appropriation for the work.

The faculty has this year raised the standard for admission to the summer school by requiring all candidates who are not engaged in educational work to have completed two years of college work or the equivalent.

This standard will result in a temporary decline in enrollment, but it will undoubtedly make for increased strength of the session, as the instruction can be adapted to the special requirements of teachers. It has seemed wise to hold the summer school primarily to meet the needs of those who are engaged directly in educational work.

Changes in the staff

More than the usual number of changes in the college staff have taken place during the past year, the loss of valued members of the faculty being in a measure due to the inelastic system introduced by the hard-and-fast state budget, by which the State exercises a fiscal domination over the faculty of the College, making it impossible to offer necessary and desirable advances in pay to hold good men. One department lost seven promising young men, six of whom left to accept much larger salaries elsewhere, most of them in teaching positions in other institutions. While Cornell University may take justifiable pride in training men to go out to other schools, its obligation to the students who come here must be met if it is to hold to its standards and ideals of service.

On April 1 Professor A. W. Gilbert, who has had charge of the teaching in the Department of Plant Breeding, resigned in order to continue his studies in economics at Harvard University. He had been on sabbatic leave during the year and was in residence at Harvard University. The Department of Extension Teaching lost the services, through death, of Professor C. D. Smith, a most valued and respected member of its staff.

Professor C. B. Hutchinson, formerly of the University of Missouri, came to the College on June 1 to take charge of the teaching in the Department of Plant Breeding. At the beginning of the fiscal year, George Harris Collingwood, formerly of the Forest Service, United States Department of Agriculture, was appointed Assistant Professor in charge of extension work in forestry. W. W. Ellis was appointed librarian in September last, and under his efficient direction the library of the College of Agriculture has already shown marked improvement.

Sabbatic leave was granted to Professor Donald Reddick, of the Department of Plant Pathology, for the first term of 1916–17, and to Professor Glenn W. Herrick, of the Department of Entomology, for the second term. Sabbatic leave of absence for the first term of 1917–18 has been granted to the following persons: Professor C. R. Crosby, of the Department of Entomology; Professor H. W. Riley, of the Department of Rural Engineering; Professor H. E. Ross, of the Department of Dairy Industry.

By action of the Trustees, Professor J. C. Bradley, of the Department of Entomology, has been released to the University of California for the academic year 1917–18 in exchange for Professor E. C. VanDyke of the latter institution, who is a specialist in Coleoptera and will offer a special course in that subject during that year. It is understood that each man involved in this exchange is to retain his position with and receive his salary from his own institution, and each is to take full charge of the other's work. It is believed that the policy of interchange of professors thus inaugurated will prove of direct advantage and stimulus to the College.

The teaching activities

There is a notable tendency in the College of Agriculture toward departmental conferences to consider educational problems. In these a number of departments have devoted special attention during the year to the analysis of their courses of instruction and of their methods of teaching. In a new and rapidly developing subject, constant readjustment is necessary. So long as members of the departments are responsive and give the needed consideration to the changes which the progress of their science calls for, there is reason for confidence that the best academic and scientific ideals will be fostered.

In the Department of Plant Pathology an attempt has been made to broaden the work in each course by a thorough revision of the outlines and materials used. The outlines for the general course were thoroughly revised and issued for the first time in printed form. They constitute the first published outlines for laboratory work in plant pathology, and have been favorably received by coworkers in other institutions, although designed for our own conditions and our own students.

The Department of Rural Education is developing a new phase of its work in the preparation of high school teachers of agriculture. A year ago it placed ten seniors as assistant teachers in high schools, each of these assistant teachers to serve for half a year. The results were satisfactory, and if means can be provided for adequate supervision the plan promises well. The Legislature has this year made a small appropriation for the work. The acceptance, on the part of the State, of the provisions of the Smith-Hughes Act, which provides federal aid to the States for the training of vocational teachers, will make funds available to train adequately at the College, and in practice training classes, those who will enter the field of rural education.

The Department of Landscape Art has become convinced that a more extended course is necessary for the development of good professional students. One-third of its students are now remaining for graduate work.

One new course of study has been added in the Department of Rural Engineering. This course deals with the farm tractor and farm motor vehicles, and was devised to meet the need for thorough instruction in power machinery by which a much increased agricultural production is made possible.

New development is needed in the field of rural economy, because of the pressing calls of the problems of marketing, cooperation, credits, land problems, and food supply, with the new national and international relations in reference thereto. The Legislature has this year made provision for the addition of one resident professor and an assistant professor in extension in rural economy. The importance of this subject makes it incumbent that we shall look forward soon to further increases in the staff of this department.

Several courses announced to be given for the first time this year in the Department of Botany had to be abandoned because of the need of economizing. Neither the required teaching staff nor the material equipment was available to maintain them.

There is pressing need for more opportunity for fundamental work in bacteriology. The present courses are overcrowded. There is need also that a course in soil bacteriology shall be provided. There is at present no way by which an undergraduate can get the special training in soil bacteriology which is fundamental to advanced work in certain phases of soil technology.

The investigative activities

As has been urged in previous reports, there is insistent need that provision shall be made for more adequate research in the several departments. With the increasing funds for extension, the insufficiency of the funds for research becomes increasingly apparent. Moreover, the enlarged extension work is bound to increase the demand for research. The more the College endeavors to apply known principles to the agriculture of the State, the more problems requiring careful investigation for their solution will be encountered. The greatest single need of the College at the present time is more funds for research, and that more men on its staff who are qualified by experience and intensive training may be set free for productive investigations. It is most desirable that more permanent research positions shall be established in the College. While a measure of good work can be accomplished by means of temporary assistantships, industrial fellowships, and the like, these provide only for the more superficial problems. Research of the highest order is distinctly a personal matter. Much of it cannot be organized to be carried out by temporary assistants under the direction of administrators. Men of the right training and temperament need to be set free to prosecute their investigations with the minimum of interruption or impediment.

In few fields of collegiate work is the need for large provision for research more imperative than in agriculture. Brought into being suddenly by an Act of the Federal Congress a little over a half century ago; required by law, as most of the agricultural colleges are, to teach students, to make investigations of the practical problems which in countless numbers confront farmers, and to conduct extension work throughout the States; spurred to rapid development of the extension activities through the disproportionately large public grants for this service — the colleges, if they are to meet their obligations adequately, must have resources for greatly augmented research.

The Department of Botany plans a broad study of the State's flora in relation to agricultural problems. This is a large and important piece of work, which the department cannot attempt until its teaching work is fully established, and that in turn depends on a larger staff and more material for classroom and laboratory.

The need for fundamental research in pomology is very great, not only for the practical benefit of fruit growers in a State in which the industry is so important, but quite as much to supply an orderly body of knowledge for the classroom. Because of the long life-cycle of trees, research in pomology cannot make rapid headway; there is the more reason that it should be uninterrupted. Research in forestry is under the same restrictions, except that forest trees have an even longer span of life and the forest crop is harvested on a longer rotation than any other. The fundamental need in American forestry to-day is intensive study of the basic problems. The College needs a real forest for experiment and demonstration, in addition to the small woodlots which it now has for working out the problems of farm forestry. The Department of Forestry should have a man with the rank of professor who can devote his entire time and effort to investigation and research.

In respect to the personal factors that influence agriculture there is an ever-growing call for facts. These have to do with farm management and with rural commercial and social organization. During the coming year and in the years following it is hoped that a farm community of some four hundred farms may be systematically studied and worked with, to obtain a better farm organization for the community as a whole. Studies of certain successful farms, now in progress for ten years, are being continued.

Questions of prices, as that of milk in our large cities, deserve close attention. Such a study, conducted in a manner satisfactory to both producer and consumer, might well serve as a basis for agreement between producer and dealer and do away with arbitrary prices fixed by strong organizations of the one or the other. A very large field is open for the study of food assembling and distribution; and the range of conditions, from the largest city in the United States to the smallest unincorporated village, offers a rare opportunity for research and for service. The results of studies of this kind should help each community to develop its resources, derive profits from its wastes, and make food more plentiful and possibly cheaper to the non-agricultural population.

The extension activities

The extension work during 1916–17 has not differed materially from that done in the preceding year. All the departments have carried forward their work, to an increasing degree in cooperation with the farm bureaus. A large and successful Farmers' Week has been held. Fifty-seven farm demonstration schools have been held in thirty-five counties, with a total enrollment of 1799. Thirty-nine farm home demonstration schools have been held in thirty-two counties, with an enrollment of 1548 but an actual attendance of 6209 persons. The usual large number of lectures have been given. Sheep demonstration cars have been run over the New York Central lines and the New York, Ontario & Western Railroad, and the Department of Home Economics has run a demonstration car over the lines of the Lehigh Valley Railroad as part of the department's thrift campaign. Exhibits have been made at the State Fair, at the State fruit growers' conventions, and at a few county fairs.

Serious retrenchment, due to reduced funds, was necessary in nearly all phases of extension work, so that there were fewer demonstration schools, fair exhibits, and lectures than during the preceding year, and the communities served were called upon to pay a larger proportion of the expenses of the work.

As yet no provision has been made to aid farmers and farmers' organizations in breeding improved strains of staple crops. Experimental work in plant breeding has been conducted by the College on a somewhat extensive scale for a number of years, and results have been obtained which should be carried out to the farms. We need to aid in the production of improved strains of staple crops for particular sections of the State, and to organize community effort in the production of these strains so that particular communities shall come to be known as places in which to purchase high-class seed of special types. Thus, sections of northern New York might come to produce select strains of seed potatoes for the remainder of the State and for the South. Sections in southern New York might well grow the seed used for silage corn throughout the State. Centers might likewise be developed for seed oats and seed bean production.

With the increasing demand for trained specialists for extension work, the interest in the extension training courses offered by the Departments of Extension Teaching and Home Economics is growing. Extension teaching is rapidly taking the form of a profession for which broad training is necessary and special technique is required. In the development of these extension training courses, certain extension enterprises are employed as practicums.

Never has there been such a demand as now for extension work in the field of vegetable gardening. A new man is required, to give his whole time to home and school garden work, because a large proportion of those who are now taking up gardening for the first time, and largely through a sense of patriotic duty, will suffer disappointment and discouragement through misplaced energy and unsound practice unless they have skilled leadership. This is mainly true of urban communities, where there is likely to be a lack of the background of agricultural experience which prevails in the open country. The home garden movement is essentially sound and should be developed along lines that will make for permanency, for it offers possibilities for the wise use of resources that are immensely valuable in peace as well as in war.

Landscape work in connection with public works, civic betterment, the home grounds of town and country, and particularly the rural school grounds, offers another opportunity for state-wide service which has not yet been met, as no extension instructor has been appointed to this department.

The work of the farm bureaus

The year just closing has been in some respects epoch-making in agricultural development in this State. It is significant of the new era in farming — an era wherein farmers are taking a more active and personal part in the affairs of the State and the Nation.

The launching of the agricultural extension movement has started a new type of rural organization which is almost wholly educational. The farm bureaus have represented the organization feature of this movement in New York State. They have not only been an extension agency of the College and of the State and Federal Departments of Agriculture, but they have in themselves organized, encouraged, and greatly developed groups of local farmers in the various counties for carrying forward the work of local development of agricultural resources.

The increase in number and the local growth of these organizations, known as county farm bureau associations, has been rapid and in some respects remarkable. At the present time there are forty-two such organizations in as many counties, with an aggregate membership of about 25,000 progressive farmers. Nine other counties are waiting to be organized as soon as the work can be done. These county associations are locally administered by elected executive committees of farmers who cooperate with the public agricultural institutions in carrying on their demonstration work. They are further represented in every community in their counties by local advisory committeemen. There are more than 2000 of these local community centers, represented by 4050 local committeemen, who enjoy the confidence and respect of their communities and are willing and able to become local leaders.

The work of the New York State Food Supply Commission gave a practical illustration of the value of such an organization. Through the farm bureau organization in cooperation with granges and similar institutions, more than 1000 meetings, attended by no less than 75,000 persons, were called together in one day by a proclamation of the Governor. The organization has been further utilized, along with the school system of the State and our own extension specialists and farmers' institute workers, in taking a wartime agricultural survey, in which a census was made of more than ninety-five per cent of all the farms in the State, and the work was fully accomplished in seven days.

In eleven months, through the farm bureaus, 178,207 farmers were reached directly in 3363 meetings.

The place of publications

Closely supplementing the extension work in reaching the people of the State is the progress which has been made in reaching the farm and the farm home through the printed word. A new series of extension bulletins has been added to those which carry the results of research and experiment to regular lists of readers. This series has been of special value in connection with the campaign for increasing the food supply. A still newer development has been the publication on mailing cards of brief treatises, printed quickly and at low cost, to widely disseminate practical farm helps. A number of these have been issued in cooperation with the New York State Food Supply Commission.

The output of publications in the twelve months from the first of July, as compared with that of the preceding fiscal year (nine months from October 1 to June 30) is here given. The figures for 1916–17 do not include the mailing cards issued by the College.

	Publications issued	Total pages	Copies printed
1915–16	41	3,765	1,561,000
1916–17	64	4,773	1,912,000

The Reading Course for the Farm is being followed closely by two-thirds of those who are enrolled for consecutive study of the different subjects by series. Advanced reading courses, similar to modern correspondence courses but without college credit, are now being offered in fruit growing, in vegetable gardening, in poultry, and in farm crops. All the publications of the College have been in extraordinarily large demand, due to a combination of press notices calling attention to the fact that they were available and to the exigencies of the food situation which has created a large interest in concise expositions of gardening, canning, and kindred subjects. From an average weekly request for about 3000 copies, the demand for bulletins in response to miscellaneous requests recently reached 26,000 copies in a single week.

The editorial and information work and the distribution of publications has been carried on in the face of a heavy cut in the forces of the publications office. For this reason unavoidable delays have occurred in the editing and sending out of the various bulletins. Additional help and equipment is needed if the College is to meet its just obligations. The storage rooms and work rooms are inadequate. The recognized standing of these publications warrants better facilities for their handling, eventually in a specially designed publications building or in a definitely planned part of an administration building.

War measures

With the declaration of the state of war came a rearrangement of all plans for extension work and a speeding-up of this phase of the college activities. Extension specialists were sent to fifteen counties in which farm bureaus had not yet been organized, as special agents of the New York State Food Supply Commission. In this capacity these men assisted in taking the agricultural census of the State and in perfecting temporary county organizations to act somewhat as the farm bureaus do in the counties where they are organized. Members of the resident teaching staff also aided in taking the census.

The Department of Home Economics has entered upon a food conservation program in cooperation with the New York State Food Supply Commission, in which it hopes to reach a large percentage of the homes in the State. It is stressing the need for conserving the food supply through the careful selection, preparation, and preservation of foods. Emergency publications are being sent broadcast and meetings are being held wherever interested audiences can be got together.

In fact, every department of the College has made ready to render every possible service to the State and the Nation. Soon after the United States entered the war the faculty of the College appointed a committee to cooperate with the Acting Dean in determining ways and means of service, and members of the faculty have cooperated with other state bodies in working out state policies. Two members of the faculty, the Acting Dean and the State Director of Farm Bureaus, were made members of the New

York State Food Supply Commission appointed by Governor Whitman on April 13.

The action of the university and college faculties in granting leaves of absence without prejudice to students in good standing who are needed for military, industrial, or agricultural service, resulted in the release of large numbers of students from this College. At this writing 587 students have left for farm work and 130 have gone into military or industrial service.

Somewhat aside from war measures, but in direct relation to the subject of emergency work on farms by students, there is a favorable change in the attitude of both students and employers in regard to practice work done by the students on farms as a required part of the courses of those who are not farm-reared. Not only were there more students on farms during the past year than in the preceding year, but also a much larger proportion of the employers reported the work as satisfactory; this will react favorably, and a larger number of the better farmers will employ students.

The war situation does not call for measures radically different from those which have been advocated for the past decade, nor from those which will doubtless need to be advocated for years to come. There is a present opportunity, however, to make progress more rapidly than has been possible heretofore, because no such opportunity has arisen and no such clear call to service has been heard since the beginning of the present agricultural movement.

Recommendations

The outstanding need of the College of Agriculture is for more buildings to accommodate its expanding activities. Every department in the College, with possibly one or two exceptions, is severely cramped, to the great detriment of the work. The proposed Plant Industry Building is needed at once, and other buildings for which tentative plans have been made should follow as rapidly as possible. The necessity that additional space shall be provided at the earliest possible moment cannot be too strongly urged.

In common with other colleges in the University, the College of Agriculture is suffering because of the inadequate salaries which members of the staff are receiving. Few increases have been made to members of the staff during the last four years, although some relief has been given this year. It is to be feared that the State of New York will lose many of the ablest men from its College of Agriculture unless larger salaries are paid and unless substantial advancement is made speedily. Devotion to the work which they have here established has held the teachers in the past. To the earnest teacher salary is a secondary consideration, but it cannot reasonably be expected that the members of the staff will continue to unduly sacrifice larger financial opportunities elsewhere, particularly under the stress of present living conditions.

Additional buildings, increased salaries and maintenance funds, and more adequate equipment, are the chief material needs of the College.

The more important developments in the work of the year in the several departments, as reported by the heads of those departments, follow.

FARM MANAGEMENT

G. F. Warren, Professor of Farm Management

Considerable time has been spent by members of the Department of Farm Management in assisting the New York State Food Supply Commission and in taking the agricultural census of the State.

Three major types of extension teaching have been or are being conducted: (1) Records of a year's business on 730 farms have been studied, with a view to aiding the farmer to improve the organization and management of his farm and to enable him, so far as possible, to make such studies for himself. (2) On a considerable number of farms cost accounts are kept, and on such farms much more detailed suggestions for improvement are brought out by the cost-accounting studies. (3) Lectures and laboratory studies have been given before twenty-seven meetings of farm organizations or extension schools.

During the coming year and following years it is hoped that a farm community of perhaps 400 farms may be selected for work year after year, with a view to obtaining a better farm organization for the entire community.

A study of successful farms, which has been in progress for ten years, is being continued.

Cost-accounting work on farms has been continued and a large amount of data on this subject has been accumulated. These data will be made ready for publication as soon as the Department obtains enough clerical help to do the computing and tabulation work.

The study of the cost of producing milk in Broome County is approaching completion.

An analysis of the cost of potato production is ready for publication.

In view of the importance of the economics of food production, it is hoped that many studies of this subject will be made in the near future.

The increase in population in proportion to food supply, the shortening day of labor, the restriction of child labor, all add to the importance of the use of small tracts of land for homes. For nine years this Department has been giving some attention to the uses of such tracts as homes for persons employed in cities and towns. We hope to begin a very extended study of the problem this summer.

FARM CROPS

E. G. Montgomery, Professor of Farm Crops

Teaching.—The number of undergraduate students registered in the Department of Farm Crops in the college year 1916–17 was 273; the number of graduate students was 23. The credit hours numbered 983. The total number of graduate students taking their major work in the Department was 15.

R. G. Wiggans, an instructor in the Department, resigned in October, 1916. No appointment has been made to fill this place.

Investigation.— The principal piece of investigation in the past year was a pasture survey of the State conducted in cooperation with the Bureau of Plant Industry at Washington, D. C. This survey will be continued during the coming year, and should be followed by a series of carefully planned long-time experiments on pasture problems. The survey has already collected very important data as to the nature and character of pastures on different soil types, and gives the first authentic information that has been available. The Department will be able to incorporate much of this into its teaching work as well as its extension work, in the same way that it has been able to use the data from the potato survey taken two or three years ago. This is the only way that actual facts and figures suitable for publication or for instruction can be obtained. The greatest difficulty that teachers of farm crops have found either in their extension work or in their class work has been the lack of extensive data, capable of analysis, regarding common farm operations. The Department hopes to continue these surveys for many years until all phases have been fairly thoroughly covered.

In addition, the work on rotation plots, on the effect of various treatments on the duration of grass sods, on production tests of various grass and clover mixtures, on the classification of American barleys, on silage corn tests, and on several minor projects, has been continued as usual.

Extension.— The extension activities of the Department are more and more taking the form of cooperative work through the farm bureaus or other organized agencies. Two years ago this Department suggested that all farm-bureau projects dealing with farm crops should be standardized, so far as possible, in order that the information obtained in the various farm bureaus might be comparable. This would tend also to simplify and improve the character of the farm-bureau work. This general plan was adopted and the process of standardization has since been going on. It has resulted in a considerable improvement in the work, and has enabled the Department to do satisfactorily much more work than would otherwise have been possible. During the year the farm bureaus had under way nearly 3000 farm-crops projects, of which the following is a summary:

County	Liming*	Hay	Corn	Oats	Potatoes	Pasture	Alfalfa	Vetch	Clover	Beans
Albany..........	....	1	7	4	....	3	9	5	.....	.....
Allegany..........	31	2	22	4	18	14	9	23	21	6
Broome..........	11	....	8	15	....	......	4	....	.....	.....
Cattaraugus.......	18	8	11	....	10	7	50	36	.....	12
Cayuga..........	....	....	....	....	17	......	.....	....	.....	.....
Chautauqua.......	20	6	25	....	25	......	36	11	.....	.....
Chemung.........	59	....	25	6	....	......	33	....	.....	.....
Chenango.........	18	1	21	36	3	......	30	3	2	.....
Clinton..........	4	....	8	5	45	......	.....	....	.....	.....
Cortland..........	....	7	25	1	22	......	.....	....	.....	.....
Delaware.........	2	....	23	4	....	......	3	5	2	13
Dutchess.........	20	....	9	10	5	21	10	30	.....	.....
Erie..........	....	....	....	2	4	......	6	....	.....	4
Essex..........	....	....	5	....	7	1	4	4	4	6
Franklin..........	1	6	3	....	30	......	4	....	.....	.....
Herkimer..........	10	22	28	60	....	1	11	10	3	.....
Jefferson..........	12	8	17	16	13	17	9	5	13	2
Monroe..........	....	....	....	....	30	......	.....	....	.....	.....
Montgomery......	....	....	55	7	....	......	16	....	.....	4
Nassau..........	....	3	4	....	77	......	5	....	.....	.....
Niagara..........	4	....	....	109	2	......	1	....	.....	.....
Oneida..........	4	1	8	....	19	1	3	....	.....	7
Onondaga.........	....	1	6	....	3	......	.....	1	.....	.....
Orange..........	26	11	30	4	4	4	39	7	6	10
Oswego..........	3	....	59	38	....	......	.....	2	.....	.....
Otsego..........	18	....	38	4	....	......	15	....	1	.....
St. Lawrence......	13	....	10	5	4	......	4	5	.....	.....
Saratoga..........	4	5	55	3	....	1	29	26	7	1
Schoharie.........	1	....	23	35	3	......	2	3	1	.....
Sullivan..........	....	....	13	6	....	9	4	4	.....	4
Tioga..........	....	....	50	....	7	......	1	....	.....	.....
Tompkins.........	....	....	4	27	2	......	30	....	.....	.....
Ulster..........	3	3	9	12	2	1	15	7	.....	2
Warren..........	1	....	....	....	10	......	.....	2	.....	.....
Westchester.......	....	....	....	4	2	......	11	....	.....	1
Wyoming.........	....	....	16	38	28	3	.....	....	.....	.....
Totals........	283	85	617	455	392	83	393	189	60	72

* Only a part of the liming experiments are to be considered in relation to farm crops; the others are connected with soils.

Ultimately every county in the State should have a large number of farm-crops projects, and when this work is fully developed the counties should be subdivided into groups of eight or ten counties each, with at least one farm-crops extension man for each group.

Recommendations.— For the future the Department of Farm Crops should look toward:

1. Developing its extension work until the demands are completely met;

2. Continuing surveys until a sufficient number have been made to cover all the principal farm operations of the State;

3. Following these surveys with experimental work to determine the debatable questions that the surveys do not answer.

Plans should be made for developing some long-time experiments on pasture problems. It would seem advisable also to secure a few outlying experimental fields for experiments with crops and soils.

FARM PRACTICE

J. L. Stone, Professor of Farm Practice

The students entering the College during the past year had had more farm experience than those in the entering classes of the few preceding years. Thirty-three per cent were born and brought up on farms or had lived on farms most of their lives.

The method of taking the farm-practice record of entering students was changed in the past year. It now includes a written statement by the student, a practical test in the operations in which the student claims experience, and a further check obtained by writing to the farmer on whose farm the student got his experience. This has resulted in much closer and more accurate marking.

The average number of farm-practice credits given to students entering in 1916 was 24.5. In 1914 it was 19 and in 1915 it was 22. With the closer marking in 1916 this indicates that the entering class had considerably better farm experience.

There were 120 students registered in the farm-practice course, about 50 of whom dropped out before the end of the year. This is about the same proportion as in the preceding year, when 68 were registered and 30 dropped out. Figures compiled in the first term of last year show that of the 30 who dropped the farm-practice course, 20 either did not return to the University or changed to other colleges.

The Department passed on all agricultural students released for farm work by the faculty action of April 18. A fairly large number from other colleges were also referred to this Department. In all a total of 652 students applied, of whom 587 were judged to be fitted for the positions they had obtained and were so reported to the secretary, and 38 were referred to other colleges with an opinion of the merits of the case. About three-fifths of those released went to work on the farms of relatives or friends. This reduced materially the number of students who were available for work on farms at the close of the term. The total number desiring credit for work on farms, however, remains about the same. About 240 students have reported positions on farms for the summer of 1917 and stated that they desire farm-practice credit for the work.

Reports were received from farms where students worked during the summer of 1916 in all cases in which the students desired farm-practice credit for the work and in a number of cases in which no credit was desired. A much larger proportion of the reports were favorable than in the preceding year. This indicates better interest and better work on the part of the student, a condition which is sure to react favorably on the value of the work to the students and to induce more of our better farmers to employ student labor. The list of farmers willing to employ student labor is constantly increasing and we are adding to the information on farms already on the list.

Assistance has been given to students and former students in obtaining permanent positions. During the year 267 have applied for permanent positions. Of these 146 have reported getting places in agricultural work and 5 in non-agricultural work. About seventy positions have been obtained through the aid of the Department. There are 25 students now referred to positions, some of whom will undoubtedly be located.

During the 1916–17 session of the winter course, the lectures on farm crops were given by Professor J. L. Stone, of this Department, and the laboratory exercises were conducted by Messrs. Dynes and Abell, of the Department of Farm Crops. One hundred and twenty-one students were regularly enrolled in the Department.

During the year the college domain has been increased by the purchase of about 23 acres of land near the East Ithaca station. This land was procured for the use of the Department of Vegetable Gardening, and there has been released to the Department of Farm Practice about 16 acres on the Bool farm that was formerly used by the Department of Vegetable Gardening. Our regular farming operations now cover about 313 acres.

The Department entered into cooperation with the Farm Bureau Association of Tompkins County and operated its traction ditching machine in demonstration work on thirteen farms in the county, opening a total of 2966 rods of ditch. A charge intended to cover the cost merely was made to the farmers, and resulted in an average cost of only 36 cents per rod for opening the trench.

The crops growing on the college farm at the end of the year are about as follows:

Alfalfa	27 acres
Clover	42 acres
Timothy and mixed hay	104 acres
Corn	45 acres
Oats	50 acres
Wheat	30 acres
Roots	3 acres
Beans	12 acres
Total	313 acres

Extension.— The extension work of the Department is limited to the time that can be spared from regular duties, and is usually in response to emergency calls for help in the demonstration schools, in grange meetings, and the like. Professor King attended three and Professor Stone seven of these meetings, devoting about half a week's time in most cases. Talks were given at a number of granges, and several farms were visited and their owners advised regarding their management.

Recommendations.— It seems desirable that the instruction work in farm practice given at the College should be increased by giving the needed instruction to a larger number of entering students, and by giving as much instruction to each student as is possible without interfering with the required work.

Opportunity to observe the farm work of some of our students who have passed the farm-practice requirement, and reports of farmers in regard to such students, indicate that the present requirement will not adequately meet the future needs of the students in a great majority of cases. Students would receive much more benefit from the courses taken in the junior and senior years if they had had more actual experience on farms.

It is now difficult for many students not reared on farms to get more than the forty points required and complete the requirements for graduation in four years. The writer believes it would be desirable to require one year of farm work of all students before the beginning of the junior year. This should be in additon to the present farm-practice requirement, and should be on a privately owned farm, selected and approved, or at least approved, by the College, and one where the owner depended for his living on the income derived from the farm.

PLANT BREEDING

R. A. Emerson, Professor of Plant Breeding

The activities of the Department of Plant Breeding during the past year have been concerned more with investigation and teaching than with extension. The extension work of the Department, as in previous years, has been done largely by members of the staff engaged primarily in research. The absence of Professor A. W. Gilbert on sabbatic leave during the fall term and his later resignation from the university staff, made it necessary that some of the undergraduate instruction should be given by members of the research staff. This and the extension work doubtless would have interfered seriously with the investigative work of the Department, had not the members of the research staff remained in active service throughout the greater part of their vacation periods. The addition of Professor C. B. Hutchinson to the teaching staff toward the end of the year, and provision for an extension instructor, will make possible a partial reorganization of the teaching and extension work to the advantage of these lines, and will also allow the research staff to devote practically its entire energies to investigation.

Teaching.— The enrollment in undergraduate classes for 1916–17 was lower than in previous years. The decrease was undoubtedly due, at least in part, to added prerequisites for entrance to the elementary courses. On the whole, it is believed, undergraduate instruction has been materially strengthened. The graduate instruction in plant breeding has become established on a sound basis. Many students from other sections of the country, several of them holding positions in other institutions, are coming to Cornell for major work in plant breeding and in the principles of genetics underlying it.

Investigation.— Noteworthy progress has been made both in studies of the mode of inheritance of particular characters of certain crops and in the production and testing of new strains of economic promise. Much of the purely genetic investigation is coming to center about determinations of linkage intensities and other interrelations of genetic factors. The only new investigation begun during the year is an attempt to produce disease-resistant strains of field beans. This work is conducted in cooperation with the Department of Plant Pathology, and is financed by a special appropriation of State funds.

Extension.— Assistance has been given to farm bureau agents and to individual farmers in conducting practical breeding operations with oats, wheat, timothy, corn, and potatoes. Seed of promising strains of wheat, oats, and timothy, developed in connection with the research work of the Department, has been distributed to farmers of the State. Wherever these new strains have been found to outyield the standard sorts, growers have been encouraged to effect wider distribution by selling seed to other farmers. One of the Department's selections of corn has given very favorable results in direct comparison with standard varieties in numerous sections of the State, and one of its new wheats has attracted favorable attention even outside the State.

Recommendations.— The most urgent need of the Department in material equipment is provision for the drainage of its experimental plots in Caldwell Field. The compactness of the soil on these plots greatly delays important field operations every year, and in a wet season makes it all but impossible to carry out the experimental work of the Department.

BOTANY

K. M. Wiegand, Professor of Botany

Teaching.— The total amount of instruction given by the Department of Botany during the past year has not changed materially from that offered during the preceding year. The registration was as follows: third term (1916),* 52; first term, 340; second term, 365; graduate students, 47 (12 in major and 35 in minor subjects). In the third term 292 credit hours were given, in the first term 1550, and in the second term 1773.

Investigation.— All members of the teaching staff, as well as all major graduate students, are engaged in some research. Fourteen subjects are reported from the Laboratory of Plant Physiology and five subjects from other laboratories of the Department.

Extension.— The extension work of the Department has been confined, as in the past, to three lines of work as follows:

1. Correspondence with farmers and others in regard to weed identification, weed eradication, legume inoculation, and other matters. There were 181 letters sent out relating to weeds, and 2800 relating to inoculation.

2. Distribution of cultures containing the organisms for inoculating soil in preparation for legume crops. The number of these sent out was 7500.

3. Lectures and demonstrations. An exhibit and two demonstrations of legume inoculation were given during Farmers' Week, at which the attendance was 500. An exhibit of several hundred New York State weeds was made during Farmers' Week.

Publications.— Publications of the Department aside from those issued by the University, which are listed elsewhere, are as follows:

A new species of Eragrostis. By K. M. Wiegand. Rhodora, June, 1917.

Cambial activity in certain horticultural plants. By Lewis Knudson. Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club, vol. 43, p. 533–537.

The toxicity of galactose and mannose for green plants and the antagonistic action of other sugars toward these. By Lewis Knudson. American Journal of Botany, vol. 4, p. 430–437.

Recommendations.— There is great need of better material equipment for this Department. The laboratory space has been too crowded during the past year, as formerly, and the appropriation for maintenance has been too small. One of the most serious deficiencies at present is the lack of suitable quarters for research students. Except in the case of plant physiology, no laboratory space whatever is provided for them. They have been forced to occupy the laboratories used by regular classes, with the inevitable result that their work was very much interrupted and their material often seriously disturbed. It is impossible for the Department to take more graduate students unless better accommodations are provided.

---

* The college academic year does not agree with the college fiscal year, and the expenses for the third (or summer) term are paid largely from the appropriations for the following year; therefore the third term of any one academic year becomes practically the first term of the succeeding fiscal year.

The lack of a preparation room for the large introductory course has seriously interfered with this phase of the work.

Owing to the rapid growth of the herbarium, larger fireproof quarters and more cases are necessary to properly care for this important part of the equipment.

The present inadequate quarters and awkward housing of materials have rendered work unnecessarily difficult. A new building with adequate and modern equipment is absolutely necessary.

The following extract is from the subreport of the Professor of Plant Physiology:

"Attention should be called first of all to the very crowded condition of the plant physiology laboratories. This is true for both the laboratory for instruction and that for research. Pending the construction of the new building, another room for teaching purposes should be provided.

"A small room should be provided for the preparation of bacterial cultures for the inoculation of legumes. At present this work is being done in one of the headhouses, in a room not suited to this purpose.

" Money should be appropriated out of extension funds for the payment of an assistant who would give his entire time to the preparation and testing of bacterial cultures. It has been necessary in the past to employ men temporarily to assist in this work, thereby placing a burden on other members of the staff, in order that the quality of the cultures may not be endangered.

" Provision should be made for the appointment of another assistant professor of plant physiology, in order that those capable of doing research may have more time for this purpose. Physiology is fundamental to all applied plant sciences, and yet no special provision has been made for research in this important field.

" It is the hope of the writer that opportunity will soon come for limiting his teaching to advanced lectures in alternate years and devoting his time entirely to graduate students and to research. The Dean of the Graduate School has repeatedly called attention to the fundamental importance of the establishment of research professorships, and in a laboratory in which over thirty graduate students are registered there should be at least one such appointment.

" In conclusion, mention should be made of the lack of sufficient funds. Apparatus and materials have increased in cost, and yet the appropriations for plant physiology for the past and present academic years have been considerably reduced. The maintenance fund for this work should be at least $2000."

PLANT PATHOLOGY

H. H. Whetzel, Professor of Plant Pathology

Teaching.— The courses in the Department of Plant Pathology have been somewhat rearranged and revised, without, however, increasing the number of courses offered.

The laboratory outlines used in our general course have been completely revised and issued in printed form, constituting the first published outlines for laboratory work in plant pathology.

Readjustments in the teaching staff have been effected which make possible the teaching of practically all students by teachers of the rank of professor or assistant professor. Assistants now devote their time to such work as the preparation of laboratory materials, thus relieving the teacher so that he may devote his entire time and energy to the actual teaching work. The employment of an especially trained assistant to have charge of materials for class use has greatly improved and strengthened the work.

There were 289 students registered in courses in the Department from July 1, 1916, to June 30, 1917, distributed as follows: third term (1916), 18; summer session (1916), 4; first term, 129; winter course, 38; second term, 100; total, 289.

In addition to these, 36 graduate students were registered with different members of the staff, of whom 12 had their major subjects, and 24 their minors, in plant pathology.

Investigation.— The research work during the year was directed chiefly to the following general problems:

1. The cause and control of leaf diseases of nursery stock, with special attention to dusting as a substitute for spraying. The results of this work are given in Experiment Station Bulletin 385.

2. The diseases of beans and their control, including a continuation of the studies on anthracnose; the varietal resistance of beans to anthracnose; the root rots of beans, diseases which seriously threaten bean growing in many sections of the State; and other bean diseases, especially the mosaic, which became very destructive in 1916.

3. Rose diseases, investigations undertaken during the early summer of 1916 in cooperation with the American Rose Society. The cause of a very destructive root-and-crown disease of greenhouse roses has been discovered, and numerous studies on other diseases of the rose are under way.

4. Diseases of florists' crops, especially diseases of peony, tulips, violets, geraniums, columbines, and gladioli. A report of the work on the hard rot of gladioli has been published as Experiment Station Bulletin 380.

5. The diseases of shade and forest trees and shrubs, especially the white

pine blister rust, a serious wilt disease of the maple, and a heart rot of the lilac.

6. Diseases of the potato. Special studies of the Fusarium wilt of potatoes, so destructive in the lower Hudson Valley, have been largely completed. Investigations in cooperation with the United States Department of Agriculture on the leaf-roll disease of potatoes have been undertaken and good progress has been made.

7. Diseases of vegetables, especially of onions, cabbage, celery, lettuce, and cucumbers, studied in cooperation with the University of Rochester.

8. Mycological studies dealing especially with the life history and host relations of various disease-producing fungi, along the lines indicated in previous reports.

Publications.— Publications of the Department aside from those issued by the University, which are listed elsewhere, are as follows:

Dusting as a substitute for spraying — History and progress. By H. H. Whetzel and F. M. Blodgett. Proceedings of the New York State Fruit Growers' Association, 1917, p. 61–75.

Endophyllum-like rusts of Porto Rico. By E. W. Olive and H. H. Whetzel. American Journal of Botany, vol. 4, p. 44–52.

Laboratory outlines in plant pathology. By H. H. Whetzel, Lex R. Hesler, C. T. Gregory, and W. H. Rankin.

Manual of fruit diseases. By L. R. Hesler and H. H. Whetzel.

Control of leaf-curl disease of peaches. By D. Reddick and L. A. Toan. Proceedings of the Western New York Horticultural Society, 1917, p. 28–31.

Serious diseases of the season. By D. Reddick. Proceedings of the Western New York Horticultural Society, 1917, p. 59–65.

Diseases of pears. By M. F. Barrus. *In* The fruit industry in New York State. New York State Department of Agriculture, Bulletin 79, Part 2, p. 1039–1051.

Diseases of the potato. By M. F. Barrus. *In* The potato, by Arthur W. Gilbert, p. 183–205.

Control measures against diseases. By M. F. Barrus. *In* The potato, by Arthur W. Gilbert, p. 206–225.

Problems of potato seed certification. By M. F. Barrus. Market Growers' Journal, vol. 20, no. 2, p. 45–46, 58–59.

Dusting experiments in the nursery for the control of leaf diseases. By V. B. Stewart. Proceedings of the Western New York Horticultural Society, 1917, p. 40–44.

The development of the ascocarp of Rhizina undulata Fr. By H. M. Fitzpatrick. Botanical Gazette, vol. 63, p. 282–296.

The penetration of foreign substances into trees. By W. H. Rankin. Phytopathology, vol. 7, p. 5–13.

Rose diseases. By L. M. Massey. The American Rose Annual, 1917, p. 92–101.

The perfect stage of Gloeosporium venetum. By W. H. Burkholder. Phytopathology, vol. 7, p. 83–91.

Extension.— The extension activities of the Department have been directed chiefly along the lines of extension-school teaching, field demonstrations, and the assisting of farm bureau agents through expert advice, demonstrations, and the planning of field demonstration work.

The campaign for the control of oat smut conducted during the spring of 1916 has been followed up with letters, literature, lectures, and demonstrations. Reports received indicate the saving of no less than one million dollars to the farmers of the State as a result of this campaign.

During the spring of 1917 a special campaign on disinfection and selection of seed potatoes was conducted. A special feature of this campaign consisted of 22 lectures given in connection with the potato-improvement train run over the Rutland Railroad.

Field demonstration work on fall spraying for control of peach leaf curl was promoted in several peach-growing sections.

Cooperative demonstrations of the relative value of dusting as compared with spraying for the control of apple diseases were carried out in several apple sections during the summer of 1916, and were undertaken again during the spring of 1917.

Many lectures, field meetings, and field demonstrations, on a variety of plant-disease subjects, were conducted. In all a total of 91 localities in 24 counties were visited. Forty-three of these visits were made at the special request of farm bureau managers or officers of other local organizations.

Plant-disease lectures and demonstrations were given at fourteen extension schools, as compared with seven in the previous year.

Several plant-disease exhibits were made at meetings of growers, especially at the fruit growers' annual meetings and at the State Fair.

The total number of letters written during the year was 5399, as compared with 4126 in the preceding year. These were largely in reply to inquiries of growers and farm bureau agents regarding diseases in crops.

Recommendations.—The statements made in our last annual report regarding the housing of this Department are still pertinent. Further development in departmental efficiency and usefulness depends to a very high degree on prompt increase in office and laboratory space. The office facilities are wholly inadequate to the needs of so large a department. No other one thing would give to our work such an impetus and development as the immediate prospect of more adequate quarters.

Additional graduate assistants are much needed, especially for the work in the advanced courses in mycology.

As a result of the increased cost of apparatus and materials, the cost of maintenance has nearly doubled. The research work especially is affected by this condition. The maintenance funds for this Department should be at least double what are now available.

SOIL TECHNOLOGY

T. Lyttleton Lyon, Professor of Soil Technology

Teaching.— During the past year there have been some minor changes in the arrangement of courses offered by the Department of Soil Technology, and in the time of year in which the courses are given. It has been arranged to give, cooperatively with the Department of Agricultural Chemistry, a course in soil management for winter-course students.

During the year there were 338 undergraduate students registered in courses offered by the Department, and 25 graduate students, of whom 17 took major subjects in this Department.

Investigation.— The lines of research and experimentation are much the same as last year. In the investigation of the influence of higher plants on the formation of nitrates in soil, a new feature has developed as the result of experiments to estimate the content of carbon dioxide in the air of the soil in the lysimeter tanks. The course of formation of carbon dioxide in the planted soils as compared with the unplanted soils indicates an inhibitive influence of certain plants on this process during the later stages of plant growth. Whether there is stimulation at any stage the method is not capable of showing. As both nitrate and carbon-dioxide formation are results of decomposition of organic substances, this observation adds further evidence that higher plants exert a rather direct influence on bacterial development in soil.

The lysimeter tanks have been found useful in a way not anticipated at the time of their construction. They are admirably adapted to experiments dealing with the estimation of carbon dioxide in soils. For this purpose the drainage water outlet is connected with an aspirator and the soil air thus collected is analyzed.

The field experiments have been extended to include a series of plats treated with limestone ground to different degrees of fineness. The separations have been made for us by a company that makes a business of grinding limestone, and we have been able to get carefully screened material in sufficient quantity to conduct the experiment on a field scale. The separates used are 5- to 10-mesh, 10- to 25-mesh, 50- to 80-mesh, and less than 200-mesh.

Soil surveys.— The surveys of Cortland and Yates Counties were completed within the year, and the surveys of Saratoga and Oswego Counties were begun.

Extension.— Plans have been prepared for demonstrations to be conducted by farm bureau managers, in soil drainage, in the application of lime and fertilizers, in the maintenance of humus, and in methods of tillage.

Fifty-six drainage surveys have been made, for a considerable number of which blueprints and profiles were furnished to the owners of the land. Six drainage demonstration meetings were held, with a total attendance of 1318 persons. As a result several communities are contemplating the purchase of power ditching machines, and one machine has already been bought.

The emergency agricultural census taken in April showed that 156,484 tons of lime were used in the fifty-six counties during the year. This is, in considerable part, a response to the educational efforts of our extension officers, who have also been instrumental in securing a change in the state law covering the inspection of agricultural lime, which will make available to farmers much more satisfactory information concerning the agricultural lime on the market.

In addition to the drainage surveys, eleven farms were visited for the purpose of giving advice to the owners.

A total of twenty-seven weeks of instruction was given in thirty demonstration schools.

Thirty-five lectures were given, including those in Farmers' Week.

Exhibits were made during Farmers' Week and at the State Fair.

Twenty-seven sets of fertilizer samples and fifty-two soil acidity tests were sent to schools.

Nearly three thousand letters were written to individuals and twenty-five circular letters were sent out.

Publications.— Publications of the Department aside from those issued by the University, which are listed elsewhere, are as follows:

Live-stock and maintenance of the soil. The value of green manure. By E. O. Fippin. Rural New-Yorker, July 1, 1916, p. 931.

Live-stock and maintenance of the soil. By E. O. Fippin. Rural New-Yorker, July 8, 1916, p. 953.

Live-stock and the maintenance of organic matter in the soil. By E. O. Fippin. Journal of American Society of Agronomy, vol. 9, p. 97–105.

The soils and agricultural development of New York. Special crop soils. By E. O. Fippin. The Cornell Countryman, vol. 14, p. 568–572, 598.

Muck land fertility. By E. O. Fippin. Bulletin of the New York State Vegetable Growers' Association, vol. 3, p. 8, 9, 11, 12.

Drainage and crop protection in Tompkins County. By W. W. Warsaw. Tompkins County Breeders' Journal, July, 1916, p. 28.

The extraction and saturation of soils with volatile antiseptics. By J. P. du Buisson. Soil Science, vol. 3, p. 353–391.

The relation of certain cover crops to the formation of nitrates in soil. By T. L. Lyon. Proceedings of the Western New York Horticultural Society, 1917, p. 32–34.

Recommendations.— A course in soil bacteriology should be offered. This should be an advanced course designed to follow the general course in bacteriology, which the student may now take in the Department of Dairy Industry or in the Veterinary College. There is no way in which an undergraduate student can obtain the special training in soil bacteriology that is necessary should he desire to prepare himself for postgraduate study in that subject. The course need be for one term only, but some provision would necessarily be required for giving it.

It would add much to the knowledge of the soils of the State, and make it possible to give much more intelligent advice to farmers, if a series of experiment plats were established on several soil types. Such a series of plats would serve for use by both this Department and the Department of Farm Crops.

Provision should also be made for chemical analyses of important soil types, the samples for which should be taken in a systematic way by a representative of the College. If this could be done it would gradually provide the Department with sufficient knowledge of the soils of the surveyed areas of the State to make unnecessary complete analyses of miscellaneous samples sent in by farmers.

POMOLOGY

W. H. Chandler, Professor of Pomology

Teaching.— The undergraduate enrollment in the Department of Pomology for the past year was as follows: third term (1916), 14; first term, 155; second term, 147; winter course, 63. The number of graduate students having minors or majors in the Department during the year was 18.

Investigation.— Few of the investigations under way are of such a nature that they can be finished within a few years. The experiments in pruning old and young trees, hardiness studies, fertilizers for strawberries and bush fruits, osmotic relationship and incipient drying of fruit, color of fruits, and factors that influence the setting of fruit, have been continued and in some cases extended. The results of the study of factors influencing the abscission of flowers and partially developed fruits of the apple are ready for publication.

Extension.— The extension staff has participated in the following activities during the past year:

Lectures	25
Demonstrations (pruning, spraying, and packing)	43
Inspections	10
Demonstration schools	12
Miscellaneous	42

The following extension activities are being continued: a demonstration of the methods whereby an old and neglected orchard may be renewed profitably, at Port Byron; and a demonstration of the value of different combinations of fertilizers for the peach orchard, at Pultneyville.

Recommendations.— In the report for 1915–16 was noted our very urgent need for some greenhouse space both for teaching and for experimental purposes, a cold-storage plant, and equipment for studying the use of fruit by-products, particularly a fruit-evaporating plant. These needs are as urgent now as they were then.

One of our most pressing needs is for laboratory room. The Department has only one laboratory for undergraduates, and a small room that is used as a laboratory for graduate students. In the course in systematic pomology it is impossible to give laboratory work because of the lack of room.

It was pointed out in the last report that we are in need of additional land for orchards. In both experimental work and teaching a large acreage is essential, since so few trees can be grown on an acre. This need is becoming more urgent each year.

FLORICULTURE

E. A. White, Professor of Floriculture

As was anticipated in the report of a year ago, the work of the Department has been seriously handicapped by lack of funds. This has been true particularly of the work in investigation, which has suffered seriously because money has not been available for labor on the various plots at Craig Field. The Department has felt an obligation to take care of the work that is being carried on in cooperation with the various floricultural societies, such as the American Rose Society, the American Peony Society, the American Gladiolus Society, and others. By concentrating our efforts on a few of the most important projects, fairly satisfactory results in investigation have been obtained. It is regrettable, however, that retrenchment has been necessary. It is believed that the value of the work now under way has been clearly demonstrated, and it is anticipated that during the coming year sufficient funds will be assigned to the Department to make possible a satisfactory development of all projects in floricultural investigation as now outlined.

The rose test garden at Craig Field has been a source of much interest. During the year additions have been made to the list of varieties, and valuable data regarding hardiness, freedom of bloom, adaptation to soil, and other qualities of different varieties, have been obtained. Delegates from the American Rose Society and the Syracuse Rose Society inspected the garden on June 22. Approximately one hundred visitors were present. The garden is probably one of the most valuable projects now being developed by the Department, but each year more funds must be available if the work is to broaden as its merits deserve. One of the immediate needs is for a system of irrigation. At the present time there is no way of getting water to the garden.

The need of the Department for a range of glasshouses especially adapted for investigation is as great as it has been in years past. For several years a bill for these greenhouses has been introduced in the Legislature and fostered by the New York Federation of Horticultural Societies and Floral Clubs.

During the year a new curved-eave greenhouse for palms and decorative plants has been built. This will be a distinctive asset in the equipment for instruction in floriculture. The curvilinear house formerly on the site of the new greenhouse has been taken down and is being rebuilt in another location by students in the course in greenhouse construction.

VEGETABLE GARDENING

Paul Work, Acting Professor of Vegetable Gardening

Teaching.— Since the organization of the Department of Vegetable Gardening, in 1913, its aim has been to turn out men well trained for practical and technical work in this field. The program that has been arranged for this purpose combines the gaining of field experience with laboratory and classroom work in vegetable gardening and with thorough training in the sciences fundamental to all agriculture. The use of the summer term is an essential feature of the schedule. This year the first class was graduated under the new program. The readiness with which these graduates have been accepted for positions of responsibility, establishes even thus early the wisdom of devoting special attention to the training of small groups of men who are well qualified for leadership on the farm and in institutions.

Research.— Each member of the staff is engaged in definite research. The war emergency has made it difficult to keep up the research work, but only the first project has been suspended. Among the projects are:

Studies with the tomato, covering the fertilizer requirements of the plant, training and pruning, space requirement, and varieties; a study of training greenhouse cucumbers as influencing earliness and yield; taxonomic studies of celery, tomatoes, and beans; cooperative experiments to show the best method of supplying nitrogen to muck-land crops.

The Department feels very keenly the need of a man who may devote his whole time and attention to research problems.

Extension.— The extension work has been carried forward along the same lines as in previous years. The demand for extension schools and meetings has so increased as to require the full time of one man for this phase of the work.

Demonstration trials in cooperation with farm bureau agents and growers in their counties have been in progress for two years. The trials with cabbage have been especially useful.

The phenomenal interest in home gardening that has arisen this spring renders it imperative that a man be employed to give his whole time to these activities. While definite figures are not available, there are now probably between fifty and sixty local home-garden leaders in the State. These regularly employed workers, together with dozens of volunteers, are making exceedingly heavy demands on the Department. The home-garden movement is essentially sound, and its development should be encouraged along lines that will make for permanency. It offers possibilities for the development of enormous resources that should be utilized in peace times as well as in war times.

The Department is giving particular attention to the problems of evaporating and canning as a means of extending the period during which perishable products may be utilized.

Recommendations.— Each spring the quality of plants which we are able to grow for outdoor setting is far below standard, because we have not a sufficient number of separate glass units to meet the requirements. We would urge the early completion of the greenhouse range, and we stand in particular need of a 50-foot unit which may be divided into four or five separate compartments.

The Department has come into possession of about 23 acres of land at East Ithaca. While part of the soil is very heavy, it includes a considerable amount of land that is well adapted for our work. This land is being speedily put to use. The work at the East Ithaca gardens is seriously curtailed through lack of an adequate service building.

We must continue to look forward to the establishment of a range of glasshouses for research work. The units on the main campus, even when completed, will barely meet our teaching needs.

The need of a research man on Long Island who may study the highly specialized problems of the growers there is even more urgent than it was when first suggested, four years ago.

The business side of vegetable production, including marketing, has been grievously neglected. Growers are much better able to meet their production problems than their marketing problems. It is important that we obtain the services of a man who is especially trained and experienced in this line of work, to give it his whole time.

Mr. Kirkpatrick has devoted much attention to the problems of canning and evaporating. We should develop our knowledge of the technology and the commercial practices in these industries, and we should place ourselves in a position to turn out well-trained men for factory management. The development of these activities will require the establishment of a special laboratory, and we should look forward to a marked development in these fields.

FORESTRY

Ralph S. Hosmer, Professor of Forestry

Faculty.— The staff of the Department of Forestry was increased on July 1, 1916, by the appointment of an assistant professor, G. Harris Collingwood, to take charge of extension and demonstration work in forestry and to teach certain of the regular courses.

Equipment.— In the spring of 1917, a one-story, single-room addition was constructed at the east end of the Forestry Building to permit the installation of a portable sawmill, needed for demonstrations in connection with instruction in forest utilization. The addition conforms in style and materials to the main building. It was paid for out of a balance remaining from the original appropriation for the Forestry Building.

Because the land was needed for the new university rifle range, the Department of Forestry surrendered, in the summer of 1916, a part of the tract known as Behrends North, occupied in part by experimental plantations of coniferous trees. To offset this loss of area a small parcel of land connecting two of the woodlots controlled by the Department of Forestry was transferred to this Department by the Department of Animal Husbandry.

Teaching.— Twenty-five courses of instruction were given during the year, as follows: third term (1916), seven; first term, seven; second term, ten; winter course, one. Because of lack of funds no regular courses in forestry were offered in the Summer Session of 1916, but in lieu thereof five public lectures, for the most part illustrated, were given by foresters prominent in state work or in education. Course 1, The Farm Woodlot, was for the first time repeated in the second term; course 18 was restored to two hours credit.

The number of students registered in the courses offered, as compared with previous years, was as follows:

Year	Registration in courses intended primarily for students from other departments	Registration in courses intended for both professional students and those from other departments	Registration in professional forestry courses	Registration in graduate courses	Total number of students registered in regular courses	Winter course	Summer school	Grand total
1912–13.......	213	56	143	....	412	47	22	481
1913–14.......	139	80	131	40	390	57	28	475
1914–15.......	115	107	214	52	488	20	18	526
1915–16.......	300	196	189	33	718	17	.....*	735
1916–17.......	279	186	215	32	712	36	.....*	748

---

* In place of regular courses during the Summer Session there was given in each of these two years a series of public lectures on forestry.

The total number of students receiving instruction was: third term (1916), 101; first term, 280; second term, 331; winter course, 36; grand total, 748. The actual number of professional forestry students, exclusive of freshmen, enrolled in the Department of Forestry was 81; the number from other departments was 359. In 1914–15 the number from other departments was 121, and in 1915–16 it was 285. The significant thing about these figures is that the attendance in the general courses shows an increasing interest in forestry among non-professional students.

Through enrollment for national service in military, naval, or industrial lines, the Department of Forestry lost nearly 50 per cent of its professional students in the spring of 1917.

During the year 1916–17, ten graduate students elected work in the Department of Forestry. Four graduate students received at Commencement in June, 1917, the degree of Master in Forestry, and one that of Master of Science. One additional graduate student passed the master's examination in February, 1917.

Research.— The time of the staff of the Department is so fully occupied with teaching, with extension activities, and with the field work incidental to both these branches, that investigative work has necessarily had to take second place. During the year, however, progress has been made in several directions, as follows: (1) experiments in the preservative treatment of fence posts used on the college farm have been continued and amplified; (2) under the general working plan for the college woodlots, progress has been made during the year in bettering silvicultural conditions, particularly through improvement cuttings followed by underplanting on one of these areas; (3) a study of the forest conditions, resources, and problems of Tompkins County has been started, with special reference to the marketing of forest products and the proper care of the farm woodlots; (4) plans for cooperation with lumbermen and other wood users, through research and detailed studies in forest management, have been perfected.

In view of the situation produced by the war it is of especial importance that waste in the lumber industry should be prevented, both in the woods and at the mill. Such saving can best be brought about by proper forest management. To inaugurate demonstrations of this sort, Professor A. B. Recknagel has been granted a year's leave of absence from the University to permit him to become forester of the Empire State Forest Products Association, an organization made up of the leading lumbermen in New York State.

Publications.— An important contribution to forestry literature from this Department appeared in the Journal of Forestry for January, 1917, the official organ of the Society of American Foresters, when Professors

Spring and Recknagel, as chairmen of subcommittees on a revision of forest terminology, published their lists of terms used in silvics, silviculture, and forest description, and in forest mensuration and management, respectively.

In the spring of 1917, John Wiley & Sons, of New York, brought out a revised and enlarged edition of Professor Recknagel's book entitled *Forest Working Plans*.

Extension.— Two members of the staff are assigned to extension work in forestry—an assistant professor, G. H. Collingwood, and an instructor, C. H. Guise. During the past year special emphasis has been placed on assistance to private woodland owners, on the establishment and supervision of demonstration areas, and on work in connection with extension schools and county farm bureau managers. In cooperation with the latter the Department is now prepared to undertake the following kinds of work:

- Assistance to private owners
    1. Advice by correspondence
    2. Examination of land
        1. Forest planting on open land
        2. Silvicultural treatment of the forest
        3. Estimating and valuing timber
        4. Forest management
    3. Establishment of demonstration areas
    4. Inspection and following-up of cooperative work
- Educational work
    1. Addresses
        1. Extension schools
        2. Granges
        3. Other organizations
    2. Field demonstrations
    3. Publications
        1. Reading-course lessons, farm forestry series
        2. Experiment station bulletins
        3. Press notices
    4. Exhibits
        - State Fair
        - Farmers' Week

The field trips of the past year may be summarized as follows: examinations of woodlots to advise on future management, 25; markings for thinnings and improvement cuttings, 12; field demonstrations, 9; forest planting, 7; estimating timber and advising on utilization, 4; lectures, 3; extension school, 1. Extension correspondence totaled 581 letters. When examinations of land were made to assist private owners, written reports containing the information necessary to cover the problems involved were later submitted to the owner.

Three new demonstration areas have been established, making a total of ten such areas in eight counties. Those started in earlier years were visited and plans were made for their further development. Forestry exhibits were shown at the State Fair, at the Saratoga County fair, and at Ithaca during Farmers' Week.

Recommendations.— The greatest need at the present time in the forestry work of the College of Agriculture is for the appointment of a man, of the rank of professor, who shall devote his entire time to investigation and research. Forest management is founded on silviculture, which in turn rests on an understanding of the principles that govern the life history of trees. That our forests may be made of the greatest use to all the people, both now and in the long run, we require a better knowledge than we now have of certain of the basic principles of silvics. Such knowledge can be gained only through research. The war has given added emphasis to the importance to the Nation of wood and other forest products. In no way can the proper care of our forests be better promoted than through an investigation of these forest problems. In previous reports it has been urged that a college forest should be provided for experiment and demonstration. This need remains, but just now a greater need is for research. It is earnestly recommended that provision be made in the Department for a man to undertake this work.

ENTOMOLOGY

J. G. Needham, Professor of Entomology and Limnology

Teaching.— The forty courses offered by the Department of Entomology have all been given during the year, with a registration of approximately 1000 undergraduate and more than 60 graduate students. There have been several changes in the teaching staff, by reason of the enlistment of young men for war service; and one valued instructor who has given the Department long and efficient service, Miss Anna C. Stryke, has withdrawn because of ill health.

Investigation.— Little time for research work is left to members of the staff after the work of teaching is provided for. Investigations are in progress, however, in many lines of pure and applied entomology and limnology, and a number of important technical papers have been published. The work of the more advanced graduate students in the Department has been especially fruitful the past year.

Extension.— Extension work in entomology is being pushed vigorously and effectively, and a large share in the crop conservation work of the New York State Food Supply Commission has been voluntarily assumed by the staff of the Department.

Recommendations.— It is recommended that in accordance witn the resolution of the Agricultural College Council of November 6, 1914, and in conformity with all our subsequent plans, the taking over by the College of Agriculture of the university work in general and vertebrate zoology be completed.

It is recommended that an apiary building adequate to the needs of the apicultural work of the Department be provided as soon as possible. We have established a good course in apiculture, which is given under serious difficulties since no laboratory facilities are provided. We have built up from nearly nothing an excellent stock of bees and the outdoor part of our work is being managed most efficiently.

It is recommended that at the earliest possible date the fish cultural experiment station, which has for so long a period been a part of our plans, be established. This is especially needed under the present conditions of scarcity of food, and for the following reasons: (1) the amount of fish in the country can be increased more rapidly than that of almost any other animal food; (2) this fish crop can be raised without displacing another crop, because the areas needed are now unproductive; (3) the fish crop may be expanded almost indefinitely, since there are everywhere waste wet lands the utilization of which would bring into human service the most neglected of all our natural resources.

DAIRY INDUSTRY

W. A. Stocking, Professor of Dairy Industry

Teaching.— The courses of instruction offered by the Department of Dairy Industry during the past year have been the same as those given during the years just preceding. There has been a large increase in the number of students taking courses in the Department. The registration of regular students for the year was as follows: fall term, 369; spring term, 622; total, 991. This includes the graduate students.

In addition to the regular students, 56 students took the twelve-weeks winter dairy course. This is a smaller number than in previous years, due probably to the very abnormal demand for men with dairy training, with the result that men already employed in dairying remained at work instead of attending the winter course as in previous years. By far the larger number who took the course this year were men without previous dairy experience. Most of these men have gone out into active dairy work in New York State. One hundred and ten students registered in the winter course in general agriculture elected courses in this Department. Two men took the creamery managers' course, 7 took the ten-days fancy cheese course, and 12 were registered in the Summer Session, making the total registration for the Department for the year 1178. This is by far the largest number of students ever registered in the Department.

The increase in the teaching work of the Department, with no increase in staff, has materially limited the amount of research work done during the year. Each member of the staff, however, has conducted some investigation along his particular line. Research work in connection with market-milk, butter, cheese, and ice-cream problems, is under way.

During the year several publications have been issued resulting from the work of members of the staff. These are listed elsewhere in this report.

Many analyses of milk and other dairy products have been made for farmers, the work being done by members of the Department and the results reported to the farmers.

Recommendations.— The Department is in great need of increased facilities for carrying on its work. New York State ranks first in the importance of its dairy industry, and especially in its market-milk work. This Department should be in a position to teach all phases of this subject, including the making of condensed and powdered milk, and the manufacture of casein, milk sugar, albumen, and a large variety of cheeses. With our present facilities none of these lines of work are possible. The building now occupied by the Department is too small, and additional space is greatly needed in order that the Department may meet the demands placed upon it by the dairy industry of the State.

Funds are needed also for the construction of an ice house which will provide an adequate supply of ice for the use of the Department.

ANIMAL HUSBANDRY

H. H. Wing, Professor of Animal Husbandry

Extension.— The extension work of the Department of Animal Husbandry has been carried on with success by the members of the extension staff. The demands are very heavy during the winter months, and the work was supplemented this year by the temporary appointment of Dr. Leroy Anderson. A noteworthy addition to the force will be made during the coming year by the provision, in cooperation with the United States Department of Agriculture, for the appointment of an assistant professor who will give his attention mainly to the development of the sheep industry in the State.

The completion of the sheep barn and the appropriation for a piggery will materially strengthen the work of the Department. The increased attention to food production in this State brought about by the activities of the New York State Food Supply Commission has materially increased the demand for our surplus livestock, notably pigs.

POULTRY HUSBANDRY

J. E. Rice, Professor of Poultry Husbandry

The inventoried value of the property under the management of the Department of Poultry Husbandry is as follows:

Buildings	$119,000.00
Stock	2,877.50
Equipment and appliances	24,029.06
Land	7,775.00
Unclassified	984.10
Total	$154,665.66

The livestock includes thirty-eight varieties of fowls, one of geese, and two of ducks. Of these, 580 fowls are kept for teaching purposes and 936 for research, a total of 1516 fowls. This is a reduction in the amount of stock, brought about by the unprecedented high cost of maintenance.

Teaching.— The registration in the Department for the year was as follows: third term (1916), 74; summer session (1916), 15; first term, 247; winter course, 364; second term, 361; total registration, 1061. Seven students took graduate work in the Department during the year.

Extension.— Ten members of the departmental staff participated in giving 472 lectures and demonstrations in localities in the State. The attendance at these meetings amounted to 19,801. The projects were conducted in cooperation with six agencies, as follows: rural schools, 24; demonstration schools, 107; poultry associations, 80; county farm bureau agents, 174; agricultural fairs, 43; Young Men's Christian Associations, granges, and the like, 44. The educational exhibits were staged at 48 places during a total of 190 days.

More and more emphasis is being placed each year on the value of farm visits. In the past year 106 localities were reached, 176 farms visited, 10,145 fowls selected, and 153,032 fowls pledged to be selected by the owners. The possibilities in the selection of fowls for market when they cease to lay is shown in the accompanying statement, table 1, giving data for eight counties chosen from among many others in which the College carried on a selection campaign:

TABLE 1. RESULTS OF A CAMPAIGN IN SELECTING NONLAYERS, CONDUCTED BY THE DEPARTMENT OF POULTRY HUSBANDRY IN THE FALL OF 1916, ON WHICH ESTIMATES FOR THE PROPOSED STATE-WIDE CAMPAIGN ARE BASED

County	Number of days	Number of meetings	Expenses aside from salaries	Number of hens pledged	Number of hens in locality	Percentage of hens pledged
Broome	5	10	....	15,000	166,000	9.0
Chautauqua	6	7	$40.59	16,000	350,000	4.6
Chenango	5	9	....	18,000	278,000	6.5
Delaware	5	8	....	24,000	276,000	8.7
Dutchess	5	6	7.95	17,000	244,000	7.0
Otsego	6	6	....	12,000	364,000	3.3
Sullivan	9	17	26.05	30,000	740,000	4.0
Oswego	5	13	22.63	11,000	243,000	4.5
Total	46	76	$97.22	143,000	2,661,000	....
Average	5.7	9.5	$24.30	17,875	332,625	5.4

What this type of extension work would mean to the poultrymen of the State if funds were available to carry out a state-wide campaign is shown in table 2:

TABLE 2. ESTIMATES FOR INCREASING OR MAINTAINING THE SUPPLY OF POULTRY AND EGGS IN NEW YORK STATE BY CULLING OUT AND SELLING THE LOW PRODUCERS

Method of culling	Reaching 100 per cent of the hens in New York		Reaching 8 per cent of the hens in New York	
	Tons of feed saved	Value at $60 a ton	Tons of feed saved	Value at $60 a ton
If { 17 per cent are culled Aug. 12 33 per cent are culled Sept. 9 50 per cent Calculated on basis of keeping until November 4	26,511	$1,590,660	2,121	$127,260
If { 17 per cent are culled Aug. 12 33 per cent are culled Sept. 9 50 per cent Calculated on basis of keeping until October 7	15,176	$910,560	1,214	$72,840
If { 17 per cent are culled Aug. 12 17 per cent are culled Sept. 9 34 per cent Calculated on basis of keeping until October 7	11,498	$689,880	920	$55,200

Investigation.— The main lines of investigation conducted by the Department are as follows: the influence of incubation on vigor of stock; inheritance of egg characters; inbreeding; inheritance of egg production;

study of external characters as an indication of production; a test of rations for fattening; factors influencing mating behavior; influence of turning eggs during incubation on the hatching quality of the chicks.

Recommendations.— The vital needs of the Department are an incubator building, a judging pavilion, a service building at the poultry farm, many new laying units, and three commercial poultry houses for egg production.

Funds are urgently needed for fencing, ditching, and planting, in order to make the farm productive and attractive.

The efficiency of the Department is seriously handicapped by a lack of the facilities for properly conducting the field and flock types of work as they relate to teaching, research, and administration. These are wholly out of balance when compared to our excellent office, lecture, laboratory, and library facilities.

Sufficient appropriations must be made for the development of the farm and the plant phases of our work, if we are to meet the growing demands of the people and the needs of the Department.

RURAL ENGINEERING

H. W. Riley, Professor of Rural Engineering

Teaching.— In the fall of 1916 the Department of Rural Engineering offered for the first time a course in tractors and farm motor vehicles. This course we consider an important addition to the curriculum of the College, because it enables us to meet more fully the needs of our students by giving them thorough instruction in the machinery by means of which modern agriculture is made possible.

Extension.— Although this Department has never received regular appropriations for extension work, the amount of such work done by members of the regular staff has been considerable. For example, by actual record one of the men for a period of several months spent an average of three and one-half days a week on extension trips in connection with the drainage of muck lands or in the solution of especially difficult problems of upland drainage.

In sanitation and farm structures the amount of individual assistance that is being given is increasing rapidly and much of the time of two members of the Department is devoted to this work. In fact, the drafting necessarily performed in connection with our extension work in drainage, sanitation, and farm structures, is occupying so much of the time of our teaching staff as to warrant special consideration.

Recommendations.— The present vigorous campaign to increase food production has served to emphasize clearly the vitally important relation which engineering bears to modern agriculture. In the fields the scarcity of labor is rendering imperative the use of a greater number of larger and more effective implements. A higher degree of power must be controlled by each man, and in consequence the tractor, with new types of plows and larger tillage tools, is displacing the simpler horse equipments. The need for conserving the time of the few available workers is emphasizing strongly the need of good buildings well arranged. In the home, the need for more mechanical equipment, better water systems, and adequate drains and sewage disposal, has become apparent as never before.

For the work in modern field machinery, tractors, trucks, and automobiles, more space is necessary. A duplication of our present temporary building would aid materially but it would not allow for adequate equipment in tractors and other motor vehicles, and the present building is not nearly large enough for equipment for thorough teaching of field machinery. The Department needs a new building.

Besides these needs there is another that has been referred to in previous reports. That is the need for means to enable the members of the staff to keep in intimate touch with present rural engineering practice, at least throughout the State. We should have funds for travel, for study, and for conducting investigations, opportunities for which are constantly arising in connection with our extension work.

We would respectfully urge that aid in the lines suggested above be given at once, in such ways and such amounts as the means immediately available make possible. In the case of those needs that are not thus immediately provided for, we hope that adequate plans for their early alleviation will be made in the near future.

AGRICULTURAL CHEMISTRY

G. W. Cavanaugh, Professor of Agricultural Chemistry

The activities of the Department of Agricultural Chemistry during the year have been confined chiefly to the work of instruction. The extension work of the Department, which formerly consisted of making chemical analyses in the interest of farm bureaus, granges, and others interested in agriculture, was discontinued during the past year owing to lack of an appropriation both for equipment and for the maintenance of a chemist to do the work. This statement is made here in order to explain why this phase of the activities of the Department is omitted from this year's report.

Adequate provision has not as yet been made to restore the equipment lost by the fire on February 13, 1916. The lack of equipment, and the necessity of having to give instruction in buildings other than the chemical laboratory, have made research work practically impossible.

During the year, instruction was given in eleven courses in chemistry, to a total of 638 students. In the second term, 275 students were registered in the course in general agricultural chemistry. Only 96 of these remained until the end of the term, 179 leaving between the middle and the end of the term either to enter the service of the Nation or to take up work on the farm or in other industries.

LANDSCAPE ART

E. G. Davis, R. W. Curtis, Professors of Landscape Art

The teaching work of the Department of Landscape Art is both general and technical and is planned to meet the needs of three classes of students: (1) general students in the College of Agriculture or others who desire a better understanding of the fundamental principles of landscape architecture; (2) students in technical courses in this or other colleges of the University whose work is allied to landscape art and who desire a better understanding of such principles of landscape design as relate to their particular field of work; (3) professional students in landscape art. For the last-named class the Department maintains a professional course to produce a few students well trained in landscape architecture.

From 1908 to 1916, the number of students (without duplication) electing these courses increased from 12 to 450. While most of these students have been from the College of Agriculture, the Colleges of Architecture, Arts, Civil Engineering, and Mechanical Engineering have also been represented in the order given. This would indicate a growing and widespread interest in landscape architecture among university students.

Courses of study now offered represent satisfactorily the various subdivisions of the field of landscape architecture, but these remain to be amplified and perfected. The staff of the Department is convinced that a long course of study is essential for the development of good professional students, and hopes that the present proportion of seniors who remain for one year or two years of graduate work may be maintained. This proportion has averaged one-third of the graduating class.

Research.— Much investigation of problems in planning, or in the use of plant materials, has not been possible in the past year, because the staff of the Department has been mainly engaged in teaching, although at the same time doing the most urgent extension work. Many of the problems presenting themselves for investigation and study require the taking of data beyond the limits of our campus and city, and thus involve considerable travel. This has been done mostly during vacation periods, and has resulted in the acquisition of plans and illustrations for the courses in history, theory, and plant materials.

Extension.— The Department has for several years past asked for some special assistance and funds to devote to extension work. There has been a persistent call for such assistance from villages, schools, and individuals. Letters and plans have been sent out and visits made. In the latter case, lectures have been given in the evening with the use of the lantern, and itinerant lectures have been given during the day. Plans and letters giving directions usually have been furnished after such visits, and later visits have been made to follow up the work of improvement. Many visits to towns and villages have been made on request, often during the recesses and vacation periods, as little other time has been available.

Recommendations.— The Department has not yet been able to complete the equipment of its building. The equipment that is already in place or is now being installed, can easily be removed at any time to a permanent building. More equipment of the same sort is urgently needed, such as additional units in both map- and photograph-filing cases, and steel herbarium cases to protect and make accessible the Department's large herbarium. Lantern-slide sets are needed, as well as charts and other illustrations, for extension lectures and demonstrations. A transit of more improved make and lighter weight is much needed for student classes in topography and road work.

It would be a great advantage if a special lecture fund could be established to enable the Department to bring representative men to the College, both during the regular terms and during Farmers' Week. The lectures given would be open to the public and would be of interest to students in many departments.

Opportunity for a larger amount of study should be given to the instructing staff, for the reason that the teaching of landscape work in all its phases is comparatively new.

DRAWING

W. C. Baker, Professor of Drawing

The registration in the Department of Drawing for the past year was as follows: third term (1916), 26; first term, 99; second term, 106; total, 231.

The Department does no investigative work as such, but constant experiments are being made in order to determine the best materials and methods for graphic expression required by scientific students.

While this Department engages directly in no extension work, it prepares most of the illustrations for circulars, bulletins, reading courses, and rural school leaflets. By making the illustrations as artistic as is consistent with accuracy, an indirect aesthetic influence is exercised on the taste of the readers of these publications.

RURAL ECONOMY

G. N. Lauman, Professor of Rural Economy

In the Department of Rural Economy, teaching has continued during the past year as in the preceding year, with no change in the number of courses offered.

A research problem now practically ready for publication is the study of cooperation in the Chautauqua-Erie grape belt. Another problem has been laid aside because of lack of competent assistance. This was an attempt, through the construction of one or more index figures of the chief costs of milk production, to give to the dairymen of the State and their organizations, and to the consumers, some aid in arriving at a just price for milk and its products.

Extension efforts have been confined chiefly to correspondence and occasional out-of-town calls. The need for this work increases constantly and has lately taken on a more varied aspect.

Our quarters are very congested, so much so that we have a large quantity of printed matter stored in inaccessible places.

RURAL EDUCATION

G. A. Works, Professor of Rural Education

Teaching.— There were enrolled in 1916–17 in the Department of Rural Education, in courses offered during the regular college year, 115 students. In the summer school the Department had 46 students. Because of lack of staff, no additional courses have been offered during the past year.

Research.— Some studies have been made of the work that is being done in vocational agriculture in the high schools of the State. The cooperation of the State Department of Education has made available material for this work.

Extension.— A year and a half has elapsed since Professor F. L. Griffin came to the Department to take charge of the Junior Home Project work in agriculture and home economics. On September 1, 1916, the number of young persons engaged in this work was 817; at the present time there are 3149 enrolled with the Department for project work. In addition there are 13,656 enrolled for the work in cities and in the larger villages, making a total of 16,805 boys and girls who are reached directly or indirectly by this phase of the Department's activity. This growth in numbers does not measure all that has been accomplished, because much time has been spent in organizing the agencies that are interested in this work and in securing their cooperation. In the year and a half Professor

Griffin has done much to bring order and a spirit of cooperation into the work, which was in a more or less chaotic condition when he took charge.

The policy of developing this work through cooperation with the school system is proving its strength with experience. Regarding this point Professor Griffin writes: " To insure that there will be no selfish exploitation of boys and girls, to eliminate unwise duplication of effort, and to keep all of the junior extension work in agriculture and home economics on a strictly economic basis, we should continue to insist that all the activities of the College of Agriculture and its agencies, as well as those of all other agencies not directly associated with the public schools, be developed only through the district superintendents and in accordance with the general plans for such work that have been agreed upon by the State Department of Education and this Department."

The figures on the distribution of the Cornell Rural School Leaflet for 1916–17 are as follows:

Persons receiving the leaflets:

Rural teachers	14,331
City and village teachers	28,781
Training class pupils	1,320
Training school and normal school pupils	1,792
Pupils in rural schools	184,710
Total	230,934

Number of copies distributed:

Total rural teachers (one number)	14,331
10,127 teachers who returned lists of pupils (three additional numbers)	30,381
City and village teachers (one number)	28,781
Training class pupils (four numbers)	5,280
Training school and normal school pupils (four numbers)	7,168
184,710 pupils (three numbers)	554,130
Total	640,071

Recommendations.— The Department is in need of additional clerical force, and increased salaries for the clerks it now has.

The new members who will be added to the teaching staff as a result of funds available through the Smith-Hughes law, will make it absolutely necessary to have larger office quarters at an early date.

Increased maintenance is needed especially for communication, so that the Cornell Rural School Leaflet may be distributed. It is essential, for the successful development of both teaching and extension, that the Department shall be in close touch with the schools, and to accomplish this a larger travel fund is necessary.

Another member should be added to the staff to assist in the development of the Junior Home Project work.

HOME ECONOMICS

Martha Van Rensselaer, Flora Rose, Professors of Home Economics

Teaching.— The amount of instruction given by the Department of Home Economics in the past year is practically the same as that of the preceding year. One new course has been added, in Experimental Cooking.

With the increasing number of students and the rapid growth of the Department, it has been necessary to concentrate on undergraduate work. The quality of teaching is being steadily improved and the courses are being developed and standardized.

The classroom work done by members of the Department during the year was approximately as follows:

	First term	Second term
Number of courses given	15	21
Number of lectures given each week	16	23
Number of laboratory periods each week	50	49

The approximate number of students registered in the Department was as follows:

Freshmen specializing in home economics	37
Sophomores specializing in home economics	52
Juniors specializing in home economics	44
Seniors specializing in home economics	55
Other regular students taking work in the Department	87
Special students	14
Total	289

Extension.— One of the activities of the Department is to train students for state extension work. Considerable effort and time are spent in giving this training to a selected group of young women. These students are sent out into the State with college instructors during the second term of their senior year, and are thus given an opportunity to demonstrate their ability to meet and interest women of the State in home economics.

During the year 11,721 names (1078 outside the State) were added to the mailing list for the Cornell Reading Course for the Farm Home, making the present number 60,822. Adding to this number the names of 6025 members of Cornell study clubs who receive the lessons regularly, the total number of readers is shown to be 66,847. In addition to these lessons regularly sent out, 29,101 lessons have been sent in answer to miscellaneous requests, of which 26,969 have gone to residents of New York State and 2132 to persons outside the State.

The war emergency has caused an increase of miscellaneous requests, from 1415 in February to 2732 in March and to 6450 in April. In May the number fell to 5343, and in June to 3657.

Since July 1, 1916, 59 study clubs have been added, making a total of 241, with an average membership of 25.

The interest in the extension schools is well sustained. The schools this spring were especially well attended. A marked increase in interest has been manifested in the work since the present national crisis, with the increased food cost, has emphasized the importance of a practical knowledge of food values on which to base an intelligent selection of food. A brief statistical record for the past year shows the following:

Number of schools held	39
Number of counties reached	32
Total number of persons enrolled	1,548
Average number enrolled	39.7
Largest enrollment	86
Smallest enrollment	10
Total attendance at all meetings and schools, including school children and guests	6,209
Average attendance	35.9

The work in junior extension has been developed along the lines followed last year. Two instructors from the College are now at work in this field. During the year 124 meetings were held and 140 addresses given. The attendance to June 30, 1917, was 9070.

The Department has been working with various other agencies in the development of a thrift campaign through which it hopes to reach practically every home in the State. Emphasis is placed first of all on conservation of the food supply by means of selection, preparation, and preservation of foods. This will be accomplished through cooperation with existing educational organizations, clubs, farm bureaus, and the various avenues of publicity.

President Loomis, of the Lehigh Valley Railroad, contributed a demonstration car which was sent out over that road. The purpose in running the car was to make an appeal to the women of the State to help the Nation in the present food crisis, through food conservation. The car was equipped with a complete canning outfit, and instructors from the College demonstrated how fruits and vegetables could be utilized to increase the food supply. Talks on various methods of food preservation were given. An exhibit of books and bulletins, and of labor-saving devices, was included.

Evening classes were held during the second semester in the Home Economics Building. Courses of ten lessons each were offered by seniors, working under the direction of an instructor for their state certificate in vocational teaching. The courses offered were meal preparation, bread making, elementary sewing, dressmaking, and millinery. The members of the class numbered about fifty and were mostly married women and office workers. The work seems to be meeting a special need.

Recommendations.— The establishment of research nutrition laboratories, where problems relating to human and animal feeding may be worked out, is urgently recommended.

It is recommended that appropriations be made which will enable the Department to meet the growing demands for extension work.

It is recommended further that the Department be given financial support which will enable it (1) to develop work already begun, (2) to cooperate with the Department of Rural Education in adding courses in methods of teaching home economics, (3) to undertake work in investigation in the laboratory and in the field, (4) to increase its teaching and clerical force, and (5) to complete the equipment of its building.

METEOROLOGY

Wilford M. Wilson, Professor of Meteorology

Teaching.— No important changes in methods of teaching have been made by the Department of Meteorology during the past year. The number of students registered in the Department was 252.

The work of teaching has been hampered to some extent by lack of suitable laboratory accommodations. A permanent room at least twenty-five by thirty feet in size is needed, so that the equipment can be arranged properly for instruction and the collection of material bearing on the subject may proceed.

Investigation.— The problem of the influence of the smaller lakes of the State on the temperature of adjacent lands, particularly during the season of spring and fall frosts, has engaged the attention of the Department during the year. The work is not completed and no conclusions have been reached.

EXTENSION TEACHING

D. J. Crosby, Professor of Extension Teaching, and Acting Head of Department

Teaching.— Four courses were given by the Department of Extension Teaching in the past year. Three of these courses were arranged for the regular students and one was for the winter course. The enrollment was 324, as compared with 328 for the preceding year. The various competitions in public speaking were interesting and well contested.

Extension.— The extension activities arranged by the Department during the past year may be classified as follows: farm demonstration schools, field meetings, Farmers' Week, reading-course clubs, farmers' and teachers' institutes, dairymen's and poultrymen's associations, and meetings at schools, churches, picnics, and fairs. Exhibits arranged through the Department were sent to a number of fairs. Demonstration cars were sent over the New York Central and the New York, Ontario & Western lines. Attendance at the various meetings and demonstrations as compared with that of last year was as follows:

	1915–16	1916–17
Farmers' Week (registration)	3,548	3,611
Farm demonstration schools	1,977	1,799
Farm demonstration cars	2,122	6,763
Meetings and demonstrations	39,712	40,000
Total	47,359	52,173

The number of letters sent out by the Department was 25,197, and the number received was 36,878.

Farmers' Week.— The tenth annual Farmers' Week was held at the College February 12 to 17. During the week 253 lectures, 35 demonstrations, 8 contests, 69 conferences and round-table discussions, 33 laboratory courses, and 18 entertainments and banquets, were held.

The program did not differ materially from that of the preceding year. It seemed, however, that the crowds were more easily accommodated and that the week's program ran a little more smoothly. Great credit is due to the faithfulness of the students who assisted in the work of accommodating the crowds and directing the people. Fifty-nine counties in New York State were represented, and there were representatives from twenty-one States other than New York and from four foreign countries.

A new and popular feature was the Conservation of Wild Life Conference. Several of the departments cooperated to arrange an attractive exhibit, which occupied the entire biological laboratory. Unusual interest was shown in this exhibit.

Farm demonstration schools.— As anticipated at the beginning of the year, no increase was made in the number of demonstration schools in agriculture held during the season 1916–17, because of shortage of funds. A summarized statement follows:

Number of schools held	57	
Counties reached	35	
Total enrollment	1,799	
Average age of students	40	
Average enrollment	31.6	
Highest enrollment	65	(at Dansville)
Lowest enrollment	14	(at Arthursburg)
Highest percentage of attendance	90	(at Triangle)
Average attendance per session	19.28	
Average number of instructors	2.9	
Length of school season (weeks)	16	
Average number of schools per week	3.56	

Instruction was given as follows:

	Number of schools
Animal husbandry	32
Soil technology	25
Poultry	23
Farm crops	20
Plant pathology	14
Farm management	12
Vegetable gardening	10
Fruit growing	9
Farm practice	8
Farm mechanics	5
Entomology	5
Agricultural chemistry	3
Forestry	1

The plan for holding in each county joint conferences with a representative of the Farmers' Institute Division of the State Department of Agriculture for the purpose of placing schools and institutes, gave good results. Especially in the unorganized counties these conferences insure a more equitable distribution of the work and are the means of bringing the schools to the attention of farmers.

The average enrollment per school dropped from 33.4 in 1915–16 to 31.6 in 1916–17. This may be attributed to a number of conditions. First, a large proportion of the schools this season were held in remote and unorganized communities, preference being given, in the selective process of placing schools, to those counties and districts where a relatively small amount of extension effort had been expended previously. Secondly, advertising was inadequate, because of a shortage of funds and a policy of economy in preliminary organization which turned out to be short-sighted. Thirdly, impassable roads and extreme cold interfered with attendance at a number of the schools. Finally, the general lack of farm labor kept farm operators closely confined at home.

Demonstration cars.— Between March 8 and April 14, two sheep demonstration cars were run over the lines of the New York Central and the New York, Ontario & Western railway lines. The territory covered was in general the more hilly section of the State. The exhibit, which was comprehensive, dealt with various grades of sheep and their special uses, together with instructions for breeding, feeding, and care. Members of the Department of Animal Husbandry prepared the exhibit and accompanied the cars. Stops were made at 79 places and 6763 persons visited the cars. This made an average attendance of more than 85 at each stop.

Fair exhibits.— During the year 33 departmental exhibits were sent to 14 fairs.

Cornell Reading Course for the Farm.— The Cornell Reading Course for the Farm has continued the rapid growth of previous years by the addition of 5321 new readers during the past year. Fifty-two lessons are now available, as compared to forty-two a year ago. Readers who have completed the study of available lessons may continue their work by means of advanced reading courses in fruit growing, vegetable gardening, poultry, and farm crops.

The faculty this year has formally authorized advanced reading courses, similar to correspondence courses, to be given without college credit. It has been recommended that these courses should include practical exercises and lead up to a final examination. It is now proposed to inaugurate a system of follow-up letters, to secure the completion of the work of advanced readers within a definite period of time.

Fifty thousand copies of reading-course lessons have been distributed at farmers' institutes in cooperation with the State Department of Agriculture. The lessons were carefully selected according to the subjects on the program. Over 75,000 lessons have been mailed in answer to requests received by the College. On the sheep demonstration cars, over 600 persons registered in the Reading Course for the Farm and about 7000 lessons were distributed.

Twelve new Cornell study clubs have been organized, and twelve old clubs have continued active work in promoting group study and community welfare. Fourteen lectures have been given at club meetings in the interest of study club work. Two picnics have been held at the College by study clubs. The average attendance at these meetings has been over 70.

Meetings and demonstrations.— In answer to requests from farm bureau managers, 474 meetings and demonstrations have been held, with an estimated attendance of 10,000. In answer to requests from individuals and organizations throughout the State, 526 meetings and demonstrations have been held, with an estimated attendance of 30,000.

Summary and recommendations.— In general the amount and character of the regular work arranged by the Department in 1916–17 were about normal up to the time when the New York State Food Supply Commission was created, in the middle of April. From that time to the end of the fiscal year, much more than the normal amount of extension work was done, but most of it was carried on under the auspices of the Commission by men and women lent to the Commission by the College of Agriculture. Thus, for example, twelve college extension men were put in charge of county organizations and helped in taking a census of agricultural resources of the State, which with the cooperation of farm bureau managers in the other forty-one counties, the state schools of agriculture, the State Department of Education, and the school superintendents, teachers, and pupils, with bankers, business firms, and chambers of commerce to assist in the compilation, was completed, and a preliminary announcement of the results of the census sent out, in just ten days from the date when the copy for the census blank was delivered to the printer. In many other ways the college extension teachers, and also many of the resident teachers, have assisted in the work of the Food Commission, each doing much the same kind of work that he had been doing in the past but under conditions that gave him a better hearing and a more immediate response.

No better evidence could be given of the value of farm bureau organizations, or of the sound way in which they are organized in New York State, than is afforded by the part they have taken in war emergency measures relating to agriculture during the past three months. As has been said in previous reports, there should be closer coordination of the college extension work with that of the farm bureaus and the state schools of agriculture, but the fundamental relationship between the College and the farm bureau organizations is sound and should remain as it is.

The Farmers' Week conducted annually at the College has now grown to such proportions that there is unavoidable confusion to visitors who wish to arrange their time so as to get a systematic group of lectures or demonstrations, and it would be well if careful consideration were given to the arrangement of the program for the next Farmers' Week in such manner as to make it easy for visitors to specialize more in the work taken.

The farm demonstration schools continue to be effective agencies for the instruction of persons near their homes. It is unfortunate that there is not a larger attendance at these schools, and it is evident from organization work done by members of the extension staff during the past winter that the attendance can be increased by better publicity, more careful selection of local committees, and advance work in the communities by a representative of the College just prior to the holding of the schools.

The Reading Course for the Farm has increased its membership about 20 per cent during the past year. There are now over 22,000 readers. This course evidently fills a great need, but it falls far short of satisfying the demands made on it owing to the lack of lessons in many of the more important branches of agriculture.

The demand and the need for lectures and demonstrations continue, and there are indications that plans for agricultural fairs will go on as heretofore. This is as it should be. All the college extension work should go on. If one thing more than another has been demonstrated by the experience of the past few months, it is that the present is not a time for exploitation and experiment, but is a time to secure a better hearing for, and a more prompt application of, the fundamental principles that the College has been teaching for years. The war emergency, it is true, may call for some change of emphasis in the work, but not for any great change in subject matter or in method of presentation.

THE FARM BUREAU

M. C. Burritt, State Director of Farm Bureaus

The report of the Farm Bureau Office here presented covers a period of seven months, from December 1, 1916, to June 30, 1917. This period has witnessed the greatest test that the farm bureaus of the State have yet experienced. It has also witnessed their most rapid growth.

The general plan of organization and conduct of work followed from the beginning has been adhered to. Less attention than usual, however, has been given by the central office to perfecting the details and to supervising the work in individual counties, because of the amount of emergency work that the office has had to handle and the increase in its regular work. Despite this lack of intimate contact, both the farm bureau managers and the executive committees of the cooperating associations have apparently kept in close touch with the central office and seem to have lost in no way their sense of responsibility to it and partnership with it.

Five counties have been organized in the seven months covered by this report, as follows: Madison County, January 15; Orleans County, March 1; Wayne County, March 1; Rensselaer County, April 15; Suffolk County, May 1. It is interesting to note that the average initial membership in these five counties was 588, as compared with 281 for the five counties organized during the period from January 1 to December 1, 1916. This rather striking increase in initial membership we believe was due principally to the better appreciation by the people in the counties concerned of the need of a large and representative membership backing the farm bureau, and to the fact that the central office took pains to give the farmers considerable assistance before the actual organization of the association.

With these five counties organized there was a total of forty-two farm bureaus in the State on June 30, an increase of twenty-four since March 1, 1914. The increase in average membership during this period is particularly worthy of note, the average membership on March 1, 1914, being 145 for eighteen counties, and on June 30, 1917, 585 for forty-one counties.*

TABLE 1. GROWTH OF THE BUREAUS FROM MARCH, 1914, TO JUNE 30, 1917

	March 1, 1914	January 1, 1915	January 1, 1916	December 1, 1916	June 30, 1917
Number of counties organized	18	23	31	36	42
Total membership	2,620	5,557	9,995	13,923	23,971
Average membership	145	(22)252	(30)333	(35)398	(41)585

TABLE 2. MEMBERSHIP IN THE COUNTY ASSOCIATIONS BY PERCENTAGES OF TOTAL NUMBER OF FARMS

	January 1, 1915	January 1, 1916	December 1, 1916	June 30, 1917
Number of associations	22	30	35	41
Total membership	5,557	9,995	13,923	23,971
Average membership	252	333	398	585
Number of counties having membership under 5 per cent	10	8	5	2
Number of counties having membership of from 5 to 9 per cent	8	14	15	9
Number of counties having membership of from 10 to 14 per cent	4	3	8	9
Number of counties having membership of 15 per cent or over	0	5	7	21

---

* In Chautauqua County a farm bureau is organized, but it has no association membership. Therefore the figure for average membership on June 30, 1917, is for one less county than the number given as being organized.

TABLE 3. MEMBERSHIP BY COUNTIES, JANUARY 1 TO JUNE 30, 1917

County	Total number of farmers in county	Membership January 1, 1917		Membership June 30, 1917	
		Number	Percentage of total farms	Number	Percentage of total farms
Albany	3,146	359	11	290	9
Allegany	4,937	450	9	332	7
Broome	4,017	179	4	487	12
Cattaraugus	6,017	424	7	1,063	18
Cayuga	4,785	340	7	564	12
Chautauqua	7,500	....	....	....	....
Chemung	2,193	172	8	307	14
Chenango	4,285	580	14	846	20
Clinton	3,608	270	7	143	4
Cortland	2,610	475	18	417	16
Delaware	5,044	287	6	992	20
Dutchess	3,600	310	9	536	15
Erie	8,178	374	5	525	6
Essex	2,274	....	....	207	9
Franklin	3,675	309	8	676	18
Herkimer	3,092	311	10	706	23
Jefferson	5,778	225	4	840	14
Madison	4,042	....	....	1,046	26
Monroe	5,971	490	8	729	12
Montgomery	2,189	259	12	388	18
Nassau	1,017	344	34	387	38
Niagara	4,346	410	9	887	20
Oneida	6,929	260	4	583	8
Onondaga	5,770	193	3	545	9
Orange	3,935	810	13	1,110	28
Orleans	2,780	....	....	760	27
Oswego	6,319	147	2	410	6
Otsego	5,346	870	16	1,480	28
Rensselaer	3,654	....	....	473	13
Rockland	1,133	....	....	400	35
St. Lawrence	8,224	204	2	236	3
Saratoga	3,611	302	8	213	5
Schoharie	3,288	....	....	482	15
Suffolk	2,491	....	....	327	13
Sullivan	3,851	331	9	516	13
Tioga	2,844	....	....	925	32
Tompkins	2,988	62	2	614	20½
Ulster	5,022	417	8	450	9
Warren	1,865	....	....	374	20
Wayne	5,237	....	....	939	18
Westchester	1,880	114	6	226	12
Wyoming	3,529	663	19	540	15

When this increase in average membership is further analyzed, it is found that the number of counties having a membership of less than 5 per cent of the farm operators has steadily decreased, from ten on January 1, 1915, to two on June 30, 1917; whereas the number of counties having a membership of 15 per cent or over has increased, from none on January 1, 1915, to twenty-one on June 30, 1917. Of a total of forty-one counties having membership organizations (Chautauqua County has none), there are but eleven that are under the required 10 per cent. This analysis is particularly valuable because it brings out the fact that coincident with a general increase in membership, probably the best measure of farmer support, there has been a general strengthening of counties in which this feature of the support has been particularly weak.

In regard to membership for all the counties, the figures show an increase in average membership, for the past six months, from 398 to 585, and in percentage of farms included from 9.5 to 14.5.

War emergency activity.—The normal work of the farm bureaus and of the central office was interfered with by the entrance of the United States into the war. Just how the added activity that resulted will affect the work in the counties for the year cannot be told until the final tabulations are made on December 1. It is safe to say, however, that it will have caused an increase in the number of letters written, in office calls, and in meetings held, of from 33 to 50 per cent, whereas there will be shown a corresponding decrease in field tests and in demonstrations.

The appointment of the state leader as a member of the State Food Supply Commission, and the assignment to him of the responsibility for perfecting the county organization through which the Commission would operate, resulted in the taking over of the entire organization and facilities for work in the bureau counties, and in the diverting of the assistants in the central office to the establishing of machinery for work in the non-bureau counties of the State. This work consisted of the establishment of a temporary representative of the Commission, and the organization of an advisory council of farmers with whom he might consult.

The first definite piece of work undertaken by the Commission was the taking of an agricultural census. Responsibility for this was assigned to the state leader, and the work was handled by appointing the farm bureau managers and the county representatives of the Food Supply Commission as county enumerators. Following the census and the development of the fact that there was a considerable shortage of seed potatoes and seed buckwheat in the State, the Food Supply Commission, through the farm bureau managers and others, distributed a large quantity of seed potatoes and seed buckwheat and gave assistance on transportation questions. It also organized each county office to act as an employment bureau, and, through these county offices, placed a considerable number of farm helpers.

Reports of all these activities have been made to the New York State Food Supply Commission and need not be repeated here. It is sufficient to say that for the most part the farm bureau organizations took charge of this extra work of the Commission effectively, and in a large number of cases continued their regular project work as well. That they were able to do this was owing largely to the fact that each county agent was supplied with an assistant to help him with his extra duties. These men were paid by the Food Supply Commission. Each county office was allowed extra clerical and travel expense as well, by the Commission. Despite these aids, material as they were, the fact remains that the work of the Food Supply Commission added a considerable load to the work of the bureaus.

The further fact should not be lost sight of, that whatever activity took place in a county through the bureau manager or the farm bureau association, took place with the consent, and in most cases with the active cooperation, of the farmers themselves. The need for the advice of real farmers, such as those who constitute the membership of the advisory and executive committees of the farm bureau associations, was early recognized by the Food Supply Commission itself, and resulted in a request, which was complied with in most counties, that the executive committees of the farm bureau associations be appointed as the agricultural and food conservation committees of the home defense councils in those counties.

A recommendation that might be made as a result of the work of the Commission is that the agricultural census, particularly those phases of it which resulted in listing the amount of seed and livestock for sale and wanted in each county, should be made an annual project. Resolutions in support of this recommendation were adopted at advisory council meetings in practically every county in the State.

Farm home demonstration work.—The farm home demonstration work in the counties has proceeded practically as outlined in the report for 1916. One new county, Nassau, has taken up the work.

During the period reported on, the wisdom of coordinating departments of agriculture and home economics within a farm bureau association where both kinds of work are conducted has been demonstrated. One very gratifying feature has been the interest and the genuine ability shown by the women's executive committees.

State Federation of Farm Bureau Associations.—At the time of the annual Farmers' Week conference of farm bureau presidents in 1917, it was deemed wise by the presidents, after careful consideration, to organize a central body, to be known as the State Federation of Farm Bureau Associations, to which the individual county associations might belong as members and which might represent them in matters of mutual concern.

Central office supervision.—For the period reported on, the work of the central office was managed by a state leader and an assistant state leader up to May 15. About that time the appointment of the state leader to the New York State Food Supply Commission necessarily interfered with his work for the farm bureau. On May 15 Jay Coryell was appointed assistant state leader. Mr. Coryell is a graduate of the New York State College of Agriculture, class of 1912, and has had approximately four years experience in farm bureau work — two years as county agent and two years as assistant state leader in Vermont. This experience and his own inclinations have enabled him to become expert in the organization and conduct of field tests and demonstrations.

The central office has been unable to give the necessary amount of coaching to the newly appointed men in the various farm bureaus. In order to correct this condition, and to insure at all times adequate supervision and assistance to the forty-two and more counties with which the office will have to deal, we believe we should have a force of at least three assistant state leaders. They should have their office at the College of Agriculture, as heretofore, and should so far as possible be made fully responsible for the bureau work in the territory assigned them.

The time spent in the office by the state leader and the assistant state leader was 203½ days, or 56.5 per cent of their entire time. The time spent in the field was 156½ days, or 43.5 per cent of the entire time.

The field supervisory work of the central office may be divided into three parts — conferences with agents, meetings with executive committees of the county associations, and attendance at general meetings.

A total of 95 individual conferences with agents were held. Most of these conferences were held in the counties, but some of them were at the central office. A group conference of all the agents was held in April, at which from four to ten agents were met in six different groups at convenient points in the State.

A total of 72 meetings of the executive committees in the various counties, or an average of a little less than two per county, were attended by a representative of the central office. The purpose of these meetings was mainly that of carrying out the partnership organization and administration of the work in the State, which includes the better organization of the work, the preparing of financial budgets, the determining of policies affecting the work, the employment of agents, and the general conduct and administration of the bureau's affairs. All but three of the executive committees in the various counties were met at least once.

The general meetings attended in the counties were those of the advisory committees and other meetings. There were 148 of these meetings, attended by 5989 persons.

A number of new counties were visited by representatives of the central office. Two meetings, attended by 132 persons, were addressed, and eight miscellaneous visits, regarding farm bureau organization and the work of the State Food Supply Commission, were also made to these counties.

In the performance of this field work, from one to fifteen days were spent in all but two of the counties in the State having a farm bureau, or an average of three per county.

In conducting this work, the state leader traveled 12,665 miles by rail, and the assistant state leader traveled 12,882 miles by rail and 949 miles by automobile, or a total of 13,831 miles. Total travel in the performance of supervisory work is thus 25,547 miles by rail and 949 miles by automobile, or a total of 26,496 miles.

TABLE 4. GENERAL SUMMARY OF THE SUPERVISORY WORK OF THE CENTRAL OFFICE

County	Number of executive committees met	Number of individual conferences	Total number of days	Number of meetings	Number of persons addressed
Albany	3	9	15	16	100
Allegany	2	2	2	2	200
Broome	1	2	3	2	....
Cattaraugus	2	3	4	4	275
Cayuga	3	4	4	6	250
Chautauqua	1	2	2	2	18
Chemung	....	....	1	....	80
Chenango	2	3	3½	3	175
Clinton	1	....	1	1	....
Cortland	1	2	1	2	35
Delaware	1	2	1	2	219
Dutchess	1	1	1	1	....
Erie	1	1	1	1	....
Essex	2	4	4	5	350
Franklin	1	1	2	2	....
Herkimer	3	4	5	5	450
Jefferson	3	4	4	3	....
Madison	4	7	6	9	240
Monroe	....	3	6	5	....
Montgomery	....	1	½	3	....
Nassau	2	2	1	2	....
Niagara	1	3	1	3	....
Oneida	2	5	6	7	475
Onondaga	1	2	2½	6	....
Orange	....	1	....	1	....
Orleans	4	3	6	7	221
Oswego	....	....	1	....	180
Otsego	2	3	4	4	1,114
Rensselaer	2	1	3½	5	232
St. Lawrence	2	3	4	4	....
Saratoga	3	3	7	8	....
Schoharie	2	1	3	3	225
Suffolk	2	1	4	3	169
Sullivan	3	2	2	3	27
Tioga	3	1	4	4	450
Tompkins	3	2	1	2	125
Ulster	3	2	2	2	....
Warren	2	1	2	2	....
Wayne	2	2	3	4	379
Westchester	1	1	1	2	....
Wyoming	....	1	....	2	....

Activities of county agents.—Figures showing the estimates of the county agents as to how their time was spent, both in the field and in the office, indicate that approximately one-half (49.3 per cent) of the time was spent in the office, while the other half (50.7 per cent) was spent in the field. The forty-one county agents, three of whom have not worked for the full period reported on, organized or assisted in the organization of 3026 meetings attended by 142,520 persons. This means that there were 74 meetings per county, and that on the average 3476 persons were spoken to on agricultural subjects in each county.

Thirty-five agents report a total of 348 field tests attended by 6438 farmers, or an average of 10 per county attended by 184 farmers.

A total of 833 "A" cooperators, or an average of 26 each, are reported by thirty-two managers as having been visited.

The number of farms visited in the forty-one counties during the period was 5815, or an average of 142 in each county. This number ranged from 28 in Delaware and Erie Counties to 313 in Broome County. The number of farmers who called on the agents in their offices was 30,755, an average of 750 per county.

TABLE 5. ACTIVITIES OF COUNTY AGENTS, DECEMBER, 1916, TO JUNE 30, 1917

County	Number of days		Number of "A" cooperators visited	Field tests		Other meetings		Number of farms visited	Number of office calls	Number of letters written	Number of circular letters	Circulation
	In the office	In the field		Number	Attendance	Number	Attendance					
Albany	112.5	71.0	......	8	285	71	2,410	85	954	1,111	154	3,639
Allegany	68.5	65.5	2	1	15	52	2,859	96	964	1,387	35	3,605
Broome	86.0	91.0	86	19	131	115	5,377	313	1,031	1,607	15	6,847
Cattaraugus	90.5	81.5	4	22	60	159	4,557	40	778	2,723	51	18,870
Cayuga	82.0	87.0	3	29	34	70	3,505	45	1,218	1,404	13	1,996
Chautauqua	78.0	92.0	26	23	393	88	3,067	105	443	848	45	3,442
Chemung	81.0	98.0	3	15	163	60	2,280	296	612	434	23	1,163
Chenango	95.0	77.0	6	1	18	84	3,675	127	992	1,091	27	3,779
Clinton	60.5	116.5	30	4	40	58	1,957	304	444	604	18	477
Cortland	96.0	77.0	......	5	48	72	3,696	155	1,232	869	164	1,921
Delaware	105.5	61.5	1	2	19	68	5,061	28	175	2,487	125	13,350
Dutchess	97.5	77.5	32	2	13	79	4,766	67	845	1,573	9	1,339
Erie	115.0	57.5	......	......	......	32	5,607	28	673	1,508	33	1,854
Essex	78.5	95.0	39	8	61	79	2,524	117	135	822	24	4,826
Franklin	76.0	104.0	......	......	......	51	4,735	38	1,032	510	29	1,418
Herkimer	88.0	91.0	11	......	......	134	5,619	275	1,153	1,278	97	19,774
Jefferson	76.0	98.0	45	1	14	96	6,098	153	403	909	12	1,519
Madison	51.0	71.0	8	34	1,002	40	1,461	105	466	1,065	17	4,167
Monroe	69.5	106.5	33	49	1,684	94	7,207	137	638	1,168	70	4,885
Montgomery	79.0	95.0	28	......	......	83	3,689	188	426	840	13	1,753
Nassau	43.5	124.5	14	5	32	96	4,807	210	1,386	2,262	21	2,537
Niagara	94.0	84.0	......	5	66	124	4,718	71	641	1,164	64	16,482
Oneida	78.5	96.5	17	2	23	79	2,322	244	1,306	1,033	21	4,094
Onondaga	104.0	67.0	......	14	121	78	3,365	103	1,951	1,296	21	2,484
Orange	112.0	54.0	2	15	183	85	5,527	116	1,475	1,935	35	11,396
Orleans	33.5	57.5	35	4	109	28	908	246	418	625	11	4,302
Oswego	89.0	85.0	17	12	210	84	3,355	53	306	1,604	87	5,403
Otsego	87.5	89.5	22	3	188	85	4,768	132	677	1,515	56	6,833
Rensselaer	18.5	24.5	20	3	39	17	776	114	309	212	6	3,188
St. Lawrence	67.5	60.5	44	2	76	55	2,433	91	586	797	43	6,132
Saratoga	55.0	50.0	6	1	8	48	2,158	36	107	507	21	1,637
Schoharie	104.0	73.5	59	3	18	51	1,382	191	631	476	37	4,302
Suffolk	36.0	17.0	......	......	......	10	806	118	267	532	17	2,354
Sullivan	71.5	102.5	60	8	65	78	3,492	167	406	1,000	25	2,191
Tioga	67.0	111.0	......	11	136	93	2,991	259	1,072	1,086	72	6,658
Tompkins	87.5	86.5	......	12	292	78	3,697	245	896	491	25	4,030
Ulster	107.5	49.5	11	3	355	59	1,693	99	969	970	20	2,910
Wayne	34.0	67.0	90	16	441	68	3,744	150	399	733	31	2,948
Warren	77.5	96.0	5	3	29	58	2,033	171	140	1,213	26	2,703
Westchester	80.5	97.5	52	3	67	67	1,208	197	453	642	34	3,973
Wyoming	76.5	99.5	22	......	......	100	6,187	100	746	1,016	52	4,825
Total	3,211.0	3,307.0	833	348	6,438	3,026	142,520	5,815	30,755	45,347	1,699	202,006

OFFICE OF INFORMATION

Bristow Adams, Professor of Extension, Information Service

In November, 1916, an increase in the circulation of agricultural information through the press of the State was made possible by the extension of the franking privilege to cover most of the news items. During the year 339 news items were mailed by the College, with an aggregate circulation, as shown by actual clippings received, of 34,331,422. Closer relations with editors have been established, and the press has extended valuable cooperation in carrying items that were intended to make for better farming and better farm homes.

Report on editorial work.—The publications issued during the year ended June 30, 1917, are as follows:

	Number of pages in printed bulletin	Number of copies printed
BULLETINS:		
283 (Third reprint) The control of insect pests and plant diseases (Departments of Entomology and Plant Pathology)	40	15,000
321 (Revised reprint) Computing rations for farm animals (Department of Animal Husbandry)	68	5,000
378 The lesser migratory locust (Department of Entomology)	48	4,000
379 Black rot, leaf spot, and canker of pomaceous fruits (Department of Plant Pathology)	100	4,000
380 The hard rot disease of gladiolus (Department of Plant Pathology)	36	3,000
381 Leaf smut of timothy (Department of Plant Pathology)	48	4,000
382 Sun-scald of fruit trees: a type of winter injury (Department of Plant Pathology)	52	4,000
383 The pine bark beetle (Department of Entomology)	16	4,000
384 Some effects of oxygen and carbon dioxide on nitrification and ammonification in soils (Department of Soil Technology)	32	5,000
385 Dusting and spraying nursery stock (Department of Plant Pathology)	32	5,000
386 Physiological studies of Bacillus radicicola of soybean (Soja max Piper) and of factors influencing nodule production (Department of Botany)	52	5,000
387 Studies on clubroot of cruciferous plants (Department of Plant Pathology)	36	3,000
388 The poplar and willow borer (Department of Entomology)	32	4,000
389 Clarification of milk (Department of Dairy Industry)	20	4,000
390 Three cedar rust fungi: their life histories and the diseases they produce (Department of Plant Pathology)	48	3,000
391 A revision of the genus Lygus as it occurs in America north of Mexico, with biological data on the species from New York (Department of Entomology)	96	5,000
	756	77,000

	Number of pages in printed bulletin	Number of copies printed
MEMOIRS:		
9 Influence of certain carbohydrates on green plants (Department of Botany)	76	4,000
10 A classification of the varieties of cultivated oats (Department of Farm Crops)	96	3,000
11 Biology of the Membracidae of the Cayuga Lake Basin (Department of Entomology)	276	4,000
	448	11,000
READING-COURSE LESSONS FOR THE FARM:		
114 Silos, and the production and feeding of silage (Department of Animal Husbandry)	24	40,000
Supplement	4	(40,000)
115 Keeping sheep for profit (Department of Animal Husbandry)	24	35,000
Supplement	4	(35,000)
116 The dairy herd (Department of Animal Husbandry)	24	20,000
Supplement	4	(20,000)
117 Computing rations for farm animals (Department of Animal Husbandry)	68	15,000
Supplement	4	(15,000)
118 The Babcock test, and testing problems (Department of Dairy Industry)	28	35,000
Supplement	4	(35,000)
119 The curing of meat and meat products on the farm (Department of Animal Husbandry)	20	30,000
Supplement	4	(30,000)
120 Hotbeds and cold frames (Department of Vegetable Gardening)	24	40,000
Supplement	4	(40,000)
121 The culture of garden roses (Department of Floriculture)	28	34,000
Supplement	4	(34,000)
122 Planting the home vegetable garden (Department of Vegetable Gardening)	24	15,000
123 Top-working and bridge-grafting fruit trees (Department of Pomology)	28	25,000
124 Field bean production (Department of Farm Crops)	32	50,000
125 Orchard soil management (Department of Pomology)	20	35,000
Total	376	374,000
READING-COURSE LESSONS FOR THE FARM HOME:		
108 Planning the home kitchen (Department of Home Economics)	20	50,000
Supplement	4	(50,000)
109 Waste of meat in the home.— Part II (Department of Home Economics)	40	60,000
110 Household accounts (Department of Home Economics)	32	50,000
Supplement	2	(50,000)
111 Milk: a cheap food (Department of Home Economics)	16	100,000
112 Short cuts for the home dietitian (Department of Home Economics)	44	75,000
113 Food preservation: a national challenge (Department of Home Economics)	52	150,000
Total	210	485,000

	Number of pages in printed bulletin	Number of copies printed
EXTENSION BULLETINS:		
3 Soil survey of Clinton County, New York (Department of Soil Technology)	40	3,000
4 The control of grasshoppers in New York State (Department of Entomology)	12	8,000
5 Outline of the relation of the use of lime to the improvement of the soil (Department of Soil Technology)	16	6,000
6 Soil survey of Chautauqua County, New York (Department of Soil Technology)	60	3,000
7 Lawns and lawn making (Department of Farm Crops)	4	5,000
8 Outline of the function and use of commercial fertilizers (Department of Soil Technology)	8	12,000
9 Gladiolus studies — I. Botany, history, and evolution of the gladiolus (Department of Floriculture)	100	6,000
10 Gladiolus studies — II. Culture and hybridization of the gladiolus (Department of Floriculture)	84	12,000
11 Gladiolus studies — III. Varieties of the garden gladiolus (Department of Floriculture)	180	6,000
12 Some suggestions in connection with the milk problem (Department of Dairy Industry)	6	10,000
13 Barley for New York (Department of Plant Breeding)	12	7,500
14 The home vegetable garden (Department of Vegetable Gardening)	24	50,000
15 A program of soil improvement for New York State (Department of Soil Technology)	40	5,000
16 How to increase the honey supply (Department of Entomology)	8	15,000
17 A cheese moisture test (Department of Dairy Industry)	4	5,000
18 Skimmilk cheddar cheese (Department of Dairy Industry)	8	5,000
19 Control of vegetable diseases (Department of Plant Pathology)	24	30,000
Total	630	188,500
RURAL SCHOOL LEAFLETS:		
September, 1916 (Department of Rural Education)	426	55,000
November, 1916 (Department of Rural Education)	44	225,000
Supplement	24	12,000
January, 1917 (Department of Rural Education)	36	225,000
March, 1917 (Department of Rural Education)	32	225,000
Total	562	742,000
FARM BUREAU CIRCULARS:		
9 Farm bureau organization and projects	90	6,000
MISCELLANEOUS:		
Notes for the guidance of authors	8	1,000
ANNUAL REPORT FOR 1916 (in two volumes)	1,535	2,000
ANNOUNCEMENTS:		
Announcement of summer term	28	3,500
Announcement of courses	84	13,000
Announcement of winter courses	40	9,000
Total	152	25,500

	Number of pages in printed bulletin	Number of copies printed
MAILING CARDS:		
1 Spring grain for 1917	2	150,000
2 Consider the pig	2	150,000
3 Milk production	2	150,000
4 Seed treatment of potatoes	2	150,000
5 Late blight and rot of potatoes	2	150,000
6 Use of rhubarb	2	75,000
7 Canning meat	2	75,000
8 Dandelions as food	2	75,000
9 Dandelion recipes	2	75,000
10 Multiple hitches	2	50,000
11 Preservation of eggs in water glass	2	75,000
12 Some ways of getting along without the hired man	2	50,000
13 The productive soil	2	40,000
14 Apple spray schedule	2	5,000
15 A homemade fireless cooker	2	30,000
16 Salting vegetables	2	30,000
17 Equipment for canning	2	30,000
18 Directions for canning fruit by the cold-pack method	2	30,000
19 Emergency crops and rotations	2	25,000
20 Buckwheat and rye	2	25,000
21 Winter rye and winter wheat on sod land	2	25,000
22 Rye and clover — a two-years rotation	2	25,000
23 Directions for canning vegetables by the cold-pack method	2	25,000
24 Conserve the manure	2	25,000
25 Drying fruits and vegetables in the home	2	100,000
26 How to dry fruits and vegetables	2	25,000
27 A simple fruit and vegetable drier	2	25,000
28 Jelly	2	150,000
Total	56	1,840,000

SUMMARY

	Total number	Total pages	Copies printed
Experiment station bulletins	16	756	77,000
Memoirs	3	448	11,000
Reading-course lessons for the farm	12	376	374,000
Reading-course lessons for the farm home	6	210	485,000
Extension bulletins	17	630	188,500
Rural school leaflets	4	562	742,000
Farm bureau circulars	1	90	6,000
Miscellaneous	1	8	1,000
Annual report	1	1,535	2,000
Announcements	3	152	25,500
Mailing cards	28	56	1,840,000
	92	4,823	3,752,000

FINANCIAL REPORT OF THE NEW YORK STATE COLLEGE OF AGRICULTURE JULY 1, 1916, TO JUNE 30, 1917

Income from students:		
Tuition, Regular	$ 38,915.84	
Winter courses	1,237.50	
Summer school	1,995.10	$ 42,148.44
Laboratory fees:		
Entomology	$4,942.81	
Dairy Industry	2,734.35	
Poultry Husbandry	557.35	
Farm Crops	529.00	
Botany	4,128.62	
Floriculture	481.00	
Forestry	215.25	
Landscape Art	286.25	
Plant Breeding	186.50	
Plant Pathology	1,417.37	
Pomology	1,029.50	
Vegetable Gardening	237.00	
Farm Management	488.00	
Home Economics	4,641.50	
Rural Education	18.00	
Meteorology	190.00	
Rural Engineering	893.00	
Soil Technology	484.85	23,460.35
Income from Grant by State:		
For maintenance, Chap. 725, Laws 1915	$ 53,592.55	
" " " 646, Laws 1916	498,474.67	
" " (Deficiency), Chap. 646, Laws 1916	58,045.26	
" extension	189.81	610,302.29
For buildings		
Tool, sheep, and pig barn, Chap. 751, Laws 1913	$ 2,855.44	
Headquarters, etc., Chap. 530, Laws 1912	2,520.67	
Greenhouses, etc., Chap. 751, Laws 1913	1,400.33	
Central heating plant, Chap. 727, Laws 1915	17,743.14	
Repairs	2,696.82	27,216.40
For equipment:		
Agronomy Building, Chap. 751, Laws 1913	$515.37	
Forestry Building, Chap. 751, Laws 1913	153.06	668.43
Income from sales and services (including approximately $100,000 transfers between departments):		
Administration:		
General	$ 24,241.39	
Dean's Office	6,763.41	
Secretary's Office	93.40	
Information Office	1,717.67	
Business Office	654.33	
Library	2,013.90	
Engineer's Office	1,920.90	
Grounds	1,093.67	
Fuel	2,773.27	
Locker account	94.00	
Animal Husbandry sales	33,047.94	
Entomology	2,049.95	
Dairy Industry	180,231.88	

Income from sales and services, etc. (*continued*)		
Administration: (*continued*)		
Poultry Husbandry	$ 7,326.31	
Farm Crops	1,056.99	
Farm Practice	20,391.60	
Botany	1,552.50	
Floriculture	1,496.91	
Forestry	2,152.53	
Landscape Art	204.03	
Plant Breeding	529.15	
Plant Pathology	88.69	
Pomology	1,857.40	
Vegetable Gardening	1,920.24	
Farm Management	305.19	
Farm Bureau	169.72	
Home Economics	70,001.82	
Rural Economy	27.00	
Rural Education	2,150.01	
Drawing	102.50	
Rural Engineering	29.65	
Soil Technology	930.86	
Extension Teaching	3,834.45	
Salaries	27,112.10	
Rural Problems Class	25.00	$399,960.36
Total college income		$1,103,756.27
Salaries for instruction and research	$387,569.87	$387,569.87
Departmental expenses:		
Animal Husbandry	$ 41,765.66	
Entomology	5,830.77	
Dairy Industry	181,746.65	
Poultry Husbandry	11,909.82	
Farm Crops	1,914.26	
Farm Practice	24,981.51	
Botany	8,628.31	
Floriculture	4,295.73	
Forestry	3,922.40	
Landscape Art	968.71	
Plant Breeding	1,865.51	
Plant Pathology	3,844.06	
Pomology	4,978.48	
Vegetable Gardening	4,139.14	
Farm Management	1,631.17	
Farm Bureau	770.73	
Home Economies	72,364.31	
Rural Economy	1,363.66	
Rural Education	3,850.04	
Agricultural Chemistry	569.37	
Drawing	234.93	
Meteorology	42.33	
Rural Engineering	2,233.01	
Soil Technology	2,991.80	
Extension Teaching	13,677.81	
Rural Problems Class	23.42	
Summer School	7,994.00	
Physics, Chemistry, etc., in University	69,250.00	
Investigation of bean production	888.64	478,676.23

Administration and general expense:		
Administrative salaries	$22,454.77	
General	61,295.78	
Dean's Office	6,962.08	
Secretary's Office	1,698.87	
Information Office	5,409.27	
Business Office	1,710.20	
Library	1,912.42	
Engineer's Office	8,119.43	
Grounds	3,685.15	
Fuel	27,639.37	
Locker account	97.00	
Repairs	5,772.48	$146,756.82
New buildings:		
Tool, sheep, and pig barn	$ 2,820.00	
Stock judging and forestry	2,550.13	
Piggery	8.35	
Greenhouse	1,400.33	
Central heating plant	17,734.40	24,513.21
Equipment Forestry Building	$120.44	120.44
Refund to State advanced on 1914–15 maintenance	19.71	19.71
Total college expenses		$1,037,656.28

1915-16 State Maintenance Appropriation

Appropriation		$573,753.00
Expenditures previously reported		513,230.44
Balance unexpended July 1, 1916		$60,522.56
Accounted for as follows:		
Expenditures subsequent to July 1, 1916, on liabilities incurred prior to that date:		
Administration	$3,647.59	
Fuel	13.51	
Animal Husbandry	425.49	
Entomology	31.46	
Dairy Industry	130.48	
Poultry Husbandry	1.36	
Farm Crops	74.09	
Farm Practice	138.81	
Botany	579.59	
Floriculture	119.30	
Forestry	361.03	
Landscape Art	84.44	
Plant Breeding	214.68	
Plant Pathology	390.70	
Pomology	27.62	
Vegetable Gardening	195.05	
Farm Management	4.69	
Farm Bureau	35.90	
Home Economics	25.88	
Rural Economy	30.75	
Rural Education	7.09	
Drawing	1.17	
Meteorology	2.15	
Rural Engineering	408.82	
Soil Technology	157.67	
Extension Teaching	1,400.32	8,509.64
Balance of appropriation lapsed		*$52,012.92

---

* Due to change in fiscal year, shortening year to nine months.

1916-17 State Maintenance Appropriation

Appropriation		$518,325.66
Administration:		
General	$1,184.95	
Dean's Office	677.59	
Secretary's Office	892.67	
Information Office	2,004.58	
Business Office	1,110.41	
Library	18.00	
Engineer's Office	2,942.37	
Fuel	16,817.94	
Animal Husbandry	4,360.72	
Entomology	18.81	
Dairy Industry	2,955.75	
Poultry Husbandry	2,828.88	
Farm Crops	278.83	
Farm Practice	2,565.03	
Botany	1,789.69	
Floriculture	862.73	
Forestry	1,199.55	
Landscape Art	354.10	
Plant Breeding	905.96	
Plant Pathology	1,745.48	
Pomology	2,124.78	
Vegetable Gardening	588.31	
Farm Management	916.51	
Farm Bureau	526.19	
Home Economics	2,128.20	
Rural Economy	1,204.69	
Rural Education	1,317.12	
Chemistry	529.17	
Drawing	137.65	
Meteorology	4.05	
Rural Engineering	643.52	
Soil Technology	1,381.09	
Extension Teaching	4,082.06	
Repairs	5,772.48	
Summer School	7,994.00	
Additional instruction	40,000.00	
Salaries	383,088.96	$497,952.82
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917		*$20,372.84

1916 State Deficiency Appropriation

Appropriation		$55,910.00
Administration:		
General	$4,763.49	
Dean's Office	262.91	
Secretary's Office	736.68	
Information Office	2,693.68	
Business Office	43.50	
Engineer's Office	3,677.21	
Grounds	2,591.15	
Fuel	8,214.60	
Animal Husbandry	4,012.99	
Entomology	108.89	
Dairy Industry	3,642.05	
Poultry Husbandry	1,157.09	
Farm Crops	303.84	

---

* With the exception of approximately $5000 salaries which will lapse, this balance is covered by liabilities incurred prior to June 30, 1917.

Appropriation (*continued*)		
Farm Practice	$4,490.58	
Botany	101.52	
Floriculture	778.72	
Landscape Art	127.40	
Plant Pathology	192.50	
Pomology	544.40	
Vegetable Gardening	785.08	
Farm Management	319.47	
Farm Bureau	23.41	
Home Economics	258.97	
Rural Economy	101.24	
Rural Education	509.99	
Chemistry	40.20	
Rural Engineering	170.94	
Soil Technology	14.50	
Extension Teaching	1,897.30	$42,564.30
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917		*$13,345.70

1916 State Emergency Appropriation

For deficiency in appropriation, for additional instruction for the years 1915–16 and 1916–17	$35,750.00
Expended	29,250.00
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917	†$6,500.00

1916 State Appropriation for the Investigation of Bean Production

Appropriation	$8,500.00
Expenditures to June 30, 1916	888.64
Balance unexpended	$7,611.36

---

* This balance is covered by liabilities incurred prior to June 30, 1917.
† This unexpended balance will lapse.

State Income

July 1, 1916, to June 30, 1917

	Balance July 1, 1916	First term	Second term	Third term	Summer school	Winter course	Delinquent	Total fees	Departmental transfers and other miscellaneous credits	Net credit	Debit	Balance June 30, 1917
Administration												
General	*$13,482.52	$22,922.50	$14,556.68	$875.00	$1,995.10	$1,237.50	$561.66	$42,148.44	$18,747.13	$47,413.05	$47,401.93	$11.12
Dean's Office	*568.95								6,649.16	6,080.21	6,007.22	72.99
Secretary's Office	*8.00								93.40	85.40	69.52	15.88
Business Office	*243.35								576.91	333.56	315.19	18.37
Information Office	*626.68								1,501.32	874.64	645.46	229.18
Library									2,013.90	2,013.90	1,894.42	119.48
Engineer's Office	36.63								816.63	853.26	583.51	269.75
Grounds	27.80								953.12	980.92	949.87	31.05
Fuel									2,773.27	2,773.27	2,593.32	179.95
Salaries									27,112.10	27,112.10	26,935.68	176.42
Poultry Husbandry	42.26				42.00	515.35		557.35	708.57	1,308.18	1,194.68	113.50
Dairy Industry	1,099.01	650.25	909.30		20.80	1,151.00	3.00	2,734.35	343.22	4,176.58	1,959.25	2,217.33
Entomology	*478.26	2,677.50	1,862.00	290.00	78.50		34.81	4,942.81	2,049.95	6,514.50	5,671.61	842.89
Farm Crops	515.43	170.00	238.00			119.00	2.00	529.00	956.34	2,000.77	1,134.45	866.32
Farm Practice	226.76								1,516.15	1,742.91	1,337.06	405.85
Botany	191.01	1,561.17	1,841.00	356.95	134.00		235.50	4,128.62	1.65	4,321.28	3,724.91	596.37
Floriculture	171.17	104.00	184.50	134.00		58.50		481.00	43.68	695.85	509.14	186.71
Forestry	120.07	71.75	99.00	41.00			3.50	215.25	1.50	336.82	251.41	85.41
Landscape Art	37.63	187.25	52.50	20.00	8.50		18.00	286.25	89.07	412.95	329.24	83.71
Plant Breeding	246.10	60.50	12.00	102.00	3.50	8.50		186.50		432.60	414.12	18.48
Plant Pathology	478.05	755.98	426.58	107.69	15.00	112.12		1,417.37	88.69	1,984.11	1,515.38	468.73
Pomology	201.79	546.00	409.50		30.00	44.00		1,029.50		1,231.29	802.88	428.41
Vegetable Gardening	95.48		143.00	36.00	21.00	27.00	10.00	237.00	25.60	358.08	207.21	150.87
Farm Management	*28.66	77.00	210.00	31.00		164.00	6.00	488.00	305.19	764.53	390.50	374.03
Home Economics	1,330.09	1,758.72	2,138.03	133.25	563.50		48.00	4,641.50	2,569.68	8,541.27	7,075.14	1,466.13
Rural Economy									27.00	27.00	26.98	0.02
Rural Education			18.00					18.00	2,150.01	2,168.01	2,015.84	152.17
Rural Problems Class									25.00	25.00	23.42	1.58
Drawing									102.50	102.50	96.11	6.39
Meteorology	182.00	93.00	96.00				1.00	190.00		372.00	36.13	335.87
Rural Engineering	177.83	289.00	333.00	80.00	6.00	177.00	8.00	893.00	29.65	1,100.48	1,009.73	90.75
Soil Technology	933.15	94.04	333.81	57.00				484.85	685.61	2,103.61	1,299.70	803.91
Extension Teaching	4,301.31								3,834.45	8,135.76	6,298.13	1,837.63
Total	*$5,022.85	$32,018.66	$23,862.90	$2,263.89	$2,917.90	$3,613.97	$931.47	$65,608.79	$76,790.45	$137,376.39	$124,719.14	$12,657.25

Circulating Fund

	Balance July 1, 1916	Sales and other income, including departmental transfers	Net credit	Debit	Balance June 30, 1917
Administration:					
General	*$ 842.98	$ 5,494.26	$ 4,651.28	$ 4,298.02	$ 353.26
Dean's Office	....	114.25	114.25	14.36	99.89
Business Office	29.22	216.35	245.57	241.10	4.47
Information Office	....	77.42	77.42	65.35	12.07
Engineer	3.36	1,104.27	1,107.63	916.34	191.29
Grounds	2.45	140.55	143.00	144.13	*1.13
Locker account	61.75	94.00	155.75	97.00	58.75
Animal Husbandry	7,679.56	33,047.94	40,727.50	32,966.46	7,761.04
Poultry Husbandry	40.53*	6,617.74	6,577.21	6,727.81	*150.60
Dairy Industry	1,455.88	179,888.66	181,344.54	173,059.12	8,285.42
Farm Crops	32.52	100.65	133.17	123.05	10.12
Farm Practice	423.91	18,875.45	19,299.36	16,450.03	2,849.33
Botany	1,311.37	1,550.85	2,862.22	2,432.60	429.62
Floriculture	687.15	1,453.23	2,140.38	2,025.84	114.54
Forestry	126.12	2,151.03	2,277.15	2,110.41	166.74
Landscape Art	5.33	114.96	120.29	73.53	46.76
Plant Breeding	85.27	529.15	614.42	330.75	283.67
Pomology	88.36	1,857.40	1,945.76	1,478.80	466.96
Vegetable Gardening	392.98	1,894.64	2,287.62	2,363.49	*75.87
Farm Bureau	....	169.72	169.72	185.23	*15.51
Home Economics	130.39	67,432.14	67,562.53	62,876.12	4,686.41
Soil Technology	57.08	245.25	302.33	138.84	163.49
Total	$11,689.19	$323,169.91	$334,859.10	$309,118.38	$25,740.72

* Indicates overdraft, fully covered by accounts outstanding. No net overdraft June 30, 1917.

Building Appropriations

1910 Appropriations for development and extensions:	
(Auditorium, Home Economics Building, and Poultry Building)	
Appropriation Chap. 530, Laws 1910	$200,000.00
Appropriation Chap. 530, Laws 1912	182,000.00
	$382,000.00
Expenditures heretofore reported	376,858.34
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917	$5,141.66
1912 Appropriations for continuing development:	
(Headquarters, Stock Judging, Agronomy, and Forestry Buildings)	
Appropriation Chap. 530, Laws 1912	$200,000.00
Appropriation Chap. 751, Laws 1913	129,000.00
	$329,000.00
Expenditures heretofore reported	319,534.46
	$9,465.54
Expended July 1, 1916, to June 30, 1917	2,550.13
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917	$6,915.41
1913 Appropriation for tool barn and sheep barn:	
Appropriation Chap. 751, Laws 1913	$11,000.00
Expenditures heretofore reported	5,644.33
	$5,355.67
Expended July 1, 1916, to June 30, 1917	2,820.00
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917	$2,535.67

1913 appropriation for extending greenhouses:

Appropriation Chap. 751, Laws 1913	$30,000.00
Expenditures heretofore reported	26,183.22
	$3,816.78
Expended July 1, 1916, to June 30, 1917	1,400.33
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917	$2,416.45

1913 appropriation for poultry plant extension:

Appropriation Chap. 751, Laws 1913	$25,000.00
Expenditures heretofore reported	24,987.87
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917	$12.13

1915 appropriation for completion of heating plant:

Appropriation Chap. 727, Laws 1915	$35,000.00
Expenditures heretofore reported	10,943.52
	$24,056.48
Expended July 1, 1916, to June 30, 1917	17,725.05
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917	$6,331.43

1917 appropriation for piggery with detached pens:

Appropriation Chap. 181, Laws 1917	$7,000.00
Expended to June 30, 1917	8.35
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917	$6,991.65

1917 appropriation for additional unit to heating plant:

Appropriation Chap. 181, Laws 1917	$12,000.00
Expended to June 30, 1917	9.35
Balance unexpended June 30, 1917	$11,990.65

FEDERAL APPROPRIATION

Hatch and Adams Funds

1916–17

	Abstract		
By Salaries	1	$5,891.55	$9,203.00
Labor	2	4,663.98	2,790.89
Publications	3		
Postage and stationery	4	108.52	26.80
Freight and express	5	100.47	
Heat, light, water, and power	6		
Chemicals and laboratory supplies	7	173.89	617.43
Seeds, plants, and sundry supplies	8	677.35	275.24
Fertilizers	9	64.65	3.50
Feeding stuffs	10		
Library	11	14.12	
Tools, machinery, and appliances	12	604.23	228.70
Furniture and fixtures	13	122.40	25.44
Scientific apparatus and specimens	14	272.24	285.50
Livestock	15		
Traveling expenses	16	531.16	
Contingent expenses	17		
Buildings and land	18	275.44	43.50
Balance			
Total		$13,500.00	$13,500.00

Nelson Fund

1916-17

Total apportionment to the New York State College of Agriculture		$10,000.00
Expended for salaries		$10,000.00

Congressional Industrial Fund

1916-17

Total apportionment to the New York State College of Agriculture		$10,000.00
Expended for salaries	$8,786.09	
Expended for books, periodicals, and binding	1,213.91	
		$10,000.00

THE UNITED STATES AND STATE APPROPRIATIONS UNDER THE SMITH-LEVER EXTENSION ACT, 1916-17

Total appropriations for the fiscal year ended June 30, 1917, under Act of Congress approved May 8, 1914 (Smith-Lever Act), $95,956.64

Expenditures classified as	Total	Federal	State offset
Salaries	$81,629.81	$38,661.12	$42,968.69
Labor	2,270.49	2,270.49	....
Printing and distribution of publications	515.55	515.55	....
Stationery and small printing	1,640.61	1,640.61	....
Postage, telegraph, telephone, freight, and express	658.71	649.08	9.63
Heat, light, water, and power	2.50	2.50	....
Supplies	744.55	744.55	....
Library	17.50	17.50	....
Tools, machinery, and appliances	164.95	164.95	....
Furniture and fixtures	1,059.06	1,059.06	....
Scientific apparatus and specimens	220.68	220.68	....
Traveling expenses	7,032.23	7,032.23	....
Total	$95,956.64	$52,978.32	$42,978.32

SUMMARY STATEMENT OF EXPENDITURES FOR EXTENSION WORK BY ITEMS OF EXPENSE AND SOURCES OF FUNDS, 1916-17

Expenditures classified as	Total	Smith-Lever		College	State	County and miscellaneous
		Federal	Offset			
Salaries	$172,333.98	$38,661.12	$42,968.69	....	$41,239.65	$49,464.52
Labor	3,982.73	2,270.49	....	$ 130.10	....	1,582.14
Printing and distribution of publications	9,384.89	515.55	....	....	....	8,869.34
Stationery and small printing	8,312.22	1,640.61	....	27.39	1,181.28	5,462.94
Postage, etc	7,831.29	649.08	9.63	93.96	833.19	6,245.43
Heat, light, etc	2.50	2.50	....	....	....	....
Supplies	14,028.35	744.55	....	15.71	35.55	13,232.54
Library	22.50	17.50	....	....	5.00	....
Tools, etc	164.95	164.95	....	....	....	....
Furniture and fixtures	4,465.55	1,059.06	....	....	295.21	3,111.28
Scientific apparatus, etc	1,336.37	220.68	....	....	395.35	720.34
Traveling expenses	48,779.26	7,032.23	....	2,819.42	4,962.35	33,965.26
Contingent	1,958.43	....	....	183.61	....	1,774.82
Total	$272,603.02	$52,978.32	$42,978.32	$3,270.19	$48,947.58	$124,428.61

EXPENDITURES OF SMITH-LEVER FUNDS BY PROJECTS, 1916-17

Projects	Total	Federal	State
Administration, No. 1	$ 3,436.60	$ 2,881.04	$ 555.56
Printing and distribution of publications	515.55	515.55	....
County Agents, No. 3	34,938.20	11,338.20	23,600.00
County Agents in Home Economics, No. 3a	1,468.75	1,468.75	....
Home Economics, No. 4	7,500.00	6,750.00	750.00
Extension Schools and Farmers' Courses, No. 2	7,490.95	3,852.16	3,638.79
Boys' Club Work, No. 24	564.38	564.38	....
Boys' and Girls' Club Work, No. 25	3,450.00	2,700.00	750.00
Farm Management, No. 5	5,250.00	5,250.00	....
Farm Crops, No. 6	2,300.00	2,300.00	....
Entomology, No. 7	4,072.25	1,072.25	3,000.00
Pomology, No. 8	1,500.00	1,333.28	166.72
Plant Pathology, No. 9	5,920.00	2,670.00	3,250.00
Animal Husbandry, No. 10	5,383.30	4,572.15	811.15
Soil Technology, No. 11	5,619.00	2,019.00	3,600.00
Forestry, No. 12	3,000.00	555.56	2,444.44
Ornithology, No. 16	900.00	900.00	....
Poultry Husbandry, No. 17	2,147.66	1,736.00	411.66
Landscape Art, No. 26	500.00	500.00	....
Total	$95,956.64	$52,978.32	$42,978.32

SUMMARY STATEMENT OF EXPENDITURES, BY PROJECTS, SHOWING SOURCES OF FUNDS USED FOR EXTENSION WORK

Project	Total	Smith-Lever		College	State	County and miscellaneous
		Federal	Offset			
Administration, No. 1	$ 16,545.47	$ 2,881.04	$ 555.56	$2,405.47	$10,703.40	....
Printing and distribution of publications	9,384.89	515.55	....	....	....	$ 8,869.34
County Agents, No. 3	162,912.41	11,338.20	23,600.00	....	*12,414.94	115,559.27
County Agents in Home Economics, No. 3a	1,468.75	1,468.75	....	....	....	....
Home Economics, No. 4	8,467.66	6,750.00	750.00	....	967.66	....
Extension Schools and Farmers' Courses, No. 2	9,275.69	3,852.16	3,638.79	172.33	1,612.41	....
Boys' Club Work, No. 24	564.38	564.38	....	....	....	....
Boys' and Girls' Club Work, No. 25	3,885.63	2,700.00	750.00	....	435.63	....
Farm Management, No. 5	5,250.00	5,250.00	....	....	....	....
Farm Crops, No. 6	2,550.00	2,300.00	....	....	250.00	....
Entomology, No. 7	4,072.25	1,072.25	3,000.00	....	....	....
Pomology, No. 8	2,876.85	1,333.28	166.72	....	1,376.85	....
Plant Pathology, No. 9	5,960.20	2,670.00	3,250.00	....	40.20	....
Animal Husbandry, No. 10	7,361.36	4,572.15	811.15	....	1,978.06	....
Soil Technology, No. 11	6,004.57	2,019.00	3,600.00	....	385.57	....
Forestry, No. 12	3,282.06	555.56	2,444.44	....	282.06	....
Dairy Industry, No. 13	2,031.38	....	....	....	2,031.38	....
Vegetable Gardening, No. 14	2,027.98	....	....	....	2,027.98	....
Ornithology, No. 16	900.00	900.00	....	....	....	....
Poultry Husbandry, No. 17	5,782.57	1,736.00	411.66	....	3,634.91	....
Fairs, No. 18	845.60	....	....	358.51	487.09	....
Undergraduate Instruction, No. 19	6,633.31	....	....	....	6,633.31	....
Lectures, No. 20	1,036.42	....	....	333.88	702.54	....
Reading Course for the Farm, No. 21	2,339.20	....	....	....	2,339.20	....
Field Demonstrations, No. 22	644.39	....	....	....	644.39	....
Landscape Art, No. 26	500.00	500.00	....	....	....	....
Total	$272,603.02	$52,978.32	$42,978.32	$3,270.19	$48,947.58	$124,428.61

* Includes $10,800 salaries paid by the State direct to county agents.

SUMMARY STATEMENT OF EXPENDITURES, BY PROJECTS, SHOWING CLASSIFICATION OF EXPENDITURES FROM ALL FUNDS USED FOR EXTENSION WORK

Expenditures classified as	Total	Administration	Printing and distribution of publications	County agents	Home economics	Extension schools and farmers' courses	Boys' club work	Boys' and girls' club work	County home demonstration agents
Salaries	$172,333.98	$12,184.56	....	$92,671.94	$6,986.97	$3,971.03	$500.00	$3,200.00	$1,468.75
Labor	3,982.73	102.50	....	3,036.49	213.71	68.10	....	1.50	....
Printing and distribution of publications	9,384.89	....	$9,384.89	....	....	....	....	....	....
Stationery and small printing	8,312.22	393.69	....	5,756.44	410.20	657.69	....	89.69	....
Postage, telegraph, telephone, freight, and express	7,831.29	314.84	....	6,554.59	97.57	402.75	....	5.92	....
Heat, light, water, and power	2.50	....	....	....	....	2.50	....	....	....
Supplies	14,028.35	82.35	....	13,232.54	90.76	37.83	....	0.85	....
Library	22.50	5.00	....	....	0.25	....	....	....	....
Tools, machinery, and appliances	164.95	....	....	....	....	11.60	....	....	....
Furniture and fixtures	4,465.55	404.24	....	3,473.10	....	16.50	....	....	....
Scientific apparatus and specimens	1,336.37	171.76	....	781.89	....	....	....	....	....
Traveling expenses	48,779.26	2,779.95	....	35,630.60	668.20	4,060.93	64.38	587.67	....
Contingent expenses	1,958.43	106.58	....	1,774.82	....	46.76	....	....	....
Total	$272,603.02	$16,545.47	$9,384.89	$162,912.41	$8,467.66	$9,275.69	$564.38	$3,885.63	$1,468.75

SUMMARY STATEMENT OF EXPENDITURES BY PROJECTS (Continued)

Expenditures classified as	Farm management	Farm crops	Entomology	Pomology	Plant pathology	Animal husbandry	Soil technology	Forestry	Dairy industry
Salaries	$3,313.32	$2,250.00	$3,500.00	$2,750.00	$5,740.00	$6,583.30	$5,260.80	$3,000.00	$1,800.00
Labor	223.76	....	21.05	....	94.26	147.31	41.25	....	....
Printing and distribution of publications	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....
Stationery and small printing	729.46	....	13.59	....	34.10	34.09	73.33	36.35	....
Postage, telegraph, telephone, freight, and express	122.25	26.39	18.16	....	15.94	42.23	85.08	....	....
Heat, light, water, and power	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....
Supplies	129.80	102.76	63.91	....	14.20	112.62	126.72	....	....
Library	4.60	....	....	....	9.50	....	3.15	....	....
Tools, machinery, and appliances	46.38	....	15.00	....	....	51.75	40.22	....	....
Furniture and fixtures	446.03	....	119.28	....	....	5.00	....	....	....
Scientific apparatus and specimens	....	....	....	....	....	86.25	12.00	....	....
Traveling expenses	234.40	170.85	321.26	126.85	52.20	298.81	362.02	245.71	231.38
Contingent expenses	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....
Total	$5,250.00	$2,550.00	$4,072.25	$2,876.85	$5,960.20	$7,361.36	$6,004.57	$3,282.06	$2,031.38

SUMMARY STATEMENT OF EXPENDITURES BY PROJECTS (Concluded)

Expenditures classified as	Vegetable gardening	Ornithology	Poultry husbandry	Fairs	Under-graduate instruction	Lectures	Reading course for the farm	Field dem-onstrations	Landscape art
Salaries	$2,000.00	$900.00	$4,940.00		$6,633.31		$2,280.00		$400.00
Labor				$ 10.00					22.80
Printing and distribution of publications									
Stationery and small printing			6.75	29.75			46.30		0.79
Postage, telegraph, telephone, freight, and express				118.78		$ 26.79			
Heat, light, water, and power									
Supplies				27.71					6.30
Library									
Tools, machinery, and appliances									
Furniture and fixtures			0.75				0.65		
Scientific apparatus and specimens			229.72				12.25		42.50
Traveling expenses	27.98		605.35	629.09		1,009.63		$644.39	27.61
Contingent expenses				30.27					
Total	$2,027.98	$900.00	$5,782.57	$845.60	$6,633.31	$1,036.42	$2,339.20	$644.39	$500.00

Conclusion

The foregoing pages summarize the activities of the New York State College of Agriculture during the year in which the first rumblings of war were distinctly heard and in which the country was finally forced to arm. What has been done in war emergency measures, particularly through the Farm Bureau and the extension activities of the College, is merely a forerunner to the campaigns which are yet to come. In large measure the College will have to adapt itself to the changed conditions in the three branches of its work — teaching, research, and extension. The war, however, does not seem to indicate the need of radical changes in any of these fields, although it does point to an emergency need of more intensive work within them. Students are being specifically trained in the activities which will help to bring about more and better food production and conservation; the research investigations cannot be greatly modified because most of them represent long-time experiments for a definite end; in the field of extension the whole scope and purpose of the work has been put on a war-time basis.

Whatever the future may bring, the College of Agriculture aims to meet the immediate needs without overlooking the fundamental purposes for which it exists.

Respectfully submitted,

A. R. MANN,
Acting Dean, New York State College
of Agriculture at Cornell University.

AUGUST, 1910 (Reprinted in July, 1916) BULLETIN 283

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION OF

THE COLLEGE OF AGRICULTURE

Departments of Entomology and Plant Pathology

THE CONTROL OF INSECT PESTS AND PLANT DISEASES

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

BEVERLY T. GALLOWAY, B.Agr.Sc., LL.D., Director
JOHN H. COMSTOCK, B.S., Entomology.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, M.S. in Agr., Pomology.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, B.S. in Agr., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Live Stock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, M.S. in Agr., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
HORACE M. PICKERILL, B.S., Dairy Industry.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
V. B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
CHARLES H. HADLEY, B.S., Entomology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

THE CONTROL OF INSECT PESTS AND PLANT DISEASES

Few growers of crops realize the annual loss caused by insects and fungous diseases. It is safe to say that in the State of New York the loss from these sources alone exceeds the amount annually appropriated by the Legislature for conducting the State's business. From careful spraying experiments conducted by the growers themselves under the direction of Professor F. C. Stewart, of the New York State Experiment Station at Geneva, it is shown that the average annual preventable loss to potato growers in this State from blights and insects is nearly fifty bushels to the acre. This represents a loss of over ten million dollars yearly, which might be saved by an expenditure of less than five dollars an acre for spraying. A careful estimate of losses from the loose smut of oats in this State shows that ten per cent of the crop is destroyed annually by this fungous disease, a net loss of over a million dollars in 1914. The losses from apple scab and codling moth, from San José scale, peach yellows, and fire blight, and from all the other common insect pests and destructive plant diseases, if they could be accurately estimated, would show a grand total of appalling magnitude. This tremendous annual tax on the plant production of the State might be greatly reduced by the proper application of *known* methods of control.

The method of control to be employed for a given insect pest or fungous disease must be determined by the nature and habits of the enemy and by the character of the crop attacked. Plants can seldom be cured of disease as are men and animals. They must be protected from the attack. If sucking insects are to be controlled, something must be applied that will kill when it hits them, as whale-oil soap or nicotine solution; if biting insects are to be combated, the fruit and foliage must be sprayed or dusted with a poison that when eaten will destroy the pest. Many fungous diseases are prevented by spraying the plants, before the disease appears, with a mixture poisonous to the fungus but harmless to the plant. The poisons that destroy fungi are seldom effective against insects, and hence we have fungicides and insecticides. Often these can be combined in one mixture for insect and fungous pests of certain crops, as, for example, arsenate of lead and lime-sulfur for controlling codling moth and apple scab.

It is not to be supposed that spraying is the only means of controlling diseases. Many fungi are perpetuated from year to year in or on the seeds of the crop, as, for example, the smut of oats and wheat, or the pod spot of beans. In such cases it becomes necessary to treat the seed in order to kill the fungus, or to select seed free from the disease. Special methods of cultivation, soil treatment, sanitation, and the like, are means of controlling these pests and maladies, to be practiced, as is spraying, only in those cases in which they have been shown to be especially applicable.

In order to successfully apply these measures for control of a given disease, certain factors must be taken into consideration. For example, in spraying apple trees for scab, the stage of development of the buds, the blossoms, and the fruit, together with the character of the weather rather than the day of the month, must be the guide in making the application.

For nearly all fungous diseases the spray should be applied before rains, not after. Fungous spores are scattered and germinate during rains, seldom after. The plants should be protected by having the mixture on when the rain comes. *Bordeaux or lime-sulfur does not wash off easily. When spraying for insect pests alone, the mixture should be applied after rains. The spraying should be done thoroughly.* Every leaf and fruit must be coated in order to be protected. *A nozzle that gives a fine, misty spray should be used.* This requires also good pressure behind the nozzle. The amount of pressure required to do good work varies with the type of nozzle. It should never be less than 75 pounds, and some types of nozzles require 175 pounds in order to do the best work.

Timeliness and *thoroughness* are more important factors in the control of diseases and insect pests than are the particular mixtures of poisons used.

For purposes of control, insects are divided into two great classes:

(1) *Chewing insects*, or those having jaws by means of which they bite off and eat portions of the tissues of the plant. Examples are Colorado potato beetle, cankerworm, and codling-moth caterpillar. (2) *Sucking insects*, or those with a beak containing four bristles united into a slender tube. The bristles are inserted into the plant, and through them the insects suck out the sap. Examples are squash stinkbug, San José scale, and plant louse (Fig. 191).

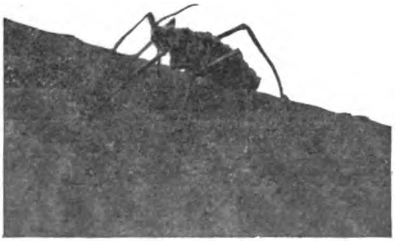


FIG. 191.— *A plant louse, one of the sucking insects, showing the beak*

Chewing insects are usually controlled by applying to their food poisons such as paris green, arsenate of lead, or hellebore. *Sucking insects* cannot be reached in this way and must be killed by a direct application of contact insecticides, such as soaps, oils, or other substances. In fighting sucking insects thorough and skillful work is required, since every individual insect must be hit by the spray; while in the case of chewing insects, it is merely necessary to apply the poison thoroughly to the food-plant.

ALFALFA

Dodder (Fig. 192)

The presence of dodder causes small areas of alfalfa to die. Around the margins of these areas the ground is covered with a tangled mat of yellow threads that twine closely about the plants and kill them. Infested spots should be closely mowed, and the stubble sprinkled with kerosene, covered with dry hay, and burned. Only seed free from dodder should be used. Samples of seed may be sent to the State Experiment Station at Geneva to be examined for dodder. Alfalfa seed can be cleaned by sifting it through a 20x20-mesh sieve made of No. 34 wire.

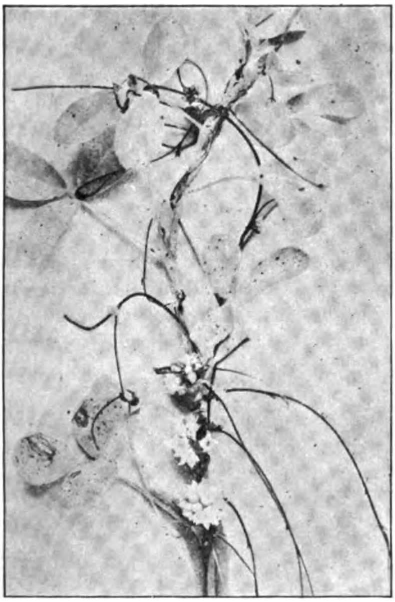


FIG. 192.—*Dodder on alfalfa, showing the slender, cord-like stems and the bunches of small white flowers*

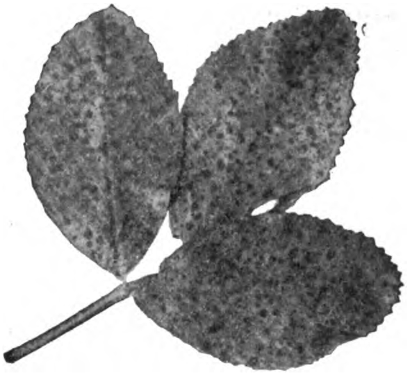


FIG. 193.— *Alfalfa leaf spot*

Leaf spot (Fig. 193)

Leaf spot is the most serious fungous disease of the alfalfa crop in the State. It causes the leaves to become spotted and yellow and to fall prematurely. New seeding, if badly diseased, should be topped, *but never mowed closely*. When older fields are attacked, the hay should be cut a few days early in order to avoid loss of leaves and to permit a new growth that will usually outgrow the trouble.

APPLE

Aphid

Three species of plant lice are abundant on the apple: the grain aphid, the green aphid, and the rosy aphid. They all pass the winter in the form of black, shiny eggs on the twigs and branches. The eggs hatch just as the buds are bursting, and the young lice cluster on the opening buds (Fig. 194). Thorough spraying at this time with "black leaf 40" tobacco extract, ¾ pint in 100 gallons of lime-sulfur or water, is the most effective way of controlling these insects. If used with water, 4 or 5 pounds of soap should be added, to make the liquid stick and spread better.

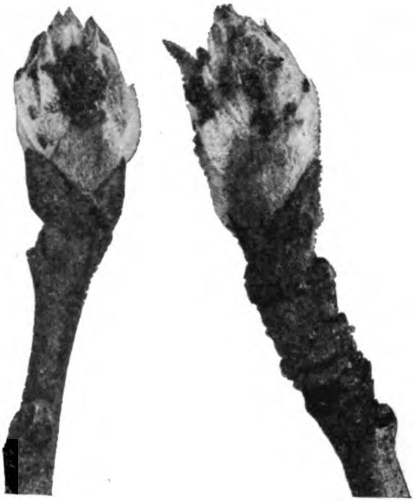


FIG. 194.—*Apple aphids clustering on opening buds. The most effective time for spraying*

Apple maggot The small, white apple maggots make brownish winding burrows in the flesh of the fruit, particularly in summer and early fall varieties. When full-grown the maggot leaves the fruit, passes into the ground, and finally transforms into a fly. The flies are constantly sucking material from the surface of the apples. They may be poisoned by applying a mixture of 2½ pounds of arsenate of lead to 50 gallons of water sweetened with 1½ gallons of cheap sirup. The mixture should be applied to the trees, in coarse drops, between June 15 and July 1, and again in ten days. If rains wash the liquid from the trees, other applications should be made. Well-cultivated orchards seem less subject to the attacks of the maggot, and therefore clean cultivation is recommended.

Apple redbug The apple redbugs are small, bright red, sucking bugs, which appear on the trees and puncture the newly set fruit, causing the apples either to fall or, if they mature, to be knotty, as shown in Fig. 195.

The trees should be twice sprayed with "black leaf 40" tobacco extract, 1 pint in 100 gallons of spray liquid: first, when the blossoms show pink, second, as the last of the petals are falling.

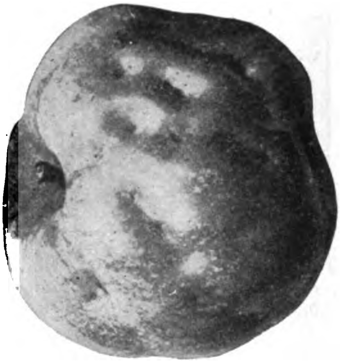


FIG. 195.—*Mature apple, showing injury by redbugs*

Apple tent-caterpillar The apple tent-caterpillar hibernates in the egg state. The eggs are glued in ring-like, brownish masses (Fig. 196) around the smaller twigs of the trees, where they may be easily found and destroyed. The caterpillars appear in early spring, devour the tender leaves, and build unsightly nests on the smaller branches. The young caterpillars may be killed just as the buds show green, by spraying with lime-sulfur as used for the San José scale. They may also be poisoned with arsenate of lead when the blossoms show pink. The nests may be destroyed by wiping them out when they are small.

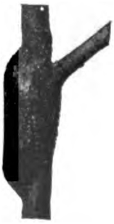


FIG. 196.—*Egg mass of apple tent-caterpillar*

Bud moth The small, brown, black-headed caterpillars of the bud moth devour the tender leaves and flowers of the opening buds in early spring. Two applications of 4 pounds of arsenate of lead in 100 gallons of water should be made, the first when the leaf tips appear and the second just before the blossoms open. If necessary, there should be a third application after the blossoms fall. (For use with lime-sulfur, see page 38.)

Cankerworm

Cankerworms are small measuring worms, or loopers, which defoliate the trees in May and June. The female moths are wingless, and in late fall or early spring crawl up the trunks of the trees to lay their eggs on the branches. A thorough application should be made once or twice, before the blossoms open, of 4 pounds of arsenate of lead in 100 gallons of water. The application should be repeated after the blossoms fall. The ascent of the wingless females should be prevented by means of sticky bands or wire-screen traps.

Case bearer

The small case-bearer caterpillars live in pistol- or cigar-shaped cases about ¼ inch long, which they carry about with them. They appear in spring on the opening buds at the same time as the bud moth and may be controlled by the same means.

Codling moth
(Fig. 197)

The pinkish caterpillar of the codling moth causes a large proportion of wormy apples. The eggs are laid by the small moth on the leaves and skin of the fruit.

Most of the caterpillars enter the apple at the blossom end. When the petals fall the calyx is open (Fig. 198), and this is the time to spray. The calyx soon closes and keeps the poison inside ready for the young caterpillar's first meal (Fig. 199). After the calyx has closed it is too late to spray effectively. The caterpillars become full-grown in July and August, leave the fruit, and crawl down on the trunk of the tree, and there most of them spin cocoons under the loose bark. In most parts of the country there are two broods annually.

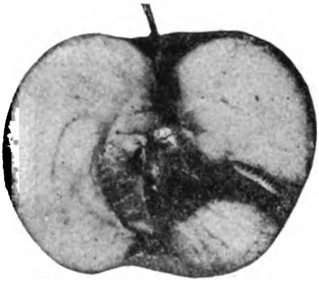


FIG. 197.— *Codling-moth caterpillar in an apple*

Immediately after the petals fall, the trees should be sprayed with 4 pounds of arsenate of lead in 100 gallons of dilute lime-sulfur. The application should be repeated about three weeks later. (For use with lime-sulfur, see page 38)

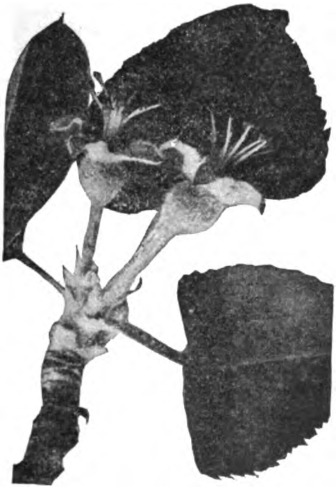


FIG. 198.— *Just right to spray. Two apples from which the petals have just fallen. The calyx lobes are widely spread*

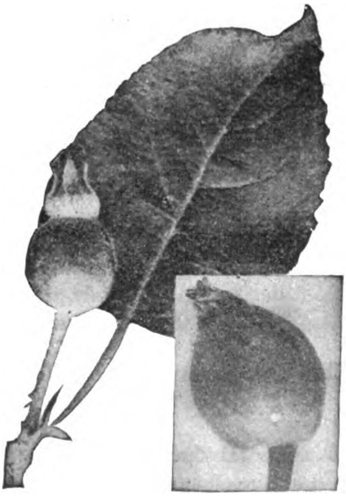
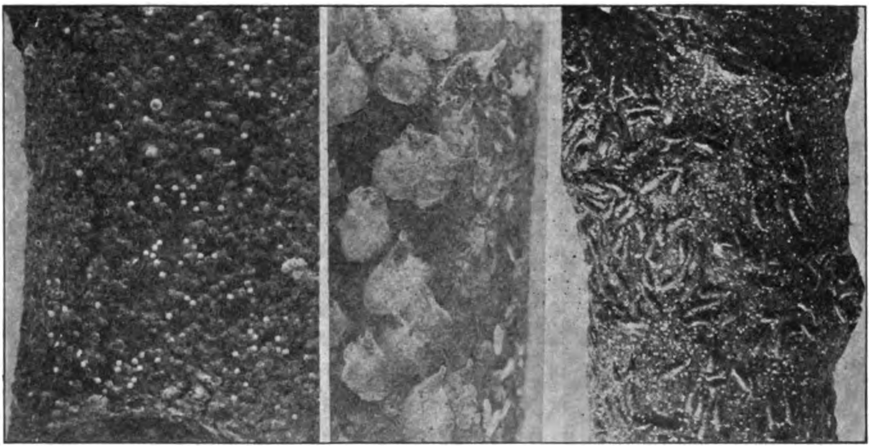


FIG. 199.— *Almost too late to spray effectively. The calyx lobes are nearly together*
Egg of codling moth on young apple

Fruit-tree leaf-roller The green, black-headed caterpillars of the fruit-tree leaf-roller attack the opening buds and web together the expanding leaves and blossoms, and eat holes in the young apples. They attack pears also. The insects pass the winter in the egg stage. The eggs are deposited in flat masses on the twigs, and covered with a varnish-like substance. A large proportion of the eggs can be destroyed by a thorough application of a miscible oil, 1 gallon in 15 gallons of water, made just before the buds open. This should always be followed by one or two thorough applications of arsenate of lead, 6 pounds in 100 gallons of water, made soon after the buds open.

Green fruit-worm When full-grown the caterpillars of the green fruit-worm are somewhat larger than those of the fruit-tree leaf-roller, being about one to one and one-half inches in length and of a light green color with whitish stripes. They injure the fruit in much the same way as does the fruit-tree leaf-roller. They may be controlled by early arsenical sprays as recommended for the leaf roller



San José scale Scurfy scale Oyster-shell scale

FIG. 200.— *The three common scales infesting the apple*

Leaf blister-mite The presence of the minute leaf blister-mite is indicated by small, irregular, brownish blisters on the leaves. The trees should be sprayed in late fall or early spring with lime-sulfur of the strength recommended for San José scale.

Round-headed borer The only practicable method of controlling the round-headed borer is to dig out the insects or kill them with a wire.

San José scale (Fig. 200) The San José scale is nearly circular in outline and about the size of a pinhead. When abundant it forms a crust on the branches of the tree and causes small red spots on the fruit. It multiplies with marvelous rapidity, there being three or four broods annually, and each mother scale may give birth to several hundred young. The young are born alive and breeding continues until late autumn, when all stages are killed by the cold weather except the tiny, half-grown, black scales, many of which hibernate safely.

The trees should be sprayed thoroughly in the fall after the leaves drop, or in the spring, with lime-sulfur (32° Baumé), 1 gallon in 8 or 9 gallons of water. When the trees are badly infested two applications should be made, one in the fall and the other in the spring. In case of large, old trees, 25-per-cent crude oil emulsion should be applied just as the buds are swelling.

Oyster-shell scale (Fig. 200) The oyster-shell scale is an elongate scale ⅛ inch in length, resembling an oyster shell in shape and often encrusting the bark. Spraying should be done as recommended for San José scale.

Scurfy scale (Fig. 200) The whitish, pear-shaped scurfy scale, about ⅛ inch in length, often encrusts the bark, giving it a scurfy appearance. Spraying should be done as recommended for the San José scale.

Fire blight (Fig. 201) Fire blight is the same as pear blight. It usually makes itself manifest on the apple trees in three forms, *blossom blight, twig blight, and blight cankers* on limbs and body. It is caused by bacteria which are distributed by bees, flies, and other insects, and is not controlled by spraying. Cutting out and destroying the diseased parts is the chief measure to be taken. A systematic inspection of the trees should be made from one to three times a week during the growing season, all blighted twigs cut out, and *the cuts disinfected* as described below. The bacteria of this disease are carried over winter in cankers on the main limbs and bodies of the trees. All such cankers should be removed with a sharp knife, the cut being made well into the healthy bark, and the wound should be washed with corrosive sublimate, 1 part to 1000 parts of water. The wound should then be painted with coal tar or lead paint. All old pear and apple trees about the premises should be destroyed or cleaned up, because such trees harbor the disease. On older trees of most varieties of apples the infected area does not extend to the older growth. Ordinarily it is impracticable to cut affected twigs from such trees.

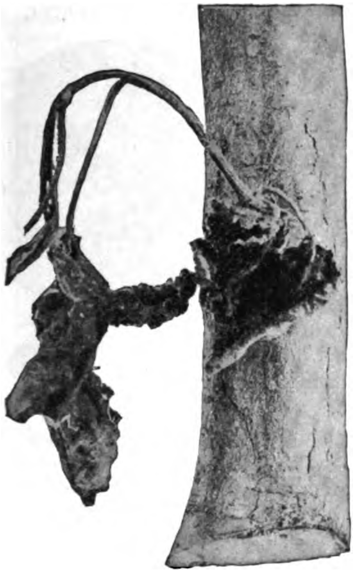


FIG. 201.— *Blight canker of apple*

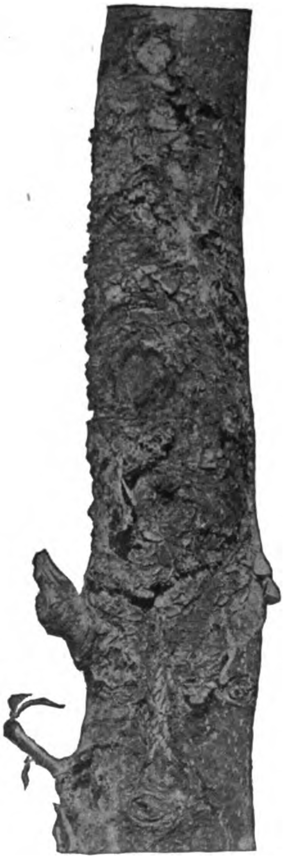


FIG. 202.— *New York apple-tree canker*

New York apple-tree canker (Fig. 202)

The New York apple-tree canker is an important fungous disease which should not be confused with the blight canker. These cankers, black and rough, are usually found on the main limbs of old trees, and are very common on Twenty Ounce apples. The fungus causes a brown spotting of the leaves and a black rot of mature fruit. Since the fungus enters through wounds, breaking the bark should be avoided. All wounds made in pruning should be promptly painted over. Cankers should be cut out and treated with coal tar. The body and the limbs of the trees should be soaked when the dormant application for scale is being made.

Frost canker

Frost canker, also known as sun scald, is an injury to the bark of trunk and branches, and occurs oftenest on the southwest side of the tree. It is a winter injury believed to be caused by a rapid fall in temperature of tissues that have warmed up on winter days from exposure to sunshine. Collar rot and crotch cankers are also types of winter injury. The dead bark should be removed back to healthy green bark around the injured area, and the wound covered with coal tar or some other good tree paint. The injury should be prevented by endeavoring to ripen the wood early in the fall, and avoiding the exposure of limbs due to removing too many branches in pruning.

Scab (Fig. 203)

Scab, commonly known among growers as ***the fungus,*** attacks both leaf and fruit, but is usually more evident on the fruit. The trees should be sprayed with lime-sulfur 1 to 40 (see table of dilutions, page 33), or with bordeaux 3-3-50: first, just before the blossoms open; second, just as the petals fall; third, three weeks after the petals fall. In most seasons the second spraying seems to be the most important. When scab is prevalent and favorable weather for infection prevails, an application should be made in late July to prevent late infection. The spraying should be thorough. For the use of insect poisons with lime-sulfur or bordeaux mixture, see ***Bud moth*** and ***Codling moth*** (pages 6 and 7).

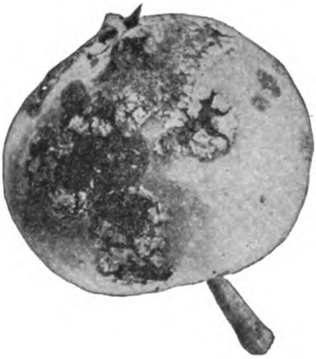


FIG. 203.— *Apple scab*

Stippin

Stippin is a disease of the fruit known also as bitter pit, and incorrectly as Baldwin spot and as bitter rot, in which brown, corky areas exist beneath the skin and may extend deeply into the flesh. The disease may be detected on the surface as dark pits. It is thought to be due to an improper distribution of water by the sap-carrying vessels of the fruit at a time when it is making rapid growth. The disease sometimes develops in storage, due to rapid changes in temperature. Little is known regarding its control.

APRICOT

(For insect pests, see those under *Peach,* page 21)

ASPARAGUS

Rust

Rust is the commonest and most destructive disease of asparagus. It produces reddish or black pustules on stems and branches. All affected plants should be burned late in the fall. The soil should be fertilized liberally and cultivated thoroughly. During the cutting season *no plants should be permitted to mature* and all wild asparagus plants in the vicinity should be kept cut. Rust may be partially controlled by spraying with bordeaux 5-5-50, containing a sticker of resin-sal-soda soap (see page 37); but this is a difficult and expensive operation and is probably not profitable except on a large acreage. Spraying should be begun after cutting as soon as the new shoots are from 8 to 10 inches high, and repeated once or twice a week until about September 15. Dusting with sulfur has proved effective in California."

BEAN

Anthracnose, or pod spot (Fig. 204) Anthracnose, or pod spot, is a fungous disease commonly known among growers as *rust*. It is carried over from one season to another in the seed. Only clean seed, obtained by selecting pods free from the diseased spots, should be planted. Hand-sorting of seed and seed treatment will not control this disease, but when the beans can be thoroughly hand-sprayed, bordeaux mixture 5-5-50 will reduce the amount of disease. The first spraying should be done just when the plants break through the ground; the second, when the first pair of leaves are expanded; the third, when the pods have set.

Blight Blight is a bacterial disease. Like anthracnose, blight is carried over in the seed. It is difficult to control. It affects the leaves chiefly, forming large dead areas, and on the pods it forms spots that may be confused with anthracnose. Spraying with bordeaux, as for anthracnose, is said to reduce the injury.

Stem rot Stem rot is a dry rot affecting the part of the stem at and below the surface of the ground, causing affected areas to become reddish in color and to shrivel. This results in vines of low vigor and yield. No satisfactory method of control has been worked out. A wide rotation of crops and good cultural methods have yielded the best results.

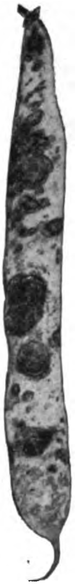


FIG. 204.—*Bean anthracnose*

BLACKBERRY

(For insect pests, see those under *Raspberry*, page 28)

CABBAGE AND CAULIFLOWER

Cabbage aphid The cabbage aphids are small, mealy plant lice which are especially troublesome during cool, dry seasons, when their natural enemies are less active. If plants are infested in the seed beds they should be dipped in soap solution before transplanting. As soon as the lice appear they should be sprayed with whale-oil soap, 1 pound in 10 gallons of water, or with one of the tobacco extracts. The application should be repeated when necessary.

Cabbage root-maggot (Fig. 205) The white cabbage root-maggots hatch from eggs laid by a small fly (which somewhat resembles the common house fly) near the plant at the surface of the ground. The earth should be hollowed out slightly around every plant, and carbolic acid emulsion diluted with 30 parts of water applied freely. The treatment should begin early, a day or two after the plants are up or the next day after they are set out. The application should be repeated every seven to ten days until the latter part of May. It has also been found practicable to protect the plants by the use of tightly fitting cards cut from tarred paper.

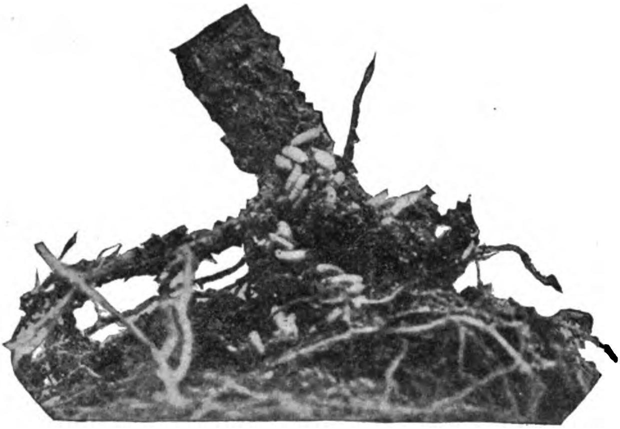


FIG. 205.— *Cabbage root-maggots*

In order to protect the plants in the seed bed, the bed may be surrounded with boards from 6 to 8 inches wide placed on edge, and covered tightly with a screen of cheesecloth as soon as the plants begin to appear. In order to harden the plants the cloth should be removed ten days before they are ready to be transplanted.

Cabbage worm (Fig. 206) The green caterpillars of the cabbage worm hatch from eggs laid by the common white butterfly. There are several broods every season. If the plants are not heading, they should be sprayed with kerosene emulsion or with paris green to which sticker has been added; if they are heading, hellebore should be used.

Black rot In the bacterial disease known as black rot, the bacteria get into the sap tubes of the leaves, clogging them and

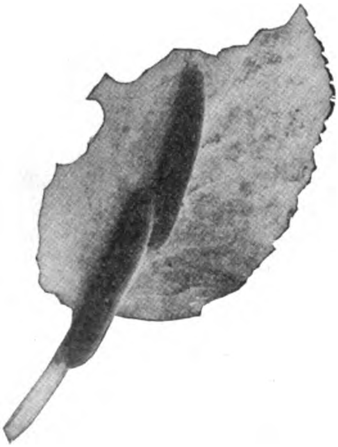


FIG. 206.— *Imported cabbage worms*

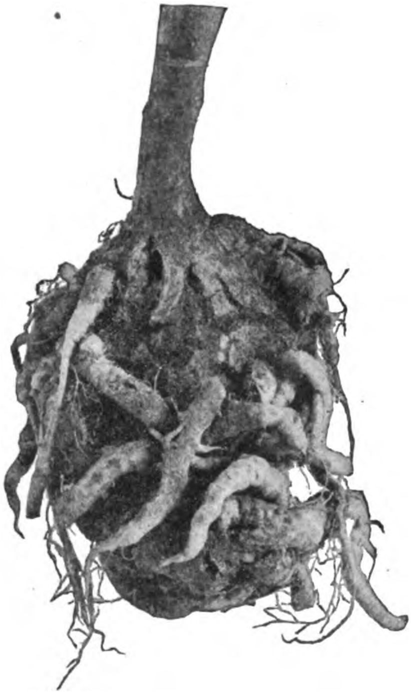


FIG. 207.— *Clubroot of cabbage*

turning them black. The plants drop their leaves and fail to head. Crop rotation should be practiced. The seed should be soaked for fifteen minutes in a solution made by dissolving one corrosive sublimate tablet in a pint of water.

Clubroot, or clubfoot (Fig. 207)

Clubroot, or clubfoot, is a slime mold disease, the parasite living in the soil. Crop rotation should be practiced, and *only healthy plants should be set.* Manure containing cabbage refuse should not be used. If the use of infested land is necessary, good stone lime, from 2 to 3 tons per acre, should be applied. The application should be made at least as early as the autumn before planting; eighteen months before planting is better. The seed bed should be limed in the same manner. This disease is sometimes confused with the injury caused by cabbage root-maggots.

CARNATION

Fusarium stem rot

Fusarium stem rot is a dry rot of the lower part of the stem. Plants affected by this disease die slowly, usually a branch at a time. The treatment is the same as for Rhizoctonia stem rot.

Leaf spot

Round, grayish spots on stem and leaves are evidences of the presence of leaf spot. The treatment is the same as for rust.

Rhizoctonia stem rot

The cause of Rhizoctonia stem rot is a soil fungus. The plants wilt suddenly, the stem being affected with soft rot at or below the surface of the soil. In the field the location of the plants should be changed frequently, annually if possible. In the benches sterilized soil, or at least fresh soil, should be used. After transplanting into the greenhouse, the temperature should be kept as low as possible until the plants become established. The soil should be stirred frequently. Overwatering should be avoided.

Rust

Rust can be recognized by the brown, powdery pustules on stem and leaves. Only the varieties least affected by this disease should be planted, and only cuttings from healthy plants should be taken. The plants should be sprayed (in the field once a week, in the greenhouse once in two weeks) with copper sulfate, 1 pound to 20 gallons of water. The greenhouse air should be kept as dry and as cool as is compatible with good growth. The foliage should be kept free from moisture, and the plants should be trained so as to secure a free circulation of air among them.

CAULIFLOWER

(See *Cabbage and Cauliflower*)

CELERY

Cerospora leaf blight

Cerospora leaf blight is sometimes known as *early blight.* It often appears in the seed bed and becomes destructive early in the summer. It is favored by hot weather, either wet or dry. Plants should be sprayed with bordeaux mixture 5-5-50, from six to eight applications being made, beginning when the plants are set and spraying often enough to keep new growths of leaves covered. Diseased plants and refuse should be destroyed.

Septoria leaf blight, or late blight

Septoria leaf blight, or late blight, is a fungous disease often appearing in the seed bed but usually becoming destructive later in the season. It is often destructive after celery is stored. The same treatment as for early blight is used, except that spraying should be continued up to the time when the plants are harvested.

CHERRY

Aphid

Early in the season the aphids, dark brown plant lice, curl the terminal leaves, especially attacking sweet cherries. The trees should be sprayed with "black leaf 40" tobacco extract, ¾ pint in 100 gallons of water, to which 4 or 5 pounds of soap is added. The application should be made when the insects are clustered on the opening buds. Repeat the application if necessary.

Cherry fruit flies

Cherry fruit flies are small flies with banded wings, which insert their eggs under the skin of the fruit. The maggots burrow in the flesh. These insects are most injurious to late varieties. When the flies first appear in June the trees should be sprinkled with arsenate of lead, 3 ounces in 4 gallons of water sweetened with 1 pint of molasses. The application should be repeated after rains.

Plum curculio—See under *Plum*.

Black knot

Black knot is caused by a fungus, the spores of which are carried from tree to tree by the wind and thus spread the infection. The same fungus also affects plums. All knots should be cut out and burned before the leaves appear in spring. Cherry growers should see that the knots are removed from all plum and cherry trees in the neighborhood.

Brown rot of fruit

Brown rot of fruit is produced by the same fungus that causes the brown rot of peaches and plums. (See page 21.)

Leaf spot

Leaf spot is a fungus disease in which the leaves become thickly covered with reddish or brown spots and fall prematurely. Badly affected trees winterkill. Often the dead spots drop out, leaving clear-cut holes. The trees should be sprayed with lime-sulfur 1 to 50 (32° Baumé) or with bordeaux 5–5–50. The addition of 1½ pounds of iron sulfate to 50 gallons of the diluted lime-sulfur solution decreases the danger of burning, increases the adhesiveness of the material, and affords a marker. Usually four applications should be made: the first, when the fruit is free from the calyx; the second, two weeks later; the third, immediately after picking; the fourth, if necessary, three weeks later.

Powdery mildew

Powdery mildew attacks leaves at the tips of the growing shoots, and is often serious on nursery stock. The leaves curl and show the white mealy growth of the fungus. The trees should be dusted heavily with sulfur or sprayed with lime-sulfur solution 1 to 50.

CHRYSANTHEMUM

Septoria leaf spot

Septoria leaf spot is a fungous disease. Plants should be sprayed with bordeaux 5–5–50 every ten days, or often enough to protect new foliage. Ammoniacal copper carbonate may be used, but it is not so effective.

Rust

For rust the plants should be treated as for Septoria leaf spot. Care should be taken not to wet the foliage when watering.

CUCUMBER, MELON, AND SQUASH

Aphid

Dark green plant lice feed on the undersides of the leaves, causing them to curl and wither. The vines should be sprayed with "black leaf 40" tobacco extract, ¾ pint in 100 gallons of water, to which 4 or 5 pounds of soap is added. The application may be repeated if necessary. Spraying can be done more readily and with less material if the vines are trained to run in the rows. It is necessary to thoroughly cover the undersides of the leaves; therefore the sprayer must be fitted with an upturned nozzle. The vines should be burned as soon as the crop is harvested, and all weeds should be kept down.

Squash stinkbug The rusty-black adult squash stinkbug emerges from hibernation in the spring and lays its eggs on the undersides of the leaves. The nymphs suck the sap from the leaves and stalks, causing serious injury. The adults may be trapped under boards in the spring. The leaves should be examined for the smooth, shining, brownish eggs and these should be destroyed. The young nymphs may be killed with " black leaf 40 " tobacco extract as recommended for the aphis.

Squash-vine borer Squash vines are frequently killed by a white caterpillar which burrows in the stem near the base of the plant. The stem should be slit and the borer killed with the knife. A few early squashes should be planted between the rows of the late varieties, as a trap crop. As soon as the early crop is harvested, the vines should be removed and burned. When the vines are long enough they should be covered at the joints with earth, in order to develop secondary root systems for the plant in case the main stem is injured.

Striped cucumber beetle The yellow, black-striped cucumber beetles appear in numbers and attack the plants as soon as they are up. Early squashes may be planted as a trap crop around the field. The vines should be protected with screens until they begin to run, or kept covered with bordeaux mixture, which will make them distasteful to the beetles.

(See melon diseases under *Melon*, page 19.)

Downy mildew Downy mildew, the most serious fungous disease of the cucumber, is known among growers as *the blight*. The leaves become mottled with yellow, show dead spots, and then dry up. The vines should be sprayed with bordeaux 5–5–50, beginning when the plants begin to run and repeating the application every ten to fourteen days throughout the season.

Wilt Wilt is a disease caused by bacteria that get into the sap tubes of the leaf and the stem and clog and destroy them, causing the plant to wilt. The bacteria are distributed chiefly by striped cucumber beetles. The beetles should be destroyed or driven away by thorough spraying with bordeaux 5–5–50. All wilted leaves and plants should be gathered and destroyed. The most that can be expected is that the loss may be slightly reduced.

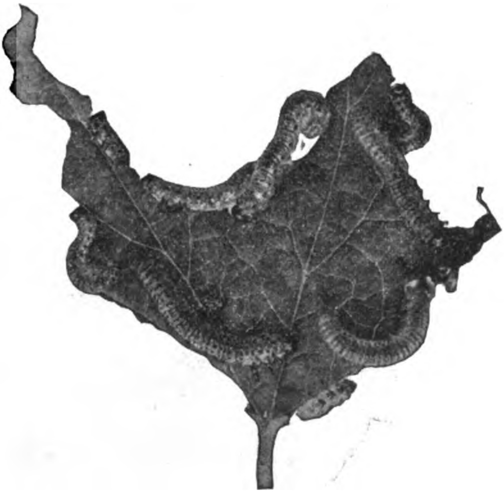


FIG. 208.— *Currant worms*

CURRANT

Currant worm (Fig. 208) In the spring the small, green, black-spotted larvæ of the currant worm feed on the foliage, beginning their work on the lower leaves. There is a second brood in early summer. When the worms first appear, the bushes should be sprayed with 1 pound of paris green or 4 pounds of arsenate of lead in 100 gallons of water. Ordinarily the poison should be combined with bordeaux. (See *Leaf spot.*) After the fruit is half grown, hellebore should be used.

Cane blight, or wilt

Cane blight, or wilt, is very destructive in the Hudson Valley. The canes die suddenly while loaded with fruits and leaves, as do those attacked by the cane borer. The disease is caused by a fungus that kills the bark in places and discolors the wood. No definite line of treatment has been established, but a good practice is to examine the plantation three or four times every summer, beginning when the plants are small, and cut out and burn all canes showing signs of disease.

Leaf spot and anthracnose (Fig. 209)

Leaf spot and anthracnose is caused by two or three different fungi. The leaves become spotted, turn yellow, and fall prematurely. The disease may be controlled by from three to five sprayings with bordeaux 5-5-50. An application after picking is completed will help to retain the foliage. *On the first appearance of currant worms, the bushes should be sprayed with bordeaux and paris green,* 1 pound of paris green to 100 gallons of bordeaux, or with arsenate of lead, 4 pounds to 100 gallons. If a second brood of worms appears the application should be repeated.

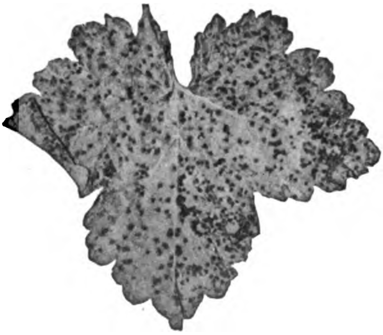


FIG. 209.— *Currant leaf spot*

DEWBERRY

(For insect pests, see those under *Raspberry*, page 28)

GINSENG

Alternaria blight (Fig. 210)

Alternaria blight is the most destructive and common disease of cultivated ginseng. In order to prevent its occurrence the surface of the soil should first be sprayed thoroughly with copper sulfate solution, 1 pound to 10 gallons, early in the spring before the plants appear, and then sprayed with bordeaux 3-3-50 as soon as the plants begin to break through the soil. Spraying should be done repeatedly

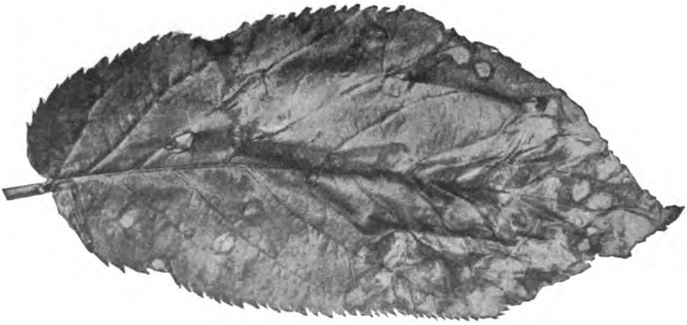


FIG. 210.— *Alternaria blight of ginseng*

while the plants are coming through the soil, special effort being made to spray the stems, since it is on these that the disease first becomes established in the spring. The plants should be kept thoroughly covered with the spray throughout the season. The seed heads should be sprayed thoroughly just after the blossoms fall, and again when the berries are two-thirds grown, in order to prevent blast caused by the Alternaria fungus. Diseased tops should be destroyed.

Mildew Mildew attacks tops shortly after they come up. The plants should be sprayed early with bordeaux.

Root rots Root rots are caused by various fungi and are favored by wet, soggy soils. The soil should be thoroughly drained.

Wilt Wilt is a disease caused by a fungus in the sap tubes of the root. It may be checked by removing the wilted plants as soon as they are discovered.

GOOSEBERRY

Powdery mildew The fruit and leaves of gooseberry bushes attacked by powdery mildew are covered with a dirty white growth of fungus. The disease is severe on European varieties. In setting a new plantation, a site should be chosen where the land is well underdrained and where there is a good circulation of air. Drooping branches should be cut away. The ground underneath should be kept free from weeds. When the first evidence of mildew appears, the bushes should be sprayed thoroughly with lime-sulfur solution (32° Baumé) diluted 1 to 40, and the spraying should be repeated as often as necessary. From one to five applications may be required.

GRAPE

Flea beetle, or steely beetle The small, shining, blue flea beetles appear in early spring and eat into the opening buds. The brown larvæ feed on the leaves in May and June. When the beetles appear, they should be hand-picked into a pan containing a little kerosene. To kill the larvæ on the leaves from May 15 to July 1, 1 pound of paris green or 4 pounds of arsenate of lead should be added for every 100 gallons of bordeaux (see under *Black rot*) and the bushes should be sprayed with this mixture.

Leaf hopper The small, yellowish leaf hoppers, erroneously called *thrips*, suck the sap from the undersides of the leaves, causing them to turn brown and dry up. The leaves should be sprayed very thoroughly on the underside with "black leaf 40" tobacco extract — ¾ pint in 100 gallons of water, to which 4 or 5 pounds of soap is added — about July 1, to kill the young leaf hoppers. The application should be repeated in a week or ten days.

Rootworm (Fig. 211) The small, white grubs of the rootworm feed on the roots, often killing the vines in a few years. The adults are small, grayish brown beetles, which eat peculiar chain-

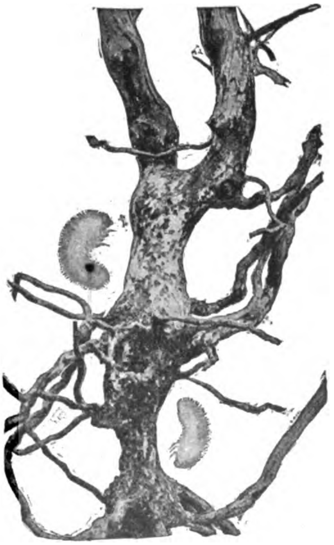


FIG. 211.— *Grape rootworm*

like holes in the leaves during July and August. The vines should be cultivated thoroughly in June, especially close around them so as to kill the pupæ in the soil. The vines should be sprayed thoroughly, about a week after the first beetles appear, with arsenate of lead, 6 pounds in 100 gallons of water sweetened with 2 gallons of molasses. The application should be repeated in a week or ten days.

Rose chafer The ungainly, long-legged, grayish rose chafers are found in sandy regions and often swarm into vineyards and destroy the blossoms and foliage. The vines should be sprayed thoroughly with arsenate of lead, 8 pounds in 100 gallons of water sweetened with 2 gallons of molasses. The application should be repeated if necessary.

Black rot Black rot is the most destructive fungous disease of grapes in this State. It is carried over from one season to the next chiefly in old rotted berries or mummy fruits that fall to the ground or cling to the vines. All mummies that cling to the arms at trimming time should be removed. The soil should be plowed early, all mummies and diseased leaves being turned under. All refuse should be raked under the vine into the last furrow and covered with the grape hoe. This work cannot be done too thoroughly. The vines should be sprayed four times with bordeaux mixture 4–4–50: first, when the shoots are ten inches long; second, just as soon as the blossoming period is over; third, when the berries are of the size of peas; fourth, from two to three weeks later. Infections take place with each rain throughout the growing season. The foliage should be protected by a coating of the spray *before* every rain. The new growth, especially, should be well sprayed. When the foliage becomes dense the clusters should be sprayed with a trailer, or hand-spraying device. (For use of insecticides in bordeaux, see under *Flea beetle.*)

Downy mildew Downy mildew is a fungous disease most evident on the leaves, making large brown spots on the upper surface with white downy growth beneath. It also attacks the green fruit, causing what is known to growers as ***hard white berry***. Bordeaux as applied for black rot will control this disease. In very rainy seasons an additional application may be necessary. In preparing the bordeaux mixture the ferrocyanide test (page 35) should be used, and only enough milk of lime should be added to neutralize the copper sulfate. This will prevent spotting on early-maturing varieties.

GREENHOUSE INSECTS

White fly The nymphs of the white fly are small, greenish, scale-like insects found on the undersides of the leaves; the adults are minute, white, mealy, winged flies. Plants should be sprayed with whale-oil soap or tobacco extracts; or, if the insects are infesting cucumbers or tomatoes, the greenhouse should be fumigated overnight with hydrocyanic acid gas, using 1 ounce of potassium cyanide to each 1000 cubic feet of space.

Black aphid The black aphid is harder to kill than the green aphid, but may be controlled by the same methods.

Green aphid Plants infested with green aphids should be sprayed with tobacco extract when practicable, or fumigated with one of the tobacco preparations. If violets are infested, the house should be fumigated, using from ½ to ¾ ounce of potassium cyanide for each 1000 cubic feet of space, and leaving the house closed for from one-half to one hour.

Red spider The red spider may be controlled by syringing off the plants with clear water two or three times a week, care being taken not to drench the beds.

Violet gallfly Violets grown under glass are often greatly injured by a very small maggot, the larva of the violet gallfly, which causes the edges of the leaves to curl, turn yellowish, and die. The adult is a minute fly resembling a mosquito. Infested leaves should be picked off and destroyed as soon as discovered. Fumigation is not advised for this insect or for red spider.

LETTUCE

Drop, or rot Drop, or rot, is a fungus disease often destructive in greenhouses, discovered by the sudden wilting of the plants. It is completely controlled by steam sterilization of the soil to the depth of two inches or more. If it is not feasible to sterilize the soil, fresh soil should be used for every crop of lettuce. The surface soil should be kept loose and dry. When the plants shade the ground, much less water should be used.

MELON

(For insect pests, see *Cucumber, Melon, and Squash*, page 14)

Anthracnose Anthracnose appears as a spotting of leaves, and as dark, sunken pits in the fruit which may become so numerous and large that the fruit decays. Salmon-colored, pasty masses may be seen in the older spots. These consist of innumerable spores of the fungus, which are readily disseminated in wet weather. Vines should be sprayed with bordeaux 5-5-50 several times in the course of the growing season.

Downy mildew Downy mildew is commonly called *blight* and is a very injurious disease. The leaves show angular, dead, brown spots, and then dry up and die; the fruit often fails to ripen and lacks flavor. The disease is caused by the same fungus as is the downy mildew of cucumbers. No effective method of control is known. While bordeaux has proved effective in controlling the downy mildew on cucumbers, it seems to be of little value in fighting the same disease on melons.

Wilt The bacterial disease of the muskmelon known as wilt is the same as the wilt of cucumbers. The same treatment is given.

NURSERY STOCK

Fire blight Fire blight of nursery stock is the same disease as that described under *Apple* and *Pear*. It affects apples, pears, quinces, and hawthorns. Sources of infection, such as old infested apple and pear trees, should be cleaned out. Frequent regular inspections of stock should be made during the growing period, and all infested twigs should be removed and destroyed. All cut surfaces should be disinfected with corrosive sublimate solution.

Leaf spot Leaf spot, known also as *yellow leaf* and as *shot hole*, is a disease causing a spotting, yellowing, and dropping of cherry leaves and a spotting of plum leaves. The diseased area often falls out, giving the leaves a perforated appearance described as *shot hole*. Control consists in plowing under old leaves early in the spring, and in making from five to seven applications of lime-sulfur solution (32° Baumé) diluted 1 gallon to 50 gallons of water. (See *Cherry leaf spot.*)

Plant lice Plant lice on nursery stock may be controlled by dipping the tips of the plants in whale-oil soap, 1 pound in 5 gallons of water, or in one of the tobacco extracts.

San José scale Nursery stock which has been grown in nurseries infested with San José scale should be fumigated with hydrocyanic acid gas after the trees are dug, using 1 ounce of potassium cyanide for every 100 cubic feet of space. The fumigation should be continued for from one-half to three-quarters of an hour. The trees should not be fumigated when they are wet, since the presence of moisture renders them liable to injury.

OATS

Smut (Fig. 212) The commonest and most destructive disease of oats is smut, carried over from one season to the next by the fungus spores on the seed. It may be entirely prevented by treating the seed oats, before planting, with a solution of formalin, 1 pint to 45 or 50 gallons of water. The oats are placed on a clean floor and the formalin is sprinkled on them as they are shoveled over, using one gallon of the solution to a bushel of oats. The oats should be mixed thoroughly, then shoveled into a pile and covered with blankets or canvas. After standing in the pile for from two to four hours, the oats, if they are to be drilled, should be spread out to dry; or they may be sown by hand without drying. One extra peck of seed for each bushel used should be allowed for swelling of the grain. Treatment once in three years is usually sufficient to prevent material loss from smut.

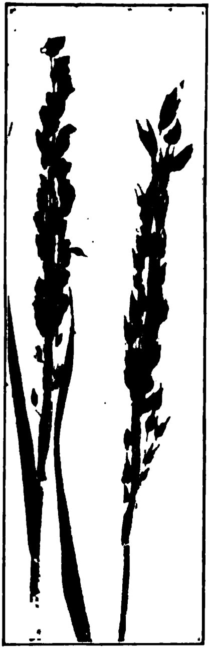


FIG. 212.— *Oat smut*

ONION

Onion maggot For control of the onion maggot, see carbolic-acid-emulsion treatment under *Cabbage root-maggot.*

Onion thrips Onion tops frequently turn white and die as the result of the feeding punctures caused by the minute yellowish onion thrips. The injury is known as *white blast.* The plants should be sprayed thoroughly with whale-oil soap, 1 pound in 4 gallons of water, or with " black leaf 40 " tobacco extract, 1 pint in 100 gallons of water to which 4 or 5 pounds of soap is added.

Mildew Onion mildew, or blight as it is commonly called, is a fungous disease much like the blight of potatoes. The plants should be sprayed with bordeaux 5-5-50, beginning when they show three leaves and repeating every ten days until the crop is harvested. One gallon of sticker (see page 37) should be added to every 50 gallons of the mixture. It is useless to begin spraying after the disease appears.

Smut Smut can be detected by the black pustules on leaves and bulbs. It is harmful only where onions are grown extensively. It may attack the seedlings, killing them outright, or may appear on mature bulbs in the fall. Onions from sets or those started in clean soil and transplanted are not affected. Crop rotation should be practiced. When planting seed, 100 pounds of sulfur and 50 pounds of air-slaked lime mixed, per acre, should be drilled into the rows; or the seed should be sprinkled, as it lies in the row before covering, with a solution of formaldehyde, 1 pint to 30 gallons of water. This may be applied with a drip attachment to the drill, or with a sprinkling can.

PEACH

Peach borer (Fig. 213)

The adult peach borer is a clearwing moth. The larva burrows just under the bark or beneath the surface of the ground; its presence is indicated by a gummy mass at the base of the tree. The borers should be dug out in June and the trees mounded up. At the same time gas tar or coal tar should be applied to the trunk from the roots up to a foot or more above the surface of the ground.

Plum curculio — See under *Plum*
San José scale — See under *Apple*

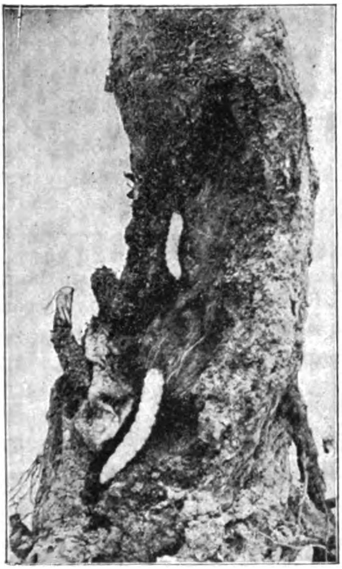


FIG. 213.— *Peach borer*

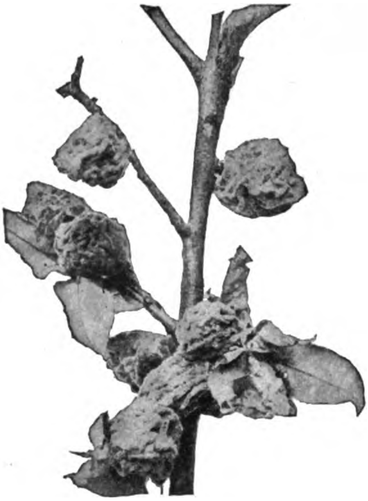


FIG. 214.— *Mummies on peach tree the result of brown rot*

Brown rot (Fig. 214)

Brown rot is a serious fungous disease of stone fruits, and one of the most difficult to control. The trees should be pruned so as to let in sunlight and air, and the fruit should be well thinned. The trees should be sprayed with self-boiled lime-sulfur 8–8–50 (see page 36), to which 2 pounds of arsenate of lead to 50 gallons of the liquid is added. The first spraying should be done about the time when the shucks are dropping from the young fruit; the second, from two to three weeks after the first, using the same combinations as for the first; the third, about one month before the fruit ripens, with self-boiled lime-sulfur 8–8–50, omitting the arsenate of lead.

Black spot, or scab (Fig. 215)

Black spot, or scab, often proves injurious in wet seasons, and particularly in damp or sheltered situations. While this disease attacks twigs and leaves also, it is most conspicuous and injurious on the fruit, where it appears as dark spots or blotches. In severe infestations the fruit cracks. In the treatment of this disease it is of prime importance *to secure a free circulation of air about the fruit.* This may be accomplished by avoiding low sites, by pruning, and by removal of windbreaks. The trees should be sprayed with self-boiled lime-sulfur 8–8–50, applied at the same time as for brown rot.

Leaf curl Leaf curl is a fungous disease in which the leaves become colored, swollen, and distorted in spring, and drop in June and July. Elberta is an especially susceptible variety. The disease is easily and completely controlled by spraying the trees once *before the buds swell*, with bordeaux 5–5–50, or with the lime-sulfur solutions used for San José scale (see under *Insecticides*, page 32).

Mildew Mildew is a white, powdery growth on young leaves and tips of shoots, often spotting fruit. Trees should be sprayed with self-boiled lime-sulfur or dusted with sulfur.

Yellows Yellows is a so-called physiological disease. Its cause is unknown. It is contagious, and is serious in some localities. It is known by the premature ripening of the fruit, by red streaks and spots in the fruit flesh, and by the peculiar clusters of sickly, yellowish shoots that appear on the limbs here and there. Eradication is the only means of control. Diseased trees should be dug out and burned as soon as discovered.

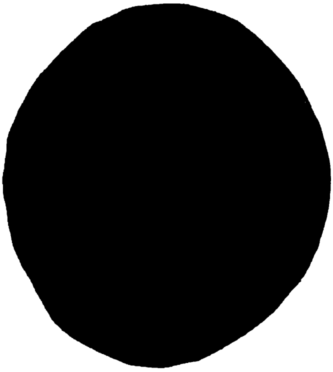


FIG. 215.— *Black spot on peach*

PEAR

Codling moth — See under *Apple*.

False tarnished plant bug The false tarnished plant bugs are small, green, sucking insects, which puncture the newly set pears causing them to become knotty (Fig. 216) and rendering them gritty. The trees should be sprayed thoroughly with "black leaf 40" tobacco extract — ¾-pint in 100 gallons of water, to which 4 or 5 pounds of soap is added — just as the last of the petals are falling. The application should be repeated a few days later.

Leaf blister-mite See under *Apple*. On pears lime-sulfur has also been found effective.

FIG. 216.—*Pear injured by the false tarnished plant bug*

Pear psylla Pear psyllas are minute, yellowish, flat-bodied, sucking insects, which are often found working in the axils of the leaves and in the fruit early in the season. They develop into minute, cicada-like, jumping lice. The young psyllas secrete a large quantity of honeydew, in which a peculiar black fungus grows, giving the bark a characteristic sooty appearance. There may be four broods annually and the trees are often seriously injured. The trees should be sprayed for the adult psyllas, in a warm spell in December or March, with "black leaf 40" tobacco extract, ¾-pint to 100 gallons of water with 5 pounds of whale-oil soap added. The trees should be sprayed for the eggs, just before the blossom clusters open, with lime-sulfur at scale strength. They should be sprayed for the young psyllas after the blossoms fall, with "black leaf 40" tobacco extract, ¾-pint to 100 gallons of water with 5 pounds of soap added. The application may be repeated if necessary.

Pear slug (Fig. 217) The small, slimy, dark green pear slugs skeletonize the leaves in June. A second brood appears in August. The trees should be sprayed thoroughly with 4 pounds of arsenate of lead in 100 gallons of water.

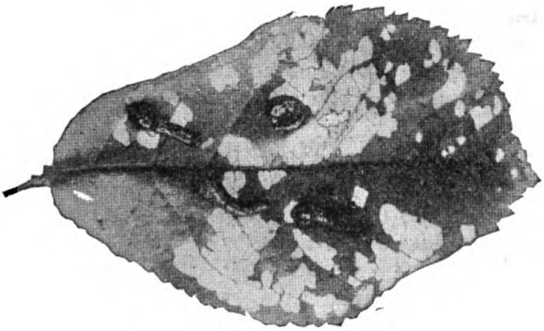


FIG. 217.— *Pear slugs skeletonizing a leaf*

San José scale — See under *Apple*.

Fire blight The fire blight of pears is the same disease as the fire blight of apples, but it is more destructive to pears. It kills the twigs and the branches, on which the leaves suddenly blacken and die but do not fall. It also produces cankers on the trunk and large limbs. Blighted branches should be pruned out as soon as discovered, cutting from 6 to 8 inches below the lowest evidences of the disease, and disinfecting with corrosive sublimate solution 1 to 1,000. Limb and body cankers should be cleaned out as described for fire blight on apple trees. All large wounds should be disinfected and covered with a coat of paint or gas tar.

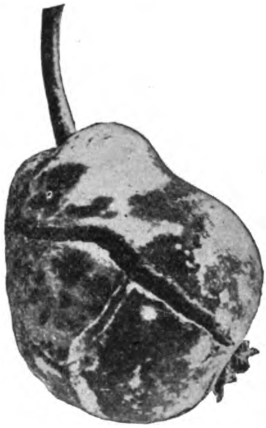


FIG. 218.— *Pear scab*

Scab (Fig. 218) Scab is a fungous disease very similar to apple scab, but not the same. It is very destructive to some varieties of pears, as, for example, Flemish and Seckel. The trees should be sprayed three times with bordeaux 3-3-50, as for apple scab (page 10).

PLUM

Plum curculio (Fig. 219) The adult plum curculio is a small snout-beetle, which inserts its eggs under the skin of the fruit and then makes a characteristic crescent-shaped cut beneath it. The grub feeds within the fruit and causes it to drop. When full-grown the grub enters the ground, changing in late summer to the beetle, which finally goes into hibernation in sheltered places. Trees should be sprayed just after the blossoms fall with arsenate of lead, from 6 to 8 pounds in 100 gallons of water, the application being repeated in about a week.

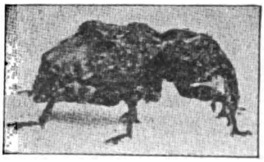


FIG. 219.— *Beetle of plum curculio. Enlarged*

Black knot Black knot of plums is the same disease as black knot of cherries and is controlled in the same way (page 14).

Brown rot (Fig. 220) Brown rot of plums is the same disease as brown rot of peaches and should be treated in the same way (page 21).

Leaf spot

Leaf spot of plums is the same as leaf spot of cherries and may be controlled by two or three applications of self-boiled lime-sulfur, or, except in the case of Japanese varieties, which are somewhat resistant to the disease, of lime-sulfur solution diluted 1 to 50. The first application should be made about ten days after the blossoms fall, and the others at intervals of about three weeks.

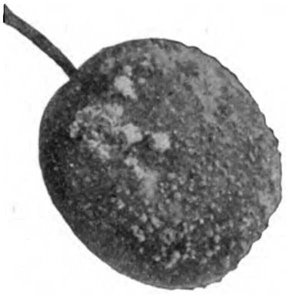


FIG. 220.—*Brown rot on plum*

POTATO

Colorado potato beetle

The yellow-striped Colorado potato beetle emerges from hibernation in the spring and lays masses of orange-colored eggs on the undersides of the leaves. The larvæ are known as *slugs* and *soft-shells*, and cause most of the injury to the vines. They may be killed by spraying with paris green, 1 pound in 100 gallons of bordeaux mixture. It may sometimes be necessary to use a greater strength of the poison, particularly on the older slugs.

Flea beetle

The small black flea beetles riddle the leaves with small holes and cause them to die. Bordeaux mixture as applied for potato blight protects the plants by making them distasteful to these beetles. (See under *Late blight.*)

Black leg

Black leg is a bacterial disease affecting the vine and sometimes causing a dark-colored decay of the tuber. The stems become black and shrunken at the base, causing the vine to have an unhealthy yellowish appearance. Diseased plants should be eliminated from the field; no diseased, bruised, cracked, nor decayed tubers should be used for planting; and the seed should be treated with corrosive sublimate or formaldehyde.

Common scab

Scab is caused by a fungus that attacks the surface of the tubers. It is carried over on diseased tubers and in the soil. Tubers should be treated before cutting by soaking in formalin solution, 1 pint to 30 gallons of water, for two hours, or is corrosive sublimate, 1 ounce to 7½ gallons of water, for one and one-half hours. They should be planted in clean soil. In general, when land becomes badly infested with scab it is best to plant it with other crops for several years. The application of lime or wood ashes to potato soil should be avoided.

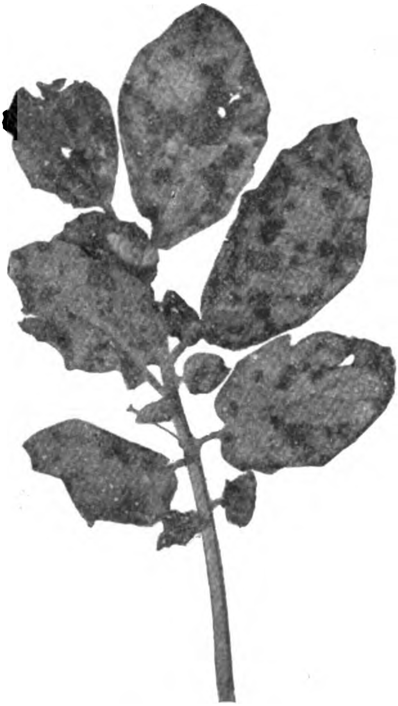


FIG. 221.— *Early blight of potato*

Early blight (**Fig. 221**)

Early blight is a fungous disease, showing as a leaf spot, which may be so severe as to cause vines to die. Affected vines produce small tubers and consequent low yield. Vines should be sprayed with bordeaux 5-5-50.

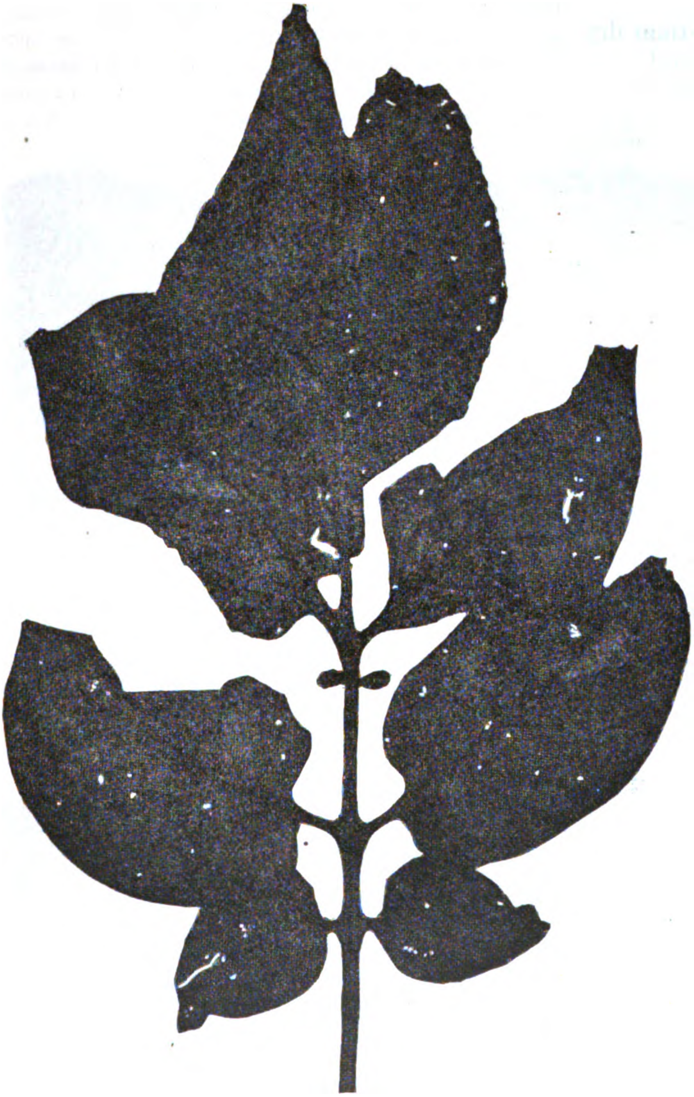


FIG. 222.— *Potato leaves affected by the late blight.* (*Photograph by New York Agr. Exp. Sta., Geneva*)

Late blight (Figs. 222-223)

Late blight is a fungous disease showing as a leaf blight and as a dry rot of tubers. Sometimes the tuber rot does not show until after storage. The late blight is often confused with tipburn, arsenical injury, or flea-beetle injury. The plants should be sprayed from five to eight times with bordeaux 5-5-50, beginning when the vines are six inches high and continuing throughout the growing season. Late spraying on late varieties is especially necessary.

Fusarium dry rot (Fig. 224) Fusarium dry rot is a storage dry rot, in which the decay extends to the center of the tuber, the affected area at the surface having a wrinkled, sunken appearance, often with numerous white tufts of mold breaking through. Selecting clean tubers for planting, seed treatment, and care in handling the crop, will reduce the amount of this rot.

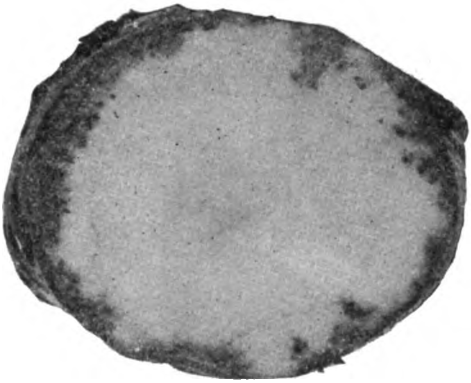


FIG. 223.— *Cross section of a potato tuber affected by blight rot*

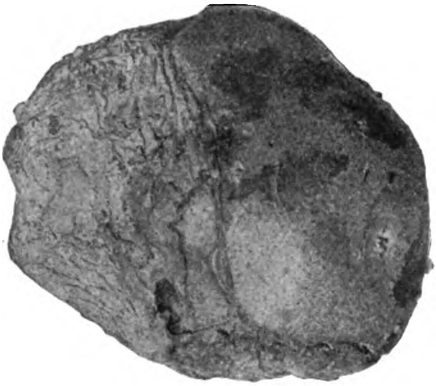


FIG. 224.— *Fusarium dry rot of potato tuber*

Physiological vine diseases Physiological vine diseases, such as curly dwarf, leaf roll, and mosaic, cause great reduction in yield. The name is descriptive of each of these. The diseases are transmitted by means of seed tubers. Selection of healthy vines in the field is the only known method of eradication.

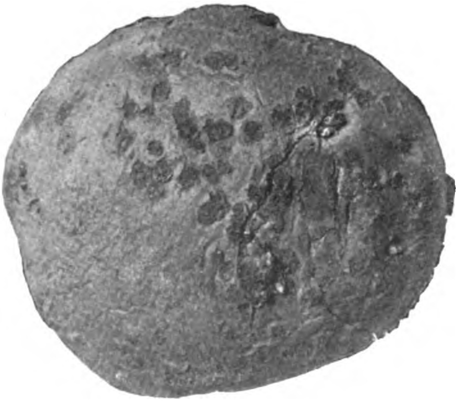


FIG. 225.— *Powdery scab on potato tuber*

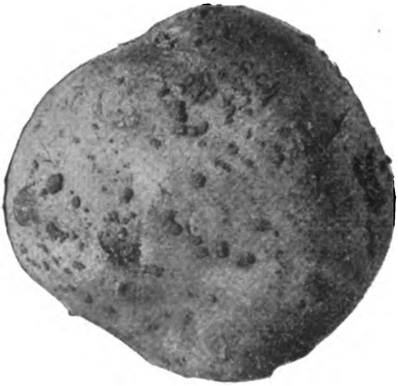


FIG. 226.— *Sclerotia of Rhizoctonia on potato tuber*

Powdery scab (Fig. 225) Powdery scab, recently discovered as occurring in this State, is a slime mold disease affecting the tubers. It appears first as small, discolored pimples, which enlarge and break through the skin, forming pustules filled with brown powder, the spores of the organism. The infected areas are quarantined. No tubers from infected fields should be planted. A wide rotation of crops and seed treatment aid in control.

Rhizoctoniose (Figs. 226-227) Rhizoctoniose is a fungous disease showing as numerous black bodies of various sizes on the surface of tubers, and as reddish brown cankers on young sprouts, which often die. The disease is said to bring about also a rosetting of the vines and the production of many small tubers near the surface of the soil. Crops should be rotated and seed tubers should be treated with corrosive sublimate.

Tipburn Tipburn is a dying and blackening of the tips and the margins of leaves, caused by hot, dry weather following favorable conditions for growth. Good cultural practices, combined with thorough spraying as for late blight, will materially reduce the amount of injury.

Wilt Wilt is a disease produced by either of two fungi which cause a wilting and dying of the lower leaves and a discoloration of the sap vessels of vine and tuber. This shows in the tuber as a dark ring on the surface of a slice across the stem end. Diseased tubers should be rejected and crop rotation should be practiced. Much progress can be made by field selection.

PRUNE

(For insect pests, see *Plum*)

QUINCE

Quince curculio The quince curculio is somewhat larger than that which infests the plum, and differs from it in its life history. The grubs leave the fruits in the fall and enter the ground, where they hibernate and transform to adults the next May, June, or July, depending on the season. When the adults appear they may be shaken from the trees onto sheets or curculio catchers, and destroyed. In order to determine when they appear, a few trees may be shaken daily, beginning the latter part of May. Good results are sometimes obtained in reducing the amount of infestation by picking off and destroying all infested fruit about a month before picking time, thus leaving on the trees only first- and second-class quinces.

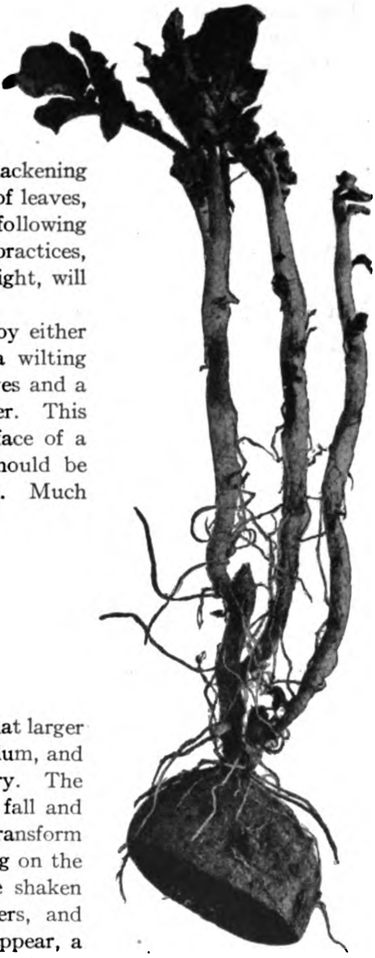


FIG. 227.—*Rhizoctoniose on young shoots of potato*

Round-headed apple-tree borer — See under *Apple.*

San José scale — See under *Apple.*

Fire blight Fire blight of quinces is the same disease as fire blight of pears (page 23). Affected branches should be cut out and the wounds disinfected with corrosive sublimate. Sources of infection should be cleaned up.

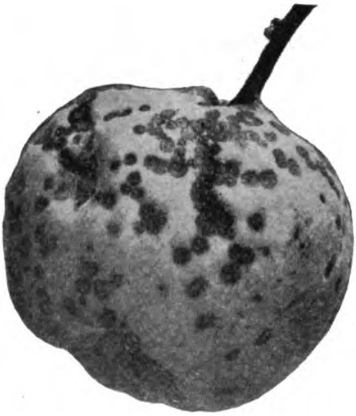


FIG. 228.— *Fruit spot on quince*

Leaf and fruit spot (Fig. 228) Leaf and fruit spot is a fungous disease producing round, reddish brown spots on the leaves and fruit. The trees should be sprayed three times with bordeaux, as for apple and pear scab.

RASPBERRY

Cane borer The larva of the cane borer is a grub that burrows down through the canes, causing them to die. In laying her eggs, the adult beetle girdles the tip of the cane with a ring of punctures, causing it to wither and droop. In midsummer the drooping tips should be cut off and destroyed.

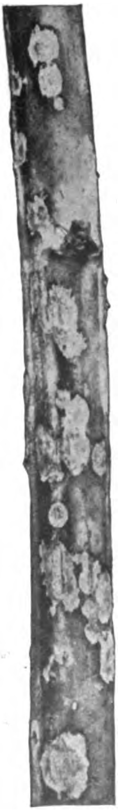


FIG. 229. — *Raspberry anthracnose*

Sawfly The greenish, spiny larvæ of the sawfly feed on the tender leaves in spring. The bushes should be sprayed with paris green or arsenate of lead, or hellebore should be applied.

Anthracnose (Fig. 229) Anthracnose is very destructive to black raspberries and to the purple variety Columbian, but is not often injurious to the red varieties. It is detected by the circular or elliptical, gray, scab-like spots on the canes. Young plants should not be taken from diseased plantations. All old canes and badly diseased new ones should be removed as soon as the fruit is gathered. Weeds should be kept down. Spraying with bordeaux 4–4–50 will control the disease. The first application should be made when the new canes are from six to eight inches high, and should be followed with two additional applications at intervals of from ten to fourteen days.

Cane blight, or wilt Cane blight, or wilt, is a destructive disease affecting both red and black varieties. Fruiting canes suddenly wilt and die. The disease is caused by a fungus that attacks the cane at some point and kills the bark and the wood, thereby causing the parts above to die. No successful method of treatment is known. In making new settings only plants from healthy plantations should be used. The fruiting canes should be removed as soon as the fruit is gathered.

Crown gall, or root knot Crown gall, or root knot, is often destructive, particularly to the red varieties. It is detected by the large, irregular knots on the roots and at the crown underground. It is a contagious disease. *Plants showing root knots should never be set.* Planting on infested land should be avoided. The same disease occurs on peaches.

Red rust Red rust is often serious on black varieties, but does not affect red ones. It is the same as red rust of blackberry. Infected plants should be dug up and destroyed.

ROSE

Aphid and leaf hopper (Fig. 230) The green aphids, or plant lice, usually work on buds, and the yellow leaf hoppers feed on the leaves. The bushes should be sprayed, whenever necessary, with "black leaf 40" tobacco extract, 1 ounce to 6½ gallons of water in which ½ pound of ordinary laundry soap has been dissolved.

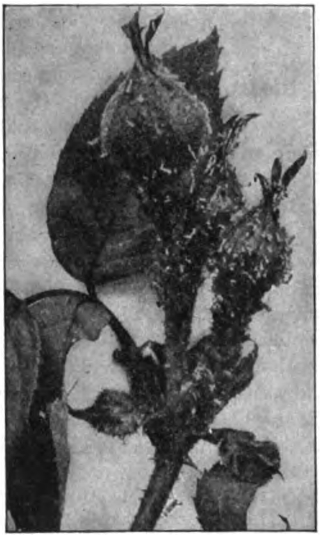


FIG. 230.— *Rose aphids, or plant lice*

Rose chafer — See under *Grape.*

Rose slug — See *Pear slug*

Black leaf spot Black leaf spot is one of the commonest diseases of the rose. It causes the leaves to fall prematurely. The bushes should be sprayed with bordeaux 5-5-50, beginning as soon as the first spots appear on the leaves. Two or three applications at intervals of ten days will very largely control the disease. Ammoniacal copper carbonate may be used on roses grown under glass. Applications should be made once a week until the disease is under control.

Mildew Mildew is a surface-feeding fungus and is killed by the fumes of sulfur. For greenhouse roses, the steam pipes should be kept painted with a paste made of equal parts of lime and sulfur mixed with water. Outdoor roses that become infested with mildew may be dusted with sulfur or sprayed with a solution of potassium sulfide, 1 ounce to 3 gallons of water. The plants should be sprayed or dusted with the sulfur two or three times, at intervals of a week or ten days.

SQUASH

(See *Cucumber, Melon, and Squash,* page 14)

STRAWBERRY

White grub (Fig. 231) The large, curved, white grubs that attack the roots of strawberry plants are the larvæ of the common June beetles. They live in the ground, feeding on the roots of grasses, weeds, and the like. They should be dug out from beneath infested plants. Cultivation in early fall of land intended for planting will destroy many of the pupæ.

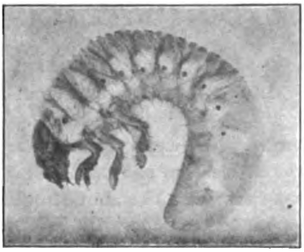


FIG. 231.— *White grub*

Leaf spot Leaf spot is the commonest and most serious fungous disease of the strawberry. It is called also *rust* and *leaf blight.* The leaves show spots which are at first of a deep purple color, but later enlarge and the center becomes gray or nearly white. The fungus passes the winter in the old diseased leaves that fall to the ground. In setting new plantations, all diseased leaves should be removed from the plants before they are taken to the field. Soon after growth begins, the newly set plants should be sprayed with bordeaux 5-5-50. Three or four additional applications should be made during the season. The following spring, the spray should be applied just before blossoming and again from ten to fourteen days later. If the bed is to be fruited a second time, the plants should be mowed down and the beds burned over as soon as the fruit is gathered.

TOMATO

Blossom end rot

Blossom end rot is a sunken dry rot becoming black at the blossom end of the fruit. It is not a parasitic disease. It may be brought on by a sudden check in the water supply and also by continued successive waterings. It may be somewhat reduced by avoiding heavy applications of stable manure, and by practicing good cultural methods in order to conserve moisture and afford a more uniform supply to the plants throughout the season.

Leaf spot

Leaf spot is the most destructive foliage disease of the tomato in the State. It is a fungous disease, and its distinguishing character is that it begins on the lower leaves and works toward the top, killing the foliage as it goes. It is controlled with difficulty because it is carried over winter in the diseased leaves and tops that fall to the ground. When setting out plants, all the lower leaves that touch the ground should be pinched off; also any leaves that show suspicuous-looking dead spots. The disease often starts in the seed bed. The plants should be sprayed very thoroughly on the undersides of the leaves with bordeaux 5-5-50, beginning as soon as they are set out and repeating the application every week or ten days.

TURNIP

Clubroot

Clubroot is the same disease as the clubroot of cabbage. The same treatment is effective.

Soft rot

Soft rot is a bacterial disease, the same as soft rot of cabbage. Planting should be on soils free from the disease, and varieties especially susceptible should not be used. The white turnip seems to be more susceptible than the yellow varieties.

WHEAT

Loose smut

Loose smut is conspicuous in the field at heading time. Both grain and chaff are attacked and transformed into a loose black powder, most of which is blown away by harvest time, leaving the stalk bare. The disease is common and destructive; in 1907 the average loss in New York was at least 10 per cent. This smut is not controlled by treatment with formaldehyde or other chemicals, but should be prevented by treating the seed with hot water as explained on page 37. Seed from fields known to have been free from smut should be used.

Stinking smut

Stinking smut is not readily detected until harvest time. The affected heads appear nearly normal, only the kernels being attacked. The diseased kernels are composed of a brown, foul-smelling powder. They may be crushed easily between the thumb and the finger. The disease may be readily controlled by treating the seeds with formaldehyde solution — 1 pint to 45 gallons of water — immersing them in the solution long enough to skim off the smutted kernels, which rise to the surface, and then spreading them out and drying them.

SPRAY MATERIALS

INSECTICIDES

Arsenate of lead

Arsenate of lead can be applied in a stronger mixture without injuring the foliage than can other arsenical poisons. It is therefore much used against beetles and other insects that are hard to poison. It is bought in the form of a paste or a powder. The paste should be mixed thoroughly with a small amount of water before placing in the sprayer; otherwise the nozzles will clog. The powder may be applied dry or mixed with water. Arsenate of lead may be safely used with bordeaux or lime-sulfur. It is used in strengths varying from 4 to 10 pounds per 100 gallons, depending on the kind of insect to be killed.

Paris green

Paris green is used in varying strengths, depending on the insect to be controlled and the kind of plant treated. The powder is mixed into a paste and then added to the water. The mixture should be kept thoroughly agitated while spraying. If for use on fruit trees, 1 pound of quicklime should be added for every pound of paris green, to prevent burning the foliage. For potatoes paris green is frequently used alone, but it is much safer to add the lime. Paris green and bordeaux mixture may be combined without lessening the value of either, and the caustic action of the arsenic is thus prevented; but it is unsafe to use paris green with lime-sulfur.

Hellebore

For wet application fresh white hellebore should be used, 4 ounces to 2 or 3 gallons of water. For dry application 1 pound of hellebore to 5 pounds of flour or air-slaked lime should be used. Hellebore is a yellowish white powder made from the roots of the white hellebore plant. It loses its strength after a time and should be used fresh. It is employed as a substitute for the arsenical poisons on plants or fruits soon to be eaten.

Kerosene emulsion

Kerosene emulsion is composed of ½ pound of hard, soft, or whale-oil soap, 1 gallon of water, and 2 gallons of kerosene. The soap is dissolved in hot water; this is then removed from the fire, and while it is still hot the kerosene is added. The liquid should be pumped back into itself for five or ten minutes or until it becomes a creamy mass. If properly made the oil will not separate on cooling.

For use on dormant trees, the emulsion should be diluted with from 5 to 7 parts of water; for killing plant lice on foliage, with from 10 to 15 parts of water. Crude oil emulsion is made in the same way by substituting crude oil in place of kerosene. The strength of oil emulsions is frequently indicated by the percentage of oil in the diluted liquid, as follows:

For a 10-per-cent emulsion, 17 gallons of water is added to 3 gallons of stock emulsion.
For a 15-per-cent emulsion, 10½ gallons of water is added to 3 gallons of stock emulsion.
For a 20-per-cent emulsion, 7 gallons of water is added to 3 gallons of stock emulsion.
For a 25-per-cent emulsion, 5 gallons of water is added to 3 gallons of stock emulsion.

Carbolic acid emulsion

Carbolic acid emulsion is composed of 1 pound of soap, 1 gallon of water, and 1 pint of crude carbolic acid. The soap is dissolved in hot water, the carbolic acid is added, and the mixture is agitated into an emulsion. For use against root maggots, the emulsion should be diluted with 30 parts of water.

Tobacco preparation

Nicotine is the poisonous principle of tobacco. It is a powerful contact insecticide. It is now most widely used in the form of nicotine sulfate, a non-volatile liquid, and is usually found in the market in the form of a solution containing 40 per cent of nicotine or about 52 per cent of nicotine sulfate. When used for plant lice or similar soft-bodied insects it is diluted with from 800 to 1000 parts of water; that is, from ¾ to 1 pint is used in 100 gallons of water. The efficiency of the poison is greatly increased by the addition of from 4 to 5 pounds of soap to each 100 gallons of the liquid; the soap makes the material spread and stick better. Nicotine sulfate can be combined with either bordeaux mixture or lime-sulfur and arsenate of lead, without decreasing the efficiency of the spray.

Nicotine is also used for fumigating greenhouses, either by smudging with damp tobacco stems or by evaporating a nicotine extract in which the nicotine is not in the sulfate form. There are also on the market various kinds of punks and papers containing nicotine and designed for fumigation.

Soaps

Whale-oil soap is an effective insecticide for plant-lice. It is dissolved in hot water and diluted so as to obtain 1 pound of soap to every 5 or 10 gallons of water. This strength is effective against plant lice and similar soft-bodied insects. Homemade soaps and good laundry soaps, such as ivory soap, are often as effective as whale-oil soap.

Miscible oils

There are now on the market a number of preparations of petroleum and other oils intended primarily for use against the San José scale. They mix readily with cold water and are immediately available for use. While quickly prepared, easily applied, and generally effective, they cost considerably more than lime-sulfur. They are, however, less corrosive to the pumps and more agreeable to use, and they have a decided value in special cases as for destroying the eggs of the fruit-tree leaf-roller. They should be diluted with not more than 15 parts of water, and should be used only on dormant trees when there is no danger of freezing.

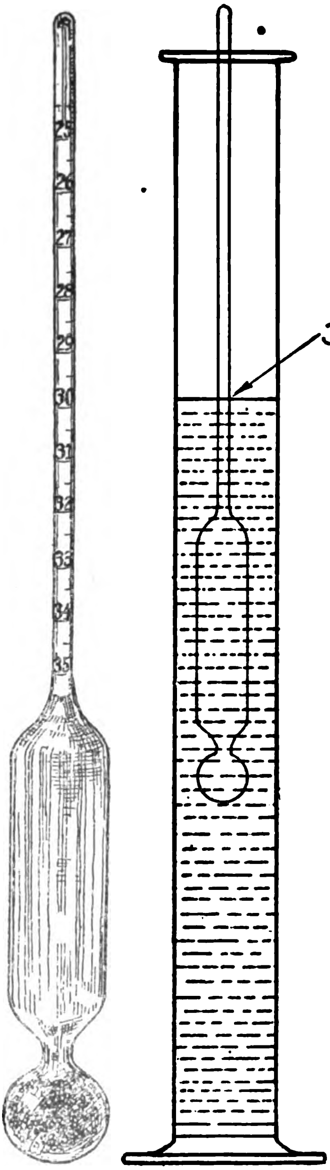


FIG. 232.—*Hydrometer used for testing concentrated lime-sulfur solutions*

Commercial concentrated lime-sulfur washes

Commercial concentrated lime-sulfur solutions are now widely used by fruit-growers in combating certain insect pests and fungous diseases. Careful and useful experiments have shown that these mixtures, when thoroughly applied, will give very satisfactory results in controlling San José scale, blister mite, and apple scab. For the control of the two insect pests the material is applied to the infested trees only in the dormant period, and for apple scab it is applied as a summer spray in a much more diluted condition.

In order to use one of these mixtures intelligently and effectively it becomes necessary to know its strength, or, in other words, its degree of concentration. This is best found by using an instrument known as a Baumé hydrometer. An accurate hydrometer may be bought through a local druggist. The instrument should be designed for determining densities between 25° and 35° Baumé. In testing a lime-sulfur solution, some of the clear reddish liquid is poured into any deep receptacle, deeper than the hydrometer is long, and when the receptacle is full the instrument is dropped gently into the solution and left until the solution comes to rest. The degree of concentration, which is the one just at the surface of the liquid, is then read on the hydrometer. When the degree of concentration of the solution is known, the proper dilution may be obtained by referring to the following table, computed from data given in Bulletin 329 of the New York State Agricultural Experiment Station at Geneva:

Concentrate testing (degrees Baumé)	Dilution for San José scale and blister mite	Dilution for peach leaf curl (trees dormant)	Dilution for apple (summer spray)	Dilution for pear and cherry (summer spray)
35	1 to 8¾	1 to 16½	1 to 43½	1 to 56
34	1 to 8¼	1 to 16	1 to 42½	1 to 54
33	1 to 8	1 to 15½	1 to 41	1 to 52
32	1 to 7½	1 to 15	1 to 40	1 to 50
31	1 to 7¼	1 to 14½	1 to 39	1 to 48
30	1 to 6¾	1 to 14	1 to 37½	1 to 46
29	1 to 6½	1 to 13½	1 to 36	1 to 44
28	1 to 6	1 to 13	1 to 35	1 to 42
27	1 to 5¾	1 to 12½	1 to 33½	1 to 40½
26	1 to 5¼	1 to 12	1 to 32½	1 to 38½
25	1 to 5	1 to 11	1 to 31	1 to 37

Arsenate of lead may be added to the diluted concentrate at the rate of from 2 to 3 pounds to 50 gallons. Paris green, arsenite of lime, or arsenite of soda, should not be used with lime-sulfur.

Homemade concentrated lime-sulfur solution

Fairly satisfactory concentrated solutions may be made at home, if the work is done carefully and thoroughly. Homemade solutions will vary considerably and must all be tested in order to determine the dilutions. They will probably contain more or less sediment. In order to make them with as little sediment as possible, lime at least 90 per cent pure should be used and the mixture should be constantly stirred while cooking. The Geneva formula calls for 36 pounds of pure lump lime or 38 pounds of 95-per-cent lump lime or 40 pounds of 90-per-cent lime, with 80 pounds of flowers of sulfur or sulfur flour and 50 gallons of water. The following directions for making the solution are condensed from Bulletin 330 of the State Experiment Station at Geneva, by P. J. Parrott and W. J. Schoene: Heat about 10 gallons of water and use it to slake the lime. As slaking commences add the sulfur and stir vigorously in order to break up lumps. When the lime is all slaked add enough water to make about 60 gallons if the boiling is done in an open kettle. Boil vigorously for one hour. If the mixture is to be stored, strain it into a barrel and cork tightly so as to prevent evaporation. Store where there is no danger of freezing. When ready to use, test the concentrate with a Baumé hydrometer and dilute according to the foregoing table.

Fumigation with hydrocyanic acid gas

Hydrocyanic acid gas is a deadly poison and the greatest care is required in its use. From 98- to 100-per-cent pure potassium cyanide only should be used, and a good grade of commercial sulfuric acid. The chemicals are always combined in the following proportion: potassium cyanide 1 ounce, sulfuric acid 1 fluid ounce, water 3 fluid ounces. Only an earthen dish should be used. *The water should be poured in first*, and the sulfuric acid added to it. The required amount of cyanide is put into a thin paper bag, and when all is ready it is dropped into the liquid and the room must be left immediately. For mills and dwellings, 1 ounce of cyanide should be used for every 100 cubic feet of space. The doors and windows should be made as tight as possible by placing strips of wet paper over the cracks. Silverware and food should be removed, and if brass and nickel work cannot be removed it should be covered with vaseline or with cloths. The proper amount of the acid and water for every room is then placed in 2-gallon jars; two or more of these are used in large rooms or halls. The potassium cyanide is weighed out in paper bags, which are placed near the jars. When all is ready, the cyanide is dropped into the jars, beginning on the top floors since the fumes are lighter than air. In large buildings it is frequently necessary to suspend the bags of cyanide over the jars by cords running through screw eyes and all leading to a place near the door. By cutting all the cords at once the cyanide will be lowered into the jars and the operator may escape without injury. The fumigation should continue all night, all outside doors being locked and danger signs being placed on the house.

Fumigation of greenhouses

No general formula can be given for fumigating the different kinds of plants grown in greenhouses, as the species and varieties differ greatly in their ability to withstand the effects of the gas. Ferns and roses are very susceptible to injury, and fumigation, if attempted at all, should be performed with great caution. Fumigation will not kill insect eggs, and therefore must be repeated when the new brood appears. Fumigating should be done only at night when there is no wind. The house should be as dry as possible, and the temperature as near 60° as is practicable.

FUNGICIDES

The most important fungicides are as follows: bordeaux mixture, concentrated lime-sulfur, self-boiled lime-sulfur, ammoniacal copper carbonate, potassium sulfide, copper sulfate, sulfur, corrosive sublimate, and formaldehyde.

Bordeaux mixture

Bordeaux mixture is made by mixing a dilute solution of copper sulfate (blue vitriol) with a dilute milk of lime. The mixture may be made of different strengths by using different amounts of the copper sulfate and lime to a given amount of water. A mixture made of 3 pounds of copper sulfate and 3 pounds of lime to 50 gallons of water is indicated by the formula 3-3-50; one made of 4 pounds of copper sulfate and 4 pounds of lime to 50 gallons of water, by 4-4-50; one made of 5 pounds of copper sulfate and 5 pounds of lime to 50 gallons of water, by 5-5-50; and so on. In order to make bordeaux mixture of any strength, the procedure should be as follows:

Stock solution of copper sulfate.—A stock solution of copper sulfate may be made in a barrel, using 50 pounds of copper sulfate dissolved in 50 gallons of water. A gallon of the solution thus contains 1 pound of copper sulfate. In case large quantities of stock solution are needed, two pounds of copper sulfate may be dissolved to one gallon of water. If the crystals, placed in a gunny sack, are suspended so as to be just beneath the surface of the water, they will dissolve in the course of three or four hours.

Stock lime.—A stock mixture of lime may be made by placing a bushel of good stone lime in a barrel, and slaking by the gradual addition of water. Care must be taken not to " drown " the lime. When all has become pulverized by the slaking, water is added to make a paste, after which enough more water is added to make 50 gallons. This should not be allowed to dry out. Hydrated lime (which is already slaked) may be used in place of stone lime, but air-slaked lime should never be used.

Making the mixture.— The sprayer is filled three-fourths full of water. If a 5-5-50 solution is desired, 5 gallons of copper sulfate stock solution is added to this water for every 50 gallons of mixture to be made. The solution requires stirring until it is well diluted, after which 5 gallons of the stock mixture of milk of lime is added to each 50 gallons of mixture. The lime water should be run through a strainer in order to prevent the large particles of lime from getting into the sprayer tank. While the milk of lime is being added to the dilute copper sulfate solution in the sprayer tank, the material in the tank should be stirred constantly. The sky-blue bordeaux mixture will result. Enough water to make the required amount of mixture is then added.

Testing the mixture.— The mixture should next be tested with a few drops of a solution of potassium ferrocyanide. This is made by dissolving crystals of potassium ferrocyanide in soft water. Five cents worth of crystals dissolved in a pint of water will provide enough of the solution to last throughout the season. Should a brown-colored precipitate result when a few drops of this solution are added to the bordeaux mixture, it would indicate that more lime milk is needed to neutralize the copper sulfate solution. When sufficient lime is added, no brown precipitate will be formed by the potassium ferrocyanide solution. Bordeaux mixture not properly neutralized will burn the foliage of plants when applied to it. It is unnecessary to measure the milk of lime in making the bordeaux mixture if the mixture is tested from time to time with ferrocyanide solution while adding the lime. The test will indicate when sufficient lime is present.

Bordeaux injury (Fig. 233)

Some plants are injured by bordeaux of ordinary strength, even when it is properly made. Others, as the apple, are sometimes injured by a weak bordeaux under certain weather conditions. The leaves of most varieties of stone fruits, especially peaches and Japanese plums, are almost sure to be injured by bordeaux except in very weak mixtures. The injury to these plants consists usually of small holes in the leaves, very similar in appearance to the shot-hole effect of certain fungi. The injury on apple occurs on both the leaves and the fruit. On the leaves it consists of definite brown spots very much like certain leaf spots due to fungi. On the fruit the injury takes the form of russeting. It may even cause large cracks to appear. Some varieties of apples suffer more than others. Wet weather during the spraying season appears to be one of the chief factors in the production of bordeaux injury on apples. It has also been shown that " the more copper sulfate, the greater the injury." This injury may be avoided by using lime-sulfur instead of bordeaux.

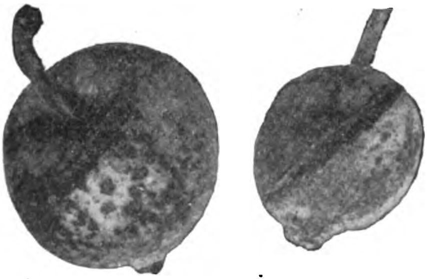


FIG. 233.— *Bordeaux injury on apples*

Concentrated lime-sulfur — See under *Insecticides*, page 32.

Self-boiled lime-sulfur

Self-boiled lime-sulfur is not a boiled solution, as might be inferred from the name. It is prepared by placing in a barrel 8 pounds of the best stone lime, to which is added a small quantity of cold water in order to start it slaking. Eight pounds of sulfur worked through a sieve to break up the lumps is then added slowly to the slaking lime, which is kept from burning by the addition of cold water; care must be taken, however, not to add so much water that the lime will be drowned. The slaking mixture must be stirred constantly. Just as soon as the slaking is completed (which should be in from five to fifteen minutes), the barrel is filled with cold water (50 gallons). The mixture is strained into the sprayer tank through a sieve of 20 meshes to the inch. It must be agitated constantly while being applied, as it settles rapidly. When properly made, this is merely a fine mechanical mixture of lime and sulfur produced by the heat and the bubbling action of slaking, and should have but little sulfur in solution. This mixture is especially adapted for the spraying of peaches and plums in foliage, as it causes no injury. Arsenate of lead may be added.

Ammoniacal copper carbonate

Ammoniacal copper carbonate is composed of 5 ounces of copper carbonate, 3 pints of ammonia, and 50 gallons of water. The ammonia is diluted in 7 or 8 parts of water, and a paste is made of the copper carbonate with a little water. The paste is added to the diluted ammonia and stirred until dissolved. Enough water to make 50 gallons is added. This mixture loses strength on standing, and should be made as required. It is used in place of bordeaux when one wishes to avoid the coloring of maturing fruits or ornamental plants. It is probably not so effective as bordeaux.

Potassium sulfide

Three ounces of potassium sulfide (liver of sulfur) is added to 10 gallons of water. As this mixture loses strength on standing, it should be made just before using. It is particularly valuable for the powdery mildew of many plants, especially of gooseberry, and for carnation rust, rose mildew, and the like.

Copper sulfate

One pound of copper sulfate is dissolved in from 15 to 25 gallons of water. It is then ready for use. One pound in twenty gallons of water has been found effective against peach leaf curl. This mixture should never be applied to the foliage, but must be used before the buds break. A much weaker solution has been recommended for trees in leaf, but it is rarely used.

Sulfur

Flowers of sulfur or extra finely ground sulfur flour possesses considerable value as a fungicide. The sulfur may be dusted over the plants, especially when they are wet. It is most effective in hot, dry weather. In rose houses, it is mixed with half its bulk of lime and made into a paste with water. This is painted on the steam pipes. The fumes destroy mildew on the roses. Mixed with lime, it has proved effective in the control of onion smut when drilled into the rows with the seed. Mixed with powdered arsenate of lead at the rate of 90 pounds of sulfur to 10 pounds of lead, it has proved effective in the control of biting insects and of apple scab.

Corrosive sublimate solution

One ounce of corrosive sublimate is mixed with 7½ gallons of water. It is an effective solution for treating seed potatoes, which should be soaked for one and one-half hours. One antiseptic tablet dissolved in a pint of water and stored in glass makes a solution suitable for disinfection of wounds. After cutting out fire blight or canker, the wound may be swabbed thoroughly with this solution. The solution should be used in wooden or glass vessels, as it reacts with metal and thereby loses strength. It is very poisonous. It is injurious to tools, and should be applied to the wounds, not to the tools.

Formaldehyde solution

Commercially formaldehyde solution contains about 40 per cent of the gas formaldehyde. One pint in 30 gallons of water will prevent potato scab if the tubers are soaked for two hours and planted in clean soil; or 1 pint in 45 gallons of water will prevent oat smut and stinking smut of wheat. The oat seed should be spread on the floor, sprinkled with the solution until it is wet, heaped up, and covered with blankets for from two to four hours.

Sticker, or adhesive

An efficient sticker may be made by mixing 2 pounds of resin, 1 pound of sal soda crystals, and 1 gallon of water. This is boiled until of a clear brown color — from one to one and one-half hours. It should be cooked in an iron kettle in the open. It is useful for onions, cabbage, and other plants that are hard to wet. This is the proper amount to be added to each 50 gallons of bordeaux for these plants; for other plants, this amount should be added to every 100 gallons of bordeaux. This mixture will prevent the bordeaux from being washed off by the heaviest rains.

Hot water

The smuts of certain cereals may be controlled by the use of hot water in treating the seed. The following so-called *modified Jensen method* is recommended in Bulletin 152 of the United States Bureau of Plant Industry, for treatment of seed for loose smuts of wheat and barley. This applies only to treating small quantities of seed for a seed plat from which clean seed for the general crop may be obtained.

"The clean seed should be soaked for from five to seven hours in water at ordinary room temperature, 17° to 22° C. (63° to 72° F.). It should be placed in small, loose sacks or wire baskets containing not more than one-half peck each and drained for a short time. It is of the greatest importance that the seed be treated in small lots in order that all of the grain may be quickly and uniformly brought to the desired temperature. Two tubs or vats of water should be provided. In one tub (No. 2) the exact temperature required should be maintained. The other tub (No 1) is used for bringing the grain to the temperature of the treatment, so as not to lower the temperature in tub No. 2. Galvanized iron tubs of 20 to 40 gallons capacity and kerosene or gasoline double-burner stoves are sufficient for the treatment. The drained sacks or baskets of seed should be plunged into tub No. 1 for a minute, then transferred to tub No. 2, and kept agitated while immersed at temperatures and for the periods specified below, the temperatures mentioned being maintained as nearly as possible:

For barley, 15 minutes at 52° C. (125.6° F.)
For wheat, 10 minutes at 54° C. (129.2° F.).

"In treating barley, if the temperature should rise above 52° C. (125.6° F.) the time of immersion must be reduced to ten minutes at 53° C. (127.4° F.) or five minutes at 54° C. (129.2° F.). Above 54° C. (129.2 F.) there is no safe margin. If the temperature falls slightly below 52° C. (125.6° F.) the time of treatment should be increased in proportion. A temperature lower than 51° C. (123.8° F.) will not be effective. In treating wheat, if the temperature should rise above 54° C. (129.2° F.) or fall below 52° C. (125.6° F.), the time for immersion must be diminished or increased accordingly. Under no circumstances should a temperature of more than 55° C. (131° F.) be allowed. Temperatures below 51° C. (123.8° F.) are ineffective.

" Seed treated as indicated may be planted as soon as it is sufficiently dry to run freely through the drills. . . . . . . In many cases the grain germinates as well or better when rested after treatment than if sown immediately. . . . . .

" A good thermometer should be used for all treatments. . . . .

" Several weeks before sowing, the seed should be tested for germination."

SPRAYING SCHEDULE FOR APPLES

Dormant spray.— *As the buds begin to show green*

Lime-sulfur (32° Baumé) diluted 1 to 8, for San José scale, oyster-shell scale, and blister mite. If aphids are present this application should be delayed until just as the buds are bursting; at that time the young lice are clustering on the opening buds. " Black leaf 40 " tobacco extract should be added, ¾ pint to 100 gallons of lime-sulfur solution.

Summer sprays

(A) *As the buds begin to show pink*

Lime-sulfur (32° Baumé) diluted 1 to 40, for apple scab; from 4 to 6 pounds of arsenate of lead should be added to 100 gallons of lime-sulfur, for bud moth and case-bearers.

(B) *As the last of the petals are falling*

Lime-sulfur (32° Baumé) diluted 1 to 40, for apple scab; from 4 to 6 pounds of arsenate of lead should be added to 100 gallons of lime-sulfur, for codling moth. *This is the most important spray for the control of the codling moth.*

(C) *Three weeks after the petals fall*

Lime sulfur (32° Baumé) diluted 1 to 40, for apple scab; from 4 to 6 pounds of arsenate of lead should be added to 100 gallons of lime-sulfur, for codling moth.

(D) *The last week in July*

Lime-sulfur (32° Baumé) diluted 1 to 40, for apple scab; from 4 to 6 pounds of arsenate of lead should be added to 100 gallons of lime-sulfur for the second brood of codling moth.

SPRAYING SCHEDULE FOR PEACHES

Dormant spray.— *Before the leaf buds swell*

Lime-sulfur (32° Baumé) diluted 1 to 8, for San José scale and peach leaf curl. If San José scale is not to be combated, lime-sulfur (32° Baumé) diluted 1 to 15, or bordeaux 4–4–50, should be used.

Summer sprays

(A) *About the time when the calyxes, or shucks, are dropping from the young fruit*

(a) Self-boiled lime-sulfur 8–8–50, with arsenate of lead, 2 pounds to 50 gallons, for scab.

As this is rather early for scab and rot, the self-boiled lime-sulfur may be omitted, using merely

(b) Arsenate of lead, 2 pounds to 50 gallons of water, for curculio.

If the self-boiled lime-sulfur is omitted, milk of lime, made by slaking from 2 to 3 pounds of good stone lime, should be added to each 50 gallons of water. This will tend to counteract any caustic action of the arsenate of lead.

(B) *Two or three weeks later, or about one month after the petals fall*

(a) Self-boiled lime-sulfur 8–8–50, for scab and brown rot.

(b) Two pounds of arsenate of lead added to the preceding, for curculio.

(C) *About one month before the fruit ripens*

Self-boiled lime-sulfur 8–8–50, for brown rot. Arsenate of lead must not be added.

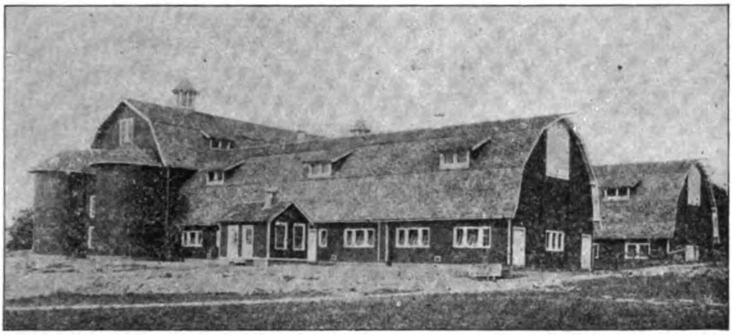
OCTOBER, 1912 (Revised in October, 1916) BULLETIN 321

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION OF
THE COLLEGE OF AGRICULTURE

Department of Animal Husbandry

COMPUTING RATIONS FOR FARM ANIMALS



By E. S. SAVAGE

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

Experimenting Staff

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

COMPUTING RATIONS FOR FARM ANIMALS[1]

E. S. SAVAGE

Farming is a business. The details in regard to profit and loss should be studied as closely by the farmer as by any other manufacturer. One of the important parts of the farmer's business in the manufacture of his finished products for market is his feeding operations in the production of meat and milk and, in the case of the horse, the production of work. Too little attention has been paid to the proper compounding of rations to get the best returns in product from the money paid out for feed, whether that feed has been actually bought in the market or produced on the farm. The possible usefulness of many home-grown crops is not known to many farmers. If clover hay, alfalfa hay, roots, and silage are raised, the bills for grain may be reduced very much. These crops can all be raised and fed at a profit, since at their usual market price they will yield digestible material cheaper than will any of the commercial feeds. A knowledge of the composition of these home-grown crops is necessary, in order to fit them into the ration intelligently. A farmer should study from all sides the possibilities of his farm, and produce all the feed for his

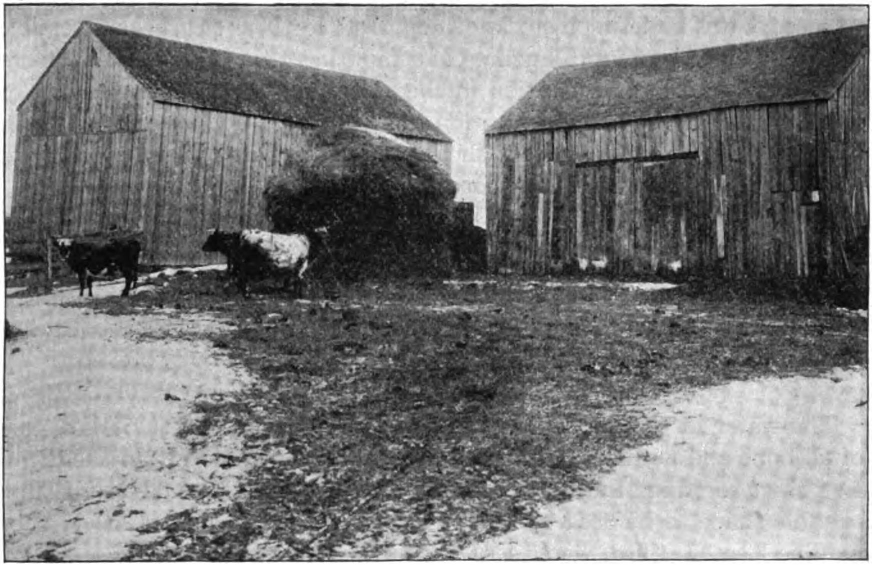


FIG. 1.—*Farming is a business. Old-time rations in which the straw stack played a large part must be improved*

stock that he can. Then he should buy those commercial feeds that will round out his rations properly. Many farmers never set any price on the feeds produced on the farm, considering them merely as feeds procured at no money cost and therefore to be fed without regard to quantity or composition.

---

[1] The material contained in this bulletin is published also in Lesson 117 of the Cornell Reading Course for the Farm.

Instead of feeding in a haphazard manner, a farmer should know, at least approximately, the cost of producing his home-grown feeds, how to plan his rations in order to use these feeds to the best advantage, and how to buy intelligently the feeds on the market. This knowledge will enable him to calculate the most economical ration for the animal that he wishes to feed, whether dairy cow, sheep, horse, or beef animal. It is the purpose of this bulletin on stock feeding to set forth, as clearly as is possible in a brief paper, a practical method of computing rations for stock. Before being able to compute a ration intelligently, however, it is necessary to know something of the composition of the animal body and of feeds in order to understand why feeds should be grouped in certain proportions to constitute what is called a ration.

THE ANIMAL BODY

The body of any animal is made up of water and dry matter, and this water and dry matter must all come from the food.

WATER IN THE ANIMAL BODY

The water in the animal body serves four purposes: first, it is a part of all bone and flesh; second, it serves as a carrier of food from the digestive tract, or from those parts of the body where the food is put into suitable shape to be used by the body cells, to those cells wherever they may be located; third, water serves to carry away the wastes of the body through the perspiration and the urine; fourth, it serves to equalize the temperature. This water in the body comes from the water that the animal drinks and from the water in the succulent parts of the food. The water in the animal body constitutes on an average about fifty per cent of the live weight.

THE DRY MATTER OF THE BODY

The dry matter of the body is made up of many chemical elements — for example, carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus, and perhaps half a dozen others. These elements are arranged in all sorts of combinations, to form bones, flesh, hide, hair, hoofs, and other parts of the body. For the purpose of this discussion, in order to get a clear understanding of the relation of the food to the body the dry matter may be divided into four groups of substances, namely, ash, nitrogenous substances, carbohydrates, and fats. The dry matter of the body is so grouped because this is the usual grouping of the chemical compounds that make up plants, and it is desired to study the relation of the groups in plants with the same groups in the body.

Ash. The ash is the mineral part of the body. In determining the mineral part of any substance in the chemical laboratory, the substance is completely burned, and all the organic matter goes off in the form of gas, leaving behind the mineral matter in the form of ash. The ash of the body constitutes two to five per cent of the live weight. This mineral matter occurs mostly in the bones, but some is found in all the tissues.

Nitrogenous substances. The nitrogenous parts of the body are known by various names, which are also applied to the nitrogenous substances in food. Some of these names are protein, proteids, albuminoids. The term *protein* will here be used to designate all the nitrogenous substances of the body, the body products, and the food. Examples of the nitrogenous parts of the body are lean meat, skin, hoofs, horns, and hair; of the body products, wool, feathers, the albumen of eggs, and the curd of milk. In food, good examples of protein as such cannot be given, since the protein does not exist in any part of the plant in so nearly pure a state as it does in the hair, hoofs, or horns of the animal. The protein of the body is built up entirely from the protein of the food. The distinguishing characteristic of protein is that it contains nitrogen.

Carbohydrates. The carbohydrates of the body and of the food are made up of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. Examples of common carbohydrates are sugar and starch.

Very few carbohydrate substances exist in the body, except in the blood. These substances are taken from the blood to furnish the energy of the muscles and part of the heat of the body. The liver acts as a storehouse of carbohydrates and regulates the supply to the blood so that the amount of carbohydrates in the blood is kept constant for properly supplying the muscles. It is also thought that the liver has the power to make carbohydrates from the fats and the protein of the food if the supply of carbohydrates is limited.

Fats. The fats in the body are used to supply energy to the animal for work, and to furnish fuel for heating the body. The fats serve also as the storehouse of heat and energy; they are added to when the food supply is in excess of that needed by the animal for its work or production, and they are drawn upon when the food supply is short. Fats have the same function that carbohydrates have except that they are more concentrated, supplying about 2¼ times as much energy to the animal as does the same weight of carbohydrates or of protein. Fat is too well known to need illustration.

DEMANDS OF THE ANIMAL FROM ITS FOOD

REQUIREMENTS FOR MAINTENANCE OF TISSUES

Animals need food to maintain their existence, which is dependent on matter and energy. As already shown, the dry matter of the body is made up of ash, protein, carbohydrates, and fats. The part of the body that is more or less permanent is that made up of ash and protein, while the carbohydrates and fats are more changeable and have to do more with the energy of the body. However, the tissues are constantly being worn out, and must be replaced, and this requires a new supply of ash and protein from the food.

FIG. 2.—*One use of the energy in food: the power to do work*

Besides the ash and the protein constantly being replaced in the mature animal, the growing animal must have matter to form new tissue, and the productive animal must have matter for products such as milk, eggs, wool, and the like, all of which contain ash, fat, protein, and carbohydrates. Then, in the pregnant female, ash, fat, protein, and carbohydrates are needed for the growth of the young.

REQUIREMENTS FOR ENERGY

After this matter has been supplied from the food for the maintenance of the dry matter of the body, there is a still further demand on the food to furnish energy to the animal for various uses. First, the temperature of the animal body must be about 100° F. and, while the temperature of the surrounding air may vary all the way from — 20° to + 90° F., this body temperature must be kept practically constant, requiring considerable energy in the form of heat; second, energy is required to keep up all the changes in the body in preparing food for use by the body, to take that food where it is needed, and to carry out waste matter from the body; third, energy is needed to manufacture products such as milk, wool, eggs, and the like; fourth, energy is needed to enable the animal to do work, as in the case of the horse.

All the uses to which the matter and energy of food are put are summed up in the following table:

USES OF THE MATTER AND THE ENERGY OF FOOD

1. To support life
    - a. To maintain body temperature
    - b. To repair waste tissues
    - c. To form new tissues
    - d. For the muscular activity of the vital processes
2. To reproduce life
3. To yield some product
    - a. Stored up as fat or flesh in the tissue
    - b. Secreted in the form of milk or wool
4. To perform labor

REQUIREMENTS OF THE BODY FOR WATER

In addition to the requirements for maintenance of tissues and for energy the body requires a supply of water daily, in order to keep up the water content of the body and to provide a medium for the transfer of the food material from different parts of the body to other parts and for the elimination of waste matter.

HOW THE FOOD FULFILLS THESE REQUIREMENTS

Like the body, the common coarse feeds, grains, meals, and feedstuffs in general used for animals, are made up of the following groups of constituents:

- Water
- Dry matter
    - Ash
    - Nutrients
        - Protein (nitrogenous)
        - Carbohydrates (fiber, nitrogen-free extract)
        - Fats

Water. The use of the water in the food has already been indicated.

Ash. The ash required by the animal does not need to be computed carefully because all the ordinary feeds furnish it in sufficient amount, provided a good variety is given and plenty of salt is supplied. Corn is slightly deficient in ash, but in the ordinary ration the feeds fed with corn make up for this deficiency.

Protein. Protein, carbohydrates, and fats in food are commonly spoken of as the nutrients of the dry matter, since it is from those groups of constituents that animals derive the matter and energy necessary for the uses already enumerated. The protein is used to keep up the protein of the body — that is, to replace worn-out tissues, to build up new tissues, for growth of hair, hoofs, horns, and the like. A very important fact in this connection is that any protein in the ration in excess of that required for keeping up the nitrogenous tissues of the body can be used by any animal for the production of heat and energy. On the other hand, while protein can be used thus for the production of heat and energy, thus serving the purpose of carbohydrates and fat, protein cannot be produced from the carbohydrates or the fats of feeds. Therefore it is always necessary to have a sufficient amount of protein in the ration. The discussion of the necessary amount of protein for different uses will be taken up later under " Feeding standards."

FIG. 3.—*Another use of the energy and matter in food, stored in the body as flesh and fat for the future use of man*

The amount of digestible protein in feeds varies within somewhat wide limits. The percentage varies from 0.8 of 1 per cent in succulent feeds, such as mangels, through 7.6 per cent for red clover hay and 8.5 per cent among the cereals, to as high as 37 per cent for cottonseed meal. Thus it is seen that there is a large list from which to choose in regulating the amount of protein in a ration.

Carbohydrates. The carbohydrates are divided by the chemists into what are called " crude fiber " and " nitrogen-free extract," because the crude fiber is less digestible than the other carbohydrate material. In a feed analysis, ash, protein, fat, and fiber are first determined. Their sum is then subtracted from the total dry matter, and the result is called " nitrogen-free extract." This term includes all the carbohydrates except the fiber. The digestible nitrogen-free extract and the digestible fiber have the same food value for all practical purposes and perform the same work in the nutrition of the animal. This work consists mainly in furnishing energy for whatever need the animal may have. If there is more energy provided in the ration than is needed at that particular time, the excess energy may be stored in the body as fat.

The amount of fiber and nitrogen-free extract in feeds, taken together, varies as much as does the protein, but there is always a relatively larger amount of carbohydrates than of protein. In every case, when there is a low percentage of protein there is a high percentage of carbohydrates.

Fats. The food fats are used by the animal in about the same way as are the carbohydrates. They provide energy to be used in any way that the animal needs, and if the animal has more energy than is needed, it may be stored in the form of fat. The fat, however, has an energy value equal to about 2¼ times the energy value of the same weight of carbohydrates.

The amount of digestible fat in the different feeds varies without respect to the other constituents. It is low in the coarse fodders, running up to 11.6 per cent in distillers' dried grains.

SUMMARY OF THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE BODY AND THE RELATION OF THE CONSTITUENTS OF THE FOOD TO THESE REQUIREMENTS

The animal body may be likened to a steam engine. The engine must have three things to keep it going: First, it must have repair material; if any part of the engine or boiler gives out, it must be repaired at once. Second, it must have water supplied to it, in order to have a medium by which the energy of the fuel may be transferred to the engine. Third, it must have fuel, to yield up energy to do work; energy is the power to do work.

In the same way the body must have three things supplied to it: First, it must have repair material, as has been explained. For this repair material a certain amount of protein must be supplied in the food. In contrast with the engine, when the body is given more repair material (protein) than is needed, the residue may be used for building new parts or to produce energy. Second, the body must have a sufficient amount of water, to aid in forming bones and new tissue, in the circulation of food material, and in the withdrawal of waste material. This water is supplied directly and in the succulent part of food. Third, the body requires energy, as has been pointed out, to do its inside construction work, to perform labor, to make milk, and so on. This energy is derived largely from the carbohydrates and fat, and partly from the protein, in the food.

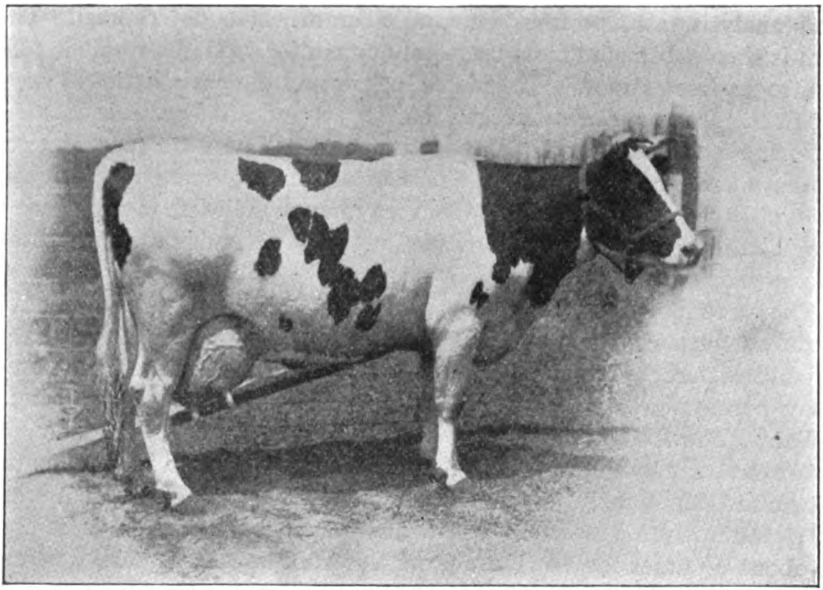


FIG. 4.— *An animal may be likened to an engine. Besides maintaining herself and making her own repairs, this cow has manufactured from the matter and energy in her food over 500 pounds of butter in one year*

To carry the analogy a little further: The engine and the boiler do not turn all the energy derived from fuel into power, but a good deal of the heat is lost into the air; in the same way energy is lost in the vital processes of the body and in keeping up the body heat.

Then, the boiler loses part of the heat in the ashes; that is, the fuel is not completely consumed. This brings up the matter of digestibility of food by the body.

Digestibility of food. All the protein, fiber, nitrogen-free extract, and fat in the food is not available to the animal for use by the body. Certain parts of each of the food constituents are undigested and pass out of the body in the manure. In computing rations, only the digestible constituents of the foods will be considered. The digestible part of each of the constituents, protein, carbohydrates, and fat, has been carefully determined by digestion experiments. These percentages are shown in table 1 (pages 61-5), and may be compared with the total constituents, which are given in the same table.

After this discussion of the composition of the animal body and of the food, the compounding of rations to meet the demands of the body can now be taken up more intelligently.

COMPUTING A RATION

THE NUTRITIVE RATIO

Investigators and practical feeders alike have found that there is a certain relation between the protein and the carbohydrates and fat in the best rations. This relation is called the "nutritive ratio." The ratio is always expressed as the amount of carbohydrates and fat that there is in a given feed or ration compared with one pound of protein. In order to find the second term of the nutritive ratio in any given feed or ration, multiply the digestible fat by 2¼, for the reason given on page 47; add the digestible fiber and digestible nitrogen-free extract; and divide the result by the digestible protein. For example, the nutritive ratio of corn fodder is found by table 1 to be 1:16.9. This means that in corn fodder the relation of the protein to the carbohydrates and fat is as 1:16.9; or, that corn fodder has sixteen and nine-tenths times as much carbohydrates and fat as protein.

The relation of the protein to the carbohydrates and fat has been calculated for each of the feeds in table 3 (pages 67-90), which will aid in the choice of feeds to properly balance a ration. A knowledge of the nutritive ratio of a feed serves to tell at a glance whether that feed is high or low in protein.

The calculation of the nutritive ratio of a ration as a whole serves as a check on the ration, to denote whether it is suited for the purpose intended, as will be shown later.

A feed or ration having a nutritive ratio of less than 1:6 is spoken of as having a "narrow" nutritive ratio; if the ratio is above 1:6 the ration or feed is said to have a "wide" nutritive ratio. These terms are purely relative, but serve in a rough way to distinguish the different kinds of feeds and rations.

FEEDING STANDARDS

The requirements of animals as to amount of necessary digestible nutrients for such purposes as milk production, beef production, labor production, and the like, as well as the relation between these nutrients, have been the subject of much inquiry. Investigators have sought to put those requirements into definite form. They have given to this table of requirements the name "feeding standards." The standards are merely a statement of the necessary amount of digestible nutrients required by an animal for a given purpose for a certain length of time. They are based on the requirements for 1000 pounds live weight in 24 hours. The requirements are usually stated in terms of dry matter; digestible protein, digestible carbohydrates (fiber plus nitrogen-free extract), and digestible fat. The nutritive ratio for the given purpose for which the animal is to be fed is stated. With a view of shortening the computation of the ration as much as possible, the standards in table 2 (pages 66-7) are given in terms of dry matter, digestible protein, and total digestible nutrients. In order to obtain the total digestible nutrients, the fat has been multiplied by 2¼ and the carbo-hydrates and protein added.

FACTORS IN AN IDEAL RATION

In actually computing a ration for a given purpose there are seven factors that should be considered:

1. Amount of dry matter
2. Digestibility of the ration
3. The nutritive ratio
4. Variety in the ration
5. Suitability of the feeds to the animal
6. Palatability of the ration
7. Cost of the ration

Amount of dry matter. In the table of feeding standards, the amount of dry matter has been indicated for each purpose to be served. The amount of dry matter in the ration serves to regulate the relative amounts of roughage and concentrates. By roughage are meant the coarser feeds, such as hay, corn fodder, silage; by concentrates are meant the grains, and the other feeds in the ration that are low in their percentage of fiber and water and high in their percentage of total digestible nutrients. Ordinarily, in rations for cattle and sheep, if two-thirds of the dry matter is from feeds classed as roughage and one-third from concentrates, the ration will be bulky enough to distend the digestive organs so as to give the best results. For horses and swine, more dry matter should be in the grain.

Digestibility of the ration. A little more than two-thirds of the dry matter in the ration should be digestible; that is, the amount of total digestible nutrients should be at least two-thirds as much as the dry matter. This relation will change with the purpose of the ration and with the character of the feed. Any ration for productive purposes, however, which shows that the amount of total digestible nutrients is less than two-thirds as much as the amount of dry matter, can be improved.

The nutritive ratio. In table 2 the nutritive ratio for each purpose has been indicated. It will be noticed that the rations for growing animals and for milk production are 1:7 or narrower, while the rations for fattening and for labor may be somewhat wider. In none of the rations except in the case of the youngest animals does the nutritive ratio go below 1:4.5. Formerly, it was thought that feeders must calculate the nutritive ratio, or "balance" the ration, with much exactness. This is no longer considered to be necessary, due to further knowledge in respect to the function of the nutrients and to the fact that the nutrient protein is not so expensive as in former years. If the nutritive ratio given for the purpose is considered to be the widest ration for the best results, and if no ration is made narrower than 1:4.5 except in the case of the youngest animals, which are growing new tissue very rapidly, the ration will be satisfactory.

Variety in the ration. All feeders of animals should provide variety in the ration. Variety stimulates the animal's appetite. Better results are obtained from a ration containing several feeds than from a ration limited in variety. A ration for a dairy cow should have two different feeds in the roughage and three feeds in the concentrated part of the ration. These feeds should come from not less than three different plants. Other classes of animals do not seem to need so much variety, although it is wise to supply it with all classes.

Suitability of feeds to the animal. The feeds in the ration should be suited to the animal and to the purpose for which the animal is fed. For example, wheat bran is not suitable for feeding hogs because of its bulk; wheat middlings are much to be preferred.

Palatability of the ration. The ration should be palatable if the best results in production are to be obtained. With dairy cows palatability is easily obtained by providing succulent feed in the ration. The condition of the feed has much to do with its palatability. No musty nor damaged feed should be given to any animal.

Cost of the ration. Without doubt, the cost of the ration is the most important factor to be considered by the farmer. However, the other factors must not be sacrificed for cost in every case. A rough way, efficient in most cases, to choose feeds for the greatest economy in the ration is to calculate the cost of one hundred pounds of total digestible nutrients in the different feeds available, then to choose those that will yield total digestible nutrients the cheapest—always taking into consideration the six other factors that have just been explained.

The cost of one hundred pounds of total digestible nutrients in all feeds at varying prices per ton is given in table 4 (pages 91-103).

A ration for a dairy cow illustrating the factors given. A ration is desired for a cow weighing 1000 pounds and yielding daily 30 pounds of milk testing 3.5 per cent butterfat. According to table 2, the ration must contain 24 pounds or more of dry matter (footnote to table, page 66), in which, for the maintenance of her body, this cow will require .700 pound of protein and 7.925 pounds of total digestible nutrients. In addition to maintenance, she will require .061 pound protein and .316 pound total digestible nutrients for the production of one pound of milk testing 3.5 per cent fat; for 30 pounds of milk she would require 30 times these amounts. Her total requirements will be as follows:

	Protein	Total digestible nutrients
For maintenance	.700	7.925
Fo 30 pounds of milk, 3.5 per cent fat	1.830	9.480
Total	2.530	17.405

17.405 (pounds of total digestible nutrients) — 2.530 (pounds of protein) = 14.875 (pounds of carbohydrates + [$2\frac{1}{4}$ × fat]). 14.875 ÷ 2.530 (pounds of protein) = 5.9. It is thought that the nutritive ratio of a ration for a dairy cow should be between 1:4.5 and 1:6. Since the nutritive ratio of the standard as computed in the preceding example is 1:5.9, the digestible protein in the ration must not fall much below 2.530 pounds, or the nutritive ratio will be wider than 1:6. The 17.405 pounds of digestible nutrients is a statement in one number of the necessary amount of food. The total digestible nutrients in the ration should vary not more than .5 pound from the standard.

It will be assumed that red clover hay, corn silage, and corn-and-cob meal are available on the farm. Then in order to obtain the proper variety of feeds in the ration two concentrates must be bought. By consulting feed dealers it is found that the following feeds are available at the prices named:

	Per ton	Cost of 100 pounds total digestible nutrients
Cornmeal	$31.00	$1.85
Hominy feed	30.00	1.77
Gluten feed	31.00	1.92
Flour wheat middlings	30.00	1.92

	Per ton	Cost of 100 pounds total digestible nutrients
Wheat bran	$24.00	$1.97
Wheat mixed feed	25.00	1.87
Ground oats	33.00	2.34
Ground barley	35.00	2.20
Malt sprouts	28.00	1.98
Brewers' grains, dried	29.00	2.21
Cottonseed meal, choice	38.00	2.43
Linseed oilmeal, old process	35.00	2.25
Beet pulp, dried	28.00	1.96
Distillers' grains, dried	31.00	1.74

The cost of 100 pounds of total digestible nutrients in each feed is found by means of table 4.

A feed is bought for the total digestible matter in it. Therefore, the cost of 100 pounds of total digestible nutrients in each feed will give the relative value of that feed compared with the value of every other feed computed in the same way. The total digestible nutrients in every feed may be computed from table 1. The total digestible nutrients in one ton of each feed is given in column 1, table 4. These values have been computed from table 1.

A cow will eat, in twenty-four hours, when fed the right proportion cf roughage and concentrates, about one pound of hay and three pounds of corn silage to each one hundred pounds of live weight. In order to meet the requirements of the feeding standard when fed this amount of roughage, she will need about one pound of grain to three or three and one-half pounds of milk. In order to get a ration with a nutritive ratio between 1:4.5 and 1:6, about one-third of the grain mixture must be high-protein concentrates. Of course the same method of checking the true relative values should be applied to the feeds already on hand, namely, the clover hay, the corn silage, and the corn-and-cob meal, to see whether it might not be best to sell some and buy others. But to keep the problem from becoming too complicated, it is assumed that in the clover hay, the silage, and the corn-and-cob meal, the cost of total digestible nutrients is less than in any feed, either roughage or concentrate, that may be bought. Then the choice to supplement the feeds already at hand will be one high-protein and one medium-protein feed, or two high-protein feeds. Two medium-protein feeds will not give protein enough. From the list given, it is seen that distillers' grains and wheat mixed feed are the two feeds that yield total digestible nutrients the cheapest, and they will give the necessary protein to supplement the feeds already at hand.

Putting in the ration the amounts of hay and silage suggested and allowing about one pound of grain to three pounds of milk, the ration that follows meets all the requirements. Calculating in detail from table 1, the amounts of dry matter, digestible protein, digestible fiber, digestible nitrogen-free extract, digestible fat, and total digestible nutrients in the several feeds in the suggested ration are as follows:

Feeds	Dry matter	Digestible protein	Digestible fiber	Digestible nitrogen-free extract	Digestible fat	Total digestible nutrients
10 pounds red clover hay....	8.710	.760	1.380	2.550	.180	5.090
30 pounds corn silage.......	7.890	.330	1.230	3.270	.210	5.310
3 pounds corn-and-cob meal	2.688	.183	.126	1.785	.111	2.343
2 pounds wheat mixed feed	1.798	.258	.056	.846	.080	1.340
3 pounds distillers' dried grains..................	2.802	.672	.330	.882	.348	2.667
1 pound oilmeal..........	.909	.302	.048	.278	.067	.779
	24.797	2.505	3.170	9.611	.996	17.529

The second term of the nutritive ratio of this ration may be calculated by subtracting the protein from the total digestible nutrients and dividing the remainder, which is the carbohydrates plus the fat multiplied by $2\frac{1}{4}$, by the protein:

$$17.529 - 2.505 = 15.024$$
$$15.024 \div 2.505 = 6.0$$

Therefore the nutritive ratio is 1:6, which is correct, since it was stated on page 52 that the ration should be between 1:4.5 and 1:6.

By another method, the fat may be multiplied by $2\frac{1}{4}$, the fiber and nitrogen-free extract added, and the total divided by the protein:

$.996 \times 2\frac{1}{4} = 2.241$

$2.241 + 9.611 + 3.170 = 15.022$[2]

$15.022 \div 2.505 = 6.0$

The result, 1:6, the nutritive ratio, is of course exactly the same.

Instead of computing the ration in detail, as in this example, it may be computed with the aid of table 3 with much less work and still retain all the essential part of the work. All that is really needed in computing a ration is, first, to find out whether the total food in the ration meets the requirements as stated in the feeding standard. This is accomplished by checking up the total digestible nutrients. Second, it is necessary to check up the amount of digestible protein and its relation to the other nutrients. The simplified computation of the ration given then becomes:

---

[2] The slight difference in this number from the one above is due to the fact that in computing the total digestible nutrients in table 1 the fourth decimal place has been dropped.

Feeds	Dry matter	Digestible protein	Total digestible nutrients
10 pounds red clover hay	8.710	.760	5.090
30 pounds corn silage	7.890	.330	5.310
3 pounds corn-and-cob meal	2.688	.183	2.343
2 pounds wheat mixed feed	1.798	.258	1.340
3 pounds distillers' dried grains	2.802	.672	2.667
1 pound oilmeal	.909	.302	.779
	24.797	2.505	17.529

When the shorter method is used, rations may be calculated very rapidly. The nutritive ratio of the ration is calculated as in the first method, page 16.

This ration meets the factors that, it has been said, must be considered. Other illustrative rations follow, in order to show the shorter method for computing rations for all classes of stock.

A ration for a horse weighing 1000 pounds, doing medium work. The requirements (table 2) for a horse doing medium work are about 16 to 24 pounds of dry matter, which shall contain 1.4 to 1.7 pounds of digestible protein and 12.8 to 15.6 pounds of total digestible nutrients, with a nutritive ratio of 1:7.8 to 1:8.3. A ration that will meet the above requirement may be computed from table 3. It is assumed that oats, corn, and timothy hay are the most available feeds. The ration then is:

Feeds	Dry matter	Digestible protein	Total digestible nutrients
12 pounds timothy hay	10.608	.360	5.820
8 pounds oats	7.264	.776	5.632
4 pounds corn	3.580	.300	3.428
Total	21.452	1.436	14.880

$$14.880 - 1.436 = 13.444$$
$$13.444 \div 1.436 = 9.3$$

Therefore the nutritive ratio is 1:9.3. It will be noticed that this ration is low in protein, and therefore wider in nutritive ratio than is called for by the standard. This will serve to illustrate that in some cases the standard is probably too high. All men who have had experience in feeding farm work horses know that the ration suggested will yield satisfactory results. The standards given in table 2 are submitted only as guides, and they serve a useful purpose in this respect; but rations must be carefully tried by feeding, after having been computed. All rations, however carefully they may have been computed on paper, will be changed somewhat in actual practice.

Beef cattle ration. A ration is desired for a 1000-pound steer during the middle of the fattening period. The requirements (table 2) are 21 to 24 pounds of dry matter, in which there are 1.9 to 2.3 pounds of digestible protein and 17 to 19.5 pounds of total digestible nutrients, with a nutritive ratio between 1:7 and 1:7.8. The following ration is suggested:

Feeds	Dry matter	Digestible protein	Total digestible nutrients
10 pounds red clover hay	8.710	.700	5.090
40 pounds corn silage	10.520	.440	7.080
4 pounds corn-and-cob meal	3.584	.244	3.124
2 pounds oats (ground)	1.816	.194	1.408
3 pounds gluten feed	2.739	.648	2.421
Total	27.369	2.226	19.123

$$19.123 - 2.226 = 16.897$$
$$16.897 \div 2.226 = 7.6$$

Therefore the nutritive ratio of this ration is 1:7.6. This ration has perhaps a little too much roughage and too little grain, as is shown by the high amount of dry matter compared with the total digestible nutrients, but it would meet with good results in practice. A deviation from the standard as great as this ration shows is permissible, provided sufficient nutriment is furnished.

A ration for breeding ewes with lambs. A ewe of the large breeds will weigh about 125 pounds. A pen of eight would make 1000 pounds. From table 2 it is seen that the requirement for feeding such a pen with lambs would be 23 to 27 pounds of dry matter, to contain 2.6 to 2.9 pounds of digestible protein and 18 to 20 pounds of total digestible nutrients, the nutritive ratio to be between 1:5.6 and 1:6.5. The following ration is suggested:

Feeds	Dry matter	Digestible protein	Total digestible nutrients
12 pounds red clover hay	10.452	.912	6.108
25 pounds turnips	2.375	.250	1.850
5 pounds ground oats	4.540	.485	3.520
5 pounds cornmeal	4.435	.345	4.190
3 pounds wheat bran	2.697	.375	1.827
1 pound oilmeal	.909	.302	.779
Total	25.408	2.669	18.274

$$18.274 - 2.669 = 15.605$$
$$15.605 \div 2.669 = 5.8$$

Therefore the nutritive ratio is 1:5.8. If turnips are not available, 16 to 20 pounds of corn silage would be desirable.

A ration for fattening pigs. It will be assumed that pigs weigh 125 pounds each when they are about half fattened for market. It would then take eight of them to weigh 1000 pounds live weight. The requirements are 32.4 to 35.8 pounds of dry matter, to contain 4.4 to 4.9 pounds of digestible protein and 28.8 to 31.9 pounds of total digestible nutrients, the nutritive ratio to be between 1:5.5 and 1:6.2. The following ration is an example for eight hogs of the above weight for one day:

Feeds	Dry matter	Digestible protein	Total digestible nutrients
20 pounds cornmeal	17.740	1.380	16.760
16 pounds flour wheat middlings	14.288	2.512	12.512
1 pound tankage	.926	.587	.870
Total	32.954	4.479	30.142

$$30.142 - 4.479 = 25.663$$
$$25.663 \div 4.479 = 5.7$$

Therefore the nutritive ratio of this ration is 1:5.7. In calculating dry matter, protein, and total digestible nutrients in 20 pounds of corn from table 3, the amounts in 1 pound are multiplied by 20. In like manner, in calculating dry matter, protein, and total digestible nutrients in 16 pounds of wheat middlings, the amounts in 8 pounds are multiplied by 2. This will illustrate how table 3 may be used to advantage even when the amount of feed differs from the amounts of that feed which are listed in table 3.

It is intended, in a ration such as the one just given, that the grain shall be fed as a slop mixed with water. The corn might be fed whole. If skimmed milk or buttermilk were available, of course less middlings and no tankage would be necessary.

MANURIAL VALUES

When a feed is bought, something more than the food value alone is obtained. All feeds have a certain fertilizing value by virtue of the nitrogen, phosphoric acid, and potash that they contain. The amount of these fertilizing constituents in 2000 pounds of each feed is shown in the third, fourth, and fifth columns of table 5 (pages 104-6). These are the amounts that would be available if the feed were spread directly on the land as manure. Some materials, such as tankage, dried blood, and cottonseed meal, are used in this way in large quantities.

When food is first fed to an animal, only that portion is available as a fertilizer which passes out from the animal in the manure and urine. The percentage of each fertilizing constituent that will appear in the manure varies with the animal. With a mature horse, neither gaining nor losing live weight, all the nitrogen, phosphoric acid, and potash in the food must appear in the manure and urine; otherwise the horse would of necessity gain in weight.

The percentages of nitrogen, phosphoric acid, and potash recovered in the manure and urine from different animals, as given by Henry and Morrison, are as follows:

PROPORTION OF NITROGEN, PHOSPHORIC ACID, AND POTASH OF FOOD THAT IS VOIDED BY ANIMAL

	Nitrogen (per cent)	Phosphoric acid and potash (per cent)
Horse at work	100.0	100.0
Fattening ox	96.1	97.7
Fattening sheep	95.7	96.2
Fattening pig	85.3	96.0
Milch cow	75.5	89.7
Calf, fed milk	30.7	45.7

These percentages are higher than the amounts recovered in common practice. For calculation in the choice of feeds for a ration it has been deemed best to adopt the plan given in English law governing the relations between landlord and tenant. The following principles of English law as recommended and adopted by the Central Association of Agriculture and Tenant Right Valuers are quoted from Henry and Morrison:

> For all unused manure or that which has been recently applied to the land without a crop being grown thereafter, a credit of three-fourths of the total value of the phosphoric acid and potash in the feed is allowed. Because a greater loss of nitrogen commonly occurs in stored manure than in manure dropped in the fields by animals at pasture, a credit of 70 per cent of the total value of the nitrogen is allowed when the stock have been fed at pasture, and of only 50 per cent when they have been fed in barn or yard.
>
> When one crop has been grown, since the application of the manure, a part of the fertility thereby being used up, the credit allowed is only half that stated above. It is realized that the beneficial effects of farm manure persist much longer than two years, but owing to the difficulties of checking records for a longer period, the compensation is not extended over a greater time. The principles of the English law, as here set forth, should be drafted into every lease drawn between landlord and tenant in this country.

In accordance with these principles the last three columns in table 5 have been computed on the basis of 50 per cent of the nitrogen and 75 per cent of the phosphoric acid and potash returned by the dairy cow. The returns for other animals may well be estimated on this same basis because of the losses of fertility that occur before the manure really reaches the plant.

Taking these manurial values into consideration the table made up on pages 52-3 as a guide in the selection of feeds for a ration will be as follows:

Feeds	Cost per ton	Cost of 100 pounds total digestible nutrients	Manurial value per ton	Net cost per ton	Net cost of 100 pounds total digestible nutrients
Cornmeal	$31.00	$1.85	$3.37	$27.63	$1.65
Hominy feed	30.00	1.77	4.62	25.38	1.50
Gluten feed	31.00	1.92	7.91	23.09	1.43
Flour wheat middlings	30.00	1.92	7.05	22.95	1.47
Wheat bran	24.00	1.97	7.82	16.18	1.33
Wheat mixed feed	25.00	1.87	6.98	18.02	1.34
Ground oats	33.00	2.34	4.53	28.47	2.02
Ground barley	35.00	2.20	4.45	30.55	1.92
Malt sprouts	28.00	1.98	10.10	17.90	1.27
Brewers' grains, dried	29.00	2.21	8.37	20.63	1.57
Cottonseed meal, choice	38.00	2.43	15.87	22.13	1.41
Linseed oilmeal, old process	35.00	2.25	11.87	23.13	1.48
Beet pulp, dried	28.00	1.96	3.01	24.99	1.75
Distillers' grains, dried	31.00	1.74	9.43	21.57	1.21

In computing the manurial value per ton, nitrogen is computed to be worth 18 cents per pound, phosphoric acid 4.5 cents per pound, and potash 5 cents per pound. These prices are the average for fertilizing constituents in commercial fertilizers during the ten years before 1914. Manurial values should be computed at any given time on the basis of the cost of nitrogen, phosphoric acid, and potash at that time.

The last column gives the net cost of total digestible nutrients when the manurial value is credited to each feed. It will be seen from this column that the medium- and high-protein feeds are relatively the cheapest. Therefore, when the manurial values of feeds are considered, as they must be in any system of permanent agriculture, the feeds that should be bought for the most benefit to the farm are, as far as possible, high-protein feeds.

APPENDIX

TABLE 1. COMPOSITION OF FEEDS (In pounds)*

In 100 pounds	Water	Ash	Crude protein		Carbohydrates				Fat		Total digestible nutrients
					Fiber		Nitrogen-free extract				
			Total	Digestible	Total	Digestible	Total	Digestible	Total	Digestible	
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE											
Corn fodder	78.1	1.2	1.9	1.0	5.2	3.1	13.0	9.7	0.6	0.4	14.7
Kafir fodder	76.4	1.9	2.4	1.1	6.6	3.6	12.0	8.8	0.7	0.4	14.4
Milo fodder	77.3	1.4	1.8	0.8	7.0	3.9	12.1	8.8	0.4	0.3	14.2
Sweet sorghum fodder	75.1	1.4	1.5	0.7	7.0	3.8	14.0	10.3	1.0	0.6	16.2
Johnson grass	70.9	2.0	2.5	1.2	9.3	5.2	14.4	9.5	0.9	0.5	17.0
Millet, common or Hungarian	72.4	2.1	2.9	1.9	8.4	5.9	13.3	8.9	0.9	0.6	18.1
Mixed grasses, immature	70.3	3.0	5.1	3.6	6.3	4.1	13.8	10.4	1.5	0.9	20.1
Timothy	62.5	2.2	3.1	1.5	11.7	6.5	19.3	12.8	1.2	0.6	22.2
Barley fodder	76.8	2.1	3.3	2.3	6.0	3.6	11.0	7.9	0.8	0.4	14.7
Buckwheat fodder	63.4	3.6	4.6	2.2	8.0	4.5	19.5	12.9	0.9	0.5	20.7
Oat fodder	73.9	2.1	3.2	2.3	7.8	4.3	11.9	7.5	1.1	0.8	15.9
Rye fodder	78.7	1.7	2.6	2.1	7.3	5.8	9.0	6.4	0.7	0.5	15.4
Wheat fodder	72.6	2.7	3.6	2.8	7.5	6.0	12.8	9.1	0.8	0.6	19.3
Alfalfa	74.7	2.4	4.5	3.3	7.0	3.0	10.4	7.4	1.0	0.4	14.6
Clover, red	73.8	2.1	4.1	2.7	7.3	3.9	11.7	9.1	1.0	0.6	17.1
Cowpeas	83.7	2.0	3.0	2.3	3.8	2.3	7.0	5.7	0.5	0.3	11.0
Peas, field, Canada	83.4	1.6	3.6	2.9	4.0	2.0	6.9	5.1	0.5	0.3	10.7
Soybeans	76.4	2.4	4.1	3.2	6.3	2.8	9.8	7.4	1.0	0.5	14.5
Vetch	81.8	2.2	4.2	3.5	5.0	3.2	6.3	4.9	0.5	0.4	12.5
Clover and timothy	72.7	1.6	3.0	2.2	8.5	5.0	13.3	9.1	0.9	0.6	17.7
Peas and barley	79.8	1.7	3.6	2.7	5.2	2.7	8.9	6.1	0.8	0.5	12.6
Peas and oats	77.4	2.0	3.2	2.4	6.3	3.7	10.1	6.9	1.0	0.6	14.4
Vetch and oats	73.5	2.3	3.8	2.8	7.5	5.1	12.0	8.2	0.9	0.4	17.0

---

*Compiled mainly from *Feeds and Feeding*, by Henry and Morrison.

TABLE 1 (*continued*)

In 100 pounds	Water	Ash	Crude protein		Carbohydrates				Fat		Total digestible nutrients
					Fiber		Nitrogen-free extract				
			Total	Digestible	Total	Digestible	Total	Digestible	Total	Digestible	
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*continued*)											
Beets, common	87.0	1.5	1.6	0.9	0.9	0.7	8.9	8.4	0.1	0.1	10.2
Sugar beets	83.6	1.1	1.6	1.2	1.0	0.4	12.6	12.2	0.1	0.1	14.0
Carrots	88.3	1.2	1.2	0.9	1.1	1.1	8.0	7.5	0.2	0.2	9.9
Mangels	90.6	1.0	1.4	0.8	0.8	0.6	6.1	5.8	0.1	0.1	7.4
Parsnips	83.4	1.3	1.7	1.3	1.3	1.1	11.9	11.4	0.4	0.4	14.7
Potatoes	78.8	1.1	2.2	1.1	0.4	0.1	17.4	15.7	0.1	0.1	17.1
Rutabagas	89.1	1.0	1.2	1.0	1.4	1.0	7.0	6.7	0.3	0.3	9.4
Flat turnips	90.5	0.9	1.4	1.0	1.1	0.6	5.9	5.4	0.2	0.2	7.4
Apples	81.8	0.4	0.5	0.4	1.3	0.5	15.6	15.1	0.4	0.2	16.4
Apple pomace	76.7	1.0	1.6	1.2	4.6	1.5	14.5	14.1	1.6	0.8	18.6
Cabbages	91.1	0.8	2.2	1.9	0.9	0.9	4.7	4.7	0.3	0.2	7.9
Cabbage waste, outer leaves	85.9	3.1	2.7	1.7	2.8	2.2	5.1	4.3	0.4	0.1	8.4
Pumpkins	91.7	0.9	1.4	1.1	1.3	0.8	4.2	3.7	0.5	0.5	6.7
Rape	83.3	2.2	2.9	2.6	2.6	2.3	8.4	7.7	0.6	0.3	13.3
Sugar beet leaves	88.4	1.8	1.9	1.2	1.1	0.9	6.5	5.4	0.3	0.1	7.7
Sunflower, whole plant	76.3	2.6	3.6	2.2	4.0	2.6	11.4	8.1	2.1	1.3	15.8
Corn silage	73.7	1.7	2.1	1.1	6.3	4.1	15.4	10.9	0.8	0.7	17.7
Sorghum silage	77.2	1.6	1.5	0.6	6.9	4.0	11.9	7.6	0.9	0.5	13.3
Alfalfa silage	75.4	2.9	3.5	1.2	8.2	3.9	8.6	3.9	1.4	0.6	10.4
Clover silage	72.2	2.5	3.7	1.3	9.0	4.3	11.5	5.2	1.1	0.5	11.9
Peavine silage	76.8	1.3	2.8	1.6	6.5	3.4	11.3	8.2	1.3	0.8	15.0
Cow's milk	86.4	0.7	3.5	3.3	.....	.....	5.0	4.9	4.4	4.3	17.9
Skimmed milk	90.1	0.7	3.8	3.6	.....	.....	5.2	5.1	0.2	0.2	9.1
Buttermilk	90.6	0.7	3.6	3.4	.....	.....	5.0	4.9	0.1	0.1	8.4
Whey	93.4	0.7	0.8	0.8	.....	.....	4.8	4.7	0.3	0.3	6.2
Beet pulp, wet	90.7	0.4	0.9	0.5	2.1	1.8	5.7	4.7	0.2	0.2	7.4

Brewers' grains, wet	75.9	1.0	5.7	4.6	3.6	1.8	12.1	6.9	1.7	1.5	16.7
Distillers' grains, wet	77.4	0.6	4.5	3.3	2.8	2.7	13.1	10.6	1.6	1.5	20.0
DRIED ROUGHAGE											
Corn fodder, medium in water	18.3	5.0	6.7	3.0	22.0	13.9	45.8	33.4	2.2	1.5	53.7
Corn stover, medium in water	19.0	5.5	5.7	2.1	27.7	18.3	40.9	24.1	1.2	0.7	46.1
Kafir fodder	9.0	9.4	8.9	4.1	26.8	16.1	43.1	28.9	2.8	1.7	52.9
Milo fodder	11.1	9.9	12.0	1.9	18.4	9.4	44.1	26.9	4.5	2.8	44.5
Sorghum fodder	9.7	7.8	7.4	2.8	26.1	15.9	45.9	28.9	3.1	2.0	52.1
Millet hay, common or Hungarian	14.3	6.3	8.3	5.0	24.0	16.3	44.3	29.7	2.8	1.8	55.0
Mixed grasses	12.8	5.6	7.6	4.3	28.8	17.8	42.7	26.5	2.5	1.2	51.3
Timothy hay	11.6	4.9	6.2	3.0	29.9	14.9	45.0	27.9	2.5	1.2	48.5
Oat hay	12.0	6.8	8.4	4.5	28.3	14.7	41.7	23.4	2.8	1.7	46.4
Alfalfa hay	8.6	8.6	14.9	10.6	28.3	12.2	37.3	26.8	2.3	0.9	51.6
Alfalfa meal	8.8	9.0	14.3	10.2	30.1	12.9	35.8	25.8	2.0	0.8	50.7
Red clover hay	12.9	7.1	12.8	7.6	25.5	13.8	38.7	25.5	3.1	1.8	50.9
Cowpea hay	9.7	11.9	19.3	13.1	22.5	10.6	34.0	23.1	2.6	1.0	49.0
Pea, field, hay	11.1	7.9	15.1	12.2	24.5	12.8	37.9	27.3	3.5	1.9	56.6
Soybean hay	8.6	8.6	16.0	11.7	24.9	14.2	39.1	25.0	2.8	1.2	53.6
Vetch hay	12.3	8.6	19.9	15.7	24.8	14.6	31.6	22.5	2.8	1.9	57.1
Clover and timothy	12.2	6.1	8.6	4.0	29.9	15.2	40.8	24.5	2.4	1.1	46.2
Peas and oats	16.6	7.3	11.4	8.3	25.6	14.8	36.5	22.3	2.6	1.5	48.8
Peas, oats, barley	16.5	6.0	12.6	9.2	29.5	17.1	32.4	19.8	3.0	1.8	50.1
Vetch and oats	15.7	6.7	10.6	6.9	27.2	15.0	37.3	22.0	2.5	1.4	47.1
Barley straw	14.2	5.7	3.5	0.9	36.0	19.5	39.1	20.7	1.5	0.6	42.5
Buckwheat straw	9.9	5.5	5.2	4.2	43.0	11.2	35.1	15.1	1.3	1.2	33.2
Oat straw	11.5	5.4	3.6	1.0	36.3	21.8	40.8	20.8	2.4	0.9	45.6
Rye straw	7.1	30.2	3.0	0.7	38.9	21.4	46.6	18.2	1.2	0.4	41.2
Wheat straw	8.4	5.2	3.1	0.7	37.4	18.7	44.4	16.4	1.5	0.5	36.9
Bean straw	10.5	7.2	7.3	3.6	30.8	13.2	42.9	29.2	1.3	0.7	47.6
Peavine straw	9.4	6.6	9.5	7.7	27.7	14.4	45.2	32.6	1.6	0.9	56.7
CONCENTRATES											
Corn (dent)	10.5	1.5	10.1	7.5	2.0	1.1	70.9	66.7	5.0	4.6	85.7
Cornmeal or chop	11.3	1.3	9.3	6.9	2.3	1.3	72.0	67.7	3.8	3.5	83.8
Corn-and-cob meal	10.4	1.5	8.5	6.1	7.9	4.2	67.6	59.5	4.1	3.7	78.1
Hominy feed or chop	10.1	2.6	10.6	7.0	4.4	3.3	64.3	57.9	8.0	7.3	84.6
Gluten feed	8.7	2.1	25.4	21.6	7.1	5.4	52.9	46.5	3.8	3.2	80.7
Gluten meal	9.1	1.1	35.5	30.2	2.1	1.2	47.5	42.7	4.7	4.4	84.0
Germ oilmeal, high grade	8.9	2.7	22.6	16.5	9.0	6.7	46.0	35.9	10.8	10.4	82.5

TABLE 1 (*concluded*)

In 100 pounds	Water	Ash	Crude protein		Carbohydrates				Fat		Total digestible nutrients
					Fiber		Nitrogen-free extract				
			Total	Digestible	Total	Digestible	Total	Digestible	Total	Digestible	
CONCENTRATES (*continued*)											
Corn bran	10.0	2.4	9.7	5.8	9.8	7.0	62.4	49.9	5.7	4.6	73.1
Wheat, whole or ground	10.2	1.9	12.4	9.2	2.2	1.3	71.2	66.2	2.1	1.5	80.1
Red-dog flour	11.1	2.5	16.8	14.8	2.2	0.8	63.3	55.7	4.1	3.5	79.2
Flour wheat middlings	10.7	3.7	17.8	15.7	4.7	1.7	58.1	51.1	5.0	4.3	78.2
Standard wheat middlings (shorts)	10.5	4.4	17.4	13.4	6.0	1.8	56.8	44.3	4.9	4.3	69.3
Wheat bran	10.1	6.3	16.0	12.5	9.5	2.9	53.7	38.7	4.4	3.0	60.9
Wheat feed (shorts and bran)	10.1	5.2	16.8	12.9	7.6	2.8	55.7	42.3	4.6	4.0	67.0
Wheat screenings	10.2	3.9	13.3	9.6	7.4	2.7	61.1	44.6	4.1	3.6	65.0
Rye, whole or ground	9.4	2.0	11.8	9.9	1.8	1.1	73.2	67.3	1.8	1.2	81.0
Rye feed (shorts and bran)	11.5	3.8	15.3	12.2	4.7	1.7	61.5	54.1	3.2	2.9	74.5
Oats, whole or ground	9.2	3.5	12.4	9.7	10.9	3.8	59.6	48.3	4.4	3.8	70.4
Oat hulls	6.8	6.0	4.0	2.0	29.2	27.7	52.3	17.5	1.7	1.3	50.1
Barley, whole or ground	9.3	2.7	11.5	9.0	4.6	2.6	69.8	64.2	2.1	1.6	79.4
Barley feed	10.2	4.2	12.7	10.8	7.8	1.6	61.7	53.0	3.4	3.0	72.2
Barley screenings	11.4	4.2	11.5	8.3	9.5	3.5	60.6	44.2	2.8	2.5	61.6
Malt	5.8	2.9	18.0	15.8	9.0	6.3	60.6	56.4	3.7	3.2	85.7
Malt sprouts	7.6	6.1	26.4	20.3	12.6	10.9	45.6	36.5	1.5	1.3	70.6
Brewers' grains, dried	7.5	3.5	26.5	21.5	14.6	7.1	41.0	23.4	6.9	6.1	65.7
Rice polish	10.0	4.8	11.9	8.0	1.9	0.5	62.3	56.7	9.1	7.5	82.1
Rice bran, high grade	10.1	9.7	12.1	7.9	12.4	3.1	44.3	35.0	11.4	8.8	65.8
Rice hulls	9.3	16.9	3.3	0.3	35.4	0.4	34.0	11.9	1.1	0.7	14.2
Buckwheat, whole or ground	12.1	2.1	10.8	8.1	10.3	2.5	62.2	47.2	2.5	2.5	63.4
Buckwheat middlings	12.0	4.8	28.3	24.6	4.8	1.6	42.7	36.7	7.4	6.1	76.6
Buckwheat bran	11.2	4.2	22.3	10.5	7.1	2.8	49.4	27.6	5.8	3.2	48.1
Buckwheat feed	11.8	4.4	19.3	9.1	17.9	7.0	41.4	23.2	5.2	2.9	45.8
Buckwheat hulls	10.3	2.1	4.4	0.4	43.7	0.4	38.5	13.5	1.0	0.7	15.9

Kafir grain, whole or ground	11.8	1.7	11.1	9.0	2.3	1.3	70.1	64.5	3.0	2.3	80.0
Sorghum grain	12.7	1.9	9.2	7.5	2.0	1.1	70.8	65.1	3.4	2.6	79.5
Cottonseed meal, choice	7.5	6.2	44.1	37.0	8.1	3.0	25.0	18.8	9.1	8.6	78.2
Cottonseed meal, prime	7.8	6.6	39.8	33.4	10.1	3.7	27.4	20.6	8.3	7.9	75.5
Cottonseed meal, good	7.9	6.4	37.6	31.6	11.5	4.3	28.4	21.3	8.2	7.8	74.8
Cottonseed feed	8.3	4.9	24.5	14.2	21.4	9.6	34.6	21.1	6.3	5.7	57.7
Cottonseed hulls	9.7	2.7	4.6	0.3	43.8	20.6	37.3	12.7	1.9	1.5	37.0
Linseed oilmeal, old process	9.1	5.4	33.9	30.2	8.4	4.8	35.7	27.8	7.5	6.7	77.9
Linseed oilmeal, new process	9.6	5.6	36.9	31.7	8.7	6.3	36.3	31.6	2.9	2.8	75.9
Culled beans	12.8	3.3	22.1	18.3	3.7	1.0	56.7	53.3	1.4	0.8	74.4
Cowpeas	11.6	3.4	23.6	19.4	4.1	2.6	55.8	51.9	1.5	1.1	76.4
Peas, field, Canada	9.2	3.4	22.9	19.0	5.6	1.5	57.8	54.3	1.1	0.6	76.2
Soybeans	9.9	5.3	36.5	30.7	4.3	3.5	26.5	19.3	17.5	14.4	85.9
Coconut meal	7.7	5.7	20.4	18.4	8.0	1.8	41.1	35.8	17.1	17.1	94.5
Sunflower seed	6.9	3.1	16.1	13.5	27.9	22.6	21.3	15.5	24.7	20.3	97.3
Dried blood	9.7	3.3	82.3	69.1	.....	.....	3.8	.....	0.9	0.9	71.1
Meat and bone meal, 30-40 per cent ash	6.0	36.8	39.8	37.0	2.1	.....	4.1	.....	11.2	11.0	61.8
Meat and bone meal, over 40 per cent ash	6.6	45.8	33.2	30.9	1.6	.....	2.7	.....	10.0	9.8	53.0
Tankage, over 60 per cent protein	7.4	10.5	63.1	58.7	3.6	.....	2.5	.....	12.9	12.6	87.0
Tankage, 55-60 per cent protein	7.5	13.6	58.1	54.0	4.9	.....	2.9	.....	13.0	12.7	82.6
Tankage, 45-55 per cent protein	7.5	19.7	51.7	48.1	3.0	.....	4.2	.....	14.0	13.7	78.9
Tankage, below 45 per cent protein	6.5	22.6	40.4	37.6	3.7	.....	9.9	.....	17.0	16.7	75.2
Beet pulp, dried	8.2	3.5	8.9	4.6	18.9	15.7	59.6	49.5	0.9	0.8	71.6
Beet pulp, molasses	7.6	5.6	9.5	5.9	15.9	12.7	60.7	55.3	0.7	0.6	75.3
Distillers' grains, dried, from corn	6.6	2.6	30.7	22.4	11.6	11.0	36.3	29.4	12.2	11.6	88.9
Distillers' grains, dried, from rye	7.2	3.9	23.1	13.6	10.9	6.4	47.1	31.6	7.8	6.6	66.4
Molasses, cane or blackstrap	25.8	6.4	3.1	1.0	.....	.....	64.7	58.2	.....	.....	59.2

TABLE 2. FEEDING STANDARDS *

	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)
1. *Dairy cows*†		
For maintenance of 1000-pound cow	0.700	7.925
To allowance for maintenance add:		
For each pound of 2.5 per cent milk	0.053	0.256
For each pound of 3.0 per cent milk	0.057	0.286
For each pound of 3.5 per cent milk	0.061	0.316
For each pound of 4.0 per cent milk	0.065	0.346
For each pound of 4.5 per cent milk	0.069	0.376
For each pound of 5.0 per cent milk	0.073	0.402
For each pound of 5.5 per cent milk	0.077	0.428
For each pound of 6.0 per cent milk	0.081	0.454
For each pound of 6.5 per cent milk	0.085	0.482
For each pound of 7.0 per cent milk	0.089	0.505

---

* Modified Wolff-Lehmann Feeding Standards for Farm Animals. From *Feeds and Feeding*, by Henry and Morrison.

† For dairy cows weighing 1000 pounds or more there should be at least 24 pounds of dry matter in the ration, and the nutritive ratio should be between 1:4 and 1:6.

Live weight	Actual, per head daily			Per 1000 pounds live weight			Nutritive ratio
	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	
2. *Growing, fattening steers*							
100 pounds..	1.41	0.32	1.66	14.1	3.2	16.6	1:4.2
150 pounds..	3.11	0.49	2.58	20.7	3.3	17.2	4.2
200 pounds..	4.81	0.67	3.48	24.0	3.4	17.4	4.1
250 pounds..	6.40	0.74	4.42	25.6	3.0	17.7	4.9
300 pounds..	8.00	0.80	5.36	26.7	2.7	17.9	5.6
350 pounds..	8.87	0.84	5.87	25.3	2.4	16.8	6.0
400 pounds..	9.72	0.87	6.32	24.3	2.2	15.8	6.2
450 pounds..	10.83	0.96	7.23	24.1	2.1	16.1	6.7
500 pounds..	11.95	1.04	7.88	23.9	2.1	15.8	6.5
550 pounds..	12.95	1.13	8.55	23.6	2.0	15.6	6.6
600 pounds..	13.94	1.22	9.25	23.2	2.0	15.4	6.7
700 pounds .	15.83	1.41	10.35	22.6	2.0	14.8	6.4
800 pounds..	17.13	1.61	11.43	21.4	2.0	14.3	6.2
900 pounds..	18.17	1.78	12.22	20.2	2.0	13.6	5.8
1,000 pounds	19.66	1.80	13.51	19.7	1.8	13.5	6.5
1,100 pounds	19.92	1.73	13.91	18.1	1.6	12.6	6.9
1,200 pounds	20.76	1.84	14.71	17.3	1.5	12.3	7.2

TABLE 2 (*continued*)

	Per day per 1000 pounds live weight			
	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
3. *Fattening 2-year-old steers on full feed*				1:
First 50–60 days	22.0–25.0	2.0–2.3	18.0–20.0	7.0– 7.8
Second 50–60 days	21.0–24.0	1.9–2.3	17.0–19.5	7.0– 7.8
Third 50–60 days	18.0–22.0	1.8–2.1	16.0–18.5	7.0– 7.8
4. *Ox at rest in stall*	13.0–21.0	0.6–0.8	8.4–10.4	10.0–16.0
5. *Wintering beef cows in calf*	14.0–25.0	0.7–0.9	9.0–12.0	10.0–15.0
6. *Horses*				
Idle	13.0–18.0	0.8–1.0	7.0– 9.0	8.0– 9.0
At light work	15.0–22.0	1.1–1.4	10.0–13.1	8.0– 8.5
At medium work	16.0–24.0	1.4–1.7	12.8–15.6	7.8– 8.3
At heavy work	18.0–26.0	2.0–2.2	15.9–19.5	7.0– 8.0
7. *Brood mares suckling foals, but not at work*	15.0–22.0	1.2–1.5	9.0–12.0	6.5– 7.5
8. *Growing colts over 6 months*	18.0–22.0	1.6–1.8	11.0–13.0	6.0– 7.0
9. *Fattening lambs*				
Weight 50–70 pounds	27.0–30.0	3.1–3.3	19.0–22.0	5.0– 6.0
Weight 70–90 pounds	28.0–31.0	2.5–2.8	20.0–23.0	6.7– 7.2
Weight 90–110 pounds	27.0–31.0	2.3–2.5	19.0–23.0	7.0– 8.0
10. *Maintaining mature sheep*				
Coarse wool	18.0–23.0	1.1–1.3	11.0–13.0	8.0– 9.1
Fine wool	20.0–26.0	1.4–1.6	12.0–14.0	7.5– 8.5
11. *Breeding ewes, with lambs*	23.0–27.0	2.6–2.9	18.0–20.0	5.6– 6.5
12. *Fattening pigs*				
Weight 30–50 pounds	46.2–51.0	7.8–8.5	41.0–45.4	4.0– 4.5
Weight 50–100 pounds	37.0–40.8	5.5–6.0	32.9–36.4	5.0– 5.6
Weight 100–150 pounds	32.4–35.8	4.4–4.9	28.8–31.9	5.5– 6.2
Weight 150–200 pounds	29.0–32.0	3.5–3.9	25.8–28.5	6.2– 7.0
Weight 200–250 pounds	25.5–28.1	3.0–3.4	22.7–25.0	6.5– 7.3
Weight 250–300 pounds	22.4–24.8	2.6–2.9	20.0–22.0	6.7– 7.5
13. *Brood sows, with pigs*	20.0–24.0	2.4–2.7	18.0–21.0	6.0– 7.0

TABLE 3. DIGESTIBLE COMPOSITION OF STATED AMOUNTS OF COMMON FEEDS

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE					
Corn fodder	1	.219	.010	.147	1:13.7
	5	1.095	.050	.735	
	10	2.190	.100	1.470	
	15	3.285	.150	2.205	
	20	4.380	.200	2.940	
	25	5.475	.250	3.675	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Corn fodder	30	6.570	.300	4.410	
	35	7.665	.350	5.145	
	40	8.760	.400	5.880	
Kafir fodder	1	.236	.011	.144	1:12.1
	5	1.180	.055	.720	
	10	2.360	.110	1.440	
	15	3.540	.165	2.160	
	20	4.720	.220	2.880	
	25	5.900	.275	3.600	
	30	7.080	.330	4.320	
	35	8.260	.385	5.040	
	40	9.440	.440	5.760	
Milo fodder	1	.227	.008	.142	1:16.8
	5	1.135	.040	.710	
	10	2.270	.080	1.420	
	15	3.405	.120	2.130	
	20	4.540	.160	2.840	
	25	5.675	.200	3.550	
	30	6.810	.240	4.260	
	35	7.945	.280	4.970	
	40	9.080	.320	5.680	
Sorghum fodder	1	.249	.007	.162	1:22.1
	5	1.245	.035	.810	
	10	2.490	.070	1.620	
	15	3.735	.105	2.430	
	20	4.980	.140	3.240	
	25	6.225	.175	4.050	
	30	7.470	.210	4.860	
	35	8.715	.245	5.670	
	40	9.960	.280	6.480	
Johnson grass	1	.291	.012	.170	1:13.2
	5	1.455	.060	.850	
	10	2.910	.120	1.700	
	15	4.365	.180	2.550	
	20	5.820	.240	3.400	
	25	7.275	.300	4.250	
	30	8.730	.360	5.100	
	35	10.185	.420	5.950	
	40	11.640	.480	6.800	
Millet, common or Hungarian	1	.276	.019	.181	1:8.5
	5	1.380	.095	.905	
	10	2.760	.190	1.810	
	15	4.140	.285	2.715	
	20	5.520	.380	3.620	
	25	6.900	.475	4.525	
	30	8.280	.570	5.430	
	35	9.660	.665	6.335	
	40	11.040	.760	7.240	
Mixed grasses, immature	1	.297	.036	.201	1:4.6
	5	1.485	.180	1.005	
	10	2.970	.360	2.010	
	15	54.45	.540	3.015	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Mixed grasses, immature.........	20	5.940	.720	4.020	1:4.6
	25	7.425	.900	5.025	
	30	8.910	1.080	6.030	
	35	10.395	1.260	7.035	
	40	11.880	1.440	8.040	
Timothy......................	1	.375	.015	.222	1:13.8
	5	1.875	.075	1.110	
	10	3.750	.150	2.220	
	15	5.625	.225	3.330	
	20	7.500	.300	4.440	
	25	9.375	.375	5.550	
	30	11.250	.450	6.660	
	35	13.125	.525	7.770	
	40	15.000	.600	8.880	
Barley fodder..................	1	.232	.023	.147	1:5.4
	5	1.160	.115	.735	
	10	2.320	.230	1.470	
	15	3.480	.345	2.205	
	20	4.640	.460	2.940	
	25	5.800	.575	3.675	
	30	6.960	.690	4.410	
	35	8.120	.805	5.145	
	40	9.280	.920	5.880	
Buckwheat fodder.............	1	.366	.022	.207	1:8.4
	5	1.830	.110	1.035	
	10	3.660	.220	2.070	
	15	5.490	.330	3.105	
	20	7.320	.440	4.140	
	25	9.150	.550	5.175	
	30	10.980	.660	6.210	
	35	12.810	.770	7.245	
	40	14.640	.880	8.280	
Oat fodder.....................	1	.261	.023	.159	1:5.9
	5	1.305	.115	.795	
	10	2.610	.230	1.590	
	15	3.915	.345	2.385	
	20	5.220	.460	3.180	
	25	6.525	.575	3.975	
	30	7.830	.690	4.770	
	35	9.135	.805	5.565	
	40	10.440	.920	6.360	
Rye fodder.....................	1	.213	.021	.154	1:6.3
	5	1.065	.105	.770	
	10	2.130	.210	1.540	
	15	3.195	.315	2.310	
	20	4.260	.420	3.080	
	25	5.325	.525	3.850	
	30	6.390	.630	4.620	
	35	7.455	.735	5.390	
	40	8.520	.840	6.160	
Wheat fodder..................	1	.274	.028	.193	1:5.9
	5	1.370	.140	.965	
	10	2.740	.280	1.930	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Wheat fodder	15	4.110	.420	2.895	1:5.9
	20	5.480	.560	3.860	
	25	6.850	.700	4.825	
	30	8.220	.840	5.790	
	35	9.590	.980	6.755	
	40	10.960	1.120	7.720	
Alfalfa	1	.253	.033	.146	1:3.4
	5	1.265	.165	.730	
	10	2.530	.330	1.460	
	15	3.795	.495	2.190	
	20	5.060	.660	2.920	
	25	6.325	.825	3.650	
	30	7.590	.990	4.380	
	35	8.855	1.155	5.110	
	40	10.120	1.320	5.840	
Red clover	1	.262	.027	.171	1:5.3
	5	1.310	.135	.855	
	10	2.620	.270	1.710	
	15	3.930	.405	2.565	
	20	5.240	.540	3.420	
	25	6.550	.675	4.275	
	30	7.860	.810	5.130	
	35	9.170	.945	5.985	
	40	10.480	1.080	6.840	
Cowpeas	1	.163	.023	.110	1:3.8
	5	.815	.115	.550	
	10	1.630	.230	1.100	
	15	2.445	.345	1.650	
	20	3.260	.460	2.200	
	25	4.075	.575	2.750	
	30	4.890	.690	3.300	
	35	5.705	.805	3.850	
	40	6.520	.920	4.400	
Peas, field, Canada	1	.166	.029	.107	1:2.7
	5	.830	.145	.535	
	10	1.660	.290	1.070	
	15	2.490	.435	1.605	
	20	3.320	.580	2.140	
	25	4.150	.725	2.675	
	30	4.980	.870	3.210	
	35	5.810	1.015	3.745	
	40	6.640	1.160	4.280	
Soybeans	1	.236	.032	.145	1:3.5
	5	1.180	.160	.725	
	10	2.360	.320	1.450	
	15	3.540	.480	2.175	
	20	4.720	.640	2.900	
	25	5.900	.800	3.625	
	30	7.080	.960	4.350	
	35	8.260	1.120	5.075	
	40	9.440	1.280	5.800	
Vetch	1	.181	.035	.125	1:2.6
	5	.905	.175	.625	
	10	1.810	.350	1.250	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Vetch	15	2.715	.525	1.875	1:2.6
	20	3.620	.700	2.500	
	25	4.525	.875	3.125	
	30	5.430	1.050	3.750	
	35	6.335	1.225	4.375	
	40	7.240	1.400	5.000	
Clover and mixed grasses	1	.273	.022	.177	1:7.0
	5	1.365	.110	.885	
	10	2.730	.220	1.770	
	15	4.095	.330	2.655	
	20	5.460	.440	3.540	
	25	6.825	.550	4.425	
	30	8.190	.660	5.310	
	35	9.555	.770	6.195	
	40	10.920	.880	7.080	
Peas and barley	1	.202	.027	.126	1:3.7
	5	1.010	.135	.630	
	10	2.020	.270	1.260	
	15	3.030	.405	1.890	
	20	4.040	.540	2.520	
	25	5.050	.675	3.150	
	30	6.060	.810	3.780	
	35	7.070	.945	4.410	
	40	8.080	1.080	5.040	
Peas and oats	1	.226	.024	.144	1:5.0
	5	1.130	.120	.720	
	10	2.260	.240	1.440	
	15	3.390	.360	2.160	
	20	4.520	.480	2.880	
	25	5.650	.600	3.600	
	30	6.780	.720	4.320	
	35	7.910	.840	5.040	
	40	9.040	.960	5.760	
Vetch and oats	1	.265	.028	.170	1:5.1
	5	1.325	.140	.850	
	10	2.650	.280	1.700	
	15	3.975	.420	2.550	
	20	5.300	.560	3.400	
	25	6.625	.700	4.250	
	30	7.950	.840	5.100	
	35	9.275	.980	5.950	
	40	10.600	1.120	6.800	
Beets, common	1	.130	.009	.102	1:10.3
	5	.650	.045	.510	
	10	1.300	.090	1.020	
	15	1.950	.135	1.530	
	20	2.600	.180	2.040	
	25	3.250	.225	2.550	
	30	3.900	.270	3.060	
	35	4.550	.315	3.570	
	40	5.200	.360	4.080	
Beets, sugar	1	.164	.012	.140	1:10.7
	5	.820	.060	.700	
	10	1.640	.120	1.400	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Beets, sugar	15	2.460	.180	2.100	1:10.7
	20	3.280	.240	2.800	
	25	4.100	.300	3.500	
	30	4.920	.360	4.200	
	35	5.740	.420	4.900	
	40	6.560	.480	5.600	
Carrots	1	.117	.009	.099	1:10.0
	5	.585	.045	.495	
	10	1.170	.090	.990	
	15	1.755	.135	1.485	
	20	2.340	.180	1.980	
	25	2.925	.225	2.475	
	30	3.510	.270	2.970	
	35	4.095	.315	3.465	
	40	4.680	.360	3.960	
Mangels	1	.094	.008	.074	1:8.2
	5	.470	.040	.370	
	10	.940	.080	.740	
	15	1.410	.120	1.110	
	20	1.880	.160	1.480	
	25	2.350	.200	1.850	
	30	2.820	.240	2.220	
	35	3.290	.280	2.590	
	40	3.760	.320	2.960	
Parsnips	1	.166	.013	.147	1:10.3
	5	.830	.065	.735	
	10	1.660	.130	1.470	
	15	2.490	.195	2.205	
	20	3.320	.260	2.940	
	25	4.150	.325	3.675	
	30	4.980	.390	4.410	
	35	5.810	.455	5.145	
	40	6.640	.520	5.880	
Potatoes	1	.212	.011	.171	1:14.5
	5	1.060	.055	.855	
	10	2.120	.110	1.710	
	15	3.180	.165	2.565	
	20	4.240	.220	3.420	
	25	5.300	.275	4.275	
	30	6.360	.330	5.130	
	35	7.420	.385	5.985	
	40	8.480	.440	6.840	
Rutabagas	1	.109	.010	.094	1:8.4
	5	.545	.050	.470	
	10	1.090	.100	.940	
	15	1.635	.150	1.410	
	20	2.180	.200	1.880	
	25	2.725	.250	2.350	
	30	3.270	.300	2.820	
	35	3.815	.350	3.290	
	40	4.360	.400	3.760	
Turnips	1	.095	.010	.074	1:6.4
	5	.475	.050	.370	
	10	.950	.100	.740	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Turnips	15	1.425	.150	1.110	1:6.4
	20	1.900	.200	1.480	
	25	2.375	.250	1.850	
	30	2.850	.300	2.220	
	35	3.325	.350	2.590	
	40	3.800	.400	2.960	
Apples	1	.182	.004	.164	1:40.0
	5	.910	.020	.820	
	10	1.820	.040	1.640	
	15	2.730	.060	2.460	
	20	3.640	.080	3.280	
	25	4.550	.100	4.100	
	30	5.460	.120	4.920	
	35	6.370	.140	5.740	
	40	7.280	.160	6.560	
Apple pomace	1	.233	.012	.186	1:14.5
	5	1.165	.060	.930	
	10	2.330	.120	1.860	
	15	3.495	.180	2.790	
	20	4.660	.240	3.720	
	25	5.825	.300	4.650	
	30	6.990	.360	5.580	
	35	8.155	.420	6.510	
	40	9.320	.480	7.440	
Cabbages	1	.089	.019	.079	1:3.2
	5	.445	.095	.395	
	10	.890	.190	.790	
	15	1.335	.285	1.185	
	20	1.780	.380	1.580	
	25	2.225	.475	1.975	
	30	2.670	.570	2.370	
	35	3.115	.665	2.765	
	40	3.560	.760	3.160	
Cabbage waste, outer leaves	1	.141	.017	.084	1:3.9
	5	.705	.085	.420	
	10	1.410	.170	.840	
	15	2.115	.255	1.260	
	20	2.820	.340	1.680	
	25	3.525	.425	2.100	
	30	4.230	.510	2.520	
	35	4.935	.595	2.940	
	40	5.640	.680	3.360	
Pumpkins, field	1	.083	.011	.067	1:5.1
	5	.415	.055	.335	
	10	.830	.110	.670	
	15	1.245	.165	1.005	
	20	1.660	.220	1.340	
	25	2.075	.275	1.675	
	30	2.490	.330	2.010	
	35	2.905	.385	2.345	
	40	3.320	.440	2.680	
Rape	1	.167	.026	.133	1:4.1
	5	.835	.130	.665	
	10	1.670	.260	1.330	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Rape	15	2.505	.390	1.995	1:4.1
	20	3.340	.520	2.660	
	25	4.175	.650	3.325	
	30	5.010	.780	3.990	
	35	5.845	.910	4.655	
	40	6.680	1.040	5.320	
Sugar beet leaves	1	.116	.012	.077	1:5.4
	5	.580	.060	.385	
	10	1.160	.120	.770	
	15	1.740	.180	1.155	
	20	2.320	.240	1.540	
	25	2.900	.300	1.925	
	30	3.480	.360	2.310	
	35	4.060	.420	2.695	
	40	4.640	.480	3.080	
Sunflower, whole plant	1	.237	.022	.158	1:6.2
	5	1.185	.110	.790	
	10	2.370	.220	1.580	
	15	3.555	.330	2.370	
	20	4.740	.440	3.160	
	25	5.925	.550	3.950	
	30	7.110	.660	4.740	
	35	8.295	.770	5.530	
	40	9.480	.880	6.320	
Corn silage	1	.263	.011	.177	1:15.1
	5	1.315	.055	.885	
	10	2.630	.110	1.770	
	15	3.945	.165	2.655	
	20	5.260	.220	3.540	
	25	6.575	.275	4.425	
	30	7.890	.330	5.310	
	35	9.205	.385	6.195	
	40	10.520	.440	7.080	
Sorghum silage	1	.228	.006	.133	1:21.2
	5	1.140	.030	.665	
	10	2.280	.600	1.330	
	15	3.420	.900	1.995	
	20	4.560	1.200	2.660	
	25	5.700	1.500	3.325	
	30	6.840	1.800	3.990	
	35	7.980	2.100	4.655	
	40	9.120	2.400	5.320	
Alfalfa silage	1	.246	.012	.104	1:7.7
	5	1.230	.060	.520	
	10	2.460	.120	1.040	
	15	3.690	.180	1.560	
	20	4.920	.240	2.080	
	25	6.150	.300	2.600	
	30	7.380	.360	3.120	
	35	8.610	.420	3.640	
	40	9.840	.480	4.160	
Clover silage	1	.278	.013	.119	1:8.2
	5	1.390	.065	.595	
	10	2.780	.130	1.190	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Clover silage	15	4.170	.195	1.785	1:8.2
	20	5.560	.260	2.380	
	25	6.950	.325	2.975	
	30	8.340	.390	3.570	
	35	9.730	.455	4.165	
	40	11.120	.520	4.760	
Peavine silage	1	.232	.016	.150	1:8.4
	5	1.160	.080	.750	
	10	2.320	.160	1.500	
	15	3.480	.240	2.250	
	20	4.640	.320	3.000	
	25	5.800	.400	3.750	
	30	6.960	.480	4.500	
	35	8.120	.560	5.250	
	40	9.280	.640	6.000	
Cow's milk	1	.136	.033	.179	1:4.4
	2	.272	.066	.358	
	3	.408	.099	.537	
	4	.544	.132	.716	
	5	.680	.165	.895	
	6	.816	.198	1.074	
	7	.952	.231	1.253	
	8	1.088	.264	1.432	
	9	1.224	.297	1.611	
Skimmed milk	1	.099	.036	.091	1:1.5
	2	.198	.072	.182	
	3	.297	.108	.273	
	4	.396	.144	.364	
	5	.495	.180	.455	
	6	.594	.216	.546	
	7	.693	.252	.637	
	8	.792	.288	.728	
	9	.891	.324	.819	
Buttermilk	1	.094	.034	.084	1:1.5
	2	.188	.068	.168	
	3	.282	.102	.252	
	4	.376	.136	.336	
	5	.470	.170	.420	
	6	.564	.204	.504	
	7	.658	.238	.588	
	8	.752	.272	.672	
	9	.846	.306	.756	
Whey	1	.066	.008	.062	1:6.8
	2	.136	.016	.124	
	3	.198	.024	.186	
	4	.264	.032	.248	
	5	.330	.040	.310	
	6	.396	.048	.372	
	7	.462	.056	.434	
	8	.528	.064	.496	
	9	.594	.072	.558	
Beet pulp, wet	1	.093	.005	.074	1:13.8
	5	.465	.025	.370	
	10	.930	.050	.740	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*concluded*)					
Beet pulp, wet	15	1.395	.075	1.110	1:13.8
	20	1.860	.100	1.480	
	25	2.325	.125	1.850	
	30	2.790	.150	2.220	
	35	3.255	.175	2.590	
	40	3.720	.200	2.960	
Brewers' grains, wet	1	.241	.046	.167	1:2.6
	5	1.205	.230	.835	
	10	2.410	.460	1.670	
	15	3.615	.690	2.505	
	20	4.820	.920	3.340	
	25	6.025	1.150	4.175	
	30	7.230	1.380	5.010	
	35	8.435	1.610	5.845	
	40	9.640	1.840	6.680	
Distillers' grains, wet	1	.226	.033	.200	1:5.1
	5	1.130	.165	1.000	
	10	2.260	.330	2.000	
	15	3.390	.495	3.000	
	20	4.520	.660	4.000	
	25	5.650	.825	5.000	
	30	6.780	.990	6.000	
	35	7.910	1.155	7.000	
	40	9.040	1.320	8.000	
DRIED ROUGHAGE					
Corn fodder	1	.817	.030	.537	1:16.9
	4	3.268	.120	2.148	
	8	6.536	.240	4.296	
	12	9.804	.360	6.444	
	16	13.072	.480	8.592	
	20	16.340	.600	10.740	
Corn stover	1	.810	.021	.461	1:21.0
	4	3.240	.084	1.844	
	8	6.480	.168	3.688	
	12	9.720	.252	5.532	
	16	12.960	.336	7.376	
	20	16.200	.420	9.220	
Kafir fodder	1	.910	.041	.529	1:11.9
	4	3.640	.164	2.116	
	8	7.280	.328	4.232	
	12	10.920	.492	6.348	
	16	14.560	.656	8.464	
	20	18.200	.820	10.580	
Milo fodder	1	.889	.019	.445	1:22.4
	4	3.556	.076	1.780	
	8	7.112	.152	3.560	
	12	10.668	.228	5.340	
	16	14.224	.304	7.120	
	20	17.780	.380	8.900	
Sorghum fodder	1	.903	.028	.521	1:17.6
	4	3.612	.112	2.084	
	8	7.224	.224	4.168	
	12	10.836	.336	6.252	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
DRIED ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Sorghum fodder	16	14.448	.448	8.336	1:17.6
	20	18.060	.560	10.420	
Millet hay	1	.857	.050	.550	1:10.0
	4	3.428	.200	2.200	
	6	5.142	.300	3.300	
	8	6.856	.400	4.400	
	10	8.570	.500	5.500	
	12	10.284	.600	6.600	
	14	11.998	.700	7.700	
	16	13.712	.800	8.800	
Mixed grasses	1	.872	.043	.513	1:10.0
	4	3.488	.172	2.052	
	6	5.232	.258	3.078	
	8	6.976	.344	4.104	
	10	8.720	.430	5.130	
	12	10.464	.516	6.156	
	14	12.208	.602	7.182	
	16	13.952	.688	8.208	
Timothy hay	1	.884	.030	.485	1:15.2
	4	3.536	.120	1.940	
	6	5.304	.180	2.910	
	8	7.072	.240	3.880	
	10	8.840	.300	4.850	
	12	10.608	.360	5.820	
	14	12.376	.420	6.790	
	16	14.144	.480	7.760	
Oat hay	1	.880	.045	.464	1:9.3
	4	3.520	.180	1.856	
	6	5.280	.270	2.784	
	8	7.040	.360	3.712	
	10	8.800	.450	4.640	
	12	10.560	.540	5.568	
	14	12.320	.630	6.496	
	16	14.080	.720	7.424	
Alfalfa hay	1	.914	.106	.516	1:3.9
	4	3.656	.424	2.064	
	6	5.484	.636	3.096	
	8	7.312	.848	4.128	
	10	9.140	1.060	5.160	
	12	10.968	1.272	6.192	
	14	12.796	1.484	7.224	
	16	14.624	1.696	8.256	
Alfalfa meal	1	.912	.102	.507	1:4.0
	4	3.648	.408	2.028	
	6	5.472	.612	3.042	
	8	7.296	.816	4.056	
	10	9.120	1.020	5.070	
	12	10.944	1.224	6.084	
	14	12.768	1.428	7.098	
	16	14.592	1.632	8.112	
Red clover hay	1	.871	.076	.509	1:5.7
	4	3.484	.304	2.036	
	6	5.226	.456	3.054	
	8	6.968	.608	4.072	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
DRIED ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Red clover hay	10	8.710	.700	5.090	1:5.7
	12	10.452	.912	6.108	
	14	12.194	1.064	7.126	
	16	13.936	1.216	8.144	
Cowpea hay	1	.903	.131	.490	1:2.7
	4	3.612	.524	1.960	
	6	5.418	.786	2.940	
	8	7.224	1.048	3.920	
	10	9.030	1.310	4.900	
	12	10.836	1.572	5.880	
	14	12.642	1.834	6.860	
	16	14.448	2.096	7.840	
Pea, field, hay	1	.889	.122	.566	1:3.6
	4	3.556	.488	2.264	
	6	5.334	.732	3.396	
	8	7.112	.976	4.528	
	10	8.890	1.220	5.660	
	12	10.668	1.464	6.792	
	14	12.446	1.708	7.924	
	16	14.224	1.952	9.056	
Soybean hay	1	.914	.117	.536	1:3.6
	4	3.656	.468	2.144	
	6	5.484	.702	3.216	
	8	7.312	.936	4.288	
	10	9.140	1.170	5.360	
	12	10.968	1.404	6.432	
	14	12.796	1.638	7.504	
	16	14.624	1.872	8.576	
Vetch hay	1	.877	.157	.571	1:2.6
	4	3.508	.628	2.284	
	6	5.262	.942	3.426	
	8	7.016	1.256	4.568	
	10	8.770	1.570	5.710	
	12	10.524	1.884	6.852	
	14	12.278	2.198	7.994	
	16	14.032	2.512	9.136	
Clover and timothy	1	.878	.040	.462	1:10.6
	4	3.512	.160	1.848	
	6	5.268	.240	2.772	
	8	7.024	.320	3.696	
	10	8.780	.400	4.620	
	12	10.536	.480	5.544	
	14	12.292	.560	6.468	
	16	14.048	.640	7.392	
Peas and oats	1	.834	.083	.488	1:4.9
	4	3.336	.332	1.952	
	6	5.004	.498	2.928	
	8	6.672	.664	3.904	
	10	8.340	.830	4.880	
	12	10.008	.996	5.856	
	14	11.676	1.162	6.832	
	16	13.344	1.328	7.808	
Peas, oats, and barley	1	.835	.092	.501	1:4.4
	4	3.340	.368	2.004	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
DRIED ROUGHAGE (*continued*)					
Peas, oats, and barley	6	5.010	.552	3.006	1:4.4
	8	6.680	.736	4.008	
	10	8.350	.920	5.010	
	12	10.020	1.104	6.012	
	14	11.690	1.288	7.014	
	16	13.360	1.472	8.016	
Vetch and oats	1	.843	.069	.471	1:5.8
	4	3.372	.276	1.884	
	6	5.058	.414	2.826	
	8	6.744	.552	3.768	
	10	8.430	.690	4.710	
	12	10.116	.828	5.652	
	14	11.802	.966	6.594	
	16	13.488	1.104	7.536	
Barley straw	1	.858	.009	.425	1:46.2
	4	3.432	.036	1.700	
	6	5.148	.054	2.550	
	8	6.864	.072	3.400	
	10	8.580	.090	4.250	
	12	10.296	.108	5.100	
	14	12.012	.126	5.950	
	16	13.728	.144	6.800	
Buckwheat straw	1	.901	.042	.332	1:6.9
	4	3.604	.168	1.328	
	6	5.406	.252	1.992	
	8	7.208	.336	2.656	
	10	9.010	.420	3.320	
	12	10.812	.504	3.984	
	14	12.614	.588	4.648	
	16	14.416	.672	5.312	
Oat straw	1	.885	.010	.456	1:44.6
	4	3.540	.040	1.824	
	6	5.310	.060	2.736	
	8	7.080	.080	3.648	
	10	8.850	.100	4.560	
	12	10.620	.120	5.472	
	14	12.390	.140	6.384	
	16	14.160	.160	7.296	
Rye straw	1	.929	.007	.412	1:57.9
	4	3.716	.028	1.648	
	6	5.574	.042	2.472	
	8	7.432	.056	3.296	
	10	9.290	.070	4.120	
	12	11.148	.084	4.944	
	14	13.006	.098	5.768	
	16	14.864	.112	6.592	
Wheat straw	1	.916	.007	.369	1:51.7
	4	3.664	.028	1.476	
	6	5.496	.042	2.214	
	8	7.328	.056	2.952	
	10	9.160	.070	3.690	
	12	10.992	.084	4.428	
	14	12.824	.098	5.166	
	16	14.656	.112	5.904	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
DRIED ROUGHAGE (*concluded*)					
Bean straw....................	1	.895	.036	.476	1:12.2
	4	3.580	.144	1.904	
	6	5.370	.216	2.856	
	8	7.160	.288	3.808	
	10	8.950	.360	4.760	
	12	10.740	.432	5.712	
	14	12.530	.504	6.664	
	16	14.320	.576	7.616	
Peavine straw.................	1	.906	.077	.567	1:6.4
	4	3.624	.308	2.268	
	6	5.436	.462	3.402	
	8	7.248	.616	4.536	
	10	9.060	.770	5.670	
	12	10.872	.924	6.804	
	14	12.684	1.078	7.938	
	16	14.496	1.232	9.072	
CONCENTRATES					
Corn (dent)....................	1	.895	.075	.857	1:10.4
	2	1.790	.150	1.714	
	3	2.685	.225	2.571	
	4	3.580	.300	3.428	
	5	4.475	.375	4.285	
	6	5.370	.450	5.142	
	7	6.265	.525	5.999	
	8	7.160	.600	6.856	
	9	8.055	.675	7.713	
Cornmeal or chop...............	1	.887	.069	.838	1:11.1
	2	1.774	.138	1.676	
	3	2.661	.207	2.514	
	4	3.548	.276	3.352	
	5	4.435	.345	4.190	
	6	5.322	.414	5.028	
	7	6.209	.483	5.866	
	8	7.096	.552	6.704	
	9	7.983	.621	7.542	
Corn-and-cob meal..............	1	.896	.061	.781	1:11.8
	2	1.792	.122	1.562	
	3	2.688	.183	2.343	
	4	3.584	.244	3.124	
	5	4.480	.305	3.905	
	6	5.376	.366	4.686	
	7	6.272	.427	5.467	
	8	7.168	.488	6.248	
	9	8.064	.549	7.029	
Hominy feed or chop............	1	.899	.070	.846	1:11.1
	2	1.798	.140	1.692	
	3	2.697	.210	2.538	
	4	3.596	.280	3.384	
	5	4.495	.350	4.230	
	6	5.394	.420	5.076	
	7	6.293	.490	5.922	
	8	7.192	.560	6.768	
	9	8.091	.630	7.614	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
CONCENTRATES (*continued*)					
Gluten feed	1	.913	.216	.807	1:2.7
	2	1.826	.432	1.614	
	3	2.739	.648	2.421	
	4	3.652	.864	3.228	
	5	4.565	1.080	4.035	
	6	5.478	1.296	4.842	
	7	6.391	1.512	5.649	
	8	7.304	1.728	6.456	
	9	8.217	1.944	7.263	
Gluten meal	1	.909	.302	.840	1:1.8
	2	1.818	.604	1.680	
	3	2.727	.906	2.520	
	4	3.636	1.208	3.360	
	5	4.545	1.510	4.200	
	6	5.454	1.812	5.040	
	7	6.363	2.114	5.880	
	8	7.272	2.416	6.720	
	9	8.181	2.718	7.560	
Germ oilmeal	1	.911	.165	.825	1:4.0
	2	1.822	.330	1.650	
	3	2.733	.495	2.475	
	4	3.644	.660	3.300	
	5	4.555	.825	4.125	
	6	5.466	.990	4.950	
	7	6.377	1.155	5.775	
	8	7.288	1.320	6.600	
	9	8.199	1.485	7.425	
Corn bran	1	.900	.058	.731	1:11.6
	2	1.800	.116	1.462	
	3	2.700	.174	2.193	
	4	3.600	.232	2.924	
	5	4.500	.290	3.655	
	6	5.400	.348	4.386	
	7	6.300	.406	5.117	
	8	7.200	.464	5.848	
	9	8.100	.522	6.579	
Wheat, whole or ground	1	.898	.092	.801	1:7.7
	2	1.796	.184	1.602	
	3	2.694	.276	2.403	
	4	3.592	.368	3.204	
	5	4.490	.460	4.005	
	6	5.388	.552	4.806	
	7	6.286	.644	5.607	
	8	7.184	.736	6.408	
	9	8.082	.828	7.209	
Red-dog flour	1	.889	.148	.792	1:4.4
	2	1.778	.296	1.584	
	3	2.667	.444	2.376	
	4	3.556	.592	3.168	
	5	4.445	.740	3.960	
	6	5.334	.888	4.752	
	7	6.223	1.036	5.544	
	8	7.112	1.184	6.336	
	9	8.001	1.332	7.128	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
CONCENTRATES (*continued*)					
Flour wheat middlings	1	.893	.157	.782	1:4.0
	2	1.786	.314	1.564	
	3	2.679	.471	2.346	
	4	3.572	.628	3.128	
	5	4.465	.785	3.910	
	6	5.358	.942	4.692	
	7	6.251	1.099	5.474	
	8	7.144	1.256	6.256	
	9	8.037	1.413	7.038	
Standard wheat middlings	1	.896	.134	.693	1:4.2
	2	1.792	.268	1.386	
	3	2.688	.402	2.079	
	4	3.584	.536	2.772	
	5	4.480	.670	3.465	
	6	5.376	.804	4.158	
	7	6.272	.938	4.851	
	8	7.168	1.072	5.544	
	9	8.064	1.206	6.237	
Wheat bran	1	.899	.125	.609	1:3.9
	2	1.798	.250	1.218	
	3	2.697	.375	1.827	
	4	3.596	.500	2.436	
	5	4.495	.625	3.045	
	6	5.394	.750	3.654	
	7	6.293	.875	4.263	
	8	7.192	1.000	4.872	
	9	8.091	1.125	5.481	
Wheat mixed feed	1	.899	.129	.670	1:4.2
	2	1.798	.258	1.340	
	3	2.697	.387	2.010	
	4	3.596	.516	2.680	
	5	4.495	.645	3.350	
	6	5.394	.774	4.020	
	7	6.293	.903	4.690	
	8	7.192	1.032	5.360	
	9	8.091	1.161	6.030	
Wheat screenings	1	.898	.096	.650	1:5.8
	2	1.796	.192	1.300	
	3	2.694	.288	1.950	
	4	3.592	.384	2.600	
	5	4.490	.480	3.250	
	6	5.388	.576	3.900	
	7	6.286	.672	4.550	
	8	7.184	.768	5.200	
	9	8.082	.864	5.850	
Rye, whole or ground	1	.906	.099	.810	1:7.2
	2	1.812	.198	1.620	
	3	2.718	.297	2.430	
	4	3.624	.396	3.240	
	5	4.530	.495	4.050	
	6	5.436	.594	4.860	
	7	6.342	.693	5.670	
	8	7.248	.792	6.480	
	9	8.154	.891	7.290	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
CONCENTRATES (*continued*)					
Rye feed	1	.885	.122	.745	1:5.1
	2	1.770	.244	1.490	
	3	2.655	.366	2.235	
	4	3.540	.488	2.980	
	5	4.425	.610	3.725	
	6	5.310	.732	4.470	
	7	6.195	.854	5.215	
	8	7.080	.976	5.960	
	9	7.965	1.098	6.705	
Oats, whole or ground	1	.908	.097	.704	1:6.3
	2	1.816	.194	1.408	
	3	2.724	.291	2.112	
	4	3.632	.388	2.816	
	5	4.540	.485	3.520	
	6	5.448	.582	4.224	
	7	6.356	.679	4.928	
	8	7.264	.776	5.632	
	9	8.172	.873	6.336	
Oat hulls	1	.932	.020	.501	1:24.1
	2	1.864	.040	1.002	
	3	2.796	.060	1.503	
	4	3.728	.080	2.004	
	5	4.660	.100	2.505	
	6	5.592	.120	3.006	
	7	6.524	.140	3.507	
	8	7.456	.160	4.008	
	9	8.388	.180	4.509	
Barley, whole or ground	1	.907	.090	.794	1:7.8
	2	1.814	.180	1.588	
	3	2.721	.270	2.382	
	4	3.628	.360	3.176	
	5	4.535	.450	3.970	
	6	5.442	.540	4.764	
	7	6.349	.630	5.558	
	8	7.256	.720	6.352	
	9	8.163	.810	7.146	
Barley feed	1	.898	.108	.722	1:5.7
	2	1.796	.216	1.444	
	3	2.694	.324	2.166	
	4	3.592	.432	2.888	
	5	4.490	.540	3.610	
	6	5.388	.648	4.332	
	7	6.286	.756	5.054	
	8	7.184	.864	5.776	
	9	8.082	.972	6.498	
Barley screenings	1	.886	.083	.616	1:6.4
	2	1.772	.166	1.232	
	3	2.658	.249	1.848	
	4	3.544	.332	2.464	
	5	4.430	.415	3.080	
	6	5.316	.498	3.698	
	7	6.202	.581	4.312	
	8	7.088	.664	4.928	
	9	7.974	.747	5.544	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
CONCENTRATES (*continued*)					
Malt	1	.942	.158	.857	1:4.4
	2	1.884	.316	1.714	
	3	2.826	.474	2.571	
	4	3.768	.632	3.428	
	5	4.710	.790	4.285	
	6	5.652	.948	5.142	
	7	6.594	1.106	5.999	
	8	7.536	1.264	6.856	
	9	8.478	1.422	7.713	
Malt sprouts	1	.924	.203	.706	1:2.5
	2	1.848	.406	1.412	
	3	2.772	.609	2.118	
	4	3.696	.812	2.824	
	5	4.620	1.015	3.530	
	6	5.544	1.218	4.236	
	7	6.468	1.421	4.942	
	8	7.392	1.624	5.648	
	9	8.316	1.827	6.354	
Brewers' grains, dried	1	.925	.215	.657	1:2.1
	2	1.850	.430	1.314	
	3	2.775	.645	1.971	
	4	3.700	.860	2.628	
	5	4.625	1.075	3.285	
	6	5.550	1.290	3.942	
	7	6.475	1.505	4.599	
	8	7.400	1.720	5.256	
	9	8.325	1.935	5.913	
Rice polish	1	.900	.080	.821	1:9.3
	2	1.800	.160	1.642	
	3	2.700	.240	2.463	
	4	3.600	.320	3.284	
	5	4.500	.400	4.105	
	6	5.400	.480	4.926	
	7	6.300	.560	5.747	
	8	7.200	.640	6.568	
	9	8.100	.720	7.389	
Rice bran	1	.899	.079	.658	1:7.3
	2	1.798	.158	1.316	
	3	2.697	.237	1.974	
	4	3.596	.316	2.632	
	5	4.495	.395	3.290	
	6	5.394	.474	3.948	
	7	6.293	.553	4.606	
	8	7.192	.632	5.264	
	9	8.091	.711	5.922	
Rice hulls	1	.907	.003	.142	1:46.3
	2	1.814	.006	.284	
	3	2.721	.009	.426	
	4	3.628	.012	.568	
	5	4.535	.015	.710	
	6	5.442	.018	.852	
	7	6.349	.021	.994	
	8	7.256	.024	1.136	
	9	8.163	.027	1.278	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
CONCENTRATES (*continued*)					
Buckwheat, whole or ground	1	.879	.081	.634	1:6.8
	2	1.758	.162	1.268	
	3	2.637	.243	1.902	
	4	3.516	.324	2.536	
	5	4.395	.405	3.170	
	6	5.274	.486	3.804	
	7	6.153	.567	4.438	
	8	7.032	.648	5.072	
	9	7.911	.729	5.706	
Buckwheat middlings	1	.880	.246	.766	1:2.1
	2	1.760	.492	1.532	
	3	2.640	.738	2.298	
	4	3.520	.984	3.064	
	5	4.400	1.230	3.830	
	6	5.280	1.476	4.596	
	7	6.160	1.722	5.362	
	8	7.040	1.968	6.128	
	9	7.920	2.214	6.894	
Buckwheat bran	1	.888	.105	.481	1:3.6
	2	1.766	.210	.962	
	3	2.664	.315	1.443	
	4	3.552	.420	1.924	
	5	4.440	.525	2.405	
	6	5.328	.630	2.886	
	7	6.216	.735	3.367	
	8	7.104	.840	3.848	
	9	7.992	.945	4.329	
Buckwheat feed	1	.882	.091	.458	1:4.0
	2	1.764	.182	.916	
	3	2.646	.273	1.374	
	4	3.528	.364	1.832	
	5	4.410	.455	2.290	
	6	5.292	.546	2.748	
	7	6.174	.637	3.206	
	8	7.056	.728	3.664	
	9	7.938	.819	4.122	
Buckwheat hulls	1	.897	.004	.159	1:38.8
	2	1.794	.008	.318	
	3	2.691	.012	.477	
	4	3.588	.016	.636	
	5	4.485	.020	.795	
	6	5.382	.024	.954	
	7	6.279	.028	1.113	
	8	7.176	.032	1.272	
	9	8.073	.036	1.431	
Kafir corn	1	.882	.090	.800	1:7.9
	2	1.764	.180	1.600	
	3	2.646	.270	2.400	
	4	3.528	.360	3.200	
	5	4.410	.450	4.000	
	6	5.292	.540	4.800	
	7	6.174	.630	5.600	
	8	7.056	.720	6.400	
	9	7.938	.810	7.200	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
CONCENTRATES (*continued*)					
Sorghum grain	1	.873	.075	.795	1:9.6
	2	1.746	.150	1.590	
	3	2.619	.225	2.385	
	4	3.492	.300	3.180	
	5	4.365	.375	3.975	
	6	5.238	.450	4.770	
	7	6.111	.525	5.565	
	8	6.984	.600	6.360	
	9	7.857	.675	7.515	
Cottonseed meal, choice	1	.925	.370	.782	1:1.1
	2	1.850	.740	1.564	
	3	2.775	1.110	2.346	
	4	3.700	1.480	3.128	
	5	4.625	1.850	3.910	
	6	5.550	2.220	4.692	
	7	6.475	2.590	5.474	
	8	7.400	2.960	6.256	
	9	8.325	3.330	7.038	
Cottonseed meal, prime	1	.922	.334	.755	1:1.3
	2	1.844	.668	1.510	
	3	2.766	1.002	2.265	
	4	3.688	1.336	3.020	
	5	4.610	1.670	3.775	
	6	5.532	2.004	4.530	
	7	6.454	2.338	5.285	
	8	7.376	2.672	6.040	
	9	8.298	3.006	6.795	
Cottonseed meal, good	1	.921	.316	.748	1:1.4
	2	1.842	.632	1.496	
	3	2.763	.948	2.244	
	4	3.684	1.264	2.992	
	5	4.605	1.580	3.740	
	6	5.526	1.896	4.488	
	7	6.447	2.212	5.236	
	8	7.368	2.528	5.984	
	9	8.289	2.844	6.732	
Cottonseed feed	1	.917	.142	.577	1:3.1
	2	1.834	.284	1.154	
	3	2.751	.426	1.731	
	4	3.668	.568	2.308	
	5	4.585	.710	2.885	
	6	5.502	.852	3.462	
	7	6.419	.994	4.039	
	8	7.336	1.136	4.616	
	9	8.253	1.278	5.193	
Cottonseed hulls	1	.903	.003	.370	1:122.3
	2	1.806	.006	.740	
	3	2.709	.009	1.110	
	4	3.612	.012	1.480	
	5	4.515	.015	1.850	
	6	5.418	.018	2.220	
	7	6.321	.021	2.590	
	8	7.224	.024	2.960	
	9	8.127	.027	3.330	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
CONCENTRATES (*continued*)					
Linseed meal, old process	1	.909	.302	.779	1:1.6
	2	1.818	.604	1.558	
	3	2.727	.906	2.337	
	4	3.636	1.208	3.116	
	5	4.545	1.510	3.895	
	6	5.454	1.812	4.674	
	7	6.363	2.114	5.453	
	8	7.272	2.416	6.232	
	9	8.181	2.718	7.011	
Linseed meal, new process	1	.904	.317	.759	1:1.4
	2	1.808	.634	1.518	
	3	2.712	.951	2.277	
	4	3.616	1.268	3.036	
	5	4.520	1.585	3.795	
	6	5.424	1.902	4.554	
	7	6.328	2.219	5.313	
	8	7.232	2.536	6.072	
	9	8.136	2.853	6.831	
Culled beans	1	.872	.183	.744	1:3.1
	2	1.744	.366	1.488	
	3	2.616	.549	2.232	
	4	3.488	.732	2.976	
	5	4.360	.915	3.720	
	6	5.232	1.098	4.464	
	7	6.104	1.281	5.208	
	8	6.976	1.464	5.952	
	9	7.848	1.647	6.696	
Cowpeas	1	.884	.194	.764	1:2.9
	2	1.768	.388	1.528	
	3	2.652	.582	2.292	
	4	3.536	.776	3.056	
	5	4.420	.970	3.820	
	6	5.304	1.164	4.584	
	7	6.188	1.358	5.348	
	8	7.072	1.552	6.112	
	9	7.956	1.746	6.876	
Peas, field, Canada	1	.908	.190	.762	1:3.0
	2	1.816	.380	1.524	
	3	2.724	.570	2.286	
	4	3.632	.760	3.048	
	5	4.540	.950	3.810	
	6	5.448	1.140	4.572	
	7	6.356	1.330	5.334	
	8	7.264	1.520	6.096	
	9	8.172	1.710	6.858	
Soybeans	1	.901	.307	.859	1:1.8
	2	1.802	.614	1.718	
	3	2.703	.921	2.577	
	4	3.604	1.228	3.436	
	5	4.505	1.535	4.295	
	6	5.406	1.842	5.154	
	7	6.307	2.149	6.013	
	8	7.208	2.456	6.872	
	9	8.109	2.763	7.731	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
CONCENTRATES (*continued*)					
Coconut meal	1	.923	.184	.945	1:4.1
	2	1.846	.368	1.890	
	3	2.769	.552	2.835	
	4	3.692	.736	3.780	
	5	4.615	.920	4.725	
	6	5.538	1.104	5.670	
	7	6.461	1.288	6.615	
	8	7.384	1.472	7.560	
	9	8.307	1.656	8.505	
Sunflower seed	1	.931	.135	.973	1:6.2
	2	1.862	.270	1.946	
	3	2.793	.405	2.919	
	4	3.724	.540	3.892	
	5	4.655	.675	4.865	
	6	5.586	.810	5.838	
	7	6.517	.945	6.811	
	8	7.448	1.080	7.784	
	9	8.379	1.215	8.757	
Dried blood	1	.903	.691	.711	1:0.03
	2	1.806	1.382	1.422	
	3	2.709	2.073	2.133	
	4	3.612	2.764	2.844	
	5	4.515	3.455	3.555	
	6	5.418	4.146	4.266	
	7	6.321	4.837	4.977	
	8	7.224	5.528	5.688	
	9	8.127	6.219	6.399	
Meat and bone meal, 30–40 per cent ash	1	.940	.370	.618	1:0.7
	2	1.880	.740	1.236	
	3	2.820	1.110	1.854	
	4	3.760	1.480	2.472	
	5	4.700	1.850	3.090	
	6	5.640	2.220	3.708	
	7	6.580	2.590	4.326	
	8	7.520	2.960	4.944	
	9	8.460	3.330	5.562	
Meat and bone meal, over 40 per cent ash	1	.934	.309	.530	1:0.7
	2	1.868	.618	1.060	
	3	2.802	.927	1.590	
	4	3.736	1.216	2.120	
	5	4.670	1.545	2.650	
	6	5.604	1.854	3.180	
	7	6.538	2.163	3.710	
	8	7.472	2.472	4.240	
	9	8.406	2.781	4.770	
Tankage, over 60 per cent protein	1	.926	.587	.870	1:0.5
	2	1.852	1.174	1.740	
	3	2.778	1.761	2.610	
	4	3.704	2.348	3.480	
	5	4.630	2.935	4.350	
	6	5.556	3.522	5.220	
	7	6.482	4.109	6.090	
	8	7.408	4.696	6.960	
	9	8.334	5.283	7.830	

TABLE 3 (*continued*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
CONCENTRATES (*continued*)					
Tankage, 55–60 per cent protein	1	.925	.540	.826	1:0.5
	2	1.850	1.080	1.652	
	3	2.775	1.620	2.478	
	4	3.700	2.160	3.304	
	5	4.625	2.700	4.130	
	6	5.550	3.240	4.956	
	7	6.475	3.780	5.782	
	8	7.400	4.320	6.608	
	9	8.325	4.860	7.434	
Tankage, 45–55 per cent protein	1	.925	.481	.789	1:0.6
	2	1.850	.962	1.578	
	3	2.775	1.443	2.367	
	4	3.700	1.924	3.156	
	5	4.625	2.405	3.945	
	6	5.550	2.886	4.734	
	7	6.475	3.367	5.523	
	8	7.400	3.848	6.312	
	9	8.325	4.329	7.101	
Tankage, below 45 per cent protein	1	.935	.376	.752	1:1.0
	2	1.870	.752	1.504	
	3	2.805	1.128	2.256	
	4	3.740	1.504	3.008	
	5	4.675	1.880	3.760	
	6	5.610	2.256	4.512	
	7	6.545	2.632	5.264	
	8	7.480	3.008	6.016	
	9	8.415	3.384	6.768	
Beet pulp, dry	1	.918	.046	.716	1:14.6
	2	1.836	.092	1.432	
	3	2.754	.138	2.148	
	4	3.672	.184	2.864	
	5	4.590	.230	3.580	
	6	5.508	.276	4.296	
	7	6.426	.322	5.012	
	8	7.344	.368	5.728	
	9	8.262	.414	6.444	
Beet pulp, molasses	1	.924	.059	.753	1:11.8
	2	1.848	.118	1.506	
	3	2.772	.177	2.259	
	4	3.696	.236	3.012	
	5	4.620	.295	3.765	
	6	5.544	.354	4.518	
	7	6.468	.413	5.271	
	8	7.392	.472	6.024	
	9	8.316	.531	6.777	
Distillers' grains dried, from corn	1	.934	.224	.889	1:3.0
	2	1.868	.448	1.778	
	3	2.802	.672	2.667	
	4	3.736	.896	3.556	
	5	4.670	1.120	4.445	
	6	5.604	1.344	5.334	
	7	6.538	1.568	6.223	
	8	7.472	1.792	7.112	
	9	8.406	2.016	8.001	

TABLE 3 (*concluded*)

	Feed (pounds)	Dry matter (pounds)	Digestible protein (pounds)	Total digestible nutrients (pounds)	Nutritive ratio
CONCENTRATES (*concluded*)					
Distillers' grains dried, from rye	1	.928	.136	.664	1:3.9
	2	1.856	.272	1.328	
	3	2.784	.408	1.992	
	4	3.712	.544	2.656	
	5	4.640	.680	3.320	
	6	5.568	.816	3.984	
	7	6.496	.952	4.648	
	8	7.424	1.088	5.312	
	9	8.352	1.224	5.976	
Molasses, cane or blackstrap.....	1	.742	.010	.592	1:58.2
	2	1.484	.020	1.184	
	3	2.226	.030	1.776	
	4	2.968	.040	2.368	
	5	3.710	.050	2.960	
	6	4.452	.060	3.552	
	7	5.194	.070	4.144	
	8	5.936	.080	4.736	
	9	6.678	.090	5.328	

TABLE 4. COST OF 100 POUNDS OF TOTAL DIGESTIBLE NUTRIENTS IN DIFFERENT FEEDS AT VARYING PRICES PER TON

Feed	Total digestible nutrients per ton	Price per ton									
		$3	$4	$5	$6	$7	$8	$9	$10	$11	$12
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE											
Corn fodder	294	1.02	1.36	1.70	2.04	2.38	2.72	3.06	3.40	3.74	4.08
Kafir fodder	288	1.04	1.39	1.74	2.08	2.43	2.78	3.13	3.47	3.82	4.17
Milo fodder	284	1.06	1.41	1.76	2.11	2.46	2.82	3.17	3.52	3.87	4.23
Sweet sorghum fodder	324	.93	1.24	1.54	1.85	2.16	2.47	2.78	3.09	3.39	3.70
Johnson grass	340	.88	1.18	1.47	1.76	2.06	2.35	2.65	2.94	3.24	3.53
Millet, common or Hungarian	362	.83	1.11	1.38	1.66	1.93	2.21	2.49	2.76	3.04	3.31
Mixed grasses, immature	402	.75	1.00	1.24	1.49	1.74	1.99	2.24	2.49	2.74	2.99
Timothy	444	.68	.90	1.13	1.35	1.58	1.80	2.03	2.25	2.48	2.70
Barley fodder	294	1.02	1.36	1.70	2.04	2.38	2.72	3.06	3.40	3.74	4.08
Buckwheat fodder	414	.72	.97	1.21	1.45	1.69	1.93	2.17	2.41	2.66	2.90
Oat fodder	318	.94	1.26	1.57	1.89	2.20	2.52	2.83	3.15	3.46	3.77
Rye fodder	308	.97	1.30	1.62	1.95	2.27	2.60	2.92	3.25	3.57	3.90
Wheat fodder	386	.78	1.04	1.30	1.55	1.81	2.07	2.33	2.59	2.85	3.11
Alfalfa	292	1.03	1.37	1.71	2.05	2.40	2.74	3.08	3.42	3.77	4.11
Clover, red	342	.88	1.17	1.46	1.75	2.05	2.34	2.63	2.92	3.22	3.51
Cowpeas	220	1.36	1.82	2.27	2.73	3.18	3.64	4.09	4.55	5.00	5.45
Peas, field, Canada	214	1.40	1.87	2.34	2.80	3.27	3.74	4.21	4.67	5.14	5.61
Soybeans	290	1.03	1.38	1.72	2.07	2.41	2.76	3.10	3.45	3.79	4.14
Vetch	250	1.20	1.60	2.00	2.40	2.80	3.20	3.60	4.00	4.40	4.80
Clover and timothy	354	.85	1.13	1.41	1.70	1.98	2.26	2.54	2.82	3.11	3.39
Peas and barley	252	1.19	1.59	1.98	2.38	2.78	3.17	3.57	3.97	4.37	4.76
Peas and oats	288	1.04	1.39	1.74	2.08	2.43	2.78	3.13	3.47	3.82	4.17
Vetch and oats	340	.88	1.18	1.47	1.76	2.06	2.35	2.65	2.94	3.24	3.53
Beets, common	204	1.47	1.96	2.45	2.94	3.43	3.92	4.41	4.90	5.39	5.88
Sugar beets	280	1.07	1.43	1.79	2.14	2.50	2.86	3.21	3.57	3.93	4.29
Carrots	198	1.52	2.02	2.53	3.03	3.54	4.04	4.55	5.05	5.56	6.06
Mangels	148	2.03	2.70	3.38	4.05	4.73	5.41	6.08	6.76	7.43	8.11
Parsnips	294	1.02	1.36	1.70	2.04	2.38	2.72	3.06	3.40	3.74	4.08
Potatoes	342	.88	1.17	1.46	1.75	2.05	2.34	2.63	2.92	3.22	3.51

TABLE 4. COST OF 100 POUNDS OF TOTAL DIGESTIBLE NUTRIENTS IN DIFFERENT FEEDS AT VARYING PRICES PER TON (*continued*)

Feed	Total digestible nutrients per ton	Price per ton									
		$3	$4	$5	$6	$7	$8	$9	$10	$11	$12
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE (*continued*)											
Rutabagas	188	1.60	2.13	2.66	3.19	3.73	4.26	4.79	5.32	5.85	6.38
Flat turnips	148	2.03	2.70	3.38	4.05	4.73	5.41	6.08	6.76	7.43	8.11
Apples	328	.91	1.22	1.52	1.83	2.13	2.44	2.74	3.05	3.35	3.66
Apple pomace	372	.81	1.08	1.34	1.61	1.88	2.15	2.42	2.69	2.96	3.23
Cabbages	158	1.90	2.53	3.16	3.80	4.43	5.06	5.70	6.33	6.96	7.60
Cabbage waste, outer leaves	168	1.79	2.38	2.98	3.57	4.17	4.76	5.36	5.95	6.55	7.14
Pumpkins	134	2.24	2.99	3.73	4.48	5.22	5.97	6.72	7.46	8.21	8.96
Rape	266	1.13	1.50	1.88	2.26	2.63	3.01	3.38	3.76	4.14	4.51
Sugar beet leaves	154	1.95	2.60	3.25	3.90	4.55	5.19	5.84	6.49	7.14	7.79
Sunflower, whole plant	316	.95	1.27	1.58	1.90	2.22	2.53	2.85	3.16	3.48	3.80
Corn silage	354	.85	1.13	1.41	1.70	1.98	2.26	2.54	2.82	3.11	3.39
Sorghum silage	266	1.13	1.50	1.88	2.26	2.63	3.01	3.38	3.76	4.14	4.51
Alfalfa silage	208	1.44	1.92	2.40	2.88	3.37	3.85	4.33	4.81	5.29	5.77
Clover silage	238	1.26	1.68	2.10	2.52	2.94	3.36	3.78	4.20	4.62	5.04
Peavine silage	300	1.00	1.33	1.67	2.00	2.33	2.67	3.00	3.33	3.67	4.00
Cow's milk	358	.84	1.12	1.40	1.68	1.96	2.23	2.51	2.79	3.07	3.35
Skimmed milk	182	1.65	2.20	2.75	3.30	3.85	4.40	4.95	5.49	6.04	6.59
Buttermilk	168	1.79	2.38	2.98	3.57	4.17	4.76	5.36	5.95	6.55	7.14
Whey	124	2.42	3.23	4.03	4.84	5.65	6.45	7.26	8.06	8.87	9.68
Beet pulp, wet	148	2.03	2.70	3.38	4.05	4.73	5.41	6.08	6.76	7.43	8.11
Brewers' grains, wet	334	.90	1.20	1.50	1.80	2.10	2.40	2.69	2.99	3.29	3.59
Distillers' grains, wet	400	.75	1.00	1.25	1.50	1.75	2.00	2.25	2.50	2.75	3.00

TABLE 4. COST OF 100 POUNDS OF TOTAL DIGESTIBLE NUTRIENTS IN DIFFERENT FEEDS AT VARYING PRICES PER TON (*continued*)

Feed	Total digestible nutrients per ton	Price per ton								
		$5	$6	$7	$8	$9	$10	$11	$12	$13
DRIED ROUGHAGE										
Corn fodder	1,074	.47	.56	.65	.74	.84	.93	1.02	1.12	1.21
Corn stover	922	.54	.65	.76	.87	.98	1.08	1.19	1.30	1.41
Kafir fodder	1,058	.47	.57	.66	.76	.85	.95	1.04	1.13	1.23
Milo fodder	890	.56	.67	.79	.90	1.01	1.12	1.24	1.35	1.46
Sorghum fodder	1,042	.48	.58	.67	.77	.86	.96	1.06	1.15	1.25
Millet hay, common or Hungarian	1,100	.45	.55	.64	.73	.82	.91	1.00	1.09	1.18
Mixed grasses	1,026	.49	.58	.68	.78	.88	.97	1.07	1.17	1.27
Timothy hay	970	.52	.62	.72	.82	.93	1.03	1.13	1.24	1.34
Oat hay	928	.54	.65	.75	.86	.97	1.08	1.19	1.29	1.40
Alfalfa hay	1,032	.48	.58	.68	.78	.87	.97	1.07	1.16	1.26
Alfalfa meal	1,014	.49	.59	.69	.79	.89	.99	1.08	1.18	1.28
Red clover hay	1,018	.49	.59	.69	.79	.88	.98	1.08	1.18	1.28
Cowpea hay	980	.51	.61	.71	.82	.92	1.02	1.12	1.22	1.33
Pea, field, hay	1,132	.44	.53	.62	.71	.79	.88	.97	1.06	1.15
Soybean hay	1,072	.47	.56	.65	.75	.84	.93	1.03	1.12	1.21
Vetch hay	1,142	.44	.53	.61	.70	.79	.88	.96	1.05	1.14
Clover and timothy	924	.54	.65	.76	.87	.97	1.08	1.19	1.30	1.41
Peas and oats	976	.51	.61	.72	.82	.92	1.02	1.13	1.23	1.33
Peas, oats, barley	1,020	.49	.59	.69	.78	.88	.98	1.08	1.18	1.27
Vetch and oats	942	.53	.64	.74	.85	.96	1.06	1.17	1.27	1.38
Barley straw	850	.59	.71	.82	.94	1.06	1.18	1.29	1.41	1.53
Buckwheat straw	664	.75	.90	1.05	1.20	1.36	1.51	1.66	1.81	1.96
Oat straw	912	.55	.66	.77	.88	.99	1.10	1.21	1.31	1.42
Rye straw	824	.61	.73	.85	.97	1.09	1.21	1.33	1.46	1.58
Wheat straw	738	.68	.81	.95	1.08	1.22	1.36	1.49	1.63	1.76
Bean straw	952	.53	.63	.74	.84	.95	1.05	1.16	1.26	1.37
Peavine straw	1,134	.44	.53	.62	.71	.79	.88	.97	1.06	1.15

TABLE 4. COST OF 100 POUNDS OF TOTAL DIGESTIBLE NUTRIENTS IN DIFFERENT FEEDS AT VARYING PRICES PER TON (*continued*)

Feed	Total digestible nutrients per ton	Price per ton								
		$14	$15	$16	$17	$18	$19	$20	$21	$22
DRIED ROUGHAGE										
Corn fodder	1,074	1.30	1.40	1.49	1.58	1.68	1.77	1.86	1.96	2.05
Corn stover	922	1.52	1.63	1.74	1.84	1.95	2.06	2.17	2.28	2.39
Kafir fodder	1,058	1.32	1.42	1.51	1.61	1.70	1.80	1.89	1.98	2.08
Milo fodder	890	1.57	1.69	1.80	1.91	2.02	2.13	2.25	2.36	2.47
Sorghum fodder	1,042	1.34	1.44	1.54	1.63	1.73	1.82	1.92	2.02	2.11
Millet hay, common or Hungarian	1,100	1.27	1.36	1.45	1.55	1.64	1.73	1.82	1.91	2.00
Mixed grasses	1,026	1.36	1.46	1.56	1.66	1.75	1.85	1.95	2.05	2.14
Timothy hay	970	1.44	1.55	1.65	1.75	1.86	1.96	2.06	2.16	2.27
Oat hay	928	1.51	1.62	1.72	1.83	1.94	2.05	2.16	2.26	2.37
Alfalfa hay	1,032	1.36	1.45	1.55	1.65	1.74	1.84	1.94	2.03	2.13
Alfalfa meal	1,014	1.38	1.48	1.58	1.68	1.78	1.87	1.97	2.07	2.17
Red clover hay	1,018	1.38	1.47	1.57	1.67	1.77	1.87	1.96	2.06	2.16
Cowpea hay	980	1.43	1.53	1.63	1.74	1.84	1.94	2.04	2.14	2.24
Pea, field, hay	1,132	1.24	1.32	1.41	1.50	1.59	1.68	1.77	1.85	1.94
Soybean hay	1,072	1.31	1.40	1.49	1.59	1.68	1.77	1.87	1.96	2.05
Vetch hay	1,142	1.23	1.31	1.40	1.49	1.58	1.66	1.75	1.84	1.93
Clover and timothy	924	1.52	1.62	1.73	1.84	1.95	2.06	2.16	2.27	2.38
Peas and oats	976	1.43	1.54	1.64	1.74	1.84	1.95	2.05	2.15	2.25
Peas, oats, barley	1,020	1.37	1.47	1.57	1.67	1.76	1.86	1.96	2.06	2.16
Vetch and oats	942	1.49	1.59	1.70	1.81	1.91	2.02	2.12	2.23	2.34
Barley straw	850	1.65	1.76	1.88	2.00	2.12	2.24	2.35	2.47	2.59
Buckwheat straw	664	2.11	2.26	2.41	2.56	2.71	2.86	3.01	3.16	3.31
Oat straw	912	1.53	1.64	1.75	1.86	1.97	2.08	2.19	2.30	2.41
Rye straw	824	1.70	1.82	1.94	2.06	2.18	2.31	2.43	2.55	2.67
Wheat straw	738	1.90	2.03	2.17	2.30	2.44	2.57	2.71	2.85	2.98
Bean straw	952	1.47	1.57	1.68	1.79	1.89	2.00	2.10	2.21	2.31
Peavine straw	1,134	1.23	1.32	1.41	1.50	1.59	1.68	1.76	1.85	1.94

TABLE 4. COST OF 100 POUNDS OF TOTAL DIGESTIBLE NUTRIENTS IN DIFFERENT FEEDS AT VARYING PRICES PER TON (*continued*)

Feed	Total digestible nutrients per ton	Price per ton							
		$23	$24	$25	$26	$27	$28	$29	$30
DRIED ROUGHAGE									
Corn fodder	1,074	2.14	2.23	2.33	2.42	2.51	2.61	2.70	2.79
Corn stover	922	2.50	2.60	2.71	2.82	2.93	3.04	3.15	3.25
Kafir fodder	1,058	2.17	2.27	2.36	2.46	2.55	2.65	2.74	2.84
Milo fodder	890	2.58	2.70	2.81	2.92	3.03	3.15	3.26	3.37
Sorghum fodder	1,042	2.21	2.30	2.40	2.50	2.59	2.69	2.78	2.88
Millet hay, common or Hungarian	1,100	2.09	2.18	2.27	2.36	2.45	2.55	2.64	2.73
Mixed grasses	1,026	2.24	2.34	2.44	2.53	2.63	2.73	2.83	2.92
Timothy hay	970	2.37	2.47	2.58	2.68	2.78	2.89	2.99	3.09
Oat hay	928	2.48	2.59	2.69	2.80	2.91	3.02	3.13	3.23
Alfalfa hay	1,032	2.23	2.33	2.42	2.52	2.62	2.71	2.81	2.91
Alfalfa meal	1,014	2.27	2.37	2.47	2.56	2.66	2.76	2.86	2.96
Red clover hay	1,018	2.26	2.36	2.46	2.55	2.65	2.75	2.85	2.95
Cowpea hay	980	2.35	2.45	2.55	2.65	2.76	2.86	2.96	3.06
Pea, field, hay	1,132	2.03	2.12	2.21	2.29	2.38	2.47	2.56	2.65
Soybean hay	1,072	2.15	2.24	2.33	2.43	2.52	2.61	2.71	2.80
Vetch hay	1,142	2.01	2.10	2.19	2.28	2.36	2.45	2.54	2.63
Clover and timothy	924	2.49	2.60	2.71	2.81	2.92	3.03	3.14	3.25
Peas and oats	976	2.36	2.46	2.56	2.66	2.77	2.87	2.97	3.07
Peas, oats, barley	1,020	2.25	2.35	2.45	2.55	2.65	2.74	2.84	2.94
Vetch and oats	942	2.44	2.55	2.65	2.76	2.87	2.97	3.08	3.19
Barley straw	850	2.71	2.82	2.94	3.06	3.18	3.29	3.41	3.53
Buckwheat straw	664	3.46	3.61	3.77	3.92	4.07	4.22	4.37	4.52
Oat straw	912	2.52	2.63	2.74	2.85	2.96	3.07	3.18	3.29
Rye straw	824	2.79	2.91	3.03	3.16	3.28	3.40	3.52	3.64
Wheat straw	738	3.12	3.25	3.39	3.52	3.66	3.79	3.93	4.06
Bean straw	952	2.42	2.52	2.63	2.73	2.84	2.94	3.05	3.15
Peavine straw	1,134	2.03	2.12	2.20	2.29	2.38	2.47	2.56	2.65

TABLE 4. COST OF 100 POUNDS OF TOTAL DIGESTIBLE NUTRIENTS IN DIFFERENT FEEDS AT VARYING PRICES PER TON (*continued*)

Feed	Total digestible nutrients per ton	Price per ton									
		$12	$13	$14	$15	$16	$17	$18	$19	$20	$21
CONCENTRATES LOW IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:6.1 OR WIDER											
Corn, dent	1,714	.70	.76	.82	.88	.93	.99	1.05	1.11	1.16	1.22
Cornmeal or chop	1,676	.72	.78	.84	.89	.95	1.01	1.07	1.13	1.19	1.25
Corn-and-cob meal	1,562	.77	.83	.90	.96	1.02	1.09	1.15	1.22	1.28	1.34
Hominy feed or chop	1,692	.71	.77	.83	.89	.95	1.00	1.06	1.12	1.18	1.24
Corn bran	1,462	.82	.89	.96	1.03	1.09	1.16	1.23	1.30	1.37	1.44
Wheat, whole or ground	1,602	.75	.81	.87	.94	1.00	1.06	1.12	1.19	1.25	1.31
Rye, whole or ground	1,620	.74	.80	.86	.93	.99	1.05	1.11	1.17	1.23	1.30
Oats, whole or ground	1,408	.85	.92	.99	1.07	1.14	1.21	1.28	1.35	1.42	1.49
Oat hulls	1,002	1.20	1.30	1.40	1.50	1.60	1.70	1.80	1.90	2.00	2.10
Barley, whole or ground	1,588	.76	.82	.88	.94	1.01	1.07	1.13	1.20	1.26	1.32
Barley screenings	1,232	.97	1.06	1.14	1.22	1.30	1.38	1.46	1.54	1.62	1.70
Rice polish	1,642	.73	.79	.85	.91	.97	1.04	1.10	1.16	1.22	1.28
Rice bran, high grade	1,316	.91	.99	1.06	1.14	1.22	1.29	1.37	1.44	1.52	1.60
Rice hulls	284	4.23	4.58	4.93	5.28	5.63	5.99	6.34	6.69	7.04	7.39
Buckwheat, whole or ground	1,268	.95	1.03	1.10	1.18	1.26	1.34	1.42	1.50	1.58	1.66
Buckwheat hulls	318	3.77	4.09	4.40	4.72	5.03	5.35	5.66	5.97	6.29	6.60
Kafir grain, whole or ground	1,600	.75	.81	.87	.94	1.00	1.06	1.13	1.19	1.25	1.31
Sorghum grain, whole or ground	1,590	.75	.82	.88	.94	1.01	1.07	1.13	1.19	1.26	1.32
Cottonseed hulls	740	1.62	1.76	1.89	2.03	2.16	2.30	2.43	2.57	2.70	2.84
Sunflower seed	1,946	.62	.67	.72	.77	.82	.87	.93	.98	1.03	1.08
Beet pulp, dried	1,432	.84	.91	.98	1.05	1.12	1.19	1.26	1.33	1.40	1.47
Beet pulp, molasses	1,506	.80	.86	.93	1.00	1.06	1.13	1.20	1.26	1.33	1.39
Molasses, cane or blackstrap	1,184	1.01	1.10	1.18	1.27	1.35	1.44	1.52	1.60	1.69	1.77
CONCENTRATES MEDIUM IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:3.1 to 1:6.0											
Germ oilmeal, high grade	1,650	.73	.79	.85	.91	.97	1.03	1.09	1.15	1.21	1.27
Red-dog flour	1,584	.76	.82	.88	.95	1.01	1.07	1.14	1.20	1.26	1.33

Flour wheat middlings	1,564	.76	.83	.90	.96	1.02	1.09	1.15	1.21	1.28	1.34
Standard wheat middlings (shorts)	1,386	.87	.94	1.01	1.08	1.15	1.23	1.30	1.37	1.44	1.52
Wheat bran	1,218	.99	1.07	1.15	1.23	1.31	1.40	1.48	1.56	1.64	1.72
Wheat feed (shorts and bran)	1,340	.90	.97	1.04	1.12	1.19	1.27	1.34	1.42	1.49	1.57
Wheat screenings	1,300	.92	1.00	1.08	1.15	1.23	1.31	1.38	1.46	1.54	1.62
Rye feed (shorts and bran)	1,490	.81	.87	.94	1.01	1.07	1.14	1.21	1.28	1.34	1.41
Barley feed	1,444	.83	.90	.97	1.04	1.11	1.18	1.25	1.32	1.39	1.45
Malt	1,714	.70	.76	.82	.88	.93	.99	1.05	1.11	1.16	1.22
Buckwheat bran	962	1.25	1.35	1.46	1.56	1.66	1.77	1.87	1.98	2.08	2.18
Buckwheat feed	916	1.31	1.42	1.53	1.64	1.75	1.86	1.97	2.07	2.18	2.29
Cottonseed feed	1,154	1.04	1.13	1.21	1.30	1.39	1.47	1.56	1.65	1.73	1.82
Culled beans	1,488	.81	.87	.94	1.01	1.08	1.14	1.21	1.28	1.34	1.41
Coconut meal	1,890	.64	.69	.74	.79	.85	.90	.95	1.01	1.06	1.11
Distillers' grains, dried, from rye	1,328	.90	.98	1.05	1.13	1.20	1.28	1.36	1.43	1.51	1.58
CONCENTRATES HIGH IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:3.0 OR NARROWER											
Gluten feed	1,614	.74	.81	.87	.93	.99	1.05	1.12	1.18	1.24	1.30
Gluten meal	1,680	.71	.77	.83	.89	.95	1.01	1.07	1.13	1.19	1.25
Malt sprouts	1,412	.85	.92	.99	1.06	1.13	1.20	1.27	1.35	1.42	1.49
Brewers' grains, dried	1,314	.91	.99	1.07	1.14	1.22	1.29	1.37	1.45	1.52	1.60
Buckwheat middlings	1,532	.78	.85	.91	.98	1.04	1.11	1.17	1.24	1.31	1.37
Cottonseed meal, choice	1,564	.76	.83	.90	.96	1.02	1.09	1.15	1.21	1.28	1.34
Cottonseed meal, prime	1,510	.79	.86	.93	.99	1.06	1.13	1.19	1.26	1.32	1.39
Cottonseed meal, good	1,496	.80	.87	.94	1.00	1.07	1.14	1.20	1.27	1.34	1.40
Linseed meal, old process	1,558	.77	.83	.90	.96	1.03	1.09	1.16	1.22	1.28	1.35
Linseed meal, new process	1,518	.79	.86	.92	.99	1.05	1.12	1.19	1.25	1.32	1.38
Cowpeas	1,528	.79	.85	.92	.98	1.05	1.11	1.18	1.24	1.31	1.37
Peas, field, Canada	1,524	.79	.85	.92	.98	1.05	1.12	1.18	1.25	1.31	1.38
Soybeans	1,718	.70	.76	.82	.87	.93	.99	1.05	1.11	1.16	1.22
Dried blood	1,422	.84	.91	.98	1.05	1.13	1.20	1.27	1.34	1.41	1.48
Meat and bone meal, 30-40 per cent ash	1,236	.97	1.05	1.13	1.21	1.29	1.38	1.46	1.54	1.62	1.70
Meat and bone meal, over 40 per cent ash	1,060	1.13	1.23	1.32	1.42	1.51	1.60	1.70	1.79	1.89	1.98
Tankage, over 60 per cent protein	1,740	.69	.75	.80	.86	.92	.98	1.03	1.09	1.15	1.21
Tankage, 55-60 per cent protein	1,652	.73	.79	.85	.91	.97	1.03	1.09	1.15	1.21	1.27
Tankage, 45-55 per cent protein	1,578	.76	.82	.89	.95	1.01	1.08	1.14	1.20	1.27	1.33
Tankage, below 45 per cent protein	1,504	.80	.86	.93	1.00	1.06	1.13	1.20	1.26	1.33	1.40
Distillers' grains, dried, from corn	1,778	.67	.73	.79	.84	.90	.96	1.01	1.07	1.12	1.18

TABLE 4. COST OF 100 POUNDS OF TOTAL DIGESTIBLE NUTRIENTS IN DIFFERENT FEEDS AT VARYING PRICES PER TON (*continued*)

Feed	Total digestible nutrients per ton	Price per ton									
		$22	$23	$24	$25	$26	$27	$28	$29	$30	$31
CONCENTRATES LOW IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:6.1 OR WIDER											
Corn, dent	1,714	1.28	1.34	1.40	1.46	1.52	1.58	1.63	1.69	1.75	1.81
Cornmeal or chop	1,676	1.31	1.37	1.43	1.49	1.55	1.61	1.67	1.73	1.79	1.85
Corn-and-cob meal	1,562	1.41	1.47	1.54	1.60	1.66	1.73	1.79	1.86	1.92	1.98
Hominy feed or chop	1,692	1.30	1.36	1.42	1.48	1.54	1.60	1.65	1.71	1.77	1.83
Corn bran	1,462	1.50	1.57	1.64	1.71	1.78	1.85	1.92	1.98	2.05	2.12
Wheat, whole or ground	1,602	1.37	1.44	1.50	1.56	1.62	1.69	1.75	1.81	1.87	1.94
Rye, whole or ground	1,620	1.36	1.42	1.48	1.54	1.60	1.67	1.73	1.79	1.85	1.91
Oats, whole or ground	1,408	1.56	1.63	1.70	1.78	1.85	1.92	1.99	2.06	2.13	2.20
Oat hulls	1,002	2.20	2.30	2.40	2.50	2.59	2.69	2.79	2.89	2.99	3.09
Barley, whole or ground	1,588	1.39	1.45	1.51	1.57	1.64	1.70	1.76	1.83	1.89	1.95
Barley screenings	1,232	1.79	1.87	1.95	2.03	2.11	2.19	2.27	2.35	2.44	2.52
Rice polish	1,642	1.34	1.40	1.46	1.52	1.58	1.64	1.71	1.77	1.83	1.89
Rice bran, high grade	1,316	1.67	1.75	1.82	1.90	1.98	2.05	2.13	2.20	2.28	2.36
Rice hulls	284	7.75	8.10	8.45	8.80	9.15	9.51	9.86	10.21	10.56	10.92
Buckwheat, whole or ground	1,268	1.74	1.81	1.89	1.97	2.05	2.13	2.21	2.29	2.37	2.44
Buckwheat hulls	318	6.92	7.23	7.55	7.86	8.18	8.49	8.81	9.12	9.43	9.75
Kafir grain, whole or ground	1,600	1.38	1.44	1.50	1.56	1.63	1.69	1.75	1.81	1.88	1.94
Sorghum grain, whole or ground	1,590	1.38	1.45	1.51	1.57	1.64	1.70	1.76	1.82	1.89	1.95
Cottonseed hulls	740	2.97	3.11	3.24	3.38	3.51	3.65	3.78	3.92	4.05	4.19
Sunflower seed	1,946	1.13	1.18	1.23	1.28	1.34	1.39	1.44	1.49	1.54	1.59
Beet pulp, dried	1,432	1.54	1.61	1.68	1.75	1.82	1.89	1.96	2.03	2.09	2.16
Beet, pulp, molasses	1,506	1.46	1.53	1.59	1.66	1.73	1.79	1.86	1.93	1.99	2.06
Molasses, cane or blackstrap	1,184	1.86	1.94	2.03	2.11	2.20	2.28	2.36	2.45	2.53	2.62
CONCENTRATES MEDIUM IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:3.1 to 1:6.0											
Germ oilmeal, high grade	1,650	1.33	1.39	1.45	1.52	1.58	1.64	1.70	1.76	1.82	1.88
Red-dog flour	1,584	1.39	1.45	1.52	1.58	1.64	1.70	1.77	1.83	1.89	1.96

Flour wheat middlings	1,564	1.41	1.47	1.53	1.60	1.66	1.73	1.79	1.85	1.92	1.98
Standard wheat middlings (shorts)	1,386	1.59	1.66	1.73	1.80	1.88	1.95	2.02	2.09	2.16	2.24
Wheat bran	1,218	1.81	1.89	1.97	2.05	2.13	2.22	2.30	2.38	2.46	2.55
Wheat feed (shorts and bran)	1,340	1.64	1.72	1.79	1.87	1.94	2.01	2.09	2.16	2.24	2.31
Wheat screenings	1,300	1.69	1.77	1.85	1.92	2.00	2.08	2.15	2.23	2.31	2.39
Rye feed (shorts and bran)	1,490	1.48	1.54	1.61	1.68	1.74	1.81	1.88	1.95	2.01	2.08
Barley feed	1,444	1.52	1.59	1.66	1.73	1.80	1.87	1.94	2.01	2.08	2.15
Malt	1,714	1.28	1.34	1.40	1.46	1.52	1.58	1.63	1.69	1.75	1.81
Buckwheat bran	962	2.29	2.39	2.49	2.60	2.70	2.81	2.91	3.01	3.12	3.22
Buckwheat feed	916	2.40	2.51	2.62	2.73	2.84	2.95	3.06	3.17	3.28	3.38
Cottonseed feed	1,154	1.91	1.99	2.08	2.17	2.25	2.34	2.43	2.51	2.60	2.69
Culled beans	1,488	1.48	1.55	1.61	1.68	1.75	1.81	1.88	1.95	2.02	2.08
Coconut meal	1,890	1.16	1.22	1.27	1.32	1.38	1.43	1.48	1.53	1.59	1.64
Distillers' grains, dried, from rye	1,328	1.66	1.73	1.81	1.88	1.96	2.03	2.11	2.18	2.26	2.33
CONCENTRATES HIGH IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:3.0 OR NARROWER											
Gluten feed	1,614	1.36	1.43	1.49	1.55	1.61	1.67	1.73	1.80	1.86	1.92
Gluten meal	1,680	1.31	1.37	1.43	1.49	1.55	1.61	1.67	1.73	1.79	1.85
Malt sprouts	1,412	1.56	1.63	1.70	1.77	1.84	1.91	1.98	2.05	2.12	2.19
Brewers' grains, dried	1,314	1.67	1.75	1.83	1.90	1.98	2.05	2.13	2.21	2.28	2.36
Buckwheat middlings	1,532	1.44	1.50	1.57	1.63	1.70	1.76	1.83	1.89	1.96	2.02
Cottonseed meal, choice	1,564	1.41	1.47	1.53	1.60	1.66	1.73	1.79	1.85	1.92	1.98
Cottonseed meal, prime	1,510	1.46	1.52	1.59	1.66	1.72	1.79	1.85	1.92	1.99	2.05
Cottonseed meal, good	1,496	1.47	1.54	1.60	1.67	1.74	1.80	1.87	1.94	2.01	2.07
Linseed meal, old process	1,558	1.41	1.48	1.54	1.60	1.67	1.73	1.80	1.86	1.93	1.99
Linseed meal, new process	1,518	1.45	1.52	1.58	1.65	1.71	1.78	1.84	1.91	1.98	2.04
Cowpeas	1,528	1.44	1.51	1.57	1.64	1.70	1.77	1.83	1.90	1.96	2.03
Peas, field, Canada	1,524	1.44	1.51	1.57	1.64	1.71	1.77	1.84	1.90	1.97	2.03
Soybeans	1,718	1.28	1.34	1.40	1.46	1.51	1.57	1.63	1.69	1.75	1.80
Dried blood	1,422	1.55	1.62	1.69	1.76	1.83	1.90	1.97	2.04	2.11	2.18
Meat and bone meal, 30–40 per cent ash	1,236	1.78	1.86	1.94	2.02	2.10	2.18	2.27	2.35	2.43	2.51
Meat and bone meal, over 40 per cent ash	1,060	2.08	2.17	2.26	2.36	2.45	2.55	2.64	2.74	2.83	2.92
Tankage, over 60 per cent protein	1,740	1.26	1.32	1.38	1.44	1.49	1.55	1.61	1.67	1.72	1.78
Tankage, 55–60 per cent protein	1,652	1.33	1.39	1.45	1.51	1.57	1.63	1.69	1.76	1.82	1.88
Tankage, 45–55 per cent protein	1,578	1.39	1.46	1.52	1.58	1.65	1.71	1.77	1.84	1.90	1.96
Tankage, below 45 per cent protein	1,504	1.46	1.53	1.60	1.66	1.73	1.80	1.86	1.93	1.99	2.06
Distillers' grains, dried, from corn	1,778	1.24	1.29	1.35	1.41	1.46	1.52	1.57	1.63	1.69	1.74

TABLE 4. COST OF 100 POUNDS OF TOTAL DIGESTIBLE NUTRIENTS IN DIFFERENT FEEDS AT VARYING PRICES PER TON (*continued*)

Feed	Total digestible nutrients per ton	Price per ton									
		$22	$23	$24	$25	$26	$27	$28	$29	$30	$31
CONCENTRATES LOW IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:6.1 OR WIDER											
Corn, dent	1,714	1.28	1.34	1.40	1.46	1.52	1.58	1.63	1.69	1.75	1.81
Cornmeal or chop	1,676	1.31	1.37	1.43	1.49	1.55	1.61	1.67	1.73	1.79	1.85
Corn-and-cob meal	1,562	1.41	1.47	1.54	1.60	1.66	1.73	1.79	1.86	1.92	1.98
Hominy feed or chop	1,692	1.30	1.36	1.42	1.48	1.54	1.60	1.65	1.71	1.77	1.83
Corn bran	1,462	1.50	1.57	1.64	1.71	1.78	1.85	1.92	1.98	2.05	2.12
Wheat, whole or ground	1,602	1.37	1.44	1.50	1.56	1.62	1.69	1.75	1.81	1.87	1.94
Rye, whole or ground	1,620	1.36	1.42	1.48	1.54	1.60	1.67	1.73	1.79	1.85	1.91
Oats, whole or ground	1,408	1.56	1.63	1.70	1.78	1.85	1.92	1.99	2.06	2.13	2.20
Oat hulls	1,002	2.20	2.30	2.40	2.50	2.59	2.69	2.79	2.89	2.99	3.09
Barley, whole or ground	1,588	1.39	1.45	1.51	1.57	1.64	1.70	1.76	1.83	1.89	1.95
Barley screenings	1,232	1.79	1.87	1.95	2.03	2.11	2.19	2.27	2.35	2.44	2.52
Rice polish	1,642	1.34	1.40	1.46	1.52	1.58	1.64	1.71	1.77	1.83	1.89
Rice bran, high grade	1,316	1.67	1.75	1.82	1.90	1.98	2.05	2.13	2.20	2.28	2.36
Rice hulls	284	7.75	8.10	8.45	8.80	9.15	9.51	9.86	10.21	10.56	10.92
Buckwheat, whole or ground	1,268	1.74	1.81	1.89	1.97	2.05	2.13	2.21	2.29	2.37	2.44
Buckwheat hulls	318	6.92	7.23	7.55	7.86	8.18	8.49	8.81	9.12	9.43	9.75
Kafir grain, whole or ground	1,600	1.38	1.44	1.50	1.56	1.63	1.69	1.75	1.81	1.88	1.94
Sorghum grain, whole or ground	1,590	1.38	1.45	1.51	1.57	1.64	1.70	1.76	1.82	1.89	1.95
Cottonseed hulls	740	2.97	3.11	3.24	3.38	3.51	3.65	3.78	3.92	4.05	4.19
Sunflower seed	1,946	1.13	1.18	1.23	1.28	1.34	1.39	1.44	1.49	1.54	1.59
Beet pulp, dried	1,432	1.54	1.61	1.68	1.75	1.82	1.89	1.96	2.03	2.09	2.16
Beet, pulp, molasses	1,506	1.46	1.53	1.59	1.66	1.73	1.79	1.86	1.93	1.99	2.06
Molasses, cane or blackstrap	1,184	1.86	1.94	2.03	2.11	2.20	2.28	2.36	2.45	2.53	2.62
CONCENTRATES MEDIUM IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:3.1 to 1:6.0											
Germ oilmeal, high grade	1,650	1.33	1.39	1.45	1.52	1.58	1.64	1.70	1.76	1.82	1.88
Red-dog flour	1,584	1.39	1.45	1.52	1.58	1.64	1.70	1.77	1.83	1.89	1.96

Flour wheat middlings	1,564	1.41	1.47	1.53	1.60	1.66	1.73	1.79	1.85	1.92	1.98
Standard wheat middlings (shorts)	1,386	1.59	1.66	1.73	1.80	1.88	1.95	2.02	2.09	2.16	2.24
Wheat bran	1,218	1.81	1.89	1.97	2.05	2.13	2.22	2.30	2.38	2.46	2.55
Wheat feed (shorts and bran)	1,340	1.64	1.72	1.79	1.87	1.94	2.01	2.09	2.16	2.24	2.31
Wheat screenings	1,300	1.69	1.77	1.85	1.92	2.00	2.08	2.15	2.23	2.31	2.39
Rye feed (shorts and bran)	1,490	1.48	1.54	1.61	1.68	1.74	1.81	1.88	1.95	2.01	2.08
Barley feed	1,444	1.52	1.59	1.66	1.73	1.80	1.87	1.94	2.01	2.08	2.15
Malt	1,714	1.28	1.34	1.40	1.46	1.52	1.58	1.63	1.69	1.75	1.81
Buckwheat bran	962	2.29	2.39	2.49	2.60	2.70	2.81	2.91	3.01	3.12	3.22
Buckwheat feed	916	2.40	2.51	2.62	2.73	2.84	2.95	3.06	3.17	3.28	3.38
Cottonseed feed	1,154	1.91	1.99	2.08	2.17	2.25	2.34	2.43	2.51	2.60	2.69
Culled beans	1,488	1.48	1.55	1.61	1.68	1.75	1.81	1.88	1.95	2.02	2.08
Coconut meal	1,890	1.16	1.22	1.27	1.32	1.38	1.43	1.48	1.53	1.59	1.64
Distillers' grains, dried, from rye	1,328	1.66	1.73	1.81	1.88	1.96	2.03	2.11	2.18	2.26	2.33
CONCENTRATES HIGH IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:3.0 OR NARROWER											
Gluten feed	1,614	1.36	1.43	1.49	1.55	1.61	1.67	1.73	1.80	1.86	1.92
Gluten meal	1,680	1.31	1.37	1.43	1.49	1.55	1.61	1.67	1.73	1.79	1.85
Malt sprouts	1,412	1.56	1.63	1.70	1.77	1.84	1.91	1.98	2.05	2.12	2.19
Brewers' grains, dried	1,314	1.67	1.75	1.83	1.90	1.98	2.05	2.13	2.21	2.28	2.36
Buckwheat middlings	1,532	1.44	1.50	1.57	1.63	1.70	1.76	1.83	1.89	1.96	2.02
Cottonseed meal, choicc	1,564	1.41	1.47	1.53	1.60	1.66	1.73	1.79	1.85	1.92	1.98
Cottonseed meal, prime	1,510	1.46	1.52	1.59	1.66	1.72	1.79	1.85	1.92	1.99	2.05
Cottonseed meal, good	1,496	1.47	1.54	1.60	1.67	1.74	1.80	1.87	1.94	2.01	2.07
Linseed meal, old process	1,558	1.41	1.48	1.54	1.60	1.67	1.73	1.80	1.86	1.93	1.99
Linseed meal, new process	1,518	1.45	1.52	1.58	1.65	1.71	1.78	1.84	1.91	1.98	2.04
Cowpeas	1,528	1.44	1.51	1.57	1.64	1.70	1.77	1.83	1.90	1.96	2.03
Peas, field, Canada	1,524	1.44	1.51	1.57	1.64	1.71	1.77	1.84	1.90	1.97	2.03
Soybeans	1,718	1.28	1.34	1.40	1.46	1.51	1.57	1.63	1.69	1.75	1.80
Dried blood	1,422	1.55	1.62	1.69	1.76	1.83	1.90	1.97	2.04	2.11	2.18
Meat and bone meal, 30–40 per cent ash	1,236	1.78	1.86	1.94	2.02	2.10	2.18	2.27	2.35	2.43	2.51
Meat and bone meal, over 40 per cent ash	1,060	2.08	2.17	2.26	2.36	2.45	2.55	2.64	2.74	2.83	2.92
Tankage, over 60 per cent protein	1,740	1.26	1.32	1.38	1.44	1.49	1.55	1.61	1.67	1.72	1.78
Tankage, 55–60 per cent protein	1,652	1.33	1.39	1.45	1.51	1.57	1.63	1.69	1.76	1.82	1.88
Tankage, 45–55 per cent protein	1,578	1.39	1.46	1.52	1.58	1.65	1.71	1.77	1.84	1.90	1.96
Tankage, below 45 per cent protein	1,504	1.46	1.53	1.60	1.66	1.73	1.80	1.86	1.93	1.99	2.06
Distillers' grains, dried, from corn	1,778	1.24	1.29	1.35	1.41	1.46	1.52	1.57	1.63	1.69	1.74

TABLE 4. COST OF 100 POUNDS OF TOTAL DIGESTIBLE NUTRIENTS IN DIFFERENT FEEDS AT VARYING PRICES PER TON (*continued*)

Feed	Total digestible nutrients per ton	Price per ton									
		$32	$33	$34	$35	$36	$37	$38	$39	$40	$41
CONCENTRATES LOW IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:6.1 OR WIDER											
Corn, dent	1,714	1.87	1.93	1.98	2.04	2.10	2.16	2.22	2.28	2.33	2.39
Cornmeal or chop	1,676	1.91	1.97	2.03	2.09	2.15	2.21	2.27	2.33	2.39	2.45
Corn-and-cob meal	1,562	2.05	2.11	2.18	2.24	2.30	2.37	2.43	2.50	2.56	2.62
Hominy feed or chop	1,692	1.89	1.95	2.01	2.07	2.13	2.19	2.25	2.30	2.36	2.42
Corn bran	1,462	2.19	2.26	2.33	2.39	2.46	2.53	2.60	2.67	2.74	2.80
Wheat, whole or ground	1,602	2.00	2.06	2.12	2.18	2.25	2.31	2.37	2.43	2.50	2.56
Rye, whole or ground	1,620	1.98	2.04	2.10	2.16	2.22	2.28	2.35	2.41	2.47	2.53
Oats, whole or ground	1,408	2.27	2.34	2.41	2.49	2.56	2.63	2.70	2.77	2.84	2.91
Oat hulls	1,002	3.19	3.29	3.39	3.49	3.59	3.69	3.79	3.89	3.99	4.09
Barley, whole or ground	1,588	2.02	2.08	2.14	2.20	2.27	2.33	2.39	2.46	2.52	2.58
Barley screenings	1,232	2.60	2.68	2.76	2.84	2.92	3.00	3.08	3.17	3.25	3.33
Rice polish	1,642	1.95	2.01	2.07	2.13	2.19	2.25	2.31	2.38	2.44	2.50
Rice bran, high grade	1,316	2.43	2.51	2.58	2.66	2.74	2.81	2.89	2.96	3.04	3.12
Rice hulls	284	11.27	11.62	11.97	12.32	12.68	13.03	13.38	13.73	14.08	14.44
Buckwheat, whole or ground	1,268	2.52	2.60	2.68	2.76	2.84	2.92	3.00	3.08	3.15	3.23
Buckwheat hulls	318	10.06	10.38	10.69	11.01	11.32	11.64	11.95	12.26	12.58	12.89
Kafir grain, whole or ground	1,600	2.00	2.06	2.13	2.19	2.25	2.31	2.38	2.44	2.50	2.56
Sorghum grain, whole or ground	1,590	2.01	2.08	2.14	2.20	2.26	2.33	2.39	2.45	2.52	2.58
Cottonseed hulls	740	4.32	4.46	4.59	4.73	4.86	5.00	5.14	5.27	5.41	5.54
Sunflower seed	1,946	1.64	1.70	1.75	1.80	1.85	1.90	1.95	2.00	2.06	2.11
Beet pulp, dried	1,432	2.23	2.30	2.37	2.44	2.51	2.58	2.65	2.72	2.79	2.86
Beet pulp, molasses	1,506	2.12	2.19	2.26	2.32	2.39	2.46	2.52	2.59	2.66	2.72
Molasses, cane or blackstrap	1,184	2.70	2.79	2.87	2.96	3.04	3.13	3.21	3.29	3.38	3.46
CONCENTRATES MEDIUM IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:3.1 to 1:6.0											
Germ oilmeal, high grade	1,650	1.94	2.00	2.06	2.12	2.18	2.24	2.30	2.36	2.42	2.48
Red-dog flour	1,584	2.02	2.08	2.15	2.21	2.27	2.34	2.40	2.46	2.53	2.59

Flour wheat middlings	1,564	2.05	2.11	2.17	2.24	2.30	2.37	2.43	2.49	2.56	2.62
Standard wheat middlings (shorts)	1,386	2.31	2.38	2.45	2.53	2.60	2.67	2.74	2.81	2.89	2.96
Wheat bran	1,218	2.63	2.71	2.79	2.87	2.96	3.04	3.12	3.20	3.28	3.37
Wheat feed (shorts and bran)	1,340	2.39	2.46	2.54	2.61	2.69	2.76	2.84	2.91	2.99	3.06
Wheat screenings	1,300	2.47	2.54	2.62	2.69	2.77	2.85	2.92	3.00	3.08	3.15
Rye feed (shorts and bran)	1,490	2.15	2.21	2.28	2.35	2.42	2.48	2.55	2.62	2.68	2.75
Barley feed	1,444	2.22	2.29	2.35	2.42	2.49	2.56	2.63	2.70	2.77	2.84
Malt	1,714	1.87	1.93	1.98	2.04	2.10	2.16	2.22	2.28	2.33	2.39
Buckwheat bran	962	3.33	3.43	3.53	3.64	3.74	3.85	3.95	4.05	4.16	4.26
Buckwheat feed	916	3.49	3.60	3.71	3.82	3.93	4.04	4.15	4.26	4.37	4.48
Cottonseed feed	1,154	2.77	2.86	2.95	3.03	3.12	3.20	3.29	3.38	3.47	3.55
Culled beans	1,488	2.15	2.22	2.29	2.35	2.42	2.49	2.55	2.62	2.69	2.76
Coconut meal	1,890	1.69	1.75	1.80	1.85	1.90	1.96	2.01	2.06	2.12	2.17
Distillers' grains, dried, from rye	1,328	2.41	2.48	2.56	2.64	2.71	2.79	2.86	2.94	3.01	3.09
CONCENTRATES HIGH IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:3.0 OR NARROWER											
Gluten feed	1,614	1.98	2.04	2.11	2.17	2.23	2.29	2.35	2.42	2.48	2.54
Gluten meal	1,680	1.90	1.96	2.02	2.08	2.14	2.20	2.26	2.32	2.38	2.44
Malt sprouts	1,412	2.27	2.34	2.41	2.48	2.55	2.62	2.69	2.76	2.83	2.90
Brewers' grains, dried	1,314	2.44	2.51	2.58	2.66	2.74	2.82	2.89	2.97	3.04	3.12
Buckwheat middlings	1,532	2.09	2.15	2.22	2.28	2.35	2.42	2.48	2.55	2.61	2.68
Cottonseed meal, choice	1,564	2.05	2.11	2.17	2.24	2.30	2.37	2.43	2.49	2.56	2.62
Cottonseed meal, prime	1,510	2.12	2.19	2.25	2.32	2.38	2.45	2.52	2.58	2.65	2.72
Cottonseed meal, good	1,496	2.14	2.21	2.27	2.34	2.41	2.47	2.54	2.61	2.67	2.74
Linseed meal, old process	1,558	2.05	2.12	2.18	2.25	2.31	2.37	2.44	2.50	2.57	2.63
Linseed meal, new process	1,518	2.11	2.17	2.24	2.31	2.37	2.44	2.50	2.57	2.64	2.70
Cowpeas	1,528	2.09	2.16	2.23	2.29	2.36	2.42	2.49	2.55	2.62	2.68
Peas, field, Canada	1,524	2.10	2.17	2.23	2.30	2.36	2.43	2.49	2.56	2.62	2.69
Soybeans	1,718	1.86	1.92	1.98	2.04	2.10	2.15	2.21	2.27	2.33	2.39
Dried blood	1,422	2.25	2.32	2.39	2.46	2.53	2.60	2.67	2.74	2.81	2.88
Meat and bone meal, 30–40 per cent ash	1,236	2.59	2.67	2.75	2.83	2.91	2.99	3.07	3.16	3.24	3.32
Meat and bone meal, over 40 per cent ash	1,060	3.02	3.11	3.21	3.30	3.40	3.49	3.58	3.68	3.77	3.87
Tankage, over 60 per cent protein	1,740	1.84	1.90	1.95	2.01	2.07	2.13	2.18	2.24	2.30	2.36
Tankage, 55–60 per cent protein	1,652	1.94	2.00	2.06	2.12	2.18	2.24	2.30	2.36	2.42	2.48
Tankage, 45–55 per cent protein	1,578	2.03	2.09	2.15	2.22	2.28	2.34	2.41	2.47	2.53	2.60
Tankage, below 45 per cent protein	1,504	2.13	2.19	2.26	2.33	2.39	2.46	2.53	2.59	2.66	2.73
Distillers' grains, dried, from corn	1,778	1.80	1.86	1.91	1.97	2.02	2.08	2.14	2.19	2.25	2.31

Feed	Total digestible nutrients per ton	Price per ton								
		$42	$43	$44	$45	$46	$47	$48	$49	$50
CONCENTRATES LOW IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:6.1 OR WIDER										
Corn, dent	1,714	2.45	2.51	2.57	2.63	2.68	2.74	2.80	2.86	2.92
Cornmeal or chop	1,676	2.51	2.57	2.63	2.68	2.74	2.80	2.86	2.92	2.98
Corn-and-cob meal	1,562	2.69	2.75	2.82	2.88	2.94	3.01	3.07	3.14	3.20
Hominy feed or chop	1,692	2.48	2.54	2.60	2.66	2.72	2.78	2.84	2.90	2.96
Corn bran	1,462	2.87	2.94	3.01	3.08	3.15	3.21	3.28	3.35	3.42
Wheat, whole or ground	1,602	2.62	2.68	2.75	2.81	2.87	2.93	3.00	3.06	3.12
Rye, whole or ground	1,620	2.59	2.65	2.72	2.78	2.84	2.90	2.96	3.02	3.09
Oats, whole or ground	1,408	2.98	3.05	3.13	3.20	3.27	3.34	3.41	3.48	3.55
Oat hulls	1,002	4.19	4.29	4.39	4.49	4.59	4.69	4.79	4.89	4.99
Barley, whole or ground	1,588	2.64	2.71	2.77	2.83	2.90	2.96	3.02	3.09	3.15
Barley screenings	1,232	3.41	3.49	3.57	3.65	3.73	3.81	3.90	3.98	4.06
Rice polish	1,642	2.56	2.62	2.68	2.74	2.80	2.86	2.92	2.98	3.04
Rice bran, high grade	1,316	3.19	3.27	3.34	3.42	3.50	3.57	3.65	3.72	3.80
Rice hulls	284	14.79	15.14	15.49	15.85	16.20	16.55	16.90	17.25	17.61
Buckwheat, whole or ground	1,268	3.31	3.39	3.47	3.55	3.63	3.71	3.79	3.86	3.94
Buckwheat hulls	318	13.21	13.52	13.84	14.15	14.47	14.78	15.09	15.41	15.72
Kafir grain, whole or ground	1,600	2.63	2.69	2.75	2.81	2.88	2.94	3.00	3.06	3.13
Sorghum grain, whole or ground	1,590	2.64	2.70	2.77	2.83	2.89	2.96	3.02	3.08	3.14
Cottonseed hulls	740	5.68	5.81	5.95	6.08	6.22	6.35	6.49	6.62	6.76
Sunflower seed	1,946	2.16	2.21	2.26	2.31	2.36	2.42	2.47	2.52	2.57
Beet pulp, dried	1,432	2.93	3.00	3.07	3.14	3.21	3.28	3.35	3.42	3.49
Beet pulp, molasses	1,506	2.79	2.86	2.92	2.99	3.05	3.12	3.19	3.25	3.32
Molasses, cane or blackstrap	1,184	3.55	3.63	3.72	3.80	3.89	3.97	4.05	4.14	4.22
CONCENTRATES MEDIUM IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:3.1 TO 1:6.0										
Germ oilmeal, high grade	1,650	2.55	2.61	2.67	2.73	2.79	2.85	2.91	2.97	3.03
Red-dog flour	1,584	2.65	2.71	2.78	2.84	2.90	2.97	3.03	3.09	3.16

Flour wheat middlings	1,564	2.69	2.75	2.81	2.88	2.94	3.01	3.07	3.13	3.20
Standard wheat middlings (shorts)	1,386	3.03	3.10	3.17	3.25	3.32	3.39	3.46	3.54	3.61
Wheat bran	1,218	3.45	3.53	3.61	3.69	3.78	3.86	3.94	4.02	4.11
Wheat feed (shorts and bran)	1,340	3.13	3.21	3.28	3.36	3.43	3.51	3.58	3.66	3.73
Wheat screenings	1,300	3.23	3.31	3.38	3.46	3.54	3.62	3.69	3.77	3.85
Rye feed (shorts and bran)	1,490	2.82	2.89	2.95	3.02	3.09	3.15	3.22	3.29	3.36
Barley feed	1,444	2.91	2.98	3.05	3.12	3.19	3.25	3.32	3.39	3.46
Malt	1,714	2.45	2.51	2.57	2.63	2.68	2.74	2.80	2.86	2.92
Buckwheat bran	962	4.37	4.47	4.57	4.68	4.78	4.89	4.99	5.09	5.20
Buckwheat feed	916	4.59	4.69	4.80	4.91	5.02	5.13	5.24	5.35	5.46
Cottonseed feed	1,154	3.64	3.73	3.81	3.90	3.99	4.07	4.16	4.25	4.33
Culled beans	1,488	2.82	2.89	2.96	3.02	3.09	3.16	3.23	3.29	3.36
Coconut meal	1,890	2.22	2.28	2.33	2.38	2.43	2.49	2.54	2.59	2.65
Distillers' grains, dried, from rye	1,328	3.16	3.24	3.31	3.39	3.46	3.54	3.61	3.69	3.77
CONCENTRATES HIGH IN PROTEIN, NUTRITIVE RATIO 1:3.0 OR NARROWER										
Gluten feed	1,614	2.60	2.66	2.73	2.79	2.85	2.91	2.97	3.04	3.10
Gluten meal	1,680	2.50	2.56	2.62	2.68	2.74	2.80	2.86	2.92	2.98
Malt sprouts	1,412	2.97	3.05	3.12	3.19	3.26	3.33	3.40	3.47	3.54
Brewers' grains, dried	1,314	3.20	3.27	3.35	3.42	3.50	3.58	3.65	3.73	3.80
Buckwheat middlings	1,532	2.74	2.81	2.87	2.94	3.00	3.07	3.13	3.20	3.26
Cottonseed meal, choice	1,564	2.69	2.75	2.81	2.88	2.94	3.01	3.07	3.13	3.20
Cottonseed meal, prime	1,510	2.78	2.85	2.91	2.98	3.05	3.11	3.18	3.25	3.31
Cottonseed meal, good	1,496	2.81	2.87	2.94	3.01	3.07	3.14	3.21	3.28	3.34
Linseed meal, old process	1,558	2.70	2.76	2.82	2.89	2.95	3.02	3.08	3.15	3.21
Linseed meal, new process	1,518	2.77	2.83	2.90	2.96	3.03	3.10	3.16	3.23	3.29
Cowpeas	1,528	2.75	2.81	2.88	2.95	3.01	3.08	3.14	3.21	3.27
Peas, field, Canada	1,524	2.76	2.82	2.89	2.95	3.02	3.08	3.15	3.22	3.28
Soybeans	1,718	2.44	2.50	2.56	2.62	2.68	2.74	2.79	2.85	2.91
Dried blood	1,422	2.95	3.02	3.09	3.16	3.23	3.31	3.38	3.45	3.52
Meat and bone meal, 30-40 per cent ash	1,236	3.40	3.48	3.56	3.64	3.72	3.80	3.88	3.96	4.05
Meat and bone meal, over 40 per cent ash	1,060	3.96	4.06	4.15	4.25	4.34	4.43	4.53	4.62	4.72
Tankage, over 60 per cent protein	1,740	2.41	2.47	2.53	2.59	2.64	2.70	2.76	2.82	2.87
Tankage, 55-60 per cent protein	1,652	2.54	2.60	2.66	2.72	2.78	2.85	2.91	2.97	3.03
Tankage, 45-55 per cent protein	1,578	2.66	2.72	2.79	2.85	2.92	2.98	3.04	3.11	3.17
Tankage, below 45 per cent protein	1,504	2.79	2.86	2.93	2.99	3.06	3.13	3.19	3.26	3.32
Distillers' grains, dried, from corn	1,778	2.36	2.42	2.47	2.53	2.59	2.64	2.70	2.76	2.81

TABLE 5. FERTILIZING CONSTITUENTS IN 2000 POUNDS OF EACH FEED. FERTILIZING CONSTITUENTS IN THE MANURE FROM 2000 POUNDS OF EACH FEED WHEN FED TO A DAIRY COW

Feed	Total digestible nutrients in 2000 pounds	Fertilizing constituents			Returned by dairy cow		
		Total N	Total P_2O_5	Total K_2O	50 per cent N	75 per cent P_2O_5	75 per cent K_2O
SUCCULENT ROUGHAGE							
Corn fodder	294	6.0	2.2	7.4	3.0	1.7	5.6
Kafir fodder	288	7.6	3.2	10.2	3.8	2.4	7.7
Milo fodder	284	5.8	3.4	15.0	2.9	2.6	11.3
Sweet sorghum fodder	324	4.8	2.2	8.2	2.4	1.7	6.2
Johnson grass	340	8.0	....	....	4.0	.....	.....
Millet, common or Hungarian	362	9.2	2.4	13.8	4.6	1.8	10.3
Mixed grasses, immature	402	16.4	4.2	15.8	8.2	3.2	11.9
Timothy	444	10.0	3.6	13.4	5.0	2.7	10.1
Barley fodder	294	10.6	2.6	13.6	5.3	2.0	10.2
Buckwheat fodder	414	14.8	4.0	18.6	7.4	3.0	14.0
Oat fodder	318	10.2	3.6	15.4	5.1	2.7	11.6
Rye fodder	308	8.4	3.0	9.8	4.2	2.3	7.4
Wheat fodder	386	11.6	3.8	14.4	5.8	2.9	10.8
Alfalfa	292	14.4	3.0	13.4	7.2	2.3	10.1
Clover, red	342	13.2	2.6	11.2	6.6	2.0	8.4
Cowpeas	220	9.6	2.8	12.4	4.8	2.1	9.3
Peas, field, Canada	214	11.6	2.2	5.6	5.8	1.7	4.2
Soybeans	290	13.2	3.6	11.4	6.6	2.7	8.6
Vetch	250	13.4	2.8	10.2	6.7	2.1	7.7
Clover and timothy	354	9.6	....	....	4.8	.....	.....
Peas and barley	252	11.6	3.2	11.8	5.8	2.4	8.9
Peas and oats	288	10.2	3.4	12.2	5.1	2.6	9.2
Vetch and oats	340	12.2	3.2	12.6	6.1	2.4	9.5
Beets, common	204	5.2	2.0	17.0	2.6	1.5	12.8
Sugar, beets	280	5.2	1.6	6.4	2.6	1.2	4.8
Carrots	198	3.8	2.2	5.4	1.9	1.7	4.1
Mangels	148	4.4	0.8	4.4	2.2	0.6	3.3
Parsnips	294	5.4	2.6	9.8	2.7	2.0	7.4
Potatoes	342	7.0	2.4	10.6	3.5	1.8	8.0
Rutabagas	188	3.8	2.4	10.0	1.9	1.8	7.5
Flat turnips	148	4.4	2.6	5.8	2.2	2.0	4.4
Apples	328	1.6	0.6	3.2	0.8	0.4	2.4
Apple pomace	372	5.2	1.2	3.0	2.6	0.9	2.3
Cabbages	158	7.0	1.4	5.8	3.5	1.1	4.4
Cabbage waste, outer leaves	168	8.6	....	....	4.3	.....	.....
Pumpkins	134	4.4	1.8	6.4	2.2	1.4	4.8
Rape	266	9.2	2.2	7.8	4.6	1.7	5.9
Sugar beet leaves	154	6.0	2.4	11.0	3.0	1.8	8.3
Sunflower, whole plant	316	11.6	....	....	5.8	.....	.....
Corn silage	354	6.8	3.2	8.8	3.4	2.4	6.6
Sorghum silage	266	4.8	3.0	3.8	2.4	2.3	2.9
Alfalfa silage	208	11.2	....	....	5.6	.....	.....
Clover silage	238	11.8	....	....	5.9	.....	.....
Peavine silage	300	9.0	....	....	4.5	.....	.....
Cow's milk	358	11.2	3.8	3.4	5.6	2.9	2.6
Skimmed milk	182	12.2	4.4	3.4	6.1	3.3	2.6
Buttermilk	168	11.6	3.4	3.2	5.8	2.6	2.4
Whey	124	3.2	2.4	5.2	1.6	1.8	3.9
Beet pulp, wet	148	2.8	0.8	1.4	1.4	0.6	1.1
Brewers' grains, wet	334	18.2	4.8	0.6	9.1	3.6	0.5
Distillers' grains, wet	400	14.4	3.2	0.8	7.2	2.4	0.6

TABLE 5 (*continued*)

Feed	Total digestible nutrients in 2000 pounds	Fertilizing constituents			Returned by dairy cow		
		Total N	Total P_2O_5	Total K_2O	50 per cent N	75 per cent P_2O_5	75 per cent K_2O
DRIED ROUGHAGE							
Corn fodder, medium in water	1,074	21.4	6.6	17.8	10.7	5.0	13.4
Corn stover, medium in water	922	18.2	8.0	23.0	9.1	6.0	17.3
Kafir fodder	1,058	28.4	....	....	14.2	.....	.....
Milo fodder	890	38.4	....	....	19.2	.....	.....
Sorghum fodder	1,042	23.6	....	....	11.8	.....	.....
Millet hay, common or Hungarian	1,100	26.6	7.2	43.0	13.3	5.4	32.3
Mixed grasses	1,026	24.4	7.6	32.8	12.2	5.7	24.6
Timothy hay	970	19.8	6.2	27.2	9.9	4.7	20.4
Oat hay	928	26.8	16.0	65.4	13.4	12.0	49.1
Alfalfa hay	1,032	47.6	10.8	44.6	23.8	8.1	33.4
Alfalfa meal	1,014	45.8	10.8	44.6	22.9	8.1	33.4
Red clover hay	1,018	41.0	7.8	32.6	20.5	5.9	24.5
Cowpea hay	980	61.8	19.2	82.6	30.9	14.4	62.0
Pea, field, hay	1,132	48.4	13.4	24.8	24.2	10.1	18.6
Soybean hay	1,072	51.2	13.6	46.6	25.6	10.2	35.0
Vetch hay	1,142	63.6	20.6	52.4	31.8	15.5	39.3
Clover and timothy	924	27.6	9.4	38.0	13.8	7.1	28.5
Peas and oats	976	36.4	13.2	32.8	18.2	9.9	24.6
Peas, oats, and barley	1,020	40.4	....	....	20.2	.....	.....
Vetch and oats	942	34.0	12.0	25.4	17.0	9.0	19.1
Barley straw	850	11.2	3.6	24.0	5.6	2.7	18.0
Buckwheat straw	664	16.6	2.6	22.6	8.3	2.0	17.0
Oat straw	912	11.6	4.2	30.0	5.8	3.2	22.5
Rye straw	824	9.6	5.6	15.8	4.8	4.2	11.9
Wheat straw	738	10.0	2.6	14.8	5.0	2.0	11.1
Bean straw	952	23.4	8.4	27.2	11.7	6.3	20.4
Peavine straw	1,134	30.4	....	....	15.2	.....	.....
CONCENTRATES							
Corn, dent	1,714	32.4	13.8	8.0	16.2	10.4	6.0
Cornmeal or chop	1,676	29.8	12.2	7.4	14.9	9.2	5.6
Corn-and-cob meal	1,562	27.6	11.6	12.6	13.8	8.7	9.5
Hominy feed or chop	1,692	34.0	24.8	19.0	17.0	18.6	14.3
Gluten feed	1,614	81.2	12.4	4.6	40.6	9.3	3.5
Gluten meal	1,680	113.6	11.0	2.4	56.8	8.3	18.0
Germ oilmeal, high grade	1,650	72.4	26.4	5.0	36.2	19.8	3.8
Corn bran	1,462	31.0	12.4	10.8	15.5	9.3	8.1
Wheat, whole or ground	1,602	39.6	17.2	10.6	19.8	12.9	8.0
Red-dog flour	1,584	53.8	40.0	15.2	26.9	30.0	11.4
Flour wheat middlings	1,564	57.0	....	....	28.5	.....	.....
Standard wheat middlings	1,386	55.4	42.2	23.6	27.7	31.7	17.7
Wheat bran	1,218	51.2	59.0	32.4	25.6	44.3	24.3
Wheat feed (shorts and bran)	1,340	53.8	43.8	17.6	26.9	32.9	13.2
Wheat screenings	1,300	42.6	14.8	15.2	21.3	11.1	11.4
Rye, whole or ground	1,620	37.8	17.6	11.4	18.9	13.2	8.6
Rye feed (shorts and bran)	1,490	49.0	11.2	9.2	24.5	8.4	6.9
Oats, whole or ground	1,408	39.6	16.2	11.2	19.8	12.2	8.4
Oat hulls	1,002	12.8	4.2	11.6	6.4	3.2	8.7
Barley, whole or ground	1,588	36.8	17.0	14.8	18.4	12.8	11.1
Barley feed	1,444	40.6	25.6	17.8	20.3	19.2	13.4
Barley screenings	1,232	36.8	....	....	18.4	.....	.....

TABLE 5 (*concluded*)

Feed	Total digestible nutrients in 2000 pounds	Fertilizing constituents			Returned by dairy cow		
		Total N	Total P_2O_5	Total K_2O	50 per cent N	75 per cent P_2O_5	75 per cent K_2O
CONCENTRATES (*concluded*)							
Malt	1,714	57.6	19.0	9.0	28.8	14.3	6.8
Malt sprouts	1,412	84.4	33.0	36.6	42.2	24.8	27.5
Brewers' grains, dried	1,314	84.8	19.8	1.8	42.4	14.9	1.4
Rice polish	1,642	38.0	61.6	23.4	19.0	46.2	17.6
Rice bran, high grade	1,316	38.8	44.4	24.0	19.4	33.3	18.0
Rice hulls	284	10.6	1.8	4.4	5.3	1.4	3.3
Buckwheat, whole or ground	1,268	34.6	20.0	14.0	17.3	15.0	10.5
Buckwheat middlings	1,532	90.6	46.8	23.6	45.3	35.1	17.7
Buckwheat bran	962	71.4	33.0	20.0	35.7	24.8	15.0
Buckwheat feed	916	61.8	22.0	15.8	30.9	16.5	11.9
Buckwheat hulls	318	14.0	11.4	17.2	7.0	8.6	12.9
Kafir grain, whole or ground	1,600	35.6	11.4	6.2	17.8	8.6	4.7
Sorghum grain	1,590	29.4	16.4	6.6	14.7	12.3	5.0
Cottonseed meal, choice	1,564	141.2	53.4	36.2	70.6	40.1	27.2
Cottonseed meal, prime	1,510	127.4	53.2	36.0	63.7	39.9	27.0
Cottonseed meal, good	1,496	120.4	53.2	36.0	60.2	39.9	27.0
Cottonseed feed	1,154	78.4	29.4	29.4	39.2	22.1	22.1
Cottonseed hulls	740	14.8	7.2	25.6	7.4	5.4	19.2
Linseed oilmeal, old process	1,558	108.4	34.0	25.4	54.2	25.5	19.1
Linseed oilmeal, new process	1,518	118.0	35.4	26.0	59.0	26.6	19.5
Culled beans	1,488	70.8	....	....	35.4	.....	.....
Cowpeas	1,528	75.6	20.2	29.8	37.8	15.2	22.4
Peas, field, Canada	1,524	73.2	16.8	20.2	36.6	12.6	15.2
Soybeans	1,718	116.8	27.4	49.4	58.4	20.6	37.1
Coconut meal	1,890	65.2	15.6	48.4	32.6	11.7	36.3
Sunflower seed	1,946	51.6	24.4	11.2	25.8	18.3	8.4
Dried blood	1,422	263.0	9.8	2.4	131.5	7.4	1.8
Meat and bone meal, 30-40 per cent ash	1,236	127.4	....	....	63.7	.....	.....
Meat and bone meal, over 40 per cent ash	1,060	106.2	....	....	53.1	.....	.....
Tankage, over 60 per cent protein	1,740	202.0	111.6	11.0	101.0	83.7	8.3
Tankage, 55-60 per cent protein	1,652	186.0	....	....	93.0	.....	.....
Tankage, 45-55 per cent protein	1,578	165.4	203.0	....	82.7	152.3	.....
Tankage, below 45 per cent protein	1,504	129.2	271.4	....	64.6	203.6	.....
Beet pulp, dried	1,432	28.4	4.8	7.6	14.2	3.6	5.7
Beet pulp, molasses	1,506	30.4	3.0	36.2	15.2	2.3	27.2
Distillers' grains, dried, from corn	1,778	98.2	13.6	3.4	49.1	10.2	2.6
Distillers' grain, dried, from rye	1,328	74.0	16.6	4.8	37.0	12.5	3.6
Molasses, cane or blackstrap	1,184	10.0	4.8	63.2	5.0	3.6	47.4

JULY, 1916 BULLETIN 378

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

THE LESSER MIGRATORY LOCUST

GLENN W. HERRICK and C. H. HADLEY, Jr.

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

BEVERLY T. GALLOWAY, B.Agr.Sc., LL.D., Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
HORACE M. PICKERILL, B.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
CHARLES H. HADLEY, Jr., B.S., Entomology.
DANIEL S. FOX, B.S., Farm Management.
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE

Introduction 111
Classification and synonymy 111
Common name 112
Distribution 113
Outbreaks in New York 114
Characteristics of the regions in which the outbreaks occurred 115
Food plants 116
Life history and habits 117
    The egg 117
    The nymph 118
    The adult 122
        Habits of the adult 124
        Mating 125
        Egg laying 125
        The egg mass 126
Number of generations per year 129
Natural control 130
    Vertebrate enemies 130
    Insect enemies 131
    Diseases 133
Control measures 133
    Destruction of the eggs 133
        Plowing 133
        Disking and harrowing 134
    Destruction of young and adult grasshoppers 134
        Poison baits 134
        The hopper-dozer 136
        Spraying 137
        Other methods of control 139
    General recommendations for control 140
Notes on related forms in New York 140
    The red-legged grasshopper, Melanoplus femur-rubrum 141
    The two-striped grasshopper, Melanoplus bivittatus 142
    The clear-winged locust, Camnula pellucida 143
    The Carolina locust, Dissosteira carolina 144
    The green-striped grasshopper, Chortophaga viridifasciata 145
Summary 147
Acknowledgments 148
Literature cited 149

THE LESSER MIGRATORY LOCUST

(*Melanoplus atlanis* Riley)

Order, *Orthoptera* Family, *Acridiidae*

Glenn W. Herrick and C. H. Hadley, Jr.

INTRODUCTION

During the past two summers certain sections of New York State have suffered severely from the ravaging attacks of swarms of grasshoppers. The regions most subject to attack have been the sandy soils through the middle of the State from east to west and along the eastern boundary from Saratoga County north to Clinton County. There have, of course, been isolated outbreaks here and there in restricted localities, mainly in sandy areas.

The species of grasshopper predominant in these outbreaks is the lesser migratory locust (*Melanoplus atlanis* Riley). Other species of locusts have been found during the two seasons, but none of these have been seriously destructive.

It is of interest to note that all the outbreaks of the lesser migratory locust have been local. No extensive migrations or flights comparable with those of the Rocky Mountain locust during the seventies have taken place. The hordes of grasshoppers appearing in any one locality have apparently developed from eggs deposited in the vicinity.

The local character of the outbreaks, and the fact that the grasshoppers do not migrate far from their original breeding grounds, have an important bearing on the question of control. It is of much practical importance and satisfaction to know that if the grasshoppers are killed in any one locality this region will not be subject to another attack from invading swarms coming from other areas. Thus the farmers of any given locality may feel assured that their efforts in the control of the locusts in their immediate vicinity will not later be nullified by incoming hordes of these pests.

The seriousness of the situation in 1914 demanded an investigation of the outbreaks with the view of ascertaining more definitely the distribution, breeding habits, and life history of the lesser migratory locust, to the end that effective methods of control might be recommended. The results of these investigations, extending over the two seasons of 1914 and 1915, are given in the following discussion.

CLASSIFICATION AND SYNONYMY

The family Acridiidae (known as locusts, or short-horned grasshoppers), to which the lesser migratory locust belongs, constitutes a group of insects including most of the grasshoppers of serious economic importance. The species under discussion belongs to the genus Melanoplus, which according to Scudder (1898)[1] is the dominant genus of the family.

Serville (1831) founded the genus Calliptamus, placing in it the three species — *Acrydium sanguinipes*, *A. italicum*, and *A. morio*. Later (Scudder, 1878) the generic name was changed to *Caloptenus* by Burmeister on orthographic grounds. Several years later, Burmeister (1839) retained *C. italicus* alone of the original species in the genus, thus making it the type species. Stål (1873) called attention to the differences between the European form *C. italicus* and the North American species referred to the same genus, and showed that the latter was much more closely connected to Pezotettix. He then made Melanoplus a subgenus of Pezotettix, with *Acridium femur-rubrum* DeGeer as the type species. Riley (1875) separated the North American species from *C. femur-rubrum* and *C. spretus* on structural and color characters, and described it as *Caloptenus Atlanis*. His original description is as follows:

> *Caloptenus Atlanis* N. sp.— Length to tip of abdomen 0.70–0.85 inch; to tip of closed wings 0.92–1.05 inches. At once distinguished from *femur-rubrum* by the notched character of the anal abdominal joint in the male and by the shorter, less tapering cerci; also by the greater relative length of wings which extend, on an average, nearly one-third their length beyond the tip of the abdomen in the dried specimens; also by the larger and more distinct spots on the wings — in all which characters it much more closely resembles *spretus* than *femur-rubrum*. From *spretus*, again, it is at once distinguished by the smaller size, the more distinct separation of the dark mark running from the eyes on the prothorax and of the pale line from base of wings to hind thigh; also by the anal joint in the male, tapering more suddenly and by the two lobes forming the notch being less marked. From both species it is distinguished not only by its smaller size but by the deeper, more livid color of the dark parts, and the paler yellow of the light parts — the colors thus more strongly contrasting.
>
> Six males, 7 females from New Hampshire. Just as the typical *femur-rubrum* is at once distinguished from the typical *spretus* by the characters indicated; so *Atlanis*, though structurally nearer to *spretus*, is distinguished from it at a glance by its much smaller size and darker, more marbled coloring. The contrast is all the greater in the living specimens, and I have seen no specimens of *spretus* that at all approach it in these respects.

This species has been referred to in literature many times under various names. The following is the synonymy given by Scudder (1898):

1874	*Caloptenus spretus* Packard (not Walsh 1866).
1875	*Caloptenus Atlanis* Riley.
1876	*Caloptenus atlantis* Thomas.
1876	*Caloptenus femur-rubrum* Provancher.
1878	*Melanoplus devastator* Scudder (pars.)
1878	*Melanoplus atlantis* Scudder.
1881	*Melanoplus atlanis* Scudder.
1883	*Caloptenus bilituratus* Bruner.
1886	*Pezotettix atlanis* Hunt.
1889	*Melanoplus atlanis caeruleipes* Cockerell.

COMMON NAME

Besides the name *lesser migratory locust*, which is the generally accepted one now, this insect has been referred to under other common names.

---

[1] Dates in parenthesis refer to "Literature cited," page 149.

Riley (1875) named it the *Atlantic migratory locust*, but later (1878) concluded to call it the lesser locust, " as the species is not confined to the Atlantic slope, and the term Atlantic might convey a wrong idea." Lugger (1895) refers to it as the *White Mountain locust*. It has also been spoken of as the *Atlantic locust*, the *lesser locust*, and the *lesser red-legged grasshopper*. The New York farmer generally terms it *red-leg*, not attempting to differentiate it from the ordinary red-legged grasshopper *M. femur-rubrum*.

DISTRIBUTION

This species is probably indigenous to the North American continent and is essentially an eastern species. It was at first thought to be an eastern variety of the notorious Rocky Mountain locust, *M. spretus*, and indeed is sometimes hardly to be distinguished from *M. spretus* owing to its wide range of variation.

M. atlanis has a wide distribution on the continent. In many States it has at times been so abundant as to constitute a most serious menace to crops. Often it is found with other species, mainly *M. femur-rubrum* and *M. spretus*, and secondary to them. But in the instances noted below, it was either alone or in so much greater abundance as to completely overshadow in destructiveness the other species present.

From very early times, records indicate that New England has suffered from the depredations of grasshoppers. Although the specific name of the grasshoppers present is not mentioned in early accounts, Riley and other authorities have thought that *M. atlanis*, if not wholly responsible for these visitations, was to a considerable extent responsible. It seems quite probable that to this species may be laid the credit, or discredit, for the outbreaks cited. In various parts of New England the following years have been recorded as bad grasshopper years: 1743, 1746, 1749, 1754, 1797, 1816, 1821, 1871, 1874, 1875, 1876, 1877, 1882, 1885, 1889, 1896, and 1901. In 1889 the outbreak was so severe in New Hampshire that a bounty of one dollar per bushel of grasshoppers was offered by the State. Under this stimulus, so it is recorded (Marlatt, 1889), in one instance sixty bushels of grasshoppers were collected by means of a hopper-dozer from an oat field of three and one-half acres. Since 1901 there seem to have been no serious outbreaks of this species reported until 1913. In that year and the two succeeding years, especially in 1915, grasshoppers were very destructive in certain parts of New Hampshire, notably in the Connecticut Valley.

Outbreaks of the lesser migratory locust have not been confined to New England alone. Minnesota has often been visited by this species, which in 1891, 1893, 1902, 1910, 1911, and 1912 was unusually abundant in various parts of the State. From 1900 to 1903 much injury was reported in Montana. In 1908 and 1909 the locust was abundant in

Michigan. It is common in Nebraska, where it appeared in great numbers about 1896, and again in 1911 and 1912 in certain parts of the State. In 1910 much injury was reported from Colorado, and in 1911, 1912, and 1913 from Kansas. An outbreak occurred in Oklahoma in 1913.

This species is common in Canada, and at times the crops in various sections of Canada, and especially in Manitoba, have been devastated by the pest. Unusually severe outbreaks occurred during the years from 1893 to 1896 and from 1900 to 1904. More recently, from 1912 to 1915, there were outbreaks in Ontario and Quebec (Gibson, 1915).

With the possible exception of *M. femur-rubrum*, the species under discussion is the most widely distributed of the native grasshoppers. It has been reported in greater or less abundance from nearly all the States. It is also found in Mexico, and in southern Canada up into British Columbia.

OUTBREAKS IN NEW YORK

In times past New York State has had " grasshopper years " at varying intervals. The first definite record of the abundance of the species

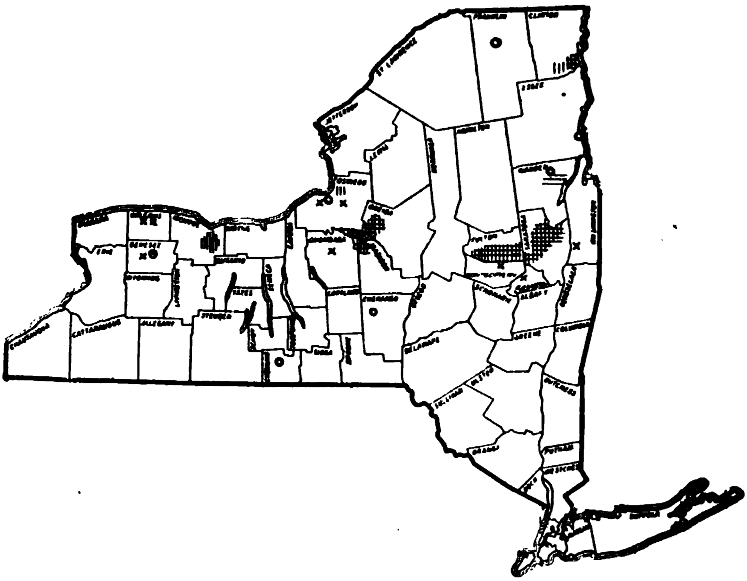


FIG. 1. MAP OF NEW YORK STATE SHOWING OUTBREAKS OF GRASSHOPPERS FOR THE PAST TWO YEARS

× — Minor infestations in 1914
o — Minor infestations in 1915
⊗ — Minor infestations in both 1914 and 1915
■ — Extensive outbreaks in 1914
■ — Extensive outbreaks in 1915
■ — Extensive outbreaks in both 1914 and 1915

M. atlanis is by Lintner (1895), who described the outbreaks of *M. atlanis* and *M. femur-rubrum* in 1893 and 1894. The western counties of the State appear to have suffered the most.

The seasons of 1912 and 1913 were very favorable for the multiplication of grasshoppers, and culminated in unusually severe outbreaks in 1914 and 1915. These outbreaks, although confined mostly to the more sandy areas of the State, caused a very considerable loss. The counties that suffered the most were Clinton, Warren, Saratoga, and Fulton. Minor outbreaks occurred also in the counties of Schenectady, Franklin, Oneida, Montgomery, Washington, Madison, Onondaga, Oswego, Monroe, Chemung, Chenango, Orleans, Essex, and Genesee (Fig. 1). In each case, while *M. atlanis* was the chief offender, other species were present in greater or less numbers.

CHARACTERISTICS OF THE REGIONS IN WHICH THE OUTBREAKS OCCURRED

Early in the investigation of the outbreaks of the lesser migratory locust, the writers were impressed with the fact that the regions in which the grasshoppers appeared in abnormal numbers are remarkably similar in soil, vegetation, kind of crops grown, and general type of farming, and in most of these respects these regions differ very markedly from closely surrounding sections. The soils are of a light sandy nature, of considerable depth and containing little humus. They are not suited for the growth of a wide variety of crops The regions are often characterized by sandy knolls and ridges, along the tops and sides of which the eggs of the grasshoppers were deposited in greater or less numbers. In some localities sand dunes are present, and occasionally these are so unstable as to take on the character of blowsand; in these sections the infestations of grasshoppers were less severe.

The crops grown in the regions of infestation appear to consist mainly of rye, oats, and corn. Wheat and potatoes are grown to a very limited extent in these general areas. The hay crop in most of the regions is sparse and is composed mostly of rather short, wiry grasses. Little fruit is produced in these sections. In certain sections, at least, abandoned farms are found, indicating the struggle for existence and the unproductive character of the soil.

The pastures on these light sandy soils are thin and bare, and the knolls and ridges form ideal breeding grounds for the grasshoppers. The hay-scented fern and the troublesome and annoying sand bur are familiar weeds among the scanty vegetation.

One is forced to the conclusion that here in these regions the grasshoppers find ideal conditions for the deposition and preservation of their eggs, and are thus able to make satisfactory provision for the increase and maintenance of the species. When the eggs hatch in the spring, the scanty vegetation and cereals grown afford enough food for the grasshoppers to reach maturity, although in many localities they consume nearly all the plant growth within their range.

FOOD PLANTS

It may be said with truth that the lesser migratory locust is almost omnivorous as far as plants are concerned. There seem to be but few of the commonly grown crops which it will not eat when available. The writers' observations of the last two years, however, seem to show that some crops are oftener devoured than others. Among those most generally attacked may be mentioned the following:

Rye.— Young rye plants are eaten down to the ground. After the plants have reached a height of six inches or so, the grasshoppers seem to attack them less; possibly the blades and the stalk have become tougher and are less palatable. When the kernels reach the milk stage the heads of the plants are eaten off, leaving only the bare straw (Plate I, 2). The writers have often seen half a dozen or more insects on a single head, late in the afternoon, feeding on the tender kernels.

Oats.— As in the case of rye, oats are completely devoured when the plants are small (Plates I, 1, and II, 1), and when full-grown the tender kernels are eaten out, leaving the stalks bare.

Clover.— When clover plants are small they are eaten down to the ground. When full-grown the succulent leaves are eaten, leaving only the veins and the stalks. All varieties of clover seem to suffer equally.

Alfalfa.— The writers have seen fields of alfalfa which were entirely destroyed, with nothing left but the bare stems.

Corn.— Corn is attacked especially when small, up to about six inches high. When the silk appears this is often eaten, thus preventing the forming of the ear.

Meadows and pastures.— As is to be expected, meadows and pastures suffer considerably, since they are usually the natural breeding places of the insects. In some cases they are stripped absolutely bare and remain so during the season. In the fall, after the grasshoppers have disappeared, the fields may make a feeble growth, but for all practical purposes they are ruined.

Many other crops are more or less severely damaged, the extent of the injury depending on the proximity of the locust swarms. In some cases they are entirely destroyed. Among the crops that belong in this class the writers have observed the following: apple — the foliage only is attacked; asparagus; beans; buckwheat — is attacked especially when small, practically the entire crop being killed; cabbage—especially young plants when first set out; melon — the leaves and tender stems are attacked; millet; peas; potatoes; quack grass; wheat.

In addition to the plants just named, the following have been mentioned in literature as being eaten by this species of grasshopper: barley; carrot; flax ("while plants are young"); garden vegetables ("all varieties of garden vegetables"); grasses; hay; hollyhock; hops; indian corn; muskmelon; onion; redtop ("reduced to mere unnutritive stalks"); squash; sugar beet; timothy ("reduced to mere unnutritive stalks"); tobacco ("eating leaves of young plants full of holes"); watermelon; wheat stubble.

At times the voraciousness of the insects leads them to devour substances that are hardly to be classed as food. The writers have often observed them clustered on fence rails, posts, tree trunks, and the sides of houses, gnawing the wood to such an extent as to make the gnawed places stand out in strong relief. This was especially noticeable on chill, cloudy, and rainy days, when the grasshoppers were inactive and remained massed together on their chosen resting places.

An interesting account of the lengths to which grasshoppers will go to satisfy their appetite is given by Harris (1862), who quotes from *Travels in New England and New York*, by Timothy Dwight. Although the name of the species concerned is not given, Riley and other authorities have thought that without doubt the passage referred to ***M. atlanis***. Harris says:

> Bennington (Vermont), and its neighborhood, have for some time past been infested by grasshoppers (locusts) of a kind with which I had before been wholly unacquainted. . . As I had no opportunity of examining them, I cannot describe their form or their size. Their favorite food is clover and maize. Of the latter they devour the part which is called the silk, the immediate means of fecundating the ear, and thus prevent the kernel from coming to perfection. But their voracity extends to almost every vegetable; even to the tobacco plant and the burdock. Nor are they confined to vegetables alone. The garments of laborers, hung up in the field while they are at work, these insects destroy in a few hours; and with the same voracity they devour the loose particles which the saw leaves upon the surface of pine boards, and which, when separated, are termed sawdust. The appearance of a board fence, from which the particles have been eaten in this manner, and which I saw, was novel and singular; and seemed the result, not of the operations of the plane, but of attrition.

LIFE HISTORY AND HABITS

THE EGG

The eggs are deposited by the female in a small pocket in the ground, and are cemented together into a mass or pod by a rather sticky viscid fluid which accompanies the discharge of each egg. The process of egg laying is discussed on page 20.

The size of the egg mass varies, depending on the number of eggs contained in the mass and the depth of the pocket when the eggs are laid.

Examination of a large number of masses in the spring and fall of 1915 showed the average length of the egg pods to be from ¾ to 1⅛ inches, with the diameter of the egg mass proper from ⅛ to ¼ inch and of the neck from 1/16 to 3/16 inch. The egg masses are rather gourd-shaped, with the neck more or less bent, as shown in figures 2 and 3.

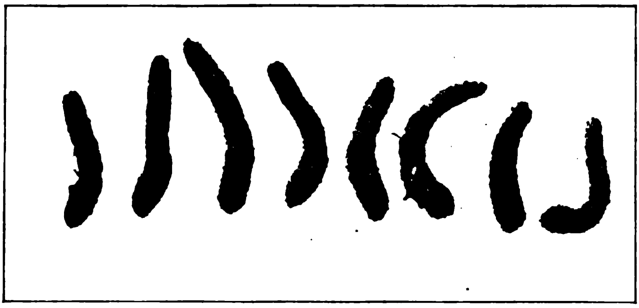


FIG. 2. EGG MASSES OF LESSER MIGRATORY LOCUST. NATURAL SIZE

There is usually considerable variation in the shape of the masses. The number of eggs in the mass also varies. An examination of eleven egg masses chosen at random contained 12, 13, 17, 5, 6, 13, 18, 15, 14, 9, and 13 eggs, respectively, with an average of about 12 eggs to a mass. Occasionally the first eggs deposited, which are located in the bottom or at the sides of the mass, are found to be crushed, as if from the pressure of the other eggs during the process of deposition.

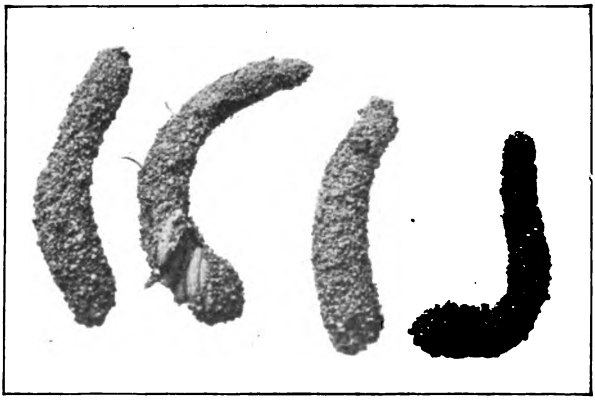


FIG. 3. EGG MASSES OF LESSER MIGRATORY LOCUST. ENLARGED 2 DIAMETERS

The following is a technical description of the egg:

Egg (mature, shortly before hatching).— Length from 4.3 to 4.4 millimeters, width at middle 1.2 millimeters. Somewhat shining; color faintly yellow, verging toward cream; no color markings. Shape sublinear, slightly curved on one side; anterior, or head, end bluntly rounded, posterior end more tenuately rounded. Shell punctate, or densely, finely, shallowly pitted. Pits not all regular in shape but approach hexagon, giving the appearance of a dense, fine network. Shell hard, thick, easily cracked by pressure. (Fig. 4.)

THE NYMPH

Although the eggs become mature in a short time after they are deposited in the late summer and early fall, as a rule they do not hatch until the following spring. There are occasional exceptions, which are discussed on page 129. In New York the eggs hatch in April or May, the exact time varying from year to year depending on the weather. In the spring of 1915 the writers first found young nymphs on April 24, near Saratoga, New York; they had been reported by correspondents, however, several days earlier. These nymphs, when examined in the field on that date, appeared to be several days old at least. A farmer in the vicinity claimed to have first seen the young grasshoppers in one of his fields on April 13 or 14. It is, of course, not absolutely certain that the young grasshoppers he noticed were the species *M. atlanis*, but there is no doubt that in favored localities these had hatched by the middle of April. By the first of May the writers had observed the young nymphs in several widely separated sections of the State. It is quite probable that in seasons when there is a mild spring, especially during the latter part of March, the grasshoppers hatch at any time during the month of April.

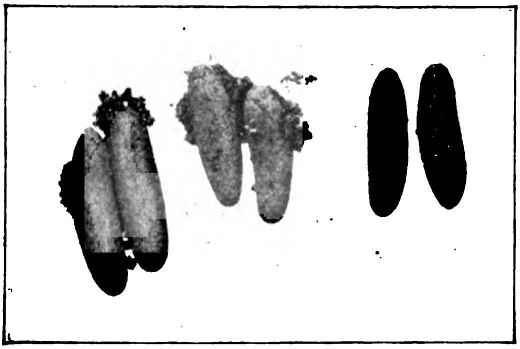


FIG. 4. EGGS OF LESSER MIGRATORY LOCUST. ENLARGED 5 DIAMETERS

All the eggs do not hatch simultaneously, the hatching period in a field extending over several days. In one field, where the young grasshoppers were well along in the first stage on April 25, unhatched egg masses were still rather common by the first of May. The hatching period may even extend through several weeks if conditions for hatching are unfavorable, as the writers observed in 1915. A period of cold or stormy weather after the first eggs have hatched will delay the hatching of the other eggs for a variable length of time. Riley (1878) has thought that the eggs laid earliest in the fall hatched first in the succeeding spring, and that since the egg-laying period in the fall may extend over a period of from six to eight weeks the hatching period may be similarly extended. There are no definite data to support this belief, but it is true that the period of hatching may cover a variable length of time, depending on circumstances.

The process of hatching has been observed by the writers in many cases and may be briefly described as follows: The egg cracks open at the head, or rounded end, and splits down the side toward the slightly pointed end. The young nymph, enveloped in the amnion, or embryonic coat, works its way out of the shell by convulsive movements of the body, and, when freed from the shell, casts off the amnion. (Plate III, 1.) Not until then is it able to extend the limbs. Within a very few minutes it is able to move and hop about freely. The whole process of hatching may be accomplished in a surprisingly short time. When first hatched the young nymph is quite pale and colorless, but within a few hours it acquires its characteristic mottled coloring.

From the time they are hatched the young nymphs are active and feed on green herbage in the vicinity (Plate II, 2). Usually food is abundant and their presence is not noticed for some time. Unless impelled by shortage of food or disturbed in some manner, the young nymphs do not travel to any extent, but walk or hop about, remaining in the same immediate vicinity. It often happens that food is plentiful enough so that the nymphs have reached the third or fourth stage before they spread out from their hatching ground enough to be noticed. In laboratory experiments the writers have found that newly emerged grasshoppers have gone without food for several days without noticeable discomfort. On cold or stormy days the grasshoppers do not feed, but remain huddled together among grass stems or weeds or in any convenient shelter. On bright days they congregate in open, sunny spots, feeding and moving about. At night they disappear, hiding away in the grass, under clods or stones, or in other places. During the late nymphal stages and at molting periods they crawl up grass stalks, fences, tree trunks, stumps, and the like. Their instinct seems to be to climb.

During the nymphal life these grasshoppers undergo five molts. It is not at all unusual to find cast skins hanging on blades of grass and similar places. Beginning with the third stage, just after the second molt, the rate of growth is very rapid, and there is considerable difference in size in the later stages. An abundant food supply naturally promotes faster growth, and continuous warm sunny days, especially during the later nymphal stages, also hasten the development of the insects. Under insectary conditions, with plenty of food and under apparently favorable conditions of temperature, the lengths of the different stages varied so greatly that it is impossible to make even an approximately general statement regarding them. Apparently opportunity for plenty of exercise, with abundant room to hop from place to place, is necessary for the proper development of the insects. An idea of the lengths of the respective stages may be obtained from table 1, showing the collections made at Kirkville, New York, during the summer of 1915. Collections were made on the dates given, always on the same farm, where conditions seemed to be representative of the infested sections.

TABLE 1. COLLECTIONS AT KIRKVILLE IN 1915

Dates of collection	Number in first stage	Number in second stage	Number in third stage	Number in fourth stage	Number in fifth stage	Number in adult stage
May 7	205	1	......	......	......	....
May 13	26	142	......	......	......	....
June 4	......	......	15	77	7	....
June 7	......	5	35	293	79	....
June 15	......	......	24	......	463	41
June 26	3	3	2	10	64	184
July 6	......	......	......	3	22	118
July 22	......	......	2	1	7	212
July 30	......	......	......	1	5	347

After July 30 only an occasional fifth-stage nymph was found, most of the insects being adults. On August 25, in just one field, a few first- and fewer second-stage nymphs were found, and on October 25 twelve fifth-stage nymphs were found in this field. The field in question was situated in a very favorable location for early egg deposition, and without doubt some of the earliest eggs hatched late in the summer.

Taking as a basis the observations of the past season (1915) at Kirkville, it may be concluded that the lengths of the nymphal stages are approximately as follows:

Date of hatching approximately April 26

First nymphal stage	11 days
Second nymphal stage	16 days
Third nymphal stage	14 days
Fourth nymphal stage	10 days
Fifth nymphal stage	8 days

This is, of course, only an estimate, and it can readily be seen that several factors must be taken into consideration, such as temperature, climatic conditions, and so on. The actual time of transformation from nymph to adult is variable, as may be seen by table 1.

Observations at Kirkville showed that on June 11 no adults were to be found; on June 15 adults were scattering, and on June 21 they were abundant; by June 25, the majority of the insects found were winged. Observations at Peru, Clinton County (in the extreme northeastern corner of the State), showed that on June 22 a large proportion of the grasshoppers of this species, *M. atlanis*, were winged. In general, then, it may be said that the insects become fully grown about the middle of June. This is a rather important point in considering control measures, as is more fully brought out in the discussion of that subject (page 133).

The following is a technical description of the nymphal stages:

First stage.— When first hatched, rather light in color, without definite markings, soon becoming dull grayish brown, dotted with black, giving somewhat of a mottled appearance. Hind thighs dark, with more or less distinct pale crossbars on both inner and outer surfaces. Sometimes a distinct light line along median dorsal line of head and continuing along thorax. Antennæ 12-jointed, the first, second, third, eighth, and twelfth joints each about twice as long as any of the others; the second joint distinctly cup-shaped. No trace of wing pads. Length 4 to 5 millimeters. (Plate III, 2.)

Second stage.—In general, slightly lighter in color than in preceding stage. Crossbars on hind thighs broader and more distinct; relative sizes of light and dark areas varying in individuals. Ventral part of abdomen much lighter than remainder of body. A subquadrate mark behind the eyes, extending somewhat across the prothorax, rather distinct; a pale, more or less crescent-shaped, streak at lower margin of this black mark, extending part way across prothorax. Antennæ 15-jointed, joints 3, 7, and 8 of first stage having divided. No indications of wing pads except slight thickening and projecting of posterior lateral angles of mesonotum and metanotum. Length 6 to 8 millimeters. (Plates III, 3, and IV, 1.)

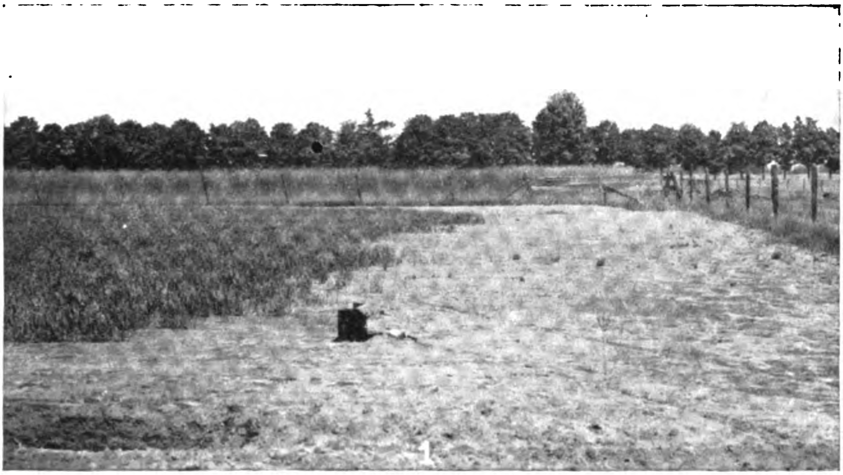
Third stage.— Distinctive markings of previous stages more pronounced. Body color in general the same, except ventral side of abdomen, which is pale yellow with a slight greenish tinge. Antennæ 17–18-jointed. Wing pads indicated by increased projection of posterior lateral angles of mesonotum and metanotum, now very pronounced. Length 9 to 12 millimeters. (Plates III, 4, and V, 2.)

Fourth stage.— True wing pads present, projecting obliquely upward and backward, with tips of hind pair reaching to middle of or slightly beyond middle of first abdominal segment. A conspicuous round white or silver spot near the middle of each of the hind wing pads. Dorsal surface of body, especially thorax, very dark. Sometimes dorsal or inner margins of both wings pale. Fore wings about one-third as long as hind wings. A black band running from back of eyes to ventral margin of prothorax meeting wing pad, very dark and conspicuous; also a light-colored crescent-like mark just below. Antennæ20–21-jointed. Length 13 to 15 millimeters. (Plate IV, 2.)

Fifth stage.— Wing pads large, the outer reaching beyond posterior margin of second abdominal segment. Silver spot in hind wing generally conspicuous, in central part of basal third of wing, slightly removed from margin of attachment, surrounded by narrow black area, from which veins run out through remainder of wing. Inner margins of wings often pale. Fore and hind wings equal in length. A more or less distinct light streak along median dorsal line of thorax. Antennæ 23–24-jointed. Length 16 to 20 millimeters. (Plate IV, 3.)

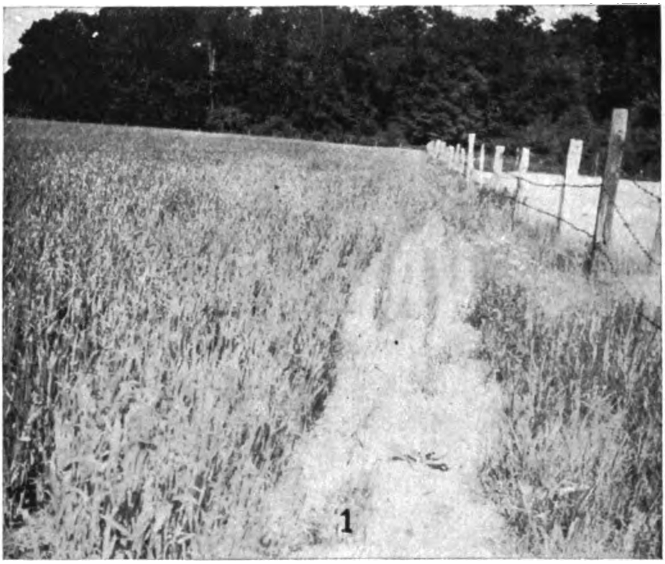
THE ADULT

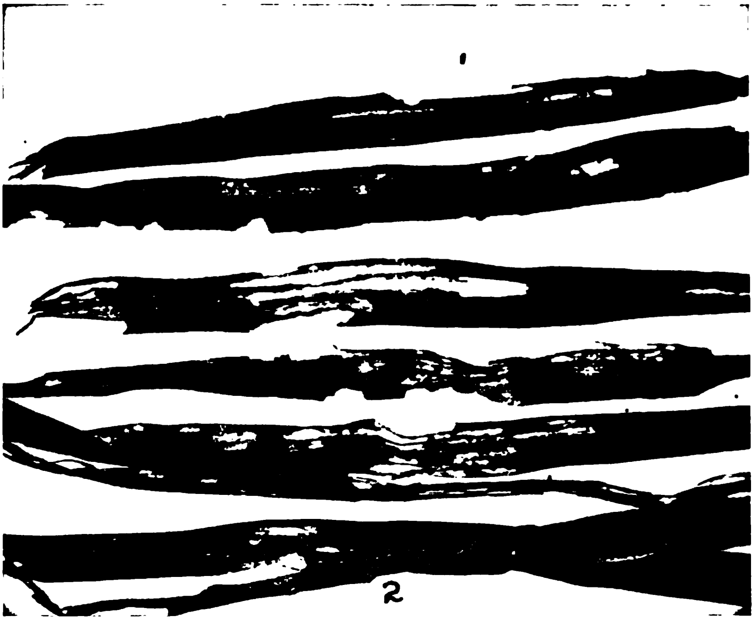
The transformation from nymph to adult is the last stage in the development of the insect. When ready to transform, the nymph usually climbs up some erect object, where it remains for some time before molting takes place. During the latter part of June the cast skins of fifth-stage nymphs are very commonly found, the head end pointing downward, attached to blades of grass, stalks and heads of wheat and rye, fence posts, and similar objects. The actual process of molting, or shedding the skin, requires only a few minutes and usually takes place during the warmer part of the morning. The newly emerged adult soon dries off and is then ready for further activity.



FIELDS ATTACKED BY THE LESSER MIGRATORY LOCUST

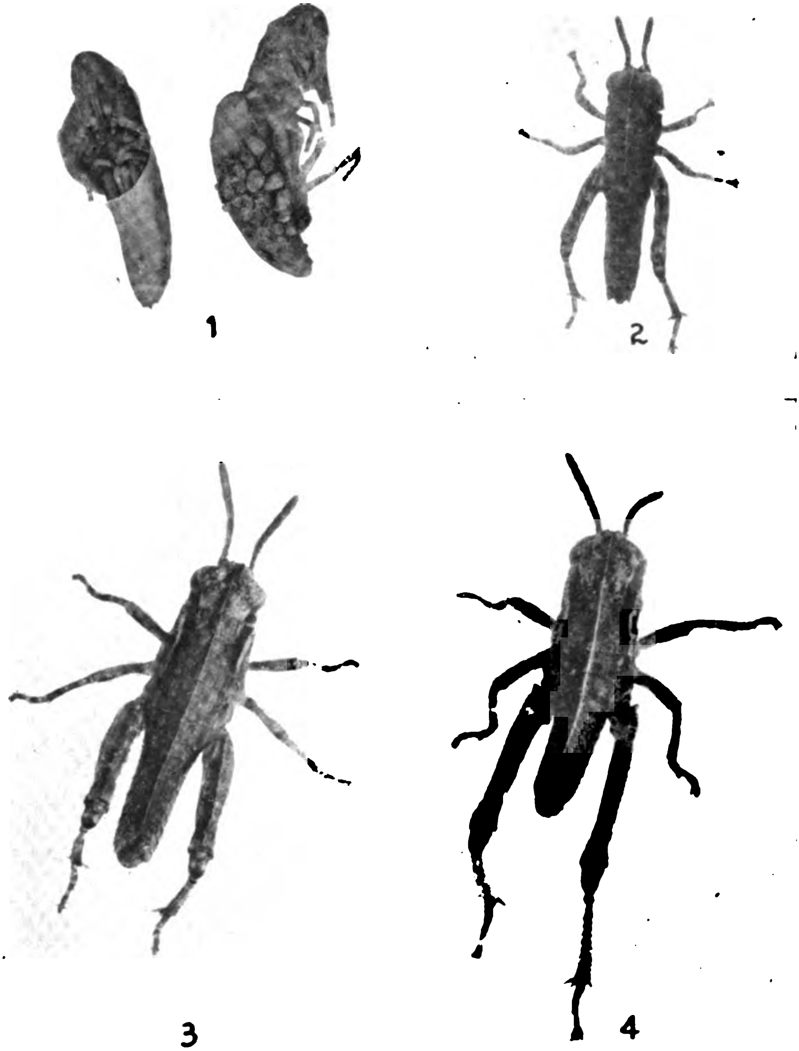
1, Oat field, showing how the locusts work inward from the edges
2, Field of rye after an attack by locusts



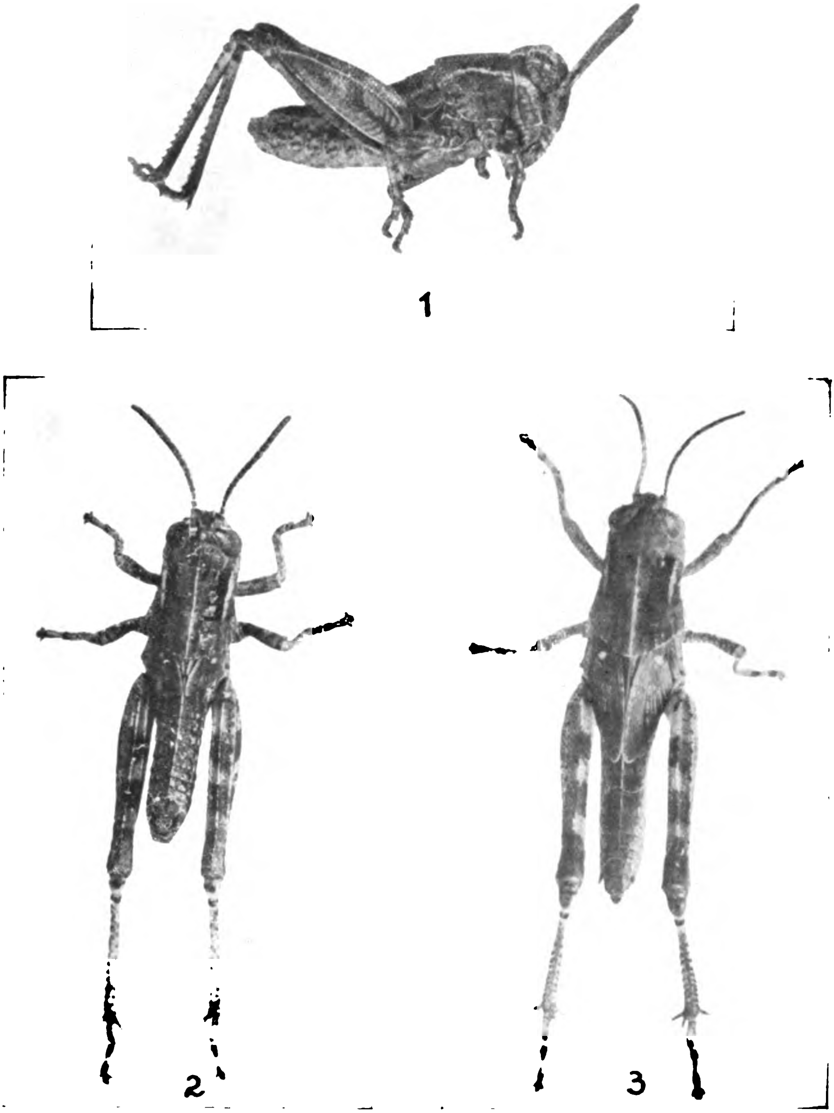


INJURIES CAUSED BY LOCUSTS

1, Oat field in which the locusts have just begun to feed
2, Injury to grass leaves caused by young locusts

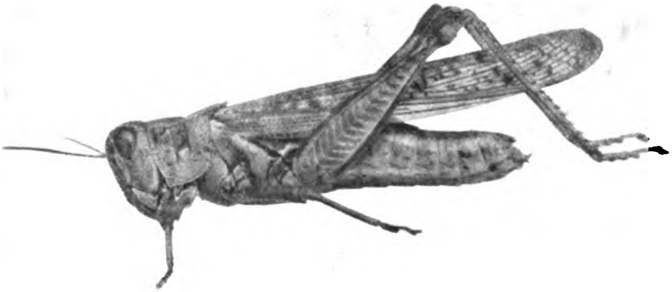


MELANOPLUS ATLANIS
1, Eggs hatching; 2, first-stage nymph; 3, second-stage nymph; 4, third-stage nymph

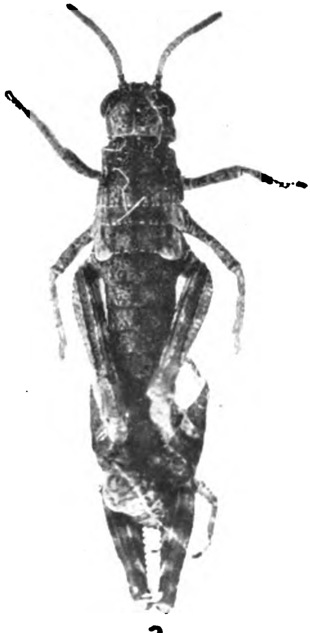


MELANOPLUS ATLANIS

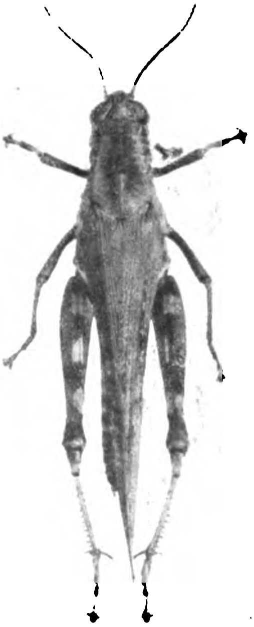
1, Second-stage nymph; 2, fourth-stage nymph; 3, fifth-stage nymph



1

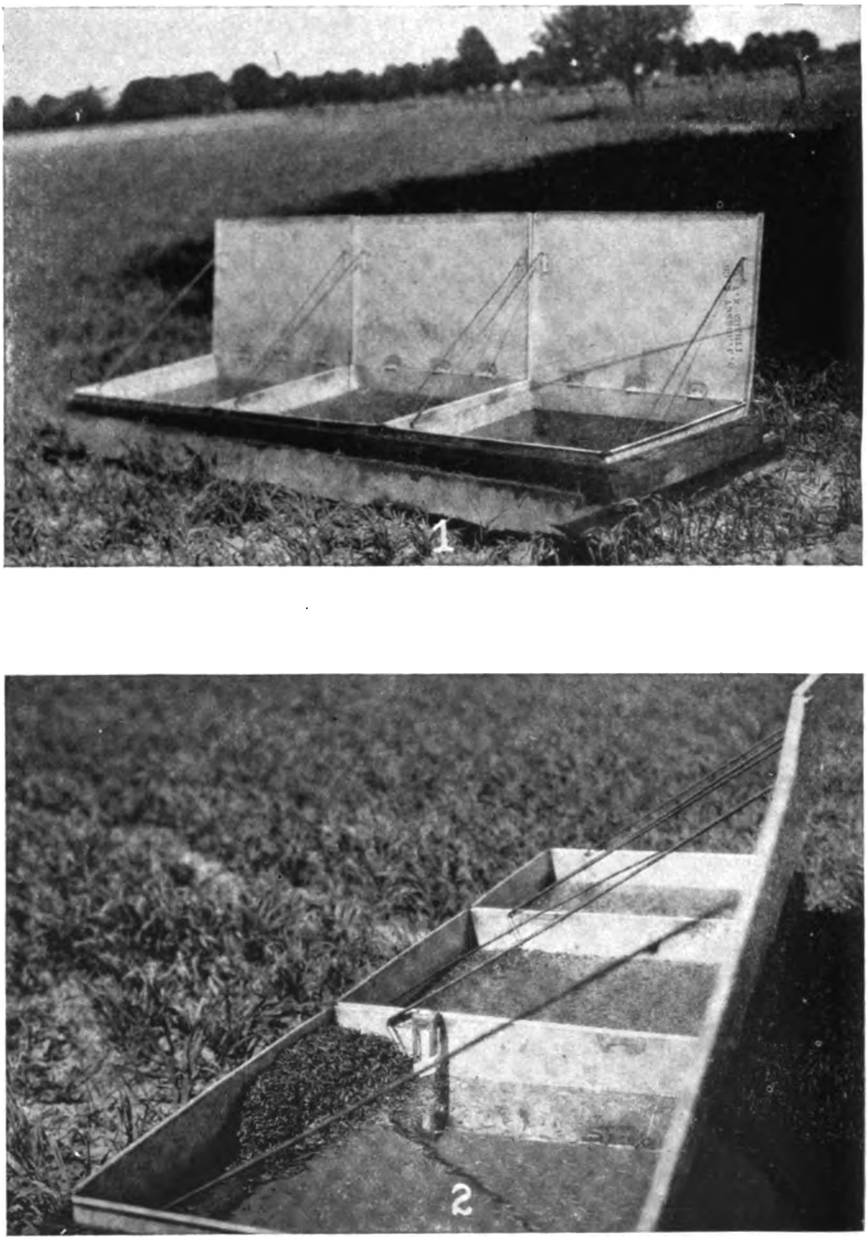


2



3

MELANOPLUS ATLANIS
1 and 3, Adult female; 2, molting to third stage



HOPPER-DOZER USED IN EXPERIMENTS

1, Front view of apparatus; 2, three gallons of grasshoppers caught in the first fifteen minutes

The adult grasshopper is a comparatively small insect, about an inch in length (Fig. 5), and is of a general yellowish or tan color. The femur of each hind leg has two distinct dark bars across the outer surface (Fig. 6). Late in the season the insects become somewhat darker in color, with a very slight olive tinge. The fore wings, which extend beyond the end of the body, are grayish in color, with a few distinct dark spots along the middle. This species may be readily distinguished from other common forms by the absence of any prominent markings other than those mentioned, and by its small size.

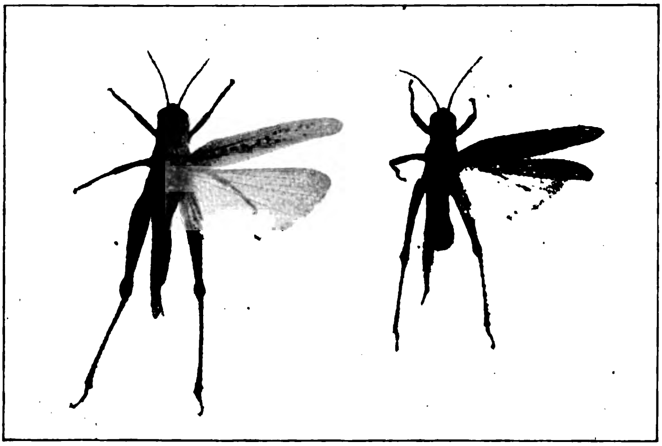


FIG. 5. THE LESSER MIGRATORY LOCUST (M. ATLANIS), FEMALE AND MALE. NATURAL SIZE

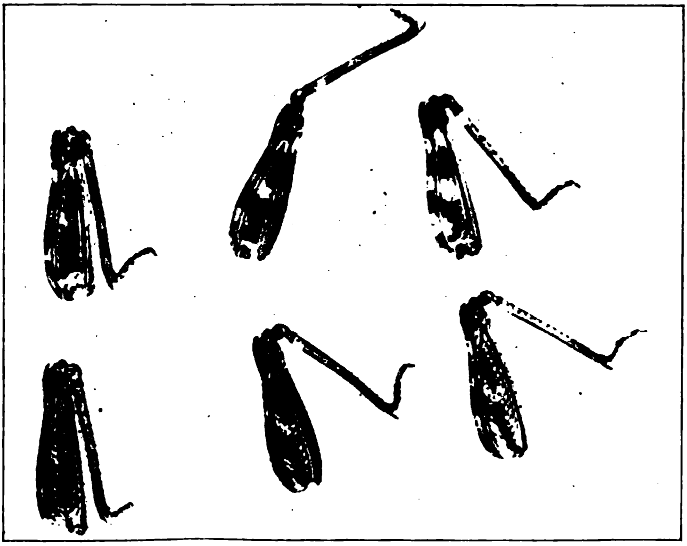


FIG. 6. VARIATIONS IN MARKINGS OF HIND FEMORA OF LESSER MIGRATORY LOCUST; OUTER FACE ABOVE, INNER FACE BELOW

The following is a technical description of the adult stage (Plate v, 1 and 3), as given by Blatchley (1903):

Size, medium. Vertex somewhat elevated above the pronotum, the interspace between the eyes nearly (male) or fully (female) twice as broad as the basal joint of antennæ; the front half strongly sloping, distinctly sulcate in the male, shallowly in the female. Frontal costa short, not reaching clypeus; feebly or not at all sulcate below the ocellus, the upper third a little narrowed. Antennæ three-fourths (male) or two-thirds (female) as long as hind femora. Pronotum rather short, distinctly expanding on the metazona, the disk flat or nearly so, the hind margin obtuse angled, the median carina distinct only on the metazona; the latter densely punctate and equaling the prozona in length. Tegmina fully developed, surpassing the hind femora. Extremity of male abdomen but little recurved; cerci about twice as long as broad, the apical half slightly upturned and somewhat inbent; the apex well rounded. Furcula consisting of a pair of moderately diverging slender, tapering spines, about one-third the length of the supra-anal plate. Sub-genital plate narrowing regularly from below upward, the apex somewhat thickened and elevated, and with a distinct median notch.

Color, either dark grayish or reddish brown. Head olive brown mottled with darker. The usual black band behind eye is confined to the prozona and in the reddish brown specimens and the females is often indistinct or broken into smaller spots. Tegmina grayish brown, flecked distinctly with fuscous along the discoidal area. Hind femora reddish yellow, with two oblique dark bars across the upper and outer facet; the lower face usually pinkish, the knees blackish, side of abdomen yellow.

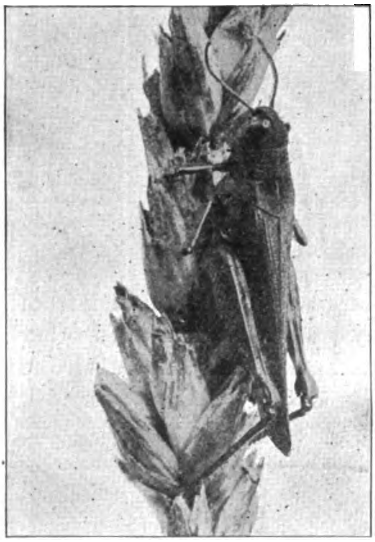


FIG. 7. LESSER MIGRATORY LOCUST ON WHEAT HEAD. ENLARGED

HABITS OF THE ADULT

In general most of the feeding is done in the middle of the day. If the day is cloudy or rainy, the grasshoppers remain huddled together in the grass, weeds, or other shelter, or they may crawl up any convenient object. On such days scarcely any feeding is done, but on bright sunny days the grasshoppers feed vigorously, hopping about restlessly. In the late afternoon they seek resting places, crawling upward wherever possible. The writers have seen them late in the afternoon clustered by the thousands on the walls of a shanty in a meadow. Ordinary rail fences enclosing a pasture lot offer a convenient place for congregating, and in thickly infested areas the fences may be almost entirely covered with the insects in the late afternoon. The writers have observed that rye and wheat fields also prove very attractive to grasshoppers, almost every stalk harboring several individuals. When the grain is in the milk stage the insects may do much damage while resting here by nibbling and gnawing the soft kernels in the head (Fig. 7).

Although they are strong flyers, the locusts of this species do not normally make any definite migration. In the field, when undisturbed, they travel by jumps and short flights, averaging possibly from fifteen to twenty feet in a single flight. When disturbed they will fly farther, and the writers have repeatedly seen them advance from eighty to one hundred feet in a single flight. As a general rule they fly at a height of from three to five feet above the ground, but on occasion they may fly higher.

During the season there is often a general drifting of a swarm in a more or less definite direction for a short distance. This habit was observed at Kirkville, New York. In 1914 the general movement of the swarm was westward, the insects drifting slowly from field to field during the summer. In the same section in 1915 the movement was back again, eastward. This is readily explained by the fact that as a result of the movement in 1914 most of the eggs were laid in the western part of the town. In 1915 the insects, hatching in great numbers in that section, slowly drifted eastward, moving from field to field for food. This movement is rather gradual, and sometimes, for some unexplainable reason, a field may be passed over unharmed or may be missed, although it apparently offers just as much attraction to the insects as a neighboring field which may be badly injured. The writers could not observe that in general the direction of the wind affected this movement to any appreciable extent. The same drifting movement has been observed at Gloversville, New York, and in other sections, but no definite migration or flight has taken place, such as was common among the swarms of the Rocky Mountain locust, *M. spretus*, in past years.

MATING.

Early in July the insects commence mating. This was first observed at Kirkville in 1915 on July 6, when pairs were found *in copula* here and there. A farmer of that neighborhood told the writers that while distributing poison bait about the first of the month he had observed copulation taking place occasionally. It is safe to assume that mating begins very early in the month, depending largely on the weather and the earliness of the season. By the middle of the month the mating season was well under way. Many pairs were to be seen *in copula*, especially in the thinly covered meadows and pastures, where conditions were suitable for egg deposition, and along fence rows and roadsides. Mating continues for some time, pairs *in copula* having been found as late as the latter part of September. In a closely related species — the common red-legged locust, *M. femur-rubrum* — mating was observed at Ithaca, during a warm spell in the fall, as late as November 7.

EGG LAYING

The females commence laying eggs toward the middle of July and continue until cool weather sets in in the fall. In the summer of 1915, at Kirkville, egg masses were first found on July 30; in 1914 they were first found on July 27. An interesting point was noted in connection with the first egg masses found in 1914. Immediately after they were dug up some of the masses were placed in alcohol, and while they were in alcohol some of the eggs hatched, fully matured nymphs coming out from the shell. Packard (1883), in his studies on the embryology of *M. atlanis*, found that the embryo was fully developed in the egg ten days after deposition. Accepting Dr. Packard's finding, it may safely be assumed that egg laying begins shortly after the middle of July, at least. The actual date, of course, is largely dependent on local climatic conditions. As may be seen from table 2, the month of July in 1915, in the vicinity of Kirkville, was rather unfavorable for egg deposition, especially the first half of the month. Practically continuous cloudy and showery days undoubtedly helped to retard deposition of eggs. It is quite probable that in normal years the season for deposition would be well under way by the middle of the month.

The process of egg laying has been observed many times. The first part of the process may perhaps best be described by the following account by Riley (1878):

> The female, when about to lay her eggs, forces a hole in the ground by means of the two pairs of horny valves which open and shut at the tip of her abdomen, and which, from their peculiar structure, are admirably fitted for the purpose. With the valves closed she pushes the tip into the ground, and by a series of muscular efforts and the continued opening and shutting of the valves, she drills a hole, until in a very few minutes (the time varying with the nature of the soil) nearly the whole abdomen is buried. The abdomen stretches to its utmost for this purpose, especially at the middle, and the hole is generally a little curved, and always more or less oblique.

When the hole is completed to her satisfaction the female commences depositing her eggs in it, one by one. Each egg as it is laid is accompanied by a frothy, sticky fluid, which surrounds it and serves to hold all the eggs together in a compact mass. When the full complement of eggs is laid, the insect fills the remainder of the hole with the same frothy substance, which soon hardens, completely sealing the hole and effectually protecting the eggs from moisture. When the eggs are ready to hatch this material softens sufficiently to allow the young grasshopper to work its way up through when it has hatched.

THE EGG MASS

Contrary to what might be expected, the eggs are not thrust haphazard into the egg pocket, but are carefully arranged so that, at whatever angle the hole is made, they are in the position best adapted for the safe emergence of the young grasshopper. The blunt end of the egg always points upward and not directly in a line with the eggs above it, so that the young nymph has an unobstructed irregular path up through the neck of the egg mass to the surface of the ground. With this species there are generally from two to four or five layers of eggs in the mass.

The eggs are deposited, preferably, in more or less sandy soil, where the ground is fairly compact. The writers have found the egg masses generally laid in closely grazed pastures and meadows of long standing, where the

TABLE 2. CLIMATOLOGICAL DATA FOR 1915, FAYETTEVILLE, NEW YORK*

Day of month	March			April			May			June			July			August			September			October		
	Temperature (degrees Fahrenheit)		Rainfall (inches)	Temperature (degrees Fahrenheit)		Rainfall (inches)	Temperature (degrees Fahrenheit)		Rainfall (inches)	Temperature (degrees Fahrenheit)		Rainfall (inches)	Temperature (degrees Fahrenheit)		Rainfall (inches)	Temperature (degrees Fahrenheit)		Rainfall (inches)	Temperature (degrees Fahrenheit)		Rainfall (inches)	Temperature (degrees Fahrenheit)		Rainfall (inches)
	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.	
1......	35	9	.....	40	30	.....	50	40	.24	80	54	.....	78	62	1.01	87	66	.02	68	43	.....	66	40	.02
2......	35	26	†T	36	28	.06	55	40	T	76	56	.....	80	60	1.61	87	69	.....	88	55	.....	55	45	1.18
3......	28	12	T	36	16	T	55	36	.....	70	45	.....	82	60	.70	75	56	1.52	80	58	.....	62	45	.....
4......	32	3	.....	48	28	.....	58	34	.....	74	43	.....	78	60	.30	76	55	.04	80	62	.....	72	52	.....
5......	36	18	.....	40	29	T	56	40	T	78	46	.....	78	60	.36	80	59	.....	78	60	.....	64	48	1.20
6......	34	27	.31	50	38	.06	72	45	.....	82	45	.....	70	52	T	78	60	.82	76	64	T	55	45	T
7......	44	28	.....	51	37	.02	65	52	.06	85	64	.....	77	56	T	80	62	.39	78	62	.12	62	46	.....
8......	35	15	.....	62	38	.....	78	50	.64	78	52	.22	66	56	1.38	80	60	.37	87	64	.62	52	45	.....
9......	36	16	.....	70	42	.....	68	46	T	72	42	.23	72	50	.....	73	59	.06	88	67	.58	56	37	.....
10......	40	24	T	78	52	.06	68	30	.....	65	49	.....	81	56	.....	50	58	.....	82	70	T	47	37	.11
11......	34	26	T	74	58	.05	76	37	.....	78	52	.06	80	60	.12	87	58	.....	78	62	T	67	36	.....
12......	34	8	.....	62	36	.06	74	56	.....	74	52	.03	78	56	.15	77	64	.33	80	54	T	80	48	.....
13......	44	20	.....	48	30	.....	64	42	.54	82	58	.....	84	62	.90	80	66	T	86	62	1.86	78	52	.....
14......	45	25	.....	56	26	.....	56	34	.....	78	64	T	85	60	.38	84	65	T	94	68	.71	70	60	.10
15......	43	20	.....	64	28	.....	58	30	.....	74	58	.94	85	64	.....	80	66	.06	93	76	.66	68	54	.81
16......	34	14	.....	56	34	.....	52	32	.09	78	62	T	86	60	.05	86	64	T	88	68	.32	58	46	.....
17......	30	16	T	56	35	T	52	40	.11	82	66	.....	82	70	.....	75	55	.26	72	65	.52	71	40	.....
18......	34	10	.....	58	26	.....	56	40	.....	84	50	.....	76	56	.02	70	43	.....	78	55	.....	62	48	T
19......	46	18	.....	78	38	.....	58	38	.....	76	64	.42	82	58	.11	75	50	.....	76	60	.04	64	50	.67
20......	36	25	T	70	45	.....	56	40	.....	64	52	.....	76	56	.....	80	58	.....	78	55	.....	70	52	.....
21......	34	28	.06	65	25	.....	60	50	T	66	45	.....	72	54	T	78	54	.28	72	52	.14	64	45	.....
22......	34	30	.14	64	46	.....	70	54	.34	76	52	.82	78	52	.....	72	62	.19	62	40	.....	56	41	.....
23......	53	30	T	66	54	T	68	50	T	60	50	.64	80	52	T	80	58	.58	70	40	.....	50	32	T
24......	48	26	.....	79	56	.....	63	43	.....	67	50	.....	84	58	.....	82	60	.....	72	49	.....	45	32	.....
25......	46	34	.17	90	56	.....	72	42	.....	74	50	.32	82	65	.....	72	60	.....	70	48	.....	60	30	.....
26......	38	20	T	89	58	.....	64	46	.24	74	52	.....	75	62	.75	70	50	.....	66	46	.41	58	48	.10
27......	34	16	.....	85	55	T	58	28	.....	72	50	.....	80	60	.....	72	40	.....	58	43	.....	58	48	.....
28......	42	26	.....	83	56	.16	62	37	.....	74	48	.....	75	62	.23	68	44	.....	59	33	.....	65	48	.....
29......	34	15	T	77	56	.14	67	36	.....	83	55	.....	80	64	T	68	58	.18	64	36	.....	60	45	.06
30......	30	14	.02	56	40	T	70	35	.....	74	62	.84	84	68	T	66	54	T	68	37	.....	48	40	T
31......	32	22	T	...	....	.....	74	40	.....	...	....	.....	85	67	T	62	50	.02	...	....	.....	62	30	.....

* From United States Weather Bureau records, New York section. Fayetteville is within a very few miles of Kirkville.

† Trace; an amount less than 0.01 inch, too small to be measured.

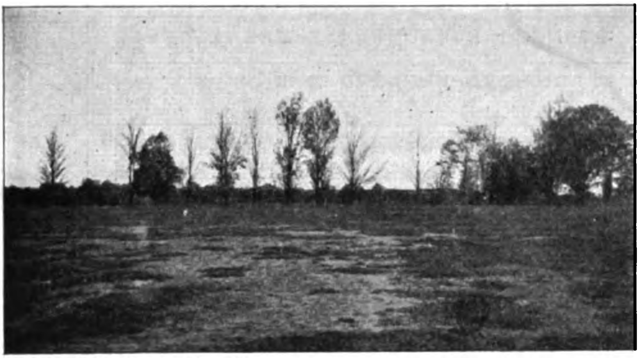


FIG. 8. SANDY FIELD, IN BARE PATCHES OF WHICH EGGS WERE LAID

grass has become thin and especially along the edges of paths and furrows or shallow ditches running through such meadows. (Fig. 8.) The eggs are also deposited in undisturbed soil along lanes and roadways, and beside fences (Figs. 9 and 10.) Another favored location is along the crests and sides of sandy knolls. As a rule, cultivated fields are avoided for egg laying, although this is not invariably the case. In the fall of 1915 the writers found a field in which the egg masses averaged from five to seven per square foot, in spite of the fact that a fair crop of rye was taken from it that season. In general, however, it may be said that fairly compact, sandy soil which remains undisturbed by the plow is usually preferred for egg deposition. This is an important point, and is again touched upon in the discussion of control measures (page 133).

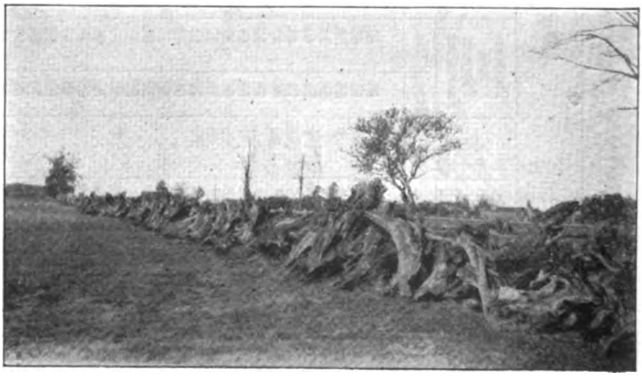


FIG. 9. STUMP FENCE ALONG WHICH EGGS WERE DEPOSITED

The abundance of egg masses in a field will vary, as might be supposed, depending on the abundance of the insects in that field at egg laying time and on the type of soil. Fields and pastures examined by the writers in the early spring and fall of 1915 showed from one to as many as seven egg pods per square foot, with an average in the more heavily infested grasshopper sections of from three to four masses per square foot. This means that there were in round numbers approximately 125,000 egg masses to the acre.

The exact number of egg masses deposited by an individual female cannot be stated definitely, but it is generally thought that the usual number is two. Riley (1891) states that "each female in the course of her life usually deposits two of these masses, though at St. Louis I have observed instances in which three and even four were placed by the same female." Other writers since then have reported the usual number to be at least two. From the fact that egg laying continues for six weeks or more, it is reasonable to suppose that at least two egg masses may be deposited by each female.

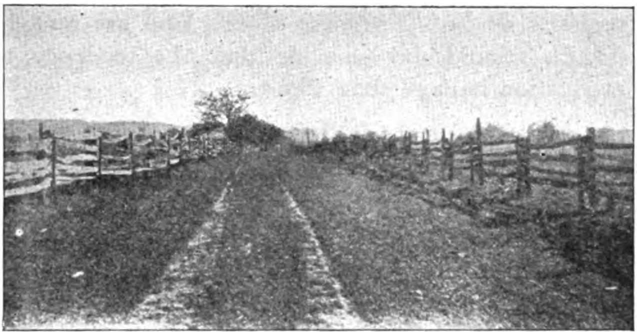


FIG. 10. ROADSIDES ALONG WHICH EGGS WERE DEPOSITED, AND FENCES ON WHICH ADULT GRASSHOPPERS CONGREGATED

NUMBER OF GENERATIONS PER YEAR

The species *M. atlanis* is normally single-brooded, having but one generation a year. It has been reported, however, as having two broods a year in a few instances. Riley (1891) found it to be uniformly double-brooded in Missouri; Garman (1894) found two generations in Kentucky; Thomas (1880) states that this species is double-brooded in the southern part of Illinois. Except for these comparatively isolated cases, *M. atlanis* is essentially single-brooded.

In exceptionally favorable circumstances, however, there may be a slight tendency toward the production of two broods in the same season. In his investigations of the outbreak of this species in New Hampshire in the eighties, Riley (1891) found a tendency toward a second brood. He says: "Some of the earlier laid eggs hatch in autumn, so that there is the same tendency toward a second brood as we find in *spretus*, a tendency which is more marked during a warm, protracted autumn, and which is beneficial to the farmer, inasmuch as all these autumn-hatched individuals invariably perish during the winter." In the writers' investigations at Kirkville in 1915 an instance was found of the tendency toward two broods, to which reference has already been made. In a sandy, slightly sloping, and well-protected field in which egg masses had been laid in considerable numbers, some first-stage and scattering second-stage nymphs of this species were found on August 25. Pressure of other work prevented frequent visits to this place, but on October 25 twelve fifth-stage nymphs were found. Undoubtedly some of the earliest-laid eggs had hatched, as a result of the exceptionally warm weather of the previous season. Instances of this kind are rare, however, and do not furnish ground for believing that the tendency toward double-brood production is more than slight.

NATURAL CONTROL

Were it not for the balance maintained by nature in the animal kingdom, the world would soon be overrun with insect pests of one kind or another. Outbreaks of particular insects are brought about by certain climatic and other conditions which are favorable to a rapid increase in the numbers of these insects and at the same time unfavorable for a corresponding increase in effectiveness of their natural checks. Eventually, however, these natural agencies regain control of the situation, and the normal balance is restored. Among these natural agencies may be mentioned birds and other vertebrates, insects, and diseases.

VERTEBRATE ENEMIES

Without doubt birds deserve first place among the higher animals preying upon grasshoppers. The good work they do in helping to suppress insects in general is often underestimated, but as our knowledge of the habits of birds increases, so does our appreciation of their service as aids in reducing the injury wrought by insects. Possessed of strong powers of flight, the birds are attracted in great numbers to localities where insect food is most abundant. This is especially true where grasshoppers have suddenly broken out in great numbers, and Beal (1900) has written as follows: " There seems to be a pretty general law that all birds, no matter what their food habits may be during the rest of the year, eat grasshoppers in August, just as the human race eats certain delicacies in their respective seasons."

Among the commoner species of birds which either have been observed to eat *M. atlanis* or whose stomachs showed on examination remains of this species, may be mentioned the bobwhite, the English sparrow, and the cardinal. The Bureau of Biological Survey of the United States Department of Agriculture has shown, by examinations of the stomachs of birds, that more than fifty species of the common eastern birds feed to a considerable extent on grasshoppers, including *M. atlanis*.

Turkeys and other domestic fowls have often been heartily recommended as destroyers of grasshoppers. There is no doubt that they will assist very materially in reducing the numbers of grasshoppers, but they are not to be depended on to entirely destroy the pests. Under certain circumstances they may effectually rid a place of grasshoppers. If the fowls are inclosed in a garden or other comparatively small inclosure in sufficient numbers, they will eradicate the pests very thoroughly. But when they are allowed to run loose over a large territory, too much reliance must not be placed on their powers as insect exterminators.

Other vertebrates that prey to a greater or less extent upon grasshoppers are hogs, skunks, toads, snakes, salamanders, and various rodents.

INSECT ENEMIES

PREDACIOUS INSECTS

Although strictly speaking the locust mite is not a true insect, for purposes of discussion it may be considered among the insect enemies of grasshoppers. The locust mite, *Trombidium* sp., is the commonest of all predacious insect enemies, and may be observed at almost any time during the summer, fastened to the body or the wing of its host. It exists by sucking out the juices of its host. Often there are a number of mites on the same insect (Fig. 11); the writers have frequently noticed grasshoppers carrying a dozen or more of them. Unfortunately these mites are not always fatal to their hosts, and grasshoppers infested

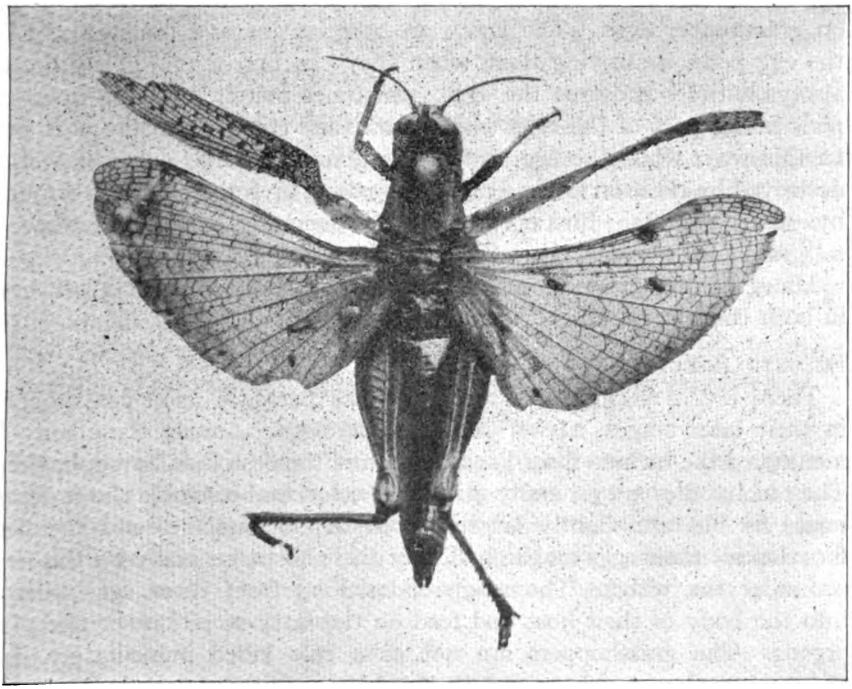


FIG. 11. MITES (TROMBIDIUM SP.) ON WINGS OF GRASSHOPPER

with several do not seem to be seriously hindered by their presence. But without doubt, where there are a large number of the mites attached to and feeding on the same host, the host is generally weakened. It is safe to assume that during the season many of the grasshoppers are destroyed in this way, but it is hardly possible to make a close estimation of the proportion.

The larvæ of bee flies, Bombyliidae, feed on grasshopper eggs. Bee flies are the dark gray, bee-like flies, densely covered with yellow hairs, which are frequently to be seen hovering about grasshoppers in the fields. They lay their eggs on the ground, in the vicinity of the grasshopper egg pods, and the larvæ when hatched feed on the grasshopper eggs.

The larvæ of blister beetles, Meloidae, attack grasshopper egg pods, at times destroying great numbers of them. These blister beetles have a curious life history. The adults, among which may be mentioned the old-fashioned potato beetle, *Epicauta vittata*, often cause great injury to potato and other vegetable plants by feeding on the foliage. The eggs of some species, at least, are laid on the ground and the larvæ feed on grasshopper eggs. The larvæ are very active and hunt around for the egg pods, destroying them when they can find them. They do not always entirely consume the eggs, sometimes merely breaking open the pod, eating part of the eggs within, and then going on to the next pod. In this way, when the egg masses are abundant large numbers will be destroyed by these larvæ, in a measure making up for the damage wrought by their parents. Blister beetles are generally more numerous in a "grasshopper" year, the reason for which is quite apparent.

Many of the ground beetles, Carabidae, feed on grasshopper eggs, in both their larval and their adult stages.

PARASITIC INSECTS

There are a number of insects that are parasitic upon grasshoppers in their later stages, as well as upon the eggs. Among these may be mentioned the tachina flies, Tachinidae, and the flesh flies, Sarcophagidae. The tachina flies are generally grayish in color, and resemble the ordinary house fly but are slightly larger. Both the tachina flies and the flesh flies deposit their eggs on the bodies of their hosts, generally on the neck or under the wings. The maggots hatching from these eggs burrow into the body of their host and feed on the fatty secretions or the vital organs. The grasshoppers are not as a rule killed immediately, but are weakened so much as not to be able to reproduce, and die sooner than those not attacked.

Grasshoppers are sometimes infested with hairworms, or hair snakes, a species of Gordius. These are very long, slender, round worms, which lie curled up within the body of their host, nearly filling it. They weaken the vital organs and eventually cause the death of their host.

DISEASES

One of the commonest natural checks on grasshoppers is a fungous disease, *Empusa grylli*. This disease often causes great mortality among the pests, and the symptoms produced are very characteristic. Grasshoppers affected with the disease instinctively climb upward, crawling up grass stems, weeds, and similar objects. There they die, and their dead bodies remain fastened to these objects in an upright position. After death the bodies become very much softened, and often the ends of the fungus tubes may be seen protruding from them. The spores are scattered from the dead and affected insects, and in this way, when the insects are crowded together in large numbers, the disease spreads rapidly. The most favorable conditions for the rapid development of this disease are continuous warm damp spells, when the locusts are clustered together and when food is scarce.

A bacterial disease was reported as having been the most destructive enemy of *M. atlanis* and related species in Minnesota during the outbreaks there in 1912 (Washburn, 1912).

CONTROL MEASURES

In considering the question of control measures, it must be remembered that we are not dealing with a new or an extraordinary pest, but rather with a common and well-known insect, which has suddenly become a serious menace to crops. In many instances this unusual development of the pest has been made possible, and probably fostered, by slack and more or less antiquated methods of farming.

The general question of control is discussed under the headings *Destruction of the eggs* and *Destruction of young and adult grasshoppers*.

DESTRUCTION OF THE EGGS

Plowing, and disking and harrowing, in order to destroy the eggs, are dwelt upon here because the writers believe that they are the most practicable ways to obtain permanent relief from the outbreaks of grasshoppers in general. As the saying goes, "an ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure." Other measures, discussed hereafter, can give but temporary relief in most cases.

PLOWING

Fall and early spring plowing is the most important method of permanently controlling grasshoppers in New York State. As has already been pointed out, the eggs are laid as a rule in soil which is fairly compact and which remains undisturbed by the plow — such places, for example, as old pastures and meadows where the grass is thin, along fence rows, lanes, ditch banks, and similar places. Wherever possible such places should be plowed deeply, that is, to a depth of six or more inches, in the fall or the early spring. The reason for such treatment is obvious — to bury the egg masses to such a depth that the young grasshoppers will be unable to work their way to the surface when they hatch. This method is especially applicable to the so-called "grasshopper" sections of the State, the sandy nature of the soil in these places seldom preventing the effectual use of the plow.

DISKING AND HARROWING

Disking and harrowing the ground in the late fall may be done with considerable benefit. These operations break up the top layer of the ground, in which the eggs are laid (they are seldom to be found at a depth exceeding two inches), and expose them to the drying effect of the wind and the sunshine and to the alternate freezing and thawing of winter; in addition many of the eggs thus exposed will be eaten by birds and other animals. It has been demonstrated conclusively in experiments that at least eighty per cent of the eggs so disturbed fail to hatch.

DESTRUCTION OF YOUNG AND ADULT GRASSHOPPERS

POISON BAITS

Without doubt, one of the most successful and least expensive methods of obtaining quick relief from the loss caused by grasshoppers is by the use of poison baits. These may be used against both the young and the full-grown grasshoppers.

The so-called "Kansas bait," as developed by Dean (1914) and Hunter and Claassen (1914) in Kansas, is as satisfactory a bait as has been used. The formula for making this bait is:

Bran	20 pounds
Paris green	1 pound
Oranges (or lemons)	3
Molasses	2 quarts (any cheap sirup may be used)
Water, about	3½ gallons

The bran and the paris green are mixed dry. The molasses and the water are mixed and the fruit is added, chopped fine (an ordinary food chopper is an excellent utensil for this purpose). The bran mixture is then moistened with the liquid. Just enough of the liquid should be used to thoroughly moisten the bran, but not enough to make it sloppy. The bait should be sown broadcast over the infested field, either early in the morning or late in the afternoon, preferably the former so that it will not be dried up by the heat of the sun before the insects have an opportunity to feed on it. It should be sown evenly and thinly over the field, not in lumps. The amount of mixture from the foregoing formula should be enough for from three to five acres. If a larger quantity of the bait is to be made at a time, it will be found advisable to use a large, tight box to mix the materials in, and for the mixer to protect himself from breathing the poisonous dust by tying a moistened sponge or handkerchief over his nose and mouth.

As the bait is likely to be attractive to animals, it is important that livestock of all kinds, including poultry, should be kept from the treated fields for some days, in order to avoid any possible danger of poisoning them. Extra supplies of the poisoned material, as well as the utensils used in preparing the bait, should be kept in a secure place, where livestock and children cannot get at them. If the grasshoppers are especially numerous, or if a rain follows the application of the bait before it has had time to take effect, it will be necessary to renew the treatment in a few days. Most of the insects killed will be found in crevices and hollows, and at the bases of the plants. The writers have often counted as many as thirty or more to the square foot dead from the poison, clustered along the rows of plants.

In cooperation with the State Department of Agriculture the poison bait was applied over a considerable area in the vicinity of Kirkville, New York. The following notes on this work will give a fair idea of the effectiveness of the bait:

On June 7, on the Oot farm at Kirkville, the poison bait was scattered broadcast over a field of young oats in which the plants were about six inches high. The grasshoppers were very numerous, had already eaten bare the first three or four rows, and were working havoc with the rest. On the next day and the day following there were showers, so that the treatment was renewed on the 10th. In both cases the usual formula for the material, as given above, was followed. The bait was applied in the morning. That same afternoon a few dead grasshoppers were to be found, scattered along the rows, and more were rather sluggish and disinclined to move when disturbed. Evidently they were feeling the effects of the poison. The next afternoon, approximately thirty-six hours after the second application, a large proportion of the insects were dead or dying. Along the outer three or four rows the writers counted from eight to twelve dead insects every four inches. The grasshoppers had apparently sought shelter along the rows, and were found huddled together at the bases of the plants. Many sick and dying insects were found also, but no counts of these were made.

On June 17, on the farm of Frank Moth, also at Kirkville, the poison bait was applied to a badly infested oat field already partly eaten by these pests. The standard formula was used, and the material was applied in the morning. The field was examined forty-eight hours later and average counts of the dead insects were made, taking the number on a square foot of ground. The counts showed 47, 25, 28, 33, 37, 19, 27, 15, 29, and 39, giving an average of 30 (or 29.9, to be exact), dead grasshoppers to the square foot. In another instance 18 dead insects were found in a heap in a single horseshoe track. It was also very noticeable that many others were in a dying condition.

On June 22, at the Putnam farm in Peru, Clinton County, a field was examined to which the poison had been applied on the morning of the 20th. Three pounds of paris green had been used to forty pounds of bran, in place of the regular formula, as the insects were very abundant and were doing much damage. Counts of individual areas through the field showed the number of dead grasshoppers to be 37, 19, 49, 26, 12, 33, 19, 18, 34, 41, 38, and 47, with an average of 31, per square foot. In one place near the gateway at the entrance to the field over 300 were counted in a square yard.

Equally satisfactory results were obtained by farmers in the infested sections who applied the bait according to the directions given. Occasionally places were found where the results were not satisfactory, but in almost every one of these that the writers investigated, the reason was obvious. Generally the fault was in applying the bait in the middle of the day, when it would dry out almost as soon as it fell on the hot earth, before the insects had an opportunity to feed on it.

The writers' experience has been that, although the poison does not kill insects immediately, it seems to stop their feeding to a considerable extent as soon as they have eaten it. The poison begins to take effect within a few hours, but does not reach a maximum until from thirty-six to forty-eight hours. As late as four days after the application of the poison bait the writers have found grasshoppers in a dying condition, without doubt as a result of having eaten the material.

Another poison bait recommended is known as the "Criddle mixture." This is composed of paris green 1 pound, salt 2 pounds, horse manure (preferably fresh) about 50 pounds. The paris green, the salt, and the manure are mixed, with enough water added to make the mixture fairly moist but not sloppy. The mixture is then scattered over the infested fields, in a similar manner to that with the Kansas bait described above. Although this material is less agreeable to handle than the Kansas bait, it has the advantage of being less expensive and offers less danger of stock poisoning.

THE HOPPER-DOZER

One of the earliest mechanical devices used for the destruction of grasshoppers is the hopper-dozer (Plate VI, 1). This machine was developed during the days of the notorious Rocky Mountain locust outbreaks in the Western States in the seventies. Hopper-dozers have been in use for years in the grasshopper regions of the West, but do not seem to have been in as much favor in the Eastern States. This machine most certainly has its place in grasshopper control, as the experiments of others, and those carried on under the direction of the writers in 1915, have demonstrated. It seems wise, therefore, to discuss briefly the construction and use of the hopper-dozer.

The hopper-dozer consists essentially of a shallow pan, mounted on runners, with a back shield, and containing water with a film of kerosene or crude oil. The pan may be of plain or galvanized sheet iron, about four inches deep, two feet wide, and of any suitable length, generally eight or more feet. The runners may vary in height but usually should be about two or three inches high. On the back there should be a shield of tin or oilcloth (with the smooth side toward the front) two or three feet high, to keep the insects from jumping or flying over the back. Similar side wings may be added. The pan is partly filled with water, with a generous film of kerosene or crude oil on top, and drawn across the infested fields. Pans up to eight feet long may be drawn by hand; longer ones will need horses or several men. In the longer pans cross partitions should be placed at intervals of two or three feet, to keep the liquid from running to one end on uneven ground. It is of course obvious that the hopper-dozer can be used only on comparatively level ground. On the other hand, the machine is especially useful in places where the use of poison bait is inadvisable or impossible.

It has been stated that in general the insects become winged by the middle of June. It is important, then, that the hopper-dozer should be brought into play as long before that time as possible, for the best results.

Considerable success has attended the use of these machines in the past under eastern conditions. Marlatt (1889) reported their successful use during the grasshopper outbreak of 1889 in New Hampshire. Sixty bushels of insects were collected from an oat field of three and one-half acres. In experiments at Kirkville during the summer of 1915, a small machine about seven and one-half feet long was used. With this, forty gallons of grasshoppers were caught in one field in about three hours. On the first trial about three gallons of insects were caught in the first fifteen minutes (Plate VI, 2). There is no doubt in the minds of the writers that the hopper-dozer could be used to considerable advantage in many cases.

SPRAYING

Where there is some sort of spraying machine available, it may often be used to advantage. The individual farmer must be the judge of the circumstances under which this means of control can best be used. Experimenters have recommended various materials to be used in spraying for grasshoppers, of which the most successful are arsenate of lead, paris green, and sodium arsenite.

Swenk (1913) found that in Nebraska arsenate of lead gave excellent results when used at the rate of 5 pounds of the paste material to 50 gallons of water. The grasshoppers, after having fed on vegetation sprayed with this poison, died in about forty-eight hours. Paris green at the rate of 1½ pounds to 50 gallons of water, with about a pound of fresh lump lime to prevent burning of the foliage, gave equally good results.

Washburn (1912), in Minnesota, used a sodium arsenite spray, such as is in vogue in the grasshopper-infested regions of South Africa, devising a formula which is suited to conditions here. He used commercial sodium arsenite at the rate of 1 pound to 60 gallons of water, with 2 quarts of molasses. It was found that the poison would kill the insects in from twenty-four to forty-eight hours after they had eaten the sprayed grass, but they became paralyzed almost immediately after eating the poison and did not feed any more.

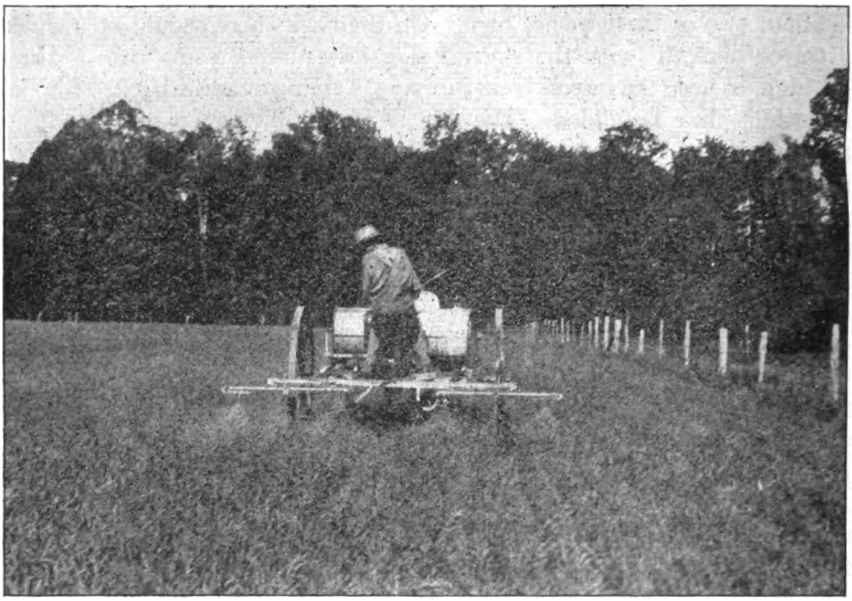


FIG. 12. SPRAYING AN OAT FIELD

In the vicinity of Kirkville the writers had an opportunity to try the effect of poison sprays in checking an invasion of a field of oats by grasshoppers. In cooperation with the owner, the grass in an adjacent meadow in which the insects were abundant was rather thoroughly sprayed with paris green by means of a potato sprayer. The oat field was just beginning to be invaded by the grasshoppers from the meadow, and the first rows of oats were sprayed with the poison solution (Fig. 12). Many of the young grasshoppers were killed, but on the whole the results were disappointing. If the spraying had been followed up and repeated once or twice it would probably have been more effective.

Any spray, in order to be most effective, should be applied early in the season while the grasshoppers are small. Hedgerows, weedy patches, lanes, and similar places, wherever the pests congregate, may be treated in this way, as well as other places where circumstances warrant.

Of course it is highly important that livestock of all kinds be kept away from the areas treated, for some time — at least a week or ten days under ordinary circumstances, or until after heavy rains. If proper care is taken in the handling of poison sprays, as directed above, little danger need be feared.

OTHER METHODS OF CONTROL

Local conditions will often suggest other ways of destroying the pests. Naturally any one method may not be applicable to all situations, and any method that is feasible and seems to apply in the circumstances present should be adopted. Several schemes that the writers have seen used in particular cases with gratifying success may be briefly mentioned.

Plowing under.— It sometimes happens that practically all the grasshoppers on a farm or in a certain locality hatch in a single field or pasture. In such a case it may be feasible to plow under the young grasshoppers. To be effective the plowing must be done as soon as possible after the insects have hatched. In plowing one should always start from the outside edge and work toward the center, throwing the slices of soil outward and having them overlap. This will tend to drive toward the center such of the hoppers as escape being buried, and they will generally be unable to cross the plowed ground to adjoining fields in sufficient numbers to cause further apprehension.

Burning.— Occasionally grasshoppers will congregate in a small field of grass or grain for a time. An instance of this kind came under the writers' observation in 1915 at Kirkville, where the owner was very successful in burning over the infested tract and destroying most of the insects. The grass need not necessarily be dry enough to burn completely in a short time. It was found that great numbers of the insects were apparently untouched by the flames but were suffocated by the smoke. Examination of the burned area on the following day showed immense numbers of the insects dead on the ground, many of them burned to a crisp, others with the wings burned off, and still others suffocated as just mentioned. Nowhere adjoining the burned field could the grasshoppers be found in any unusual abundance, even though on one side was a plot of especially fine oats. This method, however, will not be effective in fields where the vegetation is rather scanty, with bare spots of any size, as the writers learned in other instances. The grasshoppers will collect in the bare spots and escape for the most part unharmed. This difficulty might be remedied by covering the bare spots with grass or hay. A day when there is as little wind as possible should be selected for the burning.

Traps.— Trapping the pests is another method that has been employed to advantage in the case of grain or other fields heavily infested. The crop should be cut, leaving several rows or patches on which the insects may feed. These trap rows or patches should be heavily sprayed with arsenate of lead or some other poison, or generously treated with poison bait as already described. In this way a crop may be cut, in order to save it, without necessarily driving the insects to other fields for new food.

Kerosene oil.— The writers have seen kerosene oil spray used very effectively on a farm in Kirkville. A pasture in which grasshoppers were hatching was divided by a narrow lane from several fields of grain. Early in the season the insects gathered in the late afternoon in this lane and on the fences on both sides (Fig. 10, page 129). The owner used to go through the lane just before sundown and spray the ground and the fences with kerosene oil, using a small automatic hand-pressure pump which gave a fine spray. Great numbers of the insects were killed in this way, and, although many escaped by jumping aside as the man passed, by consistent repeated applications the grain crops escaped with but little damage. It was estimated that about 50 gallons of oil was used during the season.

As has been said, the methods mentioned will not always be applicable in every case, but they will perhaps suggest possible schemes that may be utilized to fit individual circumstances. They are offered merely as suggestions, based on the writers' experiences.

GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR CONTROL

For methods of control in general the writers would recommend the following: fall plowing, and disking and harrowing, to destroy the eggs; use of poison baits, especially the Kansas bait; other methods that may be suggested by local conditions. Above all they would urge thorough, consistent effort, based on a knowledge of the general life history and habits of the insects, with that knowledge intelligently directed and applied to the immediate situation.

NOTES ON RELATED FORMS IN NEW YORK

In addition to *Melanoplus atlanis*, there are several other species of grasshoppers that the writers have often found in close association with that species, and contributing to some extent to the damage caused. As a rule, however, these other forms would not by themselves be abundant enough to become serious pests, although *M. femur-rubrum*, the common red-legged grasshopper, has had a record even worse than that of *M. atlanis*.

The methods of control that have been recommended for the lesser migratory locust are equally applicable to the species now considered. As a general rule, however, there is little need for the adoption of remedial measures for these forms, except possibly in cases of local abundance.

THE RED-LEGGED GRASSHOPPER
(*Melanoplus femur-rubrum*)

Throughout the State as a whole, and indeed throughout the United States in general, *Melanoplus femur-rubrum* (Fig. 13) is much commoner than *M. atlanis*. It is usually spoken of as *red-legs*, referring to its characteristic reddish-colored legs. The lesser migratory locust and this form are difficult to distinguish from each other, even by specialists, so close is the resemblance between them in form and color. This is especially true of the females.

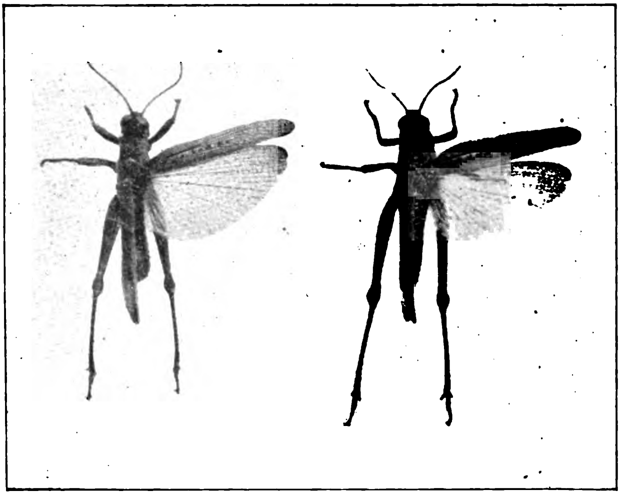


FIG. 13. THE RED-LEGGED LOCUST (MELANOPLUS FEMUR-RUBRUM), MALE AND FEMALE. NATURAL SIZE

The life history of the red-legged grasshopper does not differ in any material respect from that of the lesser migratory locust. It is said to be a frequenter of low ground, but the writers found it common on high ground both at Ithaca and at Kirkville in 1915. It is often found along the margins of cultivated fields and along the shady edges of woods, where the vegetation is tender and succulent. It is seldom to be found in numbers on very dry hillsides and meadows, differing in this respect from *M. atlanis*, which prefers drier, more arid locations.

The following brief statement of some of the more obvious differences in form between the two species, as given by Washburn (1912) will aid in separating them:

Lesser migratory locust.— General color tan or yellowish brown; larger part of "hind leg" has two distinct bars on the outer face; tip of abdomen in males, always with a distinct notch.

Red-legged grasshopper.— General color reddish brown, without distinct bars on hind legs; usually smaller and shorter winged than the above.

The writers have collected this species from Peru, Kirkville, Gloversville, and Ithaca. At Peru the insects were occasionally found associated with *M. atlanis*, but more commonly along the edges of fields and woods. At Kirkville and Gloversville they were found in similar places. On one farm located near the edge of the grasshopper-infested section in Kirkville, the insects were fairly abundant in a field of clover but did not appear to be doing any appreciable harm. At Gloversville they were more abundant in the city than in the surrounding territory. At Ithaca this species is much commoner than *M. atlanis*. The insects are found along the edges of cultivated fields and woodlots and in clover fields, but not in numbers sufficient to cause damage. On October 31, 1915, the writers found a number of these grasshoppers on the grassy slope outside the insectary, among them several pairs mating; and on November 7, also on the same slope, they found one pair mating. From these observations it would appear that this species continues to be active later in the fall than does *M. atlanis*.

H. H. Knight, a graduate student at Cornell, has collected *M. femur-rubrum* at Batavia and at McLean. In 1912 he found the insects to be abundant on high ground, but not on low ground.

THE TWO-STRIPED GRASSHOPPER

(*Melanoplus bivittatus*)

The two-striped grasshopper, *Melanoplus bivittatus* (Fig. 14) — known also as the yellow-striped grasshopper — may often be found associated with *M. atlanis*, and in recent years this species has been the most serious grasshopper pest in Minnesota, according to Washburn (1912). In New York State it is occasionally found in considerable numbers in localized places, to the exclusion of other species. It has not, however, been a serious pest in New York State as yet.

M. bivittatus is one of the largest species, the female being an inch and a half or so long, with a rather heavy, chunky body. The insect is usually of a dull olive brown or drab color, with a conspicuous yellow stripe along each side of the back running from the head nearly to the tips of the wings. These stripes are very noticeable, as a rule, and distinguish this species when at rest from other forms.

Ordinarily the insects of this species frequent bottom lands, edges of cultivated fields, margins of woodlands, and shaded mountain slopes, but in times of excessive abundance they will spread out over cultivated fields, causing much injury to crops. *M. bivittatus* reaches maturity somewhat later in the season than does *M. atlanis*, and disappears earlier in the fall. The egg masses are larger, containing from 39 to 82 eggs according to Somes (1914).

The writers have collected this species at Kirkville, Batavia, and Ithaca. At Kirkville the insects were found occasionally associated with *M. atlanis*, but more generally along the edges of fields and open pastures. In one field at Kirkville, where rye had been grown, the insects were found in some abundance along a sandy ridge running through the field to the edge of a woods. They far outnumbered other species, but as the rye had been removed it was not possible to determine whether they had caused any appreciable damage. H. H. Knight has collected the species at Batavia, McLean, and Ithaca. At Ithaca he found the insects in abundance on the Renwick Flats.

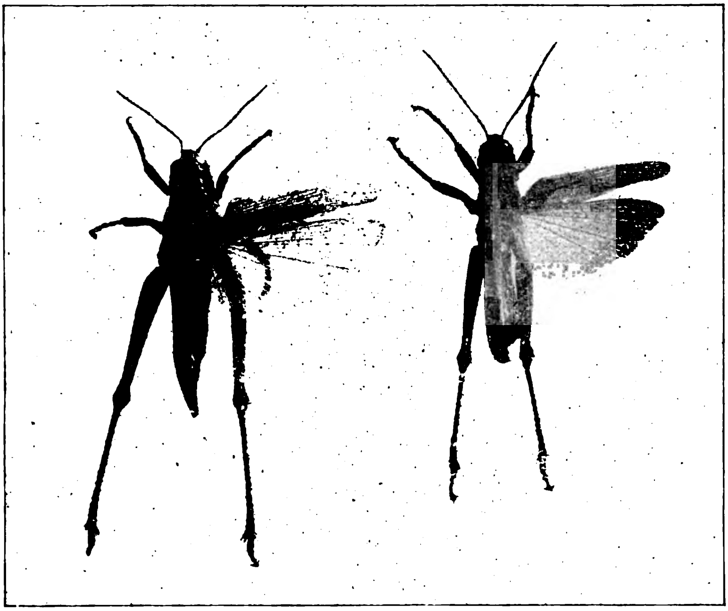


FIG. 14. THE TWO-STRIPED GRASSHOPPER (MELANOPLUS BIVITTATUS)

THE CLEAR-WINGED LOCUST

(*Camnula pellucida*)

The clear-winged locust, *Camnula pellucida* (Fig. 15) — known also as the yellow-winged, or pellucid, locust — is fairly common, and in some States, notably Minnesota, Idaho, and Utah, it has at times been a most serious pest. In New York State it is generally associated with *M. atlanis*. It generally frequents high, dry soil, and is swift in flight. The general color is light brown; the outer wings are brownish with dark-colored spots, and the hind wings are transparent. This species is slightly smaller than *M. atlanis*. The two species mature at about the same time, and in general their life histories correspond.

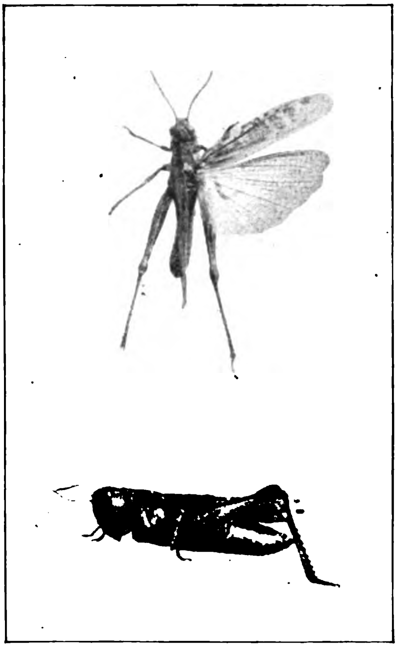


FIG. 15. THE CLEAR-WINGED LOCUST (CAMNULA PELLUCIDA)

The writers have collected adults of this species at Peru in June, and at Ithaca. At Ithaca they may be found occasionally during the summer. Felt (1915) found them in large numbers at Wellsville, associated with *M. atlanis*, on August 3, 1914.

THE CAROLINA LOCUST
(*Dissosteira carolina*)

Because of its large size and striking coloration, the Carolina locust, *Dissosteira carolina* (Fig. 16), is the one oftenest noticed by the casual observer and the one supposed to be the commonest kind. Its peculiar habits would seem to lend color to this belief. It frequents open places, such as roads, pathways, and banks, rather than more secluded spots; when disturbed it flies to open spaces, depending for concealment on the close resemblance between its coloration and its immediate environment. As a matter of fact it is one of the commonest forms, but it is not abundant and should not be classed with the more injurious species.

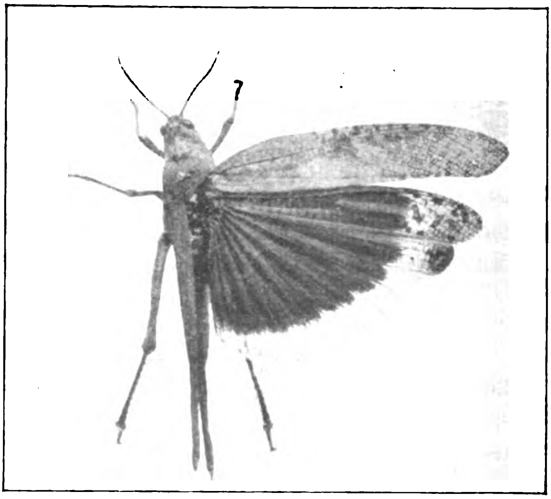


FIG. 16. THE CAROLINA LOCUST (DISSOSTEIRA CAROLINA)

The Carolina locust is very erratic in its flight, especially the male. The male rises to a height of several feet and remains there almost stationary, vibrating its wings at a tremendous rate and producing a characteristic whirring sound. This habit has been thought to be associated with the mating instinct. The insects of this species are rather large, often measuring when at rest an inch and a half or more from the head to the tips of the wings. The usual color is pale yellowish brown with dusky spots, the hind wings with broad yellow hind margins. The color of the outer wings is subject to great variation, being of a shade that will best harmonize with the immediate surroundings; thus all variations from light yellowish to reddish black may be found. This species likes warm, sandy spots, and the close correspondence of its coloration to that of the immediate neighborhood affords it excellent concealment while resting on the ground.

This species is somewhat later in its development than *M. atlanis*, its eggs being deposited in the late fall and hatching late in May or June, as a rule.

The writers have collected *D. carolina* at Kirkville and at Ithaca. At Ithaca the species is especially common along sandy lanes, railroad embankments, and in bare spots or places sparsely covered with vegetation. H. H. Knight has found it to be common at Batavia and has collected it also at Olcott.

THE GREEN-STRIPED GRASSHOPPER

(*Chortophaga viridifasciata*)

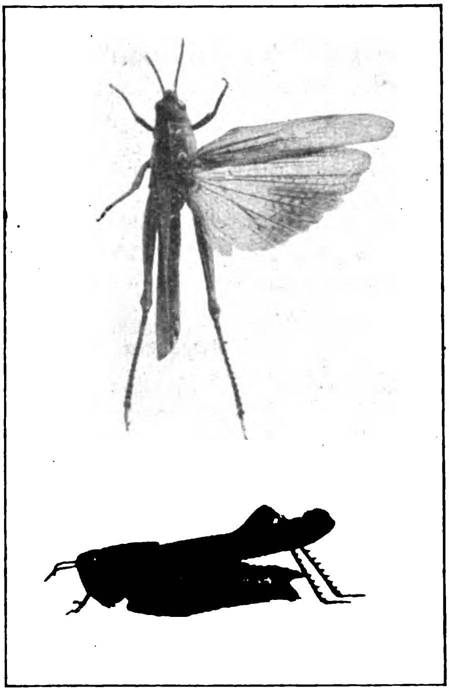


FIG. 17. THE GREEN-STRIPED GRASSHOPPER (CHORTOPHAGA VIRIDIFASCIATA)

The green-striped grasshopper, *Chortophaga viridifasciata* (Fig. 17), is a comparatively common species, and because of its somewhat unusual life history it often causes considerable alarm. The insects hibernate as partly grown nymphs, hidden away in rubbish, among old grass stems, and in similar sheltered places. A warm, sunny spell in winter is quite likely to bring them forth from their sheltered hiding places, and it is not at all uncommon to see them hopping around on sunny days in January and February, apparently quite unmindful of the fact that it is still winter. Sometimes they appear in considerable numbers, causing much apprehension in the minds of persons seeing them. These midwinter appearances are not, however, to be taken as indications of a bad grasshopper year to follow, as this species has never been known to be abundant enough in New York or neighboring States to be of economic importance.

The full-grown grasshoppers are typically green in color, although dimorphic brown and brownish green individuals are not at all uncommon. The majority of the males are brown, while the females tend toward greenish shades. This species is larger than *M. atlanis*, the insects being an inch and a quarter or more in length, with a comparatively heavy body.

Briefly the life history is as follows: As already stated, the nymphs hibernate during the winter, appearing at intervals on warm, sunny days. This habit may be illustrated by the following notes from the writers' records:

February 21, 1915. Nymphs numerous in grass along edges of fields at East Ithaca.
February 23, 1915. Nymphs numerous in grass on experimental plats, Ithaca.
March 15, 1915. Nymphs found along sides of bank near Forestry Building, Ithaca.

H. H. Knight observed the nymphs in some numbers at Ithaca on March 19 and 29, 1913. By the latter part of May they are fairly common and have reached the last nymphal stage, as shown by the following notes:

April 4, 1913. Nymphs in last nymphal stage common at Ithaca (Knight).
April 21, 1912. Nymphs in last nymphal stage common at Ithaca around insectary (Knight).
April 26, 1913. Nymphs in last nymphal stage common at McLean (Knight).

This is the earliest species, and the chirping of the insects begins the general chorus of the season of grasshoppers, locusts, and crickets. The adults emerge during May, as indicated by the following notes:

May 8, 1915. Adults found at Ithaca.
May 11, 1915. Adults and last-stage nymphs found at Broadalbin.
May 15, 1915. Adults collected at Taughannock. (Specimens in C. U. collection, collector unknown.)
May 17, 1913. Adults common at Ithaca (Knight).
June 15, 1913. Adults found at Ithaca (Knight).
June 22, 1915. Adults found at Batavia (Knight).

Shortly after emergence the females deposit their eggs in small holes in the ground, forming masses as in the case of *M. atlanis*; those of the latter, however, are smaller. The eggs hatch later in the summer and the nymphs hibernate during the winter. The writers have never collected adults of this species during the summer and therefore believe that there is only one brood a year, although Lintner (1885, 1893) states that the species is double-brooded. Nymphs become common again in the fall, and the writers found them in some numbers around the insectary as late as November 31, in the fall of 1915. In other States there is but one brood.

SUMMARY

The lesser migratory locust, *Melanoplus atlanis*, is undoubtedly a native species and is widely distributed in the United States and Canada. In many States it has at times been a most destructive pest.

In New York this species caused considerable injury to crops in the western counties in 1893 and 1894. During the last three years, as a result of the favorable seasons of 1912 and 1913, the sandy sections of Clinton, Warren, Saratoga, Fulton, and, to a less extent, other counties, were subjected to an exceedingly severe outbreak of this pest.

The sections in which the grasshoppers appeared in abnormal numbers were remarkably similar in soil, vegetation, kinds of crops grown, and general type of farming, and differed very markedly from closely surrounding regions.

Rye, oats, and corn suffered the most, probably because they are the chief crops of the infested localities. Practically all other crops were injured to a greater or less extent.

The eggs of the grasshoppers hatch in the spring, and the hatching period may be prolonged if conditions are not favorable.

The young nymphs subsist for a time on the surrounding vegetation, so that their presence may not always be noted until they have reached considerable size. During their lives the nymphs undergo five molts, the wings becoming fully developed after the last molt. The length of the time between the different molts varies, and is dependent on such factors as temperature, moisture, and food supply.

The transformation from nymph to adult occurs as a rule during June, and most of the insects have developed wings by early July.

The grasshoppers feed in the middle of the day; at night and on cold, damp days they seek shelter. There is no definite migration in swarms, but they may drift from place to place in search of food as the available supply in any one place becomes exhausted.

Mating commences early in July and the mating period extends through the summer. Egg laying begins about the middle of July, and thereafter eggs may be deposited at any time until cool weather sets in. The eggs are deposited in a pocket in the ground made by the female, and form a small pod-like mass or capsule. Rather sandy soil which is fairly compact and rather sparsely covered with vegetation is chosen for egg laying; such conditions are usually met with in closely grazed pastures, in meadows of long standing where the grass has become thin, and along the edges of lanes, paths, and shallow ditches or furrows running through such places. Usually the egg masses are not found at a greater depth than from one-half to one and one-half inches below the surface of the ground. As many as seven egg masses to the square foot have been found in the most heavily infested localities, but the average number is considerably less.

This species normally has but one generation a year in New York State.

Birds, predacious and parasitic insects, and diseases are important factors in the natural control of grasshoppers. Turkeys and other domestic fowls, and various mammals, assist in reducing the numbers of the pests.

Fall and spring plowing of the breeding places of the insects is the most practicable method of permanently controlling grasshoppers in this State. The breeding places should be plowed to a depth of six or more inches, so as to break up and bury the egg masses. Disking and harrowing is of considerable benefit in breaking up the egg pods and exposing them to the effects of winter weather and to the attacks of birds and animals.

One of the most successful and least expensive methods of obtaining quick relief from the ravages of the pests is the use of the so-called "Kansas bait," a kind of poisoned bait. This is composed of bran 20 pounds, paris green 1 pound, 3 oranges or lemons chopped fine, molasses (of a cheap grade) 2 quarts, and enough water to moisten the bran and other ingredients (about 3½ gallons). The mixture should be scattered thinly over the infested areas early in the morning. Care should be taken to keep all livestock from treated areas. Very gratifying results have been obtained from the application of this bait.

The hopper-dozer may be employed to advantage under some conditions, and wherever it can be used it offers a quick means of destroying large numbers of insects in a short time.

Spraying may be resorted to at times, and other methods may be found practicable in individual cases. Any of these methods should be made use of whenever feasible.

Besides the lesser migratory locust, other species have been found in less numbers. These are the red-legged grasshopper, the two-striped grasshopper, the clear-winged locust, the Carolina locust, and the green-striped grasshopper.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The writers desire to express their appreciation of the opportunities offered for carrying out the work at Kirkville, New York, by C. N. Dewey, of that town. Mr. Dewey not only placed at the writers' disposal necessary equipment, but also himself assisted very materially during the progress of the investigation.

The writers desire to acknowledge their obligations also to L. L. Woodford, of the State Department of Agriculture, who collaborated in the control work.

LITERATURE CITED

Beal, F. E. L.
1900 Food of the bobolink, blackbirds, and grackles. U. S. Agr. Dept., Biol. Survey Div. Bul. 13: 1–77.

Blatchley, W. S.
1903 The Orthoptera of Indiana. *In* Indiana State Geologist's Rept. **27**: 123–471.

Bruner, Lawrence
1883 North American Acrididae north of Mexico. *In* U. S. Ent. Com. Rept. **3**: 55–61.

Burmeister, Hermann
1839 Handbuch der entomologie **2**: 2: 639.

Cockerell, T. D. A.
1889 On the variation of insects. The entomologist **22**: 127.

Dean, G. A.
1914 Grasshopper control work in western Kansas. Journ. econ. ent. **7**: 67–73.

Felt, E. P.
1915 Thirtieth report of the State Entomologist on injurious and other insects of the State of New York, p. 46–57.

Garman, H.
1894 Destructive locusts in Kentucky. *In* Kentucky Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 49: 19–21.

Gibson, Arthur
1915 The control of locusts in eastern Canada. Canada Agr. Dept., Ent. Branch. Circ. 5: 1–8.

Harris, T. W.
1862 A treatise on some of the insects injurious to vegetation. (Flint ed.), p. 170.

Hunt, T. F.
1886 Partial economic bibliography of indian corn insects. *In* Miscellaneous essays on economic entomology by the State Entomologist (Illinois) and his entomological assistants, p. 120.

Hunter, S. J., and Claassen, P. W.
1914 Grasshopper control in the southern division of Kansas. Journ. econ. ent. **7**: 73–82.

Lintner, J. A.

1885 Second report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York, p. 187–198.

1893 Ninth report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York, p. 330–334.

1895 Tenth report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York, p. 440–445.

Lugger, Otto

1895 Insects injurious in 1895. *In* Univ. Minnesota Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. Rept. **1895**: 138–144.

Marlatt, C. L.

1889 A report on the lesser migratory locust. Insect life **2**:66–70.

Packard, A. S., jr.

1874 The "hateful" grasshopper in New England. Am. nat. **8**: 502.

1883 Development of Caloptenus atlanis. *In* U. S. Ent. Com. Rept. **3**:273–277.

Provancher, L.

1876 Petite faune entomologique du Canada Orthoptères. Acridites. Le naturaliste canadien **8**: 106–116.

Riley, C. V.

1875 Seventh annual report on the noxious, beneficial, and other insects of the State of Missouri, p. 169–171.

1878 First annual report of the United States Entomological Commission for the year 1877 relating to the Rocky Mountain locust, p. 52, 223.

1891 The lesser migratory locust. *In* U. S. Agr. Dept., Ent. Div. Bul. 25 (O. S.): 26–27.

Scudder, S. H.

1878 Remarks on Calliptenus and Melanoplus, with a notice of the species found in New England. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc. **19**: 281–286.

1880 List of the Orthoptera collected by Dr. A. S. Packard in the Western United States in the summer of 1877. *In* U. S. Ent. Com. Rept. **2**: app. 2: 24.

1898 Revision of the Orthopteran group Melanopli (Acridiidae), with special reference to North American forms. U. S. Nat. Mus. Proc. **20**: 1–421.

Serville, J. G. Audinet-

1831 Revue méthodique des insectes de l'ordre des Orthoptères. Ann. sci. nat. **22**:284–285.

Somes, M. P.

1914 The Acridiidae of Minnesota. Minnesota Agr. Exp. Sta. Tech. bul. 141:1–98.

Stål, Carl

1873 Recensio Orthopterorum. Revue critique des Orthoptères décrits par Linné, de Geer, et Thunberg **1**:79.

Swenk, Myron H.

1913 The principal insects injurious to agriculture during 1911–1912. Bulletin of the State Entomologist of Nebraska. Bul. 1:3–19.

Thomas, Cyrus

1876 A list of the Orthoptera of Illinois. Ill. Mus. Nat. Hist. Bul. 1.

1880 The Acrididae of Illinois. *In* Illinois State Entomologist's ninth report on the noxious and beneficial insects of the State of Illinois, p. 71–140.

Walsh, B. D.

1866 Grasshoppers and locusts. Pract. ent. **2**:1–5.

Washburn, F. L.

1912 Grasshoppers and other injurious insects of 1911 and 1912. Minnesota State Entomologist. Rept. **14**:1–114.

AUGUST, 1916 BULLETIN 379

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

BLACK ROT, LEAF SPOT, AND CANKER OF POMACEOUS FRUITS

L. R. HESLER

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
LEX R. HESLER, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology **(In cooperation with Rochester University).**
CHARLES H. HADLEY, Jr., B.S., Entomology.
DANIEL S. FOX, B.S., Farm Management.
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE
Host considerations 157
  Plants concerned 157
  Varietal susceptibility 157
    Of fruit to black rot 157
    Of foliage to leaf spot 157
    Of limbs to canker 157
The disease 158
  Names 158
  History 158
    The black rot of the fruit 158
    The leaf spot 159
    The canker form 159
  Geographical occurrence 160
  Economic importance 162
    General considerations 162
    Nature of losses 162
      Injury to fruit 162
      Injury to foliage 163
      Injury to limbs 163
  Symptoms 164
    On the fruit 164
    On the leaves 165
    On the limbs 166
    Other organs affected 167
  Etiology 168
    Morphology 168
      Perithecia 168
      Pycnidia 170
      Pycnidial formation 172
      Pycnospores 175
      Mycelium 178
      Sclerotia 179
      Chlamydospores 179
      Microconidia 180
      Yeast forms 180
    Physiology 181
      Methods of isolation 181
      Cultural characters — general 181
      Cultural characters — special 181
      Protoplasmic streaming 181
    Pathogenicity 182
      Black rot of apple 182
      Leaf spot of apple 183
      Canker of apple 191
      Cross-inoculations and host relationships 199
    Names and synonymy 203
    Life history studies 205
      Source of the inoculum 205
      Method of spore discharge 207
      Time of spore discharge 208
      Agents of dissemination 209
      Infection courts 209
      Pycnospore germination 211
      Ascospore germination 212
      Incubation period 212

PAGE
      Pathological histology.......... 213
         Fruit.......... 213
         Leaves.......... 214
         Bark.......... 215
Control.......... 220
   Black rot.......... 220
      Exclusion by legislation.......... 220
      Spraying.......... 220
      Handling of fruits.......... 221
      Storage.......... 221
   Leaf spot.......... 221
      Spraying.......... 221
      Cultivation.......... 222
   Canker.......... 222
      Historical and introductory.......... 222
      Surgical methods.......... 223
         Pruning.......... 223
            Removal of limbs.......... 223
            Removal of diseased bark.......... 224
         Wound treatment.......... 224
            Wound disinfection.......... 224
            Wound protection.......... 224
         Wound healing.......... 227
            Wound cork.......... 227
            Wound wood.......... 227
            Callus.......... 227
      Spraying.......... 228
   General considerations.......... 228
      Orchard management.......... 229
      Resistant varieties.......... 229
      An enemy of the pathogene.......... 230
Bibliography.......... 230

BLACK ROT, LEAF SPOT, AND CANKER OF POMACEOUS FRUITS[1]

L. R. HESLER

HOST CONSIDERATIONS

PLANTS CONCERNED

The black rot, leaf spot, and canker of pomaceous fruits is primarily a disease of the apple, *Pyrus Malus* L. It affects other trees also, however, especially the pear (*Pyrus communis* L.), the quince (*Cydonia vulgaris* Pers.), and the crab (*Pyrus coronaria* L.), showing on these hosts symptoms similar to those on the apple. In addition the pathogene infests the dead parts of a great variety of other trees and shrubs, but in such cases there is usually no evidence that it has been the causal factor in the death of the tissues. In the State of New York, at least, this disease is of economic importance only on apple trees.

VARIETAL SUSCEPTIBILITY

OF FRUIT TO BLACK ROT

The summer varieties of apples are affected by black rot at the time of ripening, while winter varieties commonly suffer in storage. In Connecticut black rot is a most troublesome storage rot (Clinton, 1915:5).[2]

OF FOLIAGE TO LEAF SPOT

Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:183), in New Hampshire, note striking differences in the varietal resistance of apple seedlings to leaf spot. In Virginia, Ben Davis and Black Twig are more severely attacked than are other varieties (Reed, Cooley, and Rogers, 1912:5). Salmon (1907), writing from England, states that among the varieties most affected there are Peasgood, Nonsuch, Cox's Orange, and others. The writer has noted that Chenango, Baldwin, Rhode Island, and Twenty Ounce show spotted foliage more commonly in New York than do other varieties.

OF LIMBS TO CANKER

Varieties of apples exhibit a marked difference in susceptibility to the disease, and this variation is not the same with respect to the different parts affected. In western New York Twenty Ounce is the variety most severely affected by the canker. This variety is rarely found unaffected by canker, even in orchards that are managed according to improved methods. Neglected trees of the Twenty Ounce variety are often killed.

---

[1] Also presented to the Faculty of the Graduate School of Cornell University, May, 1914, as a major thesis in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of doctor of philosophy.

[2] Dates in parenthesis refer to bibliography, page 230.

Paddock (1899 b: 181) says that certain growers in New York State have noted that Twenty Ounce is most likely to be attacked. He lists other varieties in order of their susceptibility, as follows: Baldwin, Wagener, Rhode Island, Tompkins King. Regarding the Esopus, Paddock (1899 b: 180) says that this variety has apparently run out because of this disease. In Ontario, Ben Davis, Northern Spy, and other varieties are severely injured by the disease (McCready, 1910).

THE DISEASE

NAMES

The disease on the fruit is called *black rot*, *ring rot*, *blossom-end rot*, and *brown rot*. The first name is descriptive and definite, and seems desirable.

Lesions on the foliage are termed *leaf spot*, *brown spot*, and *frog-eye*.

The names *apple canker*, *black rot canker*, and *New York apple tree canker*, are most commonly applied to the disease when it occurs on the bark. The term *apple canker* needs some qualification, since many kinds of cankers occur on the apple. It was under such an exigency that Paddock (1899 b: 180, footnote) first used the name *New York apple tree canker*. The writer prefers to use this name regardless of its length, not alone because of priority, but also because of general usage.

HISTORY

THE BLACK ROT OF THE FRUIT

The disease on the fruit was observed by Peck (1879: 20) in Schoharie County, New York, and he quotes the remark of stagecoach passengers that they "never before knew of apples rotting on the tree." Arthur (1885) records black rot of quince fruit at Geneva, New York, and notes the importance and infectious nature of the disease. Scribner (1890) notes the disease in New Jersey and describes the symptoms and causal nature. The same year Baccarini (1890), in Italy, observed the rotting of otherwise sound apples, pears, and peaches, the decay occurring in a storeroom of fruit gathered when ripe; this was a new appearance of the disease in that country. Two years later Halsted (1892) discussed the black rot of quince in New Jersey. Sturgis (1893, a and b) notes the disease on quinces in Connecticut in August, 1892, and later (1894) confirms the work of Halsted. Kinney (1895 c) figures and describes the disease in Rhode Island. In the same year it became an object of control measures in Kentucky (Garman, 1895). Black rot of apple is reported by Burrill and Blair (1901) in Illinois; they give a careful description of the disease and distinguish it from other apple rots. The following year Clinton (1902), writing from the same station, remarks that the disease on apples had attracted attention for several years. and that it was known to have occurred in Illinois at least as early as 1879. The disease as a storage rot was studied by Lamson (1902) in New Hampshire the same year. Faurot (1912) describes the disease in Missouri.

W. A. Orton (1904, 1905, 1906, 1907) publishes records of the black rot of pome fruits, the reports having come to him chiefly from the Middle West. In 1905 the black rot of quince and pear was especially injurious in Ohio. Evans (1910) called the attention of the apple growers of South Africa to the disease, which had just been found on apples at Grahamstown and also in a consignment of apples from Sidney, Australia. He urged the importance of excluding the disease from the Transvaal. Recent studies on black rot have been reported by Wolf (1913) in Alabama.

THE LEAF SPOT

The earliest record which the writer has found concerning the leaf spot is that by Alwood (1892), who reports brown spot of apple foliage in Virginia. He had noticed it for several years but states that it was not serious until 1891, when an outbreak occurred over the State. Kinney (1895 b) describes the disease in Rhode Island on apple and pear leaves, and says that it was very common in that State in 1895. Stewart (1896) reports having found the disease on Long Island in May, 1895; he notes that it had been observed in 1894 at Westbury, Long Island, by Professor Beach. Lamson (1899) lists the disease from New Hampshire and reports it as having done serious damage in some cases. Corbett (1900) reports " brown spot," or " frog-eye," as common throughout the southern and eastern counties of West Virginia, and as being more injurious than either blight or scab. Stewart and Eustace (1902) studied the cause and control of leaf spot in the eastern United States. The same year Clinton (1902) notes the severity of the disease in Illinois, and later (Clinton, 1904) he reports its common occurrence in Connecticut. Stone and Smith (1903) record it as one of the most noticeable diseases of the season of 1902 in Massachusetts. Scott and Quaintance (1907) report the spotting of apple foliage in the Ozark region, and in the following year there appeared a more extensive work on the leaf spot problem by Scott and Rorer (1908). Work on the leaf spot was begun in New Hampshire in 1908 by I. M. Lewis (1908); this investigation was carried further by Brooks and DeMeritt (1912), who report it in full. Recent work on the leaf spot form of this disease has been published in Virginia by Crabill (1915).

THE CANKER FORM

According to Paddock (1899 b: 180), orchardists have been familiar with this canker disease for years. Attention was first called to the injury by Waite (1898 a), in a paper read at the meeting of the Western New York Horticultural Society in 1898. In the spring of 1898, Paddock (1898, a and b, and 1899 a) began investigations which extended through two seasons. He records having noticed the disease as early as 1891, and says that it became important about 1895. In 1897, according to Paddock (1899 b: 192), considerable "twig blight" was found at Odessa, New York.

Mangin (1901) reports the disease in France on branches of apples, describing its symptoms in order, as he says, to put horticulturists on guard against invasion of the country by the pathogene. The same year Chester (1901, a and b), in Delaware, observed what he believed to be the same disease on apples and pears. His attention had been called to the canker on the latter host in the spring of 1900, near Smyrna. His illustrations suggest the possibility that the disease was the superficial bark canker of Edgerton (1908). A few years later Lochhead (1905) described the disease in Canada. Clinton (1907), writing from Connecticut, states that his attention was called to a peculiar disease of apple limbs in the spring of 1906.

Another record of the disease which has appeared from France is that by Griffon and Maublanc (1910). They note very serious injury to pears in that country, and assert that at the national school of agriculture the disease was first known in 1908. A study of the disease was taken up in Canada by Bethune (1909). He reports a great amount of damage from cankers in the region east of Toronto. The following year a synopsis of the investigations in the province of Ontario was published by McCready (1910). A point of interest noted in this paper is that the great freeze of 1903–1904 in Prince Edward County marked the beginning of the canker epiphytotic there. The disease has received further attention in France by Arnaud (1912), who lists it as occurring on a number of different plants.

GEOGRAPHICAL OCCURRENCE

The disease has a very general distribution throughout the temperate regions of the globe. Heretofore it has been regarded as a disease peculiar to eastern and middle western America, but it is now apparent that its limit is no longer to be so regarded. It has been found in Canada, particularly in Ontario (Bethune, 1909), Quebec (Lochhead, 1905 and 1909), and Nova Scotia (Plant Pathology Herb., Cornell University Exsicc. no. 2657, and Güssow, letter to the writer). It occurs in Europe from Italy to England, according to the observations of Shear (1913:81–82). From England Berkeley (1836) reports it on apple fruit, while Salmon (1907) found it on apple foliage. It is unknown in Norway (Schöyen, letter to the writer), while both Ravn and Lind (letters) state that it is not present in Denmark. From Russia the disease has been reported by Potebnia (1907 and 1910). Jaczewsky (letter to the writer) states that the black rot and canker forms occur in the provinces of Kharkof and Tchernigof, and in the Transcaucasian and Turkestan regions. Potebnia (letter) has collected all the forms in Kursk, near the city of Fatej, and states it as his opinion that the disease occurs generally throughout Russia. Bubák (1909) reports it from Austria-Hungary. It probably occurs in Switzerland, Germany, and Holland, according to the general statement of Shear (1913:82). Kirchner (1906:440) lists it from Germany. It may not be prevalent there, however, for Hollrung (letter) says the disease is not well known in Sachsen. Its occurrence in France is reported by Arnaud (1912) and others. The black rot form has been collected in the vicinity of Brussels, Belgium, by Bommer and Rousseau (1885). Some years ago it was introduced into Cape Colony from New South Wales (Evans, 1910:62, footnote).

So far as the writer has been able to ascertain, the disease is widely distributed in America. It does not occur, however, so far as indicated by results from a circular letter sent to the plant pathologists of the state agricultural experiment stations, in the following States: Arizona, Colorado, Florida, Idaho, Louisiana, Montana, Nevada, North Dakota, South Dakota, Tennessee, Utah, Washington, Wyoming, and possibly Oregon. The canker form is commonest in the East, especially in New York, while fruit rot seems to occur more frequently in the New England and Middle Atlantic sections, although Wilson (1913) reports its occurrence throughout North America east of the Rocky Mountains. In the Middle Western States, particularly Ohio and Indiana, the pear and quince, as well as the apple, appear to have suffered considerably. Quaintance and Scott (1912) state that the leaf spot occurs in all sections east of the Rocky Mountains where the apple is grown. In another publication Scott (1912) asserts that it is found in all humid sections of America. According to Reed, Cooley, and Rogers (1912:3–4), "frog-eye" is widespread in Virginia. Other States in which the disease occurs are Arkansas, Connecticut, Illinois, Maryland, Massachusetts, Missouri, Nebraska, New Hampshire, New York (particularly Long Island), Rhode Island, and West Virginia (Scott and Rorer, 1908:48–49).

Probably no apple disease except apple scab is commoner in New York State than the one here considered. Throughout western New York the canker form is very prevalent. From replies to a circular letter sent to fruit growers in various parts of the State, it appears that this disease is more or less common and serious in all sections, except possibly in the central eastern part. The fruit and foliage rarely suffer appreciably in the State, although black rot and leaf spot are not infrequently found.

ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The nature of the losses caused by this disease makes very difficult the possibility of an estimate concerning them. So far as the writer has found, no reliable data are at hand in regard to this point. The combined injuries produced by the canker, the black rot, and the leaf spot are doubtless greater than is commonly supposed. It is undoubtedly true that the New York apple tree canker is often confused with other cankers by some growers, thus increasing the difficulty of obtaining reliable estimates on the destructiveness of this disease.

It is generally considered that canker is one of the commonest and most troublesome diseases of the apple, although its destructiveness is not uniform in different parts of the country. According to Shear (1913: 81–82), the black rot disease of apple is found in Europe from Italy to England; yet he states that noticeable injury from the disease in orchards has never been reported. On the other hand, Griffon and Maublanc (1910:308) state that in France the injury may be very serious. In contrast to the general situation in Europe, it may be noted that the damage done by this disease in America is great.

NATURE OF LOSSES

INJURY TO FRUIT. Whenever pome fruits are attacked they are rendered worthless so far as their market value is concerned. The extent of injury may be small while the fruit still hangs on the tree, but ultimately in storage complete destruction is likely to result. Brooks (1909) states that in New Hampshire the black rot is very common and does considerable damage in cellar storage. Burrill and Blair (1901:2) report "great loss at times" in Illinois, and Clinton (1902), in the same State, compares the importance of bitter rot and black rot of apple. The latter he regards as likely to occur in every orchard to some extent. In Kentucky, black rot of apples is regarded as the commonest of fruit rots, according to Garman (1895:127). Stone (letter to the writer) estimates that in Massachusetts from eighty to ninety per cent of fruit rots is black rot. Evans (1910) reports a case in which rotting and mummified pome fruits appeared in a shipment to Cape Colony, and states in this regard:

> During the past three months four hundred and ninety-eight cases of apples and pears in this condition from Cape Colony have been detained, and in order to safeguard the interests of Transvaal fruit growers, the Government, under Government Notice No. 569, of 18th June, 1908, have warned importers of fruit that all consignments of pomaceous fruits found infected with this fungus to the extent of one per cent and upwards will be destroyed upon arrival in this Colony or returned to the consignor.
>
> There is no reason to suppose that this number by any means represents the total amount of diseased fruit that has reached the Transvaal, to say nothing of the other parts of South Africa.

INJURY TO FOLIAGE. The damage to foliage depends on the extent of the infection. In the milder cases the injury is not appreciable. In the more severe cases, partial or even complete defoliation may occur from six weeks to two months before the ripening of the fruit, as a result of which the fruit either drops from the tree or remains small and is of poor quality. In such cases the fruit buds are so weakened as to decrease the possibility of a crop the following year, and the vitality of the trees is impaired. Alwood (1892:62) estimates a loss of seventy-five per cent of the foliage in a part of an old orchard in Virginia, while Stewart (1896) reports a case of complete defoliation of some trees on Long Island by the first of July. It is interesting to note, for comparison, that in 1900, in West Virginia, the disease was regarded by Corbett (1900) as more injurious to foliage than either blight or scab. Scott and Rorer (1909:10–11) have observed a case in which, as they believe, the pathogene causing this disease assisted in the killing, in late summer, of a large proportion of the fruit buds of the apple. They state that on Winesaps it would seem the pathogene alone is capable of killing the buds. Further investigation is deemed desirable by these writers.

INJURY TO LIMBS. As a rule the canker is confined to the orchard, although Wilson (1913) says that young nursery stock may be killed. Bethune (1909:28–29) reports that cankers cause a great amount of damage in Ontario, Canada. J. W. Eastham (letter to the writer), of the Ontario Experiment Farm, states that this is the most prevalent canker in the region east of Toronto, and according to Brooks (1909) it is the commonest canker in New Hampshire. Warren and McCourt (1905:341) refer to this form of the disease as causing more loss in Wayne County, New York, than any other disease except scab. They report it as very serious in fourteen per cent of the orchards, and as doing considerable damage in nineteen per cent of them. In Niagara County, New York, Cummings (1909:304) found canker affecting the orchards as follows: slightly, sixty-one orchards; considerably, sixty-three; seriously, thirty-seven. Paddock (1899 b:181, 188) cites a case in which, in an apple orchard of 80 acres, the trees on 30 acres were ruined and had been taken out; the trees on the remaining 50 acres were then of little value.

In one apple orchard of three hundred and fifty trees under the writer's observation, a count made in August, 1913, showed about thirty-three per cent of the trees (Baldwin, Hubbardston, and Northern Spy varieties) with from one to three dead limbs each. On examination of the dead limbs the New York apple tree canker was found to be present on all. It was further observed that the pathogene causing the infection had lived over winter and had spread to such an extent that girdling had resulted and the foliage had turned yellow and wilted. The fruit on such limbs soon shriveled and was lost. A careful count showed that approximately ten or twelve barrels of fruit were rendered worthless. The loss here might be placed at approximately twenty to twenty-five dollars, or about seven cents a tree. According to the United States Census for 1910, there were in New York, on the 168,667 farms reporting, 11,248,203 apple trees of bearing age.[3] On this basis, assuming the losses in the above-mentioned orchard to be an average, the apparent annual loss would be about three-fourths of a million dollars for a single season in New York State. Many cases can be cited in which the infection by New York apple tree canker is very much more severe, while few orchards in the State, regardless of their careful management, are entirely free from the disease.

Epiphytotics of this disease, such as have recently been experienced in the case of the chestnut blight, are of rare or unknown occurrence. It is characteristic of the disease to take a constant toll year after year, like the cereal smuts. To the losses so incurred must be added the cost of growing diseased limbs. In many cases these limbs die, resulting in the cost of their removal and destruction, which possibly does not seem great in a given year but is not negligible in the aggregate.

SYMPTOMS

ON THE FRUIT

The disease on the fruit is primarily a ripe rot, but it may appear several weeks before maturity of the fruit. It may begin anywhere on the surface or at the blossom end. Frequently the lesions are centered about an injury such as that caused by insects or hail (Plate VII, 1).

Usually there is only one spot on a fruit. The skin at first becomes brown in a small area, but later darkens, finally turning black. On green fruit the affected part may turn black before enlarging to any great extent, whereas on fruit that is ripe or ripening, the whole may be involved before it darkens appreciably. Often concentric bands of uniform breadth and of slightly different shades of color appear about the center of the lesion. The affected area is distinct from the healthy part, and the diseased tissues are not of unpleasant taste as in many fruit decays. Later stages in the development of the rot show a shriveled and much wrinkled surface, which typically becomes covered with black pustules (Plate VII, 2). These characters may be assumed within a month or in less time. Ultimately a dry mummy is produced, which may hang to the tree for a year or more.

Black rot has been confused with brown rot and bitter rot, and even with soft rot. The brown rot disease produces a smooth, coal black, and shiny mummy, which is much less wrinkled than the black rot mummy. Bitter rot, in addition to its unpleasant taste, often shows pinkish specks in a localized region near the center of the lesion. The softening of the pulp in soft rot is not characteristic of black rot specimens. Perhaps the most distinctive characters of black rot are the long duration of the plumpness and juiciness of the tissues, and the occurrence of the above-mentioned black pustules. Under certain conditions the surface of the apple fruit also becomes studded with white tufts; but these are not commonly found and are not to be regarded as a diagnostic symptom.

---

[3] Bureau of the Census. Thirteenth Census of the United States taken in the year 1910, 7:195. 1913.

Fruits of the pear and the quince affected with black rot finally become dry and hard. In storage the peach becomes waxy when affected with the disease, according to Baccarini (1890:67).

ON THE LEAVES

The foliage of the apple is more frequently attacked than that of the pear and the quince. The spots usually appear about the time the leaves open. Alwood (1892:62) notes this date as being about May 1 in Virginia. He records a second attack which becomes evident about June 20, and a third outbreak the last of July. Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:181) state that in New Hampshire apple leaf spot appears soon after the leaves unfold from the bud. In western New York spotting is more commonly apparent in July and August. The writer observed spots developed in September, 1913, at Byron, New York.

The number of lesions that may appear on a single leaf varies from one to several, and these may be scattered or localized on the surface (Plate VII, 3). The first evidence of a spot is a minute purple speck, which soon enlarges until it has reached a diameter of from two to ten millimeters, averaging about four millimeters. The purplish color is maintained for a considerable time, during which the margin is somewhat indefinite. Later the lesion is of a yellowish brown color and the spot assumes a more or less circular shape, while the margin becomes more definite. Still later the margin becomes elevated and the diseased area sunken. As the spots grow older they become lobed, due to a secondary extension of the pathogene from one or more points, and finally a series of more or less concentric areas produces an irregular blotch in which the outline of the original spot can be recognized. The center has now become grayish brown, and the entire lesion presents an appearance which has given rise to the name *frog-eye*.

The spots on the lower surface seem to enlarge as rapidly as those on the upper, but they are not so conspicuous. Sometimes the center of the spot on the lower surface is grayish brown. The whole diseased area may, however, merely appear dark and indefinite.

Frequently small, black, dome-like bodies are found on the upper surface of the leaf, usually toward the center of the lesion. In severe cases the leaves turn yellow and fall from the tree. According to Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:181), this leaf fall occurs from six to eight weeks earlier than would happen normally. Reed, Cooley, and Rogers (1912:3) maintain that defoliation may occur early enough for a new crop of leaves to be put forth the same season. Trees robbed of their foliage from year to year must eventually become greatly reduced in vitality and finally succumb to a premature death.

Bordeaux injury is sometimes very similar to frog-eye leaf spot; Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:190) state that this is especially true if rains follow the application. Kinney (1895 b) notes also that injuries from the leaf miner (*Tischeria malifoliella* Clemens) are sometimes mistaken for leaf spot.

ON THE LIMBS

In western New York, young spots may be found on the bark at any time from the last of April until toward the close of the growing season. Numerous young cankers have been observed on Twenty Ounce trees in Monroe County orchards during the month of August. It is the rule that the larger limbs are much more susceptible than the twigs, and the trunks show comparatively few lesions. The cankers on the trunks occur more or less uniformly on the southwest side of trees. The limbs more commonly show the diseased spots on the upper side. Lesions are very often found about the base of a small limb or about a wound in the bark.

In the earlier stages of the formation of a canker, the bark is slightly sunken (Plates VIII, and IX, 4) and reddish brown in color. The diseased area slowly increases in size and darkens, and, although not conspicuous at a distance, the spot is readily distinguished from healthy tissue on closer examination. Some lesions remain very small, measuring only a few centimeters in their longer diameter; in such cases the canker usually dies out at the end of the year. Where the injury is larger, the diseased spot enlarges from year to year for a distance of a meter or even more.

It is often observed that a canker is merely a superficial roughening of the bark. In other cases the bark is killed to the wood and becomes conspicuously cracked (Plate X).

The discolored area may extend over a considerable surface; or, regardless of its size, a crevice may appear at the margin, limiting, temporarily at least, the extent of the lesion. Further spread of the pathogene results in the formation of a prominent spot, which soon forms a second line of demarcation between the healthy and the diseased tissue. Repetition of this process from one or more points at the margin occurs, thus producing a lobed appearance (Plate XI, 2); or the spreading may arise from all points about the first marginal crack, so that a series of concentric crevices is developed, as described for frog-eye of the leaves. The bark remains closely appressed to the wood for at least a year; later the dead bark cracks and falls away, exposing the wood and a callus around the margin of the wound (Plate x, 3).

Cankers that begin to form early in the season show numerous fruiting pustules of the pathogene scattered over the central area of the spot. These may not become evident, however, until the second season.

Large limbs are rarely girdled the first year; the girdling comes about by the enlargement of the canker the following season. Complete encircling results in the death of the parts above the canker, as evidenced by the yellowing and dropping of the leaves (Plate XII, 1) and the shriveling of bark and fruit. It is not uncommon in such cases to find the fruit clinging to the twigs for a year or more.

Clinton (1907) describes a peculiar type of lesion on apple limbs. He says, in part:

> Another and more peculiar feature of the trouble was the enlargement of the limbs into somewhat fusiform swellings, as shown in the illustration. In some cases several of the swellings followed one another on the same limb. These enlargements generally showed a greater swelling on one side than on the opposite, and often the bark was split down the more swollen side. Cross and longitudinal sections showed that the swellings were apparently the result of severe cold, which had injured the limbs unevenly along the branch, as shown by the blackened wood on the injured portion.

Delacroix (1903 a: 135) notes a thickening at the base of some cankers. This he finds to be a sort of cushion developed in a transverse direction in the healthy bark. The writer has occasionally observed cankers showing hypertrophy at the upper and lower ends of the diseased part (Plate x, 4).

It is to be noted that on quince twigs the cankers are often very indefinite. A rare specimen is shown in Plate x, 5. The normal color of the bark is not distinctly lighter than that of the diseased part, so that on this host the disease doubtless passes unnoticed in many cases.

OTHER ORGANS AFFECTED

A unique case in Virginia of fall blossoming of the apple following the canker has been described by Reed (1908). This author found normal blossoms on an apple tree in the orchards of the Virginia Experiment Station on October 5. The cankers on the limbs had caused the death of more than half the top of the tree, and many branches, severely affected, had been able to make a very small amount of growth during the season. Reed says: " It was on such branches as these that fruit buds were found open on the above named date. Examination of the blossoms showed that they were normal as regards parts, color, and internal relationships.

I am informed by Professor H. L. Price of the Department of Horticulture of this Experiment Station that this fall blossoming is not uncommon on trees which are badly affected by the black rot fungus."

ETIOLOGY

The pathogene here concerned is the fungus *Physalospora Cydoniae* Arnaud.

MORPHOLOGY

PERITHECIA. The perithecia have been found by the writer on the twigs of apple (*Pyrus malus* L.) and of witch-hazel (*Hamamelis virginiana* L.), and have been described by him in another publication (Hesler, 1913:293). Recently the writer has found the ascogenous form on twigs of white oak (*Quercus alba* L.).

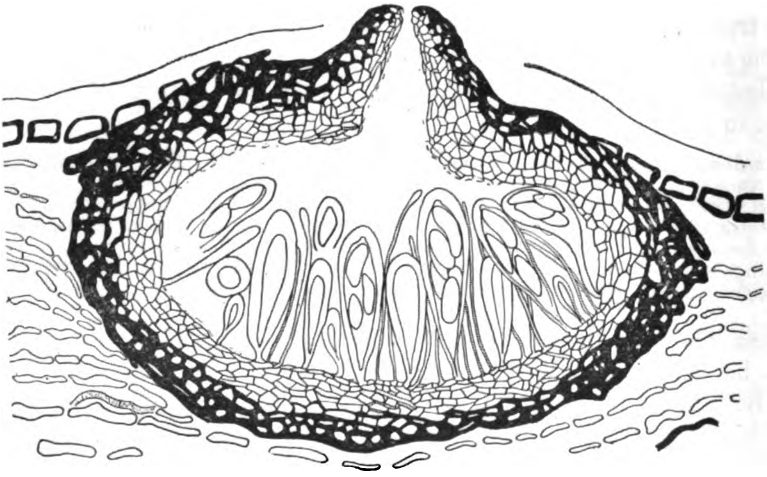


FIG. 18. PERITHECIUM OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE
Camera lucida drawing of a median longisection of a typical perithecium

The perithecia are usually scattered, standing separate from one another. Sometimes, however, from two to four fruit bodies are joined together, but no stroma has ever been observed. They are buried in the cortical tissues, protruding at maturity by a short, papillate ostiole. Their form is globose to subglobose, measuring from 180 to 324 μ in the vertical diameter by 300 to 400 μ in the horizontal diameter, averaging about 225 by 325 μ.

A typical perithecium is shown in figure 18. The wall is differentiated into two layers. The thickness of the outer layer varies slightly with the sides and base of the perithecium, and the pseudo-cells are thick-walled. The inner, thin-walled layer is of very uniform diameter. In cases in which the perithecium is depressed, the outer layer is reduced at the base and is from one to three pseudo-cells in thickness, whereas the lateral outer walls are from two to five layers of pseudo-cells in thickness. The ostiole appears as a narrow passage in the papilla, the walls of which show the same distinct layers as those just described for the sides and base of the perithecium.

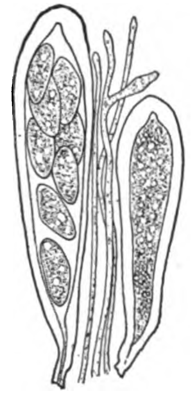


FIG. 19. ASCI AND PARAPHYSES OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE

Camera lucida drawing of asci and paraphyses, showing structure of the latter and typical arrangement of ascospores in the ascus

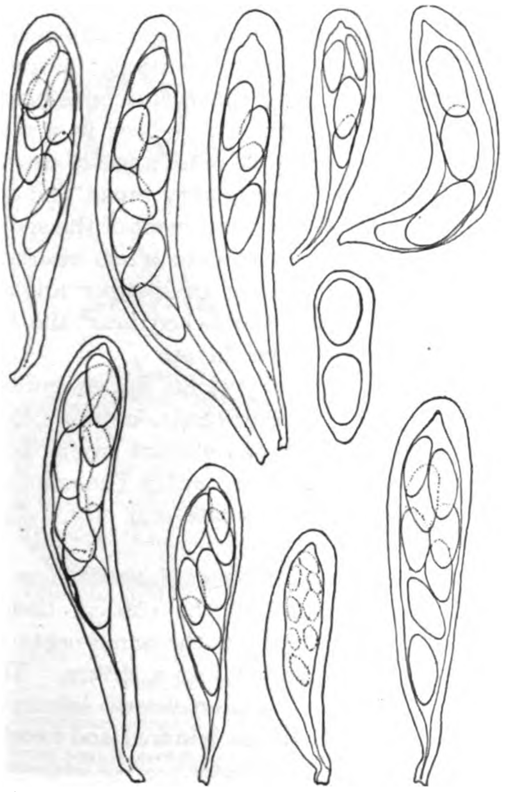


FIG. 20. ASCI OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE FROM DIFFERENT HOSTS

The upper series represents variations as found on apple bark. The lower series shows variations from bark of witch-hazel

The asci, with the interspersed paraphyses, usually fill the cavity of the perithecium. Arnaud (1912: 11) states that in general the paraphyses are formed by rows of cells which in the mature perithecium are separated one from another in the form of distinct filaments. He says that in certain cases, however, the paraphyses remain agglutinated by their walls and appear in section like rows of cellular cavities, as in Cucurbitaria (*C. Spartii* and other species). He explains that if the rows of cells are not very numerous the existence of the paraphyses may become uncertain. Arnaud finds this the case with *Physalospora Cydoniae*. The writer, however, has not observed this condition of the paraphyses; to him they appear distinct and non-septate (Fig. 19).

The asci are abundant; asci crushed from one perithecium are shown in Plate XIII, 2. They are usually clavate, although they sometimes tend to be cylindrical, measuring from 21 to 32 μ by 130 to 180 μ. The tip of the ascus is thickened, but a complete canal from the inner wall to the outside has not been observed; only a suggestion of such a canal has been seen even after the perithecia had been kept in a moist chamber for several hours. Variations of asci from different hosts are shown in figure 20.

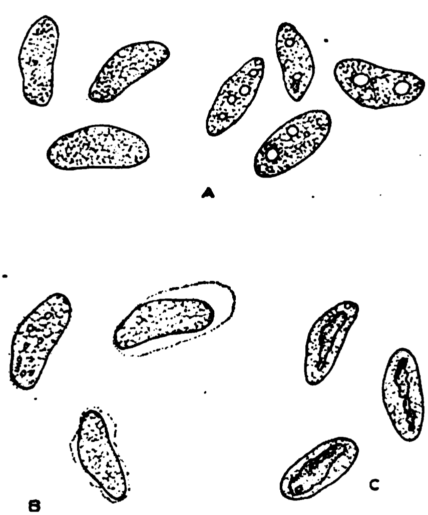


FIG. 21. TYPES OF ASCOSPORES OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE

A, Typical mature ascospores as found in nature; B, ascospores, showing stages in the development of the gelatinous sheath; C, old ascospores, showing peculiar contents

The ascospores are ellipsoidal, or often inequilateral (Fig. 21); they measure from 10.8 to 15.2 μ by 23.4 to 34.2 μ, averaging 11.5 by 28 μ. They are hyaline to greenish yellow. Under ordinary conditions the spores show a very thin gelatinous sheath, but after they have been in a saturated atmosphere for a few hours the sheath becomes very broad and evident. The arrangement of the spores in the ascus is more or less biseriate. The paraphyses are distinct and are occasionally branched near the tip. Not infrequently the apex shows a tendency to be clavate.

The number of spores in each ascus is typically eight, but exceptions have been found in the fungus on apple twigs. The variation ranges from two to eight spores within an ascus, all intervening numbers having been observed. Four-spored asci are not uncommon (Fig. 20). The contents of ascospores are either densely granular, or vacuolate and oily. Two guttules are occasionally found.

PYCNIDIA. The morphology of the pycnidial form of this fungus is variable (Fig. 22). The pycnidia are situated in the cortical tissues and are usually scattered and distinct, although on the same organ of the host they may be single, confluent, or united into a stroma. The number of pycnidia per unit of area is usually less on woody substrata than on fruits; on apple fruit there may be from one hundred and twenty to one hundred and fifty pycnidia per square centimeter.

The typical simple pycnidium (Fig. 22, A) measures from 200 to 300 μ in each diameter, whereas the compound fruit body may vary from 200 to 460 μ in the vertical diameter and from 200 to 720 μ in the horizontal diameter (Fig. 22, G). Their shape is in general the same as that of the perithecia, globose to subglobose, and they have the same distinct outer and inner walls. The thickness of the entire pycnidial wall is variable, as in the case of the perithecium. The basal part is thinner in the case of the subglobose fruit bodies. This condition may be attributed to the fact that less protection is needed at the base; or perhaps here the thickness may be partially determined by mechanical pressure brought about by the resistance offered by the host tissue.

Arising from the inner thin-walled cells are the pycnosporophores, which extend entad. They are clavate, flask-shaped, or cylindrical. They may be as long as the spore itself, from 25 to 30 μ, or may measure less than 8 μ; the average dimensions are from 10 to 15 μ by 3 to 4 μ. At the tip of each is developed a pycnospore.

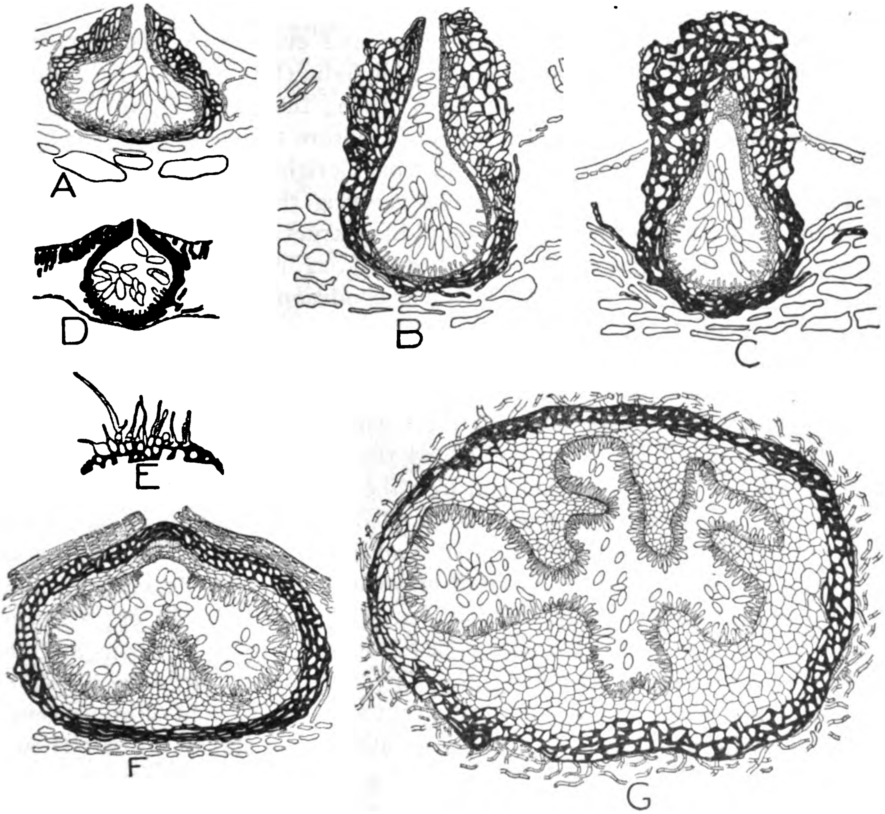


FIG. 22. VARIATIONS OF PYCNIDIA OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE

A, Typical simple unilocular pycnidium; B, pycnidium with long neck, similar to C but with an ostiolum; C, pycnidium similar to B, ostiolum not yet developed; D, pycnidium from apple leaf; E, hair-like outgrowths on the tip of an ostiolum, developed under moist conditions; F, pycnidium with mound-like structure at base; G, pycnidium which approaches in appearance the fruiting body of species belonging to the form-genus Botryodiplodia

In some cases there is a mound-like structure at the base of the pycnidium (Fig. 22, F). This is illustrated by Duggar (1909: 353, fig. 171). It has been a matter of conjecture whether this may appear only in an oblique tangential section, or whether it is a bilocular tendency. It does not seem possible that any such structure would appear merely in a section that was not cut vertically. If this were true, the question would then arise as to whether this same appearance would not extend at all points along the lining of the cavity, and hence merely make the wall thicker rather than give it the aspect just described. It seems, therefore, to be a bilocular tendency.

Frequently the pycnidium approaches and even reaches the condition characteristic of the form-genus Botryodiplodia (Fig. 22, G). The sporogenous layer extends inward at places, giving the inner wall a corrugated appearance. This condition is found in nature and has been developed in culture from spores in pycnidia which originally did not show this structure. The simplest condition suggesting the form-genus Botryodiplodia is found when a single mound-like structure occurs at the base of the pycnidium, as previously described (Fig. 22, F). Frequently this finds its expression in the form of a bilocular condition, which is a step nearer the Botryodiplodia type.

The ostiolum offers some interesting variations. Miss Walker (1908) describes a form which she believes lacks an ostiolum. In the place of the typical conical ostiolate neck there was found a much-thickened wall at the apex of the fruiting body, and the papilla itself appeared longer than usual. The writer has cultured the ostiolate form from an apple, and has obtained, on various agars and on apple fruit, pycnidia having the characteristics described by Miss Walker (Fig. 22, C). The evidence at hand indicates that a pore may or may not be present, depending somewhat on the time of year and on weather conditions. In any case an ostiolum will ultimately be developed (Fig. 22, A, B, D). Brooks and De Meritt (1912 : 184) report three types of pycnidia but all forms are ostiolate. It does not seem likely that any strain will remain void of an ostiolum throughout its history. A strongly papillate form similar to that shown in figure 22, C, but with an ostiole developed, is illustrated in figure 22, B. A form of the fungus which at first appeared to have a non-erumpent pycnidium was found in apple bark and twigs of *Celastrus scandens* L. After the material had been in a moist chamber for a few days, however, the pycnidia broke through the epidermis.

In conclusion it may be stated that the pycnidia may vary in morphology on different host plants, yet this variation is no greater than that on the same host plant.

PYCNIDIAL FORMATION. The pycnidia arise from the mycelium and are found abundantly on cankers and decayed fruit. Also they may be produced on various artificial media. They occur sparingly on spotted leaves.

So far as has been determined, the process of formation is similar on different substrata. The earlier stages are more accurately followed in agar cultures than on any organs of the host plant. The writer's observations have been made by examining petri-dish cultures under the low power of the microscope and by the use of prepared slides from such cultures. The material was prepared as follows: Pycnospores or hyphal threads were planted in the center of agar plates, and, as the hyphæ developed, pycnidia appeared in more or less definite concentric rings. In this way the oldest pycnidia were nearest the starting point, whereas the youngest were found near the margin of the culture, the stages between the two being intermediate. Blocks of agar were cut out from the dish, fixed, and imbedded in paraffin. A single section frequently includes a gradual series of the several stages, from the very youngest to the more mature structures. The sections were made both perpendicular and parallel to the surface of the agar, the second method proving the more satisfactory.

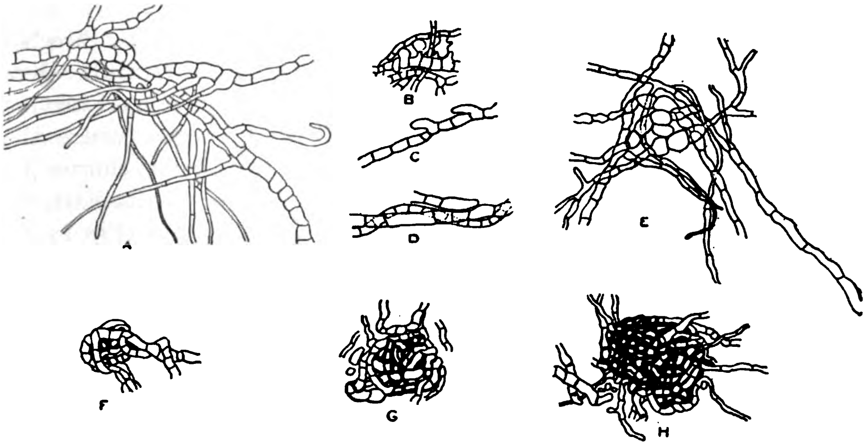


FIG. 23. DEVELOPMENTAL STAGES OF THE PYCNIDIUM

A, Early stage in pycnidial development. The hyphæ have become closely septate, are broadened, and are beginning to tangle. B, Early stage in the process, showing the origin of hyphæ which enter into the pycnidium. Some come from adjacent hyphæ, others arise from cells of the threads in the immediate tangle. C, Early stage. Branching of hypha, preliminary to coiling and twisting as in D and F. D, Early stage. Twisting of hyphæ about one another. E, Early stage, showing symphyogenetic and meristematic tendencies in pycnidial formation. F, G, H, More advanced stages in the process of pycnidial formation

The young pycnidium as it occurs in agar appears to be made up of a closely tangled mass of hyphæ. In section the young fruiting body is composed of pseudoparenchyma, the cells of which are closely packed and consequently somewhat angular (Fig. 23, H). As is noted by De Bary (1887:247), pycnidia may arise either as intercalary formations on hyphal branches by the swelling and division of cells, or by the union and interweaving of mycelial threads. The former process is termed meristogenetic and the latter symphyogenetic. A third possible method, not unknown among the fungi, is by a combination of these two processes.

Potebnia (1910:62), in a note on *Sphaeropsis pseudodiplodia* (Fckl.) G. Del., states that the pycnidia arise meristogenetically. The writer was for some time under the impression that this was the character of the process, but this opinion was based on observations of later stages rather than on the earliest steps in the development. The dense pseudoparenchyma of the maturer fruit bodies suggests meristematic divisions, but apparently the structure, for the most part, arises symphyogenetically (Fig. 23).

In agar cultures a group of threads may be observed to be directed toward a common point where the pycnidium is to be formed. Here the hyphæ are composed of cells from 6 to 7 μ broad, their length varying from 20 to 70 μ, always longer than broad. In the region where the pycnidium is to be developed, the cells become noticeably shorter by the laying down of new walls; the cells also increase in diameter by growth, and the hyphæ increase their numbers by branching (Fig. 23, A). This stage is observed with ease in petri-dish cultures.

The behavior of the threads in the formation of the pseudoparenchyma is varied and the process is somewhat indefinite. The mycelial branches that enter into the structure may arise from the short cells (Fig. 23, A), or they may grow in from adjacent hyphæ (Fig. 23, E). The interspaces found in the earlier stages are filled by the growing in of these branches and by a budding-like action of the hyphal cells bordering the space (Fig. 23, B).

Serial sections show that there is considerable coiling and gnarling of hyphæ. Threads may twist about one another for some distance in a rope-like fashion (Fig. 23, D). In some cases the threads are localized in their intertwining so that the resulting structure becomes a knot or ball of densely woven hyphæ (Fig. 23, F, G, H). The formation of such a structure necessitates that the hyphæ pass into many planes, and in cross sections the ends of many hyphæ present a pseudoparenchymatous appearance (Fig. 23, H).

In the intertwining process, hyphæ may conjugate in an H-shaped fashion. In some cases threads that are parallel probably fuse side by side, although the evidence for this is not complete.

The next important stage is the formation of the cavity. At first no differentiation of the closely tangled mass of threads is shown in the young pycnidium, but soon the preparation for the cavity is evident. Certain cells occupying the central region become more densely granular than the surrounding cells. This appears to be the beginning of the cavity. Later stages show the breaking down of these cells, and finally an oval or a globose cavity is formed. Baccarini (1890:69) states that these central cells transform by a mucilaginous process, and that the cavity is enlarged by the gelatinous center's absorbing water and exerting a pressure on the sporogenous layer. He emphasizes the importance of the central "tissue" and expresses the opinion that it has a special function, believing that it is destined to become sporogenous whereas the outer surrounding cortex only furnishes nourishment to these cells.

The formation of the ostiole is similar to the process exhibited by the development of the cavity. The cells break down, enlarging the passage, and finally the wall is definite and continuous with that of the spore cavity.

The spore-bearing area occupies almost all the space not included by the ostiole. The cells lining the cavity arch outward, and continued growth results in the formation of a stalk. The tip of the stalk swells, and ultimately a mature spore is cut off (Fig. 24). The further development of the pycnospores has been discussed.

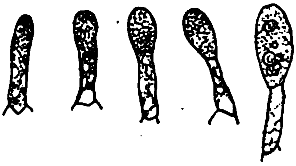


FIG. 24. PYCNOSPORE DEVELOPMENT

Stages in the formation of a pycnospore from a conidiophore

PYCNOSPORES. The morphology of the pycnospores has been more carefully studied than that of the pycnidia. In the same and in different pycnidia on the same and on different plants, wide variation with respect to size, color, shape, and septation have been observed (Fig. 25).

The average mature pycnospore measures about 12 by 25 μ, although the range in single or in different pycnidia on the same or on different hosts or host parts may be considerable. From the measurement of hundreds of pycnospores, it has been found that they range from 7 to 16.2 μ broad by from 16 to 36 μ long, while the averages from different hosts range from 9.5 to 13.3 μ by 19.8 to 27.8 μ. Spores on the apple show a slight variation on the different organs, as follows: on the fruit, 10.6 by 25 μ; on the twigs, 11.6 by 23.8 μ; on large limbs, 12.9 by 24.9 μ; on the foliage, 12.3 by 23.5 μ. Paddock (1899b:195, table 1) notes considerable variability with respect to size as the spores occur on different plants, but he says: "Yet the spores produced on apple fruits inoculated with cultures from either host, are of the same size and character; similarly, though not shown in the table, when pear trees are inoculated with cultures of Sphaeropsis taken from apple trees the resulting pycnidia and spores are of the average size of those found in nature on pear tree bark."

The mature pycnospores are brownish, varying from a very light to a dark ferruginous color. The color darkens with age, so that the very youngest mature spores are hyaline. The question of the maturity of these colorless spores has frequently arisen. The writer has germinated them, and is of the opinion that they should be regarded as physiologically mature. The hyaline color is replaced later by a yellowish green tinge, and finally a brown of varying density is assumed, the spore becoming very dark brown in the final condition of coloration, as noted above.

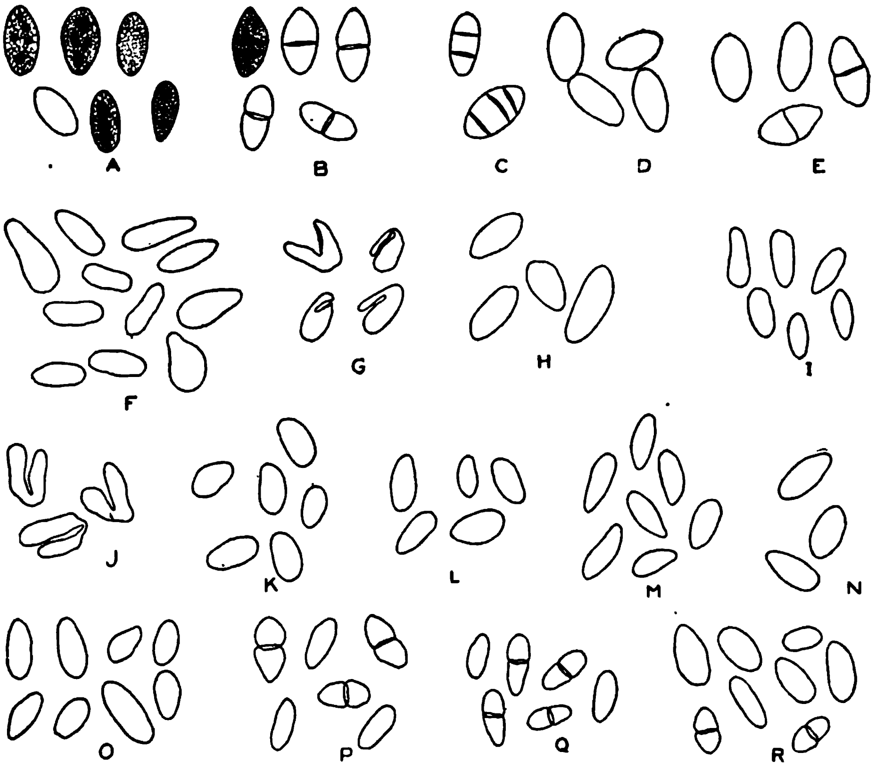
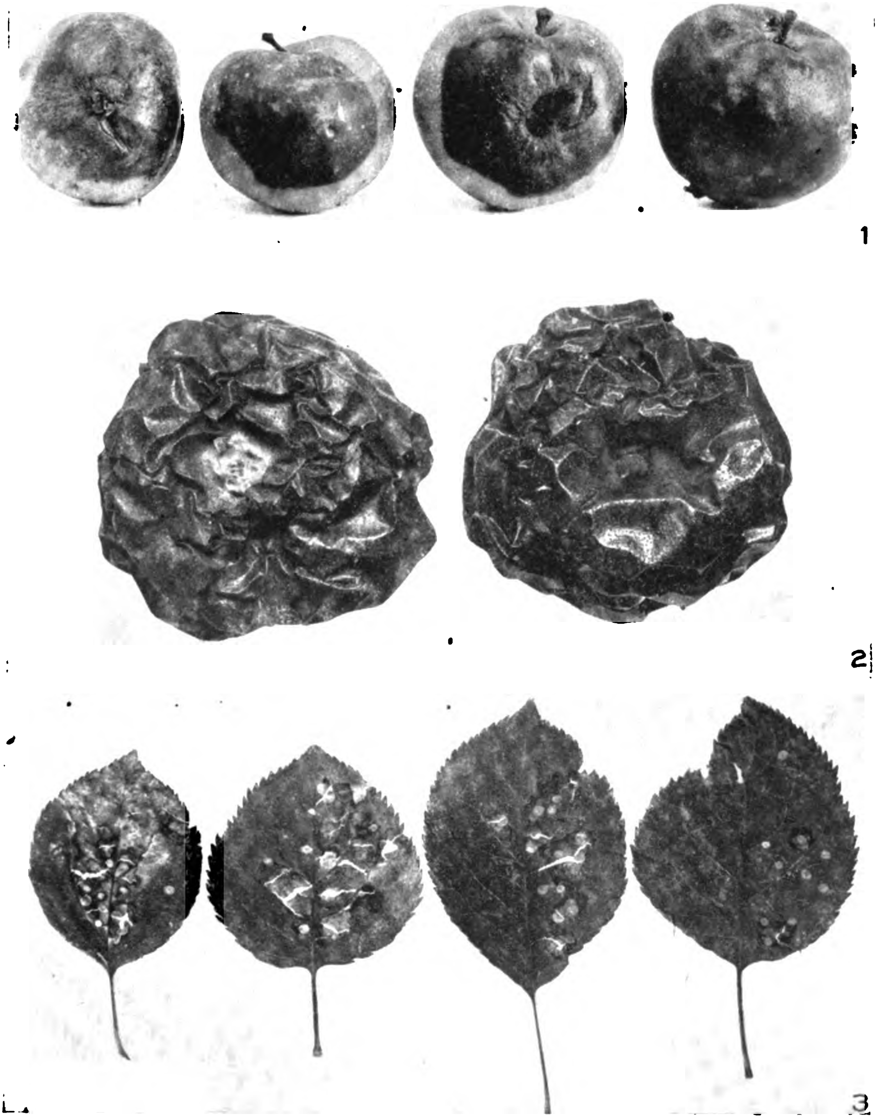


FIG. 25. VARIATIONS AND TYPES OF PYCNOSPORES OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE FROM VARIOUS HOSTS

A, Typical unicellular pycnospores; B, typical bicellular pycnospores; C, three- and four-celled pycnospores, not common; D, pycnospores from apple twig; E, pycnospores from apple limb; F, pycnospores from a single pycnidium, from apple twig; G, very old pycnospores which have burst; H, pycnospores from apple fruit; I, pycnospores from sumac; J, pycnospores from sumac showing peculiar fusion; K, pycnospores from sumac; L, pycnospores from crab; M, pycnospores from mulberry; N, pycnospores from rose fruits; O, pycnospores from bittersweet; P, pycnospores from rose of sharon; Q, pycnospores from witch-hazel; R, pycnospores from spicebush

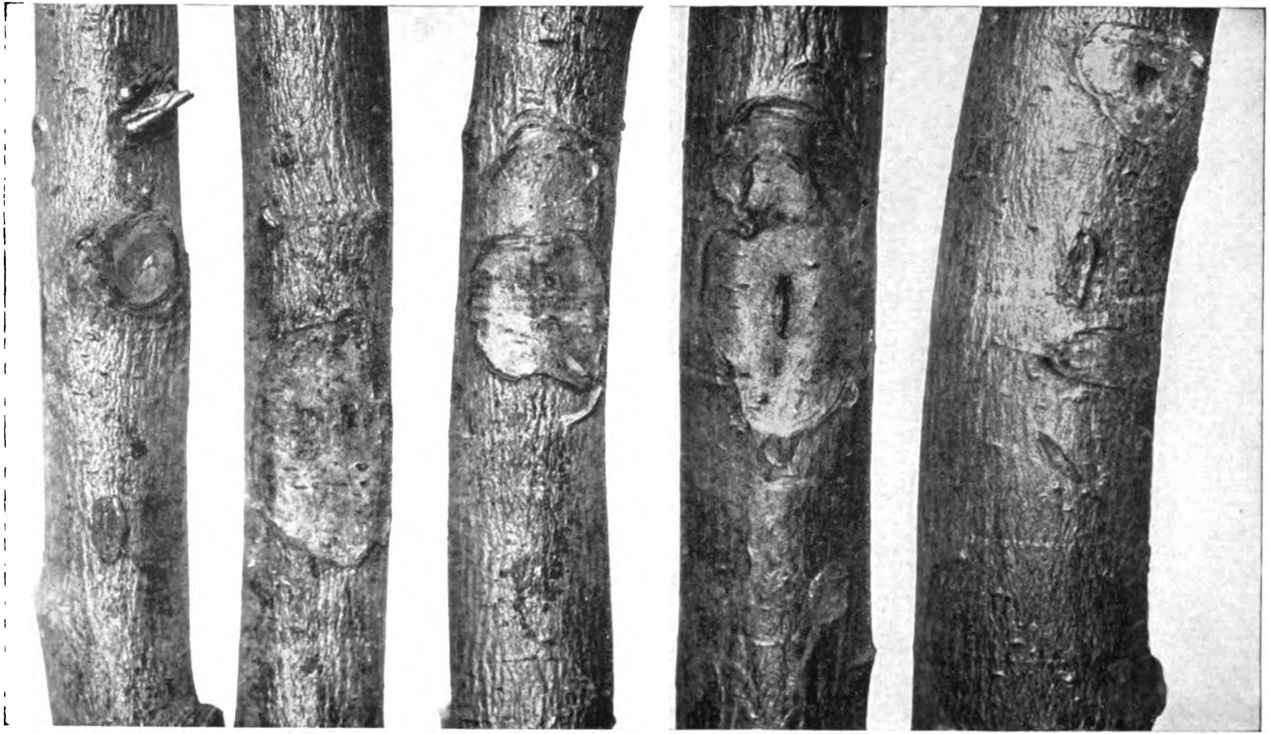
The several shades of color may be represented by the spores of a single pycnidium, although the majority are uniform in this respect.

The typical pycnospore is ellipsoidal, frequently tapering slightly toward the basal end (Fig. 25, A). The shape also is a variable character, however. Pyriform spores may accompany ellipsoidal, globose, or somewhat elongated forms.



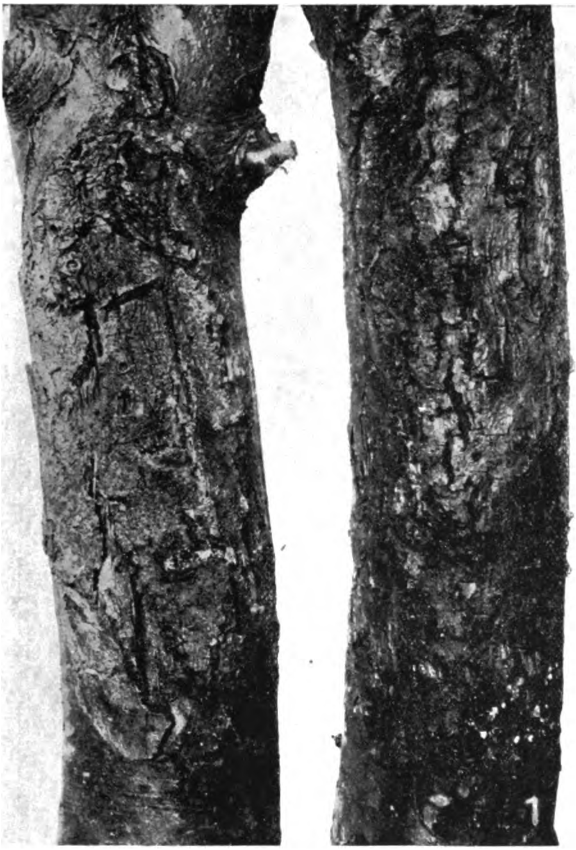
SYMPTOMS OF THE DISEASE ON FRUIT AND FOLIAGE

1. Types of infection on apples, early stages
2. Apples reduced to mummies as a result of the disease
3. Types of infection on apple leaves as commonly found in New York State

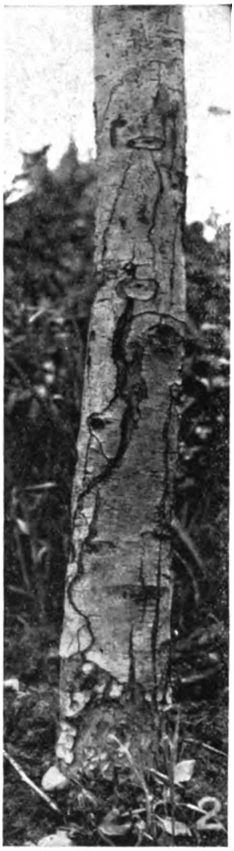


INOCULATION EXPERIMENTS ON APPLE

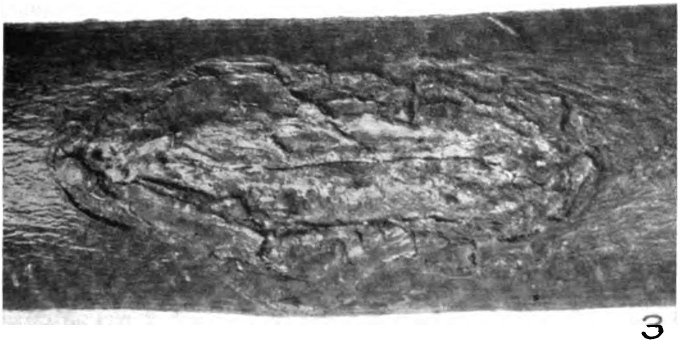
The specimen on the left is a check; the next three show cankers resulting from infections by ascospores from apple; the specimen on the right was inoculated with ascospores from witch-hazel, and in this case infection did not occur. Date of inoculation, July 16, 1913; photograph made September 20, 1913



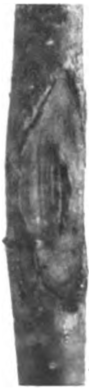
1



2



3



4

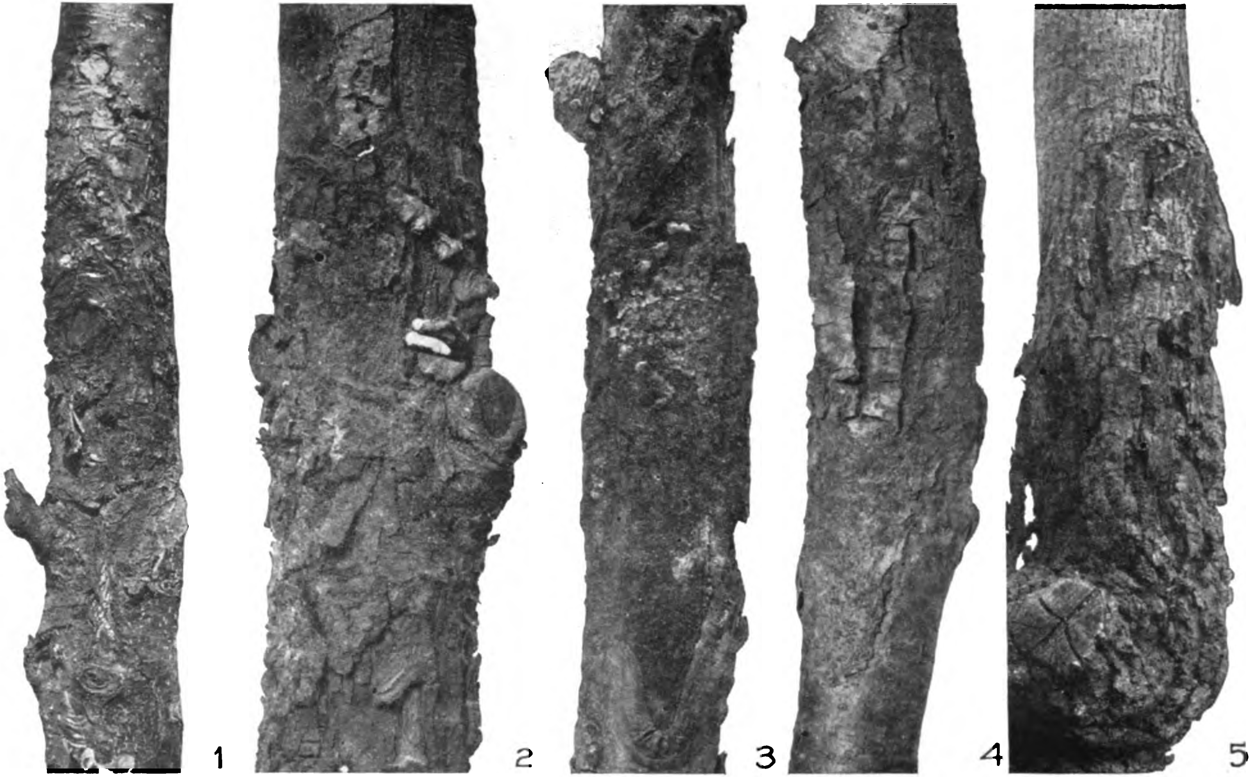
NATURAL CANKERS AND CANKERS PRODUCED BY ARTIFICIAL INOCULATION WITH PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE

1. Natural infection on the left; artificial infection on the right. The latter inoculated on July 1, 1913, with a strain from Twenty Ounce apple bark. Photograph made September 30, 1913

2. Canker on trunk of mature pear tree. Inoculation made July 18, 1910, photograph made September 1, 1911

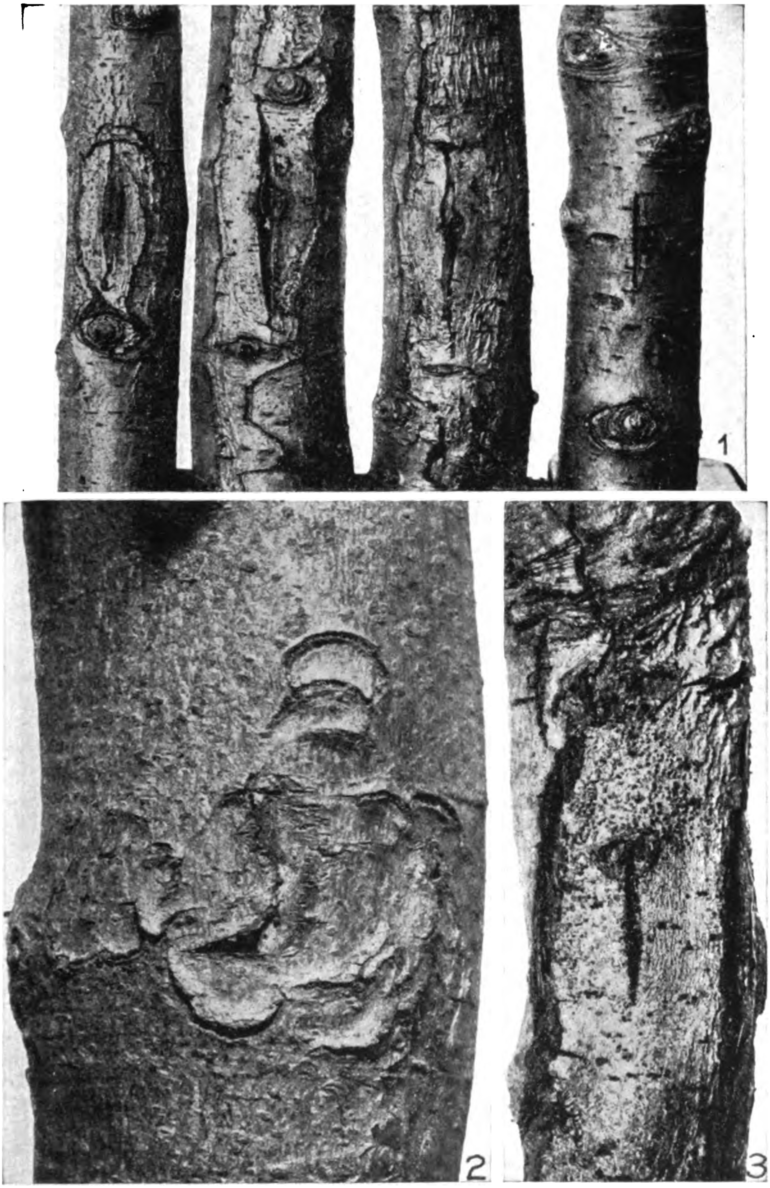
3. The result of inoculation by use of pycnospores from apple leaves. The healing process has occluded the wound before the pathogene could produce a large canker. Inoculation made July 1, 1912, photograph made September 20, 1913

4. Canker on Baldwin twig produced artificially, using ascospores from apple. Inoculation made July 25, 1914, photograph made December 10, 1914



SYMPTOMS OF THE NEW YORK APPLE TREE CANKER

1. Typical old and much-roughened canker on Twenty Ounce apple. The bark is still clinging
2. Old canker on apple, showing roughened surface. Some of the bark has fallen from the lesion
3. Old canker on apple, showing callus about the margin. Note that most of the bark has sloughed off
4. Cankered limb of apple, showing hypertrophy toward the upper end of the lesion
5. Canker on quince

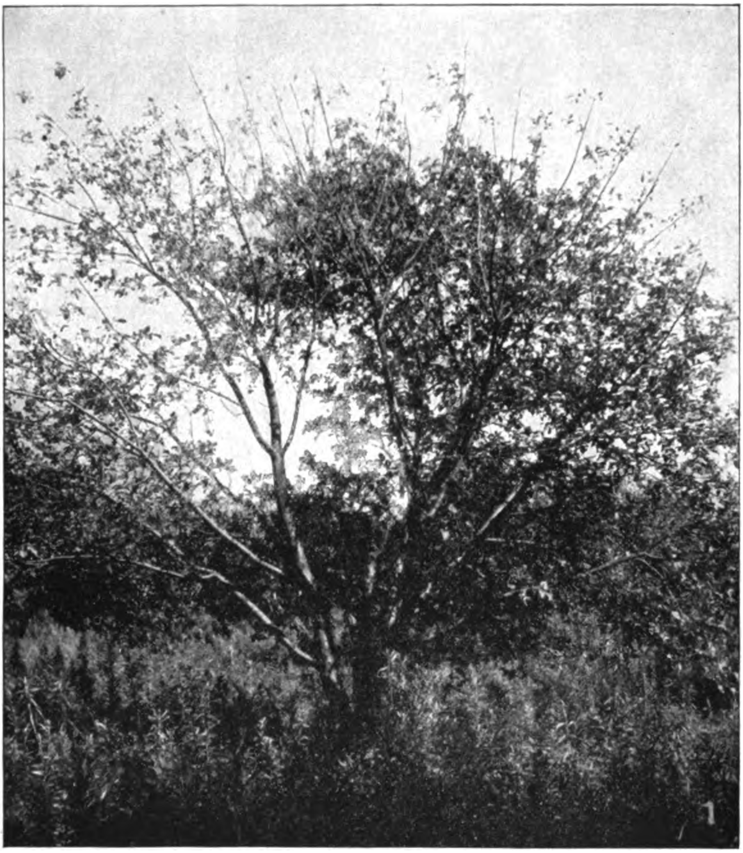


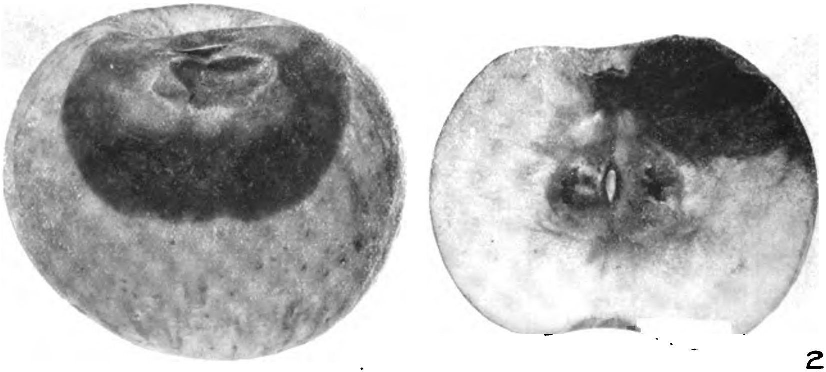
INOCULATION EXPERIMENTS WITH PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE

1. The three cankers on the left produced by inoculating pear with ascospores from apple. Check on the right. Inoculations made June 6, 1913, photograph made September 20, 1913

2. Canker on Twenty Ounce limb produced artificially, using pycnospores from apple. Inoculation made June 20, 1912, photograph made September 20, 1913

3. Canker produced on pear by inoculation with ascospores from apple. The presence of pycnidia should be noted. Inoculation made June 6, 1913, photograph made September 20, 1913



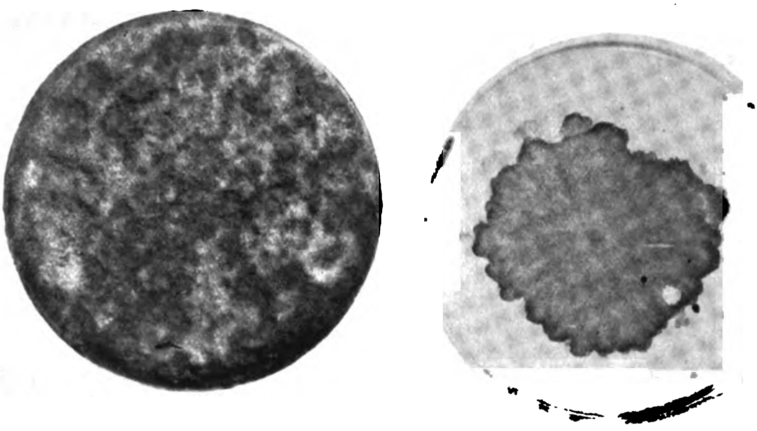


2

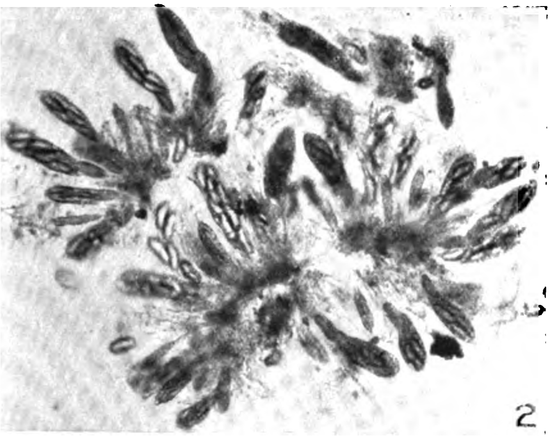
NEW YORK APPLE TREE CANKER

1. Twenty Ounce apple tree, some of the larger limbs of which have been girdled by the fungus. Evidence that this has occurred is found in the defoliated tops of affected limbs

2. External view at left, and internal view at right, of young black rot lesions on apple; the specimen on the right shows the tissues involved



1



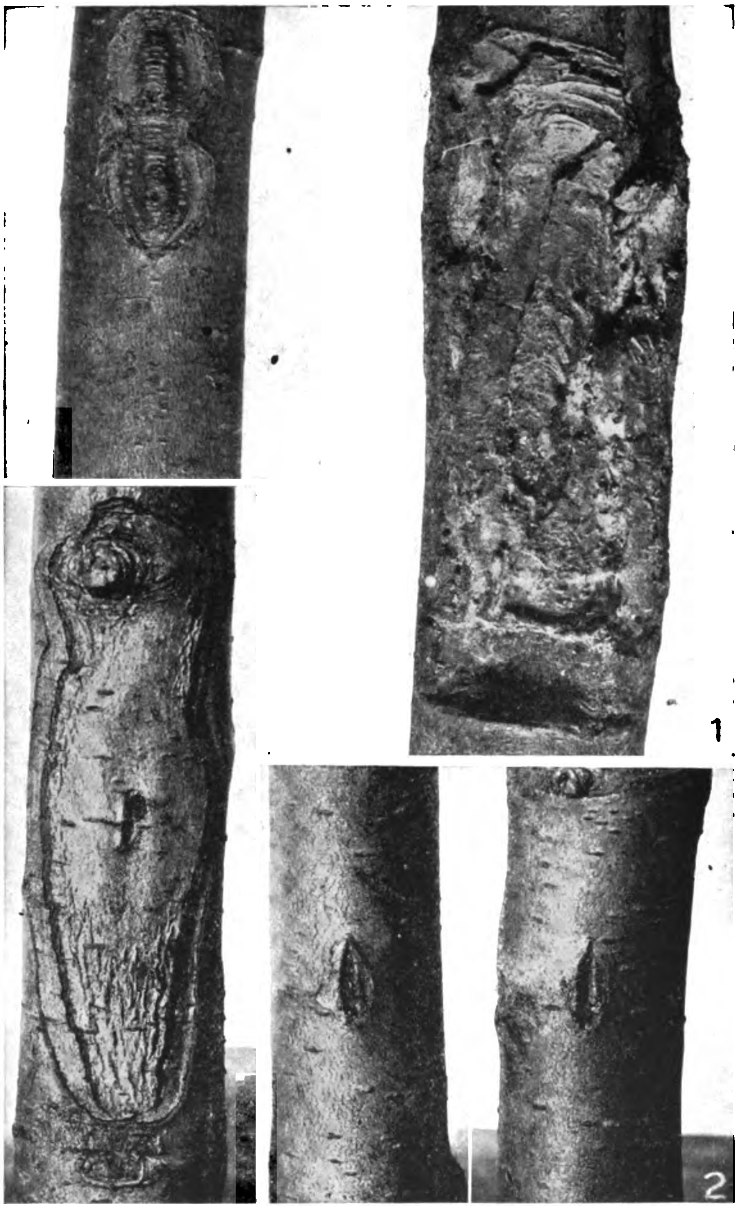
2

3

4

VARIOUS STAGES OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE

1. Showing differences in growth on nutrient agar from pycnospores (heavy dark growth on left) and from ascospores (scant growth on right)
2. Photomicrograph of asci, ascospores, and paraphyses from a single perithecium
3. Sclerotia as they appear in pure culture
4. Twig of apple, showing dark masses of pycnospores which have oozed from the pycnidia when the twig was kept in a moist chamber



INOCULATION EXPERIMENTS WITH PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIÆ

1. Canker on right, check on left. Inoculation made July 1, 1912, using pycnospores from pear, the fungus having followed fire blight. Photograph made September 20, 1913

2. Comparison of two different apple strains on pear. Specimen shown on left inoculated with ascospores from apple. Specimen shown in center inoculated with pycnospores from apple, following fire blight. The very slight infection should be noted. Check on right. Inoculation made June 6, 1913, photograph made September 20, 1913

The question of septation of pycnospores is of importance because of the fact that it involves the systematic value of the character, or variation if it be so called, in separating the form-genera Sphaeropsis and Diplodia, and because of the physiological significance of its formation. In nature, three possible conditions exist with respect to the presence of one- and two-celled spores. A pycnidium may contain only one-celled spores (Fig. 25, A) or only two-celled forms (Fig. 25, B), or both kinds may be present (Fig. 25, E, P, Q, R). Occasionally three-celled and even four-celled pycnospores have been observed (Fig. 25, C). It is a striking feature in this regard that no strain has come under the writer's observation that will not produce two-celled spores. Just what factors induce cross-wall formation is a matter not well understood. Mature unicellular spores placed to germinate, whether germinating at once or not, will sometimes develop a septum. Again, spores that are found scattered about on the bark of the host plant show the bicellular condition. In very dark spores the cross-wall is not always readily visible and may be easily overlooked.

The writer made observations on several strains regarding this character. Spores were placed in a drop of water and set in a moist chamber for several hours. At the beginning and at the end of each experiment the spores were examined for septation. The strains when collected, with the exception of one (no. 64)[4] on mulberry (*Morus alba* L.), possessed one-celled spores only. After being placed to germinate, or in nature after they had oozed forth on the substratum, septa began to appear and the percentages were as follows: one-celled spores, from two to ninety-five per cent; two-celled spores, from five to ninety-eight per cent; three- and four-celled forms, rare. The average for all such observations shows that the percentage of one- and two-celled forms is about equal.

Cultural studies were made of an apple strain (no. 82) with reference to this and other morphological characters. A single ellipsoidal, brown, one-celled pycnospore, 10.8 by 21 μ in size, from a pycnidium in which all the spores were one-celled and typically like the one described, was isolated on March 3, 1913, and a pure culture was developed from it. Examination of the culture at intervals showed the development of hyaline, Macrophoma-like spores. At the end of twenty-four days these had become brownish, and, while the majority were ellipsoidal, averaging from 9 to 10 μ by 21 to 22 μ, a few were pyriform and measured 12.6 by 30.6 μ. At the end of fifty days an occasional spore was found with a cross-wall; after eighty days thirty per cent of the spores were two-celled, and on May 27 sixty per cent were bicellular.

From the same culture a second generation was originated by culturing a one-celled, ellipsoidal, brown spore, 11 by 22 μ in size. The following notes were taken: Within two weeks an occasional spore measured 7.5 by 21 μ, although the usual size was from 9 to 10.8 μ by 19.8 to 26.1 μ. After forty days several two-celled spores appeared. At the end of two months, fifty per cent of the spores were one-septate.

---

[4] The specimens were numbered consecutively regardless of source, host, and other considerations.

A third generation was initiated by planting a spore from the second generation, of the same shape and measurement as the preceding. After one month twenty-five per cent of the pycnospores were of the Diplodia type.

Another series was studied, using a two-celled spore from a pycnidium in which both one-celled and two-celled forms were present. Within one generation a single spore, 10.8 by 21 μ in size, two-celled, brown, ellipsoidal, had developed offspring showing the usual color variations — that is, from hyaline to greenish, and finally brownish. After eighteen days some of the spores measured 12 by 28 μ, the average being 10.5 by 21 μ. Septation began to show after five weeks, and within eighty days sixty per cent of the spores examined were two-celled.

Apparently, from a single pycnidium in which the spores are of a given type there may develop in succeeding generations a wide variation in size, color, shape, and septation. In an early stage the Macrophoma type may appear in both size and color; later the Eu-Sphaeropsis type, one-celled, brown; and finally the Diplodia forms. The variable shapes that may be found in the generations succeeding a given type indicate that two-celled forms may be mere deviations in the life cycle. On the other hand, Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:184) report from New Hampshire a large-spored form which holds true to its morphological characteristics for several generations.

Markings on the wall of the pycnospores are reported by Griffon and Maublanc (1910:312). These authors claim to have discovered an undescribed character of the spores of this species, namely, a shagreened wall. This character is not reported elsewhere in literature, and has not been observed by the writer among the several strains studied, including Dr. Peck's type specimens of *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck.[5]

Long, slender bodies, measuring about 1.5 μ in diameter and often 50 μ in length, have been observed interspersed between the pycnospores of a strain from apple twigs. They are not of frequent occurrence in the experience of the writer.

MYCELIUM. The mycelium is composed of septate tubes, monopodially branched and comparatively broad — being on an average about 4 to 7 μ in diameter. In the young hyphæ cross-walls are rare, but in older branches the threads are often short and frequently with bulging lateral walls. Color is lacking in young aërial threads, but as age increases a greenish yellow, then bluish green, brown, and finally dark brown, hue is assumed. In mass the mycelium appears black. In cultures lacking potassium a violet tinge has been observed. The walls of the hyphæ are relatively thick, and sometimes a decided double contour of the membrane is visible. The appearance of the cell contents varies, apparently depending somewhat on age and nutrition. Young and well-nourished cells are densely granular, while older threads contain vacuoles and glycogen drops in abundance.

---

[5] Following the Vienna Code published in 1906 (Wettstein, R. von, Wiesner, J., and Zahlbruckner, A., Verhandlungen des Internationalen Botanischen Kongresses in Wien, 1905, p. 200), this specific name should be capitalized.

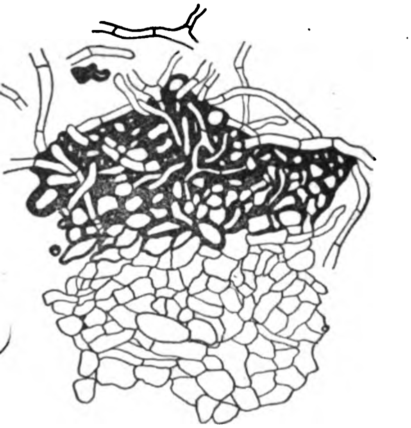


FIG. 26. PART OF CROSS SECTION OF SCLEROTIUM

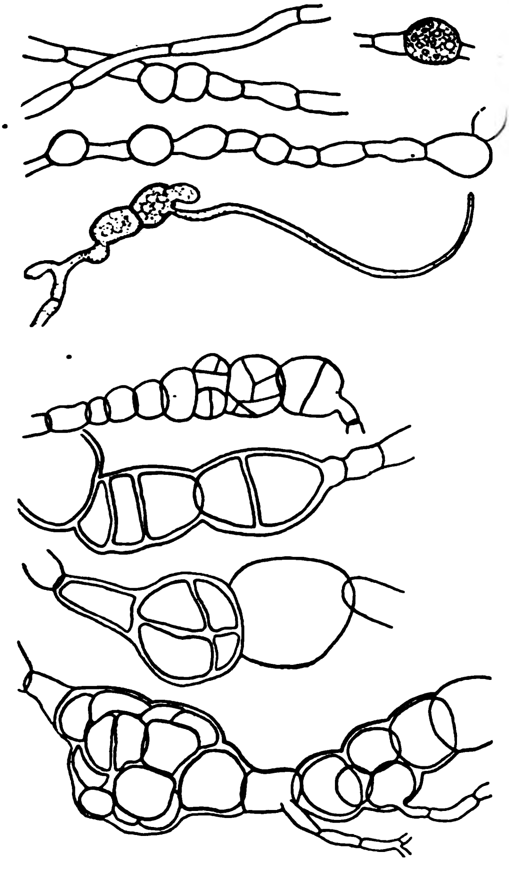


FIG. 27. CHLAMYDOSPORES OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE

Types of chlamydospores found in pure cultures

SCLEROTIA (Plate XIII, 3, and Fig. 26). Sclerotial bodies have been found in nutrient media of high sugar content and in oat agar cultures of ascospores from *Hamamelis virginiana*. Walker (1908:38) reports the development of sclerotium-like bodies resembling pycnidia on artificial media. They have also been observed by Baccarini (1890:67) just under the skin of the apple.

CHLAMYDOSPORES (Fig. 27). Chlamydospores have doubtfully been observed by the writer in host tissues. In a few cases a suggestion such a body was found in apple bark. In old cultures on various artificial media, large, thick-walled, intercalary, brown, spore-like bodies are sometimes present in abundance. They were also obtained easily by transferring bits of mycelium to sterile water. They have been observed in agar cultures that have become contaminated by bacteria, being found more especially near the bacterial colonies. The most striking forms observed were on old agar cultures of the strain (no. 6) from *Rhus typhina* L. Similar bodies are described and figured by Hedges and Tenny (1912:16) in their studies on *Sphaeropsis tumefaciens*. These large bodies suggest young pycnidia, owing to the form and cellular structure. All gradations from thick-walled, colorless, greenish or brownish, granular, swollen cells, occurring singly or in chains, are very common in artificial culture. These bodies have been germinated by the writer, the germ tubes developing into hyphæ of the usual type (Fig. 27, near top).

MICROCONIDIA (Fig. 28). Microconidia, or secondary bud-like bodies, have been observed in culture after forty-eight hours. They develop as swellings near the tips of the growing hyphæ. They are globose or somewhat pyriform, measuring from 3.6 to 6.3 μ by 7 to 14.5 μ, averaging 4 by 9.5 μ.

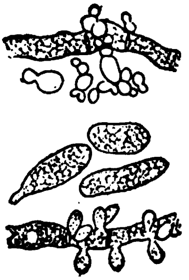


FIG. 28. MICROCONIDIA OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE

Showing microconidia developed on the mycelial threads. The three microconidia in the center are magnified 800 diameters

YEAST FORMS. Alwood (1898 b) records the discovery of a yeast form occurring in the laboratory cultures of the fungus, which on isolation and reinoculation of apple fruit produced its fruiting bodies. Such forms have never occurred in any of the writer's pure cultures.

The variations exhibited by this fungus do not represent unique phenomena among the fungi. Shear and Wood (1913:63) say of Glomerella: "No character, either morphological or physiological, seems to be well fixed." They find (page 64 of same reference) wide variability in the manner of conidial production; all intergradations between a hyphomycetous type and a distinct melanconiaceous type of structure occur in cultures. Setæ may be present in some cultures and absent in others, while paraphyses are regarded as of little taxonomic value. Duggar (1909:303), in speaking of the Alternaria-Macrosporium question, says: "The catenulate method of spore production has been reported only in artificial cultures in this case, and it is possible, furthermore, to obtain for various fungi in such cultures in general many variations from what would be considered the normal type of spore production upon the host." It is stated in the same place that cultures of such forms as Fusarium, Gloeosporium, and Cercospora yield variable characters in culture. Seaver (1908) points out the misleading and misused color characters in some of the Hypocreales. Stevens and Hall (1909 b) report considerable variation in certain forms under different environmental influences.

PHYSIOLOGY

METHODS OF ISOLATION. The chief methods used in isolating the organism were: the plating of spores in agar and the transfer of single germinating spores; transfer of single spores by the capillary tube method as described previously by the writer (1913:291–292); planting bits of diseased tissue in agar plates. The first two methods are advantageous in getting pure lines or races. The third method has practical advantages in its simplicity and the ease with which the culture is obtained.

CULTURAL CHARACTERS — GENERAL. The ability of this fungus to grow on the commonly used culture media is a noticeable physiological character. It is easily isolated, and its appearance in successive stages of development is generally the same in all the culture media employed. The colonies are at first cottony; after from two to five days the submerged threads are green or blue-green for about a week, after which the growth is dark or nearly black, but almost without exception the outer ends of the aërial threads maintain their original cottony appearance. After from seven to ten days pycnidia appear. The writer has always been able to develop pycnidia in culture, although Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:183) found considerable difficulty in getting cultures to sporulate. Often a distinct concentric zonation occurs in plate and tube cultures. The exudation in culture of drops of liquid has been observed frequently. This is described by Potebnia (1907), who regards it as an excretion product.

The general characters described above — except zonation, which is irregular in its occurrence — apply to the following media: several different agars, including potato, prune, apple, oat, bean, and nutrient; solid vegetable substances, such as potato cylinders, bean pods, apple twigs, and apple fruit cylinders; synthetic liquid media, such as Fraenkel and Voge's, Cohn's, Rankin's, and Uschinsky's solutions.

CULTURAL CHARACTERS — SPECIAL. The writer (1913:292–293) has previously reported differences in the growth of cultures from ascospores and pycnospores when planted in +10 nutrient agar. On the one hand pycnospores were developed within about one week from pycnospore plantings, whereas on the other hand no fruiting bodies had appeared after several weeks in cultures from ascospores, the growth remaining stunted. Cultures of ascospores and of pycnospores were similar on other media (Plate XIII, 1).

PROTOPLASMIC STREAMING. Protoplasmic streaming in the hyphæ has been studied by Potebnia (1907). He has found that movement begins with the germination of the pycnospore. The direction is first toward the tip, some granules moving more rapidly than others. On reaching the tip, those that have moved the faster direct their movement backward, in some cases forming groups. The streaming is not dependent either on evaporation through aërial parts or on the structure of the protoplasm, but is conditioned only by apical growth of the hyphæ and by inner processes. The slow movement is pulsative, and it is observed that increased temperature accelerates forward movement and cooling often induces backward flow. It is suggested that the streaming is similar to the slow movement observed by Van Tieghem in the hyphæ of the Mucorales.

PATHOGENICITY

The ability of the organism to produce the disease, particularly the leaf spot and canker forms, has been a matter of no little consideration. The difficulties that are met in attempting to infect various plants have brought out, not only some conflicting results, but also, what is more encouraging, some interesting problems with reference to the causal agent and the taxonomic relationship of the so-called species on the different host plants. The cross-infection of the several hosts, and the rôle of organisms associated with *Physalospora Cydoniae* in the production of the lesions, are points that have a practical and scientific bearing on the whole problem. The different forms of the disease are followed in the succeeding discussion.

BLACK ROT OF APPLE. The ability of the fungus to cause decay of fruits was established, after a fashion, in 1878 by Peck, who writes (1879:20) that "the disease is contagious, and may be communicated from one apple to another."

Von Thümen (1879)[6] regards the fungus, which he called *Diplodia Malorum* Fckl., as a saprophyte rather than a parasite, but believes that it is capable of attacking sound fruit and is able to cause notable injury in storage.

Arthur (1885) inoculated sound quinces by inserting beneath the skin a bit of diseased fruit tissue containing spores of the fungus (which he calls *Sphaeropsis Cydoniae* C. & E.). The inoculated fruits were placed under a bell jar. Arthur says: "The spores germinated, and the rotting progressed slowly, when, on the twenty-second day, the spot had reached an inch and a half in diameter, and the fruiting points had begun to appear."

Halsted (1892) states that the fungus grows interchangeably on apple, quince, and pear fruits. He reports having corroborated his laboratory experiments by field observations.

---

[6] Original not seen by the writer; context taken from Baccarini (1890: 70).

Sturgis (1894) made inoculations both in the field and in the laboratory, confirming the work of Halsted (1892) and showing that when the skin was not broken previous to inoculation the fruits remained in a sound condition.

Paddock (1899 b: 185) produced black rot of apple artificially within a few hours by the use of the black-spored fungus, pycnidia appearing after sixteen days. Again, Paddock states (page 193 of same reference) that the fungus from pear, quince, and Japanese plum produces rot in apple, pear, and quince, if the skin is punctured and moisture is furnished.

More recent inoculation experiments are reported by Walker (1908), Morse (1909), Arnaud (1912), and others.

Two forms of Sphaeropsis were observed by Walker (1908), both of which were capable of producing black rot — the newer form, however, being a more vigorous rot producer. The morphological differences have been previously noted.

The writer made several inoculations (tables 1 and 2) on apples of different varieties, using different strains from bark and fruit. In all cases pure cultures of the fungus were used. In making wounds to serve as infection courts a flamed scalpel was employed. Material transferred from the culture consisted of mycelium and spores; this was inserted in the injury previously made, and the fruits were placed in sterile moist chambers. It is to be noted from table 1 that different strains vary in their ability to infect the same variety. Attention is called to a comparison of strains 1, 2, 3, and 4. All were used on Baldwin apples on the same date and under similar conditions, yet the results were different. Strains 1 and 3 showed slow decay, with no pycnidia after nineteen days. On the other hand, strains 2 and 4 caused rapid decay and abundant pycnidia in the same length of time.

As shown in table 1, nine different varieties were inoculated with the same culture, the results being variable with reference to decay, fruit body production, and the formation of concentric rings.

It has been commonly observed that older cultures produce the disease less readily than do younger cultures. The best results were obtained by the use of cultures not more than two months old.

LEAF SPOT OF APPLE. Various theories have been advanced to explain the cause of the leaf spot disease. In 1902 Stewart and Eustace (1902: 228) believed spray injury to be the responsible agency. They further suggest (page 232 of same reference) that drops of rain act as lenses and so concentrate the rays of the sun, overheating the tissues beneath. The belief is ultimately expressed by them that the large proportion of leaf spot in New York is due to spray injury and is not of fungous origin. Frost has been considered the causal factor by Stone and Smith (1903) ir

TABLE 1. RESULTS OF INOCULATIONS ON RIPE APPLE FRUIT IN THE LABORATORY, USING STRAINS OF THE FUNGUS FROM APPLE

Source and number of strain	Variety inoculated	Date of inoculation	Conditions provided	Number of fruits	Results
A–Twenty Ounce apple bark	Yellow Transparent	July 19, 1910......	Fruits in sterile chamber. Tissue wounded. No moisture	4	100 per cent infection; pycnidia formed and fruit mummified by August 15
A–Twenty Ounce apple bark	Red Astrachan....	July 19, 1910......		2	100 per cent infection
Apple bark, not numbered..	Oliver............	January, 1911.....		1	100 per cent infection. Pycnidia after 16 days
Apple, not numbered.......	?...............	February 2, 1911..		2	100 per cent infection. Slow decay on one fruit; other fruit well decayed in 8 days
A–Twenty Ounce apple bark	Red Astrachan....	July 15, 1911......		2	Pycnidia in 10 days
1–Apple twig.............	Baldwin..........	April 7, 1911......		1	Slight infection after 19 days. Decay not typical. No pycnidia
2–Apple fruit.............	Baldwin..........	April 7, 1911......		1	Pycnidia after 19 days. Decay rapid
3–Twenty Ounce apple bark.	Baldwin..........	April 7, 1911......		1	Decay slow. No pycnidia after 19 days
4–Russet apple bark.......	Baldwin..........	April 7, 1911......		1	Pycnidia abundant after 19 days
A–Twenty Ounce apple bark	Yellow Newtown..	January 12, 1911..		2	Decay slow; lesion 1 cm. in diameter after 18 days. No pycnidia
A–Twenty Ounce apple bark	Ben Davis........	January 12, 1911..		2	Fruit about one-fourth decayed after 18 days. Pycnidia abundant
A–Twenty Ounce apple bark	Oliver............	January 12, 1911..		2	Fruit about one-fourth decayed after 18 days. Pycnidia abundant
A–Twenty Ounce apple bark	Cranberry Pippin..	January 12, 1911..		2	Lesion 6 cm. in diameter after 18 days. No pycnidia

A-Twenty Ounce apple bark	Northern Spy.....	January 12, 1911..		2	Pycnidia after 16 days. Concentric rings apparent
A-Twenty Ounce apple bark	Rebel............	January 12, 1911..		2	Apple one-fourth rotten after 18 days. Pycnidia present. Concentric rings evident
A-Twenty Ounce apple bark	Rome Beauty.....	January 12, 1911..		2	Apple one-fourth rotten after 18 days. Pycnidia present. Concentric rings evident

TABLE 2. RESULTS OF INOCULATIONS ON GREEN APPLE FRUIT IN THE LABORATORY

Source and number of strain	Variety inoculated	Date of inoculation	Conditions provided	Number of fruits	Results
A–Twenty Ounce bark.....	Yellow Transparent	July 14, 1910......	Wound, moisture	2	Decay slow after 5 days
A–Twenty Ounce bark.....	Yellow Transparent	July 19, 1910......	Wound, moisture	2	100 per cent infection. Fruits taken from tree, inoculated in laboratory
82–Apple bark............	Twenty Ounce....	July 16, 1913......	Wound, moisture	4	Slight decay after 1 week. Whole fruit involved after 6 weeks. (Fruits about 5 cm. in diameter)
Check..................	Twenty Ounce....	July 16, 1913......	Wound, moisture	1	No infection
82–Apple bark............	Twenty Ounce....	July 16, 1913......	Inoculation in wound made by codling moth	2	No decay. Wound dried out

Massachusetts. They write: "No organism was to be found as the cause of the injury, and from the sequence of events there could be no reasonable doubt that the frost was the destructive agency."

The fungus theory was probably first favored by Alwood (1892:59), who attributed brown spot to *Phyllosticta pirina*. This organism has been regarded as the causal agent by several other writers — Kinney (1895 b), Lamson (1899), and others. In 1895 Stewart (1896) found a new species of Phyllosticta, described as *Phyllosticta limitata*, responsible for an epiphytotic of leaf spot on Long Island. In 1907 the fungus *Phyllosticta pirina* Sacc. was transferred to the genus Coniothyrium by Sheldon (1907), and the organism is now designated as *Coniothyrium pirina* (Sacc.) Sheldon. Another species of Phyllosticta, *P. prunicola* Sacc., is listed by Tubeuf and Smith[7] as the cause of spotting of leaves of apple, plum, cherry, and apricot.

Alwood (1898 a) records, in addition to *P. pirina*, other fungi associated with the leaf spot, including *Hendersonia Mali* and *Sphaeropsis Malorum*. This is the earliest record that the writer has seen of the occurrence of the last-named fungus on leaves of apple, although Clinton (1902, and 1904:298) reports it as the common cause of leaf spot in Illinois and Connecticut in later years. The question of its relationship to the leaf spot disease, as well as that of other fungi, was subsequently studied by various pathologists.

Scott and Quaintance (1907) state that several different fungi, most prominent among which are *Phyllosticta* sp., *Hendersonia* sp., and *Sphaeropsis Malorum*, are connected with spots and may be responsible for the injury in some cases, yet they are not clear as to which are the real parasites. The following year the subject was investigated by Hartley, I. M. Lewis, and Scott and Rorer. Hartley (1908 b), in examining leaf spots of apple from the West Virginia Agricultural Experiment Station, found the following fungi: *Coryneum foliicolum*, *Coniothyrium pirina*, an undetermined species of the Tuberculariae, *Sphaeropsis Malorum*, *Monochaetia Mali*, *Pestalozzia breviseta*, *Phyllosticta limitata*, *Torula* (?) sp., *Macrosporium* sp., *Ascochyta* sp., *Phyllosticta* (?) *piriseda* (?), *Phoma Mali*, *Septoria piricola* (?), *Metasphaeria* sp., and an undetermined species of Leptostromaceae. He expresses the opinion that probably *Coryneum foliicolum* was formerly reported as a Hendersonia. The fact that the parasitism of *Coniothyrium pirina* was questioned by Stewart and Eustace (1902:228) led Hartley to investigate the pathogenicity of this species. He found that it would not affect healthy tissue, but that on the other hand, when wounds such as scalding, abrasion of epidermis, or punctures with hot and cold needles, were made in the tissue, the fungus in most cases grew and fruited. He concludes that *C. pirina* is a facultative, or wound, parasite only, and further that its ability to cause leaf spot in orchard trees to any extent remains to be demonstrated. In his opinion *Coryneum foliicolum* is less parasitic in the field than *Coniothyrium pirina*.

---

[7] Tubeuf, K. F. von, and Smith, W. G. Diseases of plants induced by cryptogamic parasites, page 463. 1897.

I. M. Lewis (1908:367) writes as follows regarding the leaf spot situation in New Hampshire: "Believing that the exact relation of all the fungi associated with the spots had not been thoroughly tested, an investigation was begun during the past summer to determine, if possible, the cause of the disease as it occurs in this State, and means of control by various spray mixtures." He states further (page 368 of same reference) that on isolation it was found that the fungi predominating were *Coniothyrium pirina*, *Coryneum foliicolum*, *Sphaeropsis Malorum*, *Alternaria* sp., and one of the Tuberculariae. To Hartley's total list of fungi associated with apple leaf spots, C. E. Lewis (1912:51) adds *Cladosporium herbarum* (Pers.) Link and *Dematium pullulans* De Bary, while Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:182) report the isolation of a Fusarium. The first series of experiments made by I. M. Lewis (1908), on August 1 showed that many inoculations did not result in infections; from this Lewis reasons that "the period at which the leaf is naturally infected is earlier in the spring and summer." This view is upheld by C. E. Lewis (1912:55), who concludes that the older leaves are not so susceptible to infection as are young leaves; the work of Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:190), however, in which they conclude that infection may occur until the last of August, indicates that the question of biologic races was a factor overlooked by both I. M. Lewis and C. E. Lewis. As regards the general conclusions of I. M. Lewis's work it may be further quoted (1908):

> As a result of this season's inoculation experiments it is impossible to offer more than negative results as to the cause of the spots. I am of the opinion, however, that the fungus *Sphaeropsis malorum* which is known to cause canker of apple limbs and is an active parasite, will be found to be the primary cause of apple leaf spot. This supposition must, however, be supported by direct experiment before it can be definitely affirmed for the spots considered in this investigation.

The same year the results of further investigations by Scott and Rorer (1908) were published, in which a definite conclusion was reached. They state (page 49 of reference cited): "It was found that *Sphaeropsis malorum*, contrary to the general belief, is the cause of the disease." Regarding the associated species they conclude (page 52 of same reference):

> *Coniothyrium pirina* (Sacc.) Sheldon, although it occurs abundantly on apple leaf-spots, appears to have nothing to do with their formation.
>
> The several other fungi that were tested, such as *Hendersonia* sp., *Coryneum* sp., *Pestalozzia* sp., and *Alternaria* sp., proved to be non-parasitic in these experiments and probably occur on leaf spots only as saprophytes.

The work of Scott and Rorer is practically confirmed by C. E. Lewis (1909). After making several inoculation experiments the latter writes (1912:55), in agreement with Hartley (1908 b), as follows:

> The results of these inoculation experiments seem to indicate that Sphaeropsis is able to attack the leaves of orchard trees when they are inoculated early in the season under favorable conditions for growth. No spotting has been produced by any of the other fungi which have been tested although it has been found that they grow readily on dead spots which have been killed by other causes.

The investigations of I. M. Lewis began in 1908 and were continued by Brooks and DeMeritt in 1909. As Brooks and DeMeritt state (1912:183), the summer's work was not conclusive. Later cultural work revealed to them great variation in the nature of growth of different strains of the fungus, and also in the time required for spore production. It has been mentioned elsewhere (page 172) that these authors found morphological strains. This discovery led them to investigate the correlation between the morphological and biological variations of these forms. Their final conclusion (page 190 of reference cited) is: "Several strains of *Sphaeropsis Malorum* may be obtained, varying in general vigor and in power to produce diseased conditions. The large-spored form, with single-loculed, ostiolate pycnidia is largely responsible for the production of leaf spot."

The writer performed inoculation experiments in an attempt to produce apple leaf spot during the summers of 1910 to 1913 inclusive. In the experiments of 1910 the leaves of mature trees were inoculated in the following manner: Pycnidia were removed from pure culture and the spores liberated by crushing the fruiting bodies in a watch glass containing water. The contents of the watch glass were removed to an atomizer and the spores were sprayed on both surfaces of the leaves. In some cases the leaves were previously wounded with a needle, in others they were left uninjured. Data regarding the source of the fungus, the variety and age of the tree whose leaves were inoculated, the date of inoculation, the number of leaves inoculated, and the results, for 1910 to 1913, are given in table 3. It is to be noted that no moist chamber was provided in any of the experiments of 1910. In 1911 a series of inoculations made on May 27 resulted in infection where wounds and moisture were provided. The method of work here was the same as in 1910, except for the provision of a moist chamber. This consisted of a lamp chimney, into which the inoculated leaves were inserted and the ends of which were closed with damp cotton. The series of inoculations performed in July, 1910, and in August, 1911, should be compared. In neither case was a moist chamber used and the results were negative. In the experiments of 1912 and 1913 no spotting of the foliage was obtained by artificial inoculations. The writer has no explanation to offer. The explanation offered by Brooks

TABLE 3. RESULTS OF INOCULATIONS OF APPLE FOLIAGE, USING APPLE STRAINS OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE

Source and number of strain	Variety inoculated	Age of tree	Date of inoculation	Conditions provided	Number of leaves inoculated	Results
A–Twenty Ounce bark	Tompkins King, Rhode Island, Baldwin, Tolman, Swaar, Esopus, Yellow Transparent, Holland Pippin, Red Astrachan, Roxbury, Hubbardston	Mature, large trees	July 18, 1910	Various as regards wounds. Both surfaces inoculated. No moisture provided	130	Failed
A–Twenty Ounce bark	Banana....................	3 years...	May 27, 1911	Both surfaces inoculated. Some wounded, others not. Moisture provided for several hours in some cases	50	Where wound and moisture were provided, 100 per cent infection, with abundant pycnidia after 2 weeks. Other leaves, including checks, showed no signs of disease
A–Twenty Ounce bark	Oliver.....................	3 years...	August 2, 1911	Both surfaces inoculated. Some wounded by needle pricks, others not. No moisture	24	Failed
57–Apple bark........	Oliver.....................	3 years...	May 17, 1912	Both surfaces inoculated. Some wounded, others not. Moisture provided for several hours in some cases. Followed by drizzling rain	50	All failed
60–Apple bark........	Oliver.....................	3 years...	May 20, 1912	Same as preceding..........	110	All failed
69–Apple bark........	Oliver.....................	3 years...	May 29, 1912	Same as preceding..........	50	All failed
83–Esopus bark.......	Oliver.....................	3 years...	May 28, 1913	Same as preceding..........	50	All failed
90–Twenty Ounce bark	Oliver.....................	3 years...	May 28, 1913	Same as preceding..........	50	All failed

and DeMeritt (1912) for the leaf spot problem in New Hampshire is apparently not applicable under western New York conditions, since a variety of morphological forms was used in the inoculation work. The results obtained indicate that there is no correlation between morphological and biological characters with respect to pathogenicity.

CANKER OF APPLE. Waite (1898 a) was the first to attribute the canker to a fungous parasite; he suggested that *Schizophyllum commune* Fr. was the causal organism. Paddock (1899 b: 183) found dark spores on the cankers, but supposed they belonged to some saprophytic form. However, he grew this organism, as well as *Schizophyllum commune*, on artificial media, and made pure culture inoculations in the following manner: A small opening was made in the bark by means of a sterilized knife, and a small quantity of material from bean stem cultures was inserted between the wood and the bark. The incision was covered with moist filter paper and kept moist for thirty-six hours. All the inoculations made in 1898 with the dark-spored fungus on apple trees were successful; other fungi failed and the wounds soon healed. Paddock's conclusions are summarized in the following words (page 184 of same reference): "These experiments showed conclusively that the dark-spored fungus can penetrate living apple-tree bark under certain conditions and produce a cankered condition of apple-tree limbs and also indicated that it may produce a diseased condition of pear-tree bark." Again he says (page 185 of same reference): "The result of over fifty inoculations made from cultures that were obtained from cankered apple tree limbs prove that the apple-tree canker of New York apple orchards is caused by a fungus of the genus Sphaeropsis." Over one thousand inoculations were made by him in 1899 (pages 200–201 of same reference) and only a very few gave negative results. He further asserts that the fungus causes canker of the quince if the material from pure culture is inserted under the bark, whereas under other conditions the experiments were not conclusive.

Paddock's work was continued (1900) for the purpose of confirming former results and to determine if possible the relationship between the species of Sphaeropsis that occur on various plants. He obtained cultures from apple fruit and apple bark, and inoculated the apple tree and other plants. The results were positive, thus further proving the pathogenicity of the organism, as well as establishing the identity of the fungus on fruit and bark. The conclusions reached by Paddock are essentially confirmed by C. E. Lewis (1909: 188–189) and by McCready (1910).

The writer (1913: 293) has summarized the results of earlier inoculation work as follows:

> During the past summer [1913] several inoculations have been made with cultures from the ascospores of the ascomycetous fungus. The apple, pear, quince, crab apple, and other plants were inoculated, in each case wounds being made to serve as infection

courts. Three varieties of apples, namely Twenty Ounce, Baldwin, and Chenango Strawberry, were inoculated between May 20 and July 16, 1913. Eleven sets of experiments involving about seventy incisions were made, all of which gave positive infections, the checks remaining healthy.

The above quotation concerns the ascomycetous fungus from apple. A morphologically similar organism on *Hamamelis virginiana* did not produce infection, as is seen from the following statement (Hesler, 1913:293): "About twenty-five different inoculations were made [with the ascomycete from *H. virginiana*] on all the plants mentioned above but no infections occurred."

The writer has carried on inoculation experiments during the past four years, both in the greenhouse and in the field, the most of the work being directed toward the infection of bark tissues. The methods employed have already been described (page 183). The results discussed at this point concern only experiments in which apple strains of the fungus (*Physalospora Cydoniae* Arnaud [= *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Berk.]) were used on apple itself. The more important points in this regard are shown in table 4, indicating the source of the strain, the variety and age of the tree inoculated, the conditions under which inoculations were made, the number of inoculations, and the general results. The infection work done in the summers of 1910, 1911, and 1912 was not conclusive, but with the use of various strains more satisfactory results were obtained in the season of 1913.

It may be noted in table 4 that races of the fungus came from different varieties of apple, isolations being made from fruit, leaf, and bark. It was desired to determine if possible whether strains obviously living under saprophytic conditions, as those following winter injury and fire blight, were capable of inducing bark injury, and to determine the nature of the parasitism of certain other strains that appeared to be parasitic. The results on these points are conflicting and it seems that the strains are as variable in their biological relationships as in their morphological characters. A race may produce infection on slightly wounded bark after it has been living under saprophytic conditions, for example, following fire blight. Again, those strains which in nature appear to be acting parasitically may prove to be weak parasites, producing infection only under certain conditions.

Conflicting results along this line have raised the question of individual variation among varieties of the host plant as regards susceptibility or immunity. It is possible that individual hosts in the same or in different orchards may differ in this respect, but conclusive data are not at hand with which to answer the question.

The variable results of inoculations of the apple with the apple fungus indicate that the production of infection requires the proper strain, a

TABLE 4. RESULTS OF INOCULATIONS OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE ON APPLE BARK. ONLY APPLE STRAINS INVOLVED

Source and number of strain	Variety inoculated	Age of tree	Date of inoculation	Conditions provided	Number of incisions	Results
A–Twenty Ounce bark	Twenty Ounce	40 years	July 20, 1910	Various conditions as regards wounds and moisture	17	100 per cent infection where wounds and moisture were provided. Other inoculations failed
A–Twenty Ounce bark	?	Mature	June 22, 1911	Wound by barely breaking bark	2	Very slight infection
Check	?	Mature	June 22, 1911	Wound by barely breaking bark	2	No infection
A–Twenty Ounce bark	?	Mature	June 22, 1911	Deep wound to wood	4	Rapid spread
Check	?	Mature	June 22, 1911	Deep wound to wood	4	No infection
A–Twenty Ounce bark	?	Young shoot	June 22, 1911	Deep wound to wood	3	Infection good
Check	?	Young shoot	June 22, 1911	Deep wound to wood	3	No infection
A–Twenty Ounce bark	Baldwin	2 years	February 15, 1912	Wound	4	Failed (in greenhouse)
A–Twenty Ounce bark	Twenty Ounce	? (large)	May 17, 1912	Slit in bark to wood	2	Canker formed within 6 weeks
22–Decorticated apple wood	Twenty Ounce	? (large)	May 17, 1912	Slit in bark to wood	2	Slight discoloration after 6 weeks
38–Rhode Island twig following fire blight	Twenty Ounce	? (large)	May 17, 1912	Slit in bark to wood	2	Fair growth after 6 weeks
25–Chenango apple leaf	Twenty Ounce	? (large)	May 17, 1912	Slit in bark to wood	2	Slight growth, limited by a marginal crack after 6 weeks
57–Sutton apple following winter injury	Twenty Ounce	? (large)	May 17, 1912	Slit in bark to wood	2	Very slight growth after 6 weeks
59–Apple fruit	Twenty Ounce	? (large)	May 17, 1912	Slit in bark to wood	2	Failed
60–Twenty Ounce bark	Oliver	3 years	May 20, 1912	No wound	2	Failed. Weather cloudy and rainy
Check	Oliver	3 years	May 20, 1912		2	No infection
60–Twenty Ounce bark	Oliver	3 years	May 20, 1912	Wound; slit to wood by scalpel	2	Failed

TABLE 4 (*continued*)

Source and number of strain	Variety inoculated	Age of tree	Date of inoculation	Conditions provided	Number of incisions	Results
Check	Oliver	3 years	May 20, 1912	Wound; slit to wood by scalpel	2	No infection
60 Twenty Ounce bark	Oliver	3 years	May 20, 1912	Bruise, breaking bark	2	Failed
Check	Oliver	3 years	May 20, 1912	Bruise, breaking bark	2	No infection
60 Twenty Ounce bark	Oliver	3 years	May 20, 1912	Winterkilled, wound by scalpel	2	Failed
Check	Oliver	3 years	May 20, 1912	Winterkilled, wound by scalpel	2	No infection
60 Twenty Ounce bark	Oliver	3 years	May 20, 1912	Winterkilled, no wound	2	Failed
Check	Oliver	3 years	May 20, 1912	Winterkilled, no wound	2	No infection
38 Rhode Island twig following fire blight	Twenty Ounce	Mature	June 27, 1912	Wound to wood; moist cotton for several hours	2	Canker 1.5 cm. in diameter
60 Twenty Ounce bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	June 27, 1912	Wound to wood; moist cotton for several hours	2	Failed
70 Walbridge apple tree	Twenty Ounce	Mature	June 27, 1912	Wound to wood; moist cotton for several hours	2	Very slight discoloration
A-Twenty Ounce bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 1, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	Canker 3 cm. in diameter after 18 days. Secondary spreading in 1913
22 Decorticated apple wood	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 1, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	Not very satisfactory in 1912. Spreading in May, 1913; pycnidia
25 Chenango apple leaf	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 1, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	2 cm. in diameter. Slight spread in 1913
52-Apple leaf	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 1, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	Slight discoloration. No spread in 1913
60-Twenty Ounce bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 1, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	3.5 cm. in diameter 1912. No advance in 1913

61–Baldwin bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 1, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	5	2.5 x 6.5 cm. each. A marginal crevice August 24, 1912. Spread in 1913: 1. No increase 2. No increase 3. Limb 5 cm. in diameter, half girdled in May and finally girdled in September. Pycnidia 4. No increase 5. 7 x 12.5 cm. Pycnidia
71–Culture from Chas. E. Brooks	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 1, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	2.5 x 4 cm. by July 12. No advance in 1913
A–Twenty Ounce bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 10, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	Failed
22–Decorticated apple wood	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 10, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	1 cm. in diameter
25–Chenango apple leaf	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 10, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	Failed
38–Rhode Island twig following fire blight	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 10, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	1 x 1.7 cm.
52–Apple leaf	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 10, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	Failed
60–Twenty Ounce bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 10, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	1 cm. in diameter
61–Baldwin bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 10, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	Twig 1 cm. in diameter, almost girdled
71–Culture from Chas. E. Brooks	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 10, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber for several days	2	Slight infection
A–Twenty Ounce bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 10, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Failed
71–Culture from Chas. E. Brooks	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 10, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Failed
22–Decorticated apple wood	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 22, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Failed
38–Rhode Island twig following fire blight	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 22, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Very slight
52–Apple leaf	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 22, 1912	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Failed

TABLE 4 (*continued*)

Source and number of strain	Variety inoculated	Age of tree	Date of inoculation	Conditions provided	Number of incisions	Results
60–Twenty Ounce bark.........	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	July 22, 1912.....	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Slight
61–Baldwin bark.............	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	July 22, 1912.....	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Slight
70–Walbridge apple tree........	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	July 22, 1912.....	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Slight
71–Culture from Chas. E. Brooks	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	July 22, 1912.....	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	2.5 cm. in diameter. Marginal crack after 30 days
25–Chenango apple leaf........	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	August 17, 1912...	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Slight discoloration
68–Apple bark................	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	August 17, 1912...	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Doubtful
25–Chenango apple leaf........	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	August 17, 1912...	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Doubtful
68–Apple bark................	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	August 17, 1912...	Wound to wood; moist chamber	2	Failed
82–Apple bark................	Lady Blush.....	Mature........	May 9, 1913......	Wound by cut; no moisture	2	Failed
82–Apple bark................	Lady Blush.....	Mature........	May 9, 1913......	Bark broken by bruise of shoe; no moisture	2	Failed
82–Apple bark................	Lady Blush.....	Mature........	May 9, 1913......	Natural wound left by sucker	2	Failed
82–Apple bark................	Lady Blush.....	Mature........	May 9, 1913......	Wound by cut; no moisture.	2	Failed
82–Apple bark................	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	May 12, 1913.....	Wound to wood by cut.....	4	Failed
82–Apple bark................	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	May 12, 1913.....	Bruise by shoe............	3	Failed
82–Apple bark................	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	May 20, 1913.....	Bruise by shoe on 8th day previous	5	100 per cent infection. Slowly spreading. Growth stopped by June 15
Check........................	Twenty Ounce..	Mature........	May 20, 1913.....	Bruise by shoe on 8th day previous	5	No infection

82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	May 20, 1913	Freshly bruised by shoe	2	Failed
82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	May 20, 1913	Bruise made 8 days previous	2	100 per cent infection. Slowly spreading. Growth ceased by June 15
82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	May 22, 1913	Wound by cut	6	50 per cent infection (mycelium used). Cankers 2 cm. in diameter after 2 months
82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	May 22, 1913	Wound by cut	1	Failed (spores used)
Check	Twenty Ounce	Mature	May 22, 1913	Wound by cut	1	No infection
82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	June 6, 1913	Wound by cut	5	100 per cent infection. Cankers about 2 x 3 cm. after 7 weeks
82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	June 18, 1913	Wound barely through epidermis	3	Cankers 1.5 cm. in diameter after 5 weeks
82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	June 18, 1913	Wound to wood	3	Cankers 2 cm. in diameter after 5 weeks
82–Apple bark	Baldwin twigs	Mature	July 16, 1913	Wound to wood	4	3 slight infections; 1 canker 1 cm. in diameter
Check	Baldwin twigs	Mature	July 16, 1913	Wound to wood	1	No infection
82–Apple bark	Chenango	Mature	July 16, 1913	Wound to wood	4	2 slight infections; 2 cankers 1 x 1.3 cm. after 1 week
82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 16, 1913	Wound to wood	9	7 cankers developed, averaging 1 cm. after 2 weeks
Check	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 16, 1913	Wound to wood	3	No infection
82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 17, 1913	Wound to wood	5	5 cankers, averaging 1 cm. after 1 week
Check	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 17, 1913	Wound to wood	1	No infection
82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 16, 1913	Wound by inserting red-hot scalpel	4	4 cankers, averaging 1.5 cm. after 1 week
Check	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 16, 1913	Wound by inserting red-hot scalpel	1	No infection
82–Apple bark	Twenty Ounce	Mature	July 16, 1913	Wound by bruise	4	4 cankers averaging 1 x 1.5 cm. after 1 week
82–Apple bark	Baldwin	2 years	December 9, 1913	Wound by slit with scalpel	4	4 cankers after 1 week
Check	Baldwin	2 years	December 9, 1913	Wound by slit with scalpel	2	No infections

TABLE 4 (*concluded*)

Source and number of strain	Variety inoculated	Age of tree	Date of inoculation	Conditions provided	Number of incisions	Results
82–Apple bark	Baldwin	3 years	July 25, 1914	Wound by slit with scalpel	9	9 cankers, averaging about 1 x 3 cm. after 1 month
82–Apple bark	Northern Spy	3 years	July 30, 1914	Wound by slit with scalpel	9	All developed cankers, averaging 1 x 3 to 4 cm. after a month
82–Apple bark	Baldwin	3 years	July 30, 1914	Wound by slit with scalpel	1	Canker 1.4 x 4.8 cm. after 1 month
82–Apple bark	Baldwin	3 years	July 30, 1914	Wound by slit with scalpel	6	Cankers in each case, averaging 1 x 7 cm. after 1 month
82–Apple bark	Gilliflower	Mature	October 5, 1914	Wound by slit with scalpel	4	Failed

wound in which to initiate the relationship, and moisture until infection has occurred.

Associated species.— It has been noted elsewhere that the fungus *Schizophyllum commune* Fr. was suspected as being the cause of canker (Waite, 1898 a). This apprehension was undoubtedly based on association of the fruiting body of the organism with the lesions, as it is common to find this fungus fruiting on old cankered limbs. Paddock (1898 a) cultured this species and after inoculating apple limbs concluded that it was not the cause of the disease.

The rôle of associated species in the production of canker on apple is taken up somewhat at length by C. E. Lewis (1912). In Maine the fungi most frequently found on dying twigs and branches of apple are *Sphaeropsis Malorum*, *Myxosporium corticolum* Edgerton, *Coryneum foliicolum* Fckl., *Cytospora* sp., *Phoma Mali* Schulz & Sacc., and *Coniothyrium pirina* (Sacc.) Sheldon. Those often developing in plate cultures were: *Phyllosticta limitata* Peck, *Dematium pullulans* De Bary, *Cladosporium herbarum* (Pers.) Link, *Alternaria* sp., *Macrosporium* sp., *Fusarium* sp., *Epicoccum* sp., and *Glomerella cingulata* (Stonem.) Sp. & von Sch. To this list the writer adds *Septoria* sp., *Cephalothecium roseum* Cda., and *Aspergillus* sp. C. E. Lewis (1912:62) concludes "that Coryneum and Phoma can cause considerable injury to young trees and branches of orchard trees. Myxosporium and Cytospora do not attack healthy branches but it seems probable that they attack weakened branches." The writer's results with the various associated fungi may be summarized by the statement that none of the species enumerated above made growth on apple bark.

CROSS-INOCULATIONS AND HOST RELATIONSHIPS (Plates VIII, IX, XI, XIV). The identity of the various species of Sphaeropsis on the same and on different plants has been established in certain cases. That the species on the fruit of apple is the same as that on the bark was proved by Paddock (1899 b, 1900) several years ago, and confirmed by Potebnia (1907) more recently. A similar relationship for the fruit and foliage forms of the fungus has been proved by Morse (1909), while Scott and Rorer (1908) have demonstrated the identity of the organism on leaves and bark. The ability of these three forms to grow interchangeably on the several organs of the apple is no longer questioned, and the results of previous investigations are essentially confirmed by the writer in tables 1, 2, 3, and 4.

The pycnidial stage of *Physalospora Cydoniae* Arnaud (*Sphaeropsis Malorum* Berk.) has been collected by various investigators (Paddock, Arnaud, the writer, and others) on the following plants: apple (*Pyrus malus* L.), apricot (*Prunus armeniaca* L.), alder (*Alnus glutinosa* Gaertn.),

TABLE 5. RESULTS OF CROSS-INOCULATIONS WITH PURE CULTURES OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE FROM VARIOUS HOSTS*

Host from which fungus was obtained		Host inoculated																
		Apple (*Pyrus malus*)			Quince (*Cydonia vulgaris*)		Pear (*Pyrus communis*)	Crab (*Pyrus coronaria*)	Peach (*Prunus persica*)	Sweet cherry (*Prunus avium*)	Sumac (*Rhus typhina*)	Mulberry (*Morus alba*)	Maple (*Acer spicatum*)	Maple (*Acer pennsylvanicum*)	Ash (*Fraxinus americana*)	Elm (*Ulmus americana*)	Witch-hazel (*Hamamelis virginiana*)	Chestnut (*Castanea dentata*)
		Bark	Fruit	Foliage	Bark	Foliage	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark
Apple (*Pyrus malus*)	Bark	259 +210 — 49	48 +45 — 3	512 + 58 —454	27 +10 —17	134 + 30 —104	40 +22 —18	9 +7 —2	14 + 2 —12	5 —5	2 +1 —1	9 —9	2 —2	9 —9	2 —2	6 —6	16 —16	10 +1 —9
	Fruit	1 +1	1 +1	10 +10	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
	Foliage	10 +4 —6	.....	.....	1 —1	.....	1 —1	2 +2	2 —2	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
	Wood	4 +3 —1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2 +2	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Quince (*Cydonia vulgaris*)	Bark	10 +5 —5	.....	.....	5 —5	.....	.....	2 +2	2 —2	.....	2 +1 —1	2 —2	.....	.....	2 —2	4 —4	.....	.....
	Fruit	6 +4 —2	4 +4	10 —10	4 —4	.....	7 +2 —5	2 —2	2 +2	.....	.....	4 —4	.....	.....	.....	2 —2	.....	.....
	Foliage	6 +4 —2	.....	.....	.....	.....	2 +2	2 +2	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Pear (*Pyrus communis*)	Bark	10 +6 —4	3 +3	25 —25	11 —11	.....	6 +2 —4	4 —4	4 +2 —2	.....	5 +2 —3	8 —8	.....	.....	4 +2 —2	8 —8	.....	.....
	Fruit	3 +3	.....	.....	2 —2	.....	5 +5	2 —2	2 —2	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

Crab (*Pyrus coronaria*)	Bark	12 +10 — 2	1 —1	50 —50	5 —5	......	4 +4	4 +2 —2	4 +2 —2	......	2 —2	......	2 —2	......	2 —2	4 —4	......	......
Peach (*Prunus persica*)	Bark	6 +1 —5	8 +6 —2	30 —30	4 —4	......	......	......	12 +10 —2	......	......	......	......	......	......	2 —2	......	......
Sweet cherry (*Prunus avium*)	Bark	4 +4	......	......	4 —4	......	2 +2	2 +2	2 —2	5 —5	2 —2	2 —2	......	......	2 —2	2 —2	......	......
Sumac (*Rhus typhina*)	Bark	11 +3 —8	8 +7 —1	......	5 —5	......	2 +2	4 +4	4 +2 —2	......	2 —2	2 +1 —1	2 —2	......	2 —2	4 —4	......	......
Mulberry (*Morus alba*)	Bark	12 +6 —6	1 +1	......	5 —5	......	6 +3 —3	7 +2 —5	10 +4 —6	......	......	7 —7	2 —2	......	4 +2 —2	8 —8	......	......
Maple (*Acer spicatum*)	Bark	6 +4 —2	......	......	6 +1 —5	......	5 +4 —1	4 +2 —2	4 —4	......	3 +1 —2	2 —2	2 —2	......	2 —2	2 —2	......	......
Ash (*Fraxinus americana*)	Bark	......	......	......	2 —2	......	3 +1 —2	2 —2	2 +2	......	......	2 —2	2 —2	......	2 —2	2 —2	......	......
Witch-hazel (*Hamamelis virginiana*)	Bark	7 +2 —5	......	......	2 —2	......	4 +2 —2	4 —4	2 —2	......	2 —2	2 —2	2 —2	......	2 —2	2 —2	......	......
Elm (*Ulmus americana*)	Bark	3 +3	......	......	2 —2	......	2 +2	2 —2	2 —2	......	......	......	......	......	......	2 —2	......	......
Basswood (*Tilia americana*)	Bark	3 +2 —1	......	......	2 —2	......	2 +1 —1	2 —2	2 —2	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......
Chestnut oak (*Quercus prinus*)	Bark	21 +21	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	3 —3	......	......	6 —6	10 +10

---

*The first number indicates the number of inoculations made. The numbers with a plus sign represent the number of infections; the minus sign indicates failure to infect.

TABLE 5. RESULTS OF CROSS-INOCULATIONS WITH PURE CULTURES OF PHYSALOSPORA CYDONIAE FROM VARIOUS HOSTS*

Host from which fungus was obtained		Host inoculated																
		Apple (*Pyrus malus*)			Quince (*Cydonia vulgaris*)		Pear (*Pyrus communis*)	Crab (*Pyrus coronaria*)	Peach (*Prunus persica*)	Sweet cherry (*Prunus avium*)	Sumac (*Rhus typhina*)	Mulberry (*Morus alba*)	Maple (*Acer spicatum*)	Maple (*Acer pennsylvanicum*)	Ash (*Fraxinus americana*)	Elm (*Ulmus americana*)	Witch-hazel (*Hamamelis virginiana*)	Chestnut (*Castanea dentata*)
		Bark	Fruit	Foliage	Bark	Foliage	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark	Bark
Apple (*Pyrus malus*)	Bark	259 +210 — 49	48 +45 — 3	512 + 58 —454	27 +10 —17	134 + 30 —104	40 +22 —18	9 +7 —2	14 + 2 —12	5 —5	2 +1 —1	9 —9	2 —2	9 —9	2 —2	6 —6	16 —16	10 +1 —9
	Fruit	1 +1	1 +1	10 +10														
	Foliage	10 +4 —6			1 —1		1 —1	2 +2	2 —2									
	Wood	4 +3 —1						2 +2										
Quince (*Cydonia vulgaris*)	Bark	10 +5 —5			5 —5			2 +2	2 —2		2 +1 —1	2 —2			2 —2	4 —4		
	Fruit	6 +4 —2	4 +4	10 —10	4 —4		7 +2 —5	2 —2	2 +2			4 —4				2 —2		
	Foliage	6 +4 —2					2 +2	2 +2										
Pear (*Pyrus communis*)	Bark	10 +6 —4	3 +3	25 —25	11 —11		6 +2 —4	4 —4	4 +2 —2		5 +2 —3	8 —8			4 +2 —2	8 —8		
	Fruit	3 +3			2 —2		5 +5	2 —2	2 —2									

Crab (*Pyrus coronaria*)	Bark	12 +10 — 2	1 —1	50 —50	5 —5	......	4 +4	4 +2 —2	4 +2 —2	......	2 —2	......	2 —2	......	2 —2	4 —4	......	......
Peach (*Prunus persica*)	Bark	6 +1 —5	8 +6 —2	30 —30	4 —4	......	......	......	12 +10 —2	......	......	......	......	......	......	2 —2	......	......
Sweet cherry (*Prunus avium*)	Bark	4 +4	......	......	4 —4	......	2 +2	2 +2	2 —2	5 —5	2 —2	2 —2	......	......	2 —2	2 —2	......	......
Sumac (*Rhus typhina*)	Bark	11 +3 —8	8 +7 —1	......	5 —5	......	2 +2	4 +4	4 +2 —2	......	2 —2	2 +1 —1	2 —2	......	2 —2	4 —4	......	......
Mulberry (*Morus alba*)	Bark	12 +6 —6	1 +1	......	5 —5	......	6 +3 —3	7 +2 —5	10 +4 —6	......	......	7 —7	2 —2	......	4 +2 —2	8 —8	......	......
Maple (*Acer spicatum*)	Bark	6 +4 —2	......	......	6 +1 —5	......	5 +4 —1	4 +2 —2	4 —4	......	3 +1 —2	2 —2	2 —2	......	2 —2	2 —2	......	......
Ash (*Fraxinus americana*)	Bark	......	......	......	2 —2	......	3 +1 —2	2 —2	2 +2	......	......	2 —2	2 —2	......	2 —2	2 —2	......	......
Witch-hazel (*Hamamelis virginiana*)	Bark	7 +2 —5	......	......	2 —2	......	4 +2 —2	4 —4	2 —2	......	2 —2	2 —2	2 —2	......	2 —2	2 —2	......	......
Elm (*Ulmus americana*)	Bark	3 +3	......	......	2 —2	......	2 +2	2 —2	2 —2	......	......	......	......	......	......	2 —2	......	......
Basswood (*Tilia americana*)	Bark	3 +2 —1	......	......	2 —2	......	2 +1 —1	2 —2	2 —2	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......
Chestnut oak (*Quercus prinus*)	Bark	21 +21	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	3 —3	......	......	6 —6	10 +10

*The first number indicates the number of inoculations made. The numbers with a plus sign represent the number of infections; the minus sign indicates failure to infect.

ash (*Fraxinus americana* L.), basswood (*Tilia americana* L.), bittersweet (*Celastrus scandens* L.), box elder (*Acer negundo* L.), cherry (*Prunus avium* L., *P. pennsylvanica* L., *P. virginiana* L.), cherry laurel (*Prunus lauro-cerasus* L.), crab (*Pyrus coronaria* L.), currant (*Ribes* sp.), dogwood (*Cornus stolonifera* Michx., *C. sanguinea* L.), elder (*Sambucus canadensis* L.), elm (*Ulmus americana* L.), fig (*Ficus carica* L.), grape (*Vitis* sp.), hawthorn (*Crataegus oxyacantha* L.), hop hornbeam (*Ostrya virginica* [Mill.] K. Koch), lilac (*Syringa vulgaris* L.), maple (*Acer saccharinum* L.), mulberry (*Morus alba* L.), oak (*Quercus alba* L., *Q. prinus* L.), osage orange (*Maclura pomifera* [Raf.] Schneider), peach (*Prunus persica* [L.] Stokes), pear (*Pyrus communis* L.), persimmon (*Diospyros virginiana* L.), pine (*Pinus strobus* L.), plum (*Prunus domestica* L., *P. triflora* Roxbg.), quince (*Cydonia vulgaris* Pers.), rose (*Rosa canina* L., *Rosa* sp.), rose of sharon (*Hibiscus syriacus* L.), spicebush (*Benzoin aestivale* [L.] Nees), sumac (*Rhus typhina* L., *R. glabra* L.), sycamore (*Platanus orientalis* L.), witch-hazel (*Hamamelis virginiana* L.). Where fresh material was available the writer cultured the fungus from all these plants except three — dogwood, lilac, and rose of sharon, which have just been collected — and these cultures were used in all cross-inoculation experiments. The source of the cultures used, the plants inoculated, and the results, are shown in table 5. The methods used were similar to those described in connection with the inoculation experiments on apple fruit (page 183). In some of the earlier experiments a moist chamber was used consisting of a petri-dish lid, the inner margin of which was lined with damp cotton. Later the glass lid was eliminated and a cotton cap, made by rolling a strip of cotton about the finger, was employed. Moisture was provided at the time of inoculation and was added daily for several (usually from three to seven) days subsequently.

The results of cross-inoculations were not conclusive, particularly in cases in which the fungus failed to develop. Failure to produce infection may be accounted for in two ways: either the fungus was not parasitic on the plant inoculated, or conditions favorable for infection were lacking. In many cases further trials are desirable.

In nature the fungus rarely shows a parasitic tendency on wild plants — with the exception of *Quercus prinus* (see Rankin, 1914) — but it is generally found developing on dead and fallen twigs; cankers have not been observed which could with certainty be attributed to this organism. On cultivated plants it commonly shows the same habits as it does on wild plants, or it may develop in healthy tissues, resulting in the formation of a canker. Here, then, on the cultivated plants are found both saprophytic and parasitic tendencies. This phenomenon is in accordance with the commonly accepted theory that parasitism originated from saprophytism. This is what is to be expected; and the theory is further supported by inoculation data which show that the strains from wild plants may be induced to infect cultivated plants. The reverse process — that is, the infection of wild plants with strains from either cultivated or wild forms — has been almost wholly unsuccessful in the writer's experience. This in the main confirms the work of Paddock (1899 b, 1900).

On certain wild plants there is found a saprophytic race which, when carried to cultivated forms such as the apple or the pear, acts as a wound parasite. On cultivated plants the fungus follows fire blight and winter injury, and hence is a saprophyte, but the latter strains are not necessarily obligate saprophytes since they have been induced to cause canker by artificial inoculation. This is shown by strains 22, 38, 57, and 70 in table 4. It does not appear, therefore, that the fungus can be segregated easily into physiological groups, since varying degrees of parasitism are exhibited by a given race.

From the experiments described and tabulated it is clear that there is considerable variation in the virulence of races, but just how long a given parasitic strain will retain this mode of life is a difficult question to answer. The ability of the organism to act as a wound parasite, and to adapt itself naturally to the saprophytic mode, makes it a serious pest from the standpoint of control. Its ability to remain saprophytic indefinitely until the host is injured in some way only increases the difficulty in alleviating the disease.

NAMES AND SYNONYMY

The work that has been done on cross-inoculations and on the morphology of Sphaeropsis from several different plants makes it apparent that there is one large polymorphic species. It is true that many inoculations failed, and that two given races may differ widely in their morphology; but there is considerable evidence that these characters are variable and are not important in taxonomic considerations.

The several forms as they have been described from time to time have been given a specific name, usually one for every host plant. This procedure has resulted in the accumulation of a large number of specific names which could now be disposed of only by the examination of type material of each so-called species. Several generic names have become involved in the synonymy of the fungus, due to the indefinite limitations and wide variations, and consequent overlapping, of certain form-genera. Saccardo (1884 a) believed *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Berk. to be a Phoma, since it was originally described by Berkeley (1836) as having yellowish green spores. It is now known that the young spores have this color characteristically, and furthermore Dr. C. L. Shear, who has seen Berkeley's type, has stated (in conversation with Dr. Donald Reddick, of Cornell University) that the organism is unquestionably identical with *Sphaeropsis Malorum* as now recognized. Subsequent to Saccardo's use of the name *Phoma*, this genus was divided into Phoma and Macrophoma — the former genus containing species with spores less than 15 μ long, the latter containing species with spores more than 15 μ long. Thus *Phoma Malorum* (Berk.) Sacc. was renamed by Berlese and Voglino (1886) as *Macrophoma Malorum* (Berk.) Berl. & Vogl.

It appears that certain species of Sphaeropsis have been confused with those of Diplodia. The two genera are separated on the basis of one-celled spores in the former and two-celled spores in the latter. But both genera fail in their chief distinction, so that mycologists have been misled on this point. Fückel (1869:393) used the name *Diplodia pseudo-diplodia* Fckl. in describing the fungus on branches of apple; elsewhere (page 395 of same reference) he used *Diplodia Malorum* Fckl.

It has been noted previously that the pycnidium sometimes approaches and even reaches the condition characteristic of the form-genus Botryodiplodia. It becomes evident that the names of certain species of this genus may stand only as synonyms of *Physalospora Cydoniae* Arnaud.

The origin of several of these synonyms has been discussed in an earlier paper by the writer (1912), to which the reader is referred. At that time it seemed desirable to attempt the selection of the name that should, according to the rules of priority, be applied to the pycnidial stage. Recently, however, the perfect stage of the fungus has been found, and thus the selection of a specific name from the pycnidial forms is of minor importance. The generic name now becomes Physalospora, and the writer has chosen *Cydoniae* as the specific name. The following statements bearing on this question are quoted from another paper by the writer (1913:295):

> The problem of selecting a specific name is somewhat perplexing. The organism with which the writer is dealing strongly resembles *P. Cydoniae* Arnaud but we have not seen his type material and there remains the question of whether his fungus has not been previously described. In this connection a few species which suggest this possibility may be noted: *P. entaxia* E. & E., *P. festucae* (Lib.) Sacc. and *P. nigropunctata* Romell, the last on limbs of *Pyrus malus* according to Saccardo. Until further data are at hand the writer is inclined to accept tentatively the name *Physalospora Cydoniae* Arnaud.

Soon after the above-mentioned paper appeared in print, the writer received from Arnaud a glycerin-jelly mount of his type material. It is clear that morphologically the organism is identical with the one described by the writer (1913) under the same name. But the question of the specific name is still unsettled, for it is not improbable, as stated above, that the organism has been previously described under some other specific name. This problem, as in the case of the several pycnidial forms, would involve the study of type material, which as yet has not been available to the writer. Under the circumstances Arnaud's specific name will be retained tentatively by the writer. The following is a partial list of species which are concerned in the synonymy of the fungus; citations to literature are also given:

Physalospora Cydoniae Arnaud. École Nat. d'Agr. Montpellier. Ann. **12**:7. 1912.

Sphaeria sumachi Schw. Amer. Phil. Soc. Trans. n. s. **4**:205. 1834.
Sphaeria rhuina Schw. Amer. Phil. Soc. Trans. n. s. **4**:218. 1834.
Sphaeria pomorum Schw. Amer. Phil. Soc. Trans. n. s. **4**:219. 1834.
Sphaeria Malorum Berk. English Flora **5**:257–258. 1836.
Diplodia pseudodiplodia Fckl. Symbolae Mycologicae, p. 393. 1869.
Diplodia Malorum Fckl. Symbolae Mycologicae, p. 395. 1869.
Sphaeropsis Cydoniae C. & E. Grevillea **6**:84. 1878.
Sphaeropsis Malorum Peck. Sylloge Fungorum **3**:294. 1884.

Several years ago Ellis (1880) studied the variability of *Botryosphaeria fuliginosa* (M. & N.) E. & E. [= *Sphaeria Quercuum* Schw.], and came to the conclusion that this species really included at least eighteen so-called species. Among these may be noted, using Ellis's nomenclature, *Sphaeria entaxia* C. & E. [= *Physalospora entaxia* Sacc.], *S. viscosa* C. & E. [= *P. viscosa* Sacc.], *S. erratica* C. & E. [= *P. erratica* Sacc.], *Botryosphaeria pustulata* Sacc., and others. Ellis found wide variation with respect to stromatic formation. Sometimes the perithecia were scattered and distinct, and again they were confluent and united in a stroma. Considerable range with respect to the ostiolum is also noted by Ellis (1880). But, as stated by Ellis and Everhart (1892:547), certain forms of *Botryosphaeria fuliginosa*—those lacking a stroma—are removed to the genus Physalospora. It may be that under certain conditions *P. Cydoniae* develops a stroma, but such a tendency has not been observed; for this reason the generic name Physalospora is selected.

LIFE HISTORY STUDIES

The mature morphological structures of the fungus have been described, so that the following paragraphs concern only the successive stages in its development: where and in what condition the organism hibernates, the manner in which it is disseminated, its entrance and effects on the plants attacked, and the development of certain of its fruiting bodies.

SOURCE OF THE INOCULUM. The fungus passes the winter as mycelium in the tissues of the host and as pycnospores in pycnidia. If a canker is examined in the spring when growth is resumed by the host plant, the margin of the old lesion may show discoloration. The writer has frequently planted bits of the bark from the edge of a canker in agar plates, pure cultures resulting. This is evidence of the resumption of growth of the mycelium in the old lesion. It is stated by Caesar (1909) that as a rule the fungus does not die out but continues to extend in every direction year after year, finally girdling the limb. In this connection Paddock (1899 b: 189) writes as follows: "In some instances the mycelium apparently lives over winter and continues its growth the following spring. The formation of the largest cankers can scarcely be explained in any other way." He adds, however, that "in all of the inoculations made in the spring of 1898, in only one instance did the resulting canker enlarge any during the present season."

The writer's experience in this regard is somewhat similar, although more cankers have enlarged the second year than is intimated by Paddock. On this point there appears to be a difference in orchards. In one orchard the author counted forty cankers on three trees on May 20, 1912. All were formed at least one year previously, but only one showed advancement at the margin on this date. In other orchards a majority of the cankers were enlarging. The vitality of the trees does not seem to explain the difference displayed, since this quality appeared similar in the two cases mentioned. The trees in the two orchards were of the same variety (Twenty Ounce); here the question of physiological races may throw light on the subject.

It has been suggested that the mycelium may winter over in mummified fruit, and that in cases in which the fruit hangs on the tree the hyphæ may pass into the branch supporting it (Anonymous reference, 1899 c, page 126). The latter condition has not been observed by the writer. In some cases the mycelium hibernates in the mummified fruit, but the passage of the hyphæ down into the branch and the resulting development of a canker is questionable.

The growth of the mycelium at the edge of a lesion, as described above, does not account for new and isolated cankers. The phenomenon results nevertheless, indirectly, in a source of inoculum, in that fruit bodies may develop on the newly infected margin and so furnish spores which may cause other infections directly. The young cankers originate by the agency of the spores of the fungus.

It is a common thing to find, in the winter and spring, pycnidia bearing mature spores on mummified fruits. These fruiting bodies may be observed also on cankers and on fallen twigs, bark, and leaves. In western New York cankers and dead twigs are the most important sources of the inoculum.

The hibernation of pycnospores on the various organs of the tree is reported by a number of investigators: on the bark, fallen twigs, and cankers, by Paddock (1899 b: 189), by Brooks and DeMeritt (1912: 189), and by Scott and Rorer (1908: 52); on fallen leaves by Reed and Cooley (1911); on the fruit, as mummies hanging on the tree or fallen, by Scott and Rorer (1908:52) and by Brooks (1909). Other writers have confirmed all these observations. These spores in winter have been placed in room temperature, and were subsequently found to be capable of germination in tap water. There is evidence that pycnospores may also winter over scattered about on the bark; they have been found in early spring before the pycnidia have entered their period of spore discharge.

The rôle of the ascosporic stage in hibernation is not certain. As previously indicated, the perithecia are rare on *Pyrus malus* in New York, and it would seem, therefore, that the ascospores from this source are of relatively little importance in initiating infections. Whether this stage is common on other plants in this State, and important as a source of inoculum, are matters remaining to be investigated.

METHOD OF SPORE DISCHARGE. The manner in which the pycnospores escape from the pycnidium has not been fully described, so far as the writer knows. Berkeley (1836) makes mention of the process as follows: "When dry the ostiolum is frequently crowned with a short minute tendril oozing out from the perithecium." Halsted (1892) writes: "The ripe spores . . . . form long, slender coils as they are pushed out of the small hole in the skin." Similar descriptions of the process are given by Clinton (1902) and by Evans (1910).

If a bit of bark or of fruit bearing pycnidia is placed under moist conditions, in a few hours dark masses of spores in the form of a coil may be seen (Plate XIII, 4). In one experiment the following notes were taken: "Twigs of an apple strain (no. 82) bearing mature brown pycnospores were placed in a moist chamber on May 20, 1913, at 3 p. m. By noon on May 23 the dark masses could be seen with the naked eye. These masses measure about 200 to 250 μ by 400 to 450 μ." At this time it was observed that the masses stood out from the surface of the bark nearly five millimeters. They were very easily removed by a needle and examined under the microscope. It was observed that on the side of the mass nearest the bark several spores had germinated, and the resulting hyphæ had raised the mass away from the surface of the bark. A drop of water was added to one mass, which behaved as follows: In a few seconds the mass began to segregate, and single spores or groups of a few moved very quickly, with a darting motion, from the mass. They were at first thrown through the drop of water as far as 85 μ and they then moved slowly away. After forty-five minutes the spores had scattered in all directions, from 1500 to 2800 μ from the original point of departure. The coil in some cases contained about 1500 mature spores and in some experiments proved to be at least one millimeter in length. It has been estimated by the writer that there may be as many as 150 pycnidia on a square centimeter of the surface of an apple fruit; this would furnish approximately 225,000 spores for the given unit area, or 1,406,250 spores per square inch of apple surface.

As stated in the notes quoted above, the spore coils were found on the bark three days after moisture was supplied. But this does not mean that all this time was involved in the process of escape. The pycnidia were found to be closed at first and considerable time must have been consumed in their opening. In other experiments as long a period as five days was necessary to effect the opening in some cases. The time that actually intervenes between admission of moisture to the spore mass within the pycnidium and the coiling of the spores is negligible. Pycnidia have been removed from dry bark in the summer, placed on dry slides, and observed with the microscope. If a drop of water is then applied, the spores will ooze out immediately provided the ostiole is open. Their fate after coiling seems to depend on the amount of moisture present. If a beating rain is falling, undoubtedly the spores are carried by the spattering drops toward the ground and perchance lodge on the foliage or on the branches. In case of a dew, unquestionably the coil behaves as described above; that is, some of the spores on the lower side of the mass germinate, the resulting weft of germ tubes raising the spores from the bark, when they may be lifted by the wind. Again, if the mass encounters a drop of water the gelatinous material quickly expands and the spores are scattered throughout the drop. It is conceivable that the drop may be carried by the wind for a short distance at least.

TIME OF SPORE DISCHARGE. The time of the year when spores are disseminated may be approximated by noting the date of the first appearance of the diseased spots, and by keeping careful watch of the behavior of the pycnidia in the field. It is believed by I. M. Lewis (1908) that the period when foliage is naturally infected is early in the spring and summer. The same opinion is expressed by Brooks (1909), who states that the indications are that leaf infection ceases in June. Later, however, Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:189) attach little value to this statement, expressing the opinion that the nature of the fungus was a factor overlooked by previous investigators and that weather conditions may play a part in determination of the time of infection.

Paddock (1899 b:189) states that many spores remain in pycnidia until the following spring, when they are disseminated. Wolf (1910) has made a study of the prevalence of fungus spores in orchards by exposing agar plates, and his conclusions are expressed as follows (page 202 of reference cited): "At no time during the period in which exposures were made (September to May, inclusive) were viable spores of *Sphaeropsis malorum* present in the atmosphere of the orchard." McCready (1910) reports mature spores as being disseminated from cankers as early as the first week in April, and states that at the same time a large number of spores were found in the orchard on rotten apples. In Virginia, at Blacksburg, Reed and Cooley (1911) found spores being discharged from pycnidia on leaves on June 25, 1910. Whether spores are liberated at an earlier date these authors do not state, but it is probable that such is the case.

From observations made by the writer it seems that the date of first discharge in the spring varies with the season. Apparently the ostiole does not open at a temperature below 60° F. (15.5° C.) or in the absence of moisture, and a period of humidity of several hours duration is necessary. The dates for spore discharge observed at Byron, New York, are May 16, 1912, and May 12 and 23, 1913. In 1911 spores were found coiling on July 17, but the process must have occurred earlier. That they continue to be liberated throughout the summer is shown by the appearance of new infections on foliage from May until September 20, 1913. In 1911 several young spots were found on bark in the middle of August. Ripe and green fruit infections also show that spores are disseminated in August and September.

AGENTS OF DISSEMINATION. It is clear that the behavior of the pycnospores on being discharged places them at the disposal of wind, rain, and possibly insects, depending largely on the conditions of moisture. Halsted (1892) states that "the germs pass . . . . through the air or by means of the various insects that visit the fruits, especially those with broken surfaces due to partial decay." A similar opinion is expressed by Sturgis (1894). Lamson (1902:76) states that the spores are easily floated in slight currents of air, while Bethune (1909:29) and McCready (1910) attribute dissemination to the wind.

The writer has observed numerous cases of the disease in isolated situations. In some orchards there was abundant leaf spot but no cankers were on the trees. Here the wind probably acted as the agent, carrying the spores from plants outside the orchard. That the rain washes the spores to the foliage is shown by the cone-shaped area of infections beneath cankers and diseased fruits.

Insects are no doubt agents in the dissemination of the organism. The gelatinous nature of the spores renders them sticky and they may adhere to the feet of insects. In June, 1913, the writer found spores on the feet of the rosy apple aphis (*Aphis sorbi* Kaltenbach), but it is his opinion that insects are of little importance in carrying the spores. Their rôle in making openings in the fruit and bark is probably much more important.

INFECTION COURTS. The fungus shows little preference for any particular type of injury as a means of entrance. It is not able to penetrate healthy tissue of the bark and fruit, but follows other fungi such as *Glomerella cingulata* (Stonem.) S. and vS. on fruit, as noted by Alwood

(1902:257). Other points of entrance to fruit, as listed by Burrill and Blair (1901), are insect punctures, mechanical injuries, and the blossom end of the apple. These authors state also that the fungus seems to start without the aid of a wound. The writer has noted many cases in which young lesions on the apple surrounded an opening made by the codling moth (*Carpocapsa pomonella* L.). Delacroix (1903 a:140) is disposed to believe that in some cases certain insects are able to rupture the bark, especially that of young branches. He observed an abundance of *Epidiaspis piricola* (Del Guer.) Ckl. on infected areas, and is of the opinion that these insects are concerned here. Güssow (1911) states that "apples are infected through some injury (wasps, curculio, hail, etc., etc.)." Arnaud (1912) believes that there is some connection between the entrance of the fungus, and a beetle.

Observations show also that various mechanical injuries commonly serve as points of entrance for the fungus. Such injuries as limb and hail bruises may act in this capacity. Faurot (1912) states that rot occurs largely on fruits the skin of which was previously broken by spray injury and growth cracks.

Whether the healthy epidermis of the fruit is penetrated, as suggested by Burrill and Blair (1901), is open to question. The writer has never been able to infect unbroken tissues of the apple fruit. On the foliage, artificial inoculations by various investigators — Scott and Rorer (1908), Brooks and DeMeritt (1912), and others — show that the fungus can penetrate healthy leaf tissues. The author, however, has never been successful in producing leaf spot without first wounding the tissue. Infections in the bark apparently occur only through some sort of wound. Such injuries may be caused by growth cracks, as noted by Caesar (1909); by ladders and boots, in pruning and picking; by barking by the machinery, in cultivation; by props not carefully wrapped; by hail; by openings left by the careless removal of water sprouts; and in other ways. Of fifteen young cankers observed by the writer on a single tree, ten had their origin in openings left by the removal of suckers. The writer has observed cases in which the fungus had followed the rust fungus, *Gymnosporangium Juniperi-virginianae* Schw., on apple twigs. Scott and Rorer (1909:11) suggest that it may follow *Phyllosticta solitaria* E. & E. on apple buds. The writer has frequently isolated the fungus from lesions caused by the blotch fungus (*P. solitaria*) on apple fruits sent from Indiana. As previously noted, the fungus frequently follows fire blight and winter injury. Morse and Lewis (1910) state that in Maine orchards much of the disease that was called canker had its origin in frost spots of 1906–1907, and that so far as investigated the cankers of fruit trees in Maine orchards had their origin in wounds.

PYCNOSPORE GERMINATION (Fig. 29). The pycnospores usually germinate readily in tap or rain water. The time required for the process varies considerably, depending, no doubt, on the age of the spores. If they overwinter, the question of their longevity arises. As a rule sexual spores are regarded as short-lived, but it is not so in the case of this fungus. Duggar (1909:353) says: "The spores seem to retain their vitality for a considerable period of time, having been germinated after being stored for a year in the laboratory." The writer has found that spores two years old or older may germinate in tap water after twenty-four hours. Younger spores ordinarily germinate within five or six hours, but they may produce a tube after three hours. Spores which are dark brown in color, often septate, and having an older appearance, require more than twelve hours for germination.

Usually one or two tubes emerge from a spore at or near the end; germinations also occur at the side. The developing hyphæ in culture occasionally form microconidia, or secondary conidia, near the growing point of a hypha; these have been mentioned by Delacroix (1903 a:139), who states that they do not develop further. The writer has germinated them in tap water. In some cases peculiar types of germination occur, short, stunted tubes being developed. In other cases the process is entirely inhibited, and in certain of these cases the laying down of a cross-wall takes place instead. In one observation notes were made as follows:

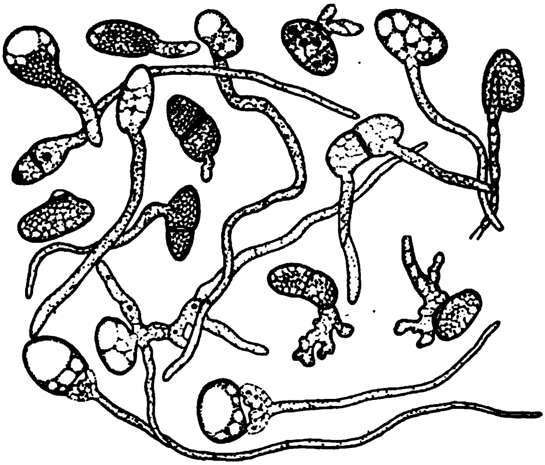


FIG. 29. TYPES AND VARIATIONS OF PYCNOSPORE GERMINATION

> Spores one-celled when collected (May 13, 1913). Placed to germinate in tap water and after twenty-four hours the two-celled spores had not germinated; the one-celled spores had developed tubes about 30μ long. After forty-two hours some of the two-celled spores developed tubes about 175μ in length, whereas the germ tubes of the one-celled forms were about 500μ long.

Again, spores placed to germinate, instead of producing a germ tube, after several days developed a septum. Another peculiar behavior of the spores is that they may fuse in pairs. Delacroix (1903 a) describes a peculiar type of germination of young and hyaline pycnospores in a solution of 2.5 per cent of glucose and 1 per cent of peptone. No cross-wall was developed. After the third day the wall broke and the contents emerged, forming a bud on the surface of the spore. This spherule may attain a diameter of from 35 to 40 μ; its further development was not followed by Delacroix. The writer has observed similar behavior of pycnospores, except that the swollen parts finally developed a germ tube. This took place in tap water. In some cases older spores burst and fail to send out a germ tube.

The effect of low temperatures on pycnospore germination was noticed in the spring of 1913 in connection with infection experiments. On May 15, 1912, spores in drops of tap water on a glass slide were placed in a petri dish, plenty of water was supplied to prevent drying out, and the culture was placed out of doors, where the temperature ranged between 8° and 10° C. A second culture was kept at room temperature (21° C.). No germinations occurred outside, but the cultures kept in the laboratory at 21° C. gave normal germinations. On May 12, 1913, the minimum temperature was 9° C., the maximum 15.5° C. All spores out of doors failed to germinate at these temperatures, while those at 21° C. gave normal germination. On May 13, 19, and 20, 1913, when the maximum temperature was 15.5° C., similar results were obtained, except that in one culture on May 20, at 15.5° C., a very low percentage of germination was observed. This indicates that in most cases a temperature of 15.5° C. is unfavorable for germination, and that below that point germination fails. Delacroix (1903 a: 139) states that mature spores germinate after forty-eight hours at a temperature of about 16° C. (60.8° F.).

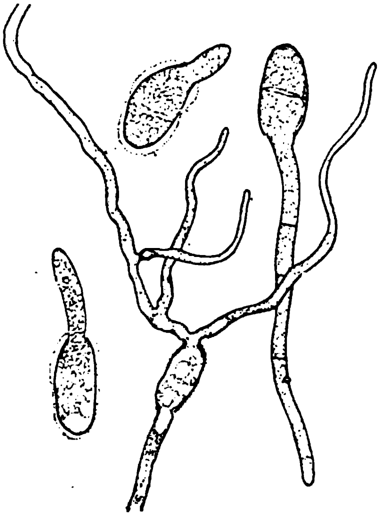


FIG. 30. STAGES IN THE GERMINATION OF ASCOSPORES

ASCOSPORE GERMINATION (Fig. 30). The ascospores germinate readily in tap water and potato agar. The time required for the process is from six to twelve hours. In some cases a septum is developed in the ascospore during germination.

INCUBATION PERIOD. The period of incubation on apple bark, as stated by Potebnia (1907: 16), is about four days. On foliage it is about five days, according to the observations of Scott and Rorer (1908: 50–51). Inoculations made by the writer on bark show that the time between inoculation and the first sign of the disease is from two to seven days, varying with the strains of the fungus used and the meteorological conditions. The average is four days. On fruit, discoloration appears after from twenty-four to forty-eight hours.

PATHOLOGICAL HISTOLOGY. *Fruit.*— If a section of an apple fruit is made perpendicular to the surface, the cuticle, epidermis, hypodermis, cortex, and scattered vascular bundles are in evidence. The epidermis is composed of a single layer of rectangular cells, the outer walls of which are strongly thickened by a waxy infiltration to form the cuticle. Immediately below the epidermal cells is the hypodermal parenchyma, the cells of which are distinctly different from those more deeply seated. They are compactly arranged, comparatively small, and oblong, with the greater diameter parallel to the surface. They contain the coloring matter of the fruit. There is a gradual transition from these cells to the large isodiametric cells that make up the mass of the apple tissue. The veinlets come from ten main veins and by continued branching the bundles become scattered, being finally lost in the cortex.

There is a sharp line of demarcation between the healthy and the diseased tissues (Plate XII, 2); this is especially noticeable in the hypodermal parenchyma. The coloring matter is abundant in the normal cells of the hypodermis; at the junction of the two regions the coloration is lost very abruptly and the tissue is a distinct brown. All the affected region is brown and the discoloration in the cortex extends beyond that in the hypodermis. Apparently the hypodermis is attacked along the advancing margin of the lesion from the cortex below. The mycelium of the fungus is found in advance of any apparent change in the normal color, and is found in the cortex first, at a point several cells in advance of the affected hypodermal cells. The hypodermis appears to be undermined. The walls of the cells in this region are greatly thickened; the process is apparent within a week after infection, and when the apple becomes mummified the lumen of the cell is nearly closed. Dandeno (1906) states that there is a production of cellulose in the cell wall of the apple in the course of its decomposition. Starch is also produced in the cells invaded by the mycelium of the fungus, but with the thickening the starch grains disappear. The excessive thickening is regarded by Dandeno as resulting in the preservation of the mummy.

The mycelium is usually, if not always, intercellular. In thick, freehand sections strands may be found crossing the cell cavity, but cell-wall penetration has not been observed. Frequently small threads appear to pass into the cell of the host from the parent branch which is in the intercellular space, but no opening in the host-cell wall has been seen.

Such hyphæ are regarded as being intercellular, merely giving the appearance of an intracellular habit because of the thickness of the section; in thin, microtomed sections the threads are found between the cells. In certain cases the hyphæ appear to be within the cells, but one may mistake a large intercellular space for a cell lumen. Dandeno (1906) states that the mycelium is intercellular, but that small threads enter the cells and even pass through them (Fig. 31).

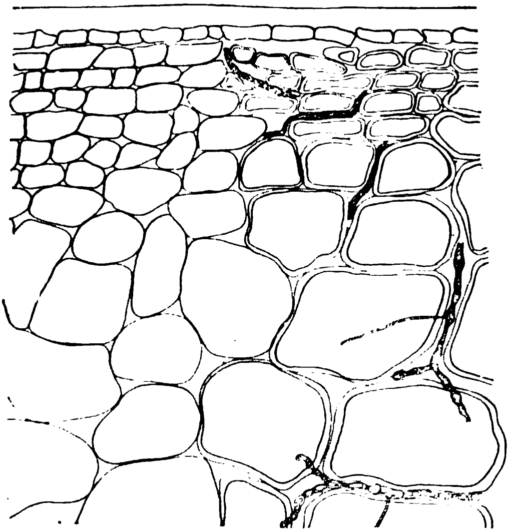


FIG. 31. HISTOLOGICAL CHANGES IN THE FRUIT OF APPLE

Showing appearance of healthy tissue at left and diseased tissue at right, and the mycelial relationship to the host cells

Leaves.— The lesion produced on the leaf is largely necrotic. The cells are brown, collapsed, and obviously dead. The average thickness of the normal apple leaf is about 142 μ, whereas that of the diseased area is about 61 μ (Fig. 32). The epidermal cells of the affected tissue are flattened and bear little resemblance to normal epidermis. The palisade cells maintain their relative position but are considerably shortened. The cells of the spongy parenchyma are shriveled and irregular in form (Fig. 32).

In some cases the lesions are limited by a vein, and, although a small vein may mark the extent of the diseased area, the larger veins more frequently act in this capacity. In cases in which the edge of the spot does not fall at a vein, a plate of cells surrounds the lesion and limits, for a time at least, the extent of the fungus.

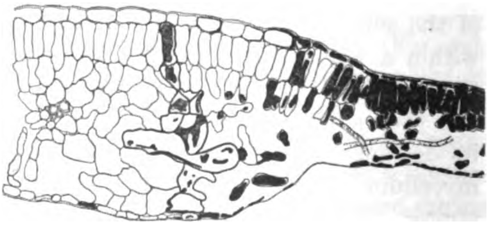


FIG. 32. HISTOLOGICAL CHANGES IN DISEASED LEAF TISSUE

Showing healthy and diseased tissue. The beginning of the suberized layer, represented by heavy-walled cells in a line from epidermis to epidermis, should be noted

The structure of the leaf at the margin of a spot is very different from either the healthy or the dead parts. The process of differentiation apparently takes place in considerable advance of the fungus. In some stained sections a row of cells with dark-stained walls is seen in the leaf (Fig. 32). They are arranged in a direct line from the upper to the lower epidermis. This involves the palisade cells and the spongy parenchyma, the latter tissue now being composed of more densely packed, but large, cells. With the advance of the fungus this layer increases in size and number of cells until the diameter is increased over that of the normal part. An additional layer of palisade cells may be developed in this region, but in a late stage the entire mesophyll becomes densely filled with large, irregularly shaped cells. The elongated palisade cells are completely changed and become isodiametric in form. The apparent stimulation results in hyperplasia and metaplasia of the palisade cells and in hyperplasia of the spongy tissue (Fig. 33).

The diseased cells give a test for suberin with chlor-iodide of zinc and with cyanine-glycerin. Certain stages in the development of the leaf spot show discoloration of the epidermal cells up to the suberized layer only. Later, however, the epidermal cells are affected beyond this region, as evidenced by their loss of normal size and color. It appears that penetration of the temporary layer is accomplished by the fungus invading the epidermal cells and thence advancing into the healthy tissue. At any rate the mycelium is found in the epidermal cells in this region. The alternate processes of the formation of this layer of tissue, and the subsequent invasion of the tissue beyond the suberized layer by the parasite, give rise to the concentric rings previously described.

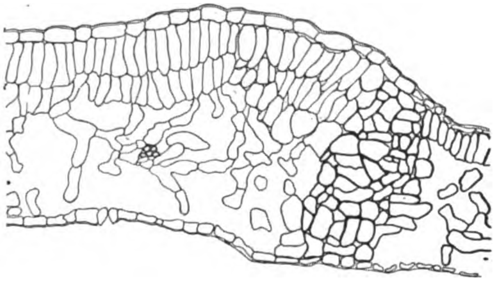


FIG. 33. HISTOLOGICAL CHANGES IN DISEASED LEAF TISSUE

Showing the reactions of the host along the margin of the lesion. Metaplasia and hyperplasia are exhibited in the mesophyll

Bark.— The tissues of the normal apple stem represent the condition found in a typical dicotyledonous plant. In the center is the pith, radiating from which region are alternate medullary rays and fibrovascular bundles. Outside these is a cylinder of secondary cortex, which is in turn surrounded by a cylinder of thick-walled cortex (probably primary in nature) and one of cork or periderm. In older stems the epidermis is not present. The secondary cortex is composed of several layers of phloem, in turn made up of hard, or lignified, sclerenchyma fibers, sieve tubes, companion cells, and phloem parencyhma. In a longitudinal section the medullary rays are prominent and are perpendicular to the periderm. In the secondary cortex these rays are connected by rows of phloem parenchyma which are oriented at right angles to the direction of the medullary rays. These phloem parenchyma cells are rectangular and similar to the medullary ray cells; the arrangement of the former results in the noticeable stratification of the secondary cortex.

The material for comparative study of healthy and diseased tissues was usually taken so that both areas would appear in the same section. Cankers from natural and artificial infection were fixed in Gilson's fixer or in chrom-acetic acid, hardened in the usual manner, and finally imbedded in either celloidin or collodion. Sections made from such material, as well as from fresh tissue, were cut with a desk microtome and stained with the following stains: safranine and methyl blue; safranine and methyl green; phloroglucin; and a chlorophyll solution.

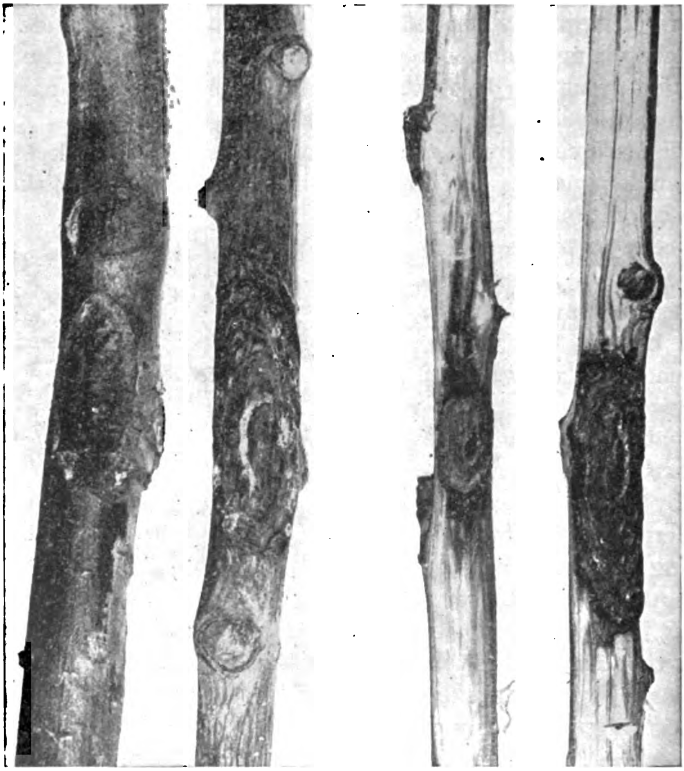


FIG. 34. HISTOLOGICAL CHANGES IN DISEASED WOOD
Two apple twigs, showing cankers as they appear on surface. The specimens on the right are the same twigs, with bark removed to show the streak

In the normal tissues the lignified and suberized tissues — that is, cork and hard sclerenchyma fibers — are stained red with safranin, whereas the cellulose tissues, cortical and medullary, are colored blue with methyl-blue and unstained with methyl-green. The woody parts stain red with phloroglucin. In the diseased part there is a very prominent general brownish deposit, located chiefly in the medullary ray cells, the thick-walled cortical parenchyma, and the phloem parenchyma. Such cells are not stained by any of the stains used. The sclerenchyma fibers and the cork are colored red by safranine, whereas suberized cork cells are made green with a chlorophyll solution. Diseased wood shows a test for lignin phloroglucin.

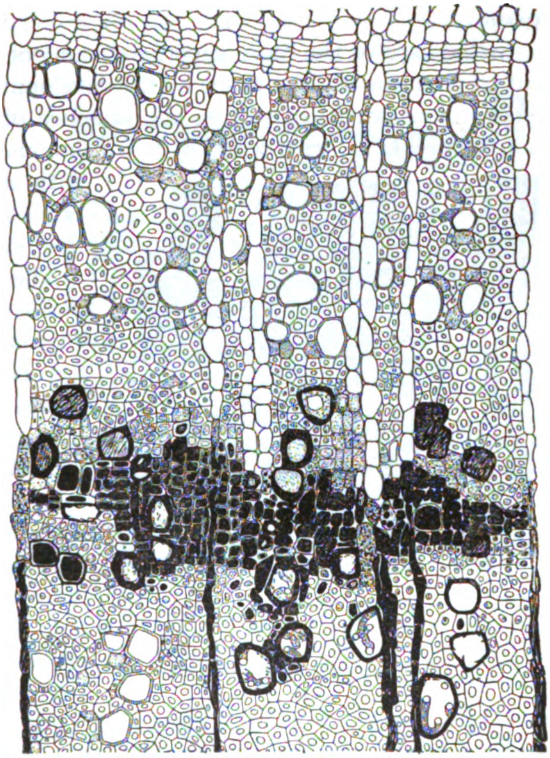


FIG. 35. HISTOLOGICAL CHANGES IN DISEASED WOOD

Cross section of part of apple twig, showing brown deposit in wood fibers and wood parenchyma cells. Mycelium is also shown in the xylem ducts, but it should be noted that none is found in other woody elements

The more striking external symptoms of the canker noted are the discoloration of the bark, a crevice at the margin of the lesion, and a sinking of the tissues. It has been noted elsewhere that the organism penetrates the wood to a limited extent only, so that the more notable changes occur in the bark. The canker is sometimes superficial, the attacks of the organism being confined to the cortical tissues. Attacks on the wood of old limbs are not frequent, but on twigs the wood is subject to common invasion by the parasite. In cross and longitudinal sections the first and the second, and sometimes the third, layers of wood, and even the pith, are discolored. Closer examination shows the mycelium to be very abundant within the vessels of the xylem and in the woody parenchyma. In this region the characteristic brown deposit is found, but is located chiefly in the cells of the medullary rays and the wood parenchyma. Inoculations on young apple trees in the greenhouse with the ascospore strain (no. 82, from apple) show that there is a streak developed in the outer layers of wood (Fig. 34), just as in the twig blight on chestnut oak, *Quercus prinus*, as reported by Ingram (1912) and noted subsequently by Rankin (1914). The streak is due to the discoloration of the cells, not to the presence of the mycelium (Figs. 35 and 36). One has only to examine longisections through the streak to be convinced that the hyphal threads do not grow in strands and are not otherwise arranged so as to give such an appearance to the tissue.

In the case of the more superficial cankers the ingress of the fungus is cut off from the healthy tissue by the development of a cork layer (Fig. 37). Such lesions reveal in section the presence of a layer approximating the normal periderm, with which it is continuous and which reacts the same with safranine and with a chlorophyll solution. These cells in their final state are suberized.

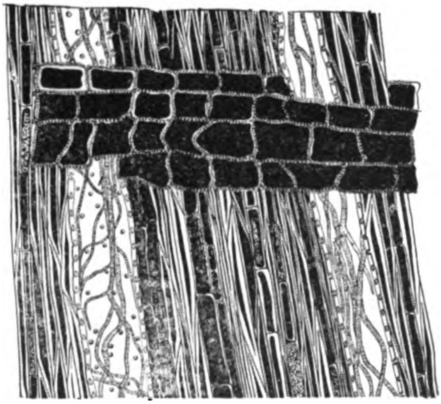


FIG. 36. HISTOLOGICAL CHANGES IN DISEASED WOOD

Longisection of a part of apple twig, showing brown deposit in woody elements. Mycelium is again to be seen in the xylem ducts

The layer originates by the division of cells of the cortical parenchyma. The sclerenchyma fibers are not changed. If the layer comes in contact with a group of sclerenchyma fibers it is interrupted. The more recently affected cells—that is, those nearest the margin of the lesion—show a reddish tinge with safranine, indicating slight suberization throughout the region. Later, evidence of the cork layer is found just beyond the infected zone. Walls are laid down to form rectangular cells characteristic of the final cork layer and of the normal periderm. At this time they do not take the safranine, indicating that suberization has not begun. Such sections stained with chlorophyll solution also show no suberin reaction.

A later examination of the marginal layer between healthy and diseased tissue stained with safranine will reveal three distinct and characteristic zones, as follows (enumerating entad): a red layer of three or four suberized cork cells; a colorless layer of about two non-suberized cells, rectangular; and a third layer of about two smaller cells of the same shape bearing a brownish deposit, making a distinct brown line. Many slides show the reverse relation with respect to the suberized and cellulose layers; the colorless layer, composed of cells with cellulose walls, may lie next to the diseased tissue, and the cells with suberized walls next to the brown line.

This raises the question as to which cells are suberized first. The assumption is that those cells nearest the diseased zone are suberized first. This would be expected, in such a case, where response to injury is made by the host. But this scarcely explains the cases in which the colorless layer borders the affected tissue. In these cases, however, the brown line is not so distinct as described above, and often is not in evidence; so that this may stand as a younger stage in the formation of the cork layer. The cells of the suberized layers do not react alike when stained with safranine. A row of cells in the center is the darkest, the color shading off on both sides, perhaps indicating the amount of suberization.

The majority of the cells of the layer are densely granular, are thin-walled at first, and possess large nuclei. These have the characteristics of rapidly dividing cells.

A section through a canker having a crevice at its margin shows that the break follows the brown line. The dead tissues on the one hand shrink, while the living, normal part increases in diameter by growth, exerting tension on all tissues of the bark, and the break results. It appears that the cells making up the brown line are the weakest, and thus they mark the line of separation of the diseased from the healthy tissue.

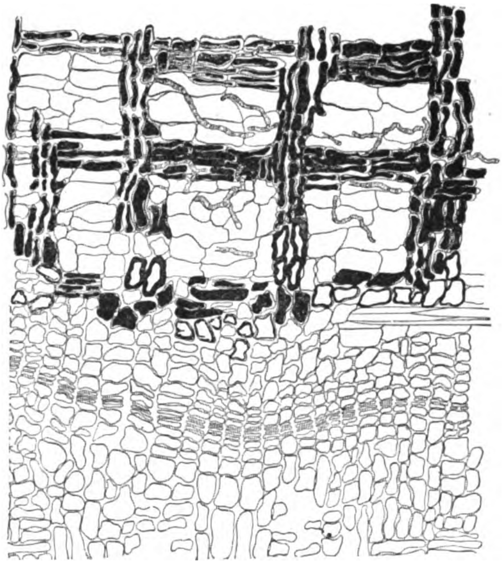


FIG. 37. HISTOLOGICAL CHANGES IN DISEASED BARK

Showing brown deposit in the medullary ray cells and phloem parenchyma, which cross at right angles resulting in a stratified appearance in the phloem. Below the diseased region is seen the cork layer

Along the marginal layer diseased pockets occasionally are formed which extend into the healthy tissue. Such areas are always in the region of a group of sclerenchyma fibers. A cork layer surrounds the pocket. Cross sections may be cut so as to include only a portion of one of these pockets, making them appear as internal, separate infections. Serial sections, however, always reveal their connection with the originally infected tissue.

In the diseased region are found the same stratified layers as mentioned in the survey of the normal secondary cortex. But in the affected areas both the cells of the medullary rays and the phloem parenchyma stand out very prominently, being filled with the brownish deposit. The remainder of the old phloem elements, the sieve tubes, companion cells, and sclerenchyma fibers, are not discolored at all. (Fig. 37.)

The brown mycelium of the fungus is found very abundantly throughout the diseased area. It is intercellular, except when it encounters the xylem and the hard sclerenchyma fibers; it is not easy to say just what the relationship is with respect to hard sclerenchyma fibers. It is noted elsewhere that the hyphæ are found within the tracheal tubes. The threads for the most part pass up and down the stem. This is in accordance with the external symptoms of a lesion. It has been stated previously that where the cork layer encounters a group of sclerenchyma fibers it is interrupted, and the fungus breaks through the barrier as laid down by its host. There is no evidence that the suberized cells are ever penetrated. Mycelium is found advancing through the layer at points where the sclerenchyma fibers cross it, a discoloration precedes the hyphæ, and almost before the threads get into the healthy tissue the latter is changed in its normal color. Very soon after is found evidence of a secondary cork layer, which usually branches from the primary layer at some point beneath the point of secondary penetration. This extends around the newly affected region, finally passing above to the normal periderm. Repetition of this process, accompanied by the formation of crevices at each successive cork layer, results in the concentric lines or cracks so characteristic, externally, of the lesion. The drying out and death of the cells results in their collapse, and the affected part shrinks.

CONTROL

BLACK ROT

EXCLUSION BY LEGISLATION

As previously noted (Evans, 1910), the British Government at Cape Colony has legislated against black rot. Importers are warned that, under a government notice of 1908, all consignments of pomaceous fruits found infected with this organism to the extent of one per cent and upward will be destroyed on arrival at the Colony or returned to the consignor.

SPRAYING

It was suggested by Sturgis (1893 b) that spraying in August and September would prevent black rot of quince. The following year the same author (1894) found that a 0.03-per-cent solution of copper sulfate is fatal to the fungus. More recently Waite (1906: 19) recommends the same treatment as for apple scab. Wolf (1913) concludes from experiments conducted in Alabama that bordeaux 4–4–50, applied as follows, will be effective: the first spraying, about July 15, when the disease is just appearing; the second, two weeks later. This schedule gave satisfactory control, the sprayed fruits showing less than one per cent diseased on certain varieties. Control was less complete on Black Ben Davis, which exhibited from ten to fifteen per cent of black rot. Lime-sulfur was found to be wholly ineffective under southern conditions in 1912.

It should be remembered that frequently infections follow the work of the codling moth, and, as stated by Clinton and Britton (1910), the control of this insect lessens the amount of rot starting at such centers. The work heretofore described indicates that certain insects carry the spores; it is therefore important to consider the control of these pests.

HANDLING OF FRUITS

It is apparent from the life history studies that spores of the black rot organism are present in the orchard at picking time and are carried into storage. It has also been learned that the fungus effects penetration only through injured tissue. Consequently one factor in obtaining apples of good keeping quality is the elimination of mechanical and other injuries to the fruit; the occurrence of black rot in storage is undoubtedly connected with the handling methods in use in the orchard.

STORAGE

It has been found by Lamson (1902:81), and subsequently by Eustace (1908), that the temperature of the storage room should be about 31° to 34° F. (−0.5° to 1.1° C.). Higher temperatures allow growth of the fungus. It is important to note that when apples are stored in barrels, about one week is required for the temperature of the center of the receptacle to become equal to that of the storage room.

LEAF SPOT

SPRAYING

It seems that Alwood (1892) was the first to advocate the use of sprays for leaf spot. He recommends two applications, as follows: the first, just as the petals have fallen from the apple, using bordeaux mixture 4-5-50; the second, about twenty to twenty-five days later. The recommendations of later writers differ in number of applications and in type of fungicide. It is very apparent that the number of sprayings in a given year will depend on the character of the season. Ordinarily two or three applications are necessary, according to Brooks (1909, and 1912, a and b) and others. In certain seasons of considerable rainfall additional sprayings may be necessary.

As previously noted, in some districts at least the leaves are infected shortly after they unfold from the bud, and infections may continue throughout the spring according to Brooks (1909:124). Later Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:188) conclude that the period of infection extends throughout the middle of the summer. The number of applications then to be made will depend on the character of the season and the abundance of spores present.

In some sections of the country where apple scab also is to be combated, the regular scab sprayings have been generally recommended as sufficient. These are given by Wallace (1913:589–590) as follows: the first, when the blossoms show pink; the second, after the blossoms fall; the third, two or three weeks later. If later scab sprayings are necessary, the leaf spot will be controlled. Scott (1906:33) states that the disease may be controlled in connection with the treatment for bitter rot; for the latter disease he recommends from four to six applications of bordeaux mixture, made at intervals of two weeks beginning about six weeks after the trees blossom.

Apparently bordeaux mixture has been most commonly employed for leaf spot. Brooks (1912 b:15) maintains that it is the most effective fungicide for apple diseases, but points out that an objection to its use lies in the fact that spotting of the foliage and russeting of the fruit are likely to occur if showers follow its application. The spots produced on the leaves resemble those caused by the fungus. For leaf spot alone, Brooks (page 8 of same reference) finds that self-boiled lime-sulfur best holds the disease in check.

Lime-sulfur is regarded by Brooks (1912 b) as a satisfactory substitute for bordeaux, and in a later publication Brooks and DeMeritt (1912) show that commercial lime-sulfur at a strength of one gallon to twenty-five gallons of water reduced the infection from about 95 per cent to 26 per cent. When used at a strength of one gallon to fifty gallons of water, the lime-sulfur was found to be less effective. Brooks considers this fungicide about as efficient as bordeaux, and, because of the injury from the latter, lime-sulfur would appear the more desirable.

CULTIVATION

Brooks and DeMeritt (1912) have observed marked contrast between the amount of infection in sod and in cultivated orchards. They record the former as showing 0.79 spot per leaf, whereas in the latter there was only 0.47 spot per leaf. They say (page 189 of reference cited):

> The trees had been treated alike in every other respect and were of equal vigor when the experimental work was begun; it was, therefore, evident that cultivation had reduced the disease almost one-half. This reduction was probably partly due to the fact that the leaves were plowed under on the cultivated plots, but the lack of general vigor in the trees on the sod plots was apparently partly responsible for the difference.

CANKER

HISTORICAL AND INTRODUCTORY

The control of cankers has been a matter of consideration for some time. Nearly three centuries ago Parkinson (1629:550) recommended surgical methods together with a wound dressing of vinegar. Similar advice is given by Harrison (1823:342), who suggests a dressing of soot, water, and train oil. He recommends drainage of the soil in severe cases.

In more recent times, beginning with the appearance of the work of Paddock (1899 b), the recommendations are all essentially of the same nature. The employment of the common methods of orchard management — cultivation, fertilization, pruning, and spraying — is recommended, in order to promote general vigor. Keeping the trees in good growing condition is claimed to be essential (Warren and McCourt, 1905). Spraying to protect the bark is frequently recommended (Bethune, 1909:30, and others), while scraping the bark and applying a wash is suggested by Paddock (1899 b:190) and others. Pruning of diseased limbs and the growing of a new top is being practiced by some growers.

The control measures more commonly employed by the growers of New York State are pruning and spraying; other measures, as determined by circular letters and personal observation, are surgery, cultivation, fertilization, and mulching. The success of these methods varies and seems to depend on the vigilance with which the grower pursues the disease.

SURGICAL METHODS

PRUNING. In pruning for the control of canker, two methods may be employed: the limb may be cut from the tree entirely, or the cankered bark may be removed. In either case a wound will result and the application of a dressing becomes essential.

Removal of limbs.— The question frequently arises, when shall only the canker be cut out, and when is it necessary to remove the limb? No general rule can be laid down, but each case must be examined carefully and procedure taken accordingly. If the limb is large and productive, its removal should be postponed. This is commonly the practice. But to wait until the limb is not producing satisfactorily usually means that the canker will aid in bringing the branch to destruction. In such cases it is advisable to prevent the loss by eradicating the cankered spot by surgery.

If the limb is not producing, whether large or small, its removal for the purpose of eliminating the fungus is the alternative. The cut should be made so that another limb, or water sprout, may be allowed to grow in the approximate space left by the part removed. This method of treating the New York apple tree canker is employed in certain orchards along the Lake Ontario belt in this State. One grower is very successful in this measure of control. This, with protection from new infections by careful spraying of the entire tree — trunk and limbs — renders even the highly susceptible Twenty Ounce variety practically free from canker.

Grafting of stubs left by the pruning of the affected parts of limbs is occasionally practiced. This may be justified in certain cases, although as a rule it should be supplemented in the main by the method just described.

Removal of diseased bark.— The cutting out of cankers is a method to be employed when the grower is satisfied that the value of the limb warrants it. An attempt to remove all kinds and sizes of cankers from an infested orchard without regard to such a consideration is likely to result in the discouragement of the orchardist with the whole undertaking. The equipment necessary for use in the removal of cankered bark consists of a drawshave and a farrier's knife. The limits of the diseased area are ordinarily determined by making an external examination of the canker. Where this method is not reliable, small bits of the outer bark may be removed, following the line of the discoloration until the limits are determined. Similarly the depth of the canker is defined.

The shape of the cut will vary somewhat with that of the canker to be removed. So far as possible, the wound when finally finished should be lenticular in form. This will facilitate callus formation. If the wound is rectangular the upper and lower edges heal more slowly. The edge of the wound should be perpendicular to the long axis of the limb, for cuts made at a slant will result in a certain amount of dead cortex, which is undesirable from the standpoint of new infections. A possible exception to this method of trimming the margin is to be found at the lower end of the wound. Here the edge should be slanting enough to permit drainage of moisture.

WOUND TREATMENT. It is frequently advised that the wound should be disinfected and protected. The latter is certainly commendable practice, but whether the former is necessary will depend on the nature of the wound dressing.

Wound disinfection.— If the dressing itself is a disinfectant, a special disinfectant will not be necessary. In case one is needed, mercuric chloride at the usual strength (1–1000), or copper sulfate (1 ounce to 1 gallon of water), is most commonly used.

Wound protection.— The necessity of a protective covering for wounds is twofold: to check the weathering of the wound, and to prevent the growth of bacteria and fungi. It follows, then, that the fundamental requirement of a wound dressing is that it should be a preservative and a preventive. Briefly, then, the dressing should have antiseptic qualities, and should be fluid, reasonably inexpensive, and easily prepared and applied; it is essential that it should give complete covering; it must be impervious to air and water, must be durable, and must not injure nor kill the tissues nor interfere with the healing process.

The preparations now most commonly used are paint, tars, and asphaltum. In some cases commercial tree paints are employed. It is generally agreed that paints are an inefficient covering, whereas asphaltum once applied gives the desired protection. Asphaltum, however, is more difficult to apply. This is particularly true if the asphaltum used is rendered liquid by heat; if it is dissolved in gasoline it is more easily prepared and hence more available. The combination of asphaltum and gasoline has been applied rather extensively in the orchard of Fred Hazleton, at Leroy, New York, and from all appearances is commendable.

The writer has used coal tar for the past three years with good success. This is a residual tar derived in the manufacture of artificial gas from coal. According to Lunge (1909), tars may vary even from the same materials, depending on the temperature used in the distillation, the shape of the retort, and other factors. The use of coal tar as a wound dressing has been recommended to growers of the State, and some have complained of injury to the healthy tissue from its use while others report it as an appropriate material. Many cases of injury have been found to have resulted from the use of creosote, but not from coal tar. The pruner must distinguish between the two materials. The writer has never seen any cases of injury from coal tar on apple trees, and it has been used successfully on peaches by Jehle (1913). It is interesting to note a quotation from Des Cars as given by Bailey (1907:111–113):

> The application of coal tar should not be made except with considerable caution in the treatment of wounds on drupaceous fruits (cherries, peaches, plums, etc.), and especially on the plum tree. It has often been observed that the bark of fruit trees of this class has suffered from the application of coal tar. This is not the case, however, with pome-bearing trees (apples, pears, etc.); to these coal tar may be applied with perfect safety.

Card (1897:9) reports experiments in pruning in which he tested various materials for protecting wounds. He says of coal tar: "Coal tar, however, seems to have been a positive hindrance to the healing process, not one wound having been reported as healing extremely well, while the majority are reported as healing only fairly well." As a comment on this remark, Bailey (1907:113) says: "It is not said, however, whether the tar injured the tissues, or whether the apparent results may not have been due to the position and character of the wound quite as much as to the dressing. In my own experiments . . . . tar did no damage."

In view of the complaints made of injury from the use of coal tar, it occurred to the writer that this substance varied sufficiently in different parts of the State to account for the injury, if any ever occurred. Samples were obtained from the gas plants in the following cities in New York: Syracuse, Owego, Batavia, Rochester, Ithaca, Lockport, Buffalo, Albion, and Geneva. These samples were applied to wounds of mature apple trees on the farm of Dr. Johnson, at Leroy, New York, in August, 1912. Examination at intervals during the growing seasons of 1912 and 1913 showed equally good healing and no injury. Another orchard, near Batavia, New York, owned by Chapin & Son, has been extensively treated with coal tar, with results similar to those just described. The writer has applied coal tar to Northern Spy, Baldwin, and Hubbardston apples in an orchard at Byron, New York, and no detrimental effects have been observed. In some cases the wound has been disinfected by the use of mercuric chloride (1–1000), but no difference in the efficiency of protection was observed between wounds so treated and those not disinfected. The writer feels safe in recommending the use of coal tar without previously disinfecting the wounded surface.

The cost of canker treatment — that is, the removal of diseased bark and the application of a dressing — is not an easy matter to determine. Where it is done extensively the grower usually does the work along with the regular pruning, so that the cost of canker treatment alone can hardly be separated from that of the whole operation. In an apple orchard at Leroy, New York, careful work was done in 1912 by A. S. Davis. The orchard contained 950 forty-years-old trees. The orchard had been neglected for several years, and dead limbs, cankers, collar rot, and heart rot were abundant. Mr. Davis furnishes the following figures:

Cost of trimming	$407.90
Coal tar, 40 gallons, at 20 cents a gallon	8.00
Corrosive sublimate	.75
Applying tar	30.00
Removal and destruction of brush	54.70
Total	$501.35

The following data are taken from a similar orchard at Batavia, New York:

Miscellaneous data	
Number of trees	360
Age of trees	30 years
Cost	
Labor, 348 hours, at 25 cents an hour	$87.00
Coal tar, 10 gallons, at 15 cents a gallon	1.50
Corrosive sublimate	.50
Total	$89.00

It is seen that the average cost of the work in the Leroy orchard is about fifty-two cents a tree. It must be borne in mind that the orchard had not been pruned in several years, which accounts in part for the high cost of the work. In the Batavia orchard the average cost is approximately twenty-five cents a tree. These figures do not represent the cost of treating the cankers alone; this process itself would be considerably less than either of the above figures.

WOUND HEALING. *Wound cork.*— According to Hartig (1894:225), whenever the living phellogen is injured a new zone of phellogen, or cork, which is continuous with the cork layer along the edge of the wound, is formed from the uninjured cells which are situated deeper in the cortex. The cortical parenchyma, which lies beneath the periderm, possesses sufficient power of cell division to enable it to keep pace with the increasing thickness of the stem. But in the case of the wound its reproductive capacity is confined to the development of a periderm close beneath the surface of the exposed tissues. Its formation does not depend on the season of the year, but it may be formed even in winter.

Wound wood.— Hartig (1894:228) states that wood exposed by a wound has the power of producing new cortex and new wood when the cambium is active and when the cambium layer and young wood are protected from drought. In such a case, regeneration of the covering layers is effected. The cambial region consists of embryonic bast and wood, which is capable of growth and ultimately of a certain amount of differentiation. The wood thus formed is termed wound wood.

Callus.— Callus may be developed when the cambium has dried up or when it is absent from the surface of the wound. Its formation proceeds from the edge of the wound, beginning in the cambium. Hartig (1894:231) states that it is a purely mechanical process and results from the reduction of the bark pressure on these tissues. There is always a certain amount of tension in the cortical mantle, whereby a considerable pressure is exerted on the cambium. Should this pressure be locally reduced by a wound's reaching the wood, the processes of cell division and growth are accelerated not only along the edges of the wound but also at greater distances. The callus cushions advance from the edges of the wound, finally coming in contact and coalescing. This coalescence is retarded if the callus is clothed at an early stage with dead bark.

It has been noted that wounds made in cutting out cankers should be pointed in order to permit rapid healing. In this connection Hartig (1894:232) states that the formation of callus proceeds more vigorously in case of a longitudinal incision than when the incision is transverse. This is explained by the nature of the pressure by the bark in consequence of peripheral enlargement of the stem. The pressure here acts like that of a barrel hoop on the staves, and so callus develops more rapidly along the lateral margins of the wound. In this connection the question of slitting the lower edge of the callus arises. Reasoning from the data regarding the development of the callus, it seems advisable to practice this operation each year; this prevents the callus from bunching, and stimulates it to more ready occlusion of the wound.

SPRAYING

The effectiveness of spraying for canker is a question frequently raised. It is the belief of the writer that spraying as a preventive, but not as a cure, is worthy of attention. It is true, however, that growers report cases of curing canker by spraying. The fungus mycelium is protected by the bark; hence sprays will not reach it, and eradication of the fungus from a given lesion by spraying seems highly impossible. Spraying to protect healthy bark from infections would certainly appear advisable, but the data at hand are somewhat conflicting. The writer recalls an orchard in which canker does not occur. The trees are sprayed carefully each year, according to general recommendations for apples. Some of the trees are Twenty Ounce, but they are free from the disease. The limbs are kept coated with spray throughout the summer, and as late as the middle of August these trees are still covered. In contrast to this orchard, another is recalled which is severely affected with canker, yet the trees are given the regular sprayings. The difference in these cases may be accounted for by the lack of thoroughness of the spraying in the second orchard. Since protection is the principle involved in this method of control of canker, the success of any attempts in this direction is determined by the completeness of the covering.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

The destruction of rubbish about the orchard is no new suggestion. Peck (1879:21) recommends that affected fruit should be removed from the orchard and destroyed. The destruction of fallen leaves is recommended by Alwood (1892). Sheldon (1905) and others suggest picking rotted fruit before the fungus spores mature in the case of quince black rot; Sheldon adds that this might not be possible with apples because of the size of the trees. In Alabama, however, Wolf (1913), as has been previously noted, controlled the disease by spraying. The opinion is held by Brooks and DeMeritt (1912:189) that affected leaves should be plowed under, while clean cultivation is the recommendation of Reed, Cooley, and Rogers (1912:5). The removal and burning of affected limbs is advocated by Bethune (1909:30) and others.

The ability of the fungus to pass from one part of the apple tree to another only adds to the sources of inoculum, so that sanitary measures become of special importance.

ORCHARD MANAGEMENT

The value of careful handling of fruit to prevent injury has been emphasized. This is based on the principle that the causal organism is a wound parasite. The same care should be exercised with reference to the bark of the tree; injury should be avoided whenever possible. Injuries to bark are likely to result from cultivating implements and harness, the careless handling of ladders while picking, and climbing over the trees with rough-soled boots. The importance of guarding against such orchard practice lies in the fact that cankers begin in just this sort of place.

It has been mentioned that the fungus follows winter injury. As a protection against winter injury, Reddick (1912:37) advocates early plowing in the spring, and cultivation to give the trees the advantage of conserved moisture; he recommends that cultivation should cease not later than August 1, in order to start the trees into maturation. Cover crops, to take up excess moisture in the autumn, should be sown. Soil drainage in low ground, and a good circulation of air, are important considerations.

When it is desired to grow varieties that are susceptible, the canker difficulty may be obviated to a considerable extent by working over the larger limbs of more resistant varieties to the one desired. This has been done with apparent success in a few instances. The difficulties involved are that pruning must be done every year to remove all sprouts from the stocks, and that renewal of old branches cannot be effected so readily. Such a treatment also throws the bearing area higher into the air, so that in the case of erect growers, such as Twenty Ounce, thorough orchard operations are made more difficult.

RESISTANT VARIETIES

Since certain varieties of the apple — for example, Esopus and Twenty Ounce — are more susceptible to canker than are other varieties, the growing of other varieties will undoubtedly render the problem of control less difficult. Twenty Ounce, however, is one of the most satisfactory fall varieties for commercial planting in New York State. The question therefore arises, whether the orchardist should sacrifice the growing of this variety in the hope of escaping the problem of canker control. The evidence at hand indicates that if a grower wishes to raise Twenty Ounce, his success in keeping the trees free from canker will depend on his efforts. Observations warrant this opinion. It is true that, as stated by Warren and McCourt (1905), "something more than thrifty growth seems to be necessary in order to prevent the destruction of the Twenty Ounce"; so that vigor in itself should not be given too much dependence. Wellcared-for trees of this variety are often severely cankered. It is assumed that the trees must be in a thrifty condition in order to give the best results, but the control problem does not end here, for vigor does not establish nor maintain resistance.

AN ENEMY OF THE PATHOGENE

Potebnia (1912)[8] reports an interesting case of a fungus, *Helicomyces Sphaeropsidis* Potebnia, living as a parasite within the conidia of *Sphaeropsis pseudodiplodia* [= *Physalospora Cydoniae*]. Infection takes place when the host (the conidia of *Physalospora Cydoniae*) is in the Macrophoma stage. He notes a similar case reported by Japp, in which *Helicomyces niveus* Bres. & Japp is parasitic on *Diplodia inquinans* West., and states that in Japp's herbarium specimen all pycnospores in the infected pycnidia were killed by this parasite.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

(Anonymous)

1899 a The app'e canker. Country gent. **64**:88.

Briefly summarizes the works of Waite and Paddock.

1899 b The apple canker. Country gent. **64**:208. Illustrated.

The illustration is a text figure, and the author contends that it is the first figure of the disease published.

1899 c Perhaps apple canker. Country gent. **64**:248.

A reply to an inquiry concerning the apple injury which is regarded as caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum*. Remedy suggested.

Alderman, W. H., Giddings, N. J., and Rumsey, W. E.

1913 Orchard spraying. West Virginia Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Circ. 7: 1–48, fig. 1–33.

Mention black rot, leaf spot, and canker, and suggest control measures.

Alwood, W. B.

1892 Brown spot. *In* Four diseases of the apple, and treatment of same. Virginia Agr. and Mech. Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 17:59, 62.

Describes a leaf disease and uses the name *brown spot*. Notes three successive outbreaks in a summer. Questions whether *Phyllosticta pirina* is the cause.

1893 Injurious insects and diseases of plants with remedial measures for the same. Virginia Agr. and Mech. Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 24:1–40. Illustrated.

The apple orchards of Virginia said (p. 24) to suffer chiefly from two foliage diseases one of which is called brown spot, attributed to the attacks of *Phyllosticta pirina*.

1898 a The leaf-spot disease of apple, Phyllosticta pirina Sacc., and several unrelated forms occurring therewith. Amer. Assoc. Adv. Sci. Proc. **47**:413.

Records the following fungi occurring with *Phyllosticta pirina* Sacc: *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck, *Hendersonia Mali*, and an undetermined species.

---

[8] Translated by C. D. Sherbakoff, formerly of the Department of Plant Pathology at Cornell University.

1898 b On the occurrence of a yeast form in the life cycle of the black rot of apple, Sphaeropsis Malorum Peck. Amer. Assoc. Adv. Sci. Proc. **47**: 422.

Records the discovery of a yeast form occurring in cultures of this fungus, which on isolation and reinfection on the fruit of apple produced the common fruiting bodies of *Sphaeropsis Malorum.*

1902 Orchard studies.—XV. The bitter rot of apples. Virginia Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 142: 250–274, pl. 1–4.

States (p. 257) that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Berk. invades fruit already decaying from the attacks of the bitter rot fungus.

Alwood, W. B., and Price, H. L.

1902 Orchard studies.—V. Report on crab apples. Virginia Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 132: 3–14, fig. 1–4.

Note (p. 6) that certain varieties are especially subject to the black rot canker (caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum*).

Arnaud, G.

1912 Notes phytopathologiques. 1. Sphaeropsis pseudodiplodia. Montpellier (France) École Nat. d'Agr. Ann. **12**: 5–17, fig. 1–5.

Discusses the fungus as it occurs on several different plants. Notes the variable morphology of the organism and reports the discovery of an ascomycete associated with the pycnidial form. The ascomycete is named *Physalospora Cydoniae* and is regarded as probably the perfect stage of *Sphaeropsis pseudodiplodia.*

Arthur, J. C.

1885 Quince rot. *In* Report of the Botanist. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **3**: 372.

Describes symptoms, and proves the pathogenicity of the fungus (which he calls *Sphaeropsis Cydoniae* C. & E.) on quince fruit.

Baccarini, P.

1890 Note patologiche. Ital. nuovo giorn. bot. **22**: 64–70.

Reports *Sphaeropsis Malorum* on pears, apples, and peaches in storage. Discusses sclerotia and pycnidial development.

Bailey, L. H.

1907 The healing of wounds. *In* The pruning-book, p. 76–132, fig. 68–110.

Gives a chapter on the healing of wounds, taking up the nature of wounds, suggestions for the pruner, dressings for wounds, making cuts.

Baldwin, C. H.

1912 Black rot. *In* Some important diseases of apple. Indiana State Entomologist. Rept. **5**: 249–252. Illustrated.

Gives notes on black rot, leaf spot, and canker.

1914 Black rot (New York apple-tree canker and apple leaf spot). *In* Apple diseases. Indiana State Entomologist. Rept. **7**: 150–152. Illustrated.

Describes the nature of the injury.

Bary, A. de

1887 Comparative morphology and biology of the fungi, Mycetozoa, and bacteria, p. 1–525. (Translated by H. E. F. Garnsey and I. B. Balfour.)

Discusses (p. 247) types of pycnidial formation in general.

Beach, S. A.

1912 Black rot. *In* Spraying practice for orchard and garden. Iowa Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 127:50–51. Illustrated.

Black rot observed to occur on some of the summer and early fall varieties.

Beach, S. A., Lowe, V. H., and Stewart, F. C.

1899 Apple tree canker. *Also*, Leaf spot. *In* Common diseases and insects injurious to fruits. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 170:382–384.

Describe canker, caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck, and leaf spot, due to *Phyllosticta* spp., with recommendations for control.

Beal, W. J.

1898 Diseases of the apple. Michigan State Hort. Soc. Ann. rept. **27**:174–183, pl. 1–4.

Discusses (p. 178) symptoms of black rot of apples, and compares it with soft rot (caused by *Penicillium expansum* Link).

Berkeley, M. J.

1836 Sphaeria Malorum. *In* Hooker's English flora, p. 257–258.

Describes the fungus *Sphaeria Malorum* Berk.

1860 Sphaeropsis Malorum B. *In* Outlines of British fungology, p. 316.

Changes the generic name of the fungus from Sphaeria to Sphaeropsis.

Berlese, A. N., and Voglino, P.

1886 Macrophoma Malorum (Berk.) Berl. & Vogl. *Cited in* Saccardo's Syll. Fung. **10**:197. 1892. *From* Veneto-Trentina Soc. Atti. **1886**:184.

The authors divide the genus Phoma into Macrophoma and Phoma, the basis being the length of the pycnospores; *Phoma Malorum* (Berk.) Sacc. becoming, as they believe, *Macrophoma Malorum* (Berk.) Berl. & Vogl.

Bethune, C. J. S.

1909 Fungus diseases and insect pests. *Also*, Cankers on apple trees. Ontario Agr. Coll. and Exp. Farm. Ann. rept. **34**:26–32.

Reports (p. 29) that cankers do great damage along the north shore of Lake Ontario. Says (p. 29) that spores of *Sphaeropsis Malorum* are carried by the wind.

1910 Black rot canker (Sphaeropsis Malorum). Ontario Agr. Coll. and Exp. Farm. Ann. rept. **35**:35–36.

States that black rot canker apparently can be successfully controlled by pruning out dead branches, cutting out cankers, and coating the bark with spray.

Bommer, E., and Rousseau, M.

1885 Florule mycologique des environs de Bruxelles, p. 3–353.

Sphaeropsis Malorum Berk. is listed (p. 257) on fallen apples.

Brooks, Charles

1907 Diseases of the apple. *In* Seventeenth and eighteenth annual reports. New Hampshire Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 129: 267–270, pl. 15.

Records black rot and cankers due to *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Berk. as common; records leaf spot due to *Phyllosticta pirina* Sacc. and *P. limitata* Peck as serious, with little or no effect on it from spraying. States that majority of apple limb cankers are caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Berk., and that few of the orchards visited did not show the disease.

1909 Black rot, canker, and leaf spot. *In* Some apple diseases. New Hampshire Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 144:123–126, fig. 20–24.

Discusses occurrence, symptoms, etiology, and control of black rot, canker, and leaf spot. Lists the following fungi as associated with these diseases: *Sphaeropsis Malorum*, *Coniothyrium pirina*, *Coryneum foliicolum*, *Alternaria* sp., and one of the Tuberculariae.

1912 a Black rot, canker, and leaf spot. *In* Some apple diseases and their treatment. New Hampshire Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 157:17–20, fig. 20–24.

Maintains that black rot does considerable damage in storage. Outlines sprayings which are said to be fairly effective for leaf spot.

1912 b Fungicides in the apple orchard. New Hampshire Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 161:1–15.

Compares different fungicides for control of leaf spot.

Brooks, Charles, and DeMeritt, Margaret

1912 Apple leaf spot. Phytopath. 2:181–190, pl. 17, fig. 1–6.

Give an account of the etiology of leaf spot, paying particular attention to the morphological and biological variations in *Sphaeropsis Malorum*. Infection shown to occur from the time the leaves unfold until the last of August. Cultivation, spraying, and the removal of cankers given as the important control measures.

Brooks, Charles, Fisher, D. F., and Cooley, J. S.

1914 Apple rots. Phytopath. 4:403. (Abstract.)

List several species of fungi, including *Sphaeropsis Malorum*, which were isolated from market and storage apples.

Bryce, P. I.

1915 Apple leaf-spot or black rot canker. Quebec Soc. Prot. Plants from Ins. and Fung. Dis. Ann. rept. 7:86–90. Illustrated.

Gives an account of symptoms, varietal susceptibility, and control of the disease.

Bubák, Fr.

1909 Ein kleiner Beitrag zur Pilzflora von Niederösterreich. Ann. myc. 7:59–62.

Sphaeropsis Mali (West.) Sacc. listed (p. 62) as collected on *Pirus Malus* in "Hohe Warte" bei Wien.

Burrill, T. J.

1907 Bitter rot of apples: botanical investigations. Illinois Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 118:553–608.

States that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* is sometimes associated with the bitter rot fungus in cankers. The former organism said to follow the latter under Illinois conditions.

Burrill, T. J., and Blair, J. C.

1901 Apple fruit-rots. Illinois Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Circ. 37:(12 pages, unnumbered). Illustrated.

Special attention given to symptoms of black rot, caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum*. Suggestion that another species causes canker. Discussion on second and third pages.

Butler, O.

1912 Report of the Department of Botany. *In* Twenty-third and twenty-fourth reports. New Hampshire Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 163:16–17.

Mentions the work of Brooks, which appeared later in Phytopathology 2:181–190 and was published jointly by Brooks and DeMeritt.

Caesar, L.

1909 Black rot canker of apple trees. *In* Lime-sulphur wash. Part II.— Practical and popular treatment. Ontario Agr. Dept. Bul. 177:59–61, fig. 16.

States that on leaves and fruit the disease is seldom serious, but cankers often do great damage especially in Prince Edward County, Ontario.

1912 Black rot canker. *In* Our most troublesome orchard insects and diseases. Ontario Fruit Growers' Assoc. Ann. rept. **44**:22, fig. 15.

Author is convinced that the fungus follows winter injury.

Card, F. W.

1897 Notes on pruning. Nebraska Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 50:1–10.

Concludes from experiments that lead paint is the best material for covering wounds; grafting wax said to be the next best; coal tar found to prevent checking, but seemed to hinder the healing process; pine tar and shellac reported as unsatisfactory.

Chase, W. W.

1913 Apple leaf spot. *In* Principal insects and diseases of the apple in Georgia. Georgia State Bd. Ent. Bul. 38:40–41, pl. 6, fig. 2.

Leaf spot caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum* said to be one of the most destructive apple foliage diseases in Georgia.

Chester, F. D.

1901 a Canker in apple and pear. *In* Pear blight and pear canker. Delaware Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 52:6–8, fig. 4–7.

States that twigs and branches bearing pycnidia of *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck are sources of infection.

1901 b Canker in the apple and pear. *In* Report of the Mycologist. Delaware Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **12**:43–46, fig. 4–7.

(Same as 1901 a.)

1902 Pear canker treatment. *Also*, Canker in apples. *In* Sundry notes on plant diseases. Delaware Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 57:8–11, fig. 5–6.

Describes symptoms and control of canker of pear and apple caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum*.

Clement, F. M.

1913 Winter injury in orchards. Quebec Soc. Prot. Plants from Ins. and Fung. Dis. Ann. rept. **5**:24–26.

Says that frost wounds are made doubly serious if not treated to prevent the admission of the spores of saprophytic fungi, especially those of the black rot fungus, with the consequent development of apple canker.

Clinton, G. P.

1902 Black rot, Sphaeropsis Malorum Berk. *In* Apple rots in Illinois. Illinois Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 69:192–193, pl. B, fig. 2.

Sphaeropsis Malorum Berk. regarded as one of the chief causes of rotting of apples in market.

1904 Black rot, Sphaeropsis Malorum Pk. *In* Report of the Botanist. Connecticut (New Haven) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **27**:298, 342, 352, pl. 11, a.

Black rot regarded as one of the commonest and most universal diseases of the apple. Noted also on pear and quince.

1907 Winter injury and canker, Sphaeropsis Malorum Pk. *In* Report of the Botanist for 1906. Connecticut (New Haven) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **30**: 310–311, pl. 17, a.

A peculiar limb disease of the apple is doubtfully attributed to winter injury and *Sphaeropsis Malorum*.

1915 Notes on plant diseases of Connecticut. *In* Report of the Botanist for 1913. Connecticut (New Haven) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **38** (1914): 1–29. Illustrated.

Black rot noted on stored apples (p. 5).

Clinton, G. P., and Britton, W. E.

1910 Black rot, Sphaeropsis Malorum. *In* Tests of summer sprays on apples and peaches in 1910. Connecticut (New Haven) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann rept. **33–34**: 590, pl. 21, b.

Authors report occurrence of black rot (due to *Sphaeropsis Malorum*) on summer and stored winter varieties. State that the use of insecticides in keeping out codling moth lessens the rot starting from this cause.

Cook, M. T.

1913 Report of the Plant Pathologist. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **33**: 509–527.

Black rot of apple and quince, caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum*, among the diseases listed (p. 512) as most important and most common in the nurseries.

1914 a Black rot of the apple and quince. *In* Some diseases of nursery stock. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Sta. Circ. 35: 13–14, fig. 9.

Twig and leaf-spot forms of the disease very common in nurseries. It is advised that diseased trees should never be set.

1914 b Black rot (Sphaeropsis Malorum Pk.). *In* Most common diseases of the year. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **34**: 799, 809.

Black rot of apples most severe on Red Astrachan, Star, Lawver, Smokehouse. Black rot of quince reported as being very abundant and very severe.

Cooke, M. C.

1892 Sphaeropsis pomorum (Schwz.). *In* Sphaeriaceae imperfectae cognitae. Grevillea **20**: 86.

Suggests that *Sphaeropsis pomorum* (Schwz.) [= *Sphaeria pomorum* Schwz.] is probably the same as *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck, of which *Phoma Malorum* Berk., erected by Saccardo, is possibly a younger condition.

Cooper, J. R.

1913 The control of canker in the orchard. Nebraska hort. **3**: 2: 1–2.

Black rot canker is ranked third in importance among cankers in Nebraska. The discussion of control measures is directed at the Illinois blister canker.

Corbett, L. C.

1900 Brown spot, frog eye. *In* Fruit diseases and how to treat them. West Virginia Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 66: 202–204, fig. 2.

Author considers frog-eye, or brown spot (said to be due to *Phyllosticta pirina*), more injurious than either blight or scab.

Crabill, C. H.

1915 The frog-eye leaf spot of apples. Virginia Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 209:3–16, fig. 1–5.

Author states that frog-eye leaf spot is the most prevalent of apple foliage diseases in Virginia. The annual losses from the disease are said to be heavy in that State, but systematic spraying has controlled the disease in a satisfactory and effective manner. Symptoms are described. Etiological studies are tabulated, and from his experiments the author concludes that frog-eye spots are initiated by *Sphaeropsis Malorum*. All other fungi with which he deals are classed as facultative parasites, following *S. Malorum*, or as pure saprophytes.

Cummings, M. B.

1909 Apple orchard survey of Niagara County. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 262:277–320, fig. 26–40.

Gives notes (p. 304, table 12) on economic importance of canker.

Dandeno, J. B.

1906 A stimulus to the production of cellulose and starch. Michigan Acad. Sci. Rept. **8**:40–44.

Claims that the fungus *Sphaeropsis Malorum* stimulates the cells of ripe apple fruit to form starch and to thicken the cellulose walls. Suggests that starch is built up first and then dissolved and built into cellulose, the process going on until the fruit is mummified and dry, whereupon it is in a state of preservation.

Delacroix, G.

1903 a Sur un chancre du pommier produit par le Sphaeropsis Malorum Peck. Soc. Myc. France. Bul. **19**:132–140. Illustrated.

Gives an account of the disease which, it is believed, appeared in France at least as early as 1901. Discusses the morphology of the parasite and the relationship of the mycelium to the tissues of limbs, mentions inoculation experiments, and suggests control measures.

1903 b Sur l'identité réelle Sphaeropsis Malorum Peck. Soc. Myc. France. Bul. **19**:350–352.

Reports the examination of the following type material: *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck, *S. Malorum* Berk., *Diplodia maura* Cooke & Ellis, *D. pseudodiplodia* Fckl., and *Botryodiplodia Mali* P. Brunaud. Concludes that *S. Malorum*, *D. maura*, and *B. Mali* are all different, and that *S. Malorum* in France, *S. Malorum* Peck, and *D. pseudodiplodia* Fckl. are identical. States that since *D. pseudodiplodia* was described before *S. Malorum*, the latter name should disappear, and the new combination *S. pseudodiplodia* (Fckl.) G. Del. is proposed.

Dickens, A., and Headlee, T. J.

1911 Spraying the apple orchard. Kansas Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 174:251–292, fig. 1–19.

Give an account of experimental work in the control of black rot by spraying. Bordeaux mixture and lime-sulfur were used on several varieties.

Douglass, B. W.

1910 Black rot. *In* Plant diseases. Indiana State Entomologist. Rept. **2** (1908–1909):135.

The disease is briefly described.

Duggar, B. M.

1909 Black rot and canker of pomaceous fruits. *In* Fungous diseases of plants, p. 303, 350–354, fig. 169–172.

A discussion of habitat relations, etiology, and control of the fungus.

Edgerton, C. W.

1908 Two little-known Myxosporiums. Ann. myc. **6**:48–53, fig. 1–2.

Points out similarity and difference between the cankers caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum* and a new species of Myxosporium, called *M. corticolum*. The synonymy of *S. Malorum* is given.

Ellis, J. B.

1880 On the variability of Sphaeria Quercuum Schw. Philadelphia Acad. Nat. Sci. Proc. **1879**:66–70.

Author would include several enumerated species of Sphaeria, Botryosphaeria, Dothidea, and Melogramma under one species, and the name *Melogramma fuliginosa* is accepted. Ascigerous forms accompanied by stylospore forms of the Diplodia or Sphaeropsis type.

Ellis, J. B., and Everhart, B. M.

1892 The North American Pyrenomycetes, p. 1–793, pl. 1–41.

Eustace, H. J.

1908 Investigations on some fruit diseases. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 297:29–48, pl. 1–7.

Shows by experiment that the fungus (*Sphaeropsis Malorum*) is not destroyed but its growth is retarded in storage at temperatures ranging from 29° to 32° F. Gives results of sulfur fumigation in storage.

Evans, I. B. P.

1910 The New York apple tree canker or black rot fungus in South Africa. Transvaal agr. journ. **7**:62–64, pl. 7.

Calls attention of South African growers to the presence of "another imported fungus, and one which it will not be well to neglect."

Faurot, F. W.

1903 Black rot. *In* Report of fungous diseases occurring on cultivated fruits during the season of 1902. Missouri State Fruit Exp. Sta. Bul. 6:6–7.

The name *blossom rot* is employed for calyx-end infections on apples. Symptoms are described.

1912 Black rot. *In* Common orchard troubles, spray mixtures, and spray calendar. Missouri State Fruit Exp. Sta. Bul. 23: 14–15, fig. 8–9.

States that black rot, also called blossom-end rot, occurs largely on fruits of which the skin has been broken, and that owing to the habits of the fungus it is not controlled by spraying.

Floyd, Bayard F.

1905 Apple canker. Black rot. *In* Some common fungous diseases and their treatment. Missouri State Hort. Soc. Ann. rept. **48**:432.

Notes that windfall apples are very susceptible.

Freeman, E. M.

1905 Black rot of apple (Sphaeropsis Malorum Peck). *In* Minnesota plant diseases, p. 363–364, fig. 194.

Gives a short general account of black rot, leaf spot, and canker.

Fückel, L.

1869 Symbolae mycologicae, p. 1–459, pl. 1–6.

Descriptions of *Diplodia pseudodiplodia* Fckl. (p. 393) and *Diplodia Malorum* Fckl. (p. 395).

Galloway, B. T.

1892 Report on the experiments made in 1891 in the treatment of plant diseases. U. S. Agr. Dept., Veg. Path. Div. Bul. 3:1–76. Illustrated.

Gives (p. 39) an account of petal and young fruit infection induced by *Sphaeropsis Malorum.*

Garman, H.

1895 Spraying experiments in 1895. Kentucky Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 59:111–129. Illustrated.

Sphaeropsis Malorum said (p. 127) to be the cause of most of the fruit rot in the State.

1908 Brown rot of apples. *In* 1. Spraying apple trees. 2. Apple orchard pests in Kentucky. Kentucky Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 133:8, 65–66.

The disease on apple fruit (due to *Sphaeropsis Malorum*) is called brown rot, and spraying experiments for the control of the disease are reported.

Giddings, N. J.

1908 Apple canker. *In* The occurrence of plant diseases in 1907. Vermont Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **20**:331.

Apple canker, caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum,* said to be rather prevalent in some orchards. The statement is made that the disease is easily controlled by pruning and spraying, and is thus kept down in most well-tended orchards.

Green, W. J., Selby, A. D., and Gossard, H. A.

1915 Spraying program for orchards with combinations recommended. Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Circ. 149:53–60.

Suggest (p. 54–55) a combination of insecticide and fungicide for control of codling moth, apple scab, and black rot.

Griffon, E., and Maublanc, A.

1910 Sur des espèces de Sphaeropsis et de Diplodia parasites du poirier et du pommier. Soc. Myc. France. Bul. **26**:307–316. Illustrated.

Discuss symptoms, and several species of fungi on apple and pear. The conclusion is reached that these trees may be attacked by Sphaeropsis and Diplodia, which act as wound parasites. The species involved are regarded as distinct and are briefly described; these are *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck, *Sphaeropsis pseudodiplodia* (Fckl.) Del., and an undetermined Diplodia.

Güssow, H. T.

1911 Black rot (Sphaeropsis Malorum Peck.). *In* Report of the Dominion Botanist. Experimental Farms (Canada). Rept. **1911**:246–247.

Discusses symptoms and control.

Halsted, B. D.

1892 The black rot of the quince. *In* Some fungous diseases of the quince fruit. New Jersey Agr. Coll. Exp. Sta. Bul. 91:8–10, fig. 5–6.

Concludes from observation and experiment that the species of Sphaeropsis on quince, apple, and pear are the same. States that the fungus causes one of the most destructive decays of the quince, and that the spores pass through the air or are carried by insects.

1894 Decays of mature apples. *In* Report of the Botanist. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **14**:367–377, fig. 35–41.

Symptoms of black rot well described (p. 374–375). Author makes the point that the fungus probably gains access through remnants of the flower at the free end.

Harrison, Charles

1823 A treatise on the culture and management of fruit trees, p. 1–356. Illustrated.

Attributes (p. 341–343) canker to such causes as injudicious pruning, bruising, nailing, bad subsoil. Surgical methods recommended.

Hartig, R.

1894 Text-book of the diseases of trees, p. 1–331. (Translated by Somerville and Ward.)

Hartley, C. P.

1908 a Some apple leaf-spot fungi. Science n. s. **27**:212.

Reports the finding of eighteen different species of fungi on apple leaf spots in West Virginia, *Sphaeropsis Malorum* being among the common ones.

1908 b Some apple leaf-spot fungi. Science n. s. **28**:157–159.

Gives brief historical review of the question of the etiology of apple leaf spot. A list of several species of fungi found on spotted leaves is given, and inoculation experiments with certain of these are reported. Results indicate that *Coniothyrium pirina* is a wound parasite, while *Coryneum foliicolum* appeared to be even less parasitic.

1913 Twig canker on black birch. Phytopath. **3**:248–249.

Reports the isolation of a Sphaeropsis, closely resembling *S. Malorum* but with somewhat smaller spores, from swollen cankered black birch twigs (*Betula lenta* L.). Inoculation experiments show that the organism is parasitic *only* under certain conditions, nor is it regarded as the cause of the swollen cankers.

Heald, F. D.

1906 The black-rot of apples due to Sclerotinia fructigena. Nebraska Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **19**:82–91. Illustrated. (See also p. 22, 61.)

Points out that the term *black rot* is a confused one, having been used for diseases caused by both Monilia and Sphaeropsis. The two diseases are compared and contrasted as to symptoms.

Hedges, Florence, and Tenny, L. S.

1912 A knot of citrus trees caused by Sphaeropsis tumefaciens. U. S. Plant Indus. Bur. Bul. 247:1–74. Illustrated.

Hesler, L. R.

1912 The New York apple tree canker. Indiana Acad. Sci. Proc. **1911**:325–339, fig. 1–7.

Gives data concerning the geographical distribution, importance, symptoms, etiology, and control of the disease. The synonymy of the fungus is reviewed.

1913 Physalospora Cydoniae. Phytopath. **3**: 290–295. Illustrated.

Proves experimentally the genetic connection between *Physalospora Cydoniae* and *Sphaeropsis Malorum.*

1914 Biological strains of Sphaeropsis Malorum. Phytopath. **4**: 45.

Results of cross-inoculation work with the fungus from several host plants indicate that there is one large morphological species embracing many biological races.

Hewitt, J. L., and Hayhurst, P.

1911 Diseases of apple trees and fruit caused by fungi and insects. Arkansas Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 109: 409–445.

Note the occurrence of black rot and leaf spot in Arkansas (p. 438, 440–441).

Howitt, I. E.

1913 Fungus diseases. Ontario Agr. Coll. and Exp. Farm. Ann. rept. **38**: 29–30.

Notes the occurrence of black rot canker along with other plant diseases.

Ingram, Della

1912 Preliminary notes on a twig blight of Quercus prinus. Phytopath. **2**: 96–97.

Mentions an apparently serious disease of the chestnut oak which occurs in Connecticut, Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania. The organism associated with the disease is said to agree with *Dothiorella quercina* (C. & Ell.). (Cf. Rankin, W. H., 1914, p. 141.)

Jehle, R. A.

1913 The brown rot canker of the peach. Phytopath. **3**: 105–110, pl. 10, fig. 1–5.

Reports successful use of coal tar on wounds of peaches.

Jones, L. R., and Giddings, N. J.

1907 Apple canker. *In* The occurrence of plant diseases in Vermont in 1906. Vermont Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **19**: 231–232.

The fungus *Sphaeropsis Malorum* said to continue its destructive invasion and to be the cause of every case of apple canker examined.

Kern, F. D.

1906 Indiana plant diseases in 1905. Purdue Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 111: 121–134.

Black rot of the apple, pear, and quince reported (p. 125) from the southern part of the State only.

1907 Indiana plant diseases in 1906. Purdue Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 119: 425–436.

Mentions (p. 428) black rot and canker of the apple, and black rot of quince, present to some extent in the southern part of the State.

Kinney, L. F.

1895 a Some special orchard treatment of the apple, pear, and quince. Rhode Island Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 31: 1–17, fig. 1–9.

Reports (p. 10) failure to control black rot of quince by spraying.

1895 b The leaf spot of the apple and pear. *In* Horticultural Division. Rhode Island Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **7**: 188–189, fig. 7–8.

Points out resemblance of injury by apple leaf miner (*Tischeria malifoliella* Clemens) to apple leaf spot. Spots on the leaves, and spores of *Phyllosticta pirina,* which is regarded as the cause, are figured.

1895 c The brown rot. *In* Horticultural Division. Rhode Island Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. 7: 192–193, fig. 12.

Symptoms are given. The disease on the fruit (which author calls brown rot) and spores of the fungus are figured.

Kirchner, Oskar

1906 Die Krankheiten und Beschädigungen unserer landwirtschaftlichen Kulturpflanzen, p. 1–647.

States (p. 440) that the canker disease of apple trees, caused by *Diplodia pseudodiplodia* Thüm., occurs in North America, France, and perhaps Germany.

Lamson, H. H.

1897 Department of Bacteriology. *In* Ninth annual report. New Hampshire Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 48: 146–147.

Bordeaux mixture said to have had little effect in controlling leaf spot due to *Phyllosticta pirina;* hence work was directed toward its control.

1899 Apple diseases. *In* Notes on apple and potato diseases. New Hampshire Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 65: 106–107, fig. 38–39.

Notes the serious nature of leaf spot, which is said to be caused partly at least by *Phyllosticta pirina.*

1901 Apple tree canker. *In* Thirteenth annual report. New Hampshire Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 87: 130.

Reports the presence of a canker which is believed to be caused by a fungus.

1902 The cold storage of apples.— Part II. Influence of cold storage on the decay of apples. Effect of wrapping apples in paper. New Hampshire Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 93: 75–81, fig. 1.

Sphaeropsis Malorum listed (p. 75) as one of three fungi which cause most of the rotting. Author concludes (p. 81) that a temperature of 34° F. is more effective than 40° to 45° F., and that wrapping the fruit is of decided advantage in extending the keeping period beyond the first of June. Clean newspaper said (p. 81) to be just as effective as more expensive paper.

1903 Leaf spot. *In* Fungous diseases and spraying. New Hampshire Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 101: 61–62. Illustrated.

Bordeaux mixture said to have little effect in controlling leaf spot of apple.

Lewis, C. E.

1909 Apple diseases caused by Coryneum foliicolum and Phoma Mali. Maine Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 170: 183–200, fig. 17–42.

Reports successful infection experiments with *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck on injured bark and on uninjured apple leaves.

1912 Inoculation experiments with fungi associated with apple leaf spot and canker. Phytopath. 2: 49–62.

An account of experiments directed toward the determination of the parasitism of such fungi as *Sphaeropsis Malorum, Phyllosticta limitata* Peck, *Coniothyrium pirina* (Sacc.) Sheldon, and *Coryneum foliicolum* Fckl. Author concludes that a part of the leaf spot in Maine is due to *Sphaeropsis Malorum*, but that a similar spotting is due to bordeaux mixture; that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* is the only fungus isolated from apple leaves in the State which causes spots when inoculations are made from pure cultures; and that, of the several fungi studied, this fungus does the greatest damage to branches and to twigs.

Lewis, I. M.

1908 Apple leaf spot. New Hampshire Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. 19–20: 365–369, pl. 8–9.

Gives a historical review of the causal nature of the disease, and presents inoculation and control data.

Lochhead, William

1905 Black rot canker. Ontario Agr. Coll. and Exp. Farm. Ann. rept. **30**:49, fig. 4–5.

Defines the term *canker* and outlines control measures.

1909 Apple diseases. *In* Fungous diseases in Quebec in 1908. Quebec Soc. Prot. Plants from Ins. and Fung. Dis. Ann. rept. **1**:31.

The prevalence of the canker form of this disease is noted.

Longyear, B. O.

1904 Fungous diseases of fruits in Michigan. Michigan State Agr. Coll. Exp. Sta. Spec. bul. **25**:1–68, fig. 1–42.

Records the black rot disease of apple (p. 10–13), pear (p. 16), and quince (p. 20).

Lunge, George

1909 Coal tar and ammonia, Part I, chap. 1, p. 1–15.

Notes differences in tars, both physical and chemical, depending on the origin. Tar obtained from the same material also differs very much in composition, according to the temperature of the dry distillation, and even according to the shape of the retorts.

McAlpine, D.

1902 Fungus diseases of stone-fruit trees in Australia and their treatment, p. 1–165. Illustrated.

Lists (p. 133, 134) *Diplodia Malorum* on peach and plum twigs.

M'Cormack, Edna F.

1910 Black rot of the apple. *In* Fungous diseases of the apple. Indiana State Entomologist. Rept. **3**:142–144. Illustrated.

Symptoms discussed.

McCready, S. B.

1910 Black rot canker (Sphaeropsis Malorum Peck). Ontario Agr. Coll. and Exp. Farm. Ann. rept. **35**:41–42.

Brief reference to hosts, distribution, etiology, and control.

1911 Black rot of apple. Ontario Agr. Coll. and Exp. Farm. Ann. rept. **36**:37.

Reports use of lead paint and gas tar as wound dressings; the latter found to give better protection.

Mangin, L.

1901 Sur une nouvelle maladie des pommiers causée par le "Diplodia pseudo-diplodia." Journ. agr. prat. n. s. **2**:138–139.

Reports occurrence of the disease on apple branches in France, and gives suggestions for control.

Morse, W. J.

1909 Notes on plant diseases, 1908. Maine Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 164:1–28. Illustrated.

States (p. 3–4) that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* from leaf spot produced decay of fruit as a result of artificial inoculation. States (p. 10) that self-boiled lime-sulfur seemed effective in controlling leaf spot.

Morse, W. J., and Lewis, C. E.

1910 Maine apple diseases. Maine Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 185:335–392. Illustrated.

Notes on the etiology of leaf spot and canker. Canker fungus in Maine orchards follows frost injury.

Munson, W. M.

1909 Apple enemies, and how to fight them. West Virginia Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 121:353–366.

Control measures for leaf spot and canker given (p. 360–362).

Norton, J. B. S., and Symons, T. B.

1907 Black-rot (Sphaeropsis Malorum). *In* Control of insect pests and diseases of Maryland crops. Maryland Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 115:178.

Give brief recommendations for the control of black rot, leaf spot, and canker.

O'Gara, P. J.

1902 Notes on canker and black-rot. Science n. s. **16**:434–435.

Notes a case of girdling of branches of sumac (*Rhus glabra* L.) by *Sphaeropsis rhoina* (Schw.) Starb., which fungus, after careful cultural and inoculation experiments, is regarded as probably identical with *Sphaeropsis Malorum.*

Orton, C. R.

1914 Black rot. *In* Some orchard diseases and their treatment. Pennsylvania State Hort. Assoc. Proc. **55**:43–56. Illustrated.

Author states that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* rarely if ever produces cankers on its own initiative. He notes its wide occurrence on various plants, and says that a perfect stage has recently been found on apple, quince, oak, grape, witch-hazel, and other hosts.

Orton, W. A.

1902–1907 Plant diseases in the United States in 1901–1907. U. S. Agr. Dept. Yearbook **1901**:669; **1902**:715; **1903**:550; **1904**:582–583; **1905**:603–604; **1906**:499–500; **1907**:577–579.

Gives notes on the occurrence and destructiveness of black rot, leaf spot, and canker of apple, pear, and quince.

Paddock, Wendell

1898 a An apple canker. Science n. s. **8**:595–596.

Reports preliminary experiments in canker investigation. Cultures of fungi from cankers showed *Schizophyllum commune*, and a dark-spored fungus which is said to resemble *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck.

1898 b Additional notes on an apple canker. Science n. s. **8**:836–837.

Suggests that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck is parasitic on the wood of pear and quince as well as on that of apple. Cross-inoculations of the fruits of these three plants gave positive results.

1899 a An apple canker. Western New York Hort. Soc. Proc. **44**: 58–63. Illustrated.

(See 1899 b, of which this is a popular presentation.)

1899 b The New York apple-tree canker. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 163:177–206, pl. 1–6.

Contains an account of host relationships, names of the disease, symptoms, etiology, and control. Presents conclusive data proving that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* is the cause of canker on apple; considerable data indicate that this species of Sphaeropsis also occurs on many other plants.

1900 The New York apple-tree canker (Second report). New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 185:203–213, pl. 1–4.

States that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* occurs on apple, pear, and quince fruits, and on apple, pear, and hawthorn trees; and that it probably occurs on several other plants, but experiments are not regarded as warranting this as a definite conclusion. Notes that apple leaves are occasionally attacked by a Sphaeropsis.

Parkinson, John

1629 Paradisi in sole paradisus terrestris, p. 1–612. Illustrated.

Briefly outlines (p. 550) the nature and control of canker. Of historical importance.

Parrot, P. J., and Fulton, B. B.

1913 Notes on tree crickets. Journ. econ. ent. **6**:177–180. Illustrated.

Note that the penetration of apple bark tissues by the ovipositor of the tree cricket is apparently attended by an infection of some unknown fungus or bacterium, which results in the formation of a canker indistinguishable in its appearance and effects from the New York apple tree canker or the fire blight canker.

1914 Tree crickets injurious to orchard and garden fruits. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 388:415–461. Illustrated.

Authors note (p. 442) that injuries by tree crickets are followed by some infectious agent, and that these lesions, in their external appearances and their effects, resemble superficially certain stages of the New York apple tree canker caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum*.

Peck, C. H.

1879 Report of the Botanist. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist. Ann. rept. **31**: 19–60.

Reports (p. 20–21) the discovery of *Sphaeropsis Malorum* on apple fruits in Schoharie County.

1881 Report of the Botanist. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist. Ann. rept. **34**: 24–58, pl. 1–4.

Describes (p. 36) symptoms of black rot, and points out the fact that the distinction between Sphaeropsis and Diplodia sometimes fails, since both one- and two-celled spores are found in the same spore case.

Pollock, J. B., and Kauffman, C. H.

1905 Michigan fungi. Michigan Acad. Sci. Rept. **7**: 57–67.

List *Sphaeropsis Mali* (West.) Sacc. and *S. Malorum* Peck.

Potebnia, A.

1907 Mycologische Studien. Ann. myc. **5**: 1–28, pl. 1–3, fig. 1–43.

Discusses mycelial development, including spore germination and protoplasmic streaming.

1910 Beiträge zur Micromycetenflora Mittel-Ruszlands. Ann. myc. **8**: 42–93, fig. 1–38.

States that the pycnidia of *S. pseudodiplodia* (Fckl.) Del. arise meristogenetically.

1912 Pilzliche Symbionten. 2. Sphaeropsis und Helicomyces, p. 28. Illustrated. (Separate sent by Potebnia to the writer.)

Price, H. L.

1909 Black rot. *In* Fighting the insect pests and diseases of orchard, field, and garden crops. Virginia Agr. Exp. Sta. Circ. 7:10–11, fig. 2.

Recommendations for the control of black rot, leaf spot, and canker.

Quaintance, A. L., and Scott, W. M.

1912 Apple leaf-spot. *In* The more important insect and fungous enemies of the fruit and foliage of the apple. U. S. Agr. Dept. Farmers' bul. 492:35–36, fig. 20.

Discuss the importance, symptoms, etiology, and control of apple leaf spot caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum.*

Rankin, W. H.

1914 Sphaeropsis canker of Quercus prinus. Phytopath. 4:44–45.

Reports *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Berk. as causing twig and limb cankers on chestnut oak (*Quercus prinus* L.), the account being based on observation and inoculation experiments. Regards the disease as the one described by Miss Della Ingram in Phytopathology 2:96 (p. 136).

Reddick, Donald

1912 Frost injury. New York State Fruit Growers' Assoc. Proc. 11:34–41, fig. 1–2.

Sphaeropsis Malorum said to be usually found following frost injury.

Reed, H. S.

1908 Fall blossoming of the apple induced by the black rot. Plant world 11:256–257.

Notes a case in which *Sphaeropsis Malorum* inhibited the normal activities of an apple tree, allowing the tissues to carry on the growth which would normally have been deferred for several months, and resulting in the unfolding of normal blossoms on October 5.

Reed, H. S., and Cooley, J. S.

1911 Black rot (Sphaeropsis Malorum). *In* Plant diseases in Virginia in the years 1909 and 1910. Virginia (Polytech. Inst.) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **1909–1910**: 102–103, fig. 21.

Record black rot, leaf spot, and canker. Report pycnospores discharging from pycnidia on leaves at Blacksburg on June 25, 1910.

Reed, H. S., Cooley, J. S., and Rogers, J. T.

1912 Foliage diseases of the apple. Virginia (Polytech. Inst.) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 195:1–24, fig. 1–13.

Give points concerning the varietal susceptibility of apples; the distribution, importance, and symptoms of the disease; and the life history of the fungus.

Reed, H. S., and Crabill, C. H.

1913 Black rot (Sphaeropsis Malorum). *In* Plant diseases in Virginia in the years 1911 and 1912. Virginia (Polytech. Inst.) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **1911–1912**: 36, fig. 3.

Note that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* occurs on twigs previously killed by the fire blight organism. Figure a multilocular sterile (?) pycnidium.

Reed, H. S., and Stahl, H. S.

1911 The erepsins of Glomerella rufomaculans and Sphaeropsis Malorum. Journ. biol. chem. **10**: 109–112.

Authors find evidence of erepsin produced in pure cultures.

Roberts, J. W.

1913 The "rough-bark" disease of the Yellow Newtown apple. U. S. Plant Indus. Bur. Bul. 280:1–15, pl. 1–3.

Reports (p. 9, 15) *Phomopsis Mali*, a new species, associated with *Sphaeropsis Malorum* on leaf spots.

1914 Experiments with apple leaf-spot fungi. Journ. agr. research 2:57–66, pl. 7, fig. 1–3.

Reports the isolation of several species, including *Sphaeropsis Malorum*, from apple leaf spots. A new species, *Alternaria Mali*, is in the list and is technically described. From experiments conducted it is concluded that this species may be classed as a rather strong facultative parasite.

Rose, D. H.

1914 Ring rot. *Also*, Black rot (Sphaeropsis Malorum). *In* Biennial report. Missouri State Fruit Exp. Sta. Bul. 24 (Bienn. rept. 1913–1914):20, 23–24, pl. 5, fig. 1–2.

Ring rot, or blossom-end rot, of the apple fruit thought to be due to frost injury at blossoming time, followed by *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck. Author gives notes on the destructiveness of black rot.

Ruggles, A. G., and Stakman, E. C.

1911 Black rot. *In* Orchard and garden spraying. Minnesota Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 121:15.

Symptoms of black rot given.

Saccardo, P. A.

1884 a Phoma Malorum (Berk.) Sacc. Syll. Fung. 3:152–153.

A technical Latin description is given. Author lists *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Berk. in synonymy.

1884 b Sphaeropsis Malorum Peck. Syll. Fung. 3:294.

Describes the fungus which Peck (1881) reports and regards as new, thus giving rise to the name *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Peck.

Salmon, E. S.

1907 Apple leaf-spots. Gard. chron. ser. 3:42:305–306, fig. 120–124.

A brief discussion of varietal susceptibility and etiology of leaf spots caused by a species of Phyllosticta and one of Sphaeropsis. The author is in doubt as to whether the latter species is *S. Malorum*.

Scott, W. M.

1906 The control of apple bitter-rot. U. S. Plant Indus. Bur. Bul. 93:1–36, pl. 1–8.

Gives (p. 27–33) results of experiments for the control of leaf spot in connection with apple scab, sooty blotch, and bitter rot.

1908 Apple leaf-spot. *In* Self-boiled lime-sulphur mixture as a promising fungicide. U. S. Plant Indus. Bur. Circ. 1:12.

States that it appears that leaf spot may be prevented by this fungicide, but no data are cited.

1912 Apple leaf-spot, or frog-eye. *In* Spraying to control the important insects and fungous diseases affecting the fruit and foliage of the apple. Thomsen Chemical Co. (Baltimore, Md.). Circ. 4:14–15, pl. 2, fig. 1.

Scott, W. M., and Quaintance, A. L.

1907 Leaf-spot diseases. *In* Spraying for apple diseases and the codling moth in the Ozarks. U. S. Agr. Dept. Farmers' bul. 283:18–20, fig. 3.

Authors give recommendations for the control of leaf spot, which, as they state, may be due to *Sphaeropsis Malorum*.

Scott, W. M., and Rorer, J. B.

1908 Apple leaf-spot caused by Sphaeropsis Malorum. U. S. Plant Indus. Bur. Bul. 121:45–54, pl. 3–4.

Authors discuss the common names of the leaf spot, its history, geographical occurrence, importance, symptoms, etiology, and control. Proof of the pathogenicity of *Sphaeropsis Malorum* on apple leaves is given, together with a study of the rôle of associated fungi on leaf spots.

1909 Apple blotch, a serious disease of Southern orchards. U. S. Plant Indus. Bur. Bul. 144:1–28, pl. 1–6.

Authors suggest (p. 11) that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* is a factor in the killing of apple buds Further investigation is deemed desirable.

Scribner, F. L.

1890 Black-rot of the apple. Fungus diseases of the grape and other plants and their treatment, p. 81–83, fig. 1606.

Descriptions of the disease and of the fungus, called *Macrophoma Malorum*, are given.

Seaver, F. J.

1908 Color variation in some of the fungi. Bul. Torrey Bot. Club 35:307–314.

Points out that color characters are misleading and misused in the Hypocreales.

Selby, A. D.

1900 A condensed handbook of the diseases of cultivated plants in Ohio. Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 121:1–69, fig. 1–54.

Notes (p. 14) the disease on the leaves and fruit of apple and quince.

1910 Black-rot. *In* A brief handbook of the diseases of cultivated plants in Ohio. Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 214:368–369, 436, fig. 1–105.

Notes the importance of the disease in Ohio.

1913 Disease susceptibility of apple varieties in Ohio. Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Circ. 133:53–56.

Indicates degree of susceptibility of apple varieties to black rot and canker.

Shear, C. L.

1910 Life history of Melanops Quercuum (Schw.) Rehm forma Vitis Sacc. Science n. s. 31:748.

Pure cultures of ascospores of *Melanops Quercuum* (Schw.) Rehm forma *Vitis* Sacc. [= *Botryosphaeria Berengeriana* de Not. = *B. fuliginosa* (M. & N.) E. & E.] said to produce a pycnidial form which agrees with *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Berk. and *Diplodia pseudodiplodia* Fckl.

1913 Some observations on phytopathological problems in Europe and America. Phytopath. 3:77–87.

Sphaeropsis Malorum reported (p. 81–82) as doing no noticeable injury in orchards from Italy to England.

1914 Life history of Sphaeropsis Malorum Berk. Phytopath. 4:48–49.

Concludes from cultural studies the ascosporic form of *Sphaeropsis Malorum* Berk. is *Melanops Quercuum* f. *Vitis*.

Shear, C. L., and Wood, Anna K.

1913 Studies of fungous parasites belonging to the genus Glomerella. U. S. Plant Indus. Bur. Bul. 252:1–110. Illustrated.

Discuss host relationships, variability, and parasitism of Glomerella.

Sheldon, J. L.

1905 A report on plant diseases of the State. West Virginia Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 96:69–99. Illustrated.

Black rot (p. 74), leaf spot (p. 74–75), and canker (p. 74) reported.

1907 The taxonomy of a leaf-spot fungus of the apple and other fruit-trees. Torreya 7: 142–143.

The name of the leaf spot, or frog-eye, organism is changed from *Phyllosticta pirina* Sacc. to *Coniothyrium pirina* (Sacc.) Sheldon.

1908 Another leaf-spot fungus of the apple. Torreya 8: 139–141.

Illosporium malifoliorum n. sp. is said to be concerned with the leaf spot, in a secondary manner. This fungus is described.

Smith, R. I., and Stevens, F. L.

1910 Leaf spot. *Also*, Black rot. *In* Insects and fungous diseases of apple and pear. North Carolina Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 206: 94, 95, 102–103, fig. 23.

Call the disease *Sphaeropsose*, and state that perhaps one, but probably several, species are responsible for leaf spot.

Stene, A. E.

1910 Some suggestions for Rhode Island apple growers. Rhode Island State Agr. Bd. Ann. rept. 25: 93–181. Illustrated.

Leaf spots and canker said to be general in the State (p. 152–153).

Stevens, F. L., and Hall, J. G.

1907 Sphaeropsis on apple twigs. *In* Some apple diseases. North Carolina Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 196: 52–53.

1909 a Notes on plant diseases occurring in North Carolina. North Carolina Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. 31: 66–82, fig. 1–10.

Black rot and canker reported (p. 66). Sphaeropsis and an ascomycetous fungus found; name of latter not given. Sphaeropsis reported (p. 75) as a canker-producing fungus on pear.

1909 b Variation of fungi due to environment. Bot. gaz. 48: 1–30, fig. 1–37. *See also* North Carolina Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. 32 (1908–1909): 47–71, fig. 1–37.

Authors discuss observations on the influence of environment on the characters of certain fungi.

Stevens, F. L., and Sherman, F.

1903 The black rot. *Also*, The black rot of the quince. *In* Insect and fungus enemies of the apple, pear, and quince, with methods of treatment. North Carolina Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 183: 72, 82, fig. 1–22.

Symptoms and control measures of black rot and canker given.

Stewart, F. C.

1896 A new leaf-spot disease of apples. *In* Report of the Mycologist. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. 14 (1895): 545–546.

Records *Phyllosticta limitata* n. sp. on apple leaves on Long Island. Technical description given.

1904 Apple canker. *In* Fungi and fungous diseases. Western New York Hort. Soc. Proc. **49**: 53.

States that spraying for apple canker caused by *Sphaeropsis Malorum* is only a partial preventive; a matter not understood.

1909 Apple leaf spot. *In* Recent investigations on plant diseases. Western New York Hort. Soc. Proc. **54**: 78–79.

Believes that the leaf spot problem in New York is not completely solved. Points out that spraying often fails to control.

1910 Notes on New York plant diseases, I. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 328: 303–404, pl. 1–18.

Discusses (p. 312–313) occurrence of leaf spot in New York. Gives (p. 323–324) an account of a peculiar disease of the trunk of Walbridge apples and suggests that *Sphaeropsis Malorum* may have been a factor in producing the same. Suspects (p. 377–379) that the fungus also causes the failure of grafts of the pear.

Stewart, F. C., and Blodgett, F. H.

1899 A fruit-disease survey of the Hudson Valley in 1899. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 167: 273–308, pl. 1–4.

Notes on the geographical occurrence of the leaf spot and canker in the Hudson Valley (p. 283, 284, 301–302).

Stewart, F. C., and Eustace, H. J.

1902 Two unusual troubles of apple foliage. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 220: 215–233, pl. 1–5.

Authors conclude that spray material caused spotting of apple foliage; suspect the parasitism of Phyllosticta; suggest that drops of rain may act as lenses and concentrate the sun's rays, overheating the tissue beneath.

Stewart, F. C., Rolfs, F. M., and Hall, F. H.

1900 A fruit-disease survey of western New York in 1900. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 191: 289–331, pl. 1–6.

Note geographical occurrence of the disease in western New York.

Stone, G. E.

1914 Lime and sulfur solutions. Massachusetts Agr. Exp. Sta. Circ. 39: 1–4.

Lime and sulfur said to hold leaf spot in check, and believed to have material effect on cankers.

Stone, G. E., and Fernald, H. T.

1908 Canker. *In* Fungicides, insecticides, and spraying directions. Massachusetts Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 123: 16.

Suggestions for canker control are given.

Stone, G. E., and Monahan, N. F.

1907 The lime and sulfur mixture as a fungicide. *In* Report of the Botanist. Massachusetts (Hatch) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **19**: 167.

State that observations seem to indicate that spraying with lime and sulfur succeeds to some extent in controlling canker.

Stone, G. E., and Smith, R. E.

1903 Apple-leaf spot. *In* Report of the Botanists. Massachusetts (Hatch) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **15**: 27, 32–34.

Frost followed by cold wet weather caused apple leaf spot.

Sturgis, W. C.

1893 a Black-rot (Sphaeropsis Malorum Peck). *In* Common fungous diseases and their treatment. Connecticut (New Haven) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 115:6–7.
Black rot of apple, quince, and pear noted.

1893 b Black rot of quinces. *In* Report of the Mycologist. Connecticut (New Haven) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **1892**: 43–44.
Description of black rot disease of quince fruits.

1894 Black rot (Sphaeropsis Malorum Peck). *In* Report of the Mycologist. Connecticut (New Haven) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **17**: 78–79.
Reports inoculation and spore germination data. States that the wind and other agencies carry the fungus spores.

Taft, L. R., and Davis, G. C.

1895 Black rot (Sphaeropsis Malorum Berk.). *In* The pests of the orchard and garden. Michigan State Agr. Coll. Exp. Sta. Bul. 121:21.
Briefly describe black rot and give suggestions for control.

Taubenhaus, J. J.

1912 A further study of some Gloeosporiums and their relation to a sweet pea disease. Phytopath. **2**: 153–160, pl. 16, fig. 1–19.
States (p. 157) in a footnote that black rot was very prevalent in the very dry summer of 1911.

Taylor, W. A.

1914 Fruit diseases. *In* Report of the Chief of the Bureau of Plant Industry. U. S. Agr. Dept. Rept. **1913**: 105–133.
States (p. 107) that a variety of *Melanops Quercuum* has been shown to be the perfect stage of *Sphaeropsis Malorum.*

Thümen, F. von

1879 Fungi pomicoli, p. 108. (Cited from Baccarini, 1890.)

Waite, M. B.

1898 a An apple canker. Western New York Hort. Soc. Proc. **43**: 9–11.
Briefly outlines the history and distribution of the disease, and suggests that the cause may be *Schizophyllum commune.* Control measures suggested.

1898 b An apple canker. Rural New-Yorker **57**: 82, fig. 32.
Essentially the same paper as the preceding.

1906 Fungicides and their use in preventing diseases of fruits. U. S. Agr. Dept. Farmers' bul. 243: 1–32, fig. 1–17.
Brief notes (p. 19) on control of black rot, leaf spot, and canker.

1908 Apple leaf blight. *In* Diseases of orchard trees and fruits. Pennsylvania Agr. Dept. Ann. rept. **13**: 450–452.
Gives treatment for leaf spot.

1910 Experiments on the apple with some new and little-known fungicides. U. S. Plant Indus. Bur. Circ. 58: 1–19.
Notes on leaf spot.

Walker, Leva B.

1908 A new form of Sphaeropsis on apples. Nebraska Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **21**: 34–44, fig. 1–10.

Compares typical *Sphaeropsis Malorum* with a new form, the latter having larger spores, pycnidia with long necks, and no ostiole, and being more virulent in producing black rot.

Wallace, Errett

1913 Scab disease of apples. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 335: 541–624. Illustrated.

Warren, G. F., and McCourt, W. E.

1905 The apple-tree canker. *In* An apple orchard survey of Wayne County, New York. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 226: 341–345, fig. 86–87.

Attention is given to the economic importance of the canker and to control measures followed by the growers in this section of the country. It is said that very few mature Twenty Ounce trees are not badly cankered, and Esopus suffers seriously.

Whetzel, H. H.

1906 The blight canker of apple and pear trees. Western New York Hort. Soc. Proc. **51**: 36–45.

Compares fire-blight and New York apple-tree cankers.

1907 The New York apple tree canker. *In* Fighting the fungi in their winter quarters. Cornell reading-course for farmers, March, 1907, p. 670–671, fig. 365.

Gives symptoms of canker and measures for its control.

Whetzel, H. H., and Stewart, F. C.

1908 New York apple-tree canker. *In* Insect pests and plant diseases. IV. _The control of plant diseases Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 252: 350, fig. 165.

Suggestions for canker control are given.

Wilcox, E. M.

1905 Black rot. *Also* Canker. *In* Diseases of the apple, cherry, peach, pear, and plum; with methods of treatment. Alabama (Auburn) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 132: 89–93, pl. 2, fig. 6.

Notes on symptoms and control of black rot and canker.

Wilcox, E. M., and Stone, R. E.

1909 Black rot (Sphaeropsis Malorum). *In* Directions for the control of Nebraska plant diseases. Nebraska Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **22**: 31.

Give schedule for control of canker and black rot.

Wilson, G. W.

1913 New York canker. *In* Notes on three limb diseases of apple. North Carolina Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **35**: 47–49, fig. 1.

Brief summary of history, distribution, importance, and symptoms of the disease. Author states that the fungus may enter the bark under certain conditions, and that it does not travel in the wood.

Wolf, F. A.

1910 The prevalence of certain parasitic and saprophytic fungi in orchards as determined by plate cultures. Plant world 13: 190–202.

By use of trap cultures the author concludes that at no time during the period in which exposures were made (September to May) were viable spores of *Sphaeropsis Malorum* present in the atmosphere of the orchard.

1913 Control of apple black-rot. Phytopath. 3: 288–289.

Suggests that apple mummies are a source of the inoculum. Reports that in the South lime-sulfur alone is effective against the disease; bordeaux 4-4-50 also satisfactory. A spraying schedule is given.

SEPTEMBER, 1916 BULLETIN 380

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

THE HARD ROT DISEASE OF GLADIOLUS

L. M. MASSEY

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, JR., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, JR., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, JR., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
LEX R. HESLER, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
CHARLES H. HADLEY, JR., B.S., Entomology.
DANIEL S. FOX, B.S., Farm Management.
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE

The host plant 257
  Economic importance of the gladiolus industry 257
The disease 257
  Economic importance of the disease 259
  Symptoms 260
    On the leaves 260
    On the corms 260
  Etiology 261
    Life history 262
      Pycnidia 262
      Mycelium 263
      Source of leaf infection 263
      Source of corm infection 265
      Longevity of the organism on the foliage and in the soil 266
    Pathogenicity 267
      Inoculation experiments 267
    Pathological histology 271
      Leaf 271
      Corm 272
    Cultural characters of the fungus 272
Control 276
  Seedling treatments 276
  Corm treatments 277
    Healthy corms in soil free from the pathogenes 277
    Healthy corms in soil known to harbor the pathogenes 279
    Diseased corms in soil free from the pathogenes 279
      Spring treatments 279
      Autumn treatments 280
        Experiment 1. Treatment of corms with formalin and corrosive sublimate solutions 280
        Experiment 2. Formaldehyde gas as a disinfectant 281
        Experiment 3. Hot-water and hot-air treatments of diseased corms 281
  Soil treatments 282
    Experiment 1. Chemicals 282
    Experiment 2. Formalin as a soil disinfectant 283
    Experiment 3. Formalin as a soil disinfectant 284
  Sanitation 284
Bibliography 284

THE HARD ROT DISEASE OF GLADIOLUS[1]

L. M. MASSEY

THE HOST PLANT

The gladiolus is a cormous, summer-flowering plant. Pax (1889)[2] classifies it as a member of the family Iridaceae, of the tribe Ixioideae, subtribe Gladioleae, genus Gladiolus. The species of Gladiolus may be grown from corms, from cormels (the grayish to black, hard-shelled bodies formed on underground stems at the base of the new corm), or from seed. The plants are indigenous to South Africa, where, according to Crawford (Crawford and Van Fleet, 1911:3), about fifty species have been discovered. This writer states:

> It is also a native of middle Africa, central and southern Europe, Persia, Caucasus, and the country around the eastern end of the Mediterranean. About forty additional species have been found in these localities, and one in Hampshire, England. These have been hybridized and crossed until they are so mixed that it is impossible for the ordinary grower to say what blood may have entered a given variety—nor does it matter.

ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE OF THE GLADIOLUS INDUSTRY

According to Hendrickson (1911), there are from four hundred to five hundred acres in the United States devoted to gladioli, the annual production of corms being from 14,000,000 to 15,000,000 and the estimated value of the crops $250,000. In New York State, besides many small growers there are two growers each having over one hundred acres devoted entirely to the cultivation of gladioli. A list of the members of the American Gladiolus Society which appeared in 1914 in the *Modern Gladiolus Grower* (1:31–32) contains two hundred and twenty names, of which but sixty-three are those of amateurs and twenty-eight those of foreign dealers and growers. The output of these growers and dealers represents only a portion of the total output of the United States. Almost every florist is more or less interested in the production of corms and flowers of the gladiolus, which appears to be increasing in popularity as a cut flower.

THE DISEASE

The name *hard rot* was given to the corm stage of the disease under consideration by Wallace (1909:18), who makes no reference to a leaf stage. This name was given to distinguish the disease from other corm

---

[1] Also presented to the Faculty of the Graduate School of Cornell University, January, 1916, as a major thesis in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of doctor of philosophy.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT. The writer wishes to express his indebtedness to Professors Donald Reddick and H. H. Whetzel, under whose immediate direction the work was conducted, for helpful criticisms and suggestions.

[2] Dates in parenthesis refer to bibliography, page 284.

diseases, such as dry rot and soft rot, with which both Wallace and Fitzpatrick[3] worked prior to 1912. The writer took up the investigation of these diseases in 1912 and has given them constant study since that time.

Apparently the hard rot disease of gladiolus exists wherever gladioli are grown. Specimens have been received from many of the largest growers in the United States. Horticultural publications contain many references to corm rots, and no doubt much of this injury is due to the hard rot disease. Plants growing in the greenhouse at Cornell University from corms received from Italy by A. C. Hottes bore the leaf stage of the disease. The writer has received corms affected with hard rot from Canada, Germany, and Holland.

Prillieux and Delacroix (1894) report having studied a disease of the gladiolus in which the tissue was deeply corroded, but the writer is unable to determine whether or not it is the same disease as the one considered in this bulletin. Unpublished notes placed at the disposal of the writer by Professor F. C. Stewart, of the New York (Geneva) Agricultural Experiment Station, mention the only distinction observed, prior to Wallace's thesis (1909), between two types of rots. Concerning specimens of diseased corms received from a New York State grower, Professor Stewart suggested the probability that they were affected with the bacterial disease described by Prillieux and Delacroix, since he was unable to locate any trace of fungous hyphæ in the diseased tissue. Wallace (1909:15) was of the opinion that the corms received by Professor Stewart were affected with the hard rot disease.

In 1874 Passerini collected specimens of the leaf stage of the hard rot disease, which he contributed to exsiccatæ of Rabenhorst's *Fungi Europaei*.

Saccardo (1884) reports the occurrence of the leaf stage of the disease on *Gladiolus segetum* at Parma, Italy, and on *Gladiolus gandavensis* at Coimbra, Portugal. Allescher (1897), in addition to the occurrence on hosts listed by Saccardo, reports the disease as occurring on the leaves of *Gladiolus palustris* in Silesia. So far as known to the writer, the leaf stage of this disease has never been reported in America. A "blight" is frequently mentioned in horticultural publications, but the descriptions of the injury are in all cases so indefinite that it is impossible to determine what diseases the writers had under observation. Hicks (1907:35) and Childs (1907) write of gladiolus leaf blight, but there is nothing in their writings sufficiently definite to make it possible to determine the nature of the injury. Halsted (1894–1901) reports having worked on gladiolus diseases, but leaves the reader in doubt as to what the diseases were.

---

[3] Unpublished notes of Professor H. M. Fitzpatrick, of Cornell University, covering his investigations of gladiolus diseases, were kindly placed at the disposal of the writer.

Undoubtedly the leaf stage of the hard rot disease occurs more generally throughout the country than is indicated by an examination of literature. This is due to importation of stock from Europe and exchange of stock by growers in this country. On the other hand, the writer has observed specimens of the disease on the foliage of plants grown by but three large growers.

Foliage affected with the disease was first observed by the writer in 1912 in seedling beds, and later on plants grown from cormels. Not until the season of 1915 did the writer find the disease on the foliage of large plants, at which time six plants of flowering size were observed to be affected. In many cases large flowering plants of different varieties have been observed growing in seed beds or among plants from cormels, all of which were badly diseased and yet the large plants showed no signs of the leaf stage. Large plantations of cormels have been observed in which fifty per cent of the plants bore the disease on the foliage.

Nothing has been found in literature that would indicate that there is any relation between the leaf stage and the corm stage of the disease under consideration. It has been the writer's fortune to obtain conclusive evidence that they are but different stages of the same disease, and the experimental data leading to this conclusion are here set forth.

ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE OF THE DISEASE

No figures are available to show the economic importance of the hard rot disease of the gladiolus, but it must be considerable as compared with the extent of the industry. Many thousands of corms are discarded during the winter and in the spring at planting time because of their diseased condition. During the summer many thousands of corms fail to reach maturity, due to the decay of the parent corms in the soil. While there are other diseases of the gladiolus, it is the opinion of the writer, based on observations made during the past four years, that a large proportion of this loss is due to the hard rot disease. Several varieties of gladiolus that have been examined showed fifty per cent or more of the corms to be affected by hard rot. So far as the writer knows, no variety is immune.

While the loss caused by the leaf stage of the disease is materially less than that caused by the corm stage, it is still of considerable importance to the grower. It has been observed that when the foliage of seedlings and of plants from cormels is affected by the disease, the corms are smaller than those of plantings that were free from disease. Therefore the decrease in size must be considered along with the total loss of many thousands of corms. To this must be added the extra expense incurred by the grower in sorting and selecting more or less healthy corms from diseased lots, either in filling orders or for his own planting. All in all, the loss must take from the producer a yearly toll of surprising magnitude.

SYMPTOMS

On the leaves

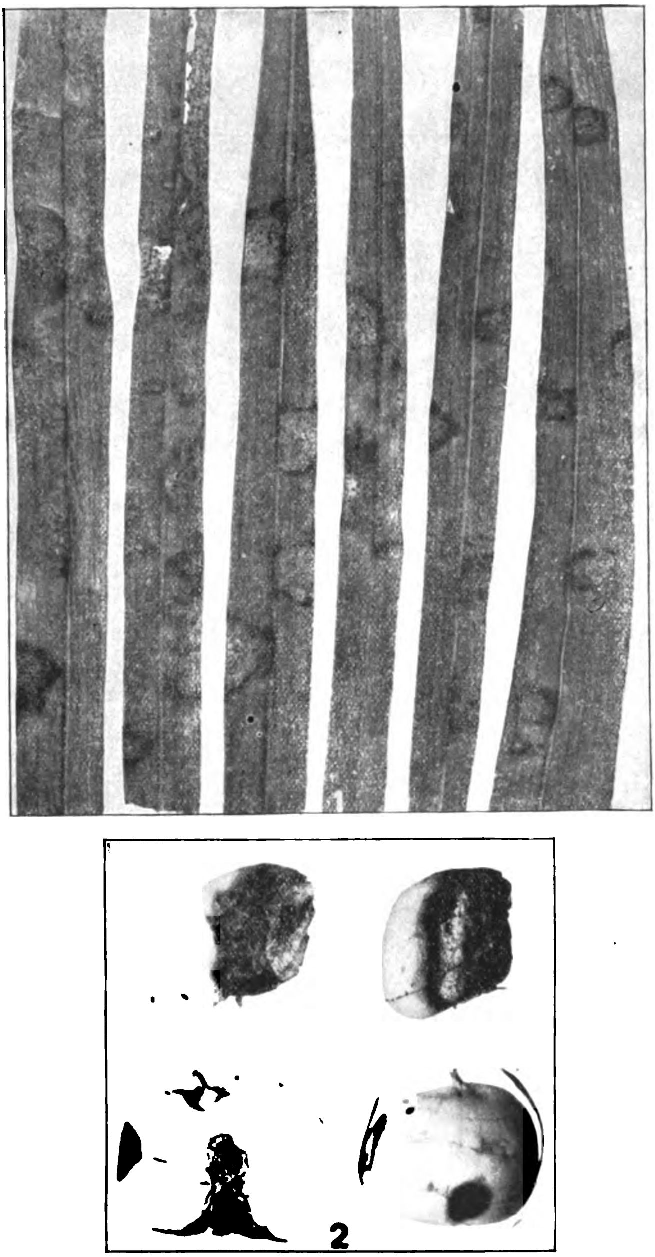
The first signs of the disease on the leaf are minute brown or purplish brown discolored areas more or less circular in outline. These lesions usually appear in July or early August. The color of the diseased areas deepens somewhat with age until a shade from reddish brown to almost black is reached. Spots of a reddish brown color predominate. In the older lesions there is a well-differentiated center, light gray in color and dotted with numerous black bodies which are very apparent (Plate XV, 1). Surrounding the center is a prominent zone, varying from purplish brown to black in color, which blends into the green of the healthy tissue.

The lesions are more or less circular but with straight sides where they are limited by the midrib and the edge of the leaf. At first the discoloration may be visible on only one side of the leaf, but it soon makes its appearance on the opposite side, so that lesions appear practically identical on either side. They are few or numerous, and vary in size depending on conditions. The coalescence of several or many spots may occur, causing the formation of a single large necrotic area along the entire side of a leaf. Lesions on the tips of the leaves are usually larger and less characteristic than those below. In some cases the ashen gray centers of diseased areas drop out, giving a shot-hole appearance. This is more likely to occur with spots on large flowering plants than with those on seedlings.

On the corms

Hard rot lesions appear in the fall as minute water-soaked spots, of a reddish brown to brownish black color, usually on the sides and the lower half of the corm but not infrequently on the upper half as well (Plate XVI). It is usually necessary to remove the husks (sheathing leaf bases) from the corms in order to see the lesions, although in some cases the husk also is diseased. The lesion on the husk serves as an indication of the more important lesion underneath. There is no sharp line of demarcation between the healthy and the diseased tissue.

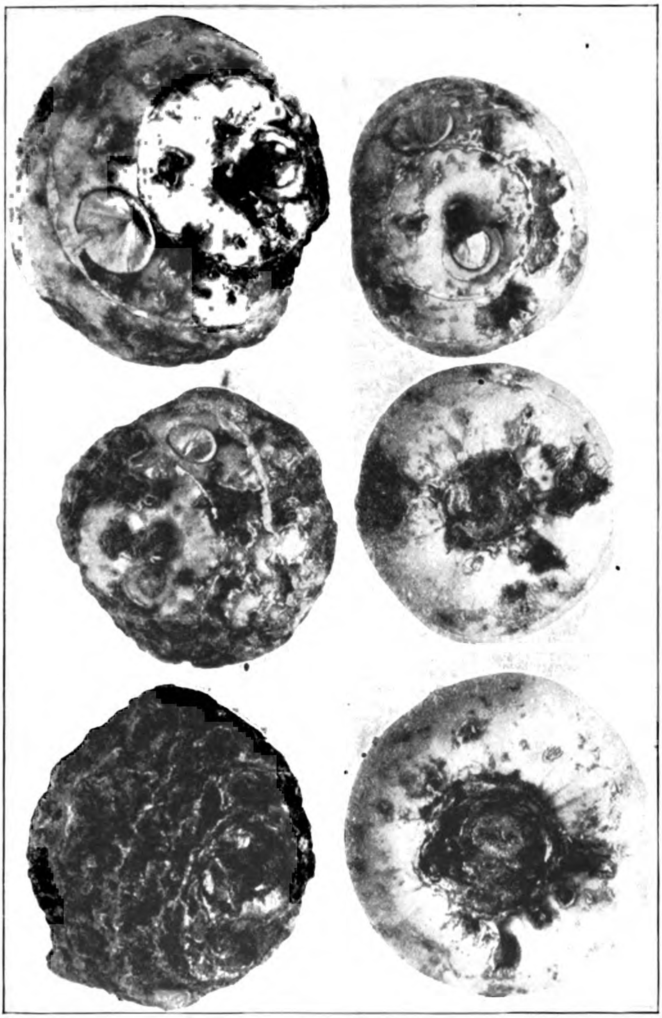
As the spot increases in size, the center becomes sunken, the color deepens to a distinct black, and the margin becomes more definite. A narrow ring, water-soaked in appearance, still indicates the advancing decay. The more definite margin of the older spots is due to the rapidity with which the sunken condition follows the advancing water-soaked area, due to drying of the tissue. The tissue gradually becomes hard, in



HARD ROT LESIONS ON LEAVES AND CORMS

1. Lesions on leaves of gladiolus seedlings. × 2

2. Lesions on corms. The two upper corms show lesions well advanced, with the diseased area blending into the healthy tissue. At the bottom the corm on the left has been cut in two in order to show the depth to which the disease has progressed. Natural size



HARD ROT LESIONS ON CORMS

Different stages in the destruction of a corm. × 1½ some cases extremely so, making it difficult to cut the tissue with a sharp knife.

Many small lesions may coalesce into one large lesion, in some cases leaving areas of more or less normal tissue insulated in a large sunken area. Enough tissue not completely decayed may be left to indicate the margins of the formerly separate lesions. Frequently the disease advances so far that the corm is reduced to a hard, shriveled, and wrinkled mummy.

Excepting in very late stages — and in some cases not even then — the lesions do not extend deeply into the corm. The usual range is from one to five or six millimeters (Plate XV, 2). If conditions are not favorable for the development of the rot, the active border disappears, soon assuming the sunken, darkened aspect of the central part. When this stage is reached the diseased tissue can be chipped out with the finger nail, leaving the apparently healthy tissue beneath, as if the disease were not now advancing and the plant had formed a callus over the affected area.

Plants of more or less dwarfed, stunted appearance, which sometimes fail to produce blossoms, are to be found throughout the fields during the growing season. The leaves of these plants usually turn brown and die, the plant having the appearance of having died from drought. In a dry season the number of these plants is unusually large. At this time there is no decay of the new corm which is being developed, but rather the injury is caused by the premature decay of the parent corm before the offspring has developed a sufficient root system to enable it to supply its own moisture and food. This premature decay of the parent corm is not necessarily due to the advancement of the hard rot disease, but probably in most cases to the entrance of saprophytes which cause a rapid disintegration of the corm.

ETIOLOGY

The hard rot disease of the gladiolus is caused by the fungous pathogene *Septoria Gladioli* Passer. Passerini collected specimens of the leaf stage of the disease on the foliage of *Gladiolus segetum* near Parma, Italy, in June, 1874, which he contributed to Rabenhorst's *Fungi Europaei* — a collection of exsiccatæ material. On this packet of exsiccatæ material is written the original description of the fungus.[4] Passerini noted the occurrence of the disease only on the leaves. None of the other investigators found a sporulating stage of the fungus known to cause the hard rot disease of corms, and consequently the septorial fungus on the leaf was not associated with the organism causing the rot of the corms.

---

[4] Rabenhorst, Fungi Europaei.
1956. Septoria Gladioli Passer. hb.
Perithecia punctiformia atra in macula exarida fulvomarginata: sporae cylindricae subrectae continuae hyalinae cirrose ejectae.
Ad folia G. segetum Vigheffio prope Parmam.
Junio 1874. leg. G. Passerini.

Life history

Pycnidia

Pycnidia (Plate xv, 1) of the hard rot fungus become visible usually within four or five days after, or in some cases even simultaneously with, the appearance of the lesion on the leaf. They are imbedded in the tissue, but protrude sufficiently to form black papillæ which are visible to the naked eye.

The pycnidia arise from intercellular mycelium (fig. 38). They measure from 100 to 160 μ in diameter by 60 to 130 μ high, the average being 127 μ in diameter by 91 μ high. The outer wall of the pycnidium consists of pseudoparenchymatous tissue which is brown in color.

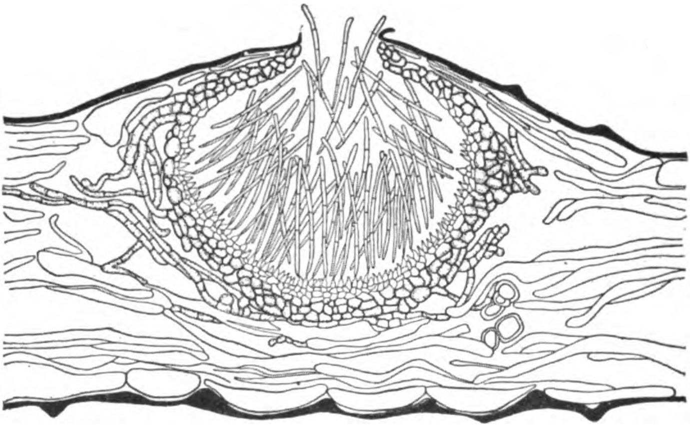


FIG. 38. PYCNIDIUM OF SEPTORIA GLADIOLI

Section through the pycnidium showing how the spores are borne. (Outlined with a camera lucida.) X 333

From a more or less inconspicuous inner layer of thinner-walled pseudoparenchymatous tissue, hyaline conidiophores arise. From these conidiophores spores are cut off by constriction. In his description of the fungus Allescher (1897) describes the spores as being unicellular and measuring from 30 to 54 μ long by 2 to 2.5 μ in diameter. However, an examination made by the writer of specimens contained in packet no. 1956 of Rabenhorst's *Fungi Europaei*, as well as of fresh material, shows that the spores are usually three-septate. As measured by the writer they are from 20 to 55 μ long by 2.25 to 4 μ in diameter, the average being about 40 by 3 μ. The spores from fresh material are cylindrical, almost straight, and hyaline.

When placed in water containing small pieces of leaf tissue, germination occurs in eighteen hours. From one to several germ tubes may develop from a single spore (fig. 39).

Mycelium

The mycelium in the corm is intercellular (figs. 40 and 41). It usually measures from 1.5 to 2.5 μ in diameter, but is in some cases even double this size. The mycelium is septate and varies from olive-brown to black in color.

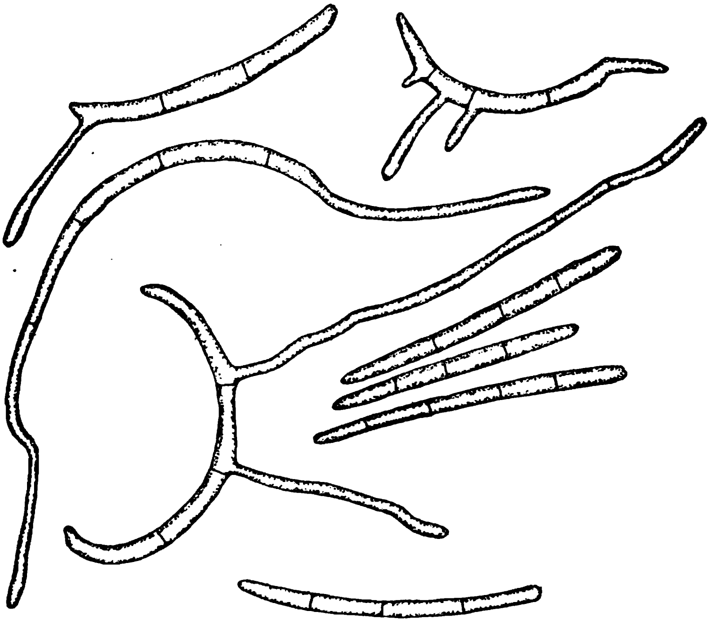


FIG. 39. SPORES OF SEPTORIA GLADIOLI

Some of the spores have germinated. (Outlined with a camera lucida.) × 666

Source of leaf infection

No sexual stage of the fungus has been found. Old leaves bearing pycnidia when exposed out of doors throughout the winter showed usually only empty pycnidia when examined the following spring. From the results of experiments subsequently discussed, apparently the mycelium of the fungus is able to live over winter in the soil. This suggests the possibility that infection is produced on the foliage by rain splashing soil containing mycelium on to the plants, or by the plants being beaten down on to the soil that harbors the pathogene. However, seedlings around which rye straw was placed to keep them off the ground and to prevent soil from being splashed on to them, were attacked by the fungus as early and as severely as those not so treated; and attempts to produce infection on the foliage of large plants by bending them over on to the soil have thus far failed. Not enough work has been done to either prove or disprove these suggested sources of infection of the foliage.

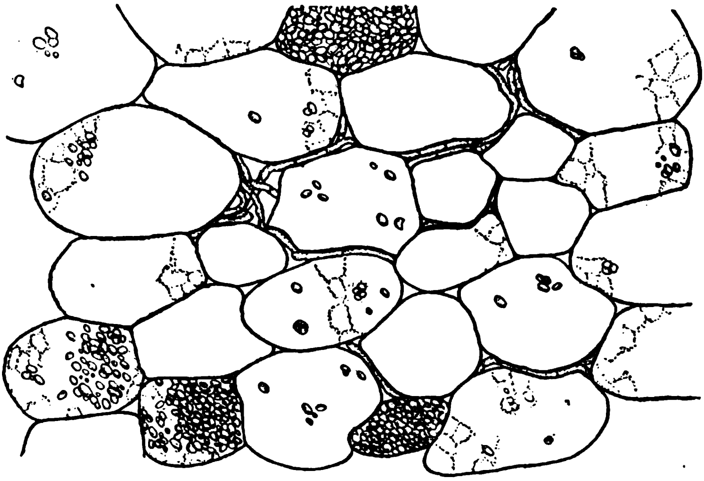


FIG. 40. HISTOLOGICAL EFFECT OF SEPTORIA GLADIOLI

Section of gladiolus corm through diseased tissue. The presence of intercellular mycelium, and the absence of starch in many cells, should be noted. (Compare with figure 41.) × 300

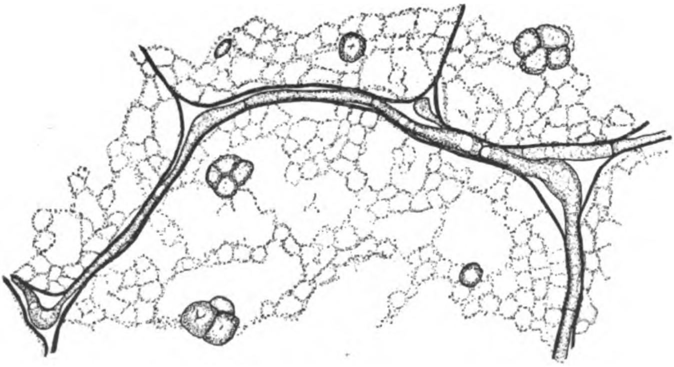


FIG. 41. MYCELIUM OF SEPTORIA GLADIOLI

The intercellular mycelium is shown much magnified. (Camera lucida drawing.) × 600

In the greenhouse, the incubation period of the fungus on plants that were sprayed with water containing spores in suspension was about twenty days.

Source of corm infection

An examination of corms harvested from seed beds where the foliage was badly diseased, has frequently shown from sixty to seventy per cent of them to be affected with hard rot. This, together with the fact that infection was produced on corms by placing in contact with them water containing spores in suspension (page 271), suggests the probability that infection is produced by spores being washed down from pycnidia formed on the foliage to the soil, where they germinate and infect the corms. As seeds are not planted very deeply, this could readily take place. It is unusual, however, for the disease to appear on the foliage of large flowering plants; and as pycnidia have not been observed to be formed on the corm, it seems that the fungus is carried over the winter primarily, if not entirely, in the mycelial stage, no spore form being necessary for the existence of the pathogene.

The fungus can be isolated from lesions on the corms at any time during winter or spring. This shows that the living organism is carried to the soil along with the corm at planting time. The offspring from diseased corms may or may not be diseased. As discussed under control (page 277), selected healthy corms grown in soil in which gladioli have never been grown have without exception given sound offspring. This indicates that the fungus is not a natural inhabitant of the soil. Furthermore, three hundred corms, all of which showed hard rot lesions, were planted in soil in which gladioli had never been grown, and seventy-eight per cent of the offspring bore hard rot lesions. Thus it seems that, in the majority of cases at least, a diseased offspring may be expected from the planting of a diseased corm.

The fungus does not grow directly from the old corm into the new one. This has been determined both by observations and by making numerous cultures from tissue at the juncture of parent and offspring. The fungus must either grow through the sheathing leaf base from the old corm to the new one, or else, as is probably the case, grow out into the soil, from which it attacks the newly developing corm.

No observations have been made which would lead the writer to believe that all infection does not occur in the field. However, it is conceivable that if corms were stored under humid conditions either in contact with one another or with moist soil, the fungus might possibly penetrate a healthy corm from an infected one or from infected soil; or, if they were stored with soil containing the pathogene around them, there is no doubt that, under moist conditions, infection could occur in the storage house as well as in the field.

Diseased corms were minced and placed in soil known to be free from the pathogene, in which two hundred healthy corms were growing. The pieces of diseased corms were merely sprinkled in among the corms before covering them with soil and no attempt was made to see that pieces were or were not in actual contact with the healthy corms. Seven per cent of the offspring were diseased.

Longevity of the organism on the foliage and in the soil

As indicated by the following experiment, the fungus is carried over winter on diseased tops:

Two hundred corms which had been grown for three consecutive years in soil that had never before been used for growing gladioli, were again planted in similar soil in 1915. Previous to planting, the corms were examined and found to be absolutely healthy. After setting the corms, tops from cormels which had been badly affected by the disease the previous year and which had remained out of doors on the ground throughout the winter, were scattered in the row. The tops and the corms were then covered with soil. These plants were harvested in September and the corms stored in a cool place. When examined early in December it was found that eighty per cent of the corms showed hard rot lesions. Practically all the diseased corms had many lesions on them, and the disease was well advanced. *Septoria Gladioli* Passer. was isolated from many of these lesions, proving that this fungus caused the disease. Healthy corms around which no diseased tops were placed but which were otherwise given the same treatment, showed no signs of disease.

The results of experiments indicate that the fungus is able not only to live over winter on old tops on the ground, but also to live in the soil throughout a period of at least four years. In 1915 selected healthy corms were planted in soil in which gladioli had been grown the previous year, and also in soil in which no gladioli had been grown for (a) one year, (b) two years, (c) three years, and (d) four years. During the intervening time the soil had been planted respectively to (a) rye and a crop of rye and vetch, (b) rye and timothy, (c) oats, hay, seeded to clover, cover crop of rye and vetch, (d) grass. In each of the five plots of ground two hundred and fifty healthy corms were planted, two hundred of them being planted in a single row and the remaining fifty in lots of ten at five different places in the field. The corms were harvested in September and stored in a cool place.

Results of these experiments were recorded the following December. Forty-seven per cent of the corms which were grown in the plot in which gladioli had been grown the previous year, were diseased, fifty per cent of the diseased corms showing characteristic hard rot lesions. The corms from the other plots were diseased as follows: (a) twenty-four per cent, forty per cent of which bore hard rot lesions; (b) twenty-three per cent, thirty-seven per cent of which bore hard rot lesions; (c) fifty-two per cent, eighteen per cent of which bore hard rot lesions; (d) forty-seven per cent, ten per cent of which bore hard rot lesions. Care was taken during the summer to avoid contaminating these plots by introducing affected soil from other fields, and the location was such that it is extremely doubtful that the wind could have entered as a factor. Since healthy corms planted in soil in which no gladioli have been grown give healthy offspring, it follows that the organism must be able to live for at least four years without the presence of the living host. No doubt decaying parts of plants were left in the soil when the last crop was harvested, but it is probable that, at least in the case of plot d, these plant parts were entirely decayed in the four years which intervened between the harvesting of the last crop of gladioli and the planting of the healthy corms used in this experiment.

Pathogenicity

The pathogenicity of *Septoria Gladioli* Passer. was established first for the mycelial stage. The mycelium of the fungus was discovered by Wallace (1909:33), who, after having observed its presence in thin sections of diseased tissue of the corm, succeeded in obtaining the organism in pure culture. He later (1910 a) succeeded in producing the characteristic lesions on experimentally inoculated corms, and reisolated the fungus. Following Wallace, Fitzpatrick (see footnote, page 258) records having produced the characteristic lesions on corms artificially inoculated in moist chambers, from which the fungus was reisolated.

Besides noting the constant association of the mycelium with lesions on corms through microscopical examinations of diseased tissue, the writer has made numerous isolations of the organism from these diseased areas. The growth of the mycelium was studied in pure culture and infection was produced at will, not only in moist chambers in sterile sand, but also in the greenhouse, and in the field under natural conditions.

Inoculation experiments

Corms were selected which after having been in the storehouse for four months showed no signs of disease. This necessitated the removal of the husks. The surface was sterilized by immersing the corm in fifty-per-cent alcohol for three minutes, then in 1–1000 corrosive sublimate solution for ten minutes, and finally rinsing in sterile water. These corms were then planted, some in sterile sand in moist chambers, some in soil in the greenhouse in which gladioli had never been grown, and some out of doors in soil never before used for the growing of gladioli.

For inoculation, mycelium growing in pure cultures on solid media was used. A bit of the medium containing mycelium was removed under sterile conditions, and in some instances smeared over a part of the uninjured surface of the corm; in other cases the corm was first injured by needle punctures and the culture was then smeared on the surface. The corms were permitted to remain in the soil for a period of two or three weeks, when they were removed and the growth they had made was cut off.

In practically all cases one hundred per cent infection was obtained. Most of the corms showed the dark brown, water-soaked areas, characteristic of the hard rot disease, when dug. The remainder showed the lesions very soon afterward. Equally as abundant infection was obtained on the uninjured corms as on those punctured by the needle. From diseased areas of the affected corms the fungus was reisolated and grown in pure culture, where its growth corresponded in every detail with the organism used for the inoculation. Corms similarly treated but having no mycelium placed in contact with them remained healthy in all instances.

In order to further test the ability of the fungus to produce disease, sound corms were planted in soil in which gladioli had never been grown, and permitted to grow to maturity. On August 15, 1914, as the offspring were developing from the parent corms, the soil was inoculated with mycelium of the fungus. The inoculum was prepared by grinding cultures of the organism on oatmeal agar with cornmeal, and was applied by placing a small handful of the mixture around each corm in immediate contact with it. Of the one hundred corms thus inoculated, seventy-three showed characteristic hard rot lesions when the results of the experiment were recorded the following December. Reisolations of the fungus were obtained from many of the diseased corms. Corms from plants which had not been inoculated with mycelium remained absolutely healthy.

The above experiments prove the ability of the mycelial stage of the hard rot fungus to attack gladiolus corms. The experiments given below show that this mycelium is but a stage of *Septoria Gladioli*, which Passerini described as occurring on the foliage of *Gladiolus segetum* in Italy.

A pure culture of the fungus *Septoria Gladioli* Passer. was obtained from the germination of a single spore from a pycnidium formed on the leaf of a gladiolus seedling. The resulting fungous growth was identical with that obtained from isolations from small pieces of diseased corm tissue. Mycelium thus obtained from a single spore was used to inoculate healthy corms, some of which were planted in moist chambers in sterile sand, others in soil in the greenhouse known to be free from the pathogene, and still others out of doors in soil in which gladioli had never been grown. Numerous experiments were performed, and in all cases one hundred per cent infection was obtained by smearing a small quantity of an agar culture of the mycelium from a single spore on the surface of the corms. The fungus was reisolated from diseased areas on the corms, and its growth in pure culture was found to be identical with the organism previously isolated from corms and from the germination of a single pycnospore.

In order to test the ability of the fungus isolated from a lesion on a corm to attack the foliage, a small piece of an agar culture of the organism was mixed with a little sterile distilled water and painted on the foliage of seedlings and flowering plants growing in the greenhouse. The seedlings were then inclosed in bell glasses lined with moistened filter paper, while the parts of the large plants on which the mycelium was placed were inclosed in a lamp chimney stoppered at both ends with cotton. Seedlings and large plants were similarly treated with mycelium obtained from the germination of a single pycnospore. Plants were similarly treated, except for the omission of the mycelium, to serve as a check.

Inoculations were successful with both the mycelium from the germinated spore and that from the diseased corm. Infection was evident on the seedlings within ten days. The lesions differed somewhat from those found under natural conditions, infection manifesting itself in the form of large, dark, water-soaked areas, with the early death of the entire area over which the inoculum was painted. The lesions produced by mycelium from the two different sources were similar.

On the large plants, infection was observed within fourteen days after inoculation, the lesions being identical on the plants inoculated with mycelium from the two different sources. At first a dark area, water-soaked in appearance, was formed, and then the lesions turned brown due to the death of the tissue. The lesions in no case extended much farther in area than that covered by the culture of mycelium painted on the foliage. The most significant fact is that pycnidia developed in these lesions on the leaf on practically all of the twenty-four plants inoculated with the mycelium, regardless of whether the mycelium was from a germinated spore or from a diseased corm. Although many pycnidia failed to reach maturity, spores were formed in several of them. These spores were germinated and the fungus was obtained in pure culture.

In October, 1914, Septoria-like spores were found in a culture of the organism isolated from a diseased corm. These spores, together with others obtained from pycnidia on seedling leaves, were used in the following experiments:

Seeds were planted in three flats in the greenhouse and the plants were permitted to grow until they were from two to four inches high. The plants in one flat were sprayed with water containing, in suspension.

spores from a culture of the fungus isolated from a diseased corm; the plants in the second flat were sprayed with a suspension of spores from pycnidia formed naturally on seedlings; the plants in the remaining flat were sprayed with water containing no spores, for a check. The seedlings were then covered with bell glasses lined with moistened filter paper, and the three flats were placed in a large moist propagating chamber for seventy-two hours.

An examination of these seedlings twenty days after they had been sprayed with the suspension of spores in water showed evidence of infection. Small yellowish brown areas were apparent and numerous pycnidia appeared in these lesions a few days later. The lesions were characteristic of those found on the seedlings under natural conditions. The check plants alone remained healthy, infection occurring on plants which were inoculated either with spores from culture or with spores from pycnidia formed under natural conditions. The fungus was again obtained in pure culture from the germination of single spores from pycnidia formed on both lots of infected plants.

It then seemed desirable to determine whether or not corms could become infected by spraying spores upon them. The surfaces of thirty healthy corms were sterilized by immersing them first in fifty-per-cent alcohol for three minutes, then in 1–1000 corrosive sublimate solution for ten minutes, and finally rinsing in sterile water. Ten of these corms were then planted in each of three moist chambers containing moist sand which had previously been subjected to steam at ten pounds pressure for two hours. Corms that were particularly depressed at the crown were selected for the experiment, in order that a cubic centimeter or more of water could be held in each of these cavities. Water containing spores in suspension was placed in the depressed areas of the corms in two of the moist chambers. The spores for one chamber were obtained from pycnidia formed naturally on the foliage of seedlings, while for the other chamber the spores were obtained from a culture of the fungus isolated from a diseased corm. The third chamber was used for a check, water containing no spores being placed in the cavities of the corms. One-half of the corms in each chamber were then pricked with a sterile needle in the area covered by the water.

Observations made twenty days later showed most of the corms in the two chambers which were inoculated with spores to be infected. Six days later, when they were removed, all the inoculated corms showed the characteristic hard rot lesions, while the check corms remained healthy. Lesions were as abundant on corms that had not been injured as on those punctured with the needle. About one-half of the corms showed hard rot lesions on the sides, where evidently spores had been washed over from the concave crowns. The fungus was isolated from many of these diseased areas and again obtained in pure culture.

In the spring of 1915 healthy corms were planted in soil in which gladioli had never been grown, and allowed to grow to maturity. On August 21 the soil was removed from around thirty of these plants and water containing a suspension of spores was poured around the corms. At this time the offspring were about one-half inch in diameter. The spores for inoculating fifteen of the corms were obtained from pycnidia formed naturally on the foliage of seedlings, while for the other fifteen corms the spores were obtained from a culture of the fungus isolated from a diseased corm. For a check, corms were given the same treatment except that the water poured around them contained no spores. The soil in which these plants were growing was kept moist for the following three days.

The corms were harvested in the following September and stored in a cool place. When examined in November it was found that ten of the fifteen corms inoculated with spores from pycnidia showed hard rot lesions; also, six of the fifteen corms inoculated with spores from culture showed lesions characteristic of the hard rot disease. The check plants remained healthy. This experiment is significant in showing not only that spores from cultures and from naturally formed pycnidia are able to infect the corms, but also that it is possible for infection to occur on the corms from spores discharged from pycnidia on the leaves. The spores are washed down into the soil, where they germinate and produce infection.

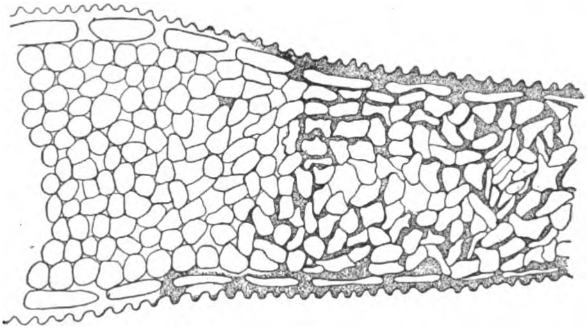


FIG. 42. HISTOLOGICAL EFFECT OF SEPTORIA GLADIOLI

Camera lucida drawing of a free-hand section through a hard rot lesion on the leaf of a seedling. The cells are beginning to shrivel and collapse. × 200

Pathological histology

Leaf

An examination of thin sections of leaves bearing young diseased areas shows the lesion produced by the fungus to be necrotic. The cells turn brown, shrivel, and collapse (fig. 42). Here and there a cell may be found filled with a yellow, granular or oil-like substance the identity of which is undetermined. The diseased area is usually but from one-third to one-half the thickness of the healthy tissue.

Corm

In order to study the histological changes that occur in the corm, comparative studies of healthy and diseased tissues have been made. Both microtome and free-hand sections have been used, the former being less satisfactory because of the difficulty encountered in sectioning prepared material. Sections were stained with a weak solution of iodine in order to study starch content of cells, and with Haidenheim's iron-alum-hæmatoxylin and aniline blue for a general study of the tissue.

While the cells of healthy tissue are densely packed with starch, those of diseased tissue show but very few starch grains or none at all (figs. 40 and 41 [page 264], and 43). This, together with the deposit in the diseased area of a yellow substance of undetermined composition, is the most pronounced effect to be noticed by comparing sections of diseased and healthy tissue. Especially in the early stages of the disease, nuclei and even the cytoplasm appear but slightly disturbed. The cell walls retain their shape for some time after the starch has disappeared. Later, shrinkage takes place and the cells collapse, the walls becoming distorted and broken. This last effect is no doubt due to loss of moisture rather than to any direct action of the fungus.

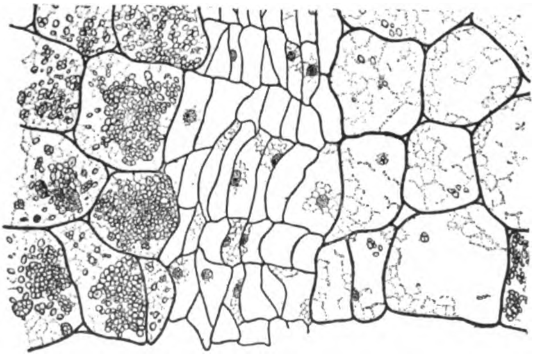


FIG. 43. HISTOLOGICAL EFFECT OF SEPTORIA GLADIOLI

Camera lucida drawing of a microtome section through medium of healthy and diseased tissue. The layer of comparatively thin-walled cork cambial cells separating the starch-filled healthy cells from the diseased cells, which contain little or no starch, should be noted. × 300

A layer of cork cambium is formed at the juncture of the diseased and the healthy tissue (fig. 43). Young, actively advancing lesions do not show this layer of thin-walled cells, but it is to be found in those instances in which it appears that the advance of the disease has been checked and the canker healed. In cases in which the diseased area can be chipped out, the break is at this layer of cork cells.

Cultural characters of the fungus

Pure cultures of *Septoria Gladioli* Passer. were obtained from isolation plantings of diseased tissue from a corm. The surfaces of corms showing hard rot lesions were disinfected by immersing them in fifty-per-cent alcohol for three minutes, then in 1–1000 corrosive sublimate solution for ten minutes, and finally rinsing in sterile water. By means of a sterile scalpel the surface of the corm was cut away and a small piece of the tissue at the advancing margin of the lesion was removed to a sterile medium. Comparatively few contaminations were obtained in the large number of isolations made in this manner.

No marked difference was observed in the growth of the mycelium on nutrient or on soil-extract agar, or on other solid media consisting of agar and various plant decoctions, such as of gladiolus, potato, oats, corn, and beans. On the other hand, rolled-oat agar[5] proved slightly more favorable for mycelial growth, and spores were produced by the fungus only when growing on this medium. For this reason rolled-oat agar was used almost entirely for culturing the organism during the last year of study, and the following cultural characters of the fungus are a record of its growth on this medium.

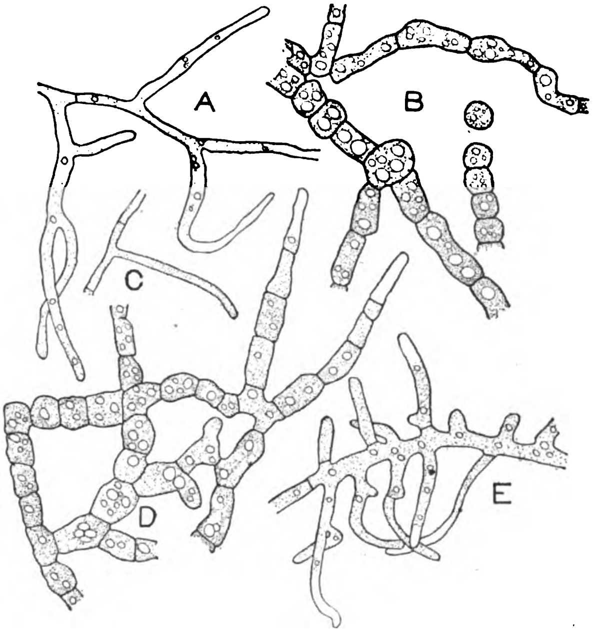


FIG. 44. MYCELIUM OF SEPTORIA GLADIOLI

Camera lucida drawing of mycelium of the hard rot fungus growing on rolled-oat agar. A, colorless strands of hyphæ radiating from a bit of diseased tissue. B and D, cell walls that have thickened, the cells having assumed a globose form. C, colorless hyphæ to be found in old cultures. E, an intermediate stage between A and B. X 600

Macroscopically, no growth from bits of diseased tissue placed in medium in previously poured petri dishes is evident for from seven to fourteen days. However, if the plate is examined under the low power of the microscope, mycelium radiating from the transferred piece of tissue can be seen in about four or five days from the time of making the culture. Frequently the first macroscopical evidence of growth is the appearance of a black growth on the transferred piece of tissue, which may be completely covered before the organism invades the medium. Soon a dense, black colony spreads very slowly into the surrounding medium. After growth of a month the colonies usually do not exceed one or two centimeters in diameter. If portions of a colony are transferred to flasks of media or to other plates, the resulting growth is somewhat more rapid.

---

[5] The rolled-oat agar was prepared as follows: 50 grams of rolled oats, in 700 cubic centimeters of distilled water, was cooked in a double boiler for about an hour, or until the oats were thoroughly cooked through. Most of the solid matter was then squeezed through cheesecloth. To this was added 15 grams of agar and enough water to make one liter of medium.

Some of the characters of the mycelium as grown in culture are shown in figure 44. The first strands of hyphæ to be seen radiating from the piece of diseased tissue are hyaline (fig. 44, A). Color frequently makes its appearance in streaks, which radiate from the piece of diseased corm, where the hyphæ seem to become gnarled. Cells of the much-septate mycelium thicken, assuming a globose form (fig. 44, B). Well-defined globular bodies, which appear to be oil drops, soon appear within the cells. Osmic acid causes these to turn brown. The walls turn brown with the appearance of these bodies, giving the colony its black color when viewed macroscopically. The globose or subglobose cells of the hyphæ may remain attached, forming chains, or may separate into individual cells (fig. 44, B).

Although the growth is usually confined beneath the surface of the medium, small scant patches of white, aërial mycelium are found occasionally. The hyphæ of old cultures is of two kinds: one of comparatively long, colorless cells measuring from 1.5 to about 4 μ in diameter (fig. 44, C, E); and one of short, thick, globose cells containing the oil drops mentioned above, measuring from 3 to 6 or 7 μ, or sometimes even 12 μ, in diameter (fig. 44, B, D).

Scattered through the colonies are areas which under the microscope appear denser and blacker than other areas. These seem to be caused by a gnarling, or balling, of the hyphæ at these points, together with the anastomosing of cells of different hyphæ, as if pycnidia or other fruit bodies were to be formed. Cultures have been examined intermittently throughout a period of over three years, and no further development of these masses of hyphæ has been observed.

Spores of *Septoria Gladioli* Passer. were first observed in culture in October, 1914. The mycelium on which these spores were formed was isolated in the preceding June, from a hard rot lesion on a corm. This mycelium was allowed to grow in a tube of rolled-oat agar from June until August 20, when a square block of the medium containing mycelium was transferred to the slanted surface of about 200 centimeters of rolled-oat agar contained in a 300-cubic-centimeter Erlenmeyer flask. The medium contained in this flask was freshly prepared. There were about 10 cubic centimeters of water of condensation in the flask at the base of the slanted medium. The culture from which the transfer was made was well dried at the time when the square of medium containing mycelium was removed, and this condition may have influenced spore formation when the mycelium was placed on the freshly prepared medium.

By approximating the above conditions the writer has been able to bring about the formation of spores in cultures of the mycelium from other sources than the one above noted. Spores were formed in a culture of the mycelium obtained from the germination of a single pycnospore formed naturally on the leaf. Spores formed in cultures of mycelium isolated from corms and from germinated pycnospores were identical in shape and size, thus materially helping to establish the identity of the two previously unconnected organisms.

Spores in culture have always appeared as minute pinkish white pustules on the upper edge of the block of medium containing mycelium transferred from the old culture. Later these pustules may appear scattered over the surface of the medium of the flask to which the transfer was made. If at this time transfers are made from this flask to another, the pustules are formed more readily and in greater abundance.

Owing to difficulties encountered in obtaining sections or mounts of these pinkish white elevations, but little is known of their structure, especially in reference to the formation of the spores. Normal pycnidia such as those formed on the foliage are not produced. The spores are formed in a very loose stromatic mass. There is an abundance of dense, pinkish white mycelium, which is still in evidence after spores are no longer to be found associated with the pustules.

Spores formed in culture are variable in size, ranging from 25 to 97 μ by 1.8 to 3.75 μ, the average being 58 by 2.71 μ. Dilution plates of these spores were made in nutrient agar and practically one hundred per cent germination was obtained within a period of eighteen hours. The resulting mycelial growth was not so brown in color as that isolated from corms. Many minute, black dots appeared, which, when examined under the microscope, proved to be aggregations of short, thick-walled cells formed commonly and more abundantly in cultures of the fungus isolated from corms. Transfers were made from these plates to tubes of rolled-oat agar, where the resulting growth was identical with that obtained by isolations made from diseased corms.

In order to correlate the growth of mycelium isolated from diseased tissue of corms with that isolated from the leaf, dilution plates of spores from naturally formed pycnidia were made. From these dilution plates individual spores, which were so located that they could be removed singly, were transferred to other plates where germination was observed under the microscope. The resulting mycelial growth in all cases has been identical with that isolated from corms when the two were growing under similar conditions.

CONTROL

The great need of some method of combating the organisms causing rots of gladiolus corms was early impressed upon the writer, and many suggested methods of general application were tried for the control of the rots collectively rather than separately. Another disease, designated by Wallace (1909:61) as dry rot, was found to be present along with the hard rot disease in stock which was used in all control experiments. The lesions produced by the fungi causing these two diseases are so similar that they can be distinguished only in the earliest stages, and not even then with a great degree of accuracy. Cultural isolations of the organisms will often show a lesion to have been caused by the hard rot fungus when it was selected as being a dry rot lesion, or vice versa. Not only are the lesions produced by the two fungi similar, but the life histories of the organisms are not materially unlike except for the fact that no spore form of the dry rot fungus has been found. From all indications, a treatment applicable to the control of one disease should be of value in controlling the other. At least fifty per cent of the corms used for experimental purposes were affected with the hard rot disease. This estimate is based on observations and cultural studies throughout a period of several years. In practically all cases, after the corms were treated, the organisms have been isolated from diseased areas in order to make it absolutely certain that both were present, and in no case has any treatment resulted, so far as the writer was able to judge, in materially changing the ratio of the corms affected by the two diseases.

In view of the fact that control experiments were conducted previous to, and simultaneously with, life history studies, it is not surprising that some treatments which at first seemed worthy of trial failed to bring results. Many of the following treatments have given negative results. This does not wholly deprive them of their value, for they serve to narrow down the field of experimental possibilities of control. Many data have been obtained from the treatments which will be valuable in a further study of control measures.

SEEDLING TREATMENTS

The hard rot disease on the foliage of seedlings has been materially reduced by spraying with bordeaux mixture used at the strength of five pounds of copper sulfate and five pounds of lime to fifty gallons of water. In 1914 the first spray was applied on July 17. This application was followed by eight other treatments made at intervals of about seven days. Because of the smooth surface of the foliage, it was necessary to use a "sticker," or adhesive, to cause the fungicide to adhere to the plants. The " sticker " used consisted of resin two pounds, sal soda (crystals) one pound, and water one gallon, which, after being boiled until a clear brown color was obtained, was added to each fifty gallons of the bordeaux solution. The seedling beds were sprayed twice the same day for each application, the second spray being applied as soon as the first was dried on the foliage. This was done in order to thoroughly cover the plants. A hand sprayer was used, in which a pressure of from three and one-half to five pounds could be maintained at all times.

H. H. Groff, of Simcoe, Ontario, informed the writer that he was successful in controlling a disease of the foliage of seedlings by spraying with a solution of copper sulfate in water. Specimens of the disease sent by Mr. Groff to the writer proved to be the hard rot disease. From the nature of the foliage of the gladiolus, it is probable that the plant is more resistant to spray injury than are most plants and that a solution of copper sulfate could be used without causing injury. However, no experiments have been conducted by the writer using copper sulfate solution as a spray for the control of this disease, and it is very unlikely that results could be obtained, because the copper sulfate would be washed away with the first rain.

Although spraying will greatly reduce the amount of disease on the foliage, a simpler and more efficient method is to plant the seed in soil in which gladioli have never been grown. When this was done, and care was taken not to carry parts of diseased plants or soil bearing the fungus to these seedlings, it was found that not a single diseased plant appeared during the summer. The corms of these plants were materially larger when harvested than the corms of plants whose foliage was attacked by the hard rot fungus, and no evidences of disease on the corms were observed. This is the logical way to control the hard rot disease, which causes so much damage in seedling beds. It is doubtful whether any grower plants such a large quantity of seed, or has such a limited area of ground, that soil in which gladioli have never been grown cannot be obtained for this purpose. If this plot is kept isolated and care is taken not to introduce the pathogene into the soil, there appears to be no reason why seedlings cannot be grown on the same area year after year, if necessary, at least so far as the hard rot disease is concerned.

CORM TREATMENTS

Healthy corms in soil free from the pathogenes

Selected healthy corms have been grown for the past four years in soil in which no gladioli had ever before been planted, without a single corm's becoming diseased. The fact that these corms were stored throughout each winter in a room containing diseased corms leads to the conclusion that the fungi causing the hard rot and dry rot diseases are not disseminated in storage. It is obvious that in order to obtain results from the selection of healthy corms, rigid and painstaking care must be exercised to select corms known to be absolutely free from disease. Any doubtfully healthy corms must be rejected, for a single diseased corm may serve to infect the soil in which healthy corms are planted.

To select healthy corms it is necessary to remove the husks and to be sure there is no evidence of disease on the corms. It is best to do the selecting in the spring, as near planting time as possible, for, whereas a corm may be infected in the fall at digging time and still show no evidence of being diseased, the lesion is sure to be noticeable by planting time. Previously to planting these corms it is advisable to treat them with a five-per-cent solution of formalin for thirty minutes, in order to kill any parts of the pathogenes which may be clinging to them.

In 1912 from two thousand to three thousand healthy corms were selected in the manner suggested above. They were planted each year in soil that had not been under cultivation for about twenty years. A commercial phosphate fertilizer was applied to the experimental plots at the rate of about five hundred pounds to the acre, and the corms were planted in the usual manner. Care was exercised to see that no foreign soil nor diseased plant parts were introduced into these plots. The plants received the usual amount of cultivation and were subjected to the same conditions as commercially grown plants. Spikes of flowers were cut during the blooming season, and the corms were harvested and stored each autumn in the ordinary way.

This process of selecting healthy corms and growing them in soil free of the pathogenes is the only means known that will give an absolutely healthy crop. Of course the large amount of labor, the carelessness of laborers, the need of a larger outlay of land, and the inability to procure land on which gladioli have never been grown or at least not for many years, are some of the important factors that will at once suggest themselves to growers, especially the larger growers who produce many thousands of corms annually. It is admitted that this is a slow and somewhat undesirable method from many standpoints, yet it is a process that has proved conducive to results, and undoubtedly can find some application by all growers. Small growers can readily and with no great loss adopt such a method for growing gladioli. Larger growers can adopt the process in part.

Such a method could be begun on a small scale, by selecting as many healthy corms the first year as conveniently possible and planting them in soil in which gladioli had never been grown. More selected corms could be added to this lot the second year, and so on until the grower gradually worked away from diseased to healthy stock. The opportunity for healthy corms to become diseased is thus lessened, and diseased conditions are in general improved.

Healthy corms in soil known to harbor the pathogenes

When selected healthy corms were planted in soil in which gladioli had been grown the previous year, the offspring were diseased. The amount of disease varied from twenty-three to forty-seven per cent. The possibility suggested itself that some treatment might be devised which would protect the offspring of the sound corms that were planted, from the pathogenes that must be in the soil.

An experiment was conducted in 1914 in which the corms of the various plots were treated with different chemicals. A small handful of the chemicals was placed over each corm previously to covering the corms with soil. The chemicals used were: plot 1, sulfur; plot 2, air-slaked lime; plot 3, acid phosphate; plot 4, soot. The soot was suggested by a grower who claimed to have obtained good results through a liberal application of this substance to the soil. The plants received ordinary cultivation during the summer, and the offspring were harvested and stored in the usual manner. In December, when the results of the experiments were recorded, it was found that none of the treatments were of any value, the percentages of disease in the treated plots being practically the same as that in a check plot where no treatment was given. The experiment was repeated in 1915 with the same results.

Diseased corms in soil free from the pathogenes

Spring treatments

When diseased corms that had received no treatment were planted in soil free from the pathogenes, it was found that the offspring gave various percentages of disease. Seventy-eight per cent of the offspring from three hundred corms bearing typical hard rot lesions, which were planted in soil free from the pathogenes, were diseased. In other instances, thirty-three and fifty-seven per cent diseased offspring, respectively, were recorded from the planting of two lots of three hundred corms affected with either hard rot or dry rot, or both.

An experiment was conducted in 1914 to determine whether or not some treatment could be given these corms at planting time which would lessen the amount of disease in the offspring when the corms were grown in soil free from the pathogenes. Corms that bore typical hard rot lesions, and others that were affected with either the hard or the dry rot disease or both, received the following treatments: (1) formalin at the rate of one pint of commercial formalin to fifteen gallons of water, for eighteen hours; (2) corrosive sublimate, 1–1000 solution, for eighteen hours; (3) chemicals, in which the corms were rolled and with which they were covered after being placed in the rows and before covering them with soil. The chemicals used were sulfur, air-slaked lime, acid phosphate, and soot. The corms were planted in soil in which gladioli had never before been grown, and received ordinary cultivation during the summer.

When the corms were examined in December, 1914, the results obtained indicated that none of the treatments were effective in reducing the amount of disease. The experiment was repeated in 1915, with the same results except that corms over which a handful of sulfur was placed were injured severely by the chemical. Such treatments of diseased corms have proved to be of no value in controlling the hard rot and dry rot diseases.

Autumn treatments

Since the lesions on corms attacked by the hard rot and dry rot organisms are materially smaller in the autumn when the corms are dug than in the winter, it was thought that possibly the corms could be given some treatment at digging time whereby the pathogenes within the tissues would be killed. Consequently the following experiments were performed with the hope of at least lessening the extent of injury to the corms.

Experiment 1. Treatment of corms with formalin and corrosive sublimate solutions.— In 1914 one thousand corms, of which many had lesions in various stages of advancement at digging time, were treated, immediately after digging, with formalin at the strength of one pint of commercial formalin to fifteen gallons of water, in which they were left for eighteen hours. An equal number of corms were treated with 1–1000 corrosive sublimate solution for eighteen hours, and an equal number were left untreated for a check. After treatment the corms were cured out of doors and then stored as usual.

In the following December, when the results of these treatments were recorded, it was found that neither had reduced the amount or the extent of the diseases. Thirty-five per cent of the offspring from the untreated corms were diseased, while thirty-seven and thirty-eight per cent, respectively, of the offspring from the corms treated with formalin and corrosive sublimate solution were diseased.

The same experiment had been performed the previous season (1913), with the result that about ninety per cent of the corms of both the treated lots were diseased while the corms in the check were but seventy per cent diseased. This remarkable situation is difficult to explain. There was a prolonged period of wet weather about the time the treatments were made, so that the corms remained wet for about a week after they were treated. The corms were either injured by being subjected to the action of the reagents for so long a time, or else the increased percentage of diseased corms was due to some other abnormal condition brought about by the wet condition of the corms. Many of the corms bore lesions which were not characteristic of either the hard rot or the dry rot disease, from which neither the dry rot organism nor *Septoria Gladioli* Passer. could be isolated.

Experiment 2. Formaldehyde gas as a disinfectant.— On the basis of successful experiments performed for the control of potato scab by the use of formaldehyde gas, diseased corms were subjected in 1913 to a similar treatment. Obviously this would eliminate the humid condition arising from the use of solutions.

In this experiment the gas was generated by the potassium permanganate method. At harvesting time one thousand corms were placed, immediately after digging, in shallow trays in a large air-tight box. The formaldehyde gas was obtained by using enough potassium permanganate to generate gas at the rate of three pints of formalin and twenty-three ounces of permanganate crystals to five hundred cubic feet of space, it having been previously determined that corms thus treated were unharmed. The treatment extended over a period of twenty-four hours. The corms were then thoroughly cured in the open air and stored as usual.

In January, 1914, when the results of this treatment were recorded, it was found that sixty-nine per cent of the corms were diseased while seventy per cent of the untreated corms from the same lot were diseased. The hard rot and dry rot organisms were isolated from many lesions, showing both organisms to be alive. The difference of one per cent in the amount of disease can easily be explained on the basis of experimental error, with the resulting conclusion that formaldehyde gas as used in this experiment is of no value in controlling the corm rots of gladioli.

Experiment 3. Hot-water and hot-air treatments of diseased corms.— In a third experiment some means was sought whereby diseased corms could be subjected to heat, which would kill the organisms within the tissue without causing injury to the corms. After such treatment the corms could be planted in soil known to be free of the pathogenes and be depended on to yield a healthy crop.

Previously to conducting the experiments it was determined that the thermal death point of the hard rot and dry rot organisms was about 50° C. when subjected to this temperature in a test tube culture for a period of ten minutes. The tubes were immersed in the hot water as soon as new growth appeared from pieces of medium containing mycelium which were transferred to the tubes. It was also previously determined that corms of from three-fourths inch to one and one-half inches in diameter, when subjected to dry heat at 50° C. for one and one-half hours or to water at this temperature for one-half hour, were not materially harmed.

Having thus obtained some idea of the relative resistance of both corms and the two pathogenes to heat, corms were subjected in 1913 to dry heat and to water at 50° C. for one and one-half hours and one-half hour, respectively, and the progress of the disease was noted. There was enough difference between the length of time required to kill the fungi and that which caused no injury to the corms to warrant this treatment. The corms used were of a single variety and showed considerable disease when dug. They were treated on the same day that they were harvested. For the hot-water treatment a half-bushel galvanized iron measure was used, the heat being supplied by an oil-stove flame, and for the dry-air heating a Freas electric oven was used. After treatment the corms were cured as quickly as possible and then stored in a cool place as usual. Wet weather lengthened the time necessary to thoroughly cure the corms more than was desirable.

In the following January, when the results of this experiment were recorded, it was found that seventy per cent of the untreated corms bore lesions of either the hard rot or the dry rot disease, while of those treated with dry heat and hot water eighty-five and ninety-five per cent, respectively, were diseased. In both cases in which treatments were given, the corms, besides containing a large percentage of disease, showed the lesions to be more advanced than those in the check. Both the hard rot and dry rot organisms were isolated from many diseased corms of both lots, showing the pathogenes to be still alive.

In accounting for the increased percentages of disease in the treated over the untreated corms, it was found that many of the lesions, besides being different in appearance from those produced by the two fungi, were identical with those produced on healthy corms which were subjected to heat under the same conditions and from which neither the hard rot nor the dry rot organism could be isolated. These lesions were undoubtedly due to injury caused by the heat. However, a sufficiently large number of corms bore characteristic lesions of the two diseases, and the causal organisms were isolated from enough lesions, to prove that the treatments were a failure in killing the fungi within the tissue at a temperature that would not injure the corm.

SOIL TREATMENTS

Experiment 1. Chemicals.— Since the organisms causing the hard rot and dry rot diseases are able to live over winter in the soil, the possibility suggested itself that some chemical might be applied to the soil which, either through its toxicity or by its ability to change the composition of the soil thereby rendering it unsuited for the existence of the pathogenes, would serve to eradicate them. Healthy corms could then be planted safely in this soil.

For the experiment in 1912 a plot of land was used on which gladioli had been grown for the past three years. The chemicals used and the amounts per acre were as follows: air-slaked lime, 1200 pounds; sulfur, 1000 pounds; air-slaked lime 800 pounds, and sulfur 1000 pounds; sulfate of iron, 1800 pounds; acid phosphate, 1200 pounds; acid phosphate, 2100 pounds. The chemicals were applied by the use of a lime spreader, in strips of 10 by 136 feet, a strip of equal width being left between each of the treated areas to serve as a check. The entire experiment was conducted in triplicate. Across the strips and at right angles to them were planted the rows of corms, each row consisting of a single variety. During the growing season special care was taken to see that no soil was carried from one treated area into another or into the checks. The results of the treatments were based on corms removed from a center seven-feet strip of each of the treated and the check areas.

In the following January, when the results of this experiment were recorded, it was found that none of the treatments had been of any value. No reduction whatever was obtained in the amount of disease in treated as compared with untreated corms. Since the chemicals were applied in as large amounts as is commercially practicable, if not larger, no further soil treatments with chemicals have been tried on a large scale.

Experiment 2. Formalin as a soil disinfectant.— Soil in which seedlings had been grown for the past two years was treated in 1912 with one gallon of one-per-cent formalin solution per square foot. The plot was covered with heavy burlap for two days after being treated. As soon as the odor of formaldehyde could no longer be detected, seeds were planted in the treated soil, other seeds being planted in untreated soil to serve as a check.

During the summer the hard rot disease appeared on the foliage of these seedlings. No doubt infection occurred from spores blown from diseased seedlings growing near by in untreated soil. The corms were harvested in the autumn and stored in a cool room.

In the following January, when the corms were examined, it was found that seventeen per cent of those grown in treated soil were diseased, while thirty-seven per cent of the corms from untreated soil showed disease. Since the disease appeared on the foliage of these plants during the summer, it was impossible to determine whether the source of infection was the mycelium of the fungus in the soil, or spores that might have been washed down from the leaves to the soil where they would germinate and infect the corms. Therefore it was impossible to determine from this experiment whether or not the formalin treatment had been of value as a soil disinfectant. The experiment was repeated in 1915, but no results were obtained because the seed planted failed to germinate.

Experiment 3. Formalin as a soil disinfectant.— The value of formalin as a soil disinfectant for *Septoria Gladioli* Passer. and the dry rot fungus was further tested by treating soil in which gladioli had been grown for the past two years with formalin at the rate of one gallon of one-per-cent solution per square foot. Healthy corms were planted in this soil. No lesions of the hard rot disease appeared on the foliage during the summer. In the following January, when the corms were examined, it was found that the treatment had proved of no value in reducing the percentage of disease, as compared with healthy corms growing in untreated soil. However, the treated plat was not sufficiently isolated from other untreated areas to preclude the possibility that infected soil might have been carried from untreated soil to that which was treated, and hence the results must be considered with that restriction.

SANITATION

It has been shown that the hard rot fungus is able to live over winter on dead tops left lying about on the ground. It follows that these tops should be raked up in the fall and burned. This suggestion applies particularly to the tops of seedlings and cormels, since the disease has been observed by the writer to occur on the foliage of but six plants of flowering size. It has also been indicated that the fungi causing the hard rot and dry rot diseases of gladioli will live in the soil for at least four years. Care should therefore be taken that the soil does not become infected with the pathogenes. Only healthy corms should be planted in soil which it is desired to keep free from these fungi; at least more care should be exercised at planting time to see that no corms badly diseased are planted. Such corms should be discarded and burned, for they will but decay in the soil and infect it with the disease-producing organisms. Crop rotation should be practiced.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

ALLESCHER, ANDREAS. Septoria Gladioli Passer. *In* Kryptogamen-Flora von Deutschland, Oesterreich, und der Schweiz [Rabenhorst] 1:6:789. 1897.

CHILDS, J. L. Leaf blight of gladiolus. Florists' ex. **23**:541. 1907.

CRAWFORD, MATTHEW, and VAN FLEET, W. The gladiolus, p. 1–98. 1911.

HALSTED, BYRON D. Fungous diseases of ornamental bulbous plants. *In* Report of the Botanist. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **14**:392–396. 1894.

——— Experiments with gladiolus. *In* Report of the Botanist. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **17**:398–399. 1897.

——— Experiments with ornamental plants. *In* Report of the Botanist. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **18**:334–339. 1898.

——— Experiments with ornamental plants. *In* Report of the Botanist. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **19**:324–327. 1899.

——— Experiments with ornamental plants. *In* Report of the Botanist. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **20**:408–409. 1900.

——— Experiments with ornamental plants. *In* Report of the Botanist. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **21**:461–462. 1901.

HENDRICKSON, I. S. Gladioli. American Glad. Soc. Bul. 3:5–13. 1911.

HICKS, D. C. Notes upon the gladiolus and its culture. Vermont State Hort. Soc. Rept. **4**:32–36. (Part of the 27th Ann. Rept. Vermont State Bd. Agr.) 1907.

PAX, F. Ixioideae-Gladioleae. *In* Die natürlichen Pflanzenfamilien [Engler und Prantl] **2**:5:153–154. 1889.

PRILLIEUX, E. E., and DELACROIX, G. Pathologie végétale. Maladies bacillaires de divers végétaux. Acad. Sci. Paris. Compt. rend. **118**:668–671. 1894.

ROBINSON, W. Gladiolus. *In* The English flower garden and home grounds, p. 575–578. 1883.

SACCARDO, P. A. Septoria Gladioli Passer. *In* Sylloge fungorum **3**:574. 1884.

WALLACE, ERRETT. Some bulb rots of gladioli. Thesis for degree of M. S. in Agr., Cornell University, 1909. (Unpublished.)

——— Diseases of gladioli. Rural New-Yorker **69**:355. 1910 (a).

——— Gladiolus bulb rots. Cooperative experiments. Gardening **18**:308. 1910 (b).

OCTOBER, 1916 BULLETIN 381

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

LEAF SMUT OF TIMOTHY

GEORGE A. OSNER

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
LEX R. HESLER, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE

Hosts 291
The disease 292
  Names 292
  History and distribution 292
  Economic importance 292
  Symptoms 296
    On the leaves 296
    On the inflorescence 301
  Etiology 301
    History and classification of the pathogene 301
    Morphological and life history studies 303
      Spores 303
        Morphology 303
        Germination 305
      Mycelium 311
      Spore formation 314
      Inoculation and infection 318
        Seed inoculation 319
        Blossom inoculation 320
        Soil inoculation 321
        Inoculation of growing tissues 321
        Examination of inoculated seedlings 322
      Summary of life history 322
  Pathological histology 323
  Effect of environmental factors 324
Control 325
  Effect of seed treatment on germination 325
  Effect of seed treatment on percentage of smut 327
Bibliography 328

LEAF SMUT OF TIMOTHY[1]

GEORGE A. OSNER

HOSTS

Leaf smut of timothy has been reported on a large number of grasses of the subfamily Poacoideae, of the Gramineae. To give an accurate and complete list of all the hosts affected by this disease will not be possible until the morphological and biological limits of the causal organism shall have been determined by careful comparison and cross-inoculation on the various European and American hosts. The following list contains the more important hosts mentioned as subject to the disease, but the list is not claimed to be complete:

Agrostis alba L. (redtop), *Agrostis alba* var. *vulgaris* (With.) Thurb., *Agrostis stolonifera* L. (creeping bent), *Alopecurus pratensis* L. (meadow foxtail), *Ammophila arenaria* (L.) Link (beach grass), *Anthoxanthum odoratum* L. (perennial sweet vernal grass), *Arrhenatherum elatius* (L.) Beauv. (tall oat grass), *Avena pubescens* Huds., *Brachypodium pinnatum* Beauv., *Brachypodium sylvaticum* Beauv., *Briza media* L. (perennial quaking grass), *Bromus erectus* Huds., *Bromus inermis* Leyss. (Hungarian brome grass), *Dactylis glomerata* L. (orchard grass, or cocksfoot), *Deschampsia caespitosa* (L.) Beauv., *Elymus canadensis* var. *glaucifolius* (Muhl.) Gray (glaucous wild rye), *Elymus glaucus* Buck. (smooth wild rye), *Elymus robustus* Scr. & J. G. Sm., *Elymus virginicus* L. (Virginia wild rye), *Festuca distans* Kunth, *Festuca elatior* L. (meadow fescue), *Festuca nutans* Spreng. (nodding fescue), *Festuca ovina* L. (sheep's fescue), *Festuca ovina* var. *duriuscula* (L.) Hack., *Festuca ovina* var. *glauca* Hack., *Holcus lanatus* L. (velvet grass), *Holcus mollis* L., *Lolium multiflorum* Lam. (awned, or Italian, rye grass), *Lolium perenne* L. (ray grass), *Milium effusum* L. (millet grass), *Phleum pratense* L. (timothy), *Poa annua* L. (low spear grass), *Poa bulbosa* L., *Poa debilis* Torr. (weak spear grass), *Poa nemoralis* L., *Poa pratensis* L. (Kentucky bluegrass), *Poa trivialis* L. (rough-stalked meadow grass), *Sitanion longifolium* J. G. Sm. (long-bristled wild rye).

The writer has observed this disease on the following plants in New York: *Agrostis alba* var. *vulgaris* (With.) Thurb., *Agrostis alba* var. undetermined (a creeping variety), *Dactylis glomerata* L., *Phleum pratense* L., *Poa annua* L., and *Poa pratensis* L.

---

[1] Also presented to the Faculty of the Graduate School of Cornell University, June, 1915, as a major thesis in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of doctor of philosophy.

AUTHOR'S ACKNOWLEDGMENTS. The writer wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to Professors Donald Reddick and H. H. Whetzel, of the Department of Plant Pathology, Cornell University, for helpful suggestions and criticisms during these investigations, and to H. H. Knight for a number of the photographs that are here reproduced.

The only mention in literature of varietal susceptibility is by Clinton (1900),[2] who states that the fungus causing leaf smut is most injurious to redtop. The writer has found this true for New York. He has never found Canada bluegrass infected, altho it frequently occurs in association with diseased Kentucky bluegrass.

THE DISEASE

NAMES

The term *leaf smut of timothy*, which is employed by the writer to designate this disease, was first used in this country by Trelease (1887). The name is not entirely applicable, since the lesions are by no means limited to the leaves. However, since the lesions on the leaves constitute the most characteristic symptom, this name is retained. In Denmark the name *graessernes stinkbrand* (stinking smut of grasses) has been used, probably on the supposition that the pathogene is closely related to that of the stinking smut of wheat (Rostrup, 1904).

HISTORY AND DISTRIBUTION

The origin of this disease is unknown. It was first recorded from Italy on *Holcus mollis* by Cesati (1850). Westendorp (1852) records it from Belgium on velvet grass (*Holcus lanatus*) and perennial sweet vernal grass (*Anthoxanthum odoratum*). It has since been reported from various European countries and from Australia as being more or less common.

The first mention of the disease in North America was by Trelease (1885 a), in a paper read before the Wisconsin Academy of Science in December, 1882. He records it from Wisconsin on timothy (*Phleum pratense*) and on glaucous wild rye (*Elymus canadensis* var. *glaucifolius*). Trelease (1885 b) also published the first economic account of leaf smut, stating that it had been very prevalent in Wisconsin for the previous two seasons. Clinton (1906) gives its present distribution in North America as: California, Connecticut, Delaware, District of Columbia, Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Kansas, Maine, Massachusetts, Minnesota, Missouri, New Jersey, New York, Ohio, Texas, Utah, Washington, Wisconsin, and Canada. The writer has observed it in several counties of New York and Indiana.

ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE

Economic loss from this disease occurs in two ways. First, thru a reduction in the yield of hay, and second, thru a reduction in the yield of seed. The fact that diseased plants are usually stunted in growth is probably the reason why the disease is so generally overlooked. Even in badly infested fields the grower is likely to attribute the reduction in yield to the weather or to other external factors.

---

[2] Dates in parenthesis refer to bibliography, page 328.

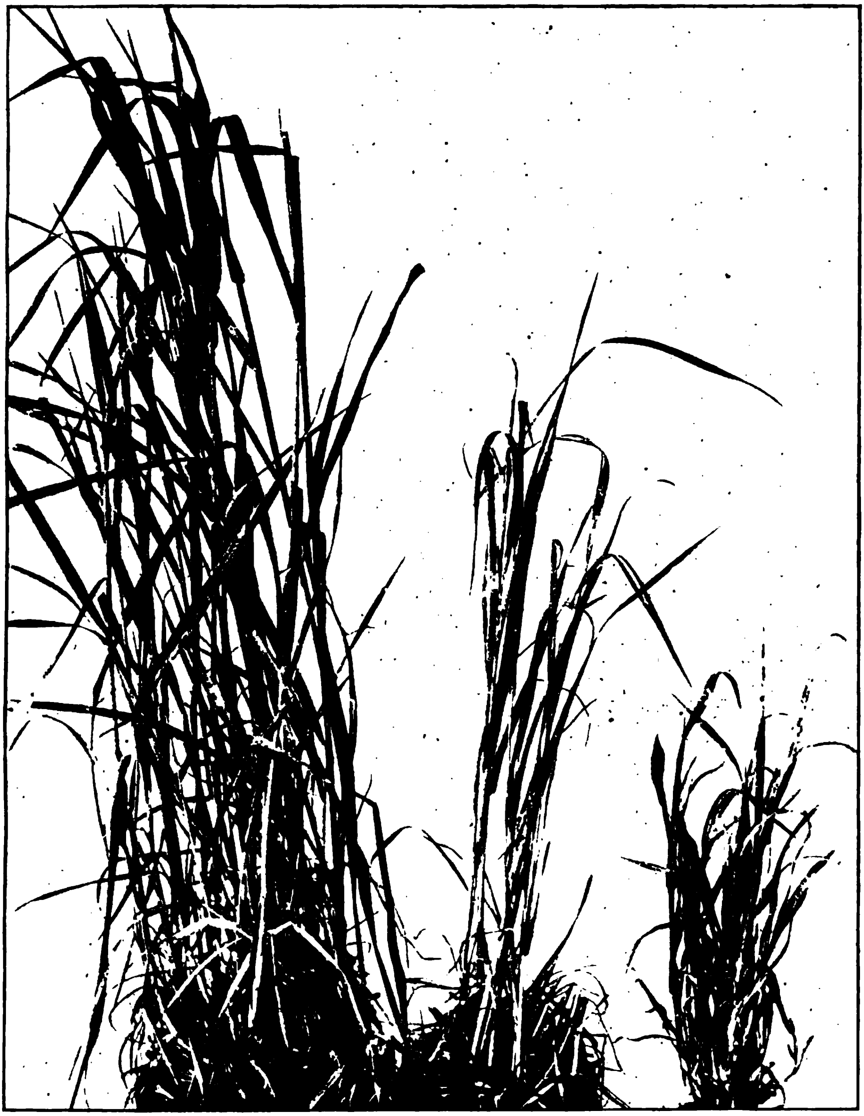


FIG. 45. LEAF SMUT ON TIMOTHY
Healthy plant (at left) contrasted with diseased, stunted plants

Several writers have reported leaf smut as causing considerable damage to meadows. Clinton (1900) says that in 1898 he found a field of redtop injured thirty per cent. The owner stated that at times the injury had cut down the yield of seed from the normal 300 hundredweight to 70 hundredweight. Pammel (1892 a) reports considerable loss on the Iowa College farm from the disease. He states (1893) that it can be found in most timothy fields. Trelease (1885 b) says the fungus caused considerable loss about Madison, Wisconsin, in 1883 and 1884. Griffiths (1903) reports damage to timothy in Jess Valley, California.

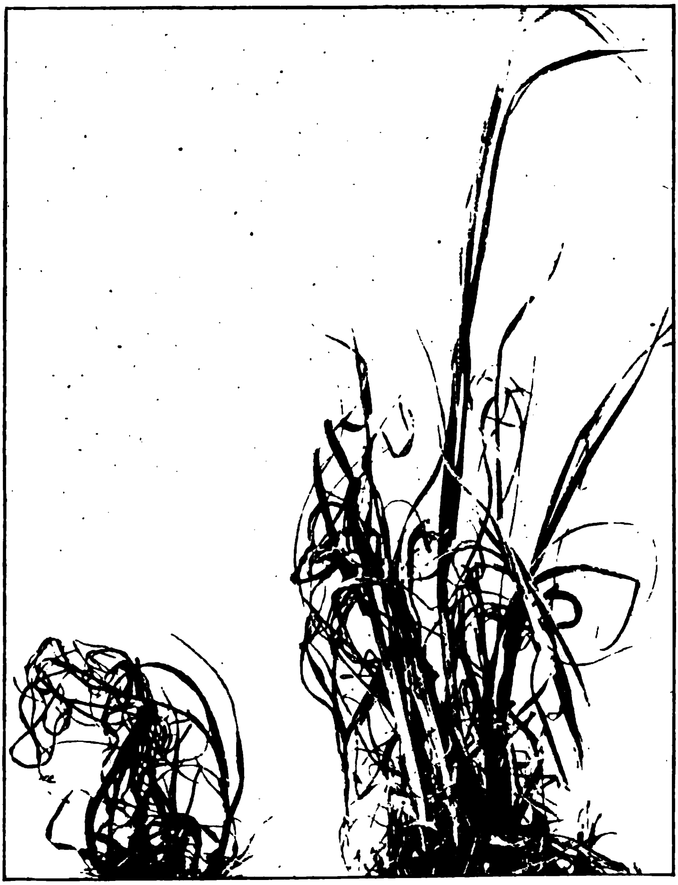


FIG. 46. TIMOTHY PLANTS KILLED BY THE LEAF SMUT FUNGUS

Leaf smut is extremely common in New York. In the summer of 1914 the writer examined a large number of timothy fields in nine counties, and found the disease in more or less abundance in every field. In one field over fifty per cent of the stools were affected. The loss of hay in this field was estimated to be about thirty per cent. If the timothy had been grown for seed the loss would have been greater. In 1914 the

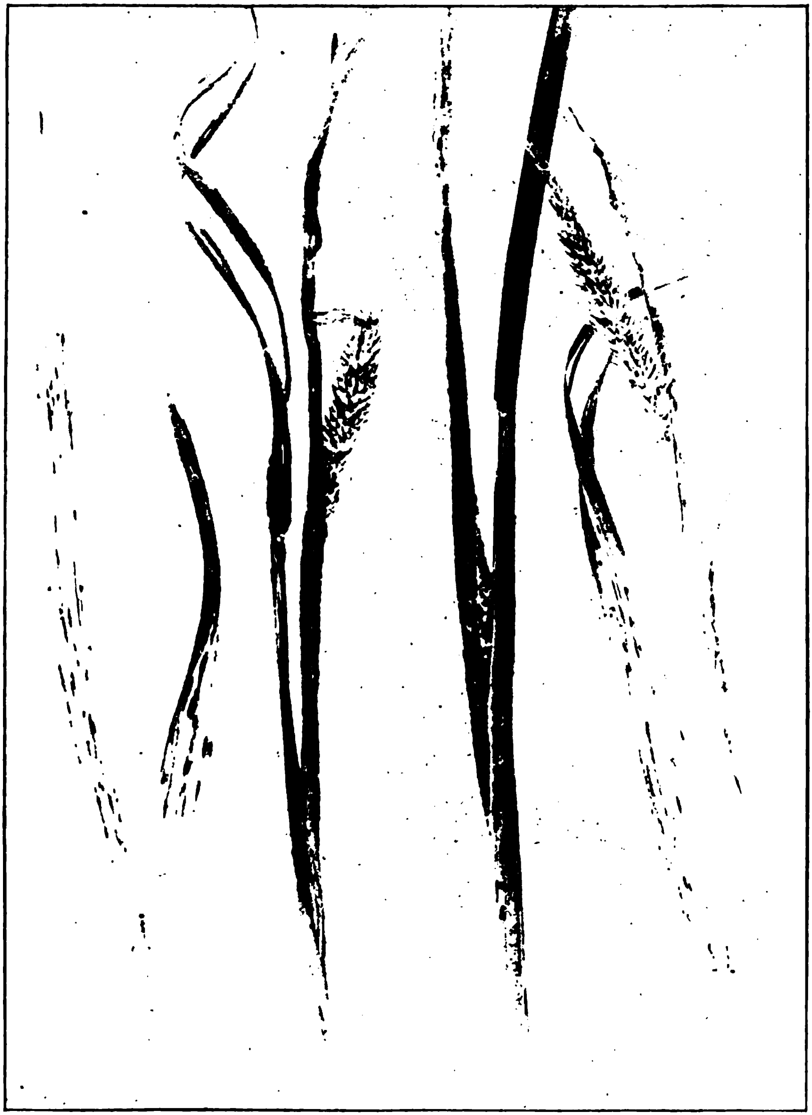


FIG. 47. LESIONS OF LEAF SMUT ON LEAVES AND INFLORESCENCE OF TIMOTHY
Leaves show the typical tearing, or shredding

disease caused a reduction in the yield of hay in Genesee County of probably not far from four per cent. In other counties the writer has not examined a sufficient number of fields to be able to speak with certainty as to average losses.

SYMPTOMS

The diseased plants are usually more or less stunted (fig. 45). They may be found showing all degrees of this dwarfing, from plants not over four or five inches high and with only three or four leaves to those that are apparently equal in vigor to the healthy plants. Frequently the more diseased culms in a stool are much dwarfed, while the others are nearly normal. Later in the summer some of the smaller plants will be found to have been killed outright (fig. 46).

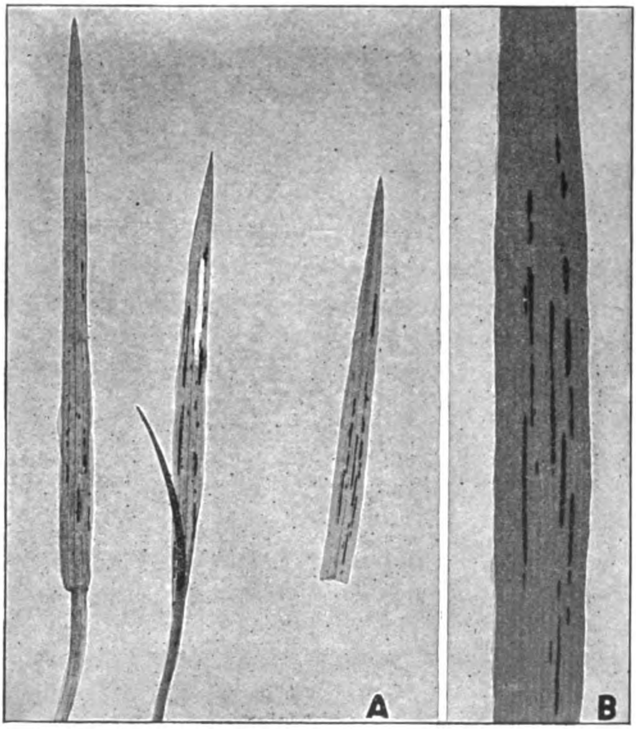


FIG. 48. SORI OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS IN LEAVES OF TIMOTHY

One plant shows sori in the young unfolded leaf. The chlorophyll had been partly removed before taking the photograph. A, natural size; B, × 3

On the leaves

The disease shows first as elongate, narrow striæ on leaves and sheaths, and later appears on the stems (figs. 45, 47, and 48). In the latitude of

New York the sori do not become conspicuous until about the first of May, but on careful search they may be found any time during the winter on plants that have not been killed back entirely by frost. When first visible they may be not over one-tenth of a millimeter in width and two-tenths of a millimeter in length, but are usually from two-tenths to four-tenths of a millimeter in width by from one-half to one millimeter or more in length. Later, by fusion of the sori end to end, they may become several centimeters long or may even extend thruout the length of the leaf and down the sheath. Occasionally the sori may also fuse laterally. The number of sori on a leaf may vary from one to several, in some cases nearly the whole surface of the leaf being covered.

At first the sorus may be visible on only one surface, depending on whether it originates nearer the upper or the lower epidermis. Later it usually extends thru the leaf from surface to surface, being covered only by the epidermis, which gives it a lead-colored appearance. As the spores mature, the sorus increases in size, pushing up the epidermis one-tenth of a millimeter or more (Plate XVII, 6). Later the epidermis ruptures, exposing the dark brown or nearly black, dusty mass of spores beneath. These spores are scattered by the wind and the leaves become very much torn and shredded (fig. 47). This shredded appearance of the leaves is one of the most striking symptoms on the older plants, enabling one to recognize the disease at a considerable distance. As the leaves push out at the tip of the growing plant, the lead-colored sori are often found already present (fig. 48, A), and in badly diseased plants these sori may extend down to the base of the stem. If the stem is cut across a short distance back of the growing tip, the black spore masses may be found in the outer cortex (Plate XVII, 4).

There is usually little or no difference in color between diseased and healthy plants, unless the leaves become so badly diseased that the tissues between the sori die; in such cases the leaves become yellow or brownish.

The symptoms of the disease on the leaves of other grasses observed are very similar to those on timothy. On redtop, however, the tendency to form sori extending thruout the length of the leaf and down the sheath is much more pronounced than on timothy. The most striking characteristic of the disease on redtop is the tendency of the leaves at the top to become badly shredded (fig. 49). Its dwarfing effect on Kentucky bluegrass and on orchard grass is well shown in figures 50 and 51, respectively. In the case of Kentucky bluegrass, especially, the diseased plants are very easily overlooked because of their small size.

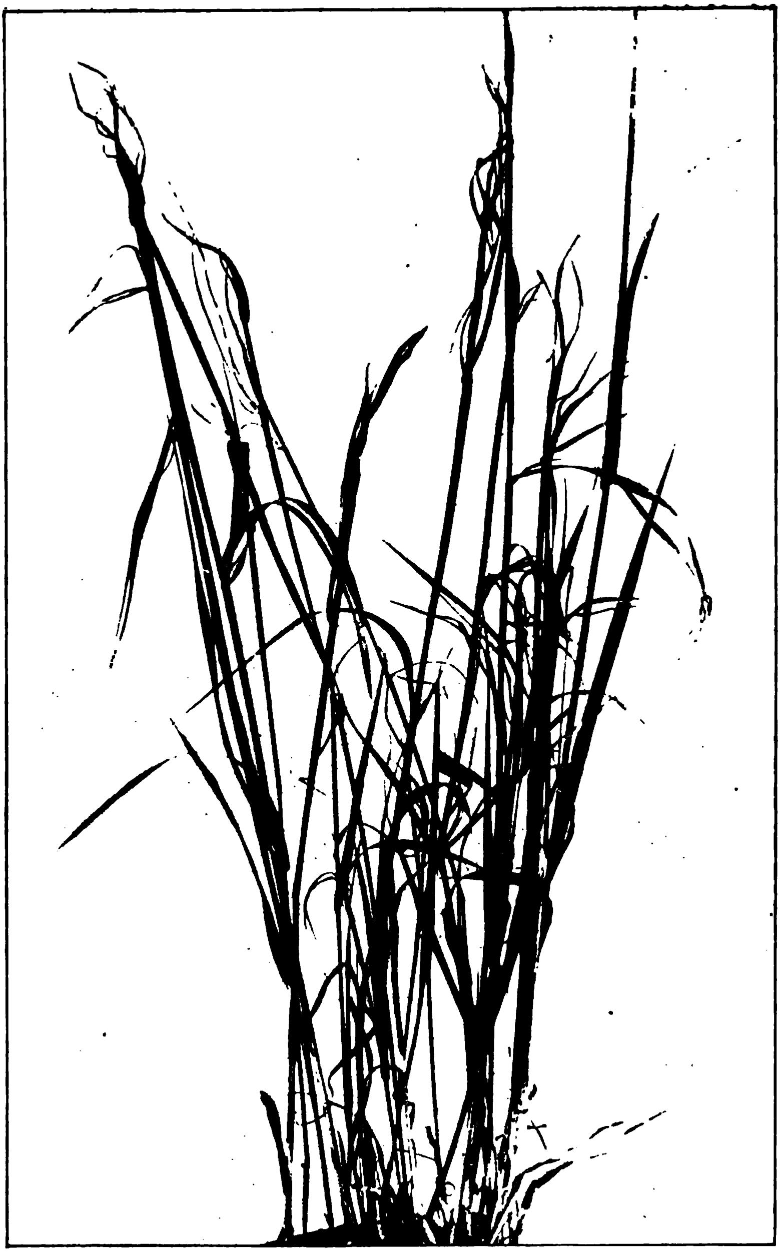


FIG. 49. LEAF SMUT ON REDTOP, SHOWING LEAVES AT THE TOP BADLY SHREDDED

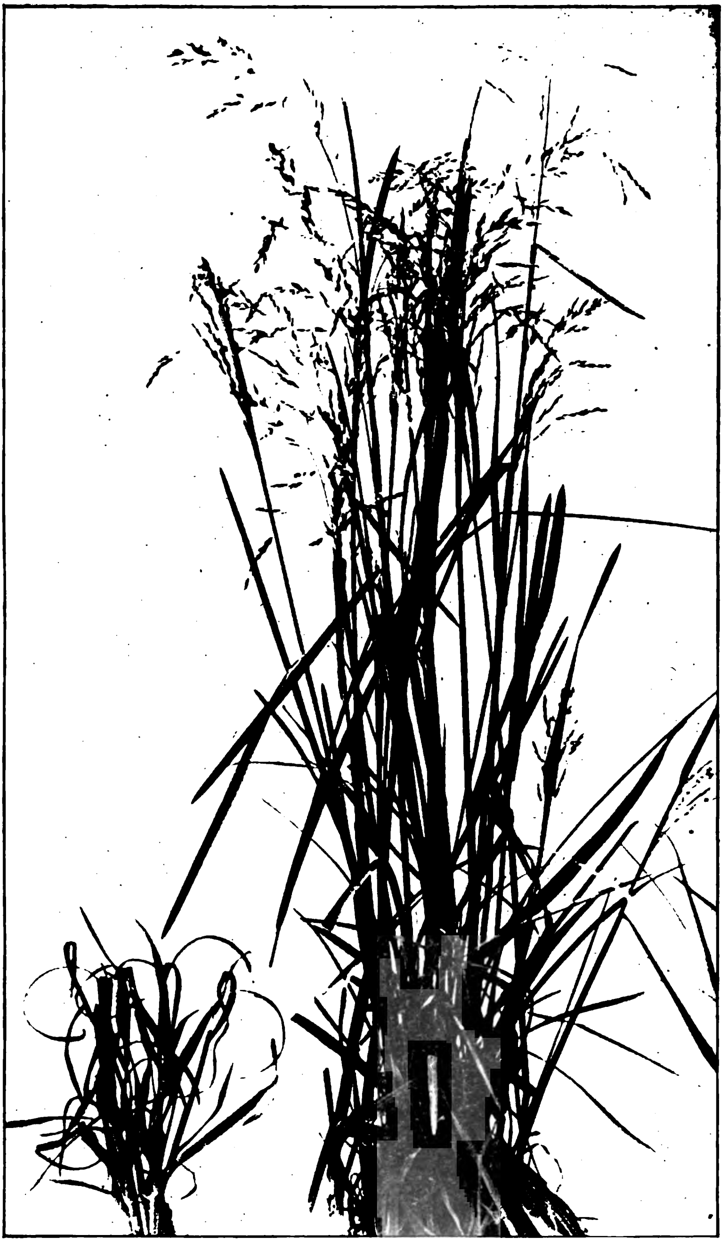


FIG. 50. LEAF SMUT ON KENTUCKY BLUEGRASS
Healthy plant (at right) contrasted with diseased, stunted plant

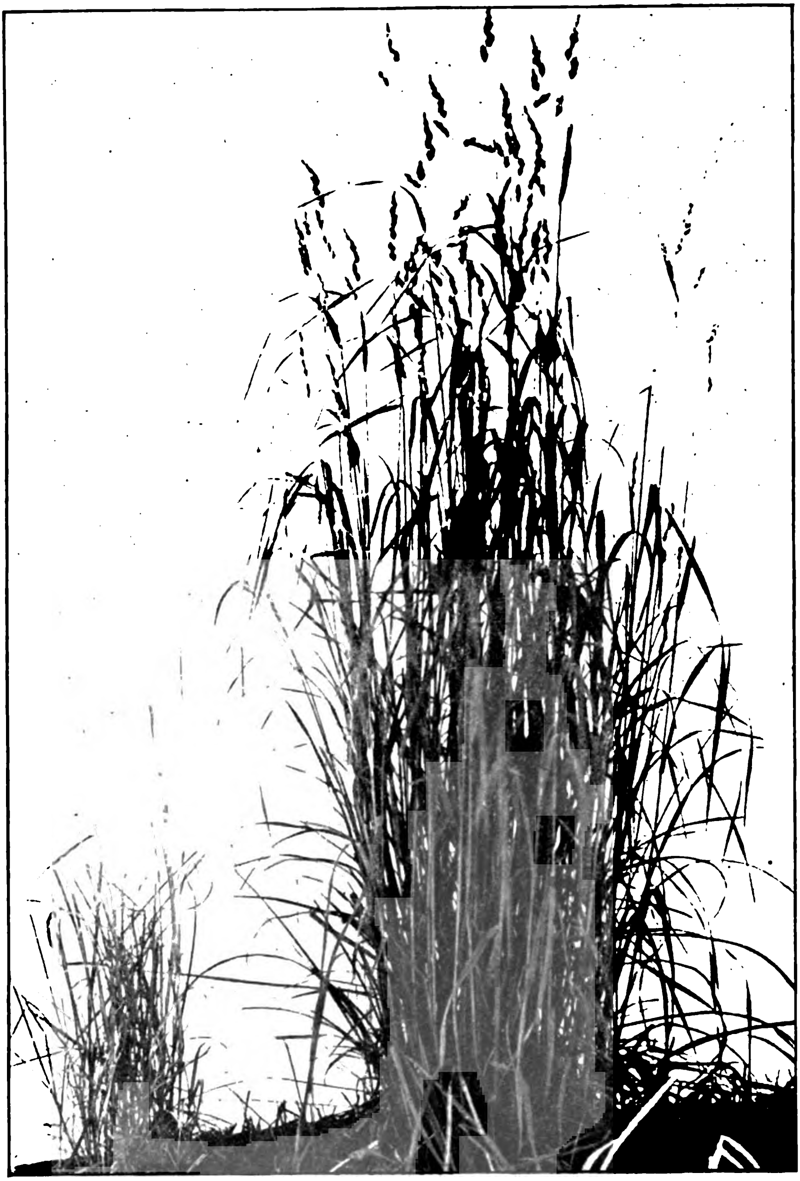


FIG. 51. LEAF SMUT ON ORCHARD GRASS
Healthy plant at right. (Photograph taken in the field)

On the inflorescence

Usually the diseased plants do not fruit. On those that do, the sori appear at an early stage as more or less elongated striæ on the rhachis or in the florets (fig. 47). In the florets any or all of the parts may be broken down and replaced by the spore mass (fig. 52). In severe attacks all parts, even including the bristles, may be destroyed. The sorus may be produced either before or after the glumes have attained nearly full growth, and in the latter case usually only a part of the glume is destroyed.

The inflorescence of redtop is usually diseased at the time it emerges from its sheath, and only rarely do diseased plants produce viable seed. Of the various hosts observed, viable seed is produced on diseased orchard grass oftener than on any other.

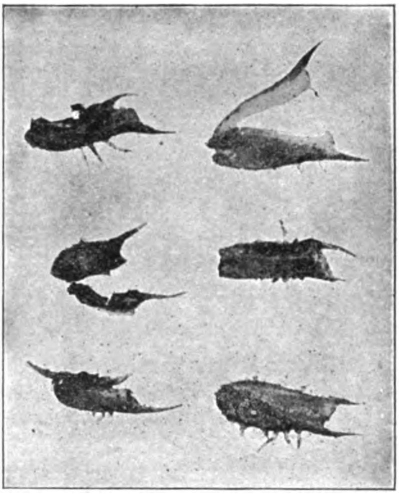


FIG. 52. HEALTHY AND DISEASED TIMOTHY SEED AND GLUMES

Healthy seed in top row at right. The seed in the smutted glumes has been destroyed. All taken from the same inflorescence. × 7

ETIOLOGY

History and classification of the pathogene

The organism causing leaf smut has been collected and described, under a number of different names, by various investigators. This is due in large measure to the fact that it occurs on such a wide range of host plants. It was first collected by Cesati on *Holcus mollis* and distributed in Klötzsch-Rabenhorst's *Herbarium Vivum Mycologicum* (1850) as *Uredo longissima* var. *Holci*. Westendorp (1852) described it from *Holcus lanatus* as a new species, giving it the name *Uredo striaeformis*, probably adopting this name because of the characteristic appearance of the lesions on leaves and stem. Fischer von Waldheim (1866) described this fungus from *Holcus mollis* as *Tilletia de Baryana*. He placed it in the genus Tilletia largely on the basis of its method of spore formation, which he reported to be on the ends of side branches. Most European mycologists have since followed this worker, placing the fungus in the genus Tilletia. Oudemans (1878) pointed out that, adopting the first specific name applied to the organism, it should be called *Tilletia striaeformis*. Niessl (1876), believing that the fungus was a species of Ustilago rather than of Tilletia, stated that it should be called *Ustilago*

PLATE XVII. PHOTOMICROGRAPHS OF MYCELIUM AND SORI OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS

1, Cross section through base of a timothy stem, showing intracellular mycelium. × 700

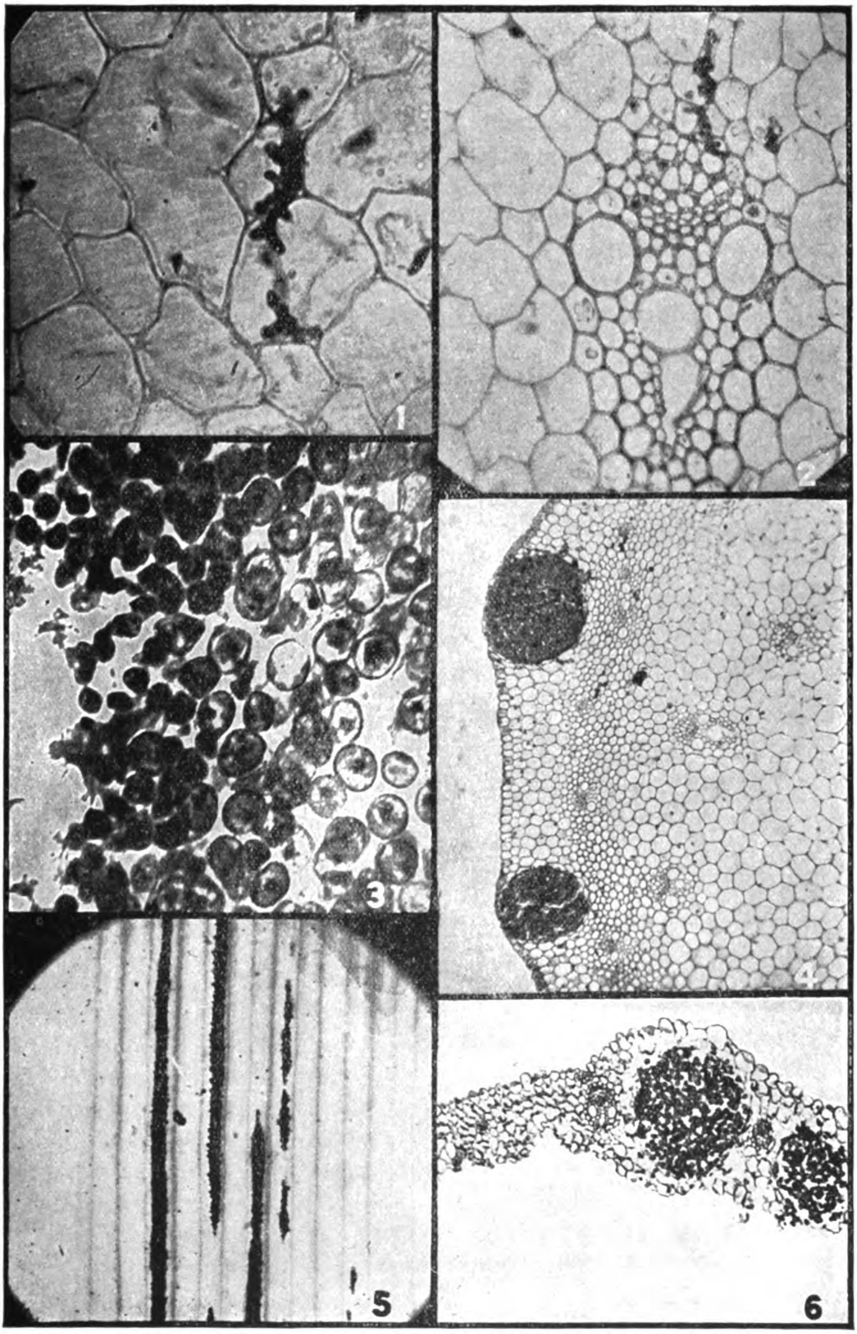
2, Cross section through base of a timothy stem, showing mycelium in a vascular bundle. × 315

3, Part of a sorus from a stem of *Dactylis glomerata*, showing large spores in the center, and smaller, less mature ones at the edge. × 560

4, Cross section of timothy stem, showing two sori in the outer cortex just beneath the epidermis. The ring of heavy-walled sclerenchyma cells containing isolated strands of mycelium is shown just inside these sori. × 75

5, Part of redtop leaf showing sori of various ages between the vascular bundles. Some of the sori are in process of fusing. × 65

6, Cross section of timothy leaf, showing two sori. The epidermal cells are hypertrophied and considerably bulged. × 75



PHOTOMICROGRAPHS OF MYCELIUM AND SORI OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS

striaeformis (West.). Sporidia of this fungus, with the exception of a rather unsatisfactory figure by Pammel, Weems, and Lamson-Scribner (1901), have never been described; consequently the generic name can be determined only indirectly. The writer has adopted the name *Ustilago striaeformis* (West.) Niessl, basing his decision on the method of spore formation and spore germination as stated elsewhere (page 311).

A number of closely related species have been described, some of which may eventually prove to be identical with this fungus. Among those that apparently are distinct may be mentioned *Ustilago Salveii* Berk. & Br., *Ustilago macrospora* Desm., and *Ustilago Calamagrostidis* (Fckl.) Clinton.

A list of the more important names applied to this fungus is as follows:

Uredo longissima var. *Holci* Ces.
 Klotz.-Raben. Herb. viv. mycol., no. 1498. 1850.
Uredo striaeformis West.
 Acad. Roy. Belgique. Bul. **18**, ser. 2:406. 1852.
Uredo longissima var. *megalospora* Riess
 Klotz.-Raben. Herb. viv. mycol., no. 1897. 1854.
Tilletia de Baryana F. de W.
 Raben. Fungi eur., no. 1097. 1866.
Tilletia Milii Fckl.
 Symb. myc. **1**:40. 1869.
Ustilago striaeformis (West.)
 Niessl in Hedwigia **15**:1. 1876.
Tilletia striaeformis
 Oudemans in Bot. Ztg. **36**:440. 1878.
Tilletia striaeformis (Westd.)
 Winter in Krypt.-Flora. Pilze 1^1:108. 1880.
Tilletia alopecurivora Ule
 Bot. Ver. Prov. Brandenburg. Verh. **25**:214. 1884.
Tilletia Brizae Ule
 Bot. Ver. Prov. Brandenburg. Verh. **25**:214. 1884.
Tilletia striiformis (Westend.) Magnus
 Saccardo in Syll. fung. 7^2:484. 1888.
Ustilago poarum McAlp.
 Roy. Soc. Victoria. Proc. n. ser. **7**:220. 1894.
Ustilago Washingtoniana Ell. & Ev.
 Bul. Torr. Bot. Club **22**:57. 1895.
Tilletia airae-cespitosae Lindr.
 Soc. pro Fauna et Flora Fennica. Acta **26**:15. 1904.

Morphological and life history studies

Spores[8]

Morphology.—The spores of this fungus vary from spherical to ellipsoidal or irregular. In sori in which the spores are not greatly crowded most of them are nearly spherical, while in sori in which much pressure has occurred the spores are found to be very irregular in shape (Plate XVII, 3). In mass they are nearly black, but as seen under the microscope they are olive-brown in color.

The spores measure from 10 to 17μ by from 8 to 12μ; but out of several hundred spores measured from the various hosts observed, the writer has found the majority to fall within the limits 10 to 14μ by 8.5 to 11μ. The spore is covered with a thick wall, which is divided into two layers—a hyaline inner endospore and a darker, thicker exospore (fig. 53, E). The latter varies from echinulate to verrucose, even in viable spores from the same plant. These spines or warts are usually rather blunt, and on mature spores (fig. 53, D, E) are about one micron in length. They may be close together or may stand a considerable distance apart. The endospore is difficult to discern in fresh spores, but becomes more readily apparent if the spore is held for a few minutes in dilute sulfuric acid. The spores contain large oil globules, which are usually more readily seen

---

[8] The term *spore* is used thruout this paper in preference to the word *chlamydospore*.

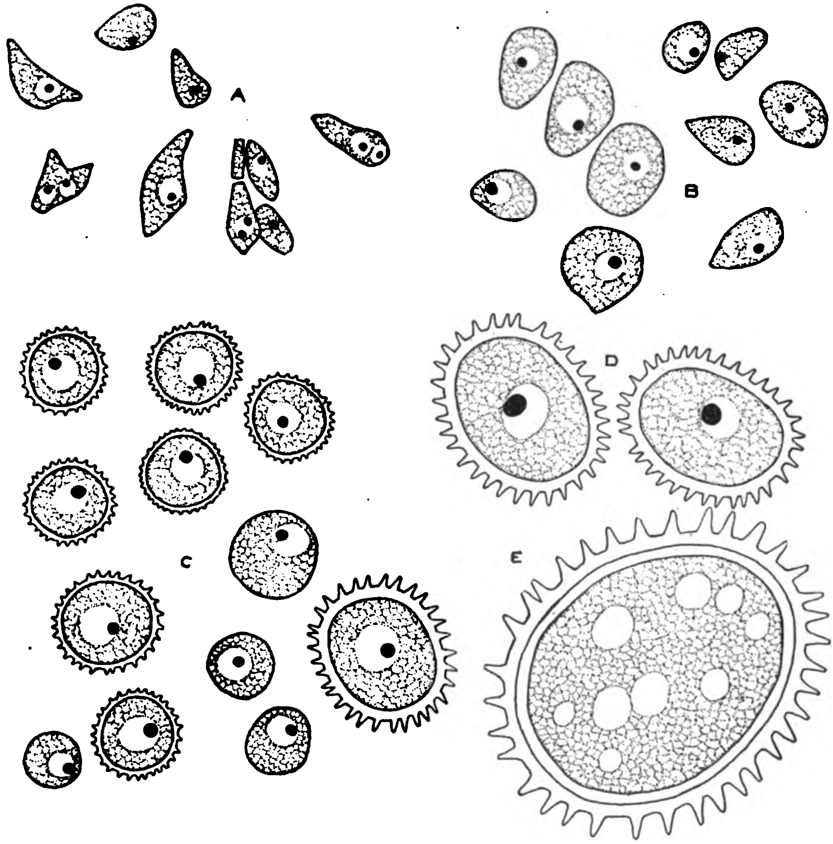


FIG. 53. SPORE FORMATION OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS

A, Immature spores from *Dactylis glomerata*, showing various stages in the fusion of the nuclei. In two spores the nuclei are not yet fused. One spore has a single nucleus with the nucleoli not yet fused. × 1670

B, C, Various stages in the maturation of spores from *Dactylis glomerata*. × 1670

D, Mature spores from *Dactylis glomerata*. × 1670

E, Mature spore from timothy, showing endospore and vacuoles, or oil globules. × 3530 after treatment with dilute potassium hydroxide solution. The mature spores each have a single nucleus, varying from 2.5 to 5.5μ in diameter. Each nucleus has a single large nucleolus.

Germination.[4]—In literature only a few investigators have reported germination of the spores of this fungus. Pammel (1893) says the spores germinate readily. Pammel, Weems, and Lamson-Scribner (1901) report that the spores germinate like those of *Tilletia Tritici.* They figure one germinating spore and a small promycelium with sporidia at the end, not, however, attached to a spore. Clinton (1900) figures germinating spores of this fungus from redtop. He says the germ tube branched but did not form sporidia. The contents were mostly at the tip of the germ tube. A number of writers (Saccardo 1888, Plowright 1889, Schroeter 1889, Brocq-Rousseu et Gain 1910, and Schellenberg 1911) report that Fischer von Waldheim observed germination analogous to that of *Tilletia Tritici.* This impression has apparently arisen from his statement (Fischer von Waldheim, 1866), "Cum *Tilletia Carie* sporarum evolutione congruit." As was pointed out by Oudemans (1893), this statement had reference to the production of spores in the mycelium and not to their germination, since later (1869-70:125) Fischer von Waldheim says: "Ungeachtet vielfach wiederholter Versuche gelang es mir nicht die Sporen von *Tilletia endophylla, de Baryana,* .... zum Keimen zu bringen."

In germination studies with this fungus the writer has used a considerable number of substrata, among which may be mentioned the following: distilled water, tap water, Richard's full-nutrient solution[5] (using potassium nitrate and ferric chloride in place of ammonium nitrate and ferrous sulfate, respectively), Cohn's modified solution,[6] manure extract solution and agar,[7] soil extract solution and agar,[8] hay infusion, extract from germinated timothy and redtop seedlings, extract from timothy and redtop flowers, moist filter paper, acetic acid solution 0.02 per cent, dilute solutions of ammonium hydroxide, ether, copper sulfate, calcium chloride, sulfuric acid, potassium permanganate.

---

[4] The following methods were used in staining spores and germ tubes: The germinated spores were transferred to slides coated with egg albumen. The drop or drops were allowed to concentrate as much as possible without drying, and two or three drops of fixer, usually Flemming's weaker solution, were added. After allowing this to concentrate, the slide was passed thru grades of alcohol up to ninety-five per cent, and after bringing back to a weaker alcohol or to water it was then stained with either Flemming's triple stain or Heidenhain's iron-haematoxylin. In some cases the spores were germinated directly on the slide coated with egg albumen and fixed without transferring. Occasionally the spores were germinated on a very thin film of agar on a glass slide. This film of agar, with the germinated spores, was then fixed and stained. However, the agar was so quickly covered by foreign organisms that the method was of little value. The writer has not succeeded in obtaining viable spores free from bacteria or other fungi.

The material for examination of mycelium and spore formation was fixed in Flemming's weaker solution or in chromo-acetic acid solution. When the material was not too thick, no trouble was experienced in securing penetration of the fixing solution. For staining, Flemming's triple stain, Heidenhain's iron-haematoxylin, and Mayer's haemalum were used. As counter stains, orange G, eosin, and light green were employed either in aqueous solution or in clove oil. In some cases Heidenhain's iron-haematoxylin and Mayer's haemalum were combined. In this combination the iron-haematoxylin stains the nuclei while the haemalum stains the gelatinous sheath.

[5] Richards, H. M. Jahrb. wiss. Bot. [Pringsheim] 30:667. 1897.

[6] Kellerman, W. A., and Swingle, W. T. Kansas Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. 2:229-231. 1890.

[7] Jensen, C. N. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 315:431–432. 1912.

[8] Jensen, C. N. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 315:430–431. 1912.

Two methods for obtaining spore germination were used. In the first, the spores were placed in drops of the solution on slides supported in petri dishes. To prevent evaporation, the bottom of each petri dish was covered with water or with some of the liquid to be tested. In the second method, the spores were allowed to dry on the cover glass and were then covered with a drop of agar, thus bringing the spores nearer the cover glass for examination.

In the spring of 1914 the writer obtained a small percentage of germination in a one-tenth-per-cent ether solution of spores taken from diseased timothy plants in the greenhouse. He has since made repeated attempts to germinate fresh spores both from these plants and from other timothy plants, but only an occasional spore has germinated. A considerable quantity of material was also collected, part of which was kept in the laboratory and part placed in wire netting outside. From time to time during the fall, winter, and succeeding summer, attempts were made to germinate these spores, but without success. A small percentage of germination has been obtained two or three times with spores from Kentucky bluegrass.

Much better germination has been obtained with spores from redtop, in one instance over ninety per cent of the spores germinating. The proper conditions for spore germination have not been determined, but, as shown by the following observations, spores seem to retain their vitality longer if kept in a moist atmosphere. In the above-mentioned case of ninety per cent germination, the spores were taken from what appeared to be rather young sori — that is, the epidermis was still intact or had just been ruptured. The plants had been brought into the laboratory and placed in a moist chamber above water. Spores taken from these plants twenty-four hours later showed about twenty per cent germination, and after forty-eight hours no further germination was observed. In another case plants were brought into the laboratory, and fresh spores taken from them and placed under favorable conditions germinated to the extent of fifteen per cent. Half the plants were placed in a moist chamber above water, while the others were left in the open laboratory. The next day spores from the plants in the moist chamber showed about four per cent germination, while all those taken from the plants left exposed failed to germinate. Similar results have later been obtained at different times. As will be shown later, the age of spores in a single sorus varies considerably, so that it is not possible to tell with certainty the age of spores that may germinate. The writer has never germinated any spores taken from sori that he knew to be very old.

The manner or the abundance of spore germination does not seem to be affected by the medium in which the spores are placed. While the writer has found considerable variation in the germination of different lots of spores, this variation occurred more or less in all the media employed.

The usual method of germination is for the germ tube to push out thru a hole that it makes in the spore wall. In some cases the wall cracks, due to the pressure exerted (fig. 54, O). After the contents of the spore have passed out, the crack is nearly closed. The germ tube continues to elongate, the contents of the spore becoming vacuolate (fig. 54, B-E). At about the time the germ tube is put forth, the large nucleus in the spore divides (fig. 54, A). Actual mitotic figures were not observed, but apparently four nuclei are produced in the spore before migration into the tube. In figure 54, B and C, there are three nuclei in the tube with one still remaining in the spore. These nuclei are considerably smaller than the mother nucleus. They are usually more or less ellipsoidal and not over two microns in their longest diameter. Each has a single, rather large, deeply staining nucleolus located usually near the periphery of the nucleus. These nuclei pass out with the contents of the spore and are usually found grouped closely together in the germ tube (fig. 54, F-J). By the time the germ tube has reached a length of from fifty to one hundred microns, the entire content of the spore has passed into it, leaving a clear space behind (fig. 54, F, P, and fig. 55, A, B). The protoplasm at the end of the tube nearest the spore is usually much vacuolated (fig. 54, Q, R, and fig. 55, A, B). With continued growth of the tube, the protoplasmic content, with the four nuclei, is found always at the growing tip (fig. 54, I-K, S, and fig. 55, A, B). From time to time hyaline cross-walls are laid down behind the protoplasm. These walls consist apparently of dried hyaloplasm. They originate at the rear of large vacuoles.

In the majority of cases growth continues in this manner indefinitely, the protoplasmic content, with the nuclei, continuing at the tip. The germ tubes may pass out of the water or other medium and grow for a considerable distance across the slide. They seem to grow equally well whether immersed in the liquid or on the surface. In many cases side branches are pushed forth by the germ tube, the protoplasmic content filling both the tip and the side branches. In most of these instances the protoplasm eventually withdraws from the side branch and continues in the tip, or withdraws from the tip and passes into the side branch (fig. 55, B). Occasionally the protoplasm becomes much vacuolated between the tip and the side branch, and later separates at one of the largest vacuoles, one half continuing in the tip and the other passing into the side branch (fig. 54, M, N, and fig. 55, A). In some cases the germ tubes become exceedingly branched, as shown in figure 54, L–N. The nuclear phenomena in these branched germ tubes were not studied.

FIG. 54. GERMINATION OF SPORES OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS

The spores were taken from redtop, with the exception of those in H, I, J, and O, which were taken from Kentucky bluegrass. The spores were germinated in either tap water or distilled water.

A, Early stage of spore germination, showing the binucleate condition. Both the exospore and the endospore are visible. X 1250

B–F, Later stages of germination, showing the passage of the nuclei and the protoplasmic contents into the germ tube. X 1250

G–J, Late germination stages, showing the protoplasm and the nuclei in the tip of the germ tube. The nuclei remain grouped near together. In H and J the empty tubes at the base have collapsed in places and have stained dark. X 1250

K, Germinated spore after 72 hours. X 325

L–N, Germinated spores, showing irregular branching of germ tubes and division of protoplasmic contents into two parts. X 350

O, germinated spore, showing crack in the spore wall. X 735

P–S, Various stages in the germination of a single spore. Drawings made after 10 hours, 16 hours, 18 hours, and 48 hours, respectively. X 735

T–W, Germinated spores, showing septa and clamp connections. Drawing from a culture 48 hours old. X 735

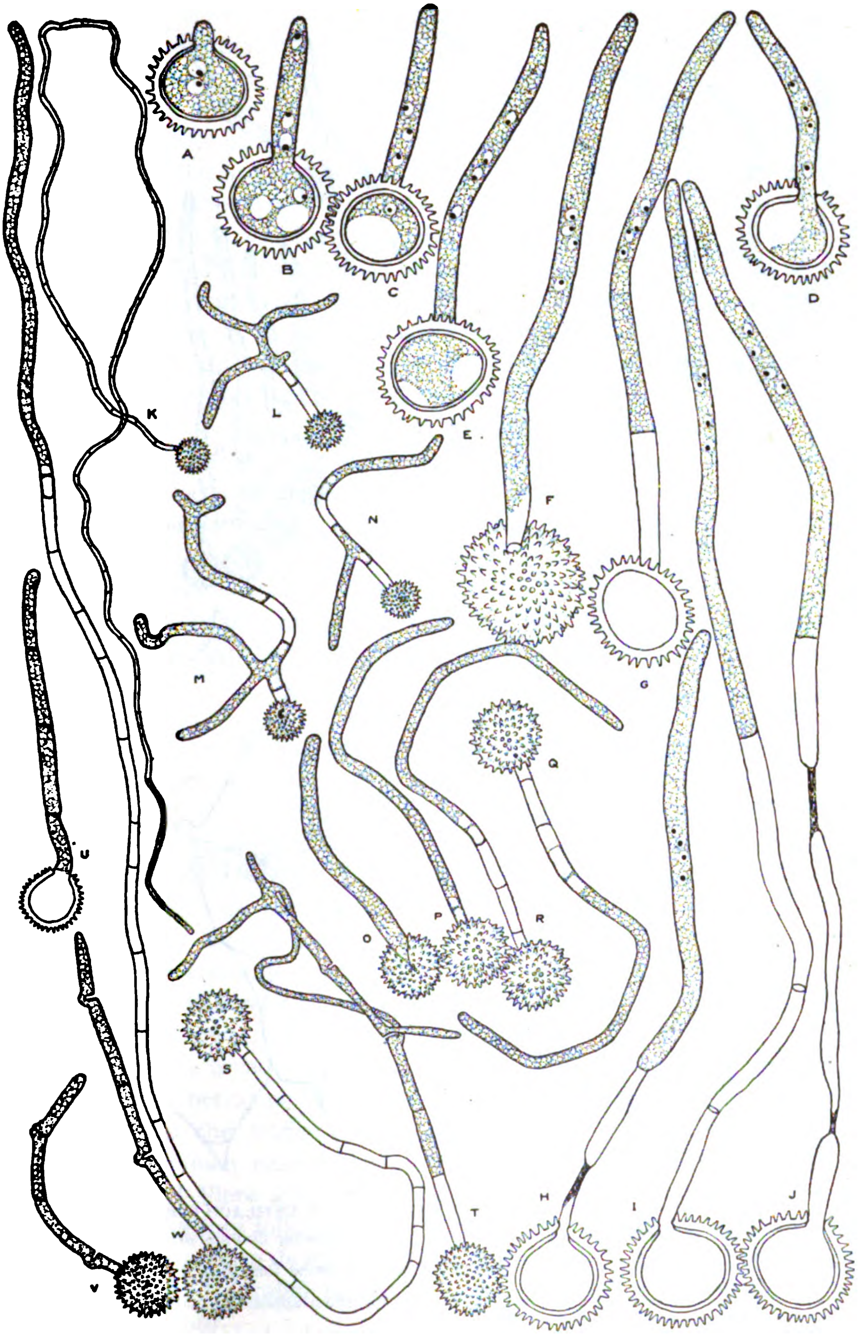


FIG. 54. GERMINATION OF SPORES OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS

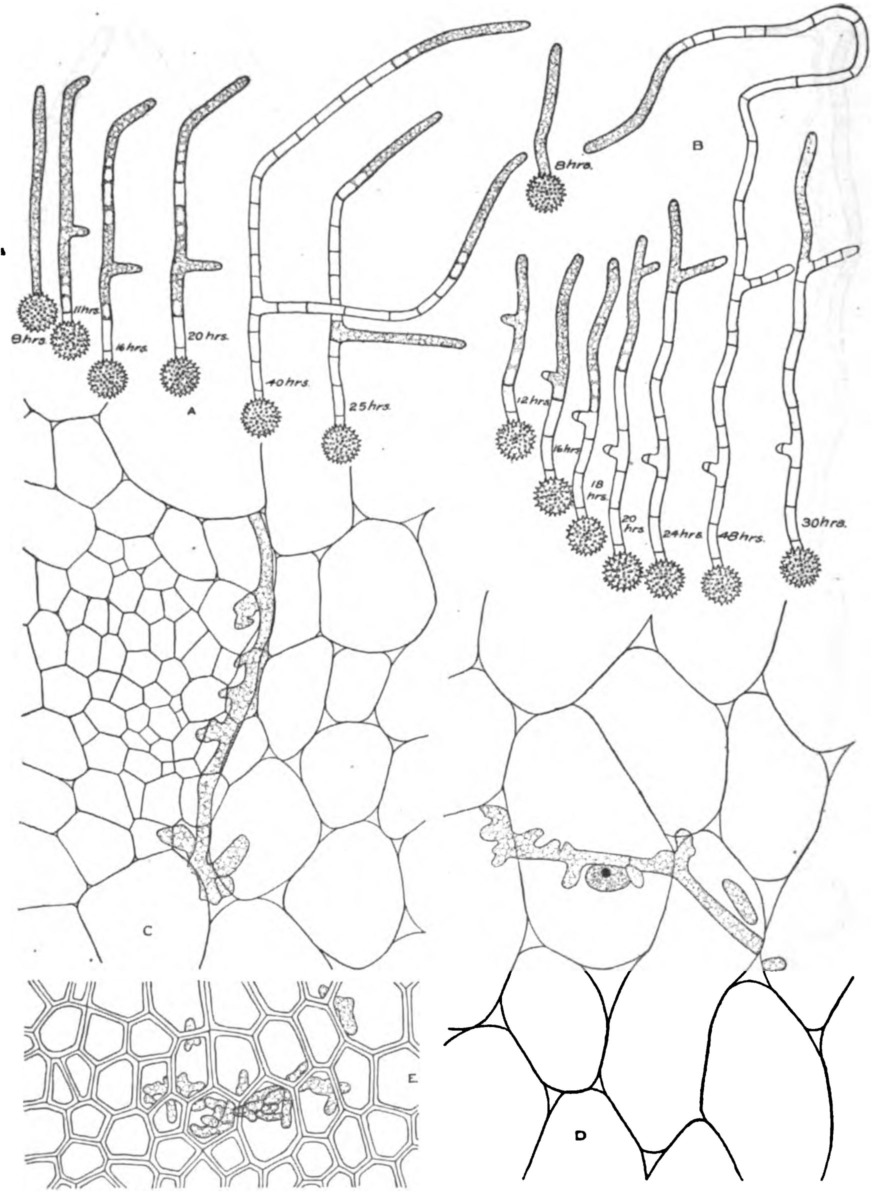


FIG. 55. MYCELIUM AND SPORE GERMINATION OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS

A, Germination in distilled water of a spore from redtop, showing division of protoplasm into two parts. × 350

B, Germination in distilled water of a spore from redtop, showing formation of side branches without division of protoplasm. × 350

C, Intercellular mycelium in a timothy stem. The mycelium appears to pass thru the cells, but is merely applied closely to the cell walls. × 715

D, Intracellular mycelium in base of a timothy stem. It is applied closely to the cell nucleus. × 715

E, Intracellular mycelium in a vascular bundle of a timothy stem. × 715

In one lot of spores collected on October 5, 1914, a radically different method of germination was observed in the case of a few spores. These spores were placed in drops of water on slides in petri dishes. When examined again forty-eight hours later, the germ tubes or promycelia from a few spores on two of the slides were found to be septate, with well-developed clamp connections (fig. 54, U–W). In one case three cells were united by the clamp connections (fig. 54, T). One of the object slides was set aside to observe further development of the promycelia, while the spores on the other object slide were transferred to a slide coated with egg albumen and stained according to the method already described. Unfortunately none of the septate promycelia adhered to the slide. Further development of the promycelia on the slide set aside was apparently arrested by the strong light of the microscope, and the culture soon became contaminated with yeasts and other organisms. These spores appeared in all respects like the normal spores found on redtop. The diseased plants were collected in a meadow and were wrapped in paper before being brought to the laboratory. The spores were then taken from the sori with a flamed scalpel, and therefore it was hardly possible that there was contamination of spores from any other species of Ustilago. This production of cross-walls adds weight to the contention that the fungus is a member of the genus Ustilago, even tho no conidial production was observed.

Mycelium

The mycelium of the leaf smut fungus is especially distinguished by the formation of short side branches or knobs (fig. 55, C–E, and Plate XVII, 1). The hyphæ are most frequently from 2 to 3 μ in diameter, but may vary from 1.5 to 5 μ. The length of the cells varies from 4 to 30 μ. The mycelium is usually intercellular, in which case it sends out side branches which may penetrate the cells as haustoria or may merely apply themselves closely to the walls of the host cells (fig. 55, C). In many cases, however, the mycelium is intracellular (fig. 55, D, E, and Plate XVII, 1). A single mycelial thread growing through a cell and applied directly to the nucleus is shown in figure 55, D.

The mycelium invades all parts of stem, leaves, and rhizomes, occasionally even penetrating the inner wall of the epidermal cells. In badly diseased plants the tissues are found very thoroly infested with the mycelium, in which case it may even grow into the vascular bundles (fig. 55, E, and Plate XVII, 2). With renewed growth of the plants in spring the mycelium follows the growing tip of the shoots, passing into the leaves as these are developed. In the leaves it is usually found growing alongside and parallel to the vascular bundles, or it may be found in the bundle itself.

FIG. 56. MYCELIUM AND SPORE FORMATION OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS

Drawings made from sections of stems or leaves of *Dactylis glomerata*

A–I, Mycelium in various stages. Binucleate stages are shown in B–E, H, and I. Four-nucleate stages are shown in A, F, and G. In G, H, and I the mycelium is shown with a gelatinous wall, the beginning of spore formation. The cell shown at the left in H, which was at the edge of a sorus, had not yet begun to gelatinize. × 1670

J–M, Short segments of the spore-forming threads, mostly binucleate. In most cases only the nucleolus can be made out with certainty at this stage. A gelatinous sheath was observed in only one case. × 1670

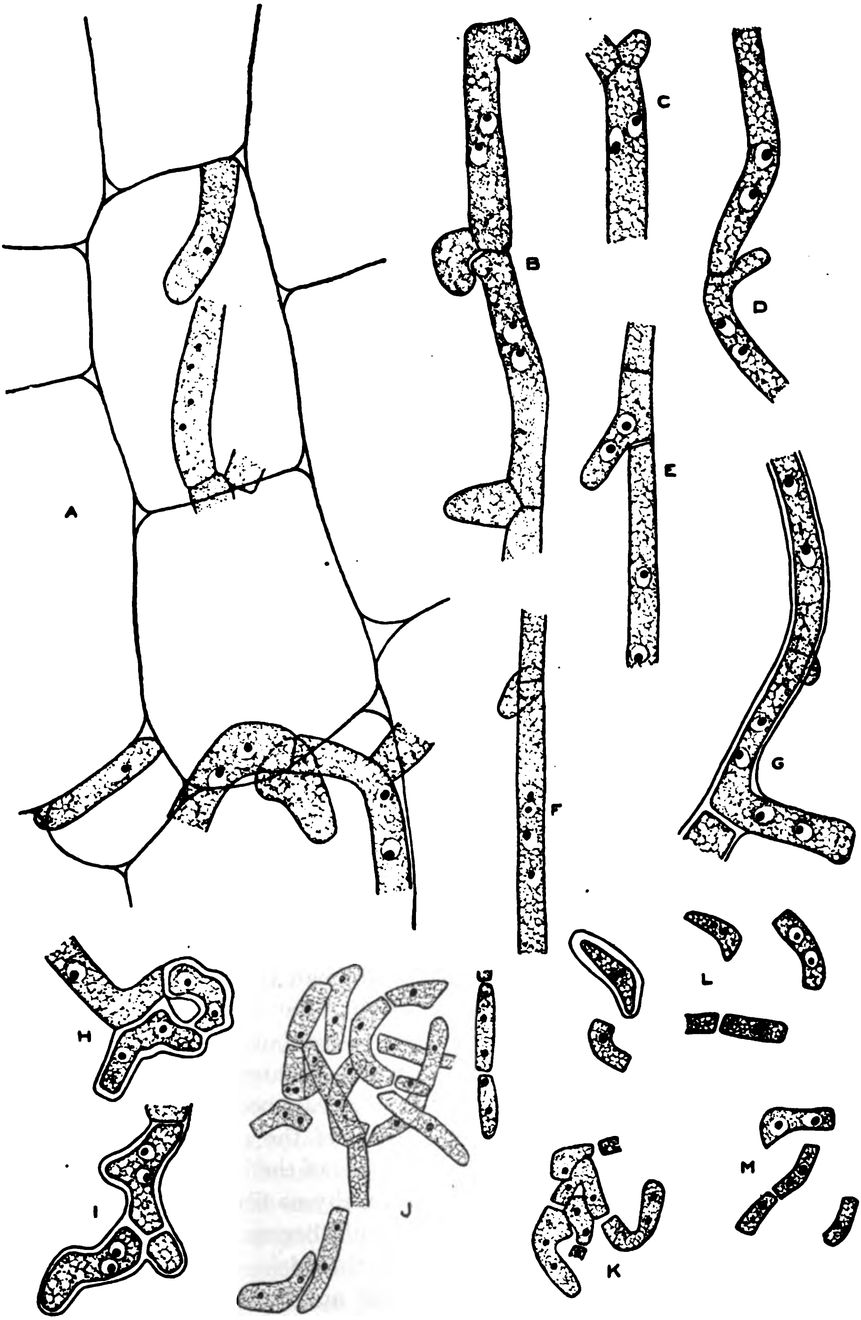


FIG. 56. MYCELIUM AND SPORE FORMATION OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS

Considerable difficulty was experienced in staining nuclei and septa in the same mycelium. However, so far as observed, the cells of the vegetative mycelium are always binucleate (fig. 56, A–E, H, I). Division of the nuclei was not observed, but in a few cases a four-nucleate stage was found (fig. 56, A, F, G). This had apparently resulted from a more or less simultaneous division of the two nuclei, the septum not yet having been laid down. The nuclei are occasionally found side by side, but are usually at some distance apart in the cell. The point of origin of the binucleate condition was not determined, but in the case of the promycelia with clamp connections shown in figure 54, V and W, it is probable that the binucleate condition arose at this point. Whether this formation of septa and fusion of adjacent cells is a common occurrence before infection, the writer has no means of knowing at present.

Many of the vegetative cells have clamp connections at the septa (fig. 56, B, C, F). These are formed as an outgrowth of one of the cells, apparently the terminal cell. A wall is laid down between this outgrowth and the parent cell. Whether the wall between this connection and the other hyphal cell is dissolved was not determined with certainty; but if it is, another wall is quickly laid down so that the clamp is cut off from both cells. So far as observed, the nuclei did not pass through this clamp. It has been suggested by Kniep[9] that the clamp connection may serve for facilitating food transfer by exposing a larger surface for osmosis. If that is the case here, it is difficult to see why a wall should be laid down between it and both cells.

Branching of the vegetative mycelium occurs at the septa (fig. 56, E, G). Such a branch, containing two nuclei with the septum not yet laid down, is shown in figure 56, G.

Spore formation

The only account in literature of the mycelium and spore formation of the leaf smut fungus is by Fischer von Waldheim (1869-70), who studied the fungus on *Holcus mollis.* He states that the spores are formed on the ends of threads, like those of *Tilletia Caries*, but, on the other hand, the threads are larger in circumference and a gelatinous membrane surrounds the spore until maturity, as in the typical species of Ustilago.

Spore formation may occur in any region of the plant above ground. It usually originates in the parenchyma tissues of the leaf or in the cortical tissues of the stem outside the ring of sclerenchyma fibers. The mycelium that is to give rise to spore-forming threads begins to branch profusely in the tissues, producing a tangled mat of threads. This mycelium may remain intercellular for some time, forcing apart and crushing the cell walls by its continued growth and branching. Eventually, however, it penetrates the cell and here continues its growth, branching profusely and absorbing the cell contents, the nucleus being the last thing to disappear. A change now appears in the mycelium. The wall begins to gelatinize and the lumen becomes narrower and more deeply staining (fig. 56, H, I). Meanwhile the mycelium breaks up into short cells, usually not over from five to twelve microns in length. The cells may be branched, resulting in a Y-shaped appearance; or, as frequently happens, they may be U-shaped, due to a bending-back of the mycelium. In most cases these threads are densely intertwined and it is difficult to follow them for any distance (fig. 56, J, K). In rare cases, however, they grow out from the main sorus as septate, parallel strands (fig. 57, A). As the lumen grows narrower, it becomes increasingly difficult to stain the nuclei. In most cases only the nucleolus can be made out with certainty. As shown in figure 56, J-M, two nuclei are still usually present. Whether some cells are originally cut off with only one nucleus could not be made out with certainty. Meanwhile the gelatinous sheaths of the adjacent cells have become pressed together and apparently fused, so that it is impossible to distinguish them. Here and there individual cells soon begin to enlarge. It is during or just before this enlargement that nuclear fusion usually takes place. Only occasionally is a cell that has enlarged sufficiently to show the nuclei found to have more than one nucleus. Two such immature spores, with two nuclei side by side, are shown in figure 53, A. In another spore of figure 53, A, is shown a slightly later stage, in which the nucleus contains two nucleoli.

---

[9] Kniep, Hans. Zeitsch. Bot. 5:619. 1913.

The spore-forming threads are crowded so closely together in the young condition that it would be manifestly impossible for all the cells to produce mature spores without an enormous increase in the size of the sorus. Consequently it appears that many of the cells disintegrate (fig. 57, I, M, R, S). Whether some or all of these cells had only one nucleus at the beginning of spore formation it is impossible to say. In the main body of the sorus the spore-forming threads and the young spores are so closely packed and interwined that their development cannot be followed accurately. In order to make out any details it is necessary to examine the isolated spores or threads around the border of the sorus. Here it is seen that the spores at the ends of the threads or the side branches are the first to be formed (fig. 57, G-J, O). Only very rarely is the maturest cell not at the end of the thread (fig. 57, F). However, a careful examination under favorable conditions shows that the cells farther back on the threads may eventually form spores also (fig. 57, E-H, K, N, O, R-T). In most cases this relation is very difficult to make out, due to the fact that the first-formed spore usually rounds up and loses all apparent

FIG. 57. SPORE FORMATION OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS

Drawings made from sections of stems or leaves of *Dactylis glomerata*. All × 1670

A, Segments of spore-forming threads, with two immature spores

B–D, Immature spores, showing pointed ends

E, Two immature spores attached end to end

F, Three spores in a row, with the maturest one in the middle. Small, disintegrating masses of protoplasm are shown between the spores. The gelatinous sheath is only partly visible

G, H, Terminal and intercalary spore formation, showing also a well-developed gelatinous sheath

I, J, Terminal spore formation

K–T, Terminal and intercalary spore formation. A spore is shown on a side branch in O. The production of spines is shown in R–T

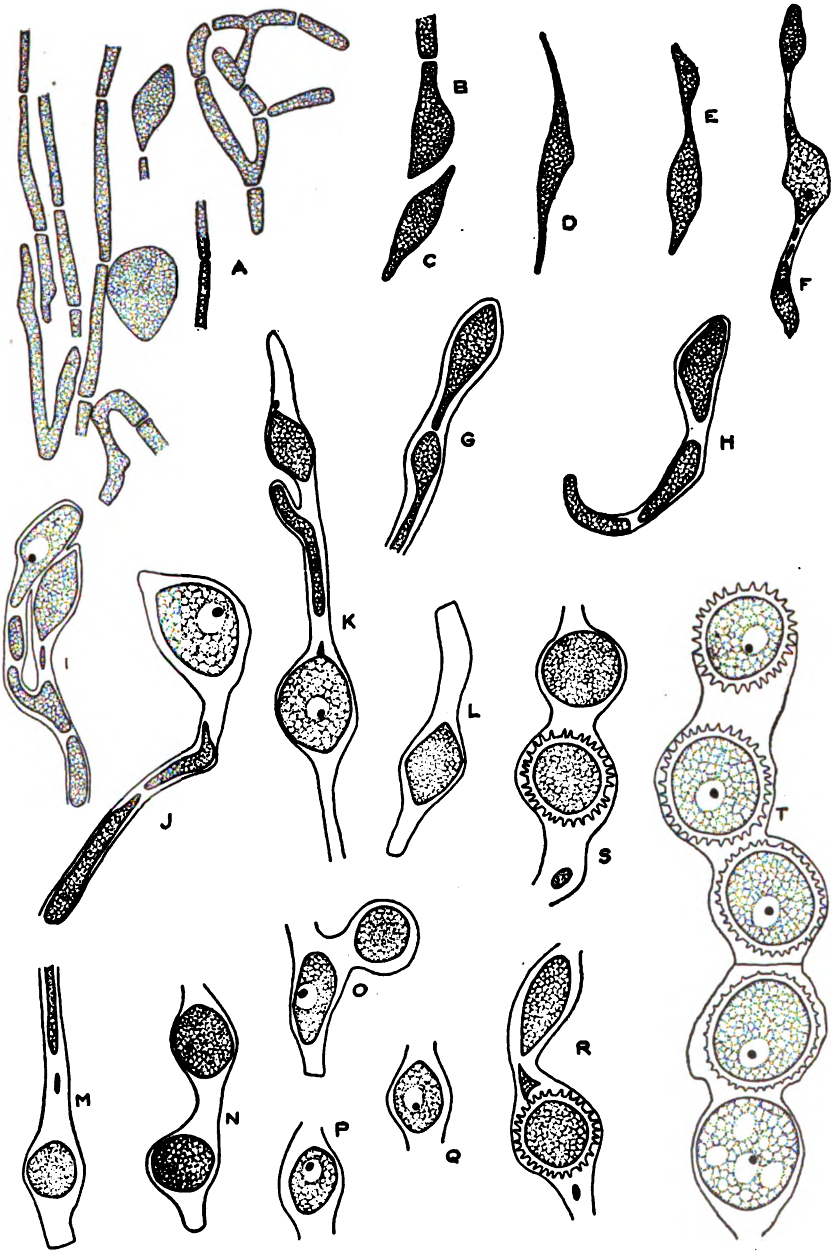


FIG. 57. SPORE FORMATION OF USTILAGO STRIAEFORMIS

connection with the other cells in the thread back of it. It is probably due to this fact that Fischer von Waldheim (1869-70:85) states: "Einerseits bildet sie [*Tilletia de Baryana*] ihre Sporen an den Enden der Fäden, wie *Till. Caries* und *endophylla*." This intercalary formation of the spores in the spore-forming threads adds weight to the contention that the organism is a species of Ustilago rather than of Tilletia. In only one instance has the writer established the connection of more than two spores in a thread (fig. 57, T). In that instance the spores were formed in a thread which had extended considerably beyond the end of the sorus and had plenty of room and nutritive material in which to develop. The spores are seen to be older and to have larger spines at the upper end, while they become progressively younger toward the bottom, which was the point of connection with other threads.

If stained under favorable conditions, the young spore is found always to have a gelatinous sheath surrounding it (fig. 57, G-T). In its early stages the spore is usually more or less pointed at one or both ends (fig. 53, A, B, and fig. 57, B-I). In some cases these ends are blunt, in others they are long and sharp. As the spore enlarges the ends become rounded and the gelatinous sheath is pushed out. There is no visible wall about the spore, other than that formed by the gelatinous sheath, until it is nearly two-thirds grown. About this time, however, the spore becomes set off from its sheath by a thin wall, on the outside of which appear small granules which are the beginnings of the spines (fig. 53, C). As the spore matures the wall becomes darker and the spines become longer and thicker. The growth of the spines appears to be due partly to drying and shrinking of the material in the interstices, and partly to outward growth of the spines themselves. The relation of the spines to the spore wall is most clearly shown by plasmolyzing the contents slightly. By the time the spores are mature, the gelatinous sheath has entirely disappeared (fig. 53, D, E).

In the young sorus the first spores are formed in the center. As the sorus becomes older, spore formation gradually proceeds outward (Plate XVII, 3). In some cases the mycelium spreads no farther than the limits it occupied when spore formation began; but in the majority of cases it continues to invade new cells, branching and giving rise to additional spore-forming threads. It is due to this continued progress of the mycelium that fusion of adjacent sori occurs.

Inoculation and infection

No inoculation experiments with this fungus have been reported in literature. Clinton (1900) says that infection probably occurs thru the germinating seed, but he cites no experimental work. From experiments of the writer it appears that inoculation and infection occur at blossoming time. The spores are carried to the opening flowers either by wind or by insects. Here they germinate, sending out a germ tube which penetrates into the ovary and remains in the young embryo in a more or less dormant condition until it begins growth after planting.

Seed inoculation.—On November 4, 1913, timothy seed bought of a local dealer was inoculated with spores of *Ustilago striaeformis* taken from timothy plants that had been kept in the laboratory for three months. Part of this treated seed was sown in the greenhouse along with clean seed. The remaining treated seed was sown in a box, and after germination had started the box was kept in a rather cool room until the plants were between two and three inches high. These plants were then placed in the greenhouse. The disease made its first appearance on the leaves of a number of the plants about four months later, and on April 1, 1914, the results shown in table 1 were obtained:

TABLE 1. RESULTS OF TIMOTHY SEED INOCULATIONS MADE ON NOVEMBER 4, 1913

	Percentage of smutted plants	
	Inoculated	Check
Plants kept in greenhouse	2.0	2.5
Plants first kept in cool room	1.9	1.8

After April 1 only one additional plant became diseased. Some of these plants later became so badly diseased that they died, while a few of the others produced seed on one or more shoots of the stool.

On April 18, 1914, a series of inoculations were made on thirty-two species of grasses, using a mixture of fresh spores from timothy, spores that had been kept outside over winter, and spores that had been kept in the laboratory for several months. The seed was inoculated by mixing it with smut spores in water. Timothy seeds from five different sources were used, redtop seeds from three sources, and Kentucky bluegrass seeds from three sources. On July 22, when these plantlets were examined, those of the timothy from two sources showed a small percentage of smutted plants in the case of both treated and untreated seeds (table 2). All the other plants remained healthy.

TABLE 2. RESULTS OF TIMOTHY SEED INOCULATIONS MADE ON APRIL 18, 1914

	Lot 1		Lot 2	
	Number of stools	Percentage smutted	Number of stools	Percentage smutted
Treated	146	2.0	291	1.0
Check	206	1.9	217	1.4

On May 11, 1914, a series of inoculations similar to those described above were made, using eight species of grasses, including seeds from two sources each of redtop, Kentucky bluegrass, and timothy. When the plantlets were examined on July 22, timothy plants from one source (lot 1 of table 2) showed a small percentage of diseased plants in the case of both treated and untreated seeds (table 3). When examined again on August 17 the number of diseased plants in this lot had increased slightly, but all the other plants were healthy.

TABLE 3. RESULTS OF TIMOTHY SEED INOCULATIONS MADE ON MAY 11, 1914

	Number of stools	Percentage of smutted plants	
		July 22	August 17
Treated	197	2.5	2.5
Check	144	2.1	2.8

As shown in the tables, the number of smutted plants in these experiments was in no way affected by inoculating the seed. The experiments are inconclusive, however, since the spores failed to germinate in contemporaneous germination tests.

Blossom inoculation.— Blossoms of redtop, orchard grass, timothy, and Kentucky bluegrass were inoculated with spores taken from each of the hosts. The inoculations were made in most cases either by dusting the spores on the stigma or by spraying them on in water with an atomizer. Unfortunately the plants used in this experiment were later accidentally cut down, thus destroying the experiment.

Later in the summer these inoculations were repeated on second-growth timothy blossoms, using spores from timothy and redtop. A number of the resulting seeds were placed to germinate between moist filter papers, and as soon as growth started sufficiently to show that the seeds were not killed they were fixed and infiltrated with paraffin, and sectioned. In one case typical smut mycelium was found in the seed, thus showing that infection had occurred. The remaining seed was sown in the greenhouse and later transplanted to the field, or was sown directly in the field, but owing to the extremely wet season the plants were completely smothered by weeds during the writer's absence. The writer expects to repeat these experiments on a more extensive scale.

In the summer of 1914 a quantity of viable timothy seed was collected from diseased plants. Some of this seed was germinated between moist filter paper, and as soon as sufficient growth had started to be sure that the seeds had not been killed by the fungus they were infiltrated with paraffin and sectioned. In a few of these mycelium was found (fig. 58). It was not possible, however, to tell whether this mycelium had come from blossom infection or had grown into the seed through the funiculus from the diseased rhachilla. The remaining seed from these plants was sown in the field, but suffered the same fate as that from the blossom inoculation experiment mentioned above.

Soil inoculation.— In order to test the possibility that the spores might live in the soil for some time, the following experiment was performed: On April 14, 1914, plots 2, 3, 4, and 5 (fig. 59) were inoculated with fresh spores from timothy. On the same day timothy seed procured from a local dealer was sown in plots 1 and 5, and seed treated by covering it with spores was sown in plot 6. After one week seed was sown in plots 4 and 7, after three weeks in plot 2, and after six weeks in plot 3. No diseased plants were produced in any of the plots. This experiment is inconclusive, since no germination of spores was obtained in contemporaneous germination tests.

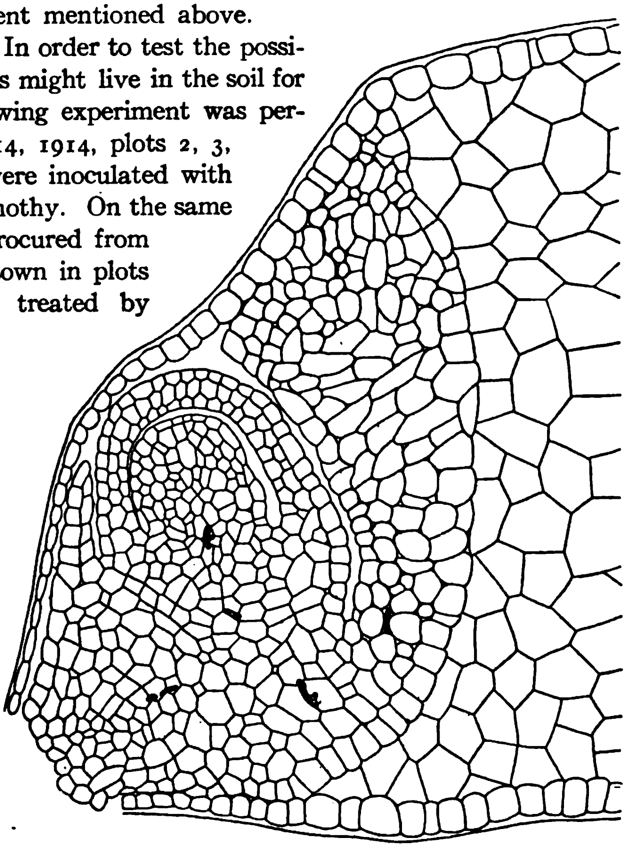


FIG. 58. SECTION THROUGH A TIMOTHY SEED, SHOWING MYCELIUM IN THE EMBRYO. X 175

Inoculation of growing tissues.— On March 1, 1914, eight timothy plants were inoculated with both fresh and old spores taken from diseased timothy. In some cases the spores were placed on the uninjured growing tissues at the top, while in others the tissues were injured by needle pricks or by cutting with a scalpel. In some of the stools a number of the stalks were cut off and the young sprouts that started out were covered with spores. In all cases the plants were kept moist by covering them with a bell glass. No infection was obtained on any of the plants.

Later in the summer these experiments were twice repeated on timothy and redtop, using spores from timothy, redtop, and bluegrass. The spores from redtop showed from five to twelve per cent germination on slides in petri dishes. In no case did any infection result.

Examination of inoculated seedlings.—Timothy and redtop seeds were inoculated with spores from timothy and redtop, respectively, and placed in a moist chamber between moist filter papers. The spores from redtop showed about ten per cent germination. Two days later additional spores were dusted on the seeds, and in this case the spores from redtop showed four per cent germination. The germinated seedlings were removed from time to time and were fixed and sectioned in paraffin, but in no case was any mycelium found in the tissues.

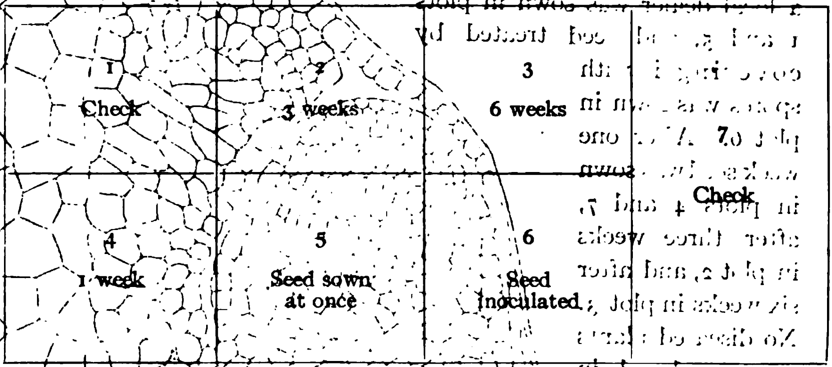


FIG. 59. CHART SHOWING PLAN OF SOIL INOCULATION EXPERIMENT

Summary of life history

The fungus may pass the winter in three different ways: first, as mycelium and spores in the green tissues of the plants; second, as mycelium in the dormant embryo of the seed; and third, as mycelium in bulbs and rootstocks of perennial plants. In the first method the fungus persists in the green tissues, usually spreading very little if at all until renewed growth starts in the spring. However, over the steam pipes on the Cornell University campus, where the grass maintains a slight growth during the winter, the writer has found the fungus active thru the entire winter. In the second case, when the seed is sown the mycelium becomes active, growing up with the young plant and spreading out into the leaves, where, after a period varying from two and one-half to six months or more, it first makes itself evident by the elongate sori. In the third case, when the plants start growth. In the spring the mycelium grows out into or with the new shoots, producing the lead-colored sori very soon after growth starts. Additional sori are produced all summer whenever there is any new growth of the diseased plants. In those plants that produce underground stems the mycelium grows thru these, keeping pace with the growing tip and establishing itself in the newly formed plants. The writer has found plants of Kentucky bluegrass and a creeping variety of *Agrostis alba* affected in this manner at a distance of over four feet from the parent plant. At blossoming time the spores are distributed to the stigmas of the opening flowers, where they germinate, giving rise to a germ tube which penetrates into the ovary, in this way infecting the seed. When a plant is once infected, it apparently never becomes free from the fungus. The writer has observed the disease in the same plant for three successive seasons. The old dead leaves, showing sori formed the previous summer, may be found in the spring surrounding the new shoots, which soon show the disease.

PATHOLOGICAL HISTOLOGY

The only mention in literature of the effects of this fungus on the tissues is by Stuhlmeyer (1896). He gives a brief account of the alterations caused on a number of different plants.

An examination of diseased leaves shows that the sori originate in the mesophyll between the vascular bundles (Plate XVII, 5 and 6). They may originate either near the upper or the lower epidermis, or midway between them. The mesophyll cells surrounding the young sorus are frequently found to have increased in diameter and to have lost their chlorophyll content. The cell walls persist for some time after the contents of the cells have been absorbed, and may be found extending into the young sorus as isolated strands. Eventually, however, they disappear. If the sorus originates near the surface of the leaf, the epidermal cells are early found to have increased in diameter, especially tangentially, apparently even before any particular pressure is exerted on them by the enlarging sorus, since they may be hypertrophied for a considerable distance above or below the sorus. As the sorus increases in size, additional mesophyll cells are invaded and are broken down partly by pressure and partly by dissolution of the walls. At the same time the epidermis is pushed out due to this pressure, the cells increasing greatly in tangential diameter and becoming somewhat flattened (Plate XVII, 6).

In the case of large sori the vascular bundles on either side are forced to one side and the nourishing cells surrounding them are crushed. In most cases the xylem and the phloem elements appear to be very little affected. The walls of the sclerenchyma fibers accompanying the larger bundles are frequently less lignified than those above or below the sorus. Adjacent sori occasionally may fuse laterally, in which case the bundle between them is pushed toward one epidermis, usually the upper, while the opposite epidermis is pushed out. When a large sorus is formed adjacent to a small vascular bundle consisting of only three or four cells, the bundle may be completely obliterated at that point but will still be found above and below the spore mass. Cross-connections of the bundles may be either pushed aside or completely destroyed.

The spore-forming mycelium continues to spread until it reaches one or both of the epidermal layers. The uninjured epidermal cells are very seldom invaded by the mycelium. As the sorus becomes larger the epidermal cells may be crushed and ruptured by the pressure from within, or, as frequently occurs, the inner wall of the epidermal cells is dissolved by the fungus, the spores then pressing against the outer wall. This is later ruptured either by pressure or by the solvent action of the fungus. The writer has found both the lower and the upper epidermis to be ruptured in diseased leaves kept undisturbed under a bell glass. In this case the rupture of the second epidermis could have occurred only by the wall being dissolved until it became exceedingly weak.

In the stem the sori are usually found in the cortex just beneath the epidermis and outside the ring of sclerenchyma fibers (Plate XVII, 4). The cortical cells are broken down and the epidermal cells are enlarged in their tangential diameter and pushed out. The epidermal cells are eventually ruptured just as they are in the leaves.

EFFECT OF ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS

Ule (1884:216) reports that protected places, especially where protected in winter by snow as on the west side of hills, are favorite places for this and related fungi. He rarely, if ever, found the disease on open meadows. Griffiths (1903) states that in California the disease seems to be confined to well-drained areas abundantly supplied with seepage from ditches, rather than to poorly drained or drier parts of meadows.

In New York the writer has not observed any difference in the amount of this disease between wet and dry soils or exposed and protected places, provided the grass was pastured or otherwise kept to the same size in both locations. However, especially in the case of Kentucky bluegrass, if the plants are allowed to reach maturity there is usually much less smut in the rich, moist soils. This is apparently due to the fact that in the rich soils the healthy plants grow so rank and tall that they are able to crowd out the diseased, stunted plants. This probably accounts for the fact that few diseased Kentucky bluegrass plants can be found along moist roadsides, while they are extremely common on lawns where the grass is mowed.

CONTROL

No experiments are recorded in literature on the control of leaf smut, but Pammel (1890) and Clinton (1900) have suggested the possibility of controlling the disease by seed treatment.

Since, as already shown, infection occurs thru the blossoms, it follows that if the grower plants seed free from the smut fungus, the grass will be entirely free from the disease. This method, however, is not feasible under most conditions, since the disease is so universally present. Further, many growers buy their seed from dealers and thus have no means of knowing where the seed came from or what percentage of it may be infected. In such a case the only remedy lies in treating the seed.

EFFECT OF SEED TREATMENT ON GERMINATION

Before any experiments were undertaken on the control of this disease by seed treatment, a number of germination tests with timothy seed were performed in order to determine the point of injury to the seed by the various treatments. The seeds were treated and then germinated between

TABLE 4. EFFECT ON GERMINATION OF TIMOTHY SEED, OF TREATMENT WITH FORMALDEHYDE AND COPPER SULFATE SOLUTIONS

Treatment	Percentage of germination	
	Lot 1	Lot 2
Control, soaked in water 1 minute	97	60
Control, soaked in water 1 hour	95	64
Control, soaked in water 2 hours	92	....
Control, soaked in water 10 hours	92	64
Formaldehyde solution, 40 per cent, 1 pint to 38 gallons of water		
½ hour	95	....
1 hour	94	....
2 hours	94	....
4 hours	91	....
10 hours	90	....
24 hours	85	....
Formaldehyde solution, 40 per cent, 1 pint to 76 gallons of water		
½ hour	94	53
1 hour	92	55
2 hours	93	51
4 hours	90	51
10 hours	86	51
24 hours	82	50
Copper sulfate solution, 2 per cent		
1 minute	92	54
2 minutes	88	56
5 minutes	90	54
10 minutes	91	50

moist filter papers in petri dishes. The experiments were run in triplicate in each case, two hundred seeds being placed in each petri dish. The seeds in one petri dish were placed to germinate at once, while those in the other two dishes were first kept dry for forty-eight hours. It was found that in all treatments, including the checks, better germination occurred where the seed was placed to germinate at once after treating than where it was dried for two days. This increase amounted to from one to seven per cent. The averages for all three petri dishes are given in tables 4 and 5. The germination of seed after treatment with various formaldehyde and copper sulfate solutions is shown in table 4. From these results it is apparent that timothy seed may be treated with one pint of forty-per-cent formaldehyde solution to thirty-eight gallons of water for from two to four, or even ten hours, or with two-per-cent copper sulfate solution for ten minutes, without materially affecting its germinating power. The results of treating timothy seed with hot water are given in table 5. Before the seed was plunged into hot water it was held for one minute in water at a temperature four or five degrees below that at which it was to be treated. The temperature of the water did not vary over one degree above or below the stated temperature, and in most cases not over 0.15 degree. Judging from the results given in table 5, favorable treatments would appear to be with water at 54° C. for ten minutes or 52° C. for fifteen minutes, with a previous soaking in cold water of from six to eight hours.

TABLE 5. EFFECT ON GERMINATION OF TIMOTHY SEED, OF VARIOUS TREATMENTS WITH HOT WATER

Time soaked in cold water (hours)	Time held in hot water (minutes)	Temperature of hot water (centigrade)	Percentage of germination	
			Lot 1	Lot 2
4	Control		92	
6	Control		94	
10	Control		95	
4	5	50°	97	
4	10	50°	96	
4	15	50°	96	
4	20	50°	95	
4	25	50°	95	
6	5	50°	95	
6	10	50°	95	
6	15	50°	95	
6	20	50°	93	
6	25	50°	92	
10	5	50°	94	
10	10	50°	90	
10	15	50°	93	
10	20	50°	94	
10	25	50°	89	

TABLE 5 (concluded)

Time soaked in cold water (hours)	Time held in hot water (minutes)	Temperature of hot water (centigrade)	Percentage of germination Lot 1	Percentage of germination Lot 2
4	5	52°	95	....
4	10	52°	92	....
4	15	52°	93	....
4	20	52°	92	....
4	25	52°	92	....
6	5	52°	97	50
6	10	52°	95	45
6	15	52°	94	40
6	20	52°	91	33
6	25	52°	89	28
10	5	52°	95	....
10	10	52°	95	....
10	15	52°	91	....
10	20	52°	89	....
10	25	52°	88	....
4	5	54°	93	....
4	10	54°	93	....
4	15	54°	89	....
4	20	54°	89	....
4	25	54°	88	....
6	5	54°	94	47
6	10	54°	92	44
6	15	54°	85	38
6	20	54°	85	27
6	25	54°	83	21
10	5	54°	93	....
10	10	54°	88	....
10	15	54°	85	....
10	20	54°	86	....
10	25	54°	79	....

EFFECT OF SEED TREATMENT ON PERCENTAGE OF SMUT

During the summer of 1914 a number of experiments were conducted on the control of leaf smut by seed treatment. In one experiment the seeds, except those in a part of the check, were dusted with a mixture of spores taken from fresh plants and from dried plants kept over winter in the laboratory or exposed outdoors over winter. The results are given in table 6. As shown in the table, the dusting of spores on the seed had no effect on the amount of smut produced. However, the seed was already infected, as shown by the checks, so that data on seed treatment were obtained. The hot water treatments gave perfect control in both cases. The plots treated with formaldehyde and copper sulfate solutions showed less smut than the checks, but, owing to the small number of plants used and the low percentage of smut, this may have been due

TABLE 6. RESULTS OF TREATING TIMOTHY SEED FOR SMUT

Treatment	Number of stools	Percentage of smut
Check, no treatment	396	2
Check, seed dusted with spores	444	2.25
Formaldehyde solution, 40 per cent, 1 pint to 45 gallons of water for two hours	416	1.5
Copper sulfate solution, 2 per cent, for two minutes	406	1
Cold water for six hours, hot water at 52° C. for fifteen minutes	510	0
Cold water for six hours, hot water at 54° C. for ten minutes	322	0

to experimental error. The timothy seed was the same as lot 1 in table 2. In the other experiments no smut occurred even in the check plots. Further experiments during the summer of 1915 were nullified by wet weather.

These results, while not conclusive, point strongly to the probability of controlling this disease by treating the seed with hot water.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

BROCQ-ROUSSEU, —, et GAIN, EDMOND. Tilletia striiformis West. *In* Les ennemis de l'avoine, p. 18–19, Pl. III, 3–7. 1910.

CESATI, V. DE. Uredo longissima var. Holci. Klotz.-Raben. Herb. viv. mycol., no. 1498. 1850.

CLINTON, G. P. Leaf smut of timothy, redtop, and blue-grass. *In* The smuts of Illinois' agricultural plants. Illinois Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 57:348–349, Pl. R, S. 1900.

———— Ustilago striaeformis (West.) Niessl. *In* North American Ustilagineae. Journ. mycol. **8**:138. 1902.

———— Ustilago striaeformis (West.) Niessl. *In* North American Ustilagineae. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Proc. **31**:370–371. 1904.

———— Ustilago striaeformis (West.) Niessl. *In* The Ustilagineae, or smuts, of Connecticut. Connecticut State Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey. Bul. 5:19, fig. 51. 1905.

———— Ustilago striaeformis (Westend.) Niessl. *In* Ustilaginales. North Amer. flora **7**:18–19. 1906.

COMES, O. Tilletia striiformis, Magn. *In* Crittogamia agraria, p. 539–540. 1891.

ELLIS, J. B., and EVERHART, B. M. New species of Ustilagineae and Uredineae. Bul. Torrey Bot. Club **22**:57–61. 1895.

ERIKSSON, JAKOB. Fungoid diseases of agricultural plants, p. 1–208. (Reference on p. 50.) 1912.

FISCHER VON WALDHEIM, A. Tilletia de Baryana F. de W. Raben. Fungi eur., no. 1097. 1866.

——— Sur la structure des spores des Ustilaginées. Soc. Imp. Nat. Moscou. Bul. **40**: 242–259. 1867.

——— Beiträge zur Biologie und Entwickelungsgeschichte der Ustilagineen. Jahrb. wiss. Bot. [Pringsheim] **7**: 61–144, pl. 7–12. 1869–70. (Translation in New York State Agr. Soc. Trans. **30**: 280–354, pl. 1–6. 1872.)

——— Tilletia de Baryana F. de Wald. *In* Les Ustilaginées et leurs plantes nourricières. Ann. sci. nat., Botanique, ser. 6: **4**: 251. 1876.

——— Aperçu systematique des Ustilaginées, leurs plantes nourricières et la localisation de leurs spores. (Reference on p. 48.) 1877.

FRANK, A. B. Tilletia de Baryana F. de Widh. *In* Die Krankheiten der Pflanzen, 2d ed., **2**: 119. 1896.

FUCKEL, L. Tilletia Milii. *In* Symbolae mycologicae **1**: 40. 1869.

GARRETT, A. O. Ustilago striaeformis (Westend.) Niessl. *In* The smuts and rusts of Utah. Mycologia **2**: 268. 1910.

GRIFFITHS, DAVID. Ustilago striaeformis. *In* Forage conditions and problems in eastern Washington, eastern Oregon, northeastern California, and northwestern Nevada. U. S. Bur. Plant Indus. Bul. 38: 44. 1903.

KIRCHNER, OSKAR. Die Krankheiten und Beschädigungen unserer landwirtschaftlichen Kulturpflanzen, 2d ed., p. 1–675. (References on p. 153, 155, 157, 161, 164, 168, 171, 174, 181.) 1906.

LIND, J. Tilletia striiformis (West.) Ouds. *In* Danish fungi as represented in the herbarium of E. Rostrup, p. 267–268. 1913.

LINDAU, G. Sorauer's Handbuch der Pflanzenkrankheiten, 3d ed., **2**: 1–550. (Reference on p. 331.) 1908.

LINDROTH, J. J. Mykologische Mitteilungen, 11–15. Soc. pro Fauna et Flora Fennica, Helsingfors. Acta **26**: 15. 1904.

LUDWIG, FRIEDRICH. Lehrbuch der niederen Kryptogamen, p. 1–672. (References on p. 369, 387.) 1892.

MCALPINE, D. Australian fungi. Roy. Soc. Victoria. Proc. n. ser. **7**: 220. 1894.

——— Tilletia striaeformis (Westd.) Oud. *In* The smuts of Australia, p. 193, Pl. L. 1910.

MAGNUS. P. Bemerkung über Sorosporium und Tilletia De Baryana F. v. W. Bot. Ver. Prov. Brandenburg. Verh. (Sitzber.) **20**: 4. 1878.

——— T. striaeformis (Westd.) Oudem., T Milii Fckl. *In* Die Ustilagineen (Brandpilze) der Provinz Brandenburg. Bot. Ver. Prov. Brandenburg. Verh. **37**: 86–89, Pl. 1, fig. 11–15, 20–35. 1896.

Massee, George. Tilletia striiformis. *In* British fungi. Phycomycetes and Ustilagineae, p. 177–178, 184–185, Pl. v, 83–84. 1891.

——— Tilletia de Baryana. *In* A revision of the genus Tilletia. Roy. Gard. Kew. Bul. 1899:146–148, fig. 6–7. 1901.

——— Tilletia debaryana, Fischer de Waldh. *In* Mildews, rusts, and smuts, p. 196. 1913.

Migula, W. Tilletia striaeformis. *In* Kryptogamen-Flora von Deutschland, Oesterreich, und der Schweiz 3^1: 264. 1910.

Neveu-Lemaire, Maurice. Tilletia striiformis (West.). *In* Parasitologie des plantes agricoles, p. 166. 1913.

Niessl, G. v. Mycologische Notizen. Hedwigia **15**: 1–2. 1876.

Oudemans, C. A. J. A. Thecaphora Ammophilae n. sp. Bot. Ztg. **36**: 439–441. 1878.

——— Revision des champignons. Konink. Akad. Wetensch. Amsterdam. Verh. **1**: 2^2: 605–606. 1893.

Pammel, L. H. Smut on timothy grass. Prairie farmer **58**: 484, 1 fig. 1886.

——— Diseases of forage plants. Iowa State Improved Stock-Breeders' Assoc. Proc. **16**: 138–141. 1890.

——— Fungus diseases of Iowa forage plants. III. Smuts of grasses. Monthly rev. Iowa Weather and Crop Service **1892**: 9. 1892(a).

——— Some fungus diseases of Iowa forage plants. Iowa Acad. Sci. Proc. 1^2: 93–94. 1892(b).

——— Timothy smut (Tilletia striiformis (Westd.) Magnus). *In* New fungous diseases of Iowa. Journ. mycol. **7**: 97–98. 1892(c).

——— Ustilagineae. *In* Notes on some fungi common during the season of 1892, at Ames, Iowa. Agr. sci. **7**: 22–23. 1893.

——— Ustilagineae. *In* Diseases of plants at Ames, 1894. Iowa Acad. Sci. Proc. **2**: 203–204. 1895.

Pammel, L. H., and Carver, Geo. W. Ustilagineae. *In* Fungus diseases of plants at Ames, Iowa, 1895. Iowa Acad. Sci. Proc. **3**: 142. 1896.

Pammel, L. H., Weems, J. B., and Lamson-Scribner, F. Timothy smut. *In* Grasses of Iowa, Part I. Iowa Agr. Coll. Exp. Sta. Bul. **54**: 306–308, fig. 122. 1901. (*Also in* Iowa Geol. Survey. Bul. **1**: 254–256, fig. 122. 1901.)

Plowright, Charles B. Tilletia striaeformis (Westd.). *In* A monograph of the British Uredinae and Ustilagineae, p. 284–285. 1889.

Rabenhorst, Ludw. Tilletia de Baryana F. de W. *In* Fungi europaei exsiccati, Cent. X et XI. Hedwigia **6**: 48. 1867.

Riess, H. Uredo longissima var. megalospora. Klotz.-Raben. Herb. viv. mycol., no. 1897. 1854.

ROSTRUP, E. Om nogle af snyltesvampe foraarsagede misdannelser hos blomsterplanter. Bot. tidsskr. **14**: 230–243. 1885.

——— Ustilagineae Daniae. Danmarks brandsvampe. Bot. For. Festskrift Kjoben. **1890**: 148. 1890.

——— Excursion til Skovene ved Borup og Alindelille d. 19–20 Juni 1897. Bot. tidsskr. **21**: xxii–xxiii. 1897.

——— Græssernes stinkbrand, T. Striiformis (West.). *In* Vejledning i den Danske flora anden del blomsterløse planter, p. 39. 1902.

SACCARDO, P. A. Tilletia striiformis (Westend.) Magnus. *In* Sylloge fungorum **7**²: 484–485. 1888.

SCHELLENBERG, H. C. Ustilago striaeformis (Westendorp) Niessl. *In* Die Brandpilze der Schweiz. Beiträge zur Kryptogamenflora der Schweiz **3**²: 33–35, fig. 16. 1911.

SCHROETER, J. Bemerkungen und Beobachtungen über einige Ustilagineen. Beitr. Biol. Pflanz. [Cohn] **2**: 349–385. (Reference on p. 366–367.) 1877.

——— Tilletia striaeformis (Westendorp 1851²). *In* Kryptogamen-Flora von Schlesien [Cohn]. Pilze **3**¹: 278. 1889.

STEVENS, F. L. U. striaeformis (West.) Niess. *In* The fungi which cause plant disease, p. 309–310. 1913.

STEVENS, F. L., and HALL, J. G. Smut (Ustilago striaeformis (Westend.) Niessl.). *In* Diseases of economic plants, p. 397. 1910.

STROHMEYER, OTTO. Anatomische Untersuchung der durch Ustilagineen hervorgerufenen Missbildungen. Inaug. Diss., Erlangen, p. 1–84, pl. 1–6. 1896.

TRELEASE, WILLIAM. Tilletia striaeformis (West.)? (Ustilago salveii B. & Br!). *In* Preliminary list of Wisconsin parasitic fungi. Wisconsin Acad. Sci. Trans. **6**: 139. 1885(a).

——— The smut of timothy.—(Tilletia striaeformis, Westd.). U. S. Dept. Agr. Rept. **1885**: 87–88, pl. 18. 1885(b).

——— The leaf-smut of timothy (Tilletia striaeformis Westd.). *In* Grasses of North America for farmers and students [W. J. Beal] **1**: 414–415. 1887.

TUBEUF, KARL FREIHERR VON. T. striiformis (Westend.). *In* Pflanzenkrankheiten, p. 323. 1895.

ULE, ERNST. Über einige neue Species und Nährpflanzen der Ustilagineen. Bot. Ver. Prov. Brandenburg. Verh. (Sitzber.) **20**: 1–4. 1878.

——— Beitrag zur Kenntnis der Ustilagineen. Bot. Ver. Prov. Brandenburg. Verh. **25**: 212–217. 1884. *Also in* Hedwigia **25**: 111–116. 1886.

UNDERWOOD, L. M. Tilletia striaeformis (Westend.) Wint. *In* List of cryptogams at present known to inhabit the State of Indiana. Indiana Acad. Sci. Proc. **1893**: 48. 1894.

——— Tilletia striaeformis (Westd.) Wint. *In* List of parasitic fungi distributed by the Indiana Biological Survey. December, 1894. Series 1. No. 1-100. Indiana Acad. Sci. Proc. **1894**: 154. 1895.

WESTENDORP, G.-D. Uredo striaeformis nov. sp. *In* Notice sur quelques cryptogames inédites ou nouvelles pour la flore belge. Acad. Roy. Belgique. Bul. **18**, ser. 2: 406. 1852.

WINTER, G. Tilletia striaeformis (Westd.). *In* Kryptogamen-Flora von Deutschland, Oesterreich, und der Schweiz **1**^{1}: 108. 1880.

OCTOBER, 1916 BULLETIN 382

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

SUN-SCALD OF FRUIT TREES
A TYPE OF WINTER INJURY

A. J. MIX

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., ~~Vegetable Gardening~~.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE

Observations on sun-scald injury.......... 337

Sun-scald injury occurring in the winter of 1913–14.......... 340

Review of American literature on sun-scald and related injuries.......... 342

The freezing to death of plant tissue.......... 344

Effect of rapid freezing.......... 344

Effect of rapid thawing.......... 345

Theories regarding the occurrence of sun-scald.......... 346

Observations and experiments.......... 347

  Temperatures that may occur in winter on the sun-exposed parts of the trunk 347

  Temperatures observed during the winter of 1914–15.......... 350

  A comparison of the date of awakening and relative hardiness of the cambial area on the northeast and southwest sides of the trunk.......... 355

Natural injury in the winter of 1914–15.......... 374

Relative hardiness of tissue from the crown and the upper parts of the trunk.... 377

Effect of freezing tissue when wet.......... 382

Conclusion.......... 382

Literature cited.......... 383

SUN-SCALD OF FRUIT TREES: A TYPE OF WINTER INJURY[1]

A. J. MIX[2]

The type of winter injury to fruit trees to be discussed in this paper is the well-known injury to the southwest, or sun-exposed, side of the trunk, commonly known as sun-scald. It is usually made evident in late spring by the death of patches of bark, which often peel off and expose the sapwood, but in some cases adhere firmly to the wood, forming sunken, canker-like areas. Such dead-bark areas are often inhabited by higher fungi—wound parasites or saprophytes. One of the commonest forms following sun-scald in New York is *Physalospora Cydoniae* Arnaud. Similar injured areas are often found on the upper, sun-exposed sides of large branches. Probably these injuries are caused in the same manner as those on the trunk.

Sun-scald is so named because it is believed to be brought about by some interaction of sun and cold on the sunny side of the trunk in late winter.[3]

Two other types of injury that are somewhat closely related to sun-scald are crotch injury, occurring at the head and in the crotches of rapidly growing branches, and crown injury, or crown rot, occurring at the crown, or base, of the trunk. For the purposes of this paper the following distinction is made: Injury localized on the southwest side of the trunk, whether at the crown, at the head, or on the intermediate part, is considered typical sun-scald. Injury typically occurring at the head and in the crotches, or at the crown, without relation to the points of the compass in either case, is designated as crotch injury or crown rot, respectively. All three types of injury are herein discussed.

OBSERVATIONS ON SUN-SCALD INJURY

In the northern half of the Champlain Valley, New York, including parts of Essex and Clinton Counties, is an area lying between Lake Champlain and the Adirondack Mountains, in which some attention is given to growing apples on a commercial scale. The varieties most grown

---

[1] Also presented to the Faculty of the Graduate School of Cornell University, February, 1916, as a major thesis in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of doctor of philosophy.

AUTHOR'S ACKNOWLEDGMENTS. Grateful acknowledgment for help and criticism is made to Professors Donald Reddick and H. H. Whetzel, and especially to Professor W. H. Chandler, under whose immediate direction the work here reported was performed.

[2] Formerly Fellow in Plant Pathology at Cornell University, now Instructor in Plant Pathology at the University of Kansas, Lawrence, Kansas.

[3] Possibly this injury would be more properly called winter sun-scald, to distinguish it from sun-scald or sun-scorch resulting from the direct action of the sun in midsummer. Considerable mention of summer sun-scald is made in literature. Hartig (1894) describes an interesting case of the injury to spruce.

are Fameuse, McIntosh, Ben Davis, Northern Spy, Rhode Island, and Wealthy. A few Baldwin orchards also are found.

The writer had occasion to spend much of his time in this locality during the summer seasons of 1913, 1914, and 1915. One of the conditions noted in the early part of the season of 1913 was the almost universal prevalence in these various orchards of trunk injury to the southwest side of the tree. This injury was not recent, but had apparently occurred one or two years earlier. The unanimous opinion of the growers was that it had occurred during the winter of 1910-11. This view was substantiated by sawing into several injured trunks and counting the number of annual rings formed since the injury.

In the summer of 1913 a careful survey was made of a number of orchards, in order to determine if possible the relation of certain factors to the amount of injury. The survey was never extended to include all the orchards in this region, and served merely to confirm conclusions that might be drawn from a somewhat casual observation. It is therefore not reproduced in any detail here, but the most evident facts gained from a study of it are stated.

There are a number of very old orchards in the lower Champlain Valley, but the majority of commercial orchards are from twenty to thirty years old. There are also many younger orchards. The injury was practically confined to orchards between the ages of eight and thirty years. None of this recent injury was observed in the very old orchards, tho evidences were found of one or more earlier injuries, the dates of which were not determined.

The injury was confined almost entirely to the southwest side of the tree. Trees leaning to the northeast were most severely injured. In one or two orchards, trees of the Ben Davis variety were found to have a number of injured places on any and all sides of the trunk.

The injury might occur at any height on the trunk, might extend from the crown to the head involving the whole of the southwest side of the trunk, or might appear at from one to several places at various heights. The commonest form, however, was an injured area beginning at a point from ten to twenty-five centimeters above the crown and extending to within a short distance below the head; in other words, the part of the trunk midway between the crown and the head was oftenest injured (Plate XVIII). Only a few cases were found in which the injury was confined to the region of the crown. A few cases of crotch injury were observed, one of the most striking being in a twenty-years-old Northern Spy orchard. The trees in this orchard were comparatively low-headed, and a large number of nearly upright main branches originated from almost the same point. In these trees the injury was chiefly in the crotches of these branches, usually extending up along the branches themselves for a distance of several centimeters. In this orchard the injury was localized on the southwest side of the tree.

The number of injured trees in the orchards examined averaged about twenty to twenty-five per cent of the total number of trees.

No satisfactory conclusions could be drawn as to the relation of soil type, location, exposure, or previous cultural treatment of the orchard, to the amount of injury. However, there are a few orchards on extremely light, infertile soils. The trees on these soils are normally less well-grown, less vigorous, and shorter-lived than the same varieties on heavier types of soil. They were found to be much more affected by sun-scald injury. It seems probable that this is an indirect soil relation, due to the influence of the soil on the vigor of the tree.

There seemed to be a fairly well-marked range of susceptibility of varieties. Ben Davis suffered the most, Northern Spy next, and Fameuse, McIntosh, Baldwin, and Rhode Island somewhat less. Not a sufficient number of Wealthy trees were examined to warrant a statement as to the relative susceptibility of that variety.

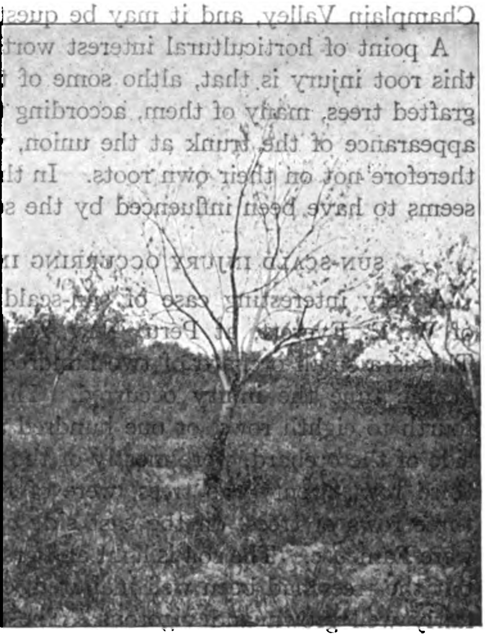


FIG. 60. BEN DAVIS APPLE TREE THE ROOTS OF WHICH WERE WINTER-KILLED DURING THE WINTER OF 1913-14

Photograph made in June, 1914. This tree has also an old sun-scald injury which has been treated with gas tar

It is of interest in this connection that in the winter of 1913-14 there was in this locality a great amount of winter injury to roots of apple trees from one to twenty years of age, and in a few cases to much older trees. This injury was in many instances severe, a number of trees having their whole root system killed, and the injury often extended to the crown, killing the cambium and the outer sapwood so that the bark lifted away from the trunk around its whole circumference for a distance varying from two to six or eight inches above the soil. Fall plowing seemed to have increased the amount of this injury somewhat, and it was also more prevalent on light soils and wind-exposed locations. But the most striking fact observed was the marked susceptibility of the Ben Davis variety. The writer could find no Ben Davis orchard that had entirely escaped injury. In many of these from fifty to seventy-five per cent of the trees were in a dying condition, and if they survived the summer of 1914 they succumbed early in 1915. (Fig. 60.) Northern Spy and Wealthy trees also suffered severely, altho not to nearly so great a degree as Ben Davis. It appears that the Ben Davis variety is not a hardy tree in the lower Champlain Valley, and it may be questioned whether Northern Spy is.

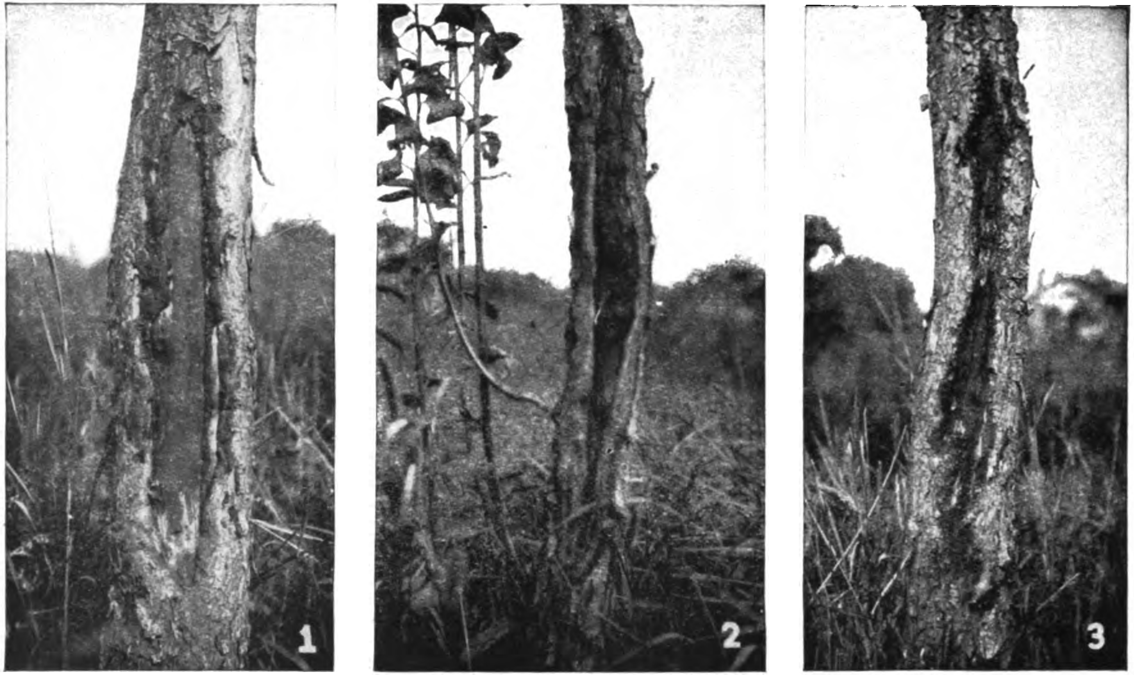
A point of horticultural interest worth mentioning in connection with this root injury is that, altho some of these Ben Davis trees were root-grafted trees, many of them, according to the owners' statement and the appearance of the trunk at the union, were originally budded trees and therefore not on their own roots. In this case the hardiness of the stock seems to have been influenced by the scion.

SUN-SCALD INJURY OCCURRING IN THE WINTER OF 1913-14

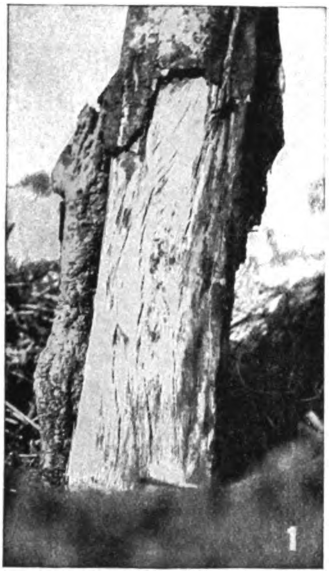
A very interesting case of sun-scald injury occurred in the orchard of W. E. Everett, at Peru, New York, during the winter of 1913-14. This is a small orchard of two hundred and sixty trees, seven years old at the time the injury occurred. The trees in the first, second, and fourth to eighth rows, or one hundred and sixty-three trees on the west side of the orchard, were mostly of the Wealthy variety; the trees in the third row, twenty-two trees, were of the Mann variety; the remaining three rows of trees, on the east side of the orchard, seventy-five trees, were Fameuse. The soil is light and gravelly, and not particularly fertile, but the trees had been well manured, cultivated, and sprayed, and were fairly well grown and vigorous. The soil was somewhat better in the western half of the orchard, and the trees there were slightly larger. The injury was much severer in this part of the orchard. It was thought that this indicated a less degree of hardiness of the Wealthy variety, but no definite conclusion could be drawn.

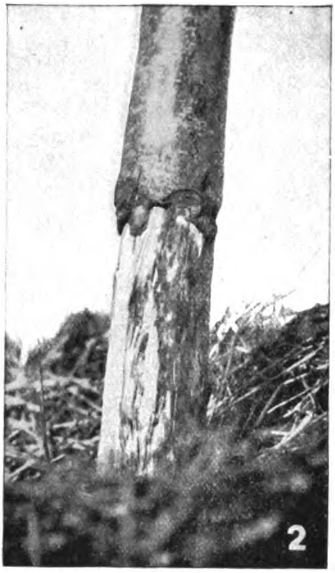
Late in the summer of 1913, the owner, in the hope of protecting his trees against the attack of borers, painted the trunks with gas tar for a distance of about one foot from the ground. Several rows of trees, two or three years younger and of an unknown variety, to the west of the Fameuse, were not so painted. The injury was confined entirely to the trees that were painted, and the injury to each was confined to the blackened part of the trunk.

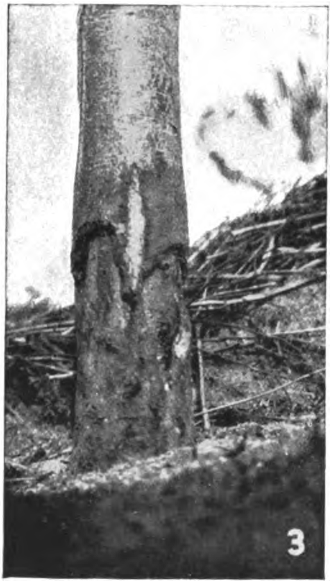
The injury was first noted on April 30, 1914, and a brief examination of it was then made, followed by a more careful examination of every affected tree a short time later. The bark was found to be loosened from the wood, and the sapwood and the cambial area were discolored

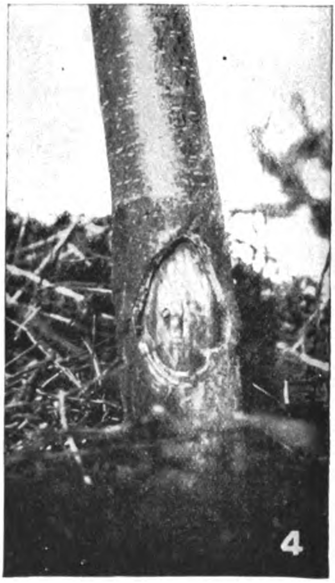


OLD SUN-SCALD INJURIES OBSERVED IN THE LOWER CHAMPLAIN VALLEY IN THE SUMMER OF 1913
Photographs taken in August, 1915









SUN-SCALD INJURY TO TARRED TRUNKS OF APPLE IN WINTER OF 1913-14
Photographs taken in August, 1914, after the dead bark had been trimmed away

dark brown; but the bark itself was green and apparently alive. The injury could not have been due to the direct action of the gas tar on the tissue, since only the very outer bark showed any injurious effect from the tar, the inner bark being normal in color and appearance.

Of the two hundred and sixty trees in this orchard, one hundred and eleven were injured to some extent; on sixty-five of these the bark was loosened from the wood for one-third of the circumference or more; on eight of the latter the bark was loosened thruout the entire circumference or nearly so, in some cases a very narrow strip of uninjured wood and bark being found on the northeast side. Three trees had their bark loosened from the trunk all the way around.

In cases in which the bark was loosened thruout the whole circumference or nearly so, it was usually split open in one or more places. Most of these splits were on the southwest side of the trunk. In less severe cases the localization on this side was even more marked; where the bark was loosened for a space of from one-third to two-thirds of the circumference this loosened area was invariably on the southwest or the west side. In the case of the forty-six trees showing less severe injury, this injury consisted of small to large areas on the southwest side of the trunk, where the bark was lifted from the wood.

The above-mentioned facts point to the conclusion that the injury was of the sun-scald type and that the application of gas tar was the indirect cause of its occurrence. The black color probably caused the tissue of the bark to absorb more than the normal amount of heat, so that proper conditions for the occurrence of sun-scald were brought about. This unusual rise in temperature undoubtedly did not occur on unblackened trees. No cases of sun-scald on trees whose trunks were not treated with gas tar were found to have occurred in this region during the winter of 1913-14. Some observations are reported later in this paper on the temperatures that may occur in blackened trunks.

The cambium in some of these injured trees was capable of regeneration, and wound tissue was formed during the summer on the inside of the bark; but of course this made no union with the wood, and was of no apparent help in preserving the life of the tree. In cases of severe injury the formation of this thick callous layer caused the bark to split open and roll away, exposing the wood (Plate XIX, 1). In cases in which only a small area of bark was loosened, healing took place in the normal manner from the edges of the wound. The most severely injured trees either died late in the summer of 1914 or were removed by the owner in the spring of 1915. Photographs of some of these injured trunks are shown in Plate XIX.

REVIEW OF AMERICAN LITERATURE ON SUN-SCALD AND RELATED INJURIES

The first mention of sun-scald injury in this country is by Burrill (1887).[1] He describes a crown injury which is commonest on the sunny side of the trees. His explanation is as follows: Late growth, induced by a warm, moist autumn following a period of drouth, causes severe winter injuries in trees. These occur mechanically by freezing of the relatively large quantities of water in the cambial region; ice formation, together with shrinkage of the tissues, causes the bark to be pushed away from the wood.

Selby (1897) describes a local blighting of branches and trunk of apples and pears, known as sun-scald. It occurs most commonly on the west and southwest sides of trees, and trees leaning to the northeast suffer the most. Baldwin, Oldenburg, and King are listed as susceptible varieties.

Selby (1900) again mentions the occurrence of an injury of this sort to the southwest side of the tree. Grimes, King, and other varieties were severely injured.

Stewart, Rolfs, and Hall (1900) describe a case of "King disease" believed to be due to winter injury. The bark at the base of the trunk is dead and loose or fallen away; the injury extends from one to two feet up the trunk, occasionally up to the crotch, and is common on the southwest side but not confined to that side. Similar injuries are described as occurring on peach, apricot, and plum.

Clinton (1904) describes an injury to apple trees from four to eight years old which seems to be crown rot. It consists of dead areas in the bark at the base of the tree, most frequently on the north side, sometimes completely girdling the tree. Sudden zero weather on December 9, 1903, following an open fall, was believed to be the cause.

The same author (1905) describes similar injuries occurring in 1904. The injury was to the bark at the base of the trunk, often on one side but in some cases the trees were girdled. Isolated dead areas were found farther up the trunk. Young trees suffered the most. It is stated that late cultivation and excessive fertilization allow the trees to enter the winter in an unripened condition, rendering them more susceptible to winter injury.

Clinton again (1908) notes a "collar girdling" of peach trees due to winter injury, probably caused by the severe winter of 1907-08 in connection with the drouth of the previous summer which weakened the trees.

Macoun (1908) describes ten different types of winter injury occurring in Canada. Among these are the following:

Bark splitting, which is found usually on young trees. It is due to expansion, occurring when the trees have grown late and are succulent and there is a heavy fall of snow before the soil freezes. The snow softens the bark, and when the temperature falls suddenly the moisture in or under the bark expands in freezing and loosens the bark from the trunk or kills the cambium. Crown rot of the Gravenstein in Nova Scotia is probably the same injury.

---

[1] Dates in parenthesis refer to literature cited, page 383.

Sun-scald, an injury common in northern and northeastern Ontario and Quebec. It occurs on the south and the southwest side of the trunk. The bark becomes unhealthy, dies, dries up, and falls away. The injury occurs in late winter or early spring, when warm days are followed by cool nights. It is the same as is found when frozen plants are thawed out suddenly, and is caused by constant alternate thawing and freezing.

Crotch injury, in which case the bark is dead in the crotch or on branches diverging from it. The injury is probably due to the lodging of ice in the crotch. The theory has been advanced that this ice acts as a lens in focusing the sun's rays, but the position of the limbs does not favor this view. It is more probable that the injury is due to softening of the bark by melted snow or water before freezing; the bark is also probably more tender at this point.

Selby (1908) describes injuries due to the October freeze of 1906. Trunk injuries were on the most exposed sides of the tree, the location of which varied in different localities. Late growth occurred in 1906. August and September were very warm, with a heavy rainfall. These conditions were succeeded by a severe cold period from October 10 to October 13.

The same author describes sun-scald as a common injury on the south and southwest sides of the trunk, and states that the severe midwinter temperatures of 1906-07 were the cause of the injury in that season. The occurrence of sun-scald is thus explained (page 135 of reference cited): "The temperature rise upon these sun-exposed surfaces is larger than upon less exposed portions, and accordingly the danger of stimulus to untimely activity of the living layer is much greater upon the heated side."

Morse (1909) notes that crotch injury was common following the winter of 1906-07. This injury is thought to be due to the loading of the crotches with soft snow, which alternately thawed and froze suddenly for two days in succession. The crotches would thus be filled with greater or less deposits of ice, which would radiate heat more rapidly than the parts not so covered.

Grossenbacher (1909) studied some cases of winter injury in western New York and in the Hudson Valley. The studies were made in 1909 and the injuries were then several years old. They were all of the crown rot type, occurring at the base of the tree with no reference to the points of the compass.

The same author (1912) reports studies of injuries that occurred in various parts of New York State, the majority of them in the winter of 1910-11. These injuries were in most cases to the crown of the tree. Where less than complete girdling occurred, Grossenbacher found a localization of the injury corresponding to the maximum wind exposure and the presumable direction of the prevailing wind at the time of injury. He records two other cases of injury that may be considered of sun-scald type: an injury to the southwest side of the trunks of young maples in a park near Geneva, during the winter of 1909-10; and a similar injury to young apple trees at Clyde whose trunks had been surrounded by veneer protectors, during the winter of 1910-11.

Grossenbacher ascribes the cause of crown rot to low temperatures accompanied by bark tensions set up by the swaying of trees in the wind. Rapid evaporation caused by high winds is believed to be a contributory factor. High bark tensions set up by rapid growth at crown and crotch are thought to have some effect in causing the localization of injury at these points.

Grossenbacher reports an experiment in which he thawed the bark of a tree with hot water, on a January day when the air temperature was −26° C., and swayed the tree vigorously for about a minute. Water was also poured on the crotch of a tree that was not swayed. In March the bark on these trees was found to be dead. As Chandler (1913) has pointed out, this injury was probably due to a rapid temperature fall, and was not, as Grossenbacher believes, influenced by the tensions set up by swaying the tree.

Chandler (1913) found that the tissue at the base of the trunk and at the crotches becomes hardy in the fall more slowly than does that of the upper parts of the trunk, of the secondary branches, or of the twigs, and suggests that this is the probable explanation of the localization of injury at these points.

THE FREEZING TO DEATH OF PLANT TISSUE

It seems desirable at this point to state the manner in which the killing of plant tissue by freezing is supposed to occur. The work of Goeppert (1830), Müller-Thurgau (1880), and Molisch (1897) indicates that the withdrawal of water during the freezing process to form intercellular ice crystals causes the death of the cells. Without considering theories advanced by later workers to account more exactly for the death of the protoplasm, it is sufficient for the purposes of this paper to state that when, during the freezing process, water withdrawal from a cell passes a certain limit, the cell is killed.

EFFECT OF RAPID FREEZING

Winkler (1913) found that dormant buds on the twigs of various trees that were killed if frozen twelve hours at −22° C., were not killed if kept three days at −16°, two days at −18°, three days at −20°, two days at −22°, and finally twelve hours at −25°; some remained alive even at −30°.

Chandler (1913), working with winter twigs and buds of various fruit trees, found that the rapidity of the freezing process is a factor influencing the killing. Tissue frozen rapidly (one and one-half hours to the minimum) was killed at a temperature three or four degrees higher than the same tissue when subjected to a slow (seven and one-half hours to the minimum) rate of temperature fall. Not so marked a difference was found in the case of succulent plants. Chandler found further that rapid temperature fall was much more injurious in the first part of the freezing period (from 0 to −12° C.) than in the latter part.

EFFECT OF RAPID THAWING

It was held by earlier workers that the injurious effect of freezing on plant tissue was not due to the freezing itself but to rapid thawing.

Goeppert (1830) was the first real advocate of the view that the injury is caused by the freezing process and is independent of the rate of thawing. This opinion was based on a large amount of experimental work.

Sachs (1860) conducted some experiments from which he concluded that the amount of killing was directly dependent on the rate of thawing; with plants frozen to a given temperature, those that were thawed rapidly were killed in a greater proportion than those that were thawed gradually.

Müller-Thurgau (1886), in a long series of experiments conducted with a variety of plants, found no proof that slow thawing acted to prevent injury; if the plant was killed, either rate of thawing showed it killed; if uninjured at the end of the slow-thawing process, it was also uninjured by rapid thawing.

It is interesting that Sachs' method of slow thawing was to place the frozen plants in cold water. Müller-Thurgau has pointed out that this was in reality a more rapid method than thawing in air. When the frozen plants are placed in water, a layer of ice immediately forms on their exterior, giving off heat to the tissue and consequently warming it.

Molisch (1897) conducted a large number of experiments on the effect of rapid thawing, with results similar to those obtained by Müller-Thurgau. He found a slight benefit from slow thawing in the case of fruits of apple and pear, and leaves of *Agave americana* L. With these tissues a slight further reduction in temperature was sufficient to kill, regardless of the rate of thawing.

Chandler (1913), working with a number of different plants, found no benefit from slow thawing except in the case of lettuce, and ripe fruits of apple and pear. With these tissues only a slight further reduction of temperature was needed to offset entirely the effect of slow thawing. Chandler was unable to find that increased rate of evaporation during the thawing process had any effect on the killing.

It seems strange, in view of the excellent work of Müller-Thurgau, that the idea has continued so prevalent that rapid thawing causes the death of frozen plants, and that the same plants if thawed slowly would be saved. Perhaps it is due to the wide influence Sachs has had on later botanists, and to the possibility that his work may have been more widely read than that of Müller-Thurgau. Since the publication of Chandler's work there should be no reason for any one to adhere to this view.

Special emphasis is laid on this point, since the prevailing idea regarding the occurrence of sun-scald is that it is due to rapid thawing of the tissue on the sun-exposed side of the tree on a day of extreme cold in late winter. It is proposed in this paper to discard this hypothesis at the outset as untenable.

THEORIES REGARDING THE OCCURRENCE OF SUN-SCALD

Previous to the time of Müller-Thurgau's work in 1886, sun-scald was commonly believed to be due to rapid thawing of the frozen tissue, brought about by the action of the sun. This view has also had many adherents since that time.

Müller-Thurgau mentions the injury as one often occurring on the sunny side of trees, and places in the same category common winter injuries to needles on the south side of coniferous trees, and the protection from winter injury afforded trees and shrubs which grow on the north side of buildings.

Müller-Thurgau's explanation of the occurrence of sun-scald is as follows: Metabolic changes in the plant go on in winter under the influence of high temperatures. On sunny days in winter the bark on the south side of the tree is ten centigrade degrees or more warmer than it is on the north side. The tissue on the south side will be farther out of the rest condition and thus be more sensitive to cold. Flowers of Thuja are farther developed by the end of February than in December, and are also farther along on the south side than on the north side of the tree.

Müller-Thurgau found the moisture content of the bark slightly higher on the south than on the north side of the tree in late winter. He found also that the temperature of the bark was sometimes much higher on the sunny side.

If the view expressed above is not accepted, there remains the possibility that the tissue on the southwest side of the trunk may become tenderer in late winter due to repeated alternate freezings and thawings. Winkler (1913) found that by subjecting the twigs of several deciduous trees to repeated freezings and thawings he rendered them more susceptible to injury by freezing. Since the tissue on the southwest side of a tree trunk must be subjected to more repeated freezings and thawings than the tissue on the northeast side, it is possible that it may thus become tenderer.

Chandler (1913), from the results obtained in the comparison of the effects of rapid and of slow freezing, has suggested another possibility. On a cold, sunny day in late winter, the tissue on the sun-exposed side of a tree may become thoroly thawed out, while that on the opposite side remains at or near the atmospheric temperature, which may be very low. Under these circumstances, when the sun's rays are withdrawn from the tree in late afternoon the temperature of the warmed area of the bark will fall rapidly to that of the atmosphere. As injury is greater when the temperature fall is rapid, especially in the first part of the freezing period, it is conceivable that the temperature of the tree may fall during the night to a point low enough to kill the tissue on the southwest side of the trunk, while that on the northeast side, protected by a slower temperature fall, will remain uninjured.

Other explanations are those offered by Burrill (page 343 of this bulletin); by Hartig (1900), who suggests that the bark becomes so warmed by the sun's rays in certain places that it expands considerably and separates from the wood; and by Sorauer (1909), who ascribes the phenomenon to tension differences in the tissues, set up by sudden temperature changes.

OBSERVATIONS AND EXPERIMENTS

Sun-scald injury may be considered a form of direct freezing to death caused in one of two ways: (1) an increased tenderness in the tissue on the sunny side of the trunk in late winter causes it to kill at a temperature not low enough to injure the still dormant tissue of the shaded side; or (2) the tissue on the sunny side kills at a higher temperature, due to the more rapid temperature fall that may take place after a cold, sunny day in late winter. It is of course possible that both these factors may be operative in causing the injury.

In order to test the relative value of these two hypotheses, some observations and experiments were made during the winters of 1913-14 and 1914-15. In the experiments reported below, the cambium was taken as the critical tissue, since in observed cases of sun-scald the cambium suffers severe injury, and without injury to the cambium and outermost xylem the bark would not separate from the wood nor would any injury beyond easy repair occur.

Temperatures that may occur in winter on the sun-exposed parts of the trunk

During the winters of 1913-14 and 1914-15, records were taken of the temperatures of the cortex and the outer sapwood on sun-exposed and shaded sides of the trunks of several apple trees, in order to ascertain just what temperature conditions may arise under given circumstances. The temperatures were taken with ordinary mercury thermometers of the chemical type. Since the result desired was a comparison of temperatures, looking for fairly wide differences, no attempt was made to standardize these thermometers, but they were carefully compared before and after using and were found to check with one another within one-half of one degree. These thermometers were graduated in degrees Fahrenheit between -20° and +120°. In the following tables the readings have been transformed to the centigrade scale, which accounts for the decimal. No attempt was made to read the thermometers more closely than to one-half of a graduation interval.

The manner of insertion of the thermometers was as follows: A hole was bored tangentially into the tree trunk so that when the thermometer bulb was inserted it lay partly in the inner cortex and partly in the outer sapwood, while the stem projected horizontally or was slightly inclined upward. The hole was only very slightly larger than the diameter of the bulb, and after insertion of the thermometer the outer opening was sealed around the thermometer stem with paraffin. The thermometer bulb was thus entirely within the tissue, and it is not believed that the unavoidable small air space around the bulb introduced any material error into the observations.

Air temperatures were taken by means of a thermometer hung against the northeast side of the trunk just above the thermometer inserted on that side.

TABLE 1. TREE TEMPERATURES ON THE SOUTHWEST AND NORTHEAST SIDES UNDER CLOUDY CONDITIONS, 1914

Date	Hour*	Temperatures (degrees centigrade)		
		Southwest side	Northeast side	Air
Tree no. 3				
January 15	11.00	—6.9°	—7.5°	—5.5°
16	**1.30**	3.3°	2.8°	2.6°
17	**1.30**	—1.9°	—3.0°	—3.9°
19	**1.00**	—3.9°	—3.9°	—2.5°
20	11.40	0.0	0.0	1.1°
21	**1.00**	0.0	0.0	—2.2°
23	**1.10**	—2.2°	—2.2°	0.0
24	**1.10**	—0.5°	—0.5°	4.4°
Tree no. 38				
January 16	**1.40**	3.9°	3.3°	2.2°
17	**2.00**	—2.8°	—3.6°	—4.7°
19	**1.15**	—3.3°	—3.3°	—2.8°
20	**12.20**	0.0	0.0	1.7°
21	**1.20**	—0.3°	0.0	—3.9°
23	**1.30**	—0.5°	—1.1°	0.0
24	**1.30**	0.0	—0.5°	4.4°

* Forenoon records are in light-faced type, afternoon records in black-faced type.

For the observations of 1913-14 two trees in the university orchards at Ithaca were selected. Tree no. 3 was a large old seedling tree with a trunk about three feet in diameter. Tree no. 38 was a twenty-years-old Baldwin tree with a trunk diameter of about ten inches. The thermometers were inserted about three feet from the ground in each case.

At the beginning of the observations, readings were taken on cloudy days as well as on sunny days, in order to determine whether any difference in temperature might occur due to any other influence than that of the sun. Some of these readings are given in table 1.

Temperatures that may be reached on a bright day by the tissue on the sun-exposed side of a tree are shown in table 2:

TABLE 2. TREE TEMPERATURES ON THE SOUTHWEST AND NORTHEAST SIDES ON SUNNY DAYS, 1914

Date	Tree no.	Hour*	Temperatures (degrees centigrade)		
			Southwest side	Northeast side	Air
January 14	3	**3.00**	—2.8°	—12.2°	—12.2°
26	3	**2.25**	1.1°	— 2.8°	— 1.4°
26	38	**3.10**	—0.5°	— 2.5°	— 1.9°
February 2	3	**1.30**	12.2°	— 1.1°	— 0.5°
2	38	**2.00**	7.7°	— 0.3°	0.0
3	3	**1.35**	15.0°	2.8°	9.4°
3	38	**1.15**	15.5°	0.0	5.0°
4	3	**1.05**	12.8°	0.8°	1.6°
4	38	**1.30**	11.7°	1.7°	2.2°
8	3	**2.10**	—0.5°	— 4.4°	— 6.7°
8	38	**2.30**	—1.7°	— 3.9°	— 6.1°
9	3	**12.50**	—4.4°	— 9.4°	— 8.3°
9	38	**1.05**	—5.6°	— 8.3°	— 8.3°
13	3	**1.00**	—6.4°	—15.0°	—11.7°
13	38	**1.20**	—1.1°	—10.0°	—12.2°
15	3	**2.50**	3.9°	— 9.4°	—12.2°
15	38	**3.20**	1.4°	— 8.3°	—12.2°
23	3	**1.00**	—6.4°	—11.4°	—14.4°
23	38	**1.25**	—4.4°	—11.4°	—16.1°
24	3	**1.00**	—2.8°	—16.1°	......
24	38	**1.20**	—1.1°	—13.9°	—16.1°
25	3	**12.55**	1.7°	— 9.7°	— 5.6°
25	38	**1.15**	3.9°	— 2.8°	— 5.3°
26	3	11.00	—1.9°	—10.0°	......
March 10	3	**1.30**	20.5°	0.0	1.1°
10	38	**1.50**	27.2°	2.2°	2.2°
12	3	**12.50**	15.0°	— 3.3°	— 4.4°
12	38	**1.15**	16.7°	0.0	— 4.4°
24	3	**1.15**	12.2°	1.7°	3.9°
24	38	**1.35**	11.1°	2.2°	2.2°
25	3	**1.00**	11.1°	5.0°	8.9°
25	38	**1.25**	10.6°	6.1°	7.8°

* Forenoon records are in light-faced type, afternoon records in black-faced type.

It is believed that in table 2 are found some of the highest temperatures reached in these particular trees during the three months of January, February, and March, 1914. It will be seen that the tissue on the southwest side of the tree is often much warmer than that on the northeast side. It does not, however, seem possible that these temperatures are high enough to start the tissue into activity. A significant fact is that on four days — January 14, and February 13, 15, and 24 — the tissue on the southwest side of the tree was nearly, if not quite, thawed out, while that on the northeast side was at a very low temperature. In this connection table 3 is of interest, showing temperatures in an old seedling tree, with a trunk diameter of about eighteen inches, at Clinton, New York, on January 1 and 2, 1914. The observations here recorded also give some idea of the possible rate of temperature fall on the southwest side when the sun leaves that part of the tree.

TABLE 3. TREE TEMPERATURES OBSERVED AT CLINTON, NEW YORK, AND AT ITHACA, NEW YORK, 1914

Date	Tree	Hour*	Temperatures (degrees centigrade)		
			Southwest side	Northeast side	Air
January 1	Old tree at Clinton	**3.00** **3.30** **5.00**†	8.9° 8.3° 0.0	—4.4° —4.4° —4.4°	—5.6° —5.6° —8.3°
January 2	Old tree at Clinton	11.00	7.2°	—8.3°	—10.0°
January 2	Tree no. 3 at Ithaca	**3.00** **4.45**‡ **5.15**§	—2.8° —7.8° —9.4°	—12.2° —15.0° —15.3°	—12.2° —15.6° —16.1°

* Forenoon records are in light-faced type, afternoon records in black-faced type.
† A few minutes after sundown.
‡ Sun just down.
§ Thirty minutes after sundown.

Temperatures observed during the winter of 1914-15

Temperature observations were continued during the winter of 1914-15. Since it was believed that in the case of injury to the trees in the Everett orchard, mentioned on page 340, the indirect causal factor was the high temperature induced by the black color of the tarred trunk, some records were obtained from trees similarly blackened. Later in the winter records were taken from a whitewashed trunk, in order to learn whether a coating of whitewash would prevent an injurious rise in temperature. A space of about two feet up and down the trunk was tarred on November 23, 1914. The lower edge of this tarred space was two feet above the ground. The thermometers were inserted into the middle of the tarred space. An additional thermometer was inserted six inches above the tarred space and on the southwest side of the tree. The whitewash was applied to a similar area on another tree. The whitewash gradually weathered off and was renewed once. Part of the time during which the records were taken the whitewash was in a somewhat washed-off condition. This was purposely allowed, in order to determine the effect of a poor coating of whitewash, since this would more nearly approximate conditions met with in the practical use of whitewash to prevent sun-scald.

Later in the winter thermometers were inserted into two small trees, whose trunk diameter was about three inches. In this case the whole of the thermometer bulb could not be as nearly contained in the cortex and outer sapwood as in the larger trees; the central part of the bulb was separated from the outer air by a layer of sapwood and bark about one-fourth inch thick. This would lead to error in the readings, but it may be assumed that the temperature of the cambial area would be if anything higher than the readings obtained.

The records for 1914-15 were taken at Ithaca from the following trees:

(a) Tree no. 6 — an old seedling tree in the Blair orchard, with a trunk diameter of about three feet. A part of the trunk was tarred and thermometers were placed in the tarred space on the southwest and northeast sides of the trunk, with a third thermometer six inches above the upper limit of the tarred space on the southwest side.

(b) Tree no. 3 — an old seedling tree in the Blair orchard, from which records were taken in 1914. Thermometers were placed on the southwest and northeast sides of the trunk, about three feet from the ground.

(c) Tree no. 0 — an old seedling tree in the Blair orchard, with a trunk diameter of about two and one-half feet. A space on the trunk was whitewashed, and thermometers were placed in the center of the whitewashed area on the southwest and northeast sides and about three feet from the ground.

(d) Tree no. 24 — of the variety Gano, in the university orchard, with a trunk diameter of three inches. On January 30 thermometers were placed on the southwest and northeast sides about three feet from the ground.

(e) Tree no. 25 — a similar tree to no. 24. Thermometers were placed on the southwest side of the trunk in the center of a tarred space.

The air temperatures were taken by means of maximum and minimum thermometers, one hung on the northeast side of the trunk of tree no. 6 in the Blair orchard, the other on the northeast side of a large post near trees no. 24 and no. 25 in the university orchard.

The records obtained during the winter of 1914-15 are given in table 4. The readings were all taken on bright days.

TABLE 4. TEMPERATURES (IN DEGREES CENTIGRADE) OBSERVED ON DIFFERENT SIDES OF TREES TREATED WITH TAR AND WITH WHITEWASH, AND OF UNTREATED TREES, DURING THE WINTER OF 1914-15

Date	Blair orchard									University orchard					Notes
	Hour of reading*	Air temperature	Tree no. 6			Tree no. 4		Tree no. 0		Hour of reading*	Air temperature	Tree no. 24		Tree no. 25	
			North-east side Tarred apron	South-west side Above tarred apron	South-west side Tarred apron	North-east side	South-west side	North-east side Whitewashed	South-west side Whitewashed			North-east side	South-west side	South-west side. Tarred	
December [illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	Minimum for night, —20°
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	Minimum for night, —16.1°
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	Minimum for night, —11.1°. Grew warmer in night
January [illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	[illegible]	......	......	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	0.6°	2.2°	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	[illegible]	6.1°	—3.9°	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	[illegible]	4.4°	0.0	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]		[illegible]	7.2°	—5.3°	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	13.3°	—13.3°	......	......	......	......	......	Minimum for night —17.2°
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	8.0°	—3.0°	2.00	— 5.6°	—2.2°	— 3.3°	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	8.0°	2.8°	2.30	— 5.6°	—2.2°	4.4°	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	8.6°	2.2°	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	8.0°	2.5°	......	......	......	......	......	
February [illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	4.1°	1.1°	2.55	0.0	— 0.3°	13.3°	17.8°	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	4.4°	—0.6°	4.45	— 4.4°	0.0	7.2°	9.4°	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	10.0°	10.0°	7.25	—11.7°	—11.7°	—11.7°	—11.7°	Minimum for night, —12.2°
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	6.7°	0.6°	2.15	— 1.7°	— 0.9°	19.7°	26.6°	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	7.2°	6.1°	9.10	— 8.0°	— 6.7°	— 6.9°	— 7.8°	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	2.2°	5.0°	......	......	......	......	......	
[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	0.6°	6.1°	2.20	......	11.1°	21.7°	25.0°	
March [illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]	......	[illegible]	1.7°	6.4°	4.45	— 3.3°	1.7°	11.7°	......	

* Forenoon records are in light-faced type, afternoon records in black-faced type.

Some additional facts may be gained from a study of table 4. The black color of the tarred surface where exposed to the sun seems to be very effective in raising the temperature of the inner bark and the outer sapwood much above that of the air, and also considerably above that of the similarly sun-exposed but untarred surface. Conduction from this warmed area was sufficient to warm the tissue six inches above the upper limit of the tar to a temperature higher than that of the untarred, sun-exposed trunk. Probably this conduction is also felt in the direction of the circumference, since the temperatures on the northeast side of the blackened tree were slightly higher than appears normal for the shaded side. This would no doubt have been more noticeable with a smaller tree, but unfortunately this point was not ascertained. On the other hand, the coating of whitewash, even when considerably weathered (as shown by readings subsequent to February 10), seemed effective in preventing a considerable rise in temperature on the sun-exposed side of the trunk.

The temperature of the shaded side of the trunk is very rarely exactly the same as the temperature of the air at the time of the reading, but is slightly lower if the temperature of the air is and has been rising, and higher if the air temperature has been falling. This is what naturally would be expected — that the tree temperature would follow the air temperature rather closely, but would not undergo as rapid changes.

The early morning readings deserve consideration. On December 14, the air temperature fell rapidly during the afternoon and reached a minimum of −20° C. sometime in the night. At seven o'clock in the morning on December 15, the air temperature had risen but slightly above the minimum, namely, to −17.2°. The lowest tree temperature at this hour was −13.9°. It appears that the tree temperature had not kept pace with the rapid temperature fall of the atmosphere, and that −13.9° was the minimum reached by the tree during that night. Subsequent observations on other days, made in the morning before the air had warmed much above the minimum for the night, confirm this point. On December 17, the minimum for the previous night was −16.1°; at nine o'clock in the morning the air temperature was −15°; the lowest tree temperature was −12.2° (on the northeast side of tree no. 3), and the highest was −10° (on the southwest side of tree no. 6). On December 19, the lowest atmospheric temperature for the previous night was −11.1°, reached at ten o'clock; about midnight the atmospheric temperature began to rise, and at half past seven had reached −3.9°; the tree temperatures at that hour were fairly close to the air temperature. On January 30, the minimum for the previous night was −17.2°; at half past eight in the morning the air temperature had risen to −13.9°, but the tree temperatures were yet considerably above the minimum for the night, the lowest tree temperature being −13.9° and the highest −12.8°.

Probably the explanation of this phenomenon lies in the fact that the large trunk contains a considerable quantity of stored heat, which operates to prevent a rapid temperature fall in the tree tissue. In the case of the temperatures discussed above, the trees were all large and old, with thick bark and great diameter of trunk. It was thought probable that a tree with a trunk diameter of only three or four inches would follow the changes in atmospheric temperature much more closely. This seems to be true. On February 10, the minimum air temperature for the previous night was −12.2°. At a quarter past seven in the morning the air temperature was −11.7°; the lowest tree temperature in the old trees was −10.6°, and the highest −8.9°, on the southwest side of the trunk; the thermometers in the young trees all stood at −11.7°, the then air temperature. It is not improbable that the young trees had reached the air minimum and again warmed up, following the air temperature closely. Another observation on this point was taken at nine o'clock in the evening on February 10. An examination of the records for that hour, together with those for two o'clock on the same afternoon, indicates that the younger trees, with smaller trunk diameter, follow the atmospheric temperature fall more closely than do the large old trees. In this connection it is interesting to recall that trees with a trunk diameter of less than a foot are more subject to sun-scald than are larger trees. Rarely, if ever, does sun-scald occur on large old trees. As will be seen later, in artificial freezings tissue from old trees does not seem particularly hardy as compared with that from young trees.

It will also be noticed that temperatures on the southwest side of the trunk were somewhat higher in the young trees than in the old ones. This was perhaps due to the difference in bark color and thickness; the bark on the old trees was thick and light gray, while that on the young trees was thinner and of a reddish brown color.

In young trees the temperature on the northeast side of the trunk rises above the air temperature on sunny days, tho not so high as that on the southwest side. This is not true in the case of old trees. The difference is probably due to the greater ease of conduction thru and around the smaller trunk.

These differences in behavior of large and small tree trunks are even more evident in table 5, which records temperatures observed at Geneva, New York, February 14, 1916. The trees compared were a large old Baldwin, and a young Century whose trunk diameter was about four inches. Especially remarkable is the rapidity of temperature fall in the small trunk after sundown.

TABLE 5. COMPARATIVE TEMPERATURE RECORDS FROM LARGE AND SMALL TREES, FEBRUARY 14, 1916

Hour of reading (p. m.)	Temperature (degrees centigrade)			
	Small tree, northeast side	Small tree, southwest side	Large tree, southwest side	Air
2.00	— 3.3°	1.1°	....	11.1°
3.00	— 5.0°	5.5°	....	12.5°
4.00	— 7.2°	3.9°	....	—13.5°
5.00*	— 9.4°	— 0.3°	3.9°	—14.4°
6.00†	—18.3°	—14.4°	—3.3°	—22.2°

* Thirty minutes before sundown.
† Thirty minutes after sundown.

One fact which cannot be readily explained is that the temperature on the northeast side of tree no. 3, both in 1914 and in 1915, was often slightly lower than that of the air. It was thought that possibly some error had been made in the original comparison of thermometers; but the thermometer in this place was twice broken and replaced, and it does not seem probable that the same error would occur three times in standardizing.

Some of the more striking records from tables 2, 3, and 4 are grouped together in table 6. The readings are expressed in degrees Fahrenheit, since the Fahrenheit scale is the one commonly employed in reporting atmospheric temperatures.

A comparison of the date of awakening and relative hardiness of the cambial area on the northeast and southwest sides of the trunk

Müller-Thurgau, as has already been stated, suggests that the occurrence of sun-scald may be due to an early awakening, and consequent increased tenderness, of the tissue on the southwest side of the tree, brought about by the action of the sun in late winter. The temperature records obtained do not offer much support for this hypothesis, but it was considered worth while to obtain some evidence for or against it.

Cuttings, including bark, cambium, and outer sapwood, were taken in 1914 from a large old seedling tree (no. 5) in the Blair orchard, and from a young Northern Spy tree (no. 17) in the university orchard whose trunk diameter was about three inches. The cuttings were taken from approximately the same height on the southwest and northeast sides of the trunk, on the following dates: January 20, March 16, April 8, May 2, May 16, and May 31. They were fixed, infiltrated, and imbedded in collodion, and sections were made and examined microscopically for signs of cambial activity.

TABLE 6. STRIKING DIFFERENCES IN TEMPERATURES ON SUN-EXPOSED AND SHADED SIDES OF TREES

Date	Temperatures (degrees Fahrenheit)									
	Air	Large tree		Large tree, tarred		Large tree, whitened		Air	Medium-sized tree	
		Northeast side	Southwest side	Northeast side	Southwest side	Northeast side	Southwest side		Northeast side	Southwest side
(1914)										
January 2...	10°	10°	27°	....	....	....	....	....	....	....
January 13...	11°	5°	20.5°	....	....	....	....	10°	14°	30°
February 15...	10°	15°	39°	....	....	....	....	10°	17°	34.5°
February 24...	....	3°	27°	....	....	....	....	3°	7°	30°
December 15...	14°	19°	26.5°	23°	30.5°	....	....	....	....	....
									Small tree	
									Northeast side	Southwest side
(1915)										
January 22...	19°	....	36°	21°	44°	21°	25°	....	....	....
January 30...	20°	18°	40.5°	23°	57.5°	16.5°	28°	22°	28°	40°
February 20...	43°	32°	71°	35°	92°	31°	43°	43°	52°	71°

The cambium appeared in its winter condition in all sets of cuttings up to those taken on May 2. In the cuttings taken on this date the cambium appeared to be beginning activity and a few recently formed tracheal elements and xylem cells were in evidence. There was no discernible difference on this date in the condition of the cuttings from the opposite sides of the trunk. If the cambium on the southwest side started into activity before that on the northeast side, this must have occurred sometime between April 8 and May 2. In this latitude, temperatures sufficiently low to cause injury to the awakening cambium could hardly be expected to occur so late in the spring as this. On May 31 considerable new xylem had been laid down inside the now thoroly active cambial ring. Again no difference could be detected between cuttings from the southwest and the northeast side of the trunk.

In 1915, cuttings that were taken for artificial freezing from several trees as late as April 13 were incidentally examined for signs of cambial awakening, but no such signs were observed on that date. The next opportunity for observation on this point was at Peru, Clinton County, on May 1. At that date growth had begun on both sides of the trunk. The season at Ithaca is a few days in advance of the season at Peru, so that observations made in the two places are fairly comparable. Brown (1912), in studies on growth in *Pinus rigida* Mill., found no difference in the time of cambial awakening on the north and south sides of the trunk.

Since there is doubtless some not thoroly understood change that takes place in the protoplasm before growth begins, it was believed that an increased tenderness in the cambium might easily be observed before growth itself, and that this would be a more accurate test of Müller-Thurgau's hypothesis. Any increased tenderness in the cambium could by careful manipulation be detected by artificial freezing.

At different times in 1914 and 1915, tissue from various old and young trees was subjected to artificial freezing in order to determine this point. Cuttings were taken from the southwest and northeast sides at the same height on the trunk — from two and one-half to three feet from the ground. Each cutting included bark, cambium, and a thin layer of sapwood, and was removed with extreme care so as to avoid mechanical injury to the tissues, which might introduce error into the results. The cuttings were shaved down as nearly as possible to the same thickness (from two to two and one-half millimeters) and cut into pieces of the same area, three pieces being made from each cutting. The pieces prepared in 1914 were about six millimeters square; those prepared in 1915 were punched out with a cork borer the diameter of which was six millimeters. Each piece thus represented a small area of the cambium, with equal thicknesses of cortex and xylem on either side. The pieces were made small in order that temperature changes in them could take place evenly and rapidly; it was believed that with pieces of this size close to or in contact with the thermometer bulb, the thermometer reading would be a fairly accurate representation of the internal temperature.

In the experiments conducted in 1914 the pieces were firmly tied with fine thread to the thermometer bulb, one on each side. The thermometer was inserted thru a cotton plug into a test tube in such a manner that the lower end of the bulb just cleared the bottom of the test tube. For the first part of the freezing process the tube was inserted into a larger tube, similarly plugged in order to secure insulation by the dead-air space between the two tubes. The larger tube was then placed in an earthen vessel containing, first ice, then ice and salt. The proportion of salt in the freezing mixture was gradually increased each time the mixture was replaced. When a certain minimum temperature was reached, the larger outer tube was removed and the inner tube placed directly in the freezing mixture. By means of these precautions it was possible to regulate the temperature fall so that it was even and slow. This was extremely desirable, since, as Chandler (1913) has shown, a rapid temperature fall, especially in the first part of the freezing, is markedly injurious. As the object sought was to determine any difference in hardiness between the two samples of tissue, a too rapid rate of temperature fall might be a source of too great error.

In these experiments it usually took from six and one-half to seven hours to reach the minimum temperature obtainable with salt and ice. The tube was then removed, and placed in an insulated vessel containing a mixture of crystallized calcium chlorid and ice (the ice and calcium chlorid having been previously cooled to the temperature of salt and ice). The proportions of this mixture were also varied, but it was not possible to prevent a fairly rapid temperature fall at this stage of the freezing. Since, however, it is in the early part of the freezing that the effect of rapidity of fall is most noticeable, this was not regarded as a great source of error. The temperature was read and recorded every fifteen minutes up to the time of the employment of calcium chlorid, and from then on every five minutes. The thermometers used in 1914 were mercury thermometers similar to those employed in taking tree temperatures. These were later compared with the standardized thermometers used in 1915. The thermometers used in 1915 were two spirit thermometers graduated in degrees centigrade from −50° to +80°. These were standardized by the United States Bureau of Standards.

The apparatus used for the freezing work in 1915 is shown in figure 61. Essentially it consisted of three concentric tin cylinders, of which the innermost one constituted a chamber for the material to be frozen, and the outer two were containers for the freezing mixture. These three cylinders were inclosed on sides and bottom in an outer chamber filled with insulating material. A shaft passing down into the central cylinder bore near its lower end a small tin disk, on the upper surface of which were a number of small pin points. The material to be frozen was placed on these points. The disk was made to revolve slowly during the freezing process, by means of a pulley of large circumference attached to the upper end of the shaft and driven by a belt from a small, low-speed electric motor. This was in order to make sure that the various pieces of tissue would be subjected to the same temperatures and to the same rate of temperature fall, since all parts of the central cylinder might not be at exactly the same temperature.

A recess was cut into the lower part of the apparatus at one side, as far as the wall of the central cylinder, allowing a thermometer to be inserted thru a cork in such a manner that the bulb was wholly within the central cylinder and just beneath the revolving disk, while the stem was wholly in the outer air. By means of this arrangement the temperature could be read whenever desired without disturbing either thermometer or tissue. The apparatus was made rather deep in order to allow room for insulation of wool felt which was packed in the upper parts while the freezing was going on. The whole apparatus was covered by an easily removable lid. The freezing-mixture chambers were provided with drainpipes and stopcocks.

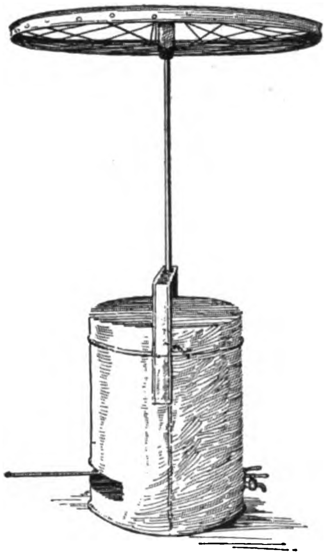


FIG. 61. FREEZING MACHINE USED FOR ARTIFICIAL FREEZING EXPERIMENTS

In the freezing process the outer cylinder was filled with ice-and-salt mixtures, with gradually increasing proportions of salt, until the minimum temperature that could be obtained with this mixture was reached, the dead-air space of the second cylinder meanwhile acting as insulation to prevent too rapid temperature fall. A calcium-chlorid-and-ice mixture was then placed in the second cylinder until the desired temperature was reached.

One defect was observed with this machine when low temperatures were desired. As is well known, a mixture of calcium chlorid and ice is not particularly efficient as compared with salt and ice. In this apparatus its efficiency was still further impaired by the heat lost in freezing the water that was unavoidably present in the ice-and-salt mixture of the outer chamber.[5] In the later freezings of 1915, when a temperature below -28° C. was desired it was necessary to place the tissue in thin-walled glass shells attached to the shaft near its lower end, and when the minimum of the machine was reached to remove these quickly and place them in a calcium-chlorid-and-ice mixture contained in an insulated vessel. In this case the thermometer bulb was placed directly in the mixture. Several vessels were employed, each with a mixture whose temperature was slightly lower than the preceding, so that the temperature fall could be regulated to comparative slowness.

The temperatures were read and recorded at the same intervals as in the 1914 experiments, and the same rate of temperature fall was maintained.

Before each set of freezings, preliminary freezings were run with tissue from the north or the east side of the trunk until the killing point of the cambium was determined; then the tissue to be compared was carried down to that point — or usually to a degree or two short of that point, as any differences in hardiness could more readily be noted if the killing was partial. Indeed, when, as was often the case, there was almost no injury and it was at the same time known that the killing point had been all but reached, the results were considered as valuable as when there was more evident injury; since if the insolated tissue were noticeably tenderer, it would certainly kill under such conditions.

The amount of injury was determined by examination under the low power of the microscope. The edges of the pieces were trimmed and free-hand sections were cut across the center of the pieces in every case, as occasionally unavoidable mechanical injury to the outer edge of a piece would increase the amount of killing in that region.

As is well known, the anatomical cambium consists of several layers of cells, of which properly only the central layer is the true, or physiological, cambium. In these freezing experiments the tissue first injured was the layer of cambial cells next to the last-formed layer of xylem cells, in other words, the youngest wood elements. Occasionally the interfascicular cambium seemed to be the tenderest tissue. Since severer injury was marked by extension of the discolored line to include more layers of the anatomical cambium until complete killing showed them all discolored, the amount of injury could be readily estimated in percentage and in many cases is so expressed in the tabulated results.

---

[5] This defect in the apparatus could be remedied easily by constructing the outer freezing chamber with false walls so that the ice-and-salt mixture could be removed and the space filled with wool-felt insulation. With this improvement it is believed that the machine would be efficient to as low temperatures as are ever desired.

Before examination the pieces were left for from twenty-four to forty-eight hours after the freezing, when the characteristic brown discoloration of cell contents caused by frost injury could be recognized readily. Several unfrozen pieces of tissue were similarly left and examined each time, but in no case was the discoloration present in them. Of course the time when such freezings should be run in order to determine the point in question is late winter and early spring; but in order to throw light on the general question of hardiness, freezings were run at intervals thruout the entire dormant period, and the results are thought to be of sufficient interest to be reported here. They are given in table 7:

TABLE 7. RECORD OF ARTIFICIAL FREEZING EXPERIMENTS TO DETERMINE RELATIVE HARDINESS OF TISSUE OF THE TRUNKS OF TREES IN 1914-15

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
1	(1914) Jan. 28	Northeast side, 20-years-old Baldwin tree no. 38	3½	—20.6°	30	Evident injury to cambium, slight injury to cortex, no injury to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Injury not noticeably different
2	Jan. 30	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 7	7	—20.0°	30	Slight injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 3	7	—20.6°	30	Very slight injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 17	7	—21.0°	30	No injury
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury
3	Feb. 2	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 7	7	—20.6°	45	No injury
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 6				No injury
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury
4	Feb. 21	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 4	6¾	—22.2°	Warmed immediately	Slight injury to cambium and cortex, very slight injury to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 7				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 18				Injury as above, but less injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
5	Feb. 27	Northeast side, old Bellflower tree no. 9	7½	—20.0°	30	Severe injury to cambium, slight to medullary rays of cortex
		Southwest side, same tree				Almost no injury
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 20				Very slight injury to cambium

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
5	(1914) Feb. 27	Southwest side, same tree	7½	—20.0°	30	Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 21				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 22				No injury
		North side, old Bellflower tree no. 9				No injury
		North side, tree no. 22	½	—20.0°	30	No injury
		North side, tree no. 9				No injury
6	Mar. 19	Northeast side, old tree, variety unknown, no. 39	7	—28.0°	60	Complete injury to cambium, severe to cortex, slight to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old tree, variety unknown, no. 40				Same as above, but slightly less injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old tree, variety unknown, no. 41				Complete injury to cambium, severe to cortex, slight to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		North side, old tree no. 41	2½	—18.3°	30	Severe injury, not noticeably different from that of slowly frozen tissue
		North side, old tree no. 41				
		North side, old tree no. 40				
7	Mar. 28	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 8	6	—26.1°	45	Slight injury to interfascicular cambium and medullary rays
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 11				No injury
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 5				No injury
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 13				Slight injury to interfascicular cambium and medullary rays, slight injury to outer xylem next to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				Slight injury to interfascicular cambium and medullary rays
8	Nov. 11	Six pieces from old tree no. 39	6	—11.1°	60	No injury
9	Nov. 14	Old seedling tree no. 1	10	—21.1°	30	Injury severe to xylem, less severe to cortex. No injury to cambium
10	Nov. 16	Old seedling tree no. 1, crown, 4 inches above soil	6½	—21.7°	5	95 per cent* injury to cambium, very little to cortex or xylem

---

* Estimate from microscopic examination.

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
10	(1914) Nov. 16	Same tree, trunk, 2½ feet up	6¾	—21.7°	5	Very slight injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, crown, 4 inches above soil	7	—23.9°	30	All cambium injured
		Same tree, trunk, 2½ feet up				75 per cent injury to cambium
11	Nov. 21	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 2	8	—21.2°	30	15 per cent injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				10 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 4, trunk tarred Oct. 23				No injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 8, trunk tarred Oct. 23				Very slight injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, less to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Very slight injury to cambium (one piece showed about 10 per cent)
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 11				Very slight injury to cambium (less than 1 per cent)
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 15				No injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 16, trunk tarred Oct. 23				No injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium
12	Nov. 23	Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 18, trunk tarred Oct. 23	7⅓	—23.3°	55	50 per cent injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 17				45 per cent injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				15 per cent injury to cambium
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 20				No injury to cambium (except very slight injury to one piece)
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 23, trunk tarred Oct. 23				60 per cent injury to cambium
		Southwest side, same tree				20 per cent injury to cambium
		Young Northern Spy tree no. 22, head, 2½ feet above soil				No injury to cambium
		Same tree, crown, 4 inches above soil				No injury to cambium
13	Dec. 14	West side, old seedling tree no. 1, 4 feet above soil	7½	—25.0°	30	Very slight injury to cambium, cortex, and xylem

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
13	(1914) Dec. 14	West side, same tree, 2 feet above soil	7½	—25.0°	30	25 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		West side, same tree, 4 inches above soil				30 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
14	Dec. 17	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 2	Material in freezer placed outside at 6 p.m. Dec. 17. At 9 a.m. Dec. 18, temperature in freezer was —12° C. Freezing continued by means of calcium chlorid and ice 1 hr. 50 min. to —25.5° C.	......	60	5 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem, especially to medullary rays
		Southwest side, same tree				10 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem, especially to medullary rays
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 4, trunk tarred				15 per cent injury to cambium, especially to interfascicular cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				10 per cent injury to cambium, especially to interfascicular cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 8, trunk tarred				10 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex, considerable to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				20 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 11				25 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 15				35 per cent injury to cambium, especially to interfascicular cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem, especially medullary rays
		Southwest side, same tree				30 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem, especially medullary rays
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 16, trunk tarred				10 per cent injury to cambium and interfascicular cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				15 per cent injury to cambium and interfascicular cambium, slight to cortex and xylem[*]

[*] Note: Xylem injury unless otherwise noted was to xylem cells.

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
15	(1914) Dec. 18	Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 18, trunk tarred	7½	—23.0°	40	70 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, slight to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				60 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, slight to xylem
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 17				25 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, slight to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				20 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, slight to xylem
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 20				50 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, slight to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				35 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 23, trunk tarred				75 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, considerable to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				80 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		East side, young Northern Spy tree no. 22, 3 feet above soil				80 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, very slight to xylem
		East side, trunk, same tree, 1½ feet above soil				Same
		East side, crown, same tree, 4 inches above soil				65 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, very slight to xylem

Note: Xylem injury in this case was confined to medullary rays, no wood cells injured.

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
16	(1915) Jan. 13	Old seedling tree no. 1, 4 feet above soil	6¾	—23.0°	30	Very slight injury to cambium, cortex, and xylem
		Same tree, 2 feet above soil				Same
		Same tree, 6 inches above soil				Very slight injury (about 1 per cent) to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Old seedling tree no. 7, 4 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 6 inches above soil				Very slight injury to cambium, cortex, and xylem
		Old Bellflower tree no. 9, 4 feet above soil				Very slight injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Same tree, 2 feet above soil				Very slight injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem (one piece showed 100 per cent cambium injury and severe cortex injury)
		Same tree, 6 inches above soil				Very slight injury (about 1 per cent) to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
	(1915)					
17	Jan. 16	Old seedling tree no. 1, 4 feet above soil	6¼	—26.0°	90	About 2 per cent injury to cambium, slight injury to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 6 inches above soil				From 1 to 2 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Old Bellflower tree no. 9, 4 feet above soil				Very slight injury to cambium, cortex, and xylem
		Same tree, 2 feet above soil				Very slight injury (less than 1 per cent) to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 6 inches above soil				From 1 to 2 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Old seedling tree no. 12, 4 feet above soil				From 2 to 5 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 6 inches above soil				10 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem

Note: Xylem slightly more injured than cortex.

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
18	Jan. 20	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 2	6	—26.5°	30	Very slight injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Very slight injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 8, trunk tarred				Very slight injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 11				Very slight injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 15				Very slight injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 16				Very slight injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
19	Jan. 23	Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 18	7 5/12	—33.0°	40	Very slight injury to cambium, about 5 per cent to interfascicular cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 17				Very slight injury to cambium, mostly to interfascicular cambium, slight to cortex and xylem

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
19	(1915) Jan. 23	Southwest side, same tree	$7\frac{5}{12}$	—33.0°	40	Very slight injury to cambium, about 5 per cent to interfascicular cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 20				From 1 to 5 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to xylem, less to cortex
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 23, trunk tarred				Very slight injury to cambium, about 5 per cent to interfascicular cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Very slight injury to cambium, considerable to xylem, less to cortex
		Young Northern Spy tree no. 22, trunk, 1½ feet above soil				Very slight injury to cambium, about 10 per cent to interfascicular cambium, considerable to xylem, slight to cortex
		Same tree, head, 3 feet above soil				Same
		Same tree, crown, 4 inches above soil				Very slight injury to cambium, about 5 per cent to interfascicular cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
20	Jan. 27	Young Northern Spy tree no. 35, 2 feet above soil	6½	—38.0°	40	95 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, less to xylem
		Same tree, 1 inch above soil				From 85 to 90 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Young Northern Spy tree no. 42, head, 3 feet above soil				95 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 2 feet above soil				From 95 to 100 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 1 inch above soil				95 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Young Northern Spy tree no. 34, at head in crotch				Complete injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 2 feet above soil				Same
		Same tree, 1 inch above soil				Same
		Young Northern Spy tree no. 30, 2 feet above soil				From 90 to 93 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 1 inch above soil				90 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem

Note: Injury greater in extent in cortex than in xylem.

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
21	Feb. 22	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 2	6	—38.0°	20	5 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
	(1915)					
21	Feb. 22	Southwest side, same tree	6	—38.0°	20	10 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 4, trunk tarred				5 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 8, trunk tarred				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 11				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				8 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
22	Feb. 24	Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 15	6	—37.0°	30	95 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				100 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 16, trunk tarred				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				98 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 18, trunk tarred				Same
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 17				100 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 20				97 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				100 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 23, trunk tarred				95 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same

Note: More injury to cortex than to xylem.

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
23	Mar. 4	Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 15	7	—35.0°	30	95 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 16, trunk tarred				85 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 17				75 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				85 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 20				90 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
	(1915)					
23	Mar. 4	Southwest side, same tree	7	—35.0°	30	Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 23				85 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				90 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 26, trunk tarred				95 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 27				85 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				90 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
24	Mar. 6	Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 27, trunk tarred	5½	—32.0°	45	No injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 21				5 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 36, trunk tarred				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				50 per cent injury* to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 29				5 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				50 per cent injury* to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 30				5 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 32				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
25	Mar. 10	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 2	5½	—33.0°	30	20 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 4, trunk tarred				5 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				0.5 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 8, trunk tarred				2 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Very slight injury (less than 1 per cent) to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem

---

* This was natural injury to pieces before freezing. More injury to cortex than to xylem.

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
	(1915)					
25	Mar. 10	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 11	$5\frac{1}{3}$	−33.0°	30	20 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old Bellflower tree no. 9				Less than 1 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				2 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 7				0.5 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 3				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				Same

Note: Cortex slightly more injured than xylem.

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
25a	Mar. 10	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 2	$5\frac{1}{3}$	−33.0°	30	Trace of injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 4				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium, cortex, or xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 8				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium, cortex, or xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 11				1 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old Bellflower tree no. 9				5 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 7				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				Same

Note: In this experiment the pieces of tissue, after being prepared, were soaked for one hour in distilled water, the excess water was blotted off with filter paper, and the pieces were then frozen along with those of lot no. 25.

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
26	Mar. 13	East side, old seedling tree no. 2, 3 feet above soil	4	−23.0°	Removed immediately	3 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same	$4\frac{1}{12}$	−28.0°	15	5 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same	$4\frac{1}{3}$	−33.0°	10	12 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
27	Mar. 15	East side, young Gano tree no. 20, 2 feet above soil	$2\frac{1}{3}$	−25.0°	30	No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same	$2\frac{7}{12}$	−29.0°	30	Same

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
27	(1915) Mar. 15	Same	3 1/12	—30.0°	30	Very slight injury (less than 1 per cent) to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		South side, young Northern Spy tree no. 28, 2 feet above soil	2⅓	—25.0°	30	30 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Same	2 7/12	—29.0°	30	Same
		Same	3 1/12	—30.0°	30	10 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
28	Mar. 18	East side, old seedling tree no. 2, 3 feet above soil	Immediate	—20.0°	90	90 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex and xylem
		Same	2⅙	—28.0°	30	No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same	3⅙ to —30.5°	—31.0°	30 at —30.5° to —31°	Very slight injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem except injury to xylem next to cambium layer
29	Mar. 22	East side, old seedling tree no. 2, 2 feet above soil	Immediate	—20.0°	30	From 90 to 95 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Same	1⅓ to —25.0°	—27.0°	30 at —25° to —27°	15 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same	1⅚ to —31.0°	—34.0°	30 at —31° to —34°	From 15 to 20 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
30	Mar. 24	East side, old seedling tree no. 2, 3 feet above soil	Immediate	—20.0°	30	80 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Same	1⅙	—30.0°	15 at —30°, 30 at —29° to —25°	60 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, slight to xylem
		Same	1 7/12.	—32.0°	20	75 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, slight to xylem
31	Mar. 27	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 2	6	—31.0°	30	No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 4, trunk tarred				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 8; trunk tarred				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				Very slight injury (less than 1 per cent) to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 11				0.5 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same

TABLE 7 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
	(1915)					
31	Mar. 27	Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 15	6	—31.0°	30	No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 16, trunk tarred				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				....
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 17				Very slight injury (less than 1 per cent) to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 20				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 23, trunk tarred				Very slight injury (less than 1 per cent) to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
32	Mar. 31	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 4, trunk tarred	5⅓	—33.0°	30	No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				0.5 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 8, trunk tarred				Very slight injury (less than 1 per cent) to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Young Northern Spy tree no. 22, 2 feet above soil				Very slight injury (less than 1 per cent) to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 4 inches above soil				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Young Northern Spy tree no. 28, 2 feet above soil				15 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 4 inches above soil				Same
		Young Northern Spy tree no. 32, 2 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 4 inches above soil				Same
		East side trunk, old seedling tree no. 2, 3 feet above soil (six pieces)	5½	—29.0°	30	No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same (six pieces)	5⅓	—33.0°	30	Injury varied in different pieces, from no injury, to from 3 to 5 per cent to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
33	Apr. 13	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 2	6	—30.0°	30	80 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same

TABLE 7 (*concluded*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
33	(1915) Apr. 13	Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 4, trunk tarred	6	—30.0°	30	85 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				90 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Northeast side, old seedling tree no. 8, trunk tarred				80 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, less severe to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 15				95 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, less severe to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Northern Spy tree no. 17				Same
		Southwest side, same tree				Same
		Northeast side, young Gano tree no. 23, trunk tarred				85 per cent injury to cambium, severe to cortex, less severe to xylem
		Southwest side, same tree				Same

From a study of the results of artificial freezing, it is apparent that there is no difference in degree of hardiness between the tissue on the southwest and that on the northeast side of the trunk, at least none that can be detected by the method of artificial freezing. It is true that the technique of these experiments is not sufficiently perfect to permit detecting with accuracy any very small differences, but it seems reasonable to believe that any difference so marked as to account for the occurrence of sun-scald on the southwest side of the tree would be easily detected. It is to be noted that in 1915 the freezings were continued later than there was any possibility of the occurrence of sun-scald under natural conditions. The freezings from March 6 to April 13, 1915, show that the trunk tissue was gradually becoming tenderer on both sides; on April 13 it was considerably less hardy than in February, but there was no appreciable difference in the time of this awakening from the dormant condition between the sun-exposed and the shaded side of the trunk. Further, no degree of tenderness was reached on either side great enough to allow the tissue to be killed by temperatures likely to occur in this latitude in March or April.

It seems, in view of this evidence, that Müller-Thurgau's hypothesis to account for the occurrence of sun-scald must be eliminated.

NATURAL INJURY IN THE WINTER OF 1914-15

Some natural injury to the cambium on the southwest side of the trunk was noticed during the winter of 1914-15. This may be reported briefly as follows:

Tree no. 35. Young Northern Spy. Injury to cambium, some to cortex. Injury noticed on January 25, 1915.

Tree no. 18. Young Northern Spy; space on trunk tarred October 23, 1914. On February 24, 1915, a large injured area was found extending from the base of the trunk upward for a distance of one and one-half feet on the southwest side of the tree. The injury was confined to the tarred space. The bark, the cambium, and the outer sapwood were completely killed. The bark was a dead-brown color thruout, but not yet dried out; it seems probable that the injury occurred sometime in the winter of 1914-15. Cuttings for artificial freezing had been taken from this tree at intervals all winter, but from a point a few inches above the upper limit of this injury. The injured tissue was accidentally cut into on February 24 and the injury discovered. It was not yet apparent externally.

Tree no. 26. Young Gano; space on trunk tarred October 23, 1914. Partial injury to cambium, slight injury to cortex, very slight injury to xylem, observed on February 24, 1915. This injury could be detected only by aid of the microscope. Cuttings from this tree had been previously examined at intervals, but only macroscopically.

Tree no. 25. Young Gano; space on trunk tarred November 23, 1914. Injury as described in preceding paragraph, observed on February 24, 1915. No previous examination.

Tree no. 28. Young Northern Spy. Same injury as described above observed on February 24, 1915. No previous examination.

Tree no. 43. Young Northern Spy. Same injury as described above observed on February 24, 1915. No previous examination.

Tree no. 36. Young Northern Spy; space on trunk tarred January 15, 1915. Injury 50 per cent to cambium, some injury to cortex and xylem; could be detected only microscopically; observed on March 8, 1915. Cuttings from this tree had been examined previously at intervals, but only macroscopically.

Tree no. 29. Young Northern Spy. Injury 50 per cent to cambium, some injury to cortex and xylem, observed under microscope on March 8, 1915. No previous examination.

Altho these observations are not conclusive as to the date of occurrence of the injury, yet, taken in connection with the artificial freezing work, they are interesting as showing that natural injury occurred in 1915 before there was any possibility for the tissue on the southwest side of the tree to become tenderer.

There now remains one hypothesis to account for the occurrence of sun-scald. That is, that it may result from a rapid temperature fall consequent to the warming-up of the tissue on a cold, sunny day.

With proper conditions this point might be determined in the following manner: On a day when the tissue on the southwest side of the tree had been thoroly thawed out while that on the northeast side had remained very cold, say about –16° C., if a fairly rapid fall of temperature occurred after sundown, conditions would be proper for sun-scald provided a certain minimum temperature were reached. It seems probable that by taking tissue from opposite sides of the tree in the early morning, while it was yet at the minimum temperature for the night and without allowing it to warm up, and carrying several samples of the tissue down to different minima by the use of freezing mixture, a point might be reached at which the tissue from the southwest side would kill while that from the northeast side would not.

Such conditions are rare, and it was not possible to run this experiment during the winters of 1913-14 and 1914-15. It is believed that if the experiment could be performed it would offer conclusive evidence with regard to the hypothesis under consideration.

In the absence of such evidence something may be learned from a comparison of the effects of rapid and slow freezing. Chandler (1913), in determining the comparative effect of rapid and slow freezing, employed the winter twigs and buds of various fruit trees. It seemed worth while to run a few freezings in order to determine whether the same phenomena were apparent in the case of the tissues under discussion here — the cambium, the xylem, and the cortex from the trunk of apple trees in the winter condition.

Among the freezing experiments recorded in table 7 are some that have a bearing on this point, and of these a few deserve review here:

(a) Tissue frozen on January 28, 1914, three and one-fourth hours to –20.6° C., one-half hour at minimum, killed more severely than similar tissue (not, however, from the same tree) frozen on January 30, seven hours to –20.6° C., one-half hour at minimum.

(b) March 19, 1914, pieces of tissue from the same trees were frozen seven hours to –28° C., one hour at minimum; two and one-half hours to –18.3° C., one-half hour at minimum; severe cambium injury in both cases.

(c) March 15, 1915, tissue from a young Gano tree, no. 20, was frozen two and one-half hours to –25° C., one-half hour at minimum, with no injury to cambium; two hours and thirty-five minutes to –29° C., one-half hour at minimum, with no injury to cambium; three hours and five minutes to –30° C., one-half hour at minimum, with very slight injury to cambium and slight injury to cortex and xylem.

March 27, 1915, tissue from the same tree was frozen six hours to –31° C., one-half hour at minimum, with no injury to cambium and very slight injury to cortex and xylem.

(d) March 15, 1915, tissue from a young Northern Spy tree, no. 28, was frozen two and one-half hours to -25° C., one-half hour at minimum, with 30 per cent injury to cambium and considerable injury to cortex and xylem; two hours and thirty-five minutes to -29° C., one-half hour at minimum, with 30 per cent injury to cambium and considerable injury to cortex and xylem; three hours and five minutes to -30° C., one-half hour at minimum, with 10 per cent injury to cambium and considerable injury to cortex and xylem.

March 31, 1915, tissue from the same tree was frozen five and one-half hours to -33° C., one-half hour at minimum, with 15 per cent injury to cambium and slight injury to cortex and xylem.

(e) March 18, 1915, tissue from an old seedling tree, no. 2, was frozen immediately to -20° C., one and one-half hours at minimum, with 90 per cent injury to cambium and severe injury to cortex and xylem; two hours and fifty minutes to -28° C., one-half hour at minimum, with no injury to cambium and slight injury to cortex and xylem; three hours and ten minutes to -30.5° C., one-half hour at minimum, with very slight injury to cambium and slight injury to cortex and xylem.

March 22, 1915, tissue from the same tree was frozen immediately to -20° C., one-half hour at minimum, with from 90 to 95 per cent injury to cambium, considerable injury to cortex, and slight injury to xylem; one hour and forty-five minutes to -25° C., one-half hour at minimum, with 15 per cent injury to cambium and slight injury to cortex and xylem; one hour and fifty minutes to -31° C., one-half hour at minimum, with from 15 to 20 per cent injury to cambium and considerable injury to cortex and xylem.

March 24, 1915, tissue from the same tree was frozen immediately to -20° C., one-half hour at minimum, with 80 per cent injury to cambium, considerable injury to cortex, and slight injury to xylem; one hour and twenty minutes to -30° C., three-fourths hour at minimum, with 60 per cent injury to cambium, severe injury to cortex, and slight injury to xylem; one hour and thirty-five minutes to -32° C., twenty minutes at minimum, with 75 per cent injury to cambium, severe injury to cortex, and slight injury to xylem.

March 27, 1915, tissue from the same tree was frozen six hours to -31° C., one-half hour at minimum, with no injury to cambium and very slight injury to cortex and xylem.

March 31, 1915, tissue from the same tree was frozen five and one-fourth hours to -29° C., one-half hour at minimum, with no injury to cambium and very slight injury to cortex and xylem; five and one-half hours to -33° C., one-half hour at minimum, with very slight injury to cambium, cortex, and xylem.

In addition to the experiments described above, it may be stated that at several times during the winter, when there has been occasion to kill tissue by artificial freezing, it has always been possible to accomplish this by immediate freezing to -20° C. Also, at different times during the dormant period two-years-old apple and pear trees have been subjected to this immediate freezing by placing galvanized iron cylinders around the trunks and packing the space within with salt-and-ice mixture. In these experiments severe killing resulted in bark, cambium, and outer sapwood.

In considering these results the temperature observations of February 14, 1916, should be recalled. It will be seen by referring to table 5 (page 355) that the temperature of the tissue on the southwest side of the small tree trunk fell from -0.3° C. to -14.4° C. in one hour, in the critical part of the freezing period. While not warranting a definite conclusion, this indicates that a rate of temperature fall may occur in nature rapid enough to raise the killing point of the tissue, and suggests the probability that sun-scald may result from this condition.

RELATIVE HARDINESS OF TISSUE FROM THE CROWN AND THE UPPER PARTS OF THE TRUNK

Chandler (1913), as the result of a number of artificial freezings, concludes that the tissue at the crown, or base, of the tree becomes hardy more slowly at the beginning of the winter than does tissue from the higher parts of the tree. In the freezings reported in table 7, tissue for preliminary freezings was taken from various heights on the trunk, with the idea that this difference in hardiness would make it easier to approximate the killing point. In the earlier freezings this difference was marked, but it did not appear in the freezings of December 18 and January 19.

A few freezings were then run in order to test this point more fully, and it seemed, at least in the year 1914-15, that this greater tenderness of the tissue at the base of the trunk had disappeared by midwinter (table 7, lots 10, 13, 15, 16, 17, 19, and 20). The results of these freezings would indicate that crown injury is normally an early-winter injury. In this connection it is interesting to recall Selby's mention (referred to on page 343) of crown injury in Ohio which he believes was caused by the October freeze of 1906. Clinton (1904) describes crown injury which he believes occurred on December 9, 1903. Reddick (1912) cites weather records showing that crown injury prevalent thruout New York in the spring of 1911 and noticeable early in January probably occurred in either November or December of 1910. Chandler, however, found this difference in hardiness evident as late as March 25, in the winter of 1912-13.

A more thoro test of this point was made during the winter of 1915-16 at Geneva, New York. Tissue for these freezings was taken from a number of thirty-years-old Baldwin trees in the experiment station orchard. The results of these freezings are given in table 8. It will be seen that in these trees and in this season the difference in hardiness between the crown and the upper trunk was still evident at the end of March. Since, however, the crown tissue was noticeably hardier than it was in November, it is still entirely possible that crown injury occurs oftener in the early winter than later.

TABLE 8. RECORD OF ARTIFICIAL FREEZING EXPERIMENTS TO DETERMINE RELATIVE HARDINESS OF TISSUE OF THE TRUNKS OF TREES

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
	(1915)					
1	Nov. 10	Tree no. 51, crown, 1 inch above soil	5¾	—20.0°	15	25 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 52, crown, 1 inch above soil				2 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex, considerable to inner xylem
		Same tree, 2 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex, none to xylem
		Tree no. 53, crown, 1 inch above soil				50 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, cortex, or xylem
		Tree no. 54, crown, 1 inch above soil				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
2	Nov. 17	Tree no. 55, crown, 1 inch above soil	5¾	—22.0°	30	0.5 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Tree no. 53, crown, 1 inch above soil				10 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				15 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Tree no. 56, crown, 1 inch above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				Same
		Tree no. 57, crown, 1 inch above soil				Same
		Same tree, 2 feet above soil				Same
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				Same
		Tree no. 54, crown, 1 inch above soil				Same
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				Same
3	Nov. 23	Tree no. 54, crown, 1 inch above soil	6½	—25.0°	30	15 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 2½ feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 56, crown, 1 inch above soil				Same
		Same tree, 2½ feet above soil				Same

TABLE 8 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
3	(1915) Nov. 23	Tree no. 57, crown, 1 inch above soil	6½	—25.0°	30	75 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				Same
		Tree no. 58, crown, 1 inch above soil				80 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				85 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
4	Dec. 3	Tree no. 60, crown, 1 inch above soil	6⅝	—27.0°	25	10 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Tree no. 56, crown, 1 inch above soil				15 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				2 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 57, crown, 1 inch above soil				50 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				30 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Tree no. 58, crown, 1 inch above soil				50 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				Same
5	(1916) Jan. 21	Tree no. 51, crown, 1 inch above soil	6¼	—28.0°	30	Severe injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				2 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 52, crown, 1 inch above soil				Same
		Same tree, 3½ feet above soil				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Tree no. 56, crown, 1 inch above soil				Same
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				Same
		Tree no. 58, crown, 1 inch above soil				25 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 54, crown, 1 inch above soil				Trace of injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 55, crown, 1 inch above soil				Trace of injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem

TABLE 8 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
5	(1916) Jan. 21	Same tree, 3 feet above soil	6½	—28.0°	30	Same
		Tree no. 53, crown, 1 inch above soil				Trace of injury to cambium, slight to cortex, very slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				Same
6	Jan. 27	Tree no. 51, crown, 1 inch above soil	6¾	—30.0°	15	75 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				2 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 52, crown, 1 inch above soil				Same
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 6 inches below soil				35 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 54, crown, 1 inch above soil				No injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 4 inches below soil				75 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 56, crown, 1 inch above soil				45 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 57, crown, 1 inch above soil				25 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				2 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 58, crown, 1 inch above soil				5 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				Same
6a	Jan. 27	Tree no. 51, crown, 1 inch above soil	6¾	—30.0°	15	75 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				5 per cent injury to cambium, slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 52, crown, 1 inch above soil				25 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 6 inches below soil				90 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Tree no. 54, crown, 1 inch above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem

TABLE 8 (*continued*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
6a	(1916) Jan. 27	Same tree, 3 feet above soil	6¾	—30.0°	15	Same
		Tree no. 56, crown, 1 inch above soil				50 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 57, 3 feet above soil				From 2 to 5 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 58, 3 feet above soil				75 per cent injury to cambium, considerable to cortex, slight to xylem

Note: In this experiment the pieces of tissue were soaked in distilled water for one-half hour before freezing. The excess water was poured off and the pieces were frozen while wet, along with those of lot no. 6.

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
7	Mar. 22	Tree no. 51, base	6¾	—31.0°	15	25 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 52, base				30 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 53, base				25 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 54, base				Same
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				Same
		Tree no. 56, base				Same
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				Same
		Tree no. 57, base				From 2 to 5 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
8	Mar. 29	Tree no. 54, base	7 (6 hours 0 to —12°, 1 hour —12° to —32°)	—32.0°	15	40 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				20 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 56, base				10 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 57, base				10 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem

TABLE 8 (*concluded*)

Lot no.	Date	Source of tissue	Length of temperature fall (hours)	Minimum reached (°C.)	Length of time at minimum (minutes)	Injury
8	(1916) Mar. 29	Tree no. 58, base	7 (6 hours 0 to —12°, 1 hour —12° to —32°)	—32.0°	15	10 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Tree no. 62, base				No injury
		Same tree, 3 feet above soil				No injury
		Tree no. 51, northeast side of trunk				No injury
		Same tree, southwest side				No injury
		Tree no. 52, northeast side of trunk				Very slight injury to cambium (from 1 to 5 per cent), very slight to cortex and xylem. No difference between opposite sides of trunk
		Same tree, southwest side				Same
		Tree no. 61, northeast side of trunk				Same
		Same tree, southwest side				Same
		Tree no. 62, northeast side of trunk				Same
		Same tree, southwest side				Same
		Tree no. 55, northeast side of trunk				5 per cent injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem
		Same tree, southwest side				No injury to cambium, very slight to cortex and xylem

EFFECT OF FREEZING TISSUE WHEN WET

Macoun's (1908) explanation of crotch injury suggests that a wet or water-soaked condition of the tissue previous to freezing may increase the killing.

A comparison of the experiments reported in table 7, lots 25 and 25a, and table 8, lots 6 and 6a, shows that soaking the tissue in distilled water and freezing it while wet did not increase the amount of killing.

CONCLUSION

Sun-scald, an injury sometimes occurring to bark, cambium, and outer sapwood on the southwest side of tree trunks, particularly of apple trees, is probably a winter injury caused by direct freezing to death of the tissue. This freezing to death is, it is believed, made possible by a rapid temperature fall consequent to warming-up of the tissue above freezing by the rays of the sun on a bright, cold day in late winter.

Sun-scald seems to be a late-winter injury, as distinguished from crown rot, which is perhaps an early-winter injury; sun-scald is therefore not induced by late growth or an unripened condition of the trees in the fall, while crown rot no doubt is. An important factor in the cause of crown rot is the lower degree of hardiness of the tissue at the base of the trunk than on the upper parts.

A practical method of preventing sun-scald is to spray or paint the trunks with whitewash in fall or early winter. This is not a new recommendation, since it has been suggested by Müller-Thurgau, in 1886, and by various other writers since that time. It seems, however, that it is a more feasible method than other recommendations that have been made, such as shading the trunk with a board or with brush. It seems worthy of a trial, especially in northern regions where sun-scald is a not uncommon type of winter injury. Of course this injury is one that occurs only in certain years, usually with a considerable intermediate period of immunity, so that it is not probable that this method will ever come into wide use. It would obviously be employed many times unnecessarily for once when it was necessary.

LITERATURE CITED

The following is a list of the publications to which reference is made in the text. For a complete bibliography of the subject of the killing of plant tissue by low temperature, the reader is referred to the paper by Chandler, the title of which is given below.

BROWN, H. P. Growth studies in forest trees. I. Pinus rigida Mill. Bot. gaz. **54**: 386–403. 1912.

BURRILL, THOMAS J. Climatal destruction of orchard trees. Univ. Illinois. Rept. **13**: 283–293. 1887.

CHANDLER, W. H. The killing of plant tissue by low temperature. Missouri Agr. Exp. Sta. Research bul. 8: 141–309. 1913.

CLINTON, G. P. Winter injury. *In* Report of the Botanist. Connecticut (New Haven) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **27** (1903): 303–304. 1904.

——— Winter injury. *In* Report of the Botanist. Connecticut (New Haven) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **28** (1904): 312–313. 1905.

——— Collar girdle and root injury [of peach]. *In* Report of the Botanist for 1908. Connecticut (New Haven) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **31–32**: 856–857. 1908.

GOEPPERT, H. R. Ueber die Warmeentwickelung in den Pflanzen; deren Gefrieren und die Schutzmittel gegen Dasselbe, p. 1–273. 1830.

GROSSENBACHER, J. G. Crown-rot, arsenical poisoning, and winter injury. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Tech. bul. 12: 369–411. 1909.

——— Crown-rot of fruit trees: field studies. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Tech. bul. 23:1–59. 1912.

HARTIG, R. Bark-scorching, sun-cracks, and deficiency of light. *In* Text-book of the diseases of trees, p. 294–299. (English translation by William Somerville and H. Marshall Ward.) 1894.

——— Schädliche Einwirkungen der Wärme. *In* Lehrbuch der Pflanzenkrankheiten, 3d ed., p. 228–233. 1900.

MACOUN, W. T. Winter injury to fruit trees — Ten different ways in which trees are affected. Canadian Exp. Farms. Rept. **1908**:110–116. 1908.

MOLISCH, HANS. Untersuchungen über das Erfrieren der Pflanzen, p. 1–73. 1897.

MORSE, W. J. Notes on plant diseases in 1908. Maine Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 164:1–28. 1909.

MÜLLER-THURGAU, HERMANN. Ueber das Gefrieren and Erfrieren der Pflanzen. I Theil. Landw. Jahrb. **9**:133–189. 1880.

——— Ueber das Gefrieren und Erfrieren der Pflanzen. II Theil. Landw. Jahrb. **15**:453–610. 1886.

REDDICK, D. Frost injury. New York State Fruit Growers' Assoc. Proc. **1912**:34–41. 1912.

SACHS, JULIUS. Krystallbildungen bei dem Gefrieren und Veränderung der Zellhäute bei dem Aufthauen saftiger Pflanzentheile. Kön.-Sächs. Gesell. Wiss. Leipzig. Math.-Phys. Cl. Ber. Verh. **12**:1–50. 1860.

SELBY, AUGUSTINE D. Some diseases of orchard and garden fruits. Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 79:97–141. 1897.

——— A condensed handbook of the diseases of cultivated plants in Ohio. Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 121:1–69. 1900.

——— Fall and early winter injuries to orchard trees and shrubbery by freezing. Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 192:129–148. 1908.

SORAUER, PAUL. Sonnenrisse. *In* Handbuch der Pflanzenkrankheiten, 3d ed. **1**:644. 1909.

STEWART, F. C., ROLFS, F. M., AND HALL, F. H. A fruit-disease survey of western New York in 1900. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 191:291–331. 1900.

WINKLER, ALBERT. Über den Einfluss der Aussenbedingungen auf die Kälteresistenz ausdauernder Gewächse. Jahrb. wiss. Bot. **52**:467–506. 1913.

OCTOBER, 1916 BULLETIN 383

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

THE PINE BARK BEETLE

WILBERT A. CLEMENS

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University)
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

THE PINE BARK BEETLE

(*Ips pini* Say)

Order, *Coleoptera* Family, *Ipidae*

WILBERT A. CLEMENS

The pine bark beetle, *Ips pini* Say, first attracted the attention and interest of the writer in the summer of 1912, in the Georgian Bay region at Go-Home Bay, where various stages of the insect were to be found in practically every recently fallen white pine tree. Early in the season of 1913 several badly infested logs were found in the vicinity of Ithaca, New York, and at that time the writer began a study of this beetle for the purpose of obtaining details of its life history and habits. The investigations extended over a period of three years, during which time many infested pines have been examined and the habits and stages of the insect observed in considerable detail. In this bulletin an attempt is made to present these details as they have been found during this period of study.

HISTORICAL

The pine bark beetle was first described by Thomas Say (1827).[1] Many years later Fitch (1858) gave a brief description of the galleries made by it in the bark of pine. Still later Packard (1890) briefly described the beetle and its galleries. Hopkins (1893a: 139) found the beetle very abundant in West Virginia. He named the trees attacked by it in that State, listed its enemies, and presented definite data regarding the times of the year at which he found adults, larvæ, and eggs. He subsequently (1899) made numerous references to the beetle and gave additional data concerning it.

Felt (1906) gives the most extended discussion of the insect that the writer has found. He describes the adult, gives a brief account of its life history and habits, discusses its distribution and the amount of injury it causes in New York State, and offers suggestions concerning methods of control. The article is accompanied by good illustrations.

SYNONYMY

The pine bark beetle belongs to the order Coleoptera, suborder Rhyncophora, family Ipidae, subfamily Ipinae (Swaine, 1909). The genus was formerly known as *Tomicus*, but the synonymy according to Swaine (page 77 of reference cited) gives the name *Ips* De Geer (1775) priority. The species *pini* was described by Say (1827).

---

[1] **Dates in parenthesis refer to literature cited, page 398.**

The following synonymy is that given by Swaine (page 125 of reference cited):

pini Say

1826 Bostrichus. Say. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila. Jour. 5:257; ed. Lec. 2:319
1837 Tomicus. Kirby. Faun. Bor. Am. 4:191
1841 Tomicus. Harris. Ins. N. E. p. 74
1852 Tomicus. Harris. Rep't Ins. Inj. Veg. p. 78
1858 Tomicus. Fitch. Nox. Ins. N. Y. 4th Rep't, p. 722, 751
1868 Bostrichus. Zimmerman. Am. Ent. Soc. Trans. 2:147
1868 Tomicus. Leconte. Am. Ent. Soc. Trans. 2:163
1876 Tomicus. Leconte. Am. Phil. Soc. Proc. 15:363, 365
1877 Tomicus. Provancher. Faun. Ent. Can. 1:570
1878 Tomicus. Hubbard & Schwarz. Am. Phil. Soc. Proc. 17:666
1888 Tomicus. Schwarz. Ent. Soc. Wash. Proc. 1:80, 149, 175
1890 Tomicus. Packard. U. S. Ent. Com'n, 5th Rep't, p. 713–14, 858, fig. 247.
1893 Tomicus. Hopkins. W. Va. Agric. Exp. Sta. Bul. 31, p. 139; Bul. 32, p. 212
1894 Tomicus. Hopkins. Can. Ent. 26:280
1899 Tomicus. Hopkins. W. Va. Agric. Exp. Sta. Bul. 56, p. 342, 343, 422, 445
1899 Tomicus. Hopkins. U. S. Div. Ent. Bul. 21, p. 16
1900 Ips. Smith. Cat. Ins. N. J. p. 363
1901 Tomicus. Felt. N. Y. Forest, Fish & Game Com'n Rep't, 7:487–88, fig. 7
1903 Tomicus. Gillette. Col. Agric. Rep't, 24:117
1906 Tomicus. Felt. N. Y. State Mus. Mem. 8, 2:334, 338, 351–54, 359, 376, fig. 70, 71

dendatus Sturm.

1826 Tomicus. Sturm. Cat. p. 76, t. 4, fig. 30
1876 =pini Say. Leconte. Am. Phil. Soc. Proc. 15:426

pallipes Sturm.

1826 Tomicus. Sturm. Cat. p. 76
1876 =pini Say. Leconte. Am. Phil. Soc. Proc. 15:426

praefrictus Eich.

1867 Tomicus. Eichhoff. Berl. Ent. Zeit. p. 401
1876 =pini Say. Leconte. Am. Phil. Soc. Proc. 15:365

DESCRIPTIONS

The adult

The following is the description of the adult (Plate xx, 2 and 3) as given by Say (1827):

> Dark chesnut; elytra excavated at tip, each about four toothed.
>
> *Body* somewhat hairy, chesnut brown: *head* with minute elevated points: *antennæ* pale rufous: *thorax* punctured, more particularly hairy before, and on each side; before the middle, with numerous small elevated points, more acute towards the anterior margin: *elytra* more particularly hairy each side, with striæ of transverse punctures; interstitial lines impunctured; tip truncated obliquely, and excavated; the exterior edge on each side, with four denticulations, of which the second from above is the largest, and the inferior one is smallest, and most acute; there are sometimes two very small ones above, near the suture.
>
> Length 3/20 of an inch.
>
> This species is very closely allied to *B. exesus*. It is very destructive to many species of pine. Mr. Z. Collins informs me that it depredates on the larch, (*Pinus pendula*, ? Aiton.) Dr. J. Mease recently exhibited to me some sections of limbs of the silver-pine (*Pinus strobus*) trees, which decorate the public squares of this city, now discovered to be seriously injured by the attacks of this insect.

The characters that distinguish this beetle from all other species of Ips are, (1) the four teeth along the margin of the excavation of each elytrum (fig. 62), and (2) the size, the beetles being about 4 millimeters long. Dr. Felt has figured the teeth, the tibiæ, the antennæ, and the proventriculus.

It is rather difficult to distinguish the sexes by external characters. The only characters that appear to hold at all are: (1) the difference in size of the individuals, the females being slightly larger as a rule than the males; and (2) the size of the teeth along the excavation of the elytra, and even this does not hold in all cases. As a rule, the second and third teeth — that is, the two middle ones of the elytrum — are considerably longer and stouter in the male than in the female. It has been found that by using these characters the sexes can be distinguished with almost entire accuracy. The ultimate distinction, of course, is in the internal reproductive organs. These are shown in figures 63 and 64.

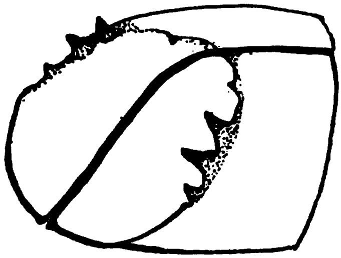


FIG. 62. ARRANGEMENT OF TEETH ALONG MARGIN OF EXCAVATION OF DISTAL ENDS OF ELYTRA. ENLARGED

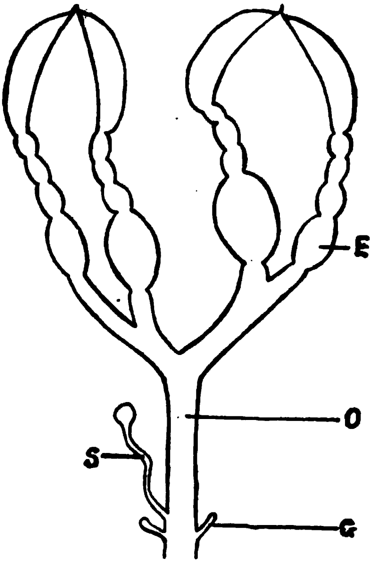


FIG. 63. REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS OF FEMALE

E, Egg tube; O, oviduct; S, receptaculum seminis; G, gland. Enlarged

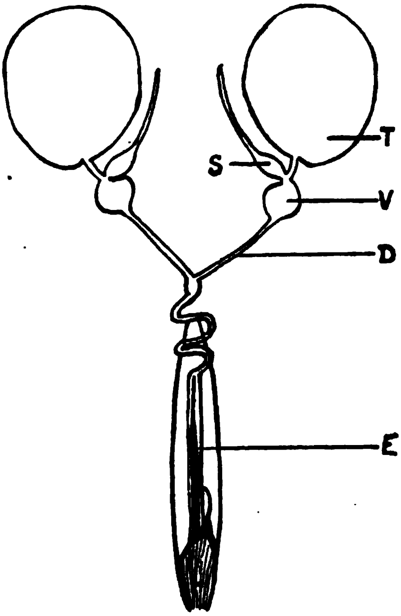


FIG. 64. REPRODUCTIVE ORGANS OF MALE

T, Testis; S, gland; V, seminal vesicle; D, vas deferens; E, ejaculatory apparatus. Enlarged

The egg

The egg is elliptical in shape and about 0.75 millimeter long. It has a smooth, glistening surface and is a beautiful pure white in color.

The larva

The larva when it hatches is a small grub 1 millimeter in length (Plate XX, 1). The mature larva reaches a length of 4 millimeters. The body is a pure glistening white, often tinged with reddish brown due to the food material in the alimentary canal. The head is strongly chitinized and is light brown in color. The body is arcuate, wrinkled, and covered with scattered white hairs. The thoracic segments are larger than the segments of the abdomen. The ventral surface of the thorax is flat, and shows knob-like enlargements laterally in the positions of the legs. The mouth parts consist of labium, maxillæ, and mandibles.

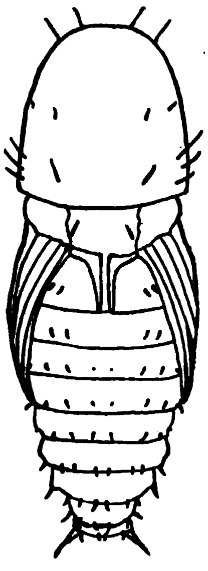


FIG. 65. PUPA, DORSAL VIEW. ENLARGED

The pupa

The pupa (fig. 65) is slightly over 3 millimeters in length and is pure white in color. The head is bent forward. The wings, shorter than the body, are turned beneath the body so that the tips meet ventrally and thus the dorsal surface of the abdomen is exposed. The abdomen ends in a pair of divaricate spines. The body is covered with small yellow bristles — six on the head, four prominent ones along the anterior margin of the prothorax, four more just posterior to these and eight along the posterior margin, two pairs on the dorsal surface of both meso- and meta-thorax, and eight along the posterior margin of each abdominal segment.

DISTRIBUTION

This species is common and widely distributed. Apparently it was first known in the vicinity of Philadelphia, but it has since been reported in twelve States — namely, Washington, Oregon, Idaho, Colorado, Michigan, West Virginia, Maryland, Maine, Pennsylvania, New York, New Jersey, and Massachusetts — and in two provinces of Canada, namely, Ontario and Quebec. The species thus inhabits the transitional and Canadian faunal zones ranging from the Pacific to the Atlantic and from about 37° to 55° north latitude. The distribution is shown in the table on the opposite page:

DISTRIBUTION OF IPS PINI SAY

Locality	State or province	Date	Collector or authority	Host	Reference
Philadelphia	Pennsylvania	1826	Say	Many species of pine	Acad. Nat. Sci. Phil. Journ. 5:257
New York to Cumberland-house		1837	Kirby		Fauna Bor. Amer. 4:191
	Massachusetts	1841	Harris		Ins. Mass., p. 74
New England		1842	Harris	Larch, white pine, pitch pine	Ins. N. E., p. 74
	New York	1858	Fitch	Pine, larch	Ins. N. Y., 4th Rept., p. 722, 751
Atlantic States, Canada, Oregon		1868	Le Conte		Amer. Ent. Soc. Trans. 2:163
Northern and western parts of Atlantic district		1876	Le Conte		Amer. Ent. Soc. Proc. 15:365
From Canada to Hudson Bay Territory	Quebec	1877	Provancher		Fauna Ent. Can. 1:570
Port Huron (Lower peninsula of Michigan)	Michigan	1878	Hubbard and Schwarz		Amer. Phil. Soc. Proc. 17:666
Marquette (Lake Superior region)	Michigan	1878	Hubbard and Schwarz		Amer. Phil. Soc. Proc. 17:643
Vicinity of Washington, D. C.		1888	Schwarz	Pinus inops	Ent. Soc. Wash. Proc. 1:80
	Maine	1890	Packard	Pine woods	U. S. Ent. Comm., 5th Rept., p. 714
Rocky Mountains of Colorado		1890	Packard	Abies menziesii	U. S. Ent. Comm., 5th Rept., p. 714
Rist Canon	Colorado	1891	Gillette		Colo. State Bd. Agr. Rep't. 24:117
Six counties of West Virginia		1893	Hopkins	All pines, norway spruce, black spruce	W. Va. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 31:139; Bul. 32:212
Spokane	Washington	1899	Hopkins	Lodgepole pine	U. S. Div. Ent. Bul. 21, p. 16
Moscow	Idaho	1899	Hopkins	Yellow pine	U. S. Div. Ent. Bul. 21, p. 16
Newark and other places	New Jersey	1900	Smith	Pine, spruce	Ins. N. J., p. 363
Trenton	Ontario	1904	Evans		Ent. Soc. Ont., 35th Ann. Rept., p. 85
Widely distributed	New York	1906	Felt	White pine, tamarack	N. Y. State Mus. Mem. 8:2:351–352
Ithaca	New York	1906	Swaine		Thesis, Cornell Univ.
Georgian Bay	Ontario	1912	Clemens	White pine	
Ithaca	New York	1913–15	Clemens	White pine, pitch pine	

HOSTS

Dr. Hopkins reports that in the State of West Virginia all species of pine are attacked by *Ips pini*, as well as black spruce and norway spruce. He reports also that in Washington the beetle was found in lodgepole pine and in Idaho in yellow pine. Harris and Fitch report it as attacking larch, and Packard as attacking *Abies menziesii* in Colorado. In the vicinity of Ithaca it has been found only in white pine and pitch pine. It is probable, therefore, that this beetle attacks all species of pine in the Canadian and transitional zones, as well as black spruce, norway spruce, *Abies menziesii*, and larch.

LIFE HISTORY

Hibernation

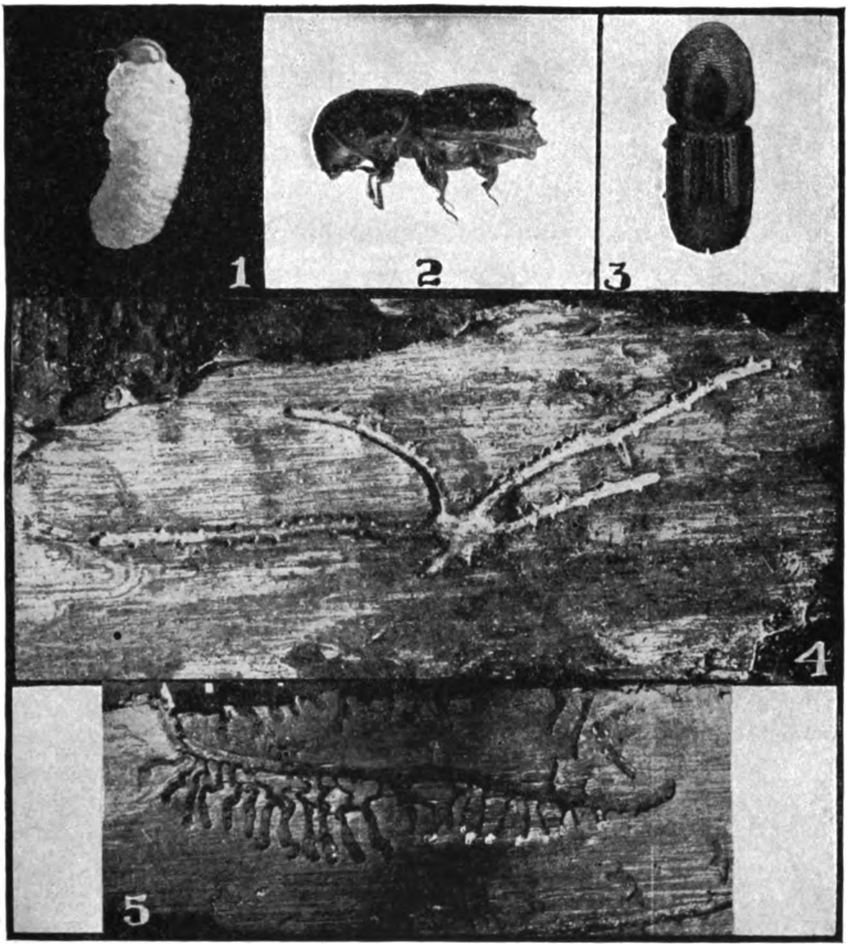
The insect usually passes the winter in the adult stage. In the vicinity of Ithaca it has been found in hibernation as adult only, but Dr. Hopkins reports that bark beetles, apparently of many species, winter in the larval and pupal stages as well. The larvæ of *Ips caelatus* Eich. have been found in hibernation, and so it should not be impossible for *Ips pini* to winter in the immature stage in this region.

The beetles hibernate in the bark. Usually no trace of the cambium remains at the end of the season, and the space between the wood and the bark is filled with chips, sawdust, and excreta of larvæ and adults of the bark beetles, and of larvæ of cerambycid, buprestid, and other beetles. Tunnels are bored in the bark, and in spring the beetles make their exit through round holes 1.5 millimeters in diameter (Plate XXI, 3).

Migration takes place early in spring after the first few warm days. On May 9, 1914, a number of beetles were found just beginning to enter the bark of a fallen white pine. Again on April 30, 1915, a log was found in which the beetles had finished the nuptial chambers and the females had just commenced the galleries. This infestation probably began on April 27 or 28. The maximum air temperature during the week of May 2 to 9, 1914, averaged 70° F., while the week previous it averaged 57° F. In 1915 during the week of April 23 to 30 the average maximum air temperature was 82° F., while the week previous it was 62° F. Thus there appears to be a distinct relationship between the temperature and the time of emergence of the beetles from hibernation.

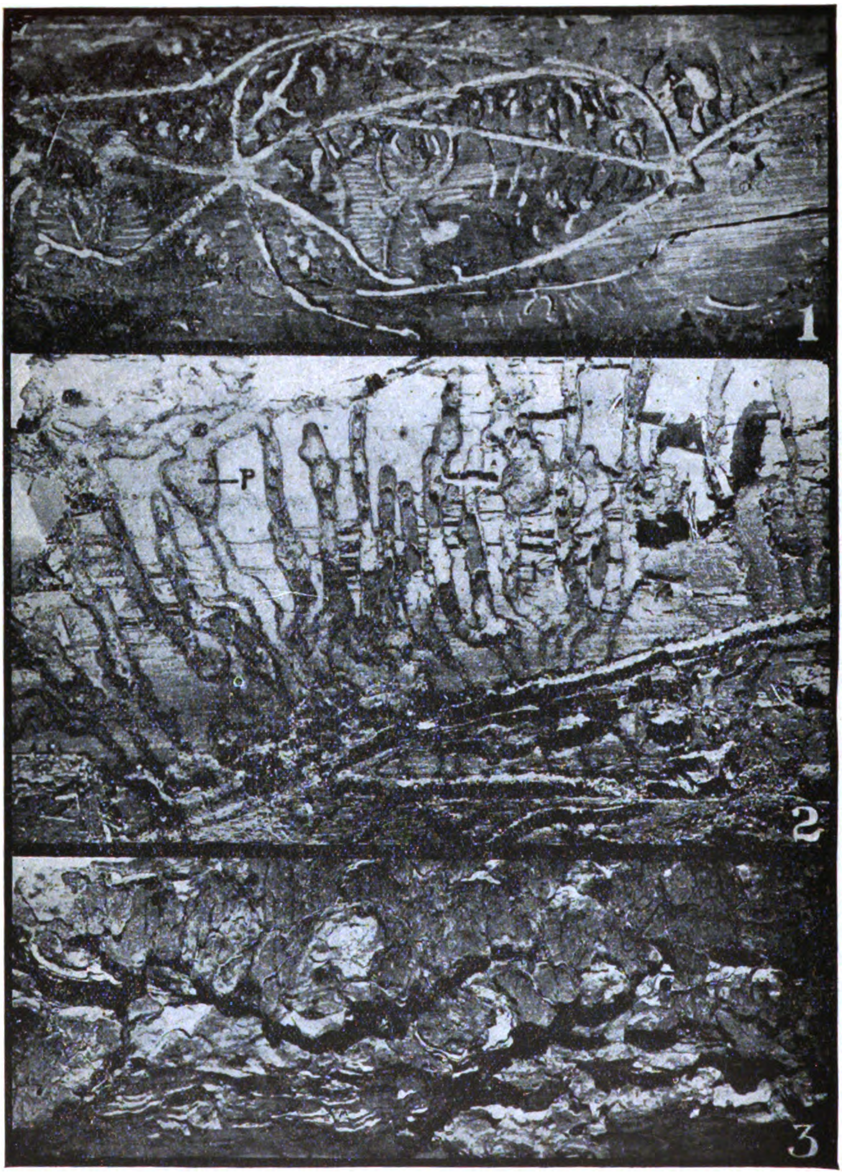
Attack

The beetles have never been observed to leave a tree nor observed in flight. Dr. Hopkins reports swarms of bark beetles in West Virginia on April 30 and May 4, 1893, but no mention is made of *Ips pini* although *Ips cacographus* is recorded.



IPS PINI SAY AND ITS WORK

1, Larva. Enlarged
2, Adult, lateral view. Enlarged
3, Adult, dorsal view. Enlarged
4, White pine log with bark removed, showing nuptial chamber, primary galleries, and egg niches
5, Primary gallery, with secondary, or larval, galleries in early stages



WORK OF IPS PINI SAY

1. Work of *Ips pini* on the wood beneath the bark of a white pine log
2. Work of *Ips pini* on the inner surface of white pine bark. P, a pupal chamber, with an exit hole just above
3. Entrance and exit holes on outer surface of white pine bark

Just how the beetles find new feeding and breeding grounds is not known, but possibly they are attracted by the resinous odor of an injured tree. The odor of a newly fallen pine is discernible to a person for a considerable distance, and it is not inconceivable that bark beetles can detect this odor at much greater distances. On June 1, 1915, a white pine log which had fallen in April was sawed up and placed in a cage about 8 by 3 by 3 feet in size, which was covered with cheesecloth and left out in the open near the insectary at Cornell University. From June 7 to June 15, over one hundred specimens of *Monohammus scutellatus* were collected from the netting on the outside of the cage. During the first week in July a number of *Ips pini* adults were also collected on the outside of the cage. There seems to be no doubt that these beetles were attracted by the odor of these logs.

Usually the infestation is severe. In the bark of a white pine log 7 feet long and about 4 inches in diameter forty entrance holes were counted, which would mean from one hundred and twenty-five to one hundred and fifty beetles in this small log. Settling on a tree, the beetles run over the bark as though making a general survey, but very soon begin to bore into the bark. The part of the tree usually selected is the upper part of the trunk, where the bark is of medium thickness, as well as the larger limbs. A male usually starts the burrow and is closely followed by a female. The entrance hole is perfectly round, 1.5 millimeters in diameter. When the sapwood is reached a chamber from 6 to 8 millimeters wide and 2 millimeters deep is made between the wood and the outer bark. This is known as the nuptial chamber (Plate xx, 4), and here mating takes place.

The conclusion that the nuptial chamber is the mating place is based on three facts: (1) Mating has never been observed on the exterior of the log, although hundreds of beetles have been kept under observation both in the open and after being placed on pieces of white pine in the laboratory. (2) A long series of attempts were made to find the beetles in copula in the nuptial chamber. Males were placed on pieces of white pine, and after they had constructed the nuptial chamber one or two females were introduced into the openings. By the aid of slits made with a sharp knife the bark could be raised, exposing the chamber, and then replaced and held in position by means of pins or thumb tacks. Only once was any evidence obtained. This time a male was found with the penis everted. (3) Young beetles have been taken either from the pupal chamber or from burrows leading from this chamber, and placed on pieces of pine. These certainly had had no opportunity to copulate and they did not do so on the outside of the fresh pieces of pine. Yet these beetles reared young. From these three circumstances the evidence seems strong that the nuptial chamber is the place of copulation.

Occasionally a female starts a burrow. If a male follows, the usual nuptial chamber and galleries are made; but if no male enters, the nuptial chamber is omitted and the female burrows along for a distance without depositing eggs, and apparently later abandons the gallery.

From the nuptial chamber the female makes a tunnel running longitudinally of the trunk either up or down. This tunnel is known as the adult, or primary, gallery. It is cylindrical in form and about 2 millimeters in width — just large enough for the beetle to work in comfortably. In the meantime other females may enter, usually but two or three, and after mating they too start galleries; so that from the nuptial chamber from three to five galleries may extend out (Plate XX, 4). The male is thus polygamous. He remains at the entrance as though on guard, and pushes out the sawdust and excreta as it accumulates in the nuptial chamber from the galleries. He is stationed with the head inward and the excavation of the elytra toward the outside. In transferring the sawdust to the outside the beetle uses the legs, the excavation of the elytra, and the stiff hairs on the ventral surface of the body. On slight disturbances the flattened excavation is placed almost level with the outer margin of the bark, thus blocking the entrance into the burrow; but when touched with a twig or a pencil the beetle runs down one of the galleries and is found far in the gallery with the female when the bark is stripped off.

As the female constructs the gallery she makes small niches in the sides. In each niche she places an egg, and then packs in sawdust until the opening is even with the wall of the gallery, so that from the interior of the tunnel scarcely a sign of the niche can be distinguished. This habit is no doubt for the protection of the eggs from intruders that may gain access to the gallery. Niches may be placed on both sides of the tunnel, but are occasionally on one side only. When on one side only there is likely to be another gallery close alongside, and the female probably instinctively refrains from placing eggs on that side because the feeding area between these galleries would not be sufficient for the larvæ when they begin to tunnel and feed.

The primary galleries vary in length from 10 to 15 centimeters. The egg niches occur at regular intervals along these, varying in number from thirty-five to fifty-five per gallery. Some of the last niches have been found without eggs and the packing perfectly normal and undisturbed, indicating probably that the egg production had become exhausted. The egg-laying period is from twenty-five to thirty-five days and the rate of egg laying averages about one and one-half niches a day.

Along the course of the gallery there are found a few small holes in the roof leading to the outside, scarcely half a millimeter in diameter, possibly serving for ventilation or where some intruders have entered the gallery. Females are frequently found dead at the ends of their galleries, and occasionally the male is found dead at the entrance.

The new generation

The eggs hatch in five days at a temperature of 69° F. The young larvæ, on hatching, commence burrowing out into the cambium at right angles or obliquely from the primary gallery. The galleries thus made are known as the secondary, or larval, galleries or mines (Plate XX, 5). They may take an almost straight course or may be serpentine in form. When an infestation is severe they form a mass of interwinding mines. The sawdust and excreta are not removed but are packed in behind the larva as it works along.

The larval gallery is from 1 to 3 centimeters in length, with a width of 0.75 millimeter at the beginning and gradually enlarging as the larva increases in size until at the termination it is 1.75 millimeters in width. It ends in an enlargement about 5 millimeters wide, varying much in shape, which is known as the pupal chamber, for here the larva pupates (Plate XXI, 2).

The pupal period lasts about five days. The pupa becomes very active when exposed, moving its abdomen violently and wriggling out of the pupal chamber very quickly. After transformation the beetle remains in the pupal chamber for about four or five days, judging from the time required for the coloration to develop, and then it usually works in the cambium area for some time before emerging. Thus beetles of the new generation may sometimes be found in the log before the females of the first generation have finished egg laying. This apparently leads to a mixing of the generations, for the beetles of the new generation do not all leave the log at the same time. It has been found, at least where logs have been caged, that a half dozen or a dozen beetles would appear on the inside of the cage each day. Some of these reentered uninjured parts of the log from which they had emerged, and there brought up a new brood. It would seem, then, that the beetles of the new generation emerge in small numbers at a time and go off singly or in small companies to new breeding places. This view is supported by the fact that a few beetles would appear daily on the outside of the cage. At Ithaca there are at least two generations and under very favorable conditions there may be three. The beetles of the late generation, instead of emerging, work up into the bark and gradually become dormant as cold weather sets in.

DESTRUCTIVE POWER

The damage done by *Ips pini* is usually not of a serious character in itself. It has been reported as causing the death of certain pines and spruces, but these cases appear to be exceptional. The presence of pitch tubes is usually taken as evidence that a tree was attacked while living; but if a tree is attacked soon after it is felled, pitch tubes will be formed. However, this ability to cope with pitch, combined with the fact that the females instinctively make longitudinal galleries and so do not girdle the tree and thus endanger the food supply of their larvæ, would certainly indicate a possibility of serious damage being caused. The attacking of healthy trees may be a new tendency appearing in the habits of the beetle, or it may be that the ancestors attacked living conifers; but the habits of the species have been gradually changing, until now it is only when dead or dying trees cannot be found that the beetles return to the living. At any rate, normally it is only dying or recently dead trees that are attacked by this species.

Financial loss may be occasioned, then, in three ways as a result of the activities of the beetle: (1) by the attacking and killing of living trees; (2) by the attacking of injured trees which might otherwise have recovered; and (3) by opening the way for the entrance of fungi and ambrosia beetles, by which the log is soon rendered useless for lumber purposes.

CONTROL

Natural control

The pine bark beetle is kept under control by a number of natural agencies, such as the following:

1. A wet season makes it difficult for the beetles to work. The bark in time becomes wet and a considerable proportion of the larvæ fail to mature.

2. With this wet condition there develop fungi which seem to attack all stages of the insect.

3. Predatory enemies are usually common. At Ithaca, *Thanasimus dubius* Fab. have been found running over the logs, and in two instances were observed to devour adult *Ips pini*. *Enoclerus quadriguttatus* Oliv. are common on the logs. Running over the logs are usually a number of black carpenter ants, and one day a beetle was picked up with a pair of tweezers and offered to an ant, which readily accepted the prey. So possibly these large ants are important enemies. Several times, in pulling back the bark, partly eaten *Ips pini* adults have been found with *Cylistrix cylindricus* Payk. beside them. Whether or not these beetles preyed upon the pine bark beetles is difficult to say. Predacious staphylinid larvæ and adults, *Xantholinus cephalus* Serv. and *Quedius laevigatus* Gyll., are common in the burrows and no doubt devour eggs and larvæ. The following beetles have been taken in the burrows of *Ips pini*, some of which may be merely associates: *Platysoma coarctatus* Lec., *Hypophloeus*

parallelus Melsh., *Dryophthorus corticalis* Say, *Cossonus* sp., *Brontes dubius* Fab., *Deltometopus amoenicornis* Say, *Geodromicus strictus* Fauv. One species of Hemiptera, *Dufourielles ater* Dufour, has been taken in the burrows and may be predacious. Dr. Hopkins reports staphylinid larvæ, *Homolota* sp. (Staphylinidae), and clerid larvæ, *Hypophloeus parallelus* Melsh. (Tenebrionidae), as predacious on *Ips pini*, and also two clerids taken on trees infested with *Ips pini* and *Ips caelatus* and probably predacious on these, *Trichodes simulator* and *Clerus quadriguttatus*. Under the elytra and in the excavations of the elytra are frequently found mites; just how much injury these do to the beetles is difficult to say. Also under the elytra are very frequently found clusters of nematode worms. These are about 0.75 millimeter long and are attached by means of suckers at the end. There are usually two or four clusters attached between the first and second, and the third and fourth, abdominal segments. These have not been found within the bodies of the beetles, and here again it is difficult to say what harm, if any, is done.

4. Parasites are probably numerous. It is impossible to remove larvæ and pupæ from a log and keep them for the purpose of rearing parasites from them. The best that can be done is to place the logs in cages covered with cheesecloth, catch all insects that emerge from the logs, and judge which are likely to be parasites. In this way the following parasites have been obtained: Hymenoptera, *Roptrocerus eccoptogaster* Ratz., *Spathius* sp., *Microbracon* sp., and a chalcid; Diptera, *Agromyzidae* sp. and *Phyllomyza* sp. Dr. Hopkins reports one parasite named *Lochites* sp. b.

Artificial control

Removal of the bark will cause the death of all larvæ and pupæ of the pine bark beetle. If a little care is taken in the removal and the bark is burned immediately, a large number of the adults may also be destroyed. Removal and burning of the bark in winter where adults are known to be in hibernation will do much to lessen attacks in the season following. Where water is available the placing of newly felled logs in the water will prevent injury by the beetles.

COMMON ASSOCIATES

Beetles commonly found associated with *Ips pini* are as follows:

(1) In the part of the tree where *Ips pini* works: *Monohammus scutellatus* Say, *Rhagium lineatum* Oliv., *Pytho americanus* Kirby, *Ips longidens* Swaine, *Pityogenes* sp., buprestid species.

(2) In other parts of the tree: All the above have been found, and in addition the following: *Ips caelatus* Eich., *Ips calligraphus* Germ., *Gnathotrichus materiarius* Fitch, *Hylurgops pinifex* Fitch, *Monohammus confusor* Kirby.

LITERATURE CITED

Felt, E. P. Pine bark beetle. *In* Insects affecting park and woodland trees. New York State Mus. Mem. 8:2:351–354. 1906.

Fitch, Asa. Pine bark-beetle, Tomicus Pini, Say. *In* Fourth report on the noxious and other insects of the State of New York, p. 722–723, 751. 1858.

Hopkins, A. D. Catalogue of West Virginia Scolytidæ and their enemies. West Virginia Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 31:119–168. 1893 (a).

———— Catalogue of West Virginia forest and shade tree insects. West Virginia Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 32:169–251. 1893 (b).

———— Report on investigations to determine the cause of unhealthy conditions of the spruce and pine from 1880–1893. West Virginia Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 56:195–461. 1899.

Packard, A. S. The pine bark-beetle. *In* Insects injurious to forest and shade trees. U. S. Ent. Comm. Rept. 5:713–715. 1890.

Say, Thomas. Bostrichus pini. *In* Descriptions of new species of coleopterous insects inhabiting the United States. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philadelphia. Journ. 5:257. 1827.

Swaine, J. M. Catalogue of the described Scolytidae of America, north of Mexico. New York State Mus. Bul. 134:76–159. 1909.

DECEMBER, 1916 BULLETIN 384

CORNELL UNIVERSITY AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

SOME EFFECTS OF OXYGEN AND CARBON DIOXIDE ON NITRIFICATION AND AMMONIFICATION IN SOILS

J. K. PLUMMER

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, JR., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, JR., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, JR., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
LEX R. HESLER, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE
Review of earlier investigations 403
Scope of present work 404
Relation of oxygen and carbon dioxide to nitrification in soils 405
  Method of investigation 405
  Effect of mixtures of oxygen and nitrogen on nitrification 409
    Nitrates produced 409
    Relation of oxygen consumed to nitrates formed 413
    Relation of carbon dioxide produced to nitrates formed 414
  Effect of mixtures of carbon dioxide and nitrogen on nitrification. 416
  Effect of mixtures of carbon dioxide and oxygen on nitrification. 417
  Effect of mixtures of carbon dioxide, oxygen, and nitrogen on nitrification 418
Relation of oxygen and carbon dioxide to ammonification in soils 421
  Method of investigation 421
  Effect of mixtures of oxygen and nitrogen on ammonification 422
  Effect of mixtures of oxygen and carbon dioxide on ammonification 424
  Effect of mixtures of carbon dioxide, oxygen, and nitrogen on ammonification 425
Summary 425
Bibliography 426

SOME EFFECTS OF OXYGEN AND CARBON DIOXIDE ON NITRIFICATION AND AMMONIFICATION IN SOILS[1]

J. K. Plummer

Since the theory of nitrification was advanced by Schlœsing and Müntz in 1878, the factors that affect the formation of nitrates and ammonia in soils have been studied rather extensively. It is generally believed that aëration is most commonly the limiting factor, yet there is little conclusive evidence to show whether the effect is due to the specific action of the gases contained in the soil atmosphere. Soils are likely to vary considerably in the relative quantities of oxygen and carbon dioxide held in the pore spaces, this variation depending largely on the relative quantities of easily decomposable organic matter present. The effect of oxygen and carbon dioxide on nitrification and ammonification in soils has been studied to a limited extent, but the evidence obtained seems insufficient to justify any very definite conclusions, as the following review shows.

REVIEW OF EARLIER INVESTIGATIONS

The present theory of nitrification was advanced by Schlœsing and Müntz (1877, a and b, and 1878).[2] These investigators were led to believe that the formation of nitrates is due to some form of life. They state, without presenting data to prove, that there is a direct chemical union of oxygen and nitrogen, brought about by ferments. The oxygen absorbed during the period of nitrification, they say, shows the supply to be sufficient for the oxidation that takes place.

Warington (1892) found that a liberal supply of oxygen is very favorable to nitrification.

Marchal (1893), while working with ammonifying bacteria, found that when the oxygen supply was sufficient some of the ammonifiers were purely aërobic in their behavior. When the conditions became anaërobic, some of these organisms, *Bacillus mycoïdes* especially, behaved as denitrifying bacteria and destroyed the nitrates. Marchal states the conditions best adapted to ammonification, which are thoro aëration, slightly alkaline media, and a temperature of 30° C.

Dehérain (1893) and King and Whitson (1901) compared soil stirred and soil not stirred, and found that nitrates were produced more rapidly in the stirred soils. This they attributed to better aëration.

---

[1] This investigation was conducted under the direction of Dr. James A. Bizzell.
[2] Dates in parenthesis refer to bibliography, page 426.

Godlewski (1896) observed, from a series of experiments with solutions, that a small amount of carbon dioxide is necessary for the action of the nitrate organism. He found also that the carbon of magnesium carbonate is not suitable for the functions of these bacteria.

Schlœsing (1897) found, after a study of nitrification in clay and in sandy soils, that, contrary to the accepted belief, nitrification went on as rapidly in compact clay soils as it did in coarser-grained soils, when the available water in each case was the same. The experiments of Fischer (1911) led to the same conclusion.

Coleman (1908) found, from a number of experiments, that a supply of carbon dioxide is necessary for both the nitrite and the nitrate organism.

Owen (1908), after a rather extended study of the question, decided that carbon dioxide has no effect on nitrification. In his work nutrient solutions and pure cultures were employed. Air free of carbon dioxide was forced thru 1000-cubic-centimeter flasks containing the solutions. Other flasks contained an atmosphere of pure carbon dioxide.

Stevens and Withers (1909, a and b, and 1910, a and b) concluded from their results that tests made in solutions are not adequate to indicate the behavior of nitrifying or of ammonifying bacteria as compared with their behavior in the soil. These authors state also that nitrification does not take place in sealed flasks.

Effront (1909) showed that ammonification may proceed either in a strictly anaërobic medium with the butyric ferment, or in an aërobic medium in the soil.

Kelley (1911) found, while working with the inundated soils of Hawaii, that ammonia is formed in these soils in their natural state; also, that swamp rice plants prefer this form of nitrogen.

Stoklasa (1912) states that the carbon dioxide evolved can be used as a measure of the bacterial activities in the soil. Thus, where there is greatest nitrification there will be found the greatest production of carbon dioxide.

Temple (1912) determined nitrification in twenty-six Georgia soils. In twenty-four of these, tankage was nitrified more readily than was ammonium sulfate or ammonium chloride. Various other materials produced the same results as did tankage. When calcium carbonate was used, ammonium sulfate and ammonium chloride produced as great a quantity of nitrates as did the other nitrogenous compounds.

SCOPE OF PRESENT WORK

The citations just given will suffice to show the diversity of opinion regarding the relation of oxygen and carbon dioxide to the formation of nitrates and ammonia in soils. The discrepancies are probably due in many cases to the lack of uniformity in experimental methods. Practically all previous investigators on this subject have used the solution culture method for determining the rate and extent of nitrification and ammonification. This method, however, does not seem suitable for the solution of the problem in question, since the diffusion and absorption of atmospheric gases is not the same as that which takes place when soil is used as the medium.

Again, there seems to be nothing in the recorded data to indicate whether the effects of these gases are specific or whether they are indirect. For example, is carbon dioxide toxic to the nitrification or does its presence merely mean a smaller quantity of oxygen? With the hope of answering questions of this character the following detailed study was undertaken.

RELATION OF OXYGEN AND CARBON DIOXIDE TO NITRIFICATION IN SOILS

Method of investigation

In order to maintain a constant quantity of gas, or even to approximate such a condition, it seemed necessary to conduct the nitrification in hermetically sealed vessels. Otherwise there would be rapid diffusion, and equilibrium would soon be established with gases of the atmosphere. Stevens and Withers (1910 b) state that nitrification does not proceed in sealed flasks. This conclusion is not in harmony with results obtained in the present work, as the data show.

Some preliminary experiments were found necessary in order to determine the best method for preparing the gas mixtures and confining them in the flasks.

In all the experiments 500-cubic-centimeter Erlenmeyer flasks were used. These were fitted with three-hole rubber stoppers, which had been previously boiled in paraffin to prevent absorption of the gases by the rubber. A glass tube bent to serve as a manometer when closed with mercury was placed in one hole of each stopper, so that any change in pressure could be readily observed. The other two holes of the stoppers were fitted with glass tubes, to allow the gases to be forced in and out. (Fig. 66, page 407.) One hundred milligrams of ammonium sulfate was added in solution to 100 grams of fresh soil to which had been added one-half gram of calcium carbonate. Moisture and nitrate determinations were made at the beginning of each experiment, and the water content was brought to 25 per cent, calculated to the dry weight of soil in all cases. Nitrates were determined by the well-known phenoldisulfonic acid method.

The water extracts were made according to the directions given by Schreiner and Failyer (1906). This method consists in adding 500 cubic centimeters of water to 100 grams of soil, stirring for three minutes, allowing to stand for twenty minutes, and filtering the supernatant liquid through a Pasteur-Chamberlain filter tube.

Oxygen and carbon dioxide were determined by absorption in alkaline pyrogallol and caustic potash, respectively, according to the methods described by Dennis (1913).

The soil used thruout the work was Dunkirk clay loam, taken from under sod directly to the east of the experimental plots on Caldwell Field at Cornell University. This soil was selected because of its low initial nitrate content.

The gas mixtures were made directly in the flasks. The volume of the soil and the water was calculated, and this volume was deducted from the total volume of the flasks. With mercury as the confining liquid, the necessary amount of oxygen to give the desired mixtures was forced in. Previous to adding the oxygen, black rubber gas tubing was placed over the ends of the outlet tubes. After the mixtures were made these were plugged with glass rods. The results of this experiment are given in table 1:

TABLE 1

Flask no.	Composition of gas mixture added		Time of incubation (days)	Nitrates (NO_3) (parts per million dry soil)	Composition of gas mixture at end of experiment	
	Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)			Oxygen (per cent)	Carbon dioxide (per cent)
1	95	5	14	115.9	30.2	8.4
2	95	5	14	142.7	29.4	9.8
3	95	5	21	204.5	22.4	5.8
4	95	5	21	238.9	20.8	6.0
5	38.2	61.8	14	182.5	23.6	10.9
6	38.2	61.8	14	282.0	12.6	8.3
7	38.2	61.8	21	609.4	10.0	8.0
8	38.2	61.8	21	551.9	5.6	12.0
9	25	75	14	302.9	18.1	8.7
10	25	75	21	493.5	8.3	10.0
11	25	75	21	501.5	8.0	11.6
12	21	79	14	267.1	10.1	5.4
13	21	79	14	232.1	12.0	5.2
14	21	79	21	365.0	12.7	5.9
15	21	79	21	414.5	11.0	6.8

The results obtained from this experiment show that nitrification takes place in closed flasks when calcium carbonate is added with the ammonium sulfate. At the end of fourteen days there was little difference in nitrates formed between the various concentrations of the gas mixtures. At the end of twenty-one days, however, the mixture containing 38.2

per cent of oxygen gave decidedly the highest quantity of nitrates. Just why there should not have been a greater difference due to variations in the oxygen content at the end of fourteen days cannot be explained, unless in those flasks there was greater diffusion thru the rubber connections. In flasks 3 and 4, less carbon dioxide was found at the end of three weeks than in flasks 1 and 2 at the end of two weeks. It seems improbable that there should be so much greater proportionate losses in oxygen content in flasks 1, 2, 3, and 4, with a low nitrate content, than in flasks 7 and 8, which had a higher nitrate content than any in the series. This would suggest that diffusion of the gases had taken place, and it would seem that the greater diffusion had occurred in those flasks that contained the least nitrogen and the greatest amount of oxygen. This is quite reasonable, for in the flasks containing almost pure oxygen there would be a tendency for more nitrogen to diffuse, such flasks acting as a vacuum toward this element.

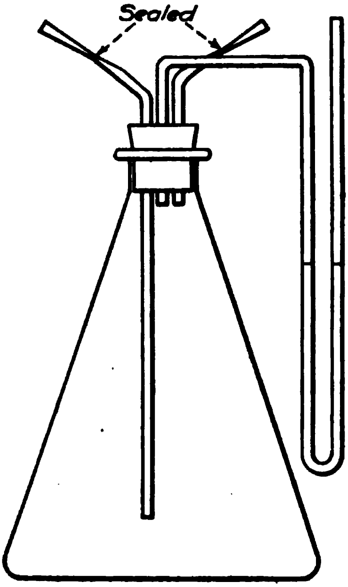


FIG. 66. FLASK USED IN EXPERIMENTS

An experiment was begun to determine whether diffusion occurred thru the rubber connections. In this experiment 95 per cent of oxygen was forced thru flasks fitted similarly to those the results from which are given in table 1 but containing nothing except the oxygen gas. The oxygen was forced thru the flasks for five minutes, at the end of which time samples of the gas leaving the flasks were collected and analyzed. The results are given in table 2:

TABLE 2

Flask no.	Per cent of oxygen at beginning of experiment	Per cent of oxygen at end of experiment	Per cent of oxygen lost
1	94.8	82.8	12.7
2	94.8	82.8	12.7
3	95.0	84.5	11.5
4	95.2	83.9	11.7

These results showed that this method could not be used, for there was a constant interchange of the gases in the flasks with those of the atmosphere.

It was then decided to use glass tubes drawn out to capillary size, and to seal them after the mixtures had been forced thru the flasks until the air had been displaced. The difficulty of getting a sample for analysis when the mixtures were made directly in the flasks made it necessary to devise some other mode of procedure.

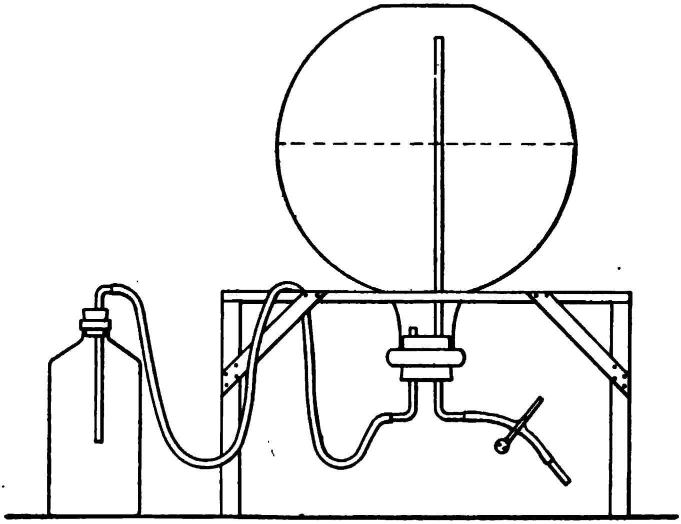


FIG. 67. GASOMETER USED IN EXPERIMENTS

In this experiment it was necessary to ascertain whether there was a loss in the gases thru the rubber stoppers, which had been boiled in paraffin. The exact procedure as given above was repeated, except that the tubes were drawn out and sealed after the flasks had been filled with oxygen (fig. 66). The results are given in table 3:

TABLE 3

Flask no.	Per cent of oxygen at beginning of experiment	Per cent of oxygen at end of 14 days
1	94.8	94.7
2	94.8	94.7
3	95.0	95.0
4	95.0	94.8

These results show that there is no diffusion of oxygen thru the rubber stoppers when they are coated with paraffin. This method of procedure was adopted in all the subsequent work.

The gasometer in which the mixtures were made is shown in figure 67.

Effect of mixtures of oxygen and nitrogen on nitrification

Nitrates produced

It having been found that nitrification would take place in sealed flasks with Dunkirk clay loam when lime was used, experiments were set up to study the effect of oxygen and nitrogen on nitrification. In each of the following experiments 100 grams of fresh soil, screened thru a 3-millimeter sieve, was used. Unless otherwise stated, 0.5 gram of calcium carbonate was mixed with each 100 grams of soil, to make the conditions most favorable for nitrification. The mixing was done all at one time — that is to say, the total amount of soil for the different mixtures was weighed out, and the calcium carbonate was mixed in with this. As in the other experiments, the water content was brought to 25 per cent, calculated to the dry weight of soil. One hundred milligrams of ammonium sulfate was added to the water put in. The soil was spread out on a large glass plate and the solution added in the form of a spray. The soil was then thoroly mixed, and placed in the flasks in 100-gram portions. Mercury was placed in the manometer tubes, which held strips of paper graduated in centimeters.

The gas mixtures were made in the gasometer shown in figure 67, and were forced into the flasks by raising the level bottle. In a number of instances the gas that had passed thru the flasks was analyzed. It was found that by forcing six liters of the gas mixture thru, practically all the atmospheric air had been displaced — this amount being twelve times the volume of the flasks. Rubber tubing that had been boiled in paraffin was placed on the delivery and exit tubes and clamped with stopcocks. The flasks were then placed in the incubator until equilibrium was established in pressure at the new temperature of 30° C. This usually required from ten to fifteen minutes. (It is recognized that there may have been slight diffusion of gases thru the rubber tubing, but this could not be avoided.) The cocks were momentarily opened in order to allow the increase in gas volume due to the rise in temperature to escape, after which the tubes were sealed. The treatments were made in quadruplets, two of which were analyzed at the end of fourteen days and the other two at the end of twenty-eight days. The results, given in tables 4 and 5, are the averages of from two to six determinations for each treatment. All the experiments were repeated at least twice, and some as many as four times. It was not always possible, however, to obtain exactly the same gas mixture in repeating the treatments. These differences in gas mixtures were small and are given exactly as the analysis showed at the beginning of the experiments. In some cases the difference in nitrate content between the duplicate flasks was greater than was found in those flasks with different gas mixtures, but this was rather unusual. The nitrates are given as increases due to the different treatments. These figures were obtained by subtracting the nitrate content calculated to dry soil, at the beginning, from the total at the end, of the various experiments. This method of calculation was permissible, since the nitrate content in the fresh soil was nearly the same in all cases. The averages of the results obtained with the oxygen-nitrogen mixtures are given in table 4:

TABLE 4

Composition of gas mixture added		Time of incubation (days)	Nitrates (NO_3) (parts per million dry soil)	Composition of gas mixture at end of experiment	
Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)			Oxygen (per cent)	Carbon dioxide (per cent)
21	79	14	323.1	1.6	9.3
21	79	28	368.8	None.	10.6
30	70	14	388.6	3.8	11.2
30	70	28	499.5	0.7	13.1
40	60	14	727.9	8.1	14.4
40	60	28	957.9	2.1	17.1
45	55	14	707.8	15.0	12.2
45	55	28	900.8	7.6	16.7
50	50	14	590.0	22.7	11.8
50	50	28	742.9	16.4	15.8
55	45	14	409.3	33.7	9.1
55	45	28	815.7	15.8	15.6
60	40	14	355.5	40.2	9.1
60	40	28	725.9	27.8	14.9
70	30	14	290.9	52.5	9.1
70	30	28	661.9	45.0	14.9
80	20	14	232.4	68.2	7.7
80	20	28	346.8	60.1	13.8
85	15	14	219.3	71.7	8.3
85	15	28	336.1	65.9	13.4
95	5	14	249.9	86.2	5.2
95	5	28	271.3	78.1	10.5

From the results shown in this table it can readily be seen that oxygen has a stimulating effect on nitrification. Beginning with the mixture containing 21 per cent of oxygen and 79 per cent of nitrogen (ordinary air), there are marked increases in the production of nitrates as the oxygen supply is increased until 40 per cent is reached. This holds good for both fourteen and twenty-eight days incubation. With 50 per cent of oxygen there are somewhat less nitrates formed than with 45 per cent of oxygen. As the supply of oxygen is increased beyond this point there is a rather regular decrease in nitrate production. It would thus seem that the gas mixtures containing from 40 to 45 per cent of oxygen are the most favorable to nitrification in this soil. These results show that the higher amounts of oxygen, while depressing the formation of nitrates, do not entirely prevent it. There are 73.2 parts per million less nitrates in the flasks containing 95 per cent of oxygen at the end of fourteen days than in the flasks containing ordinary air. The difference for twenty-eight days is 97.5 parts per million. This is not what would be expected, for it would seem that the nitrates produced during the first fourteen days would rarify the oxygen somewhat, and thus, the oxygen being further diluted with carbon dioxide, better conditions for nitrification would be obtained. There is no apparent explanation for this depressing effect.

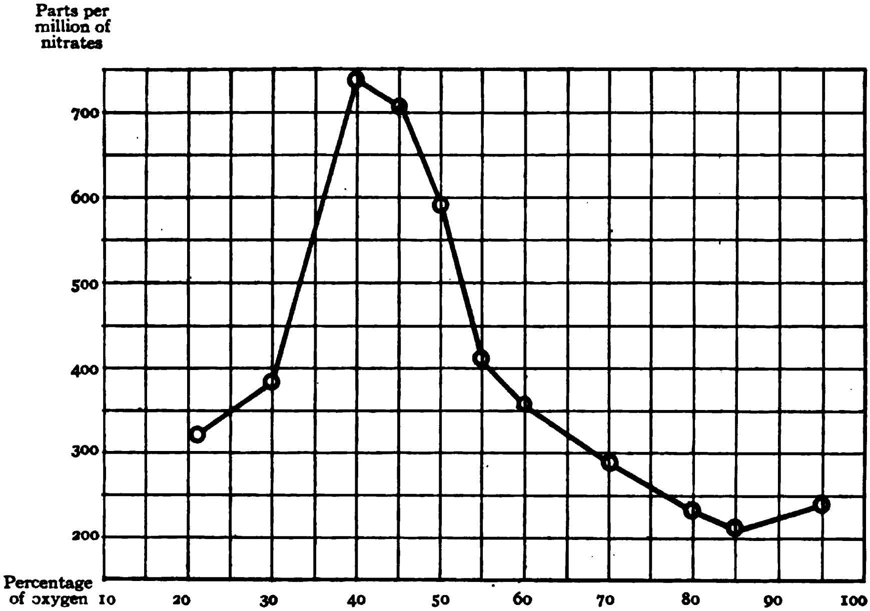


FIG. 68. PRODUCTION OF NITRATES WITH INCREASE IN OXYGEN CONTENT, AT THE END OF FOURTEEN DAYS

One noticeable point shown by the composition of the mixtures at the end of fourteen and of twenty-eight days is the large consumption of oxygen. In the flasks containing 21 per cent of oxygen at the beginning, there was only 1.6 per cent at the end of fourteen days and none at the end of twenty-eight days. In the flasks originally containing 40 per cent of oxygen, there was only 8 per cent and 2 per cent at the end of fourteen and of twenty-eight days, respectively. This loss of oxygen is always greater than the carbon dioxide produced, and increases regularly with the nitrates formed. The production of nitrates with increases in the oxygen content of the various gas mixtures at the end of fourteen days is shown graphically in figure 68.

The preceding results were obtained with soil to which ammonium sulfate and calcium carbonate had been added. It was decided to try oxygen and nitrogen mixtures with the fresh soil, without the addition of ammonium sulfate or calcium carbonate. The results are given in table 5:

TABLE 5

Composition of gas mixture added		Time of incubation (days)	Nitrates (NO_3) (parts per million dry soil)	Composition of gas mixture at end of experiment	
Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)			Oxygen (per cent)	Carbon dioxide (per cent)
21	79	14	99.3	8.2	6.1
21	79	14	95.2	9.6	5.9
31	69	14	117.6	14.5	7.6
31	69	14	117.6	15.6	8.8
43	57	14	152.4	22.0	10.5
43	57	14	194.8	21.8	10.1
48	52	14	147.0	29.3	10.6
48	52	14	152.4	27.7	11.0
52	48	14	135.5	32.5	9.5
52	48	14	148.9	34.3	9.8
58	42	14	117.6	42.3	8.9
58	42	14	108.6	43.7	9.4
63	37	14	95.2	48.3	10.0
63	37	14	95.2	49.1	8.8
69	31	14	95.2	53.1	8.9
69	31	14	95.2	52.2	9.0
76	24	14	83.0	62.3	8.6
76	24	14	83.0	61.6	8.8
93.5	6.5	14	53.9	84.0	4.3
93.5	6.5	14	50.4	85.1	3.8

In this case, as in the experiments in which lime and ammonium sulfate were added, there is a stimulating effect on nitrification caused by an increase in the oxygen content of the atmosphere in the flask. This increase is greatest in the mixtures containing from 43 to 52 per cent of oxygen. Tho the degree of nitrification is much less when there is no calcium carbonate nor ammonium sulfate, the differences in the two experiments run parallel.

The quantity of carbon dioxide evolved is also lower than in the corresponding experiments in which lime was used. This would tend to show that a basic condition is best suited for the production of this gas.

Relation of oxygen consumed to nitrates formed

The amount of oxygen not accounted for by the carbon dioxide formed plus the oxygen at the end of the experiment, was calculated to parts per million of oxygen (by weight) lost per 100 grams of dry soil. The weight of oxygen corresponding to that which went into the nitrates was calculated for the different mixtures. The results of these calculations, which were made from the averages of the oxygen-nitrogen treatments shown in table 4, are given in table 6:

TABLE 6

Composition of gas mixture added		Time of incubation (days)	Nitrates (NO_3) (parts per million dry soil)	Per cent of oxygen not recovered as such	Parts per million of oxygen and nitrogen found	Parts per million of oxygen not recovered as such
Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)					
21	79	14	323.1	10.3	250.4	165.2
21	79	28	368.8	10.4	285.8	166.4
30	70	14	388.6	14.8	301.6	321.9
30	70	28	499.5	16.3	387.1	372.8
40	60	14	727.9	17.1	564.1	522.2
40	60	28	957.9	20.8	742.4	635.3
45	55	14	707.8	17.8	548.5	611.5
45	55	28	900.8	20.7	698.1	711.2
50	50	14	590.0	13.0	457.2	496.4
50	50	28	742.9	17.8	575.4	680.6
55	45	14	409.3	13.4	317.2	562.7
55	45	28	815.7	20.1	630.0	844.2
60	40	14	355.5	10.7	275.4	490.3
60	40	28	725.9	17.3	562.4	793.9
70	30	14	290.9	6.8	225.1	369.2
70	30	28	661.9	10.1	512.9	531.6
80	20	14	232.4	4.1	180.9	250.5
80	20	28	346.8	6.2	268.3	378.8
85	15	14	219.3	3.0	169.9	194.6
85	15	28	336.1	5.7	252.1	369.8
95	5	14	249.9	3.8	193.6	275.6
95	5	28	271.3	6.9	200.3	500.4

It can readily be seen from the calculations given in table 6 that the oxygen consumed during the processes that went on in the flasks was greater than that required to form nitrates. With four exceptions this was the case; and these occurred where the oxygen supply was found to be limited. It seems to the writer that these results are consistent and that the excess is great enough to justify the conclusion that oxygen is used in other processes than in forming nitrates. The amount of oxygen not recovered by the analyses either as oxygen or as carbon dioxide is greatest when the nitrate production is at its maximum.

The results given in table 6 are shown graphically in figure 69.

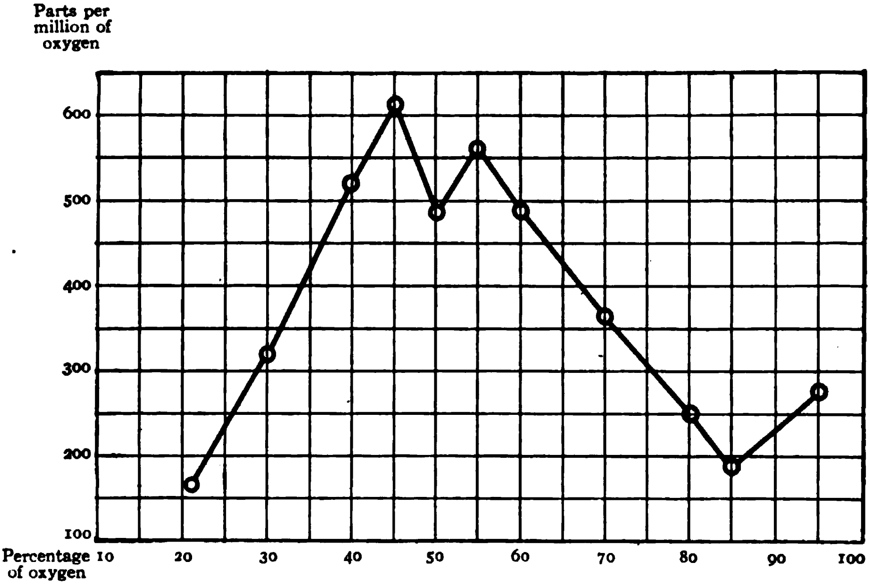


FIG. 69. OXYGEN FIXED BY BACTERIA WITH INCREASE IN OXYGEN CONTENT, AT THE END OF FOURTEEN DAYS

Relation of carbon dioxide produced to nitrates formed

Another interesting point brought out by table 4 is the production of carbon dioxide. The amount formed increases fairly regularly with the nitrates produced. This is in line with the work of Stoklasa (1912), who states that the carbon dioxide produced can be used as a measure of bacterial activity in soils. The amount of carbon dioxide formed as shown in table 4 can be better illustrated by computing the percentages found to parts per million formed by 100 grams of soil. This is done in a manner similar to that followed in making the oxygen calculations, computing first the volume occupied by the gas mixtures and then the volume of carbon dioxide produced. One cubic centimeter of carbon dioxide weighs .00198 gram. The results of such calculations taken from table 4 are given in table 7.

Tho ammonium sulfate was used as the nitrifiable material, the uniform increase of carbon dioxide formed with nitrates produced is entirely reasonable. The conditions in the flasks were the best possible for bacterial

TABLE 7

Composition of gas mixture added		Time of incubation (days)	Nitrates (NO_3) (parts per million dry soil)	Parts per million carbon dioxide produced by 100 grams of soil
Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)			
21	79	14	323.1	998.5
21	79	28	368.8	1,135.9
30	70	14	388.6	1,200.0
30	70	28	499.5	1,403.0
40	60	14	727.9	1,543.0
40	60	28	957.9	1,832.0
45	55	14	707.8	1,307.5
45	55	28	900.8	1,789.6
50	50	14	590.0	1,265.6
50	50	28	742.9	1,693.2
55	45	14	409.3	978.6
55	45	28	815.7	1,671.7
60	40	14	355.5	978.6
60	40	28	725.9	1,596.7
70	30	14	290.9	978.6
70	30	28	661.9	1,596.7
80	20	14	232.4	824.4
80	20	28	346.8	1,278.8
85	15	14	219.3	889.6
85	15	28	336.1	1,462.0
95	5	14	249.9	557.2
95	5	28	271.3	1,068.0

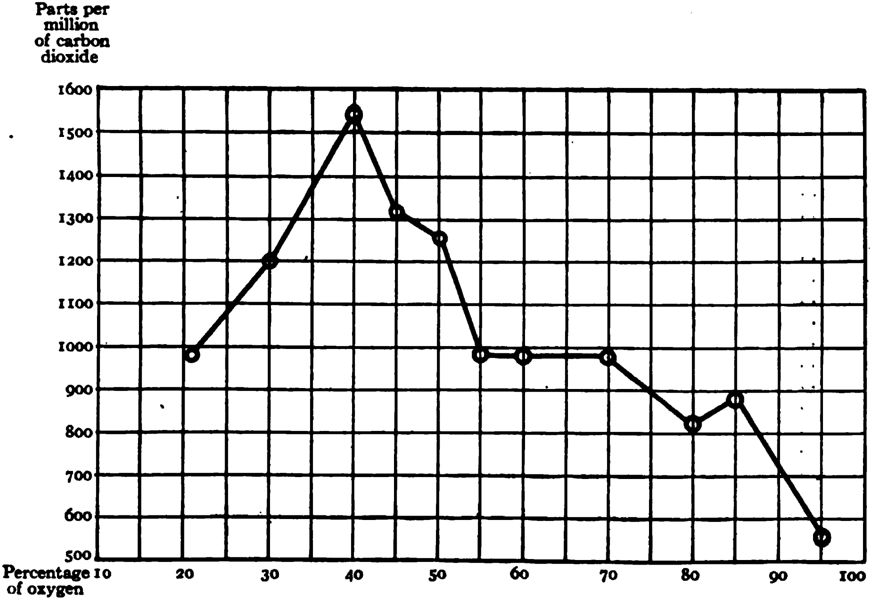


FIG. 70. PRODUCTION OF CARBON DIOXIDE WITH INCREASE IN OXYGEN CONTENT, AT THE END OF FOURTEEN DAYS

activities, and undoubtedly some of the nitrogen of the organic content of the soil was nitrified; hence the destruction of the organic matter. It is, then, reasonable to expect that where there is the greatest decomposition of such material — and such must be the case before the nitrogen can be converted to nitrates — there will be the greatest quantity of carbon dioxide formed.

The results shown in table 7 are plotted in figure 70.

Effect of mixtures of carbon dioxide and nitrogen on nitrification

The influence of oxygen-nitrogen mixtures on nitrification having been studied, it was decided to ascertain what would be the effect of mixtures of carbon dioxide and nitrogen. The nitrogen was obtained by forcing ordinary air thru a series of gas-washing bottles containing alkaline pyrogallol to remove the oxygen. In this way a very pure form of nitrogen was obtained, in some cases analyzing as high as 99.2 per cent nitrogen.

The results of an experiment with these mixtures are given in table 8. This experiment was repeated with essentially the same results.

TABLE 8

Composition of gas mixture added			Time of incubation (days)	Nitrates (NO_3) (parts per million dry soil)	Composition of gas mixture at end of experiment	
Oxygen (per cent)	Carbon dioxide (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)			Oxygen (per cent)	Carbon dioxide (per cent)
21	..	79	14	161.3	3.4	7.1
21	..	79	14	168.0	4.1	6.9
..	73	27	14	—14.6*	None	72.8
..	73	27	14	—14.6	None	73.2
..	61	39	14	—14.6	None	60.0
..	61	39	14	—14.6	None	60.5
..	52	48	14	—14.6	None	51.6
..	52	48	14	—14.6	None	51.7
..	40	60	14	—14.6	None	40.0
..	40	60	14	—14.6	None	39.8
..	30	70	14	—14.6	None	29.7
..	30	70	14	—14.6	None	29.8
..	24	76	14	—14.6	None	24.2
..	24	76	14	—14.6	None	23.9
..	99	..	14	—14.6	None	0.8
..	99	..	14	—14.6	None	0.6

*Minus sign denotes that there were less nitrates than at the beginning of the experiment.

From the results presented in table 8 it is quite evident that the mixtures composed of carbon dioxide and nitrogen are not favorable to nitrate formation in soils. There were 14.6 parts per million of nitrates at the beginning of the experiment, and in all cases there was only a trace at the end. The denitrifying bacteria apparently destroyed the nitrates present at the beginning.

Effect of mixtures of carbon dioxide and oxygen on nitrification

Certain concentrations of oxygen mixed with nitrogen appeared to increase the formation of nitrates beyond that which takes place in the atmosphere. The question arose, Does this hold true for oxygen when in association with carbon dioxide? Generally it is considered that the inert gas nitrogen plays no part in the actual formation of nitrates. Any appreciable variation between the results obtained with the same concentrations of oxygen diluted with nitrogen and with carbon dioxide, must be due to the latter gas. The experiments to ascertain the effect of mixtures of carbon dioxide and oxygen were conducted exactly as were those with the oxygen-nitrogen mixtures. The carbon dioxide used was of the highest purity, analyzing 99.8 per cent pure. The oxygen used contained 5 per cent of nitrogen. The average results obtained from these experiments are given in table 9.

It appears from table 9 that the maximum nitrate production resulted with the mixture composed of 60 per cent of carbon dioxide and 35 per cent of oxygen. With the oxygen-nitrogen mixtures the maximum quantity of nitrates was produced by the mixtures containing from 40 to 45 per cent of oxygen (table 4). Taking into account the experimental error, these results are therefore in close agreement with those of the experiments with the oxygen-nitrogen mixtures.

A point of interest brought out in table 9 is the lower amount of nitrates produced at the end of twenty-eight days with the mixture containing 75 per cent of carbon dioxide and 20 per cent of oxygen than was found at the end of fourteen days. A glance at the composition of the mixture at the end of each experiment shows that the oxygen supply was very low at the end of fourteen days — only 2 per cent — while at the end of twenty-eight days there was no oxygen. After this point is reached in the mixtures, as the amount of carbon dioxide increased the amount of nitrates produced decreased. In the mixture containing 90 per cent of carbon dioxide there were no nitrates formed, but those present at the beginning were destroyed. This indicates that denitrification had set in with the mixtures containing a low percentage of oxygen. Bréal (1892) and others have observed that the denitrifiers show their effect when the oxygen supply is low.

In general these results show little difference from those obtained with the oxygen-nitrogen mixtures as long as there is a supply of oxygen present. So it seems to be of little consequence whether the oxygen is diluted with nitrogen or with carbon dioxide for the production of nitrates in soils.

TABLE 9

Composition of gas mixture added			Time of incubation (days)	Nitrates (NO_3) (parts per million dry soil)	Composition of gas mixture at end of experiment	
Carbon dioxide (per cent)	Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)			Oxygen (per cent)	Carbon dioxide (per cent)
0.8	94.8	5.0	14	250.0	83.3	9.0
0.8	94.8	5.0	28	277.0	77.7	12.6
2.0	93.0	5.0	14	286.0	79.0	12.0
2.0	93.0	5.0	28	322.2	76.1	14.6
4.0	91.0	5.0	14	295.5	75.6	14.4
4.0	91.0	5.0	28	377.7	70.9	18.6
9.6	85.4	5.0	14	317.8	70.6	20.1
9.6	85.4	5.0	28	499.0	64.3	24.2
15.0	80.0	5.0	14	349.9	64.7	25.2
15.0	80.0	5.0	28	533.0	51.8	29.8
20.0	75.0	5.0	14	328.3	62.5	26.8
20.0	75.0	5.0	28	644.5	53.0	33.3
25.0	70.0	5.0	14	347.5	55.4	33.1
25.0	70.0	5.0	28	693.1	47.5	38.9
31.0	64.0	5.0	14	371.9	48.3	39.5
31.0	64.0	5.0	28	693.1	36.3	44.0
41.0	54.0	5.0	14	537.0	29.9	54.7
41.0	54.0	5.0	28	763.4	23.6	57.8
45.0	50.0	5.0	14	539.5	24.8	58.4
45.0	50.0	5.0	28	798.4	16.9	61.9
51.0	44.0	5.0	14	596.4	17.5	64.6
51.0	44.0	5.0	28	846.7	9.4	67.2
60.0	35.0	5.0	14	671.1	2.9	75.8
60.0	35.0	5.0	28	896.5	None	80.0
65.0	30.0	5.0	14	511.1	4.7	67.2
65.0	30.0	5.0	28	624.8	None	79.6
75.0	20.0	5.0	14	485.8	2.0	81.0
75.0	20.0	5.0	28	405.1	None	85.2
80.0	15.0	5.0	14	337.9	1.4	87.9
80.0	15.0	5.0	28	299.1	None	86.3
90.0	5.0	5.0	14	—36.5*	None	93.9
90.0	5.0	5.0	28	—30.1	None	94.1
93.0	2.0	5.0	14	—29.4	None	96.1
93.0	2.0	5.0	28	—36.5	None	95.6
99.0	....	....	14	—36.5	None	98.8
99.0	....	....	28	—36.5	None	99.2

*Minus sign denotes that there were less nitrates than at the beginning of the experiment.

Effect of mixtures of carbon dioxide, oxygen, and nitrogen on nitrification

Since the soil air is made up of various concentrations of oxygen, nitrogen, and carbon dioxide, varying mixtures of these gases were used in further study. The results are given in table 10.

TABLE 10

Composition of gas mixture added			Time of incubation (days)	Nitrates (NO_3) (parts per million dry soil)	Composition of gas mixture at end of experiment	
Carbon dioxide (per cent)	Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)			Oxygen (per cent)	Carbon dioxide (per cent)
0.5	20.9	78.7	14	382.4	1.0	11.2
0.5	20.9	78.7	28	452.1	None	13.8
1.0	20.8	78.7	14	423.7	1.2	12.5
1.0	20.8	78.7	28	480.0	None	14.9
2.5	20.5	77.0	14	423.7	1.0	14.2
2.5	20.5	77.0	28	547.0	None	16.7
5.0	20.0	75.0	14	366.5	0.9	15.4
5.0	20.0	75.0	28	478.7	None	19.4
8.0	19.3	72.7	14	340.1	0.6	17.7
8.0	19.3	72.7	28	374.1	None	24.0
10.0	19.0	71.0	14	315.3	0.6	17.7
10.0	19.0	71.0	28	372.8	None	19.7
15.0	17.9	67.1	14	304.4	0.5	21.0
15.0	17.9	67.1	28	337.9	None	24.0
20.0	16.8	63.6	14	282.2	0.1	26.0
20.0	16.8	63.6	28	324.4	None	26.8
30.0	14.7	55.3	14	210.0	0.2	33.8
30.0	14.7	55.3	28	310.7	None	36.8
35.0	13.4	51.1	14	174.0	None	38.8
35.0	13.4	51.1	28	240.6	None	39.8
44.0	11.8	45.0	14	163.3	None	47.7
44.0	11.8	45.0	28	86.1	None	46.5
49.0	10.7	40.3	14	166.6	None	47.7
49.0	10.7	40.3	28	70.2	None	46.5
55.0	9.5	35.3	14	9.2	None	58.8
55.0	9.5	35.3	28	— 8.3*	None	63.1
60.0	8.4	31.6	14	10.3	None	63.9
60.0	8.4	31.6	28	— 8.6	None	68.7
69.0	6.5	24.3	14	— 5.5	None	74.6
69.0	6.5	24.3	28	— 9.9	None	75.2
77.0	4.6	18.4	14	— 7.6	None	82.1
77.0	4.6	18.4	28	— 8.8	None	81.1
86.0	2.9	11.1	14	—14.3	None	88.3
86.0	2.9	11.1	28	— 9.1	None	88.6
98.0	0.4	1.6	14	—22.3	None	98.6
98.0	0.4	1.6	28	—22.3	None	98.7

*Minus sign denotes that there were less nitrates than at the beginning of the experiment.

The lower concentrations of carbon dioxide seem to have little effect on nitrification as shown in table 10. Increasing the amount of carbon dioxide above 30 per cent causes a noticeable reduction in nitrates formed. So long as the oxygen supply is about the same, the variations are slight, giving further evidence that oxygen is necessary to promote nitrification in soils. After the 30-per-cent limit of carbon dioxide is passed, no oxygen is found in the gas mixtures even after fourteen days of incubation. A steady decrease in nitrates is also noted beyond this limit, and when 44 per cent of carbon dioxide is reached there are less nitrates at the end of twenty-eight days than were found at fourteen days. Beyond 60 per cent of carbon dioxide denitrification occurred in all cases. Tho the nitrates were destroyed, none of the oxygen was liberated in the elementary form, for in no case was any oxygen found in the gas mixtures.

In Owen's (1908) work, in which nitrate tests were supposed to be conducted in an excess of carbon dioxide, there really was an atmosphere entirely composed of this gas. To find no increase in nitrate formation under such conditions is exactly what is to be expected.

Denitrification occurred where there was a limited supply of oxygen, and it was thought to be of interest to get further data as to the extent to which nitrates were destroyed by the denitrifying bacteria. In this experiment eight flasks were set up as usual, with ordinary air instead of gas mixtures. Two of these flasks were analyzed at the end of fourteen days, two at the end of twenty-eight days, and the remaining four at the end of fifty-six days. The results are given in table 11:

TABLE 11

Composition of gas mixture added		Time of incubation (days)	Nitrates (NO_3) (parts per million dry soil)	Composition of gas mixture at end of experiment	
Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)			Oxygen (per cent)	Carbon dioxide (per cent)
21	79	14	290.8	2.7	10.2
21	79	14	308.8	2.1	11.0
21	79	28	353.9	None	11.9
21	79	28	353.9	None	11.8
21	79	56	—19.6*	None	17.3
21	79	56	—18.4	None	18.8
21	79	56	—18.6	None	19.0
21	79	56	—20.7	None	19.0
Nitrates at beginning			23.1		
Nitrates at beginning			23.1		

*Minus sign denotes that there were less nitrates than at the beginning of the experiment.

The results show clearly that the bacteria themselves can produce conditions favorable for denitrification. The percentage of oxygen found in the flasks that were analyzed at the end of fourteen days was only 2.4. At the end of twenty-eight days there was no oxygen, but the nitrates were somewhat higher than at fourteen days. In the flasks that were incubated for fifty-six days there were found less nitrates than the soil contained at the beginning of the experiment. This is in agreement with the work of Dehérain (1897), who found that denitrification was an extremely rapid process when the conditions were favorable to the denitrifying bacteria. Lemmermann, Fischer, Kappen, and Blanck (1909) observed that lime increases the action of the denitrifiers. The conditions were therefore favorable for this process in this experiment. Here again none of the oxygen that was consumed in the production of nitrates was found in the elementary form.

RELATION OF OXYGEN AND CARBON DIOXIDE TO AMMONIFICATION IN SOILS

Method of investigation

Casein was chosen as the substance to furnish the ammonifiable nitrogen, and its solution in sodium hydroxide was made according to the directions given by Brown (1913). Moisture was determined at the beginning of each experiment and 100 grams of fresh soil was placed on a large glass plate. Ten cubic centimeters of the casein solution, with enough water added to bring the water content to 25 per cent (dry basis), was intimately mixed with the soil. This was then placed in the flasks (500-cubic-centimeter Erlenmeyer) and exposed to the various gas mixtures for three days at a temperature of 30° C. At the end of three days the flasks were removed and 400 cubic centimeters of water, containing 4 cubic centimeters of concentrated hydrochloric acid, was added. This was stirred for five minutes and allowed to set for twenty minutes, and the whole was then thrown on an ordinary filter. Three hundred cubic centimeters of the filtrate was distilled with magnesium oxide, the distillate being caught in fifth-normal hydrochloric acid and titrated in the usual manner.

It was found that there was practically no difference between the results obtained with varying mixtures of oxygen and nitrogen, as will be shown later. Since it was possible that the ammonia was produced in the distillation process, experiments were set up to test this point. A comparison of the different methods of distillation was also made — that is, distillation of the soil directly with magnesium oxide by the use of steam, and extraction with weak hydrochloric acid. This was done as follows: To eight 100-gram portions of fresh soil 10 cubic centimeters of casein solution was added. Four of these portions were extracted with dilute hydrochloric acid and the filtrate was distilled with magnesium oxide, as usual. The other four were washed into the distillation flasks, magnesium oxide was added, and the distillation was made with steam. The results of this experiment are given in table 12:

TABLE 12

Extraction with hydrochloric acid		Distillation with steam	
Flask no.	Milligrams of ammonia nitrogen per 100 grams of soil	Flask no.	Milligrams of ammonia nitrogen per 100 grams of soil
1	0.39	1	1.12
2	0.56	2	0.84
3	0.93	3	0.84
4	0.56	4	0.64
Average	0.61	Average	0.86

These results show that the ammonia produced is not developed in the process of distillation. As the extraction method showed slightly lower results than distilling the soil directly, it was decided to continue its use.

It was thought probable that nitrification had taken place to some extent during the three days of incubation. Stevens and Withers (1910 b) and others have found that even excessive quantities of organic matter do not inhibit nitrification in soils.

In order to determine nitrates in the presence of excessive quantities of organic matter, it is necessary to use some other than the phenol-disulfonic-acid method, it being generally recognized that this method is not reliable in such cases. Burgess (1913) showed that the aluminum reduction method may be satisfactorily applied to soils containing alkali salts. It appears that this method is applicable for the determination of nitrates in the presence of organic material. It is in common use for such determination with sewage waters, in which the organic content is high.

Ammonia and nitrate determinations could not be made on the same sample. It was therefore necessary to set up four flasks, in two of which ammonia was determined by the extraction method while the other two were analyzed for nitrates by the aluminum reduction method.

Effect of mixtures of oxygen and nitrogen on ammonification

The averages of three experiments with the same gas mixtures are given in table 13.

Except in the case of 95-per-cent oxygen there is little difference in the amounts of ammonia formed. This result is rather unexpected, since the various oxygen-nitrogen mixtures produce decidedly different effects on nitrification. The analyses of the gases show clearly that oxygen has been consumed with the rapid production of carbon dioxide. An interesting point brought out in this connection is the rapidity with which anaërobic conditions are produced, even with mixtures containing as much as 32 per cent of oxygen. Just why there should be so much less carbon dioxide found with the higher oxygen contents is not clear, unless there is less bacterial activity with these concentrations.

TABLE 13

Composition of gas mixture added		Milligrams of ammonia nitrogen per 100 grams of soil	Composition of gas mixture at end of experiment	
Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)		Oxygen (per cent)	Carbon dioxide (per cent)
21	79	21.0	None	16.3
32	68	18.8	None	26.5
40	60	19.9	3.2	28.2
50	50	18.6	7.1	34.5
75	25	16.2	33.3	22.6
95	5	10.2	73.5	20.7

Experiments were set up to ascertain whether nitrification had taken place in the flasks. The averages of three experiments to test this point are given in table 14:[3]

TABLE 14

Composition of gas mixture added		Milligrams of nitrogen as NH_3 per 100 grams of soil	Milligrams of nitrogen as NO_3 per 100 grams of soil	Total milligrams of nitrogen ammonified per 100 grams of soil
Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)			
21	79	16.4	2.8	19.2
30	70	17.6	3.3	20.9
40	60	17.5	4.2	21.7
50	50	17.7	4.6	22.3
60	40	17.5	4.2	21.7
80	20	16.6	3.0	19.6
90	10	14.5	2.6	17.1
95	5	11.4	1.9	13.3

The table shows that nitrification does take place in the flasks even tho the period of incubation is short. Whether this nitrification is as great as is represented by the analyses the writer will not attempt to say. Qualitative tests by the diphenylamine reaction show that there are considerably more nitrates present after incubation than when incubation was begun. Nitrates were determined by the phenol-disulfonic-acid method at the beginning of each experiment and the amount found was deducted from the amount found by the reduction method at the end, giving the figures shown in the table. There is a rather close agreement in the rise of nitrate nitrogen with that produced in the nitrification studies (table 4). The results from both experiments show the maximum amount with mixtures containing from 40 to 50 per cent of oxygen.

---

[3] The nitrate nitrogen reported in this table is the amount formed during incubation.

The nitrogen occurring as ammonia is nearly the same in all cases, except with the pure oxygen. Including the pure oxygen, there is a difference of only six milligrams between the least and the greatest amount produced. When the total nitrogen ammonified (nitrate nitrogen plus ammonia nitrogen) is taken into account the difference is greater, being in this case 9 milligrams. This indicates a tendency toward equilibrium between the nitrifiers and the ammonifiers. Assuming that nitrates must pass through the ammonia stage, the total ammonia produced is increased by a supply of oxygen. The mixtures containing from 30 to 80 per cent of oxygen give consistently higher results than does ordinary air. The basic condition of the soil used in these experiments tended to increase the activities of all bacteria operating in the flasks.

Effect of mixtures of oxygen and carbon dioxide on ammonification

The mixtures used in the experiments to determine the effect of oxygen and carbon dioxide on ammonification were made as in the nitrification experiments (page 417). The averages of the results are given in table 15:

TABLE 15

Composition of gas mixture added			Time of incubation (days)	Milligrams of nitrogen as NH_3 per 100 grams of soil	Milligrams of nitrogen as NO_3 per 100 grams of soil	Total milligrams of nitrogen ammonified per 100 grams of soil
Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)	Carbon dioxide (per cent)				
21	79	...	3	18.6	2.0	20.6
21	79	...	3	18.6	2.2	20.8
40	...	60	3	18.0	3.8	21.8
40	...	60	3	18.6	3.2	21.8
60	...	40	3	18.4	3.6	22.0
60	...	40	3	18.1	3.6	21.7
70	...	30	3	17.2	3.0	20.2
70	...	30	3	16.8	2.8	19.6
90	...	10	3	12.8	2.0	14.8
90	...	10	3	13.0	1.8	14.8

While there are little differences in ammonia nitrogen between the various gas mixtures shown in the above table, there is a slight increase in nitric nitrogen with the mixtures containing from 40 to 60 per cent of oxygen. This was found to be the case also with the oxygen-nitrogen mixtures. It would seem, therefore, to be of small consequence whether the oxygen is diluted with carbon dioxide or with nitrogen, so long as there is a liberal supply present.

Effect of mixtures of carbon dioxide, oxygen, and nitrogen on ammonification

The results of the experiment to determine the effect of various mixtures of carbon dioxide, oxygen, and nitrogen on ammonification are given in table 16:

TABLE 16

Composition of gas mixture added			Milligrams of nitrogen as NH_3 per 100 grams of soil	Milligrams of nitrogen as NO_3 per 100 grams of soil	Total milligrams of nitrogen ammonified per 100 grams of soil
Carbon dioxide (per cent)	Oxygen (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)			
10.0	18.9	71.1	17.5	5.9	23.4
20.0	16.8	63.2	16.9	5.9	22.8
40.0	12.6	47.4	17.0	4.4	21.4
60.0	8.4	31.6	16.4	4.2	20.6
80.0	4.2	15.8	13.8	1.5	15.3
99.0	....	....	9.8	0.3	10.1

Here again nitrification appears plainly. Tho the differences are small until the higher concentrations of carbon dioxide are reached, they are perceptible. The lowering of the amount of ammonia produced in the presence of high concentrations of carbon dioxide is noteworthy. That any appreciable quantity of ammonia is formed under strictly anaërobic conditions is in line with the work of Kelley (1911) on the inundated soils of Hawaii. In general the results are in agreement with those already shown. There are less ammonia and nitrates formed when the carbon dioxide is highest and the oxygen lowest. This necessity for oxygen is indicated also in the results from the mixtures of carbon dioxide and nitrogen (table 8).

SUMMARY

Altho the methods used in this investigation are not so suitable as might be desired, the following conclusions seem to be justified from the results obtained:

1. Vigorous nitrification takes place in sealed flasks as long as there is a supply of oxygen.

2. Of the soil gases studied, oxygen is the limiting constituent, and there is an optimum mixture of this gas (one containing from 35 to 60 per cent of oxygen) for nitrification.

3. From the losses of oxygen from the gas mixtures it seems certain that there are other forms of oxidation than that caused by the nitrate bacteria.

4. A large quantity of carbon dioxide is produced when lime is used, amounting in some instances to nearly 20 per cent. The greatest production of this gas accompanies the point of maximum nitrification. Ammonium sulfate, when applied to this soil without the addition of lime, produces only slight increases in nitrification even after incubation for a period of twenty-eight days. The small quantity of carbon dioxide formed under such conditions would tend to indicate that ammonium sulfate, when applied to this soil alone, depresses the action of the carbon-dioxide-producing bacteria as well.

5. Taking the results as a whole it cannot be said that carbon dioxide has any material effect on nitrification so long as oxygen is present in the atmosphere. It is of little consequence whether the oxygen is diluted with the inert gas nitrogen or with carbon dioxide. When the supply of oxygen becomes limited and anaërobic conditions are produced, denitrification sets in, and this continues until practically all the nitrates are destroyed. In no case with these experiments was the combined oxygen liberated in the elementary form during the processes of denitrification.

6. The results with the distillation method for the determination of ammonia show that there is no optimum content of oxygen for the production of this compound. The results of all mixtures, except the very high concentrations of oxygen, are practically the same. It seems to make little difference whether the mixtures are made with oxygen and nitrogen or with oxygen and carbon dioxide. Under purely anaërobic conditions, caused by an atmosphere of pure carbon dioxide, there is somewhat less ammonia produced than when oxygen is present at the beginning. That ammonia is formed in rather large quantities under such conditions is noteworthy.

7. Nitrate determinations show that nitrates are produced in ammonification tests even tho the organic content is high and the period of incubation is short.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

BREAL, E. De la présence, dans la paille, d'un ferment aérobie, réducteur des nitrates. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **114**:681–684. 1892.

BROWN, P. E. Methods for bacteriological examination of soils. Iowa Agr. Exp. Sta. Research bul. 11:381–407. 1913.

BURGESS, PAUL S. The aluminum reduction method as applied to the determination of nitrates in "alkali" soils. Univ. California publications — Agr. sci. **1**:51–62. 1913.

COLEMAN, LESLIE C. Untersuchungen über Nitrifikation. Centbl. Bakt. 2:**20**:401–420, 484–513. 1908.

DEHÉRAIN, P.-P. Le travail de la terre et la nitrification. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **116**:1091–1097. 1893.

———— La réduction des nitrates dans la terre arable. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **124**:269–273. 1897.

DENNIS, L. M. Gas analysis, p. 1–434. (References on p. 160–163, 225–226.) 1913.

EFFRONT, J. Sur la fermentation ammoniacale. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **148**:238–241. 1909.

FISCHER, HUGO. Versuche über Stickstoffumsetzung in verschiedenen Böden. Landw. Jahrb. **41**:755–822. 1911.

GODLEWSKI, E. Contribution à l'étude de la nitrification. Ann. agron. **22**:303–304. 1896.

KELLEY, W. P. The assimilation of nitrogen by rice. Hawaii Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 24:1–20. 1911.

KING, F. H., AND WHITSON, A. R. Development and distribution of nitrates and other soluble salts in cultivated soils. Wisconsin Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 85:1–48. 1901.

LEMMERMANN, O., FISCHER, H., KAPPEN, H., UND BLANCK, E. Bakteriologisch-chemische Untersuchungen. Landw. Jahrb. **38**:319-364. 1909.

MARCHAL, ÉMILE. Sur la production de l'ammoniaque dans le sol par les microbes. Acad. Roy. Belgique. Bul. **25** (ser. 3):727–771. 1893.

OWEN, WILLIAM L. Effect of carbonates upon nitrification. Georgia Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 81:1–42. 1908.

SCHLŒSING, TH., Jr. Contribution à l'étude de la nitrification dans les sols. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **125**:824–827. 1897.

SCHLŒSING, TH., ET MÜNTZ, A. Sur la nitrification par les ferments organisés. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **84**:301–303. 1877 (a).

———— Sur la nitrification par les ferments organisés. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **85**:1018–1020. 1877 (b).

———— Recherches sur la nitrification par les ferments organisés. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **86**:892–895. 1878.

SCHREINER, OSWALD, AND FAILYER, GEORGE F. Colorimetric, turbidity, and titration methods used in soil investigations. U. S. Bur. Soils. Bul. 31:1–60. 1906.

STEVENS, F. L., AND WITHERS, W. A. Studies in soil bacteriology. I. Nitrification in soils and in solutions. Centbl. Bakt. 2:**23**:355–373. 1909 (a).

——————— Studies in soil bacteriology. II. Ammonification in soils and in solutions. Centbl. Bakt. 2:**23**:776–785. 1909 (b).

——————— Studies in soil bacteriology. III. Concerning methods for determination of nitrifying and ammonifying powers. Centbl. Bakt. 2:**25**:64–80. 1910 (a).

——————— Studies in soil bacteriology. IV. The inhibition of nitrification by organic matter, compared in soils and in solutions. Centbl. Bakt. 2:**27**:169–186. 1910 (b).

STOKLASA, JULIUS. Methoden zur biochemischen Untersuchung des Bodens. Handb. biochem. Arbeitsmeth. **5**:843–910. 1912.

TEMPLE, J. C. Why do some soils nitrify organic nitrogenous substances and the ammonium salts of organic acids faster than they do ammonium sulphate or ammonium chloride? Science n. s. **35**:227–228. 1912.

WARINGTON, R. Lectures on the investigations at the Rothamsted Experimental Station. Exp. sta. rec. **3**:894–903. 1892.

JANUARY, 1917 BULLETIN 385

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

DUSTING AND SPRAYING NURSERY STOCK

VERN B. STEWART

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE

Weather conditions........ 434

Arrangement of experimental plats........ 435

Leaf blotch of horse-chestnut........ 436

  Experiment in 1915........ 436

  Experiment in 1916........ 437

Leaf spots of currant........ 440

  Experiment in 1915........ 440

  Experiment in 1916........ 441

Leaf spot of plum........ 443

  Experiment in 1916........ 443

Leaf spot of cherry........ 446

  Experiment in 1915........ 446

  Experiment in 1916........ 447

Leaf spot of quince........ 449

  Experiment in 1916........ 449

Scab disease of apple........ 452

  Experiment in 1916........ 452

Mildew of rose........ 454

  Experiment in 1915........ 454

  Experiment in 1916........ 454

Generalizations........ 455

  Materials to be used........ 455

  Cost of the dust and spray methods........ 456

Summary........ 457

· DUSTING AND SPRAYING NURSERY STOCK

VERN B. STEWART

During the season of 1915 several experiments were conducted by the Department of Plant Pathology at Cornell University for the control of various leaf diseases of nursery stock.[1] The results obtained seemed to warrant further trials, and in 1916 the experimental work was continued on a more extensive scale. For the experiments in 1916 traction dusting machines (figs. 71 and 72) were used for applying the dust mixture, instead of the hand machine employed in 1915 (fig. 73). In most cases a half acre or more of stock was treated in order to thoroughly test the efficiency of the dust method. The dust mixture used for all experiments in 1916 was the same as that employed in 1915, namely, ninety parts of finely ground sulfur and ten parts of powdered arsenate of lead.[2]

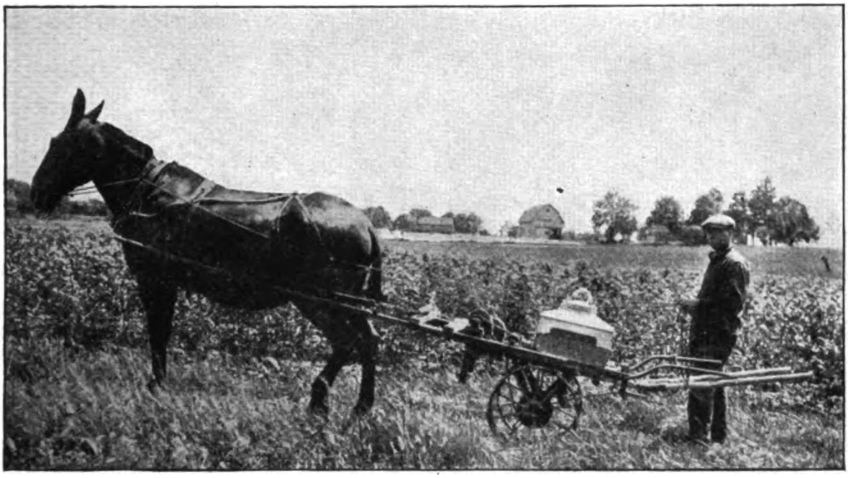


FIG. 71. A TRACTION DUSTER

The hopper of this machine holds about fifty pounds of dust mixture, which is discharged from the pipes in the rear. Photograph by R. E. Matheson

In each experiment one or more small plats were treated with lime-sulfur solution to serve as a comparison with the dusted and the untreated plats. The lack of suitable spraying machinery made it necessary to apply the spray solution with a compressed-air hand sprayer; this was somewhat disadvantageous, since the pressure obtained with the hand sprayer was considerably less than that furnished by a traction or a power sprayer. Also it was necessary to limit the sprayed plats to a much smaller area than the dusted plats. On the other hand, in practically all cases the sprayed plats were large enough to determine the relative value of the dusting and the spraying method.

---

[1] Stewart, V. B. Dusting nursery stock for the control of leaf diseases. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Cir. 32:3–10. 1916.

[2] In all the experiments a finely ground flour sulfur, now known commercially as superfine sulfur, was used. This product is ground to such a fineness that at least 95 per cent will pass through a screen of 200 meshes to the inch. The arsenate of lead used was of the so-called fluffy type, the individual particles of which are much smaller than the majority of the particles of sulfur.

WEATHER CONDITIONS

Although the seasons of 1915 and 1916 were both exceptionally favorable for leaf diseases, there was considerable difference with respect to the occurrence of the various rainy periods.

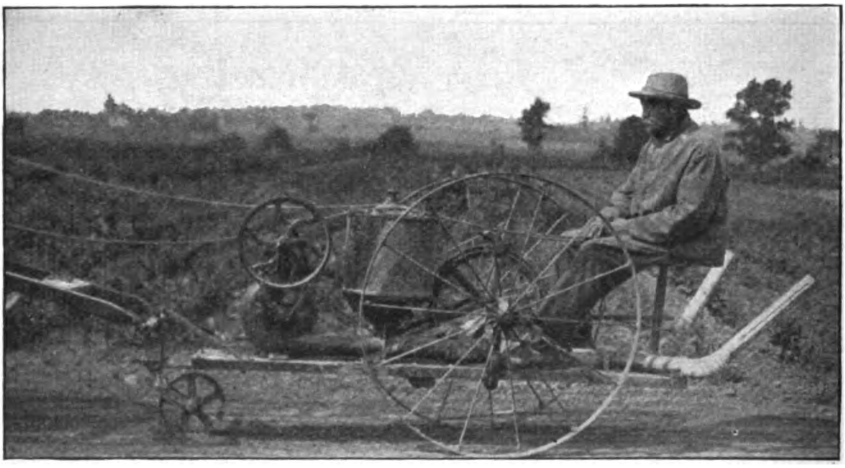


FIG. 72. A TRACTION DUSTING MACHINE

This machine is twenty-eight inches wide. The discharge pipes in the rear can be raised and lowered according to the height of the nursery stock. Large nursery trees, seven or more feet in height, can be thoroughly dusted. Photograph by C. R. Crosby

In 1915 there was very little precipitation previous to July 1 and the primary infection early in the spring was of little importance. Most foliage was relatively free from disease until after the prolonged infection period from June 30 to July 6. For the remainder of the summer, conditions were exceptionally favorable for leaf diseases and they appeared in great abundance.

In 1916 early infections were unusually severe owing to the excessive amount of precipitation accompanied by prolonged periods of damp, cloudy weather. During May and June leaf diseases appeared in great abundance and proved very destructive to all kinds of stock affected. Some plants suffered almost complete defoliation as early as July 1. After July 1 there was practically no rainfall until August 11 and 12, when an infection occurred which caused considerable loss of foliage. In some cases the effect of the defoliation in midsummer was very severe. The growth of the plants was completely checked until after the rainfall late in August, when the precipitation prompted a new growth and many of the plants developed clusters of small new leaves at the tips of the shoots. This late growth delayed proper maturation of the plants in the autumn and made them more susceptible to winter injury.

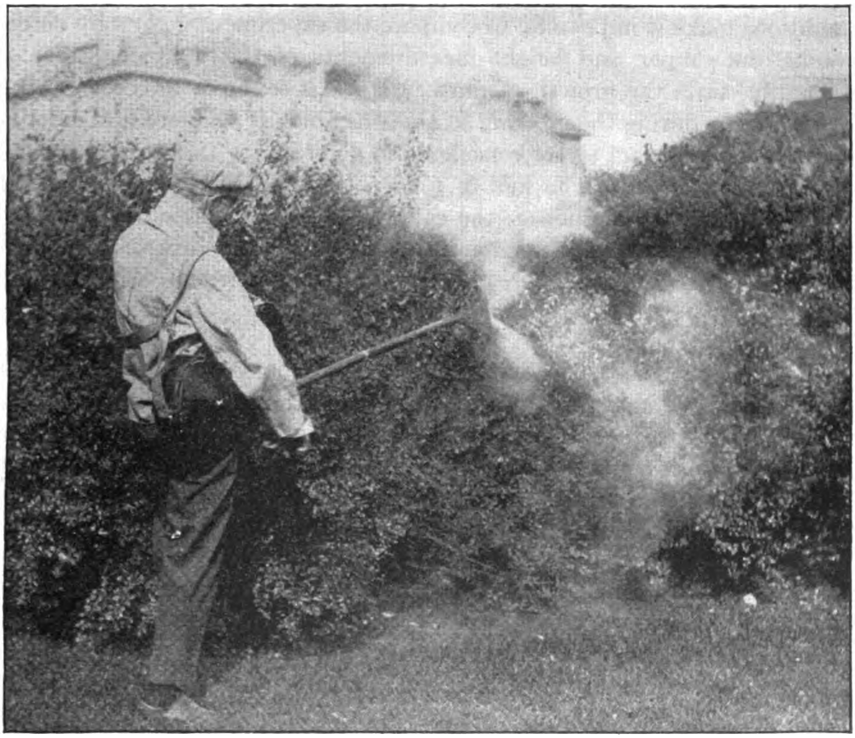


FIG. 73. A HAND DUSTING MACHINE
This machine is suitable for treating small plantings of nursery stock

ARRANGEMENT OF EXPERIMENTAL PLATS

Since a complete report of the results obtained in 1915 has not been recorded, a somewhat detailed account is included in this publication of experiments for both 1915 and 1916.

The location of the experimental plats frequently has an important bearing on the results. There is always danger that the dust mixture may be carried by the wind to the other plats, and this difficulty makes it impossible to select trees in adjoining rows for different kinds of treatment when a dust mixture is used. For most of the experiments performed, the plats were arranged so that a part of each row of plants was included in each of the different plats. With such an arrangement there is less danger that the dust mixture may affect the results in the sprayed and the untreated plats. On the other hand, this plan is objectionable since there may be a lack of uniformity in the plats with respect to soil conditions and other factors that influence the growth of the plants. Often trees in the same row show a marked difference in size. These conditions make it impossible to compare the experimental plats by determining the caliper and height measurements of the individual plants. Therefore, since the growth of nursery stock is seriously affected by the loss of foliage during the growing season, the amount of premature defoliation was the principal factor considered in determining the damage caused by the leaf diseases. The loss of foliage tends to check the growth of the plant, and thus influences the caliper and height measurements.

Experiments were performed for the control of leaf diseases of horse-chestnut, currant, plum, cherry, quince, apple, and rose.

LEAF BLOTCH OF HORSE-CHESTNUT[3]

In 1915 a single row of large four-years-old horse-chestnut trees was selected for the experiment on leaf blotch, and the same trees were again used for an experiment in 1916. In both seasons the trees in the first 150 feet of the row were treated with the dust mixture; those in the next 50 feet were left untreated; those in the next 100 feet were sprayed with lime-sulfur solution; and those in the last 75 feet were left untreated.

Experiment in 1915

In 1915 the first application of dust and spray was made on May 11, when all the buds had opened and some of the leaves were well developed. Subsequent applications were made on May 25, June 7, June 21, July 9, and August 2. Lime-sulfur solution diluted one to fifty was used for treating the sprayed plat. In the attempt to thoroughly cover all parts of the foliage by means of a hand sprayer, many of the leaves were drenched with the spray liquid and considerable injury resulted.

A comparison of the trees in the different plats was obtained by determining the percentage of affected leaflets on each tree. Many leaf pathogenes cause severe defoliation, but usually most of the horse-chestnut leaves affected with the leaf blotch disease remain on the tree. However, on smaller trees, especially seedlings, considerable defoliation may occur. When severely affected the foliage has the appearance of having been burned over by fire.

---

[3] The leaf blotch disease of horse-chestnut is caused by the fungus *Guignardia Æsculi* (Peck) Stewart.

The number of trees of which records were taken, the total number of leaflets, and the number and mean percentage of infected leaflets for the trees in the different plats, are shown in table 1. Approximately sixty per cent of the foliage on the untreated trees showed infections of the leaf blotch disease, while only three per cent of the foliage was diseased on the dusted trees. The dense foliage on the trees hindered the proper distribution of the lime-sulfur spray over all the leaves, and this, no doubt, reduced somewhat the effectiveness of the spray solution. About twelve per cent of the foliage on the sprayed trees was diseased.

TABLE 1. DUSTING AND SPRAYING EXPERIMENT WITH HORSE-CHESTNUT TREES IN 1915

Treatment	Number of trees	Total number of leaflets	Affected leaflets	
			Number	Mean percentage
Untreated	55	7,980	4,737	59.08 ± 2.61
Lime-sulfur solution 1 to 50	61	7,385	762	11.78 ± 0.95
Sulfur 90, arsenate of lead 10	72	9,735	310	3.11 ± 0.20

Experiment in 1916

The experiment for the control of leaf blotch of horse-chestnut was repeated in 1916, using the same row of trees as in 1915. Owing to the foliage injury caused by the lime-sulfur solution the previous year, the solution used in 1916 was diluted one gallon to sixty gallons of water.

The first application was made in the forenoon of May 15, between showers of a rain period which began in the afternoon of May 14 and continued until May 17. At this time most of the leaves on the trees were about two-thirds developed and during the rainy weather a severe ascospore infection occurred. Other applications were made on May 29, June 13, July 5, and July 25. When final observations were made on September 11, the untreated trees had the appearance of having been burned over by fire, practically all the leaves being affected. Considerable disease was also apparent on the sprayed trees.

The results of the experiment are given in tables 2 and 3.[4] Approximately ninety-nine per cent of the untreated foliage was diseased as

---

[4] Complete data of the records taken in the untreated and in the dusted horse-chestnut plats for the experiment conducted in 1916 are given in table 2. The total number of leaflets for each tree was recorded, along with the number of diseased leaflets, and from these figures the percentage of infected leaflets for each tree was determined. The percentage column shows the variation in amount of diseased leaflets

TABLE 2. COMPLETE DATA OF RECORDS FOR UNTREATED AND DUSTED HORSE-CHESTNUT TREES FOR EXPERIMENT IN 1916

Treatment	Total number of leaflets	Affected leaflets		Treatment	Total number of leaflets	Affected leaflets	
		Number	Percentage			Number	Percentage
Untreated	440	440	100.00	Sulphur 90, arsenate of lead 10	185	10	5.40
	255	250	98.04		350	35	10.00
	205	205	100.00		475	100	21.05
	475	475	100.00		260	28	10.77
	400	400	100.00		645	30	4.65
	260	260	100.00		110	15	13.64
	630	624	99.05		570	25	4.38
	480	480	100.00		275	30	10.91
	610	593	97.21		700	40	5.71
	30	30	100.00		390	15	3.85
	355	355	100.00		300	42	14.00
	285	285	100.00		445	34	7.64
	450	448	99.55		475	39	8.21
	360	354	98.33		560	43	7.68
	425	418	98.35		280	24	8.57
	505	505	100.00		215	29	13.49
	180	172	95.55		480	40	8.33
	215	215	100.00		510	34	6.67
	375	365	97.33		310	41	13.22
	545	545	100.00		220	2	0.91
	525	525	100.00		360	32	8.89
					105	8	7.62
					240	22	9.17
					305	28	9.18
					440	36	8.18
Total..................	8,005	7,944	2,083.41	Total..................	9,205	782	222.12
Mean..................	....	....	99.21 ± 0.19	Mean..................	....	....	8.88 ± 0.50

compared with about nine per cent for the dusted trees. The failure of the lime-sulfur solution to protect the trees, which showed about fifty-five per cent of the leaves affected, is attributed in part to the use of a hand sprayer. It was difficult to thoroughly cover all of the dense foliage without drenching the leaves. Furthermore, diluting the lime-sulfur solution one to sixty reduced somewhat the fungicidal value of the spray solution. The relatively high percentage of diseased leaves on dusted trees, as compared to those dusted in 1915, is due chiefly to the infection that occurred during the night of May 14. There was a period of damp, cloudy weather of about eighteen hours duration before the first application was made. This apparently was sufficient time for the discharge of some of the ascospores of the fungus from the old leaves on the ground, and for these ascospores to produce infections on the new foliage before the fungicides were applied.

TABLE 3. DUSTING AND SPRAYING EXPERIMENT WITH HORSE-CHESTNUT TREES IN 1916

Treatment	Number of trees	Total number of leaflets	Affected leaflets	
			Number	Mean percentage
Untreated	21	8,005	7,944	99.21 ± 0.19
Lime-sulfur solution 1 to 60	25	9,375	5,212	54.61 ± 1.34
Sulfur 90, arsenate of lead 10	25	9,205	782	8.88 ± 0.50

The importance of the infection period of May 14 to May 17 is seen by the results of an experiment in another planting of horse-chestnut trees. Owing to the rainy weather it was necessary to delay the first application until May 26. During the prolonged period of infection from May 14 to May 17 before the trees were treated, a large percentage of the foliage became infected. The application made on May 26 was too late to prevent any of the primary infection, and since horse-chestnut

---

for each tree. The probable error of the mean percentage was determined by means of Peter's formula, $\pm 0.8453 \frac{\Sigma v}{n\sqrt{n-1}}$, in which *v* equals the difference between the mean and the percentage of infected leaflets for each tree, and *n* equals the number of trees from which records were taken. In all the experiments the probable error of the mean percentage was determined by means of Peter's formula, except for the experiments with currants, in which case Bessel's formula, $\pm 0.6745 \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma d^2}{n(n-1)}}$, was used. In this formula *d* is the difference between the mean and each individual observation, and *n* is the number of observations.

trees make but little secondary growth the experiment was abandoned. When observed on July 10 there was very little green foliage on any of the trees in the block. The failure to control the leaf blotch in these trees emphasizes the absolute necessity of making the applications before periods favorable for infection, so that the foliage may be protected. Otherwise such applications have little value.

The results of the experiments for the control of leaf blotch of horse-chestnut indicate that dusting is preferable to spraying. There is no question but that the lime-sulfur solution greatly reduced the amount of disease. On the other hand, it was not so effective as the dust mixture, and furthermore the spray liquid is more difficult to apply. In treating three- to five-years-old horse-chestnut trees in the nursery, the work can be done much better and more easily by means of the dusting method, at a cost which is little, if any, greater than that for the spraying method.

LEAF SPOTS OF CURRANT[5]

Experiment in 1915

The experiment performed in 1915 for the control of the leaf spots of currant included a number of rows, about 70 feet in length, of second-year Cherry currant bushes. Rows 1 to 6 were dusted; row 7 served as a buffer row and was not treated; rows 8, 9, 10, and 11 were sprayed with lime-sulfur solution diluted one to fifty; rows 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, and 17 were left untreated. The first application was made on May 10, soon after the leaf buds had opened. Subsequent applications were made on May 25, June 7, June 21, July 9, July 19, and August 2. Final data on the experiment were recorded on September 3, when a large part of the foliage on the untreated bushes had already fallen.

It is difficult to determine accurately the amount of damage caused by the leaf spots on currant bushes. A determination of the number of leaves infected is not a suitable method, since the presence of one or two small lesions on a leaf may not seriously affect it. On the other hand, if infection occurs on the petiole the leaf usually drops prematurely. Also many of the smaller leaves develop in a cluster, making it practically impossible to count the leaf scars of foliage missing and thus determine the number of leaves that were originally present on the bush. Since in each experiment the leaf spots caused severe premature defoliation in the untreated plats, comparisons were made of the bushes in the different plats by counting the number of leaves that remained on the bushes throughout the season. No insect pests were present and the amount of defoliation caused by agents other than the leaf spot fungi is considered negligible.

---

[5] The leaf spot disease caused by *Mycosphærella grossulariæ* (Fr.) Lind., and the anthracnose caused by *Pseudopeziza ribis* Kleb., are commonly found on currant nursery stock in New York State.

The results of the experiment are given in table 4. The bushes in the different plats averaged about the same in size. However, as is to be noted in table 4 under *Remarks*, there was a great variation in number of leaves for individual bushes in each plat. There was very little premature defoliation of the bushes in the sprayed and the dusted plats. Most of the leaves remained on the bushes throughout the summer. At the end of the growing season there was an average of twenty-seven leaves per bush on the untreated bushes, as compared with an average of over eighty leaves on each bush in the treated plats.

TABLE 4. DUSTING AND SPRAYING EXPERIMENT WITH CURRANT BUSHES IN 1915

Treatment	Number of bushes	Total number of leaves	Average number of leaves per bush	Remarks
Untreated (Rows 14 and 15)	137	3,722	27.17 ± 1.36	Number of leaves per bush varied from 0 to 71
Lime-sulfur solution 1 to 50 (Row 9)	72	6,039	83.87 ± 4.04	Number of leaves per bush varied from 15 to 275
Sulfur 90, arsenate of lead 10 (Row 3)	74	6,328	85.51 ± 3.61	Number of leaves per bush varied from 4 to 183

Experiment in 1916

An experiment for the control of the leaf spots of currant was conducted in 1916, using a traction duster for applying the dust mixture. A number of rows of the White Grape variety in a block of currants were selected for the experiment. The rows were about 500 feet in length and extended north and south. Starting at the northeast corner, the bushes in the first 100 feet of twelve rows were sprayed with lime-sulfur solution 1 to 40; the bushes in the remaining 400 feet of nine of these rows on the east side were dusted with sulfur 90 parts and arsenate of lead 10 parts; eight rows extending the entire length of the block and adjoining the sprayed plat were left untreated for a check.

The first application was made on May 15, during an intermission in the rain period which lasted from May 14 until May 17. The first new leaves on the canes were about half developed when the bushes were treated. Apparently this application was made in time to prevent considerable primary infection, since there were but few infected leaves on the treated bushes when another application was made on May 29. The untreated bushes showed numerous diseased leaves on that date. Subsequent applications were made on June 13 and June 22, and then, because of the prolonged dry weather, the plats were not treated again until July 25. At that time the untreated bushes were almost completely defoliated, while very little of the foliage was missing from the dusted and the sprayed bushes. It would have been desirable to have made another application just previous to August 11, after which time there were several infection periods, but the delay in receiving repairs for a French dusting machine prevented further treatments for the season. When results of the experiment were recorded some of the leaves showed new leaf spot lesions, due to infections that occurred after August 11.

TABLE 5. SPRAYING AND DUSTING EXPERIMENT WITH CURRANT BUSHES IN 1916

Treatment	Number of bushes	Total number of leaves	Average number of leaves per bush	Remarks
Untreated	110	1,566	14.24 ± 0.95	Number of leaves per bush varied from 0 to 65
Lime-sulfur solution 1 to 40	56	5,393	96.30 ± 3.87	Number of leaves per bush varied from 7 to 171
Sulfur 90, arsenate of lead 10	56	5,656	101.00 ± 3.98	Number of leaves per bush varied from 21 to 242

As in the experiment in 1915, a comparison was obtained by counting the leaves present on individual bushes in the middle row of each plat. The average number of leaves on each bush in the dusted and the sprayed plats was approximately the same (table 5). Both fungicides were effective in preventing the attacks of the parasites which cause the leaf spot diseases. There was an average of about fourteen leaves on each bush in the untreated plat as compared with one hundred and one leaves on each bush in the dusted plat. The great variation in the number of leaves on each bush as indicated in table 5 is due to the differences in size of the individual bushes rather than to the results of premature defoliation.

LEAF SPOT OF PLUM[6]

There is a considerable difference in the susceptibility of the varieties of plum trees to the leaf spot, or shot-hole disease, which was unusually common in 1916. In the nursery the European varieties are severely affected and often complete defoliatoin of the trees occurs in midsummer. The Japanese varieties are not so susceptible (fig. 74). No experiments were performed for the control of this disease in 1915.

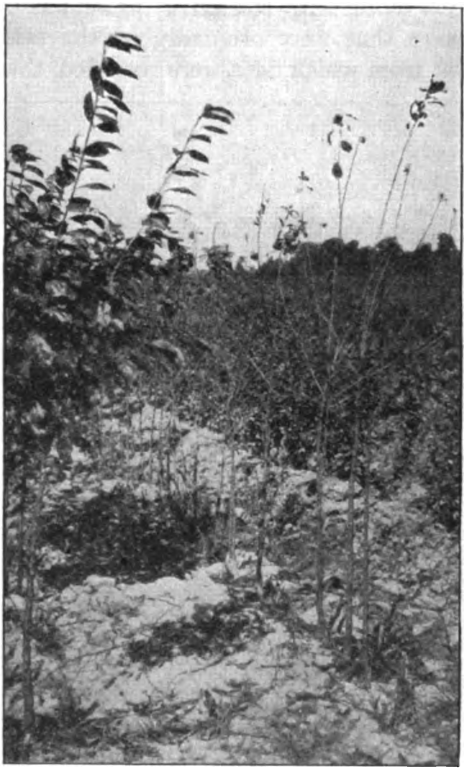


FIG. 74. VARIETAL SUSCEPTIBILITY OF PLUM TREES TO THE LEAF SPOT DISEASE

The trees on the right are of the European variety German Prune, and were defoliated by the leaf spot disease. The trees on the left are of the Japanese variety Wickson, and were not affected by the disease. Photographed September 14, 1916

Experiment in 1916

Two rows of two-years-old European plum trees of the variety German Prune were selected for the experiment in 1916. The trees comprised the last two rows of a large block of plum trees of several varieties. Starting at the north end, the trees in the first 150 feet of the two rows were sprayed with lime-sulfur solution diluted one to fifty; those in the next 200 feet were left untreated; those in the next 500 feet were dusted with the 90–10 mixture of finely ground sulfur and powdered arsenate of lead; those in the last 300 feet were left untreated.

The first application was made on May 26, when the first leaves were about half developed. The next three applications were made on June 12, June 23, and July 6. During this time there were numerous infection periods and on July 6 considerable leaf spot was present on the untreated trees. Subsequent applications were made on July 20 and August 9. On the latter date the untreated trees were practically defoliated and none of the leaves remaining on the trees were free from disease, while the sprayed and the dusted trees showed only a few infected leaves and almost no defoliation (fig. 75).

---

[6] The plum leaf spot, or shot-hole disease, is caused by the fungus *Coccomyces prunophoræ* Higgins.

Final data on the experiment were recorded on September 14. Since on young branches of defoliated plum trees there is a well-defined scar where each leaf was attached, it was possible to count the number of leaf scars along with the leaves present and thereby estimate the number of leaves that were originally on the tree. The number of trees in each plat from which data were recorded, the estimated total number of leaves originally on the trees, the number of leaves present, and the number of leaves missing, are given in table 6. All records were taken from trees in the same row, and in each plat these trees were determined by selecting every fifth tree in the row. More than ninety-five per cent of the foliage remained on the treated trees throughout the season, as compared with less than twenty per cent on the untreated trees, which lost a large proportion of their leaves early in the summer.

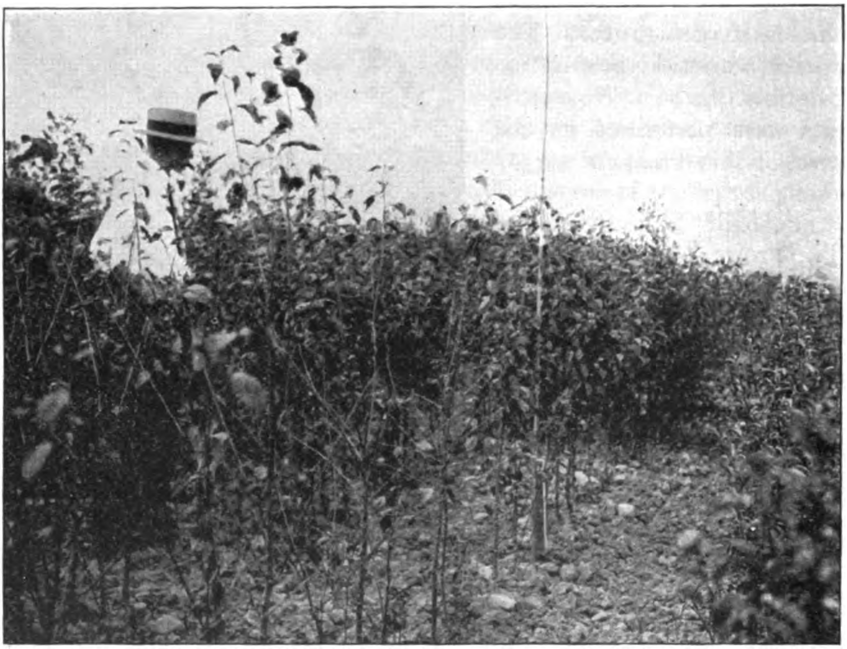


FIG. 75. DUSTED AND UNTREATED TWO-YEARS-OLD PLUM TREES OF THE VARIETY GERMAN PRUNE

The defoliated trees in the foreground were not treated; the trees in the distance were dusted and premature defoliation was prevented. Photograph by C. R. Crosby, August 9, 1916

On September 14 the untreated trees showed a larger percentage of non-infected foliage than when observed on August 9. This is accounted

TABLE 6. DUSTING AND SPRAYING EXPERIMENT WITH EUROPEAN PLUM TREES IN 1916

Treatment	Number of trees from which data were recorded	Total number of leaves originally on trees	Non-infected leaves present		Diseased leaves present		Leaves missing	
			Number	Mean percentage	Number	Mean percentage	Number	Mean percentage
Untreated....................	50	10,289	681	6.10 ± 0.74	1,015	10.40 ± 0.66	8,593	83.51 ± 0.95
Sulfur 90, arsenate of lead 10....	45	7,234	6,856	94.72 ± 0.34	341	4.84 ± 0.31	37	0.45 ± 0.08
Lime-sulfur solution 1 to 50....	45	7,235	6,940	95.85 ± 0.36	266	3.77 ± 0.31	29	0.37 ± 0.10

for by the fact that defoliation occurred early in the summer, and after the heavy rainfall in late August the trees began growing again. This late growth resulted in the development of new foliage, which in all cases was in the form of clusters of very small leaves at the tips of the shoots. Without question the development of the new leaves at this time was a detriment to the trees, since the late growth retarded proper maturation, making the trees more susceptible to winterkilling.

LEAF SPOT OF CHERRY[7]

Experiment in 1915

An experiment in 1915 for the control of leaf spot of cherry included four rows of first-year Tartarian cherry trees. The trees in the first 100 feet of the four rows were treated with the mixture of sulfur and powdered arsenate of lead; those in the next 125 feet were left untreated; those in the last 100 feet were sprayed with lime-sulfur solution diluted one to fifty. The first application of dust and spray was made on May 11, when the trees were about six inches high. Subsequent applications were made on May 25, June 7, June 27, July 9, July 19, and August 2.

TABLE 7. DUSTING AND SPRAYING EXPERIMENT WITH SWEET CHERRY TREES IN 1915

Treatment	Number of trees	Total number of leaves originally on trees	Leaves missing	
			Number	Mean percentage
Untreated	50	2,094	714	35.60 ± 0.94
Lime-sulfur solution 1 to 50	82	3,133	580	20.26 ± 0.77
Sulfur 90, arsenate of lead 10	84	3,539	292	9.64 ± 0.44

The young trees made a very rapid growth, and owing to the heavy rainfall and numerous infection periods it was difficult to make the applications so that the new foliage was protected at all times. Many infections occurred in all the plats, but the trees in the treated plats were not so severely infected as were the untreated trees.

The results of the experiment were recorded on August 31, all records being taken from trees in the third row, a part of which was in each of the different plats. The percentage of premature defoliation caused by the leaf spot disease was determined by counting the number of leaf scars on each tree where leaves were missing. The number of trees in each plat of which records were made is given in table 7, also the total number of leaves originally on the trees (determined by counting the leaves present plus the leaf scars due to defoliation), and the number and mean percentage of leaves missing.

---

[7] The cherry leaf spot, or yellow-leaf disease, is caused by the fungus *Coccomyces hiemalis* Higgins.

In this experiment the lime-sulfur solution was not so effective as the dust mixture. This failure may be attributed, in part at least, to the location of the different plats. The sprayed trees were on lower land, where the soil remained saturated with water for a considerable length of time after periods of heavy rainfall. Not only did the excess of water affect the growth of the trees in that area, but also the moist conditions were more favorable for the leaf spot disease. This situation made a comparison of caliper and height measurements for trees in different plats of no value. Undoubtedly the defoliation would not have been so great on the sprayed trees if they had been in rows adjoining the dusted plat, which was on a gentle slope of land conducive to proper drainage.

Not only was there a higher proportion of premature defoliation on the untreated trees, but also the leaves that remained were more severely affected than those remaining on the treated trees, many of them turning yellow and being of little value to the trees. On the other hand, most of the foliage on the sprayed and the dusted trees showed only a few infections, and was still green when observed for the last time on September 11.

Experiment in 1916

Another experiment was conducted in 1916 for the control of the leaf spot disease of cherries, but unfortunately this experiment also failed to prove entirely satisfactory. The location of the different plats was again a factor influencing the results. The experiment as originally

TABLE 8. DUSTING EXPERIMENT WITH TWO-YEARS-OLD TARTARIAN CHERRY TREES IN 1916

Treatment	Number of trees	Total number of leaves originally on trees	Leaves missing	
			Number	Mean percentage
Untreated	20	2,629	1,801	68.23 ± 1.48
Sulfur 90, arsenate of lead 10	19	2,818	478	16.77 ± 0.60

planned consisted of seven rows of two-years-old Tartarian cherry trees. There were five experimental plats, so arranged that a part of each row of trees was included in each plat. Poor drainage, along with injury by freezing which had occurred during the winter months, affected the growth of the trees to such an extent that early in the summer the experiment, except for one dusted plat and an adjoining untreated plat, was abandoned.

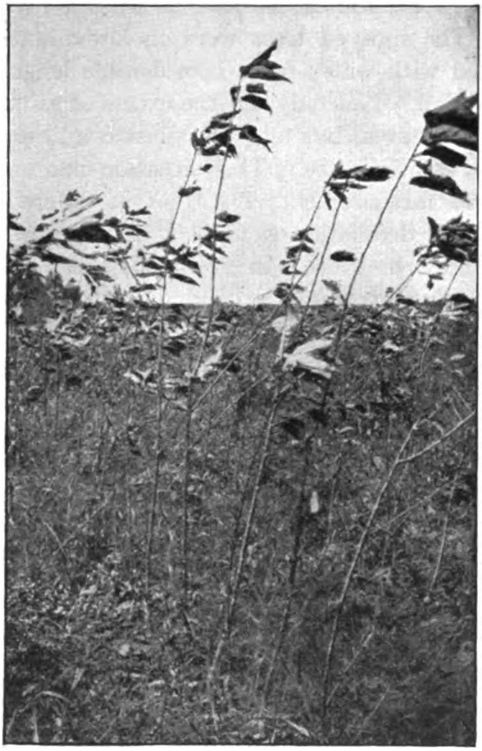


FIG. 76. TWO-YEARS-OLD SWEET CHERRY TREES DEFOLIATED BY THE LEAF SPOT DISEASE

Many of these trees failed to make sufficient growth to be graded as first-class stock. Photographed September 11, 1916

The first application was made on May 15, when the first leaves were about one-third developed. Subsequent applications were made on May 29, June 13, June 22, July 5, and July 25. On June 10 a heavy precipitation occurred, followed by damp, cloudy weather for a period of twenty-four hours. At this time the trees were growing very rapidly and had made considerable new growth since the last treatment on May 29. The weather conditions of June 10 and 11 were favorable for the leaf spot disease, and many infections occurred on the new unprotected foliage in both plats. No treatments were made after July 25, owing to the delay in receiving repairs for the French dusting machine which was in use at this nursery.

When final data on this experiment were recorded (table 8), lesions of the leaf spot disease were apparent on all the trees, but the untreated trees were more severely affected than those in the dusted plat. Not only was the defoliation greater on the untreated trees, but the foliage that remained was turning yellow and was of little value to the trees (fig. 76). A comparison was made of the trees in the fourth row of each plat. The amount of defoliation was determined by counting the leaf scars on the trees where leaves were missing. The figures in the third column of table 8 indicate the number of leaves that remained on the trees in addition to those lost by premature defoliation Approximately seventeen per cent of the leaves in the dusted plat were lost prematurely, as compared with sixty-eight per cent for the untreated trees.

LEAF SPOT OF QUINCE[8]

No experiments were conducted in 1915 for the control of the quince leaf spot.

Experiment in 1916

An entire block consisting of eight rows of two-years-old quince trees was used in the experiment in 1916. There were several varieties of quince trees in the block, and the rows, which were about 1100 feet in length, were divided into six experimental plats, a part of each row being included in each plat. Starting at the north end, the trees in plat 1, 100 feet long, were sprayed with lime-sulfur solution one to fifty; plat 2, 100 feet long, was left untreated; plat 3, about 600 feet long, was dusted with the mixture of sulfur and arsenate of lead; plat 4, 100 feet long, was sprayed with lime-sulfur solution; plat 5, 100 feet long, was not treated; and plat 6, about 200 feet long, was dusted (fig. 77).

An attempt was made to give the trees the first treatment previous to the infection period of May 14 to May 17, but weather conditions made it necessary to delay this first application until May 26. On that date the first cluster of new leaves was well developed and the delay in making the first application had permitted considerable infection to occur. These infections were apparent when the second application was made, on June 12. Subsequent treatments were given on June 23, July 6, July 20, and August 9. On July 20 the affected leaves were more numerous on the untreated trees than on those that were dusted or sprayed. This condition was especially noticeable when the trees were examined again on August 9.

Final data on the experiment were recorded on September 19, all records being made from trees in the sixth row. These trees were of the variety Rea's Mammoth, and appeared to be slightly more susceptible to the leaf spot disease than did any of the other varieties. Twenty trees in each of plats 3, 4, and 5 were selected for determining the results of the experiment. In the dusted plat a record was taken of every twentieth tree in the row, and in the other two plats every fifth tree in the row was selected.

The approximate number of leaves originally on each tree was determined by counting the leaves present and the leaf scars where leaves were missing. A tabulation is given in table 9 of the total number of

---

[8] The leaf spot disease of quince is caused by the fungus *Fabræa maculata* (Lév.) Atk.

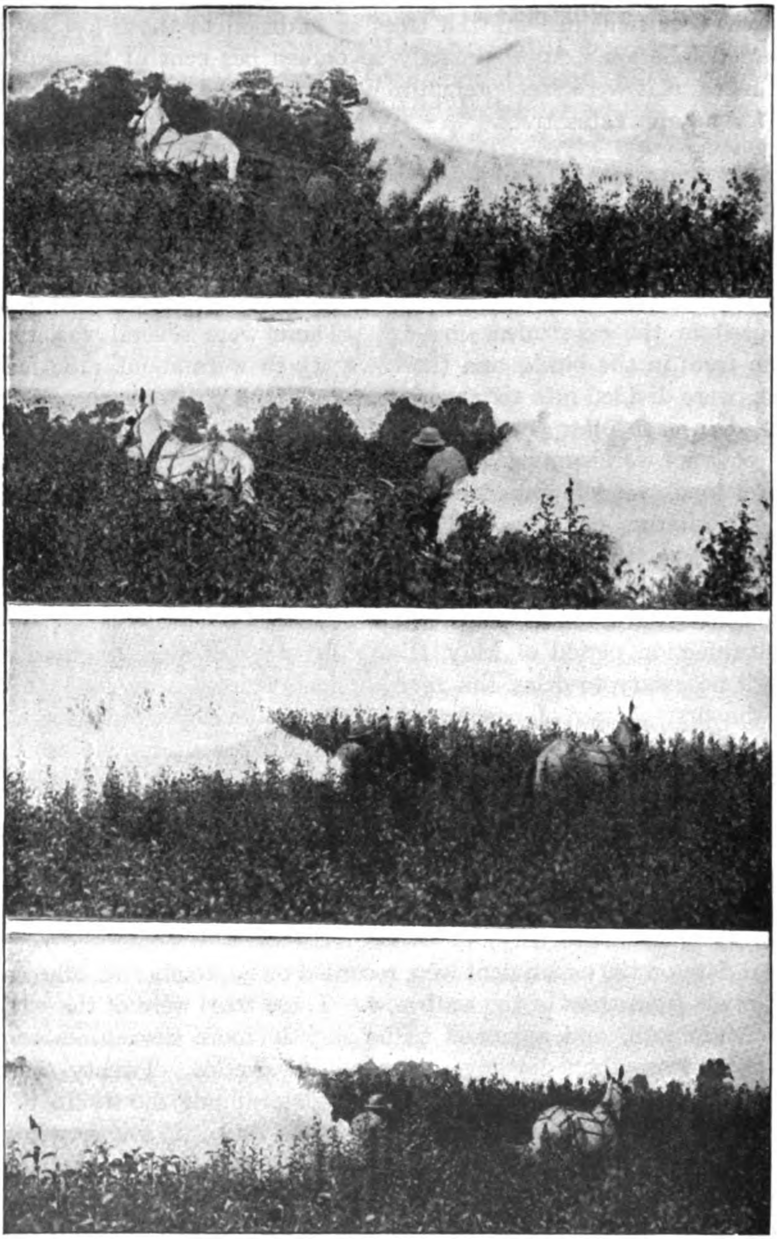


FIG. 77. DUSTING TWO-YEARS-OLD QUINCE TREES

The dust mixture floats like smoke through several rows of trees, completely covering the foliage. Photograph by C. R. Crosby

TABLE 9. DUSTING AND SPRAYING EXPERIMENT WITH QUINCE TREES IN 1916

Treatment	Number of trees from which data were recorded	Total number of leaves originally on trees	Non-infected leaves present		Diseased leaves present		Leaves missing	
			Number	Mean percentage	Number	Mean percentage	Number	Mean percentage
Untreated	20	3,579	21	0.66 ± 0.17	2,091	58.65 ± 2.07	1,467	40.68 ± 2.13
Sulfur 90, powdered arsenate of lead 10	20	3,451	2,565	74.28 ± 1.44	619	18.05 ± 1.09	267	7.66 ± 0.89
Lime-sulfur solution 1 to 50	20	3,215	2,226	69.39 ± 1.82	735	22.52 ± 1.60	254	8.07 ± 0.71

leaves originally on the trees, and the number and mean percentage of leaves not infected, of diseased leaves, and of leaves lost by premature defoliation.

The relatively high percentage of diseased leaves, and also of defoliation, on the trees in the treated plats is attributed principally to the infections that occurred during the period from May 14 to May 17, before the first application was made. Very little of the foliage that developed subsequently was affected. Practically all of the leaves remaining on the untreated trees were diseased, and it was very apparent that the number of infections on each leaf was much smaller on the treated trees. Approximately forty per cent of the foliage was missing from the untreated trees, as compared with seven per cent on the dusted trees.

SCAB DISEASE OF APPLE[9]

For several years the apple scab disease has been very destructive on certain varieties of apples in some of the nurseries of New York State and considerable damage has resulted from premature defoliation of the affected trees. The varieties of apples most commonly attacked by the scab fungus are Transcendent, Martha, and McIntosh, although the disease usually may be found to some extent on all varieties. On McIntosh trees, particularly, the fungus often attacks also the twigs and the branches, causing lesions which, along with premature defoliation, check the growth of the trees.

In 1916 several rows of two-years-old McIntosh trees in a nursery were so severely affected by the scab disease that only a small proportion of them made sufficient growth to be graded as first-class stock. Generally two- and three-years-old trees are more severely affected, but usually enough infections occur in the first-year-apple buds to enable the fungus to become established in the block. The diseased leaves fall to the ground, where they remain as a source of inoculum for the new foliage that develops the next year, and if weather conditions are favorable the scab disease appears in great abundance early in the season. The difference in varietal susceptibility to the scab disease is shown in figure 78. The trees on the left are of the variety Excelsior and have lost practically none of their foliage, while the Martha trees in adjoining rows show a large amount of defoliation.

No experiments were conducted in 1915 for the control of the scab disease on apple nursery stock.

Experiment in 1916

On May 26, 1916, attention was called to several rows of three-years-old Martha apple trees which were severely affected with the scab disease.

---

cab disease of apple is caused by *Venturia inæqualis* (Cke.) Wint.

Primary infection by the apple scab fungus had occurred during the rain period of May 14 to May 17, and it was impossible to find a single leaf that was not diseased. In anticipation that the trees would make more new growth, an experiment was planned to protect the new foliage that would develop subsequently. The rows of trees were divided into three experimental plats. Plat 1 was treated with lime-sulfur solution diluted one to fifty; plat 2 was not treated; plat 3 was dusted with the mixture of sulfur and powdered arsenate of lead.

Applications were made on May 26, June 12, June 23, and July 6. After the application of July 6 the experiment was abandoned, owing to the fact that the trees failed to develop new foliage after the infection in May. No data were obtained as to the effectiveness of the spray liquid and the dust mixture in preventing the scab disease. On the other hand, when the trees were observed on October 2 for the last time it was not difficult to distinguish between the treated and the untreated trees. The untreated trees were almost completely defoliated, while not only more foliage remained on the treated trees but also the leaves were less severely affected. Apparently the fungicides prevented considerable secondary infection on the foliage that was already diseased. Undoubtedly an application of the fungicides before May 14 would have been effective in preventing a large part of the primary infection. The results of the experiment performed emphasize again the importance of making the applications at the opportune time. In this case the trees were so severely damaged early in the season that they failed to recover sufficiently to develop new leaves and continue growing throughout the summer. The defoliated Martha trees illustrated in figure 78 are of the same age as,

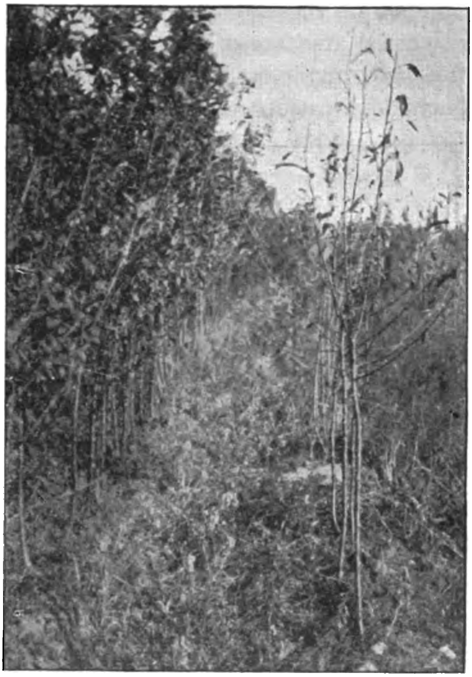


FIG. 78. VARIETAL SUSCEPTIBILITY OF APPLE TREES TO THE SCAB DISEASE

The defoliated trees on the right are of the variety Martha; those on the left are of the variety Excelsior. Although of the same age the defoliated Martha trees made less growth and were smaller than the Excelsior trees, which were not affected by the scab disease. Photographed September 14, 1916 but much smaller than, the Excelsior trees, which were not affected by the scab disease.

MILDEW OF ROSE [10]

Experiment in 1915

In 1915 an experiment was conducted for the control of the powdery mildew fungus on large Crimson Rambler rosebushes. The bushes were planted thickly and formed an arbor several hundred feet in length. A number of these bushes were dusted with the mixture of sulfur and powdered arsenate of lead by means of a hand duster, the first application being made on June 18, just as the mildew began to appear. Subsequent applications were made on July 12, July 21, and August 5. The applications of the dust mixture prevented the attacks of the mildew fungus throughout the growing season, and the bushes retained their beauty and appeared green and healthy until late in the autumn. The untreated bushes were severely affected by the mildew, and by midsummer many of the leaves and shoots were dried out and killed by the fungus.

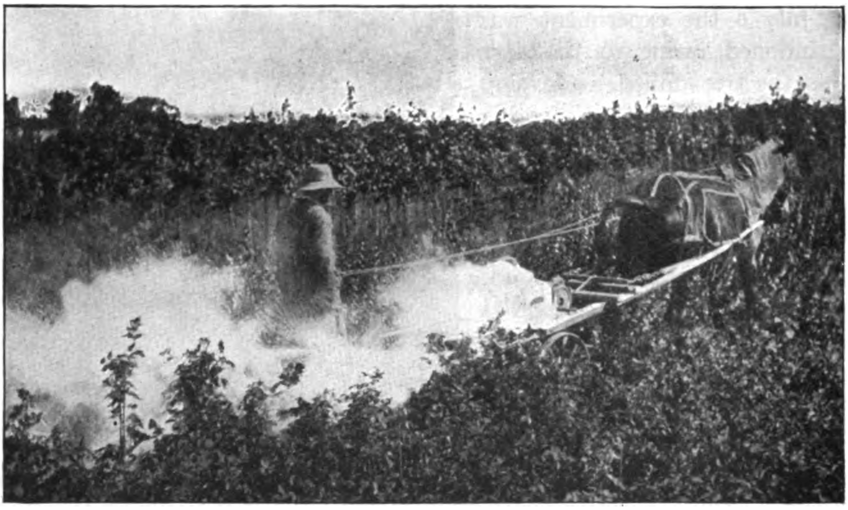


FIG. 79. DUSTING ROSES

This machine was used also for dusting the large horse-chestnut trees shown in the distance

Experiment in 1916

The same rose arbor was dusted again in 1916, on a more extensive scale, the dust mixture being applied by a traction machine (fig. 77). About 100 feet of the arbor was left untreated for a check. The first application was made on July 6 and subsequent treatments were given on July 20 and August 9. Although another application later in the season would have been desirable, the dusted bushes were only slightly affected, while the mildew had caused considerable injury on the untreated bushes when they were observed for the last time on October 2. It is to be noted also that there was much less defoliation caused by the black spot fungus on the treated bushes than on those that were not dusted.

---

[10] **The mildew of roses is caused by *Sphærotheca pannosa* (Wallr.) Lév. var. *rosæ* Wor.**

GENERALIZATIONS

The results of the experiments for the two years indicate that the dusting method is the more satisfactory means of treating nursery plantings for the control of leaf diseases. Where there has been a comparison of dusted plants and sprayed plants, the dust mixture has proved as effective as, and in most cases slightly more effective than, the lime-sulfur solution. This is particularly true for the leaf diseases of horse-chestnut and quince trees.

In certain experiments satisfactory control results were not obtained. These failures, however, can be attributed to causes such as failure to make the applications at the proper time, rather than to a lack of effectiveness on the part of the dust mixture. Furthermore, in each case in which the dust mixture did not control the disease the lime-sulfur solution also failed. Apparently, good control results may be expected if the applications are made so as to protect as much as possible of the foliage throughout the growing season.

Materials to be used

In all the experiments conducted in the nursery, a dust mixture was used consisting of ninety parts of finely ground sulfur and ten parts of powdered arsenate of lead. The arsenate of lead was added, not only for its value as an insecticide against chewing insects, but also, and primarily, for its adhesive properties. When lead arsenate is moistened there is a tendency for it to become somewhat gelatinous and sticky, thus increasing the adhesiveness and spreading quality of the mixture. The dust mixture is considerably more expensive than the lime-sulfur solution. On the other hand, the actual total expense for the dusting method is but slightly greater than for the liquid, since the handling of a large bulk of water is eliminated, the outfit as compared with a power sprayer is less expensive, and the operators are fewer in number. But, above all, the increased cost of the dust mixture is largely offset by the great saving in time, and especially by the ability to cover large areas at critical periods in a minimum of time. Only one man and a horse are necessary to operate the dusting machine, which runs between the rows and thoroughly dusts four rows of stock of any height found in the nursery (figs. 77 and 79). In some plantings, such as currants, the number of rows treated at one time often may be increased to six or seven. There is practically no delay in refilling the hopper, and the horse should walk at a rapid gait in order that there be no waste of the dust mixture.

Cost of the dust and spray methods

In the block of quince trees (page 449), which consisted of eight rows, four rows were thoroughly dusted at one time. Considering the time required for the horse with the machine to walk the distance of the block and return, only fifteen minutes were necessary to dust the entire area of two-thirds of an acre. Thirty-five pounds of dust mixture was used in covering the eight rows. The cost of the dust mixture for one application was $1.90; and with 15 cents added for labor, the entire block could be dusted within fifteen minutes at an estimated cost of $2.05, equivalent to about $3 an acre.

Judging from the time required to spray the quince experimental plats with hand machines, it would have taken one man eight hours to thoroughly spray the entire block of trees. Figuring the cost of the spray solution plus the cartage of water at 35 cents, and estimating the cost of eight hours labor at $1.60, one application of spray solution could be made for $1.95.

The slight increase in cost of the dusting method is of little importance considering the fact that the work can be done so much more quickly and thoroughly as compared with the spraying method. The ability to cover large areas in a minimum length of time is of primary importance when making the applications just previous to periods of weather favorable for infection of the leaf spot diseases.

A suitable spraying outfit would no doubt reduce somewhat the cost of spraying and afford a means of covering certain stock more rapidly than by hand sprayers. On the other hand, there are on the market no power spraying machines that can be used to advantage in treating plantings of nursery stock varying from one to seven or more feet in height. Furthermore, the labor required to operate a power sprayer is a special item. During the rush of other work in the nursery there is often a tendency to delay spraying until it is too late for the application to be effective. This difficulty is largely overcome with the dusting method, since the dusting can be done more quickly and with less labor, making it unnecessary to sacrifice other nursery work.

The ten-per-cent addition of powdered arsenate of lead to the finely ground sulfur greatly increases the cost of the dust mixture, and it is believed that the amount of arsenate of lead could be materially reduced without decreasing the effectiveness of the mixture. On the other hand, the addition of arsenate of lead is often desirable for certain applications when treating stock infested with chewing insects, such as rose and currant worms, and slugs on pears, cherries, and quinces. The arsenate of lead also improves the flowing qualities of the dust mixture, there being a tendency for pure sulfur to lump and clog and not flow freely from the duster. In certain experiments of Reddick and Crosby[11] this difficulty was overcome by the addition of hydrated lime. But there is some evidence that the lime reduces the fungicidal value of the mixture.[12] Besides, the mixture of sulfur and arsenate of lead appears to have higher adhesive quality than any other sulfur mixture. Experimental work should be continued in the nursery to test different sulfur mixtures in order that the cost of the dust mixture may be reduced as much as possible.

SUMMARY

The results of the experiments performed in 1915 and in 1916 indicate that the application of suitable powdered materials, with air used as a carrier, will control certain leaf diseases of nursery stock as well as does the commonly employed fungicide applied as a spray with water as a carrier.

The dust mixture of ninety parts of finely ground sulfur, practically all of which would pass through a screen of 200 meshes to the inch, and ten parts of equally fine powdered arsenate of lead, controlled the leaf diseases of horse-chestnut, currant, plum, cherry, quince, and rose in the nursery. It is reasonable to believe that the same results might be expected for the control of these diseases under other conditions, such as on cherry, quince, and plum trees in the orchard, or on mature currant bushes.

The dusting method is slightly more expensive, but the applications of the dust mixture can be made in a much shorter time and more thoroughly than can spraying with the usual machines now employed by nurserymen.

Experimental work should be continued, not only to test less expensive dust mixtures in order that the cost of the dust method may be reduced as much as possible, but also to test the value of the dusting method for the control of other leaf diseases found in the nursery.

In conclusion, too much emphasis cannot be laid on the necessity of using in the dust mixture only extremely finely ground materials. The fine materials will stick and adhere to the foliage, while the coarser materials merely roll off the leaves and are of little or no value.

---

[11] Reddick, Donald, and Crosby, C. R. Further experiments in the dusting and spraying of apples. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 354:53–96. 1915.

[12] Blodgett, F. M. Further studies on the spread and control of hop mildew. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 395:29–80. 1915.

JANUARY, 1917 BULLETIN 386

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

PHYSIOLOGICAL STUDIES OF BACILLUS RADICICOLA OF SOYBEAN (SOJA MAX PIPER) AND OF FACTORS INFLUENCING NODULE PRODUCTION

J. K. WILSON

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE
Review of literature 463
Methods of the present investigation 467
  The medium 467
  Sterilization of media and utensils 467
  Sterilization of seed 467
  The organism 468
  Culture methods for plants: 468
  Inoculation of plants 469
  Examination of roots for nodules 469
  The culture room 469
  Watering the plants 470
  Growing plants under sterile conditions 470
  Obtaining plantlets for water cultures 470
  Soil type used 470
  Necessity of artificial inoculation 471
  Normal production of nodules 472
Identification of *Bacillus radicicola* of soybean 473
  Details of identification methods 473
  Conclusions 475
  Discussion 476
Influence of certain chemical substances and of soil moisture on nodule formation . . 476
  Soil cultures. Volusia silt loam 476
    Nitrates 476
    Chlorides 478
    Sulfates 482
    Phosphates 483
    Ammonia-containing or ammonia-producing compounds 484
    Calcium-containing compounds 485
    Carbonates 487
    Various carbon compounds 488
    Variation of soil moisture 490
  Water cultures 490
    Pfeffer's solution with salts in various combinations 491
    Pfeffer's solution of various strengths 491
    Pfeffer's solution in the absence of nitrates 492
    Magnesium sulfate in distilled water 492
    Monopotassium phosphate 492
    Distilled water shaken with carbon black 492
Vitality of *Bacillus radicicola* of soybean under cultural conditions 494
  In soil cultures 494
  In water cultures 495
  Conclusion 498
Time required for initial infection 498
Is nodule formation associated with the nitrogen requirement of plants? 500
General discussion 502
Summary 504
Acknowledgment 505
Bibliography 506

PHYSIOLOGICAL STUDIES OF BACILLUS RADICICOLA OF SOYBEAN (SOJA MAX PIPER) AND OF FACTORS INFLUENCING NODULE PRODUCTION

J. K. Wilson

From a consideration of the literature of the subject it becomes apparent that there is a lack of fundamental information with respect to the morphological and physiological characteristics of the bacteria causing nodule production in leguminous plants, and that no thoro investigation has been made of the factors controlling nodule production. Moore (1905)[1] has stated that these factors vary with each member of the legume family and depend on the requirements of the host plant. In order to increase the knowledge of this subject, the writer has concluded investigations on the organism causing nodule production on soybeans and the factors influencing nodule production on this host. The soybean organism was selected for investigation because of its distinctive cultural characteristics and because of the increasing importance in New York State of the soybean as a crop.

The investigation includes study of the following points:

1. Morphological and physiological characters of the organism causing nodule production on soybeans.

2. Factors that may influence the formation of nodules on soybeans grown in soil or water cultures, using not only the salts that are essential for the development of the plants but also non-nutrient salts and various other substances. An effort was made to determine also the relation of the soil moisture content to the formation of nodules.

3. Vitality of *Bacillus radicicola* of soybean under different cultural conditions. An attempt was made here to determine whether or not inhibition of nodule production is due to death of the organism or to other causes.

4. Time required for infection. This includes, by indirect evidence, the time required for the organism to gain entrance into the root.

5. Is nodule production associated with the nitrogen requirement of the plant?

REVIEW OF LITERATURE

Relatively little work has been done to determine the influence of various substances on nodule formation, despite the fact that over sixty years ago Rautenberg and Kühn (1864), in investigations with *Vicia Faba*, incidentally observed that no nodules were formed on the plant roots when they were grown in various solutions containing nitrates.

---

[1] Dates in parenthesis refer to bibliography, page 506.

No more observations are noted until De Vries (1877) presented the results of his work with red clover. He found also that when plants were grown in full nutrient solutions containing nitrates at certain concentrations, the formation of nodules was inhibited.

Vines (1888–89), experimenting with *Vicia Faba*, employed soil cultures with boxes as the containers, and grew the plants both in the greenhouse and in the open. The beans were soaked in a nitrate solution before planting, and the solution was added to the soil after the beans were planted. Vines examined the roots after pulling up the plants. He concluded that the production of nodules was much less when a nitrate was present in the soil than when it was absent. His work indicates also that as the supply of nitrates decreases the number of nodules increases, and he advanced the idea that nodule production is associated with certain conditions of nutrition.

The same year Frank (1889) grew lupines and peas, on the one hand in a humous soil and on the other hand in a humus-free soil, and observed that nodules were freely formed in the latter case but none were produced in the former.

The effect of moisture on nodule production was noted by Gain (1893). He grew *Pisum sativum*, *Lupinus albus*, and *Faba vulgaris* in an arid section, watering some of the plants and leaving the remainder unwatered. Not only did the watered plants have a larger number of nodules, but the nodules were differently located. The beans that were watered produced several times as many nodules as did those that were left unwatered.

Hellriegel (1895) also made observations on the factors influencing nodule production. He says: "The best development and largest number of the tubercles are attained in soils quite free of nitrogen, and if the soil contains very much nitrogen the formation of tubercles may be altogether suppressed even when the fungus necessary to produce them is present."

The effect of calcium oxid on nodule formation has been observed by Salfeld-Lingen (1900). In 1893 he applied 2000 kilograms of quicklime per hectare to light sandy soil and in 1894 observed its effect on nodule production. Where the lime was applied the pea plants were dark green and the roots rich in nodules, while on the check field the plants were yellow and no nodules were found.

Marchal (1901) determined the concentrations of various substances that prevented nodule formation in Sachs' solution, which presumably had the following composition:

Potassium nitrate	1.0 gram
Sodium chloride	0.5 gram
Calcium phosphate	0.5 gram
Calcium sulfate	0.5 gram
Magnesium sulfate	0.5 gram
Water	1000 cubic centimeters

His conclusions may be briefly summarized as follows: The alkaline nitrates in concentrations of 1 to 10,000 and ammonium salts in concentrations of 1 to 2000 prevent nodule formation. The salts of potassium and of sodium behave similarly in concentrations of 1 to 200 and 1 to 300, respectively. The salts of calcium and of magnesium favor the production of nodules on the roots of the plants. Phosphoric acid has a stimulating effect. Marchal believes that the osmotic relationships are concerned with the inhibition of nodule formation.

Malpeaux (1901) also has observed the action of nitrates on nodule production of lupines. The addition of nitrate of soda diminished nodule formation and in a certain concentration prevented nodule development.

Laurent (1901) has contributed more extensively to this subject. He employed a variety of peas, and used small soil plats which were fertilized with a number of substances in excess of what the plants would use. He found: (1) that plants from the ammonium sulfate plat had only a few nodules, these being distributed over the lateral roots; (2) that plants from the plat receiving potassium salts were abundantly provided with nodules, which were massed together on the main root; (3) that with superphosphate of lime present, plants showed abundant formation of nodules, which were massed together on the principal roots; (4) that lime alone stimulated nodule production in great masses; (5) that sodium chloride stimulated the formation of numerous small nodules.

Wohltmann (1902) grew Canada field peas in a variety of soils and with a number of different treatments. He concluded that ammonium nitrate, if applied in liberal quantities, may reduce the number of nodules. Plants grown in one soil, no matter what treatment was applied, produced no nodules. Wohltmann points out that these results are significant with respect to the choice of fertilizers in relation to their effect on the bacteria in the soil.

Moore (1905) states that the alkaline nitrates in the proportion of 1 to 10,000 are sufficient to prevent the formation of nodules, and shows by photographs that soybeans grown in a poor sandy soil and in a poor clay soil have a greater supply of nodules than plants grown in a rich nitrogenous soil. He states also that fully as striking differences might be shown in a soil in which the moisture or the acidity or the air supply varies, and that the application of calcium or magnesium will act differently on nodule production depending on whether the plant grows under acid or under alkaline conditions.

Donnan (1912) observed that lucern plats which received lime as a fertilizer in connection with inoculation experiments showed a very great increase in the number of plants with nodules and also an increase in the number of nodules per plant; where no bacterial culture was used for lucern, however, the presence of lime caused practically no difference in nodule formation. Also, "complete manure did not, on the total throughout, increase the number of nodules, although an increased growth of both stem and root was caused by its application."

Eichinger (1913), in testing the value of fertilizers in connection with inoculation experiments for soybeans, cowpeas, and other crops, observed that superphosphate increased the production of nodules, whereas sodium nitrate inhibited nodule formation.

Prucha (1915), in experiments with Canada field pea, found that certain substances when added to water culture or soil culture materially influenced nodule formation. The nitrates of calcium and potassium, as well as the chlorides of ammonium, calcium, and iron, when added to the soil in certain quantities inhibited nodule formation. This was true also of saccharose and of Witte's peptone. On the other hand, potassium dihydrogen phosphate, magnesium sulfate, potassium hydroxide, calcium phosphate, calcium sulfate, tannic acid, and starch, exerted a beneficial influence on nodule development. In water culture the presence of nitrogen as calcium nitrate or as potassium nitrate depressed nodule formation. Prucha determined also the influence on nodule formation of aëration, of some nutrient solutions, and of potassium nitrate, in light as compared with darkness. Aëration had no influence as measured in this work. A smaller number of nodules developed in light than in darkness.

In concluding a review of the literature it may be said that there are many factors which have more or less bearing on nodule formation and it is doubtful whether any one of the investigators has properly controlled all of them. This is especially so with all field tests, for here it is impossible to control the moisture relations and the concentration of the soil solution, both of which are known to bear intimate relations to nodule formation. Those who have worked with water culture have more nearly approached an ideal condition, at least a condition in which they have controlled many of these known influences. There are undoubtedly many factors, such as temperature, age of the root, age of the entire plant, its condition of thrift, and the like, which bear some relation to nodule formation and which have been given little or no consideration in work of this kind. Whether these unknown influences are potent enough to materially alter the results already obtained can be told only as more light is thrown on this subject by experimental work.

METHODS OF THE PRESENT INVESTIGATION

A somewhat definite outline of the methods employed in the experiments reported in this bulletin is necessary and is here given. The experiments made, unless otherwise indicated, were conducted in accordance with these methods.

The medium

The medium employed for the isolation and cultivation of *Bacillus radicicola* of soybean is a modification of Ashby's medium and was prepared according to the following formula:

Dibasic potassium phosphate	0.2 gram
Magnesium sulfate	0.2 gram
Sodium chloride	0.2 gram
Calcium carbonate	0.2 gram
Calcium sulfate	0.2 gram
Agar	15.0 grams
Saccharose	20.0 grams
Tap water to make	1000 cubic centimeters

Test tubes were prepared containing from 6 to 10 cubic centimeters of this solution, and in each tube a crushed soybean was placed.

Sterilization of media and utensils

Strict precautions were observed in securing sterile material wherever it was necessary. All the media used for pure cultures, when in small volume, were sterilized in the autoclave for fifteen minutes at 15 pounds pressure. Media in larger volumes were left in the autoclave for a longer period of time. In the case of soil cultures the containers and the soil were sterilized for two hours at a pressure of 15 pounds.

Sterilization of seed

For certain experiments it was desirable to have seed free not only of *B. radicicola* but also of all other organisms. To this end, seeds were treated for three hours in a solution of calcium hypochlorite (Wilson, 1915) containing approximately 2 per cent of chlorine. After this treatment they were transferred to the culture containers.

The organism

The original culture for investigation was made from a stock culture which had been kept in the laboratory for two years or more, the exact date of isolation not being known. Transfers had been repeatedly made during this period, employing the medium previously described. This stock culture had also been repeatedly tested for its ability to produce nodules, with positive results. It was the culture from which hundreds of pure cultures have been prepared for distribution to farmers of the State.

Culture methods for plants

Both soil and water cultures were employed. The soil cultures were prepared by placing the equivalent of 208 grams of dry soil in glass tumblers having a capacity of approximately 250 cubic centimeters. The moisture was controlled after the seeds were planted. For the water cultures tumblers were used in some experiments, and in others glass cylinders of about 4700 cubic centimeters capacity were substituted. The solutions for these containers were prepared from stock solutions, placed directly in the container, and covered immediately with paraffin paper, which was held firmly to the container by a string or a rubber band. Plants grown in these culture solutions were not under strictly sterile conditions, yet in no case did the control cultures show nodule production.

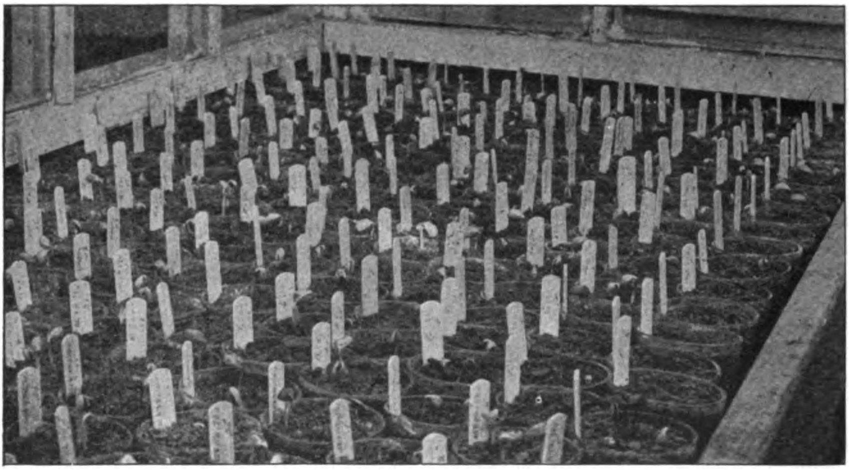


FIG. 80. METHOD OF ARRANGING SOIL CULTURES

The soil cultures for testing the vitality of *B. radicicola* under various cultural conditions were prepared in glass tumblers (page 494). Each tumbler was filled to within two centimeters of the top with air-dry, sandy soil, covered with heavy wrapping paper, and sterilized as previously described. These tumblers were kept covered until planting time, when the covers were removed only long enough for planting the seeds and watering. The cultures were then transferred to the greenhouse and placed in an especially constructed culture room (fig. 80). Here they remained covered until the plants were in need of light for growth. This required five days out of the fourteen which were allowed for nodule development. The remaining nine days were not sufficient to permit disturbing conditions.

Inoculation of plants

The same methods were used to inoculate both soil and water cultures. The cultures were inoculated twenty-four hours after planting, the method being as follows: A small quantity of water was added to a fresh growth of the organism on an agar slope. The growth was then loosened by means of a platinum loop, and added to 100 cubic centimeters of sterile water. In order to secure inoculation a definite amount of this infusion, usually 5 cubic centimeters, was added to each culture. Platings of this infusion showed as many as 10,000,000 germs per cubic centimeter.

Examination of roots for nodules

Repeated trials showed that nodules macroscopically visible will develop under favorable conditions in fourteen days. However, in order to show the influence of certain factors on nodule formation and to eliminate all doubt as to the results obtained, and also to make the results more decisive, the roots were not examined in many of the experiments until after a considerably longer time had elapsed. In all cases the exact time is indicated. In determining the presence or the absence of nodules and the number produced in soil culture, the roots were first freed of soil by gently washing them and the counts were then made. For purposes of comparison the nodules are arbitrarily classed under groups, the classification being based on size and distribution; those 1 millimeter or more in diameter are designated as large, and those less than 1 millimeter in diameter are designated as small.

The culture room

In order to prevent contamination of the plant cultures growing in tumblers with *B. radicicola*, and to reduce evaporation from the free surfaces of the exposed containers, an especially constructed culture room was provided in the greenhouse. To secure ventilation certain panes of glass were replaced by frames fitted with layers of cotton held in place by cheesecloth. In winter these frames could be removed when necessary and replaced by frames containing glass. Cracks in the walls between the glass parts were filled with plaster of paris. The floor and the benches were covered with cinders so as to reduce danger of contamination thru dust. Before using the room the walls and wooden parts were always thoroly washed.

Watering the plants

The water cultures had enough of the solution to supply their needs during the experimental period. With the soil cultures it was different. In order to maintain an optimum and somewhat definite moisture condition for growth it was necessary to water the plants every day. In all experiments, unless otherwise stated, distilled water was used. This was necessary in order to avoid the addition of substances that might have an influence on nodule formation.

Growing plants under sterile conditions

In determining the causal organism of nodule production, nodules must be produced in the presence of only the one organism in question. To accomplish this, it is necessary to grow the plant and the organism to the exclusion of all other forms of life. For this purpose a long-necked, flat-bottomed, four-liter flask was used in these experiments. In this flask was placed 1800 grams of sandy soil with a moisture content of about 16 per cent. The flask was plugged with cotton, thru which passed a glass tube with a bore large enough to allow the passage of a soybean. This tube also was plugged with cotton. At the time of seed planting the upper end of the glass tube was heated, the cotton was removed, and the seed was taken from the disinfecting solution and put into the flask thru the tube. The tube served also in placing and burying the seed, as well as providing an inlet for introducing the suspension of bacteria for inoculation.

Obtaining plantlets for water cultures

Soybeans (of the variety Hollybrook) were placed in a vessel, soaked in running water for three or four hours, and germinated between filter paper. Within a week germination was usually sufficiently advanced so that when brought into the light the cotyledons would turn green. At this stage they were ready for use, and the hypocotyl could be inserted into the culture solution thru a hole in the covering of the vessel.

Soil type used

In order to have as uniform conditions as possible for experiments of this kind, a well-defined New York State soil type was selected. This type was chosen mainly because of its accessibility and its agricultural importance. Owing to its water-holding capacity, the Volusia silt loam soil is adapted mostly to annual plants, especially the annual legumes, the biennial plants failing because of frequent heaving of the soil in winter or because of the deficiency in the soil of some particular element, probably calcium.

The soil for the experimental work was procured from a farm in the vicinity of Ithaca. This soil had not been cultivated for at least twenty years, if at all, for it was taken from a strip dividing two fields. Since this soil had not been cultivated, it is probable that no kind of fertilizing material had ever been added to it.

On October 16, 1913, the top six or seven inches of soil from this field was brought to the college greenhouse and thoroly mixed after screening. The screenings were discarded. This mixed soil was placed in boxes, each box being filled and kept thoroly tight so that only a slight amount of moisture was lost. As soil was needed it was taken from the box, a moisture determination was made, and then enough soil was weighed into tumblers to equal 208 grams of dry soil. The chemical to be added to the soil, if soluble, was dissolved in just enough water so that when this was added to the soil it would give a moisture content of approximately 35 per cent of the dry weight of the soil. This percentage of moisture was used in all the soil tests. If the substance to be added was not soluble it was mixed with the soil, and the amount of water necessary to make a moisture content of 35 per cent was then added. This water content was maintained constant by daily weighings and addition of the necessary quantity of water.

Necessity of artificial inoculation

It is a common observation that leguminous plants which are grown on a soil for the first time may be void of nodules. Therefore, in order

TABLE 1. RESULTS OF EXPERIMENT TO DETERMINE THE NECESSITY OF ARTIFICIAL INOCULATION

Species tested	Nodules
Vigna unguiculata (cowpea)	None
Soja max (soybean)	None
Trifolium alexandrinum	None
Medicago lupulina	None
Medicago sativa	None
Medicago officinalis	None
Medicago falcata	None
Medicago media	None
Melilotus alba	None
Melilotus indica	None
Trifolium pratense	Present
Vicia villosa	None
Vicia sativa	None
Vicia dasycarpa	None
Vicia angustifolia	None

to determine whether it was necessary to inoculate the soil cultures with *B. radicicola*, tumblers were prepared with the Volusia silt loam soil in them and planted with a number of different legume seeds, including soybean. The tumblers were watered daily but no effort was made to maintain a definite amount of water in the soil. The results are presented in table 1.

Of the fifteen leguminous plants grown in this soil, nodules were produced only in *Trifolium pratense*. It is therefore necessary, for nodule production, to inoculate each soybean culture with *B. radicicola* of soybean.

Normal production of nodules

How widely the number of nodules per plant will vary under uniform conditions has not been determined. The data that have been obtained by other investigators along this line are so varied that no conclusions can be drawn. This is probably due to a lack of controlling the many factors influencing nodule production.

In order to obtain data that would be of value in drawing conclusions from the results that follow, a test was made to determine what the normal production of nodules may be in a given soil. A series of tumblers were prepared with soil and planted with soybeans, which were selected for uniformity of shape and size. The various portions of the soil were equally inoculated with the soybean culture and were kept at a definite moisture content by daily weighings. The data from one hundred plants are given in table 2:

TABLE 2. NORMAL PRODUCTION OF NODULES IN SOIL CULTURE
(Duration of experiment, 14 days)

Number of plants examined	Number of nodules	Number of nodules per plant	Number of nodules per plant, average of 50 plants	Number of nodules per plant, average of 100 plants
25	89	3.56	3.70 3.50 3.54 3.64 3.68 3.48	3.59
25	86	3.44		
25	88	3.52		
25	96	3.84		
Average	....	....	3.62	....
Variation	....	....	±0.12	....

These data show that the normal production of nodules per plant under the conditions of this experiment is between three and four. This is true no matter whether twenty-five, fifty, or one hundred plants are considered. Figured to a basis of one hundred plants, the normal variation is ± 12. That this number is quite reliable is shown by the results from one hundred and twenty-five plants which were grown as check plants in subsequently reported experiments. These one hundred and twenty-five plants produced 350 nodules per 100 plants and the theoretical number would be 359. Therefore, in the experimental data which follow, the number of nodules per 100 plants which fluctuates more than ± 12 from that shown by the check plants may be considered as due to the condition under which the plants were grown.

IDENTIFICATION OF BACILLUS RADICICOLA OF SOYBEAN

No detailed description of the soybean organism has as yet appeared, tho occasional incidental references are found concerning it. This is undoubtedly due in part to the difficulties encountered in cultivating the organism, in determining its motility, and in staining the flagella.

The source of the culture used in this work has been described and its ability to produce nodules is known. In order, however, to prove definitely that the culture employed was of the soybean organism and not a mixture, the following procedure was adopted for the reisolation of the organism preparatory to a study of the physiological and morphological characters:

1. Soybean plants were grown under sterile conditions and the roots inoculated with the culture.
2. When nodules were developed a new isolation was made from the nodule.
3. The original culture, and the cultures isolated from the nodule produced under sterile conditions, were then studied in the laboratory with respect to their morphological and physiological characters. Their group number was determined according to the descriptive chart of the Society of American Bacteriologists (1907).
4. All the cultures were again tested under sterile conditions for their ability to effect inoculation.

Details of identification methods

For growing plants under sterile conditions the methods previously described were followed. The plants were prepared on December 27, 1913, and were inoculated on the following day with the organism in question. The flasks were then placed in the greenhouse, where they remained until February 28, 1914. At that time they were brought to the laboratory and the roots were examined for nodules. At the same time the soil from the flasks was examined for bacteria by planting it in both peptone beef-extract agar and in the modified Ashby's medium.

There were abundant nodules on the roots of the plants that were grown only in the presence of the organism in question. In seven days the plantings in the above-mentioned media were examined. Those made in peptone beef-extract agar showed no growth at all, while those made in the modified Ashby's medium showed a pure culture of some organism which resembled in every way, as judged from plantings, the organism that was introduced into the soil. The check plant showed no nodule development, and plantings of the soil showed no bacterial growth, on either medium used.

Two of the nodules produced were used for reisolation of the cultures. The pieces of root with nodules were first washed in mercuric chloride solution 1–1000 for two minutes, and then rinsed several times in sterilized water. Plantings of the last water used showed no bacterial growth. Plantings of the interior of these nodules developed a pure culture of some organism resembling in every way the culture introduced into the soil. From one of the plantings a colony was selected which was in all probability produced from one germ. A transfer was made from this colony to an agar slope. The same method was followed in obtaining another culture from a second nodule. These cultures were replanted along with the original culture, and their purity was determined.

A delay of several months occurred before the cultures were compared and their morphological and physiological characters determined. In June their detailed features were determined and a brief characterization was made. The methods for staining the flagella were as follows:

The organism was stained according to Pitfield's method as modified by Muir and Ritchie (1907). The mordant used was made according to the following formula:

	Cubic centimeters
Tannic acid, 10 per cent water solution filtered	10
Corrosive sublimate, saturated watery solution	5
Alum, saturated watery solution	5
Carbol fuchsin	5

These substances were mixed thoroly and filtered before using. The stain consisted of the following:

	Cubic centimeters
Alum, saturated watery solution	10
Gentian violet, saturated alcoholic solution	2

Films were prepared from cultures on agar which were grown at room temperature for from one day to seven days. A very small portion of the growth was taken on the loop of a platinum needle and carefully transferred to water on a cover glass. This was allowed to dry in the open room, was fixed by passing thru a flame, and was covered with the mordant. The cover glass was covered with as much of the mordant as it would hold, and was heated gently over the flame. It was allowed to steam for about two minutes and was then washed well in running water. When it was thoroly dry the stain was applied, and the cover glass was heated as before for about a minute and then thoroly washed in water.

Examination of preparations made in this way showed that the flagella were peritrichous, the highest number found being four.

A comparison of these three cultures show them to be identical in every particular. They do not form spores, they are facultative anaërobes, and they do not liquefy gelatin either at room temperature (from 20° to 26° C.) or in the ice box (from 10° to 18° C.). No gas nor acid is produced from dextrose, lactose, or saccharose, and nitrates are not reduced. The cultures are colorless on agar slopes altho they are somewhat glistening in character. After two weeks they are slightly brownish, both on agar slopes and on potato cultures. The organism stains readily with most stains, and gives slightly different measurements under different cultural conditions. These measurements may range from 0.6 μ to 1.2 μ broad by from 0.8 μ to 3 μ long. Occasionally X and Y forms are observed, this also depending on the culture medium.

The last step in this determination of the causal organism was to retest all cultures as to their ability to produce nodules. On July 3, 1914, flasks were prepared and sterilized soybeans were planted in them. Three days later transfers from the original cultures, which gave identical characters, were injected into the soil within the flasks, which were then placed in the greenhouse. On July 15 the roots of these plants were examined for nodules.

The original culture and the two cultures which had been isolated from nodules grown under sterile conditions effected inoculation. The roots of the check plants were entirely void of any structures resembling nodules.

Conclusions

It would seem from these data that the organism in question was the one responsible for nodule formation, and that according to its detailed features it is a Bacillus, the flagella being attached to any part of the body. The highest number found in any preparation was four. Its group number, therefore, according to the classification of Migula (1900) and as determined by the descriptive chart of the Society of American Bacteriologists (1907), is B.222.3332033.

Discussion

The results of these findings are in accord with the findings of those who hold that the flagella of the organism are peritrichous and not polar. Its group number is slightly different from that given to *B. radicicola* of Canada field pea by Prucha (1915). He finds that this organism produces acid without gas from dextrose and saccharose. Under the same conditions the culture from soybean grew so little, if at all, that no change was recorded by the method used.

INFLUENCE OF CERTAIN CHEMICAL SUBSTANCES AND OF SOIL MOISTURE ON NODULE FORMATION

As pointed out in the review of literature (page 463), various phases of the subject relating to the factors influencing the formation of nodules have been touched on from time to time. As yet no comprehensive work has appeared. In the investigations herewith reported, the writer has endeavored to determine the influence on nodule formation of a large number of substances both nutrient and non-nutrient, as well as of carbohydrates and other substances, in soil cultures and in water cultures.

Soil cultures. Volusia silt loam

Nitrates

On February 21, 1914, tumblers were filled as has been described, and a number of different nitrates applied to the soil. For each nitrate there were ten tumblers, each containing 208 grams of soil. The rate of application of the different nitrates to this soil was not the same in all cases, because of the variation in toxic effect of the different salts on the plant. The application of the salt is, however, not an arbitrary one, for in a previous experiment of the same nature the optimum concentration for each nitrate was determined for plant growth. The amount of salt added, however, is in all cases in excess of what would be used in field practice; yet the results

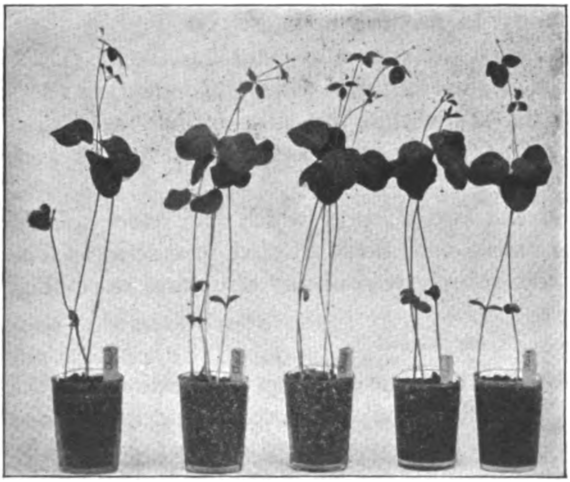


FIG. 81. CHECK PLANTS

are suggestive of what might be expected from the use of nitrates. The data are given in tables 3 and 4.

It is seen from table 3 that as a rule the application of nitrates greatly reduces the number of nodules formed. Of the eighteen nitrates used, only two permitted a total number of nodules greater than 165 per 100 plants. Not only are the numbers and the sizes reduced, but also their location is different. With the check plants a greater proportion of the nodules are on the main roots than is the case with those plants that have been grown under the influence of the nitrates.

In a preliminary experiment in which the plants were examined fifty days after planting, certain nitrates completely checked the appearance of nodules. That this checking of nodule formation is not due to the injurious effect of the nitrate on plant growth is seen from table 4. In this experiment the nitrates were applied

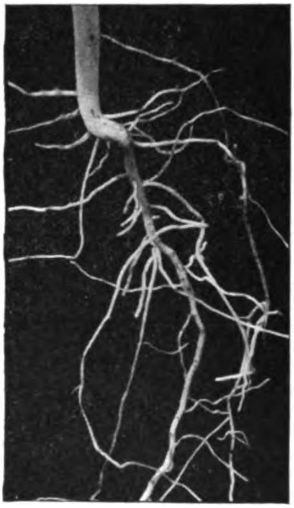


Fig. 82. Root of check plant, natural size, showing small nodules

TABLE 3. Influence of Nitrates on Nodule Formation

(In 208 grams of dry soil. Duration of experiment, 30 days)

Substance used	Quantity applied (grams)	Number of plants	Number of nodules on main roots		Number of nodules on other roots		Total number of nodules	Number per 100 plants
			Large	Small	Large	Small		
Calcium nitrate	0.1	63	0	5	0	80	85	135
Potassium nitrate	0.1	44	0	6	0	63	69	157
Ammonium nitrate	0.1	49	0	0	0	4	4	8
Magnesium nitrate	0.1	64	0	3	0	45	48	75
Sodium nitrate	0.1	62	0	8	0	48	56	90
Aluminium nitrate	0.1	60	0	26	0	188	214	357
Barium nitrate	0.1	56	0	13	0	36	49	88
Ferric nitrate	0.1	57	0	8	0	38	46	81
Lead nitrate	0.1	53	0	4	0	8	12	23
Cadmium nitrate	0.02	57	0	0	0	12	12	21
Cerium nitrate	0.1	58	0	13	0	46	59	102
Strontium nitrate	0.1	59	0	0	0	27	27	46
Lithium nitrate	0.1	71	0	6	0	11	17	24
Zinc nitrate	0.05	59	0	10	0	69	79	134
Uranium nitrate	0.1	65	2	20	0	47	69	106
Nickel nitrate	0.02	62	0	30	0	72	102	165
Mercuric nitrate	0.1	62	0	28	0	44	72	116
Nitric acid	0.05	60	8	184	0	15	207	345
Checks	.....	125	22	195	1	220	438	350

in a series of concentrations ranging from what would seem to be a heavy application to a very light one. The test was run in duplicate. With these applications it was possible to tell what concentrations are effective in checking nodule formation, and what ones produce injury to the plants. The former was determined by an absence of nodules, and the latter by an optical comparison of the plants with checks grown under the same condition. The injurious action was usually manifest by difference in root growth, tho sometimes by browning of leaves.

TABLE 4. SHOWING AMOUNT OF NITRATE WHICH INHIBITS NODULE FORMATION, AND AMOUNT WHICH CAUSES INJURY TO PLANTS

(In 208 grams of dry soil. Duration of experiment, 50 days)

Substance used	Amount necessary to inhibit nodule formation (grams)	Amount necessary to cause injury to plant* (grams)
Lithium nitrate	0.2	1.0
Cadmium nitrate	0.1	0.1
Sodium nitrate	0.1	0.5
Calcium nitrate	0.2	1.0
Uranium nitrate	0.1	1.0
Strontium nitrate	0.2	0.5
Zinc nitrate	0.1	0.5
Ferrous nitrate	0.1	0.5
Nickel nitrate	0.05	0.1
Ammonium nitrate	0.1	0.5
Mercuric nitrate	0.1	1.0
Cæsium nitrate	0.2	0.5
Silver nitrate	0.05	0.05
Potassium nitrate	0.05	0.5
Magnesium nitrate	0.5	0.5
Lead nitrate	0.2	0.5
Barium nitrate	0.2	0.5

* The injury to plants was determined by comparing them with check plants grown under similar conditions.

This summary brings out very forcibly that considerably less quantities of nitrates than are necessary to produce injury to the plants may completely inhibit the formation of nodules. This was true in fourteen out of seventeen cases. In the cases of the nitrates of cadmium, silver, and magnesium, the nodule formation stopped with those applied concentrations that injured the plants.

Chlorides

The influence of chlorides on the formation of nodules was tested simultaneously with that of the nitrates, and the same check plants were used in this and the following experiments. Here, as with the nitrates, the application of the chloride is somewhat higher than would usually be applied, but such quantities are often found in the soil. The results are given in table 5:

TABLE 5. INFLUENCE OF CHLORIDES ON NODULE FORMATION

(In 208 grams of dry soil. Duration of experiment, 30 days)

Substance used	Quantity applied (grams)	Number of plants	Number of nodules on main roots		Number of nodules on other roots		Total number of nodules	Number per 100 plants
			Large	Small	Large	Small		
Potassium chloride....	0.05	58	19	40	3	314	376	648
Sodium chloride........	0.05	40	3	40	10	181	234	585
Magnesium chloride...	0.05	38	0	9	20	337	366	963
Calcium chloride......	0.05	50	3	19	6	492	520	1,040
Cæsium chloride........	0.05	55	9	70	11	405	495	900
Bismuth chloride......	0.05	50	0	12	7	332	351	702
Rubidium chloride.....	0.05	52	4	42	0	255	301	579
Lithium chloride*.....	0.05	50	1	25	1	74	101	202
Cupric chloride........	0.05	41	14	28	5	150	197	480
Aluminium chloride....	0.05	53	2	9	29	298	338	638
Lead chloride.........	0.05	45	1	27	8	207	243	540
Ammonium chloride...	0.05	39	0	19	0	29	48	123
Manganese chloride....	0.05	47	0	72	0	334	406	864
Cobalt chloride*.......	0.05	38	0	0	0	37	37	97
Strontium chloride.....	0.05	53	4	54	0	403	461	870
Ferrous chloride.......	0.05	63	10	35	0	326	371	589
Ferric chloride........	0.05	54	1	60	0	404	465	861
Nickel chloride*.......	0.05	33	1	0	0	56	57	173
Zinc chloride..........	0.05	40	1	27	0	123	151	378
Antimony trichloride...	0.05	53	7	2	15	161	185	349
Barium chloride.......	0.05	52	0	10	0	328	338	650
Hydrogen chloride.....	0.05	54	84	227	0	15	326	604
Checks...............	.....	125	22	195	1	220	438	350

* Application toxic.

It is evident from table 5 that the chlorides have a decided stimulating effect on the formation of nodules. In seventeen cases out of the twenty-two in which the chlorides were applied, the number of nodules was greater per 100 plants than when no chlorides were applied to the soil (fig. 82). In three of the five cases in which the nodules were less than in the case of the check plants, the applications of the chlorides were toxic to the plants. In a preliminary experiment in which these three chlorides were applied in amounts not toxic, a stimulating effect was noted. With ammonium chloride there seems to be an inhibitory effect. This compound will be given further consideration later (table 8, page 484).

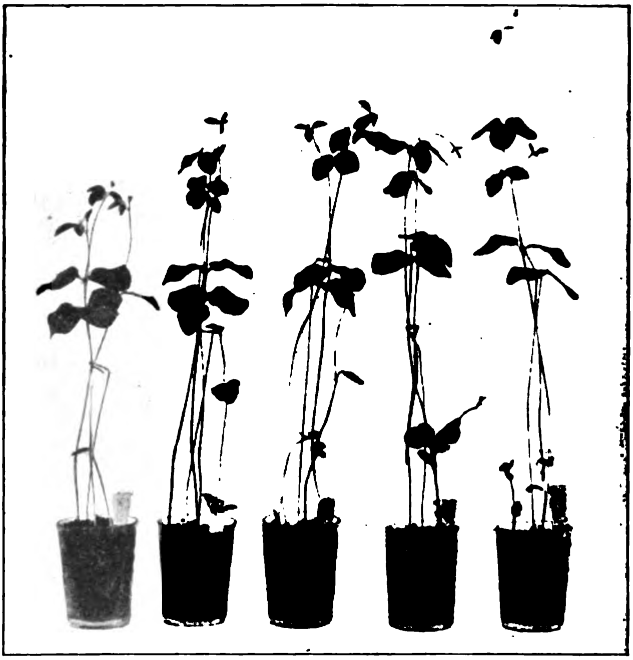


Fig. 83. PLANTS GROWN WITH SODIUM CHLORIDE

From left to right, plants grown with 0.2, 0.1, 0.05, 0.02, and 0.01 gram of sodium chloride, respectively, in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil

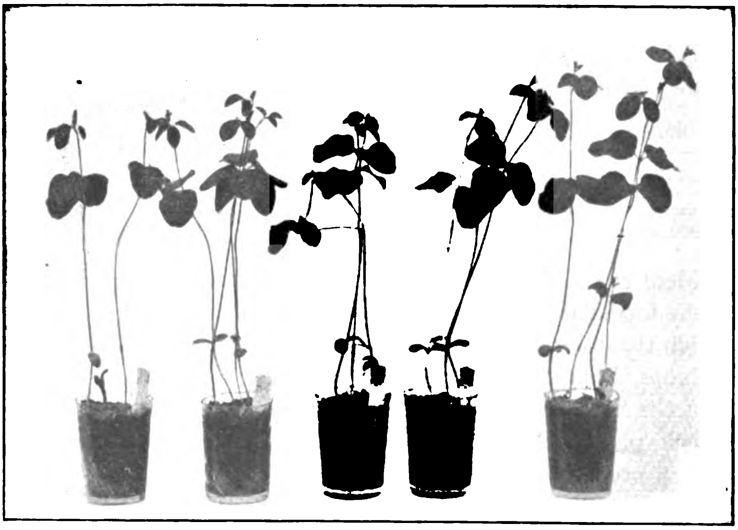


FIG. 84. PLANTS GROWN WITH STRONTIUM CHLORIDE

From left to right, plants grown with 0.2, 0.1, 0.05, 0.02, and 0.01 gram of strontium chloride, respectively, in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil

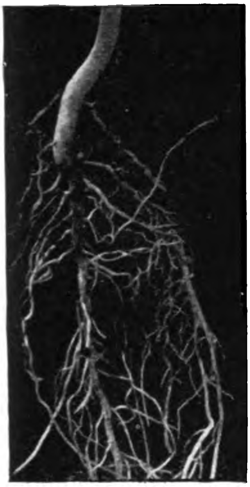


FIG. 85. ROOT OF PLANT GROWN WITH 0.01 GRAM OF POTASSIUM CHLORIDE. NATURAL SIZE

Plant grown in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil

In the case of some of these chlorides, and possibly with a majority of them, the high results obtained may be due in part to the presence of the base with which the chloride is combined. The results with calcium chloride would fall into this class. However, the consistently beneficial results with nearly all the chlorides, and the beneficial effect of hydrochloric acid in which there is no base, would tend to discredit the view that the base is a factor.

In a preliminary experiment in which the chlorides were applied in quantities sufficient to injure plant growth, they did not completely inhibit nodule formation. When 0.2 gram of copper chloride was applied, nodules were produced, while plants grown in the presence of 0.05 gram showed injury, which was evident by the appearance of brown spots on the roots. With cobalt chloride nodules were produced on the plant roots under applications of 0.1 gram, while the roots were injured by application of 0.05 gram per 208 grams of soil.

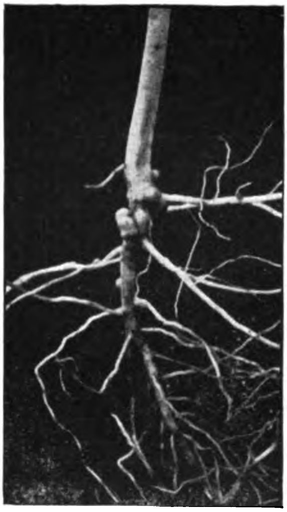


FIG. 87. ROOT OF PLANT GROWN WITH 0.01 GRAM OF STRONTIUM CHLORIDE. NATURAL SIZE

Plant grown in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil

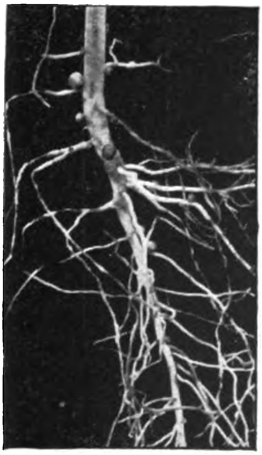


FIG. 86. ROOT OF PLANT GROWN WITH 0.01 GRAM OF SODIUM CHLORIDE. NATURAL SIZE

Plant grown in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil

These results are quite in accord with those obtained by Laurent (1901), but are just the reverse of those obtained by Prucha (1915), who concluded that under the conditions of his experiments the chlorides of ammonium, potassium, and iron inhibit nodule formation in Canada field pea. These differences may be due to the use of a different host plant, but more probably they are due to differences in experimental procedure.

Sulfates

The influence of sulfates on the formation of nodules was tested in the greenhouse simultaneously with the study of the nitrates and the chlorides. The conditions for all three experiments were the same. The results with the sulfates are given in table 6:

TABLE 6. INFLUENCE OF SULFATES ON NODULE FORMATION
(In 208 grams of dry soil. Duration of experiment, 30 days)

Substance used	Quantity applied (grams)	Number of plants	Number of nodules on main roots		Number of nodules on other roots		Total number of nodules	Number per 100 plants
			Large	Small	Large	Small		
Sodium sulfate	0.05	65	11	46	2	53	112	172
Manganese sulfate	0.05	59	22	68	0	151	241	408
Magnesium sulfate	0.05	58	7	21	1	32	61	105
Calcium sulfate	2.00	61	12	101	0	53	166	272
Barium sulfate	2.00	63	16	93	1	92	202	321
Potassium sulfate	0.05	58	8	67	0	134	209	360
Zinc sulfate	0.05	61	8	67	0	104	179	293
Copper sulfate	0.05	61	2	11	0	48	61	100
Nickel sulfate*	0.05	52	0	9	16	79	104	200
Lithium sulfate	0.05	68	5	21	4	103	133	196
Aluminium sulfate	0.05	51	9	51	0	37	97	190
Strontium sulfate	2.00	66	6	117	1	89	213	323
Mercuric sulfate	0.50	44	0	9	0	15	24	55
Iron tersulfate†	0.05	56	9	39	1	99	148	264
Iron and ammonium sulfate	0.05	65	0	47	0	132	179	275
Ammonium sulfate	0.05	60	1	12	0	26	39	65
Calcium ethyl sulfate	0.05	53	64	171	11	195	441	832
Aluminium and ammonium sulfate	0.05	62	19	47	0	273	339	547
Chromium and potassium sulfate	0.05	70	13	46	2	247	308	440
Aluminium and potassium sulfate	0.05	58	39	79	0	278	396	683
Quinine sulfate	0.05	61	32	57	0	273	362	593
Checks	.....	125	22	195	1	220	438	350

* Roots show slight toxic effect from salt.
† This is iron *tersulfate*, not iron *persulfate*.

From these data it seems that the sulfates have a harmful effect on nodule formation. Of the twenty-one sulfates tested, fourteen show a reduction in nodule formation. Of these fourteen, mercuric sulfate and ammonium sulfate show the greatest depressing effect. Plants grown in the presence of 0.05 gram of potassium sulfate show 10 more nodules per 100 plants than do the checks, which is well within the normal variation. Those grown under the influence of manganese sulfate show 58 more nodules per 100 plants than do the checks. It would hardly seem that this is due to normal variation, but rather to the apparent stimulation of root growth by manganese, thus making possible a greater chance for infection. With calcium ethyl sulfate it is probable that the calcium, and perhaps the ethyl part of the compound, may have a beneficial influence on nodule formation. A further discussion of the calcium compounds is given on page 485. The aluminium and ammonium sulfate and the chromium and potassium sulfate have a noticeable stimulating effect. This was noted also with aluminium when applied as a nitrate, in which case the number of nodules per 100 plants was equal to or greater than the number per 100 plants of the check (table 3). Quinine sulfate increased the number of nodules from 350 per 100 plants, as shown by the checks, to 593. Undoubtedly the last-named result was due to the presence of the alkaloidal radical. In a preliminary test with caffein and amygdalin a stimulating effect was noted.

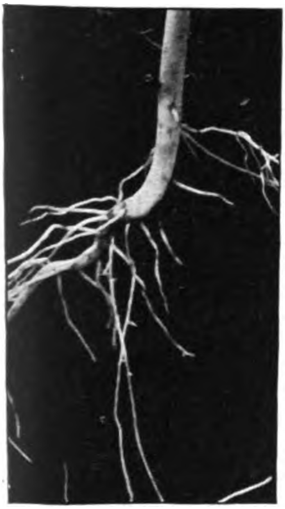


FIG. 88. ROOT OF PLANT GROWN WITH 0.01 GRAM OF SODIUM SULFATE. NATURAL SIZE

Plant grown in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil

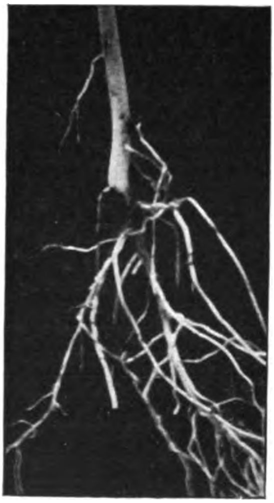


FIG. 89. ROOT OF PLANT GROWN WITH 0.01 GRAM OF POTASSIUM SULFATE. NATURAL SIZE

Plant grown in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil

Phosphates

The influence of phosphates on nodule formation was tested simultaneously with that of the nitrates. The results are shown in table 7.

The data show conclusively that under these conditions phosphates increase the formation of nodules. In every case in which phosphates were applied, save that of disodium phosphate, the number of nodules per 100 plants was greater than with the check. The lower results with the disodium phosphate would seem to be due to the addition of a greater quantity of sodium, since the application of the monosodium phosphate more than doubled the number of nodules. The same relation holds with the di- and mono-potassium salts, altho the difference is not so marked.

TABLE 7. INFLUENCE OF PHOSPHATES ON NODULE FORMATION
(In 208 grams of dry soil. Duration of experiment, 30 days)

Substance used	Quantity applied (grams)	Number of plants	Number of nodules on main roots		Number of nodules on other roots		Total number of nodules	Number per 100 plants
			Large	Small	Large	Small		
Monosodium phosphate	0.1	50	28	65	0	294	387	774
Ferric phosphate	0.1	64	38	70	3	260	371	580
Phosphoric acid	0.1	54	15	67	2	200	284	526
Monopotassium phosphate	0.1	63	7	159	0	237	403	640
Dipotassium phosphate	0.1	48	10	128	0	115	253	527
Disodium phosphate	0.1	54	8	96	0	54	158	293
Ammonium phosphate	0.1	56	7	165	5	75	252	450
Magnesium phosphate	0.5	57	35	237	0	91	363	637
Tricalcium phosphate	0.5	59	18	137	0	69	224	380
Monocalcium phosphate	0.1	57	10	213	0	115	338	593
Dicalcium phosphate	1.0	62	7	157	0	66	230	371
Checks	.....	125	22	195	1	220	438	350

Ammonia-containing or ammonia-producing compounds

The test to determine the influence of ammonia-containing or ammonia-producing compounds on nodule formation was made simultaneously with that of the nitrates. The results are given in table 8:

TABLE 8. INFLUENCE OF AMMONIA-CONTAINING OR AMMONIA-PRODUCING COMPOUNDS ON NODULE FORMATION
(In 208 grams of dry soil. Duration of experiment, 30 days)

Substance used	Quantity applied (grams)	Number of plants	Number of nodules on main roots		Number of nodules on other roots		Total number of nodules	Number per 100 plants
			Large	Small	Large	Small		
Ammonium sulfate	0.05	60	1	12	0	26	39	65
Ammonium carbonate	0.05	48	5	118	0	43	166	346
Ammonium nitrate	0.1	49	0	0	0	4	4	8
Aluminium and ammonium sulfate	0.05	62	19	47	0	273	339	547
Ammonium chloride	0.05	39	0	19	0	29	48	123
Ammonium phosphate	0.1	56	7	165	5	75	252	450
Dried blood	1.0	55	11	177	0	8	196	356
Witte's peptone	0.5	57	0	162	0	9	171	300
Ammonium hydroxide	0.05	50	16	130	0	3	149	298
Checks	.....	125	22	195	1	220	438	350

From these data it is evident that certain ammonia-containing compounds materially reduce the formation of nodules. Ammonium nitrate under these conditions depressed nodule formation from 350 per 100 plants, as shown by the checks, to 8 per 100 plants. Ammonium sulfate reduced the number from 350 to 65 per 100 plants. Ammonium chloride, ammonium hydroxide, and Witte's peptone also were effective in reducing the number of nodules. In this test dried blood shows no effect; in a previous test 2 grams per 208 grams of soil completely inhibited nodule formation.

A comparison between treatments of ammonium hydroxide and of hydrogen chloride (table 5), and no treatment, shows that the ammonia reduced the number of nodules 52 per 100 plants below the check, while the hydrogen chloride increased the number 254 per 100 plants over the check. All plants were grown under the same conditions.

Not all the applied compounds that contained ammonia, however, depressed nodule formation. Among those that did not were aluminium and ammonium sulfate, and ammonium phosphate. This would indicate that there may be a neutralizing effect on nodule formation with two substances, one of which will stimulate and the other retard nodule formation. This is shown by the following comparison of the data obtained from the application of certain salts:

	Quantity applied	Nodules per 100 plants
Ammonium chloride..................	0.05 gram	123
Ammonium nitrate....................	0.1 gram	8
Aluminium chloride..................	0.05 gram	638
Check..............................	....	350

These data indicate that where the anion and the cation in the same compound reduce the formation of nodules, the number of nodules per 100 plants is considerably smaller than where either one of the ions is combined with an element that is stimulative in effect. This is shown by ammonium nitrate. Here both the anion and the cation reduce nodule formation, but when the nitrate is replaced by the chloride, which is stimulative in effect, the number of nodules per 100 plants approaches more nearly that of the checks. Other comparisons could be made between calcium oxid, calcium sulfate, calcium chloride, and calcium nitrate (table 9). It is believed that if the right concentrations of these substances were used, this neutralizing effect could be made more pronounced.

Calcium-containing compounds

A test of the lime requirement of this Volusia silt loam according to the Veitch method shows that about 1100 pounds of calcium oxid per

TABLE 9. INFLUENCE OF CALCIUM-CONTAINING COMPOUNDS ON NODULE FORMATION

(In 208 grams of dry soil. Duration of experiment, 30 days)

Substance used	Quantity applied (grams)	Number of plants	Number of nodules on main roots		Number of nodules on other roots		Total number of nodules	Number per 100 plants
			Large	Small	Large	Small		
Calcium oxid	0.2	53	125	454	0	95	674	1,272
Calcium hydrate	1.0	61	13	249	0	205	467	766
Calcium sulfate	2.0	61	12	101	0	53	166	272
Calcium chloride	0.05	50	3	19	6	492	520	1,040
Tricalcium phosphate	0.5	59	18	137	0	69	224	380
Calcium ethyl sulfate	0.05	53	64	171	11	195	441	832
Calcium nitrate	0.1	63	0	5	0	80	85	135
Calcium carbonate	1.0	58	4	231	0	168	403	695
Calcium saccharate	0.7	56	113	213	2	353	681	1,216
Checks	.....	125	22	195	1	220	438	350

8,000,000 pounds of soil is necessary to neutralize it. One would expect, therefore, that an application of this material would stimulate nodule formation. The results on nodule formation of such a treatment, along with those from some other calcium-containing compounds, are presented in table 9.

The striking fact shown in this table is that certain calcium-containing compounds produce exceptionally favorable conditions for the development of nodules. First among these is calcium oxid (fig. 90). This compound gave the greatest stimulating effect of all the calcium-containing substances. It produced not only an increase in nodules, but also a change in their location on the root system. Of the 1272 nodules per 100 plants, 1092 were on the main root; and of these 1092, 236 were more than one millimeter in diameter. Calcium saccharate (fig. 91) is next in importance, giving 1216 nodules per 100 plants, and calcium chloride follows with 1040 nodules per 100 plants. As in the case of the oxid, these compounds have induced a greater number of nodules on the main root than have other non-calcium materials already discussed. The low results with calcium sulfate and calcium nitrate are

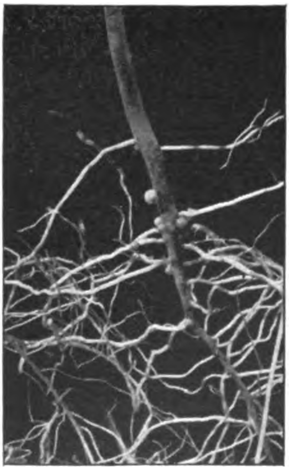


FIG. 90. ROOT OF PLANT GROWN WITH 0.2 GRAM OF CALCIUM OXID. NATURAL SIZE

Plants grown in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil undoubtedly due to the neutralizing effect of the material with which the calcium is combined.

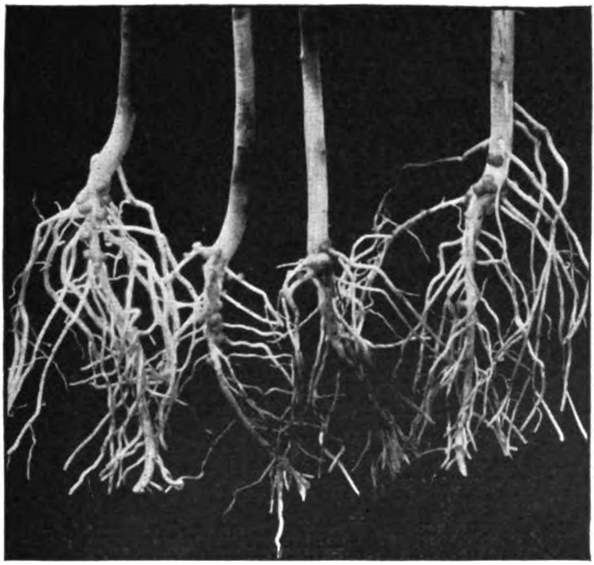


FIG. 91. ROOTS OF PLANTS GROWN WITH 0.75 GRAM OF CALCIUM SACCHARATE. NATURAL SIZE

Plants grown in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil

Carbonates

Since carbonated water is nearly always found in the soil, it was thought well to ascertain what effect it might have on nodule formation. Data bearing on this point are presented in table 10:

TABLE 10. EFFECT OF CARBONATES ON NODULE FORMATION
(In 208 grams of dry soil. Duration of experiment, 30 days)

Substance used	Quantity applied (grams)	Number of plants	Number of nodules on main roots		Number of nodules on other roots		Total number of nodules	Number per 100 plants
			Large	Small	Large	Small		
Calcium carbonate.....	1.0	58	4	231	0	168	403	695
Barium carbonate.....	1.0	61	7	225	0	97	329	539
Ammonium carbonate..	0.05	48	5	118	0	43	166	346
Sodium bicarbonate....	0.1	46	11	90	0	100	201	437
Sodium carbonate.....	0.1	48	6	132	0	64	202	421
Checks...............	.....	125	22	195	1	220	438	350

It will be noted that in most cases the plants grown under the influence of the carbonates have more nodules per 100 plants than do the checks. However, if the influence of the alkaline radical with which the carbonate is combined were eliminated, this result would not be so apparent. From the data presented it cannot be said that the carbonate part of the compound has any influence on the formation of nodules.

Various carbon compounds

Various carbon compounds were applied to the soil and the effect on nodule formation was noted. It was necessary to apply the compound in rather excessive quantities in order to have it, or compounds resulting from its application, remain in the soil during the experimental period. Altho no tests were made to determine the length of time the compounds remained in the soil, it is believed that the applications were sufficient to permit them to continue in the soil during the infection period. The check plants in this case were those used in the experiments already described, and were grown at the same time with the plants to which the carbon compounds were applied. The results of these tests are given in table 11:

TABLE 11. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS CARBON COMPOUNDS ON NODULE FORMATION

(In 208 grams of dry soil. Duration of experiment, 30 days)

Substance used	Quantity applied (grams)	Number of plants	Number of nodules on main roots		Number of nodules on other roots		Total number of nodules	Number per 100 plants
			Large	Small	Large	Small		
Glucose	2.0	59	29	78	0	100	207	351
Maltose	2.0	50	58	122	0	105	285	570
Fructose	2.0	58	110	296	0	149	555	957
Glycerin	1.0	64	122	241	0	21	384	600
Lactose	2.0	53	128	185	0	13	326	615
Saccharose	2.0	51	72	137	0	33	242	475
Starch	4.0	45	149	263	0	134	546	1,213
Oxalic acid	0.5	47	100	143	0	92	335	713
Lactic acid	0.5	63	88	319	0	104	511	811
Citric acid	0.5	57	86	262	0	108	456	800
Sodium tartrate	0.02	52	59	100	0	158	317	610
Potassium tartrate	0.02	55	63	290	0	244	597	1,085
Potassium citrate	0.02	58	49	261	0	38	348	600
Caffein	0.03	50	46	302	0	53	401	802
Calcium saccharate	0.7	56	113	213	2	353	681	1,216
Cumarin	0.03	23	33	148	0	32	213	926
Checks	.....	125	22	195	1	220	438	350

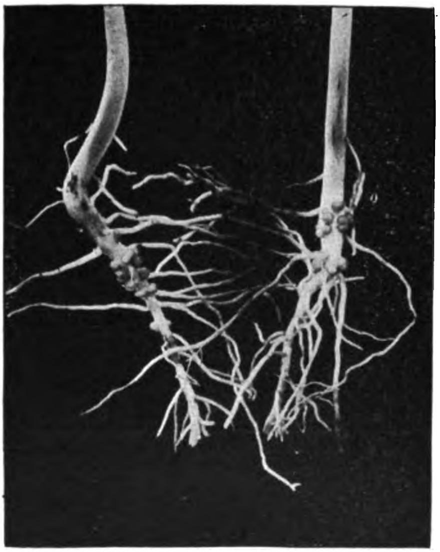


FIG. 92. ROOTS OF PLANTS GROWN WITH 0.02 GRAM OF POTASSIUM TARTRATE. NATURAL SIZE

Plants grown in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil

The influence of carbon compounds on the formation of nodules is readily seen from table 11. Without exception, the number of nodules per 100 plants was greater where the soil was treated with carbon compounds than was the case with the checks. The three compounds giving the best results were calcium saccharate, starch, and potassium tartrate (fig. 92), in the order given. These three produced more than 1000 nodules per 100 plants, while the checks produced only 350 nodules. It is important to note also the number of nodules on the main roots in these cases, and their size in comparison with those of the checks. Of the 1213 nodules per 100 plants produced under the influence of starch, 916 were on the main root; and of these 916, 331 were more than one millimeter in diameter — only 19 less than the total number of nodules found on the checks.

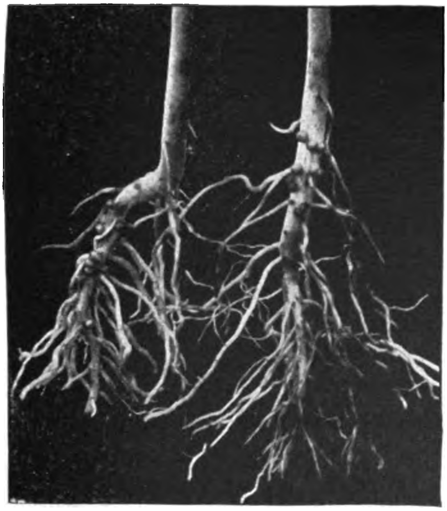


FIG. 93. ROOTS OF PLANTS GROWN WITH 2 GRAMS OF FRUCTOSE. NATURAL SIZE

Plants grown in 208 grams of soil; moisture content, 35 per cent of dry weight of soil

Six other substances also more than doubled the production of nodules. These were fructose (fig. 93), with 957 nodules per 100 plants; oxalic acid, with 713; lactic acid, with 811; citric acid, with 800; caffein, with 802; and cumarin, with 926. These substances likewise produced a greater number of nodules on the main roots than on the secondary roots. The checks were about equally divided in this respect. These results indicate that the carbonaceous material was assimilated by the host plant and that this assimilation resulted in better nutrition — a factor which Vines believed to favor nodule production.

Variation of soil moisture

A test of the effect of moisture on nodule formation was conducted, using Volusia silt loam soil and adding to it the amount of distilled water necessary to give it the desired moisture content, which ranged from 25 to 75 per cent of the dry weight of the soil. Soil cultures were set up in the usual manner and five or six soybean plantlets were placed in each. The results are given in table 12:

TABLE 12. EFFECT OF MOISTURE ON THE FORMATION OF NODULES
(Soil cultures. Duration of experiment, 17 days)

Per cent of moisture	Number of plants	Number of nodules	Number of nodules per 100 plants
25	30	1	3
35	26	50	192
45	31	148	477
55	30	242	807
65*	34	408	1,200
75*	28	394	1,407

* With a moisture content of 65 and 75 per cent, free water stood above the soil in the containers.

The figures in table 12 show that as the moisture is increased the number of nodules is increased. This may be explained in several ways. The two most probable explanations are: (1) the greater the water content, the better is the opportunity for infection; or (2) the greater the water content, the more dilute is the soluble substance in the soil which may have an inhibitory effect on nodule formation. However, the presence of large amounts of moisture may result in a modification of the roots, the root hairs, or possibly the protoplasmic activities of the bacteria.

Moore (1905), in discussing this subject, says the effect of moisture is probably a physical one. Thru it the bacteria have a better opportunity to come in contact with the roots, and as a result a greater number of infections occur.

Water cultures

In this part of the work it was the intention to repeat in water culture, as far as possible, the work that had been done with soil. In order, therefore, to have no substances present other than such as would come from the container or from the seed, distilled water was used. Cylinders were employed, each containing 4700 cubic centimeters of water, to which was added the salt or salts to be tested. For each container ten plantlets were used. These were supported by paraffin paper covers, in such a manner that their roots could extend thru openings in the covers into the water. Growth was permitted for from four to six weeks.

Since it was shown by Prucha (1915) that nodules were not developed on Canada field pea in the absence of any one of the essential elements except nitrogen when he used the salts of Pfeffer's nutrient solution in six liters of water, it was decided to repeat this experiment, using soybeans instead of the peas. Accordingly Pfeffer's solution was made as follows:

Calcium nitrate	4 grams
Potassium nitrate	1 gram
Magnesium sulfate	1 gram
Monopotassium phosphate	1 gram
Potassium chloride	0.5 gram
Ferric chloride	0.005 gram
Water to make	6 liters

Pfeffer's solution with salts in various combinations

In making the tests in Pfeffer's solution with salts in various combinations, the full strength, and fifty-three of the possible sixty-three combinations, aside from the distilled water alone, were used. A list of these solutions is given on pages 496 and 497.

Careful examination of the roots was made after the treatment, and any tubercle-like swellings resembling nodules were sectioned and examined microscopically. Not a single nodule was observed on any plant root grown in any of the solutions. Many of the solutions employed permitted good growth, while some were so toxic that the plants scarcely remained alive.

Plants grown in tap water at the same time as those grown in Pfeffer's solution developed luxuriantly without the addition of any chemicals, and produced nodules abundantly in fifteen days. It was assumed that possibly the concentration of the solution was not favorable to nodule formation or that the distilled water was the inhibiting factor.

Pfeffer's solution of various strengths

The results of the preceding experiment led to a series of experiments in which the salts of Pfeffer's solution were again used in distilled water. The concentrations, however, differed from those in the preceding experiment. They were 8, 4, 3, 2, 1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/8, 1/16, and 1/32, of the concentration of the full-strength solution. These were prepared on September 3, and on October 7 the roots were examined for nodules.

In only two of these concentrations were nodules produced. In the double strength there was a single plant which had two nodules, both below the water line. The other case was in the 1/4 concentration, in which there was one nodule slightly above the water line.

Pfeffer's solution in the absence of nitrates

As the concentrations used in the preceding experiment were not favorable to nodule formation, it was decided to repeat this work leaving out the nitrates. Accordingly the following strengths of Pfeffer's solution were used: 8, 4, 2, 1, 1/4, 1/8, 1/16, 1/32. Potassium chloride and calcium chloride in molecular equivalents were substituted for the nitrates.

The plants grew normally in all the concentrations except the highest. No nodules were found in any of the concentrations greater than 1/4 strength. In the 1/4-strength solution and in all the lower concentrations there were nodules produced, but in no case were they as numerous as in the tap-water cultures which had been prepared as a means of checking the time factor in nodule development.

Magnesium sulfate in distilled water

The results obtained with Pfeffer's solution in various concentrations led to a test of these various salts individually in distilled water. The containers were 800-cubic-centimeter cylinders and were prepared as described on page 468. The amounts of magnesium sulfate in grams per liter of water were as follows: 2, 1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/8.

After standing for thirty-six days in the greenhouse the plants were examined for the presence of nodules. The plants had made a fair growth. The roots were short in the two strongest concentrations. No nodules were observed on any of the roots.

Monopotassium phosphate

This experiment is a parallel of the one with magnesium sulfate. The phosphate was used in concentrations of 2, 1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/8, grams per liter of water.

The plants were examined thirty-eight days after inoculation. Those in the concentrations greater than 1/4 gram per liter of water were dead. The other concentrations were not toxic to any noticeable extent. The plants were 12 inches tall. No nodules were evident.

Distilled water shaken with carbon black

The difficulties encountered in producing nodules in distilled water led to the treatment of the water with carbon black. This was done by shaking the distilled water for fifteen minutes with 2 grams of petroleum carbon black per liter of water. After filtering, the water was used in tumblers alone and in combination with certain chemical substances that were known to have an influence on the formation of nodules when added to soil. The contents of the tumblers were inoculated with one cubic centimeter of a water suspension of *Bacillus radicicola*. In table 13 the results are compared with data obtained under identically the same conditions with plants grown in tap water:

TABLE 13. NODULE FORMATION IN DISTILLED WATER SHAKEN WITH CARBON BLACK, AS COMPARED WITH TAP WATER*

Substance used	Concentration (given as molecular weight of compound in 1 liter of water)											
	Distilled water						Tap water					
	1/2500	1/3500	1/5000	1/10,000	1/50,000	1/100,000	1/2500	1/3500	1/5000	1/10,000	1/50,000	1/100,000
Zinc nitrate	—t	—t	—t	—t	—t	+	—t	—t	—t	—t	—t	—t
Ammonium nitrate	—	—	—	+	+	+	—	—	—	—	+	—
Potassium nitrate	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	—
Calcium nitrate	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
Sodium nitrate	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
Strontium nitrate	—t	—t	—	+	+	+	—	—	+	+	+	+
Sodium chloride	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	+
Calcium chloride	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	+
Aluminium chloride	—t	—t	—t	+t	+	—	—t	—t	+t	+	+	+
Potassium chloride	—	—	—	+	—	+	—	+	+	+	+	+
Zinc chloride	—t	—t	—t	—t	+	—	—t	—t	—t	—t	+	+
Strontium chloride	—t	—t	—	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	+	+
Potassium sulfate	—t	—t	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+
Ammonium sulfate	—t	—t	—t	—t	—t	—t	—	—	+	+	+	+
Aluminium sulfate	—t	—t	—t	—t	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+
Strontium sulfate	—t	—t	—t	—t	—t	+	—	—	+	+	+	+
Sodium sulfate	—t	—t	+	+	+	—	—	—	+	+	+	+
Zinc sulfate	—t	—t	—t	—t	—t	+	—t	—t	—t	—t	—t	+
Checks	Only 2 nodules on 18 plants.						+	+	+	+	+	+

* + indicates nodules present; — indicates no nodules; "t" indicates concentration toxic to roots.

The results obtained with the distilled water shaken with carbon black without the addition of any substance are for the most part negative. Only two nodules were found on eighteen plants, and these were on one plant.

It should be noted that each nitrate changed the condition in the distilled water treated with carbon black to such an extent that nodules were produced, and also that as the concentration of the nitrate increased there was a tendency toward prevention of nodule production. Calcium nitrate and sodium nitrate seem to be less inhibitory in their effect than the other nitrates used. In tap water the nitrates seem to produce about the same results.

Sodium and calcium chloride and sodium and potassium sulfate also appear to react favorably to nodule formation in the treated distilled water. With the sulfates this favorable action is present in as low a concentration as 1/50,000 molecular solution, and extends to concentrations that appear toxic to the plant roots. Their action is not so pronounced, however, as that of the chlorides.

VITALITY OF BACILLUS RADICICOLA OF SOYBEAN UNDER CULTURAL CONDITIONS

In previously reported experiments it was shown that the formation of nodules was completely checked when a nitrate or a sulfate was applied to soil in sufficient quantities, even tho the application was far below the amount necessary to produce injury to the plants. The same effect was observed in water cultures. The question that immediately presented itself was, What was the cause for such inhibitory effects? Did these compounds destroy the organism, or was some other factor operating? In order to obtain data on this subject the soil and water cultures employed in the experiments already reported were used as a basis for further study.

In soil cultures

In testing for the presence or the absence of the organism in those cases in which nodule formation was inhibited by the application of various substances, the following method was employed: At the time of examination of the roots for nodules, which was after fifty days, the culture vessels were tapped gently so that the soil and the roots would come out in a mass. This mass was broken open, and some of the soil (about 5 grams) from the center of the mass was taken on a sterile spatula. This soil was used as inoculating material for other sterilized tumblers which were partly filled with soil. These tumblers, after being inoculated, were planted with ten soybeans, watered, and left in the culture room. At the end of twenty days the roots were examined for nodules. The results, which are shown in table 14, were compared with checks grown under the same conditions.

The results indicate that the application of nitrates or sulfates to soil in quantities sufficient to prevent nodule formation does not destroy the organism, for in most cases when brought into favorable conditions the organisms were, from all tests, as efficient as the original culture, or as those cultured organisms in the soil with the presence of a smaller amount of nitrate or sulfate. There are a few apparent exceptions to this statement, these being the nitrates of mercury, uranium, and nickel, and the sulfate of mercury. Why such results should be obtained with these compounds is not known. It is possible that these substances in the soil have a greater toxic effect than the other compounds, or that they react with the soil in some way to form a germicide and thus destroy the legume organism.

TABLE 14. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SALTS IN SOIL ON THE VITALITY OF BACILLUS RADICICOLA*

(Presence of organism determined at the end of 50 days by its ability to produce nodules. Duration of test, 20 days)

Substance used	Quantities applied in inhibiting concentrations, with results									
	Quantity applied	Organism	Quantity applied	Organism	Quantity applied	Organism	Quantity applied	Organism	Quantity applied	Organism
Cerium nitrate	1.0	—	0.5	—	0.2	+	.....	....	.....	.....
Lead nitrate	0.5	—	0	....	0.2	+	.....	....	.....	.....
Silver nitrate	0	....	.....	....	.....	....	0.05	—	.....	.....
Mercuric nitrate	1.0	—	0.5	—	0.2	—	.....	....	.....	.....
Ammonium nitrate	.....	....	0.5	—	0.1	+	.....	....	.....	.....
Calcium nitrate	1.0	+	.....	....	.....	....	.....	....	.....	.....
Zinc nitrate	.....	....	0.2	+	0.1	+	.....	....	.....	.....
Uranium nitrate	1.0	—	0.5	—	0.2	—	0.1	—	.....	.....
Sodium nitrate	1.0	—	0.5	+	0.2	+	0.1	+	.....	.....
Ferrous nitrate	.....	....	.....	....	0.2	+	.....	....	.....	.....
Barium nitrate	.....	....	0.5	+	0.2	—	.....	....	.....	.....
Potassium nitrate	.....	....	0.5	+	0.1	+	0.05	+	.....	.....
Nickel nitrate	.....	—	0.2	—	0.1	—	0.05	—	.....	.....
Magnesium nitrate	1.0	—	0.5	+	.....	....	.....	....	.....	.....
Strontium sulfate	5.0	+	2.0	+	0.5	—	.....	....	.....	.....
Copper sulfate	.....	....	0.1	—	.....	....	.....	....	.....	.....
Chromium and potassium sulfate	.....	....	0.5	—	0.2	—	0.1	—	0.05	+
Sodium sulfate	.....	....	0.5	....	.....	....	.....	....	.....	.....
Ferrous sulfate	0.02	+	0.1	+	0.05	+	0.02	+	0.01	+
Iron and ammonium sulfate	0.5	+	0.2	+	0.05	+	.....	....	.....	.....
Cobalt sulfate	0.05	+	.....	....	.....	....	.....	....	.....	.....
Manganese sulfate	0.2	+	0.1	+	.....	....	.....	....	.....	.....
Mercuric sulfate	1.0	—	0.25	—	0	....	.....	....	.....	.....
Ammonium sulfate	0.5	+	0.2	+	0.1	+	0.05	+	0.02	+
Zinc sulfate	0.2	+	0.05	+	0.01	+	0	....	.....	.....
Aluminium and potassium sulfate	0.5	+	0.05	+	.....	....	.....	....	.....	.....
Barium sulfate	10.0	+	5.0	+	2.0	+	.....	....	.....	.....
Aluminium sulfate	0.2	+	0.1	+	.....	....	.....	....	.....	.....
Magnesium sulfate	2.75	+	1.35	+	0.35	+	0.275	+	.....	.....
Aluminium and ammonium sulfate	0.5	+	0.1	+	.....	....	.....	....	.....	.....
Checks	18 tumblers. No nodules.									

* + indicates organism present; — indicates organism not present.

In water cultures

It has been shown that nodules are not produced in distilled water alone, nor, except in rare cases or in certain dilute concentrations, in distilled water to which the various salts of Pfeffer's solution have been added.

In order to test the ability of the organism to exist in these solutions without effecting inoculation, about 5 cubic centimeters of the liquid from the various containers was used as a source of inoculating material for seedling host plants. The organism had been placed in the solution from four to six weeks previous to this determination. The containers for these solutions were covered thruout the entire period with paraffin paper, so that there was but little opportunity for the solutions to become contaminated.

The salts or combinations of salts tested with respect to their influence on the vitality of the organism are listed in table 15. The plus or the minus sign indicates the efficiency or the inefficiency of the organism to effect inoculation after remaining in the salt solution for from four to six weeks. In all cases the reinoculated plants grew for twenty-one days before examination.

TABLE 15. VITALITY OF BACILLUS RADICICOLA AFTER REMAINING FROM FOUR TO SIX WEEKS IN DISTILLED WATER TO WHICH HAD BEEN ADDED THE SALTS OF PFEFFER'S SOLUTION IN VARIOUS DILUTIONS AND COMBINATIONS*

Substance used	Organism
Calcium nitrate	—
Potassium nitrate	+
Magnesium sulfate	+
Monopotassium phosphate	+
Potassium chloride	+
Ferric chloride	+
Calcium nitrate and potassium nitrate	+
Calcium nitrate and magnesium sulfate	+
Calcium nitrate and monopotassium phosphate	+
Calcium nitrate and potassium chloride	+
Calcium nitrate and ferric chloride	+
Potassium nitrate and magnesium sulfate	+
Potassium nitrate and monopotassium phosphate	—
Potassium nitrate and potassium chloride	+
Potassium nitrate and ferric chloride	+
Magnesium sulfate and monopotassium phosphate	—
Magnesium sulfate and potassium chloride	—
Magnesium sulfate and ferric chloride	+
Monopotassium phosphate and potassium chloride	+
Monopotassium phosphate and ferric chloride	—
Potassium chloride and ferric chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, and magnesium sulfate	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, and monopotassium phosphate	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, and potassium chloride	+
Potassium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, and monopotassium phosphate	—
Potassium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, and potassium chloride	+
Potassium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, and ferric chloride	+
Magnesium sulfate, monopotassium phosphate, and potassium chloride	+
Magnesium sulfate, monopotassium phosphate, and ferric chloride	+
Monopotassium phosphate, potassium chloride, and ferric chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, and ferric chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, and monopotassium phosphate	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, and potassium chloride	+

---

[*] + indicates organism present; — indicates organism not present.

TABLE 15 (*continued*)

Substance used	Organism
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, and ferric chloride	+
Potassium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, monopotassium phosphate, and potassium chloride	+
Potassium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, monopotassium phosphate, and ferric chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, monopotassium phosphate, and potassium chloride	+
Potassium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, monopotassium phosphate, potassium chloride, and ferric chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium chloride, and ferric chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, monopotassium phosphate, and potassium chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, and monopotassium phosphate	+
Potassium nitrate, potassium chloride, and ferric chloride	+
Potassium nitrate, monopotassium phosphate, and potassium chloride	+
Magnesium sulfate, potassium chloride, and ferric chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, potassium chloride, and ferric chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, monopotassium phosphate, and potassium chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, monopotassium phosphate, potassium chloride, and ferric chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, magnesium sulfate, monopotassium phosphate, and potassium chloride	+
Calcium nitrate, potassium nitrate, potassium chloride, and ferric chloride	+
Pfeffer's solution 8 concentration	+
Pfeffer's solution 4 concentration	—
Pfeffer's solution 3 concentration	+
Pfeffer's solution 1 concentration	—
Pfeffer's solution 1/2 concentration	+
Pfeffer's solution 1/4 concentration	+
Pfeffer's solution 1/8 concentration	+
Pfeffer's solution 1/16 concentration	+
Pfeffer's solution 1/32 concentration	+
Pfeffer's solution minus the nitrates, which were replaced by chlorides in equivalent amounts	
8 concentration	+
4 concentration	—
2 concentration	—
1 concentration	—
1/2 concentration	—
1/4 concentration	+
1/8 concentration	+
1/16 concentration	—
1/32 concentration	+
Monopotassium phosphate in concentrations of	
2 grams per liter	+
1 gram per liter	+
1/2 gram per liter	+
1/4 gram per liter	+
1/8 gram per liter	—
Magnesium sulfate in concentrations of	
2 grams per liter	—
1 gram per liter	—
1/2 gram per liter	+
1/4 gram per liter	+
1/8 gram per liter	+
Total, 77. Organism present in 61 cases, not present in 16.	

It will be observed from this list that the organism retained its vitality in 61 out of 77 cases, and that no one particular salt was present in all the 16 solutions in which the organism was not found.

Conclusion

These results lead to the conclusion that there is evidence for the belief that the chemical nature of the salt solution is a factor in controlling nodule production. In all these cases the organism, tho still living in the soil or water culture, was not capable of inducing nodule formation.

TIME REQUIRED FOR INITIAL INFECTION

It is known that infection of the host plant by *Bacillus radicicola* takes place in a relatively short time, for plants that have been inoculated with a pure culture will show abundant nodule development within ten days if the conditions are right. Peirce (1902) showed that on bur clover the characteristic bending of the root hairs previous to nodule formation will occur in twenty-four hours after inoculation. But the exact time required for the organism to penetrate the host, so far as the writer knows, has never been determined. Experiments were therefore made to ascertain this point.

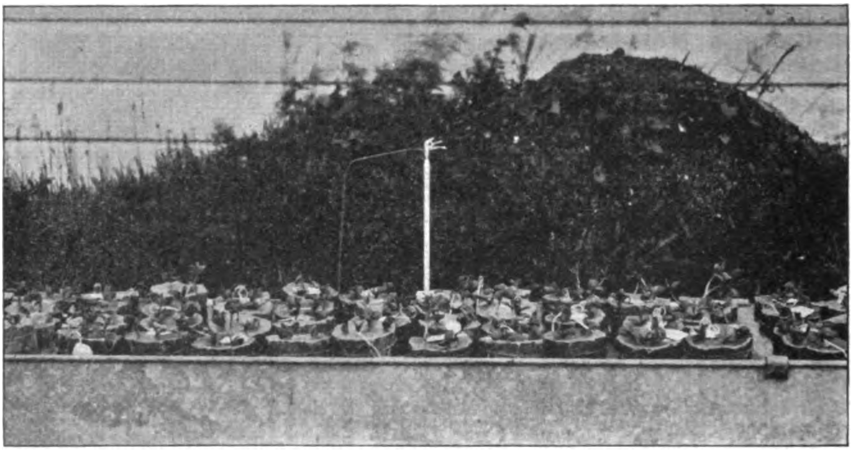


FIG. 94. METHOD OF TESTING FOR INITIAL PERIOD OF INFECTION, SHOWING SIZE OF PLANTS AT TIME OF TEST

Water cultures in tumblers of 250 cubic centimeters capacity were used. These cultures were set in water in a shallow pan and kept out of doors. Four soybean plantlets were inserted thru holes in the paper cover of each tumbler so that the roots were immersed. Water was run from the tap into the pan by means of a hose. Twenty-four hours later the contents of the tumblers were equally inoculated with a vigorously growing culture of *B. radicicola*. At certain intervals (as shown in table 16) two tumblers were removed from the pan and connected with siphons which carried fresh water into them, replacing the inoculated water. The rate of flow of the wash water was 250 cubic centimeters per 30 seconds, this being the volume of the tumbler. In all cases the siphons were kept running for a period not shorter than five days. After this washing the tumblers were returned to the pan, where a temperature of about 20° C. was being maintained. The contents of the tumblers were inoculated on June 29, 1914, and the roots were examined for nodules on July 14, 1914. The results are presented in table 16:

TABLE 16. TIME REQUIRED FOR INITIAL INFECTION

(Water culture, eight plants. Duration of experiment, 14 days. Temperature, 20° C.)

Duration of contact between roots and inoculated water	Length of time roots were washed with running water from siphon (days)	Number of nodules that developed on roots as result of treatment
No contact	6	0
A few seconds	6	1
(Minutes)		
5	5	0
10	5	0
15	5	1
20	5	0
25	5	1
30	5	0
35	5	1
40	5	0
45	5	1
(Hours)		
1	5	1
1¼	5	3
1⅔	5	0
2	5	13
2½	5	7
2¾	6	5
4	6	7
4⅔	6	19
5½	6	29
6½	6	14
10	6	23
12½	6	42
14	6	26
18	6	24
(Days)		
14	Not washed	11 tumblers, 1145 (or 208 per 8 plants)

From these data it is seen that infection occurred immediately, for washing did not remove all the organisms from the roots. The plant roots that were exposed for only a few seconds showed one nodule, and occasionally nodules were produced with the initial time of exposure under four and two-thirds hours. All nodules that were produced with an initial time of infection shorter than four and two-thirds hours appeared in the fork of the root system or in some place among the roots where the organisms would be protected from the water current of the siphon. The roots exposed for four and two-thirds hours before the siphon was started showed what might be called a general infection. By this is meant an infection of the root system in places freely exposed to the washing effect of the running water. It should be noted that there were not so many nodules produced at an exposure of eighteen hours as there were in cases in which the roots were not washed at all. This would be expected, for all infections that may occur do not necessarily occur in the first eighteen or twenty-four hours. In a previous determination to ascertain the time required for initial infection, in which the plants were considerably older when inoculated, general infection occurred with or after an exposure of five hours.

IS NODULE FORMATION ASSOCIATED WITH THE NITROGEN REQUIREMENT OF PLANTS?

The views of various investigators imply that nodule formation is associated with a demand on the part of the plant for nitrogen. This view is dependent on the fact that nitrogenous compounds, and particularly nitrates, depress or inhibit nodule formation, and it has therefore been assumed that plants having a sufficient supply of nitrogen abstain from the production of nodules. This view suggests an ability on the part of the plant to preferentially adapt itself with respect to its nitrogen requirements. Such a view is not tenable in the light of present knowledge of plants. Furthermore, the various sulfates depress or inhibit nodule formation just as effectively as do the nitrates. It would appear that the respective explanations for the inhibiting action of nitrogenous compounds and of various sulfates on nodule formation are similar in nature. As an effective answer to the older views, as well as to determine whether the influences of the nitrogenous compounds are mainly local in their effect, the following experiments were made.

Experiment 1

Thin-walled vessels were arranged side by side in pairs so that the roots of a single plant could be extended into the solutions in both containers. In order to have favorable conditions for nodule development, strontium chloride was added to one container in molecular concentration

1/5000. The other container received ammonium nitrate. The nitrate was varied in different containers, as is indicated in table 17. The root systems of young seedlings were divided, and one portion was extended into the nitrate solution and the other into the chloride solution. The volume of solution was the same for each half of the plant roots. After inoculating the contents of each container with a culture of *Bacillus radicicola* the plants were allowed to grow for fourteen days. This method offered to one-half of the root system all the nitrate that the plant could use, and permitted growth of a part of the root system in a solution containing only traces of nitrates. The results on nodule production are given in table 17:

TABLE 17. Nodule Production on Individual Plants with Roots Divided, Part being Placed in a Nitrate Solution and the Remainder in a Chloride Solution*

(Fourteen days after inoculation. Strontium chloride, molecular solution 1/5000)

Ammonium nitrate (molecular concentration)	Nodules on	
	Nitrate side	Chloride side
1/5000	+	+
1/3500	+	+
1/2500	+	+
1/1250	+	+
1/800	+	+
1/600	+	+
1/500	+	+
1/450	+	+
1/300	+	+
1/250	—	+
1/220	—	+
1/185	—	+
1/175	—	+

* + indicates nodules present; — indicates no nodules.

It is brought out clearly in table 17 that nodule development occurred in every instance on the roots that grew in the chloride solution. It is also shown that the remainder of the root system, which was grown in the nitrate solution, produced nodules up to and including molecular concentration 1/300, and that the roots in greater molecular concentration than 1/300 produced no nodules.

Experiment 2

Young plants were grown in water culture to which was added ammonium nitrate in molecular concentration 1/1200. When the plants were about eight to ten inches high, cotton was wrapped around each stem and twisted into a wick. This wick extended into a container holding a solution without nitrates. In a few days roots were produced which grew out into the cotton. When these roots appeared more nitrate was added to the water in which the primary root with its laterals was growing, until the concentration was molecular 1/250. This concentration is great enough to prevent nodule formation and still not great enough to noticeably injure plant growth. Both root systems were inoculated with *B. radicicola*, and after two weeks were examined for nodules. The primary root and its laterals which were growing in the presence of the nitrate showed no nodule formation. The roots that were produced above the cotyledonary part in the cotton and subsequently inoculated, showed well-developed nodules.

Conclusion

The data from these experiments show that the effect of the nitrates in depressing nodule formation is at most only local in character, and that the plant does not exercise any preference of methods for obtaining nitrogen.

GENERAL DISCUSSION

The experiments described herein were undertaken in order to study the physiology of the causal organism of nodule formation on soybeans, and the factors influencing nodule development. The work was done under artificial conditions in the greenhouse and in the laboratory. The results obtained apply to this organism only, altho in many respects the data are in accord with those obtained by other investigators working with other strains of *Bacillus. radicicola.* With the technique used it has been possible to demonstrate conclusively that the flagella of the soybean organism are peritrichous and that as many as four may be found. This peritrichous arrangement agrees with that found by De' Rossi (1907), Zipfel (1912), Kellerman (1912), and Prucha (1915), with the organism of other host plants. It would seem, therefore, that this character, as suggested by Kellerman and others, is uniform among the legume bacteria.

A review of the literature of the subject brings out very clearly the fact that nodule formation can be checked or stimulated, depending on the presence or the absence of certain salts and on the amount of moisture present. Additional light has been thrown on this point by extending the observations already made and by working under carefully controlled conditions. It is suggested that some of the discordant results reported in the literature are due to a lack of properly controlling many of the factors that bear directly or indirectly on nodule production. In this connection one may refer to the soil moisture. In these experiments, with an increase of moisture content from 35 to 45 per cent the nodule production was more than doubled (table 12, page 490), while with an increase from 45 to 55 per cent it was nearly doubled.

To the class of compounds including those that stimulate nodule formation belong the chlorides, the phosphates, the calcium-containing compounds, and certain organic carbon compounds. Vines (1888–89) and others have suggested that nodules are produced only when the conditions of nutrition are favorable. Other investigators claim that the organism derives from the host plant carbohydrate material for its energy, and is thus attracted, and that nodule development will not occur unless the host plant is doing active photosynthetic work. While these and other suggested explanations as to the cause of nodule production may be of importance, they do not appear entirely satisfactory. It would seem in this connection that the application of sugars, or of such a material as starch, which probably serves as a source of energy for the organism and possibly for the plant, would furnish more nearly ideal conditions for the development of the organism than are found in the tissue of the host plant. But the data show that under such applications the nodule formation is more than trebled.

While certain compounds stimulate nodule formation, others just as effectively reduce it. In this class fall the nitrates, the ammonia-containing or -producing compounds, and the sulfates. These data suggest, therefore, that infection and subsequent nodule formation are inseparably combined with the protoplasmic activity. Whether this activity is manifest by the organism or by the host plant, or by both, has not been determined. Certain facts, however, have been established. In those cases in which the substances applied inhibited nodule formation, the organism remained alive and was capable of producing nodules immediately on being brought under favorable conditions. Further, if the action of these inhibiting substances resulted in a modification of the morphological or the physiological activities of the plant roots, the effect appeared locally and did not extend to other parts of the plant than those actually in contact with the inhibiting agent. Whether the reverse would be true of stimulative substances was not determined, but indications are in the affirmative. These results are significant from the standpoint of immunity; for if these substances render the plant immune to infection by *B. radicicola*, then this immunity also is only local and does not extend to other parts of the plant than those actually in contact with the immunizing substance; in other words, the plant does not absorb enough of this immunizing material and transfer it to all parts of the plant so that it can be used thruout as a means of protection.

The effect that such substances may have on the existence of the legume organism in the soil has been pointed out by Wohltmann (1902), who suggests that the addition of certain substances may in time destroy all the legume bacteria and that fertilizers should be chosen to avoid this condition. This may be important in certain cases, as Wohltmann has shown; but in other cases it may not be so important, for if two substances are added to the soil, one that promotes and one that inhibits nodule formation, their effect may be to neutralize each other.

It has been observed occasionally, also, that when the pure culture used in this work was used by farmers, negative results were obtained. Certain parts of these data may be cited to explain the failure, especially those obtained with lime in its various forms, for under its action the nodule production was more than trebled. The soil condition itself, by the application of fertilizing substances such as ammonium sulfate, potassium or sodium nitrate, or potassium or sodium sulfate, may have changed so that nodule formation could not occur. The data should be of especial significance to those southern States where high fertilizer applications are customary.

SUMMARY

The chief points emphasized by this investigation are the following:

The causal organism of nodule production on soybean (*Soja max* Piper) is *Bacillus radicicola*. Its flagella are peritrichous, four being the largest number found. Its group number (which is a numerical system of recording the salient characters of an organism, and which was computed according to the card of the Society of American Bacteriologists for 1907) is B.222.3332033.

Of fifteen legumes grown in virgin Volusia silt loam soil, only one, *Trifolium pratense*, developed nodules without artificial inoculation.

The normal variation in nodule production under uniform conditions is probably not greater than ±12 per 100 plants, with an average of 3.59 per plant.

Of eighteen different nitrates added to Volusia silt loam soil in quantities appreciably below the amount necessary to cause injury to the plants, sixteen either reduced or completely inhibited nodule formation.

Twenty-two chlorides were tested in Volusia silt loam soil as to their effect on nodule production. The results were stimulative in all cases but five, in three of which the application was toxic, and in one the result was within the normal variation. Ammonium chloride, in the amount used, appreciably reduced nodule formation.

Some sulfates, such as sodium, magnesium, calcium, barium, zinc, and others, depressed nodule formation when applied to Volusia silt loam soil.

Phosphates in soil cultures increased nodule production. Their action was not so pronounced, however, as that of the chlorides.

Ammonia-containing or -producing compounds in most cases either reduced or entirely inhibited nodule production. When the ammonia was combined with a stimulating radical, its action was somewhat neutral.

Calcium compounds added to Volusia silt loam soil were in most cases effective in stimulating nodule formation. Calcium sulfate and calcium nitrate, however, reduced the number of nodules formed.

The carbonate radical showed no appreciable effect on nodule production.

Carbon-containing compounds, such as sugars, oxalic, lactic, and citric acids, tartrates, caffein, and cumarin, stimulated nodule production when in soil culture.

Moisture has an effect on nodule formation. As the moisture was increased from 25 per cent of the dry soil to 75 per cent, the nodule formation was correspondingly increased.

In distilled water cultures nodules were not produced except in rare cases, even tho various nutrient salts, in concentrations such as are used in Pfeffer's solution, were present singly or in combination. In distilled water which had been shaken with carbon black, nodule formation occurred only in rare cases. However, when the distilled water was shaken with carbon black and various salts in certain molecular concentrations were added to it, nodules appeared in appreciable numbers. This was especially true of the nitrates, the chlorides, and potassium and sodium sulfate.

Nitrates or sulfates applied to soil in quantities sufficient to inhibit nodule formation did not destroy *Bacillus radicicola* nor reduce its ability to produce nodules when brought under favorable conditions. Similar results were obtained with distilled water cultures alone and with cultures in distilled water to which were added nutrient salts singly or in combination.

The composition of the soil solution is a factor in controlling nodule production.

The time required for the legume organism to penetrate the tissue of the host plant is about five hours.

The inhibiting action of nitrogenous compounds on nodule formation is local in character.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

This investigation was made in the Laboratory of Plant Physiology at Cornell University. It is with pleasure that the writer here acknowledges his indebtedness to Professor Lewis Knudson for much helpful advice and aid rendered thruout the work.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

The bibliography appended is intended to cover most of the articles that deal incidentally or purposely with factors influencing nodule production; also, to lead readers to literature where descriptions of and opinions regarding *Bacillus radicicola* may be found. Many of these references have been an aid and an inspiration to the writer in directing the investigation.

BEYERINCK, M. W. Die Bakterien der Papilionaceen-Knöllchen. Bot. Zeit. **46**: 725-735, 741-750, 757-771, 781-790, 797-804. 1888.

DONNAN, A. V. Experiment in inoculation of lucerne. Agr. gaz. N. S. Wales **23**: 953-958. 1912.

EDWARDS, S. F., AND BARLOW, B. Legume bacteria. Ontario Agr. Coll. Bul. 169: 1-32. 1909.

EICHINGER, A. Regarding legume cultivation and inoculation experiments. *Cited in* Exp. sta. rec. **27**: 419. *From* Pflanzer **8** (1912): 4: 190-219. 1913.

FRANK, B. Ueber die Pilzsymbiose der Leguminosen. Deut. Bot. Gesell. Ber. **7**: 332-346. 1889.

GAIN, EDMOND. Influence de l'humidité sur le développement des nodosités des Légumineuses. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **116**: 1394-1397. 1893.

HELLRIEGEL, H. Methods of sterilized sand cultures employed at the Bernburg Experiment Station. Exp. sta. rec. **5**: 835-854. 1895.

KELLERMAN, KARL F. The present status of soil inoculation. Centbl. Bakt. 2: **34**: 42-50. 1912.

KIRCHNER, O. Die Wurzelknöllchen der Sojabohne. Beitr. Biol. Pflanz. **7**: 213-223. 1896.

LAURENT, ÉMILE. Observations sur le développement des nodosités radicales chez les Légumineuses. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **133**: 1241-1243. 1901.

LEWIS, L. L., AND NICHOLSON, J. F. Soil inoculation. Tubercle-forming bacteria of legumes. Oklahoma Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 68: 1-30. 1905.

MALPEAUX, L. Expériences sur la culture des Légumineuses. Ann. agron. **27**: 65-81. 1901.

MARCHAL, EM. Influence des sels minéraux nutritifs sur la production des nodosités chez le Pois. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **133**: 1032-1033. 1901.

MIGULA, W. Bacillus radicicola Beyerinck. *In* System der Bakterien **2**: 772-773. 1900.

MOORE, GEORGE T. Soil inoculation for legumes. U. S. Bur. Plant Indus. Bul. 71: 1-72. 1905.

MUIR, ROBERT, AND RITCHIE, JAMES. Manual of bacteriology, p. 1–590. 1907.

PEIRCE, GEORGE JAMES. The root-tubercles of bur clover (Medicago denticulata Willd.) and of some other leguminous plants. California Acad. Sci. Proc. ser. 3 (Botany): **2**: 295–328. 1902.

PRUCHA, MARTIN J. Physiological studies of Bacillus radicicola of Canada field pea. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Memoir 5: 1–83. 1915.

RAUTENBERG, F., UND KÜHN, G. Vegetationsversuche im Sommer 1863. Landw. Vers. Stat. **6**: 355–359. 1864.

ROSSI, GINO DE'. Ueber die Mikroorganismen, welche die Wurzelknöllchen der Leguminosen erzeugen. Centbl. Bakt. 2: **18**: 289–314, 481–489. 1907.

SALFELD-LINGEN, ——. Welche Wirkung hat Aetzkalk in hohem, leichtem Sandboden auf die Leguminosenpilze? Deut. landw. Presse **27**: 931. 1900.

SOCIETY OF AMERICAN BACTERIOLOGISTS. Descriptive chart. 1907.

VINES, S. H. On the relation between the formation of tubercles on the roots of Leguminosae and the presence of nitrogen in the soil. Ann. bot. **2**: 386–389. 1888–89.

VRIES, HUGO DE. Beiträge zur speziellen Physiologie landwirthschaftlicher Kulturpflanzen. II. Wachsthumsgeschichte des rothen Klees. Landw. Jahrb. **6**: 893–956. 1877.

WILSON, JAMES K. Calcium hypochlorite as a seed sterilizer. Amer. journ. bot. **2**: 420–427. 1915.

WOHLTMANN, ——. Die Knöllchen-Bakterien in ihrer Abhängigkeit von Boden und Düngung. Journ. Landw. **50**: 377–395. 1902.

ZIPFEL, HUGO. Beiträge zur Morphologie und Biologie der Knöllchenbakterien der Leguminosen. Centbl. Bakt. 2: **32**: 97–137. 1912.

MARCH, 1917 BULLETIN 387

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

STUDIES ON CLUBROOT OF CRUCIFEROUS PLANTS

CHARLES CHUPP

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

Experimenting Staff

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE
Dissemination.... 513
Spore germination.... 515
Penetration.... 519
Distribution within the host tissues.... 526
Spore formation and size.... 533
A similar organism.... 534
Bacteria in relation to *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*.... 535
Summary.... 540
Bibliography.... 543

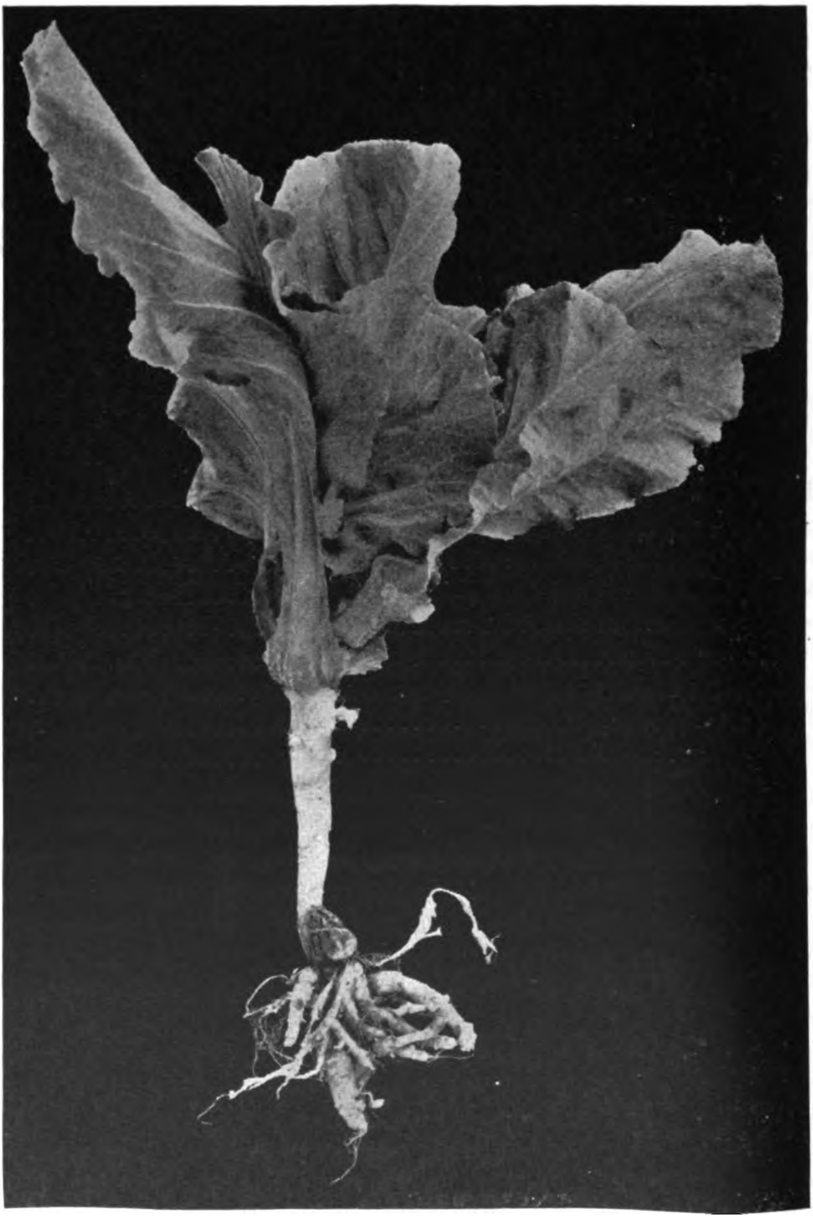


FIG. 95. DISEASED CABBAGE PLANT SHOWING THE THIN STALK AND THE ABSENCE OF A HEAD

STUDIES ON CLUBROOT OF CRUCIFEROUS PLANTS[1]

CHARLES CHUPP

Such an extensive literature on clubroot of cruciferous plants has accumulated that it would seem impossible for any one point to have escaped careful consideration. But when a close examination is made of all the data, it soon becomes apparent that only such prominent phases as symptoms, cytology of the organism, and control methods, have been dealt with extensively, while certain other less conspicuous features have been neglected. There still remain to be satisfactorily solved the following problems: (a) the part played by swarm-spores in the dissemination of *Plasmodiophora Brassicae* Wor., the organism that causes clubroot; (b) spore germination; (c) the manner in which the pathogene enters the host; (d) the distribution of the organism thruout the tissues of the root; (e) formation and size of the spores; and (f) the relation of bacteria to the normal development of the myxomycete. It is for the solution of these problems that the following investigations have been conducted.

DISSEMINATION

In a general way the manner in which the spores are carried is known, altho two errors are often met with in popular descriptions. For example, in a number of reports (Atkinson, 1889, Carruthers, 1893, and others)[2] are statements implying that swarm-spores swim about in the water of the soil until they reach a cabbage root. In a way this is correct, but the average layman at once pictures the swarm-spores as traveling from row to row of plants or even from field to field. Nothing could be more erroneous, for, as far as dissemination is concerned, the motility of the swarm-spore plays such a slight part that it need not be considered. Its energy is not directed in a straight line, and the very minuteness of the organism would preclude any effective locomotion in the time that it remains alive.

In order to test the distance to which swarm-spores may travel in the soil, a box two feet square was filled with clay mixed with muck soil, and diseased roots were buried in one end. Cabbage seeds were then sown in the box, care being taken not to transfer any of the soil from the place where the inoculum was inserted. When the seedlings over the area

---

[1] Also presented to the Faculty of the Graduate School of Cornell University, September, 1916, as a major thesis in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of doctor of philosophy.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT. The author gratefully acknowledges the helpful suggestions and criticisms offered him by Professor H. H. Whetzel and others in the Department of Plant Pathology at Cornell University.

[2] Dates in parenthesis refer to bibliography, page 543.

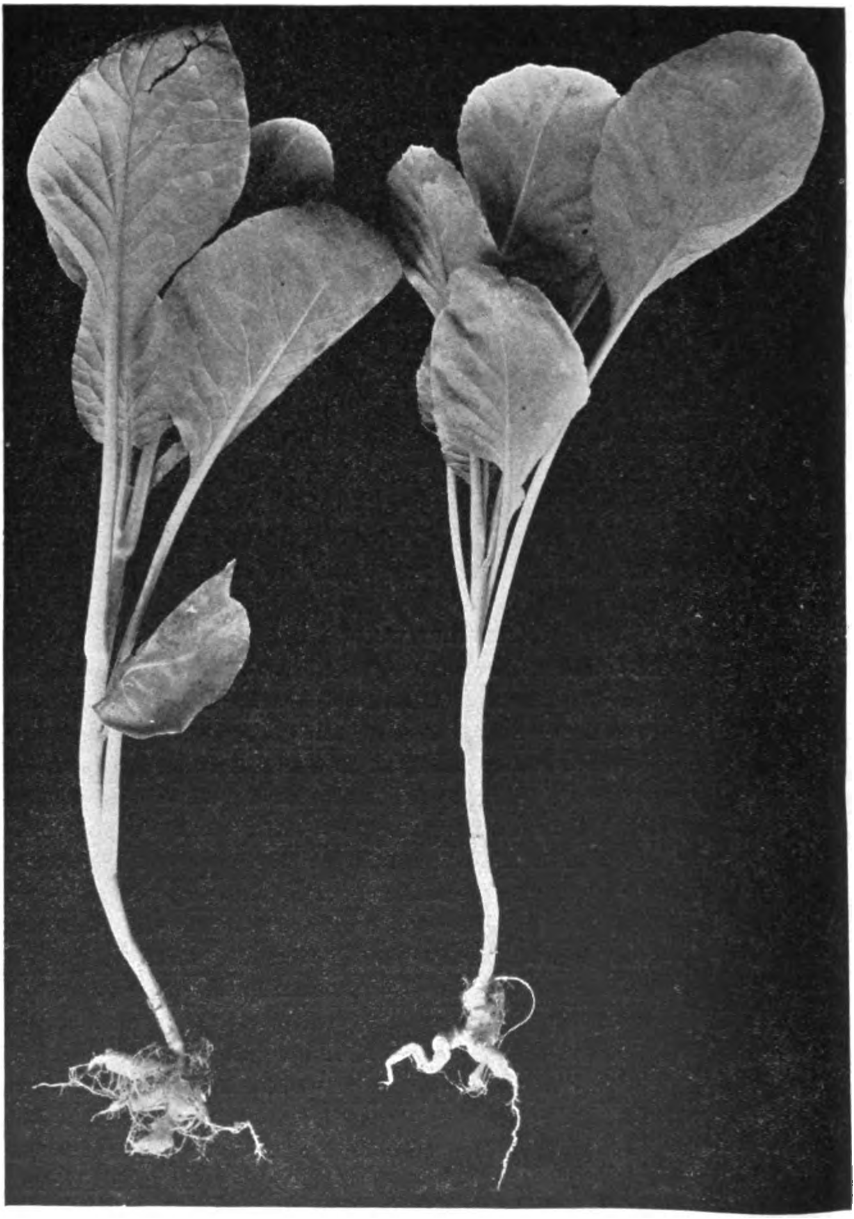


FIG. 96. DISEASED CABBAGE SEEDLINGS

where diseased roots were buried had become so badly infected that they began to wilt and turn yellow, all the plants were discarded and the plat was reseeded. Different crops of seedlings were thus grown for almost a year, and, altho there was a gradual spread of the organism, it was only by careless watering and planting that the pathogene was carried in the soil to all parts of the box.

Cabbage seeds were sown in a greenhouse plat in rows ten inches apart, the bottom of each trench being first lined with infested soil. Halfway between these rows were sown other rows, in the trenches of which no infested soil was placed. The inoculated plants (fig. 96) became infected at a very early stage, while the plants that were only five inches away from the spores remained healthy until they were almost mature.

A few authors (Carruthers, 1893, and others) claim that wind is an important agent in spore dissemination. This may be true in light, loose soil, and in localities where strong winds prevail, but in none of the observations made by the writer was there a single case in which the presence of the organism could be explained on this basis. On the other hand, many of the fields showed that if the soil were not transferred by some agent other than the wind the pathogene did not spread. On Long Island, New York, a certain field was observed, one corner of which was slightly lower than the adjoining part. This corner had been used for a garden until clubroot became so prevalent that the plat was no longer profitable for the raising of crucifers. It was then tilled with the remainder of the field for three years while various crops were grown, cabbages not being planted again until the fourth year. A space only slightly larger than the original garden then displayed the presence of clubroot. If wind had been an important agent it would have had an opportunity here, for the land was almost level and the soil was very loose. This was only one of several cases in which the same conditions were observed.

SPORE GERMINATION

Very few persons have been successful in germinating the spores of *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*, and of those few who have been so fortunate, still fewer have seen the actual process. Woronin (1878) gives a brief description and a series of illustrations which have been copied by nearly all later writers on this phase of the subject. The general experience, however, seems to have been like that of Maire and Tison (1911) while working with *Tetramyxa parasitica* Goebel. They saw only one spore actually germinating, and after a very long, tiresome vigil they left it for a few minutes. On returning from their temporary absence they found that the phenomenon had been completed. Notwithstanding these difficulties, Eycleshymer (1894) not only found swarm-spores, but also found that when left in the culture for a few days these apparently fused into larger bodies, thereby reacting in much the same manner as Kunkel (1915) found to be the case with *Spongospora subterranea* (Wollr.) Johnson. Kunkel discovered that each cell of a spore ball produces a single uninucleate amœba which soon fuses with others of its kind to form a small plasmodium. This occurs not only in the case of spores in the soil, but even with those still in the base of the old sorus.

There are several obstacles to be encountered in trying to observe the actual emergence of the protoplasmic mass from the old spore wall. First, it is difficult to get a very large percentage of germination unless the most favorable conditions are present. Secondly, all observations must be made with the oil-immersion objective. When the protoplasm is about half-way out, the spore wall and the emerging protoplast begin to move, making it hard to keep them in focus or even within the field. Consequently, when the process seems almost complete there is a sudden swift whirl, and the swarm-spore, with the adhering empty wall, darts out of sight. When located again, the spore wall is empty, and the swarm-spore, lost among others, is impossible of identification. For this reason no actual separation of the protoplasm from the spore wall has been seen, but enough of the process has been observed to enable investigators to determine the general method by which this is accomplished and to be sure that a spore gives rise to only one swarm-spore.

It was soon learned that spores do not germinate well, if at all, in distilled water, and further that, altho from one to five per cent of the spores taken directly from a fresh root germinate in muck-soil filtrate, a much larger percentage of germination can be obtained by exposing the roots to freezing temperatures for two weeks or longer. This was accomplished by tying the roots in cheesecloth and burying them under the snow, or in summer by keeping them in the refrigerator for that length of time. Drying the roots also seems to have a beneficial effect on germination, altho this must not be carried to the extreme. The muck-soil filtrate was made by filling an ordinary flowerpot with muck, placing it over a large funnel lined with filter paper, and then pouring hot water on the soil. The resulting medium was of an amber color and slightly acid.

Temperature conditions also influence germination of the spores. It was practically impossible to obtain infection in the greenhouse during the coldest winter months when the temperature was from 10° to 18° C. The spores also fail to germinate at ordinary room temperature (from 16° to 21° C.). The optimum temperature for germination proved to be from 27° to 30° C. This, however, is not the case when spores are placed in test tubes on agar with young cabbage seedlings, for under such conditions infection takes place at a temperature of from 16° to 21° C. The presence of the host seems in some manner to exert an influence which to a certain extent takes the place of that offered by a greater amount of heat.

Usually the first sign of germination is a swelling of the spore, which sometimes becomes a third larger. This occurs within a period of from fifteen minutes to eight hours after the spores are placed in the medium, altho the best time for examining the culture proved to be at the end of six hours. After the swelling of the spore there is a bulging at one side. The protoplasm withdraws from near the opposite wall and leaves a nearly hyaline semicircle about two-thirds of the distance from the center. The pressure exerted splits the wall just enough to permit the protoplasm to ooze out. Unlike Woronin (1878) and Mangin (1902), the writer has never observed the protoplasm taking the various shapes that these authors assign to it, but while oozing out it collects in a sphere or a hemisphere against the wall on the outside. When about half of the protoplasm has escaped, the whole body becomes motile. At first there is only a trembling, which gradually increases in violence until the spore is turned around entirely. The activity now becomes so great that it is with difficulty that the microscope is kept focused on it correctly. The final struggle is apparently a rapid spurt across the field, when the swarm-spore is liberated from its container and at once begins its rotatory activities. The whole process under the microscope consumes an hour or longer. Evidently the strong light turned on a spore retards the action, for in many cases the spores that had begun to germinate when placed in view showed no further signs of development, while those kept in the dark germinated much more rapidly and when examined at the end of the same period were found actively swimming about.

A considerable part of the contents is left within the old spore wall, so that when the broken part is turned upward it has the appearance of a circle bounded by a darker band, the width of which is about one-third of the radius. If, however, the open part is on the side, the residue within the spore wall resembles more nearly a crescent (fig. 97).

The swarm-spore when alive measures from 1.7 to 3.5 μ in length, being more or less pyriform with a thick flagellum at the smaller, or anterior, end and a vacuole near the posterior end. Unless stained, the flagellum cannot be seen under the microscope. The line of locomotion is never a straight one, for the flagellum is lashed about by the beak, which is constantly doubling backward so that a whirling motion is given to the swarm-spore. Altho the latter is a naked mass of protoplasm, the writer has never seen the various shapes which Woronin (1878, Pl. XXXIV) has pictured; it was observed in every case to be globose or pyriform, never having pseudopodia-like structures.

It has been difficult to properly fix swarm-spores for staining flagella. The first method of staining tried was that ordinarily employed for bacteria, namely, Loeffler's mordant and Ziehl's carbol fuchsin. When bacteria were in the mount their flagella were stained, but those of the swarm-spores had evidently disappeared. The process was then modified slightly, and the cover-glass mounts, instead of being left to dry in the incubator, were placed on slides in preparation dishes with ground-glass tops. In the bottom of each dish was placed a few cubic centimeters of osmic acid, and the lid was then carefully fitted in place. The acid killed a few of the swarm-spores before the flagella could be withdrawn, but never a very large proportion. Besides demonstrating the presence of flagella, the stained material also displayed different stages of germination (fig. 97).

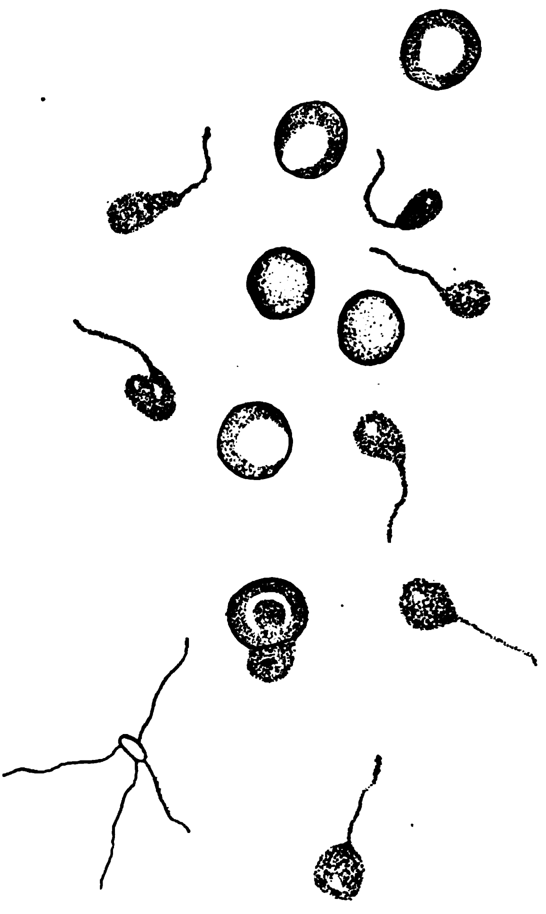


FIG. 97. SPORES AND SWARM-SPORES OF PLASMODIOPHORA BRASSICAE

The two spores at the top have already germinated. The germinating spore and the two swarm-spores near the bottom were drawn from stained mounts. The bacillus shown is the form found oftenest in older diseased roots. × 2100

Kunkel (1915) was able to get spore germination of *Spongospora subterranea* on an agar medium. *Plasmodiophora Brassicae* evidently does not react in the same way. During the three years of the present work, repeated efforts were made to secure not only germination on the surface of agar, but also formation of plasmodia. Unless the spores were immersed in water there was no development. They lay there until the agar became so dry that they finally lost their viability. If enough of the muck-soil filtrate was added, the swarm-spores appeared but there was no further development. They were active for a certain time, and then encysted and remained in that condition as long as the cultures were kept. This experiment was performed on four kinds of agar media, on potato plugs, and on healthy cabbage roots. In no case were there any signs of further growth. This, with subsequent infection experiments, indicates very strongly, if it does not prove positively, that the swarm-spores never fuse. This is in keeping with what has been found, or at least suggested, in all other cases of parasitic slime molds, *Spongospora subterranea* excepted.

If spores for germination are taken from roots that have not previously been disinfected, there are often found in the cultures flagellate bodies which are almost small enough to resemble swarmspores. They are larger, however, are more active, and when stained are more or less reniform, having two flagella arising from the concave side (fig. 98). These, as pointed out later, belong to another organism.

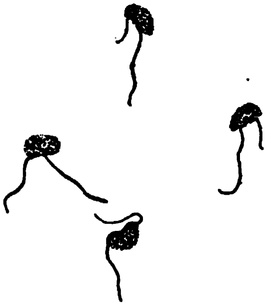


FIG. 98. FLAGELLATE ORGANISMS ASSOCIATED WITH PLASMODIOPHORA BRASSICAE

PENETRATION

In the knowledge of the life history of *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*, there has always been a gap between the swarm-spore stage and the amœba within the cell, the true sequence of development never having been shown. Most writers pass over the difficulty with the mere statement that the organism enters the root and there begins its parasitic life. Woronin (1878), in this as in nearly all other points connected with clubroot, is the only one who has tried to fill in the gap. In a way he succeeded, but, as his plants died before reaching the stage in which invasion of any of the tissue took place, he is not sure that the root hair is the real point of entrance. He placed cabbage seedlings in shallow watch glasses, in water well supplied with spores. For some reason the plants began dying before hypertrophy took place. When the roots were examined microscopically, the root hairs were filled with amœbæ but nothing further had happened. The question still remained, whether these infections under normal conditions would have been followed later by invasion of the cortical cells, or whether the case was similar to that which Schwartz (1914) found in species of Ligniera. Schwartz thinks that penetration takes place near the apex of the root, so that when the root hairs act as bearers of the amœbæ the parasite does not advance farther than the base of the cell.

Most writers believe not only that the apical cells and the root hairs act as infection courts, but also that the epidermal cells can be infected directly up to the time when the epidermal layer is thrown off (Woronin, 1878). Somerville (1895) gives an observation as proof of this statement. He often found swellings high up on the roots of turnips, where he declares no root hairs could have been responsible for the entrance of the slime mold, which must have penetrated the thick cuticle. This question of entrance has a direct economic bearing on control, for, if Somerville's statement is true, Massee's (1903) assumption is certainly erroneous. Massee states that the Cruciferæ can be attacked only during seedling time, and that after six weeks they are practically immune. It is doubtful whether either Somerville or Massee interprets the conditions correctly. If infection could not take place after six weeks, the grower could control the disease merely by late transplanting and the proper care of his seed beds; but this has evidently not proved to be the case in practice.

Maire and Tison (1909, 1911) and Schwartz (1910, 1911, 1914) have done nearly all the work that has been reported on the parasitic slime molds other than *Spongospora subterranea* and *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*. It is interesting to note that their conclusions agree very closely, and that they feel sure the amœbæ enter oftener thru the apical cells than otherwise, altho the root hairs also may serve as points of entrance. They made no particular study of this question, but were led to this conclusion by finding uninucleate amœbæ in the cells near the growing tips. Their opinion is substantiated also by the presence of rows of diseased cortical cells, the divisions of which apparently take place when still very near the initial cells in the root tips. The powdery scab pathogene, *Spongospora subterranea*, passes directly thru and between the epidermal cells into the tuber (Kunkel, 1915).

There is more or less difficulty in studying the nature of penetration in the case of *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*, because of the fact that the uninucleate amœbæ are so small. They can be recognized only under a very high magnification, and, since they are so nearly transparent, stained sections must be used for all the work. A very large number of both longitudinal and cross sections were prepared, the thickness ranging from three to fifteen microns, and the staining was done with the combination stains of safranin, gentian violet, and orange G. These proved best for differentiating the parasite from the host, especially when orange G was used in excess.

There is no possible stage in penetration that was not represented in the preparations. Large, as well as very small, roots were sectioned, and a great number of epidermal cells showed amœbæ. But in a careful study of almost three hundred slides, none of these cells showed that penetration had taken place directly thru the cutinized wall. In a number of cases this appeared to be true when the sections were first examined, but a more detailed study of the same series showed the invaded cell to be in every case the basal portion of a root hair. This, together with the fact that no new swellings are ever found at any great distance from the region where root hairs might have existed previously, has led the writer to believe that seldom, if ever, is there direct penetration into simple epidermal cells.

This holds true not only for the area above the place where the root hairs have disappeared, but evidently also for the space near the extreme tips where the hairs have not yet been formed. Not only did these slides demonstrate this point, but infection secured under aseptic conditions in test tubes has confirmed it. The small root-tips were so placed that they were the first to come into contact with particles of diseased tissue and the muck-soil filtrate containing free spores. When these rootlets were sectioned and stained, they showed various stages of root-hair invasion, but no amœbæ were found in any of the apical cells. The evidence presented in these slides shows that these invasions are not, like those which Schwartz (1914) suggested for *Ligniera* sp., confined alone to the epidermal cells of which the hairs are outgrowths. The passage of amœbæ from the epidermal cells into the cortical tissue is demonstrated not only by the position of the amœbæ within the parenchyma cells, but also by actual cell-wall penetration.

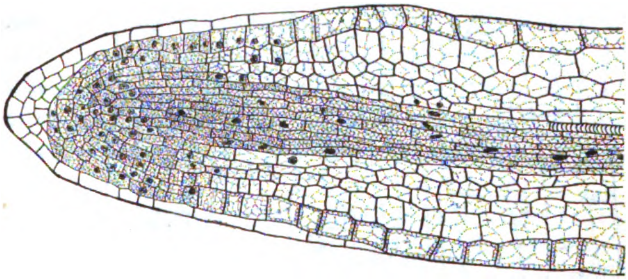


FIG. 99. LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF A CABBAGE ROOT

This shows the tip of the cabbage root protected by the cells of the root-cap. × 110

The argument advanced for other species of Plasmodiophoraceæ, that infection must take place in the growing tip where cells are dividing rapidly because the organism often occurs in definite rows of the cortical cells, does not necessarily apply to *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*. A glance at a section of a root tip (fig. 99) indicates the difficulty that a swarm-spore would encounter in entering at this point. The rootcap does not merely protect the root tip, but a row of its cells extends upward almost halfway to the root hairs. The remaining distance is protected by a comparatively heavy cuticle, leaving the root hair as practically the only vulnerable point. Moreover, the presence of the organism in continuous rows of cells can be explained in another manner. The condition shown in figure 100, B, gives no indication as to where penetration occurred. Yet by moving the section the length of half a dozen cells, there is seen an uninterrupted connection of diseased tissue between this particular row and the epidermis (fig. 100, A).

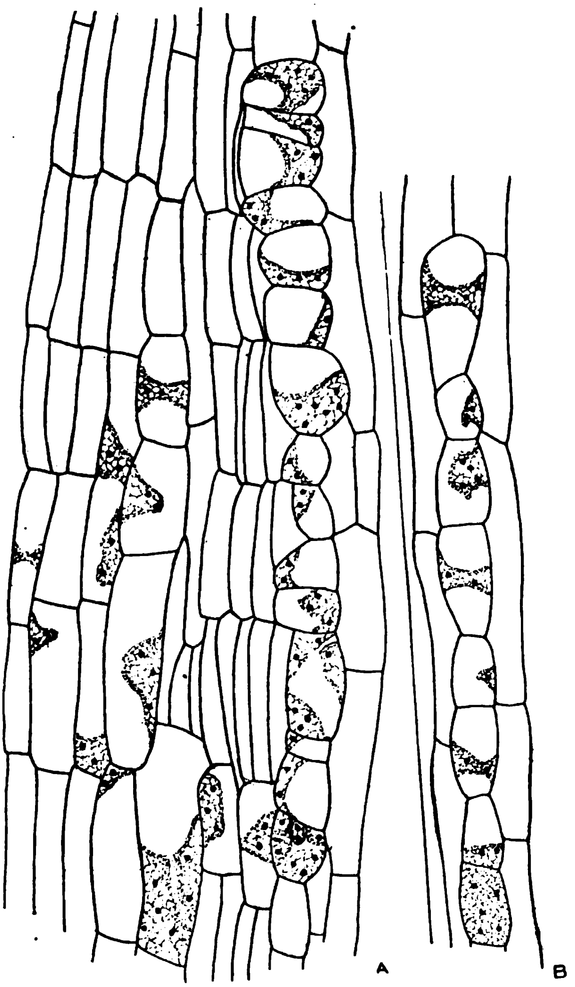


FIG. 100. DISEASED CORTICAL TISSUE OF A CABBAGE ROOT

A, A row of diseased cortical cells; B, another row of diseased cortical cells connected with the epidermis by an unbroken line of diseased tissue. × 110

So far as the writer's observations go, there seems to be no question but that penetration does take place thru the root hairs, and thru these only. Eycleshymer (1894) suggests that wounds caused by insects may provide a means of entrance for the parasite. This is altogether probable; yet the writer has never observed any indications of this condition, so that if it ever happens it apparently does so very rarely. If cultures could be secured within pieces of healthy disinfected roots in test tubes, it would at least be evidence that such wound infection might take place. Pinoy (1905) removed small pieces of healthy roots by means of sterilized pipettes, and by inoculating them with spores secured cultures of the organism, provided the tubes were sealed so that the aërobic bacteria were deprived of oxygen. His discussion of this point is somewhat lacking in clearness. Besides, the time in which he claims spores were produced in the roots is unusually short. He gives it as five days, which is the same time that under the most favorable circumstances it takes swarm-spores to pass thru the root hairs into the cortical tissue and to develop sufficient hypertrophy to be visible to the naked eye. Kleimenov (1912) tried the same experiment and failed. In the writer's experiments it was also tried repeatedly, always with failure. If the cultures were kept free from bacteria the root underwent no change. If bacteria were added, the root became soft and foul-smelling, whether the test tubes were closed with cotton plugs or sealed with paraffin over cork or cotton stoppers. Sealing did not stop the growth of the bacteria, as Pinoy claims for his experiments.

Altho authors popularly describe with some assurance various ways in which the organism may enter the host, no one has observed the real process. Even Woronin, who believed that the organism passes thru the root hair, was never able to demonstrate this clearly. Nevertheless he felt assured that it enters in the form of a uninucleate amœba, and his opinion has been accepted by most investigators. A few workers, such as Worthington G. Smith (1884), maintain that the organism enters the root in the form of a plasmodium, but this theory has never been accepted generally. The question was revived again when Kunkel (1915) studied the powdery scab of potato, in which the swarm-spores are found to fuse before attacking the host.

There seems to be no doubt in the minds of Maire and Tison (1911) and Schwartz (1914) that all the other known parasitic myxomycetes enter immediately after the swarm-spore stage. This conclusion is based on the fact that many of the slides of these investigators show the uninucleate forms in the apical cells. There is no other theory that would explain this phenomenon, unless a single uninucleate amœba of an infecting plasmodium passes thru the intervening cell walls and spreads in this manner thru the tissue. This is improbable.

Because of the diminutive size of the swarm-spore, the only satisfactory method for studying penetration appears to be by means of stained sections of roots showing the earliest stages possible. In the first part of this work, young plants from the greenhouse were used, but none of the stages were young enough to give just what was desired. An attempt was then made to grow plants in large test tubes on screens so arranged that the roots were hanging in muck-soil filtrate containing a heavy suspension of spores. The roots did not develop well when immersed in the liquid medium, and but few root hairs were present. An attempt was then made to grow seedlings in soil, in flats six inches square, with diseased tissue so plentiful that none of the plants could escape infection. The roots were fixed and embedded at intervals before the time when ordinary symptoms became apparent to the naked eye. This gave nearly all the early stages of infection, but the adhering particles of soil, which could not be washed off without sacrificing the hairs, not only were detrimental to the microtome knife, but also obstructed a clear view of the cell walls. Finally a method was devised whereby infected roots could be procured free from any other contamination. Diseased roots that contained spores but were not far enough advanced to be invaded by bacteria were sterilized on the surface with mercuric chloride and transferred to agar slants in test tubes. After two weeks cooling in the ice chest they were finely minced in the agar, and incubated until it was clear that no bacteria were present in the tissue, from which they might have been liberated by the cutting. After enough time had elapsed to insure perfect freedom from any saprophytes, a few drops of sterilized muck-soil filtrate, and a young cabbage seedling which had been grown from disinfected seed on agar in a petri dish, were added. It was necessary to exercise care in adding sufficient liquid to permit spore germination and not have an excess, which would injure the root. A few drops would not evaporate until all the swarmspores had ample time to be set free and attack the root hair. The process was somewhat long, and very often roots were chosen which were too old and were already contaminated with bacteria. In spite of all the difficulties, enough pure cultures were obtained to provide a large number of sections which showed all sizes of amœbæ.

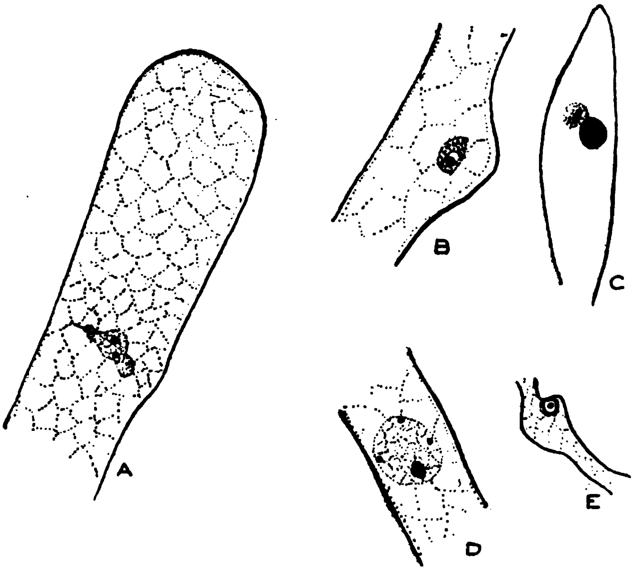


FIG. 101. THE AMŒBA OF PLASMODIOPHORA BRASSICAE IN A ROOT HAIR

A, A root hair with an amœba showing two nuclei. B, A uninucleate amœba in a root hair which shows an abnormal swelling in the immediate vicinity of the organism. C, A uninucleate amœba in a tangential section of a root hair; the nucleolus has elongated, as it ordinarily does just before nuclear division. D, A host nucleus in a root hair, showing its size as compared with that of a uninucleate amœba. E, A uninucleate amœba in a shrunken, distorted root hair. × 1600

The first and most important thing shown by the stained sections was that *Plasmodiophora Brassicae* enters the root hair as a uninucleate amœba, not as a plasmodium. There are several facts that prove this conclusively, even tho the actual phase of the organism passing thru the wall was never observed with certainty. A number of slides show cases that might be interpreted as actual penetration, but as the nucleus in no case appears in the act of making the passage one cannot be certain of such an interpretation. Nevertheless, numerous cases are to be found of a uninucleate amœba just within the wall of the root hair and far enough away from any other infection to preclude all possibility of its having reached there except by entering singly thru the wall (fig. 101).

Evidently the reason why no one has recorded this stage heretofore is because the amœba hardly enters before nuclear division and growth takes place. Some slides show binucleate amœbæ still within the hollow of the enlarged cavity, apparently produced by the stimulus of the parasite. Other sections show trinucleate amœbæ, and it is not difficult to find amœbæ with six or more nuclei (fig. 104, page 528).

This series of stages would indicate that penetration takes place in the uninucleate stage, particularly since the large multinucleate amœbæ are to be found, in nearly every instance, near the base of the root hair, while the smaller and fewer-nucleate amœbæ are always on the inside of the root-hair wall about two-thirds of the distance from the base. Amœbæ are seldom found in the tip of the hair.

Another point that confirms the above view of penetration is that in the absence of growing host roots the swarm-spores develop no further when the spores are germinated under artificial conditions, and after a short period of activity the swarm-spores encyst and eventually die. If plasmodia are formed under normal conditions, there should have been at least a suggestion of this in a few of the numerous cultures used in the experiments.

In this connection also the very interesting question of sexual fusion arises. It is believed by several cytologists that there are two nuclear divisions just before spore formation and that one of these is probably a reduction division. If this is true, it would imply that somewhere in the life cycle there has been a fusion. Winge (1913) and others believe that this occurs among the swarm-spores before they enter the host. Prowazek (1905) is of the opinion that the amœbæ within the host unite and then the nuclei fuse. Even Nawaschin (1899) believes this union takes place, but apparently he thinks it is of no significance in reproduction. Maire and Tison (1909, 1911) have disproved the amœbal union, and their view is certainly correct, for it is possible to find slides showing one amœba breaking up into spores while in another, immediately adjoining, division has not yet begun (fig. 102, D). On the other hand, it would seem that the fusion of two swarm-spores would give an increase in size, but the measurements of amœbæ just after penetration show them to be no larger than the swarm-spores just out of the spore wall. Consequently Winge's theory must be discarded. It thus appears that the real fusion stage, if there is one, is still to be discovered.

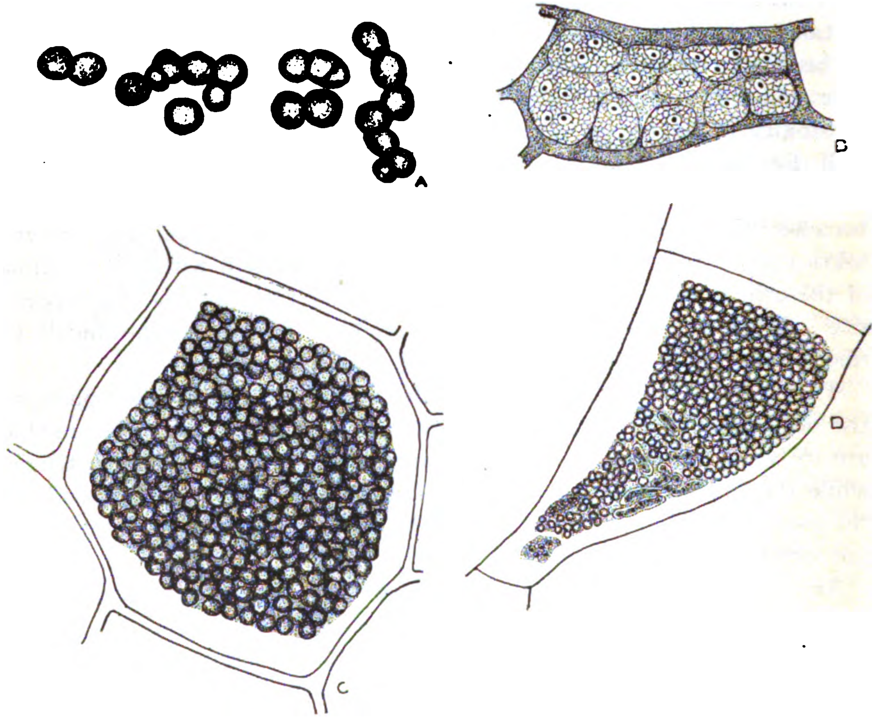


Fig. 102. SPORES AND AMŒBÆ OF PLASMODIOPHORA BRASSICAE

A, Spores before their final separation from one another; B, cell filled with amœbæ; C, cell filled with spores. All × 800. D, Formation of spores, × 500

DISTRIBUTION WITHIN THE HOST TISSUES

As stated above, the uninucleate amœba, just after its entrance into the host, lies at first in a small cavity produced by the outward swelling of the part of the root hair at the point where the organism entered. This protuberance is no doubt caused by the irritating presence of the parasite (fig. 101, A, B, E). Following penetration the amœba increases in size and pushes toward the center of the hair. The movement is accomplished by an actual amœboid creeping, and an elongation and gradual segmentation of the forward part. Woronin (1878) was able to observe the former method of locomotion in the living cells, and mentions it as the means by which the organism moves. Schwartz (1910), on the other hand, observed the growing of the amœboid tip in *Ligniera Junci* (Sch.) M. et T., and explains the change of position on that basis alone. A root hair is shown in figure 104, D, which apparently was infected near the tip, and as the organism grew rootward fission took place, so that when the anterior part of the amoeba eventually reached the base of the cell the root hair was filled completely with the meronts, as Maire and Tison (1911) designate the segmented parts (fig. 103). This does not always take place, for there were many more cases observed in which the intact amœba reached the base of the cell (fig. 104, E, F). In either case, if the time consumed is too long, or if for any other reason sporulation begins, the amœba loses its power of further penetration into the cortical tissues. If, however, it reaches the inner wall of the root-hair cell, its pseudopodia are extended into the very smallest thread-like processes, which pass thru and into the cortical cell (fig. 105, E, F, G). Schwartz (1910), in describing penetration by *Ligniera Junci*, gives the same route of invasion but does not state how the passage from the epidermis into the cortical cells takes place. This question is of especial interest, since in the latter part of his discussion Schwartz states his belief that amœbæ never have the power of penetrating cell walls. There is no other apparent means by which this could be accomplished, for the epidermal cells seldom divide periclinally.

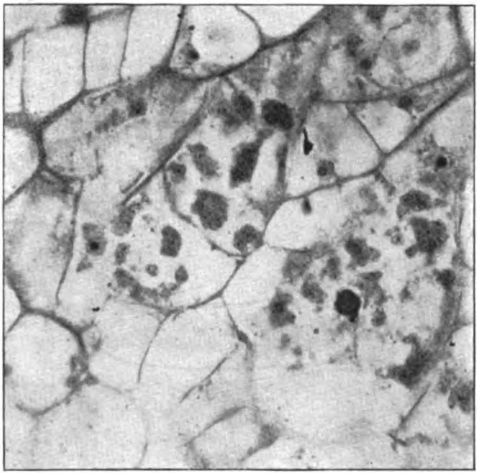


FIG. 103. PHOTOMICROGRAPH OF CELLS CONTAINING AMŒBÆ

One amœba has elongated considerably and is separating into meronts

It would be difficult to explain the wide distribution of the parasite within the root if cell-wall penetration did not occur, even tho it were taken for granted that invasion begins in the apical cells. The rootcap so fully protects these rapidly dividing primary cells that one must presuppose that in order to reach them the organism can pierce the walls. Then, in the maturer roots constant secondary thickening by the cambium takes place, which would ultimately push most of the diseased cells toward the periphery or isolate them near the center. This, however, does

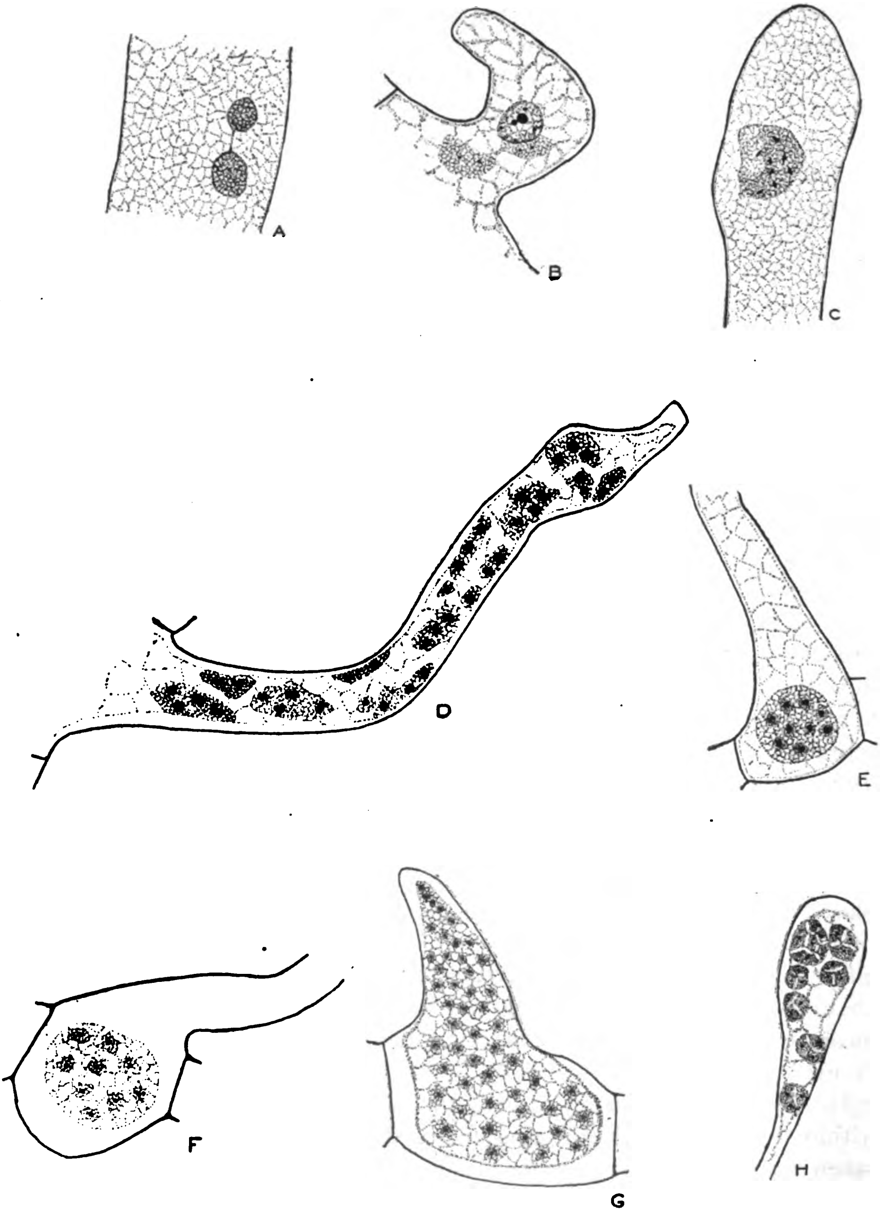


FIG. 104. SECTIONS OF CABBAGE ROOT HAIRS SHOWING AMŒBÆ

A, An amœba dividing by fission in a root hair. B, A much distorted and swollen root hair, with a small amœba partly surrounding its nucleus, which is also much enlarged. C, An amœba near the tip of a root hair; the nucleoli are elongated, as they ordinarily are just before nuclear division. D, A root hair filled with meronts. E and F, Amœbæ in epidermal cells of the root and at the base of root hairs; amœbæ about to break up into spores. G, A root hair filled with an amœba. H, A root hair filled with amœbæ breaking up into spores; the vacuolar channels between each nucleus are plainly visible. X 600

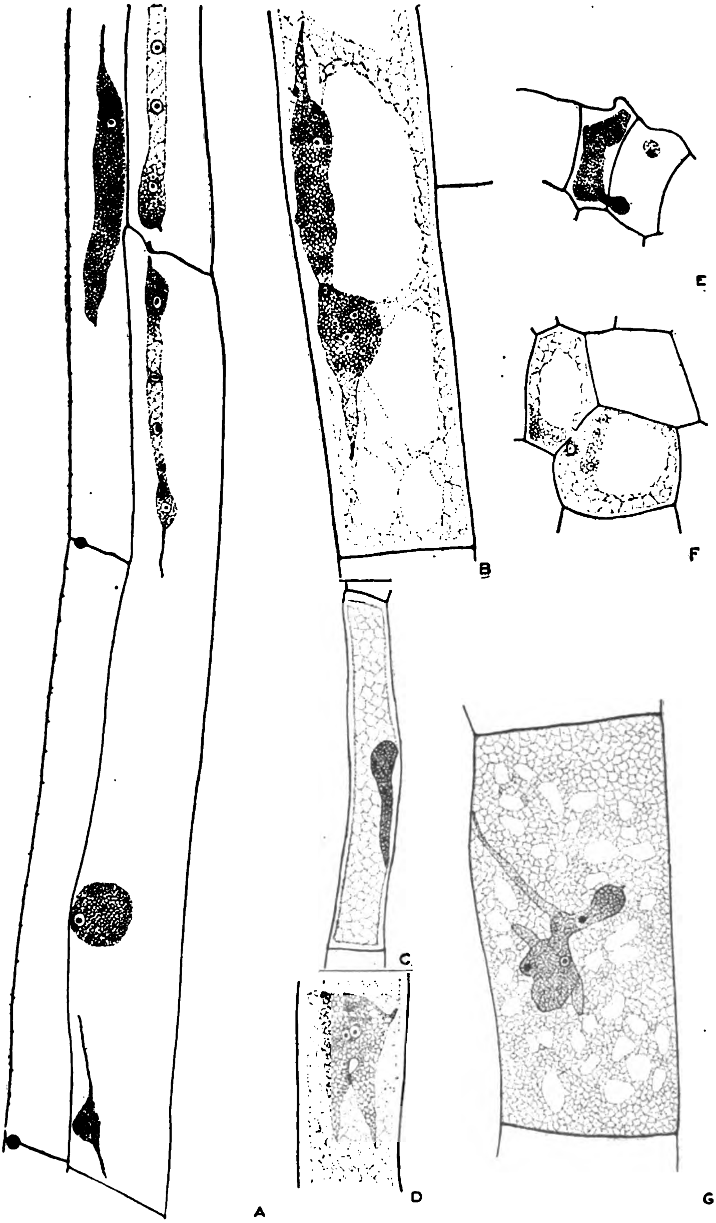


FIG. 105. AMŒBÆ IN THE HOST CELLS

A, B, C, D, and G, Amœbæ, with pseudopodia, in recently infected roots. E, Amœbæ in adjoining cells, divided only by the cell walls; this is evidently a case in which penetration occurred, altho no connecting strands are visible. F, Amœba penetrating the cell wall. × 110 not happen, as may be seen by examination of cross-sections. Besides, if it did, it would explain only the presence of longitudinal rows of diseased cells, and not necessarily the whole "Krankheitsherde." For example, in figure 106 the original cortex was five cells wide. That is the same number as is found in the "Krankheitsherde." These are connected by a single row of diseased cells. How could the diseased area have originated without direct migration and still show no radial hyperplasia?

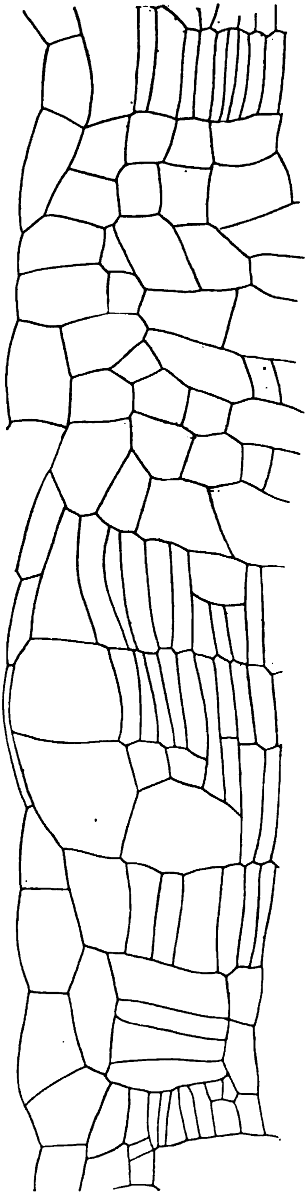


FIG. 106. FORMATION OF "KRANKHEITSHERDE"

All the narrow elongated cells are still uninvaded, but they have increased greatly in number thru outward pressure of the hypertrophied cells. × 110

Woronin's (1878) view is that the parasite, taking advantage of the pits found in the parenchyma, goes directly from cell to cell and thus thruout the root, much like *Spongospora subterranea* in tubers as described by Kunkel (1915) except that the organism in the potato is intercellular. To Nawaschin (1899), who saw no actual passage thru the walls, it seemed too difficult a task for the amœba to break thru the plasma membrane; hence he decided that there is never any migration, the distribution being due entirely to rapid division of diseased cells.

Maire and Tison (1909, 1911) and Schwartz (1910, 1911, 1914), who have made observations on the other Plasmodiophoraceæ, explain the scattered diseased areas as due to infection of the apical cells which by subsequent divisions gives rise to the diseased rows so often seen. Schwartz (1911), in spite of the fact that he saw pseudopodia in *Sorosphaera graminis* extending thru the cell wall, makes the statement that he does not believe species of any of the genera show direct migration. He explains his skepticism on the ground that he never saw any accompanying nucleus in these pseudopodia.

Lutman (1913) figures actual passage thru the wall. He believes that the amœbæ are transferred in the cortical tissue both by penetration and by division of the host cells.

It is altogether possible to cut a large number of sections without obtaining any definite clue as to the mode of migration from the root hair to the cortex or the medullary ray, for in the later stages the cell wall acts as a perfect barrier. In view of this fact, Nawaschin might have done enough staining to complete his carefully planned cytological problem without once cutting a root so recently infected that the passage from one cell to another could be detected. During the first two years of the writer's study, only roots that showed evident hypertrophy were used and none of these gave any evidence of such a passage. As soon as the smallest rootlets were sectioned longitudinally, penetration could be observed. It is true that it never appeared abundantly; yet it might have been there and not noticed, for the opening in the wall is so minute and the strand which passes thru is so nearly hyaline that only deep staining will make it apparent under the microscope (fig. 105, F, page 529). There are numerous cases in which it is probable that such a migration has taken place but the connecting strand cannot be seen (fig. 105, E).

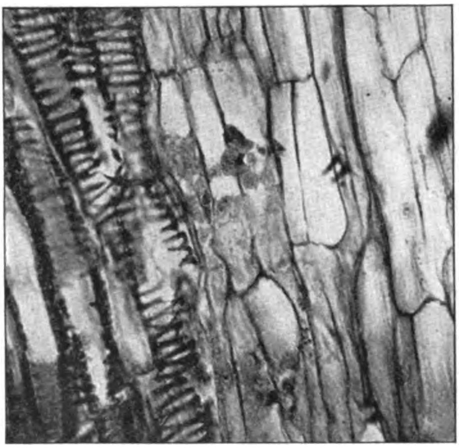


FIG. 107. AMŒBA EXTENDING FROM ONE CELL INTO ANOTHER

The objection has been suggested that these strands are merely the remains of a thread which was not severed when the wall was laid down between two dividing cells. This may be true in such cases as are represented in figure 107, but in other cases the position of the cells precludes the tenability of such an assumption.

Another argument in favor of cell-wall penetration is the shape of the amœba in the initial stages of invasion as compared with that in later stages. When the smallest rootlets, containing only a few diseased cells, are sectioned longitudinally, the amœbæ are usually seen to be elongated and often have pseudopodia extending in different directions. This is never true in a more advanced stage. The amœbæ are then nearly spherical and remain stationary in the cell. This difference is seen on comparison of figures 105 and 108.

The small offspring at once begins to grow in the newly invaded cell, the process of penetration being repeated while the tissue is still young. From this statement, however, it is not to be inferred that all this occurs while there is no cell division, and that each daughter cell in turn does not become infected. Cell division certainly does take place from the beginning, first in conjunction with penetration and later alone. The result of both methods of invasion is illustrated by figure 100, B (page 522), which shows a row of eight diseased cells. They extend the same length as three healthy cells. Their relative lengths had been attained before infection occurred; therefore the organism must have passed thru at least two walls, while cell division accounts for the remainder.

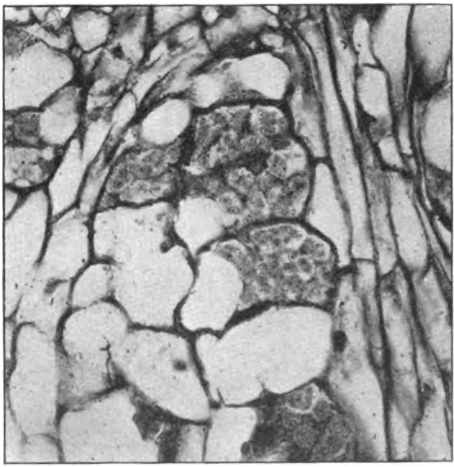


FIG. 108. HOST CELLS FILLED WITH CLOSELY CROWDED AMŒBÆ

This leads the study to the process of "Krankheitsherde" formation. The whole subject has usually been dismissed with the arbitrary statement that a single cell becomes diseased and then a closely packed group of cells finally results by repeated divisions both anticlinally and periclinally. A cursory study of cross sections would naturally suggest such an explanation, for undoubtedly the diseased areas are arranged in more or less distinct groups. But again longitudinal sections of young and recently infected rootlets may be used to clear up the difficulty and show the initial stages of a typical "Krankheitsherde."

The impression must be avoided that passage thru cell walls is so frequent that a single root-hair infection will suffice to spread the organism thruout the entire affected part of the root. There must be repeated infections, since the amœbæ never migrate far, as the longitudinal sections show. They may enter in almost a straight path as far as the endodermis. The invaded cells may then divide or merely increase in size. Meanwhile the adjoining healthy cells show abnormal division. Nawaschin (1899) explains this hyperplasia on the part of non-invaded cells as due to the mechanical outward pressure of the much-enlarged diseased cells. Eleven rows of uninvaded cells adjacent to a "Krankheitsherde" are shown in figure 106 (page 530); in the healthy part of the root there are only five rows of cells.

For some unknown reason the amœba in some cases may not penetrate as far as the endodermis, but, after having reached a certain row of the cortical cells, it may pass upward or downward in that row, cell division taking place as fast as invasion occurs. This produces such rows of cells as are illustrated in figure 100. The vertical direction may be changed at any time and at frequent intervals to a horizontal one, and the adjacent rows thus affected at once begin cell division in each direction. The result is a true "Krankheitsherde." Any one of these diseased rows, or several of them, may extend beyond another group of healthy cells, from which the organism again moves horizontally. This will cause a second "Krankheitsherde," above or below the first and separated by the length of one or more healthy cells. This is illustrated in figure 106 better than it can be described. A single infection may in this manner give rise to from one to probably six "Krankheitsherde," with the intervening uninvaded cells much increased in number over those in the normal tissue.

It has already been pointed out why this longitudinal movement is interpreted as the result of cell-wall penetration instead of as being due to mere division. The diseased area shown in figure 106 is only five rows of cells in width. The perfectly normal tissue of the same root shows exactly the same number of rows. There has been no periclinal division, and therefore direct migration must have taken place.

All this occurs when the root is only a few millimeters in diameter. For some reason the walls finally become impenetrable, and the amœbæ become more nearly globose and later are transformed into masses of spores.

SPORE FORMATION AND SIZE

For the purpose of this discussion the nuclear phenomena need not be included. The generally accepted explanation of a true mitotic division followed by vacuolar separation into individual uninucleate spores is well known. This separation is supposed to take place almost simultaneously, but stained sections do not always show this to be true. Stages from the amœba to the mature spore are represented in figure 102, D (page 526). In this case there were repeated successive separations instead of simultaneous fission, so that each amœba is divided into two, then four, and so on until no two nuclei longer remain together. The unstained spores in figure 102, A, show the same method of formation. They may then be hexagonal or irregular in outline, and much larger than when mature, but they soon become spherical.

It was surprising to note the wide difference between the actual size of the spores, and the measurements (1.6 μ) given by Woronin (1878) and nearly all succeeding authors. Molliard (1909) gives the diameter of the spores as from 1.8 to 2.2 μ, and Pinoy (1907), altho he does not state directly, says in speaking of swarm-spores that they are from 3 to 4 μ in diameter.

The measurements made in connection with the present experiments agree more nearly with those of Pinoy for the swarm-spores. The spores in formation, when not yet spherical, measure from 2.5 to 6.9 μ in diameter, being much more variable than those that are older. The smallest mature spore measured was 1.9 μ, and the largest was 4.3 μ. These measurements include not only living spores but also those stained in various ways. The average was 3.3 μ.

A SIMILAR ORGANISM

For some time the writer was at a loss for an explanation of the occasional presence of from two to twelve strange nuclei in certain root hairs and epidermal cells (fig. 109, A). These are from 3 to 4 μ in diameter, being smaller than the nuclei of the host cells. The nucleoli have a much denser content than those of the host cells, and are much smaller and less prominent. They appear to be entire swarm-spores containing no visible cytoplasm; however, they do not resemble those of *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*, being larger, and, most important of all, not having the hyaline zone about the nucleolus which is so characteristic of the latter.

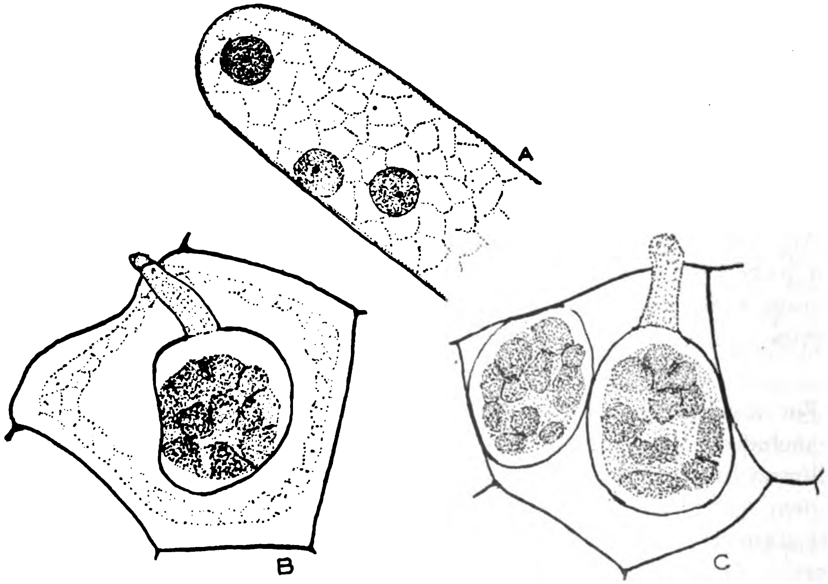


FIG. 109. AN UNKNOWN ORGANISM ASSOCIATED WITH PLASMODIOPHORA BRASSICAE

A, Nuclear-like bodies in a root hair, probably swarm-spores of *Olpidium Brassicae*; B and C, an unknown organism in the epidermal cells of a cabbage root, probably *Olpidium Brassicae*. × 800

Furthermore, amœba-like bodies are found in the epidermal cells or the layer next to them, which also look very much like Plasmodiophora but seem to be inclosed in a delicate wall. Stages have been found in which each of these bodies has an appendage, or neck, which protrudes thru the outer epidermal cell wall (fig. 109, B, C). The organism compares very closely with that described by Woronin (1878) as *Synchytrium Brassicae* and later by Dangeard (1886) as *Olpidium Brassicae*. Positive proof of its identity is lacking.

The chytrid never produces any hypertrophy or other outside symptoms by which a diseased plant can be recognized, so that specimens were found only accidentally. For this reason it was impossible to study the swarm-spore stage or the details of the life history of the organism.

The organism evidently enters by way of the root hairs, and never penetrates far into the host. None of the invaded cells are changed in size or general appearance. Even the invaded root hair does not have that slight enlargement which has been mentioned in connection with the entrance of the uninucleate amœba of *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*.

The fungus can infect a plant that seems perfectly healthy. At least it is not a saprophytic form following the clubroot organism, as roots were sectioned which showed it alone.

BACTERIA IN RELATION TO PLASMODIOPHORA BRASSICAE

Pinoy's (1902, 1903, 1905, 1907) work with Myxomycetes in their relation to bacteria, and his subsequent suggestion that there is a true symbiosis between the two, represent a very interesting phase in the study of Plasmodiophora. It has long been held that certain saprophytic slime molds feed on accompanying organisms, and the data at hand seem entirely plausible. Lister (1894) has seen the ingestion of bacteria by active swarm-spores. The experiments of Vuillemin (1903), Nadson (1901), and Potts (1902) show that *Dictyostelium mucoroides* Bref. feeds directly on bacterial colonies and destroys a large number of these at fruiting time.

The general conditions of subsistence governing saprophytic forms and those controlling parasitic organisms are not the same, however; so that from *a priori* reasoning it would seem justifiable to say that *Plasmodiophora Brassicae* needs no concomitant organism in its life cycle. Yet the case is not so clear, since, on examination of nearly every root that has been diseased for some time, such an organism is found to be present. When the surface of these roots is sterilized and placed in agar, they may show no indication of bacteria until they are cut in two and the fresh surface is placed in contact with the medium. Moreover, E. F.

Smith (1911) and Eycleshymer (1894), both careful workers, state that they saw these bacteria. This is also in accordance with what Maire and Tison (1911) claim to be true for certain parasitic slime molds that are able to ingest unicellular algæ present in their aquatic host; and with what Kunkel (1915) has demonstrated in the case of *Spongospora subterranea* grown on agar in which pure cultures of plasmodia become abnormal and die, while those with which bacteria are present live and thrive.

All of Pinoy's (1905) experiments appear to corroborate his idea that a coccus form enters the root with the swarm-spore and lives in constant association with the parasite thruout its entire life cycle. He stained sections of the root and observed bacterial forms within the cells. They appeared so much like parts of the cell contents that the microscopical analysis had to be accompanied by cultural study. For this he procured diseased roots of *Brassica sinensis* measuring from eight to ten centimeters in diameter, seared the outside, and cut plugs from the interior by means of a flamed pipette. When these plugs were planted in agar media, numerous colonies of bacteria soon appeared. To prove that these organisms were necessary for the development of the myxomycete, Pinoy placed spores of *Plasmodiophora Brassicae* in a large number of test tubes containing sterilized extract of roots. In two tubes the spores were accidentally not associated with bacteria and they failed to germinate, while in all the other tubes the spores did germinate.

Pinoy's results are interesting, altho the work does not appear to be extensive enough to warrant the conclusion he has drawn. The following experiments were undertaken by the writer in further quest for facts bearing on this problem:

Thruout three years of study almost five hundred petri-dish and test-tube cultures have been made from diseased roots of all sizes and ages, grown under various conditions and in widely separated localities. The ordinary method of procedure was to place the roots for ten minutes in mercuric chloride 1-1000; then, after rinsing them several times in sterilized distilled water, to break the roots open and remove bits of the diseased tissue from the broken surface by means of a flamed scalpel. The bits of roots were placed in a sterilized petri dish, where they were teased apart in a few drops of sterilized distilled water. Two successive dilutions were made, and these, together with the original drop in which the tissue had been crushed, were poured into nutrient agar media.

All the results were uniform in that no bacterial colonies were obtained from the roots with young swellings. From the medium-sized swellings occasional colonies developed; and from the larger galls, especially when epidermis had been broken, numerous colonies always appeared.

The fact that only the small swellings show no contamination might be attributed to the penetration of the mercuric chloride. In order to avoid this source of error, the time of treatment was reduced from ten minutes to five, and even to three, or was dispensed with entirely, the roots being soaked for three hours in water that had been standing over calcium hypochlorite for two hours and then decanted. The results were the same.

Another possible hindrance to the appearance of colonies at first might have been the medium, which was nutrient agar. In order to eliminate this objection, later cultures were made both in potato agar and in a medium made from the extract of healthy cabbage roots like that used successfully by Kleimenov (1912). No bacterial growths were obtained.

Bacteria have been found in large roots similar to those that Pinoy used; but Pinoy obtained a coccus, while the most prevalent form in the cultures of the writer has been a very motile rod-shaped bacterium producing yellowish, opalescent colonies on the various media. In test tubes containing disinfected diseased roots this organism readily produces a soft rot and thus liberates the spores of the slime mold. It is well known that the epidermis is soon ruptured after swelling begins, and from all indications the conditions are propitious for the entrance of any organisms that may be in the soil. This is doubly true for any that find exposed cabbage tissue a favorable substratum on which to reproduce, as does evidently the bacterium mentioned above. These series of cultures tend to show that bacteria do not enter with the swarm-spore, as Pinoy (1905) believes, but that the disease must advance to a certain stage before the bacteria can gain entrance. The above experiments are perhaps in themselves not sufficient proof, especially since they bear on the negative side of the question. To these, however, are to be added the following data:

The writer has found that spores germinate better if they have been exposed to cold or to drying for a short time before being placed in a warm oven at a temperature of from 27° to 30° C.; and that the best medium tested is water that has been filtered thru muck soil. Accordingly diseased roots were washed, treated with either mercuric chloride or calcium hypochlorite, placed in sterilized, cotton-plugged test tubes, and left in the ice box for seven days. At the end of that time they were cut into pieces with a flamed scalpel and some of the sterilized muck filtrate was added, after which the roots were placed in the incubator for six hours. Before making mounts to examine the material, a loopful of the filtrate was transferred to each of two petri dishes, which were then poured with nutrient agar. This was done in order to determine with certainty whether or not bacteria were present. Germination was fully as good when the bacteria were not present as when they were. This is in direct opposition to Pinoy's (1905) statement that there is no development when the spores are not accompanied by a coccus.

Diseased cabbage roots were disinfected with either mercuric chloride or calcium hypochlorite; if with the former, they were then rinsed three times carefully in different tubes of sterilized distilled water; if with the latter, they were rinsed in muck-soil filtrate, which is acid and tends to neutralize any of the calcium compounds that might adhere to the roots and retard germination of the spores. All the roots were then either transferred to tubes of nutrient agar slants or embedded in agar in petri dishes. If at the end of a week they showed no signs of contamination, those in the petri dishes were placed on agar slants, after which all the roots were minced and left for another week in order to make sure that no bacteria were in the roots and had been liberated by the mincing.

Seeds of the cabbage were sterilized by the same method as was employed for the roots, but they were not rinsed in sterilized water when calcium hypochlorite was used. The seeds were planted in nutrient agar in petri dishes and the young plants were permitted to develop until they were free of the old seed coats. They were then placed in the tubes with the minced roots that showed no bacterial colonies, and a sufficient amount of the sterilized muck filtrate was added to insure spore germination but not enough to injure the small seedlings.

This process, tho complicated and long, seems to fulfill all the requirements that carefulness demands; and in the three series tried, from five to twenty per cent of the cultures were free from bacteria. The chief difficulty lies in the fact that there is such a narrow margin between spore formation and bacterial invasion that it is hard to select swellings which are neither too young to contain mature spores nor yet so old that bacteria have entered. One objection to the experiment is obvious. There is no way of determining contaminations except by the absence of colonies on the agar where the roots have been minced and on which the seedlings grow. Yet it seems hardly possible that bacteria can be present thruout all these operations and not come into contact with the medium. Besides, where no bacterial colonies appear, the plants grow more vigorously, produce larger roots, and show infection sooner than in the contaminated tubes. Swellings apparent to the naked eye were formed at the end of five days the first time the experiment was tried. When the plants were fixed, sectioned, and stained, they showed amœbæ in the cortex as well as in a large number of root hairs; all of which tends to discount Pinoy's (1905) belief that there is no development of the parasites without a concomitant bacterium.

Pinoy based his conclusions in part on the evidence presented by stained sections. Apparently he studied sections of large roots, since the roots that he received from Mangin were evidently eight or more centimeters in diameter. The writer was unable to procure thionine, the stain that Pinoy used, but he tried both Ziehl's carbol fuchsin and Kuehne's carbol methylene blue, which have always given good results in staining parasitic bacteria in other tissue. Parts of small, slightly swollen roots, as well as pieces of larger roots (of which some were still normal in color and others had begun to turn black), were fixed in Carnoy's fluid, consisting of glacial acetic acid and alcohol. The small, slightly swollen roots after staining showed no signs of bacteria. Pinoy (1905) states that cocci appear as very refractive bodies among the amœbæ. In this experiment, the hila of partly corroded starch grains (fig. 110, A) appeared in several instances as spherical, brightly stained bodies; but they could hardly be mistaken for an organism, as the same effect is shown in healthy cells in which entire starch grains may be seen.

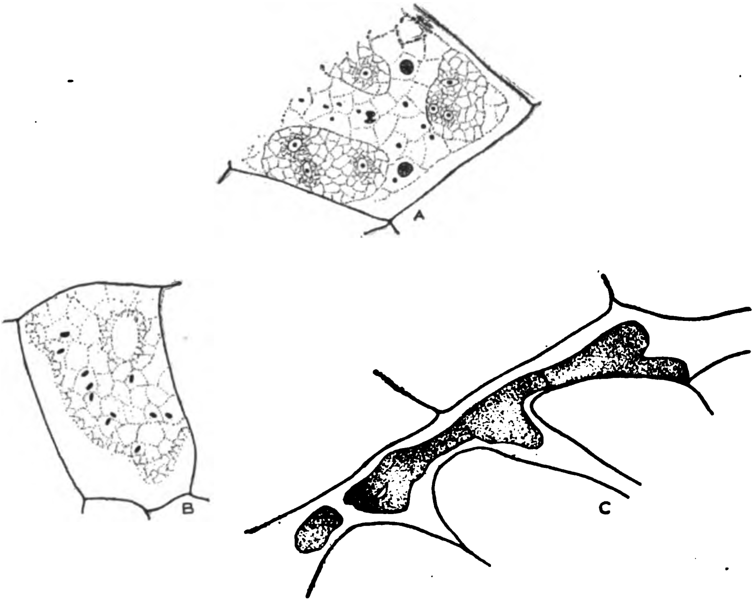


FIG. 110. SAPROPHYTIC ORGANISMS IN DISEASED TISSUE

A, Partly corroded starch grains between the amœbæ, the refractive hila being the only visible part in some of them; B, bacteria in a cell of diseased tissue; C, mycelium of a saprophytic fungus in darkened diseased tissue. × 800

The older, diseased tissue that has not yet turned dark presents a somewhat different appearance from that of the youngest swellings. The epidermal cells are torn in many places, and rod-shaped bacteria (fig. 110, B) are found both within and between the cells. Many of these cells show broken passages in the walls where the organism could easily have entered.

In a blackened root the only additional change that can be recognized is the presence of hyphæ. This blackness is almost a true criterion of the effects of a fungus, for the bacteria seldom, if ever, produce any pronounced discoloration (fig. 110, c).

It is not altogether a new phenomenon to find other organisms following parasitic slime molds. For example, the earlier writers who described *Sorosphaera Veronica* regarded it as a rust because of the mycelial threads which, according to these investigators, are constantly present. Maire and Tison (1909) prove with but little difficulty that the fungi are merely saprophytic attendants. The case is almost identical with that which Schwartz (1914) cites for species of Ligniera with which typical mycorrhiza are continual associates.

It has been shown that non-parasitic myxomycetes undoubtedly make use of bacteria. It seems, therefore, altogether reasonable that when a facultative saprophyte is grown under conditions to which *Spongospora subterranea* was subjected by Kunkel (1915), it will assume the habits of a saprophyte. As far as this discussion is concerned, the only question is whether *Spongospora subterranea* still utilizes bacteria when in the potato tuber.

Objection may be found to each of the above experiments taken alone. When considered together they cover the subject thoroly enough, and coincide so fully in their results that it seems logical to draw the conclusion that *Plasmodiophora Brassicae* has no need for the bacteria and that the latter are merely attendant saprophytic forms which incidentally help to set free the spores of the parasite. Only two factors favor Pinoy's theory. One is the presence of bacteria in most roots in which any considerable swelling has taken place; the other, the fact that there is a smaller number of different species of organisms present than might have been expected. Almost invariably the rod-shaped bacterium forming opalescent colonies on nutrient agar was the only one isolated. The facts, however, that spores can germinate in sterilized media, that infection can occur on seedlings in test tubes on nutrient agar where no bacterial colonies are present, and that recently infected roots never show bacteria either when tested in culture or under the microscope after staining, would seem to offset any evidence that heretofore has been adduced to the contrary. Therefore it seems evident that *Plasmodiophora Brassicae* is an obligate parasite, and, as such, needs no other food supply than that furnished by its host.

SUMMARY

Neither the motility of swarm-spores nor the action of winds is an important factor in the dissemination of *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*.

Spores germinate better after a slight rest period and in such a medium as muck-soil filtrate. Each spore produces one swarm-spore, which, if not supplied with a host, develops no further.

It is difficult to stain the flagella of swarm-spores, but if they are first killed instantly with fumes of osmic acid fairly good mounts can be obtained.

Penetration takes place thru the wall of the root hair while the organism is in a uninucleate stage. The root hair at once shows hypertrophy. The amœba increases in size as it passes rootward, and finally, by direct cell-wall penetration as well as by the division of the host cells, the pathogene is distributed thruout the cortical tissue.

The spores are not always formed by simultaneous vacuolar divisions of the amœbæ, there being cases in which they are produced by successive divisions while the adjoining amœbæ may still be in the nuclear stage.

Aside from *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*, there is often present another organism, which causes no hypertrophy and which is probably *Olpidium Brassicae* (Wor.) Dang.

In the experiments to determine the relation of bacteria to *Plasmodiophora Brassicae*, a large number of isolations were attempted, diseased tissues of all stages were stained, spores were germinated in sterilized media, and infections were secured in test tubes under aseptic conditions. All this points to the fact that the bacteria do not enter the host as soon as the slime mold does, but follow only after there has been enough enlargement of tissues to rupture the epidermis. Consequently the bacteria can be of no vital importance in the nutrition of the parasite.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

ATKINSON, G. F. Club root of cabbage. *In* Botanical notes. South Carolina Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **1**:15–18. 1889.

CARRUTHERS, WILLIAM. Anbury, club-root, or finger and toe. Roy. Agr. Soc. England. Journ. 3:**4**:334–339. 1893.

DANGEARD, P.-A. Olpidium. *In* Recherches sur les organismes inférieurs. Ann. sci. nat. (Bot.) 7:**4**:327. 1886.

EYCLESHYMER, A. C. Club-root in the United States. Journ. myc. **7**:79–88, Pl. XV–XVI. 1894.

HULST, GEORGE D. Club root. *In* Insects injurious to the cabbage and the best means of preventing their ravages. New Jersey Agr. Coll. Exp. Sta. Bul. 50:14–21. 1888.

HUMPHREY, JAS. ELLIS. The club root of cabbages. *In* Department of Vegetable Physiology, Report. Massachusetts Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **9**:230–231. 1892.

KLEIMENOV, P. D. [Russian title.] Clubroot of cabbage (Plasmodiophora Brassicae Woron.). *In* Subjects of studies of fungous parasites of cultivated plants of the Moscow government. Report on phytopathological researches made in 1912 by K. E. Nurashkinsky and P. D. Kleimenov. Moscow Government's Zemstvo, Second paper, p. 26–37. (Abstracted by C. D. Sherbakoff.) 1912.

KUNKEL, L. O. A contribution to the life history of Spongospora subterranea. Journ. agr. res. **4**:265–278, Pl. XXXIX–XLIII. 1915.

LISTER, ARTHUR. A monograph of the Mycetozoa, p. 1–224. (Reference on p. 4.) 1894.

LUTMAN, B. F. Studies on club-root. I. The relation of Plasmodiophora Brassicae to its host and the structure and growth of its plasmodium. Vermont Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 175:1–27, Pl. I–IV. 1913.

MAIRE, RENÉ, ET TISON, ADRIEN. La cytologie des Plasmodiophoracées et la classe des Phytomyxinae. Ann. myc. **7**:226–253, Pl. IV–VI. 1909.

——— Nouvelles recherches sur les Plasmodiophoracées. Ann. myc. **9**:226–246, Pl. X–XIV. 1911.

MANGIN, L. Le gros-pied ou hernie du chou. Rev. hort. **74**:432–435. 1902.

MASSEE, GEO. Club-root. Gard. chron. 3:**34**:351–352. 1903.

MOLLIARD, M. Une nouvelle Plasmodiophorée, parasite du Triglochin palustre L. Soc. bot. France. Bul. **56**:23–25. 1909.

NADSON, G. A. Des cultures du Dictyostelium mucoroides Bref. et des cultures pures des Amoebes en général. Scripta Botanica (St. Petersburg) **15**:1–38. Abstracted *in* Just's Bot. Jahresber. **27**^{1}:86. 1901.

NAWASCHIN, S. Beobachtungen über den feineren Bau und Umwandlungen von Plasmodiophora Brassicae Woron. im Laufe ihres intracellularen Lebens. Flora **86**: 404–427, Pl. XX. 1899.

PINOY, ERNEST. Nécessité de la présence d'une bactérie pour obtenir la culture de certains myxomycètes. (Note préliminaire.) Soc. Myc. France. Bul. **18**: 288–290. 1902.

——— Nécessité d'une symbiose microbienne pour obtenir la culture des Myxomycètes. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **137**: 580–581. 1903.

——— Rôle des bactéries dans le développement du Plasmodiophora brassicæ, myxomycète parasite produisant la hernie du chou. Soc. Biol. (Paris). Compt. rend. **57**^{1}: 1010–1012. 1905.

——— Rôle des bactéries dans le développement de certains myxomycètes. Inst. Pasteur. Ann. **21**: 622–656, 686–700, Pl. XIII-XVI. 1907.

POTTS, GEORGE. Zur Physiologie des Dictyostelium mucoroides. Flora **91**: 281–347. 1902.

PROWAZEK, S. Über den Erreger der Kohlhernie Plasmodiophora brassicae Woronin und die Einschlüsse in den Carcinomzellen. Kais. Gesundheitsamte. Arb. **22**: 396–410. 1905.

SCHWARTZ, E. J. Parasitic root diseases of the Juncaceae. Ann. bot. **24**: 511–522, Pl. XL. 1910.

——— The life-history and cytology of Sorosphaera Graminis. Ann. bot. **25**^{2}: 791–797, Pl. LXI. 1911.

——— The Plasmodiophoraceae and their relationship to the Mycetozoa and the Chytrideae. Ann. bot. **28**: 227–240, Pl. XII. 1914.

SMITH, ERWIN F. Bacteria with myxomycetes. *In* Bacteria in relation to plant diseases **2**: 169–172. 1911.

SMITH, WORTHINGTON G. Club-root of turnips, cabbages, mangels, and allied plants. *In* Diseases of field and garden crops, p. 94–104. 1884.

SOMERVILLE, WILLIAM. Further infection experiments with finger-and-toe. Roy. Agr. Soc. England. Journ. 3: **6**: 749–759. 1895.

VUILLEMIN, PAUL. Une Acrasiée bactériophage. Acad. Sci. (Paris). Compt. rend. **137**: 387–389. 1903.

WINGE, Ö. Cytological studies in the Plasmodiophoraceæ. Ark. bot. **12**^{9}: 1–39, pl. 1–3. 1913.

WORONIN, M. Plasmodiophora Brassicae, Urheber der Kohlpflanzen-Hernie. Jahrb. wiss. Bot. [Pringsheim] **11**: 548–574, Pl. XXIX–XXXIV. 1878.

APRIL, 1917 BULLETIN 388

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

THE POPLAR AND WILLOW BORER

ROBERT MATHESON

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

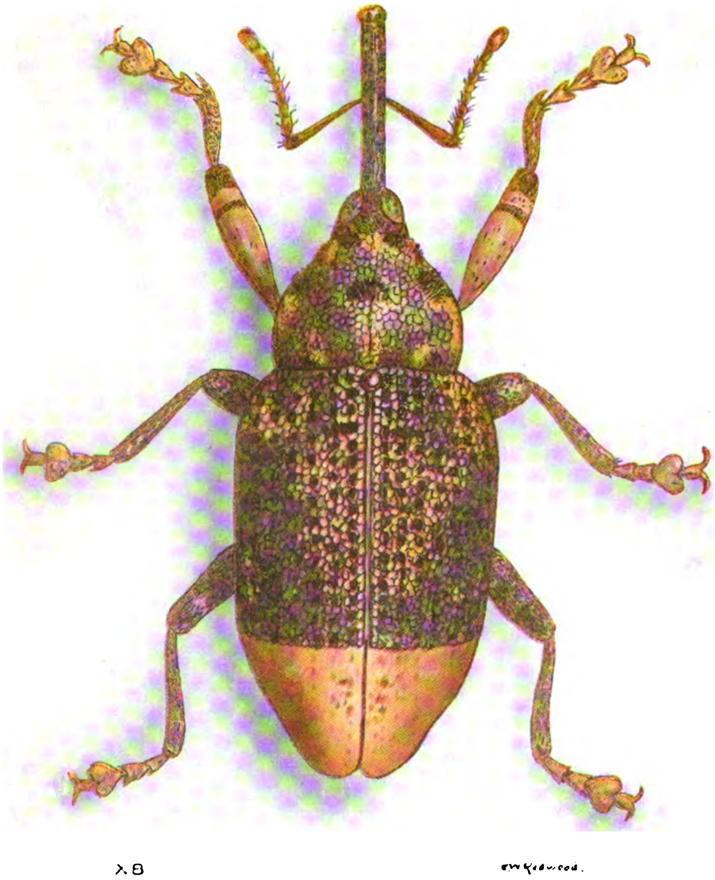
ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE

History of the species 549
    In Europe 549
    In America 550
Food plants 551
Economic importance 554
Distribution 554
Life history 555
    The adult 555
    Egg laying 557
    The egg 558
    The larva 559
    The pupa 561
    Observations of European workers 562
Control measures 562
    Experiments in 1913–14 563
    Experiments in 1914–15 565
    Experiments in 1915–16 567
    Method of application of carbolineum 571
    Cost of treatment 571
Summary 571
Bibliography 573



THE POPLAR AND WILLOW BORER
(*Cryptorhynchus lapathi*)

THE POPLAR AND WILLOW BORER

(*Cryptorhynchus lapathi* Linnæus)

Order, *Coleoptera* Family, *Curculionidæ*

ROBERT MATHESON

Ever since its introduction from Europe, in 1882, the poplar and willow borer or weevil has been a serious pest, not only in nurseries in the eastern part of the United States but also to the basket willow industry and to poplar and willow trees used for landscape planting. During the past ten to twenty years the weevil has become so abundant in many eastern nurseries that in many cases the nurserymen have almost abandoned the raising of carolina and other species of poplars to supply the demand for a rapidly growing shade tree. Also many young groves of poplars have been seriously injured, while large shade trees have been rendered unsightly by the breaking off of branches that have been so riddled by the boring of the larvæ as to be unable to resist high winds.

As this beetle is largely distributed through infested nursery stock, it would seem that the most efficient means of reducing the injury that it causes would be by controlling its work in the nurseries. If nurserymen could furnish trees known to be absolutely free from the pest, its further distribution would be restricted, and means could then be adopted to control its activities where it is at present causing serious injury. During the past three seasons the writer has conducted experiments which have proved very successful in controlling this pest under nursery conditions. These experiments are discussed in the present bulletin, which also gives a biological account of the insect.

HISTORY OF THE SPECIES

In Europe

The poplar, willow, or alder snout beetle, the *Erlenrüssler* of German writers, is a European insect. For centuries it has been a pest to alders and willows in Europe, and it has been the subject of many entomological papers.

Linné (1758) described the adult in his *Systema Naturæ*, giving as its host plant *Rumex lapathi*. Curtis (1791) published the first account of the natural history of the beetle. He found the larvæ injuring ornamental willows in his garden. He first observed the work of the beetle on *Salix viminalis* in 1780, and after a few years of study succeeded in finding all its stages except the egg, which he supposed was laid under the bark or in crevices resulting from injury. His figures of the various stages of the insect are the first ever published. Paykull (1792) records the beetle as injuring Salix species, and also refers to Linné's statement that dock (*Rumex lapathi*) is one of its host plants. Bechstein and Scharfenberg (1804) quote from Curtis's work, and also refer to the injuriousness of the beetle in Germany.

The insect is recorded in all the early systematic works dealing with the snout beetles (Rhynchophora), but no biological data are added. Ratzeburg (1839) records alder as one of its host plants, stating that in Silesia the beetle is known as the alder destroyer (*Erlenwürger*). Nördlinger (1856) records the insect as doing serious damage to young birches from five to eight feet high, their tops breaking off after having been seriously injured by the numerous larval galleries.

Westwood (1863) describes a serious outbreak of the beetle in ornamental willows in Essex County, England. Ratzeburg (1868) gives a much more extended account of the beetle and its injuriousness throughout the forests of Germany. His account of its life history is incomplete, though he gives many details as to its food plants and habits. Altum (1881) records the beetle as doing serious injury to stands of white and of black alder in various parts of Germany, as well as attacking several species of willows. He does not clear up any of the various disputed points not well understood regarding the habits and life history of the insect. Judeich and Nitsche (1889), though they discuss the insect in some detail and list all its known food plants, leave the question of its biology in the same condition as they found it.

The beetle is discussed more or less in detail also in many recent European works on forest and shade tree insects, but no attempt has been made to clear up the many obscure points in its bionomics. Scheidter (1913) gives an extended account of its life history in various parts of Germany, and seems to have added considerable new biological data, much of it differing widely from that found in America.

In America

This European insect was first recorded in America by Juelich (1887), who collected a single beetle at Williamsbridge, New York City, in 1882. In 1887 he found willows infested by the insect at West Bergen, New Jersey. In the previous year Ottomar Dietz had collected a single specimen on Staten Island, so that at this early date the insect was established in the extreme southeastern part of New York and the northeastern corner of New Jersey. Smith (1891) reported its spread in New Jersey and the destruction by it of nearly all the clumps of willows, as well as many fancy ornamental trees, at Newark and Arlington.

Howard (1895) states that E. V. Wilcox sent him specimens of the beetle and the larva from Cambridge, Massachusetts, reporting that willows in that section were severely infested. Jack (1897) records the beetle as being very abundant about Boston and Cambridge, it having been present in the Arnold Arboretum for many years and at that time proving very injurious to many species of willows and poplars and to two species of birches. Up to that time it had been supposed that the insect was restricted to the eastern Atlantic border, but in 1896 Ottomar Reincke collected it near Buffalo.

The beetle has now become well established in the Eastern States but its westward and northward spread has not been very rapid. Burgess (1903) records it from Ashtabula, Ohio, in 1901; Bues (Bues and Sandsten, 1904), from two nurseries in Wisconsin in 1903; and Washburn (1904) reports receiving specimens from the extreme northwestern corner of North Dakota, where the insect had been introduced on nursery stock from New York. This stock had been first shipped to a Minnesota nurseryman, who in turn had distributed it, some of it reaching northwestern North Dakota. It is clear that the beetle was thus, in all probability, widely distributed in the Northwest.

Patch (1908) first observed the insect at Orono, Maine, in 1907, and in 1911 it was found also at Augusta and at Presque Isle. Forbes (1911 a) records the beetle from Chicago in 1908, where it was abundant and destructive throughout the city. He reports that it has not been found elsewhere in the State.

FOOD PLANTS

The poplar and willow borer has a fairly wide range of food plants. European writers record it as attacking the following species: alders — *Alnus viridis* DC., *A. incana* Willd., *A. glutinosa* Willd.; willows — *Salix caprea* L., *S. viminalis* L., *S. purpurea* L., *S. triandra* L.; poplars — *Populus alba* L.; birches — *Betula* species. Jack (1897) states that in America all the native willows except the slender-stemmed species are subject to attack. This is confirmed by C. S. Sargent, Director of the Arnold Arboretum at Cambridge, Massachusetts. Of the imported willows the following have been observed injured in the Arnold Arboretum: *Salix alba* L., *S. fragilis* L., *S. babylonica* Tourn., *S. pentandra* Linn.

The following species of poplars are also recorded as host plants: *Populus balsamifera* L., *P. deltoides* Marsh., *P. alba* L. Schoene (1907 a) records the following species of willows as host plants: *Salix lucida* Muhl., *S. caprea* L., *S. cordata* Muhl., *S. sericea* Marsh., *S. alba* L., *S. amygdaloides* Anders. In addition two species of birch are known to have been injured—*Betula pumila* L. and *B. nigra* L. These, however, are rarely attacked.

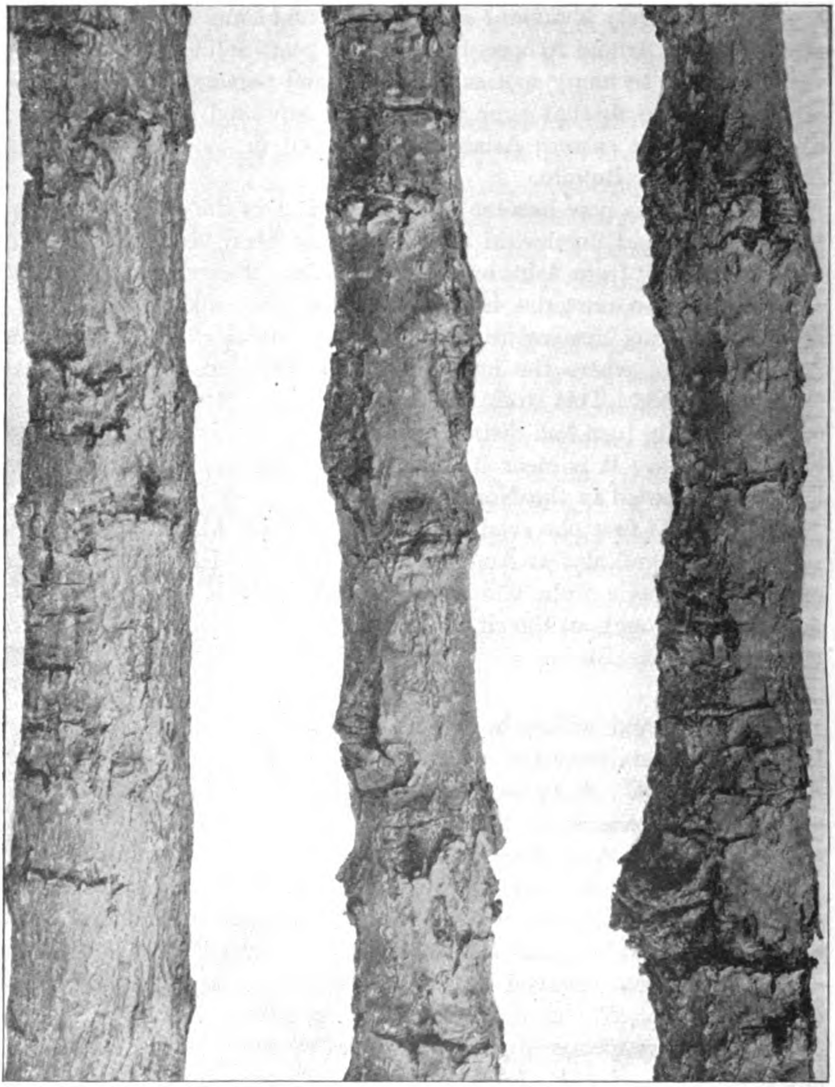


FIG. 111. TRUNKS OF SEVERELY INJURED CAROLINA POPLAR TREES, FIVE YEARS OLD

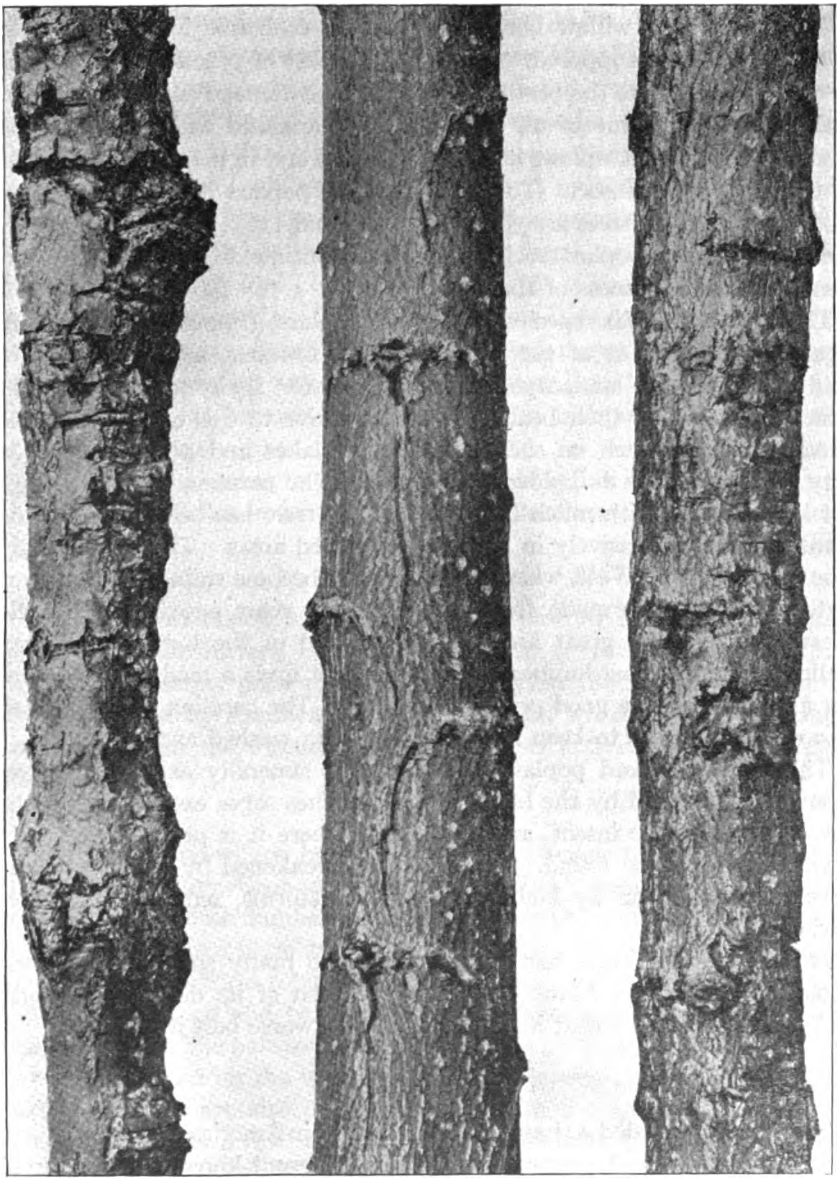


FIG. 112. INJURED AND UNINJURED POPLARS

At right and left, five-year-old trees, severely injured: an uninjured four-year-old tree in the center. All were grown under identical conditions in the experimental plot

ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE

The poplar and willow borer is of greater economic importance than has generally been supposed. It is a serious pest of practically all species of willows, and where the beetle is abundant the damage done is extensive. This is especially true of all varieties of ornamental willows. Also the production of basket willows is greatly reduced and in many cases stopped by the work of this insect. To many species of poplars it is very injurious, especially when the trees are young (figs. 111 and 112). In many nurseries the production of poplar stock has been discontinued owing to the prevalence and injuriousness of the pest.

The willows (Salix species) and the poplars (Populus species) are regarded generally as of not much value. However, many willows are used extensively in landscape work, not only for their quality of rapid growth but also for their beauty. Species native to this country line the streams and encroach on the boundaries of lakes and ponds, serving a very useful purpose as holders of the soil. The carolina poplar, though not looked upon with much favor as a shade tree, has been and is being planted rather extensively in recently developed areas. This is especially true in the Middle West, where the trees soon become suitable for lumber. Extensive plantings made from forty to fifty years ago in the Middle West, and also the great areas of cottonwood in the lower Mississippi Valley, are now being lumbered. The product finds a ready sale as lumber and commands a good price for excelsior. The carolina poplar is used also on sandy areas to keep the soil from being washed away.

The balm-of-Gilead poplar, which is used generally as a shade tree, is severely attacked by the borer. The branches serve excellently for the development of the insect, and in sections where it is prevalent scarcely a sound tree can be found. The branches, weakened by the larval burrows, are broken off by high winds and ice storms, rendering the trees unsightly.

In Europe the beetle has proved a pest to many species of willows, poplars, and alders. Many accounts are given of its destructive work, and there is no doubt that it is proving even a worse pest in America.

DISTRIBUTION

The beetle, recorded as having first appeared in America in 1882 (Juelich, 1887), has not spread very rapidly. It is at present known to occur from Maine west to Ontario and North Dakota and south to the District of Columbia. Throughout this area it is restricted to certain localities, and once introduced it does not spread rapidly unless carried by some agency. It is reported by Fletcher and Gibson (1909) as occurring at Dundurn, Saskatchewan, but nothing is known as to its spread in this province. It has not been found west of the Great Plains.

The preceding statement as to the general distribution of the beetle is based on letters received from various officials regarding the situation in their respective States. P. A. Glenn informs the writer that in Illinois the beetle is abundant about Chicago and occurs generally in the northern fourth of the State, while in the central and southern parts it has not been found. Dr. Fracker reports it as widespread in the nurseries of Wisconsin, where it has been found as far north as the shores of Lake Superior. Blatchley and Leng (1916) state that it has not yet been found in Indiana. Professor R. H. Pettit says that it is common in Michigan and probably occurs wherever the carolina poplar grows. In Ohio it seems not to have spread to any considerable extent since its first appearance there in 1901. It has not yet been found in Nebraska, South Dakota, Iowa, or Indiana.

In Canada, according to Caesar (1916), it is well distributed throughout Ontario and is also recorded from a few localities in the province of Quebec.

LIFE HISTORY

Although this beetle has been a serious pest in Europe for hundreds of years, its life history has never been fully investigated by European workers. Even at present there is the widest divergence between the accounts given by American and by European writers. This is brought out in detail in the discussion of the various activities of the different stages.

The adult

The poplar and willow borer (Plate XXII) belongs to the great group of snout beetles, Rhynchophora, and to the family Curculionidæ. This family contains an immense number of species, many of them very serious pests, including the common plum and quince curculios. The beetle measures from ⅓ to ⅖ inch in length, is robust, and is elongate-oval in shape. It is densely clothed with black and pale-colored scales, intermixed with erect, large, black bristles. The pale scales cover the apical third of the elytra and form an irregular band on the basal third; the underside of the prothorax and part of the legs are also densely clothed with them, and the remainder of the body bears a few scattering ones. The beak is curved, is as long as the head and the thorax, and lies when at rest almost completely concealed in a groove on the ventral surface of the thorax. The antennæ are elbowed and reddish brown, with an unsegmented club.

The beetles begin to appear during the latter half of July, becoming abundant in August. The writer found them present on poplar trees as late as October 7. After that date they could not be found on the trees in the writer's experimental plot. They are sluggish, very inactive insects, and move with a slow, lumbering gait. When they are disturbed, either by being jarred or by any sudden noise, they do not fly but feign death and drop to the ground, the beak and the legs being closely drawn against the body. They remain quiescent usually for a minute or two before attempting to crawl away. When handled they emit a squeaking noise, produced by the rubbing together of parts of the body. Though close watch for it has been kept, flight has not been observed, and no one has recorded the beetles as spreading by means of flight. Whether or not they are incapable of flight the writer has not been able to determine.

Shortly after the beetles emerge from the pupal cells they begin to feed, selecting young, tender shoots. The bark is punctured by the beak, a round hole being formed down to the cambium layer, on which the beetles largely feed. The beetles are voracious feeders, and when they are abundant the young one-year-old shoots may be so completely riddled by the feeding punctures that they shrivel and die. So far as the writer's observations go, the beetles do not feed on old bark, but confine themselves to the young and succulent twigs. Punctures in old bark are for the deposition of eggs, and these always appear some weeks after the beetles have been feeding.

The beetles do not seem to migrate to any considerable distance. Although the wings are perfect and apparently suitable for flying, yet the beetles have never been observed in flight or attempting to fly. In the nursery it is not uncommon to find one block badly infested, whereas a block somewhat distant may be only slightly injured. Change of location in the growing of poplars from year to year frequently makes a marked difference in the degree of injury. One block of about 15,000 trees in a large nursery near Geneva had an infestation of nearly 50 per cent in 1915. A block of about the same number of trees situated three-fourths of a mile distant showed in 1916 only a small infestation, 3.5 per cent, in the check rows. The beetles were abundant in 1915 in the block ready to be dug, and apparently they had confined their egg-laying operations to the poplars from which they had emerged. As this is true in all the cases coming under the writer's observation, it can readily be seen that a block ready to be dug, showing only a small percentage of infestation, may make an ideal center for distribution. As the nurseryman discards only severely injured stock, a block with such a low percentage of injury will practically have all the trees fit for sale, and in this way every egg deposited will be shipped away to start new infestations. When trees show considerable injury they are discarded and burned (fig. 113).

Although the beetles do not fly, yet they are undoubtedly well able to walk considerable distances. How far has not been determined, but they have been found a goodly distance from any of their food plants resting quietly on the trunks of various trees. This is especially true in the spring.

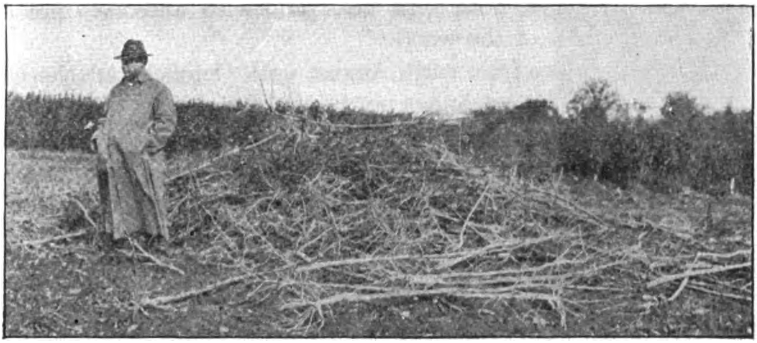


FIG. 113. A PILE OF DISCARDED CAROLINA POPLARS IN A NURSERY

Mating does not occur until ten days or more after emergence. This period is spent largely in feeding, and the beetles do considerable damage at this time to the vigorous growing shoots. Copulation occurs freely and a pair may remain several days in copula. Not only does mating last a considerable time, but it may be repeated again and again at different times.

Egg laying

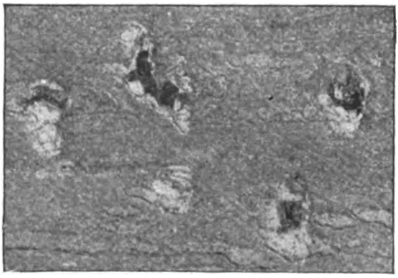


FIG. 114. EGG PUNCTURES AT THE SIDES OF LENTICELS

Shortly after copulation the females seek out suitable places for the deposition of their eggs. They choose branches or parts of the trees more than a year old, and deposit their eggs in the corky parts of the bark. The eggs have never been found in one-year-old stock, but only in wood two years old or older. Favorite places for egg laying are lenticels (figs. 114 and 115), scars, bases of branches, injured areas, or about the base of buds where the bark is somewhat thick. With her beak closely applied to such an area the female beetle at once begins to eat into the bark. Gradually she deepens the round hole until her entire beak is buried, up to the eyes. The time required for this operation varies from a few minutes to thirty or forty minutes. At the bottom of the hole the beetle may round out two or three small lateral cavities, or she may be content with only one. In the majority of cases she does not dig out extra cavities, but uses the hole made for the deposition of but a single egg. When the cavity appears satisfactory, the beetle inserts her ovipositor and deposits from one to three or four eggs, depending on the kind of cavity dug. Then, reversing her position, she closely packs the eggs, both with beak and with antennæ, and covers them with fine pieces of the wood.

Egg laying continues from early August until October, but the number of eggs laid by a single female has not been ascertained. Whether or not, under New York conditions, all the females deposit all their eggs during this period, has not been finally determined. All American workers report that egg laying is finished in the autumn, and that the beetles do not hibernate but evidently die after the process is completed. In the writer's work no hibernating adults were found in the spring in the nurseries, though it should be understood that no extended search was made for them. In the writer's experimental plot, adults which evidently had hibernated were taken on April 21, May 1, and June 6, 1916. One was fresh and clean, apparently having but recently emerged from its pupal chamber. Though these were observed, they may be only rare occurrences rather than represent a normal mode of hibernation. Furthermore, egg laying was not observed in the spring, and in the treated plots there was no evidence that any eggs were laid after application of the various treatments. Had egg laying in the spring been normal, certainly the treated plots would not have shown such a high percentage of control.

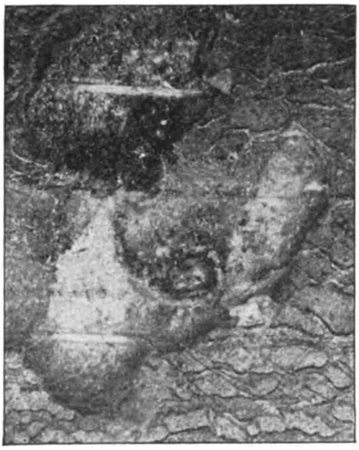


FIG. 115. EGG IN SITU, WITH OUTER PART OF LENTICEL CUT AWAY

The egg

The egg when laid is pure white in color but it becomes pale cream when a few days old. The shell is very thin and fragile, somewhat viscous, and without any distinctive markings. The egg is oval in outline, measuring 1.1 by 0.8 millimeters. The shape varies considerably, since owing to the softness of the shell it is easily modified by the shape of the cavity in which the egg is laid.

The egg stage lasts from eighteen to about twenty-five days, depending largely on weather conditions. The first observation of eggs hatching out of doors was on October 2, 1916. Undoubtedly many had hatched earlier, but from numerous examinations made during October the majority of the eggs had not hatched even as late as October 28. Early in November, 1915, the eggs began hatching in great numbers, and this continued until the latter part of the month.

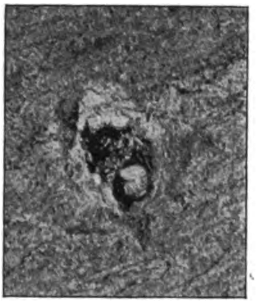


FIG. 116. YOUNG LARVA, JUST HATCHED

The larva

When hatched, the young larva (fig. 116) is whitish in color and greatly resembles a miniature June-beetle grub except that the posterior end is the smaller and the larva is legless. It lies curled up in the egg cavity and begins at once to feed on the soft plant tissues. It is 1.5 millimeters in length, and 0.6 millimeter thick at its widest part. It is regularly transversely wrinkled, but the skin is nearly smooth except for scattering fine hairs. The head and the mouth parts are light brown except the mandibles, which are dark brown with black tips. The larva is cylindrical in shape, gradually tapering toward the posterior extremity.

The larva feeds on the tender tissues of the plant and soon reaches the soft cambium layer. Externally the beginning of feeding can be easily recognized by the blackish, wet frass that fills the outer part of the egg cavity. Feeding continues until cold weather, the early-hatching larvæ attaining a considerable growth.

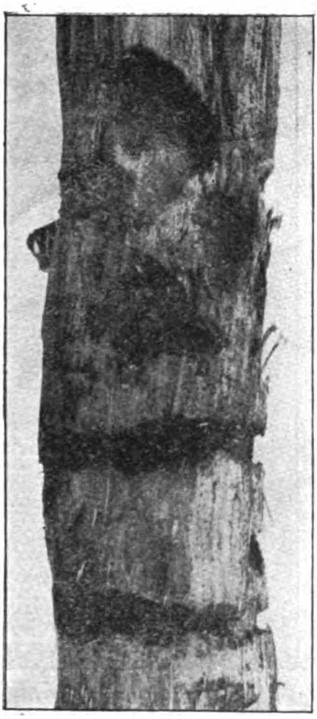


FIG. 117. CHANNELS MADE BY LARVÆ IN A YOUNG CAROLINA POPLAR TREE

In the spring feeding begins as soon as the weather has become sufficiently warm, usually the first week in April. Moist frass, black to brownish in color, is forced out of the burrow as the larva feeds ravenously. The direction of the larval channels is nearly always around the trunk or the branch, and the larvæ feed at first exclusively in the bark and the cambium layer. As a result the tree is frequently girdled, especially if several larvæ are at work near the same place (fig. 117). The larval channels vary greatly in shape; some are cylindrical and girdle the tree, others are flat, irregularly shaped chambers, while the majority zigzag in various directions through the cambium layer.

As the larvæ grow, the channels become larger and the amount of frass is greatly increased. In order to make room for the developing larva the frass is forced outside the channel, by small openings cut through the outer bark. This is well shown in figure 118.

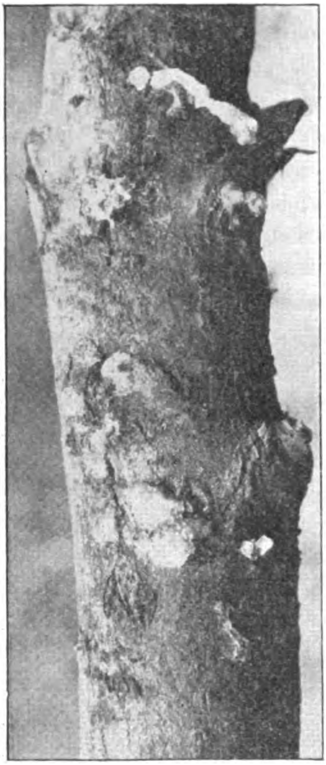


FIG. 118. FRASS FORCED OUT THROUGH SMALL OPENINGS MADE IN THE BARK BY YOUNG LARVÆ

The larvæ become nearly full-grown before they leave the cambium layer. They then burrow at an angle upward into the hard wood of the tree. The beginning of this burrow is easily recognized, as the character and quantity of the frass suddenly changes. It becomes white and much larger in quantity, and consists of small particles of the wood cut off by the mandibles of the larvæ (fig. 119). In New York the formation of the pupal channel begins about June 1. By the middle of June the majority of the larvæ have begun their pupal burrows. At this time, as one looks down the rows of poplars in the nursery the white, sawdust-like frass can be seen distinctly on the infested trees and on the ground beneath them.

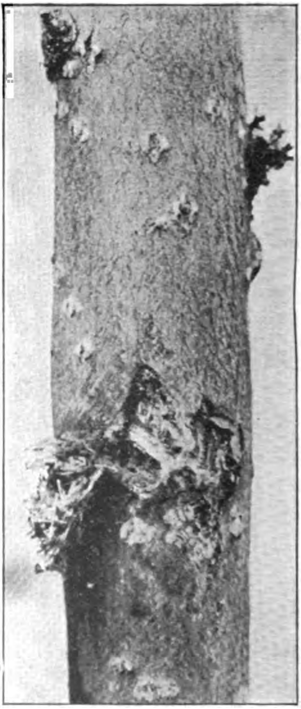


FIG. 119. CHARACTER OF THE FRASS WHEN LARVA BEGINS TO BORE INTO HEARTWOOD TO FORM PUPAL CHAMBER

In the formation of the pupal chamber the larva bores upward and into the heart of the small nursery trees. This burrow varies from slightly over an inch to several inches in length. From three to four weeks are required for its completion. When ready for pupation the burrow is solidly packed with frass, the pupal chamber being formed at the upper end (figs. 120 and 121). The larva then places itself head downward in preparation for pupation.

The mature larva (fig. 122) is a thick, legless grub, resembling that of the June beetle. It measures from 12 to 13 millimeters in length, with a maximum width of 4 millimeters. It is white or yellowish white in color, with a reddish brown head. The heavily chitinized mouth parts are black. There are no outstanding markings that distinguish this grub from many other wood-boring larvæ, and the surest way of identification is by its habits.

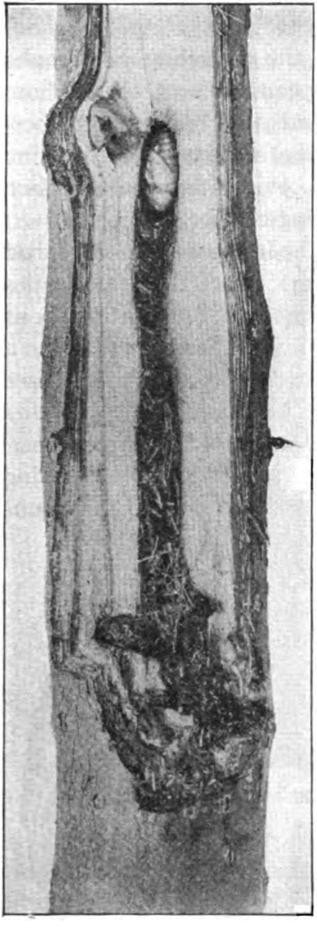


FIG. 120. PUPA IN SITU

The pupa

Pupation begins in the last few days of June and continues throughout July. The pupal period varies from ten to eighteen days, depending largely on weather conditions. Pupæ formed early in July require only ten days, while those of late July require as long as eighteen days, to transform into adults. From two to three days are required for the adult to become fully colored and hardened. Those maturing early in the season usually remain in the pupal cells for two or three weeks before emerging. A general emergence of the adults occurs during the latter part of July. The beetle, when ready to leave, simply cuts its way out through the frass that had been packed in the burrow by the larva before pupation.

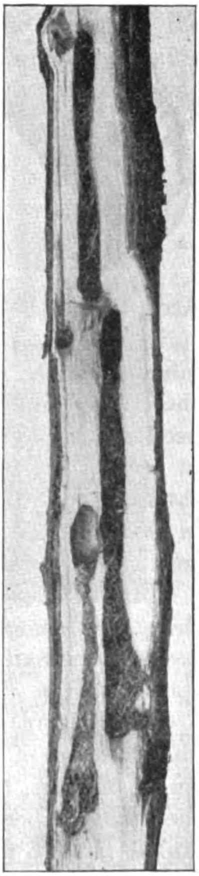


FIG. 121. THREE PUPAL CHAMBERS FORMED IN A TWO-YEAR-OLD CAROLINA POPLAR

The pupa (fig. 123) measures 9 millimeters in length. It varies from almost white to yellowish in color, the brown spiracles showing distinctly. Scattered over the dorsal surface are many small spines. Some of them stand out prominently on the pronotum. The tip of the abdomen is armed with a pair of strong, incurving, brown, chitinized hooks.

Observations of European workers

The life history of the insect as outlined in the preceding paragraphs differs very markedly from that given by European workers, all of whom record the beetles as hibernating and state that mating and oviposition takes place during the spring months.

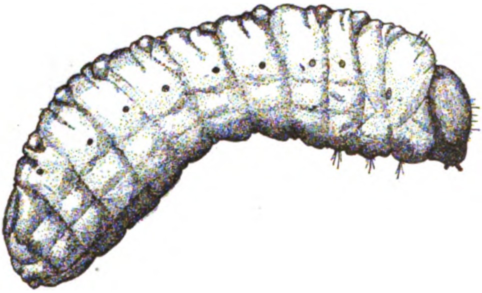


FIG. 122. THE MATURE LARVA

The latest worker, Scheidter (1913), states that the beetles emerge from hibernation about the first of May, and that in a short time mating takes place and egg laying continues throughout the summer. According to his observations, these eggs do not hatch until the following spring, so that each year both eggs and beetles of different generations hibernate. He concludes that with this insect there is a complete generation every two years: beetles emerging in 1910 hibernated, and laid eggs in 1911; these eggs hibernated, and hatched in the spring of 1912, the beetles reaching maturity in late July and August; these beetles in their turn mated and oviposited in the following spring.

Munro (1914) finds that in northern Scotland there is a complete generation every year, the beetles hibernating and ovipositing during the spring months.

Caesar (1916) finds that in Ontario considerable numbers of the beetles appear in the early spring months, but he does not know whether these have hibernated as beetles or as larvæ or pupæ. He also failed to determine whether they lay eggs during the spring months.

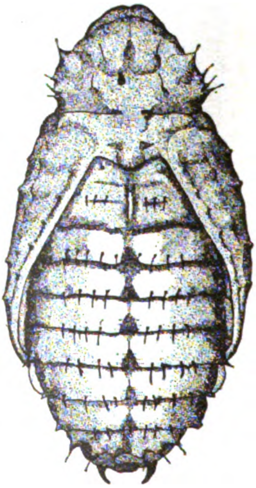


FIG. 123. THE PUPA

It would thus seem that the life history and habits of this insect are complex and vary greatly.

CONTROL MEASURES

When the writer began work on the poplar and willow borer, no efficient control measures had been devised. The general recommendations had been the cutting-out and destruction of infested trees. Schoene (1907 a) states that the use of arsenicals during July and August will kill the majority of the beetles and reduce infestation in nurseries. In practice it has been found that paris green and lead arsenate, even when used in large quantities, have no effect in reducing the annual loss. At the time when the writer began to look into this problem, in 1913, several large nurseries in New York State had about decided to stop raising carolina poplars, although there was a steady demand for this stock.

Early observations led the writer to the conclusion that the insect could be destroyed by some contact spray applied to the trunks of the trees in autumn, after the leaves had fallen, or in spring before the young larvæ had begun actively feeding. This seemed very reasonable, owing to the fairly exposed condition of the young larvæ in their burrows. It seemed that some oil emulsions would penetrate the outer bark or be absorbed through the very small quantity of frass at the entrance to the burrows, and would destroy the insects. Consequently, varying strengths of miscible oils and kerosene emulsion, applied both in the fall and in the spring, were experimented with. In order to secure a strong penetrating fluid, it was felt that carbolineum avenarius should be given a thorough trial. Very little is known about the constituents of this preparation, and furthermore very little is known of its effects on actively growing or on dormant trees.

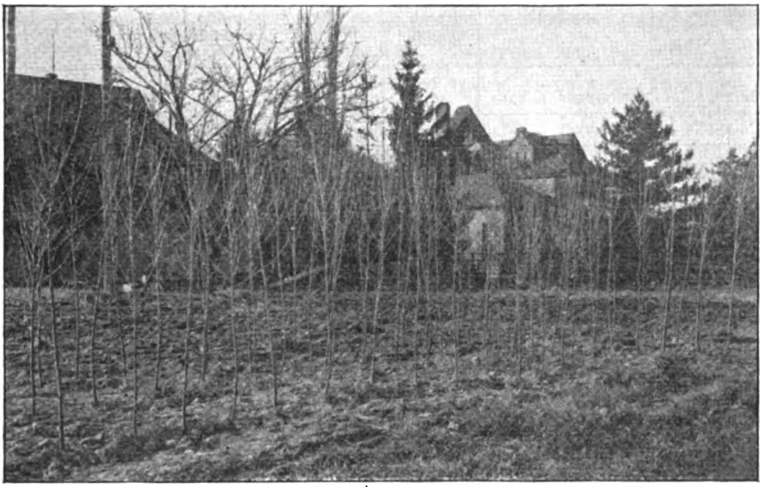


FIG. 124. AN EXPERIMENTAL PLOT OF CAROLINA POPLARS

Experiments in 1913–14

In the fall of 1913, seventy-six badly infested two-year-old poplar trees were planted near the insectary at Cornell University (fig. 124). On December 1, 1913, a part of this block was treated with scalecide at varying strengths, and a few trees were treated with carbolineum and its emulsion,[1] as indicated in table 1. This experiment was closely watched the following spring, but no injury to the trees could be noted except that the carbolineum-treated trees did not seem so vigorous as the others. However, they grew, and in 1916 they were large, healthy trees. Examination and careful count of the burrows in all the trees was made on June 17, 1914. The infestation is shown in table 1:

TABLE 1. RESULTS OF EXPERIMENTS OF 1913-14

Treatment	When applied	Number of trees treated	Date of examination	Number of trees infested	Average number of larvæ per tree	Number of trees not infested	Per cent of trees infested
Scalecide 1-5*.....	December 1, 1913	10	June 17, 1914	3	2.6	7	30
Scalecide 1-8......	December 1, 1913	10	June 17, 1914	4	1.25	6	40
Scalecide 1-10.....	December 1, 1913	10	June 17, 1914	7	2.3	3	70
Scalecide 1-12.....	December 1, 1913	10	June 17, 1914	8	1.9	2	80
Scalecide 1-15.....	December 1, 1913	10	June 17, 1914	5	2	5	50
Carbolineum 1-1..	December 1, 1913	2	June 17, 1914	0	......	2	0
Carbolineum emulsion 1-2........	December 1, 1913	2	June 17, 1914	0	......	2	0
Check............	....	22	June 17, 1914	10	2.6	12	45

* All dilutions of scalecide are with water.

In the spring of 1914 a series of experiments was undertaken in a large nursery. Stock three years old was chosen, as it was the most readily available at the time. Badly infested trees were selected at one side of a large block which had been recently dug. Directly across the roadway was a block of young poplars. On March 31, scalecide at varying strengths, carbolineum, and carbolineum emulsion were applied to the trunks from the ground up to the young growth. The day was fair, but rain began to fall before the various treatments were completed. However, the rainfall was slight, so that it should have had no effect on the insecticidal qualities of the preparations.

The treated trees were examined carefully on May 14, 1914. The various treatments had no effect on the growth of the trees, every tree growing vigorously and there being no difference, as far as could be detected, between the checks and the trees under experimentation. In the checks the larvæ were actively at work and their abundance was indicated by the amount of sawdust exuding from the numerous burrows. All the trees treated with different strengths of scalecide showed just as high a percentage of infestation as did the checks. This preparation had no appreciable effect. In the trees treated with carbolineum, either pure or as an emulsion, not a trace of infestation could be found. After a search of several hours, one shriveled and blackened larva was discovered in its burrow. It was not desirable, however, to injure the trees too much by cutting into all suspicious egg punctures.

---

[1] The carbolineum emulsion was prepared by dissolving 1 pound of sodium carbonate in 1 quart of hot water, adding 1 quart of carbolineum, and stirring the mixture vigorously.

The trees were again carefully examined on June 18, when the previous observations were confirmed. The checks and the trees treated with scalecide were nearly all badly infested, many trees having from eight to ten borers present, while a few, both of the treated trees and the checks, were apparently free from infestation. The trees treated with carbolineum and its emulsion were growing even more vigorously than were the untreated trees, and not a trace of the work of the borer in any one of the twelve treated trees could be discovered. These preparations colored the trunks of the trees deep brown, but other than that no injury could be seen.

Experiments in 1914–15

In view of the possibility that such perfect control might be due to other causes than the effect of the treatment, a larger series of experiments was planned for the fall of 1914 and the spring of 1915. The miscible oils were discarded, and kerosene emulsion, which had been recommended for the control of the locust borer (*Cyllene robiniæ*), was given a trial. In a block of over ten thousand trees, ready for digging in the fall of 1915, rows were selected at the end showing the greatest amount of the feeding work of the beetles. On December 4, 1914, groups of twenty trees each were treated respectively with pure kerosene emulsion, carbolineum emulsion, and carbolineum. Rows for checks were left between the treated rows. The material was applied directly to the trunks, up to the younger growth. On April 9, 1915, twenty-five trees were treated with pure kerosene emulsion, fifty with carbolineum emulsion, and twenty-eight with pure carbolineum. Just previous to these treatments the trees in the whole block had been pruned carefully. The material was carefully brushed over the trunks, covering all the cut surfaces of the recently removed branches.

The trees were examined on June 28. The block as a whole showed severe infestation, sawdust being present at the base of a great many trees, and this could be seen for a long distance down the nursery row. In the rows treated with carbolineum or its emulsion no sawdust could be seen and the trees were growing vigorously, the trunks showing a deep brown color but no indication of borer work (fig. 125). The kerosene emulsion had no appreciable effect, nor did it injure the trees though it was applied in large quantities.

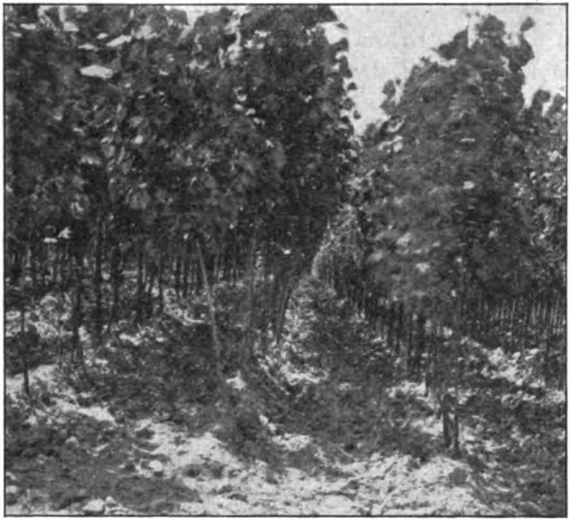


FIG. 125. TREES TREATED WITH CARBOLINEUM AND ITS EMULSION, SHOWING DARKENED TRUNKS. CHECK ROW IN CENTER

The treatments applied and the results obtained are shown in table 2. Kerosene emulsion applied pure in December seems to have had some effect, but one cannot safely draw conclusions from the result shown. The infestation of 30 per cent is high, though the average number of larvæ per tree is at a minimum. The carbolineum applied either pure or in emulsion gave almost absolute control. This seems to the writer to be a very simple and effective means of control under nursery conditions.

TABLE 2. RESULTS OF EXPERIMENTS OF 1914–15

Treatment	When applied	Number of trees treated	Date of examination	Number of trees infested	Average number of larvæ per tree	Number of trees not infested	Per cent of trees infested
Kerosene emulsion, pure...........	December 4, 1914	20	June 28, 1915	6	1	14	30
Kerosene emulsion, pure...........	April 9, 1915	25	June 28, 1915	16	2.25	9	64
Carbolineum emulsion............	December 4, 1914	20	June 28, 1915	0	......	20	0
Carbolineum emulsion............	April 9, 1915	50	June 28, 1915	0	......	50	*0
Carbolineum......	December 4, 1914	20	June 28, 1915	0	......	20	0
Carbolineum......	April 9, 1915	28	June 28, 1915	0	......	28	0
Check...........	....	116	June 28, 1915	56	2.4	60	48

* One half-grown larva was found in July, in an area evidently not thoroughly treated.

Experiments in 1915–16

The success of the preliminary experiments led to the trial of the carbolineum treatment on a commercial scale. In the fall of 1915 arrangements were made to treat two entire blocks of poplar trees in each of two large nurseries. This was made possible by the courtesy of the owners, who provided all the material, help, and necessary equipment, the writer taking charge of the work. Each block contained approximately fourteen thousand trees. Owing to the excessive snowfall during the winter of 1915–16 it was not possible to apply the carbolineum as early as was intended. The application was further delayed somewhat in order that the trees should be pruned.

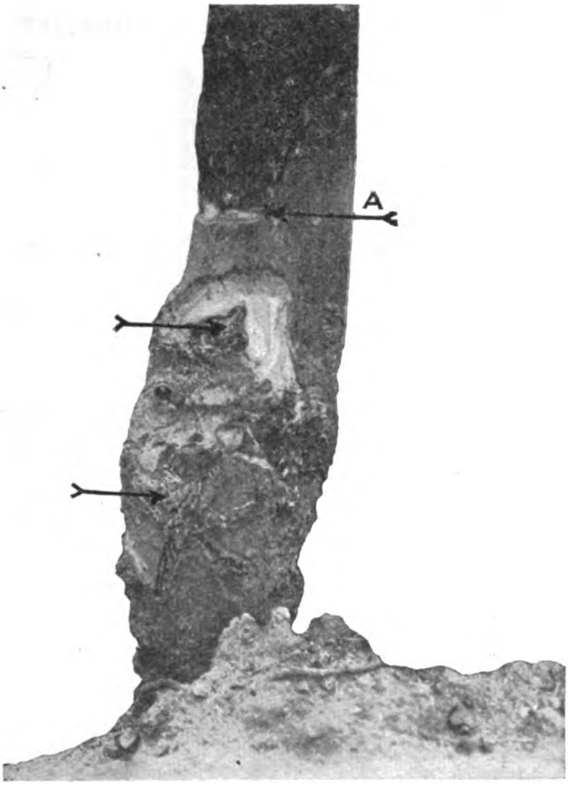


FIG. 126. INFESTATIONS BELOW LINE OF CARBOLINEUM TREATMENT

End of treatment shown by arrow A

On April 8, 1916, twenty-one rows in one block were treated. As the day was cold, threatening snow and sleet, the work was discontinued. During the following day over three inches of snow fell, and the remainder of the block was not treated until April 13. In the meantime the borers had begun feeding; in fact they had been active since about the early days of April. The results of the treatments in this block are shown in table 3.

It is seen from table 3 that practically absolute control was obtained with the carbolineum treatment. Unfortunately for the experiment, the entire check row did not show a high percentage of infestation, but it is sufficient to indicate that the treatment was effective.

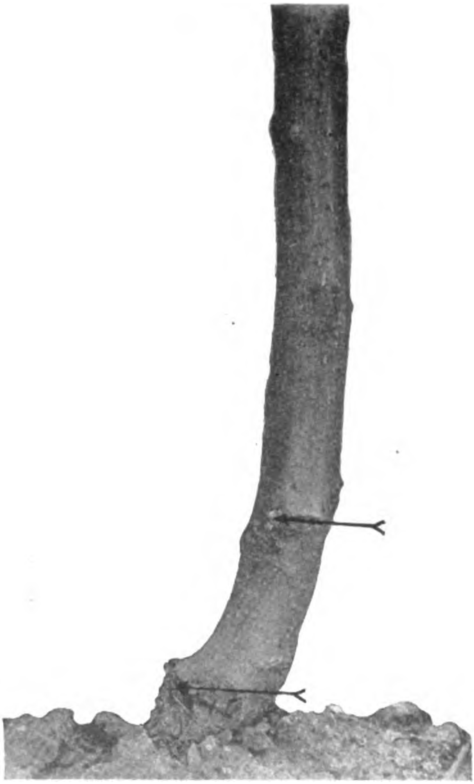


FIG. 127. TWO INFESTATIONS ALONG EDGE OF TREATMENT

In addition to the carbolineum, a high-grade creosote was tried in a limited way. The creosote also gave perfect control, and this promises well, for the row treated stood directly next to the check row.

The carbolineum gave the bark of the trees a deep brown color but it in no way affected their vigor. This brownish coloration gradually becomes reduced during the summer, but treated trees can be recognized easily at least three years after the treatment.

Another point that should be brought out here is that the four trees treated with carbolineum in the experimental plot in 1913–14 were not attacked during the summers of 1914 and 1915, and only a single larva was found in them during 1916. This would indicate that carbolineum-treated trees are not readily selected by the females for oviposition, provided untreated trees are available. This point will be further investigated by the writer.

TABLE 3. RESULTS OF EXPERIMENTS OF 1915–16

Treatment	When applied	Number of trees treated	Date of examination	Number of trees infested	Average number of larvæ per tree	Number of trees not infested	Per cent of trees infested
Carbolineum..........	April 8, 1916	5,000 ±	June 22, 1916	0	0	*1,161	0
	April 13, 1916	9,000 ±	July 20, 1916	*1	1	1,160	0
Creosote..............	April 8, 1916	136	June 22, 1916	0	0	136	0
			July 20, 1916	0	0	136	0
Check................	....	313	June 22, 1916	9	2	304	2.9
			July 20, 1916	11	2	302	3.5

* In determining the infestation of the treated trees, not all the 14,000 trees were examined. Rows were selected in different parts of the block and every tree was examined carefully. In this way 1161 trees were closely scrutinized and not a sign of borer work could be found. The figures in the table are based on the result of this examination. In the second examination a single larva was found at work on one of the treated trees, but as this was the rare exception the fact has been ignored in the percentage column.

TABLE 4. RESULTS OF EXPERIMENTS OF 1915–16

Treatment	When applied	Number of trees treated	Date of examination	Number of trees infested	Average number of larvæ per tree	Number of trees not infested	Per cent of trees infested
Carbolineum....	April 12 and 13, 1916	14,000	June 23, 1916	20	1.4	*1,540	1.28
			July 20, 1916	20	1.4	*1,540	1.28
Check..........	....	84	June 23, 1916	8	1	76	9.52
			July 20, 1916	8	1	76	9.52
Check (treated in June)........	....	555	June 23, 1916	19	1.2	536	3.42
			July 20, 1916	19	1.2	536	3.42

* Only 1560 trees were examined, but these were selected rows and the percentage of infestation is fairly accurate.

The results of the treatment of the second block of about an equal number of trees are shown in table 4. In this block the results were extremely interesting, showing most conclusively the effectiveness of the carbolineum treatment. The writer visited this nursery and showed the owner the method of treatment but did not further supervise the work. In treating the trees on the following day the workmen failed in many cases to cover the base of the trees with the material, and also failed to apply it sufficiently high on the trunk. As a result all the infestations, amounting to nearly 1.3 per cent, occurred either at the base or above the highest point of treatment. This is well shown in figures 126, 127, and 128.

Another interesting point in connection with this block is in regard to the check row. This row, running through the center of the block, contained 639 trees. When the owner saw the excellent results in the treated trees, he asked himself why he should not save most of the trees in the check row. Therefore on June 3, 4, or 5 — he did not know the exact date — he treated 555 of these trees, leaving some at either end as a true check. The treatment, even at this late date, had a marked effect, as shown by the percentage of infestation found on June 23. During the first week in June all the larvæ were still at work in the cambium layer, and wherever sufficient material was applied most of the larvæ were killed. The trees then readily outgrew the injury. The carbolineum had no apparent effect in retarding growth.

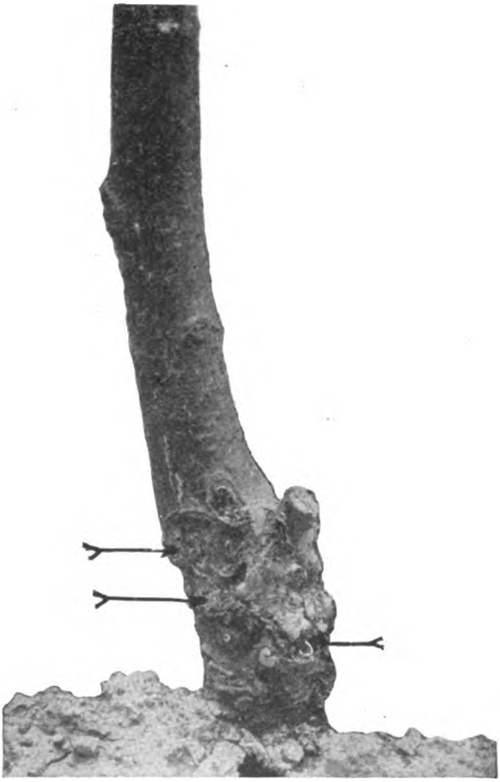


FIG. 128. TREE SEVERELY INJURED AT BASE, DUE TO LACK OF TREATMENT THERE

Method of application of carbolineum

After many trials it was found that the simplest method of application of carbolineum was by the use of cotton waste. Carbolineum is noninjurious to the hands, and each workman carried a small quantity of the material in a dipper or a tin can. The cotton waste was dipped into the material and then rubbed carefully up and down the trunk of the tree. It is usually not necessary to go higher than four or five feet, but great care should be exercised to see that the base of the tree is well treated and all parts of the trunk are well covered. At the same time the material should not be allowed to run down to the roots. After the trees are pruned workmen can apply the material at a very rapid rate.

It is preferable to make the application on a warm day, as under this condition the carbolineum is thinner and may be more easily applied.

Cost of treatment

It was at first thought that the cost of the treatment might prevent its use under nursery conditions, inasmuch as poplars are not very high-priced stock. In one nursery a careful account of the entire cost of treatment was kept. This was as follows:

Labor, treating 14,000 trees	$18.50
Carbolineum, 7 gallons at 90 cents	6.30
Total cost	$24.80
Total cost per tree	$0.00177

It is thus seen that the cost per tree is extremely small, not exceeding two-tenths of a cent — a practically negligible charge.

SUMMARY

The poplar and willow borer is a European pest recently introduced into America and at present widely distributed in the northeastern United States. It is proving a serious pest not only in nurseries but also wherever willows or poplars are grown.

A very effective means for control of the insect is the use of carbolineum avenarius. In nurseries this should be applied by hand during the latter part of March or the first week in April. The work can be done most advantageously just after the trees are pruned.

In setting out poplar trees they should be treated with carbolineum in order to insure the destruction of all larvæ present. This can be done either in the fall or in the spring while the trees are dormant.

The item of cost has been shown to be extremely small, not exceeding two-tenths of a cent per tree under nursery conditions.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

ALTUM, BERNARD. Cryptorhynchus. *In* Forstzoologie. III. Inseckten **1**:220–224. 1881.

BARBEY, A. Cryptorrhynchus Lapathi L. *In* Traité d'entomologie forestière, p. 550–553. 1913.

BECHSTEIN, JOHANN MATTHÄUS, UND SCHARFENBERG, GEORG LUDWIG. Der Ampfer-Rüsselkäfer. *In* Vollständige Naturgeschichte der schädlichen Forstinsekten **1**:168–169. 1804.

BLATCHLEY, W. S., AND LENG, C. W. Rhynchophora or weevils of northeastern America, p. 510. 1916.

BUES, CHRISTIAN, AND SANDSTEN, E. P. Sixth annual report of the nursery inspector for the State of Wisconsin. *In* Wisconsin Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta., Ann. rept. **21**:271–278. 1904.

BURGESS, A. F. (No title.) *In* Proceedings of the fifteenth annual meeting of the Association of Economic Entomologists. U. S. Dept. Agr., Div. Ent. Bul. 40:52. 1903.

———— Notes on economic insects for the year 1903. *In* Proceedings of the sixteenth annual meeting of the Association of Economic Entomologists. U. S. Dept. Agr., Div. Ent. Bul. 46:62–65. 1904.

CAESAR, L. The imported willow and poplar borer or curculio (Cryptorhynchus lapathi L.). Ent. Soc. Ontario. Ann. rept. **46** (1915):33–40. 1916.

CALWER, C. G. Cryptorhynchus Illig. *In* Käferbuch, 4th ed., p. 468. 1883.

CHITTENDEN, F. H. Insects injurious to basket willow. *In* The basket willow. U. S. Bur. For. Bul. 46:63–80. 1904.

CURTIS, WILLIAM. Some observations on the natural history of the Curculio Lapathi and Silpha grisea. Linnean Soc. (London). Trans. **1**:86–89. 1791.

FELT, E. P. Mottled willow borer. *In* Insects affecting park and woodland trees. New York State Museum. Memoir 8:100–103. 1905.

FERNALD, C. H., AND FERNALD, H. T. Insects of the year. *In* Report of the entomologists. Massachusetts Agr. Coll., Hatch Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **16** (1903):106–109. 1904.

FLETCHER, JAMES, AND GIBSON, ARTHUR. Entomological record 1908. Ent. Soc. Ontario. Ann. rept. **39** (1908):99–116. (Reference on p. 109.) 1909.

FORBES, STEPHEN A. The poplar and willow borer. *In* Some important insects of Illinois shade trees and shrubs. Illinois Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 151:502–506. 1911 a.

———— The poplar and willow borer. Illinois State Ent. Rept. **26**:40–44. 1911 b.

GIBSON, ARTHUR. The entomological record, 1911. Ent. Soc. Ontario. Ann. rept. **42** (1911):89–112. (Reference on p. 102.) 1912.

GILLANDERS, A. T. Cryptorrhynchus lapathi. *In* Forest entomology, p. 82–83. 1908.

GOUREAU, ———. (No title.) Soc. Ent. France. Ann. 4 ser.:**7**:Bulletin entomologique, p. LXXXIV–LXXXV. 1867.

Heyden, Lucas von. Cryptorrhynchus Illig. *In* Catalog der Coleopteren von Sibirien, p. 176. 1880–1881.

Howard, L. O. Further damage by Cryptorhynchus lapathi. Insect life **7**:430. 1895.

Jack, J. G. A willow pest. Gard. and for. **10**:394. 1897.

Johannsen, O. A., and Patch, Edith M. Curculionidae. *In* Insect notes for 1911. Maine Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 195:234–235. 1912.

Judeich, J. F., und Nitsche, H. Erlenrüsselkäfer oder Erlenwürger. *In* Lehrbuch der mitteleuropäischen Forstinsektenkunde **1**:391–394. 1889.

Juelich, William. Cryptorhynchus lapathi, Linn. Brooklyn Ent. Soc. Entomologica Americana **3**:123. 1887.

Kaltenbach, J. H. Cryptorhynchus lapathi, L. *In* Die Pflanzenfeinde aus der Klasse der Insekten, p. 513, 563, 612. 1874.

Kirkland, A. H. Cryptorhynchus lapathi (L.) in Massachusetts. Psyche **8**:371–372. 1899.

——— The shade-tree insect problem. Massachusetts State Bd. Agr. Ann. rept. **49**:77–107. (Reference on p. 95–96.) 1902 a.

——— Notes on four imported pests. *In* Proceedings of the thirteenth annual meeting of the Association of Economic Entomologists. U. S. Dept. Agr., Div. Ent. Bul. 31:93–97. 1902 b.

Linné, Carl von. Systema naturæ per regna tria naturæ, 10th ed. **1**:1–823. (Reference on p. 379.) 1758.

Loudon, J. C. (No title.) *In* Arboretum et fruticetum Brittanicum **3**:1479–1481. 1854.

Matheson, Robert. Experiments in the control of the poplar and willow borer (Cryptorhynchus lapathi Linn.). Journ. econ. ent. **8**:522–525. 1915.

Munro, James W. Cryptorrhynchus lapathi, L., in Aberdeenshire. Ent. mo. mag. **49**:257. 1913.

——— The variegated willow weevil (Cryptorhynchus lapathi L.). Gard. chron. **55**:27. 1914.

Nördlinger, Hermann von. Cryptorhynchus lapathi L. *In* Nachträge zu Ratzeburg's Forstinsekten, p. 15–16. 1856.

Nüsslin, Otto. Unterfamilie Cryptorhynchini. *In* Leitfaden der Forstinsektenkunde, p. 193–196. 1913.

Osborn, Herbert. Brief notes on Ohio insects for 1904. *In* Proceedings of the seventeenth annual meeting of the Association of Economic Entomologists. U. S. Bur. Ent. Bul. 52:49–51. 1905.

Parrott, P. J. Investigations of the Department of Entomology. *In* New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **26**:19. 1908.

Patch, Edith M. Cryptorhynchus lapathi. *In* Insect notes for 1908. Maine Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 162:363. 1908.

Paykull, Gustavo de. Curculio Lapathi. *In* Monographia curculionum, p. 37–38. 1792.

Pierce, W. Dwight. A list of parasites known to attack American Rhynchophora. Journ. econ. ent. **1**:380–396. (Reference on p. 390.) 1908.

Ratzeburg, Julius Theodor Christian. Curculio Lapathi Linn. *In* Die Forst-Insecten **1**:155. 1839.

———— Die Waldverderbniss **2**. (Reference on p. 247–250.) 1868.

RYE, E. C. British beetles, p. 1–280. (Reference on p. 192.) 1866.

SCHEIDTER, FRANZ. Über Generation und Lebensweise des bunten Erlenrüsslers, Cryptorhynchus lapathi L. Naturw. Zeitsch. Forst. u. Landw. **11**:279–300. 1913.

SCHOENE, W. J. The poplar and willow borer. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 286:83–104. 1907 a.

———— The willow borer as a nursery pest. *In* Proceedings of the nineteenth annual meeting of the Association of Economic Entomologists. U. S. Bur. Ent. Bul. 67:27–28. 1907 b.

SCHWÄGRICHEN, [C. F.]. Ueber den Cryptorhynchus Lapathi und seine Verwüstung des Erlenholzes. Arch. Naturgesch. **11**:337–343. 1845.

SHELFORD, VICTOR E. Animal communities in temperate America as illustrated in the Chicago region. Geog. Soc. Chicago. Bul. 5:1–362. (Reference on p. 267.) 1913.

SMITH, J. B. (No title.) Can. ent. **23**:221. 1891.

TASCHENBERG, E. P. *In* Brehm's Thierleben **9**:152–153. 1884.

THEOBALD, F. V. Animals injurious to forest trees. Wye Agr. Coll. Rept. econ. zool., p. 78–80. 1905.

WASHBURN, F. L. The mottled willow borer, an introduced enemy to carolina poplars and willows. Minnesota State Ent. Ann. rept. **9**:115–119. 1904.

———— Injurious insects in Minnesota in 1904. *In* Proceedings of the seventeenth annual meeting of the Association of Economic Entomologists. U. S. Bur. Ent. Bul. 52:55–57. 1905.

WEBSTER, F. M. Tenacity of life in adults of Cryptorhynchus lapathi. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **5**:30. 1897.

———— The imported willow and poplar curculio. Columbus Hort. Soc. Journ. **16**:146–155. 1901.

———— The imported willow and poplar curculio, Cryptorhynchus lapathi Linn. Ent. Soc. Ontario. Ann. rept. **32** (1901):67–73. 1902.

WESTWOOD, J. O. An introduction to the modern classification of insects **1**:1–462. (Reference on p. 343–344.) 1839.

———— (No title.) Ent. Soc. London. Trans. 3 ser.:**1**:Proc. **1863**: 165. 1863.

———— The willow boring beetle. Gard. chron. **1864**:52. 1864.

APRIL, 1917 BULLETIN 389

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

CLARIFICATION OF MILK

T. J. McINERNEY

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CLARIFICATION OF MILK

T. J. McINERNEY

The number of bacteria found in milk indicates to a certain extent the quality of the milk as to cleanness. Under ordinary conditions the main sources of milk contamination are dust and dirt from the body of the cow, udder tissue, dust in the air of the stable, lack of cleanliness on the part of the milker, and poorly washed, unsterilized utensils. From any of these sources insoluble dirt may enter the milk, rendering it more or less objectionable for use and especially for drinking purposes.

Since it is almost impossible to prevent absolutely the falling of some dirt into the milk, many investigators have been trying to devise some means by which such dirt may be removed without causing any change in the milk itself. When the cream separator was first placed on the market, it was noticed that much of the insoluble dirt present in the milk before separation was found in the separator bowl in the form of slime after the cream and the skimmilk had been separated. This form of clarification did not prove satisfactory, however, because the milk could not be reconstituted by the mixing of the skimmilk and the cream. It is a well-known fact that cream and skimmilk cannot be satisfactorily remixed after they have been separated by centrifugal action.

HISTORICAL REVIEW OF CLARIFICATION STUDIES

When the separator was first used as a clarifier it was noticed that much slime and dirt was removed, and this led to the theory that the germ content of milk might be reduced by clarification. Studies were made by a number of investigators on the effect of centrifugal separation on germ content.

Moore (1896)[1] found that in samples of milk inoculated with pathogenic bacteria and then passed thru a separator, the greatest number of bacteria was found in the slime and the least in the skimmilk. There were enough bacteria present in the skimmilk, however, to kill animals inoculated with or fed on this milk. Moore states further that some species of bacteria are more thoroly eradicated than others. He concludes that separation is not efficient in removing bacteria from milk, since there are practically as many bacteria in the cream and the skimmilk after separation as in the original milk, plus a large number in the sediment.

---

[1] Dates in parenthesis refer to bibliography, page 596.

Eckles and Barnes (1901) summarize their work as follows:

1. The centrifugal separator removes practically all the solid impurities from milk.
2. From 37 to 56 per cent of the total number of germs were thrown out with the slime.
3. An average of 29 per cent of the total number of germs went into the skim milk, 24 per cent into the cream and about 47 per cent into the slime.
4. The keeping qualities of the milk are improved but little if any by centrifugal separation.

Dean (1903) found, in a series of experiments, that clarifying and filtering seemed to have no effect on the keeping quality of milk.

Harrison (1903) found that in twenty-four out of thirty experiments the bacteria content of cream and skimmilk remixed after separation was greater than that of the milk before separation. The number of liquefying bacteria was largely increased by separation. These results tend to show that as far as bacteria are concerned this method of purification is ineffectual.

Doane (1903) found that the purification of milk by the use of separators as practiced by two city dairies failed to give satisfaction to consumers, the main objection being that the milk so treated became sour sooner than did untreated milk.

Diffloth (1905) tried to purify milk with filters and separators. He found that milk filtered thru animal charcoal that had been washed thoroly in water was turned black, illustrating a difficulty in purifying milk by filtration as compared with purifying water.

Severin (1905) tried three methods of centrifuging, making bacteria counts immediately before and after the treatment. The methods were as follows: (1) ordinary centrifugal separation; (2) protecting centrifuge with sterilized cotton in order to prevent entrance of bacteria from the air; and (3) shaking the milk in closed bottles before and after centrifuging. The interval between the taking of samples was about fifteen minutes. The number of colonies developing on agar and on gelatin was increased by all three methods. Contamination from air during separation was thus excluded as a source of the increase of bacteria. Severin believes the reason for this increase is that the natural process of vegetative division is hastened by the mechanical action, so that bacteria about to become separated are torn apart sooner than would ordinarily be the case.

Anderson (1909) found that centrifugally raised cream contained more bacteria per cubic centimeter than cream raised by gravity.

Ernst (1914) states that altho a great number of bacteria are removed by clarification, the bacteria count thru plating of the centrifuged milk discloses a considerably larger number of colonies than were found in the milk prior to centrifugalization, altho the short time of the centrifuging process does not permit of an actual increase of bacteria. This may be explained, according to Ernst, by the fact that clumps of pus and fatty leucocytes which have "embodied" bacteria are distributed thru centrifugalization. Therefore, in spite of the removal of considerable numbers of bacteria, there is an apparent increase.

According to Hammer (1916), Fleischmann doubts whether the centrifuge has much value as a means of purification. In direct contradiction to this are the opinions of Grotenfelt and Hueppe, who believe the centrifugal separator is of value as a means of purification because it throws out a large proportion of the injurious germs in milk (Hammer, 1916:20).

Besides the use of centrifugal separation for purifying milk, various methods of straining and filtering thru absorbent cotton, sand, quartz, or substances of similar character, have been tried. By these methods the coarser dirt and objectionable matter is removed from the milk, but they are only half efficient at best. In some respects they are really more harmful than beneficial, in that they are open to the very serious objection that all the milk passing thru the filter may be permeated and contaminated by anything that may be caught in the filtering material.

THE CLARIFIER

The demand arose for a form of machine that would remove the insoluble dirt from milk without producing any noticeable changes in the milk. Such a machine, which removes the insoluble dirt by means of centrifugal force, has been placed on the market and is known as a clarifier.

The purpose of this bulletin is to determine the advantages and the disadvantages of the clarifier in commercial work. The points considered are (1) the effect of clarification on the germ content of milk, (2) the chemical effects of clarification, and (3) the physical effects of clarification.

METHOD OF PROCEDURE

In these experiments the parts of the clarifier were thoroly washed and sterilized before using. After the machine was assembled, sterilized water was run thru it and plated, in order to determine whether or not sterilization was complete. The bowl of the clarifier was then protected with cheesecloth until the milk was ready to be passed thru the machine. A sterilized can was used to receive the milk after it had passed thru the clarifier. Samples of milk to be examined were taken immediately before and after clarifying.

The germ content was determined by the plate method. All samples were plated in lactose agar and held at a temperature of 37° C. for three days. The plates were then counted and the total number of bacteria was determined. All samples were again plated, after being held for twenty-four hours at a temperature of 10° C., in order to compare the development of bacteria in the clarified and the unclarified milk.

The total solids were determined by the chemical method, and the fat content was determined by the Babcock method. The acidity was determined by titrating 18 grams of the sample with a one-tenth normal alkali solution. The amount of insoluble dirt was determined by filtering equal quantities of clarified and unclarified milk thru absorbent cotton and comparing the amount of sediment obtained in each case. The amount of cream rising was determined by filling graduated, straight-sided cylinders, of 100 cubic centimeters capacity, with the samples, allowing them to stand for twenty-four hours, and then reading and recording the number of cubic centimeters of cream raised in each sample. The keeping quality was determined by holding samples of clarified and of unclarified milk at definite temperatures and noting the time required for the milk to curdle.

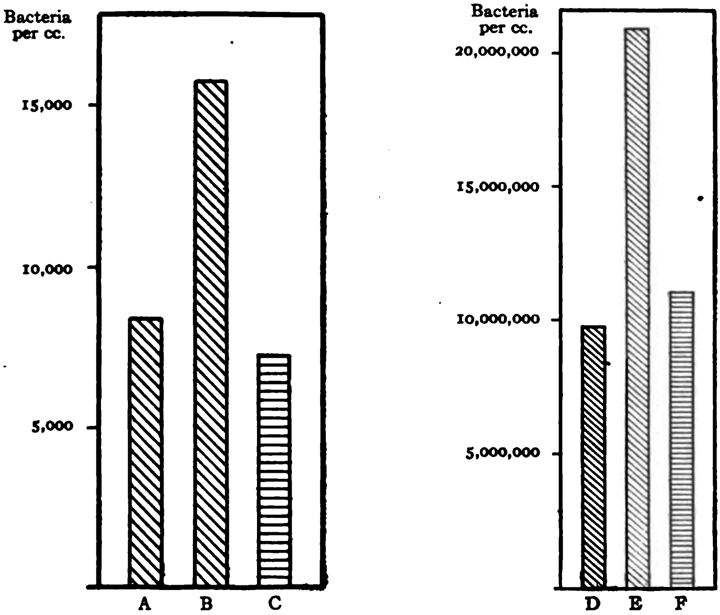


FIG. 129. EFFECT OF CLARIFICATION ON BACTERIA CONTENT OF MILK

A, Bacteria per cubic centimeter in unclarified fresh milk; B, bacteria in the same milk after clarification; C, increase due to clarification

D, Bacteria per cubic centimeter in unclarified old milk; E, bacteria in the same milk after clarification; F, increase due to clarification

RESULTS

Effect of clarification on the bacteria content of milk

The effect of clarification on the bacteria content of fresh milk is shown in table 1 and in figure 129, A-C. The milk used in these experiments was from the university farm and was produced under sanitary conditions. In nearly all cases morning milk was used, the object being to provide milk with as low a germ content as possible; night milk would have contained a greater number of bacteria by morning, when the tests were made.

TABLE 1. EFFECT OF CLARIFICATION ON THE BACTERIA CONTENT OF FRESH MILK

Experiment	Bacteria per cubic centimeter		Increase	
	In unclarified milk	In clarified milk	Per cubic centimeter	Per cent
1	700	1,600	900	128.57
2	2,300	2,400	100	43.48
3	641	1,825	1,184	184.71
4	1,250	2,483	1,233	98.64
5	563	2,900	2,337	415.10
6	1,400	1,475	75	5.36
7	525	1,100	575	109.52
8	6,000	9,000	3,000	50.00
9	10,000	30,000	20,000	200.00
10	1,100	1,400	300	27.27
11	5,000	10,000	5,000	100.00
12	4,000	4,000	0	....
13	4,500	18,000	13,500	300.00
14	3,600	5,000	1,400	38.89
15	2,100	2,600	500	23.81
16	3,650	5,550	1,900	52.05
17	7,000	20,000	13,000	185.71
18	5,480	12,125	6,645	121.26
19	10,000	13,000	3,000	30.00
20	11,320	13,600	2,280	20.14
21	4,280	8,000	3,720	86.91
22	4,600	4,250	−350	....
23	1,600	4,100	2,500	156.25
24	15,000	22,000	7,000	46.67
25	53,000	71,500	18,500	34.90
26	60,000	156,000	96,000	160.00
27	5,675	5,775	100	1.76
28	10,200	11,000	800	7.84
Average	8,410	15,739	7,329	87.15

The initial count was less than 10,000 bacteria per cubic centimeter in twenty-one of the samples, while after clarification only seventeen showed a count less than 10,000 bacteria per cubic centimeter. In one sample the number of bacteria remained the same after clarification and in one there was a decrease. The percentage of increase ranged from 1.76 to 415.10, the average being 87.15. According to the figures, if a milk with a very low bacteria count is clarified, even tho the clarified milk shows an increase of 100 per cent in the bacteria count this count in the end would not necessarily mean a high-count milk.

These experiments were performed at various times thru a period of two years. Some of the work was done in the winter months and some in the summer months. There was no noticeable difference in the results of experiments performed at various times of the year.

TABLE 2. EFFECT OF CLARIFICATION ON THE BACTERIA CONTENT OF OLD AND DIRTY MILK

Experiment	Bacteria per cubic centimeter		Increase	
	In unclarified milk	In clarified milk	Per cubic centimeter	Per cent
1	830,000	13,900,000	13,070,000	1,574.70
2	40,000	110,000	70,000	175.00
3	494,000	6,400,000	5,906,000	1,195.55
4	133,500	197,500	64,000	47.94
5	15,000,000	30,000,000	15,000,000	100.00
6	37,800,000	40,000,000	2,200,000	5.82
7	1,500,000	3,200,000	1,700,000	113.33
8	370,000	643,000	273,000	73.78
9	600,000	1,300,000	700,000	116.67
10	55,000	175,000	120,000	218.18
11	19,000,000	160,000,000	141,000,000	742.10
12	248,000	425,000	177,000	71.37
13	558,750	1,863,300	1,304,550	233.48
14	190,000	237,000	47,000	24.74
15	83,400,000	91,030,000	7,630,000	9.15
16	1,590,000	1,831,000	241,000	15.16
17	4,420,000	5,700,000	1,280,000	28.96
Average	9,778,191	21,000,694	11,222,503	114.77

The effect of clarification on the germ content of old and dirty milk is shown in table 2 and in figure 129, D-F. The milk was obtained from sources not under city inspection, and the conditions under which it was produced and handled were not considered sanitary. Some milk producers carelessly allow insoluble dirt to fall into the milk, thinking that it can be removed by straining or by clarification. It was to test this point that studies were made on the effect of clarification on the germ content of dirty milk.

As shown in figure 133 (page 593), clarification removes a large proportion of the insoluble dirt. According to the results shown in table 2, however, the bacteria count is increased rather than decreased. In all the seventeen samples there was an increase, ranging from 47,000 to 141,000,000 bacteria per cubic centimeter, the average of the percentage of increase being 114.77.

Even with the same percentage of increase in milk with a high initial count as in milk with a low initial count, the fact that the former has a high count at the beginning would probably put it in a lower grade after clarification than before. From a bacteriological standpoint, then, it would seem that old milk should not be clarified.

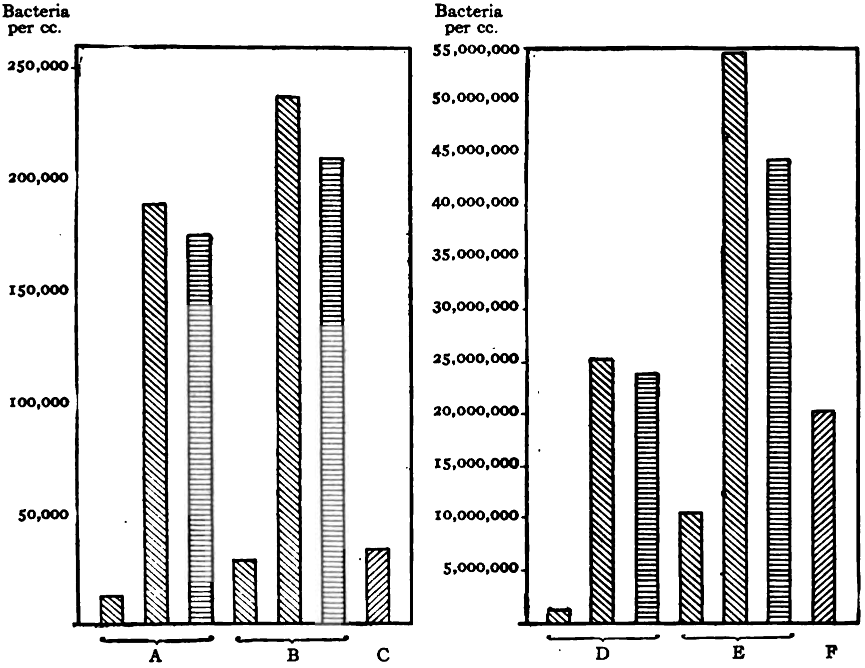


FIG. 130. RATE OF DEVELOPMENT OF BACTERIA IN UNCLARIFIED MILK AS COMPARED WITH THE SAME MILK AFTER CLARIFICATION

Showing bacteria content in milk when fresh and when old, and increase in bacteria content after twenty-four hours at 14.4° C.
A, Clean milk, unclarified; B, same milk after clarification; C, increase in clarified over unclarified milk
D, Dirty milk, unclarified; E, same milk after clarification; F, increase in clarified over unclarified milk

The development of bacteria in clarified milk was compared with that in unclarified milk. Samples of clean milk and of dirty milk, both before and after clarification, were kept at a temperature of 14.4° C. for twenty-four hours and then plated to determine the number of bacteria present. The results of this work are shown in tables 3 and 4 and in figure 130.

TABLE 3. DEVELOPMENT OF BACTERIA IN CLEAN MILK

Experiment	Bacteria per cubic centimeter in unclarified milk			
	Fresh	After 24 hours at 14.4° C.	Increase	
			Per cubic centimeter	Per cent
1	4,000	10,000	6,000	150.00
2	5,500	42,000	36,500	663.64
3	4,000	10,000	6,000	150.00
4	4,500	18,000	13,500	300.00
5	3,600	602,000	598,400	16,622.22
6	2,350	221,000	218,650	9,304.25
7	3,650	97,500	93,850	2,571.23
8	7,000	774,000	767,000	10,957.14
9	5,480	248,000	242,520	4,425.55
10	7,550	69,733	62,183	823.61
11	15,000	22,000	7,000	46.67
12	53,000	380,000	327,000	616.98
13	60,000	265,000	205,000	341.67
14	5,675	9,500	3,825	67.40
15	10,200	55,000	44,800	439.21
Average	12,767	188,249	175,482	1,374.50

TABLE 4. DEVELOPMENT OF BACTERIA IN DIRTY MILK

Experiment	Bacteria per cubic centimeter in unclarified milk			
	Fresh	After 24 hours at 14.4° C.	Increase	
			Per cubic centimeter	Per cent
1	1,500,000	12,000,000	10,500,000	700.00
2	370,000	8,000,000	7,630,000	2,062.16
3	600,000	23,000,000	22,400,000	3,733.33
4	47,000	1,124,000	1,077,000	2,291.49
5	12,000,000	33,000,000	21,000,000	175.00
6	95,000	1,450,000	1,355,000	1,426.31
7	190,000	30,000,000	29,810,000	15,689.47
8	40,000	1,000,000	960,000	2,400.00
9	33,000	1,800,000	1,767,000	5,354.54
10	133,000	7,500,000	7,367,000	5,539.10
11	48,500	1,124,000	1,075,500	2,217.52
12	12,000,000	335,000,000	323,000,000	2,691.67
13	21,500	2,800,000	2,778,500	12,923.25
14	95,000	1,450,000	1,355,000	1,426.31
15	170,000	7,800,000	7,630,000	4,488.23
16	2,350	220,000	217,650	9,261.70
17	190,000	30,000,000	29,810,000	15,689.47
18	37,000	1,095,000	1,058,000	2,859.46
19	133,500	540,000	406,500	304.49
20	494,000	6,400,000	5,906,000	1,195.55
Average	1,409,993	25,265,150	23,855,157	1,691.86

AFTER BEING HELD FOR TWENTY-FOUR HOURS AT 14.4° C.

Experiment	Bacteria per cubic centimeter in clarified milk			
	Fresh	After 24 hours at 14.4° C.	Increase	
			Per cubic centimeter	Per cent
1	8,000	30,000	22,000	275.00
2	12,000	40,000	28,000	233.33
3	4,000	20,000	16,000	400.00
4	6,000	29,000	23,000	383.33
5	5,000	785,000	780,000	15,600.00
6	3,350	175,000	171,650	5,123.88
7	5,550	279,000	273,450	4,927.03
8	16,000	805,000	789,000	4,931.25
9	12,125	433,300	421,175	3,473.61
10	7,500	464,000	456,500	6,086.67
11	26,000	27,000	1,000	3.85
12	114,000	114,000	0	....
13	181,500	295,000	113,500	62.53
14	5,775	5,900	125	2.16
15	11,000	67,006	56,006	509.14
Average	27,853	237,947	210,094	754.29

AFTER BEING HELD FOR TWENTY-FOUR HOURS AT 14.4° C.

Experiment	Bacteria per cubic centimeter in clarified milk			
	Fresh	After 24 hours at 14.4° C.	Increase	
			Per cubic centimeter	Per cent
1	3,200,000	24,000,000	20,800,000	650.00
2	643,000	20,000,000	19,357,000	3,010.42
3	1,300,000	45,000,000	43,700,000	3,361.54
4	170,000	1,024,000	854,000	502.35
5	18,000,000	77,000,000	59,000,000	327.78
6	100,000	2,070,000	1,970,000	1,970.00
7	180,000	30,000,000	29,820,000	16,566.67
8	70,000	4,800,000	4,730,000	6,757.14
9	48,000	1,700,000	1,652,000	3,441.67
10	187,000	12,500,000	12,313,000	6,584.49
11	165,500	1,022,000	856,500	517.52
12	180,000,000	800,000,000	620,000,000	344.44
13	36,500	3,400,000	3,363,500	9,215.07
14	100,000	2,070,000	1,970,000	1,970.00
15	78,250	22,000,000	21,921,750	28,015.01
16	3,350	165,000	161,650	4,825.37
17	179,000	30,000,000	29,821,000	16,659.78
18	70,000	4,800,000	4,730,000	6,757.14
19	197,500	2,160,000	1,962,500	993.67
20	1,200,000	10,800,000	9,600,000	800.00
Average	10,296,405	54,725,550	44,429,145	431.50

In the case of the clean milk (table 3), it was found that in nine of the fifteen tests made there was a greater percentage of increase in bacteria content in the unclarified milk than in the clarified milk, the average percentage of increase being 1374.50 for the former and 754.29 for the latter. With the dirty milk (table 4), there was a more uniform increase in the number of bacteria per cubic centimeter in the clarified milk as compared with the unclarified milk, and the average percentage of increase was 1691.86 for the unclarified milk and 431.50 for the clarified milk.

TABLE 5. AMOUNTS OF SLIME OBTAINED FROM DIFFERENT QUANTITIES OF MILK

Experiment	Milk used (ounces)	Slime obtained (ounces)	Per cent of slime
1	89,088	5.64	0.0063
2	82,964	7.65	0.0092
3	87,680	6.98	0.0080
4	88,960	6.49	0.0073
5	89,088	6.80	0.0076
6	84,480	12.62	0.0149
7	84,480	8.25	0.0098
8	84,480	6.45	0.0076

Effect of clarification on the composition of milk

The large amount of slime deposited in the clarifier bowl seemed to indicate that clarification might reduce the total solids of the milk, and possibly the fat content, and experiments were made to determine whether this was the case. The amounts of slime obtained from different quantities of milk when passed thru the clarifier are shown in table 5.

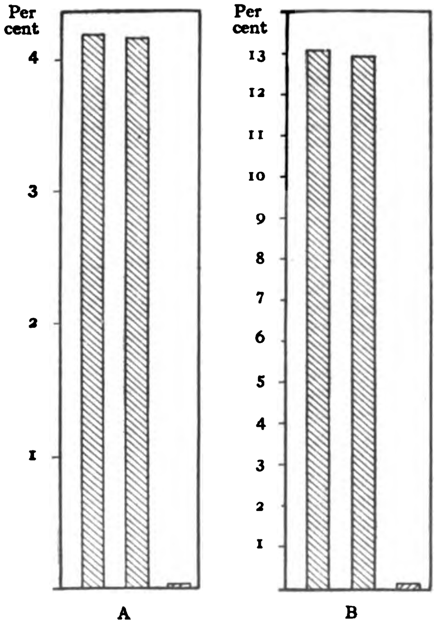


FIG. 131. PERCENTAGE OF (A) FAT AND (B) TOTAL SOLIDS IN UNCLARIFIED MILK AS COMPARED WITH THE SAME MILK AFTER CLARIFICATION

The clarifier used in these studies was a large one in a commercial plant in which several thousand pounds of milk were clarified daily. The amount of milk used was determined by weighing before passing the milk thru the clarifier. After all the milk had been passed thru, the machine was taken apart and the amount of slime deposited on the walls was carefully removed, placed in a bottle, and weighed. The percentage of slime in all cases was very small, the highest being 0.0149. This shows that even tho some of the milk solids may be removed, the percentage is so small as to be almost negligible.

The results of studies made to determine the fat content of milk before and after clarification are shown in table 6 and in figure 131, A. Tests for fat content were made in duplicate by the Babcock method. In sixteen cases out of twenty the percentage of fat in the clarified milk was exactly the same as in the unclarified milk, while in the other four cases the difference was only 0.1 per cent. This is within the limit of error of the Babcock test, and the conclusions are that clarification has no effect on the fat content of milk.

TABLE 6. EFFECT OF CLARIFICATION ON THE FAT CONTENT OF MILK

Experiment	Fat content		
	In unclarified milk (per cent)	In clarified milk (per cent)	Difference (per cent)
1	5.3	5.3	0
2	4.1	4.1	0
3	4.1	4.1	0
4	3.4	3.3	—0.1
5	3.4	3.4	0
6	4.5	4.5	0
7	4.5	4.5	0
8	4.5	4.5	0
9	5.3	5.3	0
10	4.3	4.2	—0.1
11	4.4	4.4	0
12	4.0	4.0	0
13	3.7	3.6	—0.1
14	3.5	3.5	0
15	4.7	4.8	+0.1
16	4.2	4.2	0
17	3.5	3.5	0
18	3.8	3.8	0
19	3.4	3.4	0
20	5.0	5.0	0
Average	4.18	4.17	—0.01

The results of studies on the effect of clarification on the total solids in milk are shown in table 7 and in figure 131, B. The percentage of total solids present in the samples was determined by the chemical method.

TABLE 7. EFFECT OF CLARIFICATION ON TOTAL SOLIDS IN MILK

Experiment	Total solids		
	In unclarified milk (per cent)	In clarified milk (per cent)	Difference (per cent)
1	14.81	14.77	—0.04
2	13.02	12.99	—0.03
3	13.02	13.03	+0.01
4	12.43	12.39	—0.04
5	12.43	12.41	—0.02
6	13.55	13.43	—0.12
7	13.55	13.55	0
8	13.57	13.42	—0.15
9	14.27	14.11	—0.16
10	13.13	13.07	—0.06
11	13.45	13.33	—0.12
12	13.20	13.19	—0.01
13	12.26	12.15	—0.11
14	12.20	12.16	—0.04
15	14.16	14.06	—0.10
16	13.15	13.12	—0.03
17	11.86	11.86	0
18	12.42	12.45	+0.03
19	12.02	12.09	+0.07
20	12.32	12.27	—0.05
21	12.67	12.58	—0.09
22	13.21	13.06	—0.15
23	12.83	12.88	+0.05
24	12.90	12.90	0
25	12.96	12.86	—0.10
Average	13.016	12.965	—0.051

In nearly all cases there was a slight reduction in the amount of total solids in the clarified milk as compared with the unclarified milk, the average reduction for the twenty-five samples being 0.051 per cent. This reduction may be accounted for by the amount of slime deposited in the clarifier bowl.

The development of acidity in unclarified and in clarified milk may be compared by means of table 8 and figure 132. According to these figures, there is practically no difference in the amount of acidity developed in unclarified and in clarified milk.

It was decided that a chemical analysis should be made of the slime in the clarifier bowl, in order to find out what was actually being removed from the milk. Examined under the microscope, this slime is seen to contain cow hairs, epithelium from the udder of the cow, and bacteria of many forms. In some cases the slime is red from the amount of blood in the milk.

TABLE 8. DEVELOPMENT OF ACIDITY IN UNCLARIFIED AND IN CLARIFIED MILK

Experiment	Acidity at start (per cent)	Acidity after 24 hours at 4.4° C.		Acidity after 24 hours at 21.1° C.	
		In unclarified milk (per cent)	In clarified milk (per cent)	In unclarified milk (per cent)	In clarified milk (per cent)
1	0.18	0.19	0.19	0.20	0.21
2	0.19	0.17	0.16	0.60	0.89
3	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.96	0.85
4	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.55	0.56
5	0.17	0.18	0.17	0.86	0.88
6	0.18	0.17	0.17	0.96	0.98
7	0.16	0.16	0.18	0.18	0.18
8	0.18	0.17	0.17	0.80	0.76
9	0.18	0.17	0.17	0.28	0.53
10	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.21	0.20
11	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.23	0.20
12	0.19	0.18	0.19	0.40	0.42
13	0.20	0.25	0.28	0.81	0.82
14	0.16	0.29	0.38	0.99	0.99
15	0.20	0.20	0.20	1.00	1.00
16	0.19	0.18	0.18	0.42	0.45
17	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.24	0.25
Average	0.18	0.19	0.19	0.57	0.60

Richmond and Fleischmann (Richmond, 1914) give the composition of separator slime as follows:

	Richmond	Fleischmann
Water	66.24	67.3
Fat	0.50	1.1
Casein (or analogous body)	22 (approx.)	25.9
Milk-sugar	0.5	2.1
Other organic matter	7.75	
Ash	3.01	3.6

The results of the chemical analysis of eight samples of clarifier slime, obtained from a large commercial clarifier and believed to be representative samples, are given in table 9:

TABLE 9. CHEMICAL ANALYSIS OF CLARIFIER SLIME

Experiment	Fat (per cent)	Water (per cent)	Total solids (per cent)	Ash (per cent)	Nitrogen (per cent)	Casein (per cent)
1	4.0	70.13	29.87	4.17	0.43	2.74
2	5.0	71.86	28.14	2.73	0.23	1.46
3	3.4	70.04	29.96	3.81	0.71	4.52
4	3.2	69.92	30.08	3.00	0.14	0.89
5	4.0	75.50	24.50	2.74	0.31	1.97
6	5.0	71.01	28.99	3.36	0.10	0.63
7	3.7	71.35	28.65	2.59	0.49	3.12
8	4.0	70.87	29.13	2.83	0.27	1.72
Average	4.0	71.33	28.67	3.15	0.33	2.13

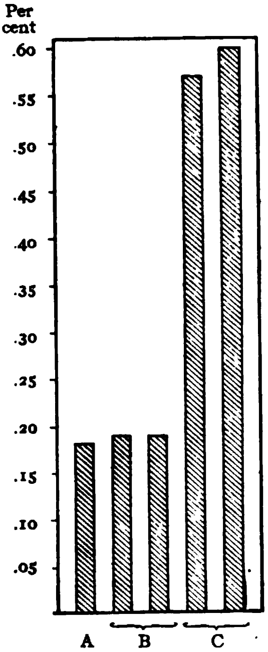


FIG. 132. DEVELOPMENT OF ACID IN UNCLARIFIED MILK AS COMPARED WITH THE SAME MILK AFTER CLARIFICATION

A, Acidity at start; B, after twenty-four hours at 4.4° C.; C, after twenty-four hours at 21.1° C.

The average percentages of the various constituents as shown in the table may seem high; but the percentage of slime resulting from clarification is so small (table 5, page 588) that, no matter how high a percentage of any constituent may be found in the slime, it is a negligible amount in consideration of the quantity of milk used.

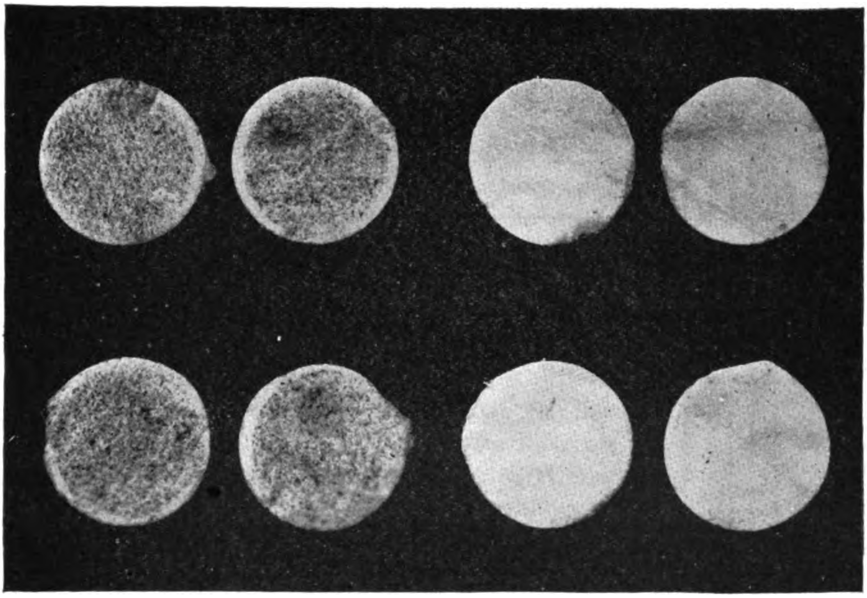
Physical effects of clarification on milk

Keeping quality, or time of curdling.—Samples of milk taken before and after clarification were kept at different temperatures, as shown in table 10, and the time of curdling was noted. The results show practically no advantage nor disadvantage in either case.

Insoluble dirt removed.—Samples of milk taken before and after clarification were tested for sediment. A pint of the milk was passed thru a piece of absorbent cotton in a wizard sediment tester, and the dirt in the milk was caught and held by the cotton while the milk passed thru. By comparing the amounts of insoluble dirt deposited on the cotton filter the relative cleanliness of the milk before and after clarification was determined. The results obtained are illustrated in figure 133. Four samples of

TABLE 10. TIME OF CURDLING OF MILK KEPT AT DIFFERENT TEMPERATURES

Experiment	Milk kept at					
	21.1° C.		14.4° C.		8.9° C.	
	Unclarified milk soured in	Clarified milk soured in	Unclarified milk soured in	Clarified milk soured in	Unclarified milk soured in	Clarified milk soured in
1.	20 hours	20 hours	5 days	5 days	16 days	16 days
2.	20	22	6	6	16	16
3.	30	30	7	7	16	16
4.	25	20	7	7	16	16
5.	43	43	10	10	16	16
6.	32	32	10	10	16	16
7.	38	38	10	10	16	16
8.	30	30	12	12	16	16
9.	26	26	12	12	16	16
10.	26	26	12	12	16	16
Average.....	29 hours	28.7 hours	9.1 days	9.1 days	16 days	16 days

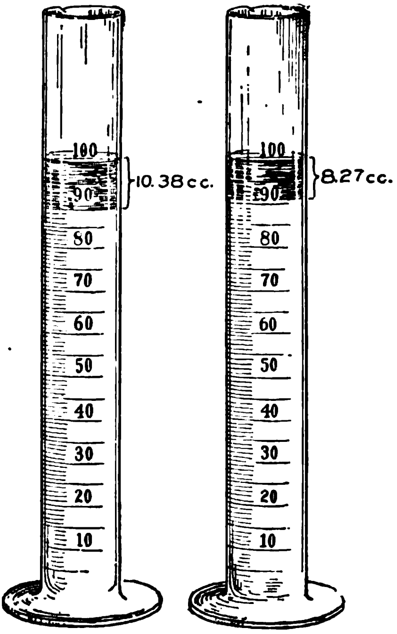


Before clarification After clarification

FIG. 133. AMOUNT OF INSOLUBLE DIRT IN UNCLARIFIED MILK AS COMPARED WITH THE SAME MILK AFTER CLARIFICATION

milk were tested before and after clarification, and, as shown in the illustration, the milk was much cleaner after clarification than before.

Amount of cream separated.—The most important physical effect, and probably the greatest of all effects, produced in milk by clarification is on the amount of cream that will rise on a given quantity of clarified milk as compared with the amount of cream from the same quantity of unclarified milk. Straight-sided graduated cylinders of 100 cubic centimeters capacity (fig. 134) were filled with samples of clarified and of unclarified milk. The cylinders were kept at a certain temperature for twenty-four hours, at the end of which time the amount of cream on the different samples was read and recorded. The results of this experiment are shown in table 11 and in figure 135.



Unclarified milk Clarified milk

FIG. 134. CYLINDERS SHOWING AMOUNT OF CREAM RAISED ON 100 CUBIC CENTIMETERS OF MILK

TABLE 11. EFFECT OF CLARIFICATION ON VOLUME OF CREAM

Experiment	Cream raised		
	On unclarified milk (per cent)	On clarified milk (per cent)	Decrease (per cent)
1	6	5	1
2	6	4	2
3	8	6	2
4	8	7	1
5	13	9	4
6	13	11	2
7	11	7	4
8	9	6	3
9	11	9	2
10	11	8	3
11	14	10	4
12	8.5	6	2.5
13	12	9	3
14	11	10	1
15	6	5	1
16	10.9	6.6	4.3
17	10	9	1
18	11	9	2
19	8	5	3
20	12	10	2
21	9	7	2
22	10	8	2
23	8	7	1
24	10	8	2
25	10	8	2
26	10	9	1
27	10	8	2
28	10	9	1
29	6	5	1
30	6	5	1
31	12	9	3
32	15	13	2
33	18	15	3
34	15	13	2
35	15	14	1
Average	10.38	8.27	2.11

Every experiment of the thirty-five shows a decrease in the volume of cream raised on the clarified milk as compared with the unclarified milk. This may be explained in the following way: When the milk is passing thru the clarifier, it is subjected to a centrifugal force so great that the fat globules become broken up; so that where there were a few large globules before clarification, there are many small globules after clarification. The small globules have more surface according to their size, and this great increase in surface prevents or retards their rising;

while the large globules, which have a lesser surface in proportion to their volume, will rise to the top.

Kilbourne (1915), working for the New York City Board of Health, found that when milk was cleaned by the centrifugal clarifier the volume of cream separated was reduced by from 2 to 3 per cent.

The fact that clarification does affect the cream line of the milk is of commercial importance, because if the consumer does not see a good cream line on the top of the milk he naturally infers that the cream, or fat, is not there. That none of the fat is removed by clarification, however, is proved by table 6 (page 589). This shows that the fat content of the milk, as determined by the Babcock method, is the same after clarification as it was before. Therefore, even tho a smaller percentage of cream rises on the clarified milk, it does not mean that there is a smaller percentage of fat present.

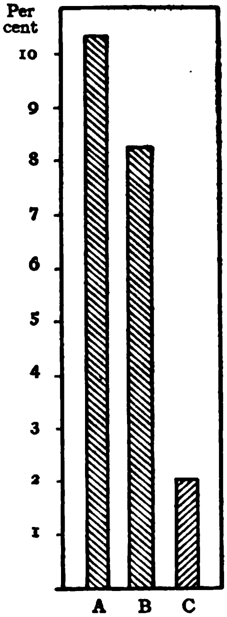


FIG. 135. PERCENTAGE OF CREAM RAISED ON UNCLARIFIED MILK AS COMPARED WITH THE SAME MILK AFTER CLARIFICATION

A, Cream on unclarified milk; B, cream on clarified milk; C, decrease due to clarification

CONCLUSIONS

When fresh milk is clarified, altho the bacteria count may be increased 100 per cent the final count is likely to be not over 10,000 bacteria per cubic centimeter, the average percentage of increase in these experiments being 87.15.

The percentage of increase in bacteria content by clarification is greater in the case of old milk than in the case of fresh milk. This is probably due to the high initial count in old milk. In these experiments the average percentage of increase for the old milk was 114.77.

Bacteria increase more rapidly in unclarified milk than in clarified milk.

The fat content before and after clarification is practically the same.

The percentage of total solids is slightly reduced by clarification. This is probably due to the slime removed.

The development of acidity is slightly more rapid in clarified milk than in unclarified milk.

The keeping quality of milk remains about the same after clarification as it was before.

About 99 per cent of the insoluble dirt in milk is removed by clarification.

The volume of cream that is separated by gravity is reduced from 2 to 3 per cent by clarification. This is probably due to the agitation of the milk in passing thru the clarifier.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

(ANONYMOUS) Clarification of milk. Hoard's dairyman **31**:90. 1900.

ANDERSON, JOHN F. The relative proportion of bacteria in top milk (cream layer) and bottom milk (skimmilk), and its bearing on infant feeding. Journ. infect. diseases **6**:392–400. 1909.

BARTHEL, CHR. Om mekanisk sönderdelning af fettkulorna i mjölken. (On the mechanical splitting-up of the fat globules in cow's milk.) K. Landtbr. Akad. Handl. och tidskr. **43**:401–408. 1904 a.

———— Sur l'émiettement des globules gras du lait. Rev. gén. lait **3**:434–440. 1904 b.

DEAN, H. H. Report of the Professor of Dairy Husbandry. Ontario Agr. Coll. and Exp. Farm. Rept. **28** (1902):56–68. 1903.

DIFFLOTH, P. Des modes mécaniques de purification du lait. *From* Presse méd. (Paris), 1904, no. 96. *Abstracted in* Amer. Med. Assoc., Journ. **44**:75. 1905.

DOANE, CHARLES F. Economical methods for improving the keeping qualities of milk. Maryland Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 88:117–164. 1903.

ECKLES, C. H., AND BARNES, S. E. Purification of milk by centrifugal separation. *In* Iowa Agr. Coll. Exp. Sta., Bul. 59:55–59. 1901.

ERNST, WILLIAM. Text book of milk hygiene, p. 1–281. Translated and revised by John R. Mohler and Adolph Eichhorn. (Reference on p. 150.) 1914.

HAMMER, B. W. Studies on the clarification of milk. Iowa Agr. Exp. Sta. Research bul. 28:17–32. 1916.

HARRISON, F. C. The bacterial contamination of milk. Rev. gén. lait **2**:457–463, 481–489, 510–519, 538–546. 1903.

KILBOURNE, CHAS. H. What causes contribute to the loss of the cream line on pasteurized milk in bottles? Cream. and milk pl. mo. **3**:8:11–20. 1915.

MARCAS, L. Contribution à l'étude des laits à ascension lente. Rev. gén. lait **3**:361–368. 1904.

MOORE, VERANUS A. Inefficiency of milk separators in removing bacteria. U. S. Dept. Agr. Yearbook **1895**:431–444. 1896.

RICHMOND, HENRY DROOP. Dairy chemistry, 2d ed., p. 1–434. (Reference on p. 261.) 1914.

SEVERIN, S. A. Vermindert die Zentrifugierung die Bakterienzahl in der Milch? Centbl. Bakt. 2:**14**:605–615. 1905.

STOCKING, W. A., JR. Studies of market milk. Connecticut (Storrs) Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **17** (1905):164–214. 1906.

WOLFF, A. Biologische Untersuchung abnormal aufrahmender Milch. Milchw. Zentbl. **5**:530–538. 1909.

MAY, 1917 BULLETIN 390

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

THREE CEDAR RUST FUNGI THEIR LIFE HISTORIES AND THE DISEASES THEY PRODUCE

JAMES LEROY WEIMER

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
JAMES K. WILSON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE

Hosts 601
The disease caused by *Gymnosporangium Juniperi-virginianae* 602
  History and geographical distribution 602
  Economic importance 602
  Nature of losses 603
  Symptoms 605
    On cedar 605
    On apple 606
      On the leaves 606
      On the fruit 607
      On the twigs 607
  Etiology 607
    Nomenclature 607
    Life history 607
      Telial stage 607
        Inoculation of cedar 607
        Susceptibility of individual trees 609
        Infection period 609
        Mycelium and haustoria 610
        Development of telial horns 610
        Teliospore germination 612
        Dissemination of basidiospores 615
        Germination of basidiospores 616
      Aecial stage 616
        Inoculation and infection of apple 616
        Effect of environmental factors 617
        Strains of the fungus 618
        Varietal susceptibility of apple 618
        Pycnia 619
        Aecia 620
        Germination of aeciospores 621
The disease caused by *Gymnosporangium globosum* 623
  Symptoms 623
    On cedar 623
    On quince 624
    On pear 624
    On Crataegus 626
  Etiology 627
    Nomenclature 627
    Life history 627
      Telial stage 628
        Development of telial horns 628
      Aecial stage 629
        Aeciospore germination 629
        Inoculation of cedar trees 629
The disease caused by *Gymnosporangium clavipes* 631
  Symptoms 631
    On cedar 631
    On quince 631
    On Crataegus 633
  Etiology 635
    Nomenclature 635
    Life history 635
      Telial stage 635
        Development of telial sori 635
        Teliospore germination 637
      Aecial stage 638
Literature cited 640

THREE CEDAR RUST FUNGI

THEIR LIFE HISTORIES AND THE DISEASES THEY PRODUCE[1]

JAMES LEROY WEIMER

The three fungi considered in these investigations are *Gymnosporangium Juniperi-virginianae* Schw., *Gymnosporangium globosum* Farlow, and *Gymnosporangium clavipes* C. & P. Except for a discussion of the hosts concerned, the fungi, together with the diseases that they produce, are treated separately.

HOSTS

Certain species of the genus Juniperus on the one hand and various species of the family Rosaceae on the other, serve as hosts for the alternate stages in the life cycles of the fungi named above. In the telial stage all three species occur on *Juniperus virginiana* L. Kern (1911)[2] reports *G. Juniperi-virginianae* and *G. globosum* also on *J. barbadensis* L., and *G. clavipes* on *J. communis* L. Several horticultural varieties of *J. virginiana* are also known to be hosts. In this discussion, however, only *J. virginiana* will be considered as the telial host since it is the only species common in central New York State, in which locality the investigations were made.

In their aecial stage these fungi occur on certain closely related members of the family Rosaceae. Among these are the cultivated and the wild varieties of apple (*Pyrus malus* L.) and crab apple (*Pyrus coronaria* L.), quince (*Cydonia vulgaris* Pers.), pear (*Pyrus communis* L.), June berry (*Amelanchier* spp.), mountain ash (*Sorbus* spp.), and numerous species of Crataegus.[3]

---

[1] Also presented to the Faculty of the Graduate School of Cornell University, May, 1916, as a major thesis in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of doctor of philosophy.

AUTHOR'S ACKNOWLEDGMENTS. Grateful acknowledgment for assistance and suggestions is made to Professor H. H. Whetzel; to Dr. V. B. Stewart for help and criticism in preparation of the manuscript; and especially to Dr. Donald Reddick, under whose immediate direction the work was performed.

[2] Dates in parenthesis refer to *Literature cited*, page 640.

[3] For a more complete list of hosts see Kern (1911).

THE DISEASE CAUSED BY GYMNOSPORANGIUM JUNIPERI-VIRGINIANAE

The disease caused by the fungus *Gymnosporangium Juniperi-virginianae* is generally known as *cedar rust*, although the galls are referred to as *cedar apples* or, more rarely, as *cedar flowers*. The term *apple rust* is most commonly applied to the aecial stage. Other names, such as *leaf rust*, *stem rust*, *fruit rust*, and *orchard rust*, are sometimes used to designate this disease.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

The fungus is native to North America and has never been reported elsewhere so far as the writer has knowledge. Although it had already been known for a long time, it received but little attention prior to the work of Farlow in 1880. During the last decade, numerous investigations have been conducted bearing on the life history of the organism and on methods of control of the disease on the apple.

The apple rust stage is widely distributed throughout the eastern half of the United States wherever cedar and apple occur together.[4]

ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE

Owing to the fact that cedar trees occur in considerable numbers in but few States, apple rust has become of great economic importance only in certain localities. In some of the Southern States, where cedars grow in close proximity to the orchards, the disease causes an annual loss aggregating several thousand dollars, and there is considerable evidence that it is becoming more destructive each year. Pammel (1905) had never observed this rust on cultivated apples in Iowa prior to 1905. Emerson (1905), speaking of conditions in Nebraska, G. E. Stone (1911) in Massachusetts, and Giddings and Neal (1912) in West Virginia, state that the disease is becoming more serious each year. Stewart (1910) records several outbreaks in New York State, but says that the disease is rarely of much economic importance. R. E. Stone (1908) in Alabama, and Reed and Crabill (1915) in Virginia, list this as the most serious disease of apples in their respective States. In central New York the disease is very common on wild species of apple but is seldom found on cultivated varieties. The writer had two orchards under observation during the seasons of 1914 and 1915, one of which contained numerous cedar trees that were affected with *G. Juniperi-virginianae*, *G. globosum*, and *G. clavipes*, while the other was only about a half mile distant from a cedar grove that was severely infested with these three species of rust fungi. No affected apple leaves or fruit were found in either orchard. A few affected leaves and two affected apples were found in the Cornell University orchard in 1914.

---

[4] For limits of geographical distribution see Kern (1911).

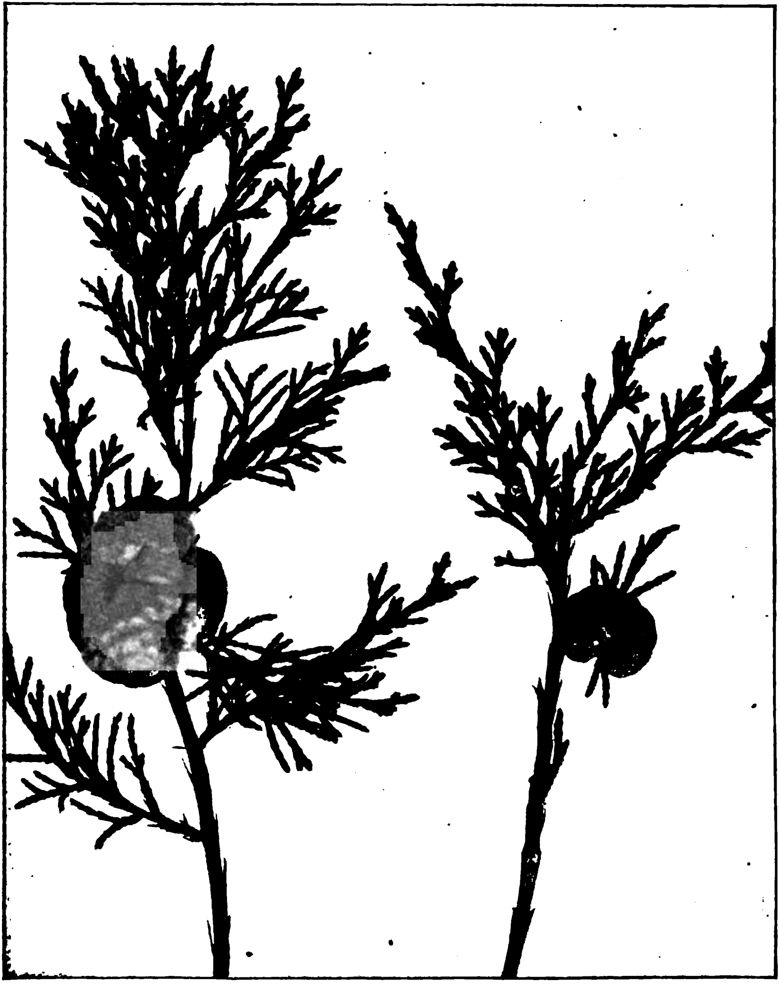


FIG. 136. GALLS OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM JUNIPERI-VIRGINIANAE
The galls are in the winter condition and show the depressions from which the telial horns protrude in the following spring

NATURE OF LOSSES

Although the greatest loss from this rust occurs on the apple, cedar trees also may be materially injured. The injury to apple trees caused by the disease is largely due to premature defoliation and to a reduction in the vital activities of the less seriously affected leaves. Premature defoliation year after year greatly reduces the vigor of the trees and death may finally result. Reed, Cooley, and Crabill (1914) state that where the disease is severe for several years in succession the trees make but little growth, become much weakened, and are more subject to attacks of insects and of other fungi. Another source of loss is due to the deformation of the affected fruit, such fruit in most cases being unsatisfactory for

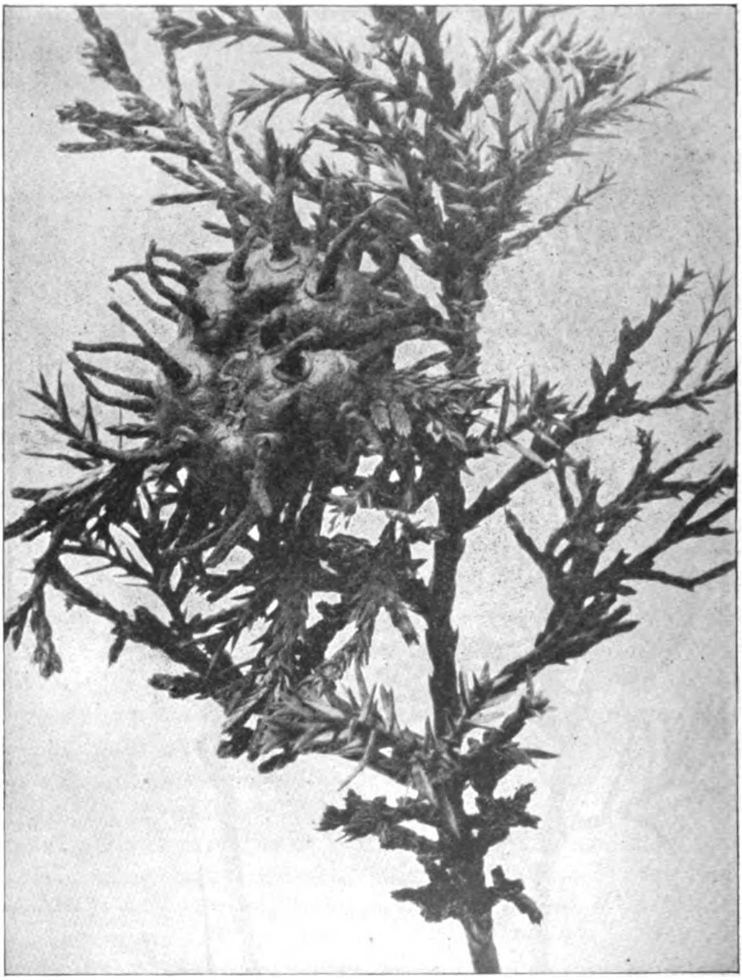


FIG. 137. TELIAL HORNS OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM JUNIPERI-VIRGINIANAE
The telial horns are shown as they appear after one gelatinization period

market. The young twigs may also become affected[5] and die; in many such cases death of a tree may ensue before it reaches bearing age.

SYMPTOMS

On cedar

On the cedar tree the first evidence of the disease caused by *G. Juniperi-virginianae* is a minute greenish swelling on the leaf, usually noticeable first on its upper, or inner, surface. The affected part of the leaf enlarges rapidly and becomes gradually darker in color, and by the last of September a nearly full-grown cedar apple is formed. At this time the gall is greenish brown in color, from globose to reniform in shape, and of a diameter varying from two millimeters to five centimeters. In New York State the slight pit-like depressions in the outer surface of the gall appear about October 1 (fig. 136). In the following spring the telial horns protrude from the depressions. These horns are golden brown in color and cylindric-acuminate in shape (fig. 137). During warm spring rains they gelatinize and enlarge about two to three times (fig. 138). Later the galls die, but often they remain attached to the cedar tree for a year or more.

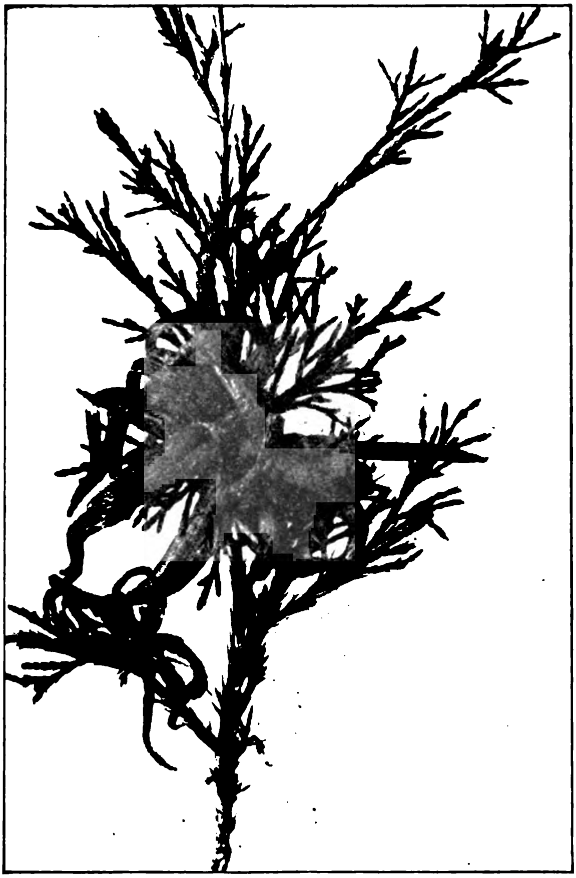


FIG. 138. GALL OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM JUNIPERI-VIRGINIANAE
The telial horns are shown as fully gelatinized

---

[5] Twig infections of a wild variety of apple were very common at Ithaca, New York, during the summer of 1914.

On apple

On the leaves

The first evidence of infection by *G. Juniperi-virginianae* on the apple leaf is the appearance of very small greenish yellow spots about one-half millimeter in diameter. These spots gradually enlarge and the color changes to orange-yellow often bordered by concentric red bands (fig. 139).

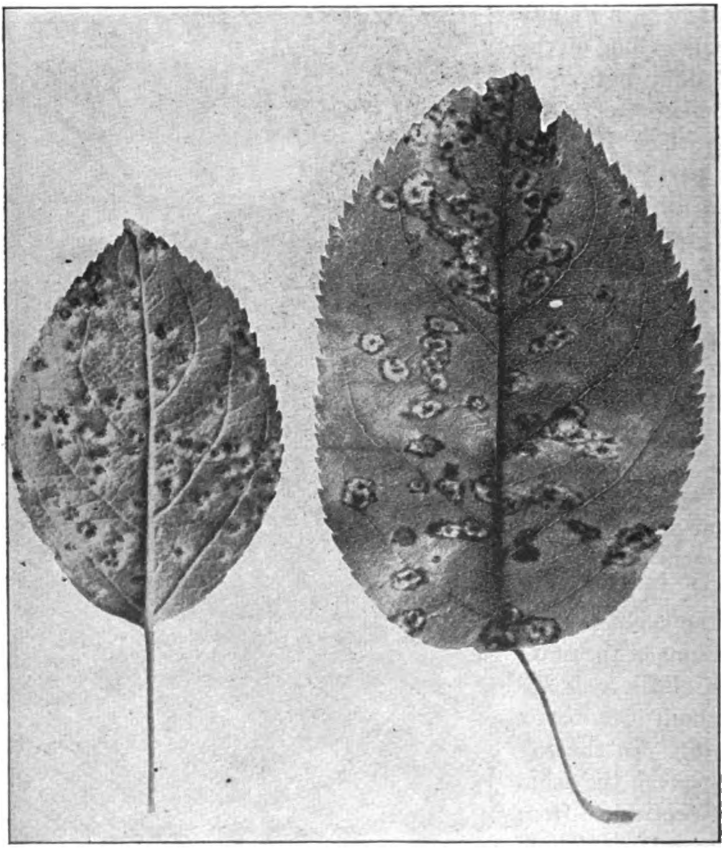


FIG. 139. APPLE LEAVES AFFECTED WITH GYMNOSPORANGIUM JUNIPERI-VIRGINIANAE
The characteristic lesions of the rust are shown on both sides of the leaves

In these lesions minute yellow pycnia soon appear, which vary in number according to the size of the affected area. After a few days the pycnia exude droplets of a yellow, sweetish substance, and soon afterward they turn black. The underside of the lesion becomes hypertrophied about this time and the aecia soon appear. These may be arranged in a circle near the margin of the swollen area or they may be scattered over the lesion.

On the fruit

The lesions on the fruit are similar to those on the leaves except that normally they are larger and bear a larger number of aecia (fig. 140). The spots are yellow and wrinkled, and as a rule are confined to the blossom end of the fruit although they may occur on the sides or on the stem end. Affected apples may be dwarfed and deformed.

On the twigs

In apples of very susceptible varieties twigs of the current year's growth may be severely affected by the rust. Infection takes place early in the season. The twig does not elongate, but it increases in diameter, and as a result a short, thick, stubby twig is produced in which pycnia and aecia are formed in abundance. Seriously affected twigs die at the end of the season.

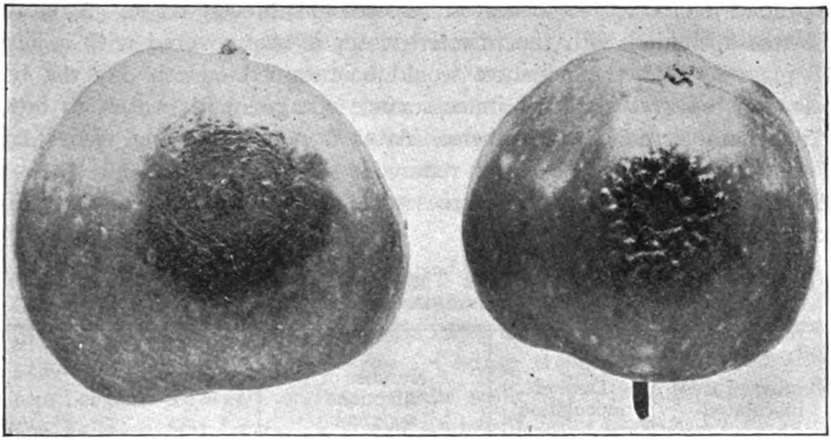


FIG. 140. APPLE FRUIT AFFECTED BY GYMNOSPORANGIUM JUNIPERI-VIRGINIANAE
The apple on the right shows the aecia protruding from the surface, while the apple on the left shows only pycnia

ETIOLOGY

Nomenclature

The cedar fungus was first named *Gymnosporangium Juniperi-virginianae* by Schweinitz in 1822. In 1825 it was named *G. macropus* by Link, but *G. Juniperi-virginianae* is considered the accepted name.

Life history

Telial stage

Inoculation of cedar.— According to Kern (1911), Plowright was the first to infect cedar trees with a rust fungus. On June 25, 1884, he inoculated a small one-year-old juniper seedling, about 2.5 centimeters high, with

G. clavariaeforme (Jacq.) DC. Evidence of infection was apparent on July 1 but the tree died before any spores were formed. In another instance Plowright inoculated a tree 3 decimeters high and spores were produced one year from the following spring, showing that nearly two years are necessary for the completion of the life cycle of the fungus. Heald (1909) failed to obtain infection in cedars with *G. Juniperi-virginianae.*

Each summer for the past three years, small cedar trees growing in the greenhouse have been inoculated by the writer. The methods used in making the inoculations were for the most part those employed by Kern (1911) in infecting aecial hosts. Aeciospores were scraped from an affected apple leaf into tap water, and the suspension of spores thus obtained was sprayed on a cedar tree with an atomizer. Other affected leaves were suspended over the tree so that the spores fell directly on it. After the tree was sprinkled with the infected water it was covered with a large bell glass so that the moisture would be retained. Each day the bell glass was removed and the inner surface sprayed with water, in order to maintain a moist atmosphere. After a period varying from forty to sixty hours the bell glass was removed.

In the autumn of 1914 five trees were thus inoculated. The results are recorded in table 1:

TABLE 1. INOCULATION OF CEDAR TREES WITH SPORES OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM JUNIPERI-VIRGINIANAE IN 1914

Number of trees inoculated	Date of inoculation	Number of infections apparent	Fungus
3	July 25	1, on July 30, 1915*	*G. Juniperi-virginianae*
1	September 8	No infection	*G. Juniperi-virginianae*
1	September 27	No infection	*G. Juniperi-virginianae*

* See discussion of this case in the text, page 517.

All the inoculated trees were examined carefully on November 6, 1914, but no sign of infection was evident. In one case certain parts of several leaves were yellowish green in color, closely resembling infected leaves, but there was no further development and the leaves finally died. On July 26, 1914, two cedar trees which had been inoculated with *G. Juniperi-virginianae* the previous autumn showed certain leaves that appeared to be infected. Leaves on different stems showed yellow discolorations, while the other leaves were of the normal green color. Although the leaves with the discolored spots died without showing further evidence of infection, it is possible that the fungus was more virulent under these conditions and killed the leaves without showing any signs of gall development. None of the foliage on the check trees showed the yellow discoloration.

On July 30, 1915, a small cedar apple was found on a cedar tree that had been inoculated on July 25, 1914, by suspending over the tree the fruit of an apple infected with *G. Juniperi-virginianae.* When first observed this gall was one millimeter in diameter, globose, and green in color. It appeared to be developing from the upper, or inner, side of a small scale leaf. This tree was brought into the greenhouse in the early spring of 1914 and all cedar apples were removed. It was carefully examined again on April 10, 1915, for any signs of cedar apples and none were found. That this gall could have been the result of natural infection before the tree was removed to the greenhouse seems impossible, since in that case it would have developed in the previous year. The gall was undoubtedly that of *G. Juniperi-virginianae*, as is evident by its method of origin, its color (at first green and later turning to the characteristic brown), and its surface character. By October 1 it had doubled in size, and spores were produced in February of 1916. Apparently the gall resulted from the inoculation. It is, however, impossible to determine this point absolutely.

Susceptibility of individual trees.— Observations made during the past three years seem to indicate that individual cedar trees show a difference in susceptibility. Some may be severely affected while others are practically free from the disease. Certain trees produce a considerable number of *G. Juniperi-virginianae* galls, while others bear almost exclusively the galls caused by *G. globosum*, and still other trees may be affected severely by *G. clavipes.* Furthermore, some of the trees may have all three species present in great abundance, but usually a tree is attacked primarily by a single species.

There is a wide variation in the number of cedar galls of *G. Juniperi-virginianae* produced from year to year. This variation usually depends on the abundance of the alternate stage in the preceding year. This is not always true, however, since favorable infection weather may not prevail at the time when infection of the cedar would naturally occur. In the summer of 1914 an abundance of the aecial stage of all three species was produced, and a corresponding increase in the number of cedar apples was apparent in the fall of 1915. There is less fluctuation in the case of *G. globosum* and *G. clavipes*, since these forms are perennial.

Infection period.— It is generally accepted that infection of the cedar may occur with the production of the first mature aeciospores, and continue throughout the season. During the seasons of 1915 and 1916 the aeciospores matured about August 1 in New York State. Many workers have had difficulty in germinating these spores, and for that reason Reed and Crabill (1915) have advanced the theory that a rest period is necessary and that the aeciospores do not germinate until the spring following their dispersal. It is probable that the mycelium develops within the tissue of the cedar for a period of several months after infection occurs, before any material change is noticeable. The galls first make their appearance in the latter part of July and continue to grow rapidly until late autumn, when they are practically mature.

Mycelium and haustoria.— Prior to the formation of telial horns, the mycelium is distributed throughout the gall, where it occupies the intercellular spaces. The entire leaf from which the gall originates is permeated with mycelium even before much hypertrophy or other change becomes evident. The mycelial cells vary in length and the septa are often difficult to locate. This fact undoubtedly accounts for the mistake of Sanford (1888) in thinking that no cross walls exist. The binucleated condition can readily be demonstrated. The hyphae vary in width but average about 2.5 μ.

Haustoria are present, but not abundantly in the young galls. Reed and Crabill (1915) give a detailed account of the formation of haustoria. They were able to find only the very early stages in the autumn, and believe that mature haustoria are not developed until just preceding teliospore formation in the spring.

Development of telial horns.— About the first of October or later, depending on the season, aggregates of mycelium are developed in certain areas, forming typical stromatic layers. The host cells in these regions are often completely insulated and very small. The rapidly forming mycelium inhibits the growth of the host cells in its midst, but the adjoining cells continue to multiply and enlarge so that a depression results. From these stromatic layers the teliospore stalks arise. Sections of galls collected early in December, 1915, show the spore stalks and the immature spores in abundance. The spores are cut off from the tips of the short stalk-cells by septa, and almost simultaneously become two-celled. The young spores contain two nuclei in each cell, but these fuse when the spores reach maturity.

In 1915 the more advanced galls showed the telial depressions about October 1. No further change was noticed until early in the following spring, when the telial horns pushed out from the depressions and continued to develop for some time. The telial horns consist of a vast number of spores borne on much elongated pedicels. They are first formed beneath the epidermal tissue, and when warm weather begins the pedicels elongate and carry the spores out with them. In 1914 the telial horns began to make their appearance about the middle of April, and mature spores were present on April 25 but gelatinization did not take place until May 5. In 1915 the epidermis was broken open about April 15 and the first gelatinization took place on May 8.

An experiment was conducted to determine whether or not the telial horns are capable of gelatinization as soon as they emerge from the gall. A cedar apple with horns not more than one millimeter in length was placed in a glass beaker containing water. Within less than half an hour the horns had swollen to twice their original size. Apparently the spore stalks are capable of gelatinization as soon as they have ruptured the epidermis of the gall, but an attempt to germinate the spores at this time failed.

The telial horns may become from 2 to 20 millimeters in length by 1.5 to 3 millimeters in width before the first gelatinization takes place. At this time the telial horns are cylindric-acuminate in shape. They are golden brown in color and are evenly distributed over the surface of the gall. With the first warm spring rains after the horns are protruded, they enlarge to as much as three times their original size. The horns during this period are of a jelly-like consistency and are much lighter in color than before, due to the fact that there is less coloring matter in the gelatinous spore-stalks than in the spores. With the return of drier conditions the horns regain approximately their original size. The tips of these protrusions usually dry down more than the remainder, and are often of a hard consistency. After each succeeding rain one-half hour or more in duration, gelatinization may occur, and this may be repeated as many as fifteen or twenty times. Nevertheless, some of these periods may not be of sufficient duration to permit the spores to germinate. In 1914 the first gelatinization took place on May 5, and after the horns had dried it was noted that for nearly one-fourth of their length from the apex to the base they were lighter-colored and much firmer in consistency than before gelatinization. After the rain period of May 21 about one-half of the horn was lighter-colored, and after the rain on June 5 only a small area at the base retained its original color and its ability to gelatinize. This basal part became swollen on two subsequent occasions, a smaller part each time, until finally the horn was light in color throughout and became detached from the gall on July 1.

A microscopical examination of the part of the horns which assumed a lighter color showed that approximately fifty per cent of the spores had germinated. It has been observed also that the spore stalks of germinated spores are unable to gelatinize. They become dry and hard, so that when they are teased apart and examined the empty spore walls are generally broken from their stalks or only short pedicels remain. It would seem from the foregoing observations that the horn becomes lighter in color and hard progressively from the apex to the base, and also that the spores at the apex are older, mature earlier, and germinate more readily than those at the base. Reed and Crabill (1915) are of the opinion that the teliospores on the outside of the tentacle germinate first and shrivel away, and then those on the interior of the tentacle come to the surface and germinate in their turn. The writer's observations show that, although the spores over the entire surface of the horn germinate, those at the apex germinate more readily. These observations agree with those of Wōrnle (1894), who states that the spores at the apex are the oldest.

Teliospore germination.— The time of spore germination varies with the season. In 1914 and 1915 the spores were mature about April 25. Tests made show that the spores will not germinate as soon as the horns rupture the epidermis of the gall. Weather conditions are an important factor, and as much as two weeks may intervene before germination occurs. When cedar apples with telial horns that were just emerging were brought into the laboratory, the spores germinated after about seven days.

The teliospores are characteristically two-celled, but occasionally one-celled and three-celled spores are found (fig. 141, A). They range in width from 15 to 22 μ and in length from 33 to 65 μ.[6] The spore is narrowly ellipsoidal to rhombic oval in shape. It is slightly or not at all constricted at the septum. The wall is cinnamon brown in color and averages about 1 μ in thickness. The pedicels are thin and of equal diameter throughout, varying in width from 3 to 5 μ for different spores. There are two germ pores in each cell of the spore, one on each side of the cell near the septum. Spore germination is of the usual rust type, resulting in the formation of a promycelium bearing four basidiospores (fig. 141, B).

Heald (1909) found that under favorable conditions the promycelium and basidiospores may be produced in from twelve to twenty-four hours; Coons (1912) states that the process of developing germ tubes requires from six to fifteen hours; while Reed and Crabill (1915) found four hours to be the minimum time for germination. The writer has obtained mature basidiospores within less than three hours under optimum conditions; in fact, under such conditions from three to four hours is the usual time required.

The most satisfactory germination of teliospores was obtained from spores placed on a clean slide in a film of tap water. The slide was placed in a petri dish, which contained a small quantity of water to prevent too rapid evaporation from the slide. On one occasion a spore taken from a telial horn just brought in from the field on a clear day and germinating under the conditions described above, had formed a small bud-like process at the end of one hour; after two and one-half hours the promycelium had continued its development and the septa were visible; by the end of three and one-half hours the basidiospores were formed. Instances have been noted in which the spores germinated and the basidiospores were present within less than three hours.

---

[6] Spore measurements were made in all cases with an oil-immersion lens, using fresh spores mounted in water.

One of the important factors affecting spore germination is the amount of moisture. Blackman (1903) discusses this subject in some detail. He used spores of other species of rust, placing some in hanging drops and some on slides in petri dishes. He found that those in hanging drops developed long germ tubes and formed no basidiospores until they had grown through the drop into the air, which rarely happened. The others formed basidiospores and a characteristic promycelium at once. Blackman concludes that the presence or absence of air is the determining factor, as this varies with the water supply.

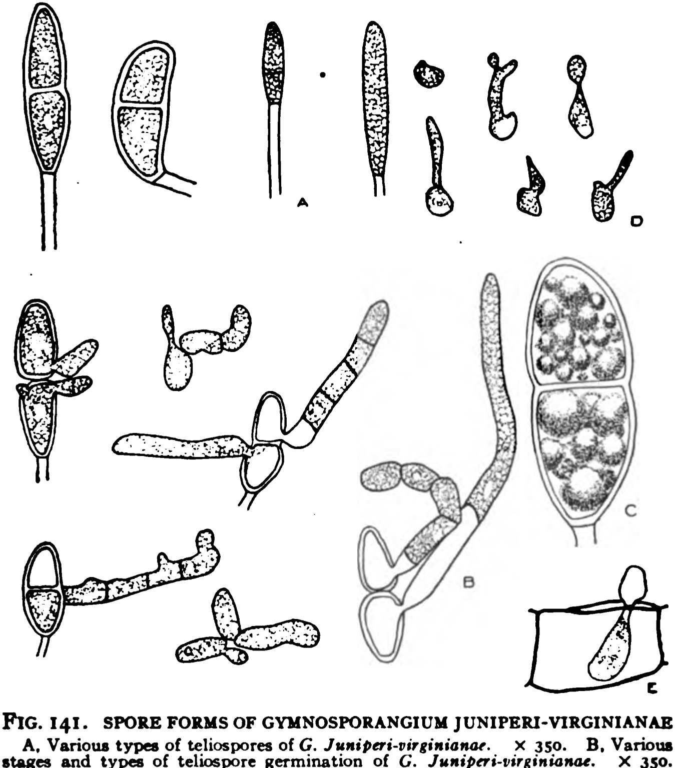


FIG. 141. SPORE FORMS OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM JUNIPERI-VIRGINIANAE
A, Various types of teliospores of *G. Juniperi-virginianae.* × 350. B, Various stages and types of teliospore germination of *G. Juniperi-virginianae.* × 350. C, Teliospore of *G. Juniperi-virginianae*, showing the appearance of the cell contents when incubated at 30° C. for four hours. × 375. D, Various stages of basidiospore germination of *G. Juniperi-virginianae.* × 350. E, Penetration of a basidiospore of *G. Juniperi-virginianae* directly through the wall of an epidermal cell. × 350

It has often been observed by the writer that teliospores germinating on a slide produce only long tubes when covered with water, but when there is only a small amount of water present the usual promycelium and basidiospores are formed. An attempt was made to germinate teliospores in a saturated atmosphere without permitting the spores to come into contact with other moisture than that in the atmosphere. This attempt failed, but in cases in which the air became supersaturated, and small droplets condensed on the slide, germination was obtained.

Temperature is another factor that plays a large part in spore germination. Reed and Crabill (1915) found that 15° C. was the optimum temperature for spore germination and 11.5° C. was the minimum. The upper thermal death point was 30° C.; the lower thermal death point was not determined, but it was much below freezing.

Considerable work has been done by the writer in an attempt to determine the most favorable temperature conditions for germination with the three rust species studied. For the first of these experiments the following method was used: Telial horns were placed in a watch glass in tap water and teased apart until several spores could be obtained in each drop of water. Suspensions of spores thus prepared were placed on slides in petri dishes and allowed to germinate at different temperatures. It was found after several trials that spores which had been broken entirely free from the horn or were isolated from all other spores did not germinate so readily as did those that remained clinging in groups. After repeated trials it was found that a better indication of spore germination could be obtained by placing a telial horn, or a part of one, on a slide. In this way more nearly normal conditions were maintained, but the larger number of spores made it impossible to estimate the percentage of germination except in a comparative way. In the case of *G. Juniperi-virginianae* an entire telial horn was placed on a slide, and often horns from the same gall were used in a series of tests. In the case of the other two species only parts of the horns were used. The quantity of basidiospores lying along the side of the horn on the slide was often used as a guide in estimating the relative amount of germination. Observations were usually made every hour, and the rate of germination for the entire period was considered in making the final comparisons.

The extremes found for all three species were practically the same as those found by Reed and Crabill (1915) for *G. Juniperi-virginianae*, the lowest temperature at which germination occurred being 7° C. and the highest 29° C., with the upper thermal death point 30° C. (fig. 142). The optimum temperature, however, as shown by these experiments, ranges from 22° to 25° C., the best germination taking place at from 23° to 24° C. These experiments were run in triplicate and were repeated on several occasions throughout the season, so that some temperatures were tried at least twelve times. In all cases the results obtained were uniform. Reed and Crabill (1915) found that a temperature above 20° C. greatly retarded the development of basidiospores and that no spores were produced when the temperature was above 24° C. In the writer's experiments an abundance of basidiospores were obtained at a temperature ranging from 22° to 25° C., and there were some at 26° C. After incubating at 30° C. no spores germinated, even when placed under optimum conditions. The oily contents of the spores coalesced into large drops, giving the appearance shown in figure 141, c (page 521). The normal variation is relatively great in tests of this kind, but the experiments were repeated a sufficient number of times to make the observations comparatively conclusive.

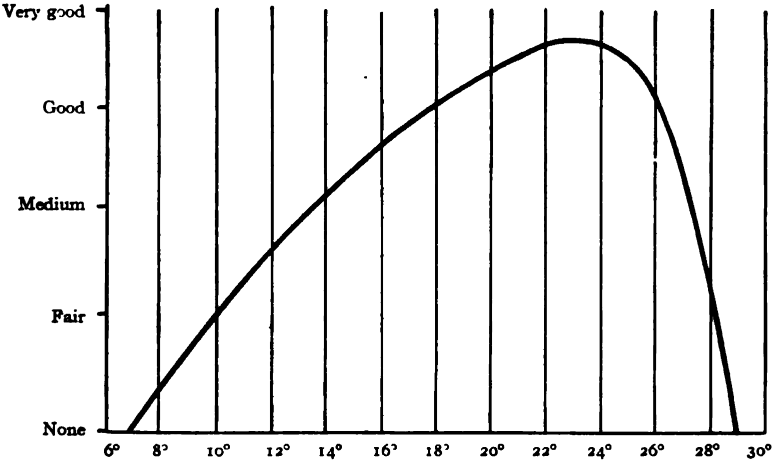


FIG. 142. INFLUENCE OF TEMPERATURE ON GERMINATION OF RUST SPORES
The curve shows that the best germination of teliospores occurred at a temperature between 22° and 24° C.

When conditions are unfavorable for germination a long germ tube may be formed or a bud-like process may take the place of a promycelium. Again, the promycelium may break up into four parts, each of which may then form a basidiospore or may germinate by a germ tube. The cells of the promycelium may germinate by germ tubes without breaking apart, or other uncommon methods of germination may occur. These abnormal conditions of germination are usually found where an overabundance of moisture is present or where the temperature is somewhat lower than the optimum.

Dissemination of basidiospores.— When the basidiospores reach maturity they are forcibly discharged from their sterigmata. With the beam-of-light method the falling of basidiospores was observed by the writer in the same manner as is described by Buller (1909) and later by Coons

(1912). An experiment was set up in which the discharge of basidiospores began at half past six o'clock in the evening of one day and continued until after ten o'clock the next forenoon — although at that time the rate of discharge was much slower. Evidently the dispersal of basidiospores can continue for some time after a period of rainfall if slow-drying conditions prevail. In observing the process under the microscope an abrupt sidewise movement of the basidiospore was always noticed several seconds previous to its discharge, and almost simultaneously a bubble appeared at its base.

The basidiospore farthest from the spore is the first to be formed, followed by the others in their respective order. The outermost spore is discharged first, followed by the next in order. Only about one minute elapses between the disappearance of the apical basidiospore and the one nearest it, but a much longer period elapses before the last two are discharged. Often the terminal basidiospore is mature before the sterigma of the basidiospore nearest the spore is even formed. This method of discharge readily accounts for the wide dissemination of basidiospores by air currents.

Germination of basidiospores.— Farlow (1886), Crabill (1913), and Reed and Crabill (1915), have contributed to the knowledge of secondary basidiospore formation. The basidiospore normally germinates by the development of one or more, rarely two, germ tubes from the side of the spore. Under certain conditions, instead of a germ tube a sterigma similar to those formed on the promycelium is put forth, and on the end of this a secondary basidiospore is produced. This secondary spore is identical in appearance with its parent except that it is somewhat smaller. Various stages of basidiospore germination are seen in figure 141, D (page 613). The chief factor influencing the production of the secondary spore is an excess of moisture.

Two cedar apples, one caused by *G. Juniperi-virginianae* and the other by *G. globosum*, with horns protruded, were subjected for twelve hours to a fine mist from a spray nozzle attached to a water tap. The temperature of the room was 23° C. and that of the water about 8° C. When the material was examined it was found that a large number of the spores had germinated abnormally, and that the basidiospores which were formed had already germinated by means of secondary spores. It is impossible to determine whether or not the excess moisture was the only cause of this abnormal germination, since the temperature factor may also have been of importance.

Aecial stage

Inoculation and infection of apple.— The first basidiospores are usually disseminated in the spring about the time when the buds of the aecial hosts open, though some may be formed previous to this time. Infection usually occurs on the dorsal surface of apple leaves. The germ tube penetrates the epidermis and the pathogene becomes established within the tissues of the host.

In these inoculation experiments a suspension of basidiospores in tap water was placed on various parts of both the upper and the lower surface of Wealthy apple leaves. After seven, fourteen, and twenty-one hours, respectively, parts of the leaves thus inoculated were removed, fixed, and embedded in paraffin. Several of these were later sectioned and examined. In one case, after a period of seven hours a germ tube of a basidiospore was found to have penetrated the lower epidermis directly and passed about two-thirds of the distance through the epidermal cell (fig. 141, E, page 613).

Several leaves from a small apple tree were inoculated by placing basidiospores in suspension on the foliage, with a camel's-hair brush. Some leaves were inoculated on the upper surface and others on the under surface. Infection was apparent after ten days on all the inoculated leaves. This demonstrates that infection can take place on either the upper or the lower surface of the leaf. In all cases, however, pycnia were produced only on the upper surface. Apparently, therefore, the production of pycnia on the upper surface of infected leaves is due, not to the fact that infection occurs there, but to some other factor. Pycnia have never been seen on the lower surface of leaves, although many aecia have been observed arising vertically from the upper surface.

In 1914, and also in 1915, the first evidence of infection in nature was found about June 1. The mycelium is similar to that found in the telial hosts except that it is uninucleate and only a limited area of the host tissue is invaded.

Effect of environmental factors.— It is evident that the amount of rust present in a given season will depend largely on weather conditions. Moisture is necessary for teliospore germination and for infection of the aecial host, and therefore the number of infection periods depends primarily on the number of rain periods.

An attempt was made in these experiments to determine the approximate amount of moisture necessary for infection of the aecial host. Cedar apples were immersed in tap water for a few minutes and were then placed under a bell glass. After about four hours, when an abundance of basidiospores were being discharged, the gall was suspended over a small apple seedling. A lamp chimney inclosed both the seedling and the gall. The seedling was not moistened. The cedar apple retained its moisture for a long time in this position, and the basidiospores formed a yellow coating over the surface of the leaves of the seedling within a few hours. After eighteen hours the chimney was removed, and ten days after inoculation abundant infection was evident on nearly all the leaves. This experiment was repeated several times and in each case the same results were obtained. Apparently sufficient moisture collected on the leaves from the water transpired and from that which evaporated from the telial horns to permit basidiospore germination and infection. A careful inspection failed to disclose any drops of water collected on the leaves inside the chimney.

Other experiments were attempted in which the lamp chimney containing the cedar apple was suspended over the apple tree so that the basidiospores fell on the tree but no opportunity was offered for the condensation of water on the leaves. No infection occurred under these conditions. This experiment was repeated on a large tree in the open. The basidiospores were allowed to fall on a few young leaves which were not inclosed within the chimney. On the night when the experiment was set up there was a heavy dew followed by forty-eight hours of precipitation. Abundant infection occurred and aecia were developed within the usual period of time.

From these experiments it is evident that but little moisture is necessary for infection. There must be sufficient moisture to cause the telial horns to gelatinize and to keep them in that condition for a period of from four to five hours, followed by conditions of high humidity to furnish the necessary moisture for infection. This is contrary to the opinion of Reed and Crabill (1915), who state that infection takes place only in the presence of abundant moisture. It is not clear whether they mean to include the whole process of basidiospore formation and infection or only the latter, since they also make the statement that infections followed short periods of rainfall.

Strains of the fungus.— Since this disease is so destructive in West Virginia and Nebraska, specimens of cedar apples from each of these States were procured for the purpose of making comparative inoculation tests with the strain of the fungus found in the vicinity of Ithaca, New York. These specimens, obtained through the kindness of N. J. Giddings and E. M. Wilcox, were used to inoculate Wealthy apple trees in the open and apple seedlings in the greenhouse. Young leaves on different branches of each tree were inoculated with the three strains of fungi and their development was observed closely. Infection was apparent at exactly the same time in all cases and the development of the disease was identical in all particulars. In no case was there any evidence to show that one strain was more virulent than the others. The apples of West Virginia and of Nebraska may be more susceptible than those of central New York, which probably accounts for the fact that this disease is so destructive in the former States.

Varietal susceptibility of apple.— Numerous lists of susceptible and of resistant varieties of apples have been recorded by various writers. The most important of these are by Emerson (1905) in Nebraska, Chester (1896) in Delaware, R. E. Stone (1908) in Alabama, Smith and Stevens (1910) in North Carolina, Reed, Cooley, and Crabill (1914) in Virginia, and Giddings and Berg (1915) in West Virginia. Stewart (1910) says that in New York State the varieties Wealthy, Boiken, and Rome are very susceptible, Hubbardston and Sutton are slightly susceptible, and McIntosh, Yellow Transparent, Gravenstein, Red Astrachan, Oldenburg, and Baldwin are resistant. The writer has had no opportunity to make observations on the susceptibility of different varieties of apples, but the following have been artificially infected several times: Wealthy, Wagener, Twenty Ounce, Tompkins King, Alexander, Baldwin, Rome Beauty, Bietigheimer, Baxter, Boiken, Banana, Black Gilliflower, Dartmouth.

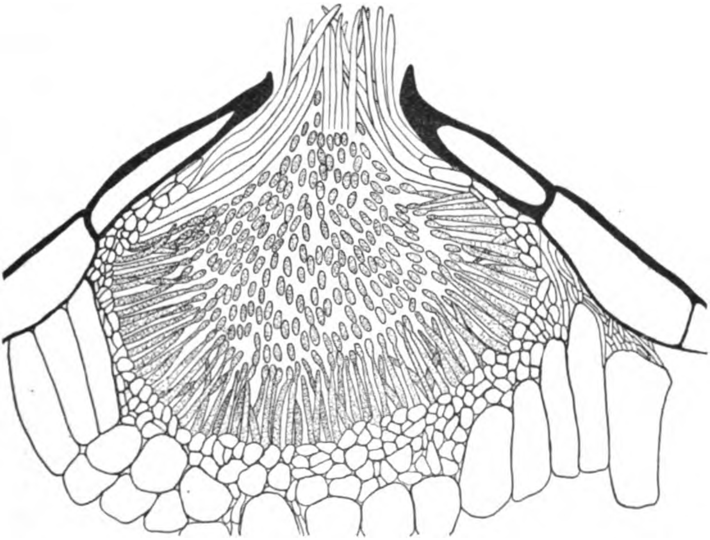


FIG. 143. PYCNIUM OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM GLOBOSUM IN CRATAEGUS LEAF. × 350

The variety Wealthy is considered especially susceptible, although Stewart and Carver (1896) state that it proved to be resistant in Iowa. Seedling apples are very susceptible when artificially inoculated.

Several specimens of Salome apples were received in the autumn of 1913 and a large rust lesion was present on the blossom end of each. This variety should probably be included with those listed as susceptible in New York State.

Pycnia.— The pycnia are the first fruiting bodies to appear in apple tissue attacked by the rust fungus. Masses of short-celled mycelium collect at certain points under the epidermis and form the flask-shaped pycnia of the usual rust type. Hyphal branches extend into the pycnial cavity and from the ends of these the pycnospores are abstricted (fig. 143).

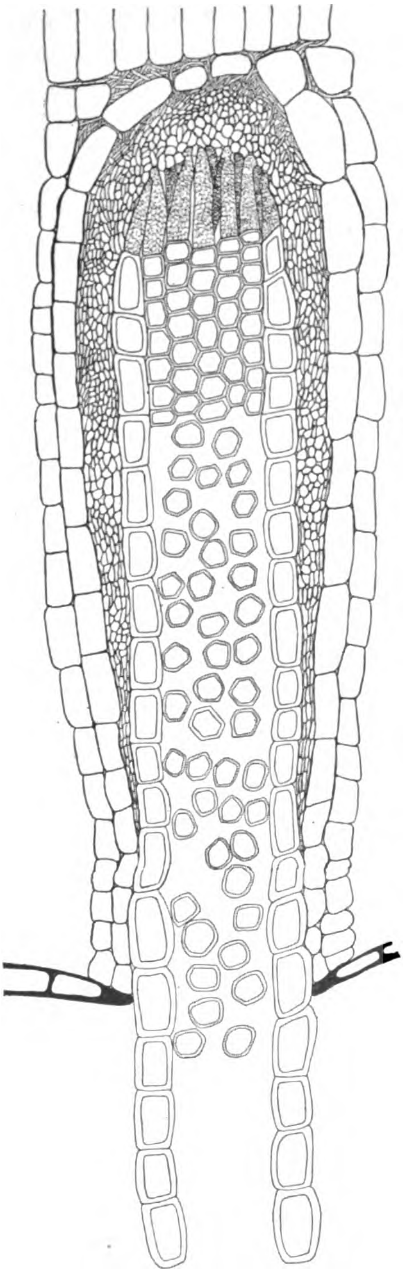


FIG. 144. AECIUM OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM GLOBOSUM IN CRATAEGUS LEAF.

Aecia.— From two to four weeks after the pycnia become visible, depending largely on weather conditions, the aecia begin to break out on the lower surface of the leaves or from among the pycnia on stems or fruit. In New York State the aecia usually begin to break open about the first of August.

The tissues from which these fruiting bodies arise may be considerably hypertrophied, the spongy parenchyma especially being modified. Many septate strands of mycelium collect beneath the surface in the diseased area and from these the aecia are finally developed. The aecia are formed entirely within the host, but as they mature they break through the inclosing tissue, the peridium soon dehisces, and the spores are then scattered.

The aecia in all cases are composed of the inclosing pseudoparenchyma, the fertile spore-bearing stalks, and the aeciospores surrounded by the single layer of peridial cells (fig. 144). The aecia spores are binucleate and measure 16 to 24 μ by 21 to 31 μ. The spore wall varies in color from yellow to brown. When dehiscence occurs the peridium splits longitudinally between practically each row of cells. The ends of the cells remain attached, forming long strands which are one or more cells wide by several cells long. The individual cells are comparatively long and narrow, measuring 10 to 16 μ by 65 to 100 μ; they become much recurved when moist. The side walls are sparsely rugose with ridges extending the entire distance across. The aeciospores drop out of the aecia as they mature, and are carried by the wind to cedar trees where they initiate the telial stage.

Germination of aeciospores.— Many investigators have experienced great difficulty in germinating aeciospores. Heald (1909) states that he succeeded in germinating them previous to the first of October, after which time only one or two per cent germinated. Reed and Crabill (1915) found it impossible to germinate them except for an occasional germ tube, which seemed to be in a very weakened condition. Numerous trials made by the writer indicate that only a small proportion of these spores are capable of germination.

TABLE 2. RESULTS OF AECIOSPORE GERMINATION TESTS OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM JUNIPERI-VIRGINIANAE IN 1915

Number of slides	Date	Cultural solution	Temperature	Method	Percentage of germination
5	August 5	0.2 per cent cane sugar and cedar leaf	24° C.	Spores on dry slide, culture solution added	1
1	August 5	0.2 per cent cane sugar	24° C.	Spores on dry slide, culture solution added	75
1	August 5	0.2 per cent cane sugar	24° C.	Spores on dry slide, culture solution added	25
3	August 5	0.2 per cent cane sugar	24° C.	Spores on dry slide, culture solution added	0
5	August 5	Tap water	24° C.	Spores on dry slide, culture solution added	1
2	August 5	0.2 per cent cane sugar	24° C.	Spores shaken on slide, culture solution sprayed in fine droplets on slide	0
5	August 5	0.2 per cent cane sugar	24° C.	Spores shaken on slide, small drop of solution added	0
5	August 5	0.2 per cent cane sugar	24° C.	Large drop of solution placed on slide, spores allowed to fall on solution	2 spores on each slide
2	September 29	Tap water	22° C.	Suspension of spores	0
1	September 29	Tap water	23° C.	Suspension of spores	0
1	September 29	Tap water	26° C.	Suspension of spores	0
4	September 29	Tap water	15° C.	Suspension of spores	0
2	August 28	Tap water	23° C.	Spores shaken on dry slide, then placed in moist chamber	0

The method used in this work was practically the same as that recorded for the germination of teliospores. Water and a cane-sugar solution were used as culture media, to which, on various occasions, cedar leaves were added. In some cases the spores were shaken directly on the slide in order to obtain only mature spores, while in other preparations the aecia were placed on the slide and crushed, thus liberating all the spores present. The quantity of culture solution was varied, and in some cases the spores were first placed on the slide and the culture media was then added, while in other cases the spores were allowed to fall onto the surface of the culture solution.

The results of these experiments are recorded in table 2. Apparently a small proportion of aeciospores germinate under artificial conditions. Some of the spores used in the experiments were obtained from naturally infected and others from artificially infected leaves. The presence of cedar leaves in the culture media did not influence the germination of the spores.

Other germination tests were made with spores used for inoculating cedar trees, but only a few spores germinated. Hanging-drop mounts were employed in some cases not recorded, but these yielded no better results.

THE DISEASE CAUSED BY GYMNOSPORANGIUM GLOBOSUM

The disease caused by the fungus *Gymnosporangium globosum* is commonly known as *cedar rust*, *Crataegus rust*, or *pear rust*, depending on the stage referred to. The pathogene is native to North America and was first studied carefully by Farlow (1880). It is widely distributed throughout the eastern section of the United States, where it causes a rust of various species of Crataegus. The disease is of little economic importance, although on rare occasions the fungus attacks pears and quinces (Stewart, 1910).

SYMPTOMS

On cedar

The galls produced by this species are similar in appearance to those caused by *G. Juniperi-virginianae*. The gall produced by *G. globosum*, as the name would indicate, is usually globose in shape and is not so large as the gall caused by *G. Juniperi-virginianae*. The surface of the young gall in early autumn is smooth except for the shreds of the old leaf which cling to it. It approaches mahogany red in color, in contrast to the greenish brown of the *G. Juniperi-virginianae* gall. Instead of the pit-like depressions on the surface, the galls pro-

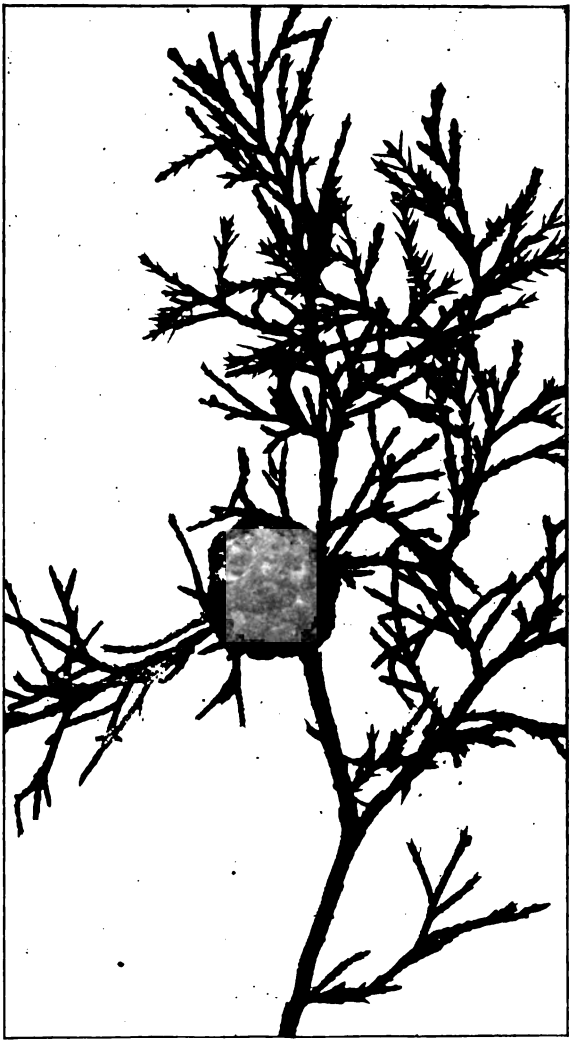


FIG. 145. CEDAR APPLE CAUSED BY GYMNOSPORANGIUM GLOBOSUM. WINTER CONDITION

duced by *G. globosum* have small elevated areas, or mounds (fig. 145). From these raised areas the telial horns appear in the following spring.

The telial horns are wedged-shaped and are chestnut brown in color (fig. 146). Scars of the horns of former seasons are often apparent between the horns on old galls. When the warm spring rains occur, the protrusions gelatinize and enlarge to about double their normal size (fig. 147). These horns dry and drop off at the end of the fruiting season, but the galls may continue to live and bear spores for several seasons. The old galls turn brown and become roughened on the surface due to the scars of the telial horns.

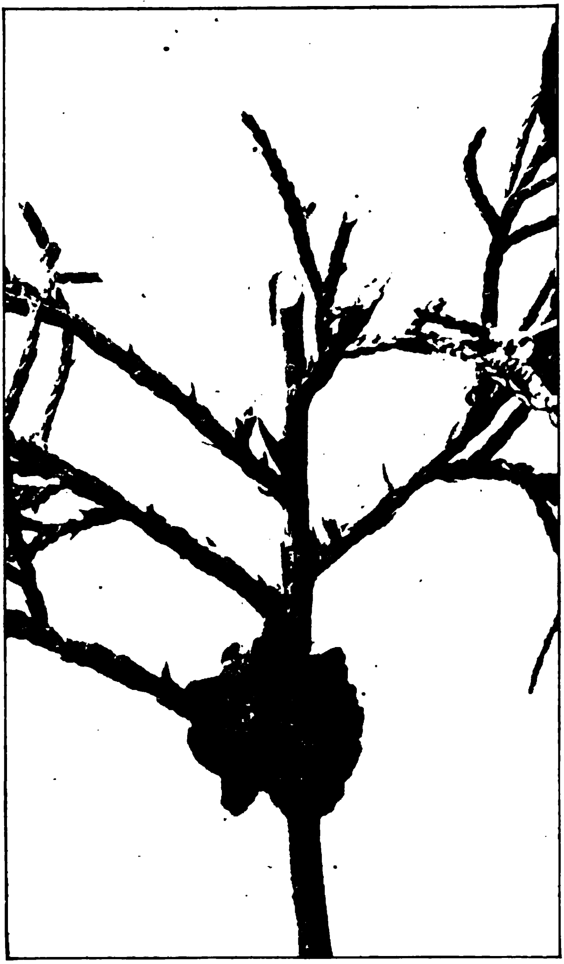


FIG. 146. GALL CAUSED BY GYMNOSPORANGIUM GLOBOSUM
The typical telial horns are shown prior to gelatinization

On quince

A yellow spot, such as characterizes the lesions caused by *G. Juniperi-virginianae* on the apple leaf, is formed by *G. globosum* on quince foliage. The pycnia and the aecia are likewise formed on the upper and the lower surface of the leaf, respectively. To all external appearances the symptoms are the same as those described for *G. Juniperi-virginianae* on apple foliage.

On pear

Stewart (1910) states that infected spots on the upper surface of pear leaves are dark brown or nearly black in color, with a conspicuous red border. Spots on the under surface are of the same dark color but have no red border. Aecia are produced in the largest lesions and also on the infected leaf petioles. In many cases the rust spots are arranged in two irregular rows, one on each side of the midrib, giving the appearance of infection having occurred before the leaves were unfolded. In 1910 Stewart observed that infected fruits were still clinging to the trees on June 15, although they were usually less than half the normal size. The

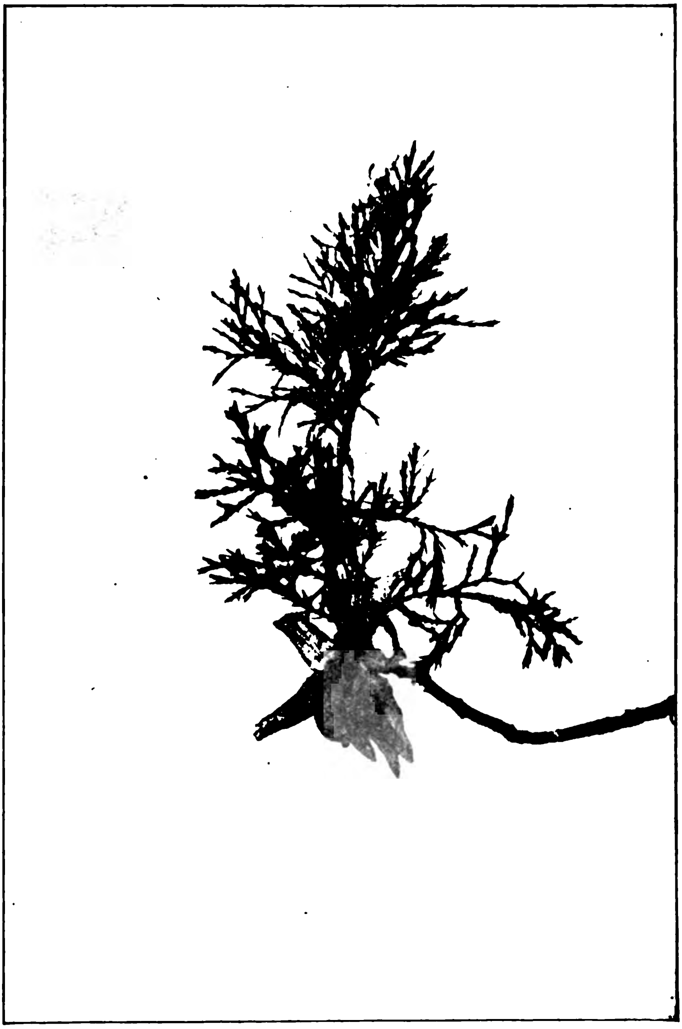


FIG. 147. TELIAL HORNS OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM GLOBOSUM FULLY GELATINIZED

fruit is often deformed and bears a circular, flattened, black lesion devoid of aecia near its base. Aecia are produced rarely.

On Crataegus

The lesion produced by *G.* ***globosum*** on Crataegus leaves is almost identical with the rust lesions on apple foliage. The red border about the margin of the spot is not so common, however, and the aecia are rarely arranged in the form of a circle (fig. 148).

The twigs of Crataegus are not commonly affected by this rust, but an occasional twig infection has been observed. The lesion is yellow, similar to that on the leaf, but practically no swelling of the twig is apparent. Pycnia are produced in this discolored area, followed later by aecia (fig. 149).

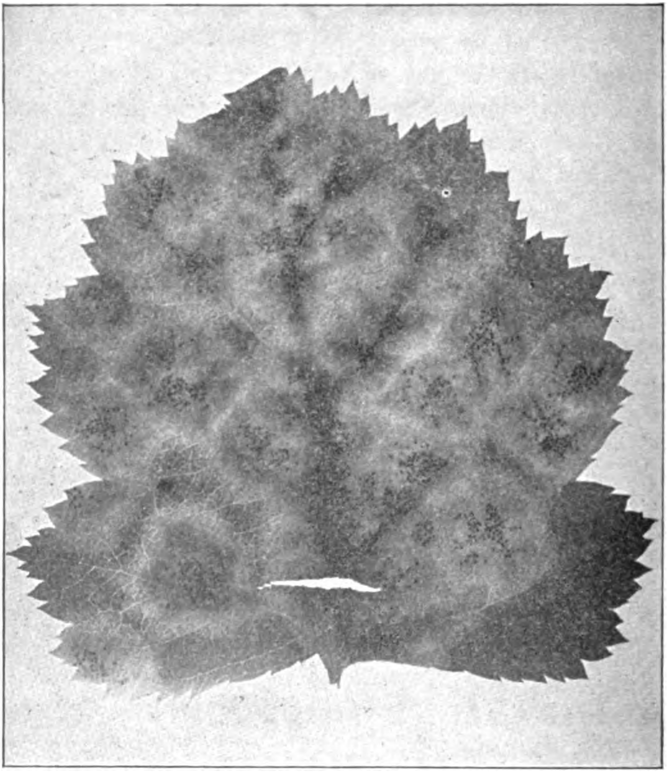


FIG. 148. CRATAEGUS LEAF ARTIFICIALLY INOCULATED WITH GYMNOSPORANGIUM GLOBOSUM
The groups of pycnia are apparent in the lesions

Infected fruits have been found, but these are not common. Here again a yellow spot is formed but little or no hypertrophy results. The pycnia and the aecia follow in the same lesion.

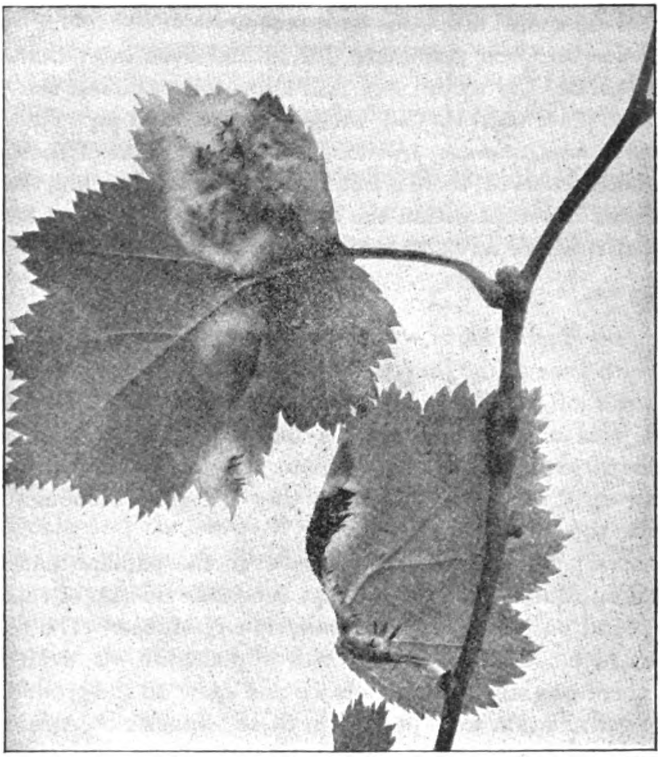


FIG. 149. AECIA OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM GLOBOSUM
The aecia are developing from the under surface of Crataegus leaves. The stem and the leaf petiole are also affected

ETIOLOGY

Nomenclature

The fungus now known as *G. globosum* was first named by Farlow in 1880. He gave it the name *G. fuscum* var. *globosum*, but later (Farlow, 1880) changed the name to *G. globosum*.

Life history

The details of the life cycle of this species are almost identical with those of *G. Juniperi-virginianae*. The aeciospores of the two species mature at approximately the same time. The time of infection of the cedar has not been determined, but it is presumably during the period when the aeciospores are being dispersed.

Rust-infected Crataegus leaves were collected on September 26, 1914, and exposed to the weather in a wire screen. At this time aeciospores taken from these leaves failed to germinate. Subsequent tests were made and germination was obtained until December 15, but all attempts to germinate these spores after this date failed.

Since aeciospores will germinate during and even later than the time of their dispersal, the writer sees no reason for assuming that infection does not take place until the following spring, as Reed and Crabill assume for *G. Juniperi-virginianae*. Although the penetration of the germ tube has never been observed, there is but little doubt that it enters the stomata. The mycelium develops within the cedar leaf for a period of from ten to twelve months before any sign of infection becomes apparent.

Telial stage

Development of telial horns.— The mycelium of this species is practically identical with that of *G. Juniperi-virginianae* and there is almost a complete absence of haustoria in the young galls. The telial horns are developed from a stromatic layer in the same manner as are those of *G. Juniperi-virginianae*. They begin to develop in the autumn but it is not until early the next spring that they become far enough advanced to penetrate the surface of the gall.

In the spring of 1915 the epidermis over the papillae had begun to break open on March 29, while at that time no evidence of this breaking could be found on the galls of *G. Juniperi-virginianae*. The telial horns were apparent on April 10. No growth in plant life was evident at that time and there was still considerable ice and snow on the ground. Spores capable of germination were present in these tentacles on April 15.

The telial horns continue to increase in size so that when gelatinization first takes place they may be from 1.5 to 3 millimeters thick by from 2 to 5 millimeters broad at the base and from 6 to 12 millimeters high. The number of horns on a gall varies from one to one hundred or more. They are distributed on the gall unevenly and are chestnut brown in color. Instead of standing singly they may coalesce and form a continuous band around the gall. The horns of *G. Juniperi-virginianae* have never been seen to fuse in this way.

The first gelatinization period usually coincides with the first warm rain period after the horns are protruded, and the number of times this process may occur during a season varies greatly. In 1914 the horns gelatinized four times and fell off on May 20, while in 1915 twelve such periods were recorded before the horns became dry on June 2.

The telial horns of this species may be more than double in size when swollen, and are then thinner in consistency than the jelly-like horns of

G. Juniperi-virginianae under similar conditions. After each protrusion the horns of the latter species dry down to their normal form with the exception of the tips. In the case of *G. globosum* drying occurs until the last gelatinization takes place, at which time the horns form a solid mass of thin, jelly-like substance over nearly the entire surface of the gall, and this substance intermingles with the adjoining leaves and twigs. When drying occurs this material clings to the leaves or twigs and is pulled loose from its attachments. The galls do not die as do those of the other species, but live and fruit year after year.

The teliospores of *G. globosum* closely resemble those of *G. Juniperi-virginianae.* They are practically of the same width, from 15 to 21 μ, but are often somewhat shorter, ranging in length from 37 to 54 μ. There are also the same number of pores and these are similarly located. The spore stalks are cylindrical in form. Teliospore germination is similar to that of *G. Juniperi-virginianae* (fig. 150).

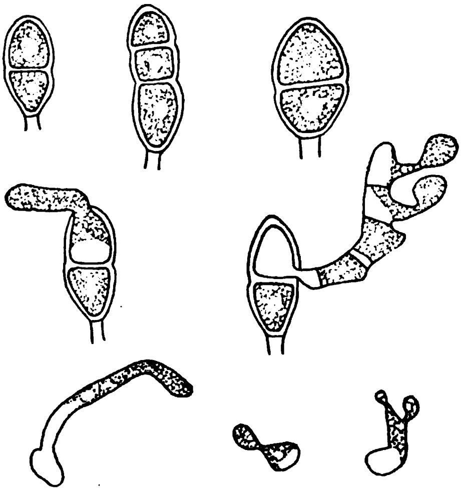


FIG. 150. VARIOUS TYPES OF TELIOSPORES OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM GLOBOSUM
Some of the teliospores and basidiospores have germinated. × 350

Aecial stage

The pycnia and the aecia of *G. globosum* are similar to those of *G. Juniperi-virginianae*, the greatest difference being in their size. The size and shape of the peridial cells is somewhat different for the two species. The peridial cells of *G. globosum* are broadly lanceolate in face view and measure 15 to 23 μ by 60 to 90 μ, and are linear-rhomboid in side view, measuring from 13 to 19 μ thick. The outer wall is smooth and about 1.5 μ thick, while the inner and side walls are slightly thicker and are rugose with ridge-like papillae of varying lengths.

Aeciospore germination.— Most attempts to germinate the aeciospores of *G. globosum* have yielded negative results. On two occasions slight germination was obtained, as is shown in table 3.

Inoculation of cedar trees.— Following the methods described under *G. Juniperi-virginianae*, many attempts have been made during a period of three years to obtain infection of red cedar with *G. globosum*, but thus far no positive results have been obtained.

TABLE 3. RESULTS OF AECIOSPORE GERMINATION TESTS OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM GLOBOSUM IN 1915

Number of slides	Date	Cultural solution	Temperature	Method	Percentage of germination
2	September 29	Tap water......	22° C....	Suspension of spores	0
2	September 29	Tap water......	23° C....	Suspension of spores	0
3	September 29	Tap water......	15° C....	Suspension of spores	0
5	September 30	Tap water......	24° C....	Spores in test tube immersed in an ice-and-salt bath at −4° to −6° C. for 1 hour, then allowed to incubate in tap water at 24° C.	0
5	October 2.....	Tap water......	24° C....	Spores treated same as above but not frozen, then suspended in water and incubated at 24° C.	0
20	October 2.....	Tap water......	−4° to +28° C.	Suspension of spores	0
2	November 8. .	Tap water......	24° C....	Spores in suspension; taken from leaves exposed to the weather since Sept. 26, 1915	10
1	December 9...	Tap water......	24° C....	Spores in suspension; taken from leaves exposed to the weather since Sept. 26, 1915	2 spores germinated (only a few spores were present in this mount)

THE DISEASE CAUSED BY GYMNOSPORANGIUM CLAVIPES

The rust fungus *Gymnosporangium clavipes* causes a disease of quince, Crataegus, and cedar, which is commonly known as *quince rust*, *Crataegus rust*, or *cedar rust*. The fungus is native to North America and was first studied in some detail by Farlow (1880). It is widely distributed in eastern and central United States but is of little economic importance except on the quince. The writer observed a severe outbreak of quince rust in western New York in the summer of 1912.

The chief source of loss from quince rust is due to the misshapen or stunted condition of the diseased fruit. Twig infections also are common and these result in the death of the shoots affected.

SYMPTOMS

On cedar

On cedar the lesions of *G. clavipes* are confined to the twigs, and are less conspicuous than those of the other two species herein described. This species forms no large pendent galls, and in the early stages, as well as in many of the later ones, there is no noticeable hypertrophy of the affected twigs (fig. 151). A fusiform swelling may often occur, however, producing roughened areas on the bark (fig. 152). The affected areas may vary from 1 to 30 centimeters or more in length, but it is difficult to detect the early stages of infection of cedar until the telial sori emerge in the spring from the diseased areas. The telial sori are small, hemispheric, and orange-brown in color, and may also occur on the young shoots among the leaves. They gelatinize in early spring, and, as is true of the two preceding species, they finally dry and fall off. The fungus continues to fruit from the canker year after year.

On quince

Although quince leaves are not commonly affected by *G. clavipes* in nature, infection has been produced artificially on several occasions. The veins alone are attacked and often become swollen to double their normal size. The swelling of these veins causes the leaves to curl. The lesions are not accompanied by a change in color, as is the case with infected areas of apple or Crataegus leaves and of quince leaves affected by *G. globosum*. Pycnia are produced in longitudinal rows along the affected veins, similar to those described for *G. globosum* on pear foliage, but no aecia have ever been found. The leaves are finally killed and soon fall after the aecia are produced on the stem below.

In the spring the terminal buds of quince shoots are often attacked, the growth of affected twigs is retarded, and an increase in diameter occurs. The foliage is stunted, as in the case of the rust on apples. Pycnia and characteristic aecia appear later. Affected twigs die at the end of the season. On diseased quince fruit the affected part is often much enlarged, and in this area pycnia and aecia develop in abundance.

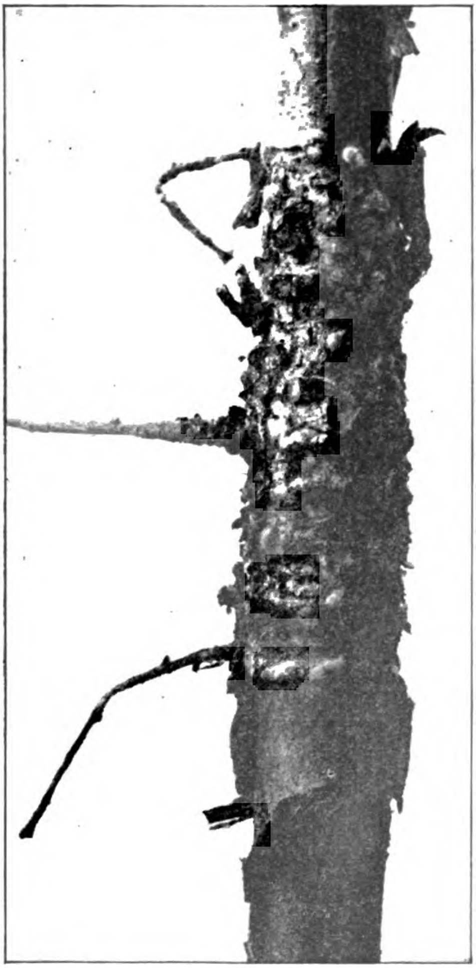


Fig. 151

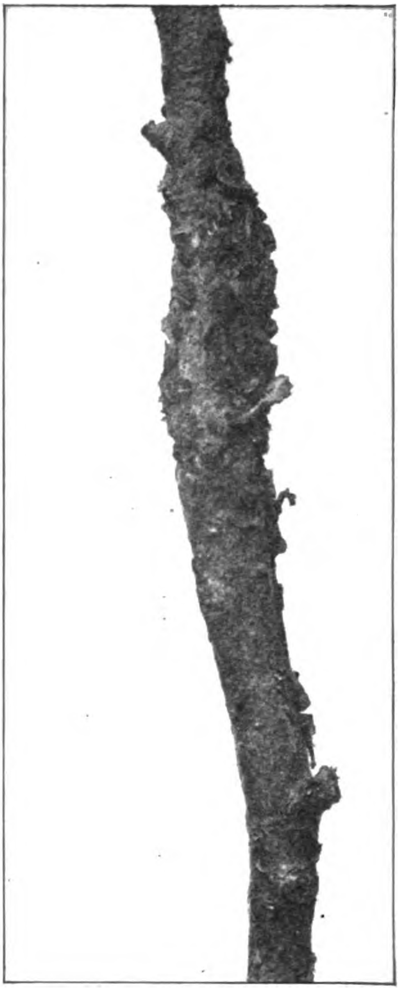


Fig. 152

FIG. 151. CANKER SHOWING TELIAL SORI OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM CLAVIPES

FIG. 152. CANKER CAUSED BY GYMNOSPORANGIUM CLAVIPES

The diseased area has a roughened appearance and is slightly enlarged as compared with the stem above and below

On Crataegus

The symptoms caused by *G. clavipes* on Crataegus are almost identical with those on quince. Although the leaves are rarely attacked, diseased leaves become curled and finally die without producing aecia (fig. 153).

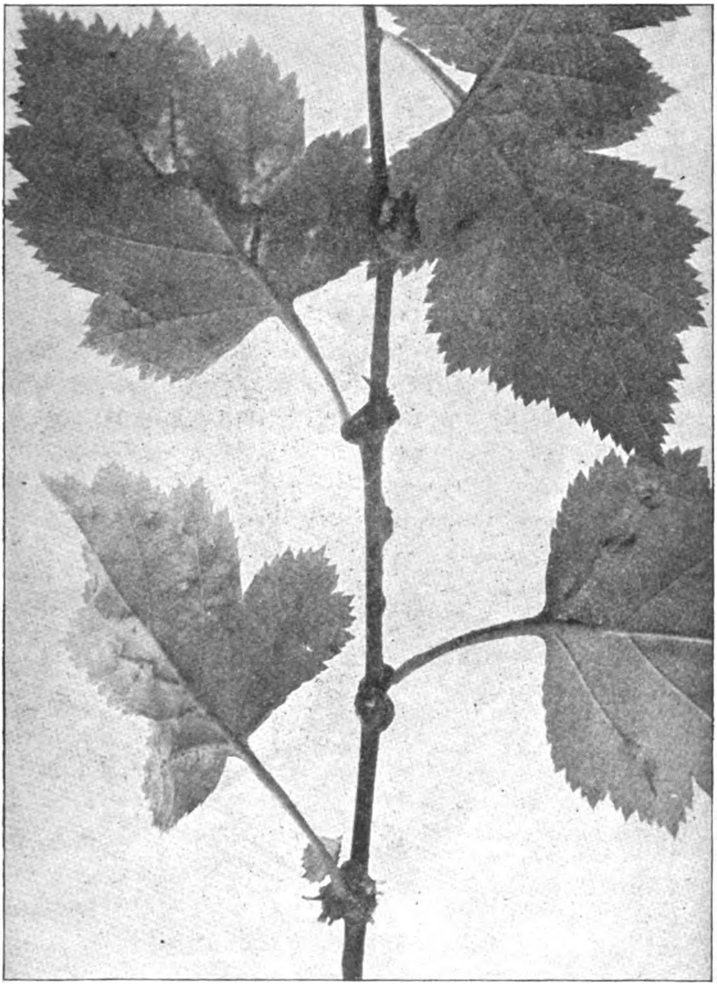


FIG. 153. GYMNOSPORANGIUM CLAVIPES AFFECTING LEAVES, PETIOLES, AND STEMS OF CRATAEGUS
These infections were produced by artificial inoculation

The stems, the leaf petioles, and the fruit are attacked commonly, and hypertrophy of the affected area occurs without change in color. Pycnia and aecia are produced in great quantities (fig. 154). The hypertrophied area is in some cases confined to only one side of the stem or the fruit.

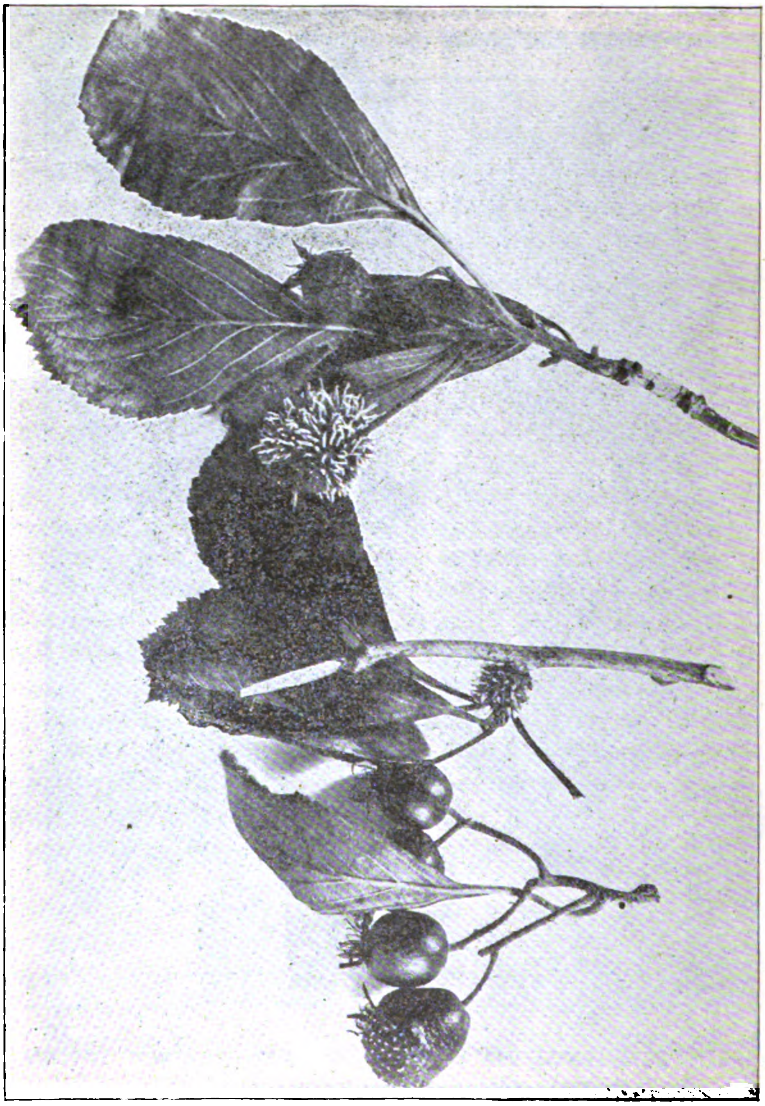


FIG. 154. FRUIT OF CRATAEGUS, SHOWING AECIA OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM CLAVIPES PROTRUDING FROM THE SURFACE

The thorns are often attacked and enlarge to double their normal size. The fungus may extend from an infected thorn into the twig at the base, and form a canker in which aecia may be produced in abundance late in the season. On October 12, 1915, a specimen was received from Romulus, New York, which bore fresh aecia in a canker that had developed at the base of a thorn.

ETIOLOGY

Nomenclature

This fungus was first named *Caeoma* (*Peridermium*) *germinale* by Schweinitz in 1832, and was given the name *G. clavipes* by Cook and Peck in 1873. Since the latter name is the first applied to the telial stage, it is the one now commonly accepted.

Life history

Only a small amount of literature has appeared which has a bearing on the origin and development of the telial stage of *G. clavipes*. This may be due, in part at least, to the fact that the disease causes little or no malformation on cedar.

Judging from analogy with other species, it is assumed that infection takes place in the late summer and autumn when the aeciospores are scattered; but no evidence of a diseased condition becomes apparent until the appearance of the telial sori. The sori develop on the two-years-old twigs and are apparently the result of infections of the previous year. This is in accordance with the process in the preceding species. The incubation period of this species is the same as that for *G. globosum* and *G. Juniperi-virginianae*; the infections that occurred during the summer and autumn of 1913 did not appear until the spring of 1915. The mycelium, which is similar to that of the other species, collects in masses beneath the corky exterior covering of the cedar twig, and from these stromata the spores arise and produce the telial horns (figs. 155 and 156).

Telial stage

Development of telial sori.— The first evidence of infection by *G. clavipes* is the appearance of the mound-like telial sori. These were first noticed in 1914 on April 22 and in 1915 on April 15. In 1914, however, the first basidiospores were formed in nature on May 5, while in 1915 some were produced on May 1. The telial sori appear on what seem to be normal and healthy twigs (fig. 157). They may be found emerging from the bark of branches of all sizes. In most cases little or no hypertrophy is noticeable, but in the older twigs slight fusiform swellings are developed.

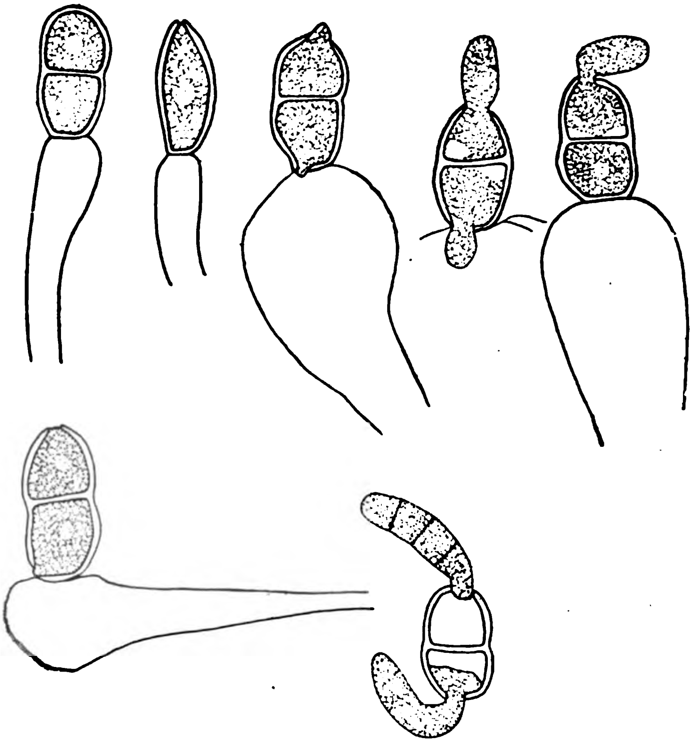


FIG. 155. TELIOSPORES AND TELIOSPORE GERMINATION OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM CLAVIPES

The spore stalk disappears at the time of germination of the lower cell. × 350

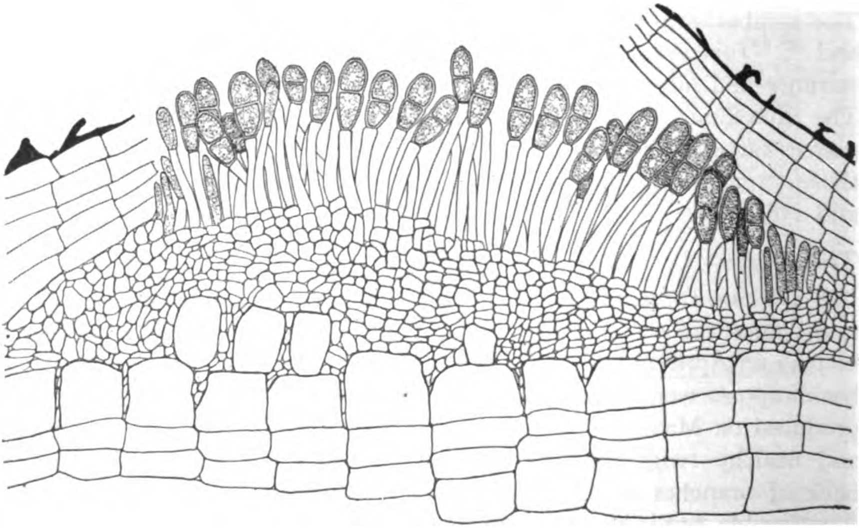


FIG. 156. A TELIAL SORUS OF GYMNOSPORANGIUM CLAVIPES

The sorus is just breaking through the cork tissue. × 220

The telial sori are decidedly different from the telial horns of *G. Juniperi-virginianae* and *G. globosum*. Instead of being long and of small diameter they are usually short and dome-shaped. These sori may be of various widths and they often coalesce and form a ring entirely around the twig. They are orange-brown when dry but become lighter-colored when gelatinized. In the latter condition they have a very soft, jelly-like consistency. After one or two gelatinizations the jelly-like substance spreads over the branches and the leaves, but later it becomes dry and drops off. The telial sori never recover their original shape. In 1914 there was a period of heavy precipitation from June 20 to June 22 and the sori did not regain their normal form after that time. In 1914 there were four gelatinization periods as compared with eleven in 1915. During several of these periods of gelatinization few or no basidiospores were formed. Numerous cankers caused by this pathogene have been under observation since the spring of 1913, and each year telial sori have developed in the cankered areas. Undoubtedly the cankers were formed several years previous to 1913.

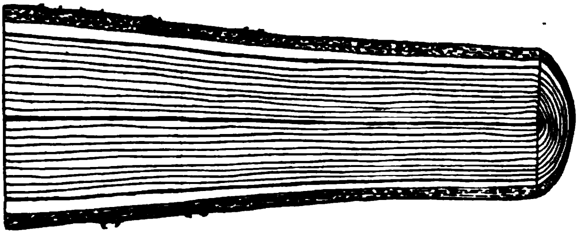


FIG. 157. DIAGRAMMATIC SECTION OF CEDAR TWIG AFFECTED WITH GYMNOSPORANGIUM CLAVIPES
The relative size and position of the telial sori are shown

Teliospore germination.— The teliospores of this species are capable of germinating at about the same time in the spring and under the same conditions as those of *G. globosum* and *G. Juniperi-virginianae*. The curve in figure 142 (page 615), and the discussion of methods and results on page 614, apply to this species also.

The spores of *G. clavipes* differ slightly from those of the other two species. They vary in length from 29 to 50 μ and in width from 17 to 25 μ. They may be slightly constricted at the septum, rounded or acute at the apex, and obtuse at the base. The wall is yellow and is from 1 to 2 μ thick, being slightly thickened at the apex. The pedicels may vary in diameter just below the spore from 7 to 50 μ, depending on the degree of swelling. Each cell has but one pore, the pore in the upper cell being in the apex and that in the lower cell being on one side near the base of the spore.

Spores of *G. clavipes* are peculiar in that often the germinating spores no longer have their spore stalks attached. It has been found that these stalks may be present if only the apical cell germinates, while, on the other hand, if both cells germinate the pedicels are never present or at least have not been seen. As soon as the basal cell begins to germinate, the side of the spore stalk nearest to the germ pore enlarges rapidly. The swelling continues until the wall of the stalk just below the germ pore finally disappears. Often before this stage has been reached the opposite side of the pedicel wall begins to disappear, so that soon only small remnants of the wall remain clinging to the spore. On certain slides on which spores were placed to germinate, absolute alcohol was added when the process of germination was only partially complete. The alcohol extracted the water, and the stalk returned to its normal shape and size. After the wall of the pedicel had become invisible it failed to return to view on the addition of alcohol. Apparently the lower promycelium develops at the base of the spore and thus displaces the pedicel. It is probable that the disappearance of the spore stalks when germination occurs accounts for the complete destruction of the telial sori as mentioned above. Numerous observations have been made to determine whether or not a similar phenomenon occurs in *G. globosum* and *G. Juniperi-virginianae*, but this has never been found to be the case. In these species the promycelium develops near the septum, so that it is not obstructed by the pedicel.

The disintegration of the pedicel in *G. clavipes* has been noticed also by certain other writers. Farlow (1880) states that when quickly swollen, especially by the absorption of reagents, the inner part of the pedicel expands more quickly than the outer part, so that the latter is ruptured just below the spore, leaving a hyaline ring surrounding the pedicel at the base of the spore. Farlow's explanation of this phenomenon seems logical so far as it goes, but it is not clear why this process takes place only when it accompanies the germination of the lower cell.

The methods of ejection and germination of the basidiospores of *G. clavipes* are identical with those described for *G. Juniperi-virginianae.*

Throughout a period of three years numerous attempts were made to produce infection with spores of *G. clavipes* on red cedar trees, but only negative results were obtained.

Aecial stage

The conditions influencing infection and the development of pycnia and aecia of *G. clavipes* are similar to those for the other two species. Both fruiting structures resemble closely those of *G. Juniperi-virginianae.* The pycnia, however, are about one-fourth larger. The peridium and the peridial cells, together with the size of the aeciospores, serve as the distinguishing features. The aecia are much broader than those of *G. globosum* and the aeciospores measure from 21 to 32 μ by from 24 to 39 μ.

The peridium of *G. clavipes* is white, while those of the other two species are slightly yellowish. The peridium splits longitudinally, in some cases to the base of the cup, but the strands may be several layers of cells in width. These strands may either stand erect or become more or less recurved at their extremities. Kern (1911:455) describes the peridial cells as follows:

> Peridial cells seen in both face and side views, polygonal-ovate or polygonal oblong in face view, 19–39 x 45–95 μ, rhomboid in side view, 25–40 μ thick, outer wall moderately thick, 3–5 μ, inner wall very thick, 13–23 μ, coarsely verrucose with loosely set, large, irregularly branched papillae, side walls verrucose on inner half similar to inner wall.

LITERATURE CITED

Blackman, Vernon H. On the conditions of teleutospore germination and of sporidia formation in the Uredineæ. New phytol. **2**:10–14. 1903.

Buller, A. H. Reginald. The violent projection of spores from the hymenium — Methods I, II, III, IV, and V. *In* Researches on fungi, p. 133–147. 1909.

Chester, Frederick D. Apple rust. *In* Report of the Mycologist. Delaware Coll. Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **8**:63–69. 1896.

Coons, George Herbert. Some investigations of the cedar rust fungus, Gymnosporangium juniperi-virginianae. Nebraska Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **25**:215–245. 1912.

Crabill, C. H. Production of secondary sporidia by Gymnosporangium. Phytopath. **3**:282–284. 1913.

Emerson, R. A. Apple scab and cedar rust. Nebraska Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 88:1–21. 1905.

Farlow, W. G. The Gymnosporangia or cedar-apples of the United States. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Anniversary memoirs, p. 1–38. 1880.

——— The development of the Gymnosporangia of the United States. Bot. gaz. **11**:234–241. 1886.

Giddings, N. J., and Berg, Anthony. Apple rust. West Virginia Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 154:1–73. 1915.

Giddings, N. J., and Neal, D. C. Control of apple rust by spraying. Phytopath. **2**:258–260. 1912.

Heald, F. D. The life history of the cedar rust fungus Gymnosporangium juniperi-virginianae Schw. Nebraska Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **22**:105–113. 1909.

Kern, Frank D. Studies in the genus Gymnosporangium. Torrey Bot. Club. Bul. **35**:499–511. 1908.

——— A biologic and taxonomic study of the genus Gymnosporangium. New York Bot. Gard. Bul. **7**:391–483. 1911.

Link, H. F. Gymnosporangium macropus. Willdenow, Species plantarum (Linné) **6**^{2}:128. 1825.

Pammel, L. H. The cedar apple fungi and apple rust in Iowa. Iowa Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 84:1–36. 1905.

Peck, Chas. H. Report of the Botanist. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist. Rept. **25**:57–123. 1873.

——— Report of the Botanist. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist. Rept. **26**:35–91. 1874.

Reed, Howard S., Cooley, J. S., and Crabill, C. H. Experiments on the control of the cedar rust of apples. Virginia Polytech. Inst. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 203:1–28. 1914.

Reed, Howard S., and Crabill, C. H. The cedar rust disease of apples caused by Gymnosporangium Juniperi-Virginianae Schw. Virginia Polytech. Inst. Agr. Exp. Sta. Tech. bul. 9:1–106. 1915.

Sanford, Elmer. Microscopical anatomy of the common cedar-apple (Gymnosporangium macropus). Ann. bot. **1**:263–268. 1888.

SCHWEINITZ, LUDOVICI DAVIDIS DE. Gymnosporangium Decand. *In* Synopsis fungorum Carolinae superioris. Schrift. Naturf. Gesell. **1**:74–75. 1822.

——— Subgen. Roestelia aut ceratites. *In* Synopsis fungorum in America boreali media degentium. Amer. Phil. Soc. Trans. n. s. **4**:294. 1834.

SMITH, R. I., AND STEVENS, F. L. Insects and fungous diseases of apple and pear. North Carolina Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 206:43–126. 1910.

STEWART, F. C. Notes on New York plant diseases, I. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 328:305–404. 1910.

STEWART, F. C., AND CARVER, G. W. Inoculation experiments with Gymnosporangium macropus, Lk. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **14**:535–544. 1896.

STONE, G. E. An outbreak of rusts. Massachusetts Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. **23**:144. 1911.

STONE, R. E. Cedar apples and apple leaf-rust. Alabama Agr. Exp. Sta. Cir. **2**:1–11. 1908.

WÖRNLE, PAUL. Anatomische Untersuchung der durch Gymnosporangium-Arten hervorgerufenen Missbildungen. Forst. Nat. Zeitsch. **3**:68–84, 129–172. 1894.

MAY, 1917 BULLETIN 391

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

A REVISION OF THE GENUS LYGUS AS IT OCCURS IN AMERICA NORTH OF MEXICO, WITH BIOLOGICAL DATA ON THE SPECIES FROM NEW YORK

HARRY H. KNIGHT

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

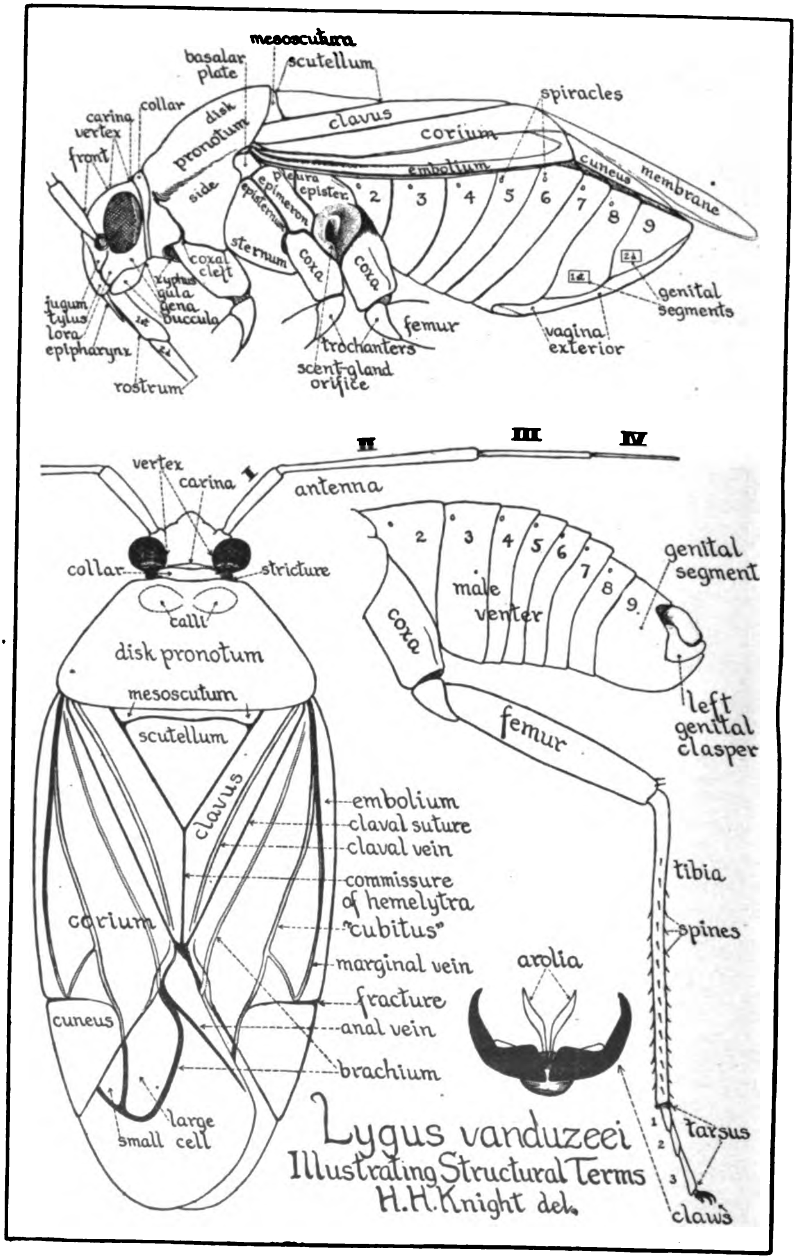
ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
JAMES K. WILSON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
HARRY H. KNIGHT, B.Pd., B.S., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE
Genus Lygus Hahn 649
Methods of study 650
Groups of Lygus 651
Descriptions of species and varieties 654
Lygus pratensis Linnaeus 654
pratensis var. *oblineatus* Say 656
pratensis var. *rubidus* new variety 657
vanduzeei new species 657
vanduzeei var. *rubroclarus* new variety 659
convexicollis Reuter 660
convexicollis var. *coloratus* new variety 661
humeralis new species 662
columbiensis new species 663
superiorensis new species 664
atriflavus new species 664
elisus Van Duzee 666
elisus var. *viridiscutatus* new variety 667
elisus var. *hesperus* new variety 667
plagiatus Uhler 668
striatus new species 670
nigropallidus new species 671
aeratus new species 672
bradleyi new species 673
nubilus Van Duzee 674
ultranubilus new species 675
nubilatus new species 676
nubilosus new species 677
distinguendus Reuter 678
distinguendus var. *tahoensis* new variety 679
robustus Uhler 680
rubicundus Fallén 681
rubicundus var. *winnipegensis* new variety 683
sallei Stål 683
campestris Linnaeus 684
distinctus new species 686
pabulinus Linnaeus 687
approximatus Stål 689
olivaceus Reuter 691
olivaceus var. *viridiusculus* new variety 692
fasciatus Reuter 693
apicalis Fieber 693
fagi new species 695
invitus Say 696
atritylus new species 698
confusus new species 698
alni new species 699
geneseensis new species 701
viburni new species 701
parshleyi new species 703
parshleyi var. *shermani* new variety 704
inconspicuus new species 704
tiliae new species 705
caryae new species 707
caryae var. *subfuscus* new variety 708
atrinotatus new species 709
vitticollis Reuter 710
neglectus new species 711

PAGE
Lygus communis Knight 712
communis var. *novascotiensis* Knight 715
univittatus new species 715
quercalbae new species 716
semivittatus new species 718
omnivagus new species 719
johnsoni new species 721
belfragii Reuter 722
clavigenitalis new species 724
hirticulus Van Duzee 725
canadensis new species 726
canadensis var. *binotatus* new variety 727
ostryae new species 727
laureae new species 728
carolinae Reuter 730
European species of Lygus supposed to occur in the United States 731
Species that have been incorrectly placed in the genus Lygus 731
Plagiognathus guttatipes (Uhler) 731
?*Lygidea annexus* (Uhler) 731
Phytocoris vividus (Uhler) 732
Literature cited 733



Lygus vanduzeei
Illustrating Structural Terms
H. H. Knight del.

A REVISION OF THE GENUS LYGUS AS IT OCCURS IN AMERICA NORTH OF MEXICO, WITH BIOLOGICAL DATA ON THE SPECIES FROM NEW YORK

Order, *Hemiptera* Family, *Miridae*

HARRY H. KNIGHT

The genus Lygus contains a large number of species which have been found very puzzling not only to the general entomologist but also to specialists in Hemiptera. Owing to the species that have developed as pests, there has been a great need among economic entomologists for a work that would enable them to determine the species accurately. The writer, realizing the necessity for a better knowledge of the group, has spent much time during the past three seasons accumulating life history data and at the same time working out characters by means of which the trained entomologist may determine the species.

The genus includes the well-known tarnished plant bug (*Lygus pratensis* Linn.), a cosmopolitan pest of long standing on a variety of plants of economic value. During the past five years two other species have become serious pests to pears and apples, and there is a strong probability that other forms already present on native wild vegetation may change their food habits and attack cultivated plants. Data are here given on twenty-eight species found in the State of New York, with nine species occurring in neighboring States which will doubtless soon be found within our borders. Food plants and other biological data are given for all but one of the species known to occur in this State. The present paper gives a much-needed systematic revision of the group; but the most important feature is that structural characters found in the male genital claspers have been worked out and shown to furnish a reliable criterion for recognition of the species.

The writer is indebted to Mr. E. P. Van Duzee, who very kindly sent for study from his collection all the forms of Lygus known to him, to the late Mr. O. Heidemann, of the United States National Museum, who made it possible for the writer to study the collections in the National Museum as well as his own private collection; to Mr. H. M. Parshley for sending considerable material which he assembled from the New England States; and to Dr. J. Chester Bradley for valuable criticism during the progress of the work.

GENUS **LYGUS** HAHN

The genus Lygus was founded by Hahn in 1831 to include nine species, of which *limbatus* Fallén was subsequently selected as the type. In common with other genera in the tribe Capsini, Lygus is characterized by having free erect arolia (pulvilli between the claws) with the apical half diverging (Plate XXIII). The following are the more essential characters of the genus:

Head nearly vertical, in length shorter than the height at base; vertex with a basal carina and before it a more or less triangular depressed area; vertex of the female usually slightly wider than in the male; front convex, smooth; tylus prominent, its base nearly on a line with the base of the antennae; juga, lorae, and bucculae prominent, clearly defined; eyes prominent, ovate when viewed from the side, the posterior margins nearly parallel with the base of the head; facial angle (when viewed from the side, the angle formed by the contour line of the tylus and the lower margin of the buccula) a right angle. Rostrum usually reaching to near the posterior margin of the hind coxa, shorter in a few species, but exceptionally long in *approximatus* and *convexicollis*. Antennae inserted slightly above the lower margin of the eye, linear; first segment the thickest; second segment usually slightly thicker at the apex than at the base; third and fourth segments shorter and becoming setaceous; finely pubescent; second segment slightly shorter and more slender in the female than in the male. Pronotum trapezoidal, collar formed by a narrow ring-like apical constriction extending over the sides and beneath; disk moderately convex, broader at the base than long, gently sloping at sides, and immarginate; calli usually apparent as smooth shining ovals; disk punctate except between the calli and on the subelevated part just before. Scutellum moderately elevated, mesoscutum more or less exposed. Hemelytra surpassing the tip of the abdomen, slightly longer in the male; cuneus rather strongly deflected, the fracture extending inward to a point opposite the middle of the end of the corium; membrane biareolate. Legs rather long, hind femora moderately incrassate; tibiae armed with spines, in length equal to the thickness of the tibia or longer. Upper surface and the abdomen clothed with fine pubescence. Structure of the male genital claspers giving specific differences.

Lygus shows affinities with Dichrooscytus on the one hand and with Neoborus and Lygidea on the other. Dichrooscytus differs in the shape of the head, the type of pubescence, and the aciculate punctuation on the pronotum; Neoborus differs in being punctate between the calli and just before; Lygidea has a differently shaped head, and the pronotum has coarse, deep, rugose punctuation on the disk.

METHODS OF STUDY

The terminology used in this work is as follows:

Length of the insect is the measurement taken between the tip of the tylus and the apex of the membrane; *width* is taken at the widest point on the hemelytra.

Head: *Width* is measured from the dorsal aspect and taken across the eyes at the widest point; *vertex* is the space between the inner margins of the eyes at the top of the head; *length* is measured laterally, taken at right angles to the base of the head, a point determined by the base of the gula and the hind margin of the eye; *height* is the measurement between the base of the gula and the top of either the eye or the carina, whichever projects the higher.

Antenna: *Length* of the first segment is taken from the point of greatest constriction just above the basal knob, to the apex; the length of all the segments is taken when each is horizontal and extended straight to its full length.

Pronotum: *Length* is the greatest measurement that can be obtained along the median line, between the front margin of the collar and the hind margin of the disk, taken when the disk is turned as nearly horizontal as possible; *width at base* is taken across the basal angles of the disk; *width at anterior angles* is taken at the point where the front margins of the disk turn sharply inward to the constriction.

The genital claspers are shown in the present paper to be excellent characters for separating the species. In the *pratensis* group the differences in the male claspers are in some cases not so easily used as other characters, thus showing a close group relationship. In the remaining groups (II to VI) the genital claspers show a wide range of variation, thus affording very distinct specific and subgeneric characters.

For purposes of study and in order to make drawings of the genital claspers, the specimens may be soaked for a few minutes in a watch glass filled with 85-per-cent alcohol. When sufficiently soft the tip of the abdomen may be picked off with the aid of two needles, working beneath the binocular microscope. The claspers may then be carefully separated from the attaching muscles and mounted for study. To make drawings the claspers should be removed to a dish coated with a mixture of paraffin and beeswax. This material makes an excellent surface for the manipulation of the claspers and for holding them in any desired position. Later the claspers may be removed on the point of a needle and attached with shellac to a triangle mounted on a pin beneath the insect.

The genital claspers figured in the present paper are all drawn to the same scale and turned to the same relative position for purposes of comparison. In a few cases extra views are presented in order to show unusual structures to better advantage, and in such cases an explanation is given. The figures were made by working with an eyepiece micrometer in the binocular microscope, which proved more satisfactory than using the camera lucida.

GROUPS OF LYGUS

The species of Lygus are here divided into six groups, based entirely on the structure of the male genital claspers. The species within each group are arranged to show relationship as far as possible. Fifty-four species and thirteen varieties are included, of which thirty-four species and eleven varieties are described as new. The records for distribution show only the material studied by the writer, and therefore he assumes responsibility for determinations.

The *communis* group appears to be confined almost entirely to eastern North America, with records of two species having been found as far west as Colorado. On the other hand, the *pratensis* group has comparatively few species in the East but a multiplicity of forms in the western United States. Several species in the *communis* group, having a definite food plant, are found on that plant only in situations where conditions of humidity and sunshine are favorable to the particular species. In rearing nymphs it was observed that they die easily when subjected to high temperatures and undue dryness. This may offer some explanation why the species representing this group are not found in the Western States. The nymphs of species in the *communis* group are certainly more delicate than the nymphs of *pratensis* and its allies.

The six groups into which the genus is divided in this study are differentiated as follows:

Group I (*pratensis* group): Left clasper without a prong at the middle (at the posterior extremity of the lateral aspect), but with a large serrate dorsal lobe at the base; right clasper with a small claw at the apex, curving ventrad or caudad, in length less than the greatest width of the clasper. (? Subgenus *Lygus* Hahn, Reuter):

pratensis var. *oblineatus* Say (p. 656)
pratensis var. *rubidus* n. var. (p. 657)
vanduzeei n. sp. (p. 657)
vanduzeei var. *rubroclarus* n. var. (p. 659)
convexicollis Reuter (p. 660)
convexicollis var. *coloratus* n. var. (p. 661)
umeralis n. sp. (p. 662)
columbiensis n. sp. (p. 663)
superiorensis n. sp. (p. 664)
atriflavus n. sp. (p. 664)
elisus Van Duzee (p. 666)
elisus var. *viridiscutatus* n. var. (p. 667)
elisus var. *hesperus* n. var. (p. 667)
plagiatus Uhler (p. 668)
striatus n. sp. (p. 670)
nigropallidus n. sp. (p. 671)
aeratus n. sp. (p. 672)
bradleyi n. sp. (p. 673)
nubilus Van Duzee (p. 674)
ultranubilus n. sp. (p. 675)
nubilatus n. sp. (p. 676)
nubilosus n. sp. (p. 677)
distinguendus Reuter (p. 678)
distinguendus var. *tahoensis* n. var. (p. 679)
(?) *robustus* Uhler (p. 680)

Group II (*campestris* group): Left clasper without a prong at the middle, but the lateral lobe less basal and not serrate, outline of the lateral aspect different from that of *pratensis* group; right clasper with a short claw, or absent (*rubicundus*); composed of more heterogeneous forms:

rubicundus Fallén (subgenus *Agnocoris* Reuter) (p. 681)
rubicundus var. *winnipegensis* n. var. (p. 683)
sallei Stål (p. 683)
campestris Linnaeus (subgenus *Orthops* Fieber) (p. 684)
distinctus n. sp. (p. 686)
pabulinus Linnaeus (subgenus *Lygocoris* Reuter) (p. 687)

Group III: Left clasper without a prong at the middle, the lateral lobe not serrate; right clasper with a relatively large thick prong at the apex; one species of doubtful generic position placed here:

approximatus Stål (p. 689)

Group IV: Left clasper without a prong or lobe at the base, the apex of the internal prong bifurcate; right clasper much reduced, with only a minute hook or claw:

olivaceus Reuter (p. 691)
olivaceus var. *viridiusculus* n. var. (p. 692)
fasciatus Reuter (p. 693)

Group V: Left clasper with complex lobe at the base, without a prong at the middle; right clasper greatly reduced, with a minute claw at the apex; only one aberrant form placed here:

apicalis Fieber (p. 693)

Group VI (*communis* group): Left clasper with a prong at the middle; right clasper with a hook or prong projecting mesad, its length as great as or greater than the thickest part of the clasper; composed of a large number of homogeneous forms. (Subgenus *Neolygus*, new subgenus; type, *Lygus communis* Knight):

fagi n. sp. (p. 695)
invitus Say (p. 696)
atritylus n. sp. (p. 698)
confusus n. sp. (p. 698)
alni n. sp. (p. 699)
geneseensis n. sp. (p. 701)
viburni n. sp. (p. 701)
parshleyi n. sp. (p. 703)
parshleyi var. *shermani* n. var. (p. 704)
inconspicuus n. sp. (p. 704)
tiliae n. sp. (p. 705)
caryae n. sp. (p. 707)
caryae var. *subfuscus* n. var. (p. 708)
atrinotatus n. sp. (p. 709)

vitticollis Reuter (p. 710)
neglectus n. sp. (p. 711)
communis Knight (p. 712)
communis var. *novascotiensis* Knight (p. 715)
univittatus n. sp. (p. 715)
quercalbae n. sp. (p. 716)
semivittatus n. sp. (p. 718)
omnivagus n. sp. (p. 719)
johnsoni n. sp. (p. 721)
belfragii Reuter (p. 722)
clavigenitalis n. sp. (p. 724)
hirticulus Van Duzee (p. 725)
canadensis n. sp. (p. 726)
canadensis var. *binotatus* n. var. (p. 727)
ostryae n. sp. (p. 727)
laureae n. sp. (p. 728)
(?) *carolinae* Reuter (p. 730)

The types of the new species, unless otherwise designated, will eventually be found in the Cornell University collection.

DESCRIPTIONS OF SPECIES AND VARIETIES

Lygus pratensis Linnaeus

1746 *Cimex griseus* Linnaeus
Fauna Svec., p. 208.
1758 *Cimex pratensis* Linnaeus
Syst. nat., 10th ed., p. 448.
1763 *Cimex umbellatarum* Scopoli
Ent. carniol., p. 133.
1778 (?) *Cimex rubecula* Goeze
Ent. Beitr. 2:279.
1794 *Lygaeus pratensis* Fabricius
Ent. syst. 4:171.
1804 (?) *Lygaeus viridulus* Panzer
Schaeff. icon., p. 120.
1804 *Miris pratensis* Latreille
Hist. nat. 12:221.
1805 *Lygaeus umbellatarum* Panzer (see Reuter, 1888)
Faunæ ins. Germ., no. 93.
1805 *Coreus* (?) *lineolaris* Palisot de Beauvais
Ins. réc. Afr. et Amér., p. 187.
1807 *Lygaeus campestris* Fallén (not Linnaeus)
Mon. cim. Svec., p. 83.
1828 *Phytocoris campestris* Zetterstedt (not Linnaeus)
Fauna ins. lapp., p. 273.
1828 *Phytocoris pratensis* Zetterstedt
Fauna ins. lapp., p. 289.
1829 *Phytocoris campestris* Fallén (not Linnaeus)
Hemip. Svec., p. 91.
1831 *Capsus oblineatus* Say
Heterop. Hemip. N. Amer., p. 340 (Le Conte ed.).
1831 *Phytocoris campestris* Hahn (not Linnaeus)
Wanz. Ins. 1:218.
1835 *Capsus gemellatus* Herrich-Schaeffer
Wanz. Ins. 3:81.

1837 *Phytocoris artemisiae* Schilling
Uebers. Arbeit. u. Veränd. Schles. Gesell. vaterl. Kultur in 1836, p. 83.
1837 *Phytocoris adspersus* Schilling
Uebers. Arbeit. u. Veränd. Schles. Gesell. vaterl. Kultur in 1836, p. 83.
1840 *Phytocoris campestris* Blanchard (not Linnaeus)
Hist. nat. ins. 3:138.
1840 *Phytocoris punctata* Zetterstedt
Ins. lapp., p. 273.
1841 *Phytocoris lineolaris* Harris
Ins. inj. veg., p. 161.
1843 *Capsus pratensis* Meyer-Dür
Verzeich. Schweiz Rhyn., p. 99.
1845 *Phytocoris campestris* Kolenati (not Linnaeus)
Melet. ent. 2:118.
1845 *Phytocoris alpina* Kolenati
Melet. ent. 2:120.
1848 *Capsus punctatus* Sahlberg
Mon. geoc. Fenn., p. 110.
1848 *Capsus campestris* Sahlberg (not Linnaeus)
Mon. geoc. Fenn., p. 111.
1855 *Capsus* (*Deraeocoris*) *gemellatus* Kirschbaum
Rhyn. Wiesb. 10:273.
1855 *Capsus* (*Deraeocoris*) *pratensis* Kirschbaum
Rhyn. Wiesb. 10:273.
1855 *Capsus* (*Deraeocoris*) *campestris* Kirschbaum (not Linnaeus)
Ryhn. Wiesb. 10:273.
1858 *Deraeocoris campestris* Stål (not Linnaeus)
Ent. Zeit. [Stettin] 19:186.
1858 *Deraeocoris pratensis* Stål
Ent. Zeit. [Stettin] 19:186.
1861 *Lygus pratensis* Fieber
Eur. Hemip., p. 273.
1861 *Lygus campestris* Fieber (not Linnaeus)
Eur. Hemip., p. 273.
1862 *Phytocoris linearis* Uhler
Flint ed. Harris, Ins. inj. veg., p. 200 (footnote).
1871 *Capsus linearis* LeBaron
Nox. ins. Ill., 1st rept., p. 62.
1872 *Capsus flavonotatus* Provancher
Nat. Can. 4:103.
1872 *Lygus lineolaris* Uhler
U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., Montana, Prelim. rept., p. 413.
1872 *Lygus diffusus* Uhler
U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., Wyoming, Prelim. rept., p. 471. (Never described.)
1872 *Lygus redimitus* Uhler
U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., Wyoming, Prelim. rept., p. 471. (Never described.)
1875 *Lygus pratensis* var. *typicus* Reuter
Hemip. gymn. Scand. et Fenn., p. 71.
1886 *Lygus flavonotatus* Provancher
Petite faune ent. Can. 3:119, 120.
1888 *Lygus rutilans* Horváth
Rev. d'ent. 7:181.
1900 *Lygus campestris* var. *fuscorubra* Strobl
Naturw. Ver. Steiermark, Mitt. 36:188.
1906 *Lygus pratensis* var. *discrepans* Reuter
Mus. Zool. St.-Petersb., Ann. 10:39.
1912 *Lygus pratensis* var. *pubescens* Reuter [=*campestris* Fallén, name preoccupied]
Hemip. miscellen, p. 37.

Reuter (1896, 1906, 1912) has recognized the following varieties from the Old World:

Lygus pratensis punctatus Zetterstedt
L. pratensis rutilans Horváth
L. pratensis gemellatus Herrich-Schaeffer
L. pratensis typicus Reuter
L. pratensis pubescens Reuter
L. pratensis discrepans Reuter

The commonest form of *pratensis* from the eastern United States is *oblineatus* Say, which compares very favorably with the variety *punctatus* Zetterstedt. The writer has studied European specimens of the varieties *typicus* Reuter, *gemellatus* Herrich-Schaeffer, and *pubescens* Reuter (determined by Reuter), and finds nothing from the United States that could be called the same. From a study of the literature the writer is likewise unable to recognize any forms that will agree with the varieties *rutilans* Horváth and *discrepans* Reuter.

Lygus pratensis var. **oblineatus** Say

Ovate, shining; yellowish brown with more or less blackish marking, or reddish brown and fuscous; pronotum with yellowish and blackish rays; scutellum margined with blackish, leaving a Y- or heart-shaped area yellowish; hemelytra reddish brown or blackish, streaked with yellowish or gray.

♂. Length 4.9–5.5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.11 mm., vertex .45 mm., length .51 mm., height at base .65 mm.; impunctate shining; carina nearly straight, indented just in front on vertex; yellowish brown or reddish to blackish, the darkest forms blackish on the tylus and the median line of the front with one or two shorter rays at each side. *Rostrum*, length 2.28 mm., reaching posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown to reddish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .51 mm.; II, 1.46 mm.; III, .88 mm.; IV, .74 mm.; yellowish brown to reddish brown, last two segments and apical one-third of second segment blackish; darkest forms entirely blackish with brownish only on middle third of segment II.

Pronotum: length 1.25 mm., width at base 2.17 mm., width at anterior angles 1.03 mm., collar .77 mm.; deeply and irregularly punctured, calli smooth and shining, delimited behind and between by an impressed line; yellowish brown to reddish brown with blackish; blackish on the calli with two spots or rays behind each callus, also blackish at basal angles of disk and in some cases extending as a ray along the side margins; yellowish or brownish between the blackish rays and narrowly along basal and side margins of disk; fine pale depressed pubescence. *Scutellum* dull yellowish or reddish brown in the pale forms, with two black dashes at middle of base and a brownish line at each side paralleling the margin; dark forms with the pale color reduced to a Y or even to three pale dashes; transversely rugose across the middle. *Sternum* dark reddish brown to blackish, paler on the sides; pleura reddish brown to blackish, margins and orifice paler.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.5 mm.; coarsely and deeply punctate, heaviest on clavus; fine pale depressed pubescence; pale forms, yellowish brown to reddish brown, darker at apex of corium; dark forms, gray brown to blackish, paler on claval vein, brachium, cubitus, and embolium; cuneus translucent, dark brownish to reddish black bordering base and at apex. *Membrane* fuscous, paler in the middle; bordering the cuneus, the veins, and a marginal spot just beyond the apex of the cuneus, pale.

Legs: yellowish brown, reddish yellow, or blackish, the posterior femora twice annulated near apices with darker; dark forms with coxae and femora blackish, annulated with paler near apex of femora; tibiae with two blackish marks near base; tibial spines, tips of tibiae, and tarsi, brownish to blackish.

Venter: yellowish brown, reddish brown, or dark reddish to blackish, the sides with a longitudinal pale stripe; genital claspers (fig. 158) distinctive of the species; shape of claw on right clasper separates the species from its nearest relatives.

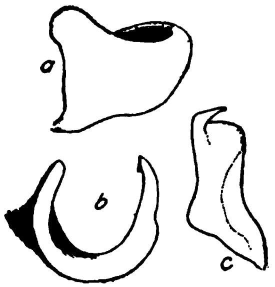


FIG. 158. LYGUS PRATENSIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

This is the commonest species in the eastern United States and is found everywhere frequenting many kinds of plants. It is a pest on nursery stock, ornamental plants, and cultivated crops. A full account of its life history, food habits, and economic status is given by Crosby and Leonard (1914), together with a very complete bibliography, containing 316 titles, dealing with the literature on this species.

Lygus pratensis var. **rubidus** new variety

Structurally not differing from *pratensis*, but bright ruby red in color.

♂. Length 5.5 mm., width 2.5 mm.; bright ruby red; pronotum with a small black spot behind each callus; antennal segments red, with apex of segment II, and all of segments III and IV, blackish; scutellum pale, marked with red at middle of base; cuneus margined with red, but pale translucent in the middle; orifice and a longitudinal stripe on sides of venter, paler; tibiae pale reddish, spines black; sternum beneath, and tips of tarsi, blackish.

Holotype: ♂ July 14, Eastport, Maine (H. M. Parshley).

This form is comparable to *vanduzeei* var. *rubroclarus*, both being produced apparently by the northern conditions and the high altitudes.

Lygus vanduzeei new species

1909 *Lygus convexicollis* Reuter
Bemerk. neark. Caps., p. 43.

Larger than *pratensis*, about the size of *convexicollis* but differing in color and pubescence; nearly glabrous, strongly shining, yellowish brown to rich brown with fuscous; genital claspers distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 7.1 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.25 mm., vertex .5 mm., length .6 mm., height at base .77 mm.; yellowish brown, eyes dark brown, impunctate and shining. *Rostrum*, length 2.93 mm., just attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .85 mm., reddish brown to piceous; II, 2.22 mm., bright reddish brown, apex blackish; III, 1.31 mm., blackish, narrowly pale at base; IV, 1 mm., fuscous; all the segments finely pubescent.

Pronotum: Length 1.7 mm., width at base 2.82 mm., width at anterior angles 1.2 mm., collar .91 mm.; nearly glabrous, strongly shining, punctures deep and irregularly placed, otherwise very similar to *pratensis* in structure; a small black spot behind each callus, usually two in the darkest specimens; basal angles with a black spot just inside the narrow pale margins, in the darkest specimens extending along lateral margins of disk; a small black spot just above the coxal cleft; dark specimens having dark brown rays behind the black spots on disk and with paler between. *Scutellum* transversely rugose and sparsely punctate, finely pubescent; yellowish brown, apex and a dash each side at base paler. *Sternum* opaque, yellowish brown, frequently fuscous beneath; pleura marked with fuscous in dark specimens; orifice pale.

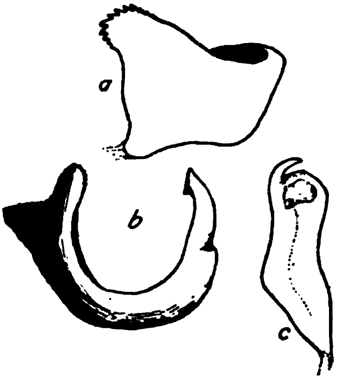


FIG. 159. LYGUS VANDUZEEI, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 3.3 mm.; strongly shining, pubescence minute, nearly glabrous; punctures coarse and deep, somewhat crowded, most prominent on the clavus; rich dark brown, darker on clavus and on apex of corium; claval vein and cubitus pale; embolium yellowish translucent except at apex, the narrow exterior edge of embolium blackish for its full length; cuneus yellowish translucent, dark brownish to blackish at base and on extreme apex. *Membrane* fuliginous, a pale spot in the center and one each side just beyond apex of cuneus; veins at apices of cells and bordering apex of cuneus also pale.

Legs: yellowish brown, apical half of posterior femora dark brownish to blackish, annulated near the apices with two pale rings; tibiae more greenish yellow, apices and spines dark brownish, a dark spot on the base and in some cases extending down the tibia as a stripe; tarsi dark brownish, tips blackish.

Venter: yellowish brown, a dark brownish longitudinal stripe each side, in some specimens brownish beneath thus forming a pale stripe beneath the dark lateral one; fine pale pubescence; genital claspers (fig. 159) typical of the group, but the shape of the claw on the right clasper and of the internal arm on the left distinguishes the species.

♀. Very similar to the male in size and coloration.

The species is named after E. P. Van Duzee, who was the first to point out the fact that this eastern form of Lygus is not the same as Reuter's *convexicollis* from California.

Reuter (1909) records *convexicollis* from New York and Pennsylvania after a study of specimens sent by Mr. Van Duzee and by O. Heidemann. This record should apply to *vanduzeei*. The true *convexicollis* is apparently restricted to the Pacific Coast States.

The species breeds on *Solidago canadensis* and possibly on other kinds of goldenrod found growing in rich moist soil. Many of the adults hibernate, as does *pratensis*, and come forth on the tender goldenrod plants during May. Several specimens may often be picked from a few unfolding heads of the tender plants, where they congregate for feeding soon after coming out of hibernation. The eggs are doubtless stuck in the tender stems of goldenrod, where the nymphs appear and feed during July. In New York most of the adults mature by the middle of August, and then continue to feed on the host plant until the cool September nights make them seek hibernation quarters. There is apparently only one brood each year, while *pratensis* has a second and even a partial third brood.

Holotype: ♂ June 22, 1916, Portage, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: 2 ♂ May 24, 8 ♂ ♀ June 21, 37 ♂ ♀ June 22, 35 ♂ ♀ June 27, ♂ 3 ♀ August 9, Portage, ♀ June 7, ♂ June 26, ♀ June 28, 2 ♀ July 5, ♀ July 6, 4 ♂ ♀ July 27, ♀ August 1, Batavia, 47 ♂ ♀ July 4–5, Four Mile, 3 ♂ 3 ♀ June 25, Wyoming, 4 ♀ July 27, McLean, 6 ♂ ♀ August 22, Whiteface Mountain, New York; all collected by the writer. ♂ 2 ♀ July 28, Lake George, New York (A. K. Fisher). 2 ♂ 2 ♀ June 12, 2 ♀ July 1, ♀ July 23, Hamburg, ♀ August 10, Gowanda, New York (E. P. Van Duzee). ♂ ♀ September 16, 2 ♀ September 24, Forest Hills, Massachusetts, ♂ 3 ♀ October 28, 2 ♀ October 3, Crawfords, New Hampshire (H. M. Parshley). ♀ July 21, Belfast, ♂ ♀ September 7, Orono, ♀ July 17, Liberty, ♀ October 27, North East Harbor, Maine. Several specimens July and August, Parry Sound, Ontario, Canada (H. S. Parish). ♀ July 8, 1 ♂ 5 ♀ September 19, 4 ♂ 3 ♀ October 11, Truro, ♂ July 2, ♀ August 6, ♀ August 10, 3 ♂ 2 ♀ September 24, ♀ October 5, Kentville, ♀ July 15, 2 ♀ September 14, Smith's Cove, Nova Scotia; all received from William H. Brittain.

Lygus vanduzeei var. **rubroclarus** new variety

Structurally very similar to *vanduzeei* but differing greatly in general appearance; slightly smaller than the typical *vanduzeei* but larger than *pratensis*; bright ruby red, shining; pronotum and antennae marked with blackish as in *vanduzeei*.

♂. Length 6.6 mm., greatest width 2.9 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.22 mm., vertex .48 mm.; yellowish brown marked with red.

Antennae: segment I, length .63 mm.; II, 1.88 mm.; III, .94 mm.; IV, .85 mm.; blood-red; base and apex of segment II, and all of segments III and IV, blackish as in *vanduzeei*.

Pronotum: length 1.32 mm., width at base 2.42 mm., collar .85 mm.; bright red, marked with blackish as in *vanduzeei*, the collar and between the calli yellowish. *Scutellum* markings similar to those in *vanduzeei* except that bright red replaces the brown; cuneus bright red, more or less pale translucent inwardly.

Legs and *venter*: dark colors of *vanduzeei* all replaced by red; genital claspers apparently not differing from those of *vanduzeei*, tho a lack of material prevents dissection and comparison of a series as should be done.

♀. Usually brighter red than the male; this sex is the more abundant in the material studied.

Holotype: ♂ May 8, Smith's Cove, Nova Scotia (William H. Brittain).

Allotype: June 6, topotypic.

Paratypes: 8 ♀ June 30, Bretton Woods, New Hampshire (E. P. Van Duzee). ♀ June 29, Mount Mansfield, Vermont (G. P. Engelhardt). ♀ June 24, 2 ♀ June 26, Bretton Woods, ♀ July 3, Glen House, ♀ July 8, Mount Washington, New Hampshire; ♀ June 15, Mount Greylock, Massachusetts; ♀ July 22, ♀ July 26, Machias, 2 ♂ July 11, Capens, Maine; all collected by C. W. Johnson. ♀ June 5, Orono, Maine (H. M. Parshley). ♀ June 14, Orono, Maine. ♀ "2643" Fabyans, New Hampshire. 2 ♀ August 8, Stratton, Vermont (P. W. Whitney). ♀ Saguenay River, Province of Quebec, Canada. 3 ♂ 5 ♀ May 8 to June 6, ♀ June 23, ♀ July 15, Smith's Cove, ♂ June 24, ♂ September 24, Kentville, Nova Scotia (William H. Brittain).

Lygus convexicollis Reuter

1876 *Lygus convexicollis* Reuter
Caps. Amer. bor., p. 72.

Resembles certain forms of *pratensis* var. *oblineatus* Say but is more nearly the size of *vanduzeei*; differs from *vanduzeei* in genital claspers, in having a longer head and rostrum, and in being less shining and more pubescent.

♂. Length 6.8–7 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.25 mm., vertex .51 mm., length .74 mm., height at base .74 mm.; yellowish marked with black, frequently with reddish on front; gula, and sutures about tylus and lorae, black, in some cases a stripe of blackish across lorae and above base of antennae; eyes dark brownish; front with a median longitudinal reddish line, at each side showing transverse subcutaneous pale lines; lower part of face, genae, and first two segments of rostrum with long pale pubescence; carina prominent, more sharply defined than in *vanduzeei*; collum black. *Rostrum*, length 3.7 mm., reaching to middle of venter, strongly pubescent, black on apical segment and along suture.

Antennae: segment I, length .6 mm., yellowish, blackish beneath and a narrow ring at apex; II, 2.14 mm., yellowish, a narrow ring at base and the apical one-third blackish, frequently the apical half black; III, 1 mm., blackish, a narrow pale ring at base; IV, .56 mm., blackish.

Pronotum: length 1.65 mm., width at base 2.58 mm., width at anterior angles 1.2 mm., collar .88 mm.; disk strongly convex, more closely punctured and the anterior angles more sharply defined than in *vanduzeei*; pale pubescent, yellowish, faintly marked with six reddish rays on the disk, pale between; small black spot behind the inner angle of each callus, also black at basal and anterior angles, and in some cases extending down into the coxal cleft; black scutum frequently showing dark thru base of disk. *Scutellum* pale yellowish, marked as in *vanduzeei* but with black, having two median basal dashes with a black line paralleling the side margins, coarsely punctured and transversely rugose, pubescence pale; mesoscutum black, only narrowly exposed. *Sternum* opaque and black beneath, sides yellowish often marked with reddish; orifice pale tinged with reddish.

Hemelytra: greatest width 3 mm.; yellowish marked with fuscous, very similar to certain forms of *pratensis*; clavus and corium more or less irregularly blotched with fuscous; claval suture, the very thin narrow exterior edge of embolium, and extending along basal half of cuneus, black; coarsely and closely punctured, heaviest on clavus, prominent pale pubescence; cuneus with apex and a small spot at inner basal angle black. *Membrane* pale fuliginous, marked with darker; within apices of cells, a semicircular cloud just beyond the paler middle part, fuscous; veins pale.

Legs: yellowish marked with fuscous and black; coxae and trochanters frequently marked with fuscous; basal half of fore and middle femora shaded with fuscous on the lower side, apical half with three narrow blackish rings; basal one-third of hind femora mostly pale, a broad fuscous band in the middle and three narrower bands near the apex, the narrowest and blackest at the very apex; apices of the femora with two prominent black spines on the dorsal side; tibiae pale yellowish or tinged with greenish; spines black, a spot on the knee and a ring just below it black, apices brownish black; tarsi with basal segment, apical half of third segment, and claws, blackish.

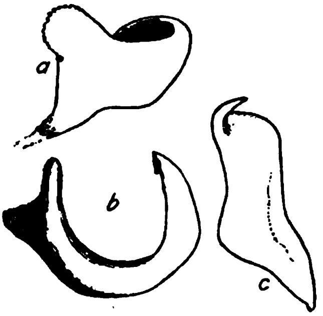


FIG. 160. LYGUS CONVEXICOLLIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a. Left clasper, lateral aspect; b. left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Venter: black beneath, a wide pale stripe at sides with the latero-dorsal part brownish to fuscous; genital claspers (fig. 160) typical of the *pratensis* group, but the thick internal arm of the left clasper distinguishes the species.

♀. Very similar to the male in structure and coloration, tho usually slightly paler; second antennal segment slightly shorter (2.03 mm.), and more slender on the basal half.

Description drawn from specimens sent by E. P. Van Duzee, taken in Muir Woods, California, the type specimen being recorded from that State.

Records: 3 ♂ ♀ September 5, Muir Woods, California (E. P. Van Duzee). ♂ July 15, Sausalito, Marin County, California. 2 ♀ August, Olympia, Washington.

Lygus convexicollis var. **coloratus** new variety

Structurally not distinguishable from *convexicollis* tho slightly smaller; reddish in color, hemelytra not marked with fuscous and more or less translucent.

♂. Length 6.5 mm., greatest width 2.7 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.2 mm., vertex .48 mm.; yellowish marked with red; collum and apical segment of rostrum black.

Antennae: yellowish to reddish, marked with blackish as in *convexicollis*.

Pronotum: reddish, more yellowish on calli and collar; black marks on disk, xypnus, scutellum, and sternum, similar to those in *convexicollis*.

Hemelytra: entirely reddish, in some cases with yellowish and translucent in paler forms; veins and cuneus, except the center, reddish.

Legs: marked similarly to those of *convexicollis* with fuscous and dark reddish.

Venter: reddish at sides with a paler lateral stripe, blackish beneath; genital claspers showing a slight variation from those of the typical *convexicollis*, but nothing specific.

Described from specimens taken in general sweeping by Harold Morrison near Stanford University, California.

Holotype: ♂ March 26, Stanford University, California (H. Morrison).

Allotype: with the type (collection of H. Morrison).

Paratypes: 3 ♂ ♀ March 26, ♂ March 21, Stanford University, ♀ April 11, Corte Madero Creek Canyon, near Stanford University (H. Morrison).

Lygus humeralis new species

Closely related to *convexicollis*, but smaller, rostrum shorter, pronotum having very prominent humeral angles; dark reddish brown, more sepia brown above, frequently more yellowish brown in the females.

♂. Length 6.5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.14 mm.; vertex .45 mm., length .63 mm., height at base .69 mm.; yellowish brown marked with reddish and black; bases of juga, and lorae, bucculae, gula, and collum, dark reddish to black; carina prominent, indented in front, vertex more or less roughened; front with indistinct transverse striae, suggestive of *striatus*; eyes reddish brown. *Rostrum*, length 2.71 mm., extending slightly beyond posterior margins of hind coxae, pale pubescent, yellowish to reddish brown.

Antennae: segment I, length .65 mm., dark reddish brown; II, 2.05 mm., reddish brown, apex fuscous; III, 1.03 mm., fuscous with reddish, narrowly pale at base; IV, .76 mm., reddish black; all segments with fine yellowish pubescence.

Pronotum: length 1.31 mm., width at base 2.18 mm., width at anterior angles 1.03 mm., collar .8 mm.; humeral angles of disk very prominent, sharply defined, more noticeable in the female; collar indented on median line above, disk coarsely and deeply punctured; dark reddish brown, usually sepia brown on the disk, shining; calli, and about the anterior angles and in some cases the collar, dark reddish with fuscous; a small black spot behind the inner margin of each callus, dark fuscous in basal angles of disk; sides coarsely punctured, dark reddish brown to fuscous, darkest about coxal cleft. *Scutellum* dark reddish brown to blackish, indistinctly marked with pale at tip and a dash each side at base; coarsely punctured and transversely rugose. *Sternum* opaque, dark reddish brown to blackish; pleura dark; orifice pale.

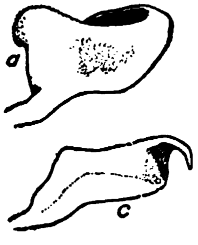


FIG. 161. LYGUS HUMERALIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS
a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.74 mm.; dark reddish brown to sepia brown with fuscous; corium bordering the embolium more or less yellowish translucent; coarsely and closely punctured, heaviest on the clavus; depressed pale yellowish pubescence; cuneus dark reddish brown to fuscous brown, usually paler in middle. *Membrane* pale, tinged with brownish bordering veins and in some cases near apex; a small but prominent fuscous mark just exterior to inner apical angles of large cells; dark specimens have a more noticeable brown cloud bordering apex of membrane.

Legs: coxae and femora dark reddish brown to blackish; tips of femora yellowish brown, the paler forms twice annulated near apices; tips of coxae and margins of trochanters paler; tibiae dark yellowish to reddish brown, two reddish black spots near base, one on the knee and the other just below, spines dark brownish; apices of tarsi darkened with fuscous.

Venter: dark reddish brown to blackish, spiracles conspicuous as pale spots; genital claspers (fig. 161) typical of the *pratensis* group, shape of the right clasper with claw very distinctive.

♀. Length 6.4 mm., width 3 mm.; slightly more robust than the male, anterior angles of pronotum more prominent, frequently more yellowish brown in color.

Holotype: ♂ July 20, Bear Lake, British Columbia.

Allotype: topotypic.

Paratypes: ♀ July 20, Bear Lake, ♂ ♀ July 2, Ainsworth, British Columbia. ♂ ♀ July 1, ♀ July 5, Revelstoke, Selkirk Mountains, British Columbia (J. C. Bradley).

Lygus columbiensis new species

Closely related to *humeralis* but differing in the genital claspers, in the shorter rostrum, and in the anterior angles of the pronotum being less prominent; mostly black beneath, reddish above marked with black.

♂. Length 6.7 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.16 mm., vertex .45 mm., length .57 mm., height at base .68 mm.; black, shining, lower margins of juga pale tinged with red; carina transverse, pale, closely margined with black behind; vertex mostly pale, black along the margin of each eye with a point jutting inward at top; eyes dark brown. *Rostrum*, length 2.51 mm., attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, dark reddish, segment I with apex pale, segment II blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .63 mm., dark reddish, piceous on lower side; II, 1.91 mm., piceous; segments III and IV, broken.

Pronotum: length 1.28 mm., width at base 2.22 mm., width at anterior angles 1 mm., collar .74 mm.; disk coarsely punctured but less crowded than in *humeralis*; reddish with black, shining; calli black, with two short rays behind each callus, the black at each side extending forward on the anterior angles to the collar; basal angles of disk with black, narrow basal margin pale; sides dark reddish to blackish, margins bordering coxae pale. *Scutellum* black, shining, the apex pale with reddish; coarsely punctured, more or less transversely rugose. *Sternum* black, opaque; pleura black; margins bordering the middle coxae pale with reddish; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.93 mm.; dark reddish, coarsely punctured, shining, very fine short pubescence; clavus darker bordering the scutellum, tip of the embolium piceous; cuneus uniformly dark reddish, the apex and a spot bordering embolium blackish. *Membrane* unusually clear, apical half of cells and bordering veins brownish; veins red, narrow basal angles of the membrane with fuscous; a fuscous mark at the inner apical angles of the large cells, but much less distinct than in *humeralis*.

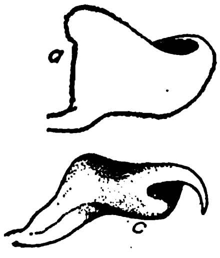


FIG. 162. LYGUS COLUMBIENSIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Legs: coxae black, opaque; trochanters blackish with pale margins; femora dark reddish to piceous, twice annulated with piceous, contrasted with pale reddish rings;

tibiae pale reddish, marked with blackish at the knees as in ***humeralis***, spines reddish to black; tarsi pale reddish, apices fuscous.

Venter: piceous, shining, a narrow reddish lateral line extending across third to seventh segments; genital claspers distinctive (fig. 162), the right clasper with a large, long claw.

Holotype: ♂ July 23, Fry Creek, British Columbia.

Lygus superiorensis new species

Closely related to ***columbiensis***, but more slender, punctures on the pronotum much finer, carina arcuate toward the rear, right genital clasper distinctive; color dark reddish with black.

♂. Length 5.8 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.07 mm., vertex .4 mm., length .51 mm., height at base .62 mm.; carina pale, distinctly arcuate to the rear; very similar to ***columbiensis*** in color, except that the lorae and the tylus are dark red without black. ***Rostrum***, length 2.57 mm., extending to posterior margin of the third abdominal segment; color as in ***columbiensis***.

Pronotum: length 1.16 mm., width at base 2.06 mm., width at anterior angles .88 mm., collar .71 mm.; more finely punctured than in ***columbiensis***, strongly shining; anterior angles more rounded, not clearly defined and margined as in ***columbiensis***; calli black except for a reddish spot on the inner half, a black spot behind each inner margin, the black at outer margins extending forward to the collar; disk reddish, more dusky toward the base, darkest in the basal angles; sides reddish brown with fuscous, lower margin and bordering the coxae pale; pubescence minute, nearly glabrous. ***Scutellum*** dark reddish black, tip pale; coarsely punctured, transversely rugose; fine pale pubescence noticeable on the base and sides. ***Sternum*** black, opaque, episternum and basalar plate with reddish; margins bordering middle coxae pale; pleura and orifice very similar to those of ***columbiensis*** but with more reddish.

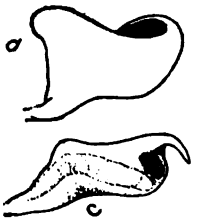


FIG. 163. LYGUS SUPERIORENSIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.57 mm.; dark reddish, translucent, very similar to ***columbiensis*** in color and structure. ***Membrane*** similar to ***columbiensis***, faintly tinged with brownish near apex.

Legs: coxae dark reddish to piceous; femora reddish brown, fuscous on lower basal half and twice annulated with blackish near the apices; tibiae reddish brown, the apices, a spot at the knees, and the spines, reddish black; tarsi reddish brown, apices blackish.

Venter: uniformly dark reddish to piceous, spiracles apparent as pale dots; no indication of a pale lateral line as in ***columbiensis***; male genital claspers (fig. 163) distinctive.

Holotype: ♂, from Sault Sainte Marie, Michigan.

Lygus atriflavus new species

Easily distinguished by the yellow color, black antennae, and black marks on the dorsum; more elongate than ***pratensis***, closely related to ***elisus*** but differing greatly in color; claw of the right genital clasper very thick when viewed dorsally.

♂. Length 5.1–5.9 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.14 mm., vertex .45 mm., length .57 mm., height at base .71 mm.; yellow, smooth shining; frequently with a narrow black line extending from base of antenna up along the margin of the eye and pointing into the vertex; the darkest specimens fuscous on the tylus and front, and blackish on the dorsal margins of lorae and bases of juga; carina transverse, pale, indented before, collum black; eyes black, posterior margins yellow. *Rostrum*, length 2.28 mm., attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish, apex black.

Antennae: segment I, length .6 mm., black, in some cases brownish on dorsal side; II, 1.97 mm., black; III, 1 mm., black; IV, .6 mm., black.

Pronotum: length 1.28 mm., width at base 2.25 mm., width at anterior angles 1.03 mm., collar .77 mm.; yellow marked with black; coarsely and closely punctured, shining, pubescence minute; outer half of calli and extending forward to collar, two rays behind each callus, and irregularly across base of disk, black; in darkest specimens the rays join the black at base of disk and a third ray may be present extending back from the anterior angles; sides yellow with a black ray extending back from top of coxal cleft. *Scutellum* bright yellow, usually a short but broad black dash on median line at base; transversely rugose, punctures not distinct. *Sternum* yellow, frequently blackish along the median line beneath; pleura yellow; orifice paler.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.62 mm., coarsely and closely punctured, heaviest on the clavus; pale pubescence, minute and oppressed; yellowish to pale and marked with black; clavus black, usually with pale each side of claval suture; corium black, usually with pale at base and along the cubitus, more yellow bordering the embolium; embolium yellow, a black spot at tip but not extending to outer margin; cuneus pale, in some cases marked with fuscous at base and tip. *Membrane* pale, lightly shaded with fuscous within the cells and clouded toward the tip; veins pale, a distinct fuscous mark at the inner apical angle of each large cell, similar to ***humeralis***, ***superiorensis***, and certain other forms.

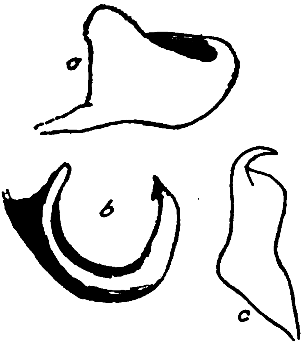


FIG. 164. LYGUS ATRIFLAVUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS
a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Legs: yellow, femora twice annulated near the apices with black, also margined with black at extreme tips; tibiae yellowish, the spines and two spots at each knee black, tips usually fuscous; tarsi fuscous, darker toward the apices.

Venter: yellow or greenish yellow, basal lobe of left clasper black; genital claspers distinctive (fig. 164), the claw on the right clasper unusually thick at base, showing best in a dorsal view.

♀. Very similar to the male in structure and coloration, only slightly more robust.

Holotype: ♂ June 7–17, Jemez Springs, New Mexico, altitude 6400 feet (John Woodgate).

Allotype: topotypic.

Paratypes: 27 ♂ ♀ June 7 to July 12, Jemez Springs, New Mexico, altitude 6400 feet (John Woodgate). ♂ 2 ♀ July 27, Kern Lake to Rock Creek, Tulare County, California, altitude 6250 to 7000 feet (J. C. Bradley). ♂ July 26, Denver, Colorado (E. C. Jackson). ♂ July 13, Rist Canyon, ♂ July 25, Rifle, Colorado; ♀, "Colo. 2213"; all received from C. P. Gillette. 3 ♀ July 23, Half Moon Lake, near Lake Tahoe, California (E. P. Van Duzee).

Lygus elisus Van Duzee

1914 *Lygus pratensis* var. *elisus* Van Duzee
San Diego Soc. Nat. Hist., Trans. 2:20.
1916 *Lygus elisus* Van Duzee
Check list Hemip. N. Amer., p. 40.

Pale greenish with the pronotum and scutellum bright green, a small black spot behind each callus; hemelytra pallid with two fuscous marks at the tip of the corium and with dusky on the middle of the clavus; more elongate and subparallel than *pratensis*; genital claspers distinctive, showing a close affinity to *atriflavus*.

♂. Length 4.8–5.8 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.2 mm., vertex .45 mm., length .51 mm., height at base .71 mm.; greenish yellow, smooth shining, collum black; structurally very similar to that of *atriflavus*. *Rostrum*, length 2.11 mm., scarcely attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .52 mm., pale brownish, blackish on lower side; II, 1.98 mm., dusky brown, lower side at base and extreme apex blackish; III, .85 mm., brownish, apex fuscous; IV, .6 mm., dusky brown.

Pronotum: length 1.4 mm., width at base 2.22 mm., width at anterior angles 1.12 mm., collar .77 mm.; coarsely, deeply, and closely punctured, minute pale pubescence; bright green, anterior margin more or less yellowish; a small black spot behind the inner margin of each callus, in some cases the inner margin of callus also black. *Scutellum* bright green, two black dashes in the middle at the base; roughly transversely rugose; mesoscutum black, scarcely exposed. *Sternum* opaque, pale to greenish yellow; pleura yellowish green; orifice pale yellowish.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.57 mm.; pallid, translucent; clavus with a dusky cloud in the middle divided by the pale claval vein; apex of the corium with two small fuscous patches; tip of the embolium faintly tinged with fuscous; cuneus pale, extreme tip fuscous. *Membrane* clear, veins pale.

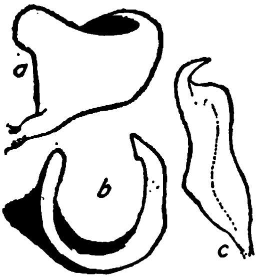


FIG. 165. LYGUS ELISUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS
a. Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Legs: pale yellowish; femora with a wide fuscous band in the middle on the lower side, also twice annulated near the apices, extreme apical margins fuscous; tibiae with a spot on the knee and a ring just below, fuscous, spines blackish; apices of tarsi fuscous.

Venter: yellowish green; genital claspers distinctive (fig. 165), showing a close relation to *atriflavus*.

♀. Slightly more robust than the male, very similar in coloration.

Description drawn from two paratypes presented by E. P. Van Duzee, and also from several specimens collected by Dr. J. C. Bradley at Atwood, California. Originally described from San Diego County, California, where Mr. Van Duzee took the species in great numbers on Chenopodium. The specimens here recorded from South Dakota, Colorado, and Texas are typically colored like those from the type locality.

Records: ♂ 3 ♀ July 23, El Paso, Texas; 2 ♂ 2 ♀ August 2, Coconina, Arizona; ♂ 2 ♀ August 10, Imperial, California; all collected by J. C. Bradley. ♂ March 26, Stanford University, California (H. Morrison). ♂ ♀ July 9, 2 ♂ July 10, 2 ♂ July 16, 3 ♂ July 27, ♀ August 18, ♀ August 22, Ardmore, South Dakota; 7 ♂ ♀ August 22, Niobrara County, Wyoming; all collected by E. G. Holt. ♂ ♀ August 17, Grant, ♀ September 7, Denver, Colorado (E. C. Jackson). ♂ August 6, Alamosa, 2 ♀ August 12, Durango, ♂ 3 ♀ June 10, Fort Lupton, ♂ ♀ April 23, Fort Collins, Colorado (C. P. Gillette).

Lygus elisus var. **viridiscutatus** new variety

Distinguished from var. *hesperus* chiefly by the bright green scutellum and the green disk of the pronotum; base of pronotum and the hemelytra reddish.

♂. Length 5.7 mm. *Head*: yellowish green, eyes brown. *Rostrum* yellowish green, apical segment ferruginous, attaining posterior margins of hind coxae.

Antennae: similar to those of *elisus*.

Pronotum: collar and calli yellowish, disk greenish, basal half and margins reddish. *Scutellum* bright green; mesoscutum beneath pronotum blackish. *Sternum* fuscous below, yellowish to greenish on the sides.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.4 mm.; reddish, doubtless bright red in life, costal margins paler; cuneus yellowish brown, translucent; membrane clear, lightly infumed along apices of cells, veins slightly darkened.

Legs: yellowish tinged with reddish brown, apical rings of the femora not clearly distinguished.

Venter: sides yellowish with greenish along the dorsal margins, ventral side fuscous to black.

♀. Second antennal segment slenderer than in male and yellowish brown in color; sternum and venter almost entirely yellowish or greenish; otherwise colored like the male.

This is a color variety of *elisus* possibly produced thru the effects of hibernation. All the forms thus far studied were taken early in the spring. The type specimens have been returned to E. P. Van Duzee, who sent the material for study

Holotype: ♂ April 22, San Diego County, California (E. P. Van Duzee).

Allotype: April 9, topotypic.

Paratypes: ♂ April 11, near Stanford University, California, Corte Madero Creek, lower half of the canyon, ♂ March 26, Stanford University (H. Morrison).

Lygus elisus var. **hesperus** new variety

Larger than *elisus*, the females fairly uniformly yellowish, males marked with red; this form appears to be fairly distinct from *elisus* in general appearance, but on a structural basis the forms are hard to separate.

♂. Length 6.5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.22 mm., vertex .45 mm., length .57 mm., height at base .71 mm.; yellowish, smooth shining, eyes and collum black. *Rostrum*, length 2.68 mm., attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .65 mm., pale reddish brown, fuscous on lower side; II, 2.11 mm., reddish, apex and lower side at base blackish; III, 1 mm., dark reddish brown to fuscous; IV, .63 mm., fuscous.

Pronotum: length 1.34 mm., width at base 2.28 mm., width at anterior angles 1.08 mm., collar .83 mm.; structurally very similar to that of *elisus*; yellowish, bright yellow between calli and just before; outer half of calli and a small round spot behind each inner margin, a spot within basal and anterior angles of disk, and a small spot behind coxal cleft, black. *Scutellum* bright yellow, two median basal dashes black; mesoscutum scarcely exposed, black. *Sternum* opaque, black beneath, sides yellowish; pleura yellowish, orifice paler.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.68 mm.; more pallid than yellowish; apex of clavus and suture, apical half of corium, and tip of embolium, reddish or marked with red; inner margin and tip of cuneus reddish. *Membrane* pale, faintly shaded with brownish bordering the veins, a darker mark at the inner apical angles of the large cells.

Legs: yellowish, more or less shaded with reddish; markings on the femora similar to those in *elisus* but more reddish in color; tibiae yellowish, apices reddish, spines black; tips of tarsi fuscous.

Venter: fuscous beneath, sides yellow; genital claspers similar to those of *elisus*, no differences being shown in a figure.

♀. More uniformly yellowish than the male, pronotum entirely yellow except for a small black dot behind the inner margin of each callus; hemelytra uniformly pallid without reddish; markings on the femora more reduced; venter yellow; second antennal segment slightly more slender, in color rather brownish than red.

The type specimens are from material presented by C. H. Kennedy, who found this form fairly abundant about the alfalfa fields on Santa Cruz Island, California.

Holotype: ♂ July 26, Santa Cruz Island, California (C. H. Kennedy).

Allotype: topotypic.

Paratypes: 48 ♂ ♀ July 26, Santa Cruz Island, California (C. H. Kennedy). ♂ August 15, Ramona, ♂ August 7, Descanso, 2 ♂ August 6, Atwood, San Diego County, 3 ♂ ♀ Brawley, California (J. C. Bradley). 4 ♀, Pasadena, Los Angeles County, California (F. Grinnell, jr.). 3 ♂ June 11, Jacumba-Campo, San Diego County, ♂ ♀ June 2, Santa Barbara, California (H. Morrison).

Lygus plagiatus Uhler

1895 *Lygus plagiatus* Uhler
Hemip. Colo., p. 35.

More robust than *pratensis*, black with greenish yellow, mottled; head and anterior part of the pronotum yellowish or olive green, hemelytra irregularly mottled with black and paler spots; differs from *pratensis* in the antennal segments and in the form of the right genital clasper.

♂. Length 5.3 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.2 mm., vertex .51 mm., length .57 mm., height at base .74 mm.; yellowish green marked with black, shining; median line of front and two slender irregular lines each side, eyes, and usually apical half of tylus, blackish; structurally very similar to that of *pratensis*. *Rostrum*, length 2.08 mm., reaching only slightly beyond posterior margins of middle coxae, greenish yellow, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .54 mm., brownish black; II, 1.71 mm., yellowish brown, base and apical one-fourth blackish; III, 1 mm., fuscous, greenish yellow at base; IV, .94 mm., fuscous.

Pronotum: length 1.25 mm., width at base 2.22 mm., width at anterior angles 1.14 mm.; coarsely and sparsely punctate, shining, minute pale pubescence; greenish yellow marked with black, mostly black in dark specimens; outer half of calli and extending forward to collar, two rays behind each callus and usually extending to join black on basal margin, black; disk narrowly margined with pale; lower side margins pale yellowish with a wedge-shaped black ray extending back from top of coxal cleft. *Scutellum*. blackish, two yellowish spots at base, one each side of middle, the apical half with a pale median vitta, in pale specimens the lateral margins yellowish; transversely rugose, pale pubescent; mesoscutum prominently pale pubescent. *Sternum* black, opaque, marked with yellowish at sides; pleura blackish; margins of sclerites and basalar plate greenish yellow; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.8 mm.; broader than *pratensis*, blackish and irregularly mottled with greenish yellow; narrow lateral margin of embolium and apex black; cuneus greenish yellow, the apex and a spot at the base opposite the embolium black. *Membrane* fuscous, veins pale; usually the middle, and an area each side of the middle, paler.

Legs: yellowish or greenish yellow, apical half of femora marked with black; front and middle femora with two fuscous rings near the apices, the posterior pair twice annulated with black and yellowish toward the apices, in addition a third and wider blackish band at the middle; tibiae yellowish, the spines, a spot on the knee, and a ring just below, black, tips fuscous; tarsi yellowish, blackish at tips.

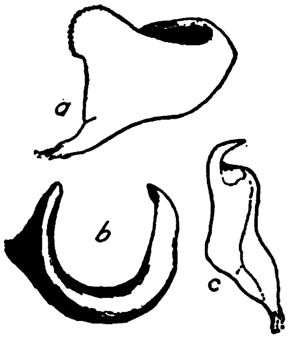


Fig. 166. Lygus plagiatus, male genital claspers

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Venter: black, yellowish on the lower side at base, spiracles surrounded with yellowish or greenish; genital claspers (fig. 166) typical of the *pratensis* group; shape of the claw on the right clasper easily separates the species from *pratensis*.

♀. Slightly more robust than the male and usually paler in color; second antennal segment shorter (1.57 mm.); pronotum more yellowish, black rays behind the calli frequently not reaching the black basal margin; venter greenish yellow, blackish on the vagina exterior, dark specimens with the black more extended.

The species is found by sweeping in weed fields, it usually occurring on ragweeds tho apparently never in abundance. Mr. Van Duzee took the species on great ragweed (*Ambrosia trifida*) near Buffalo, New York.

Records: 2 ♂ July 15, Springfield, ♂ July 22, Hollister, Missouri; ♀ July 24, Ithaca, New York; all collected by H. H. Knight. 3 ♂ 2 ♀ September 18, Buffalo, New York (E. P. Van Duzee). ♀ March 3, 2 ♀ October 1, Maspeth, 4 ♂ 3 ♀ Forest Hill, Long Island; ♀ May 2, White Plains, New York; ♂ 3 ♀ July 30, Pigeon Cove, Massachusetts; all collected by C. E. Olsen. ♂ September 30, Forest Hills, Massachusetts (H. M. Parshley). ♂ April 25, Kingston, Rhode Island. ♀ August 29, Madison, New Jersey (Wm. T. Davis). ♀ November

25, Columbia, Missouri (C. R. Crosby). ♂ 2 ♀ June 10–21, Atherton, Missouri (C. F. Adams). 2 ♀ August 11, Charleston, Missouri (E. H. Gibson).

Lygus striatus new species

Easily distinguished by the transverse striae on the front of the head, the pallid color, and the black markings about the calli; in general appearance resembling ***nigropallidus*** but easily separated by the form of the claw on the right genital clasper.

♂. Length 5.5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.22 mm., vertex .48 mm., length .54 mm., height at base .7 mm.; front of head with seven or eight striae each side of median line, nearly transverse but inclined slightly downward; pale yellowish, narrowly black surrounding the antennal socket and in a line extending immediately above, eyes dark brownish, collum black. *Rostrum*, length 1.72 mm., not reaching posterior margins of middle coxae, yellowish, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .54 mm., yellowish, a blackish line on lower side; II, 1.54 mm., pale yellowish brown, fuscous at apex; III, .74 mm., fuscous, narrowly pale at base; IV, .6 mm., blackish.

Pronotum: length 1.12 mm., width at base .77 mm., width at anterior angles 1.12 mm., collar .74 mm.; coarsely, rather deeply, and closely punctate, fine pale pubescence; pale, more or less yellowish, a black spot within basal angles; calli with inner and front margins, outer half and extending forward to collar, and a spot behind each inner angle, black; sides with a black ray extending back from top margin of coxal cleft. *Scutellum* pale yellowish, black on base, two median black dashes extending from base and joined beyond middle at each side by a black line running parallel with lateral margins; transversely rugose, pale pubescent. *Sternum* blackish beneath, opaque, yellowish at sides; pleura pale yellowish, in some cases shaded with fuscous; orifice pale.

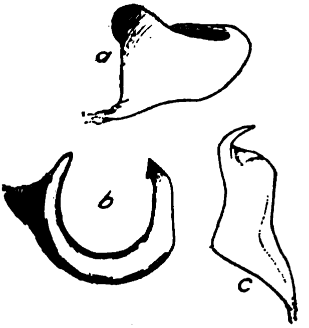


FIG. 167. LYGUS STRIATUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.68 mm.; pallid, middle of clavus and apical half of corium irregularly spotted with fuscous; extreme claval margins bordering the scutellum blackish; punctures on the clavus broad, shallow, and closely placed; pubescence pale and closely appressed; cuneus pale yellowish, scarcely darkened at tip. *Membrane* pale brownish, blackish in the basal angles; a longitudinal fuscous cloud extending from within the apex of each large cell to near the tip, where both fuse in an arc.

Legs: pale yellowish, femora twice annulated near apices with fuscous, extreme apical margins blackish; tibiae with a fuscous spot on the knee and usually a second one just below, spines dark brownish to black; tarsi yellowish, apices fuscous.

Venter: dull yellowish, dark brownish to fuscous on the lower side, darker nearer the base; genital claspers (fig. 167) characteristic of the *pratensis* group; the form of the right clasper, taken in connection with the short rostrum and the striae on the front of the head, separates the species from all others.

♀. Very similar to the male in size and coloration, second antennal segment shorter (1.4 mm.) as is usual in the *pratensis* group.

Holotype: ♂ July 27 to August 1, Kern Lake to Rock Creek, Tulare County, California, altitude 6250–7000 feet (J. C. Bradley).

Allotype: topotypic.

Paratypes: 4 ♀, topotypic.

Lygus nigropallidus new species

Closely related to *striatus* but more shining above and black beneath; differs in the black markings on the head and about the calli; right genital clasper with the claw longer and more extended than in *striatus*.

♂. Length 5.3 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.16 mm., vertex .48 mm., length .54 mm., height at base .68 mm.; pale or dull yellowish marked with black; front having striae but not so distinct as in *striatus*; two irregular black lines extending up from the base of each antenna, the inner pair joining across the front while the outer lines curve up by the eye and point to a spot on the vertex; bases of juga, gula, margins of lorae, eyes, and collum, black; in some cases tylus reddish or fuscous at sides; carina slightly arcuate to rear, a depression from corner of each eye extending to center of vertex. *Rostrum*, length 1.77 mm., scarcely reaching posterior margins of middle coxae, pale, blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .51 mm., pale yellowish, blackish on lower side; II, 1.42 mm., yellowish brown, base and apex fuscous; III, .77 mm., fuscous, brownish at base; IV, .68 mm., fuscous.

Pronotum: length 1.2 mm., width at base 2.08 mm., width at anterior angles 1.02 mm., collar .77 mm.; punctures more distinct and disk more shining than in *striatus*; calli pale or brownish, shining, two black spots or short rays behind each, black on the inner margins; a black ray extending back from top of coxal cleft, also blackish in the stricture and extending back as a short ray inside anterior angles of disk. *Scutellum* black, a median pale vitta with a small spot each side at base, in some cases yellowish along the lateral margins; rather roughly transversely rugose, pale pubescence. *Sternum* black, opaque, in some cases slightly brownish at the sides; pleura blackish, pale to brownish at the margins; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.45 mm.; pallid, translucent, black dorsum of the venter showing thru; clavus fuscous along the middle each side of the pale claval vein; corium irregularly blotched with pale fuscous, somewhat similar to that of *striatus*; extreme outer edge of embolium and cuneus fuscous; cuneus pale yellowish, translucent, slightly darkened with fuscous along the basal margins; punctuation and pubescence very similar to that in *striatus*. *Membrane* pale, darkened with fuscous brown bordering both sides of the veins; apical half clouded with fuliginous.

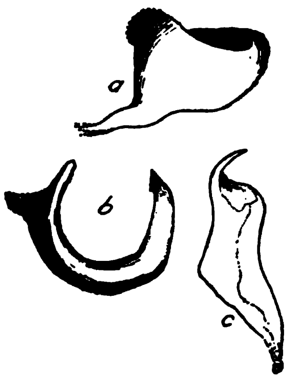


FIG. 168. LYGUS NIGROPALLIDUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Legs: coxae blackish, paler at apices; femora brownish to fuscous, twice annulated with pale near the apices; tibiae pale, the spines, a spot on the knee, and one just below, blackish: tarsi yellowish brown, apices fuscous.

Venter: black, shining, having a golden luster, spiracles appearing as pale spots; genital claspers (fig. 168) typical of the *pratensis* group, distinguished from those of *striatus* by the longer and more extended slender claw on the right clasper.

♀. Length 6.1 mm., greatest width 2.85 mm.; slightly larger and more robust than the male, very similar in coloration, the last abdominal segment somewhat pale.

Holotype: ♂ June 7–17, Jemez Springs, New Mexico, altitude 6400 feet (John Woodgate).

Allotype: topotypic.

Lygus aeratus new species

Fuscous brown tinged with bronze; transverse striae on the front of the head; hemelytra with small patches of silvery pubescence, somewhat suggestive of ***plagiatus*** in this respect.

♂. Length 5.7 mm. ***Head***: width across eyes 1.11 mm., vertex .45 mm., length .51 mm., height at base .68 mm.; brownish with fuscous, shining; front with five nearly transverse striae, broken at middle by the median line; vertex nearly flat, slightly grooved in the middle; basal carina prominent, yellowish. ***Rostrum***, length 2.45 mm., dark fuscous brown, paler at joints, scarcely reaching posterior margins of hind coxae.

Antennae: segment I, length .57 mm.; II, 1.71 mm.; III, .77 mm.; IV, .57 mm.; brownish bronze, last two segments darker.

Pronotum: length 1.48 mm., width at base 2.45 mm., width at anterior angles 1.14 mm., collar .83 mm.; brownish to bronze, shining; collar and calli more ferruginous, sides nearly black; disk with five rather indistinct pale rays; punctures coarse, deep, and rather closely placed. ***Scutellum*** dark brownish to black, tip paler; punctures confluent and roughly transversely rugose. ***Sternum*** dark fuscous brown, opaque; orifice pale, posterior lobe nearly white.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.7 mm., lateral margins curved; fuscous brown tinged with bronze; small patches of silvery pubescence set in a field of fine golden pubescence; translucent spots in evidence along the exterior margin of the corium and at base of the claval suture; clavus and corium rather coarsely and closely punctured; cuneus brownish to fuscous, only slightly translucent. ***Membrane*** clear, veins and narrow margin next to them lightly infumed, a dark brownish mark bordering the inner apical angles of the larger cells.

Legs: dark brownish to ferruginous; anterior coxae with a prominent puncture on the front side near the base; femora with a pale ring at apex with indications of a second annulus just before; tibiae yellowish brown, spines ferruginous, a spot on the knee and a ring just below fuscous to ferruginous; tarsi yellowish brown with apices and claws blackish.

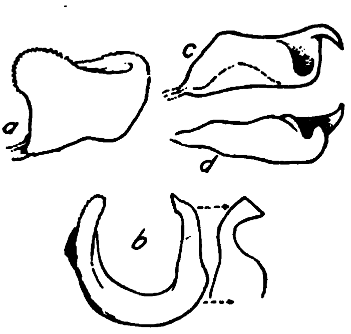


FIG. 169. LYGUS AERATUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect; d, right clasper, ventral aspect

Venter: brownish black to ferruginous, pale surrounding spiracles; genital claspers (fig. 169) typical of the group, right clasper distinctive of the species.

♀. Slightly broader than the male, with costal margin more curved; somewhat variable in shade of color, ranging from the typical brownish bronze to dark fuscous bronze.

Holotype: ♂ July 15, Mount Tallac, near Lake Tahoe, California (E. P. Van Duzee).

Allotype: topotypic.

Paratypes: 2 ♀ July 22, 2 ♀ July 23, Mount Tallac, near Lake Tahoe, California (E. P. Van Duzee). 2 ♀ July 19, Alta Meadows, Sequoia National Park, California, altitude 9000 feet (J. C. Bradley); these two specimens much darker in color than those taken on Mount Tallac.

The type specimens have been returned to Mr. Van Duzee.

Lygus bradleyi new species

In general appearance suggestive of ***distinguendus*** but differing in the shape of the pronotum and the scutellum; dark yellowish gray marked with black; genital claspers distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 5–6.3 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.2 mm., vertex .47 mm., length .54 mm., height at base .68 mm.; front with striae rather similar to those in *striatus*; black with pale brownish; a spot at base and the lower margins of juga, the middle part of lorae, a spot beneath the eye, each side of median line in front, carina, and across vertex just in front, black; eyes brown or dark brown; pale sericeous pubescence. *Rostrum*, length 1.88 mm., scarcely attaining posterior margins of middle coxae; pale brownish, shaded with blackish at joints and apex.

Antennae: segment I, length .54 mm., yellowish brown, blackish beneath and shaded with fuscous on upper side at base; II, 1.57 mm., yellowish brown, base and apical one-third blackish; III, .75 mm., dark brownish to fuscous, narrowly pale at base; IV, .68 mm., fuscous.

Pronotum: length 1.25 mm., width at base 2.11 mm., width at anterior angles 1.03 mm., collar .74 mm.; punctures deep and closely placed, fine pale pubescence; calli distinctly elevated, defined behind by an impressed line; yellowish brown or olive-gray marked with black; margins of calli, two rays behind each callus and one at either side extending from the anterior angles, collar, and just before the calli, black; in a dark specimen the disk is mostly blackish, with a median line and two rays at each side paler; sides and xyphus black with pale on the margins and bordering the coxal cleft. *Scutellum* black, a median vitta and a dash each side at base pale, the narrow lateral margins usually pale yellowish; rather coarsely transversely rugose, prominent pale sericeous pubescence. *Sternum* black, opaque, pale at base of middle coxae; pleura black with margins yellowish; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.57 mm.; blackish mottled with yellowish and gray, the pattern suggestive of *distinguendus*; punctures broad and shallow, closely placed, pale sericeous pubescence; corium mostly dark, mottled with yellowish spots; cuneus pale translucent, outer margin and tip brownish black, basal half mostly dark but irregularly flecked with pale. *Membrane* pale fuscous, a spot each side of middle, basal half of cells, and bordering cuneus, paler.

Legs: coxae black, tips and margins of trochanters pale, femora blackish, twice annulated near apices with pale; tibiae pale yellowish, the spines, a spot at the knee, and one just below, black, apices fuscous; tarsi dark yellowish, apices and claws blackish.

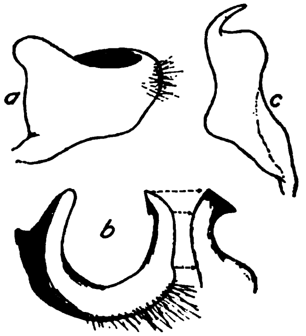


FIG. 170. LYGUS BRADLEYI, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Venter: black, shining, a stripe along the sides and narrowly surrounding the spiracles pale; genital claspers (fig. 170) distinctive of the species, pubescence unusually prominent.

♀. The female has not been studied but is doubtless very similar to the male in coloration.

Holotype: ♂ June 20–27, Blue Lake, Humboldt County, California (J. C. Bradley).

Paratype: ♂ May 29, Pacific Grove, California (H. Morrison).

Lygus nubilus Van Duzee

1914 *Lygus distinguendus* var. ***nubilus*** Van Duzee
San Diego Soc. Nat. Hist., Trans. 2:20.

Yellowish brown, mottled and clouded with fuscous or black; resembling ***ultranubilus*** and ***nubilatus*** most closely; genital claspers distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 4.3 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .1 mm., vertex .4 mm., length .4 mm., height at base .57 mm.; yellowish brown tinged with fuscous; genae fuscous, vertex and front usually shaded with fuscous each side of the pale median line; eyes dark brown, pale at margins, extending back at sides as far as the constriction behind the collar. *Rostrum*, length 1.91 mm., attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .4 mm., yellowish; II, 1.25 mm., yellowish, rarely darker at apex; III, .62 mm., yellowish tinged with fuscous; IV, .51 mm., fuscous; segment II slightly longer and thicker on the apical half than in the female.

Pronotum: length .91 mm., width at base 1.57 mm., width at anterior angles .83 mm., collar .63 mm.; punctures closely placed, rather deep and prominent, fine pale pubescence; dull yellowish brown, a spot behind inner angles of calli and a larger one in each basal angle of the disk blackish; calli in some cases with fuscous at outer margins; a pale ridge extending back on sides from top of coxal cleft, fuscous just above this and brownish below. *Scutellum* moderately arched, transversely rugose in the middle on the basal half; dark brownish to fuscous, median line and basal angles pale, extreme tip white; prominent pale pubescence at sides and on mesoscutum. *Sternum* fuscous, opaque beneath; margins bordering middle coxae pale; pleura fuscous; margins of the sclerites pale; orifice white.

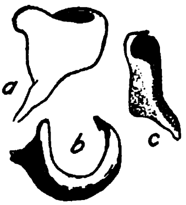


FIG. 171. LYGUS NUBILUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 1.88 mm.; yellowish brown more or less mottled with fuscous; corium and embolium fuscous at apex, more or less spotted toward the middle; cuneus yellowish translucent, darkened with fuscous or reddish at apex and along the basal margin; finely and closely punctured, heaviest on the clavus; pale pubescence apparent only in small patches. *Membrane* fuscous, a spot each side of the middle near the margin, a smaller one in the middle, and the vein at the apex of the larger cell, pale.

Legs: pale to yellowish brown; coxae fuscous; femora yellowish, twice annulated with fuscous near the apices, posterior pair with a third and wider band around the middle; tibiae with a fuscous spot on the knee and a second one just below, spines yellowish; tips of tarsi fuscous.

Venter: dark brownish to fuscous, a more or less broken pale stripe on the sides; genital claspers (fig. 171) distinctive of the species.

♀. Very similar to the male in size and coloration; second antennal segment slightly shorter and more slender.

Description drawn from a pair of paratypes presented by Mr. Van Duzee. The type material comes from San Diego County, California, the author stating (Van Duzee, 1914:21): "Described from numerous examples taken on elderberry trees growing along the streams and gullies throughout the county. This tree or shrub has a powerful and exceedingly disagreeable and suffocating odor which is not alluded to in any botanical work on this region to which I have access."

Lygus ultranubilus new species

Closely related to ***nubilus***, but more ovate and robust and much darker in color; lower half of the head thicker and the rostrum slightly shorter; genital claspers distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 3.8 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.05 mm., vertex .44 mm., length .43 mm., height at base .63 mm.; lower half of head thicker than in ***nubilus***; yellowish brown, bases of juga, upper and lower margins of lorae, arched part of tylus, genae, and bases of bucculae, blackish; each side of the median line on the front, and a spot each side of the vertex, fuscous. *Rostrum*, length 1.52 mm., scarcely attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, basal segment and apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .38 mm., yellowish, fuscous on the lower side; II, 1.22 mm., yellowish, fuscous at base and apex; III, .64 mm., fuscous; IV, .48 mm., slightly darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length .96 mm., width at base 1.71 mm., width at anterior angles .85 mm., collar .71 mm.; broader in proportion to length, more coarsely and deeply punctured on center of disk than in ***nubilus***; very similar to that of ***nubilus*** in black markings, but usually with two black spots behind the calli and the black in the basal angles of the disk extending across to the middle. *Scutellum* marked as in ***nubilus*** but with more blackish, basal half more strongly arched. *Sternum* black, opaque beneath; margins bordering the middle coxae white; pleura blackish; orifice white.

Hemelytra: greatest width 1.97 mm.; blackish, mottled with yellowish brown across the middle of the corium; a large patch at apex of clavus and basal half of embolium yellowish brown; extreme outer edge of embolium blackish; cuneus pale, basal half and apex blackish; more finely and closely punctured than in ***nubilus***. *Membrane* fuscous, marked with pale much as in ***nubilus***.

Legs: coxae blackish, trochanters pale; femora and tibiae marked similarly to those in ***nubilus*** except that the front and middle femora are fuscous on the basal half in addition to the two rings near the apices; tibial spines and apices of tarsi fuscous to blackish.

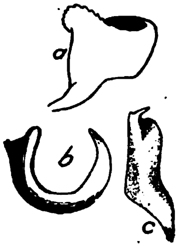


FIG. 172. LYGUS ULTRANUBILUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Venter: blackish with an indication of a pale stripe on the sides; female more brownish with fuscous; genital claspers distinctive (fig. 172), the shape of the claw on the right clasper easily separating this species from ***nubilus***.

♀. Length 4.3 mm., width 2.17 mm.; more robust than the male, usually not so dark-colored; second antennal segment slightly shorter and more slender.

Holotype: ♂ July 12, Jemez Springs, New Mexico, altitude 6400 feet (John Woodgate).

Allotype: topotypic.

Paratypes: 2 ♂ 4 ♀, topotypic. ♀ August 13, Fort Collins, Colorado. 2 ♀ August, Glen Sioux County, Nebraska (H. G. Barber).

Lygus nubilatus new species

Resembles *nubilus* and might be taken for a pale form of that species, but differs in that the male has the second antennal segment thicker in proportion, the head and the apex of the pronotum more narrowed, the scutellum more evenly arched, and the median basal part not so heavily punctured and depressed; genital claspers show certain differences, as seen in figures 171 and 173.

♂. Length 4.4 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .91 mm., vertex .31 mm., length .37 mm., height at base .57 mm.; face pale to yellowish, sutures about tylus, juga, and lorae, with red; a subcutaneous fuscous line extending from basal corner of eye into the vertex, curving back and running parallel with the margin of the eye to a point just above the base of the antenna: front in some cases with red either side of the median line, tylus pale on the apical half and usually with lines on the basal part; fuscous on the gula and the upper surface of the rostral segment. *Rostrum*, length 1.77 mm., just attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, pale with yellowish, black at tip and fuscous on the upper side of the first segment.

Antennae: segment I, length .48 mm., pale to yellowish, fuscous on lower side; II, 1.22 mm., yellowish brown with a fuscous band at base and apex, noticeably thickened beyond the fuscous basal part, thicker than in the male of *nubilus*, in the female not so thick; III, .71 mm., fuscous to black, paler at base; IV, .48 mm., black; vestiture of fine yellowish pubescence.

Pronotum: length .94 mm., width at base 1.65 mm., width at anterior angles .74 mm., collar .63 mm.; pale with white and clear areas; fuscous or reddish brown spot just inside the margin of the basal angles; collar, anterior part of calli, basal margin and median line of disk, pale to white; yellowish to brownish just behind calli and near basal margin of disk; punctures not so closely placed as in *nubilus*. *Scutellum* pale, with two median basal dashes and one each side near the lateral margins brownish to fuscous, purplish red in females; noticeably arched, only slightly depressed and rugose at basal dashes. *Sternum* fuscous below, with pale on the sides.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2 mm.; pale with brown patches; clavus with brown spots or united into patches, usually a median longitudinal pale line broadening at apex; apices of corium and embolium with a broad transverse brownish to fuscous patch, basal half flecked or with patches of brownish or fuscous; vestiture of pale yellowish pubescence; cuneus clear, with apex and a small dot at exterior basal angles fuscous or purplish red. *Membrane* and veins fuscous, paler in the center and along the veins at apices of cells; female specimens with the veins reddish.

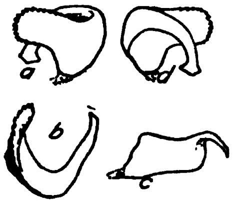


FIG. 173. LYGUS NUBILATUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect; d, left clasper, internal lateral aspect

Legs: pale, femora with two fuscous or reddish rings near the apices, in some cases a reddish patch on the lower side near the middle; fuscous spot on the knee, with a second slightly lower on the tibia, tips of tibiae brownish, spines pale brownish; apices of tarsi fuscous to black.

Venter: pale, brownish to fuscous along the lateral margins, genital segment light brownish; genital claspers (fig. 173) distinctive of the species.

♀. Length 4.2 mm., greatest width 1.88 mm.; differs from the male chiefly in the second antennal segment being more slender, and the brownish colors running more to reddish than to fuscous as in the male; last two segments of venter tinged with reddish or fuscous.

Holotype: ♂ September 5, Muir Woods, California (E. P. Van Duzee).

Allotype: May 16, Piedmont, California (E. P. Van Duzee).

Paratypes: 8 ♀ May 16, 1915, Piedmont (E. P. Van Duzee).

The type specimens have been returned to Mr. Van Duzee, who lent the material for study.

Lygus nubilosus new species

Allied to ***nubilatus*** but is larger and more brownish in color, differs in the relative width of the head and the vertex, and the second antennal segment in the male is more slender; genital claspers characteristic of the species.

♂. Length 4.8 mm. ***Head***: width across eyes .94 mm., vertex .37 mm., length .4 mm., height at base .57 mm.; yellowish marked with fuscous and reddish; two brownish triangles on the vertex, pointing inward and separated by the yellowish median line, front with a yellowish median line separated from that of vertex by a brownish arc; juga, apex of tylus, and arched part of lorae, pale; sutures with reddish, and tips of lorae blackish; basal carina scarcely raised from vertex. ***Rostrum***, length 1.82 mm., reaching posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, apical segment blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .51 mm., yellowish brown, blackish beneath; II, 1.34 mm., dark brownish, darker at base and apex; III, .71 mm., brownish black; IV, .48 mm., blackish; vestiture of fine yellowish pubescence.

Pronotum: length 1 mm., width at base 1.79 mm., width at anterior angles .74 mm., collar .6 mm.; brownish, shining, spot just inside the margin of the basal angles darker; collar, inner half of calli, triangle just before and a spot behind inner angles of calli, margins bordering coxal cleft, narrow basal margin, and an indication of a median line at base, pale yellowish; punctures deeper and more crowded than in ***nubilatus***. ***Scutellum*** dark brownish, the pale median line not reaching base but widening from middle to involve most of apex, a pale line at each side parallel with side margins and attaining basal angle, extreme lateral margins also usually pale; the brown color taking the form of two median basal dashes which attain the middle, a spot along each side margin being cut off by the pale color. ***Sternum*** fuscous to blackish beneath, sides yellowish with some brownish; metasternal orifice pale.

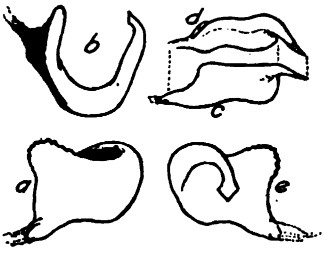


Fig. 174. LYGUS NUBILOSUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect; d, right clasper, dorsal aspect; e, left clasper, internal lateral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 2 mm.; brownish, base of corium and embolium, middle part of embolium and that part of the corium bordering it, tip of embolium bordering the fracture, yellowish brown and translucent; raised margin at inner apical angles of corium pale; cuneus pale yellowish, translucent, the outer basal angles and the apex dark brownish to fuscous, the inner angles and the margin narrowly reddish; punctures indistinct, more or less scabrous, fine pale pubescence. *Membrane* pale fuscous, a median spot and one each side near the margin, and a narrow margin bordering the cuneus, clear, veins reddish.

Legs: pale with yellowish; coxae blackish at extreme base; femora with two reddish brown rings near the apices and a large spot near the middle on the lower side of the posterior pair; tibiae yellowish brown, spines darker, knees with blackish and a smaller spot just below; apices of tarsi dark brownish.

Venter: pale with reddish brown and fuscous; base of genital segment dark brownish with fuscous, paler about tip; an indistinct broad lateral stripe, brownish with some reddish; narrow dorso-lateral margin and the spiracles pale; genital claspers (fig. 174) showing a close relationship to *nubilatus* but differing in many respects as seen in the figure.

Holotype: ♂ May 21, 1902, Cloudcroft, New Mexico; collection of E. P. Van Duzee.

Allotype: July 13, Palmer Lake, Colorado.

Paratypes: 2 ♂ July 13, Palmer Lake, ♂ July 14, Pikes Peak, Colorado (C. P. Gillette). ♀ August 9, Emigration Canyon, Utah (A. Wetmore).

Lygus distinguendus Reuter

1875 *Lygus distinguendus* Reuter
Pet. nouv. ent., p. 544.
1896 *Lygus distinguendus* Reuter
Hemip. gymn. Eur. V, p. 74.
1909 *Lygus distinguendus* Reuter
Bemerk. neark. Caps., p. 45.

The following description for this species is drawn from the single female specimen mentioned by Reuter (1909), from Glacier, British Columbia, which the writer was able to study thru the kindness of Mr. O. Heidemann at the National Museum.

♀. Length 5.1 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .97 mm., vertex .43 mm., length .48 mm.; face and vertex black except a small spot on either side at base of tylus and a white triangular spot at top margin of eye and pointing into the vertex. *Rostrum* just attaining posterior margins of middle coxae.

Antennae: segment I, length .37 mm.; II, 1.14 mm.; III, .6 mm.; IV, .45 mm.; dark ferruginous brown to blackish in color.

Pronotum: length .88 mm., width at base 1.77 mm., width at anterior angles .88 mm.; dark brownish to black, lighter on the basal half; calli dark fuscous brown surrounded by blackish which extends along the collar thence along the lateral margin of the disk; side margins and bordering the anterior coxae and coxal cleft, pale; punctures fine and closely placed, transversely confluent over basal half of disk. *Scutellum* broad and flat, transversely rugose, dark brownish with tip pale as in *rubicundus*. *Sternum* dark ferruginous to black, narrow margin bordering the middle coxae white; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: dark reddish brown; ash-gray sericeous pubescence forming spots with darker pubescence between; pale point at tip of costa bordering the fracture, also a point of white at extreme tip of corium next to inner angle of cuneus; cuneus dark reddish brown, somewhat translucent in the middle and nearly black at tip. *Membrane* brownish to fuscous, bordering the veins and a spot either side of the middle paler, an area bordering tip of cuneus clear, cell veins pale reddish brown.

Legs: dark brown to blackish, two yellowish brown rings near tips of femora.

Venter: ferruginous to black, spiracles surrounded with pale and appearing as white dots.

Records: ♀, Glacier, British Columbia. ♀ June 30, Utah, altitude 10,000 feet (United States National Museum). ♀ " Colo. 1699," received from C. P. Gillette under the name *Lygus robustus* Uhler.

This species is apparently known only from a few specimens, all of which came from high altitudes. The lack of material in the male sex prevents the figuring of genital claspers and therefore the placing of the species definitely in its proper group.

Lygus distinguendus var. **tahoensis** new variety

General aspect black mixed with brown, hemelytra with silvery gray sericeous pubescence grouped in small patches; differs from the above-described specimen of *distinguendus* from Glacier, British Columbia, in markings of head and pronotum and in having in general a darker color.

♀. Length 5.1 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1 mm., vertex .43 mm., length of dorsal aspect .4 mm., height at base .57 mm.; basal carina rather sharp, flattened near eyes; black, a spot on each side of vertex next to eye joined by a marginal bar along front of eye, four or five transverse bars on either side of the black median line on the front, yellowish brown; dorsal margins of juga, dorsal half and anterior margin of each lora, pale to yellowish. *Rostrum* reaching to near posterior margins of middle coxae, yellowish brown to fuscous.

Antennae: segment I, length .34 mm., black, fuscous brown patch on lower side of apical half, very narrow ring at tip pale; II, 1.05 mm., dark fuscous grading into black at apex and base; III, .54 mm., black with a very narrow pale ring at base; IV, .43 mm., black; clothed with fine silvery pubescence, more noticeable on the last two segments.

Pronotum: length .91 mm., width at base 1.79 mm., width at anterior angles .91 mm., collar .63 mm.; dark brownish to fuscous and black; collar and five rays on disk dark yellowish brown, the median ray rather narrow and obsolete between calli, the ray on either side wider, crossing the inner angles of calli and turning along their anterior margins, the outside pair of rays less prominent and evident only behind calli; narrow margin at basal angles of disk pale, that part of the margin bordering the scutellum dark brown; side margins bordering the anterior coxae pale, but not extending up coxal cleft; calli distinct, more prominent than in *nubilus*; punctures rather fine and transversely confluent; pubescence silvery gray with some yellowish. *Scutellum* broad and flat, almost identical with *rubicundus* in this respect; transversely rugose, dark fuscous black, tip ivory white. *Sternum* black; narrow margins bordering the middle coxae, and posterior margin of metathoracic orifice, white.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.16 mm.; brownish black, irrorate with patches of silvery gray sericeous pubescence with brownish pubescence between; tip of costal margin bordering the fracture pale; cuneus pale brownish, more or less translucent, apex and two basal angles dark fuscous; point of ivory-white at extreme tip of corium and adjacent to inner angles of cuneus, also pale on base of brachium. *Membrane* and veins brownish to fuscous, the part of the vein at the apex of the larger cell, the central part of the cells, a spot in the center of the membrane, and one on each side joining the margin, pale; margin of membrane bordering the dark tip of cuneus, clear.

Legs: coxae black, the apices and a part of the trochanters pale; a rather large and prominent puncture on the front side of the anterior coxae near base; femora dark brownish to black with two pale rings near apices, the ventral surfaces with one or two longitudinal pale bars; tibiae fuscous to black, a paler ring just below the knees and the inner surfaces light brownish for the most part; tarsi dark brownish, apices black.

Venter: black, a reddish shading along the vagina exterior and parts of the last two segments; spiracles surrounded by pale and appearing as pale spots.

Holotype: ♀ July 10, Angora Peak, Tahoe, California (E. P. Van Duzee).

This form is very close to *distinguendus*, and at present, with the lack of males to study, the writer prefers to place it as a variety of that species. The shape of the head, pronotum, and scutellum is suggestive of *rubicundus*, but the color, the larger size, and the more elongate form will at once distinguish the insect from that species.

Described from a unique female taken by Mr. Van Duzee, who lent the specimen for study. Until more material is available and the males are studied, the status of *distinguendus* and its varieties must remain incomplete.

Lygus robustus Uhler

1895 *Camptobrochis robustus* Uhler
Hemip. Colo., p. 39.

This species has been considered a Camptobrochis, but the description shows that Uhler undoubtedly had a Lygus before him when drawing the description. Mr. Van Duzee has taken a form of Lygus which agrees in many respects with the description of *robustus* yet does not appear to be typical of the species.

The original description reads as follows:

" Short and thick, dusky testaceous, strongly marked with fuscous and black, coarsely, and in part densely punctate. Head almost vertical, vertex short, transversely grooved, bordered with a broken fulvous line in front, the occipital carina high, fitting into the collum, ivory yellow; front bordered with pale dull yellow, polished, remotely minutely obsolete-punctate and wrinkled, closely freckled with black, the inner border of the eyes also pale dull yellow, the lower part of tylus and the bucculae yellow; rostrum pale at base, piceous at tip, reaching to the middle coxae; antennae long and slender, as long as the corium and cuneus united, mostly pale fuscous, the basal joint dull pale fulvous, obscured with fuscous, the second very long, a little stouter than the third and fourth, slightly thicker towards the tip, the third and fourth together a little longer than the second, the fourth much the shortest. Pronotum convex, coarsely, deeply, irregularly punctate in somewhat transverse wavy lines, with about four obscure stripes which widen posteriorly, the lateral margins a little curved, the humeral angles broadly rounded, the posterior margin feebly curved and sinuated, and the anterior margin contracted and bordered with a somewhat pale collum, the callosities tumid, black, polished. Scutellum dark brown, closely and roughly wrinkled and unevenly punctate, convex, olive-fulvous at tip. Legs pale olive-brownish, the femora piceous, rough at a few points, having one or more yellowish dots near the tip, the tibiae spotted with dark brown, closely pale pubescent, with the spines, tip of tarsi and nails dark piceous.

Clavus coarsely punctate and wrinkled, dark olivaceo-fuscous, corium a little paler, smoother, more finely punctate, almost bald, with the surface near the costa translucent, punctate with brown, the costal border dark brown, ending in a darker spot before the cuneus, the embolium broad and piceous black, the cuneus dark brown, bordered all around with pale testaceous; the membrane whitish, a little stained with brown at base and tip, and the veins mostly brown. Abdomen olivaceo-testaceous, finely pubescent, dusky at tip, with a line of black marks on the outer submargin, and a series of yellow dots on the connexivum.

" Length to end of abdomen 5 mm. To tip of membrane 6 mm. Width of pronotum 2.5 mm. Three or four specimens have been brought to my notice. One specimen from Colorado is chiefly dark fulvous, others were mostly chestnut brown or nearly black. The pale stripe with black arrest at the end of costal area will go far towards quickly distinguishing this species.

" North Park, July 20th (Gillette), and July 10th on *Artemisia tridentata* (Baker). Leadville, August 23d (Gillette). Cameron Pass, at 12,000 feet, on Salix (Baker)."

The following points show the species to be a Lygus and a member of the *pratensis* group: " antennae long and slender, as long as the corium and cuneus united, . . . Pronotum convex, coarsely, deeply, irregularly punctate in somewhat transverse wavy lines, with about four obscure stripes which widen posteriorly, . . . Scutellum dark brown, closely and roughly wrinkled and unevenly punctate, ..."

The types should be in the collection of the Agricultural Experiment Station at Fort Collins, Colorado, but have apparently become lost or mixed up with other material. The Uhler collection now in the United States National Museum contains no specimen bearing the label *Camptobrochis robustus*.

Lygus rubicundus Fallén

1829 *Phytocoris rubicundus* Fallén*
  Hemip. Svec., p. 92.
1831 *Lygus rubricatus* Hahn
  Wanz. Ins. 1:156, tab. xxiv, fig. 80.
1843 *Capsus rubricatus* Meyer-Dür*
  Verzeich. Schweiz Rhyn., p. 73.
1846 *Miltemma rubricatus* Amyot
  Soc. Ent. Fr., Ann. 4:151.
1848 *Capsus rubicundus* Sahlberg*
  Mon. geoc. Fenn., p. 111.
1855 *Capsus* (*Deraeocoris*) *rubicundus* Kirschbaum*
  Rhyn. Wiesb., p. 68, 113. (Separate.)
1858 *Deraeocoris rubicundus* Stål
  Ent. Zeit. [Stettin] 19:186.
1858 *Hadrodema rubicunda* Fieber
  Wien. Ent. Monatschr. 2:311, 345.
1860 *Capsus* (*Capsus*) *rubicundus* Flor*
  Rhyn. Livl., p. 534.
1875 *Cyphodema* (*Agnocoris*) *rubicundum* Reuter
  Hemip. gymn. Scand. et Fenn., p. 79.
1892 *Hadrodema pulverulenta* Uhler
  Maryland Acad. Sci., Trans. 1892:183.
1896 *Lygus rubicundus* Reuter
  Hemip. gymn. Eur. V, p. 72.

---

* Reference given on the authority of Reuter.

Ovate, robust, dark reddish brown to fuscous; second antennal segment shorter than width of head; genital claspers very distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 4.5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.04 mm., vertex .4 mm., length .43 mm., height at base .6 mm.; yellowish brown to reddish brown, marked with fuscous; basal carina scarcely raised from base of vertex, a slight depression each side of vertex at middle of eye; sutures about tylus and lorae, an area just above base of antenna, and usually a mark from each eye extending onto vertex and forward along median line of front, fuscous to blackish; eyes dark brownish. *Rostrum*, length 1.4 mm., reaching slightly beyond posterior margins of middle coxae, yellowish to brownish, apex fuscous. *Antennae*: segment I, length .36 mm., brownish shaded with fuscous; II, 1 mm. (length less than width of head), yellowish brown, fuscous at base and apex; III, .45 mm., brownish tinged with fuscous, narrowly pale at base; IV, .4 mm., scarcely darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length 1.1 mm., width at base 1.88 mm., width at anterior angles .91 mm., collar .68 mm.; dark reddish brown shaded with fuscous; becoming fuscous first on the outer half of the calli, in the darkest specimens pale only on the collar, between the calli, and in a half-moon mark on the inner angles of the calli; extreme edge of the basal margin pale; side margins bordering the coxae pale, a fuscous mark across top of coxal cleft with a second just above and behind the top; punctures on the disk rather fine and closely placed, minute pale pubescence. *Scutellum* broad and rather flat, transversely rugose; dark brownish to fuscous, paler along the median line and lateral margins at base, extreme apex usually ivory-white. *Sternum* brownish to dark fuscous; pleura usually fuscous; margins of the sclerites paler; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.14 mm.; very finely and closely punctured, pale pubescence closely appressed; dark yellowish brown to reddish brown, the darkest specimens fuscous to blackish, paler along the embolium and bases of corium and clavus; cuneus yellowish translucent, apex fuscous. *Membrane* fuscous, veins and a spot each side of the middle near the margin paler.

Legs: yellowish brown marked with fuscous; femora twice annulated near apices with fuscous, in some cases a broad band on the lower side near the middle; tibiae with a fuscous spot on the knees, a second ring or mark just below, spines reddish brown; tarsi yellowish to fuscous, apices darker.

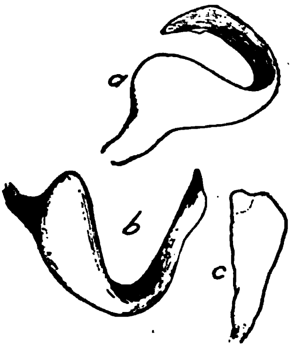


FIG. 175. LYGUS RUBICUNDUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Venter: reddish brown in certain forms, dark fuscous to blackish in others; beneath on first four segments, two stripes on sides, and surrounding spiracles, pale; genital claspers (fig. 175) very distinctive of the species, the right clasper without a claw.

♀. Very similar to the male in structure but usually not so darkly colored.

This species is common to both Europe and North America. Near Batavia, New York, the writer found it breeding on a species of willow (*Salix amygdaloides*), and apparently it occurs in scattering numbers on other willows. The nymphs are dull yellowish or cream-colored, and very robust in form. They appear on the host plant in June, the adults maturing early in July. Only one brood was observed to develop.

Records show that certain of the adults must hibernate but the number is apparently small.

Records: ♂ ♀ July 4, ♂ July 10, 45 ♂ ♀ July 19, ♂ July 22, Batavia, 2 ♂ 3 ♀ July 23, Ithaca, New York (H. H. Knight). ♀ May 16, Ithaca. 4 ♂ ♀ July 18, White Plains, New York (J. R. Torre Bueno). ♂ September 19, Bloomsburg, Pennsylvania (Wm. T. Davis). 15 ♂ ♀ May 16 to October 12, Plummers Island, ♂ June 20, Plum Point, Maryland (W. L. McAtee). ♂ ♀ July 23, El Paso, Texas; ♂ August 20, San Jacinto Peak, California, altitude 7000–10,000 feet; all collected by J. C. Bradley. ♂ July 28, Grand Junction, ♀ May 5, Fort Collins, ♀ July 16, Rocky Ford, Colorado (C. P. Gillette). 4 ♂ ♀ May 16, Ogden, Utah (A. Wetmore). 2 ♀ July 16, Fort Collins, Colorado; 2 ♂ July 4, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada; 3 ♀ April 12, San Diego County, California; all received from E. P. Van Duzee.

Lygus rubicundus var. **winnipegensis** new variety

Not structurally different from the typical *rubicundus*, but strikingly different in appearance, being almost entirely bright brick red in color.

♀. Length 4.3 mm., greatest width 2.16 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.03 mm., vertex .45 mm., length .43 mm., height at base .6 mm.

Antennae: segment I, length .31 mm.; II, .85 mm.; III, .43 mm.; IV, .37 mm.

Bright brick red, collar and between the calli paler, tip of the scutellum showing a small pale point; a translucent yellowish line bordering the exterior margin of the corium but not reaching the cuneus; tip of the tylus fuscous; tip and base of the second antennal segment darkened.

Holotype: ♀ bearing the label *May 7, 1910, Winnipeg, Manitoba* (*J. B. Wallis*), lent for study by E. P. Van Duzee.

A specimen from Fort Collins, Colorado, approaches this color variety but is not so bright red as the type.

Lygus sallei Stål

1862 *Lygus sallei* Stål
Ent. Zeit. [Stettin] 23:321.

Broad ovate, the males more elongate; dull yellowish or bright green, glabrous, shining; genital claspers distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 5.9 mm. (variation 4.8–6 mm.). *Head*: width across eyes 1.18 mm., vertex .45 mm., length .51 mm., height at base .63 mm.; smooth shining, dull yellowish to bright green; eyes dark brown to black, collum black. *Rostrum*, length 2.42 mm., scarcely reaching posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish, apex fuscous.

Antennae: segment I, length .63 mm., greenish yellow; II, 1.45 mm., yellowish, apical half more brownish; III, .85 mm., brownish to pale fuscous; IV, .57 mm., slightly darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length 1.18 mm., width at base 2.2 mm., width at anterior angles 1.17 mm., collar .77 mm.; broad with disk flattened, side margins acute; glabrous, smooth shining, punctures fine but distinct; dull yellowish to bright green, anterior margin behind the collar, and usually the lateral and basal margins of the disk, narrowly blackish; extreme basal edge of disk pale. *Scutellum* rather broad and flat, shining, finely punctured, transversely rugulose; dull yellowish to bright green, in some cases marked with fuscous at middle of base and each side near apex. *Sternum* and pleura dull yellowish or tinged with green.

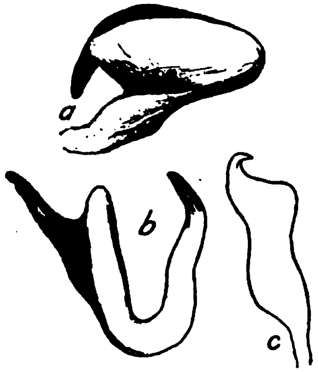


FIG. 176. LYGUS SALLEI, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a. Left clasper, lateral aspect; b. left clasper, dorsal aspect; c. right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.68 mm.; dull yellowish to bright green, translucent; glabrous, punctures distinct and closely placed. *Membrane* clear, shaded with fuliginous in the middle and toward the apex; a dark brownish to fuscous mark at the inner apical angles of the brachium, similar to that in *aeratus* and *humeralis*; veins yellowish or bright green.

Legs: dull yellowish to greenish; dark specimens have the posterior femora twice annulated with fuscous near the apices, tibiae unusually thick, spines brownish and frequently fuscous at base.

Venter: yellowish to bright green, sides with a brownish stripe; genital claspers (fig. 176) distinctive of the species.

♀. Length 5.8 mm., greatest width 2.65 mm.; more robust than the male but not differing in coloration.

In California Mr. Van Duzee finds this species living on *Bassaris* sp. *Records*: ♀ July 23, Palmer Lake, Colorado. 8 ♂ ♀ July 29, Huachuca Mountains, Arizona, altitude 9000 feet (H. G. Barber). 7 ♂ ♀ Little Spring, San Francisco Mountain, Arizona (A. K. Fisher). ♂ ♀ June 17, Cloudcroft, New Mexico. ♂ ♀ May 13, San Francisco, ♂ ♀ Los Angeles County, ♂ ♀ April, June, San Diego County, California (E. P. Van Duzee). Some of the California specimens are smaller and darker-colored than the typical form.

Lygus campestris Linnaeus

1758 *Cimex campestris* Linnaeus
Syst. nat., 10th ed., p. 448.
1787 *Cimex transversalis* Fabricius
Mant. ins. 1:304.
1794 *Lygaeus campestris* Fabricius
Ent. syst. 4:171.
1794 *Lygaeus transversalis* Fabricius
Ent. syst. 4:175.
1804 *Miris campestris* Latreille
Hist. nat. 12:221.
1804 *Miris transversalis* Latreille
Hist. nat. 12:225.
1807 *Lygaeus pastinacae* Fallén
Mon. cim. Svec., p. 86.
1829 *Phytocoris pastinacae* Fallén
Hemip. Svec., p. 94.
1848 *Capsus pastinacae* Sahlberg
Mon. geoc. Fenn., p. 113.

1855 *Capsus lucidus* Kirschbaum (see Reuter, 1888)
Rhyn. Wiesb., p. 68, 131. (Separate.)
1858 *Deraeocoris pastinacae* Stål
Ent. Zeit. [Stettin] **19**:186.
1858 *Orthops pastinacae* Fieber
Wien. Ent. Monatschr. **2**:345.
1871 *Capsus transversus* Thomson
Opuscula ent. **4**:427.
1875 *Lygus* (*Orthops*) *transversalis* Reuter
Rev. crit. Caps., p. 59. (Separate.)
1875 *Lygus* (*Orthops*) *pastinacae* Puton
Cat. Hémip., p. 36.
1875 *Lygus pastinacae* Saunders
Ent. Soc. London, Trans. **1875**:275.
1877 *Orthops scutellatus* Uhler
U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv., Terr. 3, Bul. **2**:420.
1888 *Lygus* (*Orthops*) *campestris* Reuter
Revis. synon., p. 641.
1896 *Lygus campestris* Reuter
Hemip. gymn. Eur. V, p. 79.

Ovate, rather small, greenish brown or brownish yellow with fuscous, scutellum bright yellow or green; genital claspers distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 4.1 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .83 mm., vertex .36 mm., length .34 mm., height at base .48 mm.; carina prominent, transverse, slightly indented just in front; yellowish brown; apical half of tylus, lower half of juga, gula, and bases of bucculae, fuscous; eyes dark brown, collum black. *Rostrum*, length 1.34 mm., just attaining posterior margins of middle coxae, yellowish brown, apex fuscous.

Antennae: segment I, length .31 mm., dark brownish; II, 1.03 mm., dark brownish; III, .48 mm., dark fuscous brown; IV, .4 mm., scarcely darker than segment III; thickly clothed with prominent pale yellowish pubescence.

Pronotum: length .84 mm., width at base 1.48 mm., width at anterior angles .71 mm., collar .83 mm.; closely and distinctly punctured, rather long fine pale pubescence; yellowish brown darkened with fuscous, in some cases with greenish; posterior half of calli, basal angles and usually more extensively across the base of the disk, above the coxal cleft and extending in a ray behind, fuscous to blackish. *Scutellum* bright yellow or more rarely bright green, in some cases blackish in the middle at the base thus making the yellow color heart-shaped; fine pale pubescence, transversely rugulose; mesoscutum always dark brownish to blackish. *Sternum* fuscous, opaque, usually with a brownish patch at the sides; pleura fuscous; margins of the sclerites usually brownish; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 1.77 mm.; dark yellowish to fuscous brown; clavus and apex of corium more fuscous; embolium frequently with green, extreme outer edge fuscous; cuneus dull yellowish or greenish, the apex and extending back along the inner margin fuscous. *Membrane* pale, more or less tinged with pale fuscous or fuliginous.

Legs: yellowish or greenish yellow; posterior femora usually twice annulated near apices with fuscous, frequently indistinct on the upper side; tibial spines dark brownish to black; apices of tarsi blackish.

Venter: yellowish or greenish yellow; genital segment and a broad band along the dorso-lateral margin fuscous to blackish; genital claspers (fig. 177) distinctive of the species.

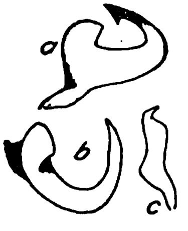


FIG. 177. LYGUS CAMPESTRIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

♀. Slightly more robust than the male, second antennal segment more slender than in the male; very similar to the male in coloration.

This species is common to Europe and North America, breeding on plants of the family Umbelliferae. In western New York the writer found the species breeding most abundantly on poison hemlock (*Conium maculatum*). In one case at least the species is reported as destructive to a cultivated crop, at Flatlands, New Brunswick, where the insects were sufficiently abundant to cause the death of celery plants. This record is doubtless authentic, for specimens were determined by Mr. Heidemann, the data being here given thru the courtesy of Mr. Arthur Gibson, of the Entomological Branch, Ottawa, Canada.

The species hibernates in the adult state and in New York comes forth on the host plant early in May. On May 25, 1916, the writer took a large series of the overwintering individuals which had collected on poison hemlock for feeding and egg-laying. The nymphs were developing on the host plant early in July, and on July 30 a large series of freshly emerged adults were taken. The adults continue feeding on the host plants until early September, when they retreat for hibernation.

Records: ♂ ♀ May 25 to August 19, Batavia, 2 ♂ 2 ♀ July 26, Ithaca, New York (H. H. Knight). ♀ February 23 (under pine bark), Eastern Branch near Bennings, District of Columbia (W. L. McAtee). ♂ June 28, St. Johnsbury, Vermont, ♂ August 19, Fort Kent, Maine (C. W. Johnson). ♂ ♀ August 12, Truro, Nova Scotia (R. Matheson). 4 ♂ ♀ July 18–23, Truro, Nova Scotia (William H. Brittain). 4 ♂ ♀ Spruce Brook, Newfoundland (Charles Schaeffer). ♂ ♀ August 7–11, Goldstream to Downie Creek, British Columbia (J. C. Bradley) ♂ ♀ July 17, Tallac, Lake Tahoe, California (E. P. Van Duzee).

Lygus distinctus new species

Very distinct in coloration and in form of the genital claspers; pale marked with purplish red and fuscous, stricture of the collar and margins of the calli exhibiting the darkest color.

♂. Length 4.6 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1 mm., vertex .35 mm., length .38 mm., height at base .57 mm.; strongly vertical, smooth shining, carina slightly sinuate; pale, front marked with dark brownish each side of median line, a distinct spot each side of vertex; sutures about juga and lorae purplish red, tylus marked with dark brown and reddish; eyes dull brown, each facet showing dark reddish. *Rostrum*, length 1.31 mm., scarcely attaining posterior margins of middle coxae, pale to yellowish brown, apex scarcely darker.

Antennae: segment I, length .45 mm.; pale, darkened with fuscous on the lower side; II, 1.48 mm., yellowish brown, fuscous near the base, apical one-third fuscous with reddish; III, .57 mm., reddish brown tinged with fuscous; IV, .4 mm., scarcely darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length .97 mm., width at base 1.74 mm., width at anterior angles .8 mm., not sharply defined; collar .62 mm.; pale, shaded with fuscous across base of disk, divided in the middle by a pale median line, extreme edge of basal margin white; stricture of the collar, anterior half of the calli, a heavy line along the posterior margins of the calli and terminating at the outer angles in a short recurved hook, dark purplish brown to blackish; side margins behind coxal cleft shaded with fuscous and in some cases flecked with reddish; irregularly punctate, the heaviest punctures grouped in the center of the disk, fine yellowish pubescence. *Scutellum* purplish red, a median pale vitta on the apical half, joined at base by an irregular pale area occupying the basal angles; transversely rugose but not distinctly punctate, shining. *Sternum* yellowish with pale, the sides irregularly flecked with reddish; pleura reddish flecked with pale; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 1.88 mm.; purplish red marked with pale; claval vein, brachium, cubitus, and most of embolium, pale; middle of clavus and a spot toward the apex, and an irregular area across the corium just before the middle, paler; cuneus pale, translucent, apex darkened with reddish brown tending to spread along the inner margin and flecked with red; punctures indistinct, shining, very fine pale pubescence. *Membrane* clear, veins reddish, a fuscous mark at the inner apical angles of the brachium as noted in *aeratus* and *humeralis*.

Legs: yellowish, femora irregularly annulated near the apices with two bands of reddish patches and spots; tibial spines dark brownish, fuscous at base; apices of tibiae and tarsi brownish.

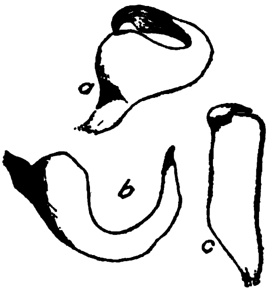


FIG. 178. LYGUS DISTINCTUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Venter: pale, sides and genital segment purplish red; genital claspers (fig. 178) distinctive of the species.

Holotype: ♂ June 19, Prescott, Arizona.

This species doubtless belongs to the Lower Sonoran fauna and will be found more extensively in Mexico, but the writer is unable to find anything in the *Biologia* by Distant that answers to the description of the species.

Lygus pabulinus Linnaeus

1761 *Cimex pabulinus* Linnaeus
 Fauna Svec., 2d ed., p. 253.
1783 *Cimex nigrophthalmus* Retzius
 De Geer gen. et spec., p. 87.
1785 (?) *Cimex aerugineus* Fourcroy
 Ent. par. 1:208.
1794 *Miris pabulinus* Fabricius
 Ent. syst. 4:184.
1807 *Lygaeus pabulinus* Fallén
 Mon. cim. Svec., p. 75.
1813 *Cimex hortorum* Tigny
 Hist. nat. ins. 4:287.
1828 *Phytocoris pabulinus* Zetterstedt
 Fauna ins. lapp., p. 468.
1831 *Lygus pabulinus* Hahn
 Wanz. Ins. 1:148, fig. 74.
1843 *Capsus affinis* Meyer-Dür
 Verzeich. Schweiz Rhyn., p. 48, tab. I, fig. 3. (Not Herrich-Schaeffer.)
1848 *Capsus pabulinus* Sahlberg
 Mon. geoc. Fenn., p. 101.

1855 *Capsus* (*Deraeocoris*) *pabulinus* Kirschbaum
Rhyn. Wiesb., p. 57. (Separate.)
1860 *Lygus solani* Curtis
Farm insects, p. 434, fig. 59, no. 20, and Pl. O, figs. 20, 21.
1861 *Lygus flavovirens* Fieber
Eur. Hemip., p. 276.
1861 *Lygus chloris* Fieber
Eur. Hemip., p. 276.
1875 *Lygus* (*Lygocoris*) *pabulinus* Reuter
Hemip. gymn. Scand. et Fenn., p. 61.
1875 *Lygus* (*Lygocoris*) *flavovirens* Reuter
Hemip. gymn. Scand. et Fenn., p. 62.
1903 *Lygus chagnoni* Stevenson
Can. ent. 35:214.
1909 *Lygus pabulinus* var. *signifer* Reuter
Bemerk. neark. Caps., p. 42.

Elongate, pale green or greenish yellow frequently fading to dull yellowish, carina of vertex obsolete in the middle; a fuscous Y-shaped mark formed at the extreme basal angle of the membrane, and usually a spot within the apices of the cells and a distinct longitudinal cloud extending beyond to the tip of the membrane.

♂. Length 5.5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .94 mm., vertex .37 mm., length .4 mm., height at base .56 mm.; greenish yellow or frequently entirely dull yellow, pubescent, shining, eyes dark brown or black; carina obsolete in the middle and apparent only at the corners of the eyes, from which an impressed line extends to near the center of the vertex. *Rostrum*, length 2.08 mm., attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, greenish yellow to brownish, darker toward the apex.

Antennae: segment I, length .68 mm., greenish yellow or bright green, paler at base, lower apical half frequently darkened with fuscous; II, 2.2 mm., apical half dark fuscous to blackish, basal part greenish to yellowish brown and shading into the darker; III, 1.34 mm., blackish; IV, .85 mm., black; segments clothed with very fine pale pubescence, segment I with darker.

Pronotum: length 1.03 mm., width at base 1.72 mm., width at anterior angles .77 mm., collar .6 mm.; bright green to yellowish green, before the calli often strongly yellow, punctures of disk fine and closely placed, more or less transversely confluent on the basal half, moderately clothed with pale yellowish pubescence. *Scutellum* green to yellowish green, pubescent, transversely wrinkled near middle, punctures indistinct. *Sternum* green or yellowish.

Hemelytra: width 2 mm., green or faded to greenish yellow, finely and shallowly punctured, clothed with fine pale yellowish pubescence. *Membrane* pale, marked with fuscous, iridescent; extreme basal angles dark brown to blackish forming a Y-shaped mark, the base of which lies between the inner apical angles of the corium; a fuscous spot within the apex of each cell; a curved streak extending from the margin at a point just beyond the apex of the cuneus, inward to opposite the large cells, then as a more or less longitudinal cloud to the tip of the membrane, thus leaving a large pale spot in the center.

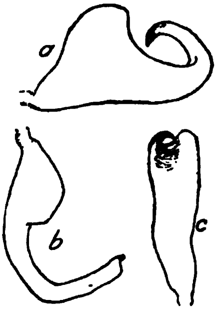


FIG. 179. LYGUS PABULINUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, int rnal lateral aspect

Legs: greenish yellow, apices of the tibiae and spines brownish, tarsi brownish with the apical segments black, claws brownish.

Venter: green or faded to yellowish; genital claspers (fig. 179) characteristic of the species.

♀. Length 6.1 mm., width 2.22 mm.; slightly larger and more robust than the male but not differing in coloration.

The species is of frequent occurrence in North America and does not differ in any respect from European specimens that the writer has studied, two of which were dissected for genital characters.

In western New York the species breeds on the spotted touch-me-not (*Impatiens biflora*), growing in damp, cool situations. Nymphs were found on June 22, when the first adult was taken, and on June 27 adults were maturing rapidly. Nymphs were taken on the host plant as late as August 26 and the last adult was found on October 16. In coloration the nymphs are pale green with whitish on the wing pads, which coloration makes them blend well with the host plant.

Reuter (1909) records the species as hibernating in Finland, while C. R. Crosby took a female specimen from beneath the bark on a tree on November 14, as recorded below. It is very probable that the species also passes the winter in the egg stage on the dried stems of the host plant. The specimens taken on Whiteface Mountain on August 22 were all found on *Diapensia lapponica*, which was in bloom at that time.

Records: ♀ June 22, 32 ♂ ♀ June 27, Portage, 3 ♂ 3 ♀ June 26, ♀ July 5, ♂ July 8, 33 ♂ ♀ July 31 to August 31, Batavia, ♀ 4 ♂ July 4, Four Mile, 75 ♂ ♀ July 24–26, Ithaca, ♂ July 27, McLean, ♀ October 16, White Plains, 59 ♂ ♀ August 22, Whiteface Mountain, New York; all collected by the writer. ♀ 3 ♂ June 21, Ridgewood, New Jersey (M. D. Leonard). ♀ November 14, 1915, Howlands Island, Cayuga County, New York (C. R. Crosby); collected from under bark, where it was evidently in hibernation. ♂ ♀ Flushing, Long Island, ♂ Johnstown, New York (Wm. T. Davis). ♂, Mount Katahdin, Maine (H. G. Barber). 4 ♀ August, Black Mountains, North Carolina (Beutenmuller). 6 ♂ ♀ June 8, Plummers Island, Maryland, ♂ May 31, Four Mile Run, Virginia, ♂ ♀ June 7, District of Columbia (W. L. McAtee). ♂, Aurora, West Virginia (O. Heidemann). 27 ♂ ♀ August 7–11, Goldstream to Downie Creek, Selkirk Mountains, British Columbia (J. C. Bradley).

Reuter (1909) described the variety *signifer* as a form distinguished chiefly by the longitudinal fuscous marks on the membrane. The same author (1896) described the typical species with similar marks on the membrane. The present writer has been unable to draw varietal distinctions between the North American *pabulinus* and the specimens from Europe.

Lygus approximatus Stål

1858 *Deraeocoris approximatus* Stål
Ent. Zeit. [Stettin] **19**:185.
1879 *Lygus approximatus* Reuter
Öfv. Finska Vetensk. Soc., Förh. **21**:53. (Separate.)

Male very slender, nearly black, with the collar and the tip of the scutellum white. Female usually reddish with fuliginous on the pronotum, in some cases nearly as dark-colored as the male.

♂. Length 4.9 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .91 mm., vertex .34 mm., length .4 mm., height at base .56 mm., distance from top of eyes to tip of tylus .74 mm.; black, shining, eyes dark reddish brown; head greatly produced as compared with other species of Lygus; carina prominent, nearly straight, vertex with an impressed triangle just in front; fine pale pubescence. *Rostrum*, length 2.45 mm., reaching to middle of venter; yellowish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .48 mm., yellowish green, base slightly infuscated, pubescence blackish; II, 1.77 mm., greenish yellow to brownish and blackish, pubescence pale; III, .91 mm., fuscous, greenish at base; IV, .6 mm., fuscous.

Pronotum: length .8 mm., width at base 1.42 mm., width at anterior angles .68 mm., collar .57 mm.; black, shining, collar white, narrow basal margin of disk usually pale; lower side margins bordering the coxae pale; punctures shallow, distinct, not so closely placed as in *communis* and related species; pubescence brownish. *Scutellum* black, shining, in some cases brownish at the sides, apex white; rather coarsely transversely rugose on the basal half; pale pubescent. *Sternum* black, alutaceous; pleura blackish; sutures between, narrow margin bordering the coxae, and orifice, white. An unusual color form of the male has the pronotum mostly reddish, like that of the typical female.

Hemelytra: greatest width 1.82 mm.; brownish black to blackish, tips of the embolium and cuneus reddish brown, inner basal angle of the cuneus pale; minutely punctured, more or less scabrous, prominent yellowish pubescence. *Membrane* fuscous; basal half of the large cells, bordering the apex of the cuneus, a small spot joining the margin just beyond the apex of the cuneus, pale; veins reddish; cuneus and membrane only slightly deflected downward, thus giving the appearance of an Orthotylus.

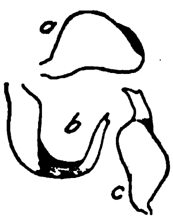


FIG. 180. LYGUS APPROXIMATUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, external lateral aspect

Legs: coxae pale yellowish, in some cases much darkened with fuscous; femora yellowish green, paler at the base, the hind pair usually darkened with fuscous or frequently dark reddish brown; tibiae greenish, in some cases tinged with fuscous, spines black, on the hind pair greater in length than the thickness of the tibia; apices of tarsi blackish, claws brownish.

Venter: black, more or less shining, frequently the lower side pale greenish; genital claspers (fig. 180) distinctive of the species. The male claspers, as well as other characters, show this to be one of the aberrant forms included in the genus Lygus. This species and *rubricatus* Fallén might well be given subgeneric rank if we recognize any subgenera in Lygus.

♀. Length 4.9 mm., width 1.82 mm.; more robust than the male, the reddish colors making it appear quite different from the male; head longer (.48 mm.) and less vertical than in the male; rostrum (length 2.57 mm.) attaining the middle of the venter.

Dark reddish to brownish with fuliginous; tylus black, frequently darkened over the whole front; pronotum darkened with fuliginous on the base and along the lateral margins of the disk, in some forms much darker, in the darkest unusual forms the whole pronotum may be nearly black as in the male; collar and tip of scutellum white, very narrow basal margin of the disk pale; sternum and pleura mostly fuliginous; venter, hind femora, and often the intermediate femora, strongly reddish.

This species has a very different aspect from the usual forms of Lygus. It is very similar to the European *Lygus rubricatus* Fallén, but differs at least in being larger. The male is suggestive of an Orthotylus or a very large Plagiognathus. The head is long and projects downward farther than in other species of Lygus, the rostrum reaching to the middle of the venter.

The species was originally described from Sitka, Alaska, and appears to be distributed thruout the mountainous regions of the northern United States and Canada.

Records: 17 ♂ 9 ♀ August 22, Whiteface Mountain, New York; all the specimens collected by the writer from *Solidago macrophylla*, which was found growing abundantly near the top of the mountain. At that season it was too late to determine whether or not the nymphs had developed on the plant.

3 ♀ July, Parry Sound, Ontario, Canada (H. S. Parish). ♀ September 18, Randolph, ♀ Mount Washington, New Hampshire (Wm. T. Davis). ♂ July 26, Truro, Nova Scotia (R. Matheson); this specimen mostly reddish, like the typical female. 3 ♀ August, Mount Katahdin, Maine, ♀ August 29, Cascade Lake, Adirondack Mountains, New York (H. G. Barber). ♀ Mount Washington, New Hampshire (Mrs. A. T. Slosson). ♂ July 20–22, Big Bend Country, Selkirk Mountains, British Columbia (J. C. Bradley).

Lygus olivaceus Reuter

1907 *Lygus olivaceus* Reuter
Öfv. Finska Vetensk. Soc., Förh. 49^5:6.

Small, oval, greenish yellow marked with reddish and brown; eyes large, the head unusually broad for the size of the insect; scutellum, inner half of the clavus, inner apical angles of the corium, reddish brown to fuscous; genital claspers distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 3.6 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .98 mm., vertex .28 mm., length .32 mm., height at base .51 mm.; short and broad, strongly compressed, eyes very large, carina scarcely raised from basal margin of vertex; greenish yellow, in some cases marked with reddish on the front and the lorae, eyes dark brown. *Rostrum*, length 1.42 mm., scarcely attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, greenish yellow, apex fuscous.

Antennae: segment I, length .4 mm., greenish yellow; II, 1.4 mm., yellowish brown, apex fuscous; III, .63 mm., pale yellowish tinged with fuscous on the apical half; IV, .45 mm., fuscous.

Pronotum: length .8 mm., width at base 1.42 mm., width at anterior angles .65 mm., collar .54 mm.; greenish yellow or olive green; very minutely punctured, fine pale yellowish pubescence. *Scutellum* dark reddish or with fuscous, apex more or less pale; minutely transversely rugulose, pale pubescent. *Sternum* pale yellowish, sides darkened with fuscous; pleura dark brownish to fuscous, margins paler; orifice pale.

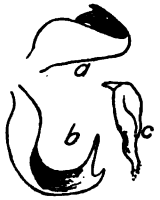


FIG. 181. LYGUS OLIVACEUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 1.6 mm., minutely punctured, pale yellowish pubescence; greenish yellow darkened with brownish and reddish; inner half of the clavus bordering the scutellum dark brownish to fuscous; inner apical angles of the corium darkened with fuscous, in some cases showing reddish; cuneus pale yellowish, apex dark reddish to black. *Membrane* fuscous, a spot each side near the margin, and a narrow margin bordering the cuneus, pale; some specimens with the membrane much paler.

Legs: yellowish or greenish yellow; posterior femora with two fuscous or reddish rings near the apices, extreme apex also fuscous; tibiae yellowish, spines scarcely darker; tarsi with the apices fuscous.

Venter: yellowish, in some cases marked with reddish or brownish on the sides; genital claspers (fig. 181) distinctive of the species.

♀. Slightly larger and more robust than the male; the northern specimens lack the fuscous on the apex of the second antennal segment, and are more reddish and have the membrane paler than those coming from Florida.

Description drawn from specimens collected by E. P. Van Duzee in April, 1908, at Crescent City, Florida. The species was originally described from material collected by Mr. Van Duzee in Jamaica. The writer has not seen the types, but the specimens coming from the Southern States are doubtless identical with the material described by Reuter.

Records: Several specimens, April, 1908, Crescent City, Florida (E. P. Van Duzee). ♂ ♀ Opelousas, Louisiana (G. R. Pilate). ♀ September 13, Manasquan, New Jersey (Wm. T. Davis). ♂ ♀ Bayville, New York (N. Banks); taken on *Baccharis halimifolia*, which may possibly be the host plant. ♂ ♀ September 7, East River, Connecticut (C. R. Ely). ♂ August 8, Manomet, Massachusetts.

Lygus olivaceus var. viridiusculus new variety

Structurally not distinguishable from the *olivaceus* described above; bright green, slightly larger than and lacking the brownish and fuscous coloring of *olivaceus*.

♀. Length 4.6 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.05 mm., vertex .38 mm., length .37 mm., height at base .6 mm.; carina scarcely raised from the vertex; greenish yellow, a touch of red on the lorae, eyes dark brown. *Rostrum*, length 1.57 mm., reaching to near posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish, apex fuscous.

Antennae: segment I, length .4 mm., green; II, 1.37 mm., greenish yellow, more brownish toward the apex; III, .77 mm., yellowish; IV, .51 mm., greenish yellow tinged with fuscous.

Pronotum: length .97 mm., width at base 1.65 mm., width at anterior angles .8 mm., collar .6 mm.; bright green; minutely punctured as in *olivaceus*. *Scutellum* bright green with a touch of red on the side margins. *Sternum* green; pleura and orifice greenish.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.05 mm.; bright green, a touch of fuscous at the extreme tip of the corium and nearest the membrane; clavus only slightly tinged with fuscous near tip of scutellum; cuneus greenish yellow, extreme apex blood red. *Membrane* pale, shaded with fuliginous within apices of cells, a spot near the tip of the cuneus, and to a less extent thru the middle and toward the tip of the membrane.

Legs: greenish yellow; posterior femora with two red marks on the upper side near the apices; tibiae reddish on the inside at the base; tips of tarsi brownish.

Venter: bright green.

Holotype: ♀ August 5, Tisbury, Massachusetts (Cushman).
Paratypes: ♀, topotypic.

Lygus fasciatus Reuter

1876 *Lygus fasciatus* Reuter
Caps. Amer. bor., p. 72.

The following is a liberal translation from the original latin description:

"Greenish testaceous, very finely punctate above, second antennal segment shorter than the basal margin of the pronotum; scutellum with lateral vittae, clavus inwardly, and apex of corium broadly transversely brownish, apex of cuneus black; femora twice annulated near the apices and tibiae annulated at the bases with ferruginous; apices of the tarsi fuscous; tibiae impunctate, spines testaceous. Length 4.75 mm. 'Hab. Carolinam meridionalem.' "

The size and the color characters, combined with the fact that the second antennal segment is shorter than the basal margin of the pronotum, should be sufficient to distinguish the species. The writer ventures to suggest that the type of this species will turn out to be a female of *olivaceus*. The combination of size and coloration, particularly that given for the scutellum and the clavus, with the tibiae "annulo basali ferrugineo," are characters found thus far only in certain female forms of *olivaceus*.

The type of this and other Reuter species are probably still to be found in the National Museum at Stockholm.

Lygus apicalis Fieber

1861 *Lygus apicalis* Fieber
Eur. Hemip., p. 275.
1870 *Lygus putoni* Meyer-Dür
Schweiz. Ent. Gesell., Mitt. 3:207.
1876 *Lygus prasinus* Reuter
Caps. Amer. bor., p. 71.
1894 *Lygus apicalis* var. *inops* Horváth
Rev. d'ent. 8:190.
1909 *Lygus apicalis* var. *prasinus* Reuter
Bemerk. neark. Caps., p. 43.

Male oblong, female more ovate; greenish, dark green, or yellowish green, the membrane, and in some cases the corium, marked with fuscous; head broad, the eyes unusually large in the male; genital claspers very distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 4.5–5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.12 mm., vertex .29 mm., length .41 mm., height at base .65 mm.; greenish yellow, eyes brownish; eyes unusually large; vertex narrow; carina thick, arcuate. *Rostrum*, length 1.97 mm., reaching slightly beyond posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish green, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .51 mm., greenish; II, 2.05 mm., yellowish tinged with brownish; III, 1 mm., dark yellowish; IV, .63 mm., slightly darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length .88 mm., width at base 1.65 mm., width at anterior angles .8 mm., collar .65 mm.; green, becoming yellowish in front and on lower side margins; calli smooth and indistinct; shallowly and finely punctate, more or less transversely confluent, fine yellowish pubescence. *Scutellum* green or tinged with yellowish, darkest forms marked with fuscous on the base; very finely transversely rugose, pale pubescence. *Sternum* and pleura yellowish; orifice paler.

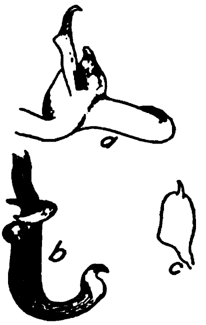


FIG. 182. LYGUS APICALIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, internal lateral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 2 mm.; dark green to yellowish, in dark forms the clavus and the corium marked with fuscous; cuneus greenish, apex blackish; minutely and shallowly punctate, pale pubescence. *Membrane* fuscous marked with pale; usually paler in the middle, basal half of the cells, veins, and bordering the cuneus, also a paler spot near the margin beyond the apex of the cuneus.

Legs: greenish or yellowish green; posterior femora indistinctly twice annulated with fuscous near the apices; tibiae green, spines brownish; tips of tarsi fuscous.

Venter: greenish, usually a narrow fuscous line on the sides; genital claspers very distinctive of the species, the sinistral clasper very complicated (fig. 182).

♀. Length 4.6 mm., width 2.05 mm., width of head 1.05 mm., vertex .37 mm.; uniformly green or greenish yellow; eyes dark brown; tips of tarsi and apex of rostrum blackish.

This species is most abundant in the Southern States, from Florida to Texas, but occurs northward along the Atlantic coast as far as Maine. This is doubtless the species that has in the past been responsible for the records in literature of the occurrence in the United States of *L. contaminatus* Fallén and *L. lucorum* Meyer-Dür. The writer has studied European forms of those species which were determined by Reuter and sent over to the United States National Museum, and wishes to state that he has not yet seen a specimen of either *contaminatus* Fallén or *lucorum* Meyer-Dür collected in America.

Among the determined species of Lygus sent over by Reuter there were only females of *apicalis*, and thus the writer has been unable to compare the male genitalia with the American forms of *apicalis*. These European female specimens of *apicalis* appear to be identical with the American forms, but the ultimate decision rests in the comparison of the genital claspers, which in this case are very complicated and therefore distinctive.

Reuter (1909) reduces his *prasinus* (1876) to a variety of *apicalis* Fieber. The uniformly green specimens show a gradual change into those having pale fuscous on the hemelytra and the scutellum, and even the fuscous forms are so pale that there appears to be no need of trying to use the varietal name. The European female specimens studied are uniformly greenish, like the American forms.

The writer received dark green California specimens from Mr. Van Duzee, which he took to be *L. contaminatus* Fallén, but the genital claspers are identical with those of our eastern *apicalis* (fig. 182). Specimens coming from Mexico are larger than our northern forms, but here again the distinctive claspers determine the species.

In Missouri the writer took specimens of *apicalis* on weeds and grasses, but was unable to determine a definite host plant.

Records: ♀ September 6, Liberty, Maine (Cushman). ♀ August 22, Edgartown, Massachusetts. ♀ October 12, Washington, D. C. (O. Heidemann). ♂ September 20, Lake Waccamaw, 4 ♂ ♀ September 21, Boardman, North Carolina (R. W. Leiby). ♂ September, Jefferson, North Carolina (F. Sherman). ♂ 2 ♀ July 1, Billy Island, Okefenokee Swamp, Georgia (J. C. Bradley). ♀ October 16, Tifton, Georgia. ♀, Alabama. 5 ♀ October 23–30, Dunedin, Florida (W. S. Blatchley). ♂ ♀ November 19, Newberry, ♀ November 3, Jacksonville, Florida (Wm. T. Davis). ♂ ♀, Biscayne Bay, Florida (Mrs. A. T. Slosson). 2 ♀ May 8, Natchitoches Parish, Louisiana (K. P. Schmidt). ♂ Brazos County, Texas (N. Banks). 3 ♂ July 18, Springfield, 3 ♂ 2 ♀ Hollister, Missouri (H. H. Knight). ♂ July 24, Apalachicola, Florida. 2 ♂ October 5, Plummers Island, Maryland (W. L. McAtee). ♂ April 29, ♂ May 1, ♂ May 24, ♂ June 6, ♂ ♀ June 30, ♂ October 4, 2 ♂ December 25, San Diego County, California; 2 ♂ 2 ♀ April 26, Sanford, Florida; all collected by E. P. Van Duzee.

Lygus fagi new species

In general appearance very similar to ***hirticulus***, but the males differ greatly in the genital claspers. In this species the male is not darker than the female and both sexes look much like the female of ***hirticulus***. Differs from ***hirticulus*** by being more fulvo-aeneous in coloration and by the membrane being dark fuscous; males easily distinguished by the genital claspers.

♂. Length 4.8 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .91 mm., vertex .35 mm., length .37 mm., height at base .57 mm.; yellowish brown, eyes dark brown; similar in structure to that of ***hirticulus***. *Rostrum*, length 1.8 mm., reaching posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, apex darkened.

Antennae: segment I, length .57 mm., yellowish brown; II, 1.74 mm., yellowish brown, apex lightly infuscated; III, 1 mm., yellowish, slightly darkened with fuscous; IV, .68 mm., slightly darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length .91 mm., width at base 1.57 mm., width at anterior angles .74 mm., collar .63 mm.; similar to that of ***hirticulus*** but without fuscous on the sides. *Scutellum* rich brownish. *Sternum* yellowish brown, sides scarcely darker.

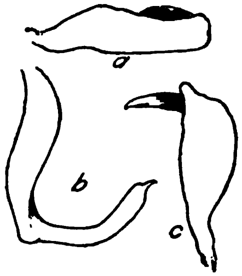


FIG. 183. LYGUS FAGI, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 1.94 mm., rich brownish or fulvo-aeneous, the margin more yellowish, punctuation and pubescence about as in ***hirticulus***; cuneus evenly shaded with yellowish brown, not darker at base. *Membrane* darkened with fuscous, darker within apices of cells, center of membrane, margin of apex, and a small spot each side near the tip of the cuneus.

Legs: yellowish brown, the femora frequently tinged with reddish, apices of tarsi fuscous.

Venter: brownish, tinged with reddish at the sides; genital claspers (fig. 183) distinctive of the species.

♀. Slightly larger and more robust than the male; very similar to the female of *hirticulus*, but usually distinguishable by the infuscated membrane and in general by the more fulvo-aeneous coloration.

This species breeds on beech (*Fagus grandifolia*) but is found only in favored surroundings, usually cool, shady situations. The nymphs hatch with the unfolding of the leaves and feed on the tender foliage. In 1916 the adults were maturing from June 20 to June 25; eggs were laid on the twigs of the host plant during July, and most of the adults were dead by August 1.

Described from 3 ♂ 5 ♀, July 23, Ithaca, New York, taken on beech by the writer.

Paratypes: 90 ♂ ♀ July 4–5, Four Mile, 17 ♂ ♀ June 25, Wyoming, ♂ ♀ June 26, ♀ July 5, ♂ July 25, Batavia, ♂ 2 ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, ♂ June 27, Honeoye Falls, New York; all collected by the writer. 4 ♂ July 8, Norwich, ♂ July 14, Dummerston, Vermont; ♀ August 7, Chester, Massachusetts; all collected by C. W. Johnson and received from Mr. Parshley.

Lygus invitus Say

1831 *Capsus invitus* Say
Heterop. Hemip. N. Amer., p. 790. (Reprint.)
1916 *Lygus invitus* Knight
Can. ent. 48:345.

Dark greenish with fuscous or blackish, sides of the body with a dark fuscous stripe extending the full length of the body and including the whole genital segment; scutellum with a pale median vitta on the apical half; disk of pronotum dark brownish or blackish, but never with two distinct rays as in *communis*; genital claspers distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .94 mm., vertex .32 mm., length .95 mm., height at base .51 mm.; dark greenish with brownish, eyes dark brownish to blackish; carina distinct, slightly arcuate, an impressed triangle just before, its apex extending as an impressed longitudinal line over the front; smooth shining, finely pubescent. *Rostrum*, length 1.57 mm., scarcely attaining the posterior margins of the hind coxae.

Antennae: segment I, length .55 mm., dark greenish with fuscous; II, 1.76 mm., dark greenish with fuscous, apical half becoming blackish; III, 1.14 mm., dark fuscous; IV, .65 mm., slightly darker than segment III; all the segments clothed with very fine pale pubescence.

Pronotum: length .9 mm., width at base 1.6 mm., width at anterior angles .74 mm., collar .57 mm.; dark greenish with fuscous, shining; lateral margins of disk paler, frequently bright green between and just before the calli; sides fuscous, xyphus bright green; calli nearly oval, smooth and shining, not at all prominent; punctures fine, closely placed and very shallow, more or less transversely confluent; fine yellowish pubescence. *Scutellum* dark brownish to fuscous, apical half of the median line pale, in some cases this pale vitta extending the full length of the scutellum; moderately convex, very finely transversely rugose, clothed with fine yellowish pubescence like hemelytra; mesoscutum only narrowly exposed. *Sternum* yellowish green beneath, sides and pleura infuscated, forming part of the fuscous stripe which extends the full length of the body; basalar plate bright green; scent-gland orifice infuscated.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2 mm.; dark fuscous with brownish, basal angle of the corium and basal half of the embolium paler; very finely punctate and minutely scabrous; clothed with very fine yellowish pubescence, thicker on the clavus; cuneus pale, transparent, in some cases tinged with greenish on the exterior margin. *Membrane* infuscated, paler bordering the cuneus, veins, basal half of cells, a large spot each side near the margin beyond the tip of the cuneus, and a smaller and less distinct spot beyond that halfway to the tip of the membrane.

Legs: coxae and bases of femora pale or greenish, posterior femora fuscous except at base, the middle pair in some cases darkened near the tips; tibiae pale greenish, the hind pair in some cases with a fuscous ring near the base or the whole tibia somewhat darkened; spines yellowish brown; apical tarsal segment blackish, claws brownish.

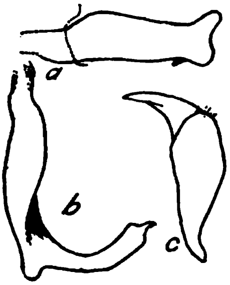


FIG. 184. LYGUS INVITUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Venter: pale beneath, sides dark fuscous, genital segment dark fuscous, shining, with a pale mark beneath at the base; spiracles appearing as pale dots; genital claspers (fig. 184) distinctive of the species.

♀. Length 5.1 mm., width 2.2 mm.; slightly more robust than the male; very similar in coloration to the male, but with the pale vitta on the scutellum more extended, and in general lighter-colored.

Redescribed from a large series of specimens collected by the writer from elm (*Ulmus americana*), June 20, Batavia, New York.

Records: 30 ♂ ♀ June 20, ♂ June 16, 2 ♂ June 21, 7 ♂ 3 ♀ June 25, ♂ June 28, ♂ 3 ♀ July 14, ♀ July 22, Batavia, 40 ♂ ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, 4 ♂ 2 ♀ June 27, Honeoye Falls, ♂ June 21, Portage, ♂ June 9, ♀ June 16, ♂ ♀ July 26, Ithaca, New York; all collected by the writer. ♂ June 15, Danbury, ♂ ♀ June 16, Winnipauk, Connecticut; ♂ June 20, North Adams, Massachusetts; 5 ♂ ♀ June 28, Saint Johnsbury, ♂ July 8, Norwich, ♂ June 22, Burlington, Vermont; all collected by C. W. Johnson.

So far as the writer is able to determine, *invitus* breeds only on the elm (Ulmus), preferring always the young, thrifty plants with succulent shoots. The forty specimens recorded above from Conesus Lake, New York, were all taken on one small clump of second-growth elm shoots. The nymphs are pale greenish, hatching soon after the leaves come out in the spring from eggs that were inserted in the twigs the previous July. The adults all disappear by the first of August.

Lygus atritylus new species

Closely related to *invitus* and *fagi*, the darker forms much resembling a pale or yellowish form of *invitus*; easily distinguished by the blackish tylus and the genital claspers.

♂. Length 5.2 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.03 mm., vertex .43 mm., length .37 mm., height at base .6 mm.; yellowish brown marked with reddish, apical half of tylus blackish, eyes blackish. *Rostrum*, length 1.88 mm., just attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .54 mm., yellowish brown or greenish; II, 1.82 mm., yellowish brown, tip in some cases slightly tinged with fuscous; III, 1 mm., yellowish green darkened with fuscous; IV, .63 mm., darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length .97 mm., width at base 1.71 mm., width at anterior angles .85 mm., collar .68 mm.; yellowish green to brownish, sides reddish, front margins of the calli in some cases marked with reddish. *Scutellum* same color as disk of pronotum. *Sternum* pale yellowish to greenish, sides marked with reddish as in *communis*.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.2 mm.; greenish yellow to yellowish brown, punctuation and pubescence similar to that in *invitus*; embolium and exterior margin of corium paler, translucent; clavus may be infuscated along the suture, frequently the corium may be darkened with fuscous on the apical half; cuneus clear, in some cases tinged with yellowish. *Membrane* infuscated, a blackish inverted Y formed at the extreme base; a large pale spot at each side near the margin, also pale bordering the cuneus, veins, and bases of the cells.

Legs: greenish yellow, femora marked with reddish, usually forming an annulus near the apices of the posterior pair; tibial spines arising from fuscous spots as in *alni*; apices of tarsi fuscous, claws paler.

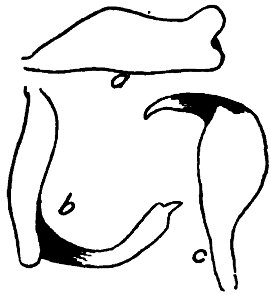


FIG. 185. LYGUS ATRITYLUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Venter: pale yellowish to greenish beneath, sides reddish as in *communis*; genital claspers (fig. 185) distinctive of the species.

♀. One mutilated specimen studied, in coloration very similar to the male; distinguished from all other species by the apical half of the tylus being blackish, in combination with the general yellowish brown coloration of the dorsum and the reddish stripe on the sides of the body.

Holotype: ♂ June 29, Stowe, Vermont, collected by G. P. Engelhardt.

Paratypes: ♂, Stowe, Vermont (G. P. Engelhardt). ♂, Franconia, New Hampshire (Mrs. A. T. Slosson). ♂ July 21, Happy Hollow, ♂ August 14, " Dutch Geo.," ♀ August 16, Home, Colorado; all received from C. P. Gillette.

This species appears to be rather scarce, and further information on its distribution and knowledge of its food plant will prove of interest.

Lygus confusus new species

Differs from *alni* in lacking the strong bronze colors, in having a fuscous spot at the tip of the corium, and in different membrane markings; the fuscous spots at the base of the tibial spines are much more distinct, and in addition there are small fuscous spots on the lower side of the posterior femora; the height of the lateral aspect of the sinistral forceps is greater in proportion to the length than in *alni* or any other species here considered.

♂. Length 5.3 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.08 mm., vertex .31 mm., length .46 mm., height at base .65 mm.; greenish to yellowish brown, eyes dark brown, thicker than in *belfragii* or *alni*; carina distinct, with an impressed triangle just before and joining with the slightly sulcate vertex. *Rostrum*, length 2.14 mm., attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .66 mm., greenish yellow to brownish; II, 2.19 mm., same color as segment I; III, 1.2 mm., pale fuscous; IV, .77 mm., same color as segment III.

Pronotum: length 1 mm., width at base 1.74 mm., width at anterior angles .8 mm., collar .63 mm.; green with greenish yellow, slightly more yellowish brown on basal part of disk. *Scutellum* green or with yellowish brown at the sides and on the slightly exposed mesoscutum. *Sternum* greenish yellow.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.05 mm.; clavus greenish yellow, more brownish near the scutellum and the suture; corium and embolium greenish yellow, inner apical angles of the corium with a small fuscous patch; cuneus yellowish green, translucent, pubescent. *Membrane* fuscous, darkest within apices of cells and a spot near apex of cuneus; veins, basal half of cells, between the large cells and bordering their apices, and bordering the cuneus, pale.

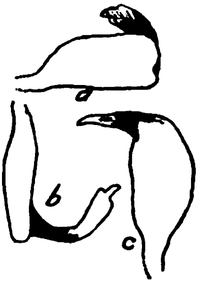


Fig. 186. LYGUS CONFUSUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Legs: greenish yellow, posterior femora with a few very small fuscous dots on the lower side, apices with two fuscous annuli apparent on the upper side; tibial spines yellowish brown, bases distinctly fuscous; tarsi yellowish brown, apices darker.

Venter: greenish yellow; genital claspers (fig. 186) distinctive of the species.

Described from a single male specimen, July 22, Machias, Maine, received from H. M. Parshley. One female specimen, July 16, Mount Washington, New Hampshire, agrees with the male in markings and doubtless belongs to this species.

Lygus alni new species

1909 *Lygus viridis* Reuter (not Fallén)
Bemerk. neark. Caps., p. 42.

Closely related to the European *Lygus viridis* Fallén, but differs in the male genital claspers, in having the scutellum noticeably darker, and in that the apical part of the second antennal segment is not infuscated; more slender than *viridis*, bright green, bronze on the clavus and on the basal half of the disk of the pronotum, with a more dilute bronze on the scutellum and on the inner half of the corium.

♂. Length 5.5–6 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1 mm., vertex .33 mm., length .38 mm., height at base .58 mm.; yellowish brown tinged with green, eyes dark brown, lorae more strongly arcuate than in *belfragii*. *Rostrum*, length 1.88 mm., just reaching posterior margins of hind coxae, greenish to yellowish brown, apex fuscous.

Antennae: segment I, length .64 mm., yellowish; II, 2.02 mm., yellowish and not fuscous at tip as in *viridis*; III, 1.04 mm., slightly fuscous with pale at the very base; IV, .74 mm., slightly darker than segment III; all the segments with very fine pubescence.

Pronotum: length .86 mm., width at base 1.57 mm., width at anterior angles .63 mm., collar .57 mm.; bright green, bronze on the basal half of disk extending nearly to the calli but not darkening the green on the lateral margins; punctuation less noticeable than in *belfragii*; prosternal xyphus green like the sides of the pronotum. *Scutellum* dark green tinged with bronze. *Sternum* pale yellowish green, as are the sides of the thorax.

Hemelytra: greatest width 1.98 mm., pubescence rather short and fine, tinged with bronze; bright green, with the clavus strongly bronzed and the inner half of the corium lightly bronzed; cuneus bright green, in some cases the inner margin slightly bronzed. *Membrane* lightly infumed, with apical part of cells and a narrow transverse spot at apex of cuneus darker; veins scarcely paler than the membrane.

Legs: greenish, tibial spines fuscous at base, apices of tibiae and the tarsi yellowish brown, apices of the tarsi fuscous with the claws bronzed.

Venter: bright green to yellowish green; genital claspers (fig. 187) distinctive of the species.

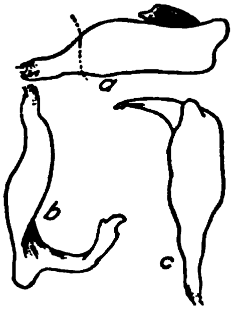


FIG. 187. LYGUS ALNI, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

♀. Not differing from the male in coloration but slightly more robust.

Holotype: ♂ July 27, McLean, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: 3 ♂ 13 ♀, topotypic. ♀ July 26, Ithaca, New York (H. H. Knight). ♂, Wolfville, Nova Scotia. ♂, Franconia, New Hampshire (Mrs. A. T. Slosson); lent for study by Mr. Heidemann, it being one of the two specimens recorded as *L. viridis* Fallén by Reuter (1909).

Specimens were taken only from alders (*Alnus incana*) growing in the cool and shady parts bordering the Round Bog at McLean, indicating that the species is of northern distribution. On that date, July 27, specimens were scarce; a few were undersized, showing them to be the last stragglers of the brood. The eggs are doubtless laid in the twigs of alder, where they spend the winter, hatching in the following spring with the unfolding of the leaves.

The writer has dissected out the male forceps of the specimen from Franconia, New Hampshire, and others of those mentioned above, and finds the structures showing a constant difference from the European *L. viridis* Fallén, specimens of which were determined by Reuter and sent to Mr. Heidemann (fig. 188).

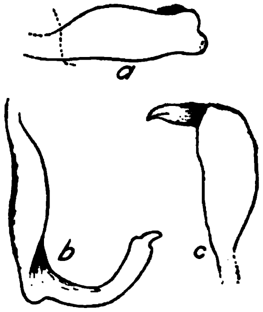


FIG. 188. LYGUS VIRIDIS FALLÉN, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Lygus geneseensis new species

Allied to *viburni*, having much the same color but differing in being slightly smaller, in the longer rostrum, and in the structure of the genital claspers.

♂. Length 5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .97 mm., vertex .4 mm., length .4 mm., height at base .57 mm.; yellowish brown, tip of tylus darker. *Rostrum*, length 1.9 mm., reaching posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, apex dark brown.

Antennae: segment I, .68 mm., yellowish; II, 2.05 mm., yellowish, rarely if ever darkened at apex; III, 1.17 mm., yellowish, tinged with darker on the apical half; IV, .69 mm., yellowish tinged with fuscous.

Pronotum: length .97 mm., width at base 1.71 mm., width at anterior angles .77 mm., collar .6 mm.; similar in structure to that of *viburni*, but more of a fuscous brown in color. *Sternum* dark brown; pleura and orifice dark fuscous brown.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.05 mm.; similar to those of *viburni* but usually with darker fuscous brown.

Legs: yellowish, darker on the femora and paler on the tibiae; posterior femora not annulated at the apices.

Venter: uniformly dark fuscous brown, genital segment more shining; genital claspers (fig. 189) distinctive of the species, recognized quickly by the form of the inner hook of the dextral clasper

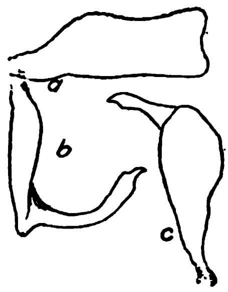


FIG. 189. LYGUS GENESEENSIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

♀. Length 4.9 mm., width 2.1 mm.; very similar to the male but more uniformly yellowish brown; distinguished from *viburni* by the uniformly yellowish color of the antennae, and by the length of the rostrum which reaches to the posterior margins of the hind coxae.

The species occurs on white oak (*Quercus alba*), in company with *quercalbae* but much less abundant. The life history is apparently similar to that of *omnivagus* and *quercalbae*.

Holotype: ♂ June 23, Conesus Lake, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: 26 ♂ ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, 7 ♂ 2 ♀ June 21, 10 ♂ ♀ June 22, 4 ♂ 5 ♀ June 27, Portage, 3 ♀ June 25, Batavia, 3 ♂ July 26, Ithaca, New York; all collected by the writer. ♂ ♀ July 8, Yaphank, New York (Wm. T. Davis). 2 ♂ July 28, Pigeon Cove, Massachusetts (C. E. Olsen). ♂, Jeannette, Pennsylvania. ♂ June 16, Atherton, Missouri. ♂ June 14, Beltsville, Maryland; ♂ July 1, Bluemont, ♀ June 17, Glencarlyn, Virginia; all collected by W. L. McAtee.

Lygus viburni new species

Smaller than *omnivagus*, and more yellowish brown; closely related to *geneseensis*, but differs in the male claspers, in being more robust, in having a shorter rostrum, in the apical half of the second antennal segment being infuscated, and in having in general a richer yellowish brown color.

♂. Length 5.2 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.03 mm., vertex .38 mm., length .43 mm., height at base .63 mm.; yellowish brown, tip of the tylus darker; carina slightly arcuate, slightly impressed on the vertex just in front. *Rostrum*, length 1.54 mm., scarcely attaining posterior margins of intermediate coxae, much shorter than in *geneseensis*; yellowish brown, apex fuscous.

Antennae: segment I, length .57 mm., yellowish; II, 1.97 mm., yellowish on the base, apical half dark brownish to fuscous; III, 1.05 mm., fuscous brown, narrow pale ring at base; IV, .63 mm., fuscous brown.

Pronotum: length 1 mm., width at base 1.79 mm., width at anterior angles .83 mm., collar .6 mm.; uniformly rich yellowish brown, slightly paler at margins of disk and darker brown behind the coxal cleft; calli apparent as smooth ovals, a slightly impressed line defining the posterior margin; fine shallow punctures, fine yellowish pubescence. *Scutellum* yellowish brown, very finely transversely rugose, fine yellowish pubescence. *Sternum* yellowish beneath, fuscous brown on the sides; pleura fuscous brown; orifice pale.

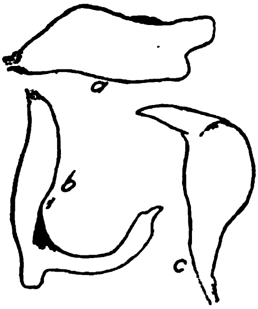


FIG. 190. LYGUS VIBURNI, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.08 mm.; rich yellowish brown to dark brown; paler on the basal two-thirds of the embolium and adjacent margin of the corium; cuneus pale tinged with yellowish; fine shallow punctuation, more or less scabrous, fine yellowish pubescence. *Membrane* fuscous brown, paler bordering the apices of the cells and narrowly bordering the cuneus; a faint pale spot near the margin just beyond the apex of the cuneus.

Legs: pale yellowish; apical half of posterior femora brownish, twice annulated near the apices with dark brown, contrasted with pale; tibiae and spines yellowish; tips of tarsi dark brown, claws yellowish brown.

Venter: rich dark brown, yellowish beneath, genital segment entirely dark brown and shining; genital claspers (fig. 190) distinctive of the species, bearing a close resemblance to those of *parshleyi*.

♀. Length 5.3 mm., width 2.28 mm., width of head 1.03 mm., vertex .45 mm.; very similar to the male in coloration but usually not so dark; distinguished from *geneseensis* by the shortness of the rostrum, which scarcely attains the posterior margins of the intermediate coxae, and by the second antennal segment, which is darkened on the apical half.

The species breeds in large numbers on *Viburnum lentago*. It is often most numerous on the old plants. It is frequently found in company with *Lygidea rubecula* Uhl., but that species breeds particularly on young growth.

The nymphs hatch with the unfolding of the leaves and continue to feed on the tender foliage. In some cases the species may be classed as a pest on ornamental plantings, for it breeds in such numbers that all the leaves become spotted and curled, and many of them drop. The nymphs are greenish yellow in color, short, and more oval than those of most species of Lygus. The life history is very similar to that of *omnivagus* and *quercalbae*.

Holotype: ♂ July 9, Batavia, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: 11 ♂ ♀ June 14, 50 ♂ ♀ June 15, 56 ♂ ♀ June 16–25, 5 ♀ July 4, 4 ♂ ♀ July 9, 3 ♂ 8 ♀ July 10, 2 ♂ 2 ♀ July 27, 7 ♀ July 29–31, 9 ♀ August 2, ♀ August 6, Batavia, New York; 10 ♂ ♀ June 21, 17 ♂ ♀ June 27, Portage, New York; all collected by the writer. ♂ June 22, Bennington, Vermont. ♂ June 11, New Haven, Connecticut (B. H. Walden).

Lygus parshleyi new species

Closely related to ***atrinotatus***, but differs materially in the male claspers, in not having the blackish rays on the pronotum clearly defined as spots, and in general by the more brownish coloration.

♂. Length 4.8 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1 mm., vertex .4 mm., length .42 mm., height at base .57 mm.; yellowish brown to dark brownish, lorae, juga, and apical half of tylus darker; carina distinct, slightly arcuated, slightly depressed just in front of the vertex; front full, slightly depressed along the median line. *Rostrum*, length 1.54 mm., scarcely attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .54 mm., yellowish brown to dark brown; II, 1.57 mm., yellowish brown, apex blackish; III, .94 mm., fuscous; IV, .68 mm., fuscous.

Pronotum: length .85 mm., width at base 1.63 mm., width at anterior angles .8 mm., collar .58 mm.; yellowish brown, with brownish black extending from the collar over the exterior half of the calli, widening toward posterior margin of disk, in some cases meeting at base and leaving a pale area only in center of disk and between the calli; sides fuscous or blackish, with yellowish at lateral margins of disk; punctuation and pubescence similar to that in other closely related forms. *Scutellum* yellowish to brownish, darker at the sides and on the mesoscutum; very finely transversely rugose with fine pale pubescence. *Sternum* yellowish beneath, fuscous at the sides; pleura fuscous; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2 mm.; yellowish brown, clavus and apical two-thirds of the corium and embolium dark brownish to blackish; cuneus pale translucent tinged with yellowish. *Membrane* infuscated, but not so dark as in *atrinotatus*; pale bordering the cuneus, along veins, in basal half of cells, and a faint spot near margin beyond apex of cuneus.

Legs: pale yellowish, posterior femora dark brownish or reddish brown on apical half, leaving two pale rings at apices; tibial spines brownish, apices of tarsi blackish, claws brownish.

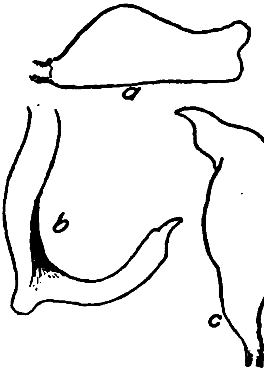


FIG. 191. LYGUS PARSHLEYI, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Venter: pale beneath, sides with a dark brownish or fuscous stripe, genital segment dark brownish black, shining; genital claspers (fig. 191) distinctive of the species.

♀. Length 5 mm., width 2.1 mm.; the dark colors much reduced, otherwise similar to the male in coloration.

This species is named after H. M. Parshley, who was the first to send the writer specimens of this as well as certain other forms of Lygus.

Holotype: ♂ July 15, Glen House, New Hampshire.

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: ♂ ♀ June 26, Bretton Woods, New Hampshire (C. W. Johnson). 2 ♂ ♀ June 30, Bretton Woods, ♂ July 23, Glen House, New Hampshire; ♂ July 14, Eastport, Maine; all received from E. P. Van Duzee.

The food plant of this species is unknown to the writer.

Lygus parshleyi var. **shermani** new variety

Length 5.6 mm., width 2.5 mm. Larger than the typical *parshleyi* and more brownish than black; male claspers very similar to those of *parshleyi*, tho a slight difference may be noted in the dextral clasper. Second antennal segment entirely dark brownish or with the apical half blackish. Pronotum with the blackish rays much reduced, particularly in the females.

The structural differences are so small that it seems desirable to place this form as a variety of *parshleyi*, for the present at least.

Described from 5 ♂ 3 ♀, July 6, 1906, Highlands, North Carolina, received from R. W. Leiby; the specimens were collected by Franklin Sherman, after whom the variety is named.

Lygus inconspicuus new species

Pale greenish, with a transverse spot of brownish at the apex of the corium and dark brownish on the clavus bordering the scutellum; in general appearance resembling most the female of *tiliae* and both sexes of *clavigenitalis*, but differing greatly from those species in the form of the genital claspers.

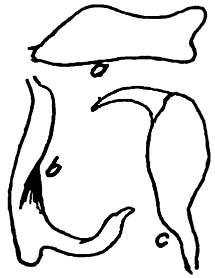


FIG. 192. LYGUS INCONSPICUUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

♂. Length 4.5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .97 mm., vertex .37 mm., length .32 mm., height at base .56 mm.; yellowish green; eyes dark brown, paler at margins; carina distinct, an impressed line curving from the corner of each eye onto the vertex; head shorter and more vertical than is usual in the genus. *Rostrum*, length 1.54 mm., attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish green, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .48 mm., greenish; II, 1.65 mm., yellowish green, apex tinged with fuscous; III, .77 mm., fuscous; IV, .48 mm., fuscous.

Pronotum: length 1 mm., width at base 1.7 mm., width at anterior angles .77 mm., collar .61 mm.; greenish or yellowish green, disk tinged with brownish; very minutely and shallowly punctate, very fine pale pubescence; calli scarcely distinguishable, indicated only by a slight change in color. ***Scutellum*** pale yellowish, more yellowish at margins; very minutely rugose, very fine pale yellowish pubescence. ***Sternum*** pale yellowish green beneath, sides and pleura green; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.08 mm.; clavus dark brownish, darker on the half bordering the scutellum; corium pale greenish, apex transversely darkened with dark brownish or fuscous; embolium in some cases slightly darkened bordering the fuscous spot on the corium; very minutely scabrous, fine yellowish pubescence; cuneus pale with greenish, in some cases strongly green. *Membrane* pale, apices of cells, a small spot at tip of cuneus, and one beyond near the margin, pale fuscous.

Legs: green, paler at base of femora; tibiae darker green, spines brownish; apices of tarsi and extreme tips of tibiae fuscous, claws yellowish.

Venter: green, slightly paler beneath; genital claspers tinged with brownish, in structure distinctive of the species (fig. 192).

♀. Length 4.8 mm., width 2.25 mm.; very similar to the male in size and coloration. Similar in size and general appearance to females of *clavigenitalis* and *tiliae*; distinguished from *tiliae* by the pale scutellum, and from *clavigenitalis* by the more greenish color and the paler scutellum.

Described from specimens taken on *Carpinus caroliniana*, the trees also being covered by wild grapevines. The writer was unable to definitely locate the food plant, tho apparently the species feeds on one of the two plants named. Continued sweeping of the supposed food plants failed to produce any great number of specimens, thus giving evidence of the rarity of the species in western New York. The number of specimens taken by W. L. McAtee in the vicinity of the District of Columbia indicates that the species may be more abundant in that region.

Holotype: ♂ July 9, Batavia, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: 3 ♂ June 24, ♀ June 25, ♂ July 9, ♀ July 10, Batavia, 2 ♂ Honeoye Falls, ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, New York; all collected by the writer. 5 ♂ 3 ♀ July 1, Bluemont, ♂ May 31, Four Mile Run, ♀ Glencarlyn, Virginia; 4 ♀ June 14, Beltsville, Maryland; all collected by W. L. McAtee.

Two female specimens that apparently belong here: ♀ June 23, New Haven, Connecticut (B. H. Walden); ♀ June, Clayton, Georgia, altitude 2000–3700 feet (Wm. T. Davis).

Lygus tiliae new species

Rather small, scarcely as large as *invitus*; greenish yellow with the base of the pronotum darker, the scutellum, the clavus, and the corium dark fuscous to blackish (♂), or with the dark color greatly reduced forming fuscous triangles at the apex of the corium (♀); female very much resembles forms of *inconspicuus* and *clavigenitalis*.

♂. Length 4.6 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .94 mm., vertex .34 mm., length .4 mm., height at base .6 mm.; greenish with yellow, eyes dark brown, front strongly projecting, rounded, shining; carina nearly straight, slightly impressed before and joining with a narrow longitudinal sulcus on the median line of the vertex. *Rostrum*, length 1.6 mm., yellowish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .54 mm., greenish yellow; II, 1.71 mm., yellowish; III, .94 mm., fuscous, yellowish at base; IV, .63 mm., fuscous; all the segments finely pubescent.

Pronotum: length .88 mm., width at base 1.63 mm., width at anterior angles .77 mm., collar .6 mm.; anterior part, including the calli, yellowish, sides and lateral margins of disk strongly greenish, basal half of disk fuscous or dark greenish to blackish; calli, punctuation, and pubescence as in *belfragii*. *Scutellum* dark fuscous, pale pubescent, finely transversely rugose; mesoscutum dark fuscous, in some cases with yellowish. *Sternum* greenish yellow to yellowish, sides of thorax pale yellowish.

Hemelytra: greatest width 1.74 mm.; clavus and inner half of corium dark fuscous to blackish, exterior basal half of corium pale greenish; embolium greenish, in some cases tinged with fuscous near the tip; cuneus green or faded to yellowish; fine pale pubescence, finely and shallowly punctured with a roughened irregular rugose effect. *Membrane* evenly fuscous, veins paler at apices of cells; in many specimens the basal half of the cells, and surrounding a small spot near the apex of the cuneus, paler.

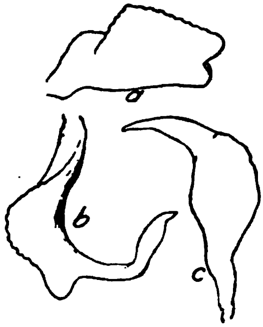


FIG. 193. LYGUS TILIAE, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Legs: greenish yellow; tibiae more greenish, spines brownish; apical segments of tarsi brownish to fuscous, claws brown.

Venter: greenish with yellowish, sides and genital segment becoming fuscous; genital claspers (fig. 193) distinctive of the species.

♀. Length 5 mm., width 2 mm.; lighter-colored than the male and usually slightly larger; pronotum entirely yellowish, scutellum and clavus only slightly darkened, apex of the corium with a triangular dark patch, much resembling *belfragii* in this respect; similar in size and general appearance to females of *inconspicuus* and *clavigenitalis*; distinguished from *inconspicuus* by having a more conical shape to the front of the head, and in the darker-colored scutellum; *clavigenitalis* differs in having more brownish and in the paler scutellum.

The species breeds abundantly on linden (*Tilia americana*) and appears to be limited at least to this genus of plants. The nymphs hatch with the unfolding of the leaves and usually mature from June 15 to June 25. The females lay their eggs in the young twigs of the linden during July, and by the end of the month most of them have died. The insects are frequently attracted to sumac (*Rhus glabra*) for feeding on the flowers, and in this way thirty-seven specimens were taken on July 10.

Described from 131 specimens taken on one linden tree at Portage, New York, on June 27, 1915.

Holotype: ♂ June 27, Portage, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: 129 ♂ ♀, topotypic. From near Batavia, New York, 2 ♂ June 10, 29 ♂ ♀ June 14–16, 38 ♂ ♀ June 20–25, 9 ♂ ♀ July 5–9, 7 ♀ 30 ♂ July 10 (from *Rhus glabra* flowers), ♀ July 21, ♂ July 25, 3 ♀ August 1, ♀ August 13; 3 ♂ 4 ♀ June 16, Wyoming, ♂ June 15, Ithaca, 3 ♂ 9 ♀ July 16, Conesus Lake, ♂ June 27, Honeoye Falls, 2 ♂ 2 ♀ July 4, Four Mile, New York; all collected by the writer. 3 ♂

June 25, Spring Brook, New York; 2 ♂ 2 ♀ June 29, Ottawa, Ontario; all received from E. P. Van Duzee. ♂ June 27, Poquonock, Connecticut (H. L. Viereck). ♂ July 13, Springfield, Massachusetts (C. W. Johnson). ♀ July, Middlebury, Vermont.

Lygus caryae new species

Dark brownish to black, the cuneus pale, thus superficially resembling *Neoborus geminus* Say, while the paler brown forms suggest *Lygus omnivagus*; the yellowish pubescence on the dark color gives a dull wax-like shine to the insect.

♂. Length 5.4 mm. (variation 4.8–5.7 mm.). *Head*: width across eyes 1.05 mm., vertex .4 mm., length .43 mm., height at base .6 mm.; brownish black to nearly black, eyes dark brown; vertex with a longitudinal impressed line similar to that in *invitus*. *Rostrum*, length 1.91 mm., scarcely attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, pale to yellowish brown, apex fuscous.

Antennae: segment I, length .65 mm., greenish yellow tinged with fuscous; II, 2.05 mm., yellowish brown darkened with fuscous, in some cases nearly black; III, 1.02 mm., pale tinged with fuscous; IV, .65 mm., slightly darker than segment III; fine silvery pubescence covering all the segments except the first, which has slightly heavier and darker pubescence.

Pronotum: length .97 mm., width at base 1.79 mm., width at anterior angles .83 mm., collar .65 mm.; black, in some cases the calli with dark brown; a spot of greenish brown at dorsal extremity of coxal cleft, prosternal xyphus greenish yellow; disk, especially on basal half, transversely rugulose. *Scutellum* black, transversely rugulose, in some cases the apex brownish. *Sternum* brownish black, the median ventral part greenish yellow; pleura brownish black; orifice black.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.1 mm.; yellowish pubescence rather prominent on the dark dorsum; clavus and corium black, in some cases slightly brownish black; cuneus clear with the apex fuscous, frequently clouded along the basal margin. *Membrane* and veins fuscous, frequently nearly black; brachium at apex of larger cell usually pale.

Legs: greenish yellow, apical segments of tarsi and apical half of posterior femora, excepting the very tips, fuscous; middle femora annulated near the apices with two narrow fuscous rings, showing darker on the ventral side.

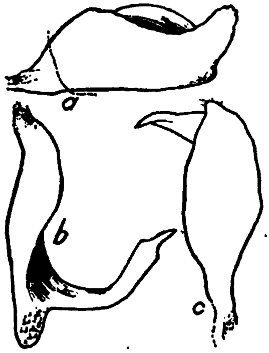


FIG. 194. LYGUS CARYAE, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Venter: black or brownish black, small yellowish spots inclosing the spiracles; rather long pale yellowish pubescence covering the genital segment and especially along the posterior margins of all the segments; genital claspers (fig. 194) distinctive of the species.

♀. Length 5.5 mm. (variation 5–6.3 mm.), width across eyes 1.03 mm., vertex .44 mm.; more robust than the male; frequently with brownish yellow between the calli and extending back over the disk.

Holotype: ♂ June 19, 1915, Batavia, New York (H. H. Knight).
Allotype: June 15, 1915, Batavia (H. H. Knight).

Paratypes: 32 ♂ ♀ June 5, 2 ♂ ♀ June 15, 5 ♂ 3 ♀ June 16, ♂ ♀ June 17, 3 ♂ 2 ♀ June 18–19, 3 ♂ June 24, ♂ ♀ June 25, ♂ ♀ July 1, 4 ♂ 4 ♀ July 14, Batavia, 2 ♂ 5 ♀ June 21, ♂ 2 ♀ June 27, Portage, 35 ♂ ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, ♂ June 27, Honeoye Falls, 26 ♂ ♀ June 7, ♂ ♀ June 13, 5 ♂ 8 ♀ June 14, Ithaca, New York; all collected by the writer. 2 ♂ June 20, Honeoye Falls, New York (M. D. Leonard). ♂ 2 ♀ June 12, Hamburg, New York (E. P. Van Duzee). ♂ June 17, 3 ♂ 2 ♀ June 11, Boston, Massachusetts (collected at light, H. M. Parshley). ♂ ♀ June 5, Portland, ♂ June 21, ♂ ♀ June 24, New Haven, ♂ June 27, Yalesville, Connecticut (B. H. Walden). ♂ ♀ June 22, Bennington, Vermont (C. W. Johnson). 5 ♂ ♀ June 23, Beaver Dam, Wisconsin (W. E. Snyder). ♂ May 20, Agricultural College, Mississippi (L. O. Smith).

The species breeds on the various kinds of hickory (Carya) in New York. At Conesus Lake, New York, it was found on young black walnut trees (*Juglans nigra*). The adults are frequently attracted to sumac (*Rhus typhina*) for feeding on the flowers. In the Southern States the species breeds also on pecan.

The life history is very similar to that of *invitus* and that of *communis*, the nymphs feeding on the tender foliage of hickory. On June 5, 1914, near Batavia, New York, the writer found freshly emerged adults and fifth-stage nymphs in abundance on *Carya alba*. At other times the species was taken on *Carya ovata*.

Lygus caryae var. **subfuscus** new variety

A yellowish brown color form of the preceding species, to which it seems advisable to give a varietal name since in general appearance it differs so greatly from the typical species; very much resembling *omnivagus* in coloration.

♂. Genitalia showing no noticeable difference from that of *caryae*; second antennal segment brownish with fuscous, the basal one-third, and frequently one-half, yellowish brown as the first segment; yellowish brown, pronotum with two black spots, one behind each eye and frequently extending back over the calli thus forming two black rays; scutellum pale yellowish, frequently fuscous at base, in darker specimens a fuscous median line extending from base toward apex. Hemelytra in color very much resembling those of *omnivagus*, but the two black rays on the pronotum and the dark color of the scutellum appearing along the median line will distinguish it at once from that species. Ventral parts greenish yellow, with fuscous appearing on sides of thorax and in some cases rather dark on sides of venter; posterior femora with two narrow fuscous bands near the apices, darkest on the ventral side, middle and front femora in some cases showing these marks on the lower side.

A large series of this variety was taken by the writer on a hickory tree near Batavia, New York, on June 18, 1915, and only one specimen was dark enough to be classed as the typical *caryae*.

Holotype: ♂ June 18, 1915, Batavia, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: 81 ♂ ♀ June 18, ♀ June 26, 3 ♂ ♀ July 11, Batavia, ♂ June 25, Wyoming, 3 ♂ June 27, Portage, 6 ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, New York; all collected by the writer. ♀ June 25, Spring Brook, New York (E. P. Van Duzee). ♀ June 5, Portland, Connecticut (B. H. Walden). ♂ June 7, South Meriden, Connecticut (H. Johnson). ♀ June 11, Boston, Massachusetts (H. M. Parshley). ♂ 2 ♀ April 4, Ocean Springs, Mississippi (on pecan, R. W. Harned). 2 ♀ April 30, Pascagoula, Mississippi (L. Brown).

Lygus atrinotatus new species

Resembles *canadensis* var. *binotatus* and certain color forms of *parshleyi*, but differs greatly in the genital claspers; yellowish brown, the second antennal segment and two conspicuous spots on the pronotum black; clavus, apical half of the corium, and narrow lateral margins of the scutellum, blackish; a blackish stripe on the sides extending the full length of the body.

♂. Length 4.7 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1 mm., vertex .35 mm., length .37 mm., height at base .57 mm.; yellowish brown, tip of tylus slightly darkened, eyes dark brown; carina prominent, strongly arcuate. *Rostrum*, length 1.6 mm., reaching only to posterior margins of intermediate coxae, yellowish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .6 mm., yellowish brown; II, 1.85 mm., black, with a very narrow yellowish ring at base; III, 1.03 mm., blackish, slightly paler at base; IV, .7 mm., blackish.

Pronotum: length .97 mm., width at base 1.71 mm., width at anterior angles .8 mm., collar .6 mm.; yellowish brown with two prominent black spots on the disk, one behind each callus and forming nearly square spots, each as wide as the callus and extending back two-thirds of the distance to basal margin; blackish at sides behind coxal cleft; finely and shallowly punctate, fine yellowish pubescence. *Scutellum* pale yellowish, sides bordering the clavus narrowly black; very finely transversely rugose, pale pubescent. *Sternum* pale yellowish beneath, blackish at the sides; pleura blackish; orifice of scent glands pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.08 mm.; clavus black, a narrow yellowish line extending the full length, in some cases widened at the base; corium yellowish brown, the apical one-half blackish, in some cases brownish bordering the entire length of the clavus; embolium yellowish, apical one-third blackish, very minutely scabrous, yellowish pubescent; cuneus pale translucent, in some cases tinged with yellowish. *Membrane* dark fuscous, a spot near the margin beyond tip of cuneus, bordering the cuneus and veins, and basal half of cells, pale.

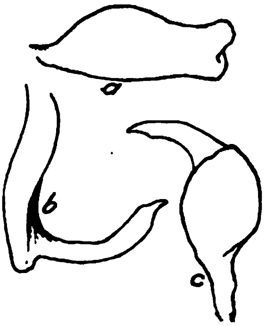


FIG. 195. LYGUS ATRINOTATUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Legs: pale yellowish green; apical half of the posterior femora blackish except extreme tips; intermediate femora with two fuscous marks on the underside near the apices; tibial spines yellowish brown, apices of tarsi fuscous, claws brownish.

Venter: pale yellowish brown beneath and along the latero-dorsal margin, a narrow blackish line on the sides and extending to include most of the genital segment; genital claspers (fig. 195) distinctive of the species.

♀. Length 5.5 mm., width 2.3 mm.; slightly larger and more robust than the male but very similar in coloration.

Holotype: ♂ July 5, Pittsburg, Pennsylvania (S. L. Mason).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: ♂ June 15, Black Mountains, North Carolina (Beutenmuller). ♂ July 21, Washington, D. C. (Nathan Banks).

Lygus vitticollis Reuter

1876 *Lygus vitticollis* Reuter
Caps. Amer. bor., p. 71.
1886 *Lygus monachus* Uhler
Can. ent. 18:208.

Large and elongate, easily distinguished by its large size and black markings; pale yellowish; two rays on the pronotum, clavus, apical half of the posterior femora, apices of the corium and embolium, black; rostrum reaching only upon the intermediate coxae.

♂. Length 5.8–6 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.03 mm., vertex .31 mm., length .45 mm., height at base .63 mm.; yellowish to yellowish brown, eyes dark reddish brown; carina nearly straight, a small triangle impressed on the vertex just in front. *Rostrum*, length 1.63 mm., reaching only to middle of intermediate coxae, yellowish brown, apex darkened.

Antennae: segment I, length .77 mm., yellowish; II, 2.48 mm., yellowish, apex fuscous; III, 1.48 mm., fuscous, base more yellowish; IV, .56 mm., blackish; all the segments with fine pale pubescence.

Pronotum: length 1.14 mm., width at base 1.94 mm., width at anterior angles .74 mm., collar .65 mm.; pale yellowish brown with two black stripes on the disk; black stripe including exterior half of callus and extending back to base, where the blackish color is diffused along the margin; calli apparent as slightly raised shining ovals; transversely rugose on the disk, the shallow punctures indistinct and confluent; fine yellowish pubescence. *Scutellum* pale yellowish with fine pale pubescence. *Sternum* yellowish, in some cases fuscous on the sides and on the pleura.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.48 mm.; pale yellowish tinged with brown; clavus black, in pale specimens the exterior half may be yellowish; corium yellowish with blackish across the tip, in dark specimens the black extending to form a wedge-shaped spot, partly on the embolium and on the exterior apical angle of the corium; cuneus pale tinged with yellowish; finely punctate, more or less scabrous, yellowish pubescence. *Membrane* fuscous, pale bordering the cuneus, on veins at apices of cells, and in a spot each side joining the margin just beyond the apex of the cuneus.

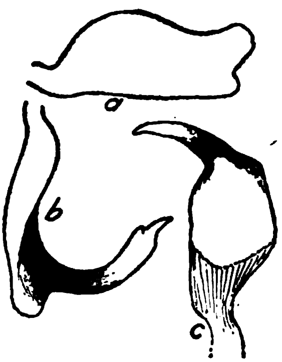


FIG. 196. LYGUS VITTICOLLIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Legs: pale yellowish brown, apical half of posterior femora brownish black to black; tibiae frequently greenish, spines pale yellowish; tips of tarsi pale fuscous, claws brownish.

Venter: pale to yellowish brown, a faint fuscous stripe on the sides, genital segment dark brownish to blackish; genital claspers (fig. 196) distinctive of the species.

♀. More robust than the male, but not differing from the male in coloration.

This species breeds on maple, particularly *Acer saccharum* and *A. rubrum*. The nymphs are found most abundantly on second-growth wood. At Four Mile, New York, where there are extensive tracts of second-growth maple, the writer was able to catch innumerable specimens. The species has also been found breeding abundantly in certain nursery plantings, the trees in which would be distributed for ornamental purposes. The species spends the winter in the egg stage on the host plant, and it is thus seen how easily it may become widely distributed in this country, and in foreign countries should the trees be sent abroad.

The nymphs hatch with the unfolding of the leaves and feed on the tender foliage, the life history being similar to that of other species such as *invitus* and *communis*. The nymphs differ from those of all other species of Lygus by their uniform pale whitish color, this making them hard to be seen when hidden on the underside of a maple leaf. The adult on emerging is also entirely pale, and gets the black markings only after a few hours drying.

In the original description Reuter gives Texas as the type locality for *vitticollis*. The writer is inclined to believe, after having studied the food plants and the distribution of the species, that the type specimen came from New York, as did certain other species furnished by Mr. Belfrage. It is quite possible that the collector got the specimens or labels mixed in the process of mounting, and this would account for the Texas record.

The writer has seen the specimen which was sent over by Mr. Heidemann, and which Reuter (1909) compared with the type, pronouncing it to be identical with *vitticollis*.

Records: 250 ♂ ♀ July 4–5, Four Mile, 118 ♂ ♀ June 20, Batavia, New York, all taken from one small clump of second-growth sugar maple; ♂ June 16, ♀ July 22, Batavia, 24 ♂ ♀ June 27, Honeoye Falls, New York (H. H. Knight). 3 ♂ 3 ♀ July 4–7, Bayshore, Long Island (C. E. Olsen). ♀, Marquette, Michigan (Wm. T. Davis).

Lygus neglectus new species

Bright green or yellowish green, robust, shorter and broader than *pabulinus*; easily distinguished from that species by the presence of a distinct carina, the genital claspers also distinct; head, calli, and ventral side of the body, yellow, a small fuscous cloud at base of membrane and inner angles of cuneus.

♂. Length 5.2 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.08 mm., vertex .4 mm., length .43 mm., height at base .68 mm.; strongly yellow, smooth shining, carina normal, eyes dark brown. *Rostrum*, length 1.79 mm., scarcely reaching posterior margins of hind coxae, green to yellowish, apex darkened.

Antennae: segment I, length .6 mm., yellowish with some greenish, bright green in female; II, 1.82 mm., greenish yellow becoming brownish at tip, slender, tapering larger toward the apex; III, .94 mm., dark brownish; IV, .45 mm., brownish to fuscous.

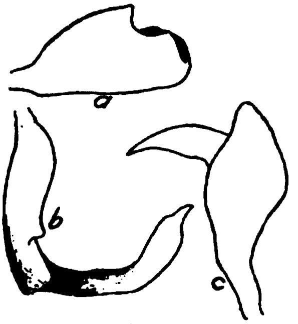


FIG. 197. LYGUS NEGLECTUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Pronotum: length .57 mm., width at base 2 mm., width at anterior angles .85 mm., collar .68 mm.; bright greenish to yellowish; finely and shallowly punctured as in *communis*; fine pale pubescence.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.3 mm.; green or yellowish green, fine pale pubescence; shallowly punctured and slightly wrinkled. *Membrane* pale, junction of inner angle of cuneus and corium, and to some extent within base of large cell, clouded with fuscous. *Scutellum* yellowish green, fine pubescent, transversely rugulose. *Sternum* greenish yellow.

Legs: greenish yellow; tibiae strongly greenish, posterior pair irregularly curved, spines prominent, yellowish brown; tarsi slightly darkened at the apices.

Venter: yellowish, sides more greenish; genital claspers (fig. 197) very distinctive of the species.

♀. What appears to be the female of this species agrees with the male in the shape and the yellow color of the head, and in the fuscous marking at the inner basal angles of the cuneus and the membrane.

Length 5.6 mm., greatest width 2.4 mm.; first antennal segment, embolium, exterior half of the cuneus, tibiae, and apical half of the femora, noticeably bright green. The male described above has doubtless faded considerably.

Holotype: ♂ July 26, Manomet, Massachusetts.

Allotype: July 25, Tisbury, Massachusetts (H. M. Parshley).

Paratypes: 14 ♂ ♀ June 9, Auburn, Alabama, taken by the writer on *Carpinus caroliniana*.

Lygus communis Knight

1913 *Lygus invitus* Parrott and Hodgkiss (not Say)
New York Agr. Exp. Sta., Bul. 368.
1915 *Lygus invitus* Knight (not Say)
Journ. econ. ent. 8:296.
1916 *Lygus communis* Knight
Can. ent. 48:346.

Easily distinguished from *invitus* by the two black rays on the disk of the pronotum, by the reddish color in the lateral stripe on the body, and by the larger size; differs structurally in not having the impressed longitudinal line on the vertex and in the form of the genital claspers.

♂. Length 5.5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.03 mm., vertex .43 mm., length .4 mm., height at base .63 mm.; yellowish brown or greenish marked with reddish; basal half of tylus, arched parts of juga, lorae, and bucculae, marked with reddish, also the front frequently marked with red in the form of transverse lines; apical half of the tylus dark brownish to fuscous; vertex full, without an impressed longitudinal line as in *invitus* but having a slight triangular flattened space just before the carina; eyes dark brownish, in some cases faded to pale on the margins. *Rostrum*, length

1.85 mm., reaching to near posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish to brownish, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .57 mm., greenish frequently darkened with brownish; II, 2 mm., dark brownish to fuscous, in some cases basal half paler; III, 1.2 mm., dark brownish; IV, 1.08 mm., same color as segment III; all the segments with very fine pale yellowish pubescence.

Pronotum: length .94 mm., width at base 1.77 mm., width at anterior angles .91 mm., collar .68 mm.; greenish, darkened with brownish on the basal half, two blackish rays on the disk, one behind each callus and in the darkest specimens extending across the calli, widening behind, and nearly reaching the basal margin; coxal cleft marked with reddish, sides posterior to this much darkened; disk shining, very finely and closely punctured, the punctures more or less transversely confluent especially on the basal half. *Scutellum* greenish darkened with brownish, transversely rugose; specimens maturing on Ilex and on Cornus frequently with a longitudinal median fuscous line. *Sternum* pale beneath, with the sides reddish as are also the pleural sclerites.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.3 mm., closely and minutely punctured, slightly scabrous, with fine yellowish pubescence; dark brownish to fuscous, darker on apical half of corium and across tip of embolium; embolium except tip, base, and narrow lateral margin of corium, pale greenish; cuneus clear tinged with yellow, the extreme tip in some cases slightly darkened; membrane darkened with fuscous; veins, narrow margin at apices of cells and bordering cuneus, a spot along margin beyond apex of cuneus and extending inward to cells, pale, thus isolating a fuscous spot along margin close to apex of cuneus.

Legs: coxae pale, usually with a spot of reddish at the base, femora greenish to yellowish, the posterior femora and often the intermediate pair twice annulated near the apices with reddish, frequently the whole apical half somewhat reddish; tibiae greenish, in some cases slightly darkened toward the tips, spines pale brownish; tarsi yellowish to brownish, darker at the apices.

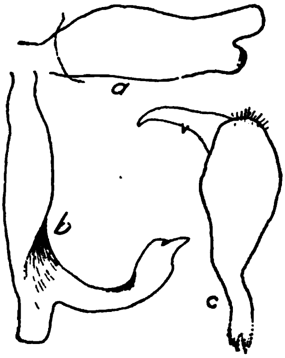


FIG. 198. LYGUS COMMUNIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Venter: pale greenish beneath, a broad lateral band and the genital segment dark reddish with brownish; genital claspers (fig. 198) distinctive of the species. The spine shown on the dextral clasper is not present in *invitus*, and is usually visible in pinned specimens without dissection.

♀. Slightly broader and more robust than the male; not differing materially in coloration, tho usually paler than the male.

This is the species commonly known as the false tarnished plant bug, and is a destructive species to the cultivated pear. An account of the life history and descriptions of the stages are given by Parrott and Hodgkiss (1913). The species is found most commonly breeding on Cornus, particularly *C. stolonifera* and *C. paniculata*. The writer has reared specimens from *Cornus alternifolia* and *Ilex verticillata*, and has taken freshly matured specimens on the prickly ash (*Zanthoxylum americanum*).

The nymphs hatch with the unfolding of the leaves and feed on the tender foliage. In the case of pear the nymphs attack the young fruit as soon as it forms, and continue to feed on this in preference to the leaves. All pears thus punctured become knotty and scarred to such an extent that the fruit is unsalable. The nymphs are pale green in color, closely matching the color of the young fruit, which makes it difficult for the observer to see them. The nymphs mature in about twenty-four days, or usually by the middle of June. The adults likewise prefer to feed on the pears, and contribute further to the destruction of the fruit. In one case the writer observed that the adult bugs were active agents in distributing pear blight (*Bacillus amylovorus*) over the trees, the blight developing about feeding punctures made by the bugs. One row of trees bordering a fence, on which the bugs were most numerous, had every limb blighted, which contrasted greatly with the trees on which no bugs were present.

Oviposition occurs during the last week in June and up to the middle of July, some individuals probably laying after that date. The eggs are inserted under the bark of the new growth (Knight, 1915); in one case observed six eggs were deposited in a mass. Most of the males die by the middle of July, but many females live until the end of the month. Two females kept in a cage on a pear tree lived until August 6 but were found dead on August 8. There is only one brood, the winter being passed in the egg stage and the nymphs appearing again in the spring with the unfolding of the leaves.

The species was described from specimens collected from pear by the writer on July 4, 1914, near Batavia, New York.

Paratype records: 67 ♂ ♀ taken on pear, June 16 to August 8, Batavia, New York; from *Cornus stolonifera*, 35 ♂ ♀ June 14 to August 6, Batavia; from *Cornus paniculata*, 5 ♂ ♀ June 21, 10 ♂ ♀ August 1, 6 ♀ August 10, Batavia; from *Cornus alternifolia*, 16 ♂ ♀ June 25–29, Batavia, 3 ♂ ♀ June 25, Wyoming, 8 ♂ ♀ June 21, Portage, ♂ 2 ♀ July 27, McLean, New York; from *Ilex verticillata*, 15 ♂ ♀ June 21, Batavia. Miscellaneous specimens: 16 ♂ ♀ June 25–29, from near Batavia, 7 ♂ ♀ June 27, Portage, 5 ♂ ♀ July 5, Four Mile, 2 ♂ June 13, 3 ♀ July 24, Ithaca, 4 ♂ 2 ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, New York; all the above collected by the writer. Specimens from other collectors: ♀ June 25, Spring Brook, ♂ July 2, Hamburg, ♂ ♀ July 20, Salamanca, New York; ♂ June 30, Bretton Woods, New Hampshire; all collected by E. P. Van Duzee. 2 ♂ June 22, Bennington, Vermont; ♂ ♀ July 15, Eastport, ♀ July 12, Capens, Maine; 2 ♂ July 15–24, Glen House, New Hampshire; all collected by C. W. Johnson. A male specimen from Fort Collins, Colorado, August 1, which has an unusual amount of reddish on the underside of the body. Later records: ♀ June 17, Middletown, Connecticut (C. W. Johnson). ♂ July 13, Swampscott, Massachusetts (H. M. Parshley). ♀ May 31, Four Mile Run, Virginia (W. L. McAtee).

Lygus communis var. **novascotiensis** Knight

1915 *Lygus invitus* Brittain (not Say)
Ent. Soc. Ont., Ann. rept. 46:65 (life history).
1916 *Lygus communis* var. *novascotiensis* Knight
Can. ent. 48:349.

Paler and more slender than the typical *communis*, but not differing materially in the male claspers.

Length 5.3 mm., greatest width 2 mm.; more slender and much paler than the typical *communis*; the two black rays on the pronotum small but distinct; hemelytra more yellowish brown than fuscous; lateral stripe of the body reddish or darkened with fuscous.

This is one of the varieties or races of *communis* which may be worked out from the forms inhabiting different plants, and is perhaps influenced somewhat by different external conditions. It breeds abundantly on apple in Nova Scotia, causing injury to the fruit similar to that of *Lygidea mendax* in New York State. The writer has spent four summers inspecting orchards in western New York, and has been unable to take any form of *communis* on the apple.

Described from several specimens received from William H. Brittain, of Truro, Nova Scotia, collected from apple at Kentville, Wolfville, and Smith's Cove, Nova Scotia, July 6 to 28, 1915. Brittain (1917) has just published another and more complete account of the life history and control of the species, which is becoming a serious pest to the apple in Nova Scotia.

Lygus univittatus new species

Resembling *laureae* in coloration, but smaller than that species; similar in size to large forms of *quercalbae*, but darker-colored and with reddish; distinguished by having a median longitudinal fuscous vitta on the scutellum; first segment of antenna black, and two blackish rays on the disk of the pronotum behind the calli; dark brownish black with reddish.

♀. Length 5.4 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.08 mm., vertex .51 mm., length .45 mm., height at base .65 mm.; yellowish brown marked with red, shining; tip of tylus and a small spot each side of vertex near front margin of eye fuscous; eyes reddish brown; vertex broad, sloping more abruptly from carina than in *laureae*. *Rostrum*, length 2.42 mm., reaching well beyond posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .6 mm., black, pale at joints; II, 1.94 mm., blackish at base, yellowish brown on apical half, tip darker; III, 1.11 mm., blackish; IV, .68 mm., blackish.

Pronotum: length 1.08 mm., width at base 2.02 mm., width at anterior angles 1 mm., collar .71 mm.; very similar in structure to *laureae*; dark yellowish brown tinged with reddish; a blackish ray behind each callus, in some cases including exterior half of callus, not so distinct as in *laureae*; dark fuscous brown around coxal cleft and extending behind it. *Scutellum* greenish yellow, with a longitudinal median fuscous vitta. *Sternum* brownish black or fusco-piceous; pleura nearly as dark as the sternum; orifice fuscous.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.4 mm.; dark yellowish brown with fuscous and tinged with reddish, darkest on clavus and apices of corium and embolium, basal half of corium exterior to the cubitus paler; embolium reddish brown for its full length, darker on the apical one-third; cuneus pale flecked with reddish, apex distinctly red. *Membrane* fuscous, veins reddish; paler bordering apices of cells and tip of cuneus; an indistinct pale area near the margin just beyond apex of cuneus.

Legs: coxae yellowish brown darkened with fuscous; femora yellowish brown darkened with fuscous, posterior pair very dark fuscous brown, indistinctly annulated with paler near the apices; tibiae and spines yellowish; apical segments of the tarsi blackish, claws brownish.

Venter: fusco-piceous, yellowish or reddish on the vagina exterior, spiracles appearing as pale spots.

The two specimens of this very distinct and apparently rare species were taken to be forms of *quercalbae* at the time of collecting, and therefore no effort was made to locate the host plant or to get more material. It is regretted that the males are not available at this time for figuring the genital claspers.

Holotype: ♀ June 22, 1916, Portage, New York (H. H. Knight).

Paratype: ♀, taken with the type.

Lygus quercalbae new species

Resembles *omnivagus* but is more reddish brown in color; differs in being more robust, and in having a pale stripe thru the fuscous on the sides of the venter; similar to *semivittatus* in coloration of the venter, but differs in not having distinct fuscous spots behind the calli and in general by the more reddish color.

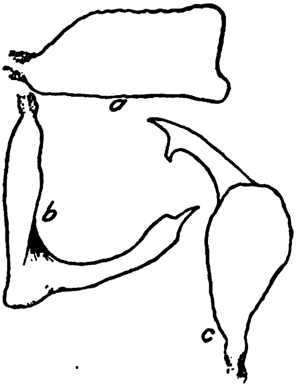


FIG. 199. LYGUS QUERCALBAE, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

♂. Length 5.7 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.11 mm., vertex .4 mm., length .44 mm., height at base .65 mm.; structurally very similar to that of *omnivagus*; yellowish brown, usually marked with reddish, tip of tylus fuscous. *Rostrum*, 1.85 mm., scarcely attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown marked with reddish, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .68 mm.; II, 2.17 mm., yellowish, apical half fuscous to blackish; III, 1 mm., yellowish tinged with fuscous; IV, .51 mm., only a shade darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length 1.17 mm., width at base 2.08 mm., width at anterior angles 1 mm., collar .68 mm.; structurally like that of *omnivagus*; yellowish brown, in some cases darkened on the calli but never with distinct spots just behind as in *semivittatus*; coxal cleft and just behind it fuscous, in some cases with reddish just above; in rare cases the whole disk and dorsum of the insect is evenly darkened, thus resembling *caryae*. *Scutellum* yellowish brown, slightly darker at the sides. *Sternum* fuscous, tinged with reddish or yellowish at the sides; pleura fuscous margined with reddish; orifice fuscous.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.4 mm., structurally and in color much like those of *omnivagus*; yellowish brown tinged with reddish; clavus and apical half of corium dark brownish tinged with reddish, more reddish at apex of embolium; cuneus pale tinged with yellowish, in some cases a touch of red at the apex. *Membrane* fuscous, pale marks somewhat similar to those of *semivittatus*.

Legs: coxae pale, a touch of reddish at the base; femora greenish yellow or tinged with brownish, posterior pair with all but the base dark reddish with fuscous, twice annulated near the apices with fuscous-red; tibiae greenish yellow, spines yellowish; tips of tarsi fuscous, claws yellowish.

Venter: marked very much as in *semivittatus* but with more reddish; pale beneath, with a pale stripe on the sides bounded by fuscous and reddish stripes; genital claspers (fig. 199) very distinctive of the species; claspers showing a close relation to those of *semivittatus*, but the forked tip on the inner hook of the dextral clasper separates the two species at once.

♀. Length 5.6 mm., width 2.6 mm.; more robust than the male, but very similar in coloration; larger and more reddish than *omnivagus* and *semivittatus*; distinguished by pale stripe on the sides of the venter and by lacking fuscous spots behind the calli, at the same time being more reddish than *semivittatus*.

The species breeds rather abundantly on white oak (*Quercus alba*), and only on this tree so far as the writer has been able to determine; hence the name.

The nymphs hatch with the bursting of the buds and feed thereafter on the tender foliage. On May 20, 1916, many nymphs were observed to be in the third instar. This was shortly after there had been an exceedingly heavy downpour of rain and the writer was interested to learn how the insects behaved in time of flood. It was seen that the tiny nymphs found ample cover by retreating under the loosened bud scales that clung to the unfolding new growth. It was observed also that the nymphs spent the nights, as well as damp, cold days, under cover of the bud scales.

Up to the fourth instar the nymphs are greenish yellow but later they become tinged with pink. In the last instar the wing pads become brownish and the body is tinged with pink. In western New York the adults mature about the middle of June and continue on the white oak trees up to the middle of July. The eggs are laid mostly in late June and early July in the twigs of the host plant; there they pass the winter, and the nymphs come forth with the bursting of the buds in spring.

Holotype: ♂ June 14, 1914, Ithaca, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: ♂ 2 ♀ June 7, ♂ June 13, 2 ♂ 3 ♀ June 14, ♀ July 23, Ithaca, 63 ♂ ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, ♂ 9 ♀ June 21, 4 ♀ June 27, Portage, ♀ July 4, Four Mile, ♀ July 13, Batavia, New York; all collected by the writer. ♂ July 13, Springfield, ♂ June 11, 2 ♂ June 17, Boston, Massachusetts (H. M. Parshley). ♂ June 12, ♀ June 28, Beaver Dam, Wisconsin (W. E. Snyder). ♀ July 1, Bluemont, Virginia (W. L. McAtee). ♂ ♀ June 23, 1885, Ithaca, New York (H. E. Grotecloss and E. H. Sargent).

Lygus semivittatus new species

Resembles *omnivagus* in coloration of the hemelytra; two small fuscous marks on the disk behind the calli, very suggestive of *caryae* var. *subfuscus* but differing in having a pale stripe thru the fuscous on the sides of the venter; similar to *quercalbae* in having the venter fuscous brown with a pale stripe dividing the dark color, but distinguished at once by the fuscous marks on the pronotum; males easily distinguished by the genital claspers.

♂. Length 5.3 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.06 mm., vertex .38 mm., length .42 mm., height .63 mm.; yellowish brown slightly tinged with reddish, apical half of tylus blackish, eyes blackish; similar to head of *quercalbae* in structure.

Antennae: segment I, length .63 mm., yellowish; II, 2.02 mm., yellowish brown, apical one-third brownish to dark fuscous; III, 1.14 mm., yellowish faintly tinged with fuscous; IV, .57 mm., slightly darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length 1.65 mm., width at base 1.88 mm., width at anterior angles .85 mm., collar .68 mm.; similar in structure to those of *quercalbae* and *omnivagus*; yellowish brown, a small fuscous spot behind each callus scarcely forming a ray; fuscous on sides to height of coxal cleft, with a small narrow fuscous or reddish line just above. *Scutellum* yellowish brown, darker brown or fuscous at the sides. *Sternum* fuscous, in some cases slightly yellowish beneath; pleura and orifice fuscous.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.28 mm.; dark brownish to fuscous, very similar to those of *omnivagus*; usually yellowish on the basal half of the embolium and narrow adjacent margin of the corium; cuneus pale or tinged with yellowish. *Membrane* fuscous, bordering the cuneus and veins paler; a small pale spot near the margin beyond the apex of the cuneus, also paler fuscous in the middle of the membrane.

Legs: coxae pale yellowish, a touch of reddish brown at base; femora pale greenish yellow, the posterior pair brownish to dark brown, indistinctly annulated with darker near apices, yellowish at base; tibiae greenish yellow, spines yellowish brown; apices of tarsi brownish, claws yellowish.

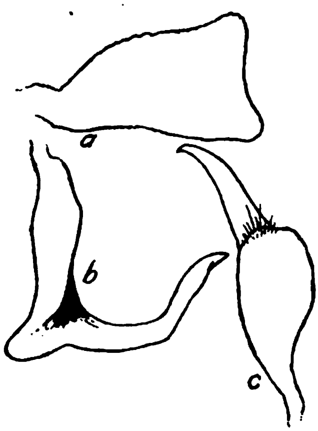


FIG. 200. LYGUS SEMIVITTATUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Venter: dark brownish to fuscous, pale beneath except on genital segment, a pale longitudinal stripe thru the fuscous on the sides; genital segment with a yellowish spot on the sides at base of claspers; genital claspers (fig. 200) very distinctive of the species; sinistral clasper with the lateral aspect broad, upper apical angle bent outward; the long slender inner hook of the dextral clasper sharp and curved at the tip.

♀. Length 5.4 mm., width 2.2 mm.; very similar to the male in coloration but with less fuscous on the hemelytra; most easily confused with *caryae* var. *subfuscus*, but distinguished by the longitudinal pale stripe running thru the fuscous color on the sides of the venter.

The type specimens were collected by the writer on white oak, but the species has not been found abundant anywhere even on the oaks.

Holotype: ♂ June 13, Ithaca, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: 2 ♀ June 13, Ithaca, ♂ June 23, Conesus Lake, ♂ June 22, ♂ June 27, Portage, New York; all collected by the writer. ♂ June 13, Pinelawn, Long Island (C. E. Olsen). ♂ May 31, Four Mile Run, Virginia (W. L. McAtee).

Lygus omnivagus new species

Very much resembles forms of ***semivittatus*** and ***quercalbae***, also might be confused with the females of ***canadensis*** and pale forms of ***caryae*** var. ***subfuscus***; male is easily distinguished by the long, broad, upward-curved, sinistral clasper.

♂. Length 5.4 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.03 mm., vertex .41 mm., length .4 mm., height at base .6 mm.; yellowish brown, tip of tylus and lorae darkened with fuscous, eyes dark brownish; carina slightly arcuate, indistinct impression just before on the vertex. *Rostrum*, length 2.17 mm., reaching slightly beyond posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish, apex darkened.

Antennae: segment I, length .63 mm., yellowish; II, 2.08 mm., yellowish, apical one-fourth blackish; III, 1.25 mm., yellowish, only slightly fuscous toward the tip; IV, .74 mm., pale fuscous.

Pronotum: length 1.03 mm., width at base 1.88 mm., width at anterior angles .88 mm., collar .65 mm.; yellowish brown, in some cases darker on the disk but never with blackish rays; fuscous on the sides behind the coxal cleft; calli apparent as slightly raised, shining ovals; finely and shallowly punctate, fine yellowish pubescence. *Scutellum* pale yellowish, in some cases darkened with brownish at the sides; finely transversely rugose, fine yellowish pubescence. *Sternum* pale yellowish beneath, sides fuscous; pleura and orifice fuscous.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.22 mm.; clavus brownish to dark brownish or blackish in some forms; corium dark brownish with fuscous, basal angle yellowish, usually paler bordering the embolium except on the apical one-third; embolium yellowish, dark brownish near apex where dark color of corium crosses; cuneus pale, slightly tinged with yellowish; shallowly punctate, more or less scabrous, prominent yellowish pubescence. *Membrane* mostly pale marked with fuscous; apical half of cells, an area in middle of membrane and extending toward apex, a spot each side near tip of cuneus, and a smaller one beyond near the margin, fuscous.

Legs: pale yellowish tinged with greenish; posterior femora dark brownish on the apical half, two dark rings contrasted with pale near the apices; tibial spines yellowish; tips of tarsi dark brownish, claws yellowish brown.

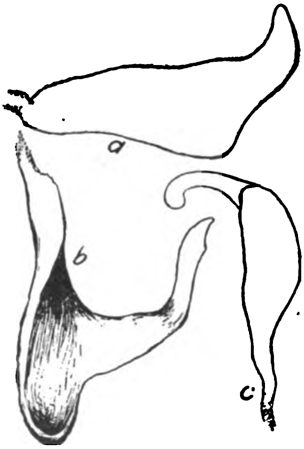


FIG. 201. LYGUS OMNIVAGUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Venter: pale or yellowish beneath, sides and genital segment dark brownish with fuscous; pale pubescence noticeable; genital claspers (fig. 201) very distinctive of the species; the broad upcurved sinistral clasper extending beyond the tip of the body, easily seen without the aid of a lens.

♀. Length 5.4 mm., width 2.5 mm.; usually paler than the male, more yellowish brown; never with reddish as in *quercalbae*, nor with fuscous marks on the pronotum as in *semivittatus* or in *caryae* var. *subfuscus*; the female of *canadensis* has the apical one-third of the second antennal segment more distinctly black and the fuscous spot on the apex of the corium smaller and not invading the pale embolium.

This species is commonly found breeding on several plants, hence its name. It is found most abundant on the oaks, particularly on *Quercus alba*, *Q. rubra*, *Q. coccinea*, *Q. prinus*, and *Q. velutina*. The writer has also reared specimens from chestnut (*Castanea dentata*), *Cornus florida*, *Cornus circinata*, and *Viburnum acerifolium*, tho the species is not found so frequently on these plants as on the oaks. The nymphs hatch with the unfolding of the buds and feed on the tender foliage. They are greenish yellow in color, the wing pads becoming darker as they develop. In western New York the adults usually begin to emerge about June 10, and by June 22 the majority have matured. The eggs are laid in the tender twigs during July, and by the first week in August most of the adults have died.

Holotype: ♂ July 23, Ithaca, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: ♂ ♀ June 7, 6 ♂ 4 ♀ June 14, 4 ♂ June 16, 3 ♂ 3 ♀ July 23, 5 ♂ July 24, 9 ♂ 5 ♀ July 26, Ithaca, 18 ♂ ♀ June 21, 63 ♂ ♀ June 27, ♂ ♀ August 9, Portage, 68 ♂ ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, ♂ 3 ♀ June 15, 3 ♂ June 16, ♂ 2 ♀ June 19 (reared from *Cornus florida*), 13 ♂ ♀ June 19–20 (reared from *Cornus circinata*), ♂ 3 ♀ June 20, 4 ♂ ♀ June 21, ♂ 2 ♀ June 25, ♂ July 1, ♀ July 5, ♀ July 10, ♂ 2 ♀ July 14, 2 ♀ July 30, ♂ 5 ♀ August 5, ♂ ♀ August 13, Batavia, 82 ♂ ♀ July 4–5, Four Mile, New York; all collected by the writer. ♂ 8 ♀ July 4–7, Bayshore, Long Island, 5 ♂ 9 ♀ July 29, Pigeon Cove, Massachusetts (C. E. Olsen). ♂ July 27, Lake George, New York (A. K. Fisher). ♂ July 20, Gloucester, Massachusetts (W. L. McAtee). ♂ July 10, Woods Hole, Massachusetts. ♂ ♀ June 8, New Haven, Connecticut (W. E. Britton). One specimen June 11, one June 24, New Haven, Connecticut (B. H. Walden). ♂ July 5, Branford, Connecticut (Butrick). 3 ♂ ♀ June 15, Danbury, Connecticut (C. W. Johnson). June 5, Double Beach, Connecticut (H. L. Viereck). July 25, Buttonwoods, Rhode Island. ♂ ♀ July 3, Hanover, New Hampshire; ♂ July 11, Ascutney Mountain, ♂ June 22, Burlington, Vermont; all collected by C. W. Johnson. 2 ♂ 2 ♀ July 24, 2 ♂ ♀ August 7, Parry Sound, Ontario, Canada (H. S. Parish). ♂ July

10, Hot Springs, ♂ ♀ August 2, Bath County, Virginia, altitude 3500 feet (Morgan Hebard). ♂ July 14, Black Mountains, North Carolina (Beutenmuller). ♂, Lake Toxaway, North Carolina (Mrs. A. T. Slosson).

Lygus johnsoni new species

Resembles *communis* in having two prominent black spots on the pronotum, but is distinguished at once by the clear outer margin and the dark fuscous inner half of the corium; the long, thick, upturned prong of the left male clasper is distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 5.7 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.08 mm., vertex .44 mm., length .48 mm., height at base .65 mm.; greenish yellow, shining; tylus blackish shading paler at the base, juga and lorae shaded with fuscous, eyes dark brownish. *Rostrum*, length 2.28 mm., reaching the posterior margins of the hind coxae, yellowish, the extreme tip blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .68 mm., dark fuscous to blackish; II, 2.08 mm., black, a very narrow pale ring at base; III, 1.28 mm., pale, lightly infuscated; IV, .85 mm., only slightly darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length .97 mm., width at base 1.85 mm., width at anterior angles .85 mm., collar .68 mm.; greenish yellow tinged with brownish; a black spot behind each callus, rarely if ever extending back more than halfway to the basal margin; sides up to height of coxal cleft, extending forward, and around the lower half of the collar, blackish. *Scutellum* greenish yellow, in some cases narrowly infuscated along the claval margin, very finely transversely rugulose. *Sternum* yellowish or greenish beneath; pleura fuscous to blackish, forming part of a black stripe that extends the full length of the body.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.3 mm., closely and minutely punctured, clothed with rather prominent yellowish pubescence; yellowish brown, clavus frequently with fuscous bordering the scutellum, fuscous or blackish in the suture separating the clavus and the corium; corium yellowish brown bordering the claval margin, pale to clear on the outer margin exterior to the cubital vein, the middle part with an elongate wedge of dark fuscous or black; embolium pale to yellowish or greenish in fresh specimens; cuneus clear, often greenish along the outer margin but never fuscous. *Membrane* dark fuscous within the cells, flecked with pale at base, veins pale brownish; a dark fuscous spot just beyond apex of cuneus, a second paler one along the margin halfway to the apex, pale areas surrounding these spots and along apices of cells.

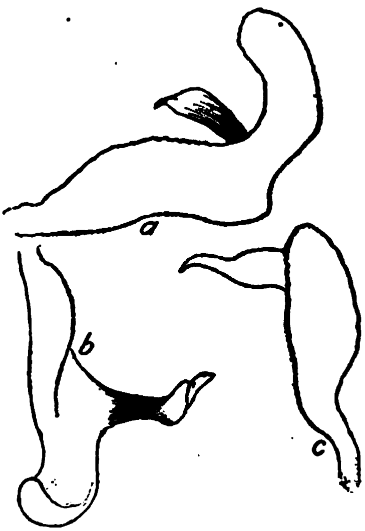


FIG. 202. LYGUS JOHNSONI, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Legs: pale yellowish or with greenish, the posterior femora with two fuscous rings near the apices joining beneath with a longitudinal fuscous bar.

Venter: pale beneath with a broad lateral blackish stripe; genital segment fuscous to blackish with yellowish beneath, shining, the claspers (fig. 202) yellowish brown or amber-colored.

♀. Similar to the male in color and only slightly more robust.

This unusual new species is dedicated to C. W. Johnson, who collected the type specimens and who to the writer's knowledge was the first to preserve representatives of this interesting species. During the season of 1916 the writer found the species in New York State and was able to make observations on the life history.

Holotype: ♂ June 17, 1909, Middletown, Connecticut (C. W. Johnson).

Allotype: topotypic; returned to Mr. Parshley.

Paratypes: 2 ♀, topotypic; ♀ June 23, St. Johnsbury, Vermont (C. W. Johnson). 9 ♂ 13 ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, ♂ 2 ♀ July 18, 9 ♀ July 29, 2 ♀ July 30, 2 ♀ August 1, Batavia, 7 ♂ 44 ♀ July 27, McLean, New York; all collected by the writer.

The specimens collected at Conesus Lake were taken on hornbeam (*Carpinus caroliniana*) in a small ravine along the west shore of the lake near Long Point. On that date, June 23, several of the specimens were teneral and two or three were observed to feed on the fruit spikes. The Batavia specimens were likewise taken on Carpinus which grew in a thick, cool, swampy woods. At McLean, on July 27, the females were in the height of egg-laying. Practically all of the fifty-one specimens taken there were picked off the trunks and large limbs of *Carpinus caroliniana*, where they were attracted to lay eggs. Three females were observed to oviposit, and in each case the eggs were being inserted into the soft, punky stubs formed by the breaking-off of old dead limbs. In examining such stubs the writer found freshly laid eggs and the old empty eggshells in abundance. When the nymphs hatch in the spring they evidently work their way up from such points to the tender foliage. The indications are that this is a northern species, for the writer has found it only in a few cool, damp situations. and only under such conditions does it appear to persist in New York.

Lygus belfragii Reuter

1876 *Lygus belfragii* Reuter
Caps. Amer. bor., p. 71.

Elongate, green or greenish yellow, clavus brownish and tinged with fuscous and bronze, apex of the corium with a triangular fuscous or blackish patch, membrane fuscous longitudinally thru the middle; in general appearance resembling ***confusus***, ***alni***, and females of ***tiliae***.

♂. Length 5.6–6 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.08 mm., vertex .35 mm., length .4 mm., height at base .63 mm.; greenish yellow or yellowish brown, carina prominent, vertex slightly sulcate along the median line, eyes dark brown to black. ***Rostrum***, length 1.9 mm., scarcely attaining the posterior margins of the hind coxae, yellowish brown, darker at the apex.

Antennae: segment I, length .66 mm., greenish yellow; II, 2.19 mm., yellowish to yellowish brown, usually infuscated toward apex; III, 1.14 mm., pale fuscous; IV, .74 mm., only slightly darker than segment III; segments clothed with very fine pale pubescence.

Pronotum: length 1.05 mm., width at base 1.88 mm., width at anterior angles .88 mm., collar .63 mm.; greenish yellow, frequently bright green on the lateral margins with the disk more brownish and tinged with bronze; calli rather indistinct but outlined by a slightly impressed line, very finely and closely punctured, with very fine pubescence. *Scutellum* green or faded to greenish yellow or darker, finely pubescent, very finely transversely rugose; mesoscutum usually brownish and but narrowly exposed. *Sternum* yellowish, pleura frequently bright green.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.28 mm.; clavus yellowish brown tinged with bronze, darker along the cuneus and suture; corium greenish to yellowish, translucent bordering the embolium, strongly fuscous at apex and forming a triangular spot the base of which never extends across the embolium; embolium and cuneus bright green but in some cases fading to yellowish; finely punctured and with very fine yellowish pubescence. *Membrane* with a fuscous spot in the center, which widens toward the apex to include the whole tip; cells clouded within the apices and longitudinally between the two larger ones, joining at base with the darkened apex of the corium; veins at apices of the cells pale, as is the membrane each side of the darkened middle part, a small dusky spot within the pale area near the tip of the cuneus.

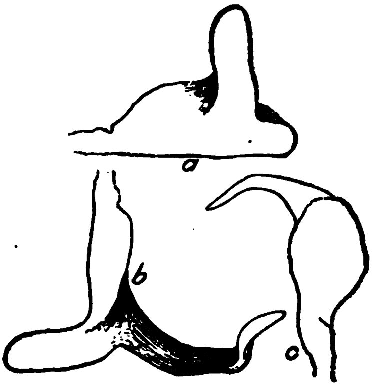


FIG. 203. LYGUS BELFRAGII, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Legs: greenish yellow, apices of the posterior femora in some cases indistinctly marked with two fuscous annuli; tibial spines pale brownish, the extreme apices of the tibiae darker; apical tarsal segment dark brown to fuscous.

Venter: green or greenish yellow; genital claspers very distinct, the left clasper having a blunt prong that extends at right angles to the body (fig. 203).

♀. Length 5.5 to 5.8 mm.; similar to the male in coloration, but slightly more robust.

The type material of this species was collected in New York by Mr. Belfrage, after whom the species was named by Reuter.

In western New York the species breeds abundantly on mountain maple (*Acer spicatum*), and to some extent on *Viburnum acerifolium* and *Cornus alternifolia*. The species is frequently attracted to the flowers of poison hemlock (*Conium maculatum*) for feeding, and in this way 58 specimens were taken on July 31, 1915.

Records: 57 ♂ ♀ June 27, Portage, New York, with nymphs, from *Acer spicatum*; 22 ♂ ♀ July 4, Four Mile, New York, from both *A. spicatum* and *Viburnum acerifolium*; 2 ♂ 2 ♀ June 26, Wyoming, New York, bred from *Cornus alternifolia*; ♂ June 23, Conesus Lake, 17 ♂ ♀ July 26, Ithaca, ♂ ♀ July 27, McLean, ♂ July 6, 2 ♀ July 30, 58 ♂ ♀ July 31, 3 ♀ August 30, Batavia, New York; all collected by the writer. ♀ August 2–9, Gowanda, New York (E. P. Van Duzee). ♀, Red Rock, Luzerne County, Pennsylvania (Wm. T. Davis). 2 ♂ June 17, Boston, Massachusetts (H. M. Parshley). ♂ ♀ July 8, Norwich, Vermont, ♀ July 14, Capens, ♀ July 19, Machias, Maine (C. W. Johnson). ♂ ♀ July 10 to August 7, Parry Sound, Ontario, Canada (H. S. Parish).

Lygus clavigenitalis new species

Yellowish brown, with darker brown on the clavus and the apex of the corium; resembling most the female of *tiliae* and both sexes of *inconspicuus*; differs from those species in lacking the green, in having the pronotum evenly shaded with yellowish brown, and in being more brownish than fuscous on the hemelytra; male claspers very distinctive of the species.

♂. Length 4.8 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1 mm., vertex .4 mm., length .4 mm., height .51 mm.; yellowish brown, eyes dark brownish to blackish; carina prominent, slightly arcuate, impressed on the vertex but not so distinct as in *inconspicuus*. *Rostrum*, length 1.57 mm., scarcely attaining posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, apex darker.

Antennae: segment I, length .57 mm., yellowish; II, 1.77 mm., yellowish to yellowish brown, apex in some cases darker; III, 1.08 mm., pale fuscous; IV, .71 mm., scarcely darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length 1 mm., width at base 1.71 mm., width at anterior angles .83 mm., collar .6 mm.; yellowish brown, paler on the sides; shallowly and finely punctate, fine pale yellowish pubescence. *Scutellum* yellowish, more brownish at the margins, very finely transversely rugose. *Sternum* pale yellowish; orifice pale.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.17 mm.; clavus uniformly brownish; corium yellowish, apex dark brownish and not extending onto the embolium; embolium and cuneus pale yellowish translucent, in life tinged with green; minutely and shallowly punctate, appearing slightly scabrous, fine yellowish pubescence. *Membrane* fuscous brown, paler bordering the cuneus, the veins, and an indistinct spot near the margin beyond the apex of the cuneus.

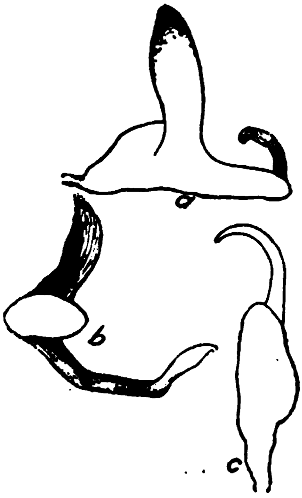


FIG. 204. LYGUS CLAVIGENITALIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Legs: pale yellowish or greenish, posterior femora in some cases more brownish; tibiae greenish, spines brownish; apices of the tarsi fuscous, claws brownish.

Venter: yellowish, more greenish in life; genital claspers (fig. 204) very distinctive of the species; claspers resembling most those of *belfragii*, the tip of the club sharper and turning inward, instead of outward as is the case in *belfragii*.

♀. Length 5.1 mm., width 2.3 mm.; slightly larger and more robust than the male but very similar in coloration; most likely to be confused with the females of *tiliae* and *inconspicuus*, also resembling the pale forms of *viburni* and *geneseensis*; points of difference are: *inconspicuus* is more greenish and the fuscous marks on the clavus and the apex of the corium are more contrasting; *tiliae* is more green, particularly the pronotum, and the scutellum is darkened with fuscous; *viburni* has nearly the whole corium brownish, the apex of the embolium darkened, and the apical half of the antennae fuscous; *geneseensis* is very similar to *viburni* except that the antennae are not fuscous, but the embolium is darkened to even a greater extent.

Holotype: ♂, Waltham, Massachusetts.

Allotype: topotypic.

Paratypes: 4 ♂ July 9, Portland, Maine (E. P. Van Duzee). ♂ July 4, Beltsville, Maryland (W. L. McAtee).

Mr. McAtee took his specimen on *Alnus rugosa*, which may possibly be the food plant of this species.

Lygus hirticulus Van Duzee

1912 *Lygus tenellus* Van Duzee
Buffalo Soc. Nat. Sci., Bul. **10**:484.
1916 *Lygus hirticulus* Van Duzee
Check list Hemip. N. Amer., p. 40. (Name preoccupied.)

Rather small, the male dark ferrugino-testaceous, more evenly testaceous in the female, the legs, antennae, and pronotum usually lighter-colored; resembles *fagi*, but the males are easily distinguished by the genital claspers; occasionally the males may be entirely dark fuscous or blackish excepting the legs and antennae.

♂. Length 4.8 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .94 mm., vertex .4 mm., length .4 mm., height at base .57 mm.; dark brownish; lorae, bucculae, juga, and frequently the vertex, darkened with fuscous; smooth shining, an impressed triangle on the vertex just before the carina. *Rostrum*, length 1.78 mm., attaining the posterior margins of the hind coxae, yellowish brown, apex blackish.

Antennae: segment I, length .65 mm., yellowish brown; II, 2.22 mm., greenish yellow to brownish; III, 1.28 mm., yellowish; IV, .85 mm., yellowish and slightly tinged with fuscous; all the segments with fine pale pubescence.

Pronotum: length .94 mm., width at base 1.68 mm., width at anterior angles .83 mm., collar .6 mm.; uniformly colored with dark brownish, the sides to height of coxal cleft fuscous; disk in some cases darkened with fuscous, and in unusually dark forms almost blackish as is the head; pubescence yellowish brown, calli and punctuation similar to those in *tiliae* and *belfragii*. *Scutellum* dark brownish to blackish; yellowish pubescent, very finely transversely rugose; mesoscutum usually brownish. *Sternum* yellowish brown beneath, sides darkened with fuscous.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.28 mm.; ferrugino-testaceous, costal margin usually paler; cuneus brownish to pale fuscous, darkest on the basal half; densely clothed with fine yellowish brown pubescence. *Membrane* pale fuscous, evenly shaded with pale yellowish brown in the female.

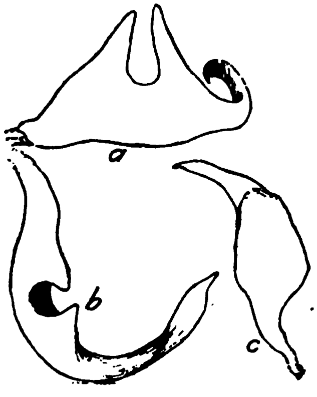


FIG. 205. LYGUS HIRTICULUS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Legs: greenish yellow to yellowish brown; tibial spines of the same color; apices of tarsi slightly darkened.

Venter: ferruginous on the sides, more brownish beneath; genital claspers (fig. 205) very distinctive of the species.

♀. Length 5.3 mm., width 2.3 mm.; slightly larger and more robust than the male; uniformly colored with yellowish brown or in some cases dark brown, hemelytra rarely much darker than the pronotum; female could easily be confused with *fagi*, but may be distinguished by the membrane, which is uniformly and faintly tinged with fuliginous and is never dark as in *fagi*.

The species appears to breed sparingly on several plants and is never numerous on any particular plant. The writer has reared specimens from chestnut, beech, and woodbine. The life history is similar to that of other closely related species: the insect passes the winter in the egg stage on the host plant, hatching with the unfolding of the leaves; nymphs feed on the tender foliage and mature about the middle of June; the eggs are laid during July, and most of the adults are dead by the first week in August.

Records: Numerous specimens June 16 to August 1, Batavia, 2 ♂ ♀ June 21, ♂ ♀ August 9, Portage, 9 ♂ 5 ♀ June 16–25, Wyoming, numerous specimens July 4–5, Four Mile, ♂ ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, 3 ♂ 6 ♀ July 24, Ithaca, New York; all collected by the writer.

Lygus canadensis new species

Resembles *omnivagus* in general appearance; yellowish brown, clavus and apex of the corium dark brownish, margins of the scutellum sometimes brownish.

♂. Length 5.5 mm. *Head*: width across eyes .97 mm., vertex .38 mm., length .43 mm., height at base .6 mm.; yellowish brown, eyes dark brown; carina arcuate, an impressed line at each side extending to form a small impressed triangle before the carina. *Rostrum*, length 2 mm., scarcely reaching the posterior margins of the hind coxae, green to yellowish, apex fuscous.

Antennae: segment I, length .68 mm., yellowish; II, 2.05 mm., pale yellowish, apical one-third fuscous to blackish; III, 1.22 mm., yellowish, lightly infuscated; IV, .8 mm., slightly darker than segment III.

Pronotum: length .97 mm., width at base 1.63 mm., width at anterior angles 1 mm., collar .63 mm.; yellowish brown, in some cases darker on the base of the disk. *Scutellum* yellowish, margins brownish, indistinctly rugulose, nearly smooth. *Sternum* and pleura yellowish.

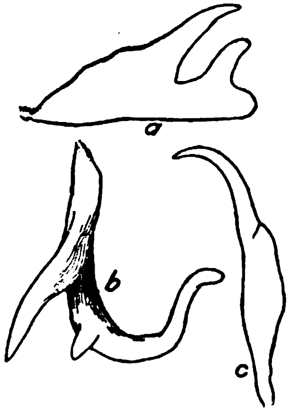


FIG. 206. LYGUS CANADENSIS, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Left clasper, lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.08 mm.; clavus dark brownish, embolium pale yellowish, corium pale yellowish with the apical one-third dark brcwnish; cuneus pale; finely and closely punctured, very fine yellowish pubescence. *Membrane* infuscated, paler within the base of the cells and surrounding a small fuscous spot close to the tip of the cuneus.

Legs: greenish yellow to yellowish brown; apices of the posterior femora twice annulated with pale fuscous; apices of the tarsi fuscous.

Venter: yellowish to yellowish brown; genital claspers (fig. 206) very distinctive of the species.

♀. Slightly more robust than the male, and usually with less dark brown.

Holotype: ♂ July 10, Parry Sound, Ontario, Canada (H. S. Parish).

Allotype: topotypic.

Paratypes: ♂ ♀, topotypic. ♂ July, Polk County, Wisconsin (Baker), received from Dr. William A. Hilton.

This is apparently a species of northern distribution, but will doubtless be taken in New York State.

Lygus canadensis var. **binotatus** new variety

Male genital claspers similar to those of *canadensis*, but this form differs in having a very distinct ray behind each callus and extending to near the basal margin of the disk; scutellum appears more convex and with dark brownish at the sides.

Described from a single male specimen, collected on June 18 at Havith, New Jersey, by Wm. T. Davis.

Lygus ostryae new species

Resembles the pale and yellowish forms of *belfragii*, usually slightly larger and strongly yellowish brown in color; males are readily distinguished by the two unusually large upturned prongs of the left clasper.

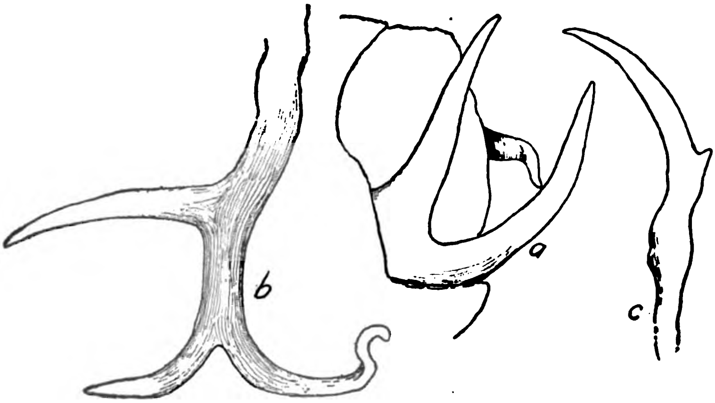


FIG. 207. LYGUS OSTRYAE, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS
a, Genital segment, left lateral aspect; b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

♂. Length 5.5–6 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.05 mm., vertex .37 mm., length .45 mm., height at base .63 mm.; yellowish brown, shining, eyes dark brownish; basal carina and other structures nearly as in *belfragii*. *Rostrum*, length 2.08 mm., reaching to the posterior extremities of the hind coxae, pale yellowish to brown, apex dark brown.

Antennae: segment I, length .74 mm., same color as head; II, 2.25 mm., yellowish with apex fuscous; III, 1.25 mm., yellowish with apical half slightly infuscated; IV, .71 mm., infuscated; all the segments with very fine pubescence.

Pronotum: length 1 mm., width at base 1.85 mm., width at anterior angles .85 mm., collar .65 mm.; yellowish brown, paler at the lateral margins and in some cases at the center of the disk; punctures evident but shallow, more or less transversely confluent. *Scutellum* pale yellowish brown, darker on the margins, transversely rugulose. *Sternum* and whole undersurface yellowish, in some cases tinged with brown.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.36 mm., yellowish pubescence rather prominent; embolium and basal half of the corium pale yellowish, clavus and apical half of the corium brownish to dark brown; cuneus clear tinged with yellow. *Membrane* and veins yellowish, lightly infumed with fuscous; in the darkest specimens the cells, the center of the membrane, and a small transverse spot beyond the apex of the cuneus, dark brown with fuscous.

Legs: pale yellowish brown; spines on the tibiae darker yellowish brown; tarsi yellowish, apices fuscous; in dark specimens the posterior femora are annulated near the apices with two narrow fuscous bands.

Venter: yellowish brown, in some cases darker along the lateral line; genital segment shining, genital claspers (fig. 207) larger and more striking than those of any other species here considered, the left clasper with two unusually long upturned prongs.

♀. Length 6 mm.; similar to the male but broader and slightly larger.

The species breeds on the hop hornbeam (*Ostrya virginiana*) in western New York, and has a life history very similar to that of *communis* and of *invitus*.

Holotype: ♂ June 25, 1915, Batavia, New York (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: 33 ♂ ♀ June 25, ♀ June 30, ♂ July 1, ♂ July 5, ♂ July 10, ♂ July 30, ♂ ♀ August 13, Batavia, 5 ♂ 2 ♀ June 27, 3 ♀ August 9, Portage, ♂ 2 ♀ July 4, Four Mile, 22 ♂ ♀ June 23, Conesus Lake, ♂ June 27, Honeoye Falls, 3 ♂ June 16, 2 ♀ July 23, Ithaca, New York; all collected by the writer. ♀ August 2, Gowanda, New York (E. P. Van Duzee). A large series of specimens, August 6–8, Parry Sound, Ontario, Canada (H. S. Parish). ♂ June 20, North Adams, Massachusetts, ♀ July 8, Norwich, Vermont (C. W. Johnson). ♂ July 4, Brookline, Massachusetts.

Lygus laureae new species

Resembles *communis* but is larger; yellowish brown with fuscous, tinged with pink; form of the genital claspers very unusual and distinctive.

♂. Length 5.4–6.2 mm. *Head*: width across eyes 1.11 mm., vertex .43 mm., length .51 mm., height at base .64 mm.; yellowish brown tinged with reddish, shining; in some cases the vertex clouded, leaving a median longitudinal reddish line from which six or seven very fine reddish transverse lines run toward each eye; eyes reddish brown. *Rostrum*, length 2.28 mm., reaching to posterior margins of hind coxae, yellowish brown, extreme apex fuscous.

Antennae: segment I, length .74 mm., yellowish brown tinged with fuscous; II, 2.25 mm., black with a very narrow yellow ring at the base; III, 1.34 mm., fuscous; IV, .8 mm., fuscous; all the segments clothed with very fine pubescence.

Pronotum: length 1.19 mm., width at base 1.96 mm., width at anterior angles .88 mm., collar .71 mm.; yellowish brown with two conspicuous black rays on the disk, frequently covering the outside half of the calli and running back to near the posterior margin of the pronotum; sides with blackish up to the height of the coxal cleft, this color extending back on the pleura. *Scutellum* yellowish brown, in some cases rather pale, tinged with pink on the margins. *Sternum* blackish on the sides, margined with brownish red, paler on median ventral part; prosternal xyphus yellowish like the coxae.

Hemelytra: greatest width 2.4 mm.; yellowish pubescence rather prominent; clavus and corium dark brown to fuscous, tinged with reddish; embolium except the apex, and narrow margin of the corium, lighter yellowish brown; cuneus pale tinged with yellowish, clothed with prominent fine pubescence. *Membrane* fuscous except the veins and a narrow margin bordering them; a spot just beyond the apex of the cuneus pale to yellowish.

Legs: coxae pale to yellowish, with reddish on the sides at the base; femora pale brownish yellow, apical two-thirds of the posterior femora reddish brown with two pale rings often evident near the apices, the middle pair in some cases with a touch of red on the ventral side toward the apices.

Venter: brownish black with reddish along the dorso-lateral margin, in some specimens almost entirely reddish; genital segment shining, a brownish red paler area on each side of the ventral median line, a tubercle on the posterior corner of the dorso-lateral margin just above the base of the left clasper; genital claspers yellowish brown and prominent, the left clasper (fig. 208) divided into two major parts near the base.

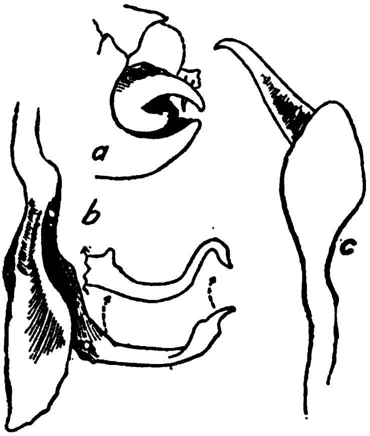


FIG. 208. LYGUS LAUREAE, MALE GENITAL CLASPERS

a, Genital segment, left lateral aspect (not to scale); b, left clasper, dorsal aspect; c, right clasper, ventral aspect

♀. Length 6.4 mm., greatest width 2.6 mm.; similar to the male but slightly more robust and everywhere with more reddish; sides of the thorax and venter with more reddish than fuscous.

Holotype: ♂ July 4, 1915, Four Mile, New York, altitude 2700 feet (H. H. Knight).

Allotype: with the type.

Paratypes: 250 ♂ ♀ taken with the type. 18 ♂ ♀ June 21–30, Black Mountains, North Carolina (Beutenmuller). ♂ ♀ August 4, Aurora, West Virginia (O. Heidemann). ♂ June 18, West Point, New York (Wm. T. Davis). ♂, Lake Toxaway, North Carolina (Mrs. A. T. Slosson).

The species breeds on mountain laurel (*Kalmia latifolia*), and has a life history very similar to that of *communis* and of *invitus*. On June 10, 1915, at Four Mile, New York, the fifth-stage nymphs were found to be plentiful on laurel. The nymphs are yellowish green to pink in color and many individuals are more orange in the fifth instar. The unfolding flower clusters furnish food and shelter for the developing nymphs, where they feed in preference to the leaves if the plant puts forth flowers. In 1916, at Four Mile, the laurel did not bloom as plentifully as in 1915, and the bugs were much less abundant. The first adult obtained in 1915 emerged on June 13, being reared on laurel leaves and flowers kept in a bottle. The eggs are doubtless deposited in the twigs of laurel during July, and hatch in the following spring with the unfolding of the leaves. This most unusual and interesting species will doubtless be found breeding on laurel thruout the Appalachian region.

Lygus carolinae Reuter

1876 *Lygus carolinae* Reuter
Caps. Amer. bor., p. 71.

This species and *fasciatus* are the only forms of Lygus described from the United States by Reuter which the writer, as well as other workers, has been unable to locate. It is very probable that when considerable collecting is done in the southern Appalachian region, these two species will be found. Judging by the number of new species found in New York and the New England States, it will not be surprising if a few more new forms are taken along with the collecting necessary to find *carolinae* and *fasciatus*.

The following is a liberal translation from the original latin description:

Oblong-ovate, greenish, minutely punctured above, pale pubescent, antennae testaceous, fuscous toward the apex, second segment longer than the width of the pronotum at base; scutellum with two longitudinal fuscous stripes; hemelytra immaculate, cuneus with the base fuscous, its apex broadly black; abdomen black above; apices of the femora annulated with fuscous, apices of the tarsi black; tibiae impunctate testaceous; membrane marked with fuscous, veins greenish. Length 5½ mm. Hab. Carolina.

EUROPEAN SPECIES OF LYGUS SUPPOSED TO OCCUR IN THE UNITED STATES

The following European species have been recorded from North America by the leading workers in Hemiptera: *Lygus contaminatus* Fallén, *Lygus lucorum* Meyer-Dür, *Lygus viridis* Fallén.

The writer has been able to study, in the United States National Museum, European material of each of the above species which was determined by Reuter and sent over to Mr. Heidemann. After studying all the important collections of Lygus from this country, the writer feels confident that the above species have not been taken in North America and that the records were based on misidentifications. The record for *Lygus viridis* Reuter (1909) from New Hampshire was based on two specimens, which are here included with *Lygus alni* and are shown to differ from the European *viridis* Fallén. *Lygus lucorum* was recorded from this country by Uhler and *Lygus contaminatus* by both Provancher and Uhler. The records were doubtless based on specimens of *Lygus apicalis*, which in certain color phases very much resembles *lucorum* and *contaminatus*. Mr. Van Duzee's recent records of *contaminatus* from California were based on a form of *apicalis*, specimens of which the writer has dissected and compared with our eastern form and found not to differ structurally.

SPECIES THAT HAVE BEEN INCORRECTLY PLACED IN THE GENUS LYGUS

Plagiognathus guttatipes (Uhler)

1895 *Lygus guttatipes* Uhler
Hemip. Colo., p. 35.

There is in the Uhler collection, now at the United States National Museum, a representative of this species which agrees with the description of *guttatipes* and is doubtless of the type material. The male genital characters, as well as certain other points given in the original description, show the species to be a Plagiognathus.

?Lygidea annexus (Uhler)

1872 *Lygus annexus* Uhler
U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., Montana, Prelim. rept., p. 413.

The types of this species are in the United States National Museum, two males and one female, labeled *N. E. Colo.* The writer has also seen other specimens of the species from Colorado. An examination of the male genitalia, combined with other characters, shows it to be congeneric with *Lygidea rubecula* Uhler. There is considerable doubt as to whether these species belong to the genus Lygidea, this being a point that can be settled only after further study and examination of the type species.

Phytocoris vividus (Uhler)

1895 *Lygus vividus* Uhler
Calif. Acad. Sci., Proc. 2d ser:4:260.
1910 *Dichrooscytus marmoratus* Van Duzee
Amer. Ent. Soc., Trans. 36:78.
1912 *Phytocoris vanduzei* Reuter
Hemip. miscellen, p. 30.

There are specimens of this species in the Uhler collection, coming from southern California, which evidently represent type material. The writer has compared a paratype of *Dichrooscytus marmoratus* Van Duzee with *Lygus vividus* Uhler and is unable to distinguish between the two. The type material has faded somewhat, due to aging, but the male genital claspers are very distinctive and are undoubtedly specific.

LITERATURE CITED

(References marked with an asterisk have not been verified)

AMYOT, [C. J. B.]

1846 Entomologie française. Rhynchotes. Soc. Ent. France. Ann. 2d ser.:4:73–192 (125–244), 359–452 (245–338). (This appeared with double page numbers.)

BLANCHARD, C. É.

1840 Phytocoris campestris. *In* Histoire naturelle des insectes **3**:138.

BRITTAIN, W. H.

1915 The green apple bug in Nova Scotia. Ent. Soc. Ont. Ann. rept. **46**:65–78.

1917 The green apple bug in Nova Scotia. Nova Scotia Dept. Agr. Bul. 8:1–56.

CROSBY, C. R., AND LEONARD, M. D.

1914 The tarnished plant-bug. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 346:461–526.

CURTIS, JOHN

1860 Farm insects, p. i-xiv, 15–528.

FABRICIUS, JOH. CHRIST.

1787 Mantissa insectorum **1**:1–348.

1794 Entomologia systematica **4**:1–472.

FALLÉN, C. F.

*1807 Monographia cimicum Sveciae, p. 1–123.

*1828–29 Hemiptera Sveciae, p. 1–16 (1828), 17–186 (1829).

FIEBER, F. X.

1858 Criterien zur generischen Theilung der Phytocoriden (Capsini aut.). Wien. Ent. Monatschr. **2**:289–327, 329–347.

1861 Die Europäischen Hemiptera, p. 1–444.

FLOR, G.

*1860 Die Rhynchoten Livlands in systematischer Folge beschrieben. 1. Rhynchota frontirostria, p. 1–825.

FOURCROY, A. F.

*1785 Entomologia parisiensis **1**:1–231.

GOEZE, J. A. E.

*1778 Entomologische Beiträge zu des Ritter Linné zwölften Ausgabe des Natursystems **2**:72–352.

HAHN, CARL WILHELM

1831 Die wanzenartigen Insecten **1**:1–236.

HARRIS, THADDEUS WILLIAM

1841 A report on the insects of Massachusetts, injurious to vegetation, p. 1–459.

HERRICH-SCHAEFFER, G. A. W.
1835 Die wanzenartigen Insecten **3**: 1–114.
HORVÁTH, G.
*1888 Matériaux pour servir à l'étude des Hémiptères de la faune paléarctique. Rev. d'ent. **7**: 181.
*1894 Lygus apicalis var. inops. Rev. d'ent. **8**: 190.
KIRSCHBAUM, C. L.
*1855 Rhynchotographische Beiträge, I, Die Capsinen der Gegend von Wiesbaden. Ver. Naturkunde Nassau. Jahrb. **10**: 161–348. (*Also published as a separate, entitled* Die Rhynchoten der Gegend um Wiesbaden, I, Die Capsinen, p. 1–189.)
KNIGHT, HARRY H.
1915 Observations on the oviposition of certain capsids. Journ. econ. ent. **8**: 293–298.
1916 Remarks on Lygus invitus Say, with descriptions of a new species and variety of Lygus. (Hemiptera Miridæ.) Can. ent. **48**: 345–349.
KOLENATI, F. A.
1845 Meletemata entomologica **2**: 1–132.
LATREILLE, P. A.
1804 Histoire naturelle, générale, et particulière, des crustacés et des insectes **12**: 1–424.
LEBARON, W.
1871 The four-striped plant-bug. *In* Noxious insects of the State of Illinois, First [Second] ann. rept., p. 61–62.
LINNAEUS, C.
1746 Fauna Svecica, p. 1–411.
1758 Systema naturæ, 10th ed. **1**: 1–823.
1761 Fauna Svecica, 2d ed., p. 1–578.
MEYER-DÜR, L. R.
*1843 Verzeichniss der in der Schweiz einheimischen Rhynchoten. (Hemiptera Linn.) Bevorwortet vom Professor Schinz. Heft I. Famil. Capsini, p. 1–115.
1872 Lygus Putoni. *In* Hemipterologisches. Schweiz. Ent. Gesell. Mitt. **3**: 207–209.
PALISOT DE BEAUVAIS, A. M. F. J.
*1805 Insectes récueillis en Afrique et en Amérique dans les royaumes d'Oware, à Saint-Dominique dans les États-Unis, pendant les années 1781–1797, p. 1–267.
PANZER, G. W. F.
*1804 D. Jacobi Christiani Schaefferi iconum insectorum circa Ratisbonam indigenorum enumeratio systematica, p. 1–260.

1805 Lygaeus umbellatarum. *In* Faunae insectorum Germanicae initia, oder Deutschlands Insecten, 1793–1813, Hemiptera, no. 93, p. 19.

PARROTT, P. J., AND HODGKISS, H. E.

1913 The false tarnished plant-bug as a pear pest. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 368:363–384.

PROVANCHER, L.

1872 Capsus flavonotatus. *In* Description de plusieurs Hémiptères nouveaux. Nat. Can. **4**:103.

1886 Lygus flavonotatus. *In* Petite faune entomologique du Canada **3**:119, 120.

PUTON, A.

1875 Catalogue des Hémiptères (Hétéroptères, Cicadines, et Psyllides) de la faune paléarctique, p. 1–362.

1886 Same title, 3d ed., with changes, p. 1–100.

RETZIUS, A. J.

*1783 Caroli De Geer genera et species insectorum et generalissimi auctoris scriptis extraxit, digessit, latine quand. partem reddidit, et terminologiam insectorum Linneanam addidit, p. 1–220.

REUTER, O. M.

*1875 a Revisio critica Capsinarum praecipue Scandinaviae et Fenniae. Akad. afhandl. Helsingfors **1875**:101–190.

1875 b Hemiptera gymnocerata Scandinaviae et Fenniae disposuit et descripsit. Pars I. Cimicidae (Capsina). Soc. pro fauna et flora Fennica. Acta **1**:1–206.

*1875 c Hémiptères nouveaux. Pet. nouv. ent., no. 136:544–545.

1876 Capsinæ ex America boreali in Museo Holmiensi asservatæ. Öfvers. af Kongl. Vetensk. Akad. Förhandl. $\mathbf{32}^{9}$ (1875):59–92.

*1879 Till en djurgeografisk fråga, ett litet bidrag. Öfvers. Finska Vetensk. Soc. Förhandl. **21**:64–82. (Separate, p. 35–53.)

1888 Reviseo synonymica heteropterorum palæarcticorum. Soc. Sci. Fennicæ. Acta $\mathbf{15}^{1}$:243–313; $\mathbf{15}^{2}$:445–812.

1896 Hemiptera gymnocerata Europæ. Hémiptères Gymnocérates d'Europe, du bassin de la Méditerranée, et de l'Asie Russe. V. Soc. Sci. Fennicæ. Acta $\mathbf{33}^{2}$:1–392.

1906 Capsidae in prov. Sz'tschwan Chinae a DD. G. Potanin et M. Beresowski collectae. Mus. Zool. Acad. Imp. Sci. St.-Petersbourg. Ann. **10**:1–81.

1907 Lygus olivaceus. *In* Capsidae novae in insula Jamaica mense Aprilis 1906 a D. E. P. Van Duzee collectae. Öfvers. Finska Vetensk. Soc. Förhandl. $\mathbf{49}^{5}$:6.

1909 Bemerkungen über nearktische Capsiden nebst Beschreibung neuer Arten. Soc. Sci. Fennicæ. Acta **36**^{2}: 1–86.

1912 Hemipterologische miscellen. Öfvers. Finska Vetensk. Soc. Förhandl. **54**^{7} (1911–12): 1–76.

Sahlberg, R. F.

*1848 Monographia geocorisarum Fenniae, p. 1–155.

Saunders, Edward

1875 Lygus pastinacæ. *In* Synopsis of British Hemiptera-Heteroptera. Ent. Soc. London. Trans. **1875**: 275–276.

Say, Thomas

1831 Descriptions of new species of heteropterous Hemiptera of North America, p. 1–39.

1858 Same, reprinted. New York State Agr. Soc. Trans. **17** (1857): 755–812.

1859 Same, Le Conte ed. **1**: 310–371.

Schilling, P. S.

*1837 Ueber mehrere neue Phytocoris-Arten. Uebersicht der Arbeiten und Veränderungen der Schlesischen Gesellschaft für vaterländische Kultur im Jahre 1836, p. 83–84.

Scopoli, Joannis Antonii

1763 Entomologia carniolica, p. 1–421.

Stål, C.

1858 Beitrag zur Hemipteren-Fauna Sibiriens und des Russischen Nord-Amerika. Ent. Zeit. [Stettin] **19**: 175–198.

1862 Hemiptera mexicana. Ent. Zeit. [Stettin] **23**: 289–325.

Stevenson, Charles

1903 A new capsid. Can. ent. **35**: 214.

Strobl, G.

*1900 Die Steierische Hemipteren. Naturw. Ver. Steiermark. Mitt. **36** (1899): 188–189.

Thomson, C. G.

1871 Capsus transversus. *In* Opuscula entomologica **4**: 427.

Tigny, F. M. G. T.

*1813 Cimex hortorum. *In* Histoire naturelle des insectes, composée d'après Réaumur, etc. **4**: 287.

Uhler, P. R.

1862 Footnote under Hemiptera. *In* Harris's Treatise on some of the insects injurious to vegetation, Flint ed., p. 200.

1872 a Notices of the Hemiptera of the western territories of the United States, chiefly from the surveys of Dr. F. V. Hayden. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., Montana, etc. Prelim. rept., p. 392–423.

1872 b A list of Hemiptera collected in eastern Colorado and northeastern New Mexico, by C. Thomas, during the expedition of 1869. U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., Wyoming. Prelim. rept., p. 471–472.

1877 Report upon the insects collected by P. R. Uhler during the explorations of 1875, including monographs of the Cydnidae and Saldidae, and the Hemiptera collected by A. S. Packard, jr., M. D. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Survey, Terr. 3. Bul. 2:355–475.

1886 A new noxious capsid. Can. ent. **18**:208–209.

1892 Observations on some remarkable Heteroptera of North America. Maryland Acad. Sci. Trans. **1892**:179–184.

1895 a Observations upon the heteropterous Hemiptera of Lower California, with descriptions of new species. California Acad. Sci. Proc. 2d ser.:4 (1893–4):223–295.

1895 b Descriptions of new species. *In* A preliminary list of the Hemiptera of Colorado, by C. P. Gillette and Carl F. Baker. Colorado Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 31:1–137.

VAN DUZEE, EDWARD P.

1910 Descriptions of some new or unfamiliar North American Hemiptera. Amer. Ent. Soc. Trans. **36**:73–88.

1912 Hemipterological gleanings. Buffalo Soc. Nat. Sci. Bul. **10**: 477–512.

1914 A preliminary list of the Hemiptera of San Diego County, California. San Diego Soc. Nat. Hist. Trans. **2**:1–57.

1916 Check list of the Hemiptera (excepting the Aphididæ, Aleurodidæ, and Coccidæ) of America, north of Mexico, p. 1–111. New York Ent. Soc.

ZETTEKSTEDT, JOHANNE WILHELMO

*1828 Fauna insectorum lapponica, p. 1–563.

1840 Insecta lapponica, p. 1–1140.

JULY, 1916 MEMOIR 9

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

INFLUENCE OF CERTAIN CARBOHYDRATES ON GREEN PLANTS

LEWIS KNUDSON

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

JULY, 1916 MEMOIR 9

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

INFLUENCE OF CERTAIN CARBOHYDRATES ON GREEN PLANTS

LEWIS KNUDSON

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

BEVERLY T. GALLOWAY, B.Agr.Sc., LL.D., Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
HORACE M. PICKERILL, B.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
CHARLES H. HADLEY, Jr., B.S., Entomology.
DANIEL S. FOX, B.S., Farm Management.
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE

Historical 749
Method of investigation 755
    Culture vessels 755
    Nutrient solution 756
    Action of solution on disaccharides 756
    Sterilization of seed 757
    Sterilization of media and culture vessels 757
    Sowing the seed 757
    Uniformity of seeds 757
    Rate of diffusion of carbon dioxide through cotton plugs 758
Influence of certain sugars on growth of corn (Zea mays L.) 758
    In the light 759
    In the dark 760
    Influence of maltose on growth of corn embryo 761
Experiments with Canada field pea (Pisum sativum L.) 762
Experiments with timothy (Phleum pratense L.) 763
    Cultures in light 763
    Cultures in dark 764
    Influence of lactose 765
    Influence of a mixture of lactose and saccharose 766
    Conclusion 766
Experiments with radish (Raphanus sativus L.) 767
    Influence of approximately carbon-equivalent solutions 767
    Influence of equimolecular solutions of various sugars 770
Experiments with winter vetch (Vicia villosa Roth) 772
    Influence of certain disaccharides on growth 772
    Influence of various sugars on vetch grown in water cultures 775
    Influence of equimolecular solutions of glucose, maltose, and saccharose 779
    Influence of glucose on root growth 781
    Influence of sugar on respiration and growth 781
Influence of various concentrations of sugars on plant growth 790
    Experiments with cabbage (Brassica oleracea L.) 790
    Experiment with sweet clover (Melilotus alba Desr.) 792
    Experiment with crimson clover (Trifolium incarnatum L.) 793
    Experiment with vetch 794
Absorption of sugar from dilute solutions 795
Toxicity of galactose for higher plants 796
Secretion of enzymes by roots 799
Influence of sugar on color production 800
General discussion 801
Summary 807
Acknowledgments 808
Bibliography 809

INFLUENCE OF CERTAIN CARBOHYDRATES ON GREEN PLANTS

INFLUENCE OF CERTAIN CARBOHYDRATES ON GREEN PLANTS[1]

LEWIS KNUDSON

The classical investigations of Priestley, Ingenhouz, de Saussure, and others, near the beginning of the nineteenth century, established the fundamental facts relative to the utilization of atmospheric carbon dioxide by green plants. Yet, despite the discoveries made by these men and by others who followed, the belief prevailed in the botanical, chemical, and agronomic sciences that the source of the plant's carbon was the brown or blackish organic material of the soil, which was designated humus. Liebig (1847),[2] by his arguments based on theoretical rather than on experimental grounds, contributed largely to the relegation of this view. He asserted that the plant derived its carbon entirely from the carbon dioxide of the air. Boussingault (1860) demonstrated by experimental methods the ability of the plant to develop when organic matter was entirely wanting in the substratum. His experiments demonstrated not only the ability of the plant to procure its carbon from the air, but also the fact that humus is not necessarily a source of nitrogen, the contrary view having been formerly very generally believed. The work of Sachs, Knop, and many others subsequently, with water cultures, proved conclusively the ability of the plant to develop independently of the presence of humus.

Nevertheless the humus theory was revived from time to time, notably by Bréal (1894). An explanation was sought for the generally recognized superiority of stable manure as a fertilizer, but no adequate experimental evidence was produced in favor of the humus theory. The interest now, however, is not confined merely to the narrower aspect of the plant's relation to humus, a substance of indefinite character, but is concerned rather with the relation of the plant to dissolved organic substances that may occur in soils. One of the phases of this subject — namely, the injurious effect of soil organic substances — has received and is still receiving much attention from the United States Bureau of Soils. Practically no consideration, however, has been given in this country to the possibility of a favorable influence of dissolved organic matter, although Schreiner (1913) does suggest the direct utilization of organic nitrogenous substances. The relatively recent investigations have proved the ability of the higher plants to directly absorb, by means of their roots, a considerable number of different organic substances present in the nutrient media. This has created a new interest in the rôle of the organic material of the soil in the nutrition of the higher plants.

---

[1] Contribution from the Laboratory of Plant Physiology, Cornell University.

[2] Dates in parenthesis refer to bibliography, pages 809 to 813.

It is of course recognized that the plants may grow and mature in the absence of organic material from the substratum, and it is furthermore recognized that in many soils there is such a relatively small amount of organic matter that its significance as a source of carbon would be very slight and perhaps of no direct value. However, the fact that in many soils a rich microbial flora exists, postulates the presence of directly available organic substances or of substances made available by extracellular digestion. Since there is no reason to assume that permeability or metabolism in fungi and bacteria differs fundamentally from that in higher plants, it is logical to conclude that in general what is available for the fungus is likewise available for the higher plant. In this connection the fact is significant that there exist among the phanerogams plants devoid of chlorophyll, which necessarily derive all their organic material from the soil.

Theoretically there is no reason why higher plants should not absorb dissolved organic substances by means of their roots. The results of recent investigations have confirmed the theory. The phanerogamic plants studied have been found capable of absorbing and assimilating a considerable number of organic substances. The practical significance of this fact may be little, but, irrespective of the practical aspect, a thorough knowledge of the relation of the higher plants to dissolved organic substances is desirable and may be important in the interpretation of experimental data in other lines of research. Such a knowledge is desirable furthermore from the standpoint of a better understanding of metabolism in plants and because of its significance to animal physiology and biochemistry.

With a view to confirming and extending the investigations of previous workers, this study was begun in December, 1912, and the work here presented concludes that phase of the subject concerned with the absorption of certain carbohydrates and their influence on plant growth. As compared with previous investigations on this subject, a wider range and a larger number of plants have been employed; the study has been extended to the influence of weaker concentrations on growth; the continued influence of sugars on respiration has been studied; and an attempt has been made to obtain some data on the comparative ease of assimilability of different sugars. The last-named phase of the work is being more intensively studied in the light of the present investigation. Incidental observations have been made also on the influence of sugars on color production in the plants studied and on the excretion of enzymes, and the noteworthy fact developed that galactose is toxic to the plants and that its poisonous action can be antidoted. The prime object, however, has been to confirm the earlier work on the direct absorption of sugars, and to extend these studies to other plants.

HISTORICAL

De Saussure (1804) found that *Bidens cannabina* and *Polygonum persicaria* apparently absorbed sugar from an aqueous solution of the same. His work was of course not conducted under sterile conditions, and doubtless much of the sugar reported as being absorbed disappeared through fermentation. This work attracted no particular attention because of its agreement with the humus theory.

The possibility of absorption of organic substances by cuttings, leaves, and floral parts of plants was fully established by Boehm (1883), Meyer (1886), E. Laurent (1887), and Schimper and others (Pfeffer, 1900). The investigations of these men were designed to throw light on the question of the first product of photosynthesis. They found that starch was produced when the plant was offered any one of a number of organic substances, notably the sugars and glycerin.

After Boehm (1883) reported the absorption of sugar by means of the roots, Acton (1889) demonstrated the production of starch in deamylated plants at the expense of organic substances absorbed by the roots. He employed rooted plants of *Quercus robur*, *Cheiranthus cheiri*, *Euphorbia helioscopia*, *Phaseolus vulgaris*, and *Acer pseudoplatanus*. He noted that glucose, saccharose, and glycerin were absorbed and starch was produced in the leaves of the plants when they were maintained in liquid cultures in the dark through a period of a few days. Neither glycogen, dextrins, nor soluble starch were utilized. While the experiment was not conducted under sterile conditions, the conclusions need not be questioned because of the fact that the starch accumulated in the leaves when the plants were maintained in the dark and because the duration of the experiments was short.

Mazé (1899) grew vetch (vesces de Narbonne) under sterile conditions in the dark, supplying to the solution different quantities of glucose. Some of his data follow:

Duration (days)	Glucose (parts per 100)	Dry weight of plant (milligrams)	Dry weight of seed (milligrams)	Gain or loss (milli-grams)
50	1	269.0	202.8	+ 66.2
39	2	276.7	202.8	+ 73.9
92	4	838.2	202.8	+635.4
92	6	710.0	202.8	+507.2
53	0	161.6	202.8	— 41.2

With 4 per cent and 6 per cent of glucose the plants grown in the dark more than trebled in dry weight, while in the absence of sugar there was a loss of weight.

The work of J. Laurent (1904) is particularly noteworthy. He grew plants in water cultures under sterile conditions. His conclusions, particularly with respect to the utilization of sugar by corn, are as follows: (1) With glucose present in the nutrient solution there is an increase in growth and an increase in dry weight. (2) Glucose is utilized if the plant is grown either under conditions of darkness or in the light, and in the absence of carbon dioxide as well as under normal conditions. Saccharose, glycerin, and potassium humate are also utilized. The saccharose is inverted in the root by the enzyme invertase. This sugar is also transformed in slight amounts in the culture solution, due to the secretion of invertase. The same is true for peas. Starch supplied to the nutrient solution is partially utilized, due to the exosmosis of diastase from the seed and its action on the supplied starch. (3) Glucose is absorbed by the roots of bean, ground ivy, wild marigold, and a number of other plants. The glucose gives rise to the formation of starch in the leaves of the plants studied.

There is also included in Laurent's paper a consideration of the effect of organic substances on the morphology and anatomy of peas.

Mazé and Perrier (1904), employing water cultures, grew corn under sterile conditions, noting the influence of saccharose, glucose, ethyl alcohol, and methyl alcohol on the growth. The plants grown in the dark for a period of forty-nine days had a dry weight of approximately fifty per cent of the original dry weight of the seed. Under the same conditions, except for the addition of saccharose, the plants showed a greater dry weight than that of the original seed. In the light the plants made excellent growth. In one culture of thirty days duration, the plant attained a dry weight of 21.9 grams, having absorbed in this time 10.446 grams of saccharose. The original amount of sugar added was 32.088 grams to the three-liter flask. At the end of the experiment there remained only 1.359 grams of saccharose, but 21.328 grams invert sugar. Invertase apparently was secreted by the roots. The saccharose seemed to be utilized more efficiently than the glucose. Glycerin and ethyl alcohol, while probably slightly assimilated, yet were injurious at the concentrations employed. Methyl alcohol 4.5 parts per 100 permitted better growth than the check plant made, and apparently was assimilated.

In a subsequent paper Mazé (1911) states that corn is capable of absorbing starch and peptone. The starch was not transformed in the culture solution, and, contrary to his previous results, Mazé did not note any inversion of the saccharose. The absorption of colloidal organic substances as starch is not in agreement with the results of other investigators.

Molliard (1907) studied the influence of various sugars, and also glycerin, on the growth, morphology, and anatomy of the common garden radish (*Raphanus sativus*), of cress (*Nasturtium officinale*), of morning glory (*Ipomoea purpurea*), and of onion (*Allium cepa*). He employed various sugar concentrations ranging from two to fifteen per cent, and noted that in the case of the radish the sugars could be absorbed and assimilated. Various morphological modifications were induced by the different concentrations with radish. Glucose, fructose, saccharose, and maltose influenced the plant similarly. Enlarged roots were produced only when the culture medium contained between five and fifteen per cent of glucose.

It was noted also that in the presence of certain concentrations of glucose, starch was produced in the root, although normally starch is not produced in radish roots. The following figures, taken from Molliard's paper, show the influence of concentration on growth under the conditions of the experiment:

INFLUENCE OF GLUCOSE ON RADISH. DURATION OF EXPERIMENT, THREE MONTHS

Knop's solution +	Dry weight (milligrams)	Ratio of dry weight to fresh weight
No glucose	50	0.056
2 per cent glucose	105	0.089
5 per cent glucose	177	0.110
10 per cent glucose	220	0.132
15 per cent glucose	128	0.167

As a result of certain other experiments Molliard concluded that there exists an antagonism between absorption of sugar and assimilation of carbon dioxide. This will be considered later.

Lubimenko (1906 b) has noted the assimilation of various sugars by plantlets of *Pinus Pinea,* and as a result of his experiments he comes to the conclusion that the assimilation of sugar is dependent on a photochemical reaction.

Bokorny (1911) found that Spirogyra and Cladophora not only could absorb methyl alcohol, but could produce starch from it. His results indicate further than the scarlet runner bean and the pea can also utilize methyl alcohol, but not ethyl alcohol nor the higher alcohols. His experiments were not made under sterile conditions.

In a recent paper Ravin (1913) has presented the results of his very comprehensive investigation of the influence of certain organic acids and their acid and neutral salts on the growth of radish as well as on certain algæ and fungi. He has presented an excellent résumé of the literature relative to the use of organic acids, so that no further treatment is here necessary. The common garden radish (*Raphanus sativus*) was employed, and the plants were grown under sterile conditions in large culture tubes of 350 cubic centimeters capacity. As a substratum for growth, cotton, pumice, or sand was employed. To this was added the nutrient solution to be tested. The results, summarized in the following table, clearly indicate that radish can absorb and assimilate the organic acids, such as malic, tartaric, succinic, and citric, and their salts, and comparison is made with glucose:

General Averages of Results Obtained for the Different Groups of Substances

Culture medium	Free atmosphere			Confined atmosphere		
	Green weight (milligrams)	Dry weight (milligrams)	Relative acidity of plant	Green weight (milligrams)	Dry weight (milligrams)	Relative acidity of plant
Knop (check)	749	36.3	1.0	166	11.7	1.5
Knop + $KHSO_4$ (acid salt)	811	41.0	1.1	250	16.9	1.5
Knop + K_2SO_4 (neutral salt)	793	42.0	1.0	247	17.0	1.4
Knop + glucose	1,035	54.9	1.3	306	30.5	1.8
Knop + free organic acids	945	52.5	1.5	426	30.5	2.2
Knop + acid potassium salts of organic acids	1,030	53.9	1.4	515	33.3	1.9
Knop + neutral potassium salts of organic acids	947	53.6	1.2	466	28.7	1.7

Palladine (1901), Palladine and Komleff (1902), and Maige and Nicolas (1910), have studied particularly the influence of various organic substances on the rate of respiration. Their investigations will be considered subsequently in this paper.

Not only do the phanerogams have the ability to absorb organic substances, but the same property has been shown by algæ, as has been demonstrated by Bokorny (1911), Ravin (1913), and others. Recently Servettaz (1913) has investigated the absorption and assimilation of organic substances by mosses. He finds that glucose and fructose are readily utilized, whereas the disaccharides saccharose, lactose, and maltose are of less value and are absorbed in the order given. Dextrin, starch, and gum arabic seem to be detrimental to moss plants. Peptone also is utilized. The observation was made that the moss in the presence of sugar tends to be chlorotic, a similar observation also being noted by Mazé and Perrier (1904) for corn grown with glucose added to the culture solution. The suggestion was made by these authors that there seems to be a disappearance of chlorophyll with reduction of its function, although no evidence has been produced to show loss of function.

Investigations on the rôle of organic nitrogenous substances have been made largely from the viewpoint of the value of the substance supplied as a source of nitrogen. Lutz (1898), employing cultures free from micro-organisms, succeeded in demonstrating that certain of the amines could serve as sources of nitrogen. Hutchinson and Miller (1911) have extended the investigations of Lutz to other plants with favorable results. These authors have presented a critical survey of the work performed, and make the following statement concerning the previous work:

> As regards organic compounds the great majority have given negative, if not uncertain results. More or less satisfactory evidence of assimilation has been obtained with the following compounds — methyl-, amyl- and allylamines, dimethylamine, acetamide, choline, betaine, leucine, urea, dicyano-diamide, aspartic acid, asparagine, glutamine, allantoin, uric acid, hippuric acid, tyrosine and humic acid. The gains of nitrogen have, however, generally been very small and in many cases negative results have been obtained by other investigators.

It seems probable that some of the organic nitrogenous substances can supply the needs of the plant, although Russell (1912) is of the opinion that such of these substances as are apparently utilized are split at the surface of the root, yielding ammonia as one product which supplies the nitrogen for the plant.

As already stated, investigations of the utilization of organic nitrogenous substances have been made largely from the viewpoint of the nitrogen relationships. It is obvious, however, that one cannot entirely dissociate the carbon relationships when experimenting with such substances. It is this viewpoint that has guided Lefèvre (1906) in his investigation of the utilization of amino acids in the complete absence of carbon dioxide. Lefèvre has apparently demonstrated that certain amino compounds can serve as sources of carbon. He found that *Lepidium sativum, Ocimum minimum,* and *Tropaeolum varians nanum,* cultivated in an artificial soil of sand and moss, when grown under a bell jar and supplied with air freed of carbon dioxide, apparently utilized as a source of carbon the amino acids supplied. He used a mixture of tyrosine, glycocoll, alanine, oxamide, and leucine. Plants grown under these conditions increase in height and in number and size of leaves. Check plants grown under conditions similar but with the elimination of amino acids from the soil failed to make any marked growth, and some died of starvation. In one experiment with *Lepidium sativum* twenty seedlings were grown under a bell jar in the absence of carbon dioxide but with the amino-acids mixture present. In ten days the increase in weight was from 44 to 120 milligrams. The check culture, in the absence of the amino acids, showed a gain of only 4 milligrams. In a similar experiment with Ocimum, the gain of the seedlings supplied with the amino acids was from 100 to 350 milligrams, while the check plants showed a gain of only 20 milligrams. Jost (1913) has suggested that the amino acids may be absorbed and broken down in the plant, yielding carbon dioxide, which is utilized by the plant in photosynthesis.

Grafe (1909) conducted somewhat similar experiments, employing *Phaseolus vulgaris.* He used the same mixture of amino acids as was used by Lefèvre, but grew his plants in water cultures. He obtained, in general, toxic effects on the roots of the culture plants grown in the presence of the amino acids. His results do not, however, disprove the conclusions of Lefèvre, since in the experiments of the latter the soil employed undoubtedly inhibited the toxicity of the amino-acids mixture.

From a consideration of the above-mentioned investigations it becomes evident that a considerable number of organic substances can be utilized by green plants and that these substances are of a wide range of character. The investigation here reported is confined to the influence of certain of the carbohydrates on green plants. The experiments are not in all cases so clear-cut and decisive in their results as was hoped for, but the difficulties of experimentation and the limited supply of culture vessels made ideal results almost impossible of attainment. However, the results are in general conclusive.

METHOD OF INVESTIGATION

CULTURE VESSELS

Throughout the investigation the plants were grown in culture vessels plugged with cotton and maintained under sterile conditions. In certain experiments the culture vessels were large test tubes, 30 by 4 centimeters in size; in other experiments large glass cylinders were employed, 63 by 10 centimeters in size; while in still other experiments the culture vessels were of another form, as described later. The use of large tubes is shown in figure 1.

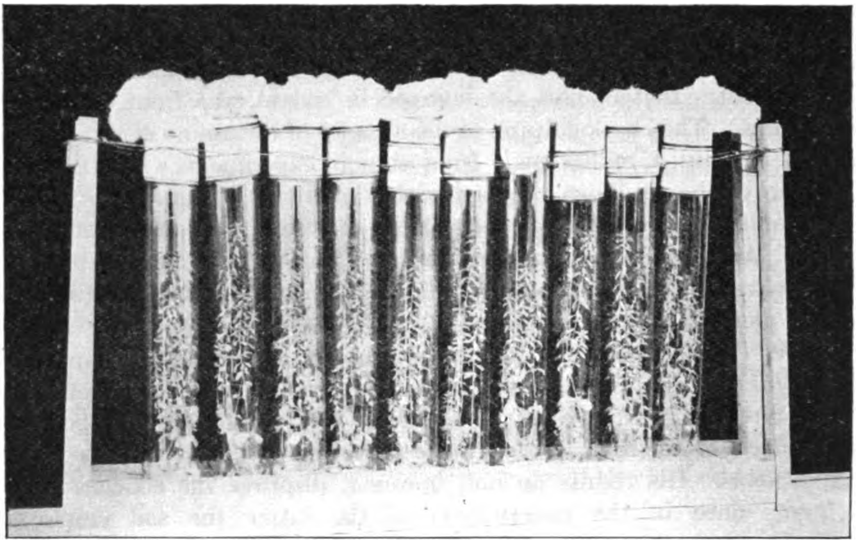


FIG. 1. METHOD OF GROWING PLANTS IN LARGE CULTURE TUBES

NUTRIENT SOLUTION

The plants were grown for the most part within the tubes or cylinders on an agar medium to which were added the nutrient solution and the carbohydrate whose influence was to be studied. Pfeffer's solution was employed, though of a weaker concentration than usual. The solution was made according to the following formula:

Calcium nitrate	4.0 grams
Potassium nitrate	1.0 gram
Potassium chloride	0.5 gram
Potassium phosphate (dibasic)	1.0 gram
Magnesium sulfate	1.0 gram
Ferric chloride	4.0 milligrams
Distilled water	12.0 liters

ACTION OF SOLUTION ON DISACCHARIDES

The inverting action of the nutrient solution on saccharose, maltose, and lactose was tested and found to be without effect. There was of course no hydrolyzing action on the agar.

STERILIZATION OF SEED

The method of seed sterilization employed was one developed in the Laboratory of Plant Physiology by Wilson (1915). In brief it is as follows: Ten grams of calcium hypochlorite (chloride of lime, or bleaching powder) is shaken up with 140 cubic centimeters of water, and after the mixture has stood for a short time the supernatant, clear liquid is decanted off and filtered. It is now ready for use. The seeds to be sterilized are placed in a test tube or similar vessel and the hypochlorite solution is added. The tube or vessel is tightly stoppered, and the seed is left in the solution for a few to twenty-four hours. The treatment of the various seeds will be described in detail later for each experiment.

STERILIZATION OF MEDIA AND CULTURE VESSELS

The culture vessels, containing the culture solutions, were sterilized under steam pressure. The smaller vessels were heated in an autoclave for twenty-five minutes at fifteen pounds pressure, while the larger containers were sterilized for one hour at ten pounds pressure in a large steam sterilizer such as is used in canning factories. Even at the prolonged exposure in the latter case, contamination of the saccharose cultures occasionally occurred, due to the development of submerged hyaline colonies of a bacterium. This organism occurred only in the saccharose cultures. Its appearance was evident five or six days after sterilization. All cultures showing the contamination were rejected.

SOWING THE SEED

For sowing the seed in certain of the experiments a small copper spoon was used. This was made of a small strip of copper, which was worked into a perforated spoon large enough to hold two vetch seeds and fitted with a wooden handle. The spoon was sterilized by immersion in alcohol and then flaming. The seed was transferred directly from the bleaching-powder solution to the culture vessels much as one might make transfers of bacteria or fungi. In many of the experiments each lot of seed was sterilized separately in small test tubes, each test tube holding the seeds for a single culture. This method was necessary when the weight of the seed was to be accurately determined.

UNIFORMITY OF SEEDS

In all the experiments the seeds used were carefully selected as regards uniformity in appearance and size. Only plump, vigorous-looking seeds were selected. In work of this character it is essential to use only seed of high germinating ability. The contaminations that occurred were due largely to the introduction of dead seeds.

RATE OF DIFFUSION OF CARBON DIOXIDE THROUGH COTTON PLUGS

Molliard (1907) made some experiments to find out whether or not the cotton plugs used in the culture tubes impeded the diffusion of carbon dioxide into the plant chamber. He placed in the plant chamber small open vessels containing baryta water. He found that the cotton plugs impeded the diffusion of carbon dioxide, since the baryta water in the plugged chambers absorbed only about one-fourth of the carbon dioxide absorbed by the baryta water in the open chambers.

In an attempt to verify Molliard's results the writer placed wide-mouthed bottles containing baryta water in the large cylinders, two of which were open and two closed. No good results were obtained, since the carbonate precipitate which formed at the surface interfered with the absorption of the carbon dioxide. Consequently the baryta water was replaced by a solution of potassium hydroxide of a specific gravity of 1.27. After a period of four days it was found that the potassium hydroxide in the plugged cylinder had absorbed only one-third as much carbon dioxide as that in the open cylinder. The cotton plugs, therefore, do impede the diffusion of carbon dioxide, and consequently for all this work it was essential to observe precaution in providing plugs of uniform compactness.

INFLUENCE OF CERTAIN SUGARS ON GROWTH OF CORN (ZEA MAYS L.)

J. Laurent (1904), and Mazé and Perrier (1904), investigated the absorption of sugar by corn. Their results, while clearly establishing the utilization of various sugars, do not give any idea of their respective assimilability. Mazé and Perrier state that saccharose is of more value than glucose, but the evidence is not conclusive, since in the presence of glucose abnormal plants developed in two cases and a normal plant in the third case. In the dark the plants seemed to utilize saccharose, lactose, glycerin, and starch in the order named.

In the following experiments the influence of the hexoses glucose and fructose, and the disaccharides saccharose and maltose, was noted. In one experiment the plants were grown in the laboratory, being maintained in a dark chamber, while in the second the plants were grown in the greenhouse. The assimilability of the sugar was judged by noting its influence on the dry weight of the plants. The variety of corn used was a yellow dent. All the grains were selected for uniformity of shape and weight, and all came from the same ear.

As culture vessels the large cylinders, 63 by 10 centimeters in size, were used, and in each was placed the nutrient solution plus 1.2 per cent of agar. Two-per-cent concentrations of the various sugars were used. These solutions are approximately equivalent as regards carbon, but differ as regards their osmotic relationships. The hexose sugars would have the higher osmotic pressure, since a 2-per-cent solution has a gram molecular concentration of 0.111 while the molecular concentration of the 2-per-cent disaccharide solutions is 0.058. Subsequent experiments and the work of Molliard (1907) indicate that concentrations of sugar much higher than that of the hexose cultures are more favorable to the growth of plants than the weaker concentration. In fact, in an experiment subsequently reported, 6.4 per cent of glucose shows a more favorable influence than 2 per cent of glucose. The higher molecular concentration of glucose as compared to saccharose, then, should not be injurious to the growth of corn. On the other hand, this increased concentration might account for the greater value of the hexose sugars in increasing growth.

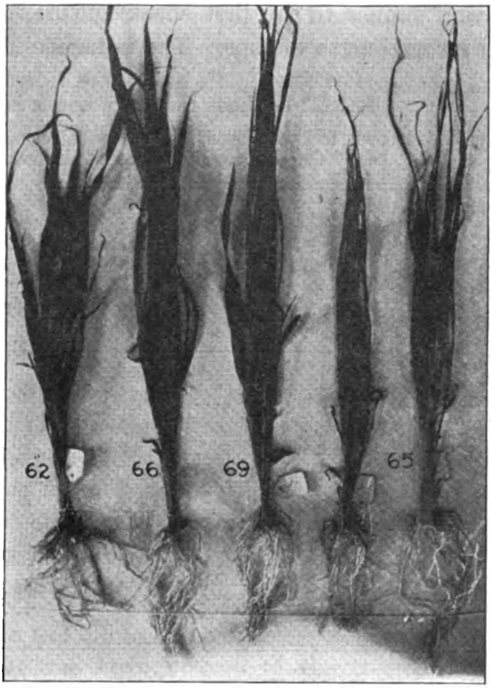


FIG. 2. INFLUENCE OF SUGARS ON GROWTH OF CORN
62, Glucose; 66, fructose; 69, saccharose; unnumbered, check (no sugar); 65, maltose

IN THE LIGHT

The results obtained from the cultures grown in the light are given in table 1. The results for each of the different sugars are consistent, though there is a slight difference in the individual cultures of each sugar in the distribution of growth. A very notable increase in dry weight is manifest in all the sugar-fed plants. Indeed, when supplied with sugar the dry weight of the plants is in most cases approximately double that of the check plants. Glucose appears to be the most effective, followed by fructose, saccharose, and maltose in the order given. No effect was noted of the sugars on the use of the endosperm reserve. Unfortunately the dry weight was obtained from only one of the check cultures, the plants of the other check being accidentally lost. The general appearance of the latter was very similar to the first check culture, as is indicated by the figures for average length of tops. The influence of the sugars is seen in figure 2.

TABLE 1. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON GROWTH OF CORN

(Plants grown in greenhouse. Duration, December 20 to January 19, 1914, thirty days. Original weight of seed, 0.296 gram ± 10 milligrams)

Culture solution		Number of plants	Average length of tops (centimeters)	Dry weight of tops (grams)	Dry weight of roots (grams)	Total dry weight (grams)	Average weight per plant (grams)
Check (no sugar)............	1	4	39.5	......	......	......	....
	2	4	39.0	0.535	0.343	0.878	0.219
Glucose, 2 per cent...........	1	4	40.2	0.989	0.773	1.762	0.440
	2	4	38.0	0.958	0.735	1.693	0.423
Fructose, 2 per cent..........	1	4	49.0	1.078	0.672	1.750	0.437
	2	4	53.5	1.005	0.695	1.700	0.425
Maltose, 2 per cent..........	1	4	46.0	0.794	0.479	1.273	0.318
	2	4	52.0	0.802	0.444	1.246	0.311
Saccharose, 2 per cent.......	1	4	51.5	0.976	0.531	1.507	0.377
	2	4	47.0	0.830	0.695	1.525	0.381

IN THE DARK

The data for the plants grown in the laboratory in the dark are given in table 2. In all cases the average length of the tops is greater in the sugar-containing cultures than in the check cultures. The same is true of the dry weights; in the presence of sugar the plants not only made considerable growth, but approximately maintained their original dry weight.

No very appreciable differences were obtained with the different sugars; apparently the glucose was slightly the most beneficial.

TABLE 2. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON GROWTH OF CORN

(Plants grown in the dark. Duration, December 20 to January 19, 1914, thirty days. Original weight of seed, 0.296 gram ± 10 milligrams)

Culture solution		Number of plants	Average length of tops (centimeters)	Dry weight of tops (grams)	Dry weight of roots (grams)	Total dry weight (grams)	Average weight per plant (grams)
Check (no sugar)	1	4	50.7	0.400	0.180	0.580	0.145
	2	4	47.5	0.400	0.260	0.660	0.165
	3	4	50.5	0.440	0.210	0.650	0.162
Glucose, 2 per cent	1	4	61.5	0.650	0.580	1.230	0.307
	2	4	69.0	0.735	0.370	1.105	0.276
Fructose, 2 per cent		4	58.7	0.580	0.450	1.030	0.257
Maltose, 2 per cent	1	3	67.0	0.450	0.370	0.820	0.273
	2	4	64.0	0.715	0.310	1.025	0.256
Saccharose, 2 per cent		4	58.0	0.580	0.410	0.990	0.247

It is stated by Lindet (1911) that fructose is a tissue builder, while glucose is used largely in respiration. It would be expected, therefore, that fructose, especially when offered to plants grown in the dark, would effect a greater increase in growth than would glucose, and that saccharose would behave similarly. It may be, however, that glucose is more permeable, or that the statement does not hold for higher plants. There is nevertheless a possibility that further work might show such a relation.

INFLUENCE OF MALTOSE ON GROWTH OF CORN EMBRYO

In the experiment to determine the influence of maltose on the growth of the corn embryo, the embryo was sown instead of the entire seed. The embryo was first removed from the endosperm and all adhering starch was removed. It was then sterilized by immersion in the calcium hypochlorite solution for a period of four hours. As culture vessels test tubes 30 by 4 centimeters in size were employed, each containing 50 cubic centimeters of the nutrient solution plus maltose sugar at certain concentrations. The plants were grown in the greenhouse from January 3 to February 6, 1914, a period of thirty-four days. The check culture yielded a dry weight of 106 milligrams, the culture containing 0.4 per cent of maltose 130 milligrams, and the culture containing 2.5 per cent of maltose 180 milligrams. The utilization of maltose was made evident also by the very marked red coloration of the roots and stem of the plant in the culture containing 2.5 per cent of maltose, the fainter coloration of the plant in the culture containing 0.4 per cent of maltose, and the absence of color in the check cultures.

EXPERIMENTS WITH CANADA FIELD PEA (PISUM SATIVUM L.)

In the experiment with Canada field peas large cylinders, 46 by 8 centimeters in size, were used, each containing 150 cubic centimeters of the nutrient solution plus 1.2 per cent of agar and the sugar to be tested. The seeds were selected for uniformity, and each lot of four seeds was weighed and sterilized separately in small weighing dishes 15 cubic centimeters in volume. The duration of growth was thirty-five days. The sugars used and the results obtained are given in table 3:

TABLE 3. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON CANADA FIELD PEA
(Duration, thirty-five days)

Culture solution		Original dry weight of seeds (grams)	Dry weight			Total dry weight (grams)	Gain or loss (grams)
			Tops (grams)	Roots (grams)	Cotyledons (grams)		
Check (no sugar)	1	0.617	0.272	0.114	0.079	0.465	−0.152
	2	0.555	0.227	0.093	0.093	0.413	−0.142
	3	0.563	0.212	0.060	0.160	0.432	−0.131
Lactose, 2 per cent	1	0.585	0.246	0.105	0.150	0.501	−0.084
	2	0.567	0.291	0.120	0.108	0.519	−0.048
Maltose, 2 per cent	1	0.567	0.354	0.141	0.096	0.591	+0.024
	2	0.594	0.340	0.139	0.105	0.584	−0.010
	3	......	0.355	0.126	0.094	0.575	....
Glucose, 2 per cent	1	0.555	0.284	0.119	0.151	0.554	−0.001
	2	0.554	0.296	0.113	0.152	0.561	+0.007
Saccharose, 2 per cent	1	0.585	0.374	0.246	0.095	0.715	+0.130
	2	0.576	0.346	0.230	0.125	0.701	+0.125

Here again it is noted that all the sugars exert a beneficial effect on the plants. In this case saccharose is the most beneficial, glucose and maltose are somewhat similar, and lactose is of the least benefit. No conclusions can be drawn with respect to the conservation of the reserve food of the cotyledons because of the sugar supplied.

EXPERIMENTS WITH TIMOTHY (PHLEUM PRATENSE L.)

A considerable number of experiments were made with timothy, but most of the data are not included for the reason that the results obtained were not concordant. This was due to the fact that a constant number of plants could not be maintained in the culture vessels, owing to the difficulty of introducing a uniform number of seeds and to variation in germination. Various tests showed that there is a relation between the number of plants in the culture vessel, and growth of the plants. The greater the number of plants in the culture vessel, the less is the growth of the individual plants therein. Experiments indicate that the limiting factor is a supply of carbon dioxide.

In the following experiments with timothy the plants were grown in the large test tubes. In each tube was placed exactly 50 cubic centimeters of the culture solution containing 1.2 per cent of agar. The seeds were sterilized in the usual manner. The duration of growth varied in the different experiments.

CULTURES IN LIGHT

In this experiment the influence of 2-per-cent solutions of glucose, maltose, and saccharose was to be noted. Unfortunately the maltose and the saccharose cultures became contaminated. Likewise unfortunately for accurate results, the same number of plants was not present in each culture. Since, however, there are fewer plants in the check than in the glucose cultures, the beneficial effect of glucose is in reality greater than the dry-weight figures indicate. The plants grown in the presence of glucose showed a more vigorous appearance than did the check plants. Also, the plants in the presence of glucose showed at the base of the stalk a markedly red coloration, which disappeared after the plants had been kept in the laboratory for a week. The results obtained are given in table 4. In another experiment it was noted that asparagin could serve timothy as a source of nitrogen.

TABLE 4. INFLUENCE OF GLUCOSE ON TIMOTHY

(Plants grown in greenhouse. Duration, April 5 to May 27, 1913, fifty-two days)

Culture solution		Number of plants	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Average weight per plant (milligrams)	Notes
Check no (sugar)	1	17	41	1.11	
	2	15			
	3	5			
Glucose, 2 per cent	1	13	70	1.63	Plants reddish at base
	2	13			
	3	17			

CULTURES IN DARK

In the experiment to determine the influence of sugars in the dark, the plants were grown in the same manner as in the preceding experiment. The solutions used are indicated in table 5. All conditions of the experi-

TABLE 5. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON TIMOTHY GROWN IN INCUBATOR AT 32° C.

(Duration, fifty-two days)

Culture solution		Number of plants	Average height of tops (centimeters)	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Average dry weight per plant (milligrams)
Check (no sugar)	1	6	2.30	5	0.11
	2	29	2.02		
	3	10	2.00		
Glucose, 2 per cent	1	27	3.95	16	0.28
	2	15	5.26		
	3	14	5.85		
Maltose, 2 per cent	1	9	3.88	10	0.24
	2	10	3.45		
	3	22	3.93		
Lactose, 2 per cent	1	18	3.44	12	0.24
	2	16	3.93		
	3	15	3.96		

ment were the same as in the preceding, except that the cultures were kept in the dark in an incubator at a temperature of 32° C. In this experiment the number of plants again differed in the various cultures, but it was found that under the condition of growth — namely, darkness — it is practically immaterial whether or not the number of plants is the same in each culture. When the plants are grown in the light, the greater the number of plants the less is the opportunity for their securing carbon dioxide. In darkness, however, the growth is at the expense of the reserve food or sugar supplied, and the available food under the conditions of the experiment is the only limiting factor.

The results are presented in table 5. It will be noted that glucose, lactose, and maltose are all better than the check. The average height of the plants is least in the check and greatest in the glucose. The difference in the vigor of the different cultures was plainly visible. It is interesting to note that here lactose is apparently utilized, while in other experiments, when the plants were grown in the light, this sugar was not utilized.

INFLUENCE OF LACTOSE

In a preliminary experiment with timothy it was noted that no increase in growth over the check plants was obtained when lactose was supplied

TABLE 6. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS CONCENTRATIONS OF LACTOSE ON GROWTH OF TIMOTHY

(Plants grown in greenhouse. Duration, December 18 to February 18, 1914, sixty-two days)

Culture solution		Number of plants	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Average dry weight per plant (milligrams)
Check (no sugar)	1	60	79.4	1.32
	2	59	63.0	1.07
	3	64	84.0	1.31
Lactose, 0.1 per cent		65	69.0	1.06
Lactose, 0.8 per cent		60	73.0	1.22
Lactose, 1.0 per cent		65	85.0	1.31
Lactose, 2.0 per cent	1	52	66.0	1.27
	2	68	76.0	1.12
Lactose, 2.5 per cent		57	74.0	1.30

to plants grown in the light. In the following experiment a series of various concentrations of lactose were tested, with results as shown in table 6. A large number of seeds were sown in each culture tube, and in no case was there increased growth. Lactose is therefore not assimilated by timothy when the plant is grown in the light.

INFLUENCE OF A MIXTURE OF LACTOSE AND SACCHAROSE

In the preceding experiment it was noted that lactose exercises no beneficial effect on timothy. In the following experiment a mixture of lactose and saccharose was employed. With 0.4 per cent of saccharose added to 2 per cent of lactose there is a marked increase in growth, and still greater growth results when 0.8 per cent of saccharose is added to 2 per cent of lactose. It appears, therefore, that there is an election of saccharose by timothy, and that this sugar is directly assimilated by the plant. The results are given in table 7:

TABLE 7. INFLUENCE OF A MIXTURE OF LACTOSE AND SACCHAROSE ON GROWTH OF TIMOTHY

(Duration, thirty days)

Culture solution		Number of plants	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Average dry weight per plant (milligrams)
Check (no sugar)	1	60	79	1.32
	2	59	63	1.07
	3	64	84	1.31
Lactose, 2 per cent	1	52	66	1.27
	2	68	76	1.12
Lactose, 2 per cent, + saccharose, 0.4 per cent		60	85	1.42
Lactose, 2 per cent, + saccharose, 0.8 per cent		68	124	1.82

CONCLUSION

The results here reported, and the general results of three other extensive experiments with timothy not here reported, demonstrate that the sugars glucose, maltose, and saccharose are absorbed and assimilated by timothy. Lactose is apparently not utilized at all.

EXPERIMENTS WITH RADISH (RAPHANUS SATIVUS L.)

Radish has been used in experiments by Molliard (1907) and by Ravin (1913). Molliard concluded that radish is able to utilize glucose somewhat better than fructose. Maltose is much like glucose in its effect. The following figures from Molliard show the effect of various culture solutions on dry weight of radish:

Culture solution	Dry weight (milligrams)
Knop solution alone	42- 60
Knop + 5 per cent of glucose	109–133
Knop + 5 per cent of saccharose	102–125

Molliard states also that 9.5 per cent of maltose had the same effect as 5 per cent of glucose, with which it is isotonic. The work of Ravin on the influence of glucose and organic acids on radish has already been mentioned.

INFLUENCE OF APPROXIMATELY CARBON-EQUIVALENT SOLUTIONS

The variety of radish used in these experiments was the common garden variety. The seeds were carefully selected for uniformity of size. As culture vessels liter flasks were employed, each containing 200 cubic centimeters of the culture medium (Fig. 3). The seeds were sterilized by immersion in the calcium hypochlorite solution for a period of five hours. Fourteen cultures were set up for each series, and in each flask two seeds were sown. Not all the seeds germinated. In some cultures two plants, and in others only one plant, developed. The latter condition was particularly true for the check series of cultures; it may be that the sugar in the nutrient solution increased the percentage of germination. Because of the difference in germination the final results are given in two tables, since, as has been heretofore stated, a just comparison cannot be made between cultures having unequal numbers of plants. The results appear in tables 8 and 9:

TABLE 8. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON GROWTH OF RADISH
(Two plants in each culture. Duration, February 5 to April 17, 1914, seventy-one days)

Dry weight (in grams)				
Check (no sugar)	Saccharose, 2 per cent	Maltose, 2 per cent	Glucose, 2 per cent	Lactose, 2 per cent
0.960	1.200	1.250	2.250	1.350
0.620	0.950	1.200	0.850	1.050
0.605	1.900	3.060	2.200	1.900
0.775	0.900	0.900	1.150	0.500
0.835		2.400	1.760	1.200
0.950		0.700	1.820	0.700
		1.000	1.220	1.520
		1.150	2.170	0.900
		1.500	1.520	1.030
		2.500	1.720	0.900
		2.000	1.720	1.330
		1.200	2.670	0.730
			1.910	1.380
			1.160	1.300
			2.170	
			1.140	
			2.400	
			1.000	
Average 0.791	Average 1.237	Average 1.572	Average 1.713	Average 1.128

All the sugar cultures, with the exception of those containing 2 per cent of glucose plus 2 per cent of fructose, produced better growth than did the check cultures having no sugar. Comparing the glucose cultures with the check cultures it is noted that the dry weight of the former is more than double that of the latter. Maltose and glucose are somewhat similar in their effect. Lactose also is evidently absorbed and assimilated by the plant. Molliard (1907) also reported the use of lactose, although according to him it was utilized only slightly by the radish.

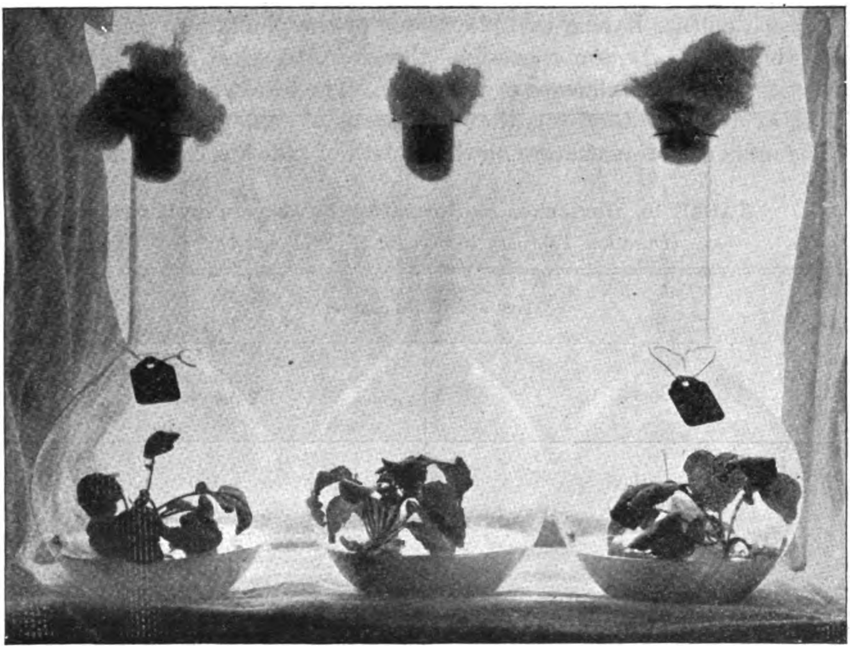


FIG. 3. METHOD OF GROWING RADISH

TABLE 9. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON GROWTH OF RADISH
(One plant in each culture. Duration, seventy-one days)

Dry weight (in grams)				
Check (no sugar)	Maltose, 2 per cent	Glucose, 2 per cent	Lactose, 2 per cent	Glucose, 2 per cent, fructose, 2 per cent
1.120	1.600	2.460	2.400	2.040
1.000	2.800	2.130	1.690	1.350
1.770	1.450	2.370	1.630	1.040
0.810	....	2.620	1.880	1.100
1.420	....	2.890	....	1.400
1.215	....	2.000	....	1.420
1.050	....	2.210	....	....
1.150	....	3.010	....	....
0.900	....	....	....	....
1.650	....	....	....	....
Average 1.208	Average 1.950	Average 2.461	Average 1.900	Average 1.392

In each culture having two plants one of the plants was usually larger than the other. It is not possible, therefore, to select individual plants as a criterion of the influence of the sugar. The total yield of each culture, or the average yield, affords the only means of comparison.

The influence of saccharose on the growth of radish is shown in table 10:

TABLE 10. INFLUENCE OF SACCHAROSE ON GROWTH OF RADISH
(Duration, February 16 to April 17, 1914, sixty days)

Dry weight (in grams)	
Check	Saccharose, 2 per cent
0.900	1.100
0.800	1.100
0.800	1.555
0.570	0.600
0.870	1.300
0.400	1.100
1.206	2.200
0.470	0.350
....	1.240
....	0.720
....	1.320
....	0.750
....	1.200
....	0.600
Average 0.752	Average 1.081

INFLUENCE OF EQUIMOLECULAR SOLUTIONS OF VARIOUS SUGARS

In the preceding experiments approximately carbon-equivalent solutions were employed. In the following experiment isotonic solutions were used, the concentrations of the various solutions tested being 0.05 molecular. Liter flasks were employed as culture vessels, each containing 200 cubic centimeters of the nutrient solution plus 0.5 per cent of agar.

The variety of radish was the same as that used in the preceding experiment, the seeds varying between 12 and 14 milligrams in weight. Only one seed was sown in each flask. The experiment was begun on February 8 and closed on April 15, the duration being sixty-six days. The results are given in table 11:

TABLE 11. INFLUENCE OF EQUIMOLECULAR SOLUTIONS OF 0.05 MOLECULAR CONCENTRATION ON GROWTH OF RADISH

(Duration, sixty-six days)

Culture solution		Dry weight (milligrams)	Sugar absorbed (milligrams)
Check (no sugar)	1	30	....
	2	35	....
Maltose	1	100	....
	2	175	....
	3	125	....
	4	140	....
Lactose	1	100	....
	2	75	....
Glucose	1	120	80.6
	2	162	75.6
Saccharose	1	195	105.0
	2	185	86.2
	3	145	....

It was hoped that the experiment would yield decisive results, for originally ten cultures were prepared for each sugar and fourteen for the check. Only a few of the seeds showed good germination, however, and consequently only thirteen of the original fifty cultures developed plants. The results nevertheless do show the very favorable influence of the sugars on growth. Lactose again is the least beneficial, yet it markedly increases the dry weight.

In none of these cultures was a storage root produced. In one saccharose culture not included in the table, which was badly contaminated with a species of Penicillium and a species of Fusarium, an enlarged root 2 centimeters long by 1 centimeter in diameter was produced. This production was probably due to the augmented carbon dioxide content of the flask, which increased the rate of photosynthesis and consequently produced a more nearly normal plant. In all the other cultures it is probable (see page 758) that the carbon dioxide content of the vessels was lower than the normal, due to the decreased rate of diffusion through the cotton stoppers.

Another interesting observation was made in one of the lactose cultures. The seed germinated, and the cotyledons increased in size to about 1 centimeter in diameter and then turned yellow. Increase in size continued until finally a root 1 centimeter in length and 0.5 centimeter in diameter was developed. It appears that in this case the radish behaved as a saprophyte.

In two of the maltose cultures not included in the table, the leaves, instead of being compound, were simple, narrow, and much elongated, which is suggestive of certain morphological modifications obtained by Molliard (1907).

EXPERIMENTS WITH WINTER VETCH (VICIA VILLOSA ROTH)

Winter vetch was selected for the more detailed studies of the influence of the different sugars on plant growth. This plant was chosen because of the ease of obtaining uniform seed, the ease of handling, the lack in the seed of a very large reserve, and the resistance of the seed to the sterilizing agent. Furthermore, the plant is one that grows rapidly, and in its early seedling stage is possessed of an anthocyanin pigment.

INFLUENCE OF CERTAIN DISACCHARIDES ON GROWTH

In the experiment to determine the influence of certain disaccharides on growth the large cylinders were used as culture chambers. Each cylinder contained 500 cubic centimeters of the nutrient solution plus 1.2 per cent of agar and the sugar to be tested. The seeds selected were uniform in character and of an average dry weight of 30 milligrams, the variation in weight being 2 milligrams. The seeds were sterilized by immersion in the calcium hypochlorite solution for nine hours. One series of cultures was maintained in the dark, and a second series was maintained in the greenhouse. The former cultures were grown in the laboratory at an average temperature of 23° C. The results of the experiment on cultures kept in the dark are summarized in table 12:

TABLE 12. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON GROWTH OF VETCH IN THE DARK
(Duration, fifty-four days. Dry weight of seed, 30 milligrams)

Culture solution		Length of tops (centimeters)		Length of roots (centimeters)		Total dry weight (milligrams)	Dry weight per plant (milligrams)	Loss in weight per plant (milligrams)
Check (no sugar)	1	12.5 19.0 15.0 20.0	16.6	2 3 3 3	2.7	67	16.7	13.3
	2	13.0 13.0 27.0	17.7	7 4 3	4.7	50	16.7	13.3
Lactose, 2 per cent	1	36.0 16.0 34.0	28.7	9 4 8	7.0	57	19.0	11.0
	2	25.0 25.0 29.0	26.3	9 8 5	7.3	60	20.0	10.0
Maltose, 2 per cent		26.0 28.0 21.0	25.0	9 6 5	6.7	65	21.7	8.3
Saccharose, 2 per cent		40.0 35.0 16.0 22.0 35.0	29.6	10 10 7 7 7	8.2	118	23.6	6.4

The check cultures grown in the dark lost nearly one-half of the original dry weight. The saccharose, on the other hand, permitted considerable growth involving a large expenditure of energy but at only a very small loss of the original weight. In every case better growth occurred in the presence of a sugar, the saccharose being better than the maltose, and the maltose better than the lactose, in the nutrition of the plant. In this connection it was noted that the agar medium containing saccharose showed reducing sugars in the immediate region of the roots, but none was detected in the central part of the agar mass. As stated previously, the nutrient solution is without effect on saccharose, and consequently the presence of reducing sugars must be ascribed to the secretion of the enzyme invertase or to the excretion from the roots of the reducing sugar.

The results obtained with cultures grown in the greenhouse are given in table 13:

TABLE 13. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON GROWTH OF VETCH IN THE GREENHOUSE
(Duration, sixty-three days. Weight of seed, 30 milligrams)

Culture solution		Culture number	Number of plants	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Average dry weight per plant (milligrams)	Gain in weight per plant (milligrams)
Check (no sugar)	1	73	5	348	70	40
	2	83	4	298	74	44
	3	85	2	157	78	48
Saccharose, 2 per cent	1	71	3	499	166	136
	2	81	4	646	161	131
Maltose, 2 per cent	1	70	4	477	119	89
	2	84	4	464	116	86
	3	74	4	406	101	71
Lactose, 2 per cent		82	3	300	100	70

Notes were taken on the lengths of roots and tops, but the root length and the height of tops varied with the degree of branching. Consequently the figures obtained are not indicative of the vigor of the plants. The differences in the cultures were easily observable, as is shown by representative cultures in figure 4.

All the plants were tested for starch and also for reducing sugars. No starch was found in any of the plants, but in those

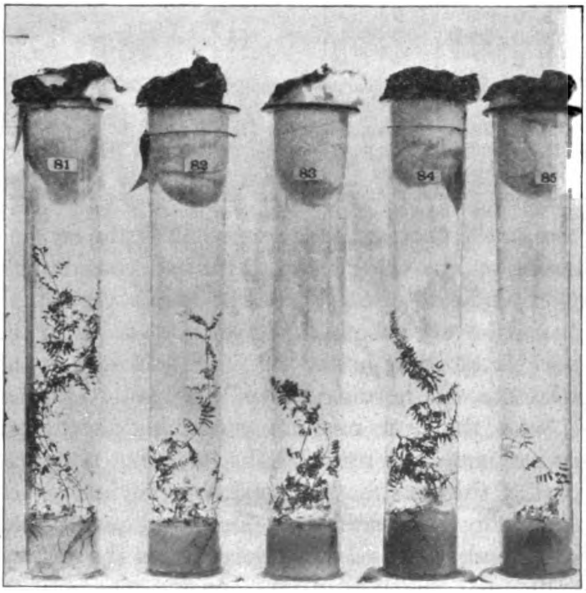


FIG. 4. INFLUENCE OF SUGAR ON VETCH
81, Saccharose; 82, lactose; 83, check (no sugar); 84, maltose; 85, check (no sugar)

grown in the presence of saccharose traces of reducing sugars were detected by the use of Benedict's (1908–09) solution. The agar in the immediate region of the traversing roots showed traces of reducing sugars, which were made more evident by the use of Benedict's solution. The agar from the center of the mass through which the roots had not penetrated gave no indication of reducing sugars. The agar was also tested for hexose sugar by means of osazone tests. None was noted except in the saccharose culture.

A number of the cultures of this series were examined on March 7, and the results as regards green weight determinations at that time are given in table 14. The results are concordant with the data obtained from the cultures examined on March 16 (table 13). Unfortunately the saccharose culture examined on March 7 showed contamination by a yeast, and its increased growth may have been due in part to an increased supply of carbon dioxide produced as a result of this contamination.

TABLE 14. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON VETCH GROWN IN THE GREENHOUSE
(Duration, fifty-four days)

Culture solution	Length of tops (centimeters)	Length of roots (centimeters)	Total green weight (grams)	Green weight per plant (grams)
Check (no sugar)	34.0	17.1	1.629	0.407
Maltose, 2 per cent	37.0	15.0	3.720	0.930
Lactose, 2 per cent	27.5	21.0	2.386	0.596
Saccharose, 2 per cent *	47.0	26.0	6.428	1.607

* This culture was contaminated by a yeast.

INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON VETCH GROWN IN WATER CULTURES

In all the preceding experiments agar media were employed. The roots of plants do not readily penetrate the agar, and furthermore the adsorptive properties of the agar probably interfere somewhat with the absorption of the dissolved substances, as well as lessen the action of any enzymes that might be secreted by the roots. For these reasons, and also when it is desired to measure quantitatively the amount of sugar absorbed by the plants in the various cultures, the use of water cultures is advantageous.

In the experiments with water cultures museum cylinders 30 by 50 centimeters in size were used as culture vessels, each containing 50 cubic centimeters of the nutrient solution to be tested. As a support for the seedling each cylinder was provided with a perforated aluminum receptacle (the lower part of a tea ball, the holes of which had been greatly enlarged) suspended by a string just below the cotton plug with which the cylinder was fitted. The whole was then sterilized in the autoclave. It was necessary to immerse the base of the cylinder in a pan of water in order to avoid breakage during sterilization. Before sowing the seed the part of the string on the outside was sterilized by moistening with calcium hypochlorite solution and wiping with a piece of cotton saturated with alcohol. The cotton plug and the string were then flamed. Moistening the string with the calcium hypochlorite solution removed all danger of its burning, and also aided in the sterilization of the string. Two seeds were planted in each receptacle, and the receptacles were then lowered so as to be just

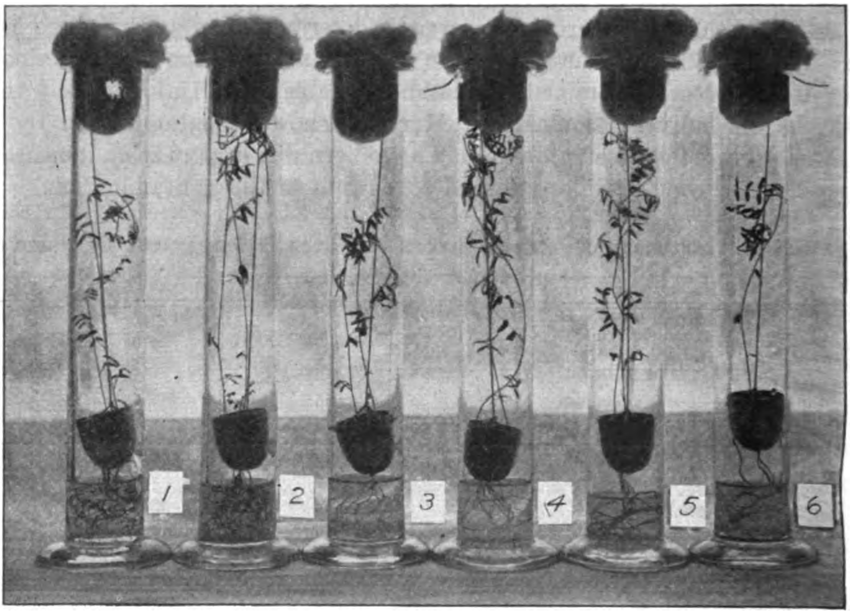


FIG. 5. INFLUENCE OF SUGAR ON VETCH. WATER CULTURE
1, Saccharose; 2, fructose; 3, lactose; 4, check (no sugar); 5, glucose; 6, maltose

above the surface of the nutrient solution (Fig. 5). The seeds were selected for uniformity of shape and size, each having a dry weight of 29 milligrams. They were sterilized in the usual way and two seeds were sown in each cylinder. The cultures were made in quadruplicate. The concentration of sugar employed was in all cases approximately 1 per cent. Owing to delayed germination of some of the seeds, to failure of germination of others, and to contamination in a few cultures, only one-half of the cultures were available for comparison. The sugars were determined by the Ahllin modification of the Fehling method. The disaccharide sugars were hydrolyzed and the reducing values were then determined. The results obtained are presented in table 15:

TABLE 15. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON THE GROWTH OF VETCH IN WATER CULTURES

(Duration, January 19 to February 27, 1915, thirty-nine days)

Culture solution		Number of plants	Dry weight of roots (milligrams)	Dry weight of tops (milligrams)	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Gain in weight (milligrams)	Average dry weight per plant (milligrams)	Gain in weight per plant (milligrams)	Sugar absorbed (milligrams)
Check (no sugar)...	1	2	13	67	80	22	40.0	11.0	......
	2	2	15	68	83	25	41.5	12.5	......
	3	1	8	32	40	11	40.0	11.0	......
Lactose...............		1	16	40	56	27	56.0	27.0	49.0
Glucose............	1	2	41	81	122	64	61.0	32.0	72.6
	2	1	30	62	92	63	92.0	63.0	66.5
Maltose..............		1	20	42	62	33	62.0	33.0	24.4
Fructose.............		2	39	75	114	56	57.0	28.0	113.0
Saccharose	*1	1	55	60	115	86	115.0	86.0	133.4
	†2	2	77	96	173	115	86.5	57.5	141.0

* 151 milligrams of reducing sugar present.
† 125 milligrams of reducing sugar present.

In every case there is a marked increase in yield when sugar has been supplied. The results are not conclusive, however, with respect to the order of assimilability, although saccharose again appears to be the most favorable. In all cases the amount of sugar utilized is greater than the dry weight increase except in the maltose culture. This is in keeping with the results of J. Laurent (1904), and is explainable by the high rate of respiration when the plant is provided with sugar (Palladine and Komleff, 1902, and Maige and Nicolas, 1910).

The plants grown in fructose, glucose, saccharose, and maltose were easily distinguished from the check plants not only by a more vigorous growth but also by the development of pigment throughout the entire length of the stem. The color varied from pink to purplish, the fructose culture showing a darker color than the others. Little color was produced in the presence of lactose. The roots of the plants grown in the presence of saccharose or fructose were in general thicker and showed a tendency to cork formation. In general the roots of all the sugar culture plants except those grown in lactose were very much branched, while those of the check plants were long and slender (Fig. 5).

As in the preceding experiments, it was found that the saccharose of the culture medium was partially inverted. The reducing sugar determined in saccharose culture 1 was equivalent to 0.151 gram of glucose, while that in saccharose culture 2 was equivalent to 0.125 gram. Approximately one-fourth of the original sugar content was found inverted at the conclusion of the experiment. The check solutions did not give even a qualitative test for reducing sugar, and no transformation of the lactose or of the maltose was found to have occurred.

A second experiment, similar to the preceding, was set up, the object of which was a comparison of glucose and saccharose on the growth of vetch in water cultures. Again the museum jars were used as culture vessels, with perforated aluminum receptacles for supporting the plants. The concentration of sugar employed was 1 per cent, and 50 cubic centimeters of the solution was used in each culture. The experiment was begun on March 30, 1915, and concluded on April 24. Unfortunately the comparison of glucose and saccharose is not conclusive, since in each of the glucose cultures only one plant developed. However, if glucose 2 is compared with saccharose 2 the advantage is in favor of saccharose. The results are given in table 16:

TABLE 16. INFLUENCE OF GLUCOSE AND SACCHAROSE ON GROWTH OF VETCH IN WATER CULTURE

(Duration, twenty-five days. Weight of seed, 30 milligrams)

Culture solution		Number of plants	Dry weight of tops (milligrams)	Dry weight of roots (milligrams)	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Gain or loss in weight (milligrams)	Sugar absorbed (milligrams)
Check (no sugar)	1	2	62	9.0	71.0	+11.0	....
	2	1	25	3.5	28.5	−1.5	....
Glucose..........	1	1	52	7.0	59.0	+29.0	39.0
	2	1	49	8.0	57.0	+27.0	36.0
Saccharose.....	*1	2	81	31.0	112.0	+52.0	85.7
	†2	2	80	50.0	130.0	+70.0	64.6
	‡3	1	60	16.0	76.0	+46.0	55.0

* 66 milligrams of reducing sugar present.
† 50 milligrams of reducing sugar present.
‡ 88 milligrams of reducing sugar present.

INFLUENCE OF EQUIMOLECULAR SOLUTIONS OF GLUCOSE, MALTOSE, AND SACCHAROSE

In all the preceding experiments in which the comparative effects of the different sugars were to be noted, the sugars were used in approximately carbon-equivalent solutions, the concentrations being 1 or 2 per cent. Saccharose seemed to be utilized more readily than glucose, and glucose more readily than maltose. Lactose, as was to be expected, proved of the least benefit. Since the carbon-equivalent solutions are not all equimolecular, the osmotic relations of the disaccharides and the hexoses are different. As already stated, the 2-per-cent glucose solution is equivalent to a 0.111 gram molecular solution, while the 2-per-cent disaccharide is equivalent to a 0.058 gram molecular solution. The osmotic pressure (theoretical) of the glucose solution is therefore approximately twice as great as that of the disaccharide, and, as compared with the disaccharide, glucose might be expected to act disadvantageously to the growth of the plants because of this higher osmotic pressure. The increased growth with increase in concentration above 2 per cent of glucose indicates, however, that the 2-per-cent glucose solution has an advantage over the saccharose.

In order to obviate this condition, equimolecular solutions of glucose, maltose, and saccharose were employed. While with the carbon-equivalent solutions glucose is probably at an advantage because of increased osmotic pressure, with equimolecular solutions glucose suffers by comparison because of less available carbon. For every molecule of saccharose entering the plant there is made available one molecule of glucose and one of fructose, by virtue of the action of the enzyme invertase. Thus it is evident that glucose would have to penetrate twice as rapidly as saccharose in order to produce the same effect.

In this experiment the glucose, maltose, and saccharose used were of 0.05 gram molecular concentration in Pfeffer's solution at one-half its normal strength. Large cylinders were used, containing 200 cubic centimeters of the nutrient solution plus 0.5 per cent of agar. In each cylinder two seeds, each weighing 32 milligrams, were sown, after being sterilized in the usual way. The cultures were made in quadruplicate, but again, as in the preceding experiment, a number of the cultures had to be discarded because of delayed germination and other conditions. The sugar determination was made gravimetrically by the Fehling method. The nutrient medium was made up to 1000 cubic centimeters, and the sample taken for analysis was freed of agar by precipitation with lead subacetate; the lead being removed by treatment with anhydrous sodium sulfate. The results obtained are given in table 17:

TABLE 17. INFLUENCE OF EQUIMOLECULAR SUGAR SOLUTIONS ON VETCH
(Duration, thirty-three days)

Culture solution		Number of plants	Green weight (grams)	Dry weight of roots (grams)	Dry weight of tops (grams)	Total dry weight (grams)	Gain in weight (grams)	Sugar at beginning of experiment (grams)	Sugar at end of experiment (grams)	Sugar absorbed (grams)
Check (no sugar)......	1	2	1.82	0.036	0.133	0.169	0.105	......	......	....
	2	2	1.52	0.028	0.128	0.156	0.092	......	......	....
Glucose......	1	2	1.90	0.040	0.153	0.193	0.129	1.759	1.675	0.084
	2	2	2.30	0.043	0.213	0.256	0.192	1.759	1.660	0.099
Maltose......	1	1	1.32	0.027	0.113	0.140	0.108	3.577	3.545	0.032
	2	2	2.02	0.054	0.150	0.204	0.140	3.577	3.480	0.097
Saccharose...	[*]1	2	2.55	0.080	0.190	0.270	0.206	3.666	3.544	0.122
	[†]2	2	2.40	0.073	0.190	0.263	0.199	3.666	3.550	0.116

[*] 0.302 gram of reducing sugar present.
[†] 0.342 gram of reducing sugar present.

Here again the results are not so consistent as might be expected. The only conclusion to be drawn is that sugar is absorbed and increases the growth of the plants. Saccharose again appears to be more beneficial than glucose or maltose. Further evidence is obtained relative to the secretion of invertase from the roots.

INFLUENCE OF GLUCOSE ON ROOT GROWTH

In every culture in which a sugar was used a very marked effect on root growth was noted. In one experiment vetch was grown for ninety days, on the one hand in 0.05 molecular concentration of glucose and on the other hand in the absence of glucose. The influence of the glucose on root growth is graphically illustrated in figure 6.

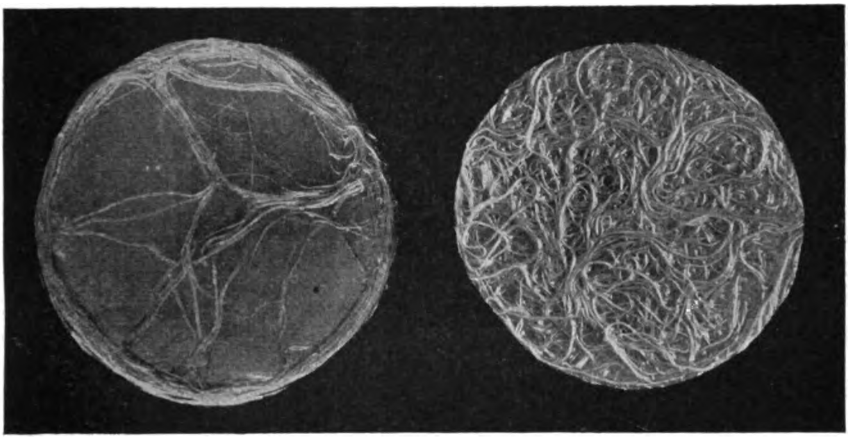


FIG. 6. INFLUENCE OF GLUCOSE ON GROWTH OF ROOTS OF VETCH
Left, check (no sugar); right, glucose culture
(Photographed through bottom of large glass cylinder)

INFLUENCE OF SUGAR ON RESPIRATION AND GROWTH

Palladine (1901) noted the influence of various sugars on the respiration of etiolated leaves of *Vicia Faba*. The leaves were left for a time in various sugar solutions and their respiration was then determined. The substances used, in the order of their accelerating effect on respiration, were fructose, glucose, saccharose, maltose, raffinose, glycerin, and mannite.

Maige and Nicolas (1910) studied the influence of various concentrations of different sugars on the turgescence and respiration of etiolated shoots of bean and the excised embryo of kidney bean. The plant material was immersed in the sugar solutions and the respiratory rate was then measured. The experiments were not made under sterile conditions, but since the duration of the respiration determination was but one hour this precaution was not necessary. With the etiolated shoots of bean the following data were obtained on the relative increases in evolution of carbon dioxide, the intake of oxygen, and the respiratory coefficients. The concentration of sugar was 10 parts per 100.

	Carbon dioxide (CO_2) (grams per hour)	Oxygen (O_2) (grams per hour)	$\frac{CO_2}{O_2}$.
Saccharose	1.73	1.28	1.35
Maltose	1.47	1.26	1.16
Lactose	1.05	0.95	1.09
Glucose	1.75	1.32	1.32
Fructose	1.33	1.10	1.20

According to these investigators the influence of the sugar depends on its penetration, and the relative increase in respiration follows the order of penetrability. Similar results were obtained with the embryo of kidney bean. It is probable, however, that other factors than the degree of penetrability determine the respiratory values. The results of Maige and Nicolas do not agree with those obtained by Palladine, since in the former fructose has the fourth place in order of influence on respiration.

Molliard (1907) measured the respiration of aerial parts of radish which had been grown for about two months in cultures with and without sugar. The plants supplied with glucose and fructose showed a greater evolution of carbon dioxide per gram of dry matter per hour than did the plants grown in the culture medium without sugar.

Lubimenko (1906 a) investigated the influence of various sugars on the respiration of the plantlets of *Pinus Pinea* which were grown from embryos separated from the seeds. The plants were grown under sterile conditions.

It was found that saccharose, glucose, fructose, galactose, maltose, and lactose increased the amount of carbon dioxide evolved. Lactose was but slightly effective in this respect, while arabinose was apparently without any influence. The respiratory quotient was increased notably by saccharose, less by glucose or fructose, and only very slightly by the other sugars. In cultures supplied with either saccharose, glucose, or fructose, alcohol was formed as a product of respiration. It could be detected by its characteristic odor when the nutrient solution was distilled or the germinated embryos were heated.

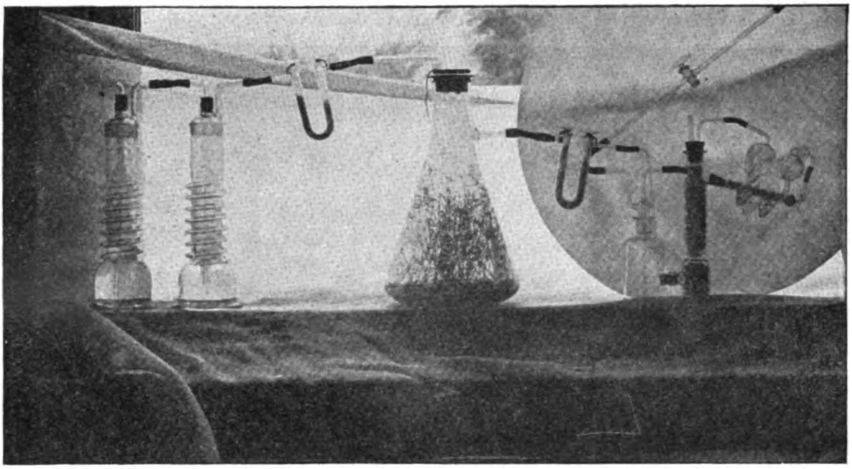


FIG. 7. RESPIRATION APPARATUS

It is clear, therefore, that sugar may be absorbed by leaves and shoots, and that the sugar absorbed increases respiration. The experiments just described, however, afford no information as to the continued effect of the sugars either on respiration or on growth. With the view of solving these two problems, and also of determining the period when the initial assimilation of the sugar occurs, the investigation here described was undertaken.

The growth chambers used in this experiment consisted of eight 2-liter suction flasks, shown in figure 8. Each culture chamber was fitted with a two-holed rubber stopper. Through one of the holes was inserted a thermometer, and through the other a glass tube extending to within a few inches of the bottom of the flask. The upper part of the glass tube was bent at a right angle, and attached to it was a U-tube filled with cotton. The side tube of the culture vessel was similarly provided with a U-tube. The culture chamber, with the U-tube, was connected on one side with a Friedrich gas-washing bottle containing a solution of potassium hydroxide (KOH) of a specific gravity of 1.27. This gas-washing bottle was in turn connected with a large 10-liter aspirator bottle, from which a large glass tube passed out of doors, whence the air was obtained. The side tube of the culture vessel was connected by means of the U-tube and glass and rubber tubing with a calcium chloride tower, which in turn was connected with a potash bulb having a small calcium chloride tube attached. Finally, the potash bulb was connected with a safety gas-washing bottle, and this bottle was connected with a Richard's pump.

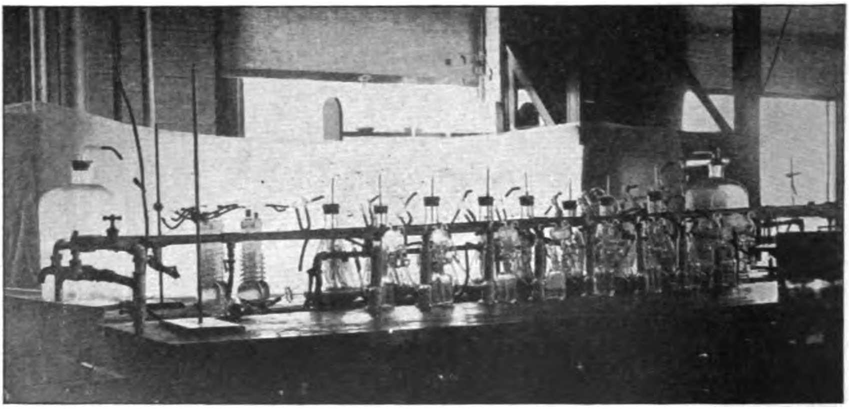


FIG. 8. RESPIRATION APPARATUS, SHOWING ARRANGEMENT OF WHOLE

All the usual technical precautions were observed in fitting the respiration apparatus, eight series of which were set up side by side. Two large 10-liter bottles were employed, to each of which four of the series were connected. The purpose of the large aspirator bottle was to permit the outside air to acquire the room temperature. The purpose of the cotton-filled U-tubes was to prevent access of spores or bacteria to the culture chamber. The entire apparatus is seen in figure 8, and an individual respiration apparatus in which two Friedrich bottles were used is shown in figure 7.

Pfeffer's solution was used, with the addition of 1.2 per cent of agar and the sugar to be tested. Control cultures lacking sugar were also set up. In each culture vessel was placed 300 cubic centimeters of the solution to be tested. The culture flask was then stoppered, and the entire top of the vessel swathed with cotton and cheesecloth to prevent the collection of spores or bacteria on the stoppers after sterilization of the vessels and their contents in the autoclave.

Eight separate lots of 100 seeds each, selected for uniformity, were placed in weighing dishes and weighed. The water content was also determined in sample lots. Into each of the weighing dishes, the capacity of which was 25 cubic centimeters, 20 cubic centimeters of the calcium hypochlorite solution was poured The seeds were immersed for thirty-two hours, after which each lot was transferred to the culture vessels, the calcium hypochlorite solution being first poured off.

The seeds were sown on June 16 and the first respiration determinations were begun on June 17 at 11 a. m. The first weighings were made at 11 a. m. on June 18. Unfortunately the determinations for the first few days, except in a few cases, were not accurate. This was due to several causes — to leakage in some of the series, while in other cases the water pumps were not properly regulated. Beginning with June 20, however, the entire apparatus was in good working order, and the results from that date are consistent and accurate in so far as this type of apparatus will permit. It is seen in table 18, in which the results of the experiment are given, that by June 20 the sugar cultures showed greater evolution of carbon dioxide than did the check cultures. Individual cultures may show slight variation, but this is to be expected since a slight variation in growth, as regards both root and top development, may occur in the different growth chambers. The total carbon dioxide evolution in the duplicate cultures are in very close agreement.

The order in which the cultures are given in table 18 indicates the relative positions occupied by them in the experiment. Those at the right side of the table were slightly favored because of having a slightly better light exposure. This accounts for the greater increase in carbon dioxide of check culture 2 as compared with check culture 1, or of glucose culture 1 as compared with glucose culture 2. The maltose culture 2 became contaminated with a mold, and consequently the data are of little value except as a check on maltose culture 1 during the earlier stages of the experiment.

TABLE 18. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON RESPIRATION OF VETCH
(Figures in bold-faced type represent carbon dioxide evolved in the daytime)

Day and hour of examination	Carbon dioxide evolved (in milligrams)								Mean temperature (Centigrade)
	Maltose 1	Check 1 (no sugar)	Saccharose 2	Glucose 2	Saccharose 1	Check 2 (no sugar)	Maltose 2	Glucose 1	
June 17, 11 a. m., to June 18, 11 a. m.	......	......	......	......	14	12	......	......	21°
June 18, 11 a. m., to June 19, 11 a. m.	......	33	......	......	35	30	30	......	24°
June 19, 11 a. m., to June 20, 11 a. m.	......	......	......	44	36	31	34	39	21°
June 20, 11 a. m., to June 21, 11 a. m.	44	46	56	46	52	41	53	56	19°
June 21, 11 a. m., to June 22, 11 a. m.	68	61	66	52	77	51	87	78	20°
June 22, 11 a. m., to June 23, 10 a. m.	98	73	79	90	109	89	100	85	27°
June 23, 10 a. m., to June 24, 10 a. m.	129	105	126	117	123	94	137	121	30°
June 24, 10 a. m. to 5 p. m.	**60**	**32**	**50**	**78**	**68**	**54**	**71**	**57**	30°
June 24, 5 p. m., to June 25, 10 a. m.	125	83	110	106	128	95	118	133	
June 25, 10 a. m. to 7 p. m.	**31**	**34**	**58**	**63**	**54**	**46**	**88**	**75**	27°
June 25, 7 p. m., to June 26, 9 a. m.	70	53	77	70	76	51	99	85	
June 26, 9 a. m., to June 27, 10 a. m.	95	79	126	158	120	69	136	131	27°
June 27, 10 a. m. to 5 p. m.	**19**	**21**	**39**	**32**	**27**	**18**	**30**	**22**	26°
June 27, 5 p. m., to June 28, 10 a. m.	84	59	86	78	84	56	119	103	
June 28, 10 a. m., to June 29, 10 a. m.	70	41	111	102	100	44	140	121	24°
June 29, 10 a. m. to 6 p. m.	**12**	**10**	**34**	**22**	**6**	**12**	......	**18**	22°
June 29, 6 p. m., to June 30, 10 a. m.	47	30	69	57	62	31	......	66	
June 30, 10 a. m. to 4 p. m.	**12**	**8**	**30**	**11**	**35**	**3**	......	**23**	22°
Total carbon dioxide evolved from June 20 to June 30	964	735	1,117	1,082	1,121	754	......	1,174	....

The results as shown in table 18 indicate that as early as the fourth day the sugars were exerting an accelerative influence on respiration, and the relative differences between the sugar cultures and the checks increased with the progress of time. For example, on the fourth day the carbon dioxide evolution was 56 milligrams for saccharose culture 2 and only 41 milligrams for check culture 2; while during the last twenty-two hours of the experiment it was 99 milligrams for saccharose culture 2 as compared with 34 milligrams for check culture 2. In the early stages of growth the developing seeds had available the reserve food of the cotyledons. Toward the end of the experiment, however, the check plants were virtually starved, but the sugar-fed plants, constantly absorbing food from the medium, developed in an almost normal condition. The figures for carbon dioxide evolved during certain hours of daylight are shown in the table in bold-faced type. In nearly every case it will be noted that the carbon dioxide evolution in the daytime is greater in cultures supplied with sugar than in those lacking sugar. This is due,

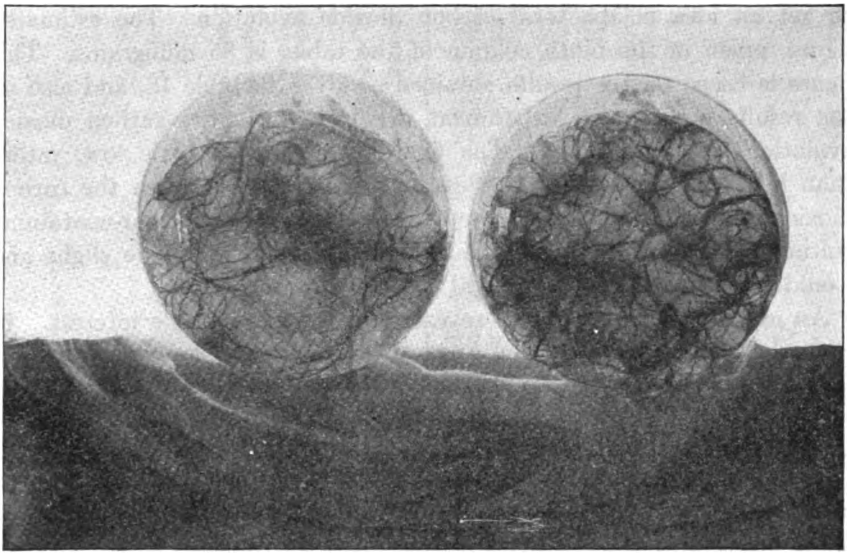


FIG. 9. INFLUENCE OF GLUCOSE ON ROOT GROWTH
Left, check (no sugar); right, glucose culture
(Photographed through bottom of culture vessel)

not only to an increased rate of respiration, but also to the fact that the root systems of the sugar-fed plants are greater than those of the check plants. This fact is brought out in table 19, and, in the case of the glucose and the check cultures, in figure 9.

All the data for this experiment are summarized in table 19. Since the respiration figures for the first three days were not obtained for all the cultures, it was necessary to make an estimate for these days in order to get an idea of the total carbon dioxide evolution. The estimated figure, given in the ninth column of the table, is 85 milligrams. This figure is based on the results obtained as given in table 18, and also on the results of a similar experiment in which the entire carbon dioxide evolution was determined. The figure is perhaps a little low, rather than high, and furthermore no distinction is made between the carbon dioxide evolved by the checks and that evolved by the sugar-containing cultures. The difference for this period, however, would be slight and would not at all affect the general conclusions.

An examination of table 19 reveals data of considerable interest. In general the dry weights of the roots of the sugar-fed plants are approximately double those of the check cultures. This is shown in figure 9 in the case of one of the glucose cultures. The weights of the tops in the various cultures show considerable similarity, although the sugar cultures average higher than the check cultures. It would appear that the behavior of the roots is very similar to that of a purely saprophytic organism.

It is of interest to note that the saccharose cultures and one of the glucose cultures showed a gain in weight over the original dry weight of the seed. The maltose and the glucose are not so beneficial as the saccharose. The sugar-fed cultures, as was to be expected, showed a greater growth than the checks, and a greater carbon dioxide evolution. The failure to lose in dry weight is not due to a conservation of the reserve food of the seed, but to the absorption of sugars, this absorbed food permitting greater growth, resulting in an increase in dry weight.

The glucose and starch equivalents of the carbon dioxide evolved are given in the last two columns. In the case of those cultures that showed a gain in weight, it would be logical to assume that the sugar absorbed equaled approximately the glucose equivalents. Unfortunately the sugar

TABLE 19. SUMMARY OF DATA CONCERNING INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS SUGARS ON GROWTH AND RESPIRATION OF VETCH

Culture solution		Original dry weight of seeds (grams)	Number of plants	Number of un-germi-nated seeds	Dry weight of roots (grams)	Dry weight of tops (grams)	Total dry weight (grams)	Gain or loss in weight (grams)	Carbon dioxide evolved (in grams)			Glu-cose equiv-alent to carbon dioxide (grams)	Starch equiv-alent to carbon dioxide (grams)
									June 17 to June 20	June 20 to June 30	Total		
Check (no sugar).......	1	2.835	94	6	0.235	1.997	2.232	—0.603	0.085	0.735	0.820	0.5590	0.5031
	2	2.816	94	6	0.240	2.056	2.296	—0.520	0,085	0.754	0.839	0.5720	0.5148
Maltose, 2 per cent.....	1	2.820	94	6	0.447	2.224	2.671	—0.149	0.085	0.964	1.049	0.7205	0.6485
	2	2.832	95	5	0.476	2.288	2.764	—0.068	0.085	Contaminated toward end of experiment			
Glucose, 2 per cent.....	1	2.860	95	5	0.415	2.266	2.681	—0.179	0.085	1.175	1.260	0.8590	0.7731
	2	2.826	93	7	0.444	2.400	2.844	+0.018	0.085	1.082	1.167	0.7954	0.7159
Saccharose, 2 per cent...	1	2.908	94	6	0.561	2.356	2.917	+0.009	0.085	1.121	1.206	0.8222	0.7400
	2	2.808	94	6	0.547	2.345	2.892	+0.084	0.085	1.117	1.202	0.8193	0.7375

determinations were not made. Qualitative tests showed the presence of reducing sugars in the media containing saccharose.

The results of the experiment are in agreement with the results obtained by Maige and Nicolas (1910) and contrary to the conclusion of Palladine (1901) — though it is hardly to be expected that the data from long-continued respiratory rates should agree with that for a short-period rate. Saccharose and glucose are somewhat similar in their beneficial effects, the former being slightly better than glucose, and glucose better than maltose.

Four attempts were made to repeat this experiment, but in every case the results had to be discarded owing to the occurrence of contaminations in nearly all the culture vessels. In every case the contamination was due to the introduction of one or two dead seeds into the growth chamber. It appeared to be almost impossible to sterilize the dead seeds, and no means was available for their detection; although it was noted in general that the failure of vetch seeds to bleach in the hypochlorite solution was indicative of failure to germinate. One preliminary experiment, in which glucose alone was tested in its effect on growth and respiration, yielded results similar to those obtained with that sugar in the experiment already described.

INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS CONCENTRATIONS OF SUGARS ON PLANT GROWTH

Molliard (1907) has shown that increasing the concentration of sugar beyond 2 per cent effects a corresponding increase in the dry weight of plants, although the higher concentrations do not permit of normal plant development. No investigations have been made on the influence of a series of lower concentrations of sugars on plant growth, and from the practical standpoint this is of greater importance; for it is evident that if organic matter is directly absorbed by a plant growing under normal conditions, then the plant must have the ability to take from the soil solution organic substances present in extremely weak concentrations. Aside from the practical aspect of the question, information on the subject is desirable for purely physiological reasons. Investigations were accordingly made with cabbage, sweet clover, crimson clover, and vetch.

EXPERIMENTS WITH CABBAGE (BRASSICA OLERACEA L.)

In the experiments with cabbage large test tubes were employed as culture vessels, each containing 50 cubic centimeters of the nutrient solution plus 1.2 per cent of agar and the sugar to be tested. A variety of cabbage known as Wakefield was used, and the seeds were carefully selected with regard to uniformity. The seeds were sterilized by immersion in the hypochlorite solution for sixteen hours. An attempt was made to sow in each tube twelve seeds, but this was not successful in all cases because of the haste necessary in sowing the seed so as to avoid danger of contamination. The experiment was started on December 20, 1913, and discontinued on February 18, 1914. The results with different concentrations of maltose are given in table 20:

TABLE 20. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS CONCENTRATIONS OF MALTOSE ON GROWTH OF CABBAGE

(Plants grown in greenhouse. Duration, twenty-nine days)

Culture solution			Number of plants	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Average weight per plant (milligrams)	
Check (no sugar)		1	12	95	7.9	6.9
		2	11	63	5.7	
Maltose	0.1 per cent	1	13	98	7.5	7.7
		2	11	81	7.4	
		3	11	90	8.2	
	0.2 per cent	1	12	95	7.9	7.7
		2	12	86	7.2	
		3	12	96	8.0	
	0.4 per cent	1	12	112	9.3	9.0
		2	12	105	8.7	
	0.8 per cent		13	126	9.7	9.7
	1.5 per cent	1	12	126	10.5	11.5
		2	12	150	12.5	
	2.0 per cent	1	11	140	12.7	11.9
		2	12	134	11.2	
	2.5 per cent		12	174	14.5	14.5

The table shows a progressive increase in the dry weight of the cabbage with increase in concentration of maltose. At the lowest concentration there appears to be a slight increase in dry weight over the check, but the effect becomes marked only when a concentration of 0.4 per cent is reached..

In another experiment the influence of a mixture of saccharose and maltose was studied. The conditions of this experiment were identical with those of the preceding. The results, given in table 21, show that 2 per cent of maltose permits greater growth than that of the checks, and that the addition of saccharose increases the growth still further. Evidently the sugars are absorbed and assimilated.

TABLE 21. INFLUENCE OF A MIXTURE OF MALTOSE AND SACCHAROSE ON GROWTH O CABBAGE

(Plants grown in greenhouse. Duration, twenty-nine days)

Culture solution	Number of plants	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Average weight per plant (milligrams)
Check (no sugar) 1	12	95	7.9
Check (no sugar) 2	11	63	5.7
Maltose, 2 per cent	12	134	11.2
Maltose, 2 per cent, plus saccharose, 0.4 per cent	12	153	12.7
Maltose, 2 per cent, plus saccharose, 1.6 per cent	12	168	14.0

In another experiment a culture containing 2 per cent of maltose plus 0.2 per cent of saccharose, with fourteen plants, yielded a dry weight of 138 milligrams, while a culture containing 2 per cent of maltose plus 1.6 per cent of saccharose, with the same number of plants, yielded a dry weight of 155 milligrams.

EXPERIMENT WITH SWEET CLOVER (MELILOTUS ALBA DESR.)

In the experiment with sweet clover the plants were grown in large test tubes, on a nutrient solution plus 1.2 per cent of agar. The seeds were sterilized by immersion for twenty-four hours in the hypochlorite solution. Seven seeds were sown in each test tube. Not every seed germinated, as is indicated in table 22, in which only the average results of the cultures are given. Unfortunately the results from the different cultures are not entirely comparable, owing to the difference in the number of plants per culture. Still this difference is sufficiently small to warrant the general conclusion that increase in concentration results in increased growth.

TABLE 22. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS CONCENTRATIONS OF GLUCOSE AND SACCHAROSE ON GROWTH OF SWEET CLOVER

(Duration, June 19 to August 1, 1914, forty-three days)

Culture solution		Number of cultures	Total number of plants	Average number of plants per culture	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Average weight per plant (milligrams)
Check (no sugar)		18	83	4.6	708	8.5
Glucose	0.1 per cent	8	46	5.7	480	10.4
	0.2 per cent	6	29	4.8	318	11.0
	0.4 per cent	5	26	5.2	296	11.4
	0.8 per cent	5	28	5.6	328	11.7
	1.6 per cent	5	42	8.4	549	13.1
	3.2 per cent	5	15	3.0	346	23.1
Saccharose	0.1 per cent	9	54	6.0	547	10.1
	0.2 per cent	8	47	5.9	467	9.9
	0.8 per cent	6	29	4.8	479	16.5
	3.2 per cent	5	22	4.4	456	20.7

EXPERIMENT WITH CRIMSON CLOVER (TRIFOLIUM INCARNATUM L.)

In the experiment with crimson clover large test tubes were used as culture vessels, each containing 50 cubic centimeters of the culture solution plus 1.2 per cent of agar. The seeds were immersed in the hypochlorite solution for four hours. Maltose was the only sugar tested. The vigor

TABLE 23. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS CONCENTRATIONS OF MALTOSE ON GROWTH OF CRIMSON CLOVER

(Duration, January 3 to February 21, 1914, forty-nine days)

Culture solution		Number of plants	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Average weight per plant milligrams)
Check (no sugar)	1	6	68	11.3
	2	5	68	13.6
Maltose	0.1 per cent	5	68	13.6
	0.2 per cent	5	77	15.4
	0.8 per cent	4	75	18.7
	1.5 per cent	5	85	17.0

of the plants varied directly with the concentration of the sugar, except in the case of the culture containing 0.8 per cent of maltose, in which the dry weight per plant is not in agreement with the normal results, due to the fact that only four plants were present in the culture. The results are given in table 23.

EXPERIMENT WITH VETCH

The experiment with vetch was conducted similarly to the preceding experiments. Unfortunately the cultures containing the lower concen-

TABLE 24. INFLUENCE OF VARIOUS CONCENTRATIONS OF MALTOSE AND OF LACTOSE ON GROWTH OF VETCH

(Duration, twenty-four days)

Culture solution	Plant	Length of tops (centimeters)	Length of roots (centimeters)	Total dry weight (milligrams)	Gain or loss in weight (milligrams)
Check (no sugar) 1	1	15.5	10.0	50	—10
	2	25.0	11.0		
Check (no sugar) 2	1	23.0	20.0	48	—12
	2	26.0	22.0		
Maltose 0.4 per cent	1	22.0	21.0	68	+ 8
	2	26.6	19.0		
Maltose 0.8 per cent	1	28.0	18.0	70	+10
	2	26.0	14.0		
Maltose 1.5 per cent 1	1	34.0	14.5	73	+13
	2	34.0	11.5		
Maltose 1.5 per cent 2	1	28.0	10.0	67	+ 7
	2	27.0	12.5		
Maltose 2.5 per cent	1	21.0	8.5	76	+16
	2	33.0	8.1		
Lactose 1 per cent 1	1	29.5	18.0	70	+10
	2	33.0	17.0		
Lactose 1 per cent 2	1	31.0	15.0	67	+ 7
	2	25.0	19.0		
Lactose 1 per cent 3	1	30.0	10.0	74	+14
	2	27.0	22.0		
Lactose 2 per cent 1	1	29.5	19.0	73	+13
	2	31.0	18.0		
Lactose 2 per cent 2	1	29.5	19.0	77	+17
	2	28.0	15.0		

trations of maltose had to be discarded, in the one case because of contamination and in the other case because only one plant developed. The results are given in table 24.

It is interesting to note that here again there is a marked effect on growth with increase in concentration, and furthermore that a concentration of maltose as low as 0.4 per cent is capable of influencing the yield of dry matter. It should be borne in mind, also, that the plants are in the seedling stage, when there has been available for them a considerable reserve supply from the cotyledons.

As was noted in many of the cultures, the addition of sugar gave rise to a production of color in the stalk. The check cultures, lacking sugar, produced plants with green stems, these being entirely devoid of the characteristic purplish pigment except at the base. The sugar-fed plants, on the other hand, were distinguished by the production of high color, and there was a gradation in intensity of color according to the concentration of the sugar.

ABSORPTION OF SUGAR FROM DILUTE SOLUTIONS

In the preceding experiments the lowest concentration employed was 0.1 per cent. As has already been stated, this is a relatively high concentration and one that is undoubtedly never attained in the soil solution. If the organic material in the soil is directly available to the higher plants, the substances must be absorbed from extremely dilute solutions, for the organic content of the soil solution is very small. But, while the concentration of the organic matter in the soil solution is extremely low, yet there must be a constant supply of soluble organic matter available to support the bacterial and the fungous flora.

The ability of the higher plants to absorb solutes from weak solutions has been amply proved for the nutrient and the non-nutrient salts as well as for dyes. All the nutrient salts are present in extremely dilute concentration in the soil solution. The mere fact that the amount of organic matter dissolved in the soil solution is extremely small is not a barrier to the utilization by the plant of the dissolved organic substances. The ability of vetch to remove glucose from a weak solution was tested by means of the following experiment:

Ten culture vessels were prepared, each containing 50 cubic centimeters of 0.0005 gram molecular glucose. Four of these were kept as checks, while in each of the other six were sown two seeds of vetch. The plants were grown for thirty-five days, and the solutions were then tested for glucose by means of Benedict's reagent. All the check solutions showed distinctly the presence of glucose; two of the culture solutions gave no tests whatsoever for glucose, three showed the merest trace, and the sixth, having a poorly developed plant, gave a fairly good indication of the presence of the sugar. The culture solutions were all tested for sterility by drop transfers to tubes of agar containing 0.5 per cent of glucose and Pfeffer's solution. In no case was any contamination shown. The culture solutions being free, therefore, from yeasts and bacteria, as well as from fungus mycelium, the conclusion is warranted that the glucose is absorbed by the vetch plant.

TOXICITY OF GALACTOSE FOR HIGHER PLANTS

In the course of these investigations it was noted (Knudson, 1915) that the sugar galactose was injurious to vetch, peas, corn, and wheat at a concentration as low as 0.0125 per cent. The injury was noted particularly in the roots. With higher concentrations the primary root tip coming in contact with agar containing galactose was killed, and lateral roots stimulated to formation met the same fate; so that ultimately a much-branched root was obtained. In case the entire primary root came into contact with the galactose-containing agar, it first assumed a brownish appearance and soon afterward died (Figs. 10 and 11). With Canada field pea it was noted that both lactose and raffinose increased growth. These two sugars, on hydrolysis, yield galactose as one of their products. It would appear, therefore, that galactose in the presence of glucose exerts no injurious effect. This was found to be the case. Glucose at a concentration of 1 per cent almost completely inhibited the toxic action of 1 per cent of galactose. In the previous experiments also it was noted that 1 per cent of galactose is antidoted by 1 per cent of glucose, but no other concentrations of glucose were employed. Accordingly an experiment was planned in which the galactose was to be maintained at a constant value and the concentrations of glucose were to be varied. Details of the experiment follow:

Large test tubes were used as culture vessels, each containing 33 cubic centimeters of the medium to be tested. The nutrient medium was

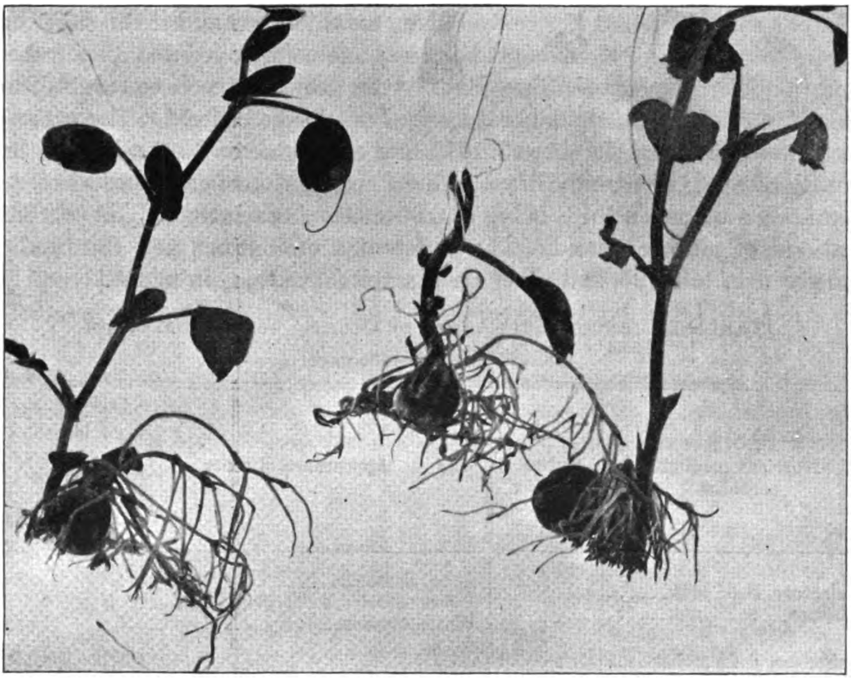


FIG. 10. TOXICITY OF GALACTOSE
All root tops were killed after contact with the agar medium containing galactose

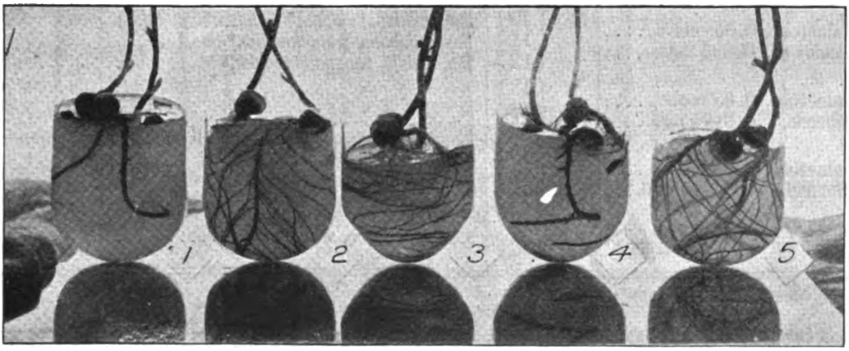


FIG. 11. ANTAGONISTIC ACTION OF GLUCOSE TOWARD GALACTOSE
1, Galactose, 0.025 mol.; 2, galactose, 0.025 mol., + 0.25 mol. glucose; 3, glucose, 0.05 mol.; 4, galactose, 0.025 mol., + 0.003125 mol. glucose; 5, check (no sugar)

Pfeffer's solution plus 1 per cent of agar, to which was added the sugar or sugars to be tested. Canada field pea was again employed and all cultures were made in triplicate. Two plants were grown in each culture. The plants were grown in the laboratory and not in direct light. The experiment was started on October 25, 1915, and completed on November 23, the duration being twenty-nine days. The concentration of galactose was constant, each of the cultures being of 0.05 molecular solution. The concentrations of glucose varied. The different combinations and the results are given in table 25, and other results are shown also in figure 11.

TABLE 25. ANTAGONISTIC ACTION OF GLUCOSE TOWARD GALACTOSE
(Duration, twenty-nine days)

Nutrient medium contains	Culture number	Appearance of roots	Average length of primary root (centimeters)
Galactose, 0.05 mol....... Glucose, 0.20 mol.......	1	Long, slender..........................	9.0
	2	White, slender..........................	9.0
	3	White, slender..........................	13.0
Galactose, 0.05 mol....... Glucose, 0.10 mol.......	4	White, slender..........................	9.0
	5	White, slender..........................	9.0
	6	White, slender..........................	10.0
Galactose, 0.05 mol....... Glucose, 0.05 mol.......	7	Slightly brownish....................	6.0
	8	Slightly brownish....................	7.0
	9	Slightly brownish....................	9.0
Galactose, 0.05 mol....... Glucose, 0.025 mol......	10	Brownish..........................	2.5
	11	Brownish, no penetration,* dead.......	....
	12	Brownish, no penetration, dead.	....
Galactose, 0.05 mol....... Glucose, 0.0125 mol.....	13	No penetration of agar. All roots in contact with medium killed..........	....
	14		....
	15		
Galactose, 0.05 mol....... Glucose, 0.00625 mol....	16		....
	17		....
	18		....
Check (no sugar).........	19	Long, slender, white.................	10.0
	20		9.0

* "No penetration" means that the roots do not grow into the agar.

The rather interesting result is noted that the antidotal influence of glucose is effectively attained only when the glucose is at a concentration greater than that of the galactose, although marked depoisoning action is effected when the concentration of glucose is equivalent to that of the galactose. When the glucose is still further decreased it is practically ineffective in exerting a protective action against the galactose. These results were confirmed by a second experiment similar to that just described. In the second experiment, however (Fig. 11), better antagonism resulted in the culture having equimolecular solutions of glucose and galactose.

This toxicity of galactose has been discussed before by the writer (Knudson, 1915) and, as there stated, no previous mention concerning it has come to the writer's notice. Molliard (1907) mentioned the non-availability of galactose for radish. Lubimenko (1906, a and b) reports no injury for *Pinus Pinea*. Meyer (1886), and later E. Laurent (1887), found that leaves and cuttings of certain plants placed in solutions of galactose absorbed the sugar, producing out of it starch. Most of the deamylated plants used by Meyer, however, did not produce starch when supplied with galactose, although glucose did cause starch production. It may be that the sugar itself is not toxic but that its oxidation products are injurious. The antagonistic action of glucose in this case might operate to render the cell impermeable to the galactose or alter the metabolic products of galactose. If the galactose, for example, could be transformed into starch or some other storage product — a possibility indicated by the work of Meyer and of E. Laurent — then its injurious action might be averted. The presence of a readily available sugar such as glucose might conceivably protect the galactose against oxidation and result in a transformation of the galactose into a storage product such as starch. It is of interest to note here that galactose may be utilized by many fungi and that it is fermented by certain yeasts. Further work on this interesting subject is now in progress.

SECRETION OF ENZYMES BY ROOTS

It has already been noted (page 750) that J. Laurent (1904) found inversion of saccharose when it was present in the culture medium, and this inversion was ascribed to the action of the invertase secreted by the roots of corn or of peas. Starch was likewise transformed, but this was ascribed to the action of diastase that had been secreted from the seed. Mazé (1899) reported a very marked inversion of saccharose in the culture medium when corn was employed, although in 1911 he reported contradictory results. Wohllebe (1911), investigating the secretion of diastase by roots, found a very weak secretion by the root hairs of corn, though in the other cases diastase secretion was effected by the disconnected root cap cells and by the dead root hairs. Czapek (1913) states that the evidence so far presented does not indicate any active ability on the part of the root to secrete enzymes.

The secretion of enzymes by plant roots is not within the scope of this paper. Investigations on this subject are now in progress and will be reported at a later date. Certain observations were made, however, tending to show that the enzyme invertase is secreted by roots of plants. The observations made are summarized separately in this place for the sake of convenience.

In a number of the experiments with vetch it was noted that in the saccharose cultures reducing sugars were found in the media at the conclusion of the experiment. In the water-culture experiments with vetch (page 777) the total amount of sugar remaining in two cultures at the end of the experiment was 0.422 gram and 0.413 gram, respectively. Of the former, 0.151 gram was reducing sugar and of the latter 0.125 gram was reducing sugar. In another experiment, with agar cultures (page 780), the total sugar remaining in each of two cultures was 3.544 grams, but in one the reducing sugar was 0.302 gram and in the other 0.342 gram. The culture media in all cases was in its reaction alkaline to methyl orange and acid to phenolphthalein. Somewhat similar results were obtained with radish and sunflower. There was very marked inversion of saccharose in the culture medium in which Canada field pea was grown, and some evidence was obtained on the excretion of raffinase (Knudson, 1915).

It has not yet been definitely proved that the inversion of saccharose is due to the invertase secreted into the culture medium. It is possible that the saccharose is inverted in the roots and the reducing sugars are secreted, but this is less probable. It is possible also that the enzyme may be released as a result of the death of root hairs or other cells of the roots, and that it is not secreted from living cells.

INFLUENCE OF SUGAR ON COLOR PRODUCTION

The work of Ewart, Overton, Wheldale, and others (Wheldale, 1911) indicates a close relationship between the sugar content of the plant and pigment production. It would naturally be expected, then, that the sugar supplied to plants would show production of anthocyan pigment, and this expectation has been realized. Throughout the experiments recorded in this paper a tendency to anthocyan production was noted, and in some cases brilliant red pigmentation was produced in the stems of vetch. In one experiment with vetch in which 0.05 molecular solution each of glucose and of maltose was used, at the end of two months the maltose-fed plants were colored throughout, the glucose-fed plants were colored to within half the distance of the top, and the control plants grown in the absence of sugar were entirely lacking in the pigment. The color disappeared in the course of a week on transferring the plants to the laboratory, where a diffuse light prevailed. The same loss of pigment was observed in other cases when the plants were transferred from the greenhouse to the laboratory. It was also noted that during periods of cloudy weather no pigment developed in plants grown in the greenhouse.

No marked difference was noted in the production of pigment by the different sugars. Lactose, however, appeared to be the least beneficial, although in one experiment with vetch this was not the case. The subject is to receive further attention.

GENERAL DISCUSSION

In a consideration of the increased yields of plants grown in the presence of sugars, it should be borne in mind that undoubtedly greater increase would have been attained had the plants been grown with their tops exposed to the atmosphere instead of being inclosed within a glass chamber. As already pointed out, the cotton plugs cause a retardation in the diffusion of carbon dioxide into the plant chambers. In the smaller tubes this is probably fully counterbalanced by the increased rate of production of carbon dioxide in the sugar-fed plants. The increased gain of these plants is due, therefore, not alone to the absorption and assimilation of sugar, but in part to their having a greater supply of carbon dioxide — produced, it is true, through the increased respiration of the plant — which carbon dioxide diffuses outward with difficulty owing to the presence of the cotton plugs.

The increases effected by the sugar, furthermore, are not so great as those obtained by Mazé (1889), by Mazé and Perrier (1904), and by J. Laurent (1904), because of the fact that the plants were grown entirely within the closed chamber. The atmosphere of the chamber was constantly of a high relative humidity, and consequently transpiration was retarded. The retardation of transpiration would of course decrease the absorption of sugar, since the sugar would not be rapidly removed from the zone of absorption owing to the lack of a rapidly ascending current of water. This would account partially also for the great influence of the sugar on root growth.

Special attention should be called to this very marked influence of saccharose, maltose, glucose, and fructose on root growth. In the presence of one of these sugars a very much-branched root system developed, the influence of the sugar on the root growth usually becoming evident within two weeks. Those plants grown in the absence of sugar, on the other hand, usually showed roots only slightly branched. It would appear that the sugar absorbed by the plant is largely utilized in the root itself, and perhaps there is but slight migration of the sugar to the stems and leaves of the plant. This would probably result in a lessening of the downward migration of the sugar, a consequence of which would be increased top growth. So very evident to the naked eye is the favorable influence of sugars on the root growth that one is inclined to consider the root as being partially saprophytic. (Fig. 6, page 781.)

Special attention should be called also to the ability of radish, vetch, and Canada field pea to utilize the sugar lactose. This sugar has not been found in the plant kingdom. The enzyme lactase has been found in but relatively few seeds of higher plants (Czapek, 1905), yet the sugar is used in demonstrable quantities and is apparently assimilated. This being the case, there must be a production of the enzyme lactase in response to the sugar lactose, and another case of the production of a qualitatively regulated enzyme may here occur.

Surprising also is the toxicity of the sugar galactose for the green plants when it is considered that it is utilized by various fungi and when its close similarity to glucose is recalled. Galactose differs structurally from glucose in that the positions of the O and OH radicals are reversed in the third asymmetric carbon.

Mazé and Perrier (1904) noted a loss of chlorophyll when glucose was supplied to corn, and Servettaz (1913) found the same condition for moss. These investigators consider that there is a loss of chlorophyll when its function is not necessary. It is more probable that the loss of chlorophyll is due to the changes resulting in the nutrient solution, as, for example, an unbalanced condition or the precipitation of the iron in hydrate form. The latter result has been noted in the Laboratory of Plant Physiology at Cornell.

Molliard (1907) believes that there is an antagonism between the absorption of sugar and chlorophyll function, with the result that injury is done to the plant. He states that there would be inverse currents of sugar, and, as he says, one can conceive that the two currents are injurious. Molliard's conclusions are based on two different series of experiments. In one series the plants were grown in tube cultures — in the first case with normal air, in the second case with 10 per cent of carbon dioxide, and in the third case with 10 per cent of carbon dioxide and glucose. The plant grown in 10 per cent of carbon dioxide gained 48 milligrams, while the plant grown in 10 per cent of carbon dioxide and glucose yielded only 32 milligrams dry weight; the control plant, growing without sugar and in normal air, yielded 16 milligrams dry weight. Molliard considers that the poorer growth of the glucose-fed plant is caused by an antagonism between the assimilation of carbon dioxide and the absorption of sugar. A more probable explanation is that the 10-per-cent carbon dioxide content is augmented by the increased respiration of the culture plants during the night, and that in the early stages of growth the air has constantly a higher concentration than 10 per cent of carbon dioxide and this increase may be injurious to the culture plant. The results of the experiments on respiration show that carbon dioxide is constantly eliminated during the daytime in the first sixteen days of growth.

In Molliard's second experiment the growth in open and in closed tubes was compared. Three plants were grown for two months in open tubes on 1-per-cent glucose. At the end of two months two of the tubes were sealed and the third was left open, but plugged with cotton. Six weeks later the weight of each plant was determined, with the following results:

	Fresh weight (milligrams)	Dry weight (milligrams)	Ratio of dry weight to fresh weight
Tube open	907	122	0.134
Tube closed	1,427	212	0.148
Tube closed	1,747	231	0.134

It will be noted that there was increased gain in the closed tubes. Molliard explains the increase here as due to the fact that the assimilation of carbon dioxide was prevented and consequently its injurious action was eliminated. A more probable explanation, in the writer's opinion, is that the plants in the closed tubes had a greater carbon dioxide content available than those in the cotton-plugged tube.

As was brought out in the respiration experiments with vetch, a constant elimination of carbon dioxide occurs in the sugar-containing cultures. This carbon dioxide is undoubtedly assimilated, and it is fair to assume that the carbon dioxide produced in respiration in darkness and in the constant respiration of roots affords a supply of greater concentration than that furnished by the normal atmosphere. The writer attempted experiments to test the contention of Molliard, but in each of the several experiments set up complications interfered with the results. In two experiments the plants grown in closed chambers with glucose supplied showed less gain than the plants grown in open chambers with air available. The plants were grown for only twenty days, however, and the experiments were necessarily stopped in each case because of the appearance of molds.

Lindet (1911) has stated that fructose induces tissue formation in plants, while glucose is utilized largely in respiration. He found that yeasts, *Penicillium glaucum*, *Aspergillus niger*, and the embryos of bean and barley, were influenced similarly by glucose and fructose. Glucose was more readily absorbed than fructose, but contributed largely to respiration. Fructose, on the other hand, in all cases increased the dry weights of the plants much more than did glucose. No cases similar to these have been noted in the writer's experiments, though the superiority of saccharose for vetch and peas may be explained by the work of Lindet. This subject of the rôle of glucose and fructose is now being intensively studied in the Laboratory of Plant Physiology at Cornell.

It has been demonstrated conclusively that various sugars can be absorbed by the roots of green plants and that these sugars are assimilated. Not only can sugars be absorbed and assimilated, but investigations show that methyl alcohol, glycerin, certain organic acids, and various organic nitrogenous and other organic substances, may likewise be utilized. The practical significance of these facts is immediately questioned.

Does the plant utilize substances from the soil, and, if so, what is their importance in the nutrition of the plant?

With respect to the absorption of humus and humate compounds, it has already been stated that J. Laurent (1904) and Mazé (1911) found such absorption. Molliard (1912), on the other hand, as a result of an interesting experiment, came to the conclusion that the humates of the soil are not absorbed. He grew plants under sterile conditions in a closed chamber on a loam rich in humus with no carbon dioxide supplied. The radish showed a slight increase in dry weight, due to the assimilation of carbon dioxide produced from decomposition of the soil humus. From his results Molliard concluded that none of the humus could have been absorbed.

The organic content of soils is of course extremely variable and few satisfactory data are available as regards the soluble organic material in the soil. According to Schreiner (1911) the organic content in ordinary soils is large. The average content of 237 types of United States soils, determined by analyses of thousands of samples, is 2.06 per cent for the topsoil and 0.83 per cent for the subsoil. In greenhouse practice the soils used have much higher organic content. In the forcing of cucumbers and tomatoes, for example, this organic content may be as high as 25 per cent or even higher.

As stated at the beginning of this paper, the problem of the relation of organic substances to plant nutrition is not merely that of the relation of humus. It is concerned with all the soluble organic substances that must arise from the decomposition of plant and animal residues. The practicability of the power of the plant to utilize to advantage various organic substances rests on the extent to which these substances are found in the soil and the ability of the plant to remove them from weak solutions.

There is found in most soils, then, a considerable quantity of organic material, but most of this is in an insoluble state and therefore nonavailable. It is constantly being acted upon, however, by enzymes secreted by microorganisms[3] and by other agents, and soluble organic substances are produced. The soluble organic substances are present in most soils in extremely low concentration, yet their sum total may be as high as or higher than the dissolved nutrients (Petermann, 1882). Gourley (1915) reports for certain orchard soils in New Hampshire a soluble organic content varying from ninety to two hundred and fifty parts per million. The fact that there exists in soils such a low concentration of soluble organic substances cannot be a serious argument against a direct nutritional value of the soil organic material. The mineral nutrients of the soil and the nitrates are probably present in concentrations no greater; yet these nutrients are constantly being absorbed, and the same is possible for the soluble organic substances, especially those that can be assimilated. The ability of vetch to remove glucose from weak solutions has been demonstrated, and, as stated at the beginning of this paper, the fact that microorganisms and saprophytic plants find in the soil their carbon requirements lends strength to the argument that the higher plants obtain, to their advantage, organic materials from the soil.

---

[3] During the summer of 1913 a very marked stimulative effect of the fairy-ring fungus *Marasmius oreades* Fr. was noted on the growth of lawn grass on the Cornell campus, the grass in the region of the ring being darker in color and more vigorous in growth than that in other places. A possible explanation is the digestion of organic material in the soil by enzymes secreted by the fungus mycelium, and the utilization by the grass of the products of digestion.

Schreiner (1911) has called attention to the possibility of the favorable influence on plant growth of nitrogen and phosphorus containing organic compounds of the soil. He states: " The most beneficial manures under normal circumstances are those of organic origin, and the presence of such directly beneficial compounds, like creatinine, in well-rotted stable manure and in green manures, like cowpeas, goes far toward explaining why these manures are more beneficial to soil as a rule than are equivalent parts of fertilizer in the purely mineral forms." It has been demonstrated, however, that not only are organic nitrogenous substances available for plants, but carbohydrates, alcohols, and organic acids and their salts, can also be absorbed by the roots and assimilated by the plants.

In view, then, of the established ability of plants to absorb and assimilate organic substances, and in view of the presence in soils of insoluble organic substances which are constantly in a state of transformation to soluble organic compounds, it seems reasonable to conclude, with J. Laurent (1904), that " the organic matter of the soil plays a direct rôle in the nutrition of green plants independently of humus . . . . . in that the roots are able to find in the soil quantities of directly utilizable organic substances which in a weak measure contribute to the carbon nutrition of the plants."[4] It seems reasonable to conclude, furthermore, that under certain conditions, especially in greenhouse culture, the soil organic material may play a very important rôle in the organic nutrition of plants.

---

[4] Translation from the original French.

SUMMARY

1. Corn (*Zea mays* L.) grown in nutrient solutions containing certain sugars is able to absorb these sugars by means of their roots, and the sugars are assimilated, effecting increased growth of the plant.

2. The sugars, in the order of their beneficial effect on the plant when grown in the light, are, first glucose and fructose, second saccharose, and third maltose. In the dark glucose again leads, while the other sugars are much alike.

3. The embryo of corn will develop in the absence of all endosperm material, and the presence of maltose increases growth. The production of pigment is progressively increased with the increase in concentration of glucose.

4. Canada field pea (*Pisum sativum* L.) responds in growth markedly to the presence of sugar; the sugars in the order of their beneficial influence being saccharose, glucose, maltose, and lactose.

5. Timothy utilizes glucose and saccharose, but not lactose when grown in the light. When grown in the dark lactose, as well as the other sugars, appear to be utilized.

6. Experiments with radish (*Raphanus sativus* L.) confirm the earlier investigations, glucose, saccharose, maltose, and lactose being utilized.

7. Vetch (*Vicia villosa* Roth) grown in the dark utilizes the various disaccharides, the order, as regards favorableness, being saccharose, maltose, and lactose. On vetch grown in the light the favorable influence of the different sugars is in the following order: saccharose, glucose, maltose, and lactose.

8. Data are herein presented showing the influence of sugar on the growth and respiration of vetch. The saccharose and glucose cultures are much alike in their effect during the period of the experiment; the maltose culture shows a lesser evolution of carbon dioxide. In the presence of saccharose the seedlings grown in the absence of carbon dioxide maintained practically the original weight of the seed, but in these experiments carbon dioxide equivalent to 0.822 gram of glucose in one case and to 0.8195 gram of glucose in another case was evolved. Somewhat similar results were obtained with glucose and with maltose.

9. The influence of sugar on respiration was manifest as early as the fifth day of the experiment.

10. The carbon dioxide evolution of the sugar-fed plants during the daytime is always appreciably greater than that of the check cultures. This is due in part to a greater root development in the sugar-fed cultures, but also to a greater rate of respiration.

11. Cabbage (*Brassica oleracea* L.) grown in the presence of maltose shows increased growth. The higher the concentration (2.5 per cent being the highest concentration employed), the greater is the yield of dry matter. A mixture of saccharose and maltose increased growth to a greater extent than 2 per cent of maltose alone.

12. Sweet clover (*Melilotus alba* Desr.) increases its growth with increased concentration of glucose or saccharose. Crimson clover (*Trifolium incarnatum* L.) behaves similarly when provided with maltose.

13. Vetch (*Vicia villosa* Roth) shows increased growth with increase in concentration of sugar.

14. Vetch (*Vicia villosa* Roth) is shown to absorb glucose from an extremely weak solution.

15. The sugar galactose is toxic to vetch, Canada field pea, corn, and wheat, even at concentrations as low as 0.0125 per cent.

16. The toxicity of 0.05 gram molecular galactose for Canada field pea is antidoted almost entirely by glucose when present at a concentration of 0.10 or 0.20 gram molecular. The toxicity of this solution of galactose is partially antidoted by 0.05 molecular glucose, but practically not at all antidoted when the glucose is less than 0.05 gram molecular.

17. The antagonistic action of glucose toward galactose may be due to its rendering the root impermeable to galactose. It is suggested that the toxicity of galactose may be due to its oxidation products, and that in the presence of glucose the metabolism of galactose may be altered.

18. Evidence was obtained indicating the inversion of saccharose by the roots of vetch, Canada field pea, radish, and sunflower. The inversion was due to invertase probably secreted from the roots. No secretion of maltose or lactose was noted.

19. In the presence of sugar there was noted a marked development of pigment in corn and in vetch.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The writer is indebted to Dr. J. K. Wilson, of Cornell University, for assistance in some of the early experiments, and to Dr. C. S. Hudson, in charge of the carbohydrate laboratory, United States Bureau of Chemistry, for the galactose sugar used in the experiments. Acknowledgment is due also to Dr. B. M. Duggar, of the Missouri Botanical Garden, for generously placing at the writer's disposal during a three-months stay in St. Louis the facilities of his private laboratory.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Acton, E. H.
1889 The assimilation of carbon by green plants from certain organic compounds. Roy. Soc. London. Proc. 47:150–175.

Armstrong, E. F.
1912 The simple carbohydrates and the glucosides, p. 50.

Benedict, S. R.
1908–09 A reagent for the detection of reducing sugars. Journ. biol. chem. 5:485–487.

Boehm, Josef
1883 Ueber stärkebildung aus zucker. Bot. ztg. 41:33–38, 49–54.

Bokorny, Th.
1911 Über die einwirkung von methylalkohol und anderen alkoholen auf grüne pflanzen und mikroorganismen. Centbl. bakt. 2:30:53–64.

Boussingault, J.
1860 Agronomie, chimie agricole, et physiologie, 2d ed., 1:1–64.

Bréal, E.
1894 Alimentation des végétaux par l'humus et les matières organiques. Ann. agron. 20:353–370.

Czapek, F.
1905 Biochemie der pflanzen, 1st ed., p. 222.
1913 Biochemie der pflanzen, 2d ed., 1:494–501.

Gourley, J. H.
1915 Studies in fruit bud formation. New Hampshire Agr. Exp. Sta. Tech. bul. 9:48–54.

Grafe, Viktor

1909 Untersuchungen über die aufnahme von stickstoffhaltigen organischen substanzen durch die wurzel von phanerogamen bei ausschluss der kohlensäure. K. Akad. Wiss. [Vienna], Math. Naturw. Kl. Sitzber. 118: 1135–1153.

Hutchinson, H. B., and Miller, N. H. J.

1911 The direct assimilation of inorganic and organic forms of nitrogen by higher plants. Centbl. bakt. 2: 30: 513–547.

Jost, L.

1913 Pflanzen-physiologie, 3d ed., p. 186.

Knudson, Lewis

1915 Toxicity of galactose for certain of the higher plants. Missouri Bot. Garden. Ann. 2: 659–666.

Laurent, Émile

1887 Recherches expérimentales sur la formation d'amidon dans les plantes aux dépens de solutions organiques. Soc. Roy. Bot. Belgique. Bul. 26: 243–270.

Laurent, J.

1904 Recherches sur la nutrition carbonée des plantes vertes à l'aide de matières organiques. Rev. gén. bot. 16: 14–48, 68–80, 96–119, 120–128, 155–166, 188–202, 231-241.

Lefèvre, J.

1906 Sur le développement des plantes à chlorophyll à l'abri du gas carbonique de l'atmosphère, dans un sol amidé à dose non toxique. Rev. gén. bot. 18: 145–163, 205–219, 258–280, 302–310.

Liebig, J.

1847 Chemistry in its applications to agriculture and physiology, p. 5–27. (Translated by L. Playfair and W. Gregory.)

Lindet, L.

1911 Sur le pouvoir électif des cellules végétales vis-à-vis du dextrose et du lévulose. Acad. Sci. Paris. Compt. rend. 152: 775–777.

Lubimenko, W.

1906 a Influence de l'absorption des sucres sur les phénomènes de la germination des plantules. Acad. Sci. Paris. Compt. rend. **143**: 130–133.

1906 b Action directe de la lumière sur la transformation des sucres absorbés par les plantules du Pinus Pinea. Acad. Sci. Paris. Compt. rend. **143**: 516–519.

Lutz, L.

1898 Recherches sur la nutrition des végétaux à l'aide de substances azotée de nature organique (amines, sels d'ammoniums composés et alcaloïdes), p. 1–103. Thèses, Paris.

Maige, A., and Nicolas, G.

1910 Recherches sur l'influence des solutions sucrées de divers degrés de concentration sur la respiration, la turgescence, et la croissance de la cellule. Ann. sci. nat. Botanique. Ser. 9: **12**: 315–368.

Mazé, P.

1899 L'assimilation des hydrates de carbone et l'élaboration de l'azote organique dans les végétaux supérieurs. Acad. Sci. Paris. Compt. rend. **128**: 185–187.

1911 Influence, sur le développement de la plante, des substances minérales qui s'accumulent dans ses organes comme résidus d'assimilation. Absorption des matières organiques colloïdales par les racines. Acad. Sci. Paris. Compt. rend. **152**: 783–785.

Mazé, P., and Perrier, A.

1904 Recherches sur l'assimilation de quelques substances ternaires par les végétaux à chlorophylle. Inst. Pasteur. Ann. **18**: 721–747.

Meyer, Arthur

1886 Bildung der stärkekörner in den laubblättern aus zuckerarten, mannit und glycerin. Bot. ztg. **44**: 81–88, 105–113, 129–137, 145–151.

Molliard, Marin

1907 Action morphogénique de quelques substances organiques sur les végétaux supérieurs. Rev. gén. bot. **19**: 241–291, 329–349, 357–391.

1912 L'humus est-il une source directe de carbone pour les plantes vertes supérieures? Acad. Sci. Paris. Compt. rend. **154**: 291–294.

Palladine, W.
1901 Influence de la nutrition par diverses substances organiques sur la respiration des plantes. Rev gén. bot. **13**: 18–32, 127–136.

Palladine, W., and Komleff, A.
1902 L'influence de la concentration des solutions sur l'énergie respiratoire et sur la transformation des substances dans les plantes. Rev. gén. bot. **14**: 497–516.

Petermann, A.
1882 Recherches sur la dialyse des terres arables. Acad. Roy. Sci. Belgique. Bul. 3, ser. 3: 74–87.

Pfeffer, Wilhelm
1900 The physiology of plants **1**: 325–326. (Translated by A. J. Ewart.)

Ravin, Paul
1913 Nutrition carbonée des plantes à l'aide des acides organiques libres et combinés. Ann. sci. nat. Botanique. Ser. 9: **18**: 289–446.

Russell, E. J.
1912 Soil conditions and plant growth, p. 31.

Saussure, Theo. de
1804 Recherches chimiques sur la végétation, p. 247–261.

Schreiner, Oswald
1911 Importance of beneficial soil constituents. *In* U. S. Soils Bur., Bul. 83: 7–9.

1913 The organic constituents of soils. U. S. Soils Bur. Circ. 74: 1–18.

Schreiner, Oswald, Reed, H. S., and Skinner, J. L.
1907 Certain organic constituents of soils in relation to soil fertility. U. S. Soils Bur. Bul. 47: 10–11.

Servettaz, Camille

1913 Recherches expérimentales sur le développement et la nutrition des mousses en milieux stérilisés. Ann. sci. nat. Botanique. Ser. 9:17:111–224.

Wheldale, M.

1911 On the formation of anthocyanin. Journ. genetics 1:133–158.

Wilson, J. K.

1915 Calcium hypochlorite as a seed sterilizer. Amer. journ. bot. 2:420–427.

Wohllebe, H.

1911 Untersuchungen über die ausscheidung von diastastischen und proteolytischen enzymen bei samen und wurzeln. Inaug. diss., Leipzig, p. 1–35.

OCTOBER, 1916 MEMOIR 10

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

A CLASSIFICATION OF THE VARIETIES OF CULTIVATED OATS

W. C. ETHERIDGE

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University).
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE
Work of previous investigators . . . 824
General considerations . . . 833
Classification material . . . 834
Morphology of the oats plant . . . 835
  The caryopsis . . . 835
  Basilar connection of the grains . . . 835
  Hairs of the grain . . . 837
    Hairs of the lemma . . . 837
    Hairs of the callus . . . 838
    Hairs of the rhachilla . . . 839
  Form of the rhachilla . . . 839
  Nerves of the glume and the lemma . . . 840
  The awn . . . 841
  Form of the grain . . . 842
  Color of the grain . . . 843
  Dimensions of the grains . . . 845
  Double-grains . . . 846
  The spikelet . . . 847
    Attitude of spikelets . . . 847
    Number of grains in spikelet . . . 847
  Maturing period . . . 850
  Color of glumes at maturity . . . 850
  Physical properties of grains . . . 851
  The panicle . . . 852
    Form of the panicle . . . 852
    The rhachis . . . 854
  The leaves . . . 855
  The ligule and the auricle . . . 856
  The sheath . . . 858
  The culm . . . 858
  Pubescence at the nodes . . . 859
  The roots . . . 859
  Habit of plant in early growth . . . 859
  Color of young plant . . . 860
  Summary . . . 861
Classification of groups . . . 863
  Avena nuda . . . 863
  Avena sterilis . . . 864
  Avena abyssinica . . . 868
  Avena strigosa and Avena brevis . . . 868
  Avena fatua . . . 869
  Avena sativa . . . 870
  Avena sativa orientalis . . . 892
Conclusion . . . 900
Acknowledgments . . . 901
Bibliography . . . 901

A CLASSIFICATION OF THE VARIETIES OF CULTIVATED OATS

A CLASSIFICATION OF THE VARIETIES OF CULTIVATED OATS[1]

W. C. Etheridge

Among the varieties of oats grown in this country there is a diversity of type to fit the wide range in natural environment. Adaptiveness of the variety to local conditions is therefore a factor that directly affects the yield and the profitableness of the crop; hence the choice of a variety for given conditions and purposes should receive careful consideration.

But the choice of a variety is contingent on the establishment of the identity of the several types. The desired type must be recognized and distinguished with certainty from all other types, otherwise a proper choice is largely a matter of chance. In recent years the number of varieties has been rapidly increased by foreign introductions and by the development of plant breeding. This has resulted in a multiplicity of forms for which there are no comprehensive and accurate descriptions, and hence no means of systematic identification. Along with the increase in varietal forms have come misuses of nomenclature, similar popular names being applied to different forms, and similar forms carrying different names. The increase in number of forms, many of them scarcely different, and the confusion of their nomenclature, now make uncertain the identification of varieties by their names or general appearance. There is need, therefore, for a usable system of classification by which the grower may identify the varieties with which he is concerned. It is the purpose of this study to make such a classification of the American varieties as they appear when grown in the environment of New York State, and to clear to some extent the confusion in varietal nomenclature.

Since a knowledge of the structure of cultivated plants is of fundamental importance to the student in agronomy, the morphology of the oats plant is fully discussed herein. It is hoped that the descriptions of structural parts may be useful to those who study systematically the cultivated varieties.

---

[1] Also presented to the Faculty of the Graduate School of Cornell University, September, 1915, as a major thesis in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of doctor of philosophy.

WORK OF PREVIOUS INVESTIGATORS

Although there have been in this country no reports of extensive systematic studies of varieties of oats, several methods of classification have been proposed by foreign investigators. These are found to differ widely in the arrangement of classes, and in the importance accorded various characters by which groups are distinguished and further separated into subgroups and varieties. Considerable space, therefore, is here devoted to outlining and discussing the previous systems of classification, in order to appraise them as means of identifying varieties as well as to show precedence for certain taxonomic features of the classification herein presented.

The first noteworthy systematic study of cultivated oats was by Körnicke and Werner (1885).[2] In the classification by these authors, species are distinguished by adherence or non-adherence of the lemma and the palea to the caryopsis; by the number of awns produced by the spikelet; and by the toothing and color of the lemma. Within the species, various types are distinguished by the form of the panicle; by the color of the grains; and by presence or absence of awns and hairs of the lemma. The system of twenty-nine groups thus formed is here briefly outlined:

Kernel closely invested by the hull (covered oats).
  I. Spikelets awnless or 1-awned.
    A. Panicle equilateral, spreading.
      a. Grains white.
        1. var. *mutica* Al. Grains white, lanceolate, awnless.
        2. var. *praegravis* Kr. Grains white, egg-shaped, awnless.
        3. var. *aristata* Kr. Spikelet 2-grained; grains white, awned.
        4. var. *trisperma* Schubl. Spikelet 3-grained; grains white, awned.
      b. Grains yellow.
        5. var. *aurea* Kcke. Grains yellow, awnless.
        6. var. *Krausei* Kcke. Grains yellow, awned.
      c. Grains gray.
        7. var. *grisea* Kcke. Grains gray, awnless.
        8. var. *cinera* Kcke. Grains gray, awned.
      d. Grains brown or red.
        9. var. *brunnea* Kcke. Grains brown, awnless, hairless.
        10. var. *setosa* Kcke. Grains brown, awnless, bristly.
        11. var. *montana* Al. Grains brown, awned, hairless.
        12. var. *rubida* Kr. Grains red, awned, hairless.
      e. Grains black.
        13. var. *nigra* Kr. Grains black, awnless.

---

[2] Dates in parenthesis refer to bibliography, page 901.

B. Panicle unilateral, appressed.
  a. Grains white.
    14. var. *obtusata* Al. Grains white, awnless.
    15. var. *tartarica* Ard. Grains white, awned.
  b. Grains yellow.
    16. var. *flava* Kcke. Grains golden, awnless.
  c. Grains brown.
    17. var. *tristis* Al. Grains brown, awnless.
    18. var. *pugnax* Al. Grains brown, awned.
II. Spikelets with 2 or more awns.
    19. var. *brevis* Roth. Grains short, the lemma without awn points.[3]
    20. var. *strigosa* Schreb. Lemma with 2 long awn points.
    21. var. *abyssinica* Hochst. Lemma 4-toothed, white, extending far above the kernel.
    22. var. *Schimperi* Kcke. Lemma 4-toothed, yellow, extending far above the kernel.
    23. var. *Hildebrandti* Kcke. Lemma 4-toothed, gray, extending far above the kernel.
    24. var. *Braunii* Kcke. Lemma 4-toothed, brown, extending far above the kernel.
Kernel free within the hull (naked oats).
  I. Panicle equilateral, spreading.
    25. var. *inermis* Kcke. Grains awnless.
    26. var. *chinensis* Fisch. Spikelet with 1 awn.
    27. var. *nuda* L. Spikelet with 2 awns.
  II. Panicle unilateral, appressed.
    28. var. *gymnocarpa* Kcke. Grains white.
    29. var. *affinis* Kcke. Grains brown.

In their classification according to the preceding outline, Körnicke and Werner have brought together 137 varieties representing an exceedingly wide range of structure; but within each group there is no systematic separation of closely related varieties, they being arranged in no particular order although minutely described. That part of the system which distinguishes species and types is especially suggestive for contemporary work, but the method of grouping many varieties of the same general type without further systematic arrangement is not satisfactory since it leaves the identification of varieties within a group to a tedious comparison of their descriptions. Böhmer (1908–09) has criticized the classification of Körnicke and Werner as bringing together varieties alike in superficial characters but not systematically related in physical properties. However, this criticism seems lacking in point, for a system for the identification and competent description of varieties of oats must primarily be based on morphological rather than physical differences.

---

[3] In a more detailed description of var. *brevis*, Körnicke states that the point of the grain is usually blunt, with two short, firm teeth which occasionally are lengthened into awn points.

Atterberg (1891) classified the varieties of oats found in northern and western Europe mainly on the basis of differences in the prevailing number of grains in the spikelet, and on the absolute weight of grains and their percentage of kernel. The form of grains was used to subdivide one group, while color of grains and form of panicles were employed only as secondary characters to distinguish varieties which were alike in physical properties. Atterberg's system was as follows:

A. Spikelets so inclined to 3 grains that middle grains are usually present; single grains few.
  I. Grains containing 59–68 per cent of kernel.
    a. Grains small; 1000 grains = 25–31 grams.
    b. Grains medium; 1000 grains = 32–38 grams.
    c. Grains large; 1000 grains = 39+ grams.
  II. Grains containing 69–73 per cent of kernel.
    a. Grains small; 1000 grains = 25–32 grams.
    b. Grains medium; 1000 grains = 33–38 grams.
    c. Grains large; 1000 grains = 39–45 grams.
  III. Grains containing 74–79 per cent of kernel.
    a. Grains small; 1000 grains = — 32 grams.
    b. Grains medium; 1000 grains = 32–38 grams.
    c. Grains large; 1000 grains = 39+ grams.
B. Spikelets commonly with 2 grains, never with 3 grains; 1-grained spikelets numerous.
  IV. Grains containing 69–73 per cent of kernel.
    a. Grains small; 1000 grains = 25–32 grams.
    b. Grains medium; 1000 grains = 33–38 grams.
C. Spikelets usually with 1 grain; spikelets with 2 grains often occurring.
  V. Pointed grains.
  VI. Short grains.
  VII. "Barley" grains.
  VIII. Full, plump grains.

Under these groups and types the grains of 102 varieties are described. In order to understand and appraise Atterberg's system his descriptions of the above classes must first be reviewed. These are as follows:[4]

Spikelets with 2 grains.— In these the outer and inner grains differ in size and form. Roughly, the weight of outer grains is 1.6 times that of inner grains; they are longer, more pointed, and their inner side is usually somewhat flat. Inner grains are short-pointed and more rounded than outer grains, although their base is somewhat pointed while that of outer grains ends bluntly. Unlike outer grains, inner grains are never bearded[5] and the rhachilla is absent or reduced to a thin, hair-like appendage bearing a rudimentary third grain.

Spikelets with 1 grain.— When inner grains fail to form, the outer ones become normal single grains, their inner side convex. The rhachilla is then longer, thinner, and carries a large membrane or rudimentary third grain. Single grains are usually smaller than outer grains, but like them have on their inner side the connecting point for another grain. As with outer grains, the bases of single grains end abruptly.

Spikelets with 3 grains.— On the development of the rudimentary flower borne by the inner grain the spikelet bears 3 grains, the third grain becoming in form much like the second.

---

[4] Translation from the original German.

[5] Atterberg evidently worked only with *Avena sativa* and *Avena sativa orientalis*.

Double grains.— When under unfavorable weather conditions at maturity the outer grain fails to become fully developed, its lemma often completely envelops the inner grain and causes the condition of "double grain." Because of this abnormality, double grains are of no importance in classification, but they should never be confused with single grains.

According to Atterberg none of the above four forms of spikelets are carried by every variety in like number, and it is only the prevailing form in a given variety that determines its group relationship. Classes arranged on this basis, therefore, cannot be constant, but are transitional, passing into one another under changes in climatic and soil conditions; and hence no variety can by this system rightly be classified under a single condition of environment.

The following forms of grains are believed by Atterberg to be more constant than the number of grains in the spikelet:[6]

"Barley" grains.— Single grains prevail in this type, but the second grain, when present, shows the same short, heavy, full, compact form as the first grain. The lemma is strongly developed and on single grains nearly, often entirely, covers the palea. If the palea is not visible the grain is called "closed"; if a part of it can be seen the grain is designated as "open." When the second grain is present the lemma of the outer grain commonly has its edges so inrolled as to form a gutter.

Pointed grains.— The grain of this type is widest at, or just below, the upper end of the rhachilla; it is longer than the "barley" type and the edges of its lemma are rolled into a hard, stiff point. Spikelets with 2 grains are more numerous than in "barley" oats; 1-grained spikelets seldom predominating. In all other respects of shape than those mentioned the grains are similar to the "barley" type.

Full, plump grains.— Grains of this type are rich in kernels; they are full, plump, short, and borne on weak peduncles; and the inner side of the first grain is strongly convex as compared with the usual guttered form. The lemma is more free from the caryopsis than in most forms. If the point of the grain becomes weak and longer drawn, the form passes to the pointed-grain type.

Short grains.— When grains of the above type become weaker and more convex on their inner side they assume a shorter, rounder form and pass to the short-grain type. The edges of the lemma then cover the greater part of the palea.

Hulled grains.— In northern Germany a very long, thin, long-pointed type is called "chaffy" or "hully" (spelsig) oats. This type has many 3-grained spikelets.

Aside from its comprehensive descriptions of spikelet and grain forms, Atterberg's classification is subject to criticism because of the characters used to distinguish main groups of varieties. The absolute weight of grains, their kernel content, and their form, are too easily influenced by environment to afford a reliable means of distinction; there would be, in response to change of climate and soil, an interchange of varieties among groups thus characterized. Again, by Atterberg's method of grouping, varieties morphologically unlike may be brought together; and, on the other hand, forms that are closely related structurally may be placed in widely different groups on the basis of variation, induced by environment, in the weight and kernel content of their grains. The system, while probably useful in grading the quality of grain, is of little use for the permanent classification and identification of varieties.

---

[6] Translation from the original German.

Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901), in their studies of the cultivated oats of France, have distinguished 76 varieties. The main groups of varieties arranged by these authors are characterized by the form of panicles, and by the color, form, and size of grains. The form of panicles, however, is used only in the minute descriptions of individual varieties and does not appear in the following system for the identification of varieties, here rearranged from the original diagrammatic outline:

- I. Grains white, white-yellowish, or yellow.
  - A. Duckbill grains, plump, open-pointed; lemma flattened, very white.
    - B. Outer grains 12–14 mm. long; numerous 1-grained spikelets; rhachilla nail-headed, fine, long; grains double.
      - C. 2-grained spikelets predominant; 1-grained spikelets numerous; grains very duckbill-like.
        - D. Grains barley-like, 13–14 mm. long, variable, large, plump; lemma extremely flat; 1000 grains weigh 38–42 grams.
        - DD. Small barley-like grains; outer grains 12 mm. long, duckbill-like, and often bearded; single grains large; 1000 grains weigh 34–35 grams.
      - CC. 1-grained spikelets predominant; grains of the intermediate barley-like type; outer grains 13.5–14.5 mm. long, variable; single grains less plump and longer; 1000 grains weigh 38–42 grams.
    - BB. Outer grains 15–16 mm. long, large, plump, swollen, large-pointed, and duckbill-like; 1-grained spikelets not occurring; awn usually present and geniculate; rhachilla flat, short, and hairy at the summit; 1000 grains weigh 47–49 grams.
  - AA. Grains not plump, slightly spreading at the point, rather slender; lemma convex, white, white-yellowish, or yellow; no double grains.
    - B. Grains medium-sized, swollen and full, yellowish, rarely very yellow, variable; rhachilla 2 mm. long, and with 2 furrows; 1000 grains weigh 40–46 grams.
      - C. Outer grains 14–15 mm. long, slightly plump, medium full; palea rather large at point; lemma convex; 1000 grains weigh 43–46 grams.
      - CC. Outer grains 15–16 mm. long, not plump, scarcely full; lemma generally flattened; palea rather pointed; 1000 grains weigh 40–43 grams.
    - BB. Grains small, slightly swollen and slender; rhachilla fine, 3 mm. long, without furrows, nail-headed; 1000 grains weigh 34–39 grams.
      - C. Grains white or slightly yellowish.
        - D. Grains white-yellowish, variable, intermediate in size; base of the grain with lips of the scar unequal; 1-grained spikelets not occurring.
        - DD. Grains white, narrow, slender, small, often bearded; base of the grain small and straight, with lips of the scar almost equal; 1-grained spikelets numerous.

CC. Grains very yellow.

D. Grains yellow, small, slightly bent; lips of the scar at base of grain slightly unequal.

DD. Similar to D, except that the base of the grain is straight and small, with a scar the lips of which are unequal. The plant is further distinguished by the form of its panicle.

II. Grains black, red, or gray.

A. Outer grains 14–16 mm. long, rarely awned; awn, if present, fine and straight.

B. Outer grains small, 14–15 mm. long; 1000 grains weigh 33–38 grams.

C. Grains small, barley-like, 14 mm. long, usually very black, large and very plump, with open points; 1-grained spikelets not occurring; awn absent; rhachilla ciliate; lemma very flat.

CC. Grains small, more or less slender; 2-grained spikelets predominant; 1-grained spikelets few.

D. Grains medium small, with oblique basal scar having unequal lips; grains very plump but variable; lemma very convex; 1-grained spikelets few or not occurring.

1. Grains black and full; nerves of lemma obscure; rhachilla slightly ciliate; basal hairs silky.
2. Grains brown; nerves of lemma prominent and more or less reddish; base of the grain smaller than in the preceding form.
3. Grains iron gray to dark and almost black; nerves of lemma obscure; rhachilla smooth; basal hairs absent.

DD. Grains black, straight, narrow, with slender and more or less reddish points; basal scar small, with equal lips; 1-grained spikelets numerous; awns frequent.

BB. Outer grains of medium but variable size, yellow-reddish; lemma usually flat with its nerves usually prominent; rhachilla short and nail-headed; basal scar large, oblique, and with unequal lips; 1-grained spikelets not occurring; 1000 grains weigh 38–44 grams.

AA. Outer grains 17–18 mm. long; awn usually present, long and geniculate.

B. Outer grains large, long, very full, uniform in size; 1000 grains weigh 46–50 grams.

C. Grains very black, large, and full; awn present; base large, and its scar having unequal lips; basal hairs present, silky.

CC. Grains gray or gray-blackish, large, and full, with smaller proportion of awned grains than in preceding group; nerves of lemma usually prominent; basal hairs absent.

BB. Grains long and thin, not uniform in size; 1000 grains weigh 43–46 grams.

C. Grains black, slender, very often awned; palea slightly open or pointed; rhachilla stout, ciliate; basal scar large, with unequal lips.

CC. Grains gray and more or less dark, very slender, very pointed, and rather often awned; nerves of lemma usually prominent; base of the grain and basal scar of medium size; basal hairs present in a thick ring.

In the exclusive use of grain characters for the identification of varieties, Denaiffe and Sirodot frequently make their characterizations of sections so minute and elaborate as to greatly lessen the practical usefulness of their system. Another fault is the prominent use of absolute measurements and weights and of the terms *plump*, *slender*, *duckbill*, and *barley-like* for the description of grains. Such terms have not sufficient meaning to distinguish groups of varieties clearly; and, moreover, divisions by these means are not likely to remain stable under radical changes of environment. However, the more definite morphological characters used by the French authors are among those which must inevitably have a place in any comprehensive system for the identification of varieties of oats.

The Svalöf system, published by Nilsson (1901), is based on five distinctions in the form of panicles, each so-called type of panicle being coordinated with light- and dark-colored grains. The number of grains in the spikelet, the form and the maturing period of grains, and the quality of culms, are used as supplementary characters. Many fine distinctions in the form of panicles and the color of grains are employed for the description of single varieties. The Svalöf system may be outlined as follows:

I. Varieties with white grains and side panicles. Panicle feather-like, long and small, one-sided, greatly inclined, and pectinate; primary branches stiff, upright, appressed. Grains 2–1 per spikelet, white, small, hard, more or less slender, spindle-like, and short-pointed. Generally late in ripening. Culms hard and stiff.

II. Varieties with black grains and side panicles. Panicle, form of grain, ripening period, and culm as in I.

III. Varieties with white grains and stiff panicles. Panicle stiff, short, broad, formed like a one-sided pyramid, somewhat drooping; primary branches strong-upstanding; points numerous. Grains 2–3 per spikelet, white, large, plump, more or less oval, blunt-pointed. Generally medium early in ripening. Culms inclined to be stiff.

IV. Varieties with black grains and stiff panicles. Panicle, form of grain, ripening period, and culm as in III.

V. Varieties with white grains and wide-spreading panicles. Panicle spreading, long, bushy, all sides pyramid-like; branches long, slender, weak-upstanding, the lower ones at least being strongly drooping and with pendant spikelets. Grains 3–1 per spikelet, very long but narrow, thin, and especially long-pointed. Often early-maturing, although some varieties mature late. Culms usually weak.

VI. Varieties with black grains and wide-spreading panicles. Panicle, form of grain, ripening period, and culm as in V.

VII. Varieties with white grains and spreading panicles. Panicle spreading, all sides equal, its periphery oval; branches arched-upstanding, bare, spreading, irregular, the secondary branches strong; point short, somewhat knee-like. Grains 1–2 per spikelet, white, short, thick, hard, almost entirely inclosed by the lemma of the first grain, blunt, and short-pointed. Maturing period timely. Culms weak and brittle.

VIII. Varieties with black grains and spreading panicles. Panicle, form of grain, ripening period, and culm as in VII.

IX. Varieties with white grains and loose panicles. Panicle loose, all sides equal, long, slender, pyramid-like; primary branches short, erect, weak. Grains 1–2 per spikelet, very small but unusually plump, oval, and either blunt- or sharp-pointed. Maturing either timely or very late. Culms always weak.

X. Varieties with black grains and loose panicles. Panicle, form of grain, ripening period, and culm as in IX.

Under each of the preceding types the varieties are grouped and further distinguished by more particular descriptions, including minute differences in color of grains, presence and number of awns, and, occasionally, character of glumes. For example, Black Bell and Black Goldregen, Type IV, are thus described:[7]

Black Bell.— Panicle slender, stiff; grain chocolate-colored, spindle-like, hard, coarsely awned; glumes yellowish white, broad, bell-like; culms unusually stiff. Early-maturing.

Black Goldregen.— Panicle elegant; grain chestnut-colored, short, oval, wide open, very plump; awns few; glumes white, broad; culms strong, numerous.

The chief fault of the Svalöf system is in the lack of distinction between the panicle types of its main classes. The side, or unilateral, panicle, Types I and II, may easily be distinguished from all other forms, but among panicles of the spreading, or equilateral, type the transition of form would make an accurate classification very difficult. The system may be useful for the general description of varieties, but it can scarcely be employed for systematic identification.

Böhmer (1908–09) used for the classification of 92 varieties the panicle types characterized by Nilsson and the spikelet and grain forms described by Atterberg. The following outline of Böhmer's system includes seven main groups and twenty-two subgroups:[8]

I

A. Panicles stiff, short, mostly a "one-sided" (actually three-sided) pyramid, with sloping-upstanding, strong, main branches, the whole strongly acute; culms sufficiently stiff; ripening period generally medium early; 2–3-grained spikelets; grains large, full, blunt-pointed, and more or less oval.
    a. Bright grains.
    b. Dark grains.
  Side-panicle varieties with similar forms of grain.

B. Panicles similar to those of A, but more elegant in form; culms similar to those of A; ripening period early to medium early; 2–3-grained spikelets; grains medium, less full than those of A, more shriveled, and finer-hulled.
    a. Bright grains.
    b. Dark grains.

II

Panicles long, pyramid-formed, with long, slim, weak-ascending, wide, out-spreading branches which droop at the ends; apices of panicles meager and often drooping; culms weak; ripening period often early, but one variety is late in ripening; 3–1-grained spikelets; grains very long, long-pointed, shriveled, and meager.
    a. Bright grains.
    b. Dark grains.
  Side-panicle varieties with similar forms of grain.

---

[7] Translation from the original Swedish.
[8] Translation from the original German.

III

A. Panicles spreading, oval, irregular, short, with short, upstanding branches; apex of panicle short and somewhat inclined; culms usually weak; ripening period seasonable; outer grains open, mostly concave on their inner side, short, and blunt-pointed, the points weaker than in the pointed-grain forms; single grains entirely, or almost, closed and less numerous than among the "barley" types.
    a. Bright grains.
    b. Dark grains.
  Side-panicle varieties with similar forms of grain.

B. Panicles and culms similar to those of A, but larger; ripening period also as in A; grains large, thick, plump, and closed or almost closed, concave on their inner side, and with slim, weak points; many double-grains.
    a. Bright grains.
    b. Dark grains.
  Side-panicle varieties with similar forms of grain.

IV

A. Panicles long, slim-pyramidal in form, sparsely branched, all branches short, the main ones horizontal or loose-hanging; culms generally weak; ripening period seasonable to late; 1-3-grained spikelets; outer grain widest at upper end of rhachilla, and with sharp, stiff, closed or almost closed, points.
    a. Bright grains.
    b. Dark grains.

B. Panicles and culms similar to those of A; ripening period very early; 2-1-grained spikelets; grains fine-hulled, short, cylindrical, wide open, with blunt, short points.
    a. Bright grains.
    b. Dark grains.

Böhmer's classification cannot be said to distinctly differentiate groups of varieties. The panicle types adopted from Nilsson's classification are, as pointed out in the discussion of that system, lacking in the distinctiveness necessary for accurate identification; and the descriptions of grain forms selected from Atterberg's classification serve only to characterize in the most general terms the appearance of grains without distinguishing their morphological differences. Böhmer's system, therefore, does nothing more than present somewhat indefinite groups of vaguely characterized varieties, and it is in no respect a usable system for identification.

SUMMARY

From the foregoing discussions the outstanding features and the usefulness of previous systems of classification may be briefly summarized as follows:

1. The system of Körnicke and Werner, based on morphological differences of panicles, spikelets, and grains, is competent for the distinction

of types, but the identification of separate varieties by this system would be tedious, since it is left to the comparison of descriptions.

2. Atterberg's method of bringing together varieties alike in physical properties offers merely a system for the determination of the quality of grains. Groups of varieties thus classified would lose their identity under radical changes of environment. The system fails to group varieties of the same morphological character, and therefore it cannot be used for their identification.

3. The system proposed by Denaiffe and Sirodot is largely based on the relative forms of grains and their absolute measurements and weights, and it lacks efficiency to the extent of its employment of such characters. However, certain morphological characters suggested by these authors are useful both for identification and for description.

4. Nilsson's classes, chiefly described by the form of panicles, are often transitional and lacking in distinctiveness; and hence the group relationship of varieties would often be extremely difficult to determine by this system.

5. Böhmer's system combines the panicle classes of Nilsson with certain grain forms described by Atterberg. Classes arranged by this system would therefore be both transitional and subject to radical changes by the influence of environment.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

To be of practical use, a classification of any group of economic plants must serve a twofold purpose: it must provide a means of identifying the members of the group, and it must standardize varietal nomenclature.

The previous systems of classifying varieties of oats do not fulfill this purpose. Each of them fails as a means of identifying large numbers of varieties, for one or more of the following reasons: (1) a physical basis of construction; (2) a lack of competent and stable distinctions for groups of varieties; (3) a lack of systematic differentiation of groups into individual varieties. As a means of establishing a system of varietal nomenclature these earlier classifications, all of them foreign, are of little use in this country. American and European varieties of similar form are generally differently named, and hence much confusion would attend the adoption in this country of a European standard of nomenclature.

The review and discussion of the work of others has shown that a classification of varieties of oats, in order to be effective, must be based on the morphology of the plant. Accordingly the present classification has proceeded by the following steps: (1) a study of the morphology of the plant in order to discover the various characters by which individual varieties may differ; (2) an analysis of the varieties *en masse,* to reach the types which for the present purpose are considered elemental, that is, types that differ in one or more morphological characteristics; (3) an arrangement of varieties in groups, regardless of nomenclature, according to their likeness to the elemental types that represent the groups. Finally, the groups have been fully described and named, and a key has been constructed for their identification.

The system of naming the groups has consisted merely in applying the name that occurred the most frequently among the specimens of each group. This system, while arbitrary, seems the only logical one, for in many cases there is no means of determining which of several names was carried by the original variety. In all cases, however, the additional different names have been reserved and arranged as synonyms.

CLASSIFICATION MATERIAL

In this study seven hundred and thirty-one specimens, very many of them alike in name, have been classified. By far the largest number of these specimens, or so-called varieties, were brought together in 1909 at the Nebraska Agricultural Experiment Station, by Professor E. G. Montgomery and M. S. Jussell, who began their classification and laid the foundation for the present work. In making the collection, seeds were obtained of all varieties grown by forty experiment stations and of those sold by fifty-three seed houses. The original collection included all varieties then grown or offered for sale in the United States. In 1912 a duplicate collection was sent by the Nebraska station to the Office of Cereal Investigations, United States Department of Agriculture, and in that year the varieties were grown on the government experimental fields at Arlington, Virginia, and also at the Iowa Agricultural Experiment Station, at Ames, Iowa. In the following year, 1913, a duplicate collection was sent by the Office of Cereal Investigations to the Department of Plant Breeding at Cornell University. The varieties were grown in the plant-breeding field during the summer of 1913, at which time they were transferred to the Department of Farm Crops and came to the hands of the writer, by whom, in cooperation with the Office of Cereal Investigations, the work of classification was continued. During the years 1913, 1914, and 1915, the original collection has been supplemented by accessions from the Office of Cereal Investigations and from various other sources, all of which have supplied many new varieties or old varieties under new names that have appeared in the catalogs of seedsmen or in the reports of experiment stations.

During the time that the collection has been in the hands of the writer, the varieties have each year been grown in rows one rod in length spaced one foot apart. The plants were thinned to spaces of six inches in the row, thus giving equally to each plant a sufficient area in which to develop its growth.

MORPHOLOGY OF THE OATS PLANT

The following discussions present in considerable detail the morphology of the oats plant. The important taxonomic characters are described and their uses in previous classifications and in the present one are explained.

THE CARYOPSIS

In the characteristic spikelet of Avena the lemma and the palea firmly clasp the caryopsis, and the three parts combine to form the oats grain. The caryopsis, or kernel, presents in itself no morphological differences that may be utilized in classification; for it is always more or less spindle-shaped, furrowed on one side, and hairy at the tip and on the sides. The close investment of the kernel by the lemma and the palea, however, is an important character and serves to distinguish all other species of Avena from *Avena nuda*, in which the caryopsis is loose and free within its bracts, the parts readily separating. This characteristic of the *A. nuda* spikelet is considered by all systematists a specific distinction, and it presents the only case in which the caryopsis is directly concerned in the classification of varieties of oats.

BASILAR CONNECTION OF THE GRAINS

Among certain wild types of Avena the peduncle of the spikelet is slightly inserted into the callus of the first grain, and the junction of the two parts forms a well-articulated joint at which they easily separate when mature. The articulation of the second and third grains, however, varies with the species. In *A. sterilis* and its derivatives, the rhachilla and the callus of the upper grains are confluent, and the grains do not separate from their axes but tear away at its base the rhachilla itself (Plate I, 1, B). Among other forms, however, the rhachilla articulates with the callus of the upper grains approximately in the same manner as does the peduncle with that of the lower grain (Plate I, 2, B).

The characteristic basilar connection of the grains is not equally retained by the cultivated descendants of different wild types. The cultivated forms of *A. sterilis* retain, in this respect, the character of their wild ancestor, the lower grain articulating with its peduncle while the upper grains remain strongly adherent to their rhachillas (Plate II, 1, B). But in forms descended from *A. fatua*, although the upper grains still separate easily from their rhachillas, the articulation of the lower grain has become so solidified that its lines of demarcation are completely obliterated and the grain separates from its peduncle only by a rupture (Plates II, 2, B, and III, 1, B). The character of the basilar connection of their grains thus affords a marked distinction of cultivated *A. sterilis* forms on the one hand and of cultivated *A. fatua* forms (*A. sativa* and *A. sativa orientalis*) on the other. Trabut (1911), in studies of oats of the Mediterranean littoral, has by the use of this character traced a complete series of *A. sterilis*, beginning with the wild and ending with the cultivated forms. Schulz (1913), also, has utilized the character to distinguish *A. sterilis* from *A. fatua*, *A. barbata*, and *A. Wiestii*. Previous to the specific use of the character by Trabut, Norton (1907) had called attention to the firm union of the first and second grains in the spikelet of the cultivated forms of *A. sterilis*; and M. Körnicke (F. Körnicke, 1909) had communicated the result of certain studies by F. Körnicke in which the latter, in describing two cultivated types which he named *Modigenita* and *Quadriflora*, had mentioned the hanging-together of the grains during threshing — an indirect reference to the non-articulation of the upper grains. It may readily be assumed that F. Körnicke's varieties were of the *A. sterilis* form, since the persistence of the upper grains to their rhachillas is limited to that species.

The specific character of the basilar connection of the grains has not previously been utilized in extensive classification of cultivated varieties. Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) have characterized various forms of grain bases according to the obliquity of the scar produced by removal of the lower grain from its peduncle, but these authors do not relate the form of the base with the more definite character of articulation or non-articulation. Böhmer (1911) also mentions several forms of grain bases, but does not use them in his classification.

In the present study this character was found of the utmost value for distinguishing the cultivated forms of *A. sterilis* from those of *A. fatua.* The articulation of the lower grain is not so distinct as in the wild type, but the lines of separation may easily be recognized, and these, together with the adherence of the upper grains to their rhachillas, afford a reliable means of identifying *A. sterilis* forms.

HAIRS OF THE GRAIN

The hairs, or bristles, of the grain have been used by many systematists in the classification of cereal varieties. Neergaard (1889), in classifying varieties of barley, uses the hairs at the base of the grain as one of two fundamental variants for the distinction of groups. Other investigators, notably Blaringhem (1904) and Harlan (1914), have supported Neergaard's system. Broili (1906), however, believes the hairs would be inconstant under various environments, and hence not a reliable means of classification. Scofield (1903) includes the length and the color of hairs at the base of the glumes in his descriptions of wheat varieties. Fischer (1900) holds the appearance of hairs in oats as a mark of degeneration, which is more frequently manifest in winter varieties than in others. In the classification and description of varieties of oats by Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) and by Körnicke and Werner (1885), the hairs of the grain were employed as supplementary marks of distinction. The last-named authors, however, do not state the exact location of the hairs to which they refer, and hence their use of the character is somewhat vague.

In the most precise use of the character as an aid in distinguishing varieties of oats, the hairs of the grain must be classified as (1) hairs of the lemma, (2) hairs of the callus, and (3) hairs of the rhachilla (Plate I, 2, A and B).

Hairs of the lemma

The lemma (also called the flowering scale, flowering glume, inner glume, and superior glume) is the lower of two bracts immediately inclosing the flower in the grasses. In many wild species of Avena the lemma is more or less densely hairy, and the specific character of the hairs themselves is in some cases a mark of distinction. Among cultivated forms, however, the lemma is usually glabrous, and it is only in rare instances that a variety is distinguished by hairs on this part of the grain.

Hairs of the callus

The callus, a somewhat swollen callosity at the base of the lemma, is an insignificant part of the oats grain, but it often bears more or less conspicuous bristles, conveniently called basal hairs, which are in some cases an important feature in the description of varieties and useful in establishing their identity. Indeed, the basal hairs are frequently employed by botanists, notably Hitchcock (1908) and Britton and Brown (1896), in characterizing Avena species. Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) are the only authors who have specifically named the basal hairs in classifying cultivated forms of Avena; although Böhmer (1911), Broili (1910), and Fruwirth (1907) have mentioned this character in discussing the morphology of the oats grain, and have distinguished the following types of basal hairs on the basis of difference in their form and frequency:

Böhmer

1. Numerous to bushy short bristles.
2. Few short bristles.
3. Numerous long, fine, bushy bristles.
4. Few long, fine bristles.
5. Bristles almost wholly absent.
6. Bristles numerous, irregular, long, and fine.
7. Bristles long and fine.

Broili

1. Single short hairs.
2. Many short, bristly hairs.
3. Single long hairs.
4. Many long, bushy hairs.
5. Single twisted and band-like hairs

Fruwirth

1. Hairs very long and numerous.
2. Hairs very long, but few or scarce.
3. Hairs short, few to many.
4. Hairs short, occurring singly.

The classes of Fruwirth, and those of Broili with the exception of the fifth, which has not been observed in the present work, adequately define the types that may in some cases be used in identifying varieties. The classes arranged by Böhmer, however, are in some cases too finely differentiated for this purpose.

In the description of all varieties, and occasionally for identifying those within small groups, the classes suggested by Broili and Fruwirth are used in the present classification, according to the following outline:

- Basal hairs present.
  1. Long.
     - a. Few.
     - b. Many.
  2. Short.
     - a. Few.
     - b. Many.
- Basal hairs absent.

The presence of basal hairs may readily be observed, without magnification, in the mature grain. The hairs are lost in threshing, however, and must be observed in the whole spikelet.

Hairs of the rhachilla

The rhachilla, or pedicel, is the secondary axis of the spikelet. It is a slender stalk borne at the base of the grain and articulating with the callus of the succeeding grain, and it often carries from a few to many short, setaceous hairs. The rhachillas of cultivated varieties of oats have been classified by Broili (1910) into several types according to their form and the frequency of their hairs. Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901), alone of the earlier investigators, have considered the character of the rhachilla in establishing the identity of varieties of oats, and they attach far greater importance to its hairiness than to its form. In the present work the hairs of the rhachilla are often used to distinguish varieties within small groups. They are partly destroyed by threshing, but may readily be observed, by a slight magnification, on the matured grain of the complete spikelet, and among several varieties they afford a reliable supplementary mark of identity.

FORM OF THE RHACHILLA

The rhachilla is variously flat, rounded, or furrowed. Its length, except in the extremely elongated spikelet of *A. nuda*, is usually between 1.5 and 3.5 millimeters. Broili (1910) has described the following types:

1. Short and outstanding.
2. Long and outstanding.
3. Long and partly inclosed by the lemma.
4. Round for its entire length.
5. Flattened for its entire length.
6. Flattened, and on the upper third laterally furrowed.
7. Flattened and furrowed at the base.
8. Round and hairy.

Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) characterize the most general forms of the rhachilla, which may be used in classification, as follows:

1. 2.5–3 mm. long, round, and toward the apex gradually swelling into a knob-like head.
2. 1.5–2 mm. long, more or less flattened and furrowed, and not swollen at the apex.

Böhmer (1908–09) found, during four years of investigation, that the form and length of the rhachilla remained constant.

In the present study the descriptions of the rhachilla by Broili and by Denaiffe and Sirodot have been found accurate but often extremely difficult to determine; and, moreover, some of the types are not strictly confined to different varieties, but are often combined in the same variety or even in the same panicle. Of the characters of the rhachilla here mentioned, none have been considered worthy of use except hairiness, length, and, in some varieties, the partial envelopment of the rhachilla by the lemma.

NERVES OF THE GLUME AND THE LEMMA

In the species of Avena the venation of the glume and of the lemma appears as slender, rib-like striations. Such veins are called *nerves*, and when in wild forms those of the lemma extend beyond its apex as teeth or awn-points they distinguish the species. Thus, *A. brevis* and *A. strigosa* are characterized by such awn- or tooth-like projections (Plates III, 2, A, and IV, A), while for other species, such as *A. pubescens* and *A: Smithii*, the number or the scabrous character of the nerves is a distinguishing feature. In common cultivated varieties, the lemma is never toothed or awn-pointed, and rarely scabrous, but the number and the prominence of the nerves are variable, and may in some cases be used in classification. Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901), alone of the earlier investigators, frequently mention the prominence of the nerves of the lemma as a minor distinction for varieties within small groups.

In the present classification the number of nerves in the glume and in the lemma, and the prominence of nerves in the latter structure, are used as descriptive terms and sometimes to aid in the identification of varieties. The number of nerves in the glume varies from seven to thirteen, but in most varieties it is usually nine; in the lemma the usual number is seven, although the limits are from five to ten. The prominence of the nerves is a relative character the estimation of which must be left to the judgment of the investigator. The number and the prominence of the nerves are inheritable characters and in a given variety do not vary beyond the characteristic limits. The nerves of the glumes may easily be counted in the green spikelet, while those of the lemma are more distinct in the matured grain.

THE AWN

The awn, or beard, of Avena is an extension of the midrib of the lemma, emerging from the epidermis at about the middle of the grain. In wild forms it thus appears on all grains of the spikelet, and usually is geniculate and, below the knee, twisted (Plate I, 1, A). The form and the persistence of the awn are usually included by botanists in descriptions of Avena species. In most cultivated varieties the awn is carried only by the lower grain, and is usually straight, weak, and scarcely twisted. A few cultivated varieties, however, have awns which are rather strongly twisted and occasionally geniculate. Trabut (1911), in tracing a series of *A. sterilis* between the wild and the cultivated types, observed a gradual reduction in the number of awns per spikelet and in their geniculate and twisted form. Zade (1912), on crossing a cultivated variety with *A. fatua*, found that in hybrids of the first generation the lower grain only of the spikelet was bearded. Nilsson-Ehle (1914) found awns to be produced more numerously by white and black grains than by yellow grains, the latter apparently containing a factor which inhibited their development.

The appearance of numerous strong awns in cultivated oats is regarded by many as a mark of degeneracy resulting from unfavorable conditions for growth. There is not sufficient evidence, however, to prove that such so-called reversions are anything more than intermediate forms which occur in the mixed population of cultivated oats; for, while certain varieties are awnless, many of the best varieties, as Swedish Select, have numerous, rather strong, awns, and frequently in varieties of the *A. sterilis* group all grains of the spikelet are awned. Roberts and Freeman (1908), on investigating the "degeneracy" of the Texas Red variety, found merely a mixture of two distinct forms.

In systematizing cultivated oats the awn is a character of much taxonomic value. Körnicke and Werner (1885) made the primary division of their principal group according to the number of awns in the spikelet. Thus, varieties with awnless or one-awned spikelets were separated from those with two-awned spikelets; and for the distinction of individual varieties of the former group the presence or the absence of awns was coordinated with the color of grains. Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) frequently used the presence and the form of awns as secondary characters for the distinction of groups. With respect to awns, they divided the grains into three groups: (1) awnless; (2) outer grains with coarse, deciduous awns; (3) outer grains with finer, persistent awns. Atterberg (1891), Nilsson (1901), and Böhmer (1911) made no use of the awns in classification, although Böhmer (1908-09) believed that varieties might be grouped according to the classes of Denaiffe and Sirodot, even though their group relationship would often be uncertain. Broili (1910) believes the awn to have little or no systematic value.

In the present classification the presence or the absence of awns has been regarded as a character of secondary importance and frequently used in that order. Geniculate awns appear often only in a few half-wild varieties, but in such cases they are recognized as a distinguishing character. No statistical studies have herein been made of the inheritance in frequency of awns, but in respect to the actual presence or absence of awns, together with their form, the varieties under study have by observation remained constant.

FORM OF THE GRAIN

A differentiation of the form of grains, including plumpness, or fullness, size, and specific outline, has been a prominent feature of most of the previous systems of classification. Atterberg (1891) based his classification mainly on the size (weight) of the grains, and on the following shapes: pointed, short, barley-like, and full, or plump. Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) incorporated in their system the method of Atterberg, and in addition employed other shapes of the grain, described as slender and duckbill. Nilsson (1901) and Böhmer (1911) made the form of the grains subordinate to the character of the panicle; and the latter author, while employing certain of the classes suggested by Atterberg, referred also to the points of the grain and to its ventral groove.

In the present studies the form of the grain, considered with reference to any or all of its characteristics mentioned above, has been found to exhibit a marked transitional tendency; and therefore, in attempting to organize into groups a large number of varieties on the basis of differences in their grain forms, one soon meets with difficulty in determining the group relationship of particular varieties. The characteristics of form are also very difficult to describe. Thus, certain forms are not accurately defined by the terms *plump* and *long-pointed*; only the relative conditions are stated, and the distinction is left to the judgment of the person using the classification.

Being, then, a transitional character and a relative one, the form of the grain can have only a very limited use in classification. It has been used occasionally in the present work to divide small groups reduced to as few members as possible by previous separations on the basis of more sharply defined taxonomic differences.

COLOR OF THE GRAIN

The color of the grain, or, more definitely, the color of the lemma when ripe, has been accorded various degrees of importance in classification by other investigators. Körnicke and Werner (1885) used color alone to distinguish the main groups of varieties in *A. sativa* and *A. sativa orientalis*. Nilsson (1901), in arranging the Svalöf system, made the color of the grains and the coordinating form of panicles the main distinction for principal types. Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) characterized main groups of varieties by stating the range in their color; and to describe single varieties they made numerous fine subdivisions of color within each group. Dufour and Dassonville (1903) believe that color is one of the most important characters for the differentiation of groups, but that it must be considered *en masse* rather than in individual grains. Böhmer (1908–09) used color only as a final means of distinguishing varieties within groups characterized by the form of panicles, spikelets, and grains. Fruwirth (1907), also, believes color to be of little importance in classification. Atterberg (1891) mentions it only as a descriptive character.

In the present classification color is in some cases made the basis for the separation of principal groups. It is the most conspicuous character of the oats grain; it is with certainty inherited; and therefore it is of particular use in identification and description. To be sure, the color of a given variety is not absolutely stable, for under changes of environment it may pass into different tones of the same general hue, which, however, do not transgress the limits of the type. Nilsson-Ehle (1909) has reported the constancy of color inheritance in oats grains, although noting a slight variation under changes of environment — due, he believes, to the influence of the soil. He finds the range in variation of dark-colored forms to be only from brown to black, and the reverse. Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) also found color to be accurately inherited; but by the influence of environment, they said, black grains shade toward gray but never toward red, while brown grains shade toward red but not toward gray. Böhmer's investigation (1908–09) of dark-colored varieties gave results similar to those of Denaiffe and Sirodot; and in studying yellow varieties also, he found these to shade into various tones of yellow but never into white. Zade (1912), in noting the inheritance of characters in *A. fatua*, found the colors of the grain accurately reproduced.

It appears, then, that the basic types of color in grains are not transitional, but merely variable within certain limits; therefore it is only necessary to differentiate the colors properly in order to use them as means of distinguishing varieties. In doing this, however, one must not attempt to make fine subdivisions of color, for the distinction may be lost by variation within the type. The following classifications of color are given to illustrate the use of the character by different authors:

Zade (*A. fatua*)
- Brown or black.
- Gray.
- White.

Kőrnicke and Werner (various species)
- White.
- Yellow.
- Gray.
- Brown or red.
- Black.

Nilsson (*A. sativa* and *A. sativa orientalis*)
- Light } Many fine subdivisions in color between varieties of each class.
- Dark }

Böhmer (*A. sativa* and *A. sativa orientalis*)
- **Light-colored:**
  - **White, white-yellowish.**
  - **Yellowish, yellow.**
- **Dark-colored:**
  - **Black, brown, red, gray.**

Denaiffe and Sirodot (*A. sativa* and *A. sativa orientalis*)
- **Light-colored:**
  - **White, white-yellowish, yellow.**
- **Dark-colored:**
  - **Black, red, gray.**

In the present classification, several large groups of varieties are primarily divided, with respect to color, merely as dark-colored (black, brown, red, gray) and light-colored (white, yellow), but further division on the basis of color is made only in groups that have been reduced by separations according to differences in other characters. This apparent reluctance to make immediate further separation on the basis of color is not due to lack of faith in the stability of the character, but merely because, for convenience in classification, the use of other characters is expedient. In three years of investigation the colors of grains have been found constant within the limits of the classes outlined in this paragraph. With respect to variability of color types, the observation may be added that from year to year unlike weather conditions at the time of ripening will cause slight variations in the color of a given variety. Thus, if the maturing period is during bright, dry weather, the grains are brighter and more pronounced in color than if the maturing period is during wet and cloudy weather. Black or yellow grains that ripen under the latter atmospheric conditions show a tendency toward smoky brown and pale yellow, although never becoming reddish brown or white. The stage of maturity at which the grain is harvested also affects its shade of color, all colors being more pronounced when the grain is thoroughly matured than when it is either slightly immature or allowed to weather after the maturation period has passed.

DIMENSIONS OF THE GRAINS

Although Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) minutely characterized the grains by absolute measurements and often used the same feature to distinguish secondary groups of varieties, other investigators, while including the dimensions of grains in the detailed descriptions of varieties, have not used them for the differentiation of classes. In the present classification the dimensions of grains are seldom used for any but a descriptive purpose. There are very few varieties the grains of which may distinctly be characterized by dimensions. In nearly all varieties the measurements of grains cannot be classified; they are transitional between types and between individual varieties.

DOUBLE-GRAINS

The so-called "double-grain" in cultivated oats is a condition of the spikelet in which the second grain is either partly or wholly inclosed by the lemma of the defective first grain (Plate XXI, 3). It is found only in spikelets that have two grains, and has by other writers been considered both as a mere abnormality and as a varietal characteristic. Atterberg (1891) believed double-grains to be due to unfavorable conditions of weather at the time of ripening, and therefore of no importance in classification; but he also noted their more numerous occurrence in certain varieties than in others. Fruwirth (1907) speaks of normally developed double-grains, and observed a varietal tendency to produce them. Nilsson-Ehle (1906) apparently regarded double-grains as a character of little importance in oat breeding, since under the environmental conditions existing in Sweden they composed but a small proportion of the total number of grains in the panicle. He found, however, among different varieties a decided range in the occurrence of double-grains, in respect of which there was a varietal stability under somewhat different environments. The investigation of Böhmer (1908–09) shows a greater tendency by some varieties than by others to produce double-grains, but the variation in their production was greater as between seasons than as between varieties. Krogmann's data (1908) show a considerable range among varieties with respect to the kernel content of double-grains.

From the foregoing views the status of the double-grained spikelet may be defined as an abnormality resulting from incomplete development, but toward which there is a varietal tendency. This conclusion has been fully confirmed in the present work, but in the production of double-grains a varietal tendency much greater than that reported by others has been observed. For example, in the widely different varieties Storm King and Canadian, the typical spikelet is double-grained, although the data of Nilsson-Ehle and those of Böhmer show, in varieties of Swedish and

German oats, proportions of double-grains ranging only from 0.3 to 4.4 per cent of the total number of grains. The value of double-grains as a character in classification is therefore only local, and their occurrence in certain varieties may in most cases be considered a measure of the lack of adaptability of the variety to its environment. However, since the limits of environment under which double-grains predominate in certain varieties cannot be stated, they must in such cases be accepted as a varietal characteristic, subject, perhaps, to place variation. On that basis they are used in the present classification as a supplementary character for the identification of the few varieties in which, under this environment, they form the typical predominating spikelet.

Double-grains may readily be identified when mature. Many observers, however, have apparently mistaken double-grains for the very unusual single-grained spikelet. One rarely finds a so-called single-grained spikelet which on examination does not prove to be really a double-grain with the first or the second grain, or both, defective or rudimentary.

THE SPIKELET

Without considering separately its parts, the spikelet as a morphologic entity presents only two characters useful in classification, namely, its attitude and the number of grains it carries.

Attitude of spikelets

In different varieties the attitude of the spikelets may be observed as pendant, pectinate, and confused (pointing in all directions) (figs. 12, 13, and 14, respectively). All these forms are found among varieties of *A. sativa orientalis* and they are in some cases useful in classifying the members of that group. In all other varieties, however, only the pendant form is found, and hence no distinction by the attitude of spikelets is to be made outside of the *A. sativa orientalis* group.

Number of grains in spikelet

In the common cultivated forms of oats the number of grains carried by the spikelet ranges from one to three, with the exception of *A. nuda*, the spikelets of which often bear four, five, or even six grains. There are no varieties bearing exclusively one-, two-, or three-grained spikelets,

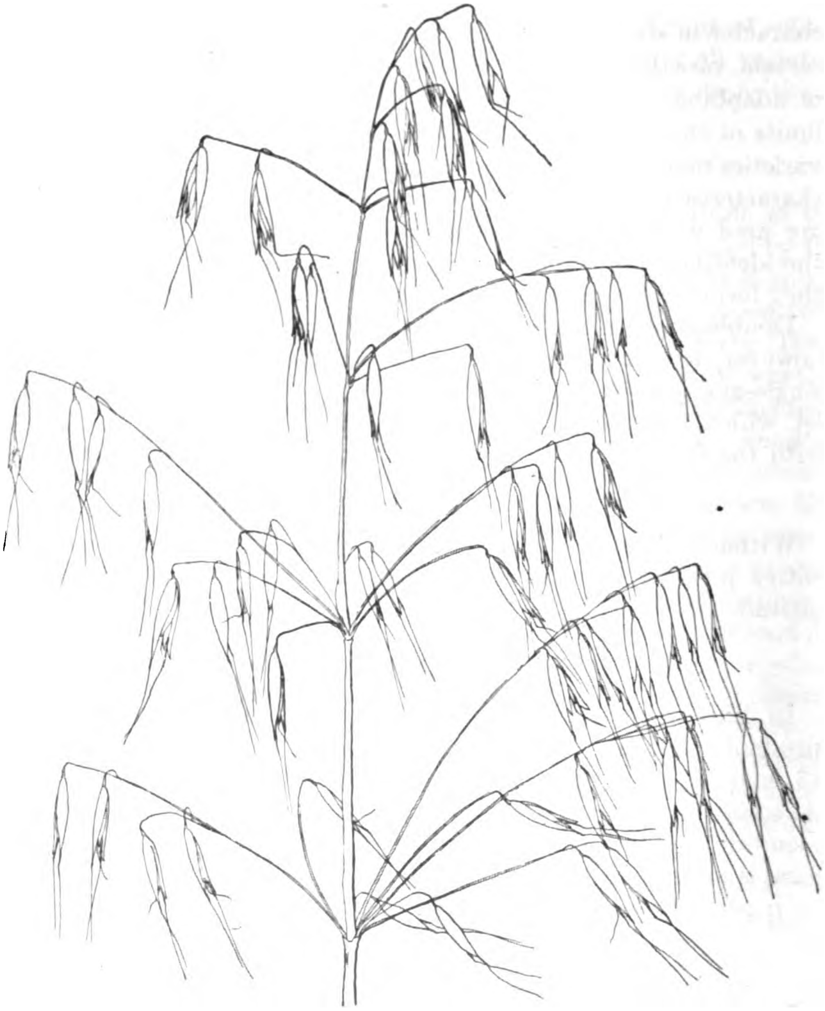


FIG. 12. PANICLE FORM OF AVENA STERILIS AND AVENA FATUA, SHOWING PENDANT ATTITUDE OF SPIKELETS

and any distinction by this character must be according only to the prevailing number of grains. In all previous classifications the prevailing number of grains in the spikelet has been given greater or less prominence in the characterization of groups. Atterberg (1891) distinguished three main groups of his system by this means. Other investigators, however, have made less use of the character, employing it as a supplementary distinction or only in special cases.

The chief objection to the use in classification of the number of grains in the spikelet is because of the uncertain definition of one-, two-, or three-grained spikelets. Shall the definition be based on the number of fully developed grains, or shall it include defective grains? Thus there is no definite point at which fully developed two-grained spikelets can be separated as a class from those of the defective double-grained

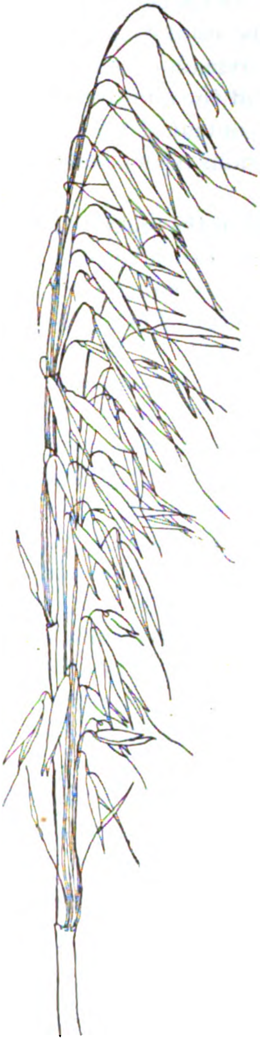


FIG. 13. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS, SHOWING PECTINATE ATTITUDE OF SPIKELETS

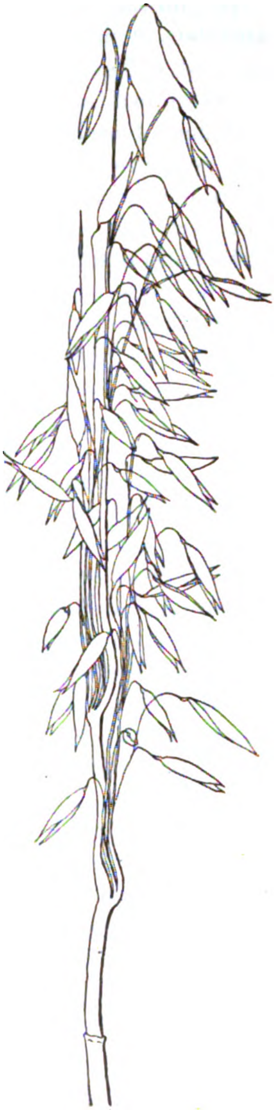


FIG. 14. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS, SHOWING CONFUSED ATTITUDE OF SPIKELETS

type; nor can the latter be segregated as a class from so-called one-grained spikelets, which in reality are nothing less than extreme cases of double-grained spikelets. And, could such distinctions be established, there is no assurance that the classes thus arranged would remain constant under a change of environment. Bünger (1906) has found the number of spikelets per panicle to vary greatly with the moisture content of the soil, and there is no reason to believe that the number of grains per spikelet would not vary also.

In the present classification the number of grains in the spikelet is used only in a few special cases, when as between individual varieties of a small group there is a marked difference in respect to this character. In the detailed descriptions of varieties the prevailing number of grains is mentioned merely as a record for this environment.

MATURING PERIOD

The maturing period, an important factor of the economic value of varieties, has a very limited use in classification. Varieties may be spoken of as *early* or *late* only in a relative sense, and not as actually defining a characteristic by which they may be identified. There is mutability of maturation in response to different climates and different soil conditions; and while for each variety there are also limits beyond which its ripening period does not fluctuate, these cannot at present be accurately established. The data from comparative tests of varieties under different environments, by which a range in ripening periods might be fixed, are unfortunately often rendered untrustworthy by the confusion of varietal nomenclature. In this classification the writer is therefore limited to statements of the ripening periods of varieties only as applying to the present environment; such statements as a rule being for the most general purpose of description, although for the extremely early varieties Sixty-Day and Kherson the time required for ripening is used as a supplementary means of distinction.

COLOR OF GLUMES AT MATURITY

The color of the ripened glume differs but little in cultivated varieties. Nilsson (1901) has distinguished pale golden from a deeper, brighter tone of the same color, and he uses the two shades of color in the description of single varieties. Körnicke and Werner (1885) often employed the character for the same purpose, but Fruwirth (1907) considers it of no value. While under given conditions a distinction in the color of the glume may be observed, the difference is slight and is largely dependent on the stage of ripening at which the observation is made and on the climatic environment; therefore the character is an inconstant one and is not worthy of use in classification.

PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF GRAINS

Although the absolute weight of the grains, and their proportion of kernel and hull, were used in classification by Atterberg (1891) and by Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901), no other investigators have employed these characters for the separation of a large number of varieties. Böhmer (1908–09) argues that the physical properties are too easily influenced by conditions of climate and soil to be reliable characters in classification. His extensive data show not only that in the weight of grains there was from year to year a greater difference than was covered by the classes of Atterberg and the French authors, but also that in a given year the position of the grain in the spikelet would determine its group relationship in weight and kernel content. Thus, in respect to these characters, outer grains would fall into higher classes than inner or middle grains. There is an abundance of other data to support Böhmer's conclusions. Fruwirth (1907) shows the same wide difference between outer and inner grains in weight and in proportion of kernel, and he also finds that both properties are influenced by the position of the grains in the panicle; grains borne by the upper branches are heavier and richer in kernels than those borne by the lower branches, on which there are a greater number of sterile flowers. Lippoldes (1904) shows further a difference between the weight of grains from various stems of the same stool.

As to the effect of soil and moisture on the physical properties of the grains, Bünger (1906) found that poor soils, low in moisture, produced light grains, small kernels, and many sterile spikelets. The effect of an extreme range in seasons on the weight and the kernel content of the oats grain has been shown by Seton (1903), Edler (1905), and Berry (1912), all of whom found that much larger and plumper grains were produced in cool, moist seasons than in hot, dry seasons. Berry, who classified the grains of oats into several types on the basis of physical properties, believed that the distinction between his classes might be greatly modified, or even obliterated, by a radical change in climatic environment. The conclusions of Jensen (1899) would seem to provide a basis for Berry's conclusion, for Jensen, on collecting varieties of oats from many countries, found that by far the heaviest grains came from countries having an insular or a coast climate.

In view of the many factors influencing them, the physical properties of grains are of no use in any classification beyond a mere arrangement of market grades. Classes based on such characters could not be expected to remain constant under the extremely wide range of climatic environment in this country. And even under given conditions of environment, the variation in weight and in kernel content, according to the position of the grain in the spikelet and in the panicle, would make difficult an accurate arrangement of types.

THE PANICLE

The panicle, or loose flowering head, exhibits among the wild forms of Avena no distinct taxonomic differences. Botanists mention the length and the form of the panicle as a general descriptive feature but not as a specific distinction. Among cultivated varieties, however, two characters of the panicles may be directly utilized in classification. These are its form, and certain peculiarities in the structure of its rhachis.

Form of the panicle

The form of the panicle is determined by the attitude of the branches. These may form the common, roughly equilateral panicle, as in *A. sativa* (fig. 24, page 874), or the unilateral panicle of *A. sativa orientalis*, (fig. 13, page 849), or any variation of these types. In both the contrasting types the branches issue from various sides of the rhachis, but later assume different attitudes. The branches of the equilateral panicle spread outward from various sides of the rhachis and extend upward at angles of about forty-five degrees, and, shortening toward the apex, form a rough pyramid. Panicles of this type may be compact and stiff, with each branch in an ascendant attitude along the line of its initial angle for its entire length; or they may be open and lax, with the branches ascendant but finally drooping from the middle outward. In unilateral panicles the branches incline from one side of the rhachis and, extending upward at acute angles, are somewhat appressed, often being in contact with the rhachis itself. Varieties with such unilateral panicles are commonly termed *side, flag, banner,* or *horsemane* oats.

As between the unilateral and equilateral types, the whorls of branches are not different in number; nor is there in this respect any varietal distinction within each type, the number of whorls commonly varying from five to eight in each variety. Thus the relative compactness of the panicles of different varieties depends on the attitude and the number of the branches and the length of the internodes, but not on the actual number of whorls of branches. The apex of the panicle differs slightly among varieties of each type. In some varieties it is straight, erect, and short; in others it is longer, somewhat tenuous, and drooping. The difference, however, is not well marked, and the two forms are often transitional in the same variety.

The form of the panicle has been used in all previous systems of classification, except that of Atterberg. Nilsson (1901) found among the varieties at Svalöf the following types:

1. Stiff panicles.
2. Hanging panicles.
3. Bushy panicles.
4. Loose panicles.
5. Side panicles.

These were coordinated with light- and dark-colored grains to distinguish ten main groups of varieties. Böhmer (1908–09) adopted the panicle types employed by Nilsson, and, with modifications in their description, used them as the chief distinction of his main classes. Körnicke and Werner (1885) made a distinction only between the unilateral and equilateral types of panicles, while Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) used the form of panicles only as a descriptive feature and not as a means of separating groups of varieties.

As may be seen from the descriptions of the panicle types of Nilsson and of Böhmer (1908–09:12–15), these authors made several subdivisions of the equilateral, or spreading, form, according to the elongation of the rhachis and the angles at which the branches depended from their axes. Ulander (1906), Fruwirth (1907), and Broili (1910) have all mentioned these types, and Broili has illustrated them, thus indicating their appearance in almost any large collection of varieties. And indeed the types are not uncommon, for all of them have been recognized among the varieties of the present classification. But the establishment of groups of varieties according to such fine subdivisions in the form of panicles was found to be exceedingly difficult and impracticable. There is a clear and constant distinction between the unilateral and equilateral forms, but subdivisions of either form, while well defined between certain varieties, are transitional between others. In fact, often the panicles of the same plant were found to exhibit a transition between certain forms described by Nilsson and by Böhmer. It would not be possible, therefore, to establish accurately the group relationship of a large number of varieties in a system based on fine distinctions between forms of the panicles. There would be uncertainty in many cases as to which of two transitional groups should include a given variety.

In the present classification the *A. sativa orientalis* group is distinguished by its unilateral panicles, and there is no probability of confusing the one-sided, appressed panicles of this group with the equilateral, spreading panicles of other groups. Beyond this primary distinction, however, the form of panicles is employed in but few cases, and then only as a supplementary character for the separation of smaller groups.

The rhachis

The rhachis, which is that part of the stem running through the panicle, commonly shows among the forms of Avena no taxonomic differences. It is usually slightly flexuous, and uniform throughout its length. In marked contrast to this general form, however, there are a few varieties, mostly of the *A. sativa orientalis* group, in which the rhachis exhibits two peculiarities of structure—an extremely flexuous form, and an abnormal node at the point from which arises the lowest whorl of branches (fig. 15, A). The peculiar node is very striking. It is situated at a somewhat geniculate bend in the rhachis, and its diaphragm is usually wanting. Lacking a nodal diaphragm, the stem is hollow at this point in contrast to its solidity at normal nodes (fig. 15, B). Below the geniculate bend is a normal, although branchless and leafless, node, and the two nodes, although in some cases fused, are usually from one to four inches apart. The branches probably originate at the outlying normal node, but fuse with the stem until finally they issue from the knee-like bend, which thus becomes nominally the first node of the panicle. The diaphragm of the first node is usually, but not always, absent. In some cases, when the first node, or bend, is fused with the outlying node, the diaphragm is present, although often more or less defective; but in such cases the diaphragm thus appearing is doubtless a part of the usual outlying node.

Without special histological studies of its structure, little can be said of this peculiarity of the rhachis, although for its present taxonomic use the foregoing general description is sufficient. Neither the abnormal node nor the extremely flexuous form of the rhachis has been used in previous classifications of varieties of oats, although Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901) have described and illustrated the former. For a few varieties of the present classification, however, these exceptional characters provide a marked distinction, and for that purpose they are used.

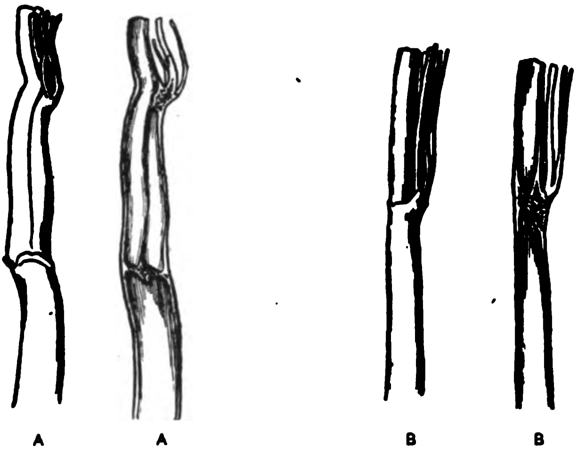


FIG. 15. THE ABNORMAL NODE IN CERTAIN VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS

A, Section of stem and rhachis showing the lowest whorl of branches issuing from a bend in the rhachis at which the nodal diaphragm is wanting, while the true node, branchless, lies some distance below; B, section of stem and rhachis showing the lowest whorl of branches arising from a normal node at which the nodal diaphragm is well developed

THE LEAVES

In the leaves of cultivated oats the varietal differences are found in their margins and dimensions. Körnicke and Werner (1885), in describing varieties, mentioned the ciliate margins and the length and width of leaves, but they did not use these characters in classification. Among certain groups of varieties, however, the leaves differ greatly. Thus there is a marked distinction between the fine, narrow leaves of Sixty-Day and Kherson, and the wide, coarse leaves of Storm King and Sparrowbill, although between varieties of a similar type the leaves are scarcely unlike. The varietal difference in size of the leaves is better expressed in width than in length, for the latter dimension is the less constant in a given variety and, because of the drying and breaking of the tips, is often difficult to ascertain correctly. However, the dimensions of the leaves are not here used in classification, but merely as a minor character in description. The only important character of the leaf used in this classification is in the presence or the absence of its cilia, or marginal hairs (fig. 16). The cilia, when present, are to be found on the margins of all leaves below the uppermost one, and they are a definite, inherited, and easily observed morphological character, sometimes useful in distinguishing varieties. They are best observed in the green plant, for when at maturity the leaves become shriveled the cilia are obscure.

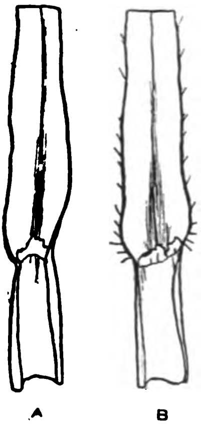


FIG. 16. SECTIONS OF OATS LEAF SHOWING (A) GLABROUS MARGINS AND (B) CILIATE MARGINS

THE LIGULE AND THE AURICLE

The ligule, a scarious, cartilaginous appendage borne at the orifice of the sheath, is characteristic of the Gramineae and is rarely wanting (fig. 17). Indeed the ligule is such a fixed and definite morphological character of the grass family that its structural variation and its absolute length are frequently used by botanists as a feature in the characterization of separate species. Within species of the Gramineae, the absence of the ligule is so distinctly unusual that it is of remarkable value for fixing the identity of a single variety or of a group of varieties.

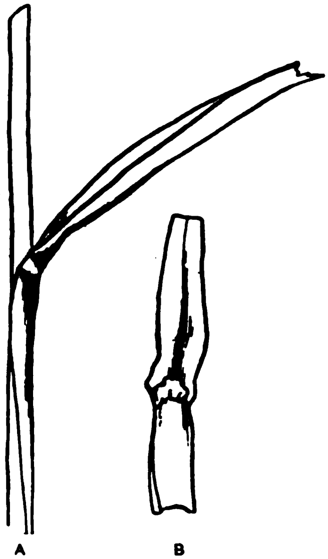


FIG. 17. A NORMAL LIGULATE AND AURICULATE LEAF

A, Showing leaf bending away from the stem at its junction with the sheath; B, section of the leaf showing on the inner side the ligule

There are but few cases reported in which members of the Gramineae have been found to lack this character. The writer has observed it to be wanting in *Echinochloa crusgalli* var. *muticum*, *E. Walteri*, and *E. frumentacea*. Emerson (1912) discovered a type of dent corn (*Zea mays indentata*) which lacked not only the ligule, but also the auricle. He found that the progeny of self-pollinated plants of this type inherited with certainty the non-ligulate and non-auriculate character of the parent, and that in crosses with normal plants the peculiar character segregated as a recessive one in hybrids of the second generation. From a description and illustration by Collins (1909) it would appear also that in plants of a certain type of *Zea mays* from China the ligule and the auricle were absent, or at least rudimentary. Nilsson-Ehle (1909) reported the absence of the ligule in the variety Jaune Géant à Grappes of *A. sativa orientalis*, and he, like Emerson, found the character to be strictly inheritable and to act as a recessive one in the second-generation hybrids. In the same species, Schneider (1912) noted the non-ligulate character of the varieties Golden Giant and Giant Banner, although he made no studies of its transmission.

In the present studies the absence of the ligule and the auricle has been observed only in certain varieties of *A. sativa orientalis*, two of which correspond to the varieties reported by Nilsson-Ehle and by Schneider. In all these varieties the leaf is approximately continuous in structure with the sheath and its characteristic form may easily be recognized. Unlike the ordinary leaf, it does not bend away from the stem at its junction with the

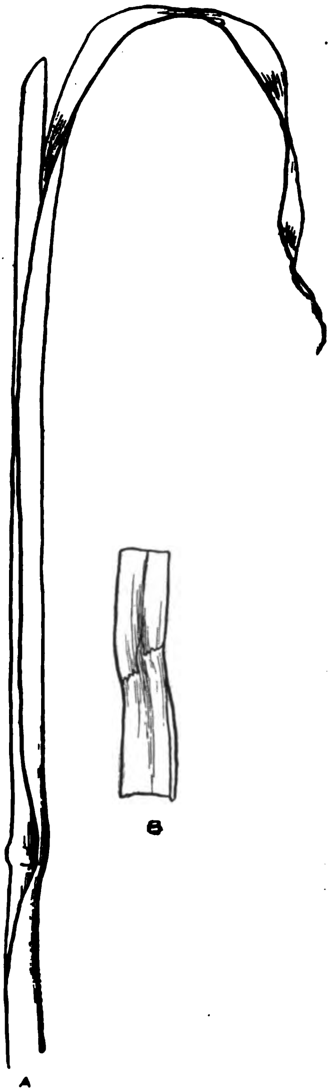


FIG. 18. **AN ABNORMAL NON-LIGULATE AND NON-AURICULATE LEAF**

A, Showing how the leaf lies close to the stem for most of its length; B, section of the leaf and sheath, showing on the inner side the non-ligulate character sheath, but extends upward, and for a part of its length it is nearly parallel with the stem (fig. 18).

The non-ligulate and non-auriculate character of the leaves is a remarkable distinction for certain varieties of *A. sativa orientalis*, and is used in the present classification to separate such varieties from those of the same group having the common ligulate and auriculate leaf. The character has not previously been used in the classification of varieties of oats.

THE SHEATH

The sheath, or lower tubular part of the leaf which envelops the culm, offers few characteristic differences that may be used in classification. The differences are only in relative length and color; and, since the latter is subsequently discussed in relation to the color of the young plant, the only difference to be considered is in length.

With respect to its length the sheath may be divided into two classes — those that partly cover, and those that completely cover, the internodes. Sheaths of the latter type are found only in varieties the leaves of which have no ligule nor auricle. In such varieties the sheath passes without apparent interruption into the leaf, and the continuous structure lies close to the stem to a point some distance above the node. Since in this case the greater length of the sheath is distinctly correlated with the more definite non-ligulate and non-auriculate character of the leaf, it is not in itself considered a specific character and is therefore not worthy of especial use in classification or description.

THE CULM

The culm, or stem, has not previously been used in classification except with respect to its quality, that is, its relative hardness and stiffness. Nilsson (1901) and Böhmer (1908-09), in characterizing groups of varieties, mention the quality of the culms but do not refer to their height and their number per plant. On the other hand, Körnicke and Werner (1885) mention the latter two characters in describing individual varieties, but do not use them in classification. The value in classification of the height, the number, and the quality of culms is very doubtful; for these characters are largely influenced by conditions of growth, and they fluctuate within a wide varietal latitude. Quality and height are also purely relative characters which can be judged only by comparison among many varieties; and, while they may be used in general description, such characters are not in themselves a reliable means of distinction.

PUBESCENCE AT THE NODES

Another character of the culm having a minor descriptive value is the pubescence slightly above and below the nodes. This differs among varieties, but not sufficiently to warrant an important use in classification (fig. 19).

THE ROOTS

There are no varietal differences of roots that may be used in classification. Schneider (1912), from studies of the vegetative characters of oats, believes the ratio of the root mass to that of the parts above ground is a varietal characteristic and is constant under different environments; but his plants were grown in pots, and hence were not exposed to extreme conditions. Bünger (1906), on the other hand, found under field conditions that the mass ratios of all parts of the oats plant were directly related to soil fertility and soil moisture. In the present study no structural differences have been found among the roots of different varieties, and, although often there were marked differences in root mass, such differences were found also within the same variety, being merely an expression of a more vigorous growth.

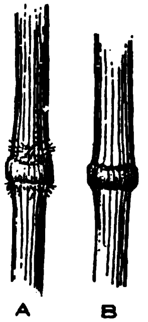


FIG. 19. SECTIONS OF OATS STEM SHOWING (A) STEMS HAIRY AT THE NODES AND (B) STEMS GLABROUS AT THE NODES

HABIT OF PLANT IN EARLY GROWTH

The habit of the culms in early growth is one of the most important characters of the oats plant. It has not been considered by previous investigators, probably because the varieties classified displayed only the common erect habit. Among varieties of the present classification, however, there are three distinct forms in early growth — spreading, semi-spreading, and erect (fig. 20). The young plants of the first type are prostrate in early growth and send out spreading tillers, which later become erect from a somewhat decumbent base. Those of the semi-spreading type are less prostrate than those of the spreading type, and between the time of shooting and that of heading their tillers slant rather than spread. The third type is erect in early stages and the tillers develop from an upright base.

In later stages, even at maturity, plants of the first type may readily be distinguished from those of the second and third types by the somewhat decumbent character of the base. The distinction at later stages between the semi-spreading and erect types is somewhat difficult and can be determined only by a careful comparison of their bases, which differ only in the greater angle at which the culms of the former type bend away from the root crown. The observation of the habit of growth should not, however, be made at such late stages, but at, or shortly after, the period of tillering, or shooting. At this time the differences are very marked and readily ascertained, and they afford a reliable distinction for groups of varieties.

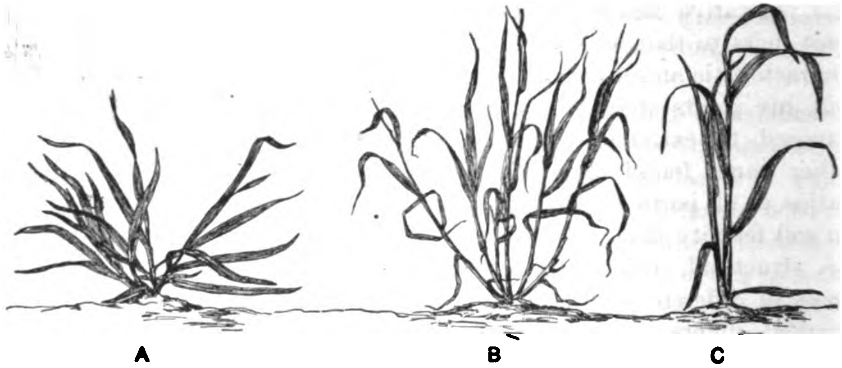


FIG. 20. HABITS OF EARLY GROWTH
A, Spreading; B, semi-spreading; C, erect

COLOR OF YOUNG PLANT

Although Denaiffe and Sirodot (1901), and Körnicke and Werner (1885), included in their descriptions of varieties the color of the young plants, they did not use the differences in color as a means of classification, nor did they differentiate the color of sheath and leaves from that of the glumes.

When the plants are young there are but few distinct types of color among varieties of oats; and because of the difficulty of correctly defining it under field conditions, the color of the young plant is of but minor importance in the classification of varieties, being generally useful only in their description. In the present work the color of the plant is employed as a supplementary character for identification only in the case of the variety Canadian, which exhibits at the time of full heading a distinct pale green color of sheaths, leaves, and glumes.

As a feature of the general descriptions of varieties included in the present classification, the following color types have been observed: (1) Leaves dark green, slightly glaucous; sheaths dark green, very glaucous, their general appearance being grayish green; glumes medium green, slightly glaucous. (Plate V.) (2) Leaves light green, often streaked and not uniform in color; sheaths medium green, glaucous; glumes bright green, barely glaucous. (Plate VI.)

Before recording observations of color, it is necessary first to learn by careful inspection the different color types in the general mass; then, by selecting representative plants of each color type, the corresponding color of a given variety may be determined by comparison. In order to define color correctly the observation must be made during a calm, bright period, for in wind and shifting light accurate judgment of color is extremely difficult. It is also essential that colors should be always determined at a definite stage in the growth of the plant. Perhaps they may most accurately be judged at the time of full heading, that is, when the panicle has completely emerged from its sheath. An estimation of color at other periods of development will give different values: if earlier than the time of full heading, the *bloom*, a grayish covering of sheaths, leaves, and glumes, will not have fully developed and the color will be brighter; at a later time, the green color of all parts is being reduced as maturity approaches.

SUMMARY

In the classification of varieties of oats, the following characters are available for the distinction of main groups, or species, for the differentiaion of subgroups, and for the identification and description of varieties:

To distinguish *A. nuda* from *A. sterilis*, *A. fatua*, *A. brevis*, *A. strigosa*, *A. sativa*, and *A. sativa orientalis*.
  a. The free, or naked, caryopsis.
To distinguish *A. sterilis* from the remaining species.
  b. The persistence of the upper grains to their rhachillas.
To distinguish *A. fatua* from the remaining species.
  c. The distinct articulation between the grains and their axes.

To distinguish *A. brevis* and *A. strigosa* from *A. sativa* and *A. sativa orientalis.*
  d. The awn points or teeth of the lemma.
To distinguish *A. sativa orientalis* from *A. sativa.*
  e. The unilateral panicle.
To classify varieties of all groups.
  f. 1. Habit of early growth.
    2. Color of grains.
    3. Ligule and auricle — present or absent.
    4. Awns — present or absent, and their character if present.
    5. Hairs of callus (basal hairs) — present or absent, and their character if present.
    6. Hairs of lemma — present or absent.
    7. Hairs of rhachilla — present or absent, and their character if present.
    8. Rhachis — form and nodes.
    9. Cilia of leaves — present or absent.
    10. Nerves of lemma — number and character.
    11. Color of immature plant.
    12. Spikelets — attitude and number of grains.
    13. Form and length of grains.
    14. Panicles — form.
    15. Culms — relative size.
    16. Double-grains.
    17. Relative maturing period.

In addition to the above characters, the following may be employed in general description:

1. Dimensions of panicles.
2. Dimensions of leaves.
3. Quality of culms.
4. Height of plants.
5. Relative length of sheath.

Physical properties of the grains, such as weight and proportion of kernel to hull, are too easily influenced by environment to be reliable in classification.

The characters employed for the complete differentiation of each of the main specific groups—*A. sterilis, A. sativa,* and *A. sativa orientalis*—are not used in regular order, but according to expediency in classification. Thus the color of grains may be the chief distinction of subgroups, or it may be merely a supplementary character in the identity of small sections or single varieties; and other characters are often transposed in a similar manner. Such irregularity in the use of characters seems justified, however, in a classification which, like the present one, is artificial within the specific groups. A classification of the cultivated varieties of any crop could proceed but little beyond the arrangement of a few main groups if it were limited to a strictly logical and systematic use of characters; for most characters of cultivated plants have become more or less modified under cultivation, and many of them, although distinct in wild forms, no longer afford reliable marks of identity for cultivated varieties. They cannot be traced through the complexity of cultivated forms; their distinctiveness gradually disappears under the ameliorative influence of cultivation, and is at times inhibited by the presence of factors introduced through hybridization. Hence, with the exception of a few specific differences, the characters available for classification of the varieties of any crop are more or less transitional, and few of them are alone sufficient to establish the identity of a given variety. Therefore the sum of many slight differences must be employed, and by such accumulation the small subgroups, and finally the individuals, may be distinguished.

CLASSIFICATION OF GROUPS

The principal cultivated varieties of oats, together with their basic wild species, may be classified as eight more or less distinct groups, according to the following outline:

PAGE

- A. Kernel loose within the surrounding hull; lemma and glumes alike in texture...... *Avena nuda*. 863
- AA. Kernel firmly clasped by the hull; lemma and glumes different in texture.
  - B. Upper grains persistent to their rhachillas...................... *Avena sterilis*. 864
  - BB. Upper grains easily separating from their rhachillas.
    - C. Lemma extended as teeth or awn points.
      - D. Lemma with 4 teeth or awn points................. *Avena abyssinica*. 868
      - DD. Lemma with 2 teeth or awn points.
        - E. Lemma elongate, lanceolate, with distinct awn points............ *Avena strigosa*. 868
        - EE. Lemma short, abrupt, blunt, rather toothed than awn-pointed...... *Avena brevis*. 868
    - CC. Lemma without teeth or awn points.
      - D. Basilar connections of the grains articulate................ *Avena fatua* 869
      - DD. Basilar connections of the grains solidified.
        - E. Panicles roughly equilateral, spreading................ *Avena sativa*. 870
        - EE. Panicles unilateral, appressed............... *Avena sativa orientalis*. 892

AVENA NUDA

Avena nuda differs from all other species of Avena by three remarkable characters: (1) the lemma and the palea do not clasp the kernel as in other forms, and the kernel is therefore loose, or free, within the hull; (2) the rhachillas of the three- to many-grained spikelet are so elongate that the uppermost grains are borne above the glumes; and (3) the glumes and the lemmas are similar in texture. Kōrnicke and Werner (1885) distinguished five types of *A. nuda*, according to the form of the panicles (unilateral or equilateral), the number of awns in the spikelet, and the color of the kernels. The present classification, however, does not include specimens exhibiting all the variations described by Kōrnicke and Werner, since only the equilateral form of panicle is represented. (Plate VII, and fig. 21.)

At the present time *A. nuda* is of no importance as a cultivated plant in either Europe or America, although it is used in China, where according to Schulz (1913) at least one form has been grown for more than a thousand years.

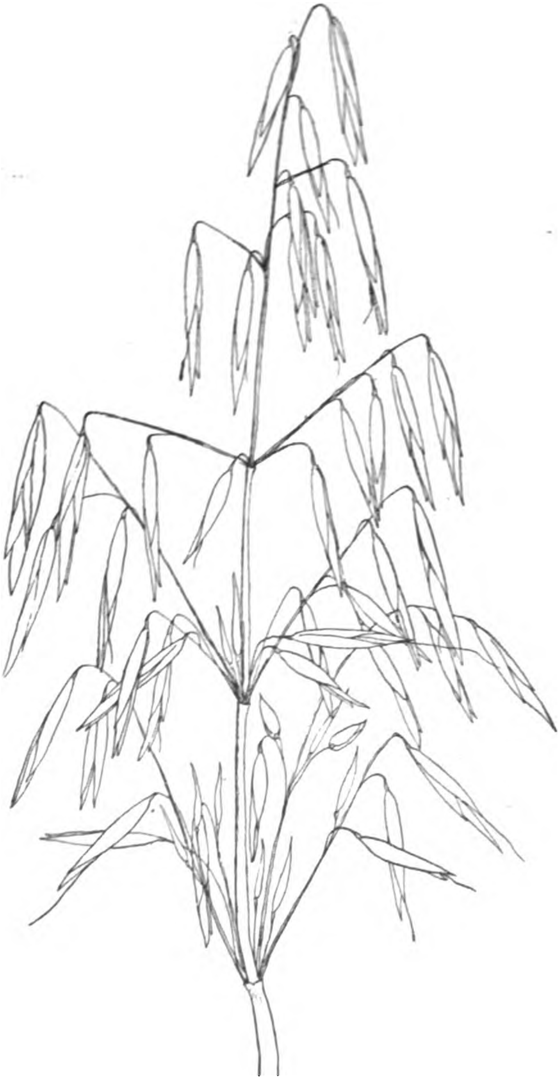


FIG. 21. PANICLE OF AVENA NUDA

AVENA STERILIS

The wild forms of *Avena sterilis* are distinguished chiefly by the persistence of the upper grains to their axes. The two parts do not easily separate, as in other forms of Avena, and the grain on being removed from the spikelet carries with it its axis, or rhachilla, itself (Plate I, 1). The basilar connection of the lower grain, however, is like that of other wild forms, such as *A. fatua.*

Cultivated varieties of *A. sterilis* retain to a marked extent the character of the basilar connections of the wild forms. Their upper grains do not separate from their rhachillas, while between the lower grain and its peduncle the lines of articulation are still evident. Another distinction of cultivated *A. sterilis* forms is the elongated caryopsis, this being of greater length than in most other varieties. (Plate II, 1, and fig. 12.)

The cultivated forms of *A. sterilis* are widely distributed. They are the principal oats of the whole Mediterranean region, the main groups being *A. sterilis byzantina* and *A. sterilis algeriensis.* In the United States also the *A. sterilis* forms are widely cultivated, the well-known varieties Red Rustproof and Burt being the principal representatives.

The following description covers the cultivated forms of *A. sterilis*:

Culms spreading or semi-erect in early growth, fine and stiff; leaves narrow; panicles equilateral; glumes usually longer than in the other cultivated groups; awn usually present on the outer grain and frequently on the inner grain; basal hairs usually present; basilar articulation of the outer grain evident; rhachilla of the outer grain shorter than in most other cultivated forms, while the rhachilla of either the outer or the inner grain is so solidified with the callus of the succeeding grain that the parts do not separate without tearing away the rhachilla itself; caryopsis more elongate than in most other cultivated groups.

Key to varieties

PAGE

- A. Grains dark-colored, brown or black.
  - B. Grains black; awn usually present on both the outer and the inner grain....... *A. sterilis nigra.* 865
  - BB. Grains brown to brownish black; awn seldom present on the inner grain....... Sterilis Selection. 867
- AA. Grains light-colored, yellow or brownish yellow.
  - B. Plants spreading in early growth; basal hairs long (3–6 mm.)...Red Rustproof. 867
  - BB. Plants semi-erect in early growth; basal hairs short (1–2.5 mm.) or wanting.
    - C. Basal hairs present; basilar articulation of outer grain evident; grains dull yellow..Burt. 867
    - CC. Basal hairs wanting or seldom present; basilar articulation of outer grain usually solidified; grains dun-colored..............................King. 868

Descriptions of varieties

Avena sterilis nigra (Plate VIII, 1, and fig. 22).— Culms spreading in early growth, fine, stiff, glabrous or sparsely haired near the nodes; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading, partly covering the internode; leaves colored as sheaths, narrow, margins glabrous or sparsely ciliate; panicles short, sparsely branched and fruited, the branches stiff and ascending; spikelets 2–3-grained; glumes dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, unusually long (28–34 mm.), usually 9-nerved, sometimes 8-nerved; grains black, elongate, outer grains remarkably long (20–25 mm.), long-pointed; lemma glabrous, usually 7-nerved; awn usually present on both the outer and the inner grain, scarcely twisted; basal hairs always present, numerous, bushy, long (3–6 mm.); basilar articulation of the outer grain very marked; rhachilla of the outer grain short (2–2.5 mm.), strong, glabrous, persistent to the second grain. Plants 7–9 dm. tall; late in maturing.

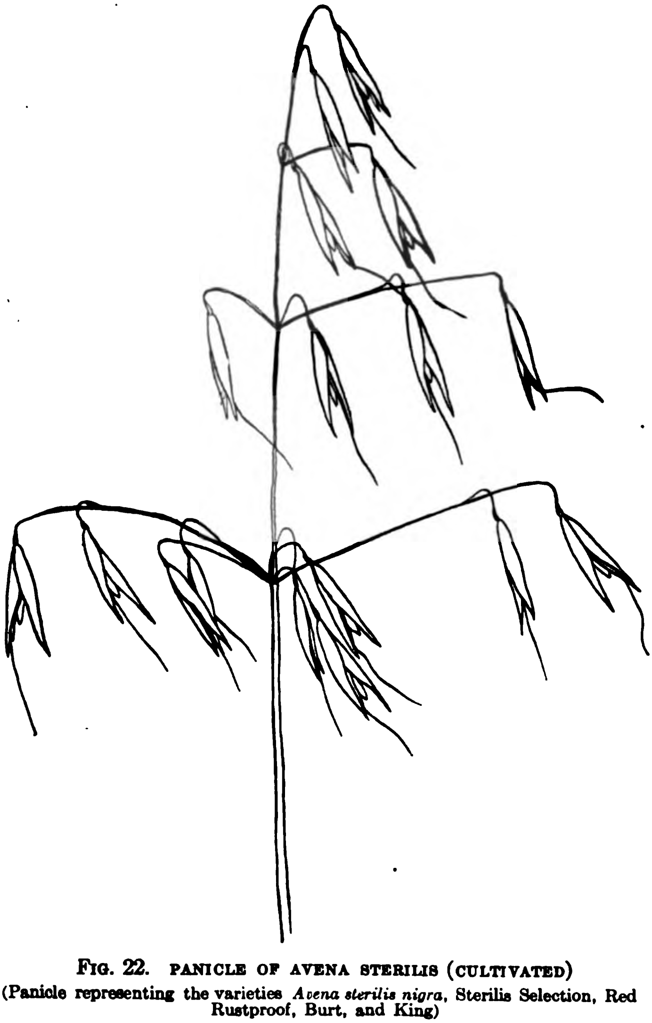


FIG. 22. PANICLE OF AVENA STERILIS (CULTIVATED)
(Panicle representing the varieties *Avena sterilis nigra*, Sterilis Selection, Red Rustproof, Burt, and King)

Sterilis Selection (Plate VIII, 2, and fig. 22).— Culms semi-erect in early growth, otherwise similar to those of *A. sterilis nigra*; sheaths, leaves, panicles, spikelets, and glumes similar to those of *A. sterilis nigra*, except that the glumes are shorter, ranging from 20 to 27 mm., and usually have fewer nerves, 8 nerves being common, although 7- or 9-nerved glumes are occasionally found; grains brown to brownish black, somewhat elongate, outer grains 18-22 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awn usually present on the outer grain but seldom on the inner grain, seldom twisted; basal hairs usually present, medium long (2–4 mm.), few to many; basilar articulation of the outer grain nearly solidified, although the lines of separation are usually evident; rhachilla of the outer grain short (2–2.5 mm.), strong, glabrous, persistent to the inner grain. Plants 7–9 dm. tall; late in maturing.

This variety was found mixed with several varieties of black oats of the *A. sativa* group.

Red Rustproof (Plate VIII, 3, and fig. 22).— Culms, sheaths, leaves, panicles, spikelets, and glumes similar to those of *A. sterilis nigra*, except that the glumes are shorter, ranging from 25 to 30 mm., and have fewer nerves, 8 nerves being common, although 7 or 9 nerves may occur; grains brownish yellow, somewhat elongate, outer grains 18–24 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awn usually present on the outer grain, frequently on the inner grain, seldom twisted; basal hairs numerous, long (3–6 mm.), bushy; basilar articulation of the outer grain evident; rhachilla of the outer grain short (2–2.5 mm.), strong, glabrous, persistent to the inner grain. Plants 6–9 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Red Rustproof were found under the following additional names: Appler, Bancroft, Belgian Vinter, Dun, 100 Bushel, Red Algerian, Red Rustproof (Red Texas), Red Rustproof (Texas Red), Red Rustproof Selection, Regenerated Swedish Select, Swedish Select, Victor, White Maine.

Burt (Plate IX, 1, and fig. 22).—Culms semi-erect in early growth, otherwise similar to those of *A. sterilis nigra*; sheaths, leaves, panicles, spikelets, and glumes similar to those of *A. sterilis nigra*, except that the glumes are shorter, ranging from 25 to 30 mm.; grains dull yellow, elongate outer grains 18 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awn usually present on the outer grain and frequently on the inner grain, seldom twisted; basal hairs usually present, numerous, short (1–2.5 mm.), fine; basilar articulation of the outer grain evident; rhachilla of the outer grain short (2–2.5 mm.), strong, glabrous, persistent to the inner grain. Plants 5–8 dm. tall; medium early in maturing.

Specimens of the Burt variety were found under the following additional names: Early Ripe, Red Rustproof, Unnamed.

King (Plate IX, 2, and fig. 22).—Culms semi-erect in early growth, otherwise similar to those of *A. sterilis nigra*; sheaths, leaves, panicles, spikelets, and glumes similar to those of *A. sterilis nigra,* except that the glumes are shorter, ranging from 20 to 25 mm., and usually have fewer nerves, 8 nerves being common, although 7 or 9 nerves may occur; grains dun-colored, somewhat elongate, outer grains 18–22 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awn frequently present on the outer grain but rarely on the inner grain, seldom twisted; basal hairs wanting or seldom occurring; basilar articulation of the outer grain usually solidified, although occasionally the lines of articulation may be seen; rhachilla of outer grain short (2–2.5 mm.), strong, glabrous, persistent to the inner grain. Plants 5–8 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

AVENA ABYSSINICA

Avena abyssinica, according to Schulz (1913), is distinguished by the structure of its lemma which extends into four teeth. Körnicke and Werner (1885) give a similar description. Schulz states also that in cultivated forms of *A. abyssinica* the basilar articulation of the grains is solidified; and Trabut (1911) notes a transition of this character between the wild and the cultivated forms, the wild forms having a fragile articulation, while in the cultivated forms the grains are retained.[9] The *A. abyssinica* form is grown in the desert regions of Abyssinia and southern Arabia, chiefly for forage.

AVENA STRIGOSA AND AVENA BREVIS

The closely related groups *Avena strigosa* and *Avena brevis* are distinguished by the structure of the lemma, this having two teeth or awn points at the apex. *A. strigosa* has a lanceolate lemma which extends into distinct awn points, while the lemma of *A. brevis* is short, abrupt, and blunt, and is rather toothed than awn-pointed although in one form the teeth are considerably extended. The basilar articulation in both these species, like that in *A. sativa* and in *A. sativa orientalis*, is solidified. (Plates IV, and III, 2, and fig. 23.)

---

[9] No specimens of *A. abyssinica* are included in the present classification.

These species have been but little used as cultivated plants, although they still have an isolated cultivation in certain parts of Europe.

AVENA FATUA

Avena fatua is specifically distinguished by the close investment of its kernel, by the distinct articulation of all its grains, and by its hairy, single-pointed lemma. In observing the last-named character, one should not mistake the occasional split-pointed lemma for the distinctly toothed or awn-pointed lemma of *A. brevis* and *A. strigosa*.

A. fatua is generally believed to be the ancestor of *A. sativa* and *A. sativa orientalis*, the two forms which represent the great majority of the cultivated varieties of oats and which are distinguished from the wild form as artificial species by the solidified basilar articulations of their grains (page 870). Because of this relationship, a description of *A. fatua* is here given:

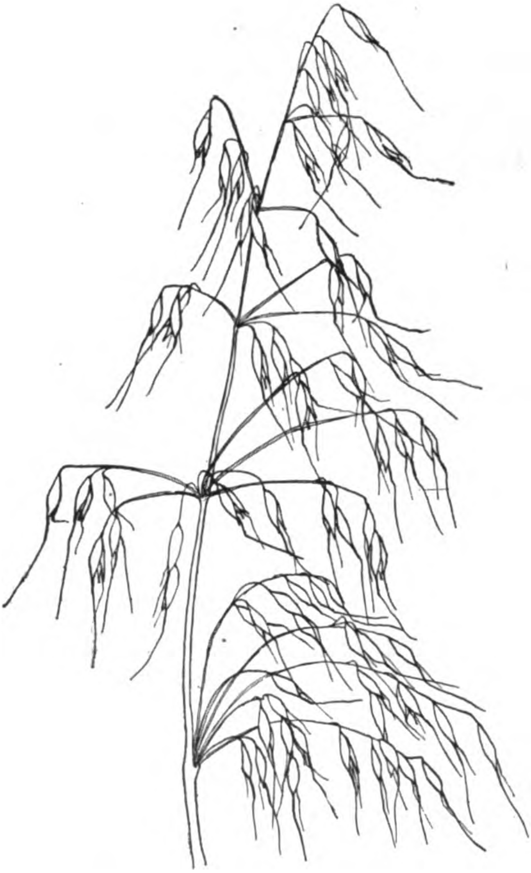


FIG. 23. PANICLE OF AVENA BREVIS

Culms semi-erect in early growth, small to medium large in size, glabrous; sheaths light green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading;

leaves colored as the sheaths, narrow, margins glabrous; panicles equilateral, wide-spreading, lax, drooping, the branches drooping from the middle outward; spikelets 2–3-grained, although the inner and middle grains often drop at maturity; glumes light green and barely glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, usually 9-nerved; grains black, brown, yellow, or gray, elongate; awn present on all grains, twisted and geniculate; lemma covered with long, stiff hairs; basal hairs present in a bushy ring; rhachilla covered with hairs; basilar articulation of the grains distinct, all grains of the spikelet readily separating from their axes. Plants 8–12 dm. tall; medium late in maturing. (Plate I, 2, and fig. 12.)

A form of *A. fatua* transitional between the wild and the cultivated species is found in *A. fatua glabrata*, received from the Office of Cereal Investigations, United States Department of Agriculture. In this form the basilar articulation of the grains is much reduced, although still distinct. The grains are of three colors — black, yellow, and gray (Plate X); the lemma is usually glabrous and the basal hairs are much reduced; the awn is as strong as in the wild form, although frequently wanting on the inner grains of the black and the gray type; and the rhachilla is haired in the yellow type, but usually glabrous in the black and the gray.

AVENA SATIVA

Avena sativa and *Avena sativa orientalis*, the two groups that include the great majority of cultivated varieties, are distinguished from the foregoing groups by a combination of the following characters: (1) the close investment of the kernel by the hull, as contrasted with the loose kernel of *A. nuda*; (2) the single, more or less abrupt, point of the lemma, as compared with the toothed or awn-pointed lemma of *A. brevis*, *A. strigosa*, and *A. abyssinica*; and (3) the easy separation of the upper grains from their rhachillas, and the solidified articulation of the lower grain, as compared with the persistent upper grains and the slightly articulate lower grain of the cultivated forms of *A. sterilis*. (Plates II, 2, and III, 1.)

The *A. sativa* and *A. sativa orientalis* groups differ specifically only by the unilateral form of panicle of the latter group. There is another character, the non-ligulate and non-auriculate leaf occurring within the *A. sativa orientalis* group, which is not found among varieties of *A. sativa*; but this is not a group characteristic, as it occurs only in a few varieties. Other characters, such as the abnormal node, previously discussed, extremely wide leaves, and large, coarse stems, are more frequently found in *A. sativa orientalis* than in *A. sativa.* Finally, the early habit of growth of *A. sativa orientalis* is always erect, while that of *A. sativa* may be erect, semi-erect, or spreading. At present *A. sativa orientalis* is grown in the same districts as is *A. sativa,* but less extensively. It is better adapted to the more northerly range of the environment of oats culture.

There is some doubt as to the authenticity of *A. sativa orientalis* as a specific group. It is generally treated as a differentiation of the *A. sativa* group and is believed by Schulz (1913) to have been derived probably from a different form of *A. fatua* from that which gave rise to the commoner form of *A. sativa.* In the present study, *A. sativa orientalis* is regarded as a subgroup of *A. sativa,* and its varieties are placed in a special group merely for convenience in classification.

The description of *A. sativa* is as follows:

Culms spreading, semi-erect, or erect in early growth, large, medium, or small; leaves narrow to medium wide; panicles equilateral; awns occurring only on the outer grain and often wanting; basilar articulation of the grains solidified, but the upper grains are not persistent to their rhachillas, as in *A. sterilis,* and the middle and inner grains are easily removed.

Key to varieties

PAGE

A. Culms spreading, or turf-like, in early growth, numerous in each plant (winter oats).

B. Grains dark-colored, black, brown, or gray; culms glabrous; plants late in maturing.

C. Grains black to brownish black; awn present or wanting, seldom geniculate; margins of leaves glabrous..................................C. I. 606. 873

CC. Grains gray to yellowish gray; awn usually present, usually geniculate; margins of leaves ciliate..................................Winter Turf. 874

BB. Grains light-colored, white to yellowish white; culms hairy near the nodes; plants early in maturing..................................Culberson. 875

AA. Culms semi-erect or erect in early growth, few to a plant (spring oats).

B. Grains dark-colored, black to brownish red.

C. Awns numerous in the panicle.

D. Grains brownish red to brown; panicles stiff, the branches ascending.... Black Norway. 875

DD. Grains black or brownish black; panicles lax, the branches drooping from the middle outward.

E. Panicles coarse; glumes 9–10-nerved; plants semi-erect in early growth..Victor. 877

EE. Panicles fine; glumes 8–9-nerved, seldom 10-nerved; plants erect in early growth.

F. Grains glaucous; rhachilla glabrous...................Monarch. 877

FF. Grains not glaucous; rhachilla haired.............Black Mesdag. 877

PAGE

- **CC.** Awns wanting or few in the panicle.
  - **D.** Lemma laterally beset with hairs at about its middle...Black Diamond. 879
  - **DD.** Lemma glabrous.
    - **E.** Grains glaucous............................Monarch Selection. 879
    - **EE.** Grains not glaucous.
      - **F.** Panicles narrow, short; plants semi-erect in early growth; grains black...Joannette. 879
      - **FF.** Panicles wide-spreading, long; plants erect in early growth; grains brownish black to brownish red.
        - **G.** Grains brownish red; rhachilla usually glabrous.....C. I. 620. 880
        - **GG.** Grains brownish black; rhachilla usually haired.
          - **H.** Panicles extremely long, wide-spreading, and lax, the branches drooping from the middle outward; hairs of the rhachilla few and appressed; grains usually 15–18 mm. long..............................Old Island Black. 880
          - **HH.** Panicles medium long, stiff, the branches ascending; hairs of rhachilla numerous and erect; grains usually 18–22 mm. long.................................North Finnish. 880
- **BB.** Grains light-colored, yellow to white.
  - **C.** Lowest whorl of panicle branches usually issuing from a geniculate bend in the rhachis at which the nodal diaphragm is wanting or rudimentary.
    - **D.** Panicles narrow, the branches sharply ascending; rhachis scarcely flexuous..Garton 473. 881
    - **DD.** Panicles wide-spreading, the branches stiff but not sharply ascending; rhachis remarkably flexuous.........................Garton 691. 881
  - **CC.** Lowest whorl of panicle branches issuing from a normal node.
    - **D.** Panicles short, sparse; culms fine; plants extremely early in maturing... Kherson, Early Champion, Sixty-Day. 881
    - **DD.** Panicles medium to extremely long, more or less prolific; culms medium to large; plants medium to late in maturing.
      - **E.** Grains bright yellow.
        - **F.** Basal hairs numerous.
          - **G.** Basal hairs short (1–2 mm.); 3-grained spikelets numerous; panicles stiff, the branches ascending......Awnless Probsteier. 884
          - **GG.** Basal hairs long (2–5 mm.); 3-grained spikelets seldom occurring; panicles lax, the branches drooping from the middle outward...............................Japan Selection. 885
        - **FF.** Basal hairs usually wanting, if present few and weak.
          - **G.** Awns usually wanting; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes extremely short (18–22 mm.)................Golden Drop. 885
          - **GG.** Awns numerous; 3-grained spikelets numerous; glumes of medium length (20–28 mm.).
            - **H.** Awns usually present; spikelets usually 3-grained........ C. I. 603. 885
            - **HH.** Awns numerous in the panicle, but frequently wanting in the spikelet; spikelets 2–3-grained.......Green Russian. 886
      - **EE.** Grains white to yellowish white.
        - **F.** Grains extremely short, outer grains usually less than 15 mm.
          - **G.** Leaves, sheaths, and glumes a conspicuous light green at period of full heading; double-grains very numerous.....Canadian. 886
          - **GG.** Leaves, sheaths, and glumes dark green at period of full heading; double-grains seldom occurring.....................Tobolsk. 886

PAGE

FF. Grains medium to extremely long, outer grains usually exceeding 15 mm.

G. Awns usually present and geniculate.

H. Basal hairs numerous, long (2–5 mm.), bushy; grains rather short (15–18 mm.); spikelets 2-3-grained.............. Silvermine Selection. 887

HH. Basal hairs wanting or few, weak, and short (1–2 mm.); grains long (18–22 mm.); spikelets usually 2-grained.... C. I. 602. 887

GG. Awns wanting to numerous in the panicle, seldom geniculate.

H. Basal hairs long (3–6 mm.), numerous...... Early Dakota. 888

HH. Basal hairs short or wanting.

I. Panicles long, lax, spreading, the branches often drooping from the middle outward.

J. Awns wanting or few in the panicle......Irish Victor. 888

JJ. Awns numerous in the panicle.

K. Grains medium long (16–19 mm.)..Danish Island. 888

KK. Grains extremely long (18–22 mm.)............. Early Gothland. 889

II. Panicles short to medium long, stiff, compact, the branches ascending.

J. Awns wanting or few in the panicle..........Belyak. 889

JJ. Awns few to numerous in the panicle.

K. Rhachilla usually sparsely haired; lemma scarcely concave in the region of the awn; awns few in the panicle.

L. Grains short-pointed..............Silvermine. 889

LL. Grains long-pointed............Scottish Chief. 890

KK. Rhachilla usually glabrous; lemma concave in the region of the awn; awns numerous in the panicle.

L. Basal hairs usually present, short but bushy and prominent.........................June. 890

LL. Basal hairs wanting or weak and inconspicuous.

M. Awns usually strongly twisted; 3-grained spikelets predominating..Swedish Select. 891

MM. Awns straight or somewhat twisted; 2-grained spikelets predominating........ Lincoln. 892

Descriptions of varieties

C. I.[10] *606* (Plate IX, 3, and fig. 24).—Culms spreading in early growth, but later erect from a somewhat decumbent base, small, stiff, glabrous; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, narrow and fine, margins glabrous; panicles narrow, stiff, the branches slightly drooping from the middle outward; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, 7–8-nerved; grains black to brownish black, elongate, outer grains 15–18 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain with 7 obscure nerves, usually glabrous but occasionally with a few lateral hairs; awns few to numerous in the panicle, twisted or not twisted, seldom geniculate; basal hairs usually present, few, short (1–2.5 mm.), and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2.5–3.5 mm. long, beset with numerous stiff hairs. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; late in maturing.

---

[10] Office of Cereal Investigations, United States Department of Agriculture.

Another specimen similar in form to that just described carried the name C. I. 607.

Winter Turf (Plate XI, 1, and fig. 24).—Culms similar to those of C. I. 606; sheaths light green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as sheaths, narrow and fine, margins ciliate at the lower third; panicles similar to those of C. I. 606, but somewhat broader and longer; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes light

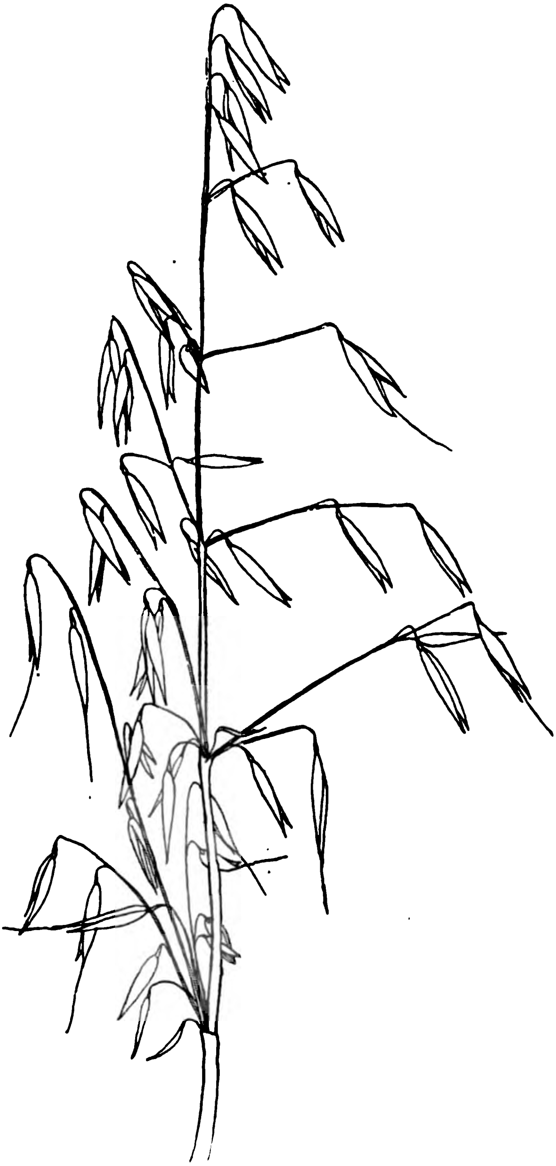


FIG. 24. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA
(Panicle representing the varieties C. I. 606, Winter Turf, Culberson, and Joannette)

green and barely glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, usually 9-nerved, in some cases 8-nerved; grains gray to yellowish gray, plump, conspicuously striped, outer grains 15–18 mm. long, short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 conspicuous nerves; awns numerous in the panicle, twisted, and usually geniculate; basal hairs usually present, few or numerous, 1–4 mm. long, weak; rhachilla of the outer grain short (1.5–2.5 mm.), usually carrying a few weak hairs. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; extremely late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Winter Turf were found under the following additional names: Dewey, Gray Winter, Oregon Gray, Silvermine, Sonoma, Virginia Gray Winter, Winter Turf Selection.

Culberson (Plate XI, 2, and fig. 24).— Culms similar to those of C. I. 606, but hairy near the nodes; sheaths, leaves, panicles, spikelets, and glumes similar to those of Winter Turf, except that the margins of the leaves are usually glabrous or only sparingly ciliate, and the glumes are more commonly 8-nerved than 9-nerved; grains white to yellowish white, elongate, outer grains 15–18 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns usually present, usually twisted, frequently geniculate; basal hairs few and weak, 1-3 mm. long, often wanting; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, usually glabrous, hairs if present few, short, and weak. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; medium early in maturing.

A specimen of the variety Culberson was found under the name Burt.

Black Norway (Plate XI, 3, and fig. 25).— Culms erect in early growth, large, stiff, glabrous; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins glabrous or sparsely ciliate; panicles broad, stiff, the branches ascending; spikelets 2-grained, seldom 3-grained; glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, 9–10-nerved; grains brownish red to brown, plump, outer grains usually 14–17 mm. long, short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 prominent nerves; awns usually present, usually twisted, seldom geniculate; basal hairs usually wanting, if present short (1–2 mm.), few, and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain short (2–2.5 mm.), usually haired. Plants 9–12 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Another specimen of the variety Black Norway carried the name White Schoenen.

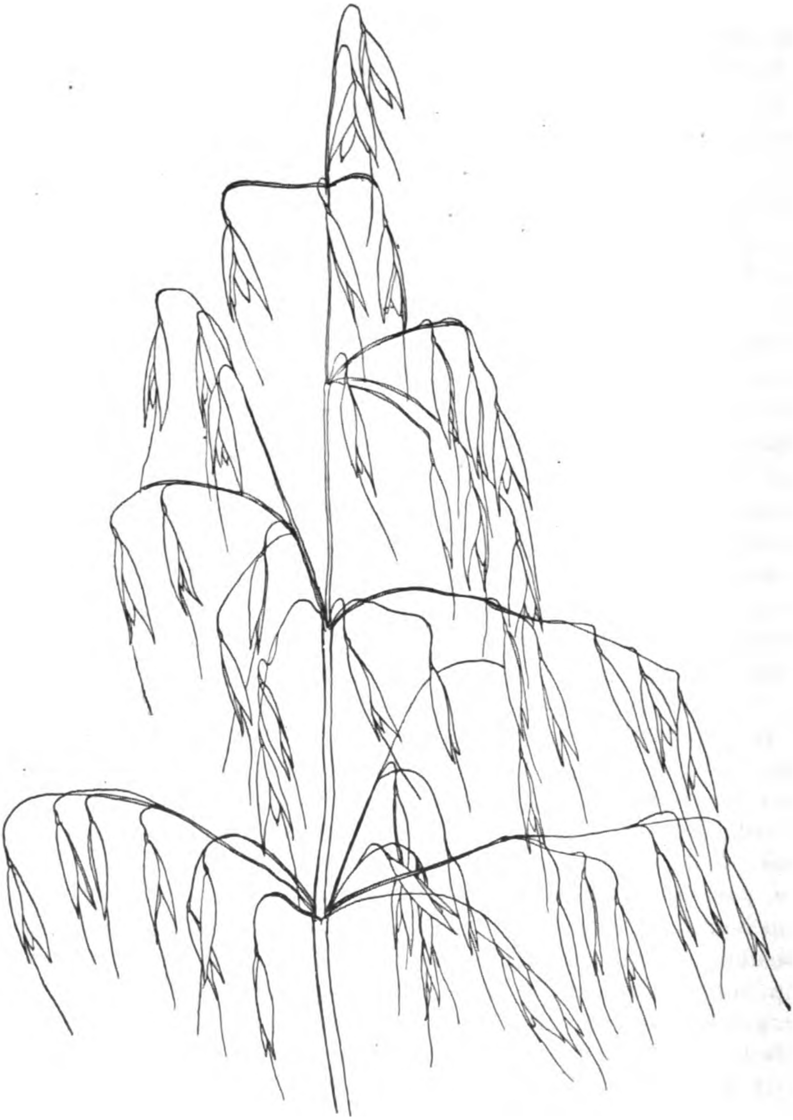


FIG. 25. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA

(Panicle representing the varieties Black Norway, North Finnish, Awnless Probsteier, Golden Drop, C. I. 603, Green Russian, Silvermine Selection, Belyak, Scottish Chief, June, Swedish Select, and Lincoln)

Victor (Plate XII, 1).— Culms semi-erect in early growth, large, coarse, stiff, glabrous; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins glabrous or sparsely ciliate; panicles long, broad, coarse, wide-spreading, lax, the branches usually drooping from the middle outward; spikelets 2-grained, 3-grained spikelets seldom occurring, double-grains many; glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading, 25–30 mm. long, 9–10-nerved; grains black to brownish black, very large and coarse, outer grains usually 18–22 mm. long, rather short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, the number of nerves varying from 7 to 10; awns usually present, strong, coarse, twisted, often slightly geniculate; basal hairs wanting on most grains, although often present, short to medium long (2–4 mm.), and stiff; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, usually weakly haired. Plants 10–14 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Victor were found under the following additional names: Black Egyptian, English Wonder, Garton 306, Garton 396, Garton 453, Garton 1174.

Monarch (Plate XII, 2, and fig. 26).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, stiff, glabrous or hairy near the nodes; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, narrow to medium wide, margins glabrous; panicles wide-spreading, lax, the branches drooping from the middle outward; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading, 20–27 mm. long, usually 9-nerved, in some cases 8- or 10-nerved; grains brownish black, glaucous, elongate, outer grains usually 15–19 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns usually numerous in the panicle, scarcely twisted; basal hairs usually present, short to long (2–5 mm.), fine, and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain short (1.5–2.5 mm.), usually glabrous. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; medium early in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Monarch were found under the following additional names: Hennesey, Martinsburg, Red Rustproof, Swedish Red, Tartarian, Texas Red.

Black Mesdag (Plate XII, 3, and fig. 26).—Culms erect in early growth, large, stiff, glabrous; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins glabrous; panicles wide-spreading, lax, the branches usually drooping from the middle outward; spikelets usually 2-grained, although 3-grained spikelets occur;

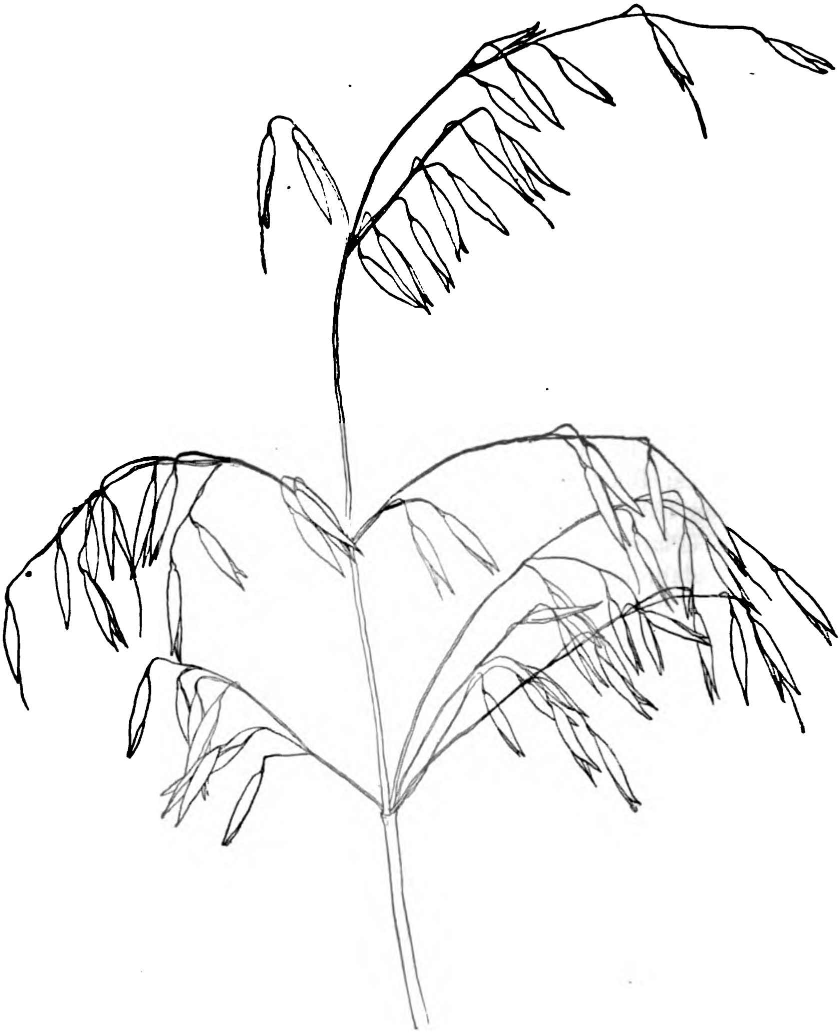


FIG. 26. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA

(Panicle representing the varieties Monarch, Black Mesdag, Black Diamond, Monarch Selection, C. I. 620, Old Island Black, Japan Selection, Canadian, Tobolsk, C. I. 602, Early Dakota, Irish Victor, Danish Island, and Early Gothland) glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading, 22–27 mm. long, usually 9-nerved, in some cases 8-nerved; grains black or brownish black, elongate but well filled, outer grains usually 18–22 mm. long, rather short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns usually present, twisted, sometimes geniculate; basal hairs seldom occurring, if present few, short (1–2 mm.), fine, and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, haired, the hairs long and stiff. Plants 8–10 dm. long; medium early in maturing.

Black Diamond (Plate XIII, 1, and fig. 26).—Culms semi-erect in early growth, medium large, stiff, glabrous; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as sheaths, rather narrow, margins glabrous except for the ciliate auricle; panicles long, wide-spreading, lax, the branches drooping from the middle outward; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes dark green and glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, 9-nerved; grains black to brownish black, plump, outer grains 15–18 mm. long, short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain, and frequently that of the inner grain, laterally beset with hairs, 7 obscure nerves; awns usually wanting; basal hairs few to numerous, fine, short to medium long (1–3 mm.); rhachilla of the outer grain short (1.5-2.5 mm.), usually carrying a few fine hairs. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Monarch Selection (Plate XIII, 2, and fig. 26).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, stiff, and hairy near the nodes; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, narrow, margins glabrous; panicles long, narrow, lax, the branches ascending; spikelets 2–3-grained; glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading, rather short (18–22 mm.), 9-nerved; grains black, brownish black, or brownish red, glaucous, elongate, outer grains 15–19 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns usually wanting; basal hairs wanting or few, fine, weak, short (1–2 mm.); rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, its hairs short and numerous. Plants 7–9 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Joannette (Plate XIII, 3, and fig. 24).—Culms semi-erect in early growth, fine, stiff, glabrous; sheaths light green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, narrow, margins glabrous; panicles fine, narrow, stiff, the branches ascending; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes light green and barely glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, usually 8-nerved, sometimes 7- or 9-nerved; grains black or brownish black, plump, outer grains 14-19 mm. long, short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns few in the panicle, usually wanting in the spikelet; basal hairs usually present, few, long (2-4 mm.), fine; rhachilla of the outer grain short (1.5–2.5 mm.), usually with long, stiff hairs. Plants 7–9 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Joannette were found under the following additional names: Jeannette, Nichol's Black.

C. I. 620 (Plate XIII, 4, and fig. 26).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, stiff, glabrous; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins glabrous or sparsely ciliate; panicles extremely long, wide-spreading, lax, the branches drooping from the middle outward; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading; grains brownish red, rather elongate, outer grains short (12–17 mm.), either short-pointed or long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns usually wanting; basal hairs short (1–2 mm.), fine, and weak, or wanting; rhachilla of the outer grain 2.5–3.5 mm. long, usually glabrous. Plants 7–9 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Old Island Black (Plate XIII, 5, and fig. 26).— Culms erect in early growth, medium large and stiff, slightly hairy near the nodes; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, the margins glabrous or sparsely ciliate; panicles extremely long, wide-spreading, lax, the branches drooping from the middle outward; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, usually 8-nerved, sometimes 9-nerved; grains black or brownish black, elongate, outer grains 14–18 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grains glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns usually wanting; basal hairs wanting or few, short (1–2 mm.), weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, usually with a few appressed hairs. Plants 7–9 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Another specimen of the variety Old Island Black was found under the name Black Anthony.

North Finnish (Plate XIII, 6, and fig. 25).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large and stiff, glabrous or hairy near the nodes; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins glabrous; panicles wide-spreading, stiff, the branches ascending; spikelets 2–3-grained; glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading, 22–26 mm. long, usually 9-nerved; grains brownish black, elongate, outer grains usually 18–22 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grains glabrous, with 7 rather prominent nerves; awns usually wanting; basal hairs wanting or few, short (1–2 mm.), and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, with numerous erect hairs. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety North Finnish were found under the following additional names: Black American, Black Arctic, Swedish Red.

Garton 473 (Plate XIV, 1, and fig. 27).—Culms erect in early growth, large, coarse, glabrous; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, extremely wide, margins ciliate at the lower third; panicles narrow, stiff, the branches sharply ascending and the lowest whorl of branches issuing from a geniculate bend in the rhachis at which the nodal diaphragm is wanting or rudimentary; spikelets 2-grained, double-grains very numerous; glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading, 25–30 mm. long, usually 9-nerved but may be 10–11-nerved; grains white or yellowish white, large and coarse, outer grains usually 18–22 mm. long, short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain with 7–11 conspicuous nerves, usually 7-nerved, glabrous; awns numerous in the panicle, coarse, usually twisted, in some cases slightly geniculate; basal hairs wanting, or short (1–2 mm.), few, and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, glabrous or with a few weak hairs. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Garton 473 were found under the following additional names: Garton 855, Golden Rain, Regenerated Swedish Select.

Garton 691 (Plate XIV, 1, and fig. 27).—Similar to Garton 473, except that the panicle is longer and wide-spreading, with stiff but not sharply ascending branches, and that the rhachis is remarkably flexuous.

Kherson, Early Champion, Sixty-Day.— Characterized chiefly by short, sparse, fine, stiff panicles (fig. 28) fine stems, and early maturity. In the specimens of Kherson and Sixty-Day, yellow and white grains occurred in various proportions, while in the specimens of Early Champion the grains were white. The grains of Kherson and Sixty-Day were separated as yellow and white, and each class was found to reproduce its color accurately. As the original introduction of Kherson oats by the Nebraska Experiment Station in 1896 was a yellow-grain variety, the white grains

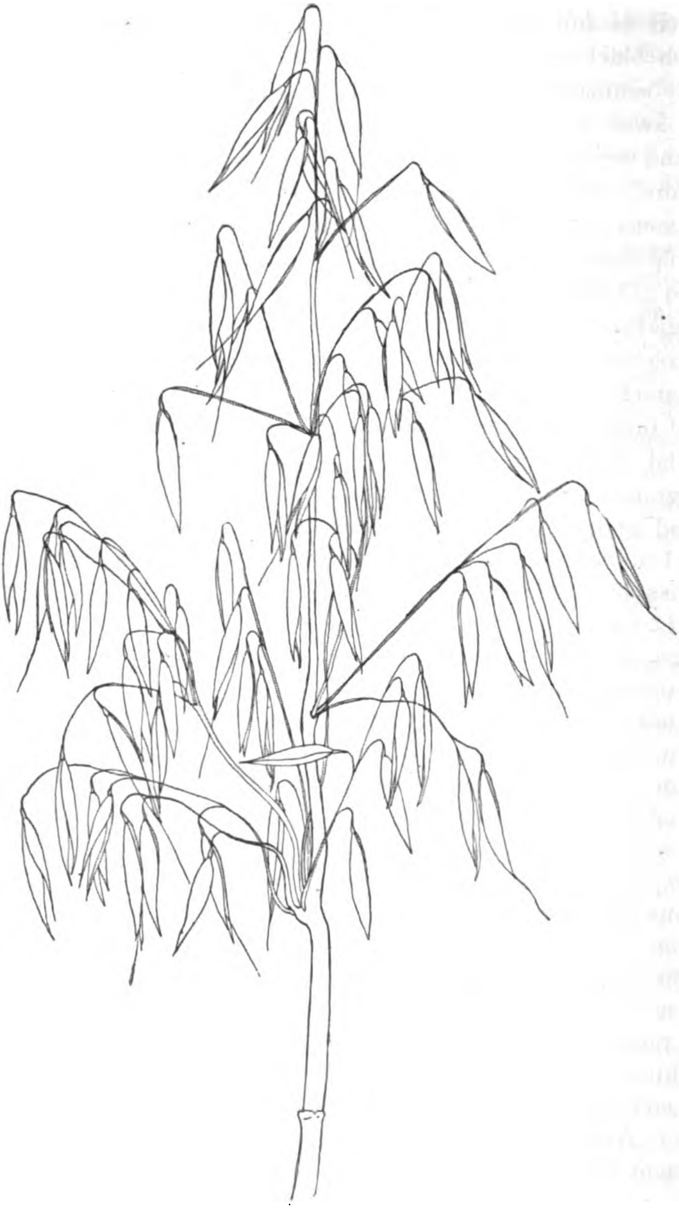


FIG. 27. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA
(Panicles representing the varieties Garton 473 and Garton 691)

found among the specimens under study are regarded merely as a mixture of Sixty-Day, introduced later. Accordingly the names Kherson and Sixty-Day are here applied respectively to the separated yellow and white forms.

PAGE
A. Grains yellow.
  B. Awns few in the panicle...Kherson. 883
  BB. Awns numerous in the panicle.............................Kherson Selection. 883
AA. Grains white.
  B. Spikelets usually 3-grained.
    C. Grains short, 15–18 mm.; awns few in the panicle...............Sixty-Day. 883
    CC. Grains extremely long, 18–22 mm.; awns numerous in the panicle.........
Sixty-Day Selection. 883
  BB. Spikelets usually 2-grained, 3-grained spikelets seldom occurring.........
Early Champion. 884

Kherson (Plate XIV, 2, and fig. 28).—Culms erect in early growth, fine, stiff, either smooth or slightly pubescent at the nodes; sheaths dark green, glaucous; leaves colored as the sheaths, fine, narrow, short, margins smooth; panicles short, sparse, fine, stiff, the branches ascending; 3-grained spikelets numerous in the panicle, often predominating over 2-grained spikelets; glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at time of full heading, 9-nerved, in some cases 8-nerved; grains yellow, somewhat elongate, outer grains 16–20 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 5–7 obscure nerves; awns usually wanting, if present short and weak; basal hairs seldom occurring, if present few and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, glabrous. Plants 6–9 dm. tall; extremely early in maturing.

Kherson Selection.— Differs from Kherson only in the greater number of awns in the panicle.

Sixty-Day (Plate XIV, 3).—Differs from Kherson only in having white, slightly shorter grains.

Sixty-Day Selection (Plate XIV, 4).—Differs from Sixty-Day in its longer, larger, and horn-white to yellow grain, more frequent awns, occasional 10-nerved glume, and somewhat later maturing period.

Among the mixed specimens of Kherson and Sixty-Day were found the following additional names: Appler, Bucium, C. I. 579, Champion, Culberson, Daubeney, Early Champion, Early Illinois, Hays, Kherson (Nebraska No. 1), Ray's 5610, Seventy-five Day, Sixty-Day (C. I. 165), Sixty-Day (C. I. 639), Sixty-Day (Minnesota 261).

Early Champion (Plate XIV, 5).—Differs from Sixty-Day in its predominating 2-grained spikelet, somewhat plumper grain, and occasional hairs of the rhachilla, which when present are few and weak.

Specimens of the variety Early Champion were found under the following additional names: Champion, Daubeney, Iowa Silvermine, New Champion, Seventy-five Day.

Awnless Probsteier (Plate XIV, 6, and fig. 25).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, stiff, usually hairy near the nodes; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins smooth; panicles medium long, wide, stiff, the branches ascending; spikelets 2–3-grained; glumes dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, 23–27 mm. long, 9–10-nerved; grains bright yellow, somewhat elongate, outer grains 16-20 mm. long, rather long-pointed; lemma of the

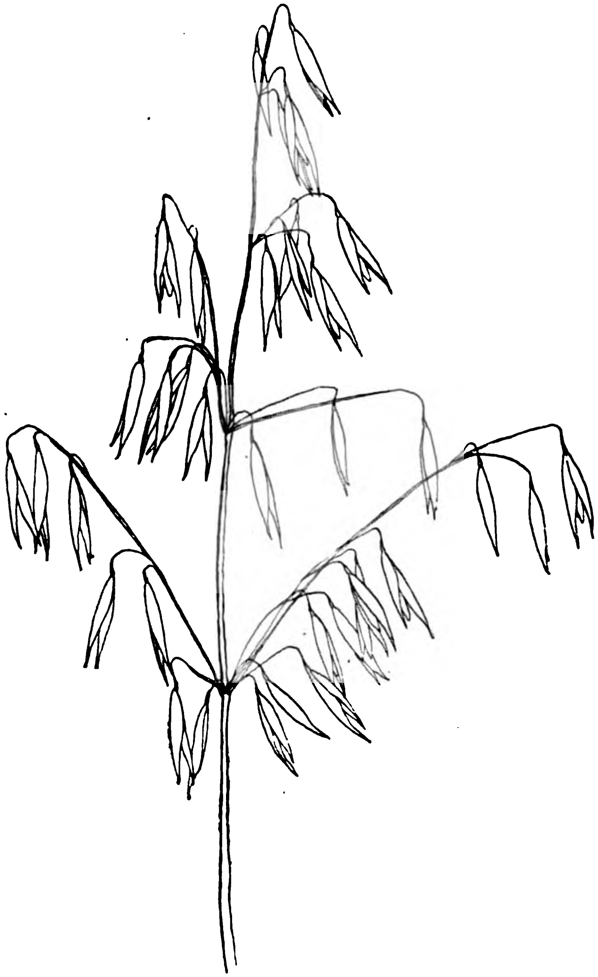


FIG. 28. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA (Kherson)

outer grain glabrous, with 7 prominent nerves; awns wanting or seldom occurring; basal hairs numerous, short (1–2 mm.), bushy; rhachilla of the outer grain 1.5–2.5 mm. long, glabrous or with a few weak hairs. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; medium early in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Awnless Probsteier were found under the following additional names: American Banner, Appler, Danish.

Japan Selection (Plate XV, 1, and fig. 26).—Culms, sheaths, and leaves similar to those of Awnless Probsteier; panicles rather long, lax, wide-spreading, the branches drooping from the middle outward; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes colored as those of Awnless Probsteier, 20-25 mm. long, 9–10-nerved; grains bright yellow, elongate, outer grains 15–18 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awn usually wanting; basal hairs usually numerous, medium long (2-4 mm.), and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, usually glabrous. Plants 7–9 dm. tall; medium early in maturing.

The variety Japan Selection was found as a mixture among specimens of white-grained oats bearing the names Japan and Lincoln.

Golden Drop (Plate XV, 2, and fig. 25).—Culms, sheaths, and leaves similar to those of Awnless Probsteier; panicles medium in size, wide, stiff, the branches ascending; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes colored similarly to those of Awnless Probsteier, remarkably short (18–22 mm.), 9-nerved; grains bright yellow, plump, outer grains short (13–16 mm.), short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns usually wanting; basal hairs usually wanting, if present few, short, and weak. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; medium early in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Golden Drop were found under the following additional names: Early Mountain, Golden Rain, Hunt, Kirsche, Large Yellow, Tartar King, White Queen, Wideawake, Yellow.

C. I. 603 (Plate XV, 3, and fig. 25).—Culms, sheaths, and leaves similar to those of Awnless Probsteier; panicles of medium size, stiff, the branches ascending; spikelets usually 3-grained; glumes dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, 8–10-nerved; grains bright yellow, rather elongate, outer grains 15–18 mm. long, rather long-pointed; lemma of the outer grains glabrous, with 7 prominent nerves; awns usually present and not twisted; basal hairs usually wanting, if present short, few, and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain extremely short (1–2 mm.), glabrous. Plants 7–9 dm. tall; medium early in maturing.

Another specimen of the variety C. I. 603 was found under the name Golden.

Green Russian (Plate XVI, 1, and fig. 25).—Culms, sheaths, and leaves similar to those of Awnless Probsteier; panicles similar to those of C. I. 603, but somewhat larger; spikelets 2–3-grained; glumes dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, 20–28 mm. long, 9–10-nerved; grains bright yellow, somewhat elongate, outer grains 16–20 mm. long, rather long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 prominent nerves; awns numerous in the panicle, but frequently wanting in the spikelet, usually not twisted; basal hairs usually wanting, if present few, short, and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, glabrous. Plants 7–10 dm. tall; medium early in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Green Russian were found under the following additional names: American Triumph, Anderbeck, Big Four, Bonanza King, C. I. 582, C. I. 608, Columbia, Early Champion, Golden, Golden Beauty, Golden Cluster, Great Dane, Holstein Prolific, Irish Victor, Minnesota 202, Rossman, Siberian, Watson, Welcome.

Canadian (Plate XVI, 2, and fig. 26).—Culms erect in early growth, large, weak, glabrous; sheaths pale green, slightly glaucous; leaves colored as sheaths, but streaked and not uniform in color, wide, 20–25 mm., margins ciliate at lower third; rhachis slightly flexuous; panicles long, lax, drooping at the apex, branches wide-spreading and drooping from the middle outward; 2-grained spikelets (usually double-grains) predominant, 3-grained spikelets seldom occurring; glumes pale green, 9-nerved; grains white to pale yellow, very short and plump, outer grains 13–16 mm. long, short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, usually 9-nerved; awns present in about one-half the total number of spikelets, long but seldom twisted, and rarely geniculate; basal hairs wanting or few, short to long (1–5 mm.), weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2.5–3.5 mm. long, glabrous. Plants 9–11 dm. tall; medium early in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Canadian were found under the following additional names: Abundance, Canadian White, Lincoln, Probsteier, White Tartar.

Tobolsk (Plate XVI, 3, and fig. 26).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, stiff, glabrous; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins smooth; panicles medium long, wide-spreading, lax, the branches drooping from the middle outward; spikelets 2-grained; glumes dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, 9-nerved; grains white, plump, outer grains extremely short (usually 12–15 mm.), short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns numerous in the panicle, usually twisted, sometimes slightly geniculate; basal hairs wanting; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, glabrous or with a few weak hairs. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; medium early in maturing.

Another specimen of the variety Tobolsk was found under the name Wisconsin Pedigree No. 3.

Silvermine Selection (Plate XVII, 1, and fig. 25).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, stiff, hairy near the nodes; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins smooth; panicles of medium size, somewhat lax, the branches often drooping; spikelets 2–3-grained; glumes dark green and glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, usually 9-nerved, sometimes 10-nerved; grains white, plump, outer grains 15–18 mm. long, short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 prominent nerves; awns usually present, twisted and geniculate; basal hairs numerous, long (2–5 mm.), bushy; rhachilla of the outer grain short (1.5–2.5 mm.), usually glabrous. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

The variety Silvermine Selection was found as a mixture among several specimens of Silvermine and other white-grained varieties.

C. I. 602 (Plate XVII, 2, and fig. 26).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, stiff, glabrous; sheaths light green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, wide, margins smooth; panicles extremely long, wide-spreading, lax, drooping at the apex, the branches usually ascending; spikelets usually 2-grained; glumes light green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, usually 9-nerved, sometimes 10-nerved; grains white, elongate, outer grains 17-22 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns usually present, twisted and geniculate; basal hairs usually wanting, if present few, short, and weak; rhachilla of the first grain 2–3 mm. long, usually with a few weak hairs. Plants 9–12 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety C. I. 602 were found under the names Canadian and C. I. 597, and were also found as a mixture among several other varieties of white-grained oats.

Early Dakota (Plate XVII, 3, and fig. 26).— Culms, sheaths, leaves, and glumes similar to those of C. I. 602, except that the culms are usually hairy near the nodes; panicles long and spreading, often drooping at the apex, although the branches are usually ascending; spikelets usually 2-grained; grains yellowish white, rather elongate, outer grains 15–18 mm. long, rather long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns wanting or few in the panicle; basal hairs numerous, long (3–6 mm.), bushy; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, haired, the hairs often numerous and conspicuous. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Early Dakota were found under the following additional names: Abbott, Big Four, Early Gotham.

Irish Victor (Plate XVIII, 1, and fig. 26).—Culms, sheaths, leaves, panicles, and glumes similar to those of Early Dakota; spikelets 2–3-grained, 2-grained spikelets predominating; grains white or yellowish white, somewhat elongate, outer grains 16–19 mm. long, usually long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns wanting or few in the panicle; basal hairs usually wanting, if present few, weak, and short; rhachilla of the first grain 2–3 mm. long, usually glabrous. Plants 8–11 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Irish Victor were found under the following additional names: Alaska, American Banner, Czar of Russia, Early Illinois, Fourth of July, Golden Fleece, Great Dakota, Green Mountain, Japan, Lincoln, Mammoth White Side, Minnesota 202, Siberian, Sixty-Day, Stavropol, Sunshine, Swedish Select, Twentieth Century, Welcome, White, White Bedford, White Bonanza, White Main, White Queen, White Sensation, Wilson's Prolific.

Danish Island (Plate XVIII, 2, and fig. 26).— Culms, sheaths, leaves, panicles, spikelets, and glumes similar to those of Early Dakota; grains white or yellowish white, elongate, outer grains 16–19 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns numerous in the panicle; basal hairs usually wanting, if present few, weak, and short; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3.5 mm. long, glabrous or with a few weak hairs. Plants 9–12 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Danish Island were found under the following additional names: Champion, Garton 689, Green Mountain, Heavy Weight, Red Rustproof, Unnamed White.

Early Gothland (Plate XVIII, 3, and fig. 26).—Culms, sheaths, leaves, panicles, and glumes similar to those of Early Dakota, except that the glumes are somewhat longer; spikelets 2–3-grained; grains white to yellowish white, elongate, outer grains 18–22 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns numerous in the panicle, usually not twisted; basal hairs extremely short (1–2 mm.), numerous; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, usually haired. Plants 9–11 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Early Gothland were found under the following additional names: Banner, Danish, Schoenen.

Belyak (Plate XVIII, 4, and fig. 25).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, stiff, hairy near the nodes; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins glabrous; panicles medium long, rather broad, somewhat compact, stiff, erect, the branches ascending; spikelets 2–3-grained; glumes dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, 20–25 mm. long, usually 9-nerved, sometimes 10-nerved; grains white to yellowish white, plump, outer grains 16–19 mm. long, short-pointed, the dorsal side concave in the region of the awn; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns wanting or few in the panicle, seldom twisted; basal hairs wanting or extremely short; rhachilla of the outer grain short (1.5–2.5 mm.), usually glabrous. Plants 9–11 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Another specimen of the variety Belyak was found under the name White Belyak.

Silvermine (Plate XIX, 1, and fig. 29).—Culms, sheaths, leaves, panicles, and glumes similar to those of Belyak, except that the panicles are more elongate and their branches ascend more sharply; spikelets 2–3-grained, 2-grained spikelets largely predominating; grains white to yellowish white, plump, outer grains 16–19 mm. long, short-pointed, the dorsal side scarcely concave in the region of the awn; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns wanting or few in the panicle, usually not twisted; basal hairs usually wanting; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, usually with a few weak, short hairs. Plants 9–11 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Silvermine were found under the following additional names: American Banner, Big Four, Big Four (Salzer's), Boehmerwald Mountain, Bussey, Canadian, Curel 6, Danish Island,

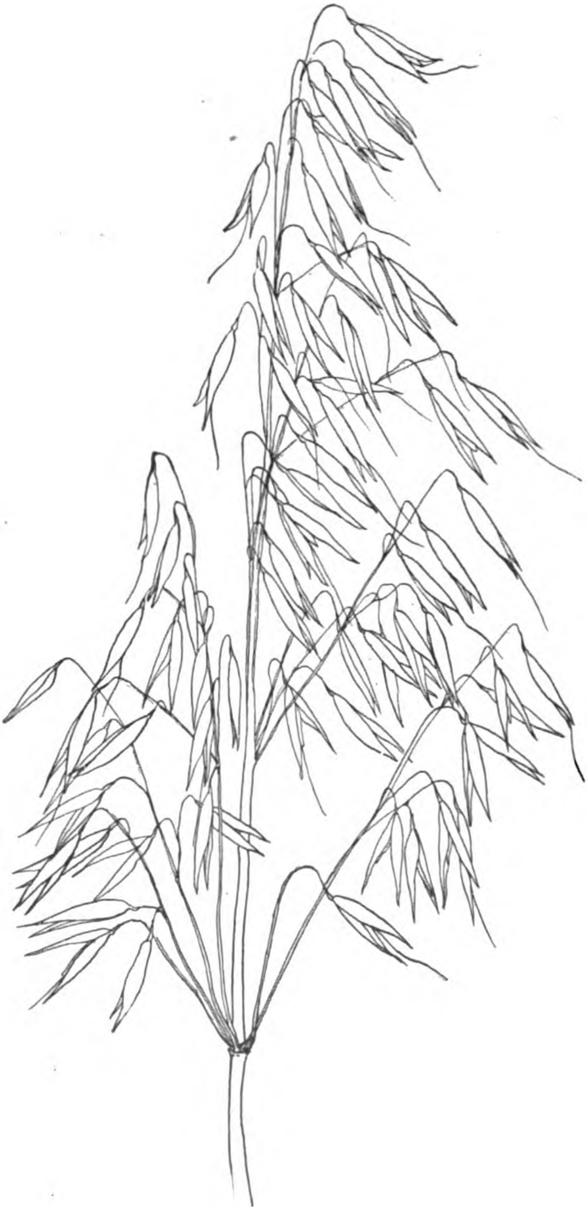


FIG. 29. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA (Silvermine)

Emperor William, Funk, Funk's Great Dane, Garton 364, Great American, Great Dakota, Illinois German, Lincoln, Minnesota 368, Morganfellow, National, New Zealand, Swedish Select, Welcome, Wideawake, Zhelannii.

Scottish Chief (Plate XIX, 2, and fig. 25).— Culms, sheaths, leaves, panicles, spikelets, and glumes similar to those of Belyak; grains somewhat similar to those of Silvermine, but longer (17–20 mm.) and long-pointed; hairs of the rhachilla more prominent than in Silvermine. Plants 8–11 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Scottish Chief were found under the following additional names: Goldmine, New Johnson, Swedish Select, White Tartar.

June (Plate XIX, 3, and fig. 25).— Culms, sheaths, leaves, panicles, and glumes similar to those of Belyak; spikelets 2–3-

grained, 3-grained spikelets predominating; grains somewhat similar to those of Belyak, but in some cases longer (16–20 mm.); awns numerous in the panicle, slightly twisted; basal hairs numerous, short (1–2 mm.), bushy; rhachilla of the outer grain short (1.5–2.5 mm.), glabrous. Plants 8–11 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Swedish Select (Plate XIX, 4, and fig. 25).— Culms, sheaths, leaves, panicles, and glumes similar to those of Belyak; spikelets 2–3-grained, 3-grained spikelets predominating; grains similar in form, size, and color to those of Belyak; awns very numerous in the panicle, strongly twisted, black at the base; basal hairs wanting, or extremely short, few, and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, usually glabrous. Plants 8–11 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Swedish Select were found under the following additional names: Abundance, Abyssinian, Achottatt, American Banner (Wisconsin 36), American Triumph, Archangel, Avena (Zook), Bancroft, Banner, Barley, Beseler, Beseler I (C. I. 592), Beseler II (C. I. 589), Beseler II (C. I. 600), Big Four, Big Four (Minnesota 353), Black Bell (C. I. 496), Bumper Crop, Canada Cluster, Canadian (Minnesota 429), C. I. 570, C. I. 576, C. I. 594, C. I. 604, C. I. 605, C. I. 618, Clydesdale, Clydesdale (Michigan 104), Colorado, Conqueror, Czar of Russia, Danish, Danish (C. I. 441), Danish Giant (C. I. 672), Danish Island, Danish White, Delmaine, Early Champion (Minnesota 267), Early Gothland (Minnesota 26), Early Gothland (Minnesota 295), Early Gothland (Minnesota 431), Emperor William, English, Fichtel Mountain, Fulghum, Garton 436, Garton 436 (C. I. 565), Garton 450, Garton 466, Garton 611, Garton's Swedish Select (Minnesota 430), Golden Cluster, Golden Fleece, Golden Rustproof, Goldmine, Great American, Great Dakota, Great Northern, Green Mountain, Heavy Weight, Henderson's Large White, Hungarian White, Illinois German, Imported Clydesdale, Improved Ligowo (Minnesota 6), Improved Ligowo (Minnesota 281), Irish Victor, Japan, Kirsche's Original (Minnesota 437), Leutewitz (C. I. 593), Ligowo (C. I. 525), Ligowo (C. I. 590), Ligowo (C. I. 599), Ligowo (C. I. 640), Ligowo (Minnesota 6), Ligowo II (C. I. 492), Lincoln, Lincoln (C. I. 575), Lincoln (Minnesota 340), Minnesota 270, Minnesota 436, Morganfellow, Mortgage Lifter, National (Salzer's), New Alberta, New Danish, Newmarket, Newmarket (Minnesota 428), Nichol's White Comet, Oderbrucker, Oregon Gray Winter (C. I. 436), Pickett (Michigan 102), President, Progress, Prosperity, Regenerated Abundance (C. I. 642), Regenerated Swedish Select, Regenerated Swedish Select (Minnesota 383), Rejuvenated White Bonanza, Rejuvenated White Bonanza (Minnesota 403), Roosevelt, Roosevelt (Minnesota 391), Scotch, Scottish Chief, Senator, Sensation, Siberian, Siberian White, Silvermine, Sparrowbill, Stube (Michigan 100), Swedish Prize Taker, Swedish Select (C. I. 134), Swedish Select (C. I. 674), Swedish Select (Wisconsin 4), Tartar King, Twentieth Century, University 6, Unnamed White, Victory, Welcome (Burpee's), Wernicke's Golden, White, White Beauty, White Bonanza, White Danish, White Maine, White Probsteier, White Queen, White Russian, White Schoenen, White Tartar, White Waverly, Wideawake, Wisconsin Pedigree 1, Wisconsin Pedigree 2, Wisconsin Pedigree 4, Wisconsin Pedigree 5.

Lincoln (Plate XX, 1, and fig. 25).—Similar to Swedish Select, with the following exceptions: 2-grained spikelets usually predominating, rather than 3-grained spikelets; grains somewhat elongate; awns straight or somewhat twisted.

Specimens of the variety Lincoln were found under the following additional names: Alaska, American Banner, American Beauty, Banner, Barley, Bavarian, Bland'd White, C. I. 571, C. I. 601, C. I. 617, Clydesdale, Colorado 37 (C. I. 619), Garton 572, Garton 572 (C. I. 564), Garton 572 (Minnesota 407), Great Dane (C. I. 613), Green Mountain, Hvitling, Improved American, Johnson, Junghaus, Kirsche (C. I. 578), Lactone, Ligowo, Lincoln (C. I. 577), Lincoln (C. I. 715), Michigan Wonder, Minnesota 103, Minnesota 343, Myrick, Myrick Banner (Minnesota 348), National, National (Salzer's), New Sensation, Peerless, "Seedling" (Michigan 101), Sensation, Shadeland Climax, Silvermine, Sparrowbill, Swedish Select, Tartarian (C. I. 713), Tartar King, Victory (C. I. 560), Western Star, White, Wideawake, Wisconsin Wonder.

AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS

Culms tall, erect in all stages of growth, generally large, thick, coarse, few in a plant, sheaths usually longer than in *A. sativa* and *A. sterilis*; leaves in most varieties wide and coarse; ligules and auricles wanting in some varieties; panicles unilateral, the branches arising from various sides of the rhachis but converging mostly to one side and being usually sharply ascending or appressed; rhachis in some varieties marked by its extremely flexuous form and by a geniculate bend at which the nodal diaphragm is wanting or rudimentary, although at the bend issue the lowest whorl of branches; awns when present on the outer grain only, and often wanting; basilar articulation of the grains solidified, as in *A. sativa*. (Plate III, 1.)

Key to varieties

PAGE

A. Grains dark-colored, black, brown, or gray.
  B. Ligules and auricles wanting.
    C. Awns numerous in the panicle; rhachilla of first grain 2–3.5 mm. long, sparsely haired; grains elongate.................Garton 748. 893
    CC. Awns wanting or seldom occurring; rhachilla of first grain 1–2 mm. long, glabrous; grains plump.................Garton 784. 894
  BB. Ligules and auricles present.
    C. Grains gray; rhachilla of first grain 1.5–2 mm. long, glabrous; culms usually sparsely haired near the nodes.................Garton Gray. 894
    CC. Grains black to brown; rhachilla of first grain 2.5–3.5 mm. long, sparsely haired; culms glabrous.................Black Tartarian. 895
AA. Grains light-colored, white or yellow.
  B. Ligules and auricles wanting.................Golden Giant. 895
  BB. Ligules and auricles present.
    C. Outer grains remarkably short, rarely exceeding 15 mm. in length; spikelets confused in attitude (pointing in all directions).................Sparrowbill. 896
    CC. Outer grains ranging between 16 and 20 mm. in length, rarely less than 15 mm.; spikelets drooping or pectinate in attitude.
      D. Nerves in the glume 11–13; branches of the panicle not appressed, usually drooping from the middle outward.................Garton 585. 896
      DD. Nerves in the glume 8–10; branches of the panicle appressed.
        E. Panicles thickly branched and fruited, compact and stiff, the lowest whorl of branches issuing from a bend in the rhachis at which the nodal diaphragm is wanting or rudimentary; margins of leaves ciliate; double-grains very numerous.
          F. Basal hairs wanting; nerves of the lemma 8–10; spikelet usually double-grained.................Storm King. 897
          FF. Basal hairs frequently present; nerves of the lemma 7–8; spikelet in about equal numbers double-grained or normal..Tartar King. 898
        EE. Panicles sparsely branched and fruited, elongate, slender, lax, drooping, the lowest whorl of branches issuing at a normal node; margins of leaves glabrous; double-grains few.
          F. Awns rare; 3-grained spikelets rare.................White Tartar. 899
          FF. Awns numerous in the panicle, usually present in each spikelet; 3-grained spikelets frequent.................Green Mountain. 900

Descriptions of varieties

Garton 748 (Plate XX, 2, and fig. 30).—Culms erect from early growth, medium large, coarse, glabrous; sheaths dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, fully covering the internodes; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins glabrous; ligules and auricles wanting; rhachis barely flexuous; panicles unilateral, short, stiff, sparsely branched and fruited, the branches appressed, the lowest whorl of branches always issuing from a normal node; spikelets pendant or pectinate in attitude, 2–3-grained; glumes dark green, somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, rather short (20–25 mm.), 8–10-nerved, usually 9-nerved; grains black or smoky brown, with colorless points, rather elongate but well filled, outer grains 15–18 mm. long; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 prominent nerves; awns numerous in the panicle, black and twisted at the base, often slightly geniculate; basal hairs wanting; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3.5 mm. long, sparsely haired. Plants 7–10 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

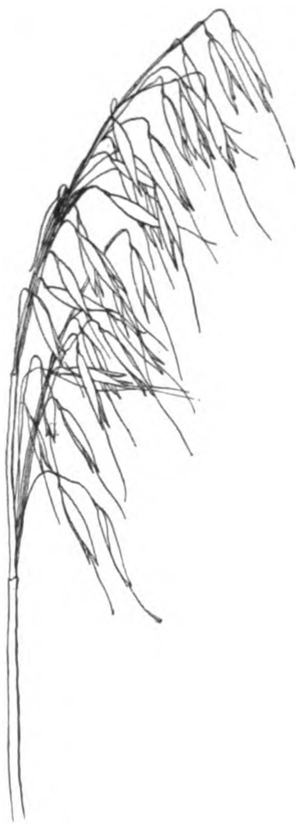


FIG. 30. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS

(Panicle representing the varieties Garton 748 and Garton 784)

Garton 784 (Plate XX, 3, and fig. 30).—Similar to Garton 748, with the following exceptions: grains rather plump and somewhat glaucous; awns wanting or seldom occurring; rhachilla of the outer grain remarkably short (1–2 mm.), glabrous.

Specimens of the variety Garton 784 were found also under the names Black Tartarian and Garton 74.

Garton Gray (Plate XX, 4, and fig. 13).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, usually sparsely haired near the nodes; sheaths dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, scarcely covering the internodes; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins glabrous; ligules and auricles well developed; rhachis barely flexuous; panicles unilateral (resembling the type shown in figure 30, although somewhat longer and more prolific), the branches issuing from a normal node; spikelets pendant or pectinate in attitude, 2–3-grained; glumes dark green, somewhat glaucous, medium long (25–30 mm.), 9-nerved; grains gray or mottled gray and dull yellow, elongate, outer grains 16–20 mm. long, rather long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns usually present, black and twisted at the base; basal hairs usually wanting, when present short, weak, and few; rhachilla of the outer grain 2–3 mm. long, glabrous or occasionally with a few fine, short hairs. Plants 9–13 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Black Tartarian (Plate XXI, 1, and fig. 13).—Culms erect in early growth, large, coarse, glabrous; sheaths dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, scarcely covering the internodes; leaves colored as the sheaths, extremely wide, margins ciliate; ligules and auricles well developed; rhachis often very flexuous; panicles thickly branched and fruited, compact and stiff, the branches appressed, the lowest whorl of branches usually issuing from a geniculate bend in the rhachis at which the nodal diaphragm is wanting or rudimentary; spikelets pendant or pectinate in attitude, 2–3-grained; glumes dark green, somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, medium in length (23–27 mm.), 8–9-nerved, usually 9-nerved; grains black or brown, somewhat elongate, outer grains 16–20 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7–8 prominent nerves; awns usually present, dark-colored and twisted at the base, sometimes slightly geniculate; basal hairs usually wanting, although often present, short and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain 2.5–3.5 mm. long, usually carrying a few short, stiff hairs. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Black Tartarian were found under the following additional names: Alberta, Black Beauty, Black Egypt, Black Egyptian (Salzer's), Black Prolific (Salzer's), Black Tartar, Danish White, Garton's Black, Probsteier, Sensation.

Golden Giant (Plate XXI, 2, and fig. 13).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, coarse, usually glabrous but in some cases slightly hairy near the nodes; sheaths dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, fully covering the internodes; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins glabrous; ligules and auricles wanting; rhachis usually straight but may occasionally be slightly flexuous; panicles unilateral, sparsely branched and fruited, slightly drooping at the apex, the branches appressed, the lowest whorl of branches always issuing from a normal node; spikelets pendant or pectinate in attitude, 2–3-grained; glumes dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, rather short (20–25 mm.), 9–10-nerved, usually 9-nerved; grains bright yellow, elongate, outer grains 18–22 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns usually present, dark-colored and slightly twisted at the base; basal hairs usually wanting, if present short, weak, and few; rhachilla of the outer grain 1.5–3 mm. long, usually glabrous but occasionally with a few weak, short hairs. Plants 8–12 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Golden Giant were found under the following additional names: Golden Giant Side, Jaune Géant à Grappes, Seizure.

Sparrowbill (Plate XXI, 3, and fig. 14).— Culms erect in early growth, large, coarse, glabrous; sheaths dark green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, scarcely covering the internodes; leaves colored as sheaths, medium to extremely wide, margins glabrous; ligules and auricles well developed; rhachis often extremely flexuous; panicles thickly branched and fruited, compact, stiff but sometimes slightly drooping at the apex, the branches appressed, the first whorl of branches usually issuing at a normal node but often at a geniculate bend in the rhachis where the nodal diaphragm is wanting or rudimentary; spikelets confused in attitude, 2-grained, rarely 3-grained, double-grains very frequent; glumes light green and barely glaucous at period of full heading, short (20–25 mm.), 8–9-nerved; grains white shading into pale yellow, outer grains remarkably short (12–15 mm.), plump, full, short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns wanting or rare; basal hairs generally present, weak, few, irregular in length (1–5 mm.); rhachilla of the outer grain short (2 mm.), glabrous. Plants 8–10 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Sparrowbill were found under the following additional names: Daubeney, Dun, Early Blossom, Standard Challenge, Swedish Select, White Egyptian.

Garton 585 (Plate XXI, 4, and fig. 31).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, coarse, hairy near the nodes; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading, scarcely covering the internodes; leaves colored as the sheaths, medium wide, margins glabrous; ligules and auricles well developed; rhachis barely flexuous; panicles somewhat unilateral,[11] although the branches are not appressed but rather drooping from the middle outward, the lowest whorl of branches always issuing from a normal node; spikelets pendant in attitude, 2–3-grained, double-grains numerous; glumes dark green and slightly glaucous at period of full heading, remarkably long (27–32 mm.) and wide, 11–13-nerved; grains dull yellow or white mottled with dull yellow, very large and coarse, outer grains 18–22 mm. long, short-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7–9 prominent nerves; awns few in the panicle, coarse but usually not twisted; basal hairs usually wanting, if present few and weak; rhachilla of outer grain remarkably short (1.5–2 mm.) in proportion to the size of the grain, glabrous or occasionally with a few weak, short hairs. Plants 10–12 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

---

[11] The classification of Garton 585 is uncertain. Its panicle is intermediate in form between *A. sativa* and *A. sativa orientalis*. It is placed in the latter group merely for convenience in identification.

Storm King (Plate XXII, 1, and fig. 32).—Culms erect in early growth, large, coarse, glabrous; sheaths dark green and glaucous at period of full heading, scarcely covering the internodes; leaves colored as sheaths, medium to extremely wide, margins ciliate at lower third; ligules and auricles well

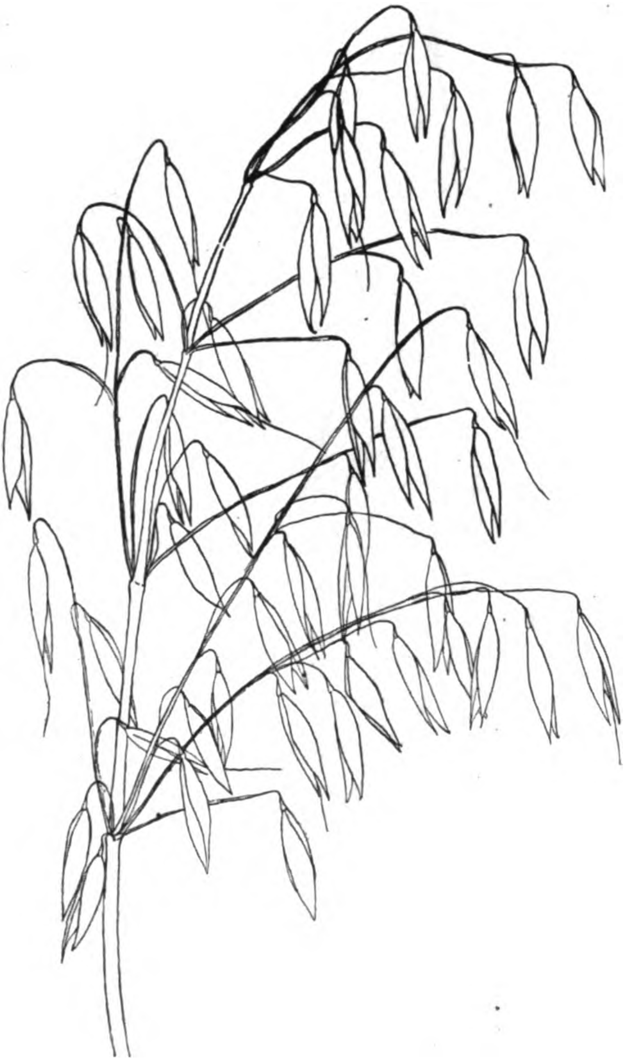


FIG. 31. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS
(Garton 585)

developed; rhachis very flexuous; panicles thickly branched and fruited, compact, stiff, the branches appressed, the first whorl of branches arising from a geniculate bend in the rhachis at which the nodal diaphragm is wanting or rudimentary; spikelets pendant or pectinate in attitude, 2-grained, double-grains predominating; glumes dark green and barely glaucous at period of full heading, rather long (25–30 mm.), 9–10-nerved; grains white often splotched with dull yellow, coarse; outer grains of medium length (16–20 mm), very broad, full, rounded, acuminate-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, usually with 9 prominent nerves; awns few in the panicle, usually not twisted; basal hairs usually wanting; rhachilla of the outer grain 2.5–3 mm. long, glabrous, sunken, often inclosed by the edges of the lemma. Plants 8–11 dm. tall; medium late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety Storm King were found under the following additional names: Avena (Wilcox), C. I. 583, Garton 364, Garton White, Senator, Side, Silver White, Tartar King, Waverly, White Plume.

Tartar King (Plate XXII, 2, and fig. 32).— Similar to Storm King, with the following exceptions: spikelets in about equal numbers double-grained or normal; grains more

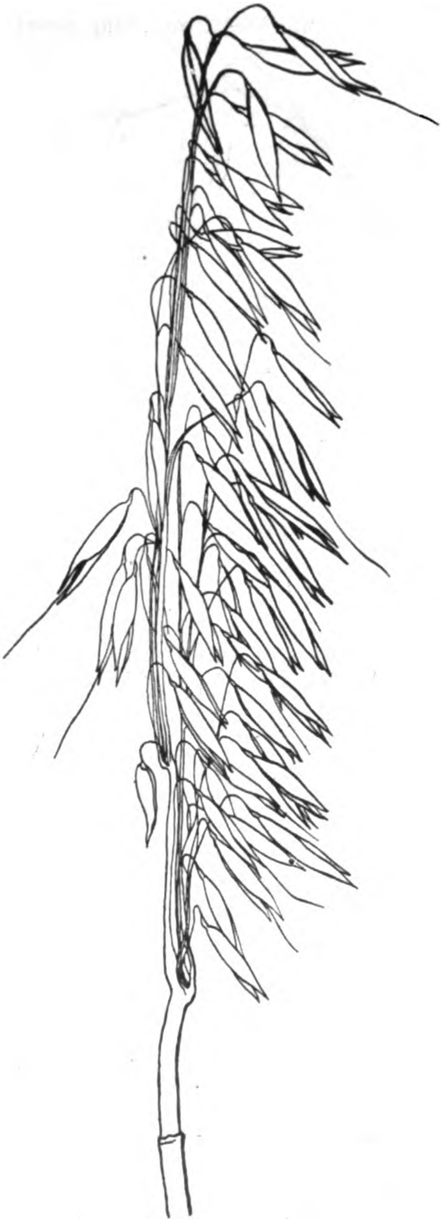


Fig. 32. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS (Panicle representing the varieties Storm King and Tartar King)

elongate; lemma of the outer grain 7–8-nerved; basal hairs frequently present, few, short, and weak.

Specimens of the variety Tartar King were found under the following additional names: American Banner, Black Great Mogul, Canadian Cluster, Clydesdale, Garton 610, Hansen's, Henderson's Large White, Long's White Tartar, New Zealand, Swedish Select, White, White Plume, White Tartar.

White Tartar (Plate XXII, 3, and fig. 33).—Culms erect in early growth, medium large, glabrous; sheaths medium green and somewhat glaucous at period of full heading, scarcely covering the internodes; leaves colored as sheaths, narrow to medium wide, margins smooth; ligules and auricles well developed; rhachis barely flexuous, often tendril-like at the end; panicles medium to extremely long, sparsely branched and fruited, slender, frail, lax, drooping, the branches appressed, the lowest whorl of branches arising at a normal node; spikelets pendant or pectinate in attitude, 2-grained, rarely 3-grained; glumes dark green and barely

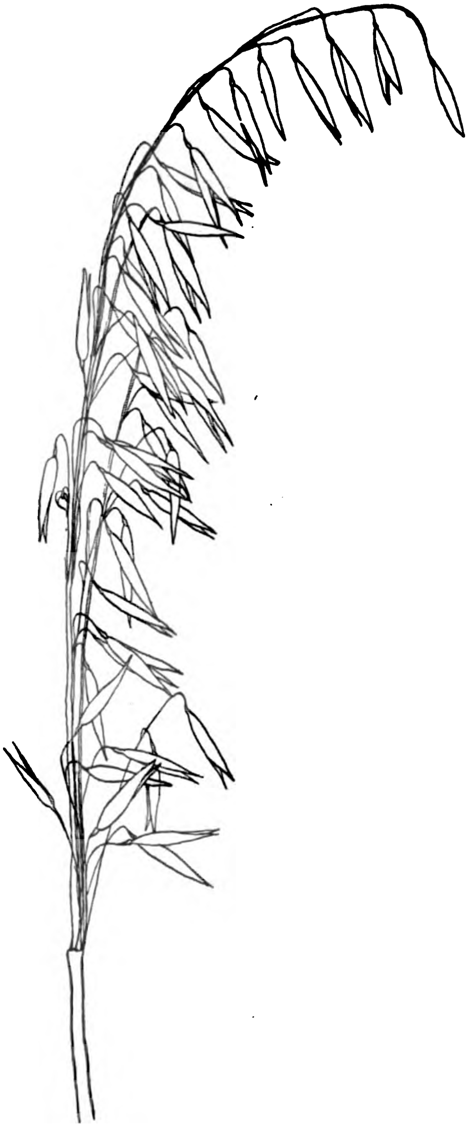


FIG. 33. PANICLE OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS
(Panicle representing the varieties White Tartar and Green Mountain)

glaucous at period of full heading, short to long (20–30 mm.), 9–10-nerved; grains white to yellowish white, elongate, outer grains 16–19 mm. long, long-pointed; lemma of the outer grain glabrous, with 7 obscure nerves; awns rare; basal hairs usually absent, if present few, short, and weak; rhachilla of the outer grain short to medium long (2–3 mm.), glabrous or in some cases carrying a few short, fine hairs. Plants 10–15 dm. tall; late in maturing.

Specimens of the variety White Tartar were found under the following additional names: American Banner, Danish, Dun, Great Northern, Lincoln, Long's White Tartar, Minnesota 271, Pringles Progress, Read's Green Mountain, Tartarian, White Russian.

Green Mountain (Plate XXII, 4, and fig. 33).—Similar to White Tartar, with the following exceptions: awns numerous in the panicle, usually present in each spikelet; 3-grained spikelets numerous.

Specimens of the variety Green Mountain were found under the following additional names: Read's Green Mountain, White Russian, White Tartar.

CONCLUSION

In the foregoing classification fifty-five varieties have been distinguished within the three common specific groups *A. sterilis*, *A. sativa*, and *A. sativa orientalis*. Within each group the varieties are systematically arranged with respect to such morphological differences as appear best to fulfill the twofold requirement of constancy in inheritance and ease of observation. It cannot be said that the arrangement is according to the strictest order of relationship, for, as previously explained, the modifications in the structure of cultivated plants do not permit a strictly logical taxonomy. Thus a group of varieties having dark-colored grains may include forms that are actually more closely related to certain varieties within a group of light-colored grains than to other members of the dark-colored group. But in a classification which, like the present one, deals with a large number of closely related and interrelated forms, the actual degree of relationship must, in the arrangement of varieties, be subordinate to expediency in identification — which purpose the classification of varieties of cultivated plants chiefly serves.

While the classification presents its arrangement of varieties according to the modifications in their characters as exhibited in the present environment, the arrangement is based mainly on a fundamental morphology which should reasonably be expected to exhibit similar modifications under other environments. The key for the identification of varieties should therefore, under a wide range of environment, be effective to the point of fixing, at least within narrow limits, the identity of unknown forms.

The choice of variety names herein made is not an attempt to standardize the nomenclature, but rather to point out the names under which the described varieties are probably most frequently grown. As previously explained, the name for a given variety was chosen when it occurred more frequently than any other name among specimens of the variety collected from many different sources. The nomenclature of varieties cannot properly be fixed by a single person acting independently of others who may prefer their own choice of names; but it is important to show that in the lack of a standard nomenclature the name applied to a variety very often has no significance, for numerous different names may be applied to the same form, and the same name may be applied to different forms.

Finally, the classification does not take into account *differences in the ability of varieties to yield.* It is quite possible that many of the synonyms of a given variety may represent forms which differ greatly in this respect and yet exhibit no fundamental variations in structure by which they may be distinguished.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The writer desires to acknowledge his indebtedness to Professor E. G. Montgomery, of the Department of Farm Crops, Cornell University, under whose direction the work was done, for valuable suggestions and criticisms; to C. W. Warburton, of the Office of Cereal Investigations, United States Department of Agriculture, for the gift of many of the specimens included in the classification of varieties; and to Miss Fanny E. Cassel for accurate and painstaking work in the illustration of grains and structural figures.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Atterberg, Albert

1891 Neues System der Hafervarietäten nebst Beschreibung der nordischen Haferformen. Landw. Vers. Stat. **39**: 171–204.

Berry, R. A.

1912 The oat kernel. British Assoc. Adv. Sci. Rept. **82**: 733–734.

Blaringhem, Louis

1904 Le laboratoire d'essais de semences de Svalöf (Suède). Bul. Mus. Hist. Nat. 10:514–519.

Böhmer, Gerhard

1908–09 Über die Systematik der Hafersorten, sowie über einige züchterisch wichtige Eigenschaften der Haferrispe. Oberhess. Gesell. Nat. u. Heilk. Ber. 3:1–87.

1911 Hafer im Bilde. Fühling's landw. Ztg. 60:18:609–616.

Britton, N. L., and Brown, A.

1896 Avena. *In* An illustrated flora of the northern United States, Canada, and the British possessions 1:172–173.

Broili, Josef

1906 Über die Unterscheidung der zweizeiligen Gerste — Hordeum distichum — am Korne. Inaug. Diss., Univ. Jena, p. 1–60.

1910 Beiträge zur Hafer-Morphologie. Journ. Landw. 58:205–220.

1911 Hafer im Bilde. Deut. Landw. Gesell. Arb. 194:1–17.

Bünger, Heinrich

1906 Über den Einfluss verschieden hohen Wassergehalts des Bodens in den einzelnen Vegetationsstadien bei verschiedenem Nährstoffreichtum auf die Entwicklung der Haferpflanze. Landw. Jahrb. 35:941–1051.

Collins, G. N.

1909 A new type of indian corn from China. U. S. Plant Indus. Bur. Bul. 161:3–30.

Denaiffe, ——, et Sirodot, ——

1901 L'avoine, p. 1–278.

Dufour, ——, et Dassonville, ——

1903 Étude sur les caractères propres à distinguer les diverses variétés de l'Avena sativa. Rev. gén. bot. 15:289–309.

Edler, W.

1905 Die Kornerträge. *In* Dreijährige Erbsen-Anbauversuche 1902 bis 1904. Deut. Landw. Gesell. Arb. 109:70–80.

Emerson, R. A.

1912 The inheritance of the ligule and auricles of corn leaves. Nebraska Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. 25:81–88.

Fernekess, Karl

1908 Die Haferrispe nach Aufbau und Verteilung der Kornqualitäten (Korngewicht und Spelzengehalte). Genehmigte Diss., München Tech. Hochsch., p. 1–106.

Fischer, M.

1900 Winterhafer. Fühling's landw. Ztg. 49:19:718–723; 49:20: 766–744; 49:21:806–810.

1902 Einige Nachträge über Pflanzenzüchtung. Fühling's landw. Ztg. 51:11:411–415.

Fruwirth, E.

1907 Die Haferrispe bei der Beurteilung der Sorten und in der Züchtung. Fühling's landw. Ztg. 56:9:289–301.

Harlan, H. V.

1914 Some distinctions in our cultivated barleys with reference to their use in plant breeding. U. S. Agr. Dept. Bul. 137:1–38.

Hitchcock, A. S.

1908 Avena. *In* Gray's new manual of botany, p. 140–141.

Jensen, J. L.

1899 Sammenhængen mellem klima og kornarternes kærnestørrelse. Tidsskr. landbr. planteavl 1899:138–147.

Körnicke, Friedrich

1909 (Communicated by M. Körnicke.) Die Entstehung und das Verhalten neuer Getreidevarietäten. Arch. Biontol. 2:2:393–437.

Körnicke, F., und Werner, H.

1885 Handbuch des Getreidebaues 1:192–220· 2:681–771.

Krogmann, ——

1908 Über die Bestimmung des Tausendkorngewichts bei Hafer. Fühling's landw. Ztg. 57:7:258–262.

Lippoldes, W.

1904 [German title.] Of what value is the stooling capacity of grains? Inaug. Diss., Univ. Jena. *Cited in* Exp. sta. rec. **15**:768–769.

Neergaard, T. B. von

1889 Bestämning af kornets varieteter och sorter efter på kärnorna befintliga kännetecken. *In* Allm. Svenska utsädesför. arsber. 1888:54–61.

Nilsson, N. H.

1901 Förteckning öfver de vigtigaste sorterna på Sveriges utsädesförenings försöksfält 1901. Sveriges utsädesför. tidskr. **1901**: 66–104.

Nilsson-Ehle, H.

1906 Kort sammanställning af resultaten från utsädesföreningens jemförande försök med olika hafresorter 1893–1905. Sveriges utsädesför. tidskr. **1906**:45–78.

1909 Kreuzungsuntersuchungen an Hafer und Weizen. Lunds Univ. arsskr. n. f. afd. 2:**5**:75–91.

1914 Über einen als Hemmungsfaktor der Begrannung auftretenden Farbenfaktor beim Hafer. Zeitsch. induktive Abstammungs- und Vererbungslehre **12**:36–55.

Norton, J. B.

1907 Notes on breeding oats. Amer. Breeders' Assoc. Proc. **3**: 280–285.

Peacock, R. W.

1904 Oats. Agr. gaz. N. S. Wales **15**:765–772.

Roberts, H. F., and Freeman, G. F.

1908 The deterioration of Red Texas oats in Kansas. Kansas Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 153:147–164.

Schneider, Georg

1912 Vegetationsversuche mit 88 Hafersorten. Landw. Jahrb. **42**: 767–833.

Schulz, August

1913 Abstammung und Heimat des Saathafers. Zeitsch. gesam. Getreidewesen **5**:139–142.

Scofield, C. S.

1903 The description of wheat varieties. U. S. Plant Indus. Bur. Bul. 47:1–19.

Seton, R. S.

1903 Experiments on the growth of oats. Great Britain Bd. Agr. and Fisheries. Annual report on the distribution of grants for agricultural education and research in the year 1902–1903, p. 77–81.

Trabut, L.

1911 Observations sur l'origine des avoines cultivées. Fourth Conference Internationale de Génétique, Comptes rendus et rapports, p. 536–546. Translation in Journ. hered. **5** (1914): 56–85.

Ulander, A.

1906 Die schwedische Pflanzenzüchtung zu Svalöf. Eine kurze Darstellung. Journ. Landw. **54**: 105–124.

Zade, A.

1912 Der Flughafer (Avena fatua). Deut. Landw. Gesell. Arb. **229**: 1–91.

INDEX TO VARIETY DESCRIPTIONS

(Synonyms are in italics)

PAGE
Abbott ... 888
Abundance ... 886, 891
Abyssinian ... 891
Achottatt ... 891
Alaska ... 888, 892
Alberta ... 895
American Banner ... 885, 888, 889, 892
899, 900
American Banner (Wisconsin 36) ... 891
American Beauty ... 892
American Triumph ... 886, 891
Anderbeck ... 886
Appler ... 867, 883, 885
Archangel ... 891
Avena (Wilcox) ... 898
Avena (Zook) ... 891
Avena abyssinica ... 868
Avena brevis ... 868
Avena fatua ... 869
Avena fatua glabrata ... 870
Avena nuda ... 863
Avena sativa ... 870, 871
Avena sativa orientalis ... 870, 892
Avena sterilis ... 864
Avena sterilis algeriensis ... 865
Avena sterilis byzantina ... 865
Avena sterilis nigra ... 865
Avena strigosa ... 868
Awnless Probsteier ... 884
Bancroft ... 867, 891
Banner ... 889, 891, 892
Barley ... 891, 892
Bavarian ... 892
Belgian Vinter ... 867
Belyak ... 889
Beseler ... 891
Beseler I (C. I. 592) ... 891
Beseler II (C. I. 589) ... 891
Beseler II (C. I. 600) ... 891
Big Four ... 886, 888, 889, 891
Big Four (Minnesota 353) ... 891
Big Four (Salzer's) ... 889
Black American ... 881
Black Anthony ... 880
Black Arctic ... 881
Black Beauty ... 895
Black Bell (C. I. 496) ... 891
Black Diamond ... 879
Black Egypt ... 895
Black Egyptian ... 877
Black Egyptian (Salzer's) ... 895
Black Great Mogul ... 899

PAGE
Black Mesdag ... 877
Black Norway ... 875
Black Prolific (Salzer's) ... 895
Black Tartar ... 895
Black Tartarian ... 895
Black Tartarian ... 894
Bland'd White ... 892
Boehmerwald Mountain ... 889
Bonanza King ... 886
Bucium ... 883
Bumper Crop ... 891
Burpee's ... 892
Burt ... 867
Burt ... 875
Bussey ... 889
Canada Cluster ... 891
Canadian ... 886
Canadian ... 887, 889
Canadian (Minnesota 429) ... 891
Canadian Cluster ... 899
Canadian White ... 886
C. I. 134 ... 892
C. I. 165 ... 883
C. I. 436 ... 891
C. I. 441 ... 891
C. I. 492 ... 891
C. I. 496 ... 891
C. I. 525 ... 891
C. I. 560 ... 892
C. I. 564 ... 892
C. I. 565 ... 891
C. I. 570 ... 891
C. I. 571 ... 892
C. I. 575 ... 891
C. I. 576 ... 891
C. I. 577 ... 892
C. I. 578 ... 892
C. I. 579 ... 883
C. I. 582 ... 886
C. I. 583 ... 898
C. I. 589 ... 891
C. I. 590 ... 891
C. I. 592 ... 891
C. I. 593 ... 891
C. I. 594 ... 891
C. I. 597 ... 887
C. I. 599 ... 891
C. I. 600 ... 891
C. I. 601 ... 892
C. I. 602 ... 887
C. I. 603 ... 885
C. I. 604 ... 891

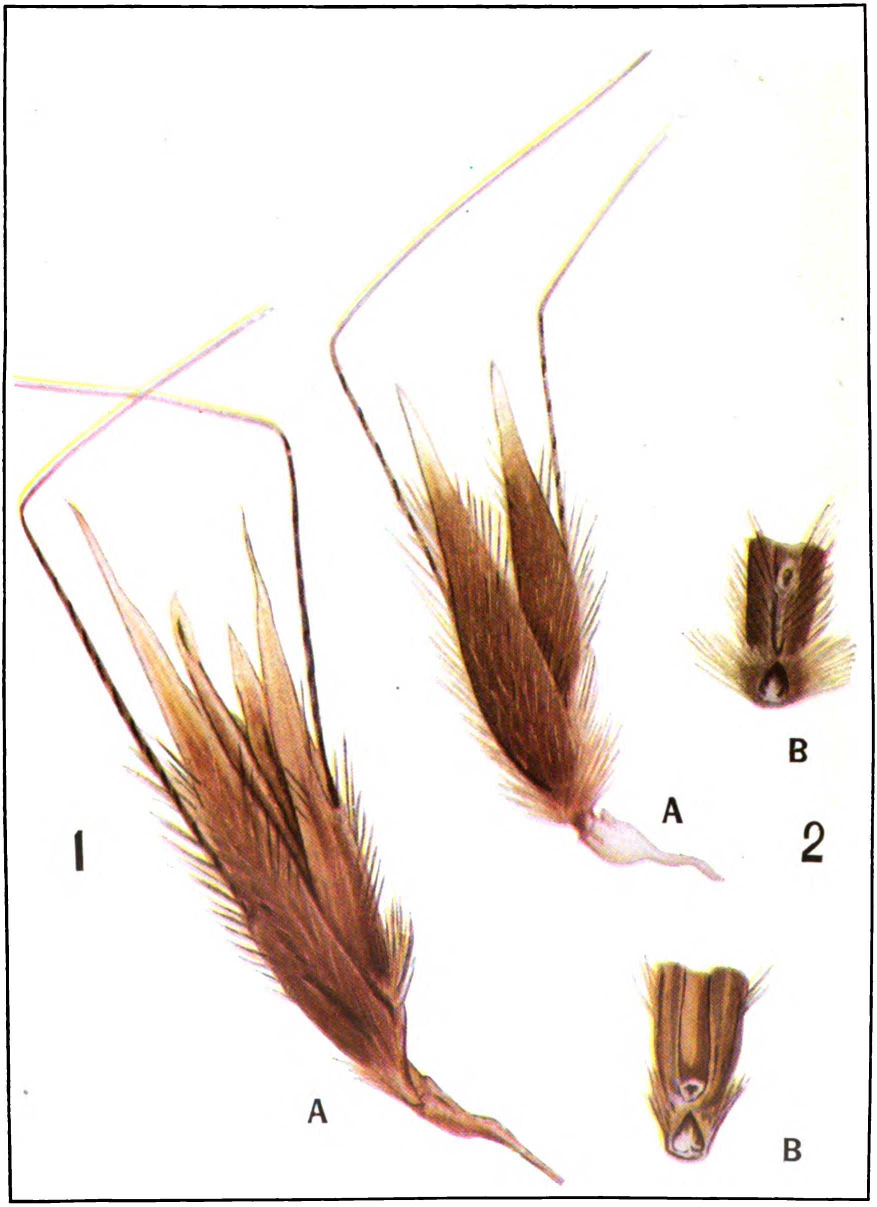
PAGE
C. I. 605 891
C. I. 606 873
C. I. 607 874
C. I. 608 886
C. I. 613 892
C. I. 617 892
C. I. 618 891
C. I. 619 892
C. I. 620 880
C. I. 639 883
C. I. 640 891
C. I. 642 891
C. I. 672 891
C. I. 674 892
C. I. 713 892
C. I. 715 892
Champion 883, 884, 888
Clydesdale 891, 892, 899
Clydesdale (*Michigan 104*) 891
Colorado 891
Colorado 37 (*C. I. 619*) 892
Columbia 886
Conqueror 891
Culberson 875
Culberson 883
Curel 6 889
Czar of Russia 888, 891
Danish 885, 889, 891, 900
Danish (*C. I. 441*) 891
Danish Giant (*C. I. 672*) 891
Danish Island 888
Danish Island 889, 891
Danish White 891, 895
Daubeney 883, 884, 896
Delmaine 891
Dewey 875
Dun 867, 896, 900
Early Blossom 896
Early Champion 881, 884
Early Champion 883, 886
Early Champion (*Minnesota 267*) 891
Early Dakota 888
Early Gotham 888
Early Gothland 889
Early Gothland (*Minnesota 26*) 891
Early Gothland (*Minnesota 295*) 891
Early Gothland (*Minnesota 431*) 891
Early Illinois 883, 888
Early Mountain 885
Early Ripe 868
Emperor William 890, 891
English 891
English Wonder 877
Fichtel Mountain 891
Fourth of July 888
Fulghum 891
Funk 890
Funk's Great Dane 890
Garton 74 894
Garton 306 877
Garton 364 .... 890, 898
Garton 396 877
Garton 436 891
Garton 436 (*C. I. 565*) 891
Garton 450 891
Garton 453 877
Garton 466 891
Garton 473 881
Garton 572 892
Garton 572 (*C. I. 564*) 892
Garton 572 (*Minnesota 407*) 892
Garton 585 896
Garton 610 899
Garton 611 891
Garton 689 888
Garton 691 881
Garton 748 893
Garton 784 894
Garton 855 881
Garton 1174 877
Garton Gray 894
Garton's Black 895
Garton's Swedish Select (*Minnesota 430*) . 891
Garton White 898
Golden .... 886(2)
Golden Beauty 885
Golden Cluster 886, 891
Golden Drop 885
Golden Fleece 888, 891
Golden Giant 895
Golden Giant Side 896
Golden Rain 881, 885
Golden Rustproof 891
Goldmine 890, 891
Gray Winter 875
Great American 890, 891
Great Dakota 888, 890, 891
Great Dane 886
Great Dane (*C. I. 613*) 892
Great Northern 891, 900
Green Mountain 900
Green Mountain 888 (2), 891, 892
Green Russian 886
Hansen's 899
Hays 883
Heavy Weight 888, 891
Henderson's Large White 891, 899
Hennesey 877
Holstein Prolific 886
Hungarian White 891

PAGE
Hunt 885
Hvitling 892
Illinois German 890, 891
Imported Clydesdale 891
Improved American 892
Improved Ligowo (Minnesota 6) 891
Improved Ligowo (Minnesota 281) 891
Iowa Silvermine 884
Irish Victor 888
Irish Victor 886, 891
Japan 885, 888, 891
Japan Selection 885
Jaune Geant a Grappes 896
Jeanette 880
Joannette 879
Johnson 892
June 890
Junghaus 892
Kherson 881, 883
Kherson (Nebraska No. 1) 883
Kherson Selection 883
King 668
Kirsche 885
Kirsche (C. I. 578) 892
Kirsche's Original (Minnesota 437) 891
Lactone 892
Large Yellow 885
Leutewitz (C. I. 593) 891
Ligowo 892
Ligowo (C. I. 525) 891
Ligowo (C. I. 590) 891
Ligowo (C. I. 599) 891
Ligowo (C. I. 640) 891
Ligowo (Minnesota 6) 891
Ligowo II (C. I. 492) 891
Lincoln 892
Lincoln 885, 886, 888, 890, 891, 900
Lincoln (C. I. 575) 891
Lincoln (C. I. 577) 892
Lincoln (C. I. 715) 892
Lincoln (Minnesota 340) 891
Long's White Tartar 899, 900
Mammoth White Side 888
Martinsburg 877
Michigan 100 892
Michigan 101 892
Michigan 102 891
Michigan 104 891
Michigan Wonder 892
Minnesota 6 891(2)
Minnesota 26 891
Minnesota 103 892
Minnesota 202 886, 888
Minnesota 261 883
Minnesota 267 891

PAGE
Minnesota 270 891
Minnesota 271 900
Minnesota 281 891
Minnesota 295 891
Minnesota 340 891
Minnesota 343 892
Minnesota 348 892
Minnesota 353 891
Minnesota 368 890
Minnesota 383 891
Minnesota 391 892
Minnesota 403 892
Minnesota 407 892
Minnesota 428 891
Minnesota 429 891
Minnesota 430 891
Minnesota 431 891
Minnesota 436 891
Minnesota 437 891
Monarch 877
Monarch Selection 879
Morganfellow 890, 891
Mortgage Lifter 891
Myrick 892
Myrick Banner (Minnesota 348) 892
National 890, 892
National (Salzer's) 891, 892
Nebraska No. 1 883
New Alberta 891
New Champion 884
New Danish 891
New Johnson 890
Newmarket 891
Newmarket (Minnesota 428) 891
New Sensation 892
New Zealand 890, 899
Nichol's Black 880
Nichol's White Comet 891
North Finnish 880
Oderbrucker 891
Old Island Black 880
100 Bushel 867
Oregon Gray 875
Oregon Gray Winter (C. I. 436) 891
Peerless 892
Pickett (Michigan 102) 891
President 891
Pringles Progress 900
Probsteier 886, 895
Progress 891
Prosperity 891
Ray's 5610 883
Read's Green Mountain 900(2)
Red Algerian 867
Red Rustproof 867

PAGE
Red Rustproof 868, 877, 888
Red Rustproof (Red Texas) 867
Red Rustproof (Texas Red) 867
Red Rustproof Selection 867
Red Texas 867
Regenerated Abundance (C. I. 642) 891
Regenerated Swedish Select 867, 881, 891
Regenerated Swedish Select (Minnesota 383) 891
Rejuvenated White Bonanza 892
Rejuvenated White Bonanza (Minnesota 403) 892
Roosevelt 892
Roosevelt (Minnesota 391) 892
Rossman 886
Salzer's 889, 891, 892, 895(2)
Schoenen 889
Scotch 892
Scottish Chief 890
Scottish Chief 892
" Seedling " (Michigan 101) 892
Seizure 896
Senator 892, 898
Sensation 892 (2), 895
Seventy-five Day 883, 884
Shadeland Climax 892
Siberian 886, 888, 892
Siberian White 892
Side 898
Silvermine 889
Silvermine 875, 892(2)
Silvermine Selection 887
Silver White 898
Sixty-Day 881, 883
Sixty-Day 888
Sixty-Day (C. I. 165) 883
Sixty-Day (C. I. 639) 883
Sixty-Day (Minnesota 261) 883
Sixty-Day Selection 883
Sonoma 875
Sparrowbill 896
Sparrowbill 892(2)
Standard Challenge 896
Stavropol 888
Sterilis Selection 867
Storm King 897
Stube (Michigan 100) 892
Sunshine 888
Swedish Prize Taker 892
Swedish Red 877, 881
Swedish Select 891
Swedish Select 867, 888, 890 (2), 892, 896, 899
Swedish Select (C. I. 134) 892
Swedish Select (C. I. 674) 892
Swedish Select (Wisconsin 4) 892

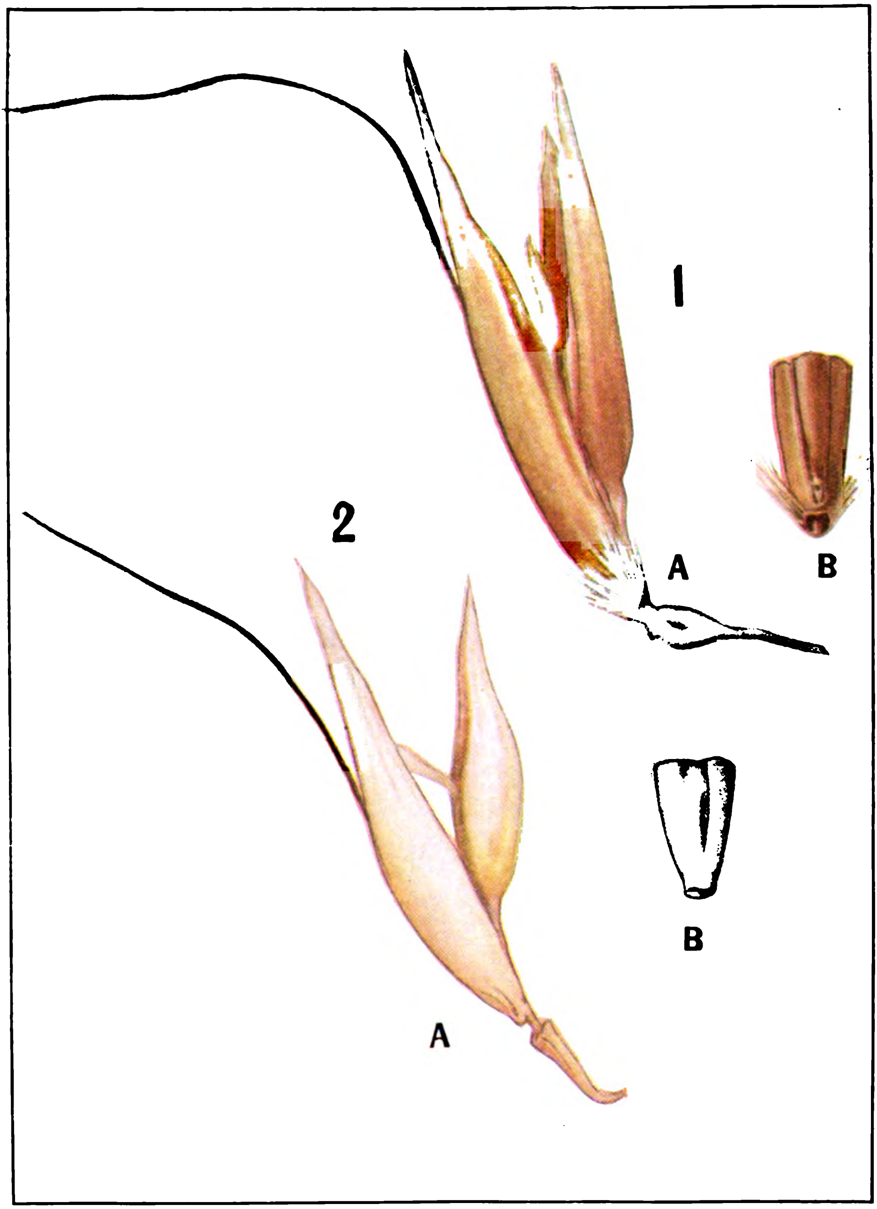
PAGE
Tartarian 877, 900
Tartarian (C. I. 713) 892
Tartar King 898
Tartar King 885, 892 (2), 898
Texas Red 867, 877
Tobolsk 886
Twentieth Century 888, 892
University 6 892
Unnamed 868
Unnamed White 888, 892
Victor 877
Victor 867
Victory 892
Victory (C. I. 560) 892
Virginia Gray Winter 875
Watson 886
Waverly 898
Welcome 886, 888, 890
Welcome (Burpee's) 892
Wernicke's Golden 892
Western Star 892
White 888, 892 (2), 899
White Beauty 892
White Bedford 888
White Belyak 889
White Bonanza 888, 892
White Danish 892
White Egyptian 896
White Main 888
White Maine 867, 892
White Plume 898, 899
White Probsteier 892
White Queen 885, 888, 892
White Russian 892, 900(2)
White Schoenen 875, 892
White Sensation 888
White Tartar 899
White Tartar 886, 890, 892, 899, 900
White Waverly 892
Wideawake 885, 890, 892(2)
Wilcox 898
Wilson's Prolific 888
Winter Turf 874
Winter Turf Selection 875
Wisconsin 4 892
Wisconsin 36 891
Wisconsin Pedigree 1 892
Wisconsin Pedigree 2 892
Wisconsin Pedigree No. 3 887
Wisconsin Pedigree 4 892
Wisconsin Pedigree 5 892
Wisconsin Wonder 892
Yellow 885
Zhelannii 890
Zook 891



TYPES OF SPIKELETS AND BASES OF OUTER GRAINS

1, *Avena sterilis* (wild form). A, the complete spikelet, with its strong awns and hairy lemmas; B, base of the outer grain, showing its distinct articulating surface and the remnant of the rhachilla, which was torn away with the persistent inner grain

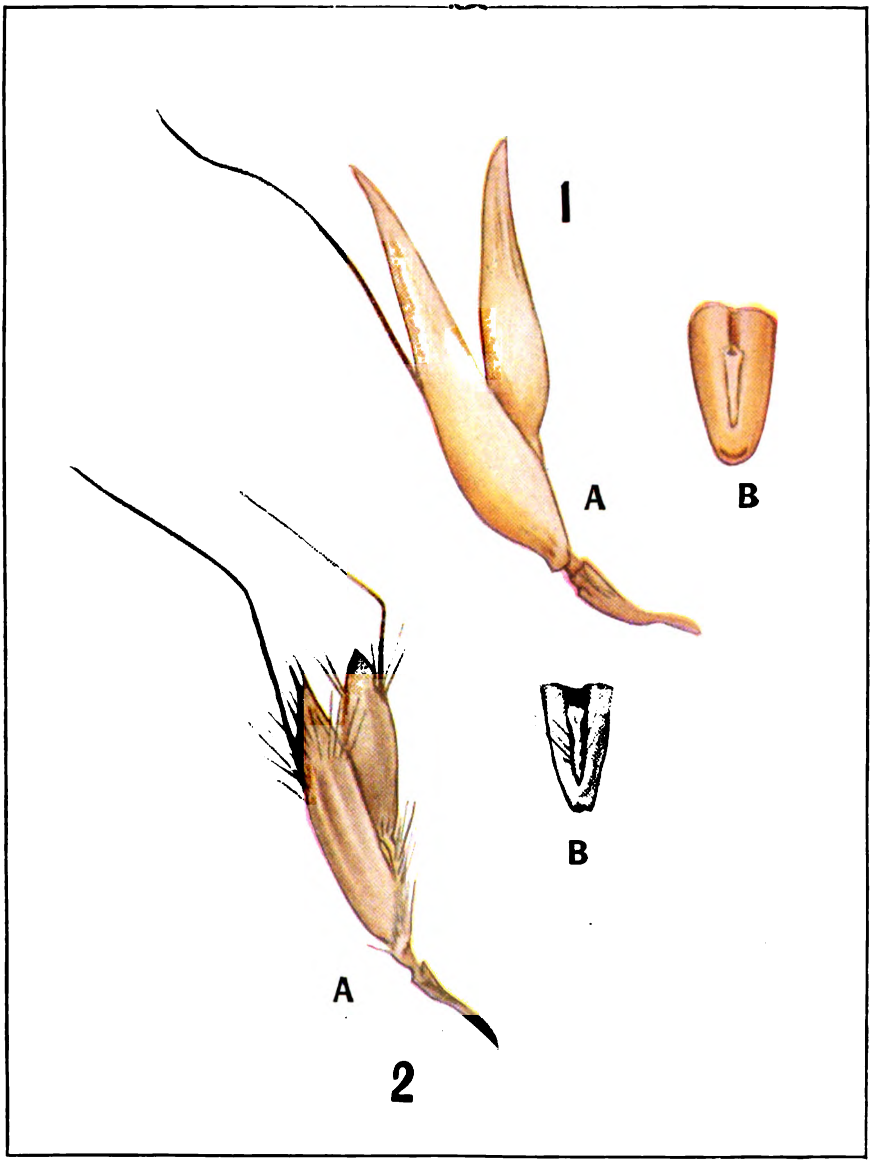
2, *Avena fatua*. A, the complete spikelet, with its strong awns and hairy lemmas; B, base of the outer grain, showing its distinct articulating surface and its rhachilla from which the inner grain easily separates



TYPES OF SPIKELETS AND BASES OF OUTER GRAINS

1, *Avena sterilis* (cultivated form). A, the complete spikelet, with its glabrous lemmas and reduced awns; B, base of the outer grain, showing its evident articulating surface and the remnant of the rhachilla, which was torn away with the persistent inner grain

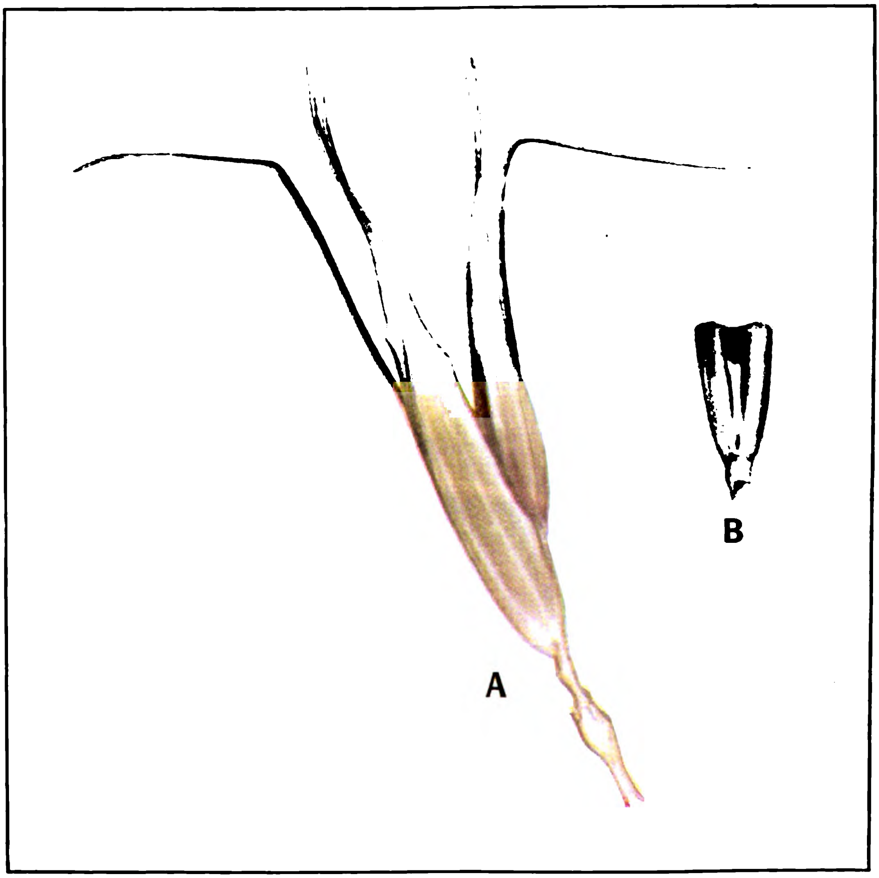
2, *Avena sativa*. A, the complete spikelet, with its glabrous lemmas and reduced awns; **B,** base of the outer grain, showing its non-articulate surface and its rhachilla from which the inner grain easily separates



TYPES OF SPIKELETS AND BASES OF OUTER GRAINS

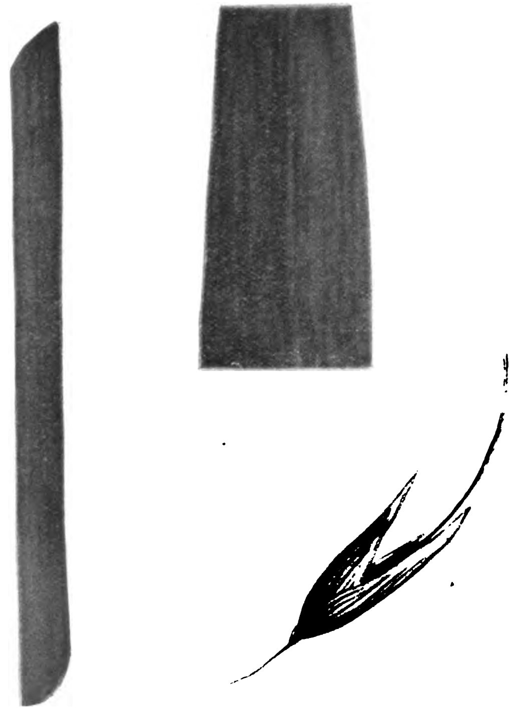
1, *Avena sativa orientalis*. A, the complete spikelet, with its glabrous lemmas and reduced awns; B, base of the outer grain, showing its non-articulate surface and its rhachilla from which the inner grain easily separates

2, *Avena brevis*. A, the complete spikelet, showing toothed projections of the lemma; B, base of the outer grain, showing its non-articulate surface and its rhachilla from which the inner grain easily separates

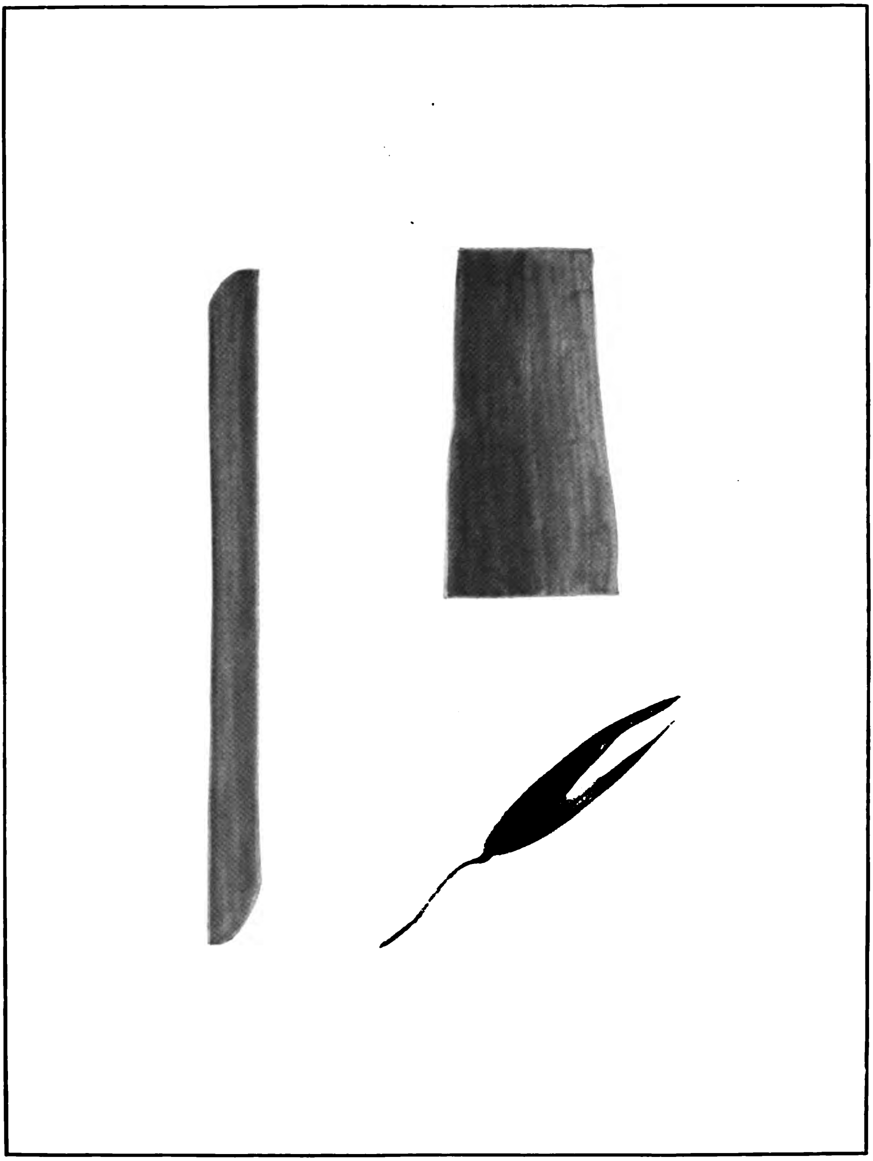


SPIKELET AND BASE OF OUTER GRAIN OF AVENA STRIGOSA

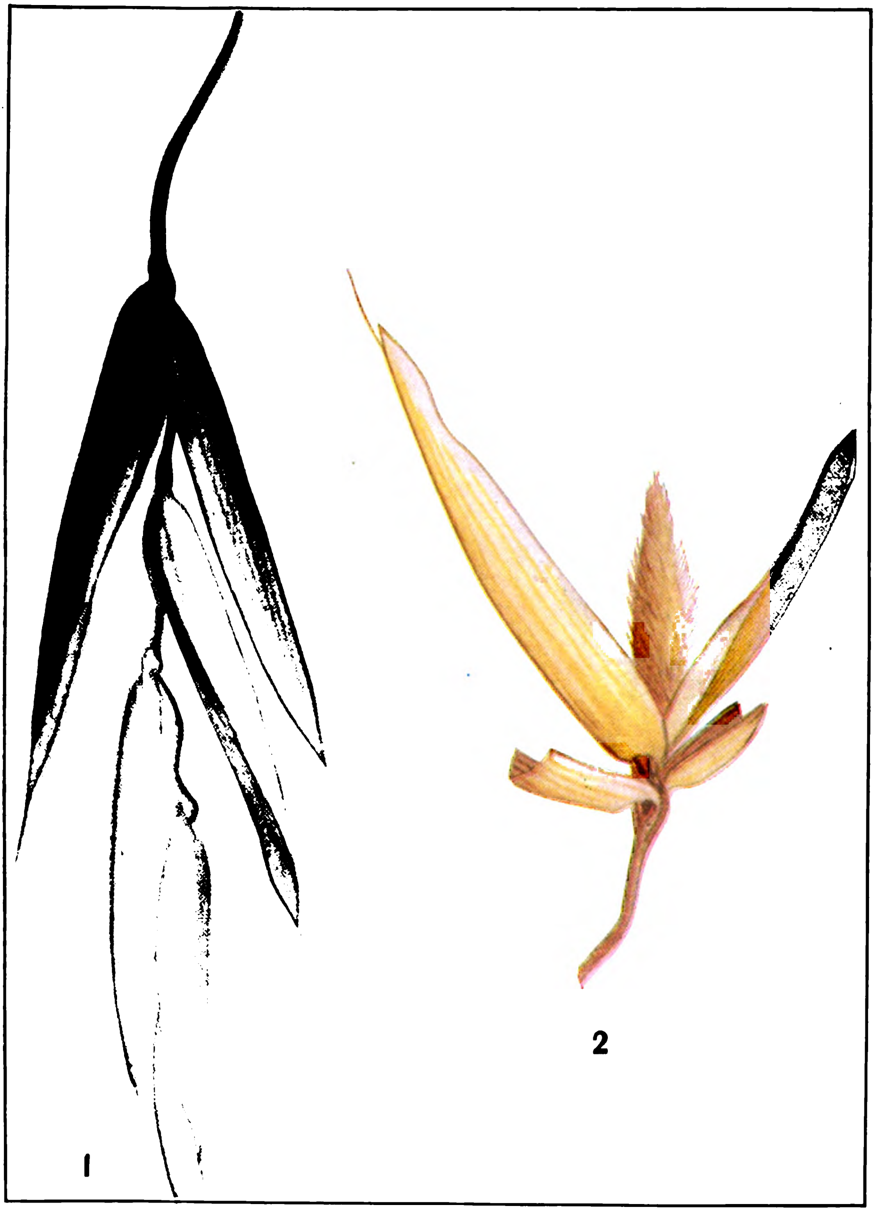
A, the complete spikelet, showing the awn-points of the lemma; B, base of the outer grain, showing its non-articulate surface and its rhachilla from which the inner grain easily separates



A COLOR TYPE OF SHEATHS, LEAVES, AND GLUMES OF THE IMMATURE PLANT

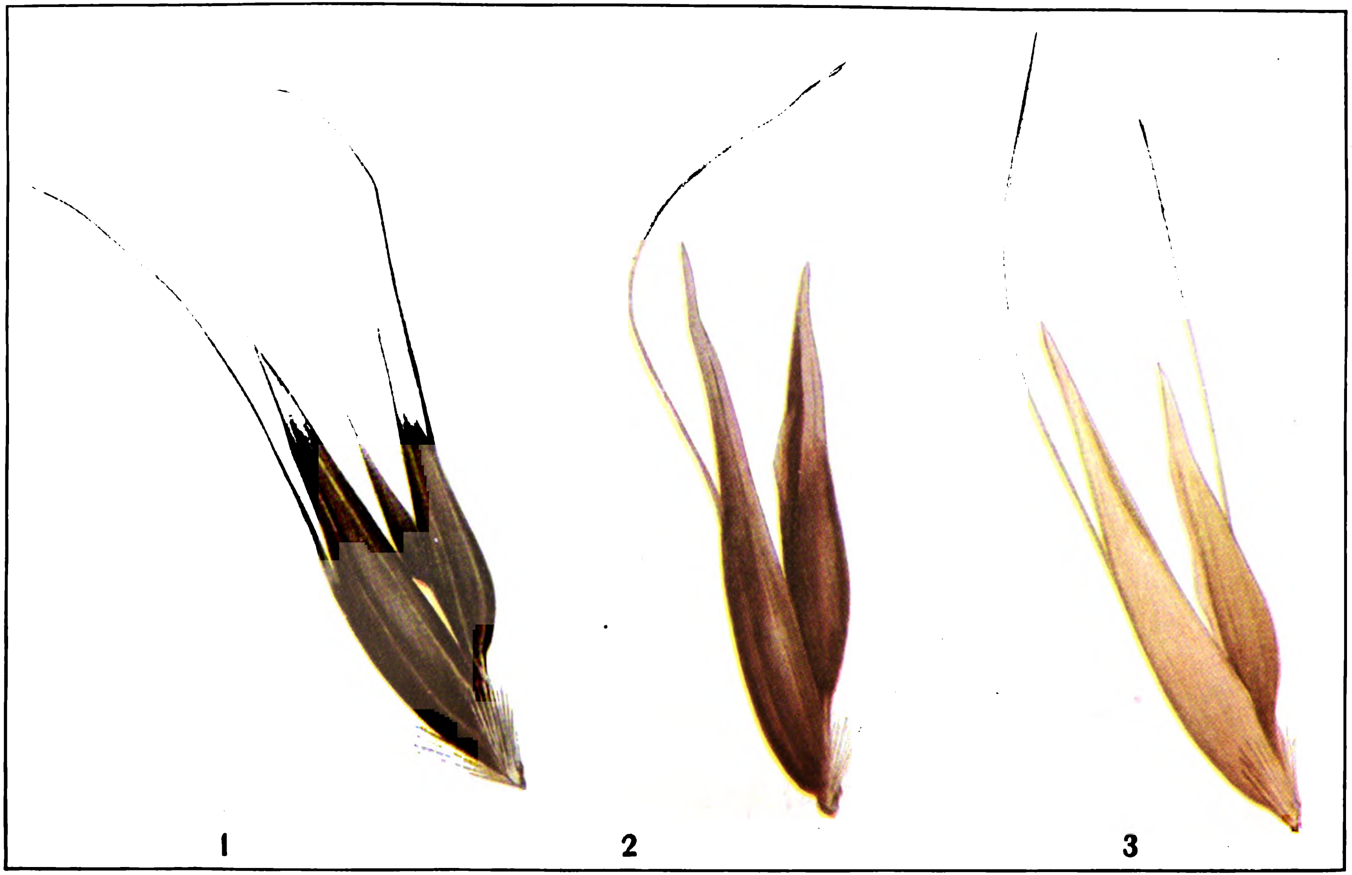


A COLOR TYPE OF SHEATHS, LEAVES, AND GLUMES OF THE IMMATURE PLANT



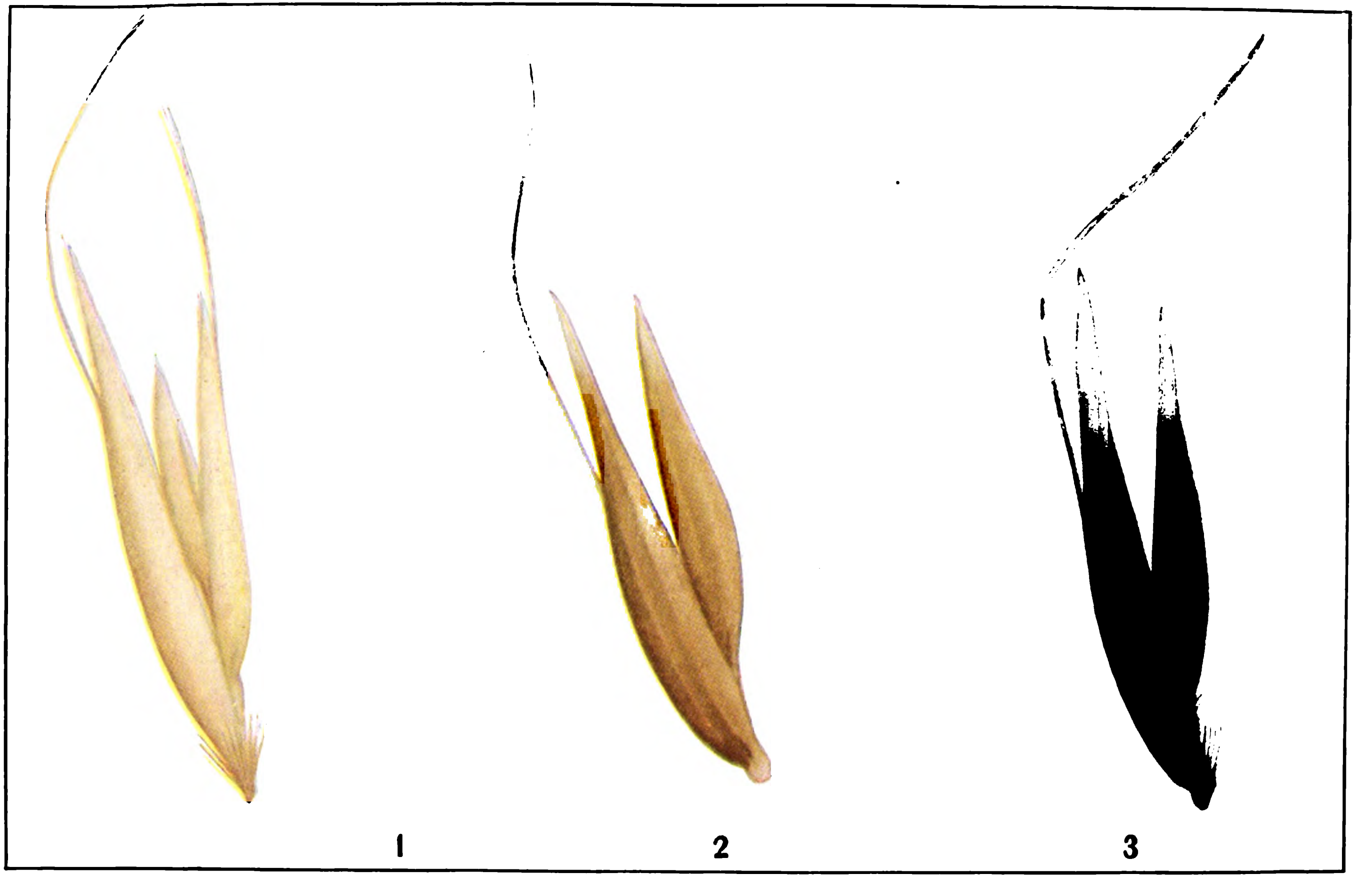
AVENA NUDA

1, Complete spikelet, with elongate rhachillas; 2, a single grain (the lower) dissected to show the kernel and the loosely enveloping lemma and palea

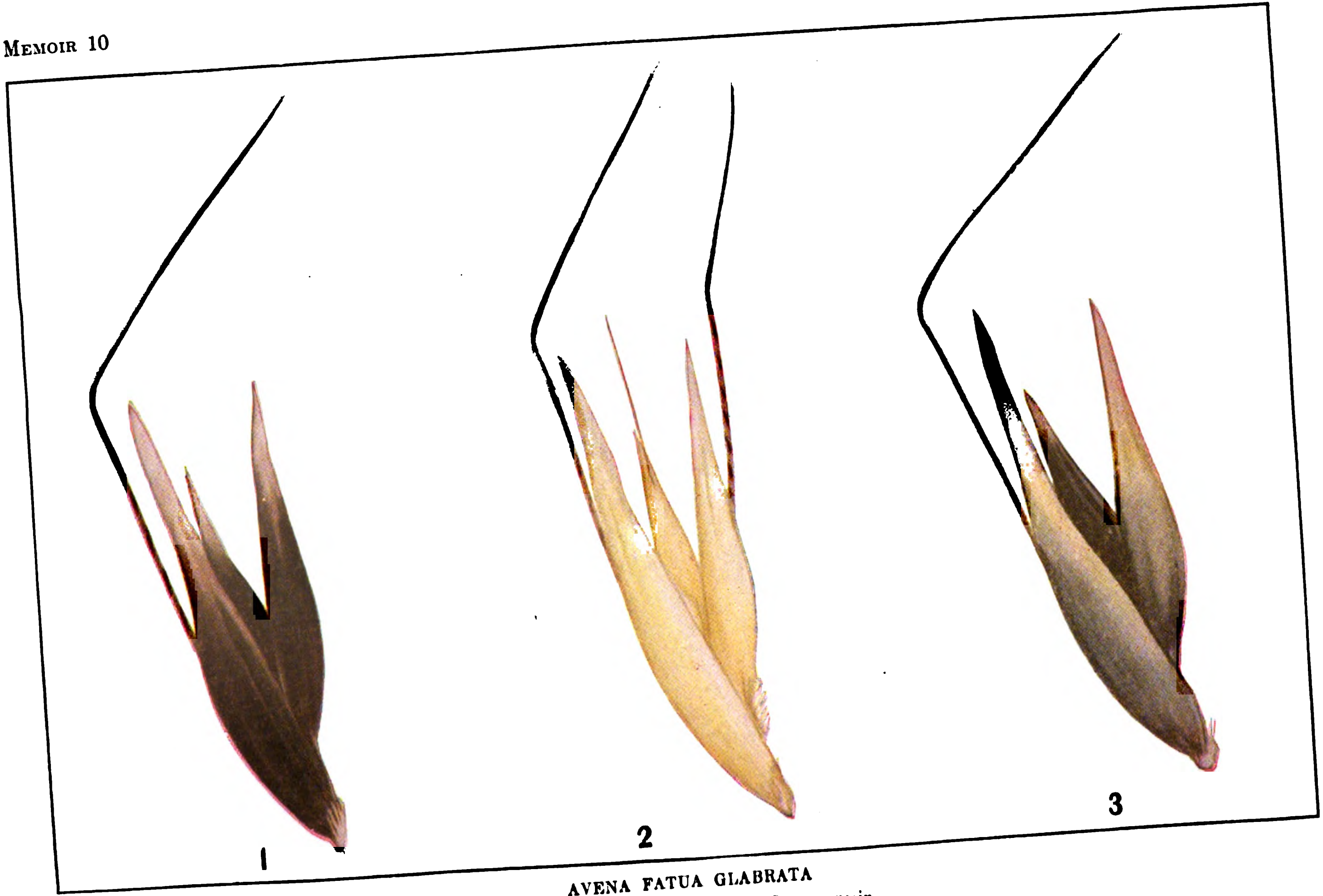


VARIETIES OF AVENA STERILIS

1, *Avena sterilis nigra;* 2, Sterilis Selection; 3, Red Rustproof

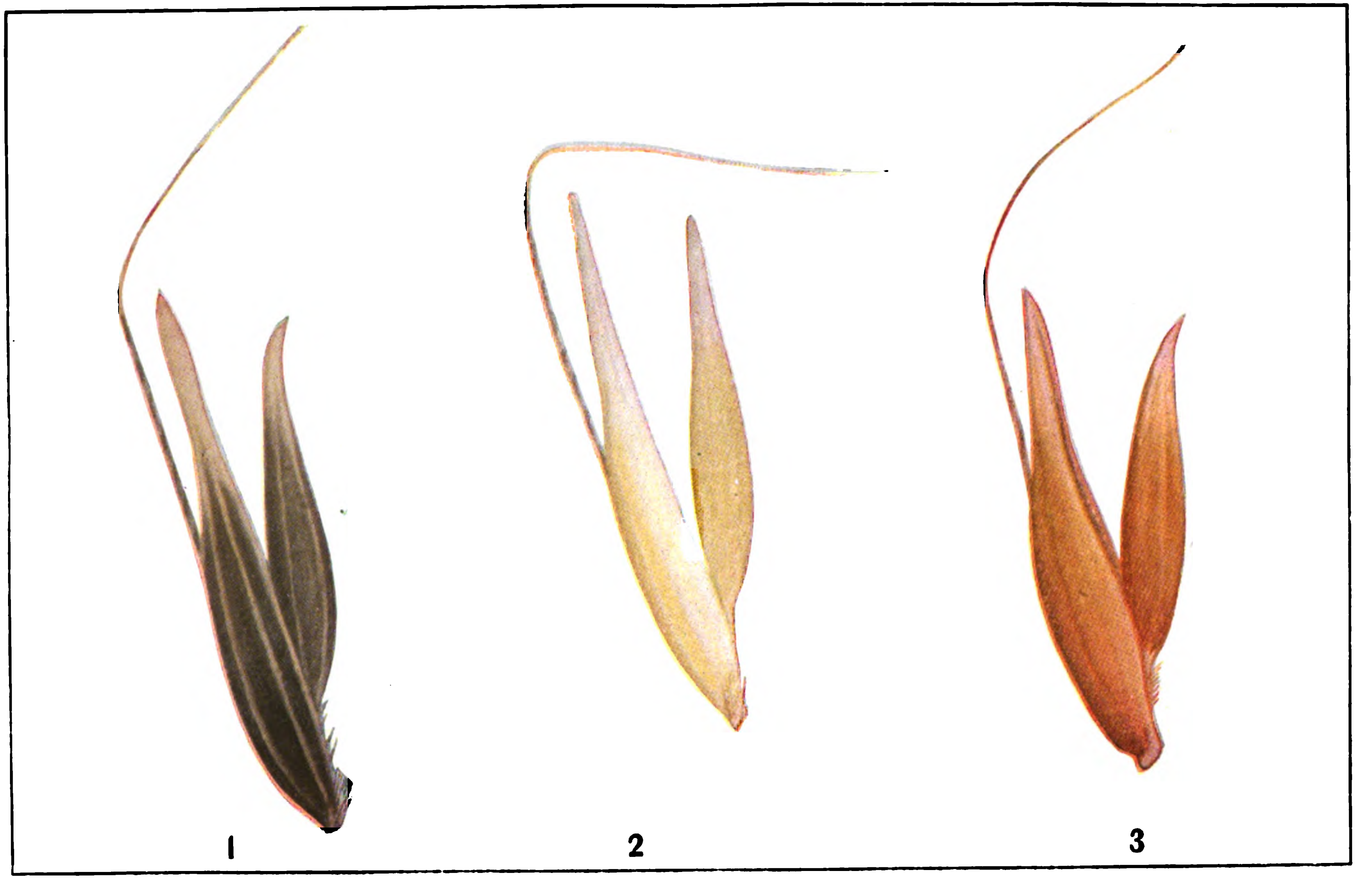


VARIETIES OF AVENA STERILIS AND AVENA SATIVA
1, Burt (*A. sterilis*); 2, King (*A. sterilis*); 3, C. I. 606 (*A. sativa*)

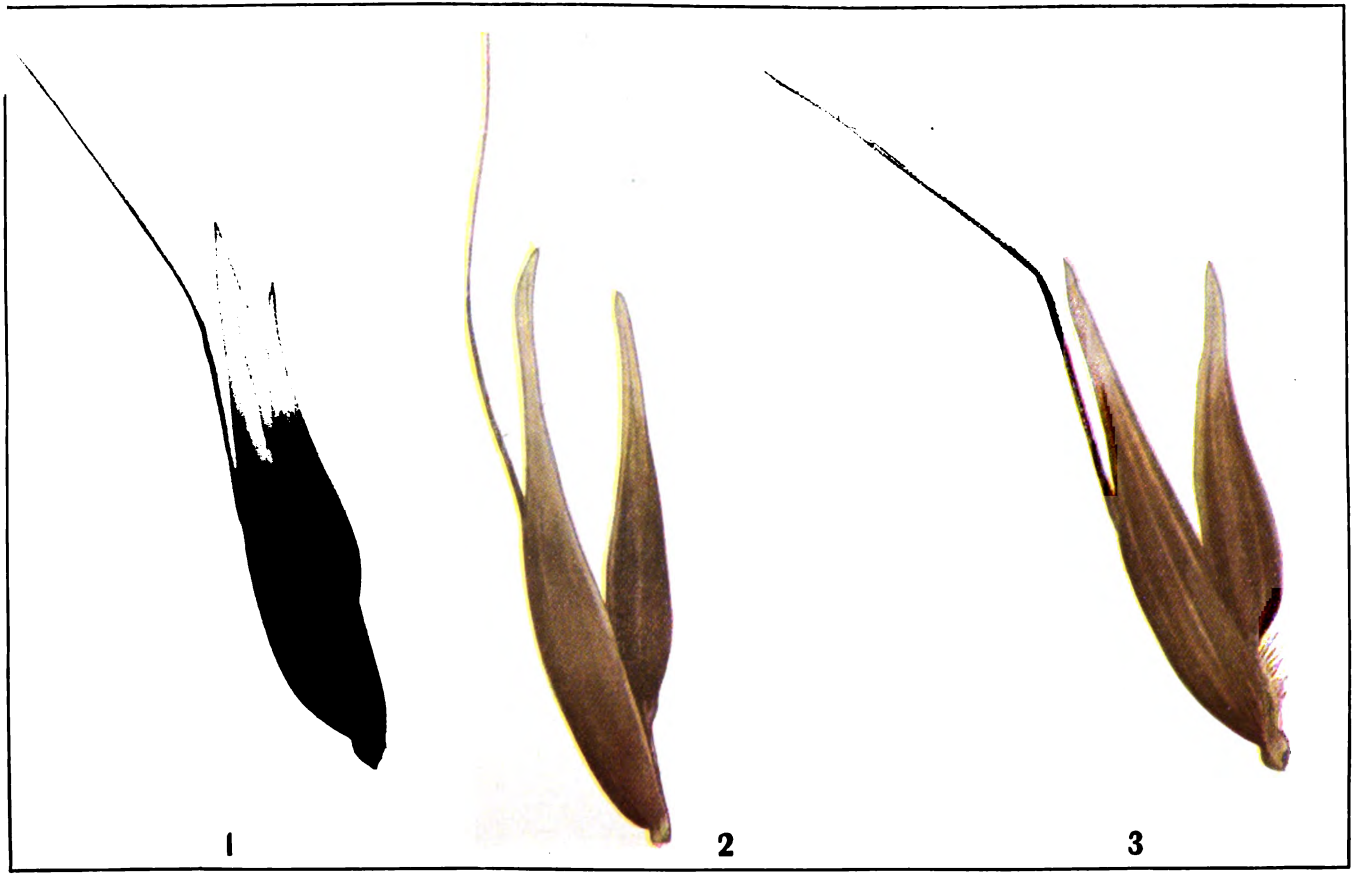


AVENA FATUA GLABRATA

1, Black grain; 2, yellow grain; 3, gray grain

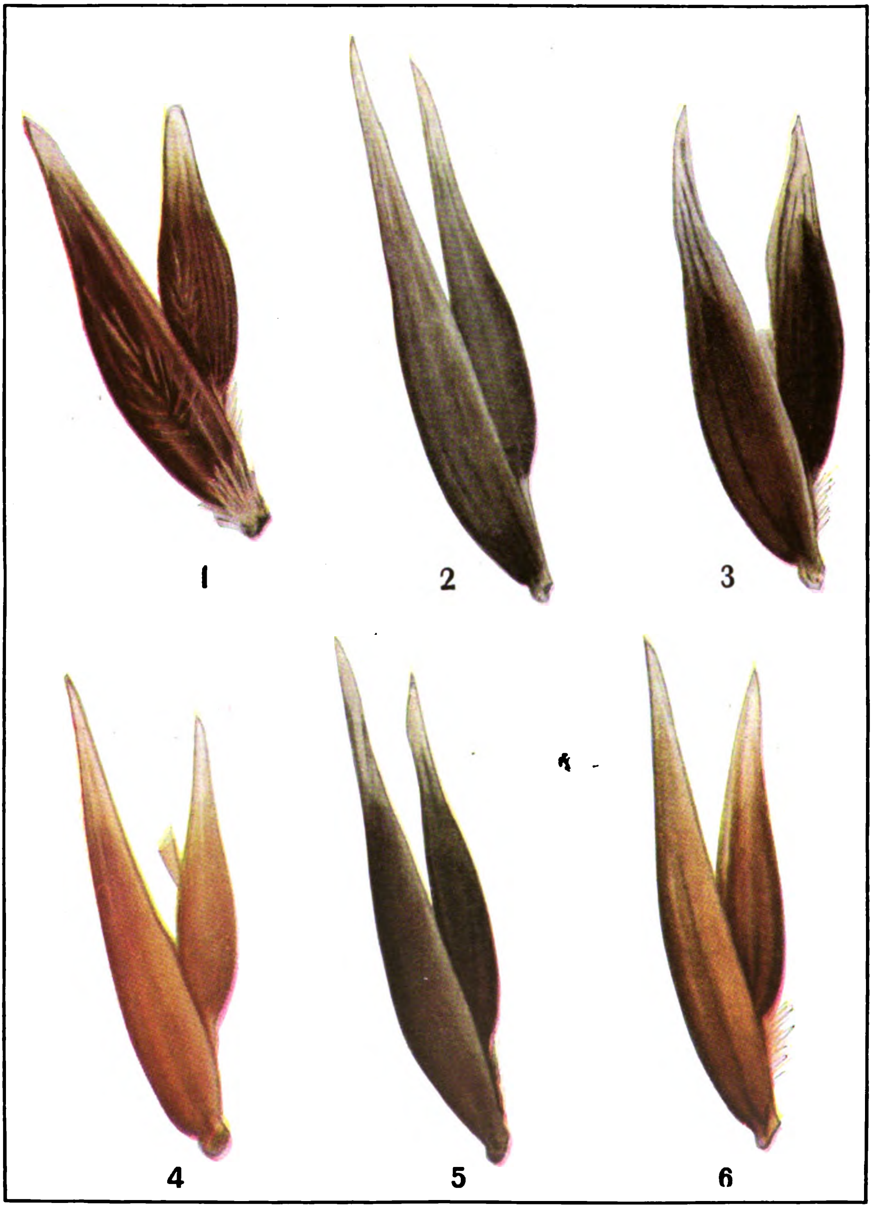


VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA
1, Winter Turf; 2, Culberson; 3, Black Norway



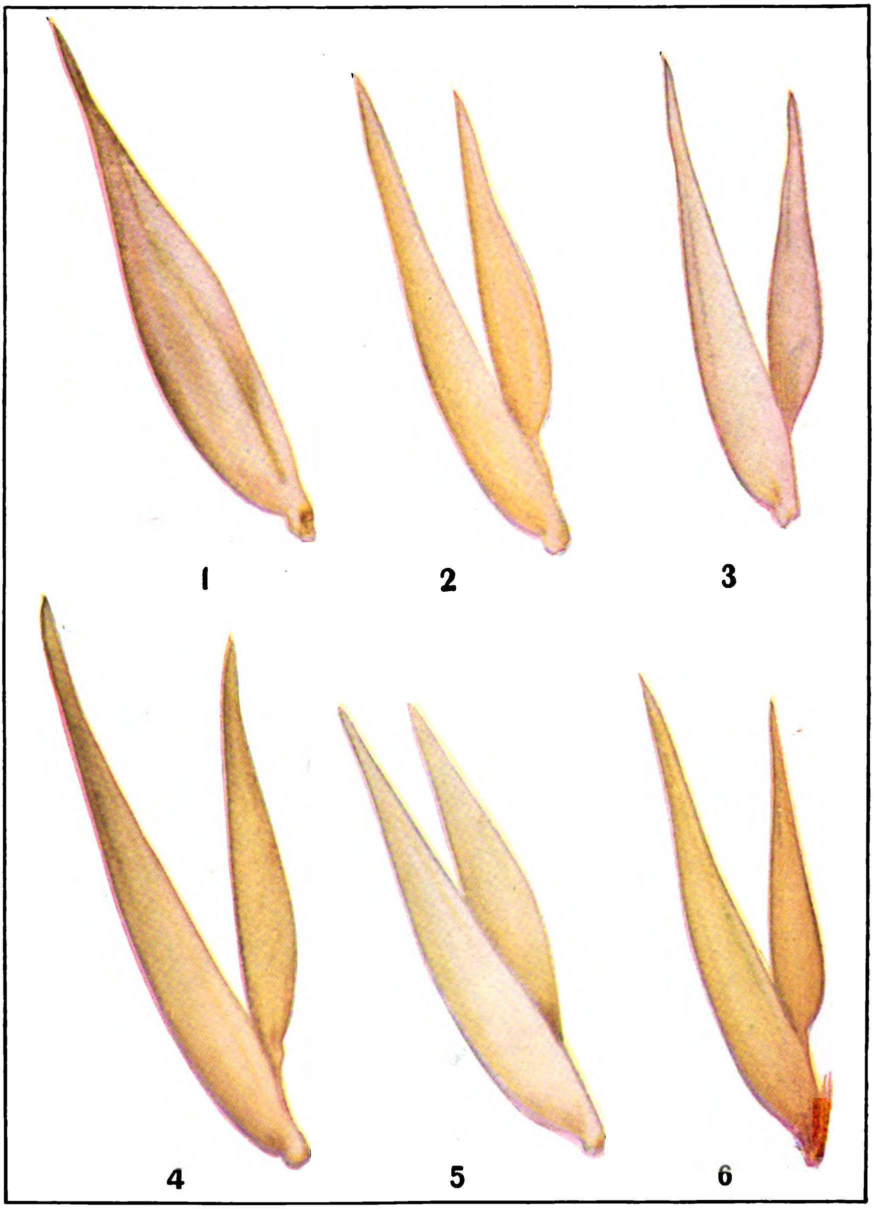
VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA

1, Victor; 2, Monarch; 3, Black Mesdag. In the case of Monarch, it has been impossible to reproduce the characteristic glaucous coating, or bloom, of the grain

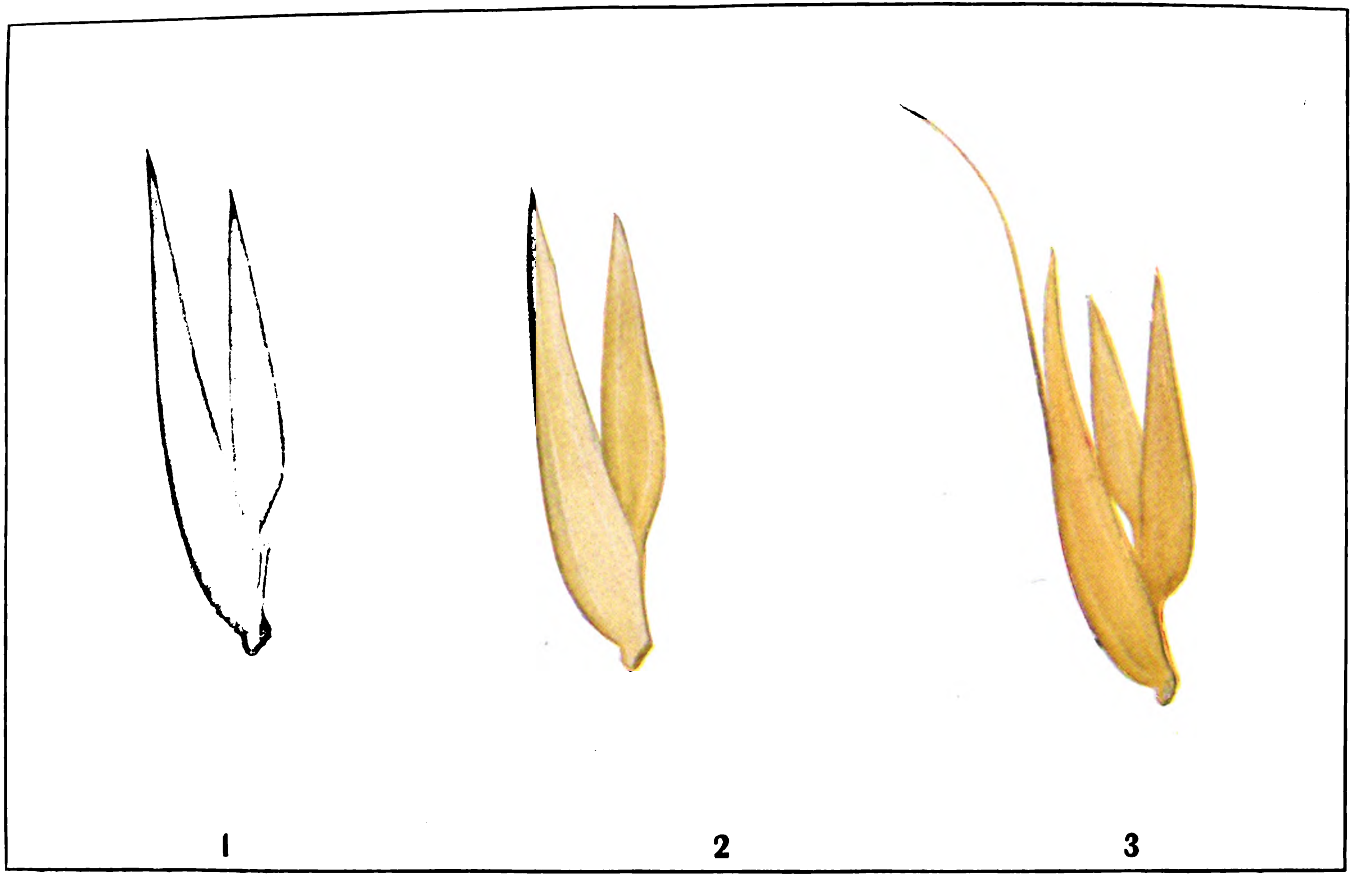


VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA

1. Black Diamond; 2. Monarch Selection; 3. Joannette; 4. C. I. 620; 5. Old Island Black; 6. North Finnish. In the case of Monarch Selection, it has been impossible to reproduce the characteristic glaucous coating, or bloom, of the grain

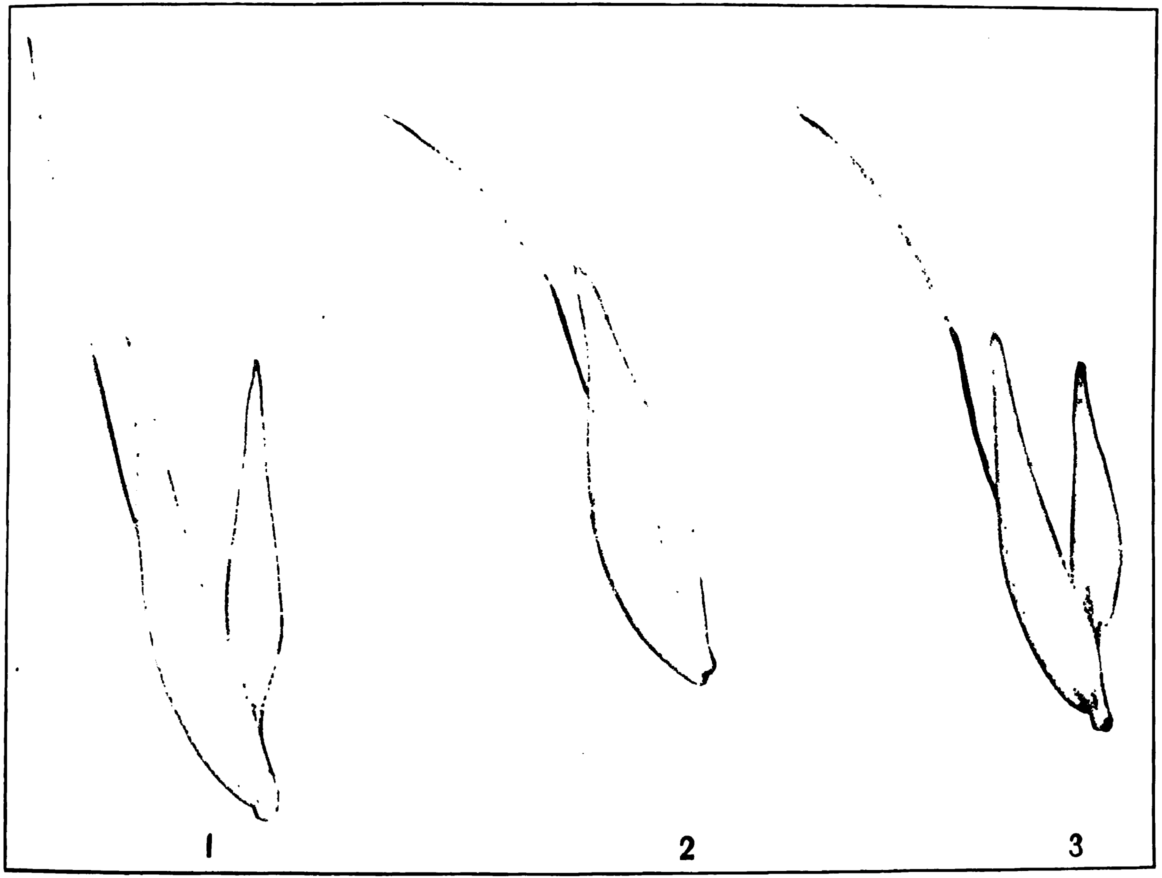


VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA
1, Garton 473 and Garton 691; 2, Kherson; 3, Sixty-Day; 4, Sixty-Day Selection; 5, Early Champion; 6, Awnless Probsteier



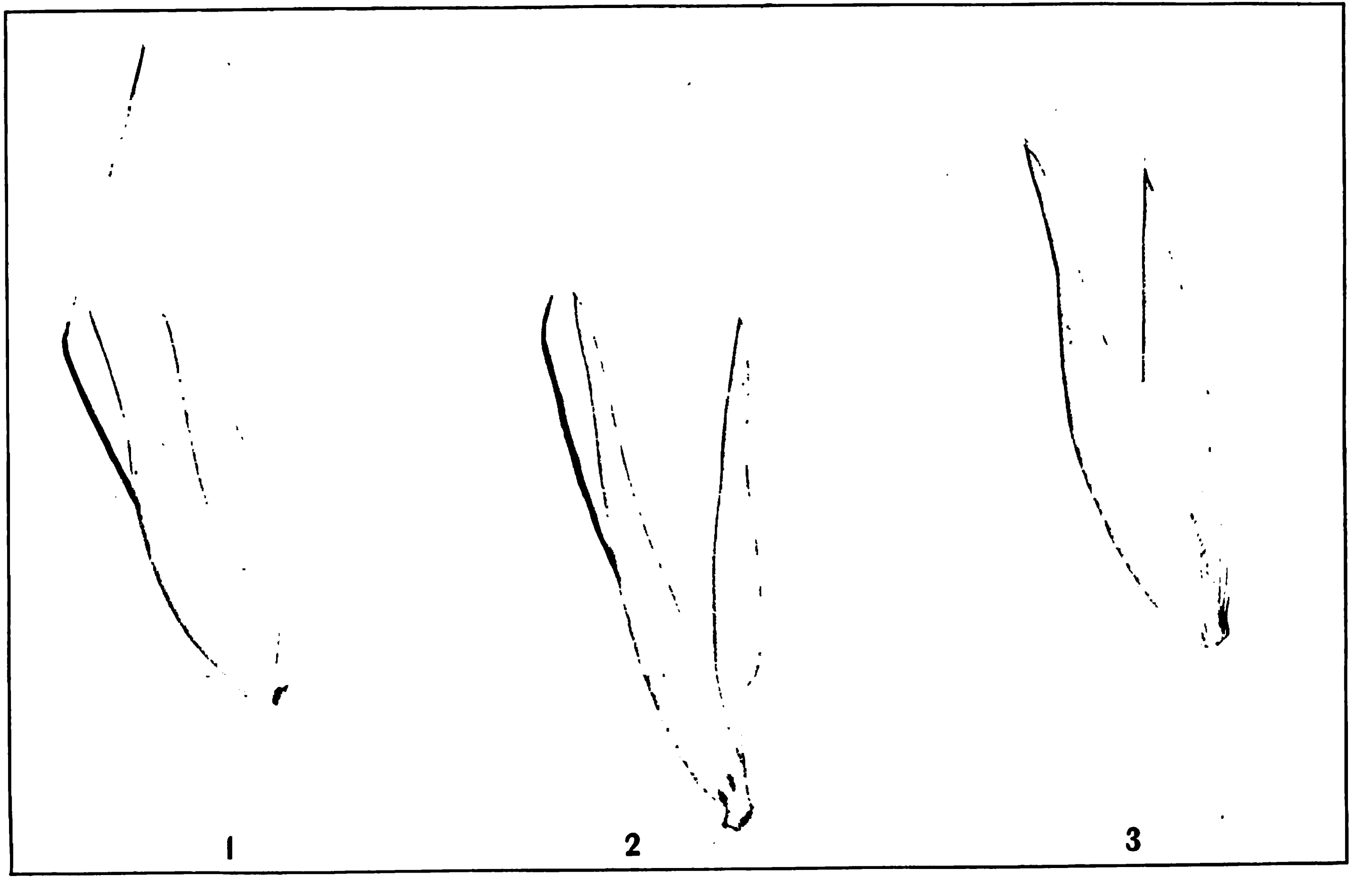
VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA

1, Japan Selection; 2, Golden Drop; 3, C. I. 603

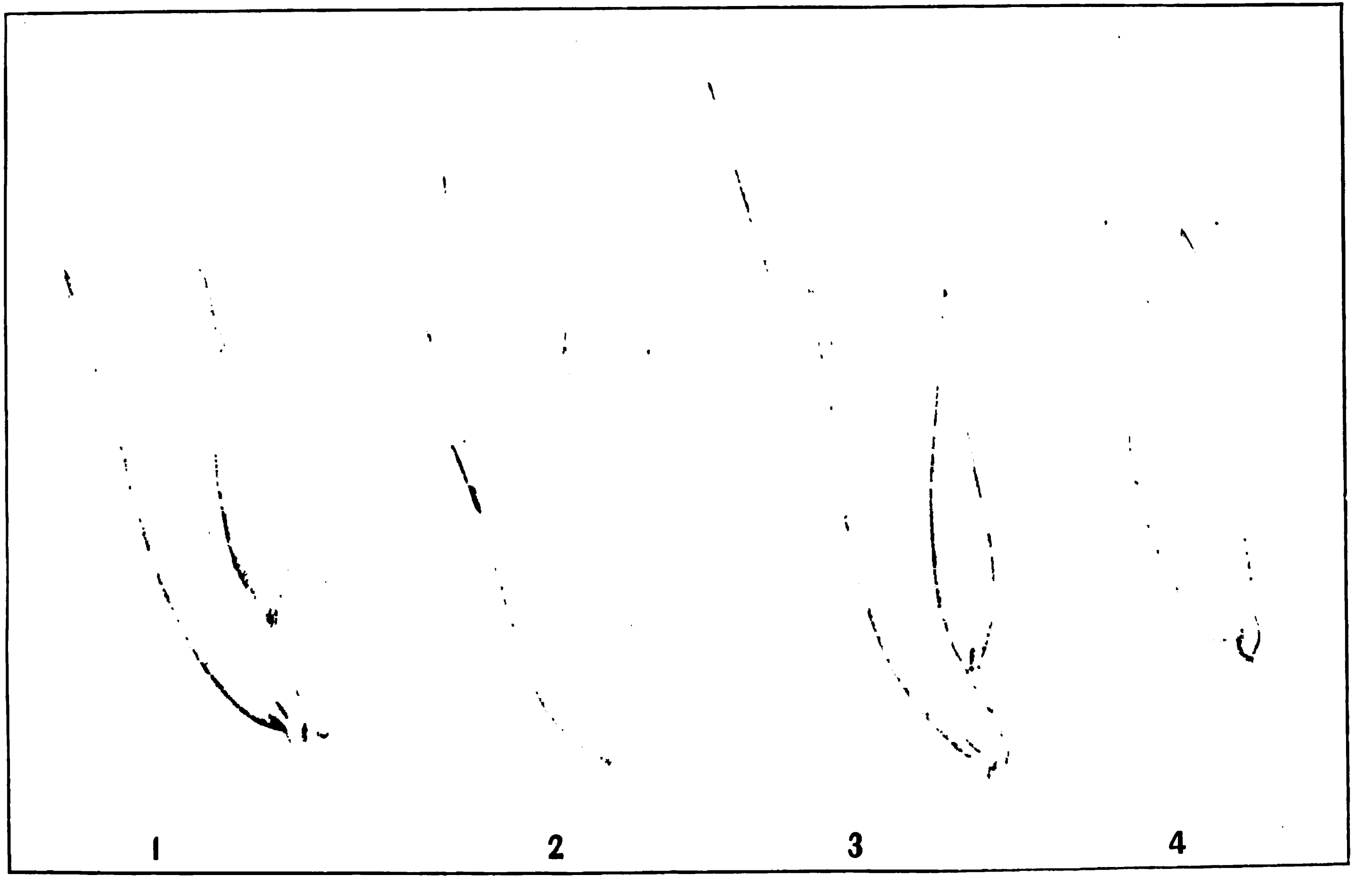


VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA

1. Green Russian: 2. Canadian: 3. Tobolsk

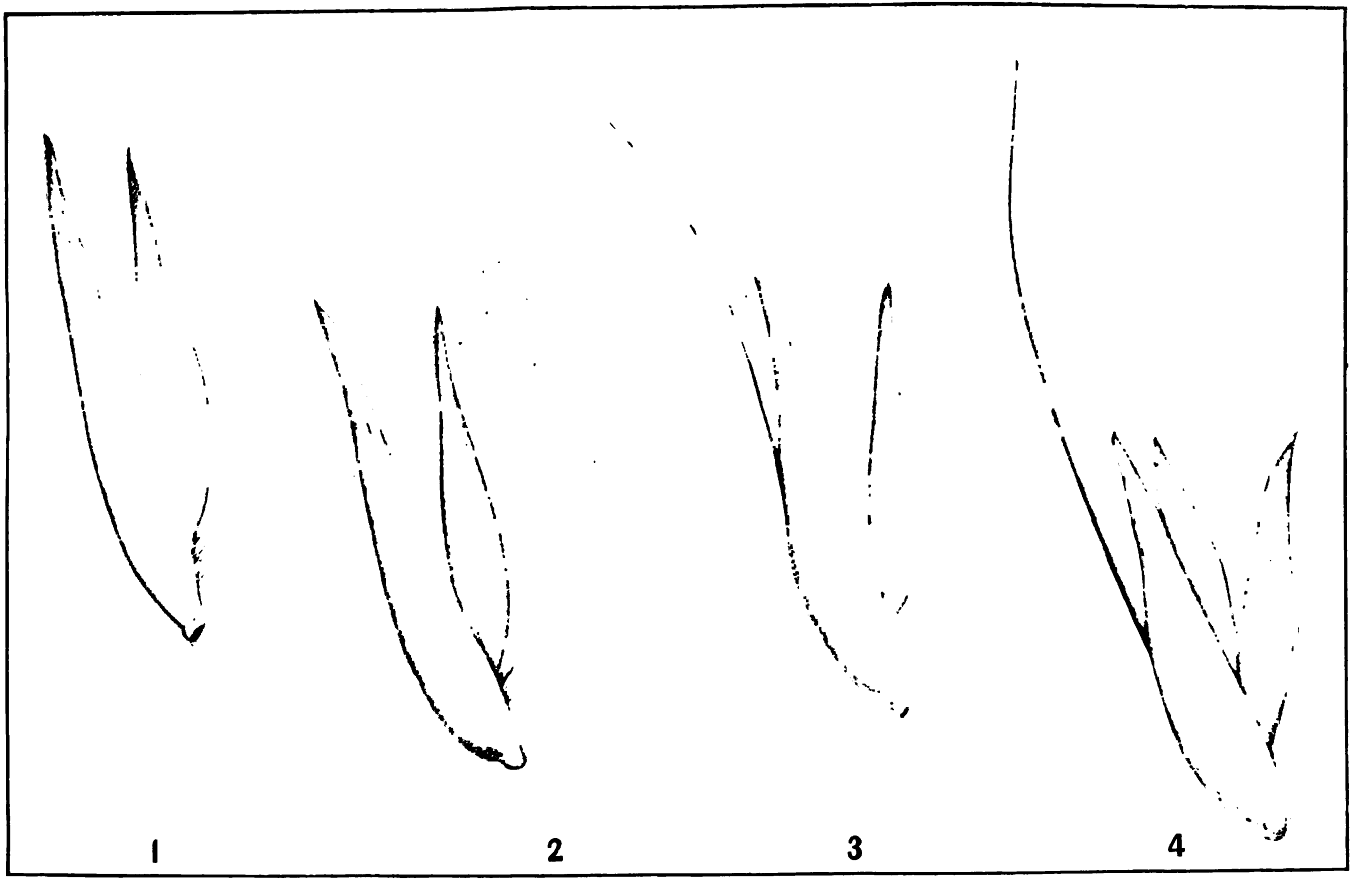


VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA
1, Silvermine Selection; 2, C. I. 602; 3, Early Dakota



VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA

1, Irish Victor; 2, Danish Island; 3, Early Gothland; 4, Belyak

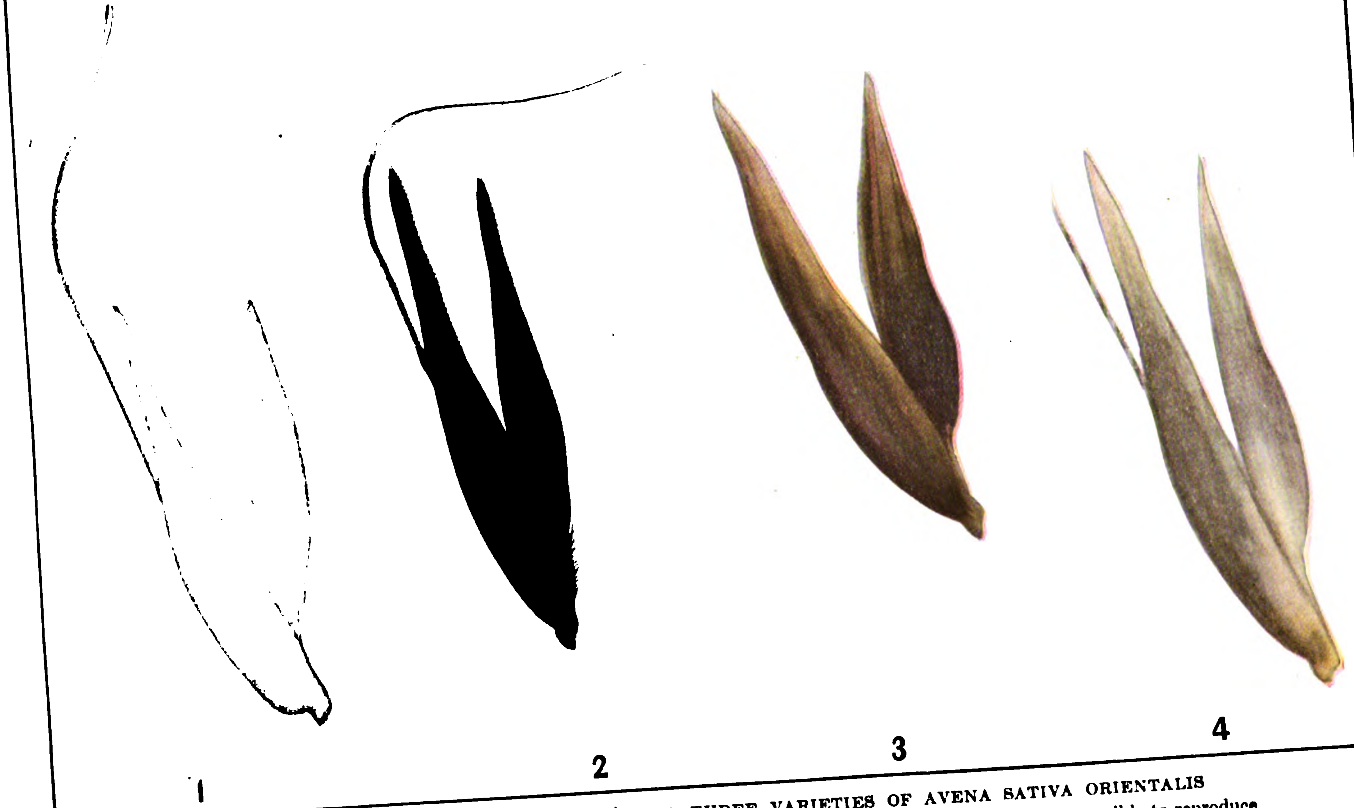


VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA

1, Silvermine; 2, Scottish Chief; 3, June; 4, Swedish Select

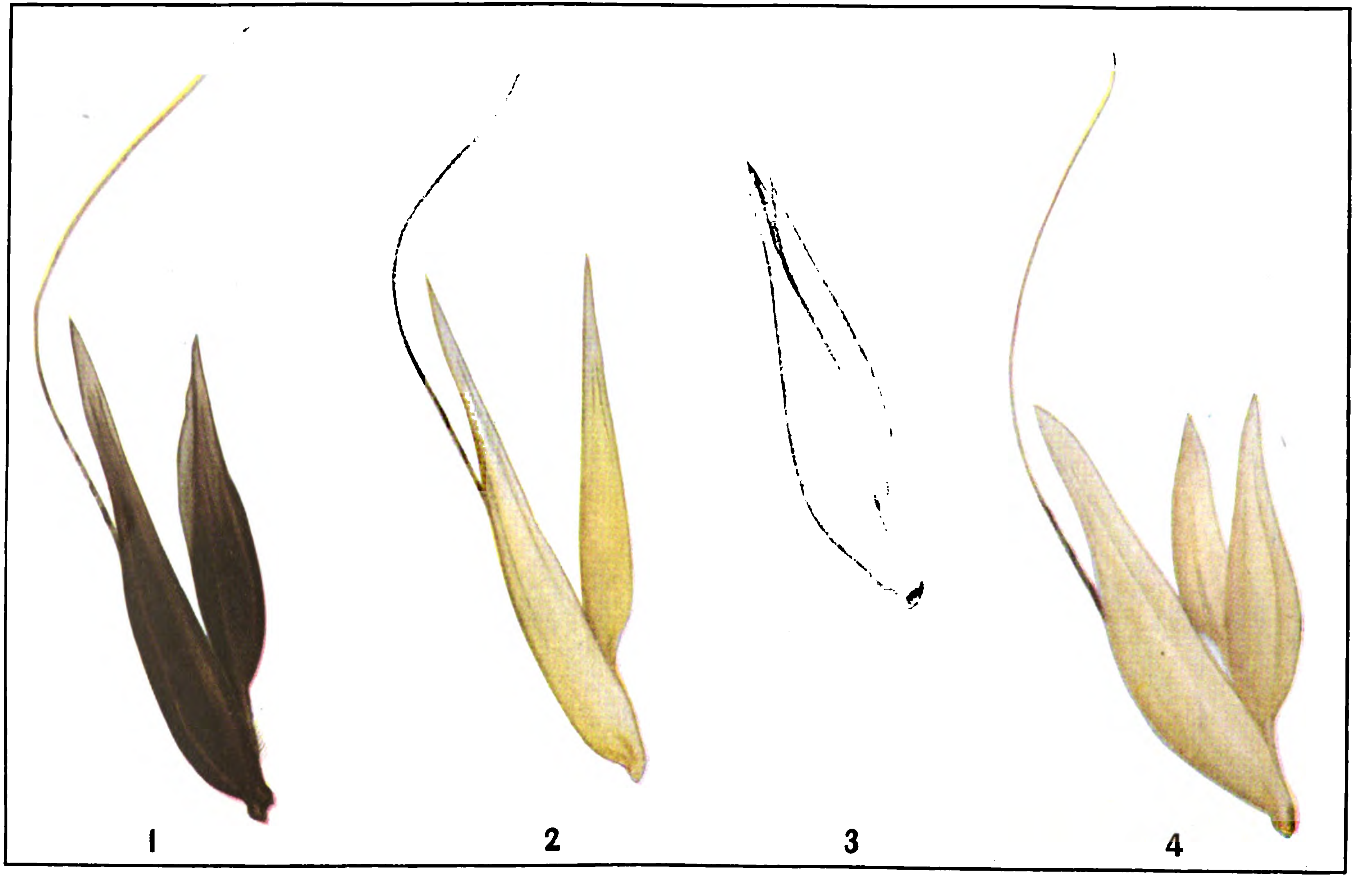
VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS

1, Black Tartarian; 2, Golden Giant; 3, Sparrowbill; 4, Garton 585



VARIETY LINCOLN (AVENA SATIVA), AND THREE VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS

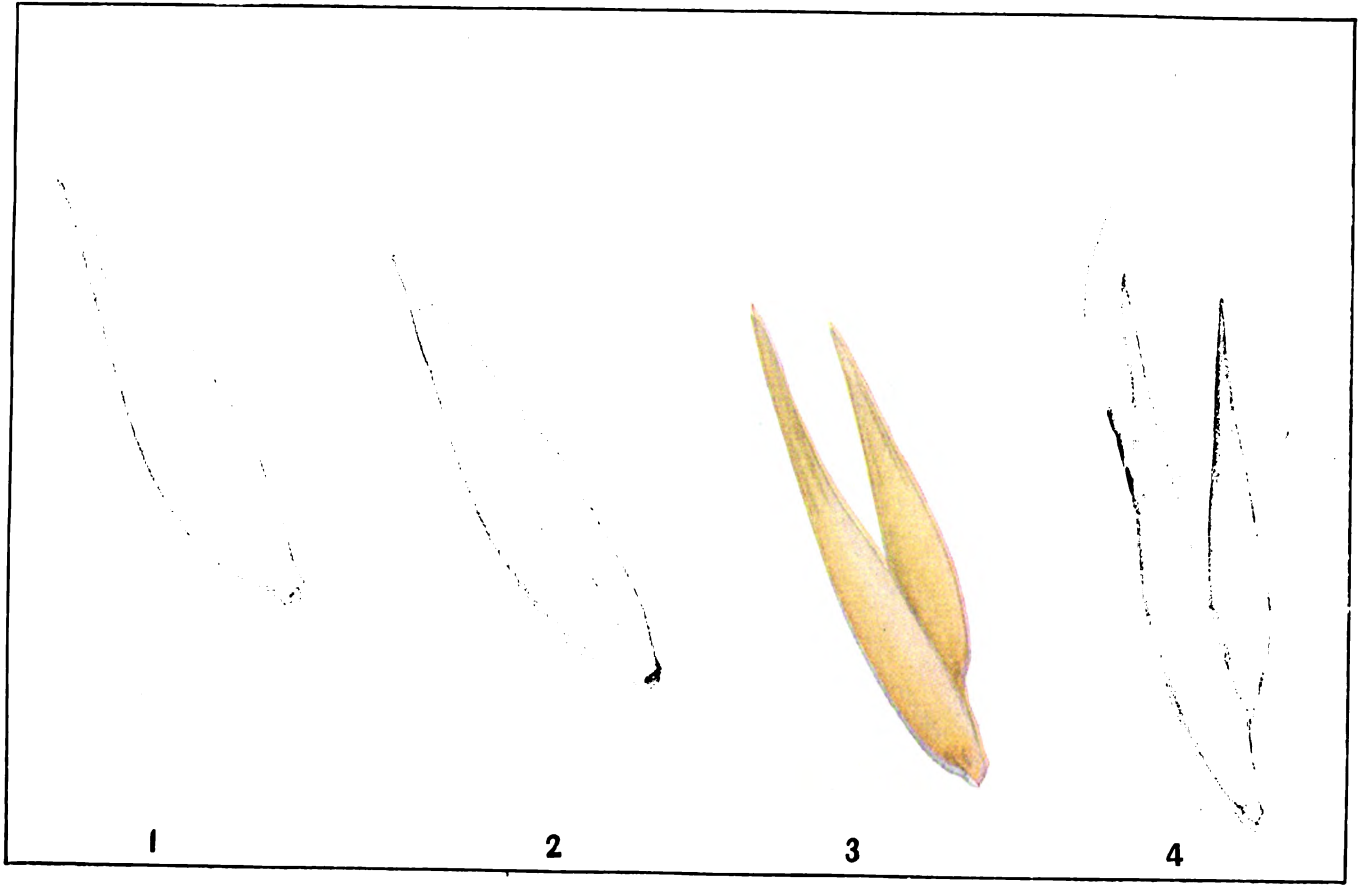
1, Lincoln; 2, Garton 748; 3, Garton 784; 4, Garton Gray. In the case of Garton 784, it has been impossible to reproduce the characteristic glaucous coating, or bloom, of the grain



VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS

1, Black Tartarian; 2, Golden Giant; 3, Sparrowbill; 4, Garton 585

PLATE XXII



VARIETIES OF AVENA SATIVA ORIENTALIS

1, Storm King; 2, Tartar King; 3, White Tartar; 4, Green Mountain

JUNE, 1917 MEMOIR 11

CORNELL UNIVERSITY
AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

BIOLOGY OF THE MEMBRACIDAE OF THE CAYUGA LAKE BASIN

W. D. FUNKHOUSER

ITHACA, NEW YORK
PUBLISHED BY THE UNIVERSITY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION

EXPERIMENTING STAFF

ALBERT R. MANN, B.S.A., A.M., Acting Director.
HENRY H. WING, M.S. in Agr., Animal Husbandry.
T. LYTTLETON LYON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
JOHN L. STONE, B.Agr., Farm Practice.
JAMES E. RICE, B.S.A., Poultry Husbandry.
GEORGE W. CAVANAUGH, B.S., Agricultural Chemistry.
HERBERT H. WHETZEL, M.A., Plant Pathology.
ELMER O. FIPPIN, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
G. F. WARREN, Ph.D., Farm Management.
WILLIAM A. STOCKING, Jr., M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
WILFORD M. WILSON, M.D., Meteorology.
RALPH S. HOSMER, B.A.S., M.F., Forestry.
JAMES G. NEEDHAM, Ph.D., Entomology and Limnology.
ROLLINS A. EMERSON, D.Sc., Plant Breeding.
HARRY H. LOVE, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
ARTHUR W. GILBERT, Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
DONALD REDDICK, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EDWARD G. MONTGOMERY, M.A., Farm Crops.
WILLIAM A. RILEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
MERRITT W. HARPER, M.S., Animal Husbandry.
JAMES A. BIZZELL, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
GLENN W. HERRICK, B.S.A., Economic Entomology.
HOWARD W. RILEY, M.E., Farm Mechanics.
CYRUS R. CROSBY, A.B., Entomology.
HAROLD E. ROSS, M.S.A., Dairy Industry.
KARL McK. WIEGAND, Ph.D., Botany.
EDWARD A. WHITE, B.S., Floriculture.
WILLIAM H. CHANDLER, Ph.D., Pomology.
ELMER S. SAVAGE, M.S.A., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LEWIS KNUDSON, Ph.D., Plant Physiology.
KENNETH C. LIVERMORE, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ALVIN C. BEAL, Ph.D., Floriculture.
MORTIER F. BARRUS, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
CLYDE H. MYERS, M.S., Ph.D., Plant Breeding.
GEORGE W. TAILBY, Jr., B.S.A., Superintendent of Livestock.
EDWARD S. GUTHRIE, M.S. in Agr., Ph.D., Dairy Industry.
JAMES C. BRADLEY, Ph.D., Entomology.
PAUL WORK, B.S., A.B., Vegetable Gardening.
JOHN BENTLEY, Jr., B.S., M.F., Forestry.
VERN B. STEWART, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
EARL W. BENJAMIN, Ph.D., Poultry Husbandry.
JAMES K. WILSON, Ph.D., Soil Technology.
EMMONS W. LELAND, B.S.A., Soil Technology.
CHARLES T. GREGORY, Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
WALTER W. FISK, M.S. in Agr., Dairy Industry.
ARTHUR L. THOMPSON, Ph.D., Farm Management.
ROBERT MATHESON, Ph.D., Entomology.
MORTIMER D. LEONARD, B.S., Entomology.
FRANK E. RICE, Ph.D., Agricultural Chemistry.
IVAN C. JAGGER, M.S. in Agr., Plant Pathology (In cooperation with Rochester University)
WILLIAM I. MYERS, B.S., Farm Management.
LEW E. HARVEY, B.S., Farm Management.
LEONARD A. MAYNARD, A.B., Ph.D., Animal Husbandry.
LOUIS M. MASSEY, A.B., Ph.D., Plant Pathology.
BRISTOW ADAMS, B.A., Editor.
LELA G. GROSS, Assistant Editor.

The regular bulletins of the Station are sent free on request to residents of New York State.

CONTENTS

PAGE
Geography and physiography of the Cayuga Lake Basin 920
Climatology of the basin 925
The basin as a floral and a faunal area 930
Check list of genera and species 932
Distribution and range of the family 934
Collections 940
Comparison of Cayuga Lake Basin with the State as a whole 942
Theories of origin and paths of migration 942
Keys to genera and species of the Cayuga Lake Basin, with technical descriptions and life histories 945
  Subfamily Centrotinae 947
    The genus Microcentrus Stål 947
  Subfamily Membracinae 950
    The genus Campylenchia Stål 950
    The genus Enchenopa A. & S. 952
  Subfamily Smiliinae 955
    The genus Ceresa A. & S. 955
    The genus Stictocephala Stål 971
    The genus Acutalis Fairmaire 974
    The genus Micrutalis Fowler 975
    The genus Carynota Fitch 977
    The genus Thelia A. & S. 981
    The genus Glossonotus Butler 983
    The genus Heliria Stål 986
    The genus Telamona Fitch 987
    The genus Archasia Stål 1003
    The genus Smilia Germar 1004
    The genus Cyrtolobus Goding 1005
      The subgenus Atymna Stål 1015
      The subgenus Xantholobus Van Duzee 1018
    The genus Ophiderma Fairmaire 1022
    The genus Vanduzea Goding 1025
    The genus Entylia Germar 1027
    The genus Publilia Stål 1029
  Other species 1031
Taxonomic position of Homoptera 1031
External anatomy of the Membracidae 1033
  Technique 1034
  Terminology 1035
  General structure 1035
  The head 1038
  The thorax 1048
  The prothorax 1049
  The mesothorax 1053
  The metathorax 1058
  The wings 1064
  The legs 1068
  The abdomen 1081

PAGE
Internal anatomy of the Membracidae 1101
Histology 1102
Life history 1103
    Appearance in spring 1103
    Mating 1104
    Oviposition 1105
    Duration of egg stage 1112
    Dates of hatching 1112
    Mechanics of hatching 1112
    Instars 1113
    Ecdysis 1117
    Relation of nymphs and adults to hosts 1120
    Broods 1120
    Wintering over 1121
    Life cycle 1122
Localities for collecting 1122
Hosts 1124
    Host — Species 1125
    Species — Host 1127
Migrations 1129
Habits 1130
Attendance by ants 1137
Communal life 1142
Ecology 1148
Enemies 1153
    Parasites 1153
    Birds 1154
    Other enemies 1155
Protection 1156
Economic importance 1159
Control 1162
Breeding experiments 1163
Methods of collecting 1166
Methods of preserving 1169
Bibliography 1171

BIOLOGY OF THE MEMBRACIDAE OF THE CAYUGA LAKE BASIN

BIOLOGY OF THE MEMBRACIDAE OF THE CAYUGA LAKE BASIN

W. D. FUNKHOUSER

The purpose of this study is to summarize the work of seven years, in field and laboratory, on the biology of the species of Membracidae found in the Cayuga Lake Basin and particularly in the vicinity of Ithaca, New York. Sixty-one species of this family of Homoptera have been reported from the basin. A few of these are very rare and are known only from occasional records of the past twenty years. Most of them, however, have been recognized, and parts, if not all, of their life histories determined. The life cycles of the majority of the local forms have been worked out in detail and in a few cases the results of the work have been published. Since the life histories of the closely related forms agree in many respects, the separate discussion of each species would result in a multiplication of details, and therefore an attempt is made in this report to incorporate the data in such form as to give a general idea of the whole subject, omitting unnecessary repetition, condensing the facts common to all forms, tabulating whenever possible the data showing fluctuation and variation, and paying special attention to peculiar or unique phenomena.

The membracid fauna in the immediate vicinity of Ithaca has been rather thoroly studied. During certain seasons daily field notes have been made for periods of from six to eight consecutive weeks, and careful records kept of climatic and seasonal conditions with respect to their bearing on the ecological problems involved.

The fauna of the other parts of the valley has not been so well worked out, but large quantities of material from various stations have made it possible for the investigator to form a fairly accurate idea of the membracid representatives in the basin as a whole. That part of the basin at the northern extremity of the lake is the least known, as it has not been possible to do extensive collecting in that region. There is no reason for believing that the area offers any particular problems or differs in any important respect from the remainder of the valley, but recent botanical collections from parts of the district have yielded such distinct floral specimens that it seems probable that new species of Membracidae may be found there on further search.

Naturally a number of problems remain unsolved. These can be worked out only by experiments and observations extending over a series of years. It is hoped that the present report may suggest such problems and stimulate an interest in their solution.

Acknowledgment is made to Professors O. A. Johannsen, W. A. Riley, and J. C. Bradley, of the Department of Entomology at Cornell University, under whose direction the work has been done and whose kindly criticisms and suggestions have been most appreciated.

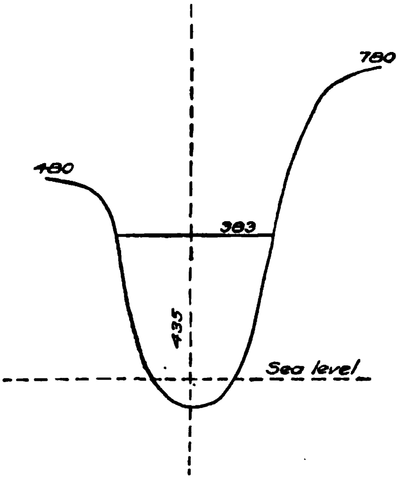


FIG. 34. CROSS SECTION OF CAYUGA LAKE

GEOGRAPHY AND PHYSIOGRAPHY OF THE CAYUGA LAKE BASIN

Cayuga Lake is the largest of the five so-called "Finger Lakes" of central New York. It is about forty miles in length and varies from one and one-half to three miles in width. The average depth is approximately four hundred feet, and the banks slope sharply to the center in a pronounced V (fig. 34). On either side of the lake the hills rise to an average height of from four hundred to six hundred feet, continuing the V, as seen in the figure, about as high above the water line as the distance below it. These hills are cut by narrow gorges thru which flow small streams with very picturesque falls and rapids. The surface of the lake is about three hundred and eighty-five feet above sea level, the bottom therefore being lower than sea level at mean tide.

A number of small tributaries flow into the lake near its head (fig. 35). The most important of these are: Cayuga Inlet (the old Neguæna Creek), extending almost directly southward; Six Mile Creek, extending southeastward; Cascadilla Creek, extending due eastward; Fall Creek, extending northeastward from the head of the lake; Taughannock Creek, on the

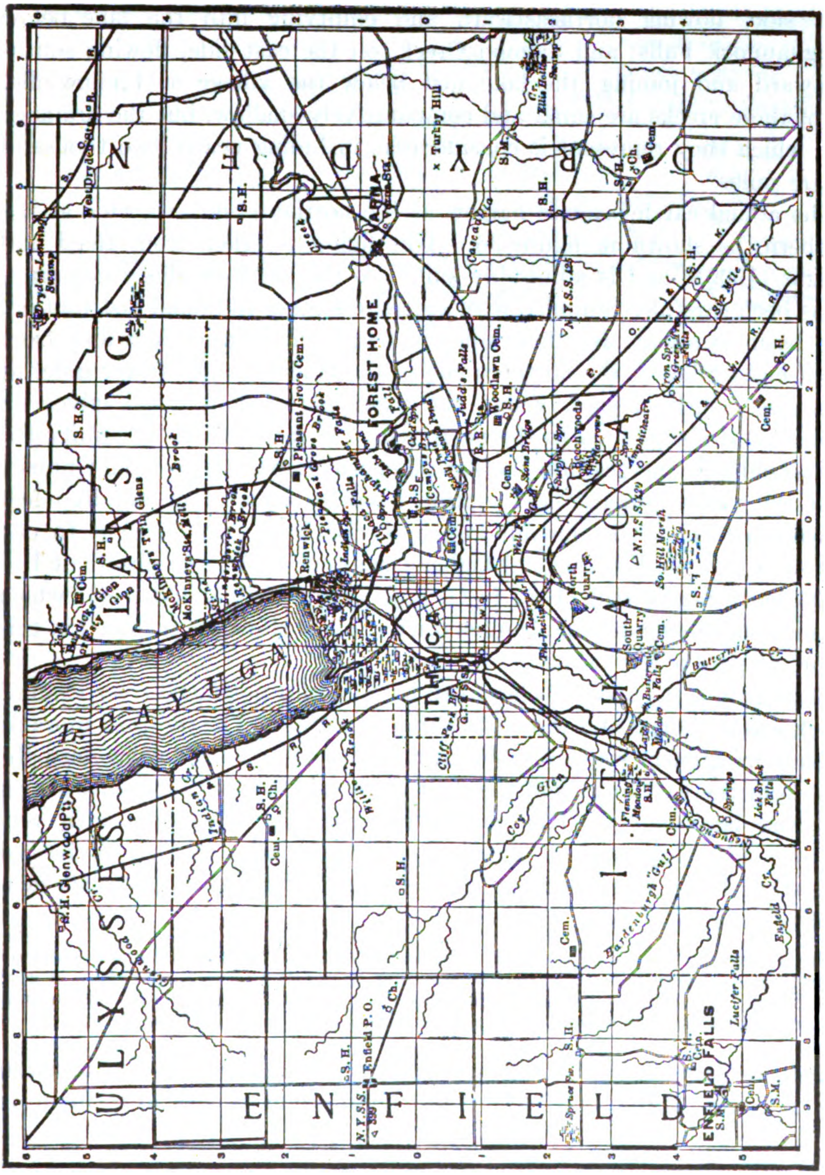


FIG. 35. MAP OF THE REGION ABOUT ITHACA, SHOWING THE SOUTHERN TRIBUTARIES OF CAYUGA LAKE

west side, flowing northeastward and emptying into the lake below Taughannock Falls; and Salmon Creek, on the east side, flowing southwestward and joining the lake just below the village of Ludlowville. All of these creeks are small and comparatively shallow, but the drainage area which they represent is considerable, including nearly two thousand square miles.

The actual catch basin is narrow at the northern end and wide at the southern, as shown in figure 36. This figure is taken from Reed and Wright (1909)[1], and is admirably suited to the needs of this study since it has been carefully compiled with special reference to faunal distribution. The basin is about sixty-five miles in length, and varies in width from about eight miles at the northern end of the lake to nearly thirty miles at its widest southern part, where the extension of Fall Creek gives an additional drainage area to the northeast. At its northern extremity the basin gradually merges into the flat plain which extends to Lake Ontario.

In the valley proper the elevation averages about four hundred feet above sea level. The surrounding hills rise from two hundred to one thousand feet, with occasional higher elevations such as Connecticut Hill (2095 feet), South Hill (1732 feet), and Turkey Hill (1460 feet), which are more or less mountainous in character; all of these are included in this report as part of the basin.

Geologically the lake is believed to have been a preglacial river channel which was deepened and widened by glacial action. The terminal moraine extends irregularly south of the basin. The tributaries flowing into the lake from the east and from the west have cut narrow postglacial gorges into the lake valley. The gorges are generally clean-cut, with precipitous sides, and descend abruptly toward the lake, the fall in the last mile often being three or four hundred feet. Commenting on this fact, Dudley (1886:x) states:

> The true gorges are probably without exception, of recent or post-glacial origin, the walls are frequently of perpendicular or overhanging rock from fifty to two hundred feet, or even much higher, as in Taughannock and Enfield ravines. Within these great chasms are usually falls or cascades, some of them exceedingly beautiful and of considerable height.

The physiography of the entire region is extremely rugged and irregular (fig. 37), and affords some of the most picturesque scenery to be found in the State.

---

[1] Dates in parenthesis refer to bibliography, pages 1171–1183.

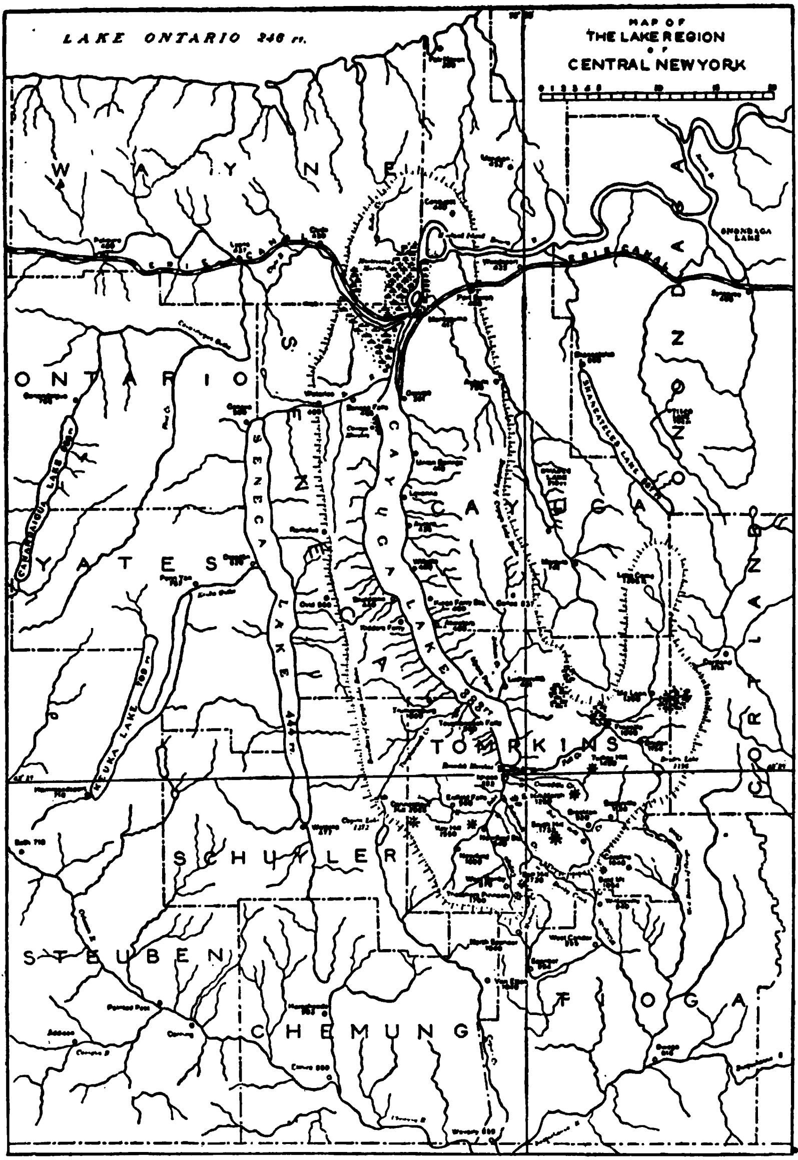


FIG. 36. MAP OF "FINGER LAKE" REGION OF CENTRAL NEW YORK, WITH CAYUGA LAKE SHOWN IN DETAIL

The approximate drainage basin of Cayuga Lake is indicated by the broken line (Reproduced by courtesy of Dr. A. H. Wright)

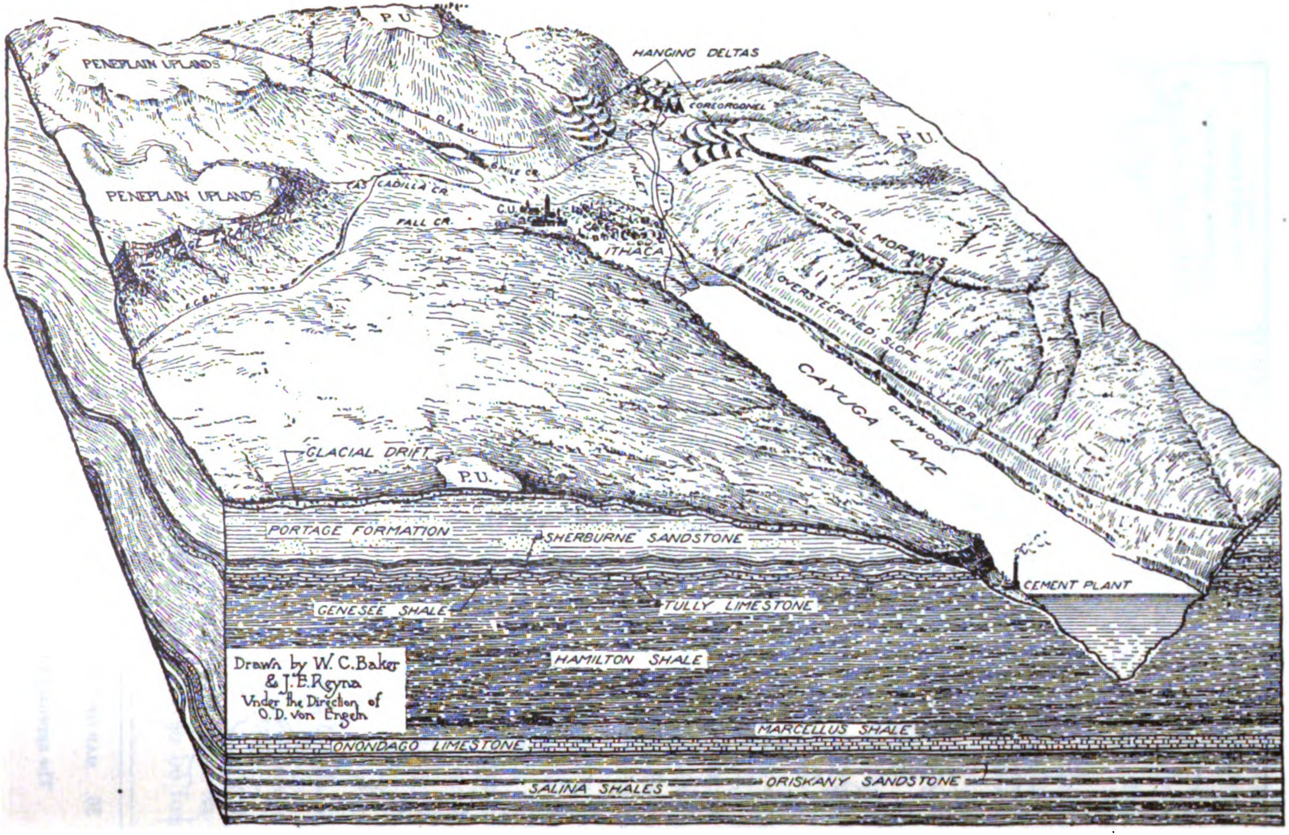


FIG. 37. RELIEF MAP OF PART OF THE ITHACA REGION, SHOWING PHYSIOGRAPHICAL NATURE OF THE BASIN
(Reproduced by courtesy of Professor O. D. von Engeln)

CLIMATOLOGY OF THE BASIN

The climate of the Cayuga Lake basin is undoubtedly influenced, and to some degree regulated, by the water of the lake. Because of its depth the lake water remains cold until late in the summer, and retains the summer heat to such an extent that the surface is rarely entirely frozen over. In fact a tradition to the effect that the lake freezes over once in every twenty years has been noted by Dudley (1886:vii) and by Reed and Wright (1909:372), and is verified in a general way by the records of the local weather bureau. Reasonably reliable data tend to show that the lake was entirely frozen over in the winters of 1796, 1816, 1836, 1856, 1875, 1884, and 1904. There is also a tradition, persistently advocated by many of the older inhabitants, to the effect that there is an underground connection betwen Cayuga and Seneca Lakes. Usually at least two-thirds of Cayuga Lake is open thruout the winter; the shallow water at either end freezes over about the last of December and remains frozen until about the first of March.

The effect of this on the plant life of the basin has been noted by Dudley as follows (1886:vii):

> The temperature of the lake unquestionably influences the development of vegetation in its immediate vicinity. Plants on its shores are usually a week later in the Spring than in the neighboring ravines and the warm valley about Ithaca, and a week earlier than on the distant highest hills; and during the first half of November, the blue flowers of *Aster lævis* and the white plumes of *Aster sagithfolius*[2] still remain in considerable abundance, while they have long ago matured and faded near Ithaca.

It will be seen that a similar condition has been found in regard to the insects treated in this study, largely due no doubt to the condition of the host plants on which they live.

The natural influence of the lake on the surrounding temperature, which affects the floral and the faunal forms, has been explained by Von Engeln (1914:347) as follows:

> Where bodies of water of considerable area exist they exert an important equalizing effect on temperature. Water absorbs more heat, holds more heat, is warmed to greater depths, absorbs and radiates heat more slowly than land. Further, 50 per cent of the insolation on water areas is used in evaporating water. This develops a moist blanket of air above and adjacent to the water surfaces that is less subject to marked temperature fluctuations than dry air. The total effect of these differences is to make summers cooler, winters warmer, to prolong the fall season and retard spring, and, also, to check sudden temperature changes in short time periods.

---

[2] So in original. Doubtless *Aster sagittifolius.*

It has been observed by agriculturists, tho thus far without explanation, that there is a difference in the condition of crops and fruits on the two sides of the lake. This has been found true also in the life histories of the membracids, the forms on the west side of the lake being later in appearance and slower in development than those on the east side. But, as in the case of the plants, no reason for this difference is forthcoming. Whether such variation has been observed for any other insects is not known.

The climate thruout the basin is variable, showing rather extreme ranges in temperature thruout the year; and, owing partly to differences in elevation and partly to protection from or exposure to winds, some sections of the area under consideration are quite different in climate from others. The territory represented by the eastern and the southern hills is notably colder than the sheltered stations in the valley, and these regions have a much greater snowfall. The western and the northern stations are, on the other hand, warmer and show less snow and less intensity of winds.

The city of Ithaca, at the head of the lake, may be taken as giving a fair average for the basin. The temperatures for this station are shown in the following table, which has been compiled from figures extending over the last thirty-five years:

TEMPERATURES AT ITHACA (DEGREES FAHRENHEIT)

	Highest	Mean	Lowest
January	70°	24°	—20°
February	62°	25°	—18°
March	82°	32°	—14°
April	87°	44°	13°
May	96°	57°	22°
June	96°	66°	32°
July	102°	71°	40°
August	98°	68°	39°
September	96°	61°	29°
October	87°	50°	17°
November	75°	38°	— 1°
December	65°	28°	—20°
Annual	102°	47°	—20°

For the period represented in the table, the following temperature data, valuable for consideration in ecological studies, may be noted:

Mean annual	47°
January average	24°
July average	71°

Highest, 102°, July 4, 1911
Lowest, —20°, December 20, 1884, and January 19, 1904
Most days with temperature of 90° or above in one month, ten, in July, 1911
Most days with temperature of 0 or below in one month, twelve, in February, 1885
Warmest month, July, 1887, average 74.8°
Coldest month, February, 1885, average 15.3°

Second only in importance to the question of temperature in the study of biologic conditions in insects, is that of precipitation. This average for Ithaca is as follows:

AVERAGE PRECIPITATION AT ITHACA (INCHES)

January	2.16	July	3.75
February	1.87	August	3.24
March	2.44	September	2.83
April	2.29	October	3.17
May	3.43	November	2.58
June	3.88	December	2.64
Annual	34.28		

Of particular interest in this study has been the rainfall during the summer months of the last five years. This is as follows:

RAINFALL AT ITHACA IN SUMMER (INCHES)

	1912	1913	1914	1915	1916
April	2.97	1.49	4.35	0.55	2.77
May	3.58	3.15	3.63	2.44	4.27
June	1.37	2.00	4.75	3.94	3.48
July	2.64	1.59	1.89	6.18	1.29
August	3.54	1.92	6.10	3.70	1.50
September	7.46	3.28	1.96	2.58	5.65
October	1.86	3.63	1.38	4.10	1.59

The bearing of these data on the ecological studies of the Membracidae will be discussed later, but it may be noted here that during this period some extremes occurred which offered excellent opportunity for observations in the field. The summer of 1913, for example, was unusually dry. Concerning this drought the United States Weather Bureau reports:[3]

> The drought of 1913 was remarkable both in its duration and in the time of its occurrence, covering nearly three months and extending well over the maturing period of important crops. It began to retard the growth of vegetation quite generally by the second week in June, and, in spite of occasional rains, became almost gradually worse until the 22d or 23d of August, when heavy rains brought decided relief in most parts of the State. In some sections, however, the drought remained unbroken until in September — so late that no amount of rainfall could bring the stunted crops to maturity.
>
> In many sections of the State pastures failed completely and cattle and horses had to be fed full winter rations for several weeks. Almost the entire State suffered some loss in pastures and more or less reduction in the yield in staple crops, particularly of those that mature in the latter part of the season, such as corn, buckwheat, pears, apples, peaches, and fall potatoes. In many localities one or more crops were reported as being practically failures. In some of the central and eastern counties the water supply was so reduced that it became difficult to secure enough for the most urgent needs in cities and villages, the use of water for sprinkling lawns and flushing streets having been discontinued, while farmers in many places were obliged to haul water from a distance, as most wells, springs, and creeks were dry. A number of correspondents report that wells and streams became dry that were never before known to fail.
>
> An examination of the precipitation record shows that a remarkable deficiency in rainfall was experienced in most parts of the State.

The average precipitation in the basin is slightly less than that for the stations just outside of the basin, with the exception of the city of Binghamton. Like the temperature record, the precipitation record shows some interesting extremes and variations, among which are the following:

Mean annual precipitation, 34 inches
Average number of days with 0.01 inch or more, 155 in a year
Heaviest rainfall in twenty-four hours, 4.16 inches, September 10, 1890
Most rainfall in one week, 5.56 inches, September 8–13, 1890
Most rainfall in one month, 8.14 inches, August, 1885
Least rainfall in one month, 0.3 inch, May, 1903, and March, 1910
Driest summer (June, July, and August), 1910, 5.15 inches
Wettest summer, 1892, 17.04 inches

In the report of the local weather bureau for September, 1914,[4] is found an interesting table giving the amount of rainfall at excessive rates during the last fifteen years. The dates noted which appear in the course of this study are the following:

One inch or more an hour, 1.09, June 28, 1914
1.08, August 20, 1914
Most in five minutes, 0.47, June 28, 1914
Most in ten minutes, 0.92, June 28, 1914
Most in fifteen minutes, 1.05, June 28, 1914

---

[3] U. S. Weather Bureau. Monthly weather review 41:1183. 1913.

[4] Climatic summary for Ithaca, New York, with comparative data for other places in New York and near-by States. U. S. Weather Bureau, Ithaca, New York. September, 1914.

It will be noted that the summer of 1914, besides showing extremes of sudden rainfalls, had a heavy average precipitation. The effect of this on the life histories of certain Membracidae has been noted (Funkhouser, 1915f:191), and a comparison of the summers of 1913 and 1914 in the effect on the insects in general is shown in a later table in this paper (page 1149).

The snowfall in the basin is not excessive but shows considerable variation. This, however, affects the biology of the insects under consideration only in a slight degree, and only those forms that hibernate in the earth during the winter. The climatological data on this point are given in the local weather bureau report already cited (footnote 4) as follows:

AVERAGE MONTHLY SNOWFALL AT ITHACA (INCHES)

January	13	May	between 0.1 and 0.5
February	12	October	between 0.1 and 0.5
March	10	November	5
April	4	December	11
Annual	56		

Most snowfall in one winter, 79 inches, 1910–11
Least in one winter, 28 inches, 1912–13
Most in a month, 45 inches, December, 1902
Least in a winter month, 2 inches, January, 1913
Latest in spring, May 28, 1902
Earliest in fall, September 30, 1889

More important than the snowfall is the question of the date of killing frosts in spring and in autumn. A comparison of these dates with those of the appearance and the disappearance of certain Membracidae has proved extremely interesting. Fortunately the records of frosts have been carefully kept at the local weather bureau, and a valuable report has been made on the subject.[5] This report gives the following data for the city of Ithaca, which, while not applicable to the entire basin, is general enough to be of practical value:

Average date of last killing frost in spring, May 4
Average date of first killing frost in fall, October 10
Number of days between these dates, 159

---

[5] Wilson, Wilford M. Frosts in New York. Cornell Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 316 : 505–568. 1912.

The latest recorded killing frost in spring for the basin was on June 9, 1913; the earliest recorded killing frost in fall was on September 14, 1911.

Reports on relative humidity are not available in a form applicable to this study, but it is believed that this subject is of much importance in its reference to the hatching of eggs and the development of nymphs. The following figures, covering a period of three years, give the averages for the basin:

Average annual humidity, 70 per cent
January average, 79 per cent
July average, 68 per cent

These figures, however, would be valuable only in comparing life histories of insects in the basin with those of other localities. For the purpose of comparing the development of the membracids, it would of course be necessary to have weekly, or at least monthly, reports for a series of years and similar biologic reports on the insects.

Bearing more closely on the subject of insect habits is the question of sunshine, and this applies to a large extent to the family in question since the Membracidae are sun-loving forms and their feeding habits depend largely on this feature of the local climatology. In this connection the following table for the Cayuga Lake Basin may be of interest:

AVERAGE SUNSHINE (IN PER CENT OF THE POSSIBLE)

January	28	July	64
February	44	August	61
March	44	September	58
April	48	October	44
May	55	November	29
June	61	December	23
Annual	47		

It will be noted that the region is, on the whole, more or less gloomy, and the physiography of the basin, with the deep gorges and the dark ravines, exaggerates this to some extent; so that individual stations, limited in area, would perhaps show a still greater lack of sunshine.

THE BASIN AS A FLORAL AND A FAUNAL AREA

The Cayuga Lake Basin represents the Transition Zone in its flora and fauna. Reed and Wright (1909:376) have recorded all of the nine species of mammals which Miller (1899) designates as serving to identify any part of the Transition Zone in New York.

Eastern, Canadian, Upper Austral, and Lower Austral forms are represented among the birds recorded for the basin, and in a number of cases the species representing these zones breed in the locality. The fishes show traces of Lake Ontario fauna with occasional representatives of Susquehanna Valley and Erie Basin forms. The amphibia are largely southern and the reptiles very meager. (Reed and Wright, 1909:384–385.)

In the same manner the flora of the region shows traces of widely scattered forms, and among the rarer plants occur some that bear the stamp of remote geographical nativity (Dudley, 1886:vii). The peat bogs in the vicinity of Freeville, the marshes at the foot of the lake, and the more secluded parts of the ravines, show forms of plant life which are without doubt migrants from distant floral areas, and their mode of introduction into the basin is unknown.

In this connection it should be noted that the Cayuga Lake Basin is intimately connected with the Susquehanna River on the south and the Ontario plains on the north. Wilseyville Creek, which flows down into the Susquehanna Valley, is at one point only about half a mile from Six Mile Creek, which flows into Cayuga Lake, and it is probable that at flood times the sources of these creeks are connected. The inlet of Cayuga Lake, likewise, rises at about a mile from Spencer Creek, which flows to the Susquehanna Basin, and at the same elevation. In the same connection it should be remembered that the region at the foot of the lake gradually opens into the Ontario flats without geographical or faunal barriers.

It is to be expected that the insect fauna would show similar transitional forms, as is indeed the case. Little literature is available relative to the distribution of special groups of insects in the basin, but in many instances records show the presence of Canadian, Southern, and Western species. It will be shown in the course of this study that the Membracidae list is representative of a wide range of distribution.

On the other hand, the basin is in some respects cut off from the surrounding territory. It will be noted that a few species described with the basin as a type locality have never been recorded from any other part of the State. Conversely, species that are abundant in neighboring counties are seldom recorded locally. The latter condition is illustrated in the Membracidae in the cases of *Publilia concava* and *Micrutalis calva*.

The most important papers relative to the basin as a faunal and a floral area, and indeed the only ones in which the subject is discussed with direct application to the local physiography, are those already mentioned — the work by Dudley (1886) and that by Reed and Wright (1909). Of these the former is the more valuable in connection with the study of phytophagous insects, since it offers valuable data concerning the distribution of the plant forms that serve as hosts.

The distribution of the Membracidae according to the range of their host plants is noticeable to a marked degree thruout the State. Professor W. L. Bray, of Syracuse University, has made a careful study of the floral regions in New York State, and has shown that the areas as outlined in this study for insects agree with the zonal distribution of plants. He states (Bray, 1915:59–60):

> The study of certain features of the dissected highlands — deeply cut valleys and the slope and exposure of their adjacent sides — yields instructive data as to the distribution of floristic elements.
>
> In general the dissection of the plateaus by north-south drainage channels leads to a northerly extension of austral species.................... This northerly extension appears to be especially marked in the region where the long, deep valleys of the Cayuga and Seneca lake basins continue the dissection across the plateau into the Ontario basin.

There seems to be no doubt that this is the case in the region under consideration, and it is likely that the migration of certain plant species has had much to do with the distribution of the insect forms that feed on these plants or are limited to particular plant hosts for their oviposition.

CHECK LIST OF GENERA AND SPECIES

The following species of Membracidae have been recorded for the Cayuga Lake Basin:

Centrotinae:

1. *Microcentrus caryae* Fitch (p. 947)

Membracinae:

2. *Campylenchia latipes* Say (p. 950)
3. *Enchenopa binotata* Say (p. 952)

Smiliinae:

4. *Ceresa diceros* Say (p. 956)
5. *Ceresa bubalus* Fabr. (p. 957)
6. *Ceresa taurina* Fitch (p. 963)
7. *Ceresa constans* Walk. (p. 965)

Smiliinae (continued):

8. *Ceresa Palmeri* VanD. (p. 968)
9. *Ceresa borealis* Fairm. (p. 969)
10. *Ceresa basalis* Walk. (p. 970)
11. *Stictocephala inermis* Fabr. (p. 971)
12. *Stictocephala lutea* Walk. (p. 973)
13. *Acutalis tartarea* Say (p. 975)
14. *Micrutalis dorsalis* Fitch (p. 975)
15. *Micrutalis calva* Say (p. 976)
16. *Carynota mera* Say (p. 977)
17. *Carynota porphyrea* Fairm. (p. 981)
18. *Thelia bimaculata* Fabr. (p. 981)
19. *Glossonotus acuminatus* Fabr. (p. 983)
20. *Glossonotus univittatus* Harris (p. 984)
21. *Glossonotus crataegi* Fitch (p. 985)
22. *Heliria scalaris* Fairm. (p. 986)
23. *Telamona declivata* VanD. (p. 988)
24. *Telamona pyramidata* Uhler (p. 989)
25. *Telamona barbata* VanD. (p. 989)
26. *Telamona obsoleta* Ball (p. 990)
27. *Telamona Westcotti* Godg. (p. 991)
28. *Telamona reclivata* Fitch (p. 991)
29. *Telamona monticola* Fabr. (p. 994)
30. *Telamona querci* Fitch (p. 995)
31. *Telamona ampelopsidis* Harris (p. 996)
32. *Telamona tristis* Fitch (p. 998)
33. *Telamona concava* Fitch (p. 999)
34. *Telamona projecta* Butler (p. 999)
35. *Telamona unicolor* Fitch (p. 1000)
36. *Telamona pruinosa* Ball (p. 1001)
37. *Telamona decorata* Ball (p. 1002)
38. *Archasia Belfragei* Stål (p. 1003)
39. *Smilia camelus* Fabr. (p. 1004)
40. *Cyrtolobus ovatus* VanD. (p. 1006)
41. *Cyrtolobus fuliginosus* Emm. (p. 1006)
42. *Cyrtolobus muticus* Fabr. (p. 1007)
43. *Cyrtolobus tuberosus* Fairm. (p. 1010)
44. *Cyrtolobus discoidalis* Emm. (p. 1010)

Smiliinae (concluded):

45. *Cyrtolobus cinctus* VanD. (p. 1011)
46. *Cyrtolobus vau* Say (p. 1012)
47. *Cyrtolobus intermedius* Emm. (p. 1013)
48. *Cyrtolobus cinereus* Emm. (p. 1014)
49. *Cyrtolobus fuscipennis* VanD. (p. 1014)
50. *Atymna castaneae* Fitch (p. 1015)
51. *Atymna querci* Fitch (p. 1017)
52. *Atymna inornata* Say (p. 1018)
53. *Xantholobus trilineatus* Say (p. 1019)
54. *Xantholobus lateralis* VanD. (p. 1019)
55. *Ophiderma salamandra* Fairm. (p. 1022)
56. *Ophiderma pubescens* Emm. (p. 1023)
57. *Ophiderma flavicephala* Godg. (p. 1024)
58. *Ophiderma flava* Godg. (p. 1024)
59. *Vanduzea arquata* Say (p. 1025)
60. *Entylia bactriana* Germ. (p. 1027)
61. *Publilia concava* Say (p. 1029)

One or two of the above are known only from single specimens taken a number of years ago and never recorded since, but they are included so that the list may be entirely complete. The original records are doubtless authentic and the specimens are in the Cornell University collection.

DISTRIBUTION AND RANGE OF THE FAMILY

The representatives of the Membracidae have not been taken uniformly thruout the basin and are much more numerous in some localities than in others. They are more abundant on the east side of the lake than on the west, and far more plentiful in the southern part of the valley than in the northern. This is due chiefly to the fact that the areas in question are not uniformly wooded with plants which are favored by membracids as hosts, and the fact that geographical conditions, and variations in amount of heat and of sunlight, are not the same in all localities. The species of Membracidae are sun-loving insects, and, as will be shown, are quite susceptible to environmental conditions. Moreover they are very dependent on particular food-plants and seldom if ever change their hosts.

Certain areas thruout the basin have been arbitrarily designated as *stations* (fig. 38). These are in some cases rather indefinitely bounded,

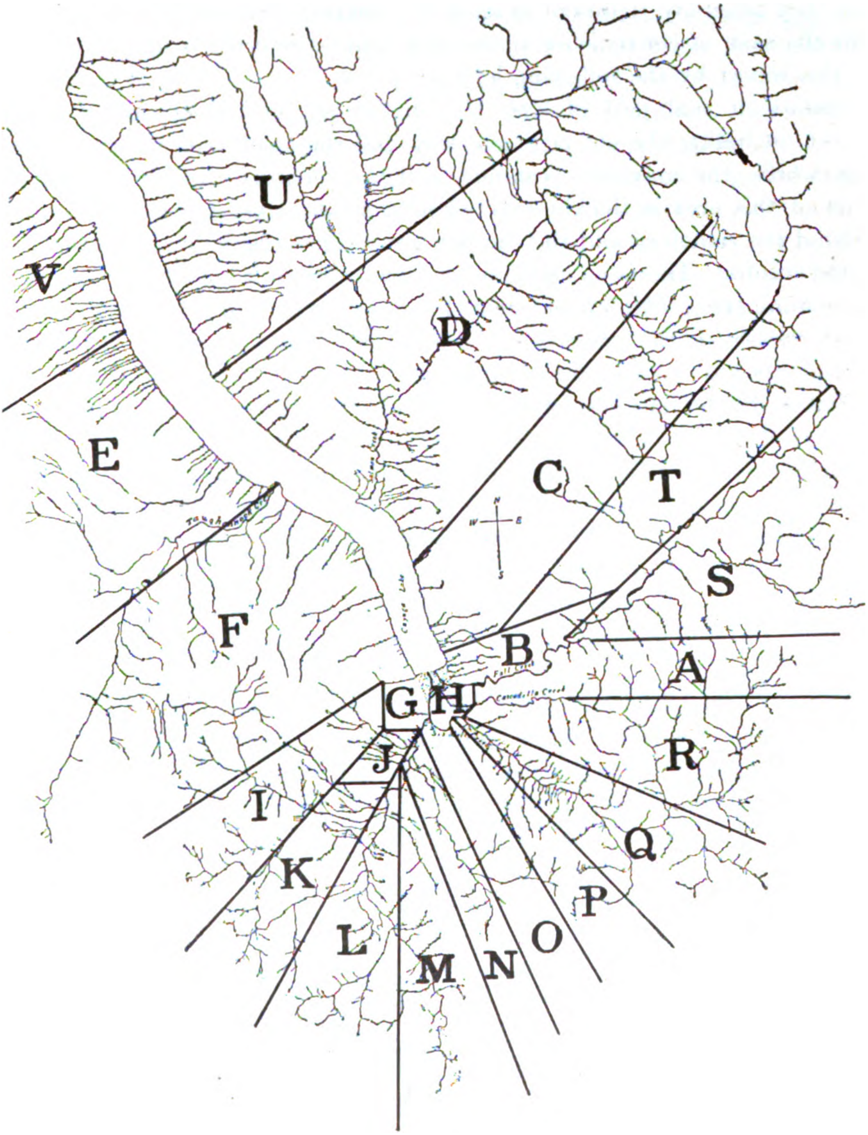


FIG. 38. DRAINAGE MAP OF CAYUGA LAKE REGION SHOWING LOCATION AND EXTENT OF THE VARIOUS STATIONS DISCUSSED

The watershed areas are as follows: Fall Creek, 117 square miles; Cascadilla Creek, 16.2 square miles; Six Mile Creek, 46.4 square miles; Inlet, 92.9 square miles. The check marks across the streams indicate successive elevations (contour intervals) of 20 feet each

(Reproduced by courtesy of Professor J. G. Needham) but they generally represent more or less distinct physiographical regions. For the sake of convenience these areas will be referred to in the course of this report by the following letters:

Station A, that part of East Hill in the city of Ithaca east of Linn Street, including the old city cemetery and the steep banks west of the gun works, the university campus, and the territory directly eastward. Part of this area is thickly covered with small locust trees, and in and around the cemetery and the campus are a considerable number of cultivated shrubs. This is an excellent station and from it have been collected large numbers of *Thelia bimaculata*, *Vanduzea arquata*, *Enchenopa binotata*, most species of the genus Ceresa, and occasionally *Archasia Belfragei*, *Smilia camelus*, and *Stictocephala lutea*.

Station B, the hills east of Renwick and southeastward to Cornell and Cayuga Heights. These hills are densely wooded near the lake and more open eastward. The wooded parts contain principally locust and oak. The open spots, particularly the abandoned street-railway road, are overgrown with sweet clover and goldenrod. Along the roadsides considerable black elder occurs. This is one of the richest stations in the basin, and yields *Ceresa diceros*, *Vanduzea arquata*, *Thelia bimaculata*, *Enchenopa binotata*, and a number of species of Cyrtolobus, especially *C. vau*, in great abundance.

Station C, the hills on the east side of the lake extending from McKinneys to Portland. Scattered woods, cultivated fields, pastures, and neglected roadsides make up this station. The section supports hickory, pignut, maples, and small oaks, scattered growths of blackberry and raspberry, and some cultivated fruits. It is a good station for various species of Ophiderma and one or two of the rarer forms of Ceresa.

Station D, the region around Rogues Harbor and northward. This section consists of rolling farm lands, orchards, and pastures. Fruit trees have yielded considerable membracid material, and during certain seasons timothy, clover, alfalfa, and buckwheat fields have proved good collecting grounds. Scattered areas of goldenrod, New England aster, joe-pye weed, and sweet clover are found along roadsides and fences. In this station have been collected a large number of the local species of the genus Telamona, and most of the grass-inhabiting forms such as *Stictocephala inermis*, *Campylenchia latipes*, and *Ceresa bubalus*.

Station E, the hills west of the lake between Trumansburg and Interlaken and including these two villages. The country is principally given over to farm lands and is rich in cultivated fruits, particularly apple, pear, and cherry. Considerable timothy and buckwheat is grown. Around the farmhouses and buildings is a great deal of woodbine. *Ceresa taurina*, *Ceresa bubalus*, *Stictocephala inermis*, *Stictocephala lutea*, *Enchenopa binotata*, and *Telamona ampelopsidis* are common in this station.

Station F, the region west of the lake between Trumansburg and the Lehigh Valley railroad station in Ithaca. This station contains a variety of physiographical conditions and a varied flora. The farms south of Trumansburg are rich in fruit; the hills sloping to the lake are densely wooded with second-growth trees — chestnut, maple, oak, and birch — with much underbrush; the roadsides and the railroad tracks have growths of woodbine, bittersweet, and sweet clover; the flats south of the lake and west of the inlet are low and wet, being chiefly filled-in marshland and covered with cat-tails, red elder, and water plants. The station has proved a poor one for Membracidae but has occasionally yielded *Atymna castaneae* and *Enchenopa binotata.*

Station G, the Renwick woods and flats south of the lake and west of the inlet. The flora of this region is extremely varied. There are a large number of old trees of many species, and the section is rich in shrubs. Poison ivy and woodbine are plentiful. Asters, joe-pye weed, and giant ragweed are hosts for certain Membracidae. The most abundant species are *Vanduzea arquata*, *Telamona ampelopsidis*, *Enchenopa binotata*, and *Ceresa bubalus.*

Station H, the inlet region from Renwick to State Street, Ithaca. The land consists of wet filled-in areas overgrown with vines and weeds. There is much sweet clover, ragweed, thistle, and goldenrod. The boathouses along the inlet and at the foot of Cascadilla Creek are covered with Virginia creeper. The waste lands yield various grass-inhabiting forms of Membracidae. This is one of the best stations in the basin for *Telamona ampelopsidis*, owing to the abundance of woodbine, on which this insect lives. *Campylenchia latipes* has been commonly taken near the Cornell boathouse by sweeping.

Station I, West Hill, extending to the top of the watershed. Farm lands, with much fruit, make up this section. Apple and pear trees in the region are infested with species of Stictocephala and Ceresa. Considerable chestnut is found on the higher parts of the area. The chief species taken at this station are *Ceresa bubalus, Ceresa taurina, Stictocephala inermis, Atymna castaneae,* and *Telamona reclivata.*

Station J, Coy's Glen. This is a remarkable collecting ground with a great variety of species. On the northern slope of the gorge are several good stands of hawthorn and many butternuts. Considerable oak and maple is found thruout the glen and there are large numbers of shrubs and herbs. On the south slope are good stands of thistle, and at higher points there are a number of large oaks. Practically every species of membracids found in the basin has been taken in Coy's Glen, and it is probably the best station in the basin for *Glossonotus crataegi, Entylia bactriana,* and *Ceresa Palmeri.*

Station K, the west side of the valley from Coy's Glen to Newfield. Considerable fine old timber, particularly oak and chestnut, grows here. Farm lands and pastures make up the region. There are many neglected roadsides with good growths of elder, Virginia creeper, sweet clover, thistle, and ragweed. The rugged country gives a variety of floristic conditions. A number of species of the genus Telamona are found in this station, and *Ceresa diceros, Ceresa bubalus,* and *Campylenchia latipes* are abundant.

Station L, the floor of the valley between Ithaca and Enfield. This is rich swampy land, overgrown in places with daisy, thistle, sweet clover, and sedges. There is some butternut and oak. A few cultivated areas are found. *Ceresa bubalus, Enchenopa binotata, Campylenchia latipes, Stictocephala lutea,* and *Entylia bactriana* have been commonly taken at this station.

Station M, the hills on the east side of the valley from Buttermilk Falls southward. These slopes are densely wooded, mostly with second-growth timber — butternut, oak, hickory, maple, and pine. It is dark and gloomy under the trees and there is little underbrush. This is a poor station for Membracidae.

Station N, Buttermilk Gorge. The steep slopes of the gorge are thickly grown up with young oaks and maples. There are few herbaceous plants, but large areas of blackberries and raspberries are found. This is the best station in the basin for the genera Glossonotus and Telamona.

Station O, South Hill, from the Morse Chain Works to the village of Danby. This is a large territory, gradually ascending from Ithaca southward. There is little timber. One small clump of butternut in this station has yielded the largest number of specimens of *Telamona unicolor* taken in the basin.

Station P, the territory along the Delaware, Lackawanna & Western Railroad from Ithaca to Brookton. This region consists of farm lands and occasional small patches of timber. The hillsides are often thickly covered with underbrush and sumac. There is considerable clover and timothy, and good stands of blackberry are found. This is a good collecting ground for most species of the genus Ceresa.

Station Q, the valley of Six Mile Creek. This is probably the best collecting ground in the basin. The floor of the valley is rich in sweet clover, elder, blackberry, aster, daisy, and joe-pye weed, all of which support Membracidae. In the lower parts of the valley are many locusts, elms, and young sycamores, on which certain species may be found the year round. The slopes are thickly wooded with a large variety of young trees, containing some stands of beech and dogwood, and considerable oak, butternut, and chestnut. *Telamona pruinosa* has been taken only at this station. *Vanduzea arquata* and *Thelia bimaculata* are extremely abundant. The entire life history of *Ceresa bubalus* has been worked out on the young elms and the sweet clover below the dam.

Station R, the region east of Ithaca between Six Mile Creek and the boundary of Station A. The section includes farm lands, a few timbered tracts, and the interesting Cascadilla Gorge. The last-named area is the richest part of the station and contains considerable Virginia creeper, elder, and small trees. The farms generally include fields of alfalfa and buckwheat. *Telamona ampelopsidis*, *Ceresa diceros*, and *Campylenchia latipes* are abundant in this region, and *Glossonotus crataegi* has occasionally been found.

Station S, Fall Creek valley from Forest Home eastward. This is a winding, sparsely wooded valley, rich in bushes and shrubs. The trees are generally small and scattered. The slopes of the valley are not precipitous and are often cultivated. Small crops, clover, alfalfa, potatoes, and timothy provide fair collecting opportunities.

Station T, the region northeast of Ithaca, from the golf links over a rambling territory. There are scattered patches of timber, well-wooded roadsides, some fruit trees, and a great deal of goldenrod, thistle, joe-pye weed, aster, and sweet clover. The sweeping is excellent in this region.

Station U, the territory on the east side of the lake north of Aurora. This station has been the least worked of all of the regions represented, only two or three collecting trips having been made in this part of the basin. The country is sparsely wooded and well cultivated. There is considerable fruit and much grain. Few records have been obtained from this station.

Station V, the Montezuma Marshes and neighboring territory. A considerable number of records from this station have accumulated as a result of collecting done by members of parties visiting the marshes on botanical excursions. The region is rich in swamp flora and the Membracidae taken have been largely grass- and shrub-inhabiting forms. This is one of the few regions where *Publilia concava* has been found.

COLLECTIONS

The collections used as a basis for determinations and comparisons in the course of this study have been largely the Cornell University collection, the New York State Museum collection at Albany, the collection in the United States National Museum at Washington, D. C., the collection in the Philadelphia Academy of Science, the private collection of E. P. Van Duzee, of the University of California, and the private collection of the author.

The Cornell University collection of Membracidae is very complete in local forms of the family, having been built up by the addition of departmental material, students' collections, and purchased material, thru a period of many years. It includes paratypes of the species described by Van Duzee (1908 a) and a large proportion of the material has been determined by this authority. Representatives of nearly all of the species here mentioned are to be found in this collection.

The New York State Museum collection, at Albany, New York, is extremely valuable owing to the fact that it contains the types of Fitch's species, described by him many years ago (Fitch, 1851). Thru the courtesy of Dr. E. P. Felt it has been possible to compare the material from the basin with this type material, and the author is greatly indebted to Dr. Felt and to Mr. Young for their continued kindness and interest in this respect. Fitch's types are kept separate from the remainder of the collection, and have proved extremely valuable for comparison since they include a number of the forms here discussed (Funkhouser, 1915 d).

The collection in the United States National Museum, while in some confusion as to arrangement and difficult of access for systematic purposes, is rich in New York State material and contains valuable representatives of the forms found locally. Dr. Crawford and the late Mr. O. Heidemann have kindly permitted the author to study this collection and compare local specimens with the museum forms.

In like manner the collection of the Philadelphia Academy of Science has been studied with special reference to New York material. This collection, while not extensive, has yielded some valuable data.

While residing in Buffalo, New York, Mr. Van Duzee extended to the author the privilege of inspecting his very complete private collection, which contains a number of types of the species in question. The enjoyable visit to Mr. Van Duzee's home at that time and the valuable suggestions offered then and in later correspondence have been most appreciated.

The author's collection has been built up during the past eight years and contains all but two of the species here mentioned. The collection is strong in having long series of most of the species, the result of extensive collecting in the basin during this period. In most cases the specimens have been compared with types or paratypes and are so labeled.

The authorities used have been largely the above-mentioned collections, and reports by the authors noted. Mr. Van Duzee's work (1908a) on the North American forms is the most valuable systematic paper relating to the subject; while the report of Hodgkiss (1910) is reliable for the life-history records of the four species which he discusses. Original descriptions have been consulted in all cases and an attempt has been made to verify the synonymy to date.

The validity of most of the species has been apparently established. In the few doubtful cases the subject is discussed in connection with the species in question. The study of a long series of specimens of one species, showing much variation and gradation, naturally brings up the question of overlapping, convergence, or hybridizing; but the species are here considered as good unless sufficient data are available to leave no doubt in the matter. It may develop that in the genera Telamona and Cyrtolobus certain species here recognized will fall, but considerably more biologic proof will be needed before such cases can be established.

COMPARISON OF CAYUGA LAKE BASIN WITH THE STATE AS A WHOLE

It is interesting to note that of the seventy-six species of Membracidae recorded for New York State, sixty-one have been found in the Cayuga Lake Basin. It can hardly be argued that this is due to more rigorous collecting in this region, for New York State has been for many years a center for entomological investigation. Fitch and Emmons, at Albany, were much interested in Hemiptera, and doubtless surveyed the region about the capital very thoroly; more recently Lintner and Felt have had opportunity to study material not only from the Hudson River Valley but from practically every part of the State; the entomologists in and about New York City and Brooklyn have always been active, and it is reasonable to suppose that few new species will be recorded from that region; Mr. Van Duzee, residing for many years in Buffalo, has covered as an ardent systematic hemipterist the territory about that city; and the various experiment stations and granges thruout the State have kept careful watch of insect material. It is only fair to presume that the state records are reasonably complete and that the Cayuga Lake Basin is unusually well supplied with species of the family under discussion.

The large proportion of species represented is more surprising when it is remembered that many of the State forms are recorded only from Long Island and Staten Island, and that these regions represent a faunal area quite distinct from the remainder of the State.

THEORIES OF ORIGIN AND PATHS OF MIGRATION

The Membracidae are primarily a tropical and subtropical family. Of over three hundred genera established in the family, only forty are found in North America; and of these a number are represented by a single species only. The great home of the membracids is apparently South America, with Africa and southern Asia offering hardly less abundant forms. The hypotheses of origin and distribution of the family are largely conjectural, as there is no paleontological evidence to be used as a basis and the theories can be formulated only with reference to other more fully established theories as worked out for other forms of plant and animal life. No fossil membracids have been discovered, altho, singularly enough, the closely related families of Cercopidae, Fulgoridae, and Aphididae are represented in paleontological literature.

Buckton (1903:204) has suggested that previous to the glacial period, when " the monkey and the palm-tree occurred within the limits of the Arctic Circle," the Membracidae may have become distributed by a northern route. This theory can be attacked, of course, from a number of angles, but such criticism is here unnecessary.

The older authors were unanimous in treating the Membracidae from a strictly geographical viewpoint. Thus, Stål considered separately the membracids of Africa, Mexico, South America, and the Philippine Islands, and established for each geographical area new genera and species, with separate keys and tables for each. The result of such work has been a useless accumulation of synonyms and an incorrect idea of the definiteness of geographical barriers.

It is now known that the same genera, and in a few cases the same species, of Membracidae may occur in widely separated continents. The forms of Asia merge gradually into those of the Philippines, and these in turn into those of the East Indies and Australia. The South American forms are closely related to those of Africa, while the Palearctic and Nearctic forms are entirely distinct.

It seems more reasonable, therefore, to presume that the Membracidae originated as tropical forms; that the first migration was eastward and westward in equatorial regions; and that later the forms migrated northward and southward on the respective land-masses of the eastern and the western hemisphere, their limits of distribution depending on the adaptability of the species to environmental, and particularly to climatic and floristic, conditions. Records of distribution from all parts of the world bear out such an hypothesis to a large extent, and the geological theories of land bridges and life zones in comparatively recent times, as used to explain the appearance particularly of birds and mammals, are sufficient to account for earlier tropical migrations.

As considered in regard to the modern geographical areas as life zones, the Membracidae are represented as follows:

Palearctic region

(Europe, the temperate parts of Asia, and the north of Africa; Iceland and the islands of the Atlantic; limited by the Himalayas)

Very poorly represented. Only two or three genera on the entire continent of Europe, but two species in Great Britain, two species in Russia, and none reported from Iceland. A few in northern Africa, chiefly forms that have migrated from the South.

Ethiopian region
(Africa and its islands except the northern parts; Arabia)
Rich in genera and species. Little work has been done on these forms of the family, but there is evidence of an abundant membracid fauna.

Oriental region
(India and the East Indies)
Extremely rich both in number of forms represented and in number of individuals. The center of distribution for the subfamily Centrotinae.

Australian region
(Australia, New Zealand, and neighboring islands)
Well represented by rather distinct forms. The region has been fairly well worked and has yielded a large number of species.

Nearctic region
(America north of Mexico; Greenland)
Forty or fifty genera, gradually becoming less abundant northward. A few species common in Canada as far north as Perry Sound. None reported from Greenland.

Neotropical region
(Mexico, West Indies, Central and South America)
The most important of all the regions for the Membracidae. Central America and the northern part of South America have yielded as many species as all the rest of the world together.

In North America the family is best represented in Mexico, where the characteristic bizarre forms are plentiful. Southern United States shows fewer species and these lose their grotesque appearance as they spread northward. Northern United States continues to show the thinning-out of the forms as the climate becomes colder, and the native species are on the whole smaller and of less striking development. Canada, as has been noted, marks the northern limit of the family and shows few representatives.

New York State, either because it includes a transitional zone or because the fauna has been more intensively studied, yields more Membracidae than any other northern State. The species, however, are not characteristic of the family and show little of the striking appearances of the exotic forms.

As has been remarked, the Cayuga Lake Basin is surprisingly well represented in the forms common to the State. It is to be noted, however, that both in the State and in the basin two of the great tropical subfamilies — Darninae and Hoplophorinae — are entirely without representatives.

In connection with the discussion of faunal and floral areas it may be noted that Bray (1915:70–79) recognizes six plant zones in New York State, as follows:

A. Zone of willow oak, sweet gum, persimmon, etc.
  Staten Island, southern Long Island, and narrow belt along northern shore of Long Island Sound.
B. Zone of oaks, hickories, chestnut, etc.
  Morainic region of Long Island and Staten Island; Hudson Valley; Delaware, Susquehanna, and Alleghany drainage valleys, etc.
C. Alleghany-Transition Forest Zone of sugar maple, beech, yellow birch, etc.
  Alleghany plateau region and Catskills below the spruce-balsam zone. Favorable edaphic situations thruout the State up to about 2000 feet.
D. Canadian-Transition Zone of Zone C species, with a tendency toward dominance of red spruce, balsam, and mountain ash.
  Catskills from 2000 to 3700 feet, and Adirondacks up to 3500 feet.
E. Canadian Zone of red spruce, balsam, and paper birch.
  Highest Catskills, and Adirondacks above 3500 feet.
F. Arctic flora of Adirondack peaks. Zone of fir club-moss, alpine holy-grass, mountain spear-grass, etc.
  Summit of Mount Marcy above 5000 feet; Mount McIntyre and Whiteface summits.

KEYS TO GENERA AND SPECIES OF THE CAYUGA LAKE BASIN, WITH TECHNICAL DESCRIPTIONS AND LIFE HISTORIES

The following review attempts to establish the taxonomic position of each genus and species, and includes for each form a short bibliography, a technical description, and the more important facts regarding life history, local distribution, and relative abundance.

In the systematic discussion the genera and the species are located by means of keys and descriptions so that they may be easily distinguished. The dichotomous tables used are admittedly artificial in many respects, but it is believed that with the limited number of forms involved they will prove satisfactory. In all cases, of course, the function of such keys is to direct rather than to establish, and the description, rather than the key, should be considered for final verification.

In the course of several years of rather diligent collecting, there has naturally accumulated a certain amount of material which cannot be assigned to any of the described species. Some of these specimens are probably color or sexual varieties of forms here discussed; some may be sports, or mutants; a few will likely prove to be new species; but all are ignored in this study. It is believed that no new species should be described in this family unless a good series of both sexes is available, and this is not the case with the material at hand. It is also apparent that if new species are established the descriptions should not appear in a report of this type; the undetermined material is therefore not discussed further in this paper. It is safe to assume, however, that the sixty-one species here recognized do not represent all the forms of the basin and that future collecting will result in additions to the list.

Because of the fact that the literature relating to the family Membracidae is widely scattered and in many cases not readily accessible, it has been deemed advisable to include for each of the local species a short bibliography containing references of the greatest importance and including the reference to the original description. It happens, however, that many of the original descriptions are very meager and the species have never been redescribed. For this reason it is often difficult for the student to recognize the species unless carefully determined material is available for comparison. For each species, therefore, there is given a short technical description, which, it is believed, will enable the student to recognize at once the species under discussion without referring to other papers or to collections. These descriptions have been written in each case from type or paratype specimens, from specimens compared with types, or from material determined for the Cornell collection or for the author's collection by recognized authorities. With such data at hand it should be possible to recognize even the rarer forms, should such forms be again encountered in the basin. All terms used in the technical descriptions are fully explained in the section of this paper dealing with the external anatomy.

It should be noted that the measurements given in the technical descriptions of all the species are maximum lengths and widths unless otherwise noted. The length is considered as the greatest distance from the front of the head to the tips of the tegmina; the width as the greatest width of body, which is usually found at the humeral angles or from tip to tip of the suprahumeral horns when such structures are present. The structures are generally described as seen from a lateral view, since such an aspect of the insect usually shows most of the characters needed for systematic diagnosis. The term *tegmina* has been used thruout to refer to the front wings, since this word seems to have been generally adopted in the best terminology of the group and is a convenient term to prevent confusion in wing discussion.

The three subfamilies represented may be distinguished as follows:

Scutellum distinct .... **Centrotinae**
Scutellum wanting or concealed by the pronotum.
  Anterior tibiae foliaceous .... **Membracinae**
  Anterior tibiae simple .... **Smiliinae**

SUBFAMILY CENTROTINAE

Very few species of the subfamily Centrotinae are found outside of the tropical regions, and of these but one occurs in the Cayuga Lake Basin. The subfamily may be at once distinguished by the fact that the scutellum is present and is usually visible below or behind the pronotum.

The genus Microcentrus Stål

The one species found locally, *Microcentrus caryae* Fitch, is not a typical representative of the subfamily in that it does not show the grotesque development of the pronotum which is characteristic of most of the species of this division of the Membracidae.

1. *Microcentrus caryae* Fitch (Plate XXIII, 1, 2)

1851 *Uroxiphus caryae* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 52.
1851 *Centrotus caryae* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p 1147.
1856 *Uroxiphus caryae* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:450.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:450.
1858 Walk., List Hom. B. M. Suppl., p. 341.
1869 Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1869 *Microcentrus caryae* Stål, Bid. Memb. Kän., p. 295.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 440.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1890 *Uroxiphus caryae* Packard, Ins. Inj. For. and Shade Trees, p. 324.
1891 *Microcentrus caryae* Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1893 Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 474.
1896 *Uroxiphus caryae* Fowler, B. C. A., p. 159.
1896 *Phaulocentrus caryae* Fowler, B. C. A., p. 159.
1903 *Microcentrus caryae* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 268.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 117.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 94.
1910 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:170.
1915 Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 50.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 10.

Fairly common thruout the basin on hickory. Usually on young trees and preferring the higher branches. Since it is the only local representative of the subfamily Centrotinae, it may be easily distinguished from

PLATE XXIII

1, Lateral outline of prothorax and tegmen of *Microcentrus caryae* Fitch, showing scutellum; 2, front view

3, Lateral outline of *Campylenchia latipes* Say, adult; 4, head; 5, lateral outline of last nymphal instar

6, Egg masses of *Enchenopa binotata* Say; 7, single egg; 8, frothy egg-covering; 9, egg slits in wood; 10–14, nymphal instars; 15, head of adult; 16, adult

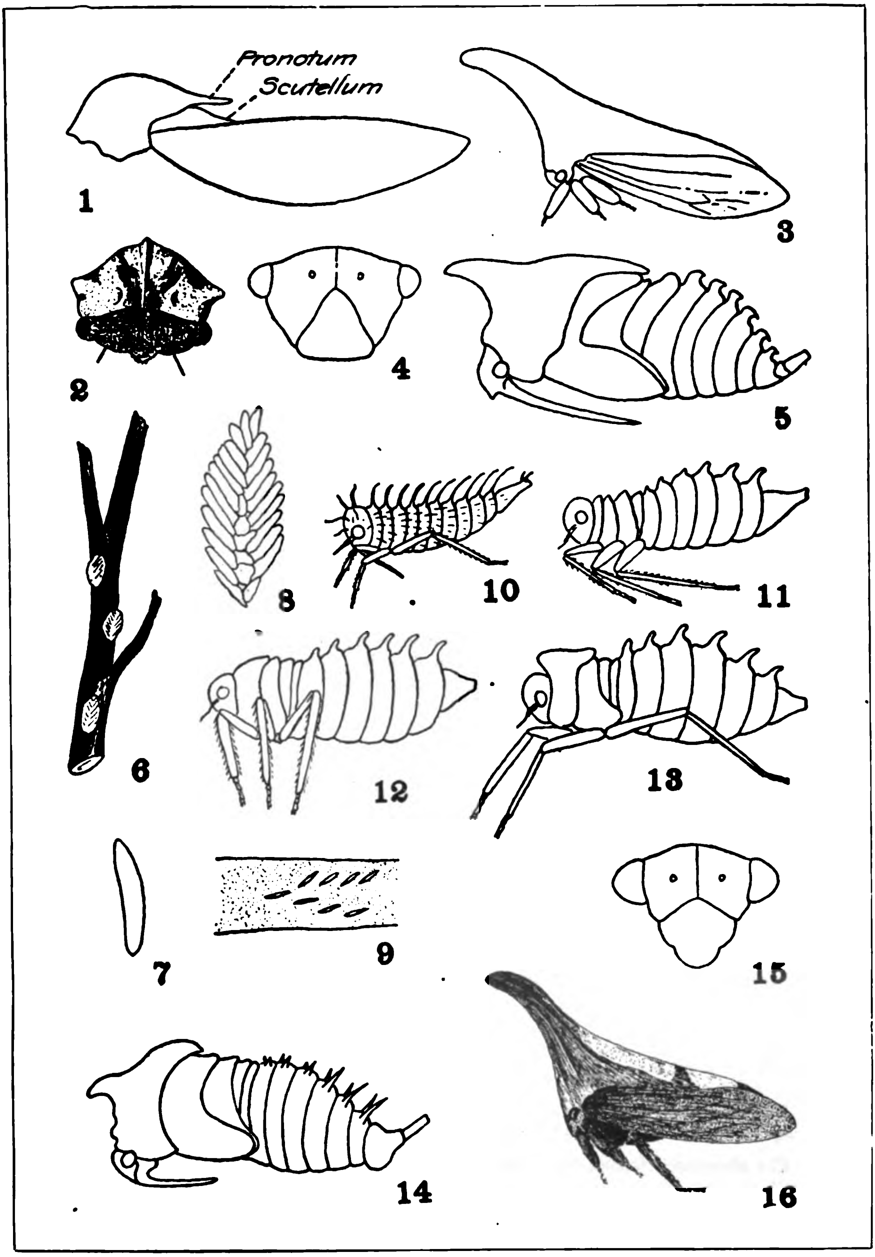


PLATE XXIII

all other species of Membracidae by the uncovered scutellum. In general appearance this insect suggests a large cercopid.

The life history of this species has not been completely worked out owing to the fact that no way has been found of rearing the nymphs in the laboratory. The first nymphs have been observed on August 13. The eggs are laid in young stems, and there is reason to believe that they may also be laid in the buds altho such oviposition has not actually been observed. The eggs winter over and are slow to hatch, making the species rather late in appearing. There is apparently but one brood a year. It is most numerous in Stations J, K, and N.

Technical description.— Gray-brown mottled with black; entire body broad and flat; pronotum roundly swollen above line of abdomen and wings; wings broadly tectiform.

Head perpendicular, twice as broad as long, roughly sculptured, closely punctate, densely pubescent, deep brown at base; eyes prominent, extending beyond lateral margins of pronotum, dark brown margined with lighter; ocelli small, pearly, farther from the eyes than from each other, with deep depression between them; clypeus prominent, broad, lighter in color than vertex above, extending far below lateral margin of head.

Prothorax subspherical with high median carina, coarsely punctate, pubescent; light brown marked with black on median ridge and above head; posterior margin truncate except for narrow process which projects to angles of tegmina and short sharp tooth on each latero-posterior angle. Scutellum broadly exposed, wide at base, truncate at tip, which does not reach apex of posterior process.

Tegmina translucent, pubescent, inner margins straight and meeting at median dorsal line; veins prominent and nodulate; apices of tegmina extending beyond tip of abdomen. Legs and undersurface of body light brown mottled with white. Undersurface of abdomen often tomentose.

Length 9–10 mm.; width 3 mm.

SUBFAMILY MEMBRACINAE

The basin yields two species of the subfamily Membracinae, belonging to two different genera — Campylenchia and Enchenopa. These genera may be distinguished from each other by the characters of the pronotal horn. In Campylenchia the lateral ridges of the anterior horn are located close to the superior margin, and the inferior carina is not foliaceous; in Enchenopa the lateral ridges are located about equally distant from the superior and inferior margins, and both the superior and the inferior carina are foliaceous.

The genus Campylenchia Stål

2. *Campylenchia latipes* Say (Plate xxiii, 3–5)

1824 *Membracis latipes*	Say, Narr. Long's Exp. App., p. 302.
1842	Harris, Treatise, p. 178.
1846	Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 252, no. 32.

1851 *Enchenopa latipes* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 482.
1851 *Enchophyllum latipes* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 47.
1851 *Enchenopa antonia* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 488.
1851 *Enchenopa venosa* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 488.
1851 *Enchenopa frigida* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 490.
1851 *Enchenopa bimacula* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 491.
1858 *Enchenopa frigida* Walk., List Hom. B. M. Suppl., p. 126.
1859 *Membracis latipes* Say, Compl. Writ. 1:202.
1862 *Enchenopa latipes* Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 221.
1869 *Campylenchia curvata* Stål (part), Hem. Fab. 2:43.
1876 *Enchenopa curvata* Uhler, List Hem. West Miss. River, p. 343.
1877 Uhler, Rept. Hem. Colo., 1875, p. 457.
1877 *Campylenchia curvata* Uhler, Wheeler's Rept. App. J, no. 1333.
1877 *Aconophora curvata* Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:349, no. 16.
1886 *Enchenopa latipes* Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:229.
1888 *Enchenopa curvata* Comstock, Int. Ent., p. 172.
1890 *Campylenchia curvata* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 440.
1891 *Enchenopa curvata* Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 *Campylenchia curvata* Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1893 Gossard, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^3:97.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 464.
1895 Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 68.
1903 *Enchenopa rectidorsum* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 49.
1903 *Enchenopa antonia* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 51.
1903 *Enchenopa curvata* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 52.
1903 *Enchenopa venosa* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 52.
1903 *Enchenopa frigida* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 52.
1903 *Aconophora curvata* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 133.
1905 *Campylenchia curvata* Van Duzee, N. Y. St. Mus. Bul. 97:552.
1908 Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 40:115.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 111.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 93.
1910 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:170.
1912 Matausch, Psyche 19:69.
1912 Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:336, pl. 32, fig. 17.
1913 Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:77, 111, figs. 11, 70, 86.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 52, 72.
1914 Kornh., Arch. Zellf. 12.
1914 Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 46:389.
1914 Bromley, Psyche 21:195.
1914 *Campylenchia latipes* Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 46:389.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 9.
1915 *Campylenchia curvata* Ball, Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 8:368.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 62.
1916 *Campylenchia latipes* Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 62, no. 1734.

Abundant in all parts of the basin. A grass-inhabiting species. Common in pastures and especially on alfalfa. Varies much in color and in the length of the pronotal horn. May be at once distinguished from *Enchenopa binotata* Say, the only other local representative of the subfamily Membracinae, by the lack of yellow markings on the dorsum. Usually taken in sweeping.

The imagoes have been reared from nymphs of the third instar found on alfalfa the first week in June, but these imagoes refused to oviposit in the laboratory. In the field the eggs are laid in the base of the stem and in the upper parts of the roots of alfalfa, sweet clover, or goldenrod. These eggs winter over in the above-named parts of the plants, which persist from one season to another. Specimens of this species collected at Saranac Lake, New York, on August 26, 1916, were found abundantly on both goldenrod and thistle, in the stems of which plants the eggs were found at that date, together with many evidences of former egg masses and of egg slits of the past season. At Saranac Lake, also, the species was attended by ants, which is not true of the local forms.

Apparently some adults winter over, for mature specimens have been collected as early as May 1, long before it would be possible for eggs to hatch and nymphs to mature. The nymphs of the first three instars are rarely seen and it is not known where they secrete themselves; but nymphs of the last two instars begin to appear commonly about the middle of June, and by the first of July the adults are numerous.

Technical description.— Uniform cinnamon brown, densely punctate, sparingly pubescent; single porrect pronotal horn projecting forward over head; head and first two pairs of legs broadly foliaceous, hind legs spined; tegmina opaque, punctate at basal and costal margins.

Head quadrate, somewhat declined, shining brown somewhat mottled with darker, lightly punctate, densely pubescent; eyes prominent; ocelli small, pearly, equidistant from each other and from the eyes and situated on a line passing thru centers of eyes; clypeus very broad, shining, scarcely punctate, broadly truncate at apex, tip strongly pubescent.

Prothorax produced anteriorly into a long, flattened horn, ridged in center and foliaceous above and below, varying greatly in length and degree of curve; posterior process strong, tectiform, reaching internal angles of tegmina; median dorsal carina strong and percurrent; entire pronotum concolorous, lightly punctate, sparingly pubescent with golden hairs; median lateral ridge reaching lateral margin.

Tegmina yellow-opaque; basal and costal areas punctate and pubescent; veins distinct, broad, and slightly pubescent; five apical and two discoidal cells; hind wings iridescent. Two anterior pairs of legs broadly spatulate and lightly pubescent at margins; posterior tibiae armed with black-tipped spines; tarsi much produced and lighter in color. Undersurface of body chocolate brown.

Length: from head to apices of elytra, 5 mm.; from tip of pronotal horn to apices of elytra, 8 mm. Width between humeral angles, 2 mm.

The genus Enchenopa A. & S.

3. *Enchenopa binotata* Say (Plate XXIII, 6–16)

1824	*Membracis binotata*	Say, Narr. Long's Exp. App., p. 301.
1835		Germ., Silb. Rev. 3:226.
1840		Blanch., Hist. Nat. Ins. 3:179.
1841		Harris, Rept. Ins. Mass., p. 181.
1842		Harris, Treatise, p. 178.
1842		Harris, Treatise, p. 181.
1846		Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 251, no. 29.

1851 *Enchophyllum binotatum* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 47.
1851 *Enchenopa binotata* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 481.
1851 *Enchenopa brevis* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 492.
1854 *Enchophyllum binotatum* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:pl. 13, fig. 17.
1854 *Thelia binotata* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:156.
1856 *Enchenopa binotata* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:146.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:464.
1858 *Enchenopa bifusifera* Walk., List Hom. B. M. Suppl., p. 125.
1859 *Membracis binotata* Say, Compl. Writ. 2:201.
1862 Harris, Treatise, p. 221, 224.
1862 Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 221.
1869 *Enchophyllum binotatum* Walsh and Riley, Amer. Ent. 1:248.
1869 *Enchenopa binotata* Stål, Bid. Memb. Kån., p. 272.
1869 *Enchenopa bifusifera* Stål, Bid. Memb. Kån., p. 273.
1877 *Enchenopa binotata* Glover, Rept. U. S. Dept. Agr., p. 28, fig. 11.
1878 Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 1, fig. 22.
1880 Riley, Amer. Ent. 3:254.
1880 *Enchophyllum binotatum* Lintner, Count. Gent. 45:711.
1881 Riley, Amer. Nat. 15:574.
1882 *Enchenopa binotata* Lintner, First Rept. Ins. N. Y., p. 281.
1883 Saunders, Ins. Inj. Fruits, p. 242.
1885 Dimmock, Psyche 4:241.
1886 Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:229.
1887 Lintner, Count. Gent. 52:783.
1888 Comstock, Int. Ent., p. 172, fig. 142.
1889 Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 21:6.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:389.
1890 Packard, Ins. Inj. For. and Shade Trees, p. 341, 512.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 440.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1893 Hopkins, W. Va. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 32:230.
1894 *Enchenopa brevis* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 463.
1894 *Enchenopa bifusifera* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 463.
1894 *Enchenopa binotata* Fowler, B. C. A., p. 9.
1894 Bruner, Rept. Nebr. Hort. Soc. 25:162.
1900 Lugger, Minn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 69:113–114.
1901 Howard, Ins. Book, p. 268, fig. 132.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 46, pl. 5, fig. 3, 3a.
1903 *Enchenopa porrecta* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 51, pl. 6, fig. 5–5b.
1905 *Enchenopa binotata* Kellogg, Amer. Ins., p. 168.
1908 Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 40:115.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 112.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 93.
1910 Comstock, Man. Stud. Ins., p. 155, fig. 193.
1912 Sand. and Jack., Elem. Ent., p. 124, fig. 169.
1912 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 20:58, pls. 5, 6.
1912 Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:336.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, fig. 53.
1913 Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:79.
1913 *Enchenopa porrecta* Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:111.
1913 *Enchenopa permutata* Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:111.
1914 *Enchenopa binotata* Kornh., Arch. Zellf. 12.
1915 Funkh., Journ. Econ. Ent. 8:368–371.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 10.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 62, no. 1735.

A very abundant species on trees, shrubs, and vines. Particularly common on butternut, locust, and bittersweet. Seldom found in the grass, in which respect it differs from the preceding species. The forms on the butternut are peculiar in egg-laying habits and in coloration. This species is unique in covering its egg masses with a frothy deposit. It is destructive to certain hosts because of the puncturing of buds and stems in egg-laying.

This insect shows two very distinct types of life history in the Cayuga Lake Basin. In the usual method the eggs are laid in the stems of the locust or the bittersweet and covered with the characteristic frothy mass (Plate XXIII, 6, 8), which has often been confused in literature with other insect deposits. The eggs winter over, the nymphs appearing early in May and requiring about six weeks for development. The adults usually spend their lives on the host on which the eggs are laid, but occasionally they migrate to succulent plants, such as daisy, joe-pye weed, and the like, to feed. They return to the original host during the latter part of August to oviposit. The mature insects are light brown in color, with the males slightly darker than the females. This is apparently the normal life history of the species and has been very completely described by Matausch (1912 a).

The second type of life history is found on the butternut, on which host the eggs are laid in the buds and are not covered with the heavy froth, and the adults are very different in color. This peculiar life history has been described by the author in an earlier paper (Funkhouser, 1915 c).

There is only one brood a year, but the nymphs are variable in the length of time taken for development and may be found in various stages thruout the greater part of the summer. The species is most abundant in Stations A, B, and L. It should be noted that this species is not attended by ants.

Technical description.— Much resembling the preceding species in size and in general appearance, but differing in shape of the head, in shape of sculpturing of the pronotal horn, and in bearing two yellow spots on the dorsal line of the pronotum.

Head longer than broad, uniform brown, finely but densely punctate, sparingly pubescent; eyes prominent, very deep brown; ocelli yellowish, farther from each other than from the eyes; clypeus longer than broad, rounded at tip, not punctate.

Prothorax finely punctate, sparsely pubescent; two distinct ridges on each side, the upper extending to the lateral margin; pronotal horn strongly curved, broadly foliaceous above, triquerate at tip; median dorsal carina high and percurrent; two dorsal spots of lemon yellow, the anterior about twice as long as the posterior; posterior process gradually acuminate, extending slightly beyond internal angles of tegmina.

Tegmina concolorous brown, opaque, costal margins slightly punctate, and feebly pubescent at base; veins distinct; five apical and one discoidal cell. First two pairs of legs broadly foliaceous; hind tibiae spined; tarsi thin.
Length 5 mm.; width 2 mm.

SUBFAMILY SMILIINAE

By far the largest number of the species of Membracidae in the United States belong to the subfamily Smiliinae, and it is as representatives of this subfamily that all the remaining species of the Cayuga Lake Basin are to be considered.

The division is a large one and includes many genera. These genera may be separated by the following key:

- A. Elytra entirely free; not covered by pronotum.
  - a. Veins of corium closely united at base.
    - b. Suprahumeral horns present .... Ceresa
    - bb. Suprahumeral horns absent .... Stictocephala
  - aa. Veins of corium widely separated at base.
    - b. Elytra with five apical areas; veins distinct .... Acutalis
    - bb. Elytra with four apical areas; veins indistinct .... Micrutalis
- AA. Elytra partly or entirely covered by pronotum.
  - a. Terminal cell of hind wing sessile, its base truncate.
    - b. Pronotum without horn or crest.
      - c. Dorsum low and rounded .... Carynota
      - cc. Dorsum high, compressed, and foliaceous .... Archasia
    - bb. Pronotum with horn or crest.
      - c. Horn anterior and porrect .... Thelia
      - cc. Horn a flat dorsal crest.
        - d. Crest arising from between humeral angles .... Glossonotus
        - dd. Crest arising from behind humeral angles.
          - e. Crest step-shaped .... Heliria
          - ee. Crest not step-shaped .... Telamona
  - aa. Terminal cell of hind wing triangular and petiolate.
    - b. Base of corium with three veins.
      - c. Corium without cross-vein at base .... Smilia
      - cc. Corium with cross-vein at base.
        - d. Dorsum rounded .... Ophiderma
        - dd. Dorsum strongly compressed.
          - e. Pronotum inflated posteriorly .... Xantholobus
          - ee. Pronotum not inflated posteriorly.
            - f. Crest highest anteriorly .... Atymna
            - ff. Crest highest near middle .... Cyrtolobus
    - bb. Base of corium with two veins.
      - c. Apical cell of tegmen transverse .... Vanduzea
      - cc. Apical cell of tegmen triangular.
        - d. Dorsum strongly elevated, with deep median notch .... Entylia
        - dd. Dorsum only slightly elevated, with weak median depression .. Publilia

The genus Ceresa A. & S.

The first of the genera of the Smiliinae to be considered is the genus Ceresa, of which seven species are represented in the basin. This genus is usually recognized by its green color and its prominent suprahumeral horns. It is one of the most widely distributed of the genera of this subfamily. The species may be separated by the following key:

a. Brown with transverse bands .... ***diceros***
aa. Green or greenish without bands.
  b. Undersurface of body strongly marked with black .... ***basalis***
  bb. Undersurface of body not strongly marked with black.
    c. Dorsal crest marked with brown or reddish; species small.
      d. Horns long, sharp, much recurved and elevated .... ***constans***
      dd. Horns short, little elevated, only slightly recurved .... ***Palmeri***
    cc. Dorsal crest concolorous.
      d. Small, 7–8 mm.; very hairy .... ***borealis***
      dd. Large, 8–10 mm.; hairs if present scattered.
        e. Horns long, sloping upward and recurved; clypeus much prolonged beyond vertex .... ***taurina***
        ee. Horns stout, nearly straight; clypeus short .... ***bubalus***

4. *Ceresa diceros* Say (Plate XXIV, 1, 2)

1824 *Membracis diceros* Say, Narr. Long's Exp. App., p. 299.
1835 *Smilia diceros* Germ., Silb. Rev. 3:237.
1840 *Membracis diceros* Blanch., Hist. Nat. Ins. 3:181.
1842 Harris, Treatise, p. 178.
1843 *Ceresa postfasciata* A. & S., Hem., p. 540, pl. 10, fig. 3.
1846 *Ceresa diceros* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 285, no. 11.
1851 Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 50.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 527.
1854 Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:pl. 3, fig. 16.
1859 *Membracis diceros* Say, Compl. Writ. 1:199.
1862 Harris, Treatise, p. 221.
1862 *Ceresa diceros* Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 221.
1869 Stål, Bid. Memb. Kän., p. 245.
1869 Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1872 Uhler, List Hem. Colo. and N. Mex., p. 472.
1876 Uhler, List Hem. West Miss. River, p. 343.
1877 Glover, Rept. U. S. Dept. Agr., p. 29, fig. 16.
1877 Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:215, no. 1.
1878 Uhler, List Hem. Dak. and Mont., p. 509.
1878 Glover, MS. Journ. Hem., pl. 1, figs. 27, 28.
1886 Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:234.
1888 Comstock, Int. Ent., p. 172.
1889 Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 21:6.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:389.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 400.
1895 Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 66.
1900 Lugger, Minn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 69:110.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 169, pl. 35, figs. 2–3a.
1903 *Ceresa vitidalis* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 172, pl. 36, figs. 3–3b.
1905 *Ceresa diceros* Van Duzee, N. Y. St. Mus. Bul. 97:552.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 35, pl. 1, fig. 12.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 90.

1910 *Ceresa diceros* Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:164.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 13, 14, 29.
1913 Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:80, 100.
1914 Bromley, Psyche 21:195.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 6.
1916 Van Dusee, Check List Hem., p. 58, no. 1570.

Is common on black elder (*Sambucus canadensis* L.) in the lower parts of the valley, and has been taken on a variety of other hosts. An active insect, easily disturbed, but usually returning to its host after a short flight. Easily identified by the brown transverse bands.

The life history of this species has been followed from egg to adult on the black elder. The eggs are laid in the bark about the middle of August, in the second-year stems in deep slits. These eggs winter over and hatch about the middle of May. The earliest record for an adult is July 29, 1914, the period of development being unusually long due to the fact that the last nymphal instar is of extreme length. The adults are abundant during August and disappear about the last of September. In seasons in which warm weather occurred very late in the fall, the eggs have been known to hatch but the nymphs from these eggs did not survive the winter; and one brood a year is believed to be normal. The life history of this species may be best observed in Stations B and P.

Technical description.— Dark brown with transverse bands of yellowish white; suprahumeral horns stout and blunt; posterior process decurved; tegmina smoky hyaline.

Head broader than long, sculptured, basal part strongly and smoothly curved, front surface light yellow faintly marked with brown, faintly longitudinally ridged, very lightly or not at all punctate or pubescent; eyes prominent, extending beyond adjoining lateral margin of pronotum; ocelli shining, transparent, nearer to each other than to the eyes; sclerites of front projecting over clypeus at internal angles with a small hook; clypeus strong, swollen, roughly three-lobed, the central lobe the largest, tips strongly hirsute.

Pronotum densely and coarsely punctate; anterior surface slightly convex, light yellow with numerous brown markings, sparingly pubescent with rather long hairs; suprahumeral horns projecting outward and very slightly backward; lateral surfaces not pubescent, brown with two transverse light bands, the anterior broad and irregular in about center, the posterior narrower and regular just before apex of posterior process; posterior process gradually acute, extending beyond internal angles of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, tips smoky, bases opaque and lightly punctate; five apical and three discoidal cells. Undersurface of body very dark brown. Femora dark brown above; tibiae and tarsi ferruginous.

Length 9 mm.; width between humeral horns 5.5 mm.

5. *Ceresa bubalus* Fabr. (Plate XXIV, 3–11)

1794 *Membracis bubalus* Fabr., Ent. Syst. 4:14, no. 23.
1803 *Centrotus bubalus* Fabr., Syst. Rhyng., p. 20, no. 18.
1840 *Membracis bubalus* Blanch., Hist. Nat. Ins. 3:181.
1846 *Centrotus bubalus* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 286, no. 11.
1851 *Ceresa bubalus* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 50.

1851	*Ceresa bubalus*	Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 531.
1851		Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1140.
1853		Harris, Hort. n. s. 3:283–284.
1853		Harris, Bost. Cult. 15:250.
1854		Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:155, pl. 3.
1856		Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:355.
1856		Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:359.
1856		Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:390.
1856		Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:335, 359, 390.
1858		Walk., List Hom. B. M. Suppl., p. 131.
1862	*Membracis bubalus*	Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 221.
1862	*Ceresa bubalus*	Fitch, Amer. Agr. 21:172.
1862		Fitch, Count. Gent. 19:335.
1862		Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 221.
1864		Fitch, Count. Gent. 23:386.
1867		Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 12:889.
1868		Walsh and Riley, Amer. Ent. 1:38.
1869		Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1869		Stål, Hem. Fab. 2:24.
1869		Stål, Bid. Memb. Kän., p. 245.
1869		Walsh and Riley, Amer. Ent. 1:250.
1870		Riley, Amer. Ent. and Bot. 2:245.
1872		Riley, Fourth Rept. Ins. Mo., p. 119.
1872		Riley, Amer. Agr. 31:302.
1873		Riley, Fifth Rept. Ins. Mo., p. 121–122, figs. 50–55.
1876		Uhler, List Hem. West Miss. River, p. 343.
1877		Glover, Rept. U. S. Dept. Agr., p. 29, fig. 15.
1877		Uhler, Rept. Hem. Colo. 1875, p. 456.
1877		Uhler, Wheeler's Rept. App. J, p. 1332.
1877		Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:215, no. 2.
1877		Lintner, Count. Gent. 42:463.
1878		Uhler, List Hem. Dak. and Mont., p. 509.
1878		Glover, MS. Journ. Hem., pl. 2, fig. 32.
1878		Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 1, fig. 29.
1880		Walton, Trans. Iowa Hort. Soc. 15:516.
1882		Riley, Amer. Nat. 16:822.
1882		Lintner, First Rept. Ins. N. Y., p. 284, 315, 331.
1883		Cooke, Ins. Inj. Farm, p. 71, figs. 33–35.
1883		Saunders, Ins. Inj. Fruits, p. 45, fig. 36.
1883		Popenoe, Rept. Kans. Hort. Soc., p. 196.
1883		Riley, Rural New-Yorker 42:411.
1883		Riley, Prairie Farmer 55:86.
1883		Osborn, Trans. Iowa Hort. Soc. 18:510–521.
1884		Osborn, Iowa Agr. Coll., Ent. Bul. 2:89.
1886		Marlatt, Kans. Acad. Sci. 10:84–85.
1886		Jack, Can. Ent. 18:21.
1886		Jack, Can. Ent. 18:51–54.
1886		Jack, Rept. Ent. Soc. Ont. 16:16.
1886		Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:235.
1886		Osborn, The North West, p. 3.
1887		Jack, Rept. Ent. Soc. Ont. 17:18.
1887		Lintner, Rept. State Ent. N. Y. 4:266.
1888		Lintner, Fourth Rept. Ins. N. Y., p. 146.
1888		Comstock, Int. Ent., p. 171, fig. 141.
1889		Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 21:6.

1889 *Ceresa bubalus* Murtfeldt, Rept. Mo. Hort. Soc. 32:467.
1890 Lintner, Seventh Rept. Ins. N. Y., p. 360.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1890 Weed, Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 2d ser:3:130.
1890 Packard, Ins. Inj. For. and Shade Trees, p. 335.
1890 Osborn, Orange Judd Farmer, p. 244.
1890 Weed, Ins. Life 3:4.
1890 Weed, Amer. Nat. 24:785.
1890 Weed, Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. 9:58.
1890 Weed, Rept. Columbus Hort. Soc. 18:175.
1891 Weed, Insects and Insecticides, p. 36.
1891 Osborn, Orange Judd Farmer, p. 116.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1891 Fletcher, Rept. Ent. and Bot. Can., p. 191.
1892 Weed, Amer. Gardener.
1892 Osborn, Trans. Iowa Hort. Soc. 27:119.
1892 Webster, Ohio Farmer, p. 258.
1892 Fitch, Rept. N. Y. St. Mus. 4:48.
1892 Fitch, Rept. N. Y. St. Ent. 9:30.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1893 Webster, Rept. Ohio Hort. Soc. 26:68.
1893 Bruner, Rept. Nebr. Hort. Soc. 24:228.
1893 Murtfeldt, Rept. Mo. Hort. Soc. 36:116.
1893 Gillette, Colo. Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. 6:55.
1893 Riley, Proc. Ent. Soc. Wash. 3:88–92.
1893 Riley, Ins. Life 6:206.
1893 Hopkins, W. Va. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 32:230.
1893 Lintner, Eighth Rept. Ins. N. Y., p. 294.
1893 Osborn, Fr. and For. Tree Ins., p. 24, fig. 30.
1894 Murtfeldt, Colo. Rural World, March.
1894 Murtfeldt, Colo. Rural World, May.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 401.
1894 Slingerland, Rural New-Yorker 53:297.
1894 Webster, Ohio Farmer, p. 409.
1894 Marlatt, Ins. Life 7:8–14.
1894 Bruner, Rept. Nebr. Hort. Soc. 25:162, 176.
1894 Murtfeldt, U. S. Dept. Agr., Ent. Bul. 32:38.
1895 Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 65.
1896 Gillette, Colo. Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. 9:147.
1896 Harvey, Maine Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept. 12:118.
1897 Marlatt, U. S. Dept. Agr., Bur. Ent. Cir. 23.
1897 Hillman, Nev. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 36:38.
1898 Gillette, Colo. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 47:64.
1899 Slingerland, Rural New-Yorker 58:362.
1899 Webster, Ohio Farmer, p. 318.
1899 Lintner, Fourteenth Rept., p. 317, 357, 365.
1900 Summers, Iowa Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 49:1–6.
1900 Green, Trans. Ill. Hort. Soc. 34:118.
1900 Popenoe, Kans. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 99:52.
1900 Felt, Count. Gent., p. 281.
1900 Lugger, Minn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 69:106–110.
1901 Lockhead, Can. Hort. 34:221.
1902 Banks, U. S. Dept. Agr., Exp. Sta. Bul. 34:28.
1903 Washburn, Minn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 84:52.
1903 Washburn, Rept. St. Ent. Minn. 8:52.

PLATE XXIV

1, Dorsal outline of *Ceresa diceros* Say; 2, lateral outline of last nymphal instar

3, *Ceresa bubalus* Fabricius; 4, dorsal outline; 5, head; 6, frontal outline; 7, egg scars; 8, egg; 9, egg mass; 10, 11, last two nymphal instars

12, Dorsal outline of *Ceresa taurina* Fitch; 13, head; 14, frontal outline; 15, lateral outline of last nymphal instar

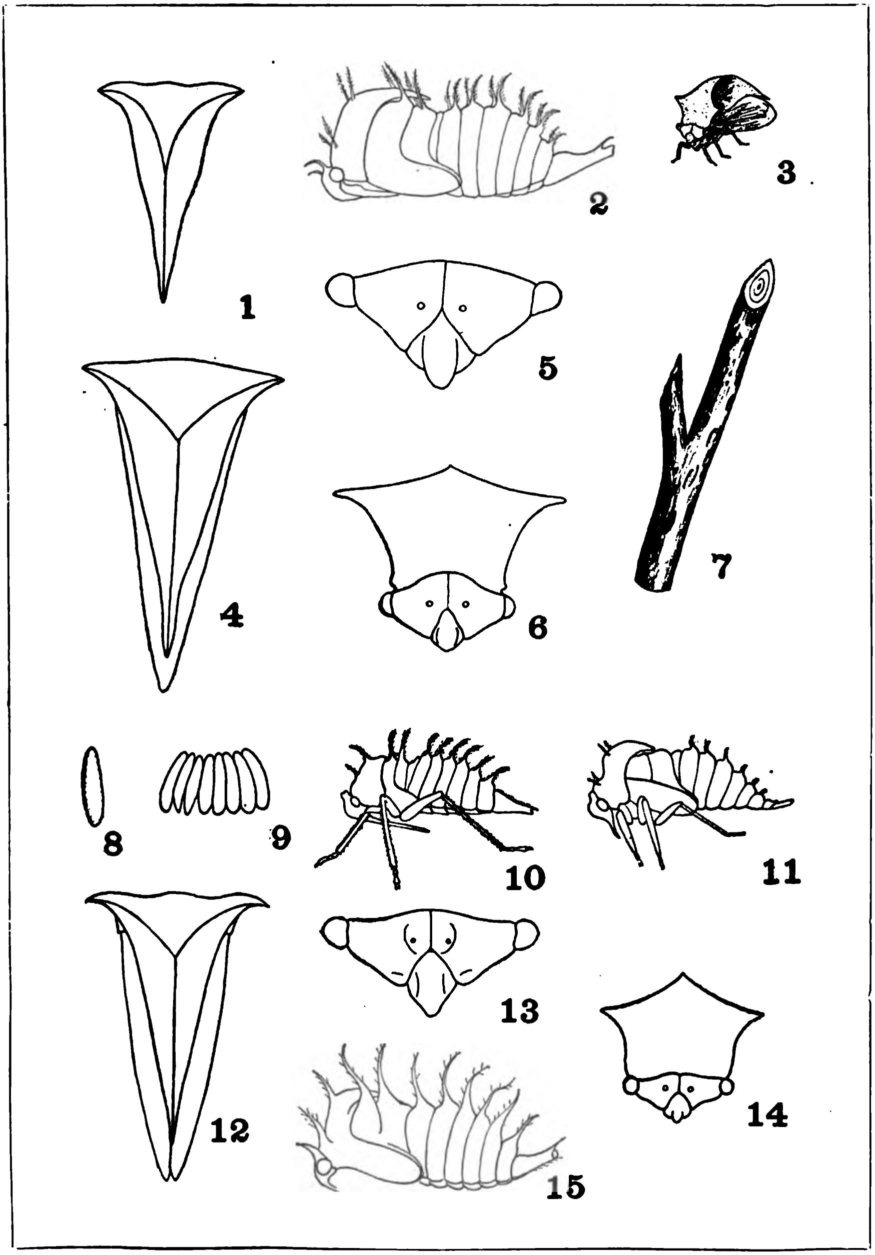


PLATE XXIV

1903 *Ceresa bubalus* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 170, 220, 261, pl. 35, figs. 4, 4a.
1903 Cooley, Rept. St. Ent. Colo. 1:252.
1904 Felt, Rept. St. Ent. N. Y. 20:407.
1904 Felt, N. Y. St. Mus. Bul. 97:407.
1904 Pettit, Mich. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 24:7.
1905 Felt, U. S. Dept. Agr., Bur. Ent. Bul. 52:51.
1905 Fletcher, Rept. Ent. Soc. Ont. 36:89.
1905 Kellogg, Amer. Ins., p. 169.
1906 Washburn, Minn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 100:47–48.
1907 Adams, Ark. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 92:7.
1907 Swenk, Rept. Nebr. Ent., p. 21–22.
1907 Surface, Dept. Agr. Pa., Zool. Bul. 5:3, pl. 9.
1908 Swenk, Nebr. Hort. Soc. Bul. 19:17–19.
1908 Garman, Kans. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 133:59, fig. 11.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 36.
1908 Washburn, Rept. St. Ent. Minn. 12:143.
1909 Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 41:380, 381.
1909 Webster, Journ. Econ. Ent. 2:212.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 90.
1909 Sharp, Cambridge Nat. Hist. Ins. 2:577.
1909 Smith, Ins. Friends and Enem., p. 53, fig. 16.
1910 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:165.
1910 Cooley, Rept. St. Ent. Mont. 7:53.
1910 Cooley, Mont. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 79:53.
1910 Hodgkiss, Apple and Pear Memb., p. 92–100.
1911 Girault, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 19:15.
1911 Walden, Guide to Ins. Conn., pl. 3, fig. 25.
1912 Sand. and Jack., Elem. Ent., p. 123, fig. 168.
1912 Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:331.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 38, 58.
1913 Reh, Handb. Pflanz., p. 637.
1913 Walden, Conn. Geo. and Nat. Hist. Surv. Bul. 16, pl. 3, fig. 25.
1913 Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:79, 100, figs. 5, 7, 10, 87.
1913 Baldwin, Rept. Ent. Ind. 6:70.
1913 Morrison, Rept. Ent. Ind. 6:121.
1913 Shelford, Anim. Comm., p. 265, fig. 259; p. 276, table 58.
1914 Van Duzee, Trans. S. Diego Soc. Nat. Hist. 2^1:48.
1915 Essig, Calif. Comm. Hort. 4:61–62.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 6.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 58, no. 1572.

Very common on grasses and low shrubs. Widest range of hosts and localities of any membracid in the region. Nymphs feed on succulent herbs, particularly sweet clover (*Melilotus alba*); eggs are laid on young trees, particularly elm and apple. Adults are taken by sweeping and on the lower branches of trees. The largest of the local species of the genus. Injures stems by egg punctures. Recognized by its large size, broad, convex metopidium, and stout, short horns.

The life history of this species has been worked out in the basin on two distinct combinations of hosts — apple and aster, and elm and sweet clover. In both cases the life of the insect is the same. The eggs are laid in the bark of stems two or three years old. The egg slits are peculiar (Plate XXIV, 7); being curved and parallel and so close together that the wound between them does not heal and thus considerable injury may be done to the twig. Oviposition occurs most commonly in early September. The process lasts about half an hour, during which time six or eight eggs are laid in the slit. These eggs winter over and hatch early in May. The young nymphs leave the tree on which the eggs were hatched and migrate to succulent weeds, sweet clover being in this locality the favorite host. About six weeks are required for complete development, each of the first four instars requiring approximately a week and the last instar two weeks. Ecdysis takes place on the main stem of the weed, usually near the top of the plant. The process requires about ten minutes. The early life of the adult is spent on the weeds and low herbs, but later the females migrate to the trees for egg-laying. Marlatt (1887) records the eggs of this species on weeds, but this has not been noted in the studies of the local forms. The species is of considerable economic importance because of the damage done to stems. Not only are the egg slits large enough to cause material mechanical damage, but the puncture allows the easy ingress of fungi and of other insects.

Technical description.—Bright green fading to yellowish in cabinet specimens; horns heavy and stout, pointing directly outward; metopidium broadly convex; dorsal crest high and regularly arched; posterior process slender and recurved; tegmina and hind wings entirely hyaline; clypeus heavy, stout, and bristled.

Head one-third broader than long, longitudinal striate sculpturing; basal part broadly curved, front surface yellow, not punctate nor pubescent; eyes prominent, dark brown, extending beyond lateral margin of pronotum adjoining; ocelli prominent, protruding, with brilliant orange borders, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus strong, heavy, continuing lateral outline of face, apex bristled.

Pronotum densely and coarsely punctate; metopidium strongly convex, smooth impunctate areas above the eyes, sparingly pubescent with short scattered hairs; suprahumeral horns stout, blunt, projecting almost directly outward, not at all upward, tips often brownish, whitish line extending backward from tip to lateral margin; lateral surface marked with light-colored, semicircular impression; posterior process slender, depressed, extending halfway to apices of tegmina and slightly beyond tip of abdomen, apex brownish.

Tegmina hyaline, bases lightly punctate. Undersurface of body yellowish. Legs greenish. Length to apices of tegmina, 10 mm.; width between horns, 6 mm.

6. *Ceresa taurina* Fitch (Plate XXIV, 12–15)

1835 *Membracis taurina* Harris, Cat. Ins. Mass., p. 579.
1835 Harris, Rept. Geol. Surv. Mass., p. 579.
1842 Harris, Treatise, p. 178.
1851 *Enchenopa taurina* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 495.

1856 *Ceresa taurina* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:335.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:335.
1858 Walk., List Hom. B. M. Suppl., p. 131.
1862 *Membracis taurina* Harris, Treatise, p. 221.
1862 *Ceresa taurina* Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 221.
1869 Stål, Bid. Memb. Kän., p. 245.
1869 *Membracis taurinus* Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 550.
1877 *Ceresa taurina* Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:215, no. 3.
1882 Lintner, First Rept. Ins. N. Y., p. 133.
1884 Osborn, Iowa Agr. Coll., Ent. Bul. 2:90.
1886 Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:235.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:388.
1892 Osborn, Trans. Iowa Hort. Soc. 27:119.
1893 Riley, Proc. Ent. Soc. Wash. 3:88–92.
1893 Riley, Ins. Life 6:206.
1893 Osborn, Fr. and For. Tree Ins., p. 24.
1894 Bruner, Rept. Nebr. Hort. Soc. 25:162.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 403.
1894 Marlatt, Ins. Life 7:8–14.
1900 Green, Trans. Ill. Hort. Soc. 34:118.
1901 Howard, Ins. Book, p. 238, fig. 131.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 173.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 220, no. 39.
1904 Snow, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 2:349.
1908 Washburn, Rept. St. Ent. Minn. 12:—.
1908 Surface, Dept. Agr. Pa., Zool. Bul. 6:38.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 37, pl. 1, fig. 19.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 90.
1909 Sharp, Cambridge Nat. Hist. Ins. 2:577.
1910 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:165.
1910 Hodgkiss, Apple and Pear Memb., p. 100–105.
1911 Girault, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 19:15.
1912 Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:332, pl. 28, fig. 3.
1913 Reh, Handb. Pflanz., p. 637.
1913 Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:80, 100, figs. 8, 9.
1914 Bromley, Psyche 21:198.
1915 Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 50.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 6.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 58, no. 1576.

Common on fruit trees and bushes. Wide range of hosts. Often taken on apple, pear, raspberry, and blackberry. More abundant than *C. bubalus*. Recognized by the curved metopidium and the long, recurved horns. One of the commonest, and next to *C. bubalus* the largest, of the local Ceresas.

This species has been reared from eggs taken from apple and from pear. Locally the eggs are more numerous on the former host plant. In the field the insects may be reared from egg to adult on the tree if the branch containing the egg mass is covered with netting. Normally, however, the insects leave the tree after the second molt and drop to the ground, where they feed on small annuals. The eggs are laid in the buds just under the outer bud scale. They are placed upright and close together, usually three or four in a row but sometimes singly. The tip of the egg projects from the bud and is easily visible to the naked eye. The eggs are laid about the first of September and winter over. The first nymphs are found the last week in April and reach maturity the last week in July. The first instar requires about eight days and the second seven, after which the nymphs migrate to weeds and bushes to feed. The insect shows as wide a range of feeding plants as any membracid in the basin and has been found on a large number of hosts. The second two instars require about seven and ten days, respectively, and the last over two weeks. These records agree fairly well with those obtained by Hodgkiss (1910:89) in his Geneva experiments. Only one brood a year is found locally, and the appearance of the nymphs and the adults is comparatively uniform from year to year. The species is abundant in most of the orchards of the basin.

Technical description.— Slightly smaller than the preceding species but resembling it in color; body slender and metopidium concave transversely; horns sharp, curving upward and backward.

Head roughly triangular, wider than long, roughly sculptured, not punctate nor pubescent, basal margin strongly curved; eyes prominent, brown and in some cases barred with darker, extending beyond the adjoining lateral margins of the pronotum; ocelli prominent, pearly, occasionally margined with reddish, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus subrectangular, swollen and protruding, extending for half its length beyond lateral margin of face, faintly trilobed, apex bristled.

Pronotum deeply and coarsely punctured, bright green fading to yellow, sparingly pubescent; metopidium strongly concave with curved, transverse margin, area above eyes smooth; suprahumeral horns slender and sharp, extending upward and backward, often much curved, tips generally darker than bases; dorsal crest high and strongly curved; semicircular lateral impression deep and brownish; posterior process slender, strongly decurved, extending beyond apex of abdomen and halfway to tips of tegmina.

Tegmina and wings entirely hyaline. Underparts of body and legs yellow-green.

Length including tegmina, 9 mm.; width between tips of horns, 5.5 mm.

This species has often been confused in literature with *C. bubalus*, but is now recognized as entirely distinct.

7. *Ceresa constans* Walker (Plate xxv, 1, 2, 4)

1851	*Thelia constans*	Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 563.
1869	*Ceresa constans*	Stål, Bid. Memb. Kän., p. 245.
1877		Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:215, no. 4.
1894		Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 404.
1903		Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 173.
1908		Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 37, pl. 1, figs. 7, 27.
1915		Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 6.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 58, no. 1577.

PLATE XXV

1, Dorsal outline of *Ceresa constans* Walker; 2, head; 4, frontal outline

3, Lateral outline of last nymphal instar of *Ceresa Palmeri* Van Duzee; 5, dorsal outline of adult; 6, head

7, Dorsal outline of *Ceresa borealis* Fairmaire; 8, head; 9, last nymphal instar

10, Dorsal outline of *Ceresa basalis* Walker; 11, head

12, Pronotum of *Stictocephala inermis* Fabricius; 13, head; 14, last nymphal instar

15, Pronotum of *Stictocephala lutea* Walker; 16, frontal outline; 17, head

18, Lateral outline of *Micrutalis calva* Say

19, Lateral outline of *Micrutalis dorsalis* Fitch

20, Lateral outline of *Acutalis tartarea* Say

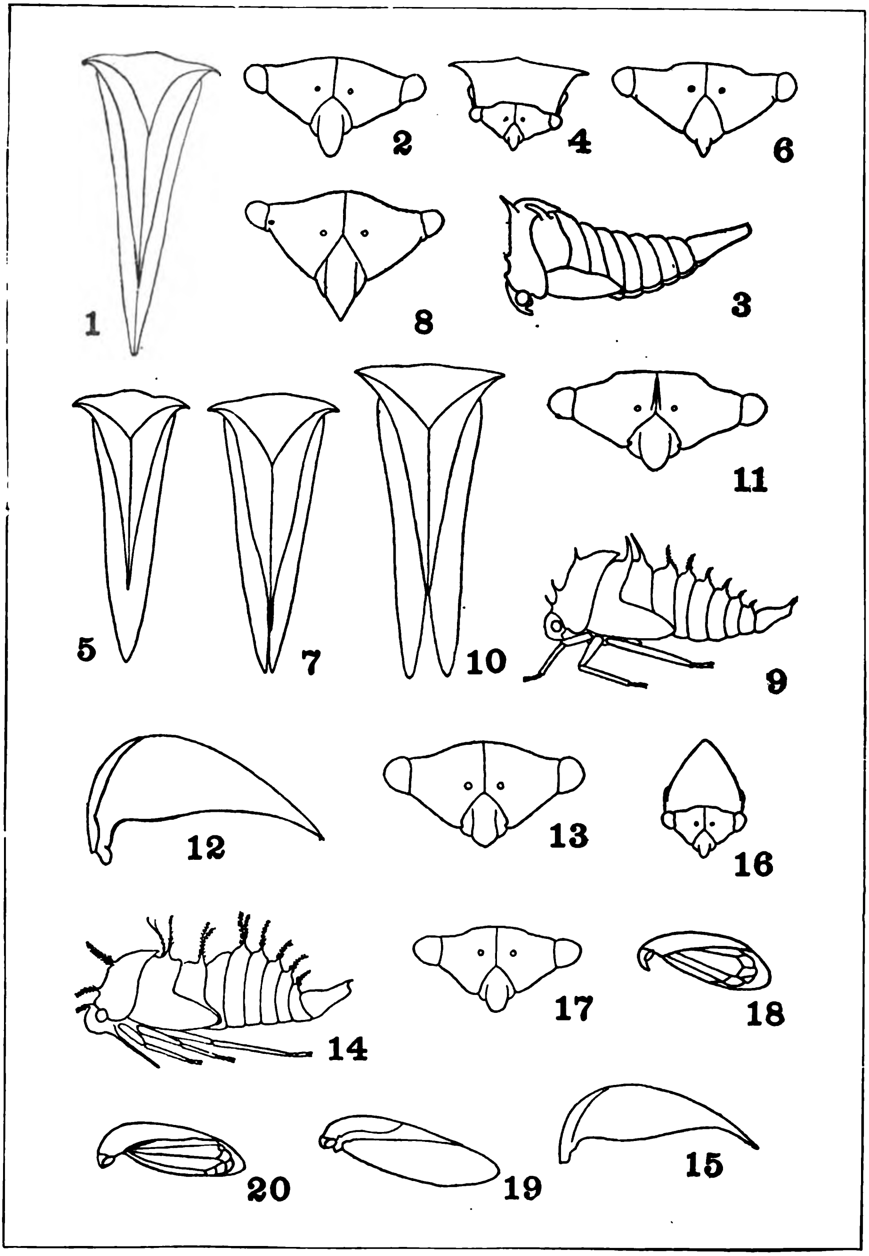


Plate XXV

Comparatively common on locust. Seldom taken on any other host. Recognized by its small size, reddish carina, and long, recurved horns. The life history of this species is not known.

Technical description.— Small and distinctly reddish; dorsal crest low, median lateral line red; metopidium convex; horns sharp and much recurved; posterior process nearly straight, usually tipped with red; head triangular; tegmina and wings hyaline.

Head subtriangular, weakly sculptured, faintly longitudinally furrowed, very finely and lightly punctate, not pubescent; eyes prominent, dark brown with lighter edges, extending beyond adjoining lateral margins of pronotum; ocelli glassy, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus much longer than wide, extending for more than half its length beyond lateral margin of face, tip hirsute.

Pronotum deeply and coarsely punctate, not pubescent, median carina prominent; dorsal crest low, rising but little higher than tips of suprahumeral horns; horns slender, sharp, much recurved, extending upward and curving backward; metopidium convex, regular; lateral semicircular impression deep, concolorous; posterior process nearly straight, not reaching the extremity of the abdomen and reaching barely one-third the distance to the tips of the tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline. Undersurface of body and legs yellowish.

Length 8 mm.; width 4 mm.

8. *Ceresa Palmeri* Van Duzee (Plate xxv, 3, 5, 6)

1908 *Ceresa Palmeri* Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 40:114.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 38, pl. 1, fig. 33.
1910 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:166.
1912 Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:332, pl. 28, fig. 4.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 6.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 58, no. 1578.

Rather rare. Resembles *C. constans* in size and coloration but differs from that species in the shape of the pronotal horns. Close to *C. borealis* in general appearance but is smooth and not hairy. Has been taken only on young hickory. The newly emerged adults are very strongly marked with reddish.

A growth of small hickories along a little-used wagon road thru Coy's Glen produces this species each year, and both the eggs and the first nymphal stages have been found on these saplings. Attempts to rear the species in the field, however, have failed as the insects died after the second instar. Apparently the insect requires a second host as a feeding plant, but this host is not known. The first two instars in the cases in which records were obtained averaged five days for the first and six for the second.

Technical description.— Near the preceding species, but differing particularly in shape of suprahumeral horns, which are short, terete, and but little recurved; small, reddish species, with pronotum rather high, not pubescent.

Head wider than long, yellowish, only faintly sculptured, not punctate; eyes prominen reddish with white borders, extending beyond adjoining lateral margins of pronotum; ocelli not prominent, pearly with reddish margins, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus continuing lateral margin of face, swollen and pubescent at tip.

Pronotum yellow-green very strongly marked with brown and reddish; dorsal crest curved, strongly marked with red; lateral semicircular impression faint, area within it lighter in color than surrounding pronotum; posterior process slightly curved downward, about reaching tip of abdomen but not extending halfway to extremities of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, wrinkled, bases slightly punctate. Undersurface of body yellowish. Legs concolorous yellow-green in life, fading to pale yellow in cabinet specimens.

Length 8 mm.; width 3.5 mm.

9. *Ceresa borealis* Fairmaire (Plate xxv, 7–9)

1846	*Ceresa borealis*	Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 284, no. 5.
1851		Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 526.
1908		Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 38, pl. 1, figs. 8, 32.
1909		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 90.
1910		Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:166.
1913		Reh, Handb. Pflanz., p. 637.
1913		Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, p. 82, fig. 5.
1915		Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 6.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 58, no. 1579.

The most abundant of the species of the genus in the basin. Found on a wide variety of plants and in a wide range of localities. Commonest on low shrubs and low trees. Close to *C. bubalus*, but smaller and darker and easily recognized by the very hairy pronotum.

This species has been reared in the laboratory from nymphs taken from pignut and fed on sweet clover. Hodgkiss (1910:107) reports the species as commonly ovipositing on apple and pear, but the orchards in the basin have shown very few instances of infection by *borealis*, while the eggs have been very abundant on pignut, hickory, young willow, and raspberry.

The eggs are laid in both the buds and the smaller twigs. As in *C. taurina*, the insect deposits the eggs in rows, with the tips projecting; but the number of eggs averages higher than in *C. taurina*, being from six to eight in a series. There appears to be one regular brood and part of a second each season. Some eggs are laid early, oviposition having been observed the first week in August. It continues until the last of September. Apparently the eggs first laid hatch the same season, but it is doubtful whether the adults from these eggs are successful in surviving the winter. The first nymphs have been observed in the field about the middle of April and by the first of May they are abundant. They have not been reared in the field owing to the fact that, like most Ceresas, they require a change of feeding plant for development. In the insectary the nymphal stages averaged as follows:

First stage	5 days
Second stage	11 days
Third stage	9 days
Fourth stage	10 days
Fifth stage	12 days

The various individuals from the same egg cluster do not develop uniformly, some reaching maturity fully a week earlier than others; but adults are common in the field by the middle of June.

The species is found in all parts of the basin.

Technical description.— Resembling *C. bubalus* in general outline but much smaller and very hairy; metopidium convex; dorsum curved, posterior process only slightly decurved; head impunctate; notch of last ventral segment of female broad and triangular.

Head broader than long, yellowish, roughly sculptured, faintly longitudinally striate, not punctured nor pubescent; eyes prominent, mottled with green and brown, extending beyond adjoining lateral margins of pronotum; ocelli small, reddish, much nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus rounded, somewhat protruding, extending for more than half its length below lateral margin of face, tip hirsute.

Pronotum green, finely, deeply, and densely punctate, very hairy; metopidium convex; median carina faint; suprahumeral horns stout, blunt, nearly straight, projecting almost directly outward; dorsal crest regularly arcuate; lateral semicircular impression nearly obsolete; posterior process curving slightly downward, not extending beyond tip of abdomen and reaching only for a short distance beyond internal angles of tegmina.

Tegmina entirely hyaline, somewhat wrinkled, bases lightly punctate. Legs and undersurface of body concolorous greenish.

Length 8 mm.; width 4 mm.

10. *Ceresa basalis* Walker (Plate xxv, 10, 11)

1851	*Ceresa basalis*	Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 527.
1869		Stål, Bid. Memb. Kän., p. 245.
1877		Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:215, no. 5.
1893	*Ceresa melanogaster*	Osborn, Bul. Nat. Hist. Lab. Iowa St. Mus. 2:390.
1894	*Ceresa basalis*	Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 404.
1894	*Ceresa turbida*	Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 406.
1895		Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 66.
1903	*Stictocephala semi-brunnea*	Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 174, pl. 36, fig. 6.
1905	*Ceresa turbida*	Van Duzee, N. Y. St. Mus. Bul. 97:552.
1908	*Ceresa basalis*	Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 39, pl. 1, fig. 34.
1908		Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 40:114.
1909		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 90.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 58, no. 1580.

Common. About the size of *C. borealis* but not so hairy. Easily recognized by the black undersurface of the body, which is a sufficient specific character. Taken in gardens on cultivated plants, and occasionally on low shrubs growing wild.

This insect has been observed ovipositing on rosebushes during the middle of September, and nymphs from these eggs appeared on July 1 of the following year. An attempt to rear these nymphs in the laboratory, however, was unsuccessful owing to failure to discover a satisfactory food plant. Since adults are not common in the field before the middle of August, it appears that the species is one of the later forms of the genus, the eggs being laid later in the season and the nymphs and adults being correspondingly retarded. So far as is known there is but one brood in a season.

The species is most abundant in Stations C and P.

Technical description.— Much resembling the preceding species, but differing in coloration and not so hairy; undersurface of body black, the dark coloration often extending over face and femora; metopidium nearly flat; dorsal crest low; posterior process slightly curved downward.

Head broader than long, very irregular in outline, roughly sculptured, not punctured nor pubescent; eyes prominent, grayish, extending as far outward as humeral angles; ocelli distinct, reddish, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus irregular, swollen and hairy at apex.

Pronotum finely and deeply punctate, very hairy; humeral angles prominent; suprahumeral horns short, stout, blunt, horizontal, not projecting upward or backward; dorsal crest convex but not high; semicircular impression distinct but concolorous; posterior process slender, slightly decurved, extending beyond extremity of abdomen but not more than one-third the distance from internal angles to tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, somewhat wrinkled, apical veins often tinged with brown, bases lightly punctate. Undersurface of body black; abdomen black below and segments often bordered with black; underparts of head and entire femora usually black or brown.

Length 7.5 mm.; width 3.5 mm.

The genus Stictocephala Stål

The two local species of the genus Stictocephala may be distinguished as follows:

Size large; color uniform green	inermis
Size small; undersurface of body black	lutea

Both species are common and they are about equal in numbers. Both are more or less grass-inhabiting, and are more abundant in the lower parts of the valley than in the upper.

11. *Stictocephala inermis* Fabricius (Plate xxv, 12–14)

1775 *Membracis inermis* Fabr., Syst. Ent. 4:678, no. 1.
1781 Fabr., Spec. Ins. 2:318, no. 16.

1787 *Membracis inermis* Fabr., Mant. Ins. 2:265, no. 26.
1792 Oliv., Enc. Méth., p. 663, no. 10.
1794 Fabr., Ent. Syst. 4:15, no. 30.
1831 *Membracis goniphora* Say, Journ. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila. 5:243.
1851 *Ceresa gonophora* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1141.
1851 *Smilia inermis* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 48.
1856 Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:360, 471.
1859 *Membracis goniphora* Say, Compl. Writ. 2:377.
1869 *Stictocephala inermis* Stål, Bid. Memb. Kän., p. 246.
1869 Stål, Hem. Fab. 2:33.
1869 *Smilia inermis* Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1877 *Stictocephala inermis* Glover, Rept. U. S. Dept. Agr., p. 30, fig. 19
1878 Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 2, fig. 34.
1878 Uhler, List Hem. Dak. and Mont., p. 509.
1882 Lintner, First Rept. Ins. N. Y., p. 284.
1886 Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:237.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:389.
1891 *Stictocepahala inermis* Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 *Stictocephala inermis* Van Duzee, Rept. N. Y. St. Ent. 9:410
1892 Riley, Ins. Life 5:19.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1895 Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 67.
1903 Felt, Rept. N. Y. For. Fish and Game Comm. 7:687.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 174, pl. 36, figs. 5–5b.
1904 Snow, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 2:349.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 44.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1909 Webster, Journ. Econ. Ent. 2:193.
1911 Osborn, Journ. Econ. Ent. 4:139.
1913 Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:101, figs. 16, 17, 66, 89.
1914 Van Duzee, Trans. S. Diego Soc. Nat. Hist. 2^1:48.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 7.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 58, no. 1587.

Common on sweet clover and red clover, and occasionally on timothy. Rarely on low shrubs and the low branches of trees, particularly apple. At once recognized by its large size, concolorous light green body, and broad metopidium. Is very active and flies well. Somewhat destructive to host plants by girdling stems.

It is interesting to note that this species, which is the most abundant representative of its genus in the basin, has not been found on alfalfa, the chief host plant of the genus in the South. It may be noted in the same connection that most species of the Membracidae which are common on alfalfa in the southern and western parts of the country change to sweet clover in the North or are represented on sweet clover by their nearest relatives. Whether this is due to the difference in the varieties of alfalfa grown in the different regions is a matter of conjecture.

The eggs are laid in the young stems of apple just beneath the bark, in groups of four or five. The egg puncture is a ragged one and fails to heal smoothly, leaving a characteristic scar which has been well figured by Hodgkiss (1910:98). Oviposition occurs over an extended period during July, August, and September. The eggs winter over and hatch about the first of May. Almost immediately the nymphs migrate to sweet clover, where they spend the most of their lives, the mature females returning to the apple only to oviposit.

The life history of a closely related species, *S. festina*, has been carefully worked out by Wildermuth (1915), who finds the eggs laid in the stems of alfalfa. If this is true in the case of sweet clover it has not been discovered by careful search. Since the clover dies down during the winter and there is no evidence of the adults' wintering over, this theory does not seem tenable.

Technical description.— Fine large species, brilliant green slowly fading to yellowish in dried material; metopidium perpendicular; dorsal crest high and arcuate; posterior process slender and curving downward; tegmina and wings entirely hyaline; upper parts of femora often marked with black.

Head broad, nearly smooth, very finely and faintly punctate, longitudinally striate; eyes prominent, subtriangular, very dark bordered with white, extending beyond adjoining lateral margins of pronotum; ocelli prominent, brownish, nearer to each other than to the eyes; inferior margins of vertex broadly sinuate; clypeus broad, sparingly pubescent, median lobe of apex extending below lateral lobes.

Pronotum densely and coarsely but not deeply punctured; metopidium convex, median carina distinct but irregular; sides of metopidium meeting before middle of body; lateral semicircular impression deep; posterior process long, slender, gradually acuminate, curving downward, extending beyond abdomen and reaching about halfway from internal angles to apices of tegmina.

Tegmina entirely hyaline, slightly wrinkled, bases greenish and lightly punctured. Undersurface of body yellowish; segments of abdomen in some cases bordered with black; notch of last ventral segment of female broadly angular. Femora often marked with black above; tarsi ferruginous.

Length to tips of tegmina, 9 mm.; width between humeral angles, 4 mm.

12. *Stictocephala lutea* Walker (Plate xxv, 15–17)

1851 *Thelia lutea* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 559.
1851 *Thelia inermis* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1142.
1854 *Gargara pectoralis* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:157, pl. 13, fig. 12.
1869 *Stictocephala lutea* Stål, Hem. Fab. 2:24.
1869 Stål, Bid. Memb. Kän., p. 247.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 410.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 174.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 195, pl. 42, fig. 7.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 219, no. 16.
1905 Van Duzee, N. Y. St. Mus. Bul. 97:552.

1908	*Stictocephala lutea*	Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 49, pl. 1, figs. 14, 31.
1909		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1910		Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:166.
1911		Osborn, Journ. Econ. Ent. 4:139.
1913		Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:102, figs. 28, 29, 90.
1913		Shelford, Anim. Comm., p. 298.
1913		Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, fig. 31.
1914		Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 46:388.
1915		Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 7.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1598.

Commonest on trees, particularly oaks. Less common on grasses, in which respect it differs from the preceding species. Recognized by the dark under-thorax and femora, and by the small size.

The nymphs of this species have not been distinguished. In a number of instances nymphs that were thought to be those of *S. lutea* have been found on small oak seedlings, but attempts to rear them proved unsuccessful.

Technical description.— Small species; grass-green above, usually marked with black below; metopidium sloping, dorsal crest not high, not regularly arcuate; tegmina smoky hyaline.

Head perpendicular, subtriangular, broader than long, finely punctate, sparingly pubescent, weakly sculptured; eyes prominent, brown usually banded with reddish, extending outward as far as lateral angles; ocelli distinct, yellowish margined with brown, much nearer to each other than to the eyes; inferior margins of vertex weakly sinuate, their ventral mesal angles ending in hooks; clypeus robust, extending only slightly beyond inferior margins of vertex.

Pronotum closely and deeply punctate; metopidium convex, median carina faint, smooth yellowish area on each side near base of head, sides of metopidium meeting at or a little before middle of body; dorsal crest not high, sloping gradually from junction of carinate edges of metopidium to posterior process; semicircular lateral impression weak; posterior process slender, gradually acute, extending as far as tip of abdomen and to a point on tegmina halfway between internal angles and apices.

Tegmina hyaline, smoky at apices. Underparts of thorax distinctly black. Legs generally marked with black. Notch of last ventral segment of female very small or obsolete.

Length 6.5 mm.; width 2 mm.

The working-out of the life history of this species is one of the problems that remain unsolved. Oviposition has never been observed and the nymphs have not been positively identified. Its general life habits seem to be quite different from those of *S. inermis.*

The genus Acutalis Fairmaire

The genus Acutalis contains a limited number of small species, only one of which is represented in the fauna of the Cayuga Lake Basin. The genus is characterized by the small size of the insects, the dark colors of the prothorax, and the five apical cells of the tegmina set off by distinct veins.

13. *Acutalis tartarea* Say (Plate xxv, 20)

1831 *Membracis tartarea* Say, Journ. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila. 5:242.
1851 *Ceresa tartarea* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1141.
1859 *Membracis tartarea* Say, Compl. Writ. 2:376.
1876 *Acutalis tartarea* Uhler, List Hem. West Miss. River, p. 345.
1886 *Ceresa semicrema* Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:235.
1886 *Membracis tartarea* Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:236.
1890 *Acutalis tartarea* Van Duzee, Psyche 5:389.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 427.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 51.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, fig. 32.
1913 Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:102, figs. 18, 19, 80.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 5.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1602.

Very rare. Only one record for the basin. This specimen collected on July 20, 1886, by G. McCargo, and now in the Cornell University collection.

Technical description.— Small elongate species, very black, with eyes, undersurface of body, and in some cases lateral margins of pronotum white, apices of tegmina abruptly hyaline.

Head twice as broad as long, densely black, smooth, not punctate nor pubescent; eyes prominent and white; ocelli small, white, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus foreshortened, smooth, extending only slightly in a semicircular curve below inferior line of face.

Pronotum intensely black above, finely punctate, not pubescent, lateral margins and tip of posterior process in some cases marked with white; dorsal crest low, weakly convex; posterior process nearly straight, slightly decurved, more or less tectiform, extending beyond abdomen and almost to end of apical cells of tegmina but not reaching apex of hyaline border.

Tegmina opaque black for basal two-thirds, apical third suddenly hyaline; veins heavy and black; wide apical border; basal third punctate. Undersurface of body pale. Legs yellowish, tarsi fuscous.

Length to apices of tegmina, 4.5 mm.; width between humeral angles, 2 mm.

The genus Micrutalis Fowler

The genus Micrutalis is closely related to Acutalis but is distinguished by having four apical cells in the tegmina with the veins very obscure. Both Acutalis and Micrutalis are common in the southeastern part of the State, but few forms are found in the Cayuga Lake Basin.

14. *Micrutalis dorsalis* Fitch (Plate xxv, 19)

1851 *Tragopa dorsalis* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 52.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1147.
1856 *Acutalis dorsalis* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:390.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:390.
1869 Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.

1876 *Acutalis dorsalis* Uhler, List Hem. West Miss. River, p. 345.
1883 Saunders, Ins. Inj. Fruits, p. 289.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 428.
1900 Lugger, Minn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 69:112–113.
1903 *Horiola dorsalis* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 158.
1908 *Micrutalis dorsalis* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 53.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, fig. 34.
1915 Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 50.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1604.

Apparently rare. Only two records for the basin — one August 3, 1889, and one August 13, 1895. Both specimens are in the Cornell University collection. Careful collecting for Membracidae during the past seven years has failed to yield further specimens.

Technical description.— About the size of the preceding species and resembling it in general structure; anterior dorsal part of pronotum black, posterior and lateral parts white; tegmina and hind wings entirely hyaline, veins very indistinct, tegmina with four apical areas.

Head twice as wide as long, smooth, not punctate, not pubescent, upper half jet black, lower half suddenly pale cream-colored; eyes prominent and gray; ocelli very minute, pearly, sunk in depressions, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus rounded, cream-colored marked with two brown lines; rounded depression in vertex on either side of clypeus.

Pronotum low, rounded, no median carina, sparingly punctate, not pubescent; anterior dorsal surface black, posterior half and most of lateral margin creamy white; posterior process heavy, flat, gradually acute, not reaching extremity of abdomen.

Tegmina hyaline, veins very indistinct. Entire abdomen yellowish. Undersurface of thorax black. Femora dark brown or black; tibiae and tarsi fuscous.

Length 5 mm.; width 2.5 mm.

15. *Micrutalis calva* Say (Plate xxv, 18)

1831 *Membracis calva* Say, Journ. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila. 5:242.
1834 *Membracis melanogramma* Perty, Del. An. Art., pl. 35, fig. 10.
1835 *Smilia flavipennis* Germ., Silb. Rev. 3:240.
1846 *Acutalis flavipennis* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 497, no. 5.
1846 *Membracis melanogramma* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 497.
1851 *Ceresa calva* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1141.
1851 *Acutalis flavipennis* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 591.
1851 *Acutalis melanogramma* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 591.
1856 *Acutalis calva* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:391.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:391.
1859 *Membracis calva* Say, Compl. Writ. 2:376.
1876 *Acutalis calva* Uhler, List Hem. West Miss. River, p. 345.
1878 Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 1, fig. 3.
1886 *Ceresa calva* Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:236.
1890 *Acutalis calva* Van Duzee, Psyche 5:389.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1893 *Acutalis Illinoiensis* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:53.
1894 *Acutalis calva* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 428.

1895 *Acutalis calva* Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 67.
1907 *Micrutalis Illinoiensis* Baker, Can. Ent. 39:116.
1907 *Micrutalis calva* Baker, Can. Ent. 39:116.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 53.
1908 *Micrutalis Illinoiensis* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 53.
1909 *Micrutalis calva* Van Duzee, Flor. Hem., p. 206.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1910 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:167.
1912 Matausch, Psyche 19:66.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, fig. 33.
1913 Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:103, figs. 20, 21, 82.
1915 *Micrutalis Illinoiensis* Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 6.
1915 *Micrutalis calva* Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 6.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1605.

Another more southern form that has been found once in the basin. A single specimen was collected by the author from a young locust tree (*Robinia pseudacacia*) in August, 1911, in the bed of Six Mile Creek. The species is easily distinguished by its very small size and shining black prothorax.

Technical description.— Very minute; one of the smallest species of Membracidae in the United States; usually strongly marked with black altho color is variable; abdomen yellowish; tegmina hyaline, veins very indistinct.

Head broad, smooth, lightly punctate, not pubescent, upper third black, lower two-thirds yellowish; eyes prominent, white or gray; ocelli not prominent, pearly, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes and situated slightly above an imaginary line drawn thru centers of eyes; clypeus rounded, continuing sinuate outline of inferior margin of face.

Pronotum low, nearly flat, finely punctate, not pubescent, anterior part usually black, tip of posterior process generally pale; posterior process stout, triangular, just reaching internal angles of tegmina and not extending as far as tip of abdomen.

Tegmina entirely hyaline, not punctate nor pubescent at base, veins indistinct, apical border broad. Entire abdomen pale; undersurface of thorax often marked with black. Femora black or ferruginous; tibiae fuscous, tarsi ferruginous.

Length 3-3.5 mm.; width 1.5–1.7 mm.

The genus Carynota Fitch

The two species of the genus Carynota represented in this basin may be separated by the fact that one (*C. mera*) is large and gray with a transverse lateral band of black, while the other (*C. porphyrea*) is small and brown with a sprinkling of light points on either side of the pronotum.

16. *Carynota mera* Say (Plate XXVI, 1–3)

1831 *Membracis mera* Say, Journ. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila. 5:310.
1851 *Carynota mera* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 48.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1144.
1854 *Gargara majus* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:156, pl. 13, fig. 6.
1856 *Ophiderma mera* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:465.

PLATE XXVI

1, Pronotum of *Carynota mera* Say; 2, head; 3, last nymphal instar
4, Lateral outline of *Carynota porphyrea* Fairmaire
5, *Thelia bimaculata* Fabricius; 6, last nymphal instar
7, Lateral outline of *Glossonotus acuminatus* Fabricius
8, Lateral outline of *Glossonotus univittatus* Harris
9, Pronotum of *Glossonotus crataegi* Fitch; 10, frontal outline
11, Pronotum of *Heliria scalaris* Fairmaire; 12, frontal outline
13, Pronotum of *Telamona declivata* Van Duzee
14, Pronotum of *Telamona pyramidata* Uhler
15, Pronotum of *Telamona barbata* Van Duzee
16, Pronotum of *Telamona obsoleta* Ball
17, Pronotum of *Telamona Westcotti* Goding

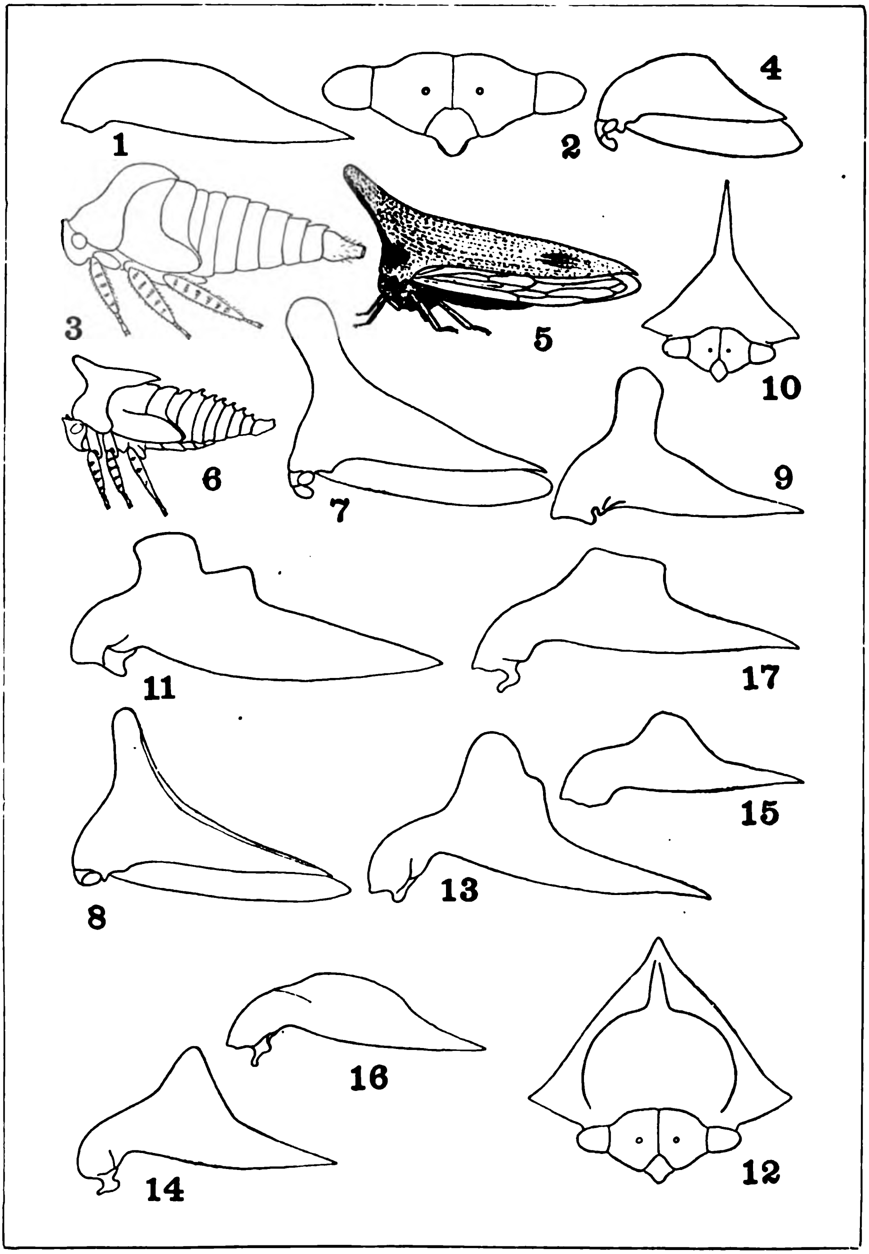


Plate XXVI

1856 *Ophiderma mera* Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:465.
1859 *Membracis mera* Say, Compl. Writ. 2:379.
1869 *Ophiderma mera* Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1878 Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 1, fig. 16.
1886 *Carynota mera* Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:246.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:389.
1890 *Ophiderma mera* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 442.
1890 Packard, Ins. Inj. For. and Shade Trees, p. 342.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^{2}:128.
1892 *Carynota mera* Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 443.
1894 *Carynota strombergi* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 443.
1908 *Carynota mera* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 56.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1910 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:167.
1911 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 19:195.
1912 Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:332.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 35, 59.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 7.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1609.

Common on hickory and butternut; rarer on oak. More abundant in the higher parts of the hills. Large collections have been made in the neighborhood of West Danby. Distinguished by its large size and conspicuous color pattern. This species, which is common on pecan in the South, adopts hickory and butternut for its northern hosts.

The eggs are laid in the buds, at the base of the buds, and in the younger stems in late summer and early fall. The season for oviposition seems to be somewhat extended, the field notes showing records ranging from August 12 to September 30. The nymphs appear about the middle of June. Nymphs hatching on June 17 and covered with netting successfully reached maturity from July 22 to August 1 in the field without change of host. The duration of each instar was not ascertained. No attempt has been made to rear the species in the insectary owing to the difficulty of transplanting hickory and butternut seedlings.

The species is most abundant in Stations M, N, O, and P.

Technical description.— Fine large species; gray marked with dark brown and chestnut; pronotum convex and elevated; tegmina fuscous-hyaline tipped with dark brown.

Head nearly twice as broad as long, uniform light gray, very distinctly punctate, sparingly pubescent with short white hairs; eyes very prominent and brown; ocelli prominent, pearly, margined with orange, somewhat protruding, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus subtriangular, continuing inferior outline of face, tip produced in small tooth, hirsute.

Pronotum gray, finely punctate pubescent, median carina percurrent; metopidium convex, irregular brown mark above internal angle of each eye; dorsal line arcuate, suddenly depressed before posterior process in female, depression not so evident in male; wide, dark brown, transverse band crossing middle of pronotum on each side; posterior process heavy, pointed, tip chestnut.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, veins prominent, bases punctate especially along veins and at costal margins, tips dark brown or black. Legs and undersurface of body ferruginous.

Length: female, 10 mm.; male, 8.5 mm. Width: female, 5 mm.; male, 4 mm.

17. *Carynota porphyrea* Fairmaire (Plate XXVI, 4)

1846 *Thelia porphyrea* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 306, no. 4.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 555.
1867 *Optilete porphyrea* Stål, Bid. Memb. Syst., p. 556, pl. 2, fig. 22.
1878 Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 2, fig. 22.
1908 *Carynota porphyrea* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 57.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 7.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1614.

Scarce. Occasionally taken on oak. Much smaller and shorter than the preceding species and easily separated by its color.

Technical description.— Smaller than preceding species; dorsum higher and more arched; brilliant chestnut in color with irregular yellow markings.

Head triangular, brightly marked with red and yellow patches, sculptured, finely punctate, sparingly pubescent; eyes prominent and black; ocelli not prominent, pearly, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus red with obsolete median yellow line; inferior margin of face strongly sinuate.

Pronotum chestnut, irregularly dotted with yellow, broad transverse yellow band at base of posterior process, coarsely punctate, sparingly pubescent on anterior surface; dorsum elevated, middle of elevation high and arcuate, sudden depression before posterior process; on each side an indentation at about center; posterior process short, thick, heavy, tectiform, not reaching apices of tegmina.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, veins prominent, bases and costal margins punctate, tips clouded with chestnut. Undersurface of body chestnut. Legs ferruginous.

Length 8 mm.; width 4 mm.

The genus Thelia A. & S.

Only one species of the genus Thelia is represented in the Cayuga Lake Basin, but this species is so common that it ranks second in abundance of all the Membracidae of the region.

18. *Thelia bimaculata* Fabricius (Plate XXVI, 5, 6)

1794 *Membracis bimaculata* Fabr., Ent. Syst. 4:10, no. 11.
1799 Coq., Ill. Io. 1:pl. 8, fig. 1.
1803 Fabr., Syst. Rhyng., p. 14, no. 37.
1842 Harris, Treatise, p. 178, 179.
1843 *Thelia bimaculata* A. & S., Hem., p. 541.
1846 Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 312, no. 21.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 566.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1142.
1851 Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 52.
1851 *Thelia unanimis* Walk., List. Hom. B. M., p. 566.
1854 *Thelia bimaculata* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:156, pl. 3, fig. 15
1862 Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 221.

1869	***Thelia bimaculata***	Stål, Hem. Fab. 2:115.
1869		Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1877		Glover, Rept. U. S. Dept. Agr., p. 29, fig. 17.
1878		Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 1, fig. 24.
1886		Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:242, pl. 5, fig. 9.
1890		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1890		Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1891		Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892		Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1894		Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 411.
1903		Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 218, no. 9.
1908		Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 57.
1909		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1911		Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 19:195.
1912		Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:333, pl. 29, fig. 7.
1913		Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 1, 2, 3, 24, 25, 36.
1913		Rept. Ent. Soc. Ont. 36:135.
1915		Funkh., Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer. 8:140–151, figs. 1–10.
1915		Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1615.

Extremely abundant thruout basin. It inhabits only the locust and only one species of this tree (*Robinia pseudacacia*), but occurs in great numbers. The entire life history is passed on the one host (Funkhouser, 1915 b). The species is easily recognized by the large size, the porrect pronotal horn, and the brilliant yellow markings of the male.

The eggs are laid on the roots, and at the base of the stem just below the surface of the forest litter. Mating begins the first week in July and continues thru the season. Egg-laying likewise is continued during the entire summer and autumn. From three to six eggs are laid in a slit. The first nymphs appear late in May and require about a month to reach maturity. The time required for development, however, is most irregular and is influenced largely by climatic and seasonal conditions. The males disappear in the fall much sooner than do the females, but both sexes may be found after the first snows. The species is largely attended by ants.

Thelia bimaculata may be found in all parts of the basin where *Robinia pseudacacia* occurs.

Technical description.— Female: Gray with indistinct darker irregular markings; porrect cylindrical horn slightly flattened and somewhat darker in color at tip; tegmina hyaline, apices fuscous, almost reaching extremity of dorsal process.

Head, including eyes, twice as broad as long, grayish yellow mottled with ferruginous and brown; margins of lorae strongly sinuate; eyes dark brown; ocelli white, nearer to each other than to the eyes and situated on a line drawn thru centers of eyes; clypeus pilose; beak extending to posterior coxae; head very sparingly punctate and sparsely pilose.

Thorax gray, deeply and densely punctate; median percurrent brown line sharpened into a ridge on extremity of horn and at apex of posterior process; sides of prothorax roughly and irregularly carinate; horn porrect and greatly variable in length, cylindrical except at extreme tip where it is flattened laterally; posterior process heavy, tectiform, gradually acute, almost straight, very slightly decurved and extending just beyond apices of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, apices fuscous, bases and costal regions lightly punctate; underwings hyaline, two-thirds as long as tegmina. Undersurface of body gray-brown, pubescent. Legs uniform yellow-brown; femora thick and smooth; tibiae and tarsi densely pilose.

Length 11 mm., including horn 14 mm.; width between humeral angles 5.5 mm.

Male: Differs from female in size and markings. Smaller, body somewhat less robust; porrect horn usually shorter and tending to curve; tegmina equaling apex of posterior process. Color deep chocolate brown; porrect horn almost black; apex of posterior process becoming cinnamon brown; a wide, brilliant, lemon yellow longitudinal stripe on each side of prothorax, extending from margin halfway to median dorsal line, also small patches of yellow on metopidium; head yellow with brown patches. Undersurface of abdomen darker than in female.

The genus Glossonotus Butler

The genus Glossonotus is of doubtful standing, the characters being based on the position and form of the pronotal crest, which is unfortunately much inclined to vary. Theoretically this crest is tongue-shaped, erect, and placed well forward. Of the five species that have been placed in the genus, three have been found in this basin. They may be distinguished as follows:

a. Dorsum with white median vitta....................................... *univittatus*
aa. Dorsum without vitta.
  b. Light brown with large pale markings................................. *crataegi*
  bb. Very dark brown without markings................................. *acuminatus*

19. *Glossonotus acuminatus* Fabricius (Plate XXVI, 7)

1781 *Membracis acuminata* Fabr., Spec. Ins. 2:317, no. 6.
1787 Fabr., Mant. Ins. 2:263, no. 12.
1788 *Cicada acuminata* Gmel., Ed. Syst. Nat. 2:2094.
1792 *Membracis acuminata* Oliv., Enc. Méth., p. 665, no. 21.
1794 Fabr., Ent. Syst. 4:11, no. 13.
1803 *Centrotus acuminata* Fabr., Syst. Rhyng., p. 18, no. 9.
1842 *Membracis acuminata* Harris, Treatise, p. 179.
1846 *Thelia acuminata* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 310, pl. 5, fig. 15.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 564.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1142.
1862 *Hemiptycha acuminata* Harris, Treatise, p. 221.
1862 *Thelia acuminata* Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 221.
1869 *Telamona acuminatus* Stål, Hem. Fab. 2:115.
1877 *Thelia acuminata* Glover, Rept. U. S. Dept. Agr., p. 30, fig. 17.
1877 *Glossonotus acuminata* Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:222.
1878 *Thelia bimaculata* Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 1, fig. 20.
1890 *Thelia crataegi* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1890 *Thelia acuminata* Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.

1894 *Thelia acuminata* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 413.
1908 *Glossonotus acuminatus* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 59.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1911 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. **19**:196.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1617.

Very rare. Taken only in a limited area on the south side of Buttermilk Gorge, on young white oak. Attracts attention because of the very long flattened crest, almost as high as the insect is long. The life history is unknown.

Technical description.— Dark gray mottled with brown; dorsal crest high, flattened and swollen at tip; humeral angles prominent and triangular; tegmina hyaline tipped with brown, veins punctured.

Head almost as long as wide, gray with distinct scattered black punctures and fine whitish pubescence; base sinuate; eyes large, prominent, brown, extending as far as bases of humeral angles; ocelli large, prominent, pearly with white margins, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus continuing inferior line of face, punctate with black, pubescent with white, tip prolonged into a point; antennae long and well developed.

Pronotum dark gray with irregular markings of brown, coarsely and regularly punctate with black, very sparingly pubescent; metopidium convex, median carina prominent and decorated with alternate lines of brown and yellowish, irregular black markings above internal angles of eyes, humeral angles prominent, triangular, flattened, acute; pronotal crest almost as high as length of pronotum, widened and flattened at tip, margin decorated with pale areas, projecting usually forward as well as upward; posterior process gradually acuminate, reaching apices of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, tips clouded with smoky brown, bases and margins of veins punctate, veins prominent. Undersurface of thorax fuscous; abdomen ferruginous. Legs fuscous marked with brown.

Length 10 mm.; width between tips of humeral angles, 6 mm.

20. *Glossonotus univittatus* Harris (Plate XXVI, 8)

1841 *Membracis univittata* Harris, Rept. Ins. Mass., p. 180.
1842 Harris, Treatise, p. 178, 180.
1851 *Enchenopa univittata* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 494.
1851 *Thelia univittata* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 52.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1143.
1856 Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:390.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:390.
1858 Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 5:804.
1858 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 18:804.
1862 Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 221.
1862 *Membracis univittata* Harris, Treatise, p. 221.
1869 *Thelia univittata* Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1878 Uhler, List Hem. Dak. and Mont., p. 510.
1882 Lintner, First Rept. Ins. N. Y., p. 282.
1883 Saunders, Ins. Inj. Fruits, p. 289.
1886 Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:241.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1890 Packard, Ins. Inj. For. and Shade Trees, p. 98.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^{2}:128.

1892 *Thelia univittata* Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 412.
1895 Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 67.
1900 Lugger, Minn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 69:112.
1908 *Glossonotus univittatus* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 59.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1911 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 19:196.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1619.

Rarer than the preceding species. Only one specimen reported, taken by the author on August 21, 1913, from a small hazelnut tree. Easily recognized by the white median dorsal stripe. Nothing is known of the habits or the life history of this species.

Technical description.— Resembling preceding species, but easily distinguished by white dorsal vitta down posterior median dorsal line; dorsal crest slender, inclined forward, uniform in width and not expanded at tip.

Head subquadrangular, yellowish with scattered black punctures and scanty white pubescence; base strongly sinuate; eyes prominent, deep brown, reaching bases of humeral angles; ocelli distinct, pearly, slightly protruding, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus as long as wide, continuing inferior margin of face, faintly marked with longitudinal brown lines on either side, tip extending downward in a point, hirsute.

Pronotum uniform brown with pale stripe extending down dorsal line from near apex of crest to tip of posterior process; closely and deeply punctured, sparingly pubescent; posterior process heavy, broad, not reaching tips of tegmina; humeral angles prominent, triangular, blunt, not extending as far laterally as in preceding species.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, clouded with brown at tips, sparingly punctate at bases and along margins of veins. Legs and undersurface of body fuscous.

Length 9.5 mm.; width 5 mm.

21. *Glossonotus crataegi* Fitch (Plate XXVI, 9, 10)

1851 *Thelia crataegi* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 52.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1144.
1854 *Telamona crataegi* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:155, pl. 3, fig. 2.
1856 *Thelia crataegi* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:334.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:334, pl. 2, fig. 5.
1869 Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1882 Lintner, First Rept. Ins. N. Y., p. 284.
1883 Saunders, Ins. Inj. Fruits, p. 46, fig. 37.
1884 Osborn, Iowa Agr. Coll., Ent. Bul. 2:90.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1890 *Thelia pyramidoides* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1891 *Telamona crataegi* (var.) Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 *Thelia crataegi* Osborn, Trans. Iowa Hort. Soc. 27:119.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1893 Osborn, Fr. and For. Tree Ins., p. 24.
1893 Godg., Can. Ent. 25:196.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 412.
1894 Bruner, Rept. Nebr. Hort. Soc. 25:162.
1900 Lugger, Minn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 69:111–112.
1908 *Glossonotus crataegi* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 59.

1909 *Glossonotus crataegi* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 37, 61.
1915 Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 50.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1621.

Rare. Has been taken only occasionally on quince, crab apple, and hawthorn in more or less cultivated areas. May have been introduced on nursery stock from the northern part of the State, where it is fairly common. The mottled colors on the pronotum prevent its being mistaken for any other species of the genus.

H. H. Knight has found the species commonly on quince in the vicinity of Batavia, New York, during the month of July, and has succeeded in obtaining some excellent photographs of the insects, of which Plate XL, 1, and Plate XLI, in this study (pages 1107 and 1133) are examples. The nymphs, however, were not seen.

Technical description.— A strikingly marked species, not to be confused with either of the two preceding; smaller, shorter, and stouter than either *G. acuminatus* or *G. univittatus*; pronotum brilliantly decorated with areas of chestnut red, pale whitish yellow, and deep brown; crest erect, broad, flattened, dark in color, very variable in length.

Head greenish gray punctured with black, irregularly sculptured, not pubescent; eyes prominent, brown, reaching bases of humeral angles; ocelli not prominent, pearly, much nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus longer than wide, projecting below inferior line of face, tip hirsute.

Pronotum coarsely punctate, sparingly pubescent, faintly longitudinally rugose on posterior process; humeral angles triangular, short, blunt; dorsal crest variable in height, broad, flattened, generally uniformly ridged, margin compressed; posterior process short, heavy, blunt, not reaching apices of tegmina.

Coloration: pale greenish yellow mottled with brown on front of metopidium, this color extending in a band over humeral angles and ending in a broad pale patch at lateral margin; humeral angles chestnut; dorsal crest deep brown mottled with chestnut on sides, chestnut on posterior line, this chestnut band extending down each side of pronotum to lateral margin and bordered with dark brown; pale transverse band across base of posterior process; posterior process brown.

Tegmina hyaline, tips clouded with brown, veins broad and prominent, bases and margins of veins punctate. Undersurface of body ferruginous and pubescent. Legs very hairy; tarsi ferruginous.

Length 8 mm.; width 4.5 mm.

The genus Heliria Stål

Heliria is another genus of rather doubtful standing, the characters, like those of Glossonotus, depending on the shape of the pronotal crest, which is supposedly step-shaped. Only one species occurs in the basin.

22. *Heliria scalaris* Fairmaire (Plate XXVI, 11, 12)

1846 *Thelia scalaris* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 311, no. 18, pl. 5, fig. 14.
1851 *Telamona fagi* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 51.

1851 *Thelia scalaris* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 565.
1851 *Telamona fagi* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1146.
1854 Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:154, pl. 3, fig. 10.
1867 *Heliria scalaris* Stål, Bid. Memb. Syst., p. 556.
1869 Stål, Bid. Memb. Kän., p. 249.
1877 *Telamona scalaris* Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:222.
1886 Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:243.
1889 *Telamona fagi* Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 21:6.
1890 *Heliria scalaris* Van Duzee, Psyche 5:390.
1890 *Telamona fagi* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 422.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 *Heliria scalaris* Godg., Ent. News 3:200.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 423.
1895 Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 67.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 218, no. 8.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 61.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 41, 64.
1915 Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 50.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1623.

Rare. Taken on west side of lake in the higher wooded parts of the hills by beating small bushes and shrubs. The particular host is not known, and nothing is known of the life history of the species.

Technical description.— A small species, uniform brown in color; crest as high as its length at base; posterior process not reaching apices of tegmina; tegmina smoky hyaline, tips brown.

Head as wide as long, sculptured, yellowish, irregularly punctate with brown, sparingly pubescent; base strongly sinuate; eyes prominent, brown, reaching bases of humeral angles; ocelli prominent, translucent, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus extending below inferior margin of face, yellowish, punctured with brown, pubescent.

Pronotum uniform brown, coarsely punctured; dorsal crest swollen at base, flattened at apex, as high as its length at base, distinctly step-shaped, anterior lobe rounded and projecting forward, posterior lobe sharply angular, two-thirds as high as anterior, both lobes in some cases margined with patches of darker brown; posterior process short, heavy, acute, not reaching apices of tegmina; humeral angles triangular, flattened, blunt.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, bases dark brown and punctate, tips brown, veins heavy and often punctured along margins. Undersurface of thorax ferruginous, segments margined with paler; abdomen brown. Legs ferruginous; tibiae and tarsi hairy.

Length 8 mm.; width 4.8 mm.

The genus Telamona Fitch

The genus Telamona is a typical New York genus, erected by Fitch (1851) from forms from this State and containing a large number of species.

The genus is in great need of revision, practically all the species having been described from pronotal characters which have since been found to vary to such an extent as to make the validity of some species very doubtful. From a large amount of material it has been possible to recognize fifteen species, but a large series of specimens collected in the basin remain unidentified. The genus is primarily tree-inhabiting and is common on oak and basswood, and the insects are solitary in habit. The adults are strong flyers and are difficult to capture. Only a few have been reared, due to the difficulty of keeping the host plants in the insectary. It is believed that the species recognized may be separated by the following key, which, however, is admittedly weak in that it has been necessary to make use of the pronotal characters on which the species were founded:

a. Crest obsolete or only faintly indicated.................................*obsoleta*
aa. Crest prominent.
b. Crest leaning forward over head.................................*projecta*
bb. Crest vertical or nearly so.
c. Crest slender; pointed at tip.
d. Crest highest in front.................................*declivata*
dd. Crest highest in middle.
e. Crest as broad as high.................................*barbata*
ee. Crest twice as high as broad.................................*pyramidata*
cc. Crest broad; rounded or truncate at tip.
d. Front margin of crest perpendicular or nearly so.
e. Females bright green; males yellow, banded with brown........*unicolor*
ee. Neither sex green.
f. Posterior margin of crest white.........................*monticola*
ff. Posterior margin of crest not white.
g. Concolorous ferruginous.........................*pruinosa*
gg. Mottled or banded.
h. Yellow mottled with brown.......................*tristis*
hh. Gray with transverse brown band............*ampelopsidis*
dd. Front margin of crest sloping.
e. Crest as high as or higher than broad.
f. Posterior margin white.................................*querci*
ff. Tip hollowed out posteriorly.................................*concava*
ee. Crest not so high as broad.
f. Pale yellow marked with light brown...................*Westcotti*
ff. Brown banded with darker.................................*reclivata*
fff. Gray with oblique brown fascia.................................*decorata*

23. *Telamona declivata* Van Duzee (Plate XXVI, 13)

1908	*Telamona declivata*	Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 64.
1909		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 91.
1914		Van Duzee, Trans. S. Diego Soc. Nat. Hist 2^1:50.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1628.

Very rare. One record for the basin, taken on July 12, 1899. No record of host. Easily recognized by the very peculiar shape of the crest, which is much higher in its anterior than in its posterior half, making a distinct step as in the genus Heliria.

Technical description.— Long, narrow pronotum; crest high, sloping steeply backward and more or less step-shaped suggesting the genus Heliria; posterior process exceeding tips of tegmina; tegmina smoky hyaline, punctate at bases and clouded with brown at tips.

Head broader than long, ruggedly sculptured, yellowish with large punctures and splashes of brown, sparingly pubescent; base regularly sinuate; eyes large, very prominent, brown; ocelli small, pearly, not prominent, nearer to each other than to the eyes; inferior margin of vertex deeply sinuate; clypeus subtriangular, coarsely punctate with brown, tip extended below line of face, hirsute.

Pronotum ferruginous brown mottled with darker, densely and coarsely punctate thruout, not pubescent; humeral angles prominent, triangular, flattened, blunt; dorsal crest as high as its width at base, sloping backward, tip and posterior margin compressed, posterior margin step-shaped; transverse brown fascia extending from posterior margin of crest to lateral margin of pronotum; posterior process long, slender, acuminate, extending beyond tegmina.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, basal third punctate, veins prominent, apex clouded with brown. Undersurface of thorax fuscous; abdomen brown. Legs ferruginous mottled with brown; tibiae hairy.

Length 10 mm.; width between humeral angles, 6 mm.

24. *Telamona pyramidata* Uhler (Plate XXVI, 14)

1877 *Telamona pyramidata* Uhler, Wheeler's Rept. App. J., no. 1333.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 422.
1895 Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 67.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 64.
1913 Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:104, figs. 30, 31, 84.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1629.

Rare. Occasionally taken on chestnut oak (*Quercus Prinus*). A medium-sized, mottled brownish species with a stripe of lighter shade along the median dorsal line. The crest is high and gradually acuminate. The habits and life history are unknown.

Technical description.— Long, narrow body; crest triangular and pyramidal, as the name would suggest; mottled brown with a dark transverse fascia extending from tip of crest to lateral margin of pronotum, and a second shorter fascia behind it; posterior process exceeding tips of tegmina; tegmina hyaline, punctate at bases, brown at apices. Differs from preceding species chiefly in shape of dorsal crest.

Head wider than long, yellowish with large irregular punctures of brown, sparingly pubescent; base regularly sinuate; eyes large, prominent, gray; ocelli large, prominent, somewhat protruding, translucent; clypeus subtriangular, sutures distinct, apex slightly produced, hairy.

Pronotum deeply punctate, not pubescent; metopidium convex, decorated with patches of yellowish and dark brown, median carina prominent, heavy, black broken by circular areas of yellowish; humeral angles prominent, tectiform, blunt, brownish; dorsal crest triangular, rounded at tip, margin flattened and brown, posterior margin pale; posterior process long, slender, slightly curving downward, extending beyond tips of tegmina; median carina percurrent.

Tegmina hyaline, bases and costal margins coarsely punctate but not pubescent, tips brown. Undersurface of thorax flavous; abdomen dark brown. Legs yellowish; tibiae mottled with brown, hairy; tarsi flavous; claws ferruginous.

Length 9–11 mm.; width 5–6 mm.

25. *Telamona barbata* Van Duzee (Plate XXVI, 15)

1908 *Telamona barbata* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 65.
1912 Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:333, pl. 29, fig. 9.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1630.

Rare. A small brownish species with a weak pyramidal crest. The crest is darker than the remainder of the pronotum. The species has been taken on white oak and on basswood. Nothing is known of its habits or of its life history. Commoner in higher parts of the basin than elsewhere, in regions where older trees abound.

Technical description.— Small; mottled greenish brown; crest low and rounded; posterior process not reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina smoky hyaline, tips broadly clouded.

Head much wider than long, greenish, finely punctate, sparingly pubescent, sutures well marked; base regularly sinuate; eyes very prominent, protruding, brownish; ocelli small, pearly, distinct, slightly protruding, much nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus small, sinuately rounded above, tip extending only slightly below inferior margin of face.

Pronotum very irregularly punctate, some punctures coarse and deep, others fine and shallow, sparingly pubescent; metopidium low, greenish, median carina very prominent and brown, yellowish depression above each eye; humeral angles not prominent, rounded; dorsal crest low, not so high as its width at base, darker in color than remainder of pronotum, posterior margin pale; posterior process short, hairy, longitudinally striate, sharp at tip, not reaching apices of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, veins very prominent, bases weakly punctate, apices broadly clouded with brown. Legs and undersurface of body concolorous fuscous; abdomen brown; tibiae spined with minute hairs.

Length to tips of tegmina, 8 mm.; width 3.5 mm.

26. *Telamona obsoleta* Ball (Plate XXVI, 16)

1903 *Telamona obsoleta* Ball, Proc. Biol. Soc. Wash. 16:178, pl. 1, figs. 2, 2a.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 66
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1632.

Rare. A rather large, heavy-bodied species, with the crest very much reduced. Has been found only on the highest parts of the hills, on various species of oak. The nymphs of the species have never been recognized, and nothing is known of the habits or of the life history. Only a few specimens have been taken locally.

Technical description.— Short, thick, heavy body; crest reduced to a rounded lobe; posterior process not reaching apex of abdomen; tegmina smoky hyaline tipped with brown.

Head wider than long, yellowish with black punctures and scattered white pubescence, center of each vertex depressed and broadly black; base regularly sinuate; eyes prominent, brown; ocelli prominent, somewhat protruded, margins white, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus subtriangular, depressed at base, sutures distinct, hirsute.

Pronotum closely punctate, sparingly pubescent, greenish brown mottled with ferruginous; metopidium only slightly convex, smooth depression above each eye, median carina prominent, black interrupted with pale; humeral angles not prominent, triangular, rounded at tips; dorsal crest low, rounded, gradually sloping before, steeper behind, margins slightly flattened; posterior process short, heavy, blunt, tectiform, longitudinally striate, not reaching apex of abdomen and extending only about one-third the distance between the internal angles and the tips of the tegmina.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, bases punctate, tips clouded with brown, veins heavy, inclined to punctuation. Undersurface of thorax fuscous, abdomen brown. Legs mottled with green and brown; tibiae hairy; tarsi ferruginous.

Length 9 mm.; width 4 mm.

27. *Telamona Westcotti* Goding (Plate XXVI, 17)

1894	*Telamona Westcotti*	Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 415.
1908		Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 66.
1915		Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 7.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1633.

Very rare. A fine large species, with long, sloping pronotum strikingly marked with pale yellow or gray and light brown. The crest is low and broad, with the tip squarely truncate. There is no record of the host and nothing is known of the life history of the species.

Technical description.— Fine, large, strikingly marked species; long, narrow pronotum, decorated with yellow, gray, and brown; posterior process not reaching apices of tegmina; tegmina hyaline tipped with brown.

Head nearly as long as broad, sculptured, yellowish, irregularly punctate with brown especially around margins; base sinuate; eyes large, brown; ocelli not prominent, transparent, slightly protruding, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus slightly convex, faintly punctate, tip rounded, hirsute.

Pronotum finely punctate, sparingly pubescent; ground color yellowish or gray, with brown fascia over metopidium, at base of crest extending to lateral margin, and at apex; humeral angles prominent, flat, triangular, tips blunt; dorsal crest longer than high, front margin slightly sloping, posterior margin nearly vertical, tip squarely truncate, area behind crest pale; lateral areas of pronotum and posterior process roughly longitudinally striate; posterior process long, suddenly acute at apex, not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, somewhat wrinkled, bases punctate, tips clouded with brown. Undersurface of thorax fuscous; abdominal segments margined with brown. Legs mottled; tibiae hairy.

Length 10.5 mm.; width 5 mm.

28. *Telamona reclivata* Fitch (Plate XXVII, 1, 2)

1851	*Telamona reclivata*	Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 51.
1851		Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1145.
1854		Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:155, pl. 3, fig. 7.
1886		Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:244.
1889		Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 21:6.
1890		Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1890		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 442.
1891		Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892		Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1894		Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 414.
1895		Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 67.
1905		Van Duzee, N. Y. St. Mus. Bul. 97:552.
1907		Baker, Can. Ent. 39:115.
1908		Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 67.
1909		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1915		Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 50.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1635.

Very common on basswood. Abundant thruout the basin. A difficult species to delimit owing to the variation in shape of the pronotal crest. May be generally recognized by the large size, rounded sloping crest,

PLATE XXVII

1, Pronotum of *Telamona reclivata* Fitch; 2, last nymphal instar
3, Pronotum of *Telamona monticola* Fabricius
4, Pronotum of *Telamona ampelopsidis* Harris; 5, frontal outline; 15, lateral outline of last nymphal instar
6, Pronotum of *Telamona tristis* Fitch
7, Pronotum of *Telamona concava* Fitch
8, Pronotum of *Telamona projecta* Butler
9, Pronotum of *Telamona unicolor* Fitch; 10, last nymphal instar
11, *Telamona decorata* Ball; 12, head
13, Pronotum of *Archasia Belfragei* Stål
14, Pronotum of *Smilia camelus* Fabricius

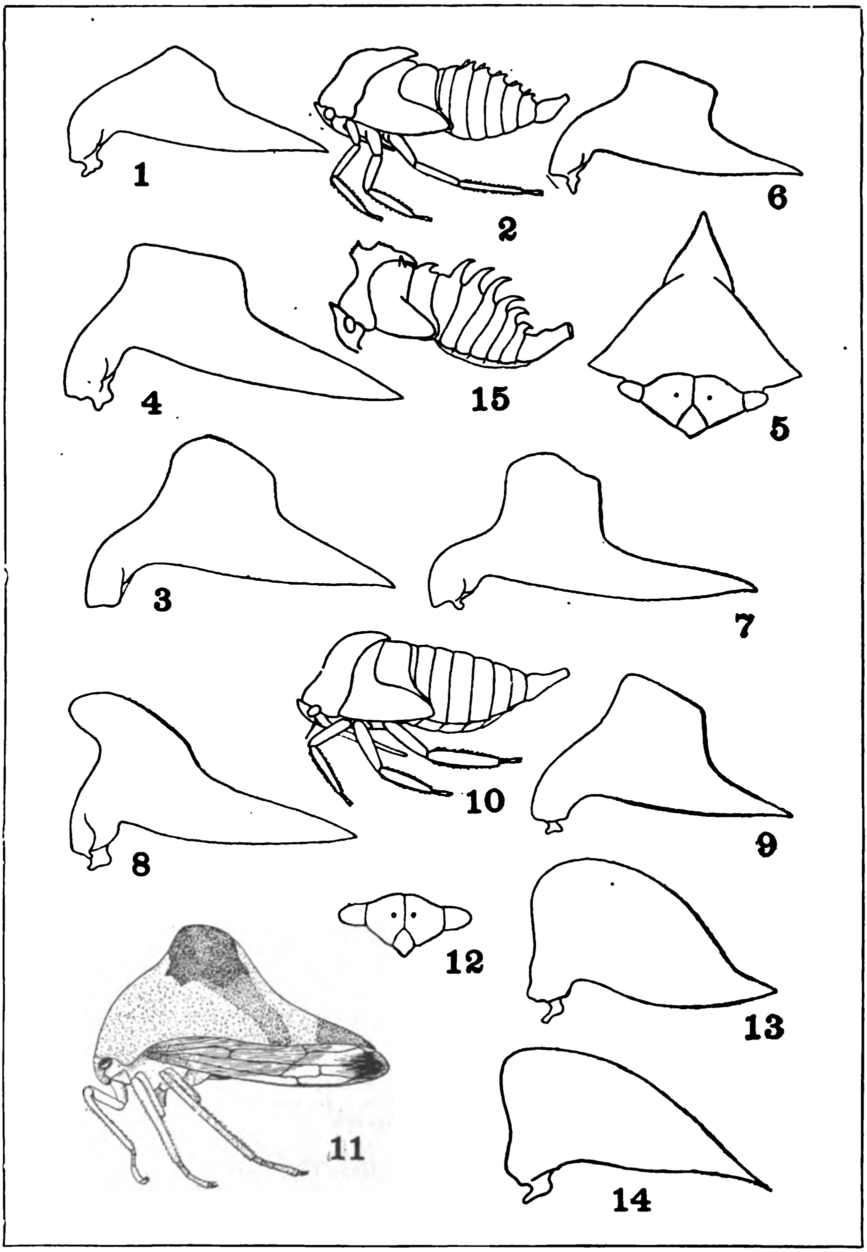


PLATE XXVII

63

long posterior process, and markings of dark brown. The nymphs are found on the same hosts as the adults, and all stages may be collected during July and August.

Because of the fact that most of the species of the genus Telamona inhabit oak, it has been impossible in the course of this study to positively identify the eggs without rearing the species in each case, and this has not been accomplished except in a few instances. The nymphs do not live when confined under netting on the tree, and do not survive transportation and transfer to new hosts in the laboratory; and it will require very patient work for a number of years to work out the life histories for all of the Telamonas.

In the few cases in which nymphs have been successfully reared to maturity a wide variation has been found in the individuals of a single egg mass, suggesting that the species here recognized may not all stand after careful biologic data have been obtained.

It has been suggested that a careful revision of the genus is needed, and such a revision should be based largely on a study of life histories.

Technical description.— Varies greatly in shape and size of dorsal crest and in coloration; crest usually higher before than behind, marked with a brown fascia which extends to the lateral margin; metopidium hairy; tegmina tipped with brown.

Head broader than long, greenish marked with reddish patches, sculptured, sparingly punctate, pubescent with short black hairs; base high and sinuate; eyes prominent, brown; ocelli large, protruding, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus nearly flat, greenish, smooth, pubescent, sutures distinct, tip extending far below inferior margin of face.

Pronotum finely punctate and pubescent; metopidium convex, median carina prominent; dorsal crest sloping, longer than high, tip truncate, posterior margin pale; posterior process gradually acute, not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, wrinkled, bases deeply punctate with black, tips marked with deep brown triangular fascia. Undersurface of thorax flavous and pubescent; abdomen brown, segments margined with paler. Legs yellowish; tibiae hairy.

Length 9 mm.; width 4.5 mm.

29. *Telamona monticola* Fabricius (Plate XXVII, 3)

1803	*Membracis monticola*	Fabr., Syst. Rhyng., p. 7, no. 4.
1869	*Telamona monticola*	Stål, Hem. Fab. 2:115.
1877		Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:221, no. 5.
1878		Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 1, fig. 18.
1884		Uhler, Stand. Nat. Hist., p. 225.
1890		Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1891		Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1893		Godg., Can. Ent. 25:171.
1894		Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 416.
1895		Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 67.
1900		Lugger, Minn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 69:112.
1901		Howard, Ins. Book, p. 238.

1903 *Telamona monticola* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 218.
1903 *Telamona brunneipennis* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 197, pl. 43, figs. 1, 1a.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 68.
1908 *Telamona monticola* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 67.
1909 Van Duzee, Flor. Hem., p. 206.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1645.

This species is included only tentatively, as its presence in the basin is doubtful. A long series of specimens in the Cornell University collection have been determined as *T. monticola* by E. P. Van Duzee, but these do not show the straight frontal outline of the crest as figured by Fairmaire, and recent collecting has brought to light many forms that gradate between these and typical specimens of *T. querci*. It is probable that this species has been confused with the species *T. querci* as described later.

Technical description.— Large, robust species; concolorous brown spotted with greenish; dorsal crest high, rounded, greenish posteriorly; posterior process not reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina punctate at base, brown at tips.

Head one-fourth broader than long, sculptured, yellowish punctured with brown above, black below, vertex pubescent at lower angles of eyes; eyes prominent, dark brown; ocelli large, greenish, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus with median longitudinal depression, punctate with black, tip extending far below inferior margin of face, hairy.

Pronotum finely punctate, sparingly pubescent, concolorous light brown spotted with green; metopidium convex, median carina prominent, black, interrupted with greenish spots; humeral angles not prominent, rounded; dorsal crest about as high as long, rounded at tip; posterior process rather short, acute, not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, wrinkled, bases coarsely but sparingly punctate with black, tips deep brown. Undersurface of thorax, abdomen, and legs flavous; tibiae mottled and hairy; tarsi ferruginous, claws fuscous.

Length 11 mm.; width 6 mm.

30. *Telamona querci* Fitch

1851 *Telamona querci* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 51.
1851 *Telamona quercus* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1145.
1854 *Telamona querci* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:pl. 3, fig. 4.
1876 Uhler, List Hem. West Miss. River, p. 344.
1877 *Telamona quercus* Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:222, no. 10.
1890 *Thelia quercus* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1890 *Telamona querci* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 442.
1892 *Telamona monticola* [=*querci*] Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1893 *Telamona querci* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:171.
1895 Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo.,p. 67.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 218.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 67, pl. 2, fig. 7.
1913 Shelford, Anim. Comm., p. 234, fig. 212; p. 259, table 59.
1915 Weiss, Ent. News 26:102.
1915 Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 50.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1644.

Abundant thruout the basin on oak. Particularly common on small white and chestnut oaks on the hillsides. Solitary in habit and quick in movement. The nymphs seek the outer branches and the axils of the leaves, while the adults prefer the twigs of second-year growth.

The species may be recognized by the white vitta along the posterior median line of the dorsal crest. This is a stout, robust species, common thruout the summer.

Technical description.— Very close to preceding species; pronotum shorter, darker; dorsal crest with prominent pale fascia on posterior margin; tegmina nearly hyaline, tips faintly clouded.

Head roughly sculptured, flavous mottled with brown, faintly longitudinally striate, very faintly punctate, pubescent; base weakly sinuate; eyes prominent, dark brown; ocelli very prominent, protruding, brownish, margins pale, much nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus nearly flat, punctate, pubescent, base marked with brown, tip extended below inferior margin of face.

Pronotum densely but finely punctate, sparingly pubescent, dark brown mottled with green; metopidium convex, median carina prominent, black interrupted with pale green; humeral angles short and blunt; dorsal crest sloping backward, longer than high, higher before than behind, posterior margin distinctly pale; posterior process short, acute, marked with greenish before apex, not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, bases punctured but not pubescent, tips clouded with brown, veins brown. Undersurface of body brown. Legs flavous; tibiae hairy.

Length of pronotum 9 mm., to tips of tegmina 11 mm.; width 5.5 mm.

31. *Telamona ampelopsidis* Harris (Plate XXVII, 4, 5, 15)

1833 *Membracis cissi* Harris, List Ins. Mass., p. 584.
1841 *Membracis ampelopsidis* Harris, Rept. Ins. Mass., p. 180.
1842 Harris, Treatise, p. 178.
1846 *Thelia cyrtops* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 310, no. 17, pl. 5, fig. 13.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 565.
1851 *Telamona ampelopsidis* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 51.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1145.
1854 Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:154, pl. 3, fig. 9
1862 *Membracis ampelopsidis* Harris, Treatise, p. 220.
1862 *Telamona ampelopsidis* Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 178.
1869 *Membracis ampelopsidis* Harris, Ent. Corresp., p. 334.
1870 Riley, Amer. Ent. and Bot. 2:245.
1877 *Telamona ampelopsidis* Glover, Rept. U. S. Dept. Agr., p. 29, fig. 12.
1877 Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:221, no. 7.
1877 *Telamona cyrtops* Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:222, no. 11.
1878 *Telamona ampelopsidis* Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 2, fig. 25.
1886 Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:243.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 442.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 416.
1903 *Thelia cyrtops* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 218.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 68.
1908 *Telamona ampelopsidis* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 68.

1909	*Telamona ampelopsidis*	Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1910		Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:169.
1913		Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, p. 82, figs. 4, 11, 19, 38.
1915		Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 7.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1646.

A large, robust, well-marked species. Very abundant in all parts of the basin on Virginia creeper (*Psedera quinquefolia* L., formerly placed in the genus Ampelopsis, from which the specific name of the insect was derived). This is the commonest species of Telamona in the region. Since it has never been taken on any other host and no other species of the genus inhabits Virginia creeper, this species may be fairly surely identified by its habitat. The markings are distinct and characteristic. The males are in some cases solid black in color — a feature formerly thought to mark the older specimens, but this has been found not to be the case — and are much smaller than the females.

Large numbers of these insects have been taken on the hills west of the lake between Trumansburg and Interlaken, and around the buildings of the farms of this region. They are also plentiful on the vines covering the boathouses at the foot of Cascadilla Creek.

The eggs are laid in the axils of the leaves and are deeply embedded in the stems. Two or three egg deposits are made by one female at one time, each oviposition requiring about twenty minutes with a rest of about ten minutes between. The eggs winter over and hatch early in June. About five weeks is required for the nymphs to reach maturity. Mating begins about the middle of July and oviposition almost immediately afterward. The entire life history has been followed on the one host, and apparently the nymphs need no other food.

Technical description.— Fine, large, well-marked species; crest high, erect, front margin nearly perpendicular, hind margin sloping; ground color grayish with brown transverse fascia across metopidium, deep brown area at frontal base, brown fascia extending from posterior tip of crest to lateral margin of pronotum; tegmina hyaline, with brown tips.

Head yellowish faintly marked with brown below, sculptured, finely punctate, sparingly pubescent; eyes prominent, grayish brown; ocelli large, yellowish, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus smooth, pubescent, tip triangular.

Pronotum finely punctate, very sparingly pubescent; metopidium yellow at frontal margin, black spot above each eye, median carina prominent, black; humeral angles prominent, blunt, extending beyond the eyes as far as the length of the eyes; dorsal crest higher before than behind, margin somewhat flattened; posterior process long, strong, heavy, extending almost to tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, lightly punctate at base and along costal margins, tips brown. Undersurface of body generally uniform gray-brown.

Male smaller and darker than female, often without characteristic markings.

Length, female 10 mm., male 8–9 mm.; width, female 6 mm., male 5 mm.

32. *Telamona tristis* Fitch (Plate XXVII, 6)

1851 *Telamona tristis* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 51.
1851 *Telamona coryli* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 51.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1145.
1851 *Telamona tristis* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1145.
1854 *Telamona coryli* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:155, pl. 3, fig. 6
1856 Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:473.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:473.
1856 *Telamona tristis* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:474.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:474.
1869 Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1869 *Telamona coryli* Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1877 Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:221, no. 6.
1877 *Telamona tristis* Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:221, no. 9.
1886 Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:243.
1889 Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 21:6.
1889 *Telamona coryli* Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 21:6.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 442.
1890 *Telamona tristis* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 442.
1891 *Telamona coryli* (?) Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^{3}:128.
1892 *Telamona coryli* et *tristis* Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1893 *Telamona coryli* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1893 *Telamona tristis* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1894 *Telamona coryli* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 419.
1894 *Telamona spreta* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 417.
1896 *Telamona tristis* Fowler, B. C. A., p. 144.
1896 Fowler, B. C. A., p. 145.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 198.
1908 *Telamona coryli* Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 40:115.
1908 *Telamona spreta* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 69.
1908 *Telamona tristis* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 69.
1908 Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 40:115.
1908 *Telamona coryli* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 68.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1909 *Telamona tristis* Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 41:383.
1915 Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 50.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1647.

Rare. Occasionally taken on hazelnut and less commonly on oak. Very conspicuous because of its light mottled colors. Habits and life history unknown.

Technical description.— Near preceding species in appearance, but smaller and lighter and differing in coloration; crest high and square, higher before than behind; tegmina hyaline tipped with brown; protonum yellow mottled with red-brown.

Head subquadrate, yellowish, faintly longitudinally striate, finely punctuate, closely pubescent, faintly mottled with brown; eyes prominent, brown; ocelli pearly, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus pubescent, tip slightly extending below inferior margin of face.

Pronotum densely punctate, not pubescent, ground color light yellow, a broad transverse reddish brown fascia nearly covering metopidium, a second on front of crest, and a third extending down posterior third of crest and reaching lateral margin of pronotum; humeral angles produced, triangular, flattened, blunt, tips dark; dorsal crest nearly square, truncate at tip, posterior margin pale; posterior process long, sharp, not quite reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, bases opaque and punctate, tips brown. Undersurface of thorax flavous; abdomen brown. Legs ferruginous.

Length 8.5 mm.; width 5 mm.

33. *Telamona concava* Fitch (Plate XXVII, 7)

1851 *Telamona concava* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 50.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1146.
1854 *Telamona ornata* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:155, pl. 3, fig. 8.
1877 *Telamona concava* Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:221, no. 8.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:391.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 442.
1893 Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 419.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 69.
1908 *Telamona ornata* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 69.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1909 *Telamona concava* Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 41:383.
1915 Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 50.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1648.

Very rare. Only two records for the basin, both from Ithaca; one specimen taken by D. F. Atkinson on June 30, 1885, and the other taken on August 30, 1890, collector not recorded. Both specimens are in the Cornell University collection.

Distinct because of the peculiar step-like notch in the dorsal crest. Hosts and habits unknown.

Technical description.— Large, well-marked species, with distinct notch on upper posterior angle of high crest; yellowish with distinct brown markings; posterior process not reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina hyaline with brown tips.

Head nearly as long as broad, punctate, pubescent, sculptured, greenish yellow with brown markings, brown protuberance near internal upper angle of each vertex; base strongly sinuate; eyes large, gray-brown; ocelli small, prominent, orange, slightly protruding, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus triangular, continuing inferior outline of face, tip narrow, somewhat projecting, hairy.

Pronotum coarsely punctate, not pubescent, greenish yellow marked with patches of brown, crest entirely brown, brown fascia from posterior base of crest to lateral margins of pronotum, extremity of posterior process brown; metopidium convex, median carina prominent; humeral angles prominent, triangular, flat, black line near anterior margin, tips blunt; dorsal crest high, quadrate, distinctly sinuate or notched at upper posterior angle, posterior margin nearly perpendicular; posterior process long, straight, pointed, almost reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, veins prominent, bases somewhat punctate, tips clouded with brown. Undersurface of body flavous. Legs yellow; tibiae mottled with brown.

Length 10 mm.; width 5.5 mm.

34. *Telamona projecta* Butler (Plate XXVII, 8)

1877 *Telamona projecta* Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:221, pl. 3, fig. 12.
1908 *Telamona cucullata* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 70, pl. 2, fig. 10.

1908 *Telamona projecta* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 120.
1916 *Heliria projecta* Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 59, no. 1624.

Rare. No specimens have been taken in the basin since 1893 and there is no record of host or habits.

The overhanging crest is very characteristic and the species will be easily recognized if again found.

Technical description.— Very distinct because of the overhanging dorsal crest; ferruginous brown with darker brown markings; tegmina yellowish hyaline, tips faintly clouded with brown.

Head yellow, punctate with brown, sparingly pubescent, faintly sculptured; eyes prominent, brown; ocelli large, pearly, conspicuous, protruding, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus flat, punctate, pubescent, lateral margins covered by small overlapping projections of the vertex.

Pronotum yellow, coarsely punctured, a black-brown fascia down median carina of metopidium, another at anterior base of dorsal crest on each side, and a brown band from posterior base of crest to lateral margin of pronotum; metopidium convex; humeral angles prominent, tipped with brown; dorsal crest projecting far forward over metopidium, anterior base strongly concave, posterior margin convex; posterior process long, slender, acuminate, about reaching apices of tegmina.

Tegmina yellow-hyaline, wrinkled, veins prominent, bases punctate, tips clouded with brown. Undersurface of thorax and abdomen fuscous. Legs yellow-ferruginous; tibiae hairy.

Length 11 mm.; width 6 mm.

35. *Telamona unicolor* Fitch (Plate XXVII, 9, 10, and Plate XLIV, 1)

1851 *Telamona unicolor* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 50.
1851 *Telamona fasciata* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 50.
1851 *Telamona unicolor* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1146.
1851 *Telamona fasciata* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1146.
1854 *Telamona unicolor* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:154, pl. 3, fig. 3.
1856 Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:450.
1856 *Telamona fasciata* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:451.
1858 *Hemiptycha diffusa* Walk., List Hom. B. M. Suppl., p. 143.
1869 *Telamona unicolor* Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1877 Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:220, no. 1.
1877 *Telamona fasciata* Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:220, no. 3.
1886 Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:244.
1886 *Telamona unicolor* Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:244.
1890 Packard, Ins. Inj. For. and Shade Trees, p. 325.
1890 *Telamona fasciata* Packard, Ins. Inj. For. and Shade Trees, p. 325.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:388, 391.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 *Telamona fasciata* et *unicolor* Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1894 *Telamona fasciata* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 421.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 71.
1908 *Telamona unicolor* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 71, pl. 2, fig. 6.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1909 *Telamona fasciata* Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 41:383.
1912 *Telamona unicolor* Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:333, pl. 30, fig. 10.
1915 Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 49, 50.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 7.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1651.

Is fairly common on the hills southeast of Ithaca but has never been taken north of Six Mile Creek. Inhabits hickory, butternut, walnut, and basswood, but eggs and nymphs have been found only on hickory, on which host the life history of the insect has been worked out.

This species is one of the most active of all the Telamonas and flies well.

The striking colors of both sexes makes the species easy of recognition. The females are a brilliant grass-green, while the males are yellow with brown fascia. Both fade quickly in collections. Attempts have been made to preserve the green color of the female but without success.

Eggs laid during September hatch about the middle of May and reach maturity the last of June. The males are much less numerous than the females thruout the season. Mating has been observed thruout August and September, and the nymphal periods have been found to average, respectively, ten, six, five, ten, and fourteen days.

A very fine stand of hickory, containing large numbers of this species, is found in Station O.

Technical description.— Females large, brilliant uniform grass-green; males smaller, bright yellow with deep brown fascia. Very striking in color; large size; crest high and square; tegmina tipped with brown.

Female: Head nearly twice as wide as long, green punctate with brown, finely pubescent; eyes large, brown; ocelli large, orange, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus deeply punctate, pubescent, tip in a pointed extension.

Pronotum concolorous green, fading to mottled yellow in cabinet specimens; very finely punctate and pubescent; metopidium more or less angular, median carina distinct, three small brown spots mesad of humeral angles; humeral angles produced, triangular, blunt; crest large, high, much higher before than behind, anterior margin less sloping than posterior, dorsal margin brownish; posterior process long, gradually acute, apex brownish and not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina brownish hyaline, bases and costal regions punctate with black, tips clouded with dark brown, veins prominent. Undersurface of thorax flavous, abdomen yellowish, pubescent, ovipositor brown. Legs flavous; tibiae mottled with brown; tarsi ferruginous.

Length 11 mm.; width 6 mm.

Male: Differs from female in size and color. Head mottled brown and yellow, much darker than that of female, much sculptured, inferior line of face strongly sinuate.

Pronotum bright yellow, metopidium strongly shaded with brown; dark brown fascia on front of dorsal crest; dark brown fascia on posterior third of crest extending gradually narrowed to lateral margin of pronotum; posterior median line of crest yellow, transverse band of yellow behind crest; apex of posterior process brown.

Undersurface of body deep brown. Legs flavous strongly marked with brown.

Length 10 mm.; width 5 mm.

36. *Telamona pruinosa* Ball

1903 *Telamona pruinosa* Ball, Proc. Biol. Soc. Wash. 16:177, pl. 1, figs. 7–7b.
1914 Van Duzee, Trans. S. Diego Soc. Nat. Hist. 2^1:50.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1642.

Rare. The only station for the species known in the basin is one small clump of young sycamores in the bed of upper Six Mile Creek. Nymphs and adults have been collected here, but the data obtained have not been sufficient to determine the life history. Both nymphs and adults feed on the petioles of the smaller leaves. The species is very active and flies well and for considerable distances, but eventually returns to the same host from which it was disturbed.

The species may be recognized by the uniform ferruginous color and by the very well-developed humeral angles.

Technical description.— Of the same general form as *T. ampelopsidis*, but smaller and differing in color; ferruginous brown with yellowish fascia over metopidium; posterior process exceeding tips of tegmina; tegmina brownish hyaline, tips slightly clouded.

Head uniform yellow-green, irregularly punctate, pubescent, sculptured; eyes prominent, light brown; ocelli prominent, protruding, brown with white margins, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus flat, tip extended.

Pronotum coarsely punctate; metopidium convex, lower anterior margin yellow, smooth area above eyes, median dorsal carina prominent; humeral angles much produced, triangular, sharp; dorsal crest much higher before than behind, anterior margin vertical, dorsal margin sloping backward, posterior margin short; posterior process long, slender, acuminate, extending beyond tips of tegmina.

Tegmina brownish hyaline, bases and costal areas sparingly punctate, tips faintly clouded with brown. Undersurface of body and legs yellowish; tarsi yellow-ferruginous; claws fuscous.

Length 10 mm.; width 6.5 mm.

37. *Telamona decorata* Ball (Plate XXVII, 11, 12)

1903 *Telamona decorata* Ball, Proc. Biol. Soc. Wash. 16:179, pl. 1, figs. 6, 6a.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 67.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1637.

Common thruout the basin on red oak and linden and found during the entire summer. The species is very close to *T. reclivata*, from which it can be separated by the brown oblique marking extending from the tip of the crest to the lateral margin of the pronotum.

The adults are most commonly found on the smaller branches and the twigs, a habit noted by Dr. Ball in his original description. The nymphs have not been distinguished from those of *T. reclivata*, with which they are often associated.

Technical description.— Grayish yellow with sides of crest and line from crest to margin of pronotum brown; apex of posterior process broadly brown; tegmina smoky hyaline, bases sharply punctate with black, apices brown.

Head wider than long, nearly vertical, lemon yellow thickly punctured with brown, punctures larger and darker near eyes than in center; entire face sculptured; clypeal suture deep; eyes brown margined with paler; ocelli large, pearly, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus extending well below inferior margin of cheeks, tip hirsute.

Pronotum thickly punctured, finely pubescent. Humeral angles pronounced, rounded, extending as far laterad beyond eyes as width of eyes; dorsal crest slightly wider than high, sloping both before and behind, sides deep brown with the color extending posterio-ventrad to lateral margin of pronotum, posterior line of crest yellow; median dorsal line percurrent, distinct, mottled before crest; posterior process not quite reaching tips of tegmina; apical end broadly brown, tip acute and black.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, veins very prominent, bases sharply punctate with black, apices brown. Undersurface of body yellowish; last segments of female darker. Outer surfaces of tibiae mottled with brown; claws fuscous.

Length 9 mm.; width 4.5 mm.

The genus Archasia Stål

The genus Archasia is an interesting one. Its species show the broad, compressed, leaf-like expansion of the pronotum suggestive of the tropical forms of the genus Membracis. The colors of the species in Archasia, however, are not brilliant, being usually green or brown with occasionally a decoration of black points along the dorsal margin.

Only two species of the genus are found in the United States, and of these one is found in the Cayuga Lake Basin. This is *A. Belfragei*, one of the few species of local Membracidae that are really representative of the family in general shape and appearance.

38. *Archasia Belfragei* Stål (Plate XXVII, 13)

1869	*Archasia Belfragei*	Stål, Bid. Memb. Kän., p. 250.
1894		Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 425.
1908		Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 73.
1909		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1913		Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 40, 63.
1915		Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 7.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1662.

Rather common on oak and locust. Taken only on the east side of the lake, on the wooded slopes. Easily recognized by the very foliaceous pronotum. The nymphs have not been found and apparently do not inhabit the trees on which the adults are found. The life history has therefore not been worked out.

Technical description.— Green fading to yellowish in cabinet specimens; pronotum high, strongly foliaceous, dorsal margin brown; tegmina about half concealed by pronotum; posterior process not reaching apices of tegmina.

Head nearly twice as wide as long, smooth, sparingly pubescent; base high and sinuate; eyes very prominent, shining dark brown; ocelli pearly, prominent, nearer to each other than to the eyes.

Pronotum closely but weakly punctate, not pubescent; humeral angles small, triangular; dorsal crest very high, flattened, foliaceous, almost vertical above head, slightly concave above head, posterior margin gradually hollowed out before apex of posterior process, entire dorsal margin flattened and uniformly brown.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, bases and costal margins punctate, tips strongly marked with brown. Undersurface of body yellow-brown; abdomen brown. Legs dull yellow-brown; tibiae pubescent.

Length 9 mm.; width 4.5 mm.; height of pronotum 5 mm.

The genus Smilia Germar

The genus Smilia somewhat resembles the preceding genus in that the pronotum is compressed and flattened; but it is easily distinguished by the fact that the terminal cell of the hind wing is triangular and petiolate. Only one species is recorded from the basin.

39. *Smilia camelus* Fabricius (Plate XXVII, 14)

1803 *Membracis camelus* Fabr., Syst. Rhyng., p. 10, no. 18.
1843 *Smilia vittata* A. & S., Hem., p. 539.
1846 *Thelia camelus* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 308, no. 7, pl. 5, figs. 5, 8, 9.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 562.
1851 *Smilia vittata* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 48.
1851 *Smilia guttata* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 49.
1851 *Thelia vittata* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1143.
1854 *Smilia guttata* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:153, pl. 3, fig. 11.
1854 *Smilia vittata* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:154, pl. 3, fig. 14.
1862 *Membracis camelus* Harris, Treatise, p. 220.
1862 *Smilia camelus* Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 220.
1869 Stål, Hem. Fab. 2:115.
1878 Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 2, fig. 22.
1884 Uhler, Stand. Nat. Hist., p. 225.
1889 Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 21:7.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1891 *Smilia vittata* Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 *Smilia camelus* Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1893 *Smilia betulae* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:196.
1893 *Smilia camelus* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:196.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 426.
1894 *Smilia camelus* var. *viridis* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 426.
1903 *Smilia camelus* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 218.
1905 *Senilia camelas* Kellogg, Amer. Ins., p. 168.
1908 *Smilia camelus* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 74.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 12.
1910 *Smilia camelus* var. *silvestrii* Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:172.
1913 *Smilia camelus* Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 42, 65.
1915 Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 49.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1664.

Common on oak and occasionally found on locust. Very active and flies well. Has been taken commonly in the northern part of the basin and rarely in the vicinity of Ithaca.

This is perhaps the most brilliantly marked of all the local species of Membracidae. The ground color of the high, flattened pronotum is brown — chocolate in the female and black-brown in the male — with a broad diagonal slash of bright nile green extending from the cephalic dorsal apex to the middle of the lateral margin.

Technical description.— Pronotum high and foliaceous, extending forward over the head; brown with broad diagonal stripe of green or yellowish followed by a parallel translucent band and a white spot; males much smaller and darker than females.

Head triangular, sculptured, yellow with scattered brown punctures and hairs; eyes brown; ocelli pearly, margins raised, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus continuing inferior line of face, apex slightly produced.

Pronotum coarsely punctured, punctures farther apart in pale parts; wide green band extending from anterior dorsal angle of crest to lateral margin of pronotum, this band fading to yellowish in dried insects; wide translucent band from behind middle of dorsum to lateral base of crest; white spot at posterior base of crest; humeral angles hardly produced, short, rounded; posterior process short, pointed, not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, bases punctate with brown, apices brown. Undersurface of body brownish yellow. Legs flavous.

Length, female 9 mm., male 7–8 mm.; width, female 3 mm., male 2.5–3 mm.

The genus Cyrtolobus Goding

The genus Cyrtolobus is very large and widely distributed. The species are in great confusion and extremely hard to delimit. The specific characters generally used have been based on the shape and color of the pronotum, both of which are very variable indeed; so that a long series of specimens show gradations thru a number of species as at present recognized. The chief source of confusion arises in the fact that many of the species inhabit the same host (chiefly oak) and the nymphs are gregarious.

The genus as a whole may be distinguished by the compressed dorsum and the thin, semitransparent spot below the dorsal ridge. The colors are usually dull browns with many irregular markings.

Only a few species have been reared. It has been possible, however, to recognize ten apparently distinct species, which may be separated as follows:

a. Dorsum regularly rounded from head, without anterior notch .... *ovatus*
aa. Dorsum with anterior depression before elevation.
  b. Crest arising before humeral angles.
    c. Color uniform dark brown .... *fuliginosus*
    cc. Color pale yellow-red with brown oblique line .... *muticus*
  bb. Crest arising behind humeral angles.
    c. Large — at least 9 mm. in length .... *tuberosus*

cc. Small — not over 7 mm. in length.
  d. Crest very low or obsolete.
    e. Elytra uniform clouded brown........................... *fuscipennis*
    ee. Elytra marked with whitish................................ *cinereus*
  dd. Crest well developed.
    e. Pronotum distinctly marked with oblique bands.................. *vau*
    ee. Markings obscure or obsolete.
      f. Concolorous brown, immaculate....................... *intermedius*
      ff. Pronotum faintly marked with oblique ray.
        g. Elytra hyaline.. *cinctus*
        gg. Elytra clouded; tip broadly fuscous................. *discoidalis*

40. *Cyrtolobus ovatus* Van Duzee (Plate XXVIII, 1)

1908 *Cyrtolobus ovatus* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 82, pl. 2, fig. 14.
1909 Van Duzee, Flor. Hem., p. 207.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1668.

Very rare. A southern form, which apparently migrates occasionally into this basin. In July, 1913, one specimen was taken by the author while sweeping in a wooded pasture.

Technical description.— Sordid yellow-testaceous; dorsum regularly elliptical; head projecting slightly forward; posterior process high and carinate, exceeding apices of tegmina; tegmina hyaline, punctate at base.

Head extended forward, very convex, roughly and deeply punctate, not pubescent, yellow; base smoothly rounded; eyes prominent, brown, reaching external margin of adjoining edge of pronotum; ocelli small, pearly, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus strongly convex, tip continuing rounded inferior margin of face, deeply punctate, apex hairy.

Pronotum roughly and deeply punctate, sparingly pubescent, sordid yellow-testaceous with faint or obsolete paler band at base of posterior process; humeral angles not prominent, rounded; dorsal crest high, sharp, compressed, unicolorous, margin regularly elliptical, compressed at anterior base, in the middle, and at posterior base, posterior compression translucent; posterior process high, sharp above, decidedly depressed, extending just beyond tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, unmarked, bases and costal areas slightly punctate. Undersurface of body and legs concolorous yellow; tibiae hairy.

Length 8 mm.; width 3 mm.

41. *Cyrtolobus fuliginosus* Emmons (Plate XXVIII, 2)

1854 *Cyrtosia fuliginosa* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:154, pl. 13, fig. 15.
1893 *Cyrtosia fuliginosus* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1893 *Cyrtolobus fuliginosus* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 433.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 82.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1669.

Common. Collected on white oak. Eggs and nymphs have not, however, been distinguished from those of other species of the genus living on the same host. Peculiar because of its uniform dark brown color without markings.

Technical description.— Near preceding species in appearance, but smaller, darker, and with lower crest; dark sordid brown with faint transverse bands; head projecting slightly forward; posterior process just reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina strongly marked with brown, apices lighter.

Head somewhat extended forward, yellow, mottled with deep brown, deeply punctate with brown, not pubescent, a black spot at base of head above each ocellus; eyes large, brown, lighter in color than remainder of head; ocelli small, pearly, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus convex, sculptured, a brown line on each side, tip continuing rounded inferior outline of face.

Pronotum dark brown, transverse fascia extending from anterior base of crest to lateral margin of pronotum, this fascia light brown before and very dark brown behind; entire pronotum deeply and densely punctate; humeral angles weak, angular but blunt; dorsal crest regularly arcuate from above humeral angles to base of posterior process; posterior process heavy, short, blunt, just reaching apices of tegmina.

Tegmina smoky brown, apical cells lighter, apical margins fuscous, bases and costal margins roughly punctate. Legs and undersurface of body flavous.

Length 6 mm.; width 2.5 mm.

42. *Cyrtolobus muticus* Fabricius (Plate XXVIII, 3)

1776	***Membracis mutica***	Fabr., Gen. Ins., p. 297, nos. 12, 13.
1781		Fabr., Spec. Ins. 2:318, no. 15.
1787		Fabr., Mant. Ins. 2:265, no. 25.
1788		Gmel., Ed. Syst. Nat. 2:2093.
1792		Oliv., Enc. Méth., p. 663, no. 11.
1794		Fabr., Ent. Syst. 4:15, no. 29.
1803	*Centrotus mutica*	Fabr., Syst. Rhyng., p. 21, no. 24.
1869	*Cyrtosia mutica*	Stål, Hem. Fab. 2:25.
1890		Van Duzee, Psyche 5:390.
1894	*Cyrtolobus muticus*	Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 431.
1908		Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 83, pl. 2, fig. 16.
1909		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1915		Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1695.

Very rare. One specimen now in Cornell collection taken at Ithaca on June 27, 1885, by an unknown collector, and one specimen collected on June 14, 1914, by H. H. Knight, are the only records for the basin. No data on hosts or life history.

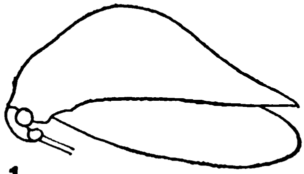
Technical description.— Yellowish tinged with red; transverse band of pronotum often absent; pronotum long; head slightly projecting forward; eyes tinged with reddish; posterior process reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina entirely hyaline or faintly clouded with yellow.

Head slightly protruding forward, yellow with red punctures, sculptured, not pubescent; base irregularly sinuate; eyes gray marked with red; ocelli small, translucent, somewhat nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus swollen, convex, continuing inferior outline of face, tip slightly extended, hairy; antennae prominent.

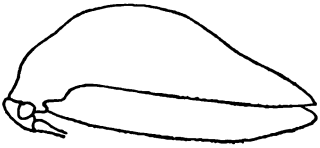
Pronotum yellowish with irregular reddish areas, deeply and roughly punctate, not pubescent; transverse band when present pale with reddish borders; humeral angles weak, blunt;

PLATE XXVIII

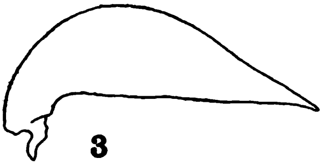
1, **Lateral outline of** ***Cyrtolobus ovatus*** Van Duzee
2, **Lateral outline of** *Cyrtolobus fuliginosus* **Emmons**
3, Pronotum of *Cyrtolobus muticus* Fabricius
4, Pronotum of *Cyrtolobus tuberosus* Fairmaire
5, Pronotum of *Cyrtolobus discoidalis* Emmons
6, Pronotum of *Cyrtolobus cinctus* Van Duzee
7, Pronotum of *Cyrtolobus vau* Say; 8, last nymphal instar
9, Pronotum of *Cyrtolobus cinereus* Emmons
10, Pronotum of *Cyrtolobus fuscipennis* Van Duzee
11, Lateral outline of *Atymna castaneae* Fitch; 12, last nymphal instar
13, Lateral outline of *Atymna querci* Fitch
14, Lateral outline of *Atymna inornata* Say
15, Pronotum of *Cyrtolobus intermedius* Emmons
16, Pronotum of *Ophiderma pubescens* Emmons



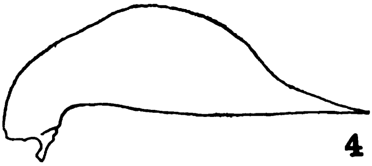
1



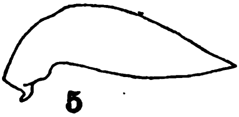
2



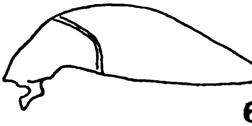
3



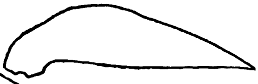
4



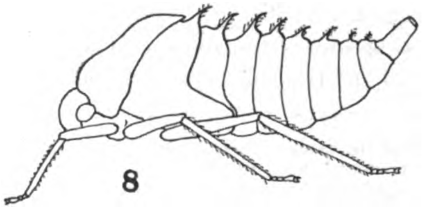
5



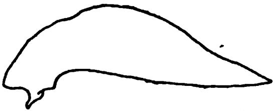
6



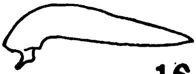
7



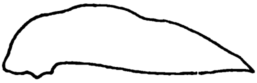
8



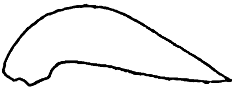
15



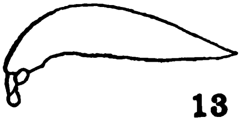
16



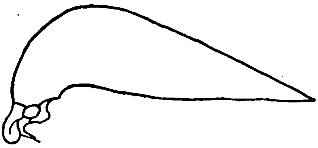
9



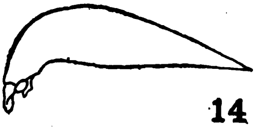
10



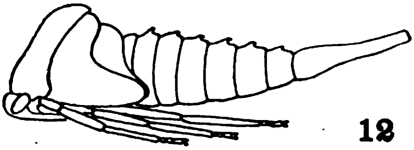
13



11



14



12

Plate XXVIII

dorsal crest elliptical, very slight sinus before base of posterior process, compressions not deep; posterior process heavy, blunt, just reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline or clouded with reddish yellow, tips pale, veins in some cases yellowish, bases and costal areas irregularly punctate. Legs and undersurface of thorax flavous; abdomen sordid yellow.

Length 6 mm.; width 2.8 mm.

43. *Cyrtolobus tuberosus* Fairmaire (Plate XXVIII, 4)

1846 *Thelia tuberosus* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 307, no. 6.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 562.
1894 *Cyrtolobus tuberosus* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 433.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 84, pl. 2, fig. 18.
1915 Weiss, Ent. News 26:102.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1673.

Very common in the entire southern part of the basin, abundant about Danby and Spencer, and not uncommon about Ithaca. Has not, however, been taken in the basin north of Aurora. The species inhabits the white and red oaks and is occasionally found on hickory. The life history is fairly well known, but egg-laying has not been observed.

Cyrtolobus tuberosus is the largest species of the genus and is recognizable by this fact. The crest is high and the translucent spot which characterizes the genus is very large.

Technical description.— Largest species of the genus; brown mottled with darker brown; dorsal compression strikingly transparent; dorsal crest situated well back on pronotum, posterior process very short; tegmina smoky hyaline tipped with brown.

Head triangular, broader than long, ochraceous tinged with red and punctate with brown, not pubescent; base weakly sinuate; inferior margin of face strongly sinuate; eyes large, brown; ocelli small, yellowish, slightly protruding, nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus convex, brown line on each side, tip extended and hairy.

Pronotum deeply and closely punctate, light greenish brown; crest dark brown with pale compression at anterior base, in the middle, and at posterior base; middle compression very large and transparent, posterior half of crest dark brown with color extending in a dark band to margin of pronotum; metopidium very convex, median carina prominent; humeral angles prominent, rounded; posterior process short, sharp, brown, inferior lateral margin slightly sinuate, not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina brownish hyaline, tips strongly marked with brown, bases punctate. Undersurface of thorax yellow. Legs ferruginous, hind trochanters marked with brown; tarsi flavous; claws brown.

Length 9.5 mm.; width 4 mm. Male smaller than female, but similarly colored.

44. *Cyrtolobus discoidalis* Emmons (Plate XXVIII, 5)

1854 *Gargara discoidalis* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:157, pl. 13, fig. 4.
1864 *Smilia carinata* Stål, Hem. Mex., p. 71.
1867 *Cyrtosia carinata* Stål, Öfv. Kongl. Vet. Akad. Forh. 24:554.
1893 *Cyrtolobus discoidalis* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1894 *Atymna discoidalis* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 436.

1896 *Atymna carinata* Fowler, B. C. A., p. 141.
1896 *Cyrtolobus discoidalis* Fowler, B. C. A., p. 141.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 192, pl. 41, fig. 8.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 86.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1909 *Gargara discoidalis* Van Duzee, Flor. Hem., p. 209.
1915 *Cyrtolobus discoidalis* Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1676.

Very rare. One specimen in Cornell collection, taken at Ithaca on June 30, 1891, collector's name not indicated. No other record for the basin.

Technical description.— Yellowish marked with light brown; distinguished by a brown line on each side of metopidium beginning just back of humeral angles and continuing down over face; posterior process very short, not reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina yellow-hyaline, tips clouded with light brown.

Head slightly broader than long, yellow with brown fascia on each side, this fascia an extension of pronotal band, finely punctate, not pubescent; base weakly sinuate; inferior margin sharply angular, clypeus continuing outline of face to form apex of triangle; eyes very prominent, gray; ocelli small, yellowish, not prominent, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus convex, faint brown line on each side, tip acute, hairy.

Pronotum yellow marked with light brown, transverse band pale bordered with light brown; entire pronotum regularly and deeply punctate; humeral angles not prominent; dorsal crest rather low, not strongly compressed; posterior process very short, blunt, apex extending just beyond internal angles of tegmina.

Tegmina yellow-hyaline, tips faintly clouded with brown, bases light brown and punctate. Undersurface of thorax ferruginous; abdomen flavous. Legs yellowish, femora marked with brown.

Length 6 mm.; width 2.8 mm.

45. *Cyrtolobus cinctus* Van Duzee (Plate XXVIII, 6)

1908 *Cyrtolobus cinctus* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 86.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 60, no. 1677.

Fairly common on young white oaks in the vicinity of Rogues Harbor. Seldom taken in any other part of the basin. Recognized by the almost hyaline tegmina and the fine, obscure markings. Life history not known.

Technical description.— Female large, greenish with prominent curved pronotal stripe of dark brown; male small, very dark brown, markings obsolete.

Female: Head broader than long, pale green without markings, sculptured, roughly punctate, smooth depression above each ocellus; eyes large, red; ocelli small, pearly; inferior margin of face sinuate; clypeus extending below line of face.

Pronotum green fading to yellow, roughly punctate, transverse line narrow, curved, dark brown, prominent; dorsal crest not high, elliptical, compressed at upper margin; posterior process not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, bases greenish and punctate. Legs and undersurface of body yellow; tarsi ferruginous.

Length 6.8 mm.; width 2.5 mm.

Male: Head uniform dark brown, almost black; eyes gray; ocelli yellow and prominent; inferior margin of face regularly rounded.

Pronotum very dark brown, transverse band narrow and pale; pale band at base of posterior process.

Tegmina yellow-hyaline, bases greenish and punctate often marked with brown, veins in base prominent. Entire undersurface of body deep brown, almost black. Legs flavous.

Length 5.5 mm.; width 2 mm.

46. *Cyrtolobus vau* Say (Plate XXVIII, 7, 8)

1831 *Membracis vau* Say, Journ. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila. 5:299.
1842 Harris, Treatise, p. 178.
1851 *Thelia semifascia* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 561.
1851 *Smilia vau* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 48.
1851 *Thelia vau* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1142.
1856 *Smilia vau* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:541.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:541.
1859 *Membracis vau* Say, Compl. Writ. 2:378.
1862 Harris, Treatise, p. 220.
1862 *Smilia vau* Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 220.
1877 Glover, Rept. U. S. Dept. Agr., p. 30, fig. 20.
1877 Uhler, Wheeler's Rept. App. J, no. 1333.
1878 Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 2, figs. 10, 31.
1886 *Cyrtosia vau* Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:238.
1889 Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 21:7.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:389.
1890 *Smilia vau* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1891 *Cyrtosia vau* Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 Harring, Ottawa Nat. 6:30.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1893 *Cyrtolobus nigra* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1893 *Cyrtolobus punctifrontis* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1893 *Cyrtolobus tricincta* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1893 *Cyrtolobus vau* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 432.
1895 Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 67.
1903 *Thelia fasciata* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 189.
1903 *Arganic semifasciata* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 189, pl. 40, fig. 9, and pl. 41, figs. 1, 1a.
1903 *Cyrtolobus vau* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 218.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 87, pl. 2, fig. 19.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1909 *Cyrtolobus varius* Smith, Inc. N. J., p. 92.
1909 *Cyrtolobus vau* Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 41:384.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 43, 66.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1678.

Extremely abundant thruout the basin. The commonest species of Cyrtolobus in the region. Found on almost all varieties of oaks and occasionally on chestnut. The entire life history is passed on one host. The eggs are laid in the late fall, and winter over, and two broods a year appear in some seasons. The nymphs are plentiful and easily distinguished. The species is recognized by its small size and very characteristic markings.

Eggs laid during September hatch about the middle of May and the insects reach maturity the last of June. Males are much less numerous than females thruout the season. Mating has been observed thru August and September, and the nymphal periods have been found to average, respectively, ten, six, five, ten, and fourteen days.

A very fine stand of hickory containing a few oaks near the top of South Hill has proved a good station for the species, but the best collecting ground in the basin has been Station B, particularly the small grove just east of the old street-car right of way. Here the nymphs appear about June 1 and the adults are plentiful by the middle of July. The nymphal skins are very noticeable on the undersides of the leaves, and the exuviae are very perfect. A large number of such exuviae have been collected on July 11, which date marks the height of the last molting season. Mating occurs a few days after the adults reach maturity, and oviposition begins during the same week. Some of the eggs hatch in the same season, making two broods a year for certain years. This depends, however, on climatic conditions.

Technical description.— Small robust species, with low pronotum and prominent markings; varies greatly in color and somewhat in size; females larger and lighter than males, but with constant markings; transverse pronotal band prominent, pale bordered with deep brown; dorsal compression deep and translucent; posterior process short, blunt, not reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina hyaline, with bases and tips slightly brown.

Head small, subtriangular, pale yellow punctured with brown; base feebly sinuate; inferior margin of face sinuate, clypeus extending slightly below line; eyes large, gray-brown; ocelli small, yellowish, somewhat nearer to each other than to the eyes; clypeus hairy.

Pronotum closely and roughly punctate, median compressed spot round, transparent; dorsal crest low, arising above humeral angles and gradually extending with only a faint sinus before posterior process; posterior process short, blunt, tectiform, reaching to bases of apical cells of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, veins prominent, bases and apices smoky hyaline. Legs and undersurface of body uniform flavous.

Length 5.5–6.5 mm.; width 2.4–2.6 mm.

47. *Cyrtolobus intermedius* Emmons (Plate XXVIII, 15)

1854 *Cyrtosia intermedia* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5: pl. 13, fig. 16.
1894 *Cyrtolobus intermedius* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 433.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 90.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1683

Not common, and hard to delimit. The color is chestnut brown and if constant should be a good superficial character. The insect is of medium size, but the limited amount of material available for study makes it impossible to state the degree to which it may vary. Nothing is known of its life history.

Technical description.— Uniform chestnut in color; pronotum low and gradually arcuate; compressions not deep; posterior process short, straight, not reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina hyaline, bases brown and punctate.

Head subtriangular, convex, yellow or chestnut deeply punctured with brown, not pubescent; base weakly sinuate; inferior margin of face forming with the clypeus a nearly right angle; eyes prominent, greenish gray; ocelli small, pearly, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus deeply punctate with brown, pubescent, tip hairy.

Pronotum densely punctate, not pubescent; humeral angles weak, rounded; metopidium convex, median carina prominent; dorsal crest low, not greatly compressed, compressed spots shallow; posterior process short, triangular, extending to bases of apical cells of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, bases light brown and punctate. Legs and undersurface of thorax and abdomen flavous tinged with ferruginous, abdomen mostly flavous.

Length 6.5 mm.; width 2.5 mm.

48. *Cyrtolobus cinereus* Emmons (Plate XXVIII, 9)

1854 *Gargara cinereus* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:156.
1893 *Cyrtolobus cinereum* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1894 *Atymna cinereum* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 436.
1908 *Cyrtolobus cinereus* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 91.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1686.

Rare. A small series in the Cornell University collection, and a pair taken by the author on July 3, 1914, are the only specimens known from the locality. The host is probably oak, but nothing is known of the life history of the species.

Technical description.— Small greenish gray mottled with brown and banded with green; pronotum low and regularly arcuate; metopidium convex; posterior process short but sharp; tegmina wrinkled, hyaline, apices brown.

Head convex, pale grayish green sharply punctate with black, sparingly pubescent; base nearly straight; eyes prominent, brown; ocelli large, reddish, prominent, slightly farther from each other than from the eyes and situated slightly below an imaginary line extending thru centers of eyes; clypeus flat, somewhat trilobed, a faint brown line on each side, extending below inferior margin of face.

Pronotum green-gray tinged with reddish, closely punctate, not pubescent; dorsal crest very low, median spot on margin pale; a transverse pale band bordered with brown extending from anterior base of crest backward and downward to lateral margin of pronotum, a similar band extending from base of posterior process downward and forward to almost meet the anterior stripe and form a V with it; posterior process short, not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina wrinkled, hyaline, brown spot at base of each, another in middle, and a third at tip; areas between hyaline. Legs and undersurface of body grayish flavous.

Length 5.8 mm.; width 2.5 mm.

49. *Cyrtolobus fuscipennis* Van Duzee (Plate XXVIII, 10)

1908 *Cyrtolobus fuscipennis* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 91.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1687.

Very rare. Van Duzee's paratypes in the Cornell collection, and a small series taken by the author in July, 1914, are the only records.

Technical description.— Near preceding species in appearance, but larger and with tegmina strongly colored with reddish brown and marked with darker; pronotum low; posterior process short.

Head gray-green deeply punctate with black, areas next to eyes black; base nearly straight; eyes large, gray; ocelli large, red, prominent, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus long, extending below inferior margin of face.

Pronotum deeply and closely punctate, sparingly pubescent, green-gray tinged with reddish; metopidium convex, median carina distinct, large brown fascia above each eye; dorsal crest very low, median spot pale; anterior transverse line pale bordered with brown; similar line before base of posterior process; posterior process short, blunt, not reaching apices of tegmina.

Tegmina deep red-brown, semiopaque, darker brown spot at middle and at tip of each, bases punctate. Undersurface of thorax red-brown; abdomen flavous. Legs ferruginous.

Length 6 mm.; width 2.4 mm.

The subgenus Atymna Stål

The subgenus Atymna of the genus Cyrtolobus has been set off to include those forms in which the pronotum is highest at the anterior extremity. The character, while entirely superficial, is valuable for convenience in separating the species of this confusing group.

The three species represented in the basin may be separated as follows:

a. Species large, 7–9 mm. . . . . *castaneae*
aa. Species small, 5–6 mm.
  b. Pronotum punctate; female green, male black with broken yellow dorsal stripe . . . . *querci*
  bb. Pronotum smooth; both sexes green . . . . *inornata*

50. *Atymna castaneae* Fitch (Plate XXVIII, 11, 12)

1851 *Smilia castaneae* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 49.
1851 *Thelia castaneae* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1143.
1854 *Gargara nigricephala* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:157, pl. 13, fig. 5.
1854 *Gargara viridis* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:154, pl. 3, fig. 13.
1856 *Smilia castaneae* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:470.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:470.
1858 Walk., List Hom. B. M. Suppl., p. 133.
1867 *Atymna castaneae* Stål, Öfv. Kongl. Vet. Akad. Forh. 24:554.
1869 *Smilia castaneae* Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1890 *Atymna castaneae* Van Duzee, Psyche 5:390.
1890 *Smilia castaneae* Packard, Ins. Inj. For. and Shade Trees, p. 350.
1890 *Ophigenna nigrocephala* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 442.
1892 *Atymna castaneae* Harring, Ottawa Nat. 6:30.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 435.
1894 *Ophiderma nigricephala* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 440.
1896 *Atymna castaneae* Fowler, B. C. A., p. 140.
1903 Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 194, 218.
1903 *Atymna lineata* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 194, pl. 42, fig. 6.

1908	*Cyrtolobus* (*Atymna*) *castaneae*	Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 93.
1909		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 92, 93.
1913		Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, fig. 44.
1915		Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 49.
1915		Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1690.

A characteristic species on chestnut, abundant wherever this tree is common. The nymphs appear in large numbers about the second week in June and the adults about a month later. Both feed on petioles and blades of young leaves. There is apparently but one brood a year. The season for collecting this species is short, since the insects are abundant for only about two weeks and then disappear. The insects of *Atymna castaneae* have the best power of flight of any of the local membracids, and this is about the only species ever taken about electric lights.

The forms vary remarkably in size and coloration. This peculiar variation does not seem to be sexual or seasonal and its cause is not known. Three forms are quite distinct — one large light immaculate green, another large very dark brown, and a third small light castaneous with very dark brown elytra. Some differences have been noted between the nymphs that develop into these various forms, but not enough to warrant a taxonomic distinction.

A peculiar feature in the life history of this membracid is the fact that altho the insects are very abundant during the first two weeks in July they are seldom found after that date locally. This period seems to be an incredibly short one for the adult life of the insect, and yet it has not been taken on any other host later in the season.

The species is abundant on the chestnut trees just east of the insectary along the Forest Home road, and in certain parts of the valley of Six Mile Creek.

Technical description.— Extremely variable as to both size and color; of the rather constant varieties the one that is most abundant may be described as follows:

Castaneous with dark brown patch over each humeral angle and dorsal margin lined with brown; crest highest above humeral angles, sloping gradually to apex of posterior process; posterior process short, not reaching apices of tegmina; tegmina deep castaneous, brown at base and tip.

Head somewhat protruding, convex, sculptured, sparingly punctate, not pubescent, yellow marked with brown; base nearly straight; eyes prominent, gray-brown; ocelli not prominent, white, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus long, narrow, extending for half its length below inferior margin of face.

Pronotum castaneous marked with brown over humeral angles, dorsal margin tinged with brown; entire pronotum coarsely punctured, not pubescent; humeral angles not prominent, rounded; dorsal crest highest above humeral angles, gradually sloping backward, dorsal line straight; posterior process short, tectiform, gradually acute, not reaching bases of apical cells of tegmina.

Tegmina very dark, basal two-thirds deep brown, almost black, apices strongly marked with brown, narrow area between these two brown regions hyaline. Undersurface of prothorax marked with brown; abdomen and legs flavous.

Length 6.5 mm.; width 2 mm.

51. *Atymna querci* Fitch (Plate xxviii, 13)

1851 *Smilia querci* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 49.
1851 *Thelia querci* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1143.
1854 *Gargara querci* Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:156, pl. 13, fig. 8.
1878 *Smilia querci* Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 2, fig. 11.
1890 *Atymna querci* Van Duzee, Psyche 5:390.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^{2}:128.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 435.
1908 *Cyrtolobus* (*Atymna*) *querci* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 93.
1912 *Cyrtolobus querci* Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:335, pl. 31, fig. 14.
1915 *Atymna querci* Funkh., Fitch's Types, p. 49.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1692.

Very common on oak and often taken on other hosts in the neighborhood of oaks. Since the insects are strong flyers it is probable that their appearance on the other trees is accidental. The eggs and the nymphs are found only on the oak — principally the white oak — which doubtless accounts for the specific name. The species is found thruout the summer.

The insects of this species are smaller than those of *A. castaneae*. The females are uniform green with the pronotum closely punctate; the males brown with a light golden stripe down the median dorsal line, this stripe being broken near the posterior end of the pronotum so that the whole marking appears as a long dash followed by a dot.

Technical description.— Females large and green, males smaller and brown with a broken yellow median dorsal stripe; body long and narrow; crest highest above humeral angles and gradually sloping to posterior apex without a sinus.

Female: Head projecting slightly forward, pale yellow, sculptured, irregularly punctate, not pubescent; eyes very prominent, reddish; ocelli not prominent, yellow; clypeus extending below inferior margin of face.

Pronotum uniform green, roughly punctate, not pubescent, dorsal line faintly marked with brown; posterior process short, acute, not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina entirely hyaline, bases and costal margins faintly punctate; hind wings iridescent. Legs and undersurface of body green.

Length 7 mm.; width 2.5 mm.

Male: Head sordid yellow, sculptured, sparingly punctate; eyes prominent, brown; ocelli pearly; clypeus marked with brown at base.

Pronotum chocolate brown with bright yellow stripe on median dorsal line and yellow band before apex.

Tegmina smoky hyaline with brown cloud at apices. Undersurface of thorax brownish; abdomen very dark brown, nearly black. Legs flavous; tarsi ferruginous; claws fuscous.

Length 6 mm.; width 2 mm.

52. *Atymna inornata* Say (Plate xxviii, 14)

1831 *Membracis inornata* Say, Journ. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila. 5:299.
1851 *Smilia inornata* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 48.
1851 *Thelia inornata* Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1142.
1856 *Smilia inornata* Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:471.
1856 Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:471.
1858 Walk., List Hom. B. M. Suppl., p. 134.
1859 *Membracis inornata* Say, Compl. Writ. 2:578.
1869 *Smilia inornata* Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1877 Glover, Rept. U. S. Dept. Agr., p. 30, fig. 18.
1878 Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 2, fig. 26.
1882 *Atymna inornata* Lintner, First Rept. Ins. N. Y., p. 284.
1886 *Ophiderma inornata* Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:248.
1890 *Atymna inornata* Van Duzee, Psyche 5:389.
1890 Packard, Ins. Inj. For. and Shade Trees, p. 350.
1891 *Atymia inornata* Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 *Atymna inornata* Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 434.
1908 *Cyrtolobus* (*Atymna*) *inornata* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 93.
1909 *Atymna inornata* Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 93.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1693.

Not common. The smallest of the species of the genus. Both sexes are green but the species may be recognized by the smooth polished surface of the pronotum and the very fine punctures. Occurs on most species of oaks. Has been taken at the north end of the lake and less frequently about Ithaca. The species is often found associating with *A. querci*.

Technical description.— Small, green, polished, shining, punctures fine and shallow; dorsum weakly, gradually rounded; posterior process pointed, not reaching apices of tegmina; tegmina entirely hyaline.

Head vertical, convex, flavous, nearly smooth, obsoletely punctured, not pubescent; eyes gray; ocelli pearly, farther from each other than from the eyes; clypeus smooth, convex.

Pronotum uniform green or fading to sordid yellow in dried specimens, shining, polished, very closely and finely punctured; metopidium low, median carina prominent; humeral angles not prominent; dorsal crest low, highest just behind humeral angles, feebly arcuate, median edge compressed; posterior process gradually acute, reaching just beyond bases of apical cells of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, veins yellowish, bases faintly punctate, apical marginal borders wrinkled. Legs and undersurface of body flavous.

Length 6 mm.; width 2.2 mm.

The subgenus Xantholobus Van Duzee

Like Atymna, the subgenus Xantholobus has been arbitrarily erected for convenience in separating the numerous forms of the genus Cyrtolobus. It is delimited to include those forms in which the posterior part of the pronotum is strongly inflated to produce a rounded swelling. Before this swelling the dorsum is constricted.

The two species found in the basin may be separated as follows:

a. Pronotum with three irregular oblique lines .... *trilineatus*
aa. Pronotum with single yellow line at lateral margin .... *lateralis*

53. *Xantholobus trilineatus* Say (Plate XXIX, 1)

1824 *Membracis trilineatus* Say, Narr. Long's Exp. App., p. 300.
1859 Say, Compl. Writ. 1:200.
1886 *Cyrtosia trilineata* Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:239.
1890 Van Duzee, Psyche 5:389.
1892 Harring, Ottawa Nat. 6:30.
1894 *Cyrtolobus trilineatus* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 432.
1908 *Cyrtolobus* (*Xantholobus*) *trilineatus* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 96, pl. 2, fig. 23.
1913 *Xantholobus trilineatus* Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 45, 67.
1916 *Xantholobus muticus* Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1695.

Common. Usually taken on oaks, on which it shows the same general habits as the species of the genus Cyrtolobus. Easily recognized by the much swollen posterior pronotum.

Technical description.— Varies considerably in size and color, and somewhat in shape of posterior swelling; generally large, robust, pronotum much swollen behind middle; brown with pale vittae bordered with black; posterior process not reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina smoky hyaline.

Head subtriangular, yellow, punctured and marked with brown, roughly sculptured; base nearly straight; apical margin with clypeus rectangular; eyes prominent, round; ocelli distinct, brown, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus large, sutures distinct, punctate with brown, a brown vertical band on each side, tip continuing inferior margin of face.

Pronotum brown with a pale fascia down center of metopidium, another extending from anterior base of dorsal swelling to lateral margin of pronotum, and a third at base of posterior process; each of these fascia broad, pale, and bordered on each side with black; dorsal swelling beginning well behind humeral angles, distinctly bilobed, compression between lobes pale; posterior process short, stout, extending about to bases of apical cells of tegmina; entire pronotum coarsely and densely punctate, not pubescent.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, bases black and punctate, veins dark at base and in middle. Undersurface of head and thorax black; abdomen flavous. Legs ferruginous; claws fuscous.

Length 7–8 mm.; width 3–4 mm.

54. *Xantholobus lateralis* Van Duzee (Plate XXIX, 2)

1908 *Cyrtolobus* (*Xantholobus*) *lateralis* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 96.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1696.

Very rare. Van Duzee's unique type specimen, which is now in the Cornell collection, was taken on June 30, 1891, and no specimens have since been collected in the basin. The species is apparently common

PLATE XXIX

1, Pronotum of *Xantholobus trilineatus* Say
2, Pronotum of *Xantholobus lateralis* Van Duzee
3, Pronotum of *Ophiderma salamandra* Fairmaire
4, Last nymphal instar of *Ophiderma pubescens* Emmons
5, Pronotum of *Ophiderma flava* Goding
6, Pronotum of *Ophiderma flavicephala* Goding
7, Last nymphal instar of *Vanduzea arquata* Say; 8, adult; 9, lateral outline of pronotum;
10, enlarged lateral outline of last nymphal instar
11, Pronotum of *Entylia bactriana* Germar; 12, last nymphal instar
13, Pronotum of *Publilia concava* Say; 14, last nymphal instar

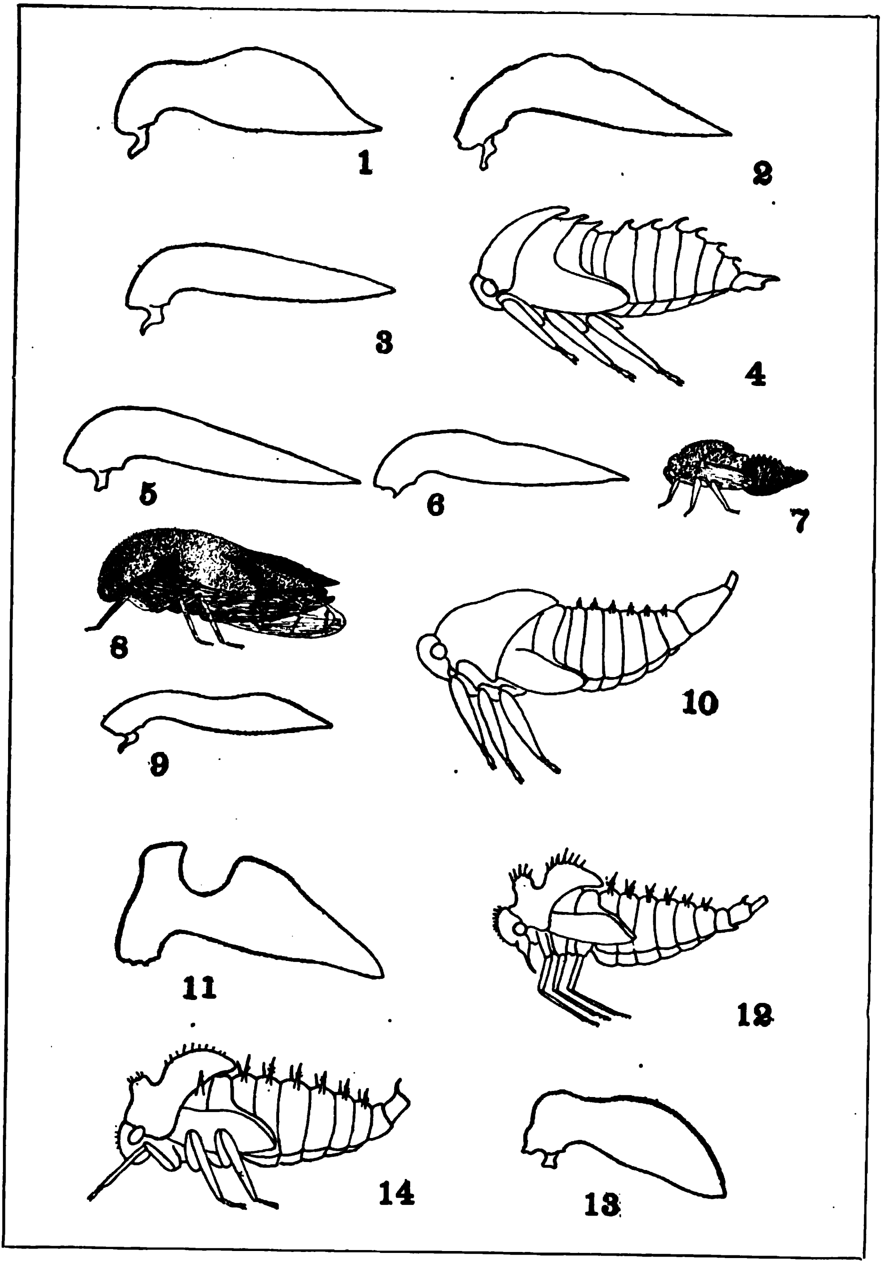


PLATE XXIX

farther south and numerous specimens have been received from Pennsylvania. It is easily recognized by the bright yellow band which bounds the lateral margin of the pronotum in both sexes. Nothing is known of its habits or life history.

Technical description.— Females large, light brown; males small, very dark brown; lateral margin of pronotum in both sexes bordered with yellow; body long and narrow; posterior swelling not pronounced; posterior process not reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina smoky hyaline, clouded with fuscous at tips and showing dark abdomen thru middle.

Head yellow spotted with brown, weakly punctate, not pubescent; base rounded; eyes prominent, brown; ocelli not prominent, transparent; clypeus long, rectangular, apex dark brown.

Pronotum uniform brown with lateral band of yellow, densely and coarsely punctate; metopidium convex, median carina prominent; posterior swelling not large, indistinctly bilobed, median compression narrow; posterior process short, sharp, tectiform, extending to about middle of apical cells of tegmina.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, bases irregularly punctate, tips clouded with fuscous, veins prominent and brown. Undersurface of head and thorax brown; abdomen flavous with sides dark brown. Legs flavous-ferruginous.

Length 7.5 mm.; width 3 mm.

The genus Ophiderma Fairmaire

A genus distinguished in that the compressed, rounded dorsum shows no evidences of a ridge or crest. Most of the species are very hairy.

The genus is represented in the basin by four species, which may be separated as follows:

a. Color green or yellowish green . . . . *flava*
aa. Color brown or brown-mottled.
  b. Pronotum with broad yellow lateral stripe . . . . *flavicephala*
  bb. Lateral stripe absent.
    c. Large, 7–8 mm . . . . *salamandra*
    cc. Small, 5–6 mm . . . . *pubescens*

55. *Ophiderma salamandra* Fairmaire (Plate XXIX, 3)

1846	*Ophiderma salamandra*	Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 493, no. 1.
1851		Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 588.
1856		Fitch, Rept. Ins. N. Y. 3:465.
1856		Fitch, Trans. N. Y. Agr. Soc. 16:465.
1890		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 442.
1891		Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1893		Hopkins, W. Va. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 32:231.
1894		Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 438.
1903		Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 196, 218.
1908		Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 99.
1909		Van Duzee, Flor. Hem., p. 207.
1909		Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 93.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1700.

The largest and commonest species of Ophiderma in the basin. Found on oaks. Very active and extremely difficult to study in the field. The life history is not known.

Technical description.— Large brown species; dorsum rounded and very pubescent with short, black, bristly hairs; posterior process short, suddenly acute, not reaching apices of tegmina; tegmina hyaline, bases and costal areas strongly punctate, tips clouded with fuscous, veins very prominent; underpart of body dark; males smaller and darker than females.

Head broader than long, yellow, feebly punctate, very hairy; base slightly, uniformly curved; eyes large, brown; ocelli prominent, red, nearer to each other than to the eyes; inferior margin of face sinuate; clypeus yellow with two vertical stripes of red; base hairy.

Pronotum coarsely punctate, densely pubescent, brown mottled with green; dorsum rounded, slightly depressed behind middle, lateral margin curved downward at middle; posterior process short, suddenly acute, not reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina smoky hyaline, veins very prominent, nearly all of basal half below pronotum strongly punctate, tips clouded with fuscous; hind wings iridescent. Undersurface of head and thorax fuscous; abdomen flavous. Femora and tibiae strongly marked with dark brown.

Length 7.6 mm.; width 3.2 mm.

56. *Ophiderma pubescens* Emmons (Plate XXVIII, 16, and Plate XXIX, 4)

1854	*Gargara pubescens*	Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:157, pl. 13, fig. 2.
1908	*Ophiderma pubescens*	Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 99.
1913		Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 46, 68.
1916		Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1701.

A small and very hairy species, very abundant in all parts of the basin. It is common on oak early in the season. The nymphs appear in April and may be taken until July. Like those of the preceding species, the insects show great activity and are not often taken in general collecting.

Technical description.— Small, light brown mottled with white; dorsum convex, hairy; posterior process short and blunt, not reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina hyaline with median black stripe and cloud of brown on tips; undersurface of body flavous; femora strongly marked with black; males smaller and darker than females.

Head broader than long, yellow tinged with red and punctate with brown, sculptured, convex; base sinuate; eyes prominent, grayish; ocelli protruding, transparent, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus extending below inferior margin of face, feebly trilobed, two vertical stripes of red, tip hairy.

Pronotum closely and finely punctate, densely pubescent, light brown with broad pale stripe down center of metopidium, middle of this stripe dark brown, semicircular white stripe behind humeral angles and another before base of posterior process, these stripes sometimes bordered with darker; humeral angles not prominent; metopidium convex; dorsum convex, very slightly depressed behind middle; posterior process short, suddenly acute, extending as far as bases of apical cells of tegmina.

Tegmina mottled, basal fifth of each brown and punctate, behind this an opaque yellow, punctate, transverse band, this followed by a transverse black band, apical two-fifths hyaline; tips clouded with fuscous. Undersurface of body flavous. Legs flavous, femora strongly marked with black.

Length 6 mm.; width 2.5 mm.

57. *Ophiderma flavicephala* Goding (Plate xxix, 6)

1892 *Ophiderma flavicephala* Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 439.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 100, pl. 2, fig. 28.
1909 Van Duzee, Flor. Hem, p. 207.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 93.
1910 *Ophiderma flavocephala* Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:169.
1915 *Ophiderma flavicephala* Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1703.

Rare. Only a few records for the basin. Host not known, probably oak. Species recognized by the lateral yellow line on or near the margin of the pronotum.

Technical description.— Brown with yellow lateral stripes; densely pubescent and punctate; pronotum broadly convex, gradually sloping from humeral region; posterior process almost reaching tips of tegmina; tegmina hyaline, bases and tips brown.

Head much broader than long, finely punctate, sparingly pubescent with long hairs, yellow with a small black spot above each ocellus; ocelli prominent, brilliant red; inferior margin of face strongly sinuate; clypeus broad, extending below margin of face.

Pronotum densely punctate and pubescent, hairs long; uniform brown with yellow stripe beginning at head and extending two-thirds of length of pronotum; dorsum rounded, slightly depressed in middle; posterior process acute, almost reaching tips of tegmina.

Tegmina coriaceous and opaque, distal half of each brown, apical half hyaline; tips brown. Undersurface of thorax fuscous; abdomen flavous. Trochanters and femora strongly marked with black.

Males slightly smaller and much darker than females, with much heavier pubescence especially on anterior part of pronotum.

Length 5.5–6 mm.; width 2–2.5 mm.

58. *Ophiderma flava* Goding (Plate xxix, 5)

1892 *Ophiderma flava* Godg., Ins. Life 5:93.
1893 Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1894 Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 439.
1908 Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 100.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 93.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 8.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1704.

Rare. Has been taken occasionally by beating low shrubs and bushes. Particular host not known. The eggs and the nymphs have not been recognized. The adult insect may be at once recognized by the uniform light green or greenish yellow color.

Technical description.— Large greenish yellow species, fading to sordid yellow in cabinet specimens; body robust and long; posterior process not reaching apices of tegmina; tegmina hyaline, brown at base and fuscous-clouded at tips.

Head much broader than long, green, weakly and sparingly punctate, smooth, shining, sparingly pubescent; eyes large, red; ocelli prominent, reddish, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus smooth, nearly black, base regularly rounded, tip extending below inferior margin of face.

Pronotum uniform green, in some cases tinged with reddish, closely and densely punctate, finely pubescent; dorsum rounded, depressed behind middle, median carina percurrent; posterior process heavy, tectiform, acute, not extending to tips of tegmina.

Tegmina hyaline, bases reddish and punctate, tips clouded with fuscous, veins heavy and inclined to be punctate along margin. Legs and undersurface of body entirely flavous.

Length 7-8 mm.; width 3-4 mm.

The genus Vanduzea Goding

The genus Vanduzea is close to Ophiderma but is distinguished by the terminal cell of the elytra, which in Vanduzea is transverse and truncate at the base.

The genus is entirely North American and five species have been described from various parts of the United States. Only one of these species is found locally, but this is the commonest membracid in the basin.

59. *Vanduzea arquata* Say (Plate XXIX, 7–10)

1831 *Membracis arquata* Say, Journ. Acad. Nat. Sci. Phila. 5:302.
1851 *Carynota arquata* Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 48.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1144.
1859 *Membracis arquata* Say, Compl. Writ. 2:380.
1869 *Caranota arcuata* Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1878 *Carineta arquata* Glover, MS. Journ. Hom., pl. 2, fig. 24.
1890 *Ophiderma arquata* Van Duzee, Psyche 5:389.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 442.
1892 *Vanduzea arquata* Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1893 *Ophiderma arquata* Godg., Can. Ent. 25:172.
1894 *Vanduzea arquata* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 440.
1895 Gillette and Baker, Hem. Colo., p. 68.
1903 *Vanduzea arcuata* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 218.
1908 *Vanduzea arquata* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 103, pl. 2, fig. 30.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 93.
1909 *Carynota arcuata* Van Duzee, Can. Ent. 41:382.
1910 *Vanduzea arquata* Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:169.
1912 Matausch, Bul. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. 31:325, pl. 32, fig. 16.
1913 Branch, Kans. Univ. Sci. Bul. 8:106, figs. 14, 15, 68, 69, 78.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, figs. 6, 7, 9, 20, 28, 47, 69.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 9.
1915 Funkh., Psyche 22:183–198, pl. 17.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1709.

Extremely abundant. Easily the commonest species of Membracidae in the region. Three or four broods a year on locust. The nymphs and the adults are present in great numbers thruout the summer, and the specimens may be collected by thousands from young locust trees in all parts of the basin. The life history has been worked out in detail (Funkhouser, 1915 f).

There are three rather distinct seasons for egg-laying — one about the middle of June, one the last of July, and one in September. The eggs are laid during the summer at the base of bud scales of the preceding year, and in the fall in the buds. They are laid in clusters of from three to six eggs, in a finger-like mass. About one month is required for the processes of mating, oviposition, incubation, and hatching of the summer eggs, and about twenty days for the development of the nymphs. The greatest number of adults therefore appear early in June from the eggs that winter over, and the middle of July, the last of August, and the middle of October from the summer eggs. The periods, however, are more or less irregular and all nymphs do not mature at an equal rate, so that the immature forms of all stages may be found during the greater part of the summer.

Technical description.— *Female*: Light chocolate brown with deep brown and yellow-white markings, pubescent, punctate, without pronotal horns; dorsum regularly rounded, sharp at posterior apex; tegmina hyaline, cloudy at base and near middle, extending beyond posterior process, costal areas punctate, terminal cells with straight transverse base; legs and undersurface of body uniform luteous.

Head wider than long, yellow-brown, slightly punctate and sparingly pubescent; eyes prominent, dark brown; ocelli pearly white, equidistant from each other and from the eyes and situated on a line drawn thru centers of eyes; antennae short, three-jointed, the last segment fine and hairlike; clypeus extending slightly below marginal line of lorae when viewed from front, sparingly pilose; beak reaching behind coxae.

Pronotum finely punctate, pubescent, gradually rounded above head; humeral angles rounded, not prominent, extending beyond eyes to a distance equal to width of eyes; faint, percurrent, median carina; posterior process strong, acute, sharp at tip, extending as far as terminal cells of tegmina; color of pronotum yellowish brown with markings of dark brown and white, irregular brown spots on front of pronotum over eyes; diagonal light band extending on each side from apex of metopidium to lateral margin, this band having a dark brown posterior border; broad transverse light band just before posterior apex, this band bordered before and behind with dark brown.

Tegmina subhyaline, extending beyond apex of posterior process of pronotum; basal areas fuscous, punctate; costal cells punctate for almost the entire length; fuscous cloud in middle of each tegmen continuing dark pattern of pronotum above.

Underside of abdomen orange-yellow; sheath of ovipositor yellow. Pectoral regions and legs uniform yellow; femora pubescent; tibiae pubescent and armed with very small, black-tipped spines; tarsi fuscous; claws ferruginous.

Length including tegmina, 5.7 mm.; width between humeral angles, 2.6 mm.

Male: Smaller and darker than female, and having dorsal line slightly depressed just behind middle as seen from lateral outline; color deep brown, almost black; fasciae narrow, but conspicuous because of dark color around them.

Tegmina with veins very heavy and black. Undersurface of abdomen dark brown, segments margined with white. Legs uniform dark brown; femora smooth; tibiae with yellowish pubescence; tarsi and claws fuscous.

Length 4.6 mm.; width 2.3 mm.

The genus Entylia Germar

To the genus Entylia a very large number of species have been assigned, the standing of many of which is questionable. The genus is distinguished by the high, flattened dorsum with the deep median notch. One species is represented in the basin, but this species shows so much variation that it has been recorded under a number of names.

The whole genus is indeed in much confusion. Mataush (1910 c) has claimed that most of the species assigned to the genus, together with the species of the genus Publilia, are synonymous. Recent experiments by the writer, which will form the subject of a later report, tend to show that this is not entirely the case but that undoubtedly many of the species are not valid. The species *E. bactriana* as here recognized is, however, believed to be good.

60. *Entylia bactriana* Germar (Plate XXIX, 11, 12)

1835 ***Entylia bactriana*** Germ., Silb. Rev. 3:248.
1846 Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 300, no. 4, pl. 5, fig. 32.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 547.
1851 ***Entylia indecisa*** Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 549.
1851 ***Entylia reducta*** Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 549.
1858 ***Entylia impedita*** Walk., List Hom. B. M. Suppl., p. 137.
1869 ***Entylia bactriana*** Stål, Bid. Memb. Kån., p. 241.
1877 Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:211, no. 2.
1877 ***Entylia reducta*** Butler, Cist. Ent. 2:211, no. 5.
1894 ***Entylia bactriana*** Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 397.
1903 ***Entylia reducta*** Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 185.
1903 ***Entylia bactriana*** Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 185.
1908 ***Entylia reducta*** Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 105.
1908 ***Entylia bactriana*** Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 105.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 93.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, fig. 48.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 9.
1916 ***Entylia carinata*** Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 61, no. 1716.

Very abundant in the lower parts of the basin, on thistle. Appears in July and August in such large numbers that it is often possible to take several hundred specimens from one plant. Nymphs and adults may be taken thruout the summer and the life history may be easily studied.

The species shows so much variation in color and in the shape of the pronotum that it is hard to choose the typical form. At least four forms that have been described as distinct species have been reared by the author from one egg mass.

The species has been taken commonly on thistle and is found on practically all the species of this plant growing in the basin. It also lays its eggs and undergoes its entire life history on joe-pye weed (*Eupatorium purpureum* L.) and on sunflower.

The eggs are laid in a double row on the underside of the leaf, one row on each side of the midrib. The eggs are very small and white and the ends project slightly from the surface. The number of eggs varies considerably and is often much larger in one row than in another. Oviposition requires about an hour. The process has first been observed on July 1. The eggs hatch in about two weeks and the nymphs reach maturity in a little over three weeks, the instars averaging about five days each. The nymphs of the first two instars remain very quietly on the leaf just above the eggs from which they have emerged, and the three other instars are hardly less quiet, remaining crowded on the leaf and showing little activity even when disturbed. After the last molt the insects are very soft-bodied and are generally white; the nymphal skins remain hanging to the tomentose surface of the leaf. In a few hours the insects begin to change color and creep about over the plant. The colors vary greatly, ranging from white to black. The insects are very sluggish and make no attempt to fly, but drop to the ground when disturbed. The number that may be found on one host plant is surprising, 232 having been taken from one thistle on August 21, 1913. They usually crowd closely together on the underside of the leaf, with their heads pointing toward the base of the leaf. Mating and oviposition take place soon after the insect reaches maturity. The second period of oviposition occurs about the last week in August and the nymphs from these eggs mature before cold weather sets in.

Miss Branch (1913) has recorded that the species *E. sinuata* undergoes but four molts in Kansas, and believes that molting cannot be accomplished without the presence of attending ants. Neither of these points has held true for the local species. The insect shows the usual five instars and successfully reaches maturity in the breeding cage when no ants are present.

Locally there are two broods a year. So far as has been ascertained, no eggs winter over but the winter is passed in the adult stage. Sifting in the late fall and early spring shows adults in the humus beneath the plants, which become active when brought into warm surroundings.

Coy's Glen and the surrounding hills have proved one of the best stations for the species.

Technical description.— Varies greatly in color, markings, and shape of pronotum, particularly in form and position of dorsal sinus; small, usually grayish or yellowish, unicolorous or marked with black or brown, in some cases almost entirely black; head projecting forward; dorsal crest high and distinctly bilobed with a rounded notch between lobes; posterior process heavy and blunt; tegmina almost entirely hidden under pronotum.

Head as long as broad, densely and coarsely punctate, not pubescent; base sinuate; inferior margin strongly sinuate; varying in color from gray to black; eyes wider than long, not prominent; ocelli prominent, often reddish, about equidistant from each other and from the eyes; clypeus wider than long, convex, coarsely punctate, sparingly pubescent, tip broadly rounded.

Pronotum high, compressed, distinctly bilobed; anterior lobe rising almost vertically above and before humeral angles, two strong ridges on each side extending from apex downward below base, apex usually truncate, higher behind than before; posterior lobe longer than anterior, rounded at tip, two ridges, more or less distinct, on each side; notch between lobes varying in size and shape but always rounded at bottom; sides of pronotum bearing ridges — usually three — extending from humeral angles to near posterior apex; pale fascia usually present at base of posterior lobe, extending to lateral margin of pronotum; posterior process heavy, blunt, extending beyond tips of tegmina; lateral areas of pronotum variously marked but usually showing the transverse fascia.

Tegmina almost entirely covered by pronotum; exposed costal areas opaque and densely punctate for more than half their length at base, tips hyaline. Undersurface of head fuscous; thorax and abdomen varying in color. Legs concolorous, usually flavous.

Length 5 mm.; width 2.5 mm.

The genus Publilia Stål

The standing of the genus Publilia has been questioned, and it has been suggested that the species assigned to this genus do not show characters distinct enough to be classed as generic. The forms as delimited show a much less elevated crest and a much weaker median notch than those of Entylia.

61. *Publilia concava* Say (Plate XXIX, 13, 14)

1824 *Membracis concava* Say, Narr. Long's Exp. App., p. 311.
1835 *Entylia concava* Germ., Silb. Rev. 3:249.
1842 *Membracis concava* Harris, Treatise, p. 178.
1846 *Entylia concava* Fairm., Rev. Memb., p. 301, no. 5.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 547.
1851 Fitch, Cat. Ins. N. Y., p. 47.
1851 Walk., List Hom. B. M., p. 1142.
1854 Emm., N. Y. Agr. Rept. 5:153, pl. 13, fig. 10.
1859 *Membracis concava* Say, Compl. Writ. 1:200.
1862 *Entylia concava* Uhler, Harris' Treatise, p. 220.
1866 *Publilia concava* Stål, Analecta Hem., p. 388.
1869 *Ceresa concava* Rathvon, Momb. Hist. Lanc. Co. Pa., p. 551.
1876 *Publilia concava* Uhler, List Hem. West Miss. River, p. 344.
1877 *Entylia concava* Glover, Rept. U. S. Dept. Agr., p. 24.

1878 *Entylia concava* Glover, MS. Journ. Hem., pl. 1, fig. 1.
1886 Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:233.
1886 *Publilia concava* Prov., Petite Faune Can. 3:245.
1890 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 441.
1891 Osborn, Iowa Acad. Sci. 1^2:128.
1892 Godg., Ins. Life 5:92.
1894 *Publilia nigridorsum* Godg., Cat. Memb. N. A., p. 399.
1903 *Entylia concava* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 184, pl. 39, fig. 4, 4a.
1903 *Publilia vittata* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 185, pl. 39, fig. 6.
1903 *Publilia concava* Buckt., Mon. Memb., p. 194, pl. 42, fig. 5.
1908 *Publilia concava* var. *nigridorsum* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 106.
1908 *Publilia concava* Van Duzee, Stud. N. A. Memb., p. 106.
1909 Smith, Ins. N. J., p. 93.
1910 Matausch, Journ. N. Y. Ent. Soc. 18:169.
1913 Funkh., Hom. Wing Veins, fig. 49.
1915 Metcalf, Hom. No. Car., p. 9.
1916 Van Duzee, Check List Hem., p. 62, no. 1719.

Rare. Occasionally taken on goldenrod, on which host it is very abundant in other parts of the State.

The species may be recognized by the slight dorsal depression and the general rounded shape of the pronotum, characters which separate it from *Entylia bactriana*, the only other species with which it is likely to be confused. Like *E. bactriana* this species shows variation in color and in pronotal development.

H. H. Knight has taken this species in large numbers at Batavia, New York, from goldenrod. Nymphs and adults furnished by Mr. Knight have been successfully transferred to the same host plant in Ithaca, where they throve well and yielded complete life-history data. No eggs were laid in the late fall, and it is presumed that this species, like the one preceding, winters over in the adult stage. This presumption is borne out by the fact that Harold Morrison has collected adults at Freeville on May 29 (in 1913), a date that would be too early to admit of development from the egg.

The variety *nigridorsum* of Goding (Goding, 1894) is found with the typical forms of the species and is not here considered as distinct.

Technical description.— Varies greatly in color and somewhat in shape, particularly in form of dorsal sinuation; color varies from gray to black; dorsum convex, tectiform, faintly ribbed, dorsal sinus shallow; pronotum irregularly ridged, deeply punctate; tegmina largely covered by pronotum, basal half of each costal area strongly punctate.

Head slightly projecting, strongly punctate with black; base nearly straight; inferior margin rounded; eyes not prominent; ocelli prominent, usually reddish; clypeus rounded, very wide at tip.

Pronotum deeply, densely, and coarsely punctate, lateral areas marked with high, distinct, irregular, longitudinal ridges; dorsal margin sinuate just behind humeral angles, sinuation

usually very shallow; posterior lobe gradually elliptical to posterior apex; posterior process heavy, high, tectiform, blunt, extending just beyond tips of tegmina.

Tegmina almost entirely concealed by pronotum; exposed costal margins opaque and punctate for basal half, apical areas hyaline, tips fuscous. Undersurface of body and femora usually very dark, generally black. Legs flavous.

Length 5 mm.; width 2.5 mm.

OTHER SPECIES

In addition to the foregoing sixty-one species, which have actually been taken in the basin, there are two others that should be mentioned as forms which should occur in this region but have never been reported.

The first of these is *Ceresa albescens* VanD., which is found commonly thruout the State but has never been taken locally. The species is easily recognizable by its brown markings, and resembles a small, pale *C. diceros*. The usual host plants are blackberry and raspberry. The species has been taken in large numbers in the Saranac Lake region.

The second species which may appear in the basin, and which if found will clear up a mooted point in synonymy, is *Telamona collina* Walk. Up to the present this name has practically stood for a lost species, since the original description is so poor as to make absolute recognition impossible. Thru the courtesy of W. L. Distant, however, the writer has been able to procure an excellent figure of Walker's type specimen, drawn by Horace Knight, of London. This is here published (Plate XLIV, 2, page 1147), in the hope that it may lead to the ultimate recognition of the species. It will be noted that the species bears a strong superficial resemblance to *T. pruinosa* Ball, and it may be that the latter will prove to be a synonym.

TAXONOMIC POSITION OF HOMOPTERA

The taxonomic position of the families of the Homoptera, and indeed the validity of the systematic divisions themselves, have long been a subject of discussion among hemipterists and the solution of the problem is not yet in sight. Without taking up in detail the points on which the workers fail to agree, it may be noted that in the division into families the ANCHENORHYNCHI alone are credited by Comstock with four families, while Kirkaldy breaks up these four families into twelve divisions, all with family rank. In the discussion of phylogeny Osborn and Van Duzee place the Jassidae in the highest position, while Hansen and Kirkaldy make the Fulgoridae the culmination of the phylogenetic table. Stål, whose taxonomic work was of the highest order, considers each of the modern families as subfamilies, while McGillivray and Baker rank each as a superfamily with the present subfamilies raised to family position. Valuable contributions have been made to the subject by Reuter, Sahlberg, Goding, Froggatt, Ashmead, Buckton, and Distant, but no two authorities agree on the correct taxonomic arrangement.

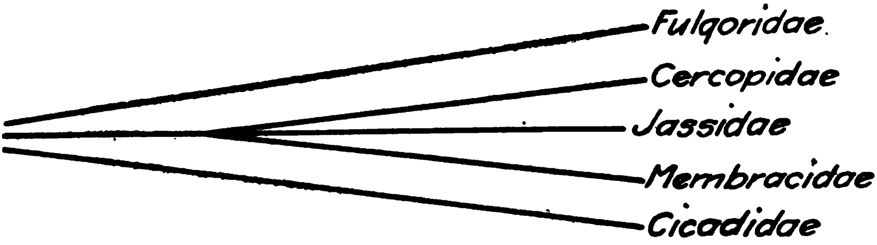
Without entering into an elaborate discussion of the subject, it seems reasonable at the present stage of knowledge to accept Amyot and Serville's group ANCHENORHYNCHI as including that division of the Homoptera to which the Membracidae belong; and to agree with Osborn that the Cicadidae are the lowest of the families in this division and with Kirkaldy that the Fulgoridae are the most highly specialized. Hansen's very logical conclusion that the phylogenist should take into consideration the importance of the form of the antennae and the structure of their sensory organs, gives the Membracidae a low place in such a table and makes improbable Ashmead's assignment of the family to a position next to the Fulgoridae.

The phylogenetic comparisons made in the course of this study would tend to indicate that the Membracidae and the Cicadidae, while closely related, have arisen from different systems; that the Jassidae and the Cercopidae have been derived from the same stem as the Membracidae but are above the membracids in degree of specialization; that the Fulgoridae have arisen from an entirely different stem from any of the aforementioned groups and are far more highly specialized; and that the Psyllidae, usually considered as belonging to the separate group STERNORHYNCHI, are much closer to the Membracidae than has generally been supposed.

The families under consideration, then, would be arranged as follows in the order of their phylogenetic rank, beginning with the lowest:

1. Cicadidae
2. Membracidae
3. Jassidae
4. Cercopidae
5. Fulgoridae

The strict diagrammatic arrangement, however, would show the position of the families as follows:



In defense of the low position here assigned to the Membracidae the following points may be offered:

1. The entire sensory system is most poorly developed. The antennae are so minute as to be in most cases hardly visible and are but feebly provided with sensory apparatus. The responses of the insects to stimuli are exceedingly slow or entirely wanting.
2. The wings are extremely generalized. In a former paper by the writer (Funkhouser, 1913:92) it has been shown that the Membracidae are in this respect even lower than the Cicadidae, which Comstock and Needham (1899:243) have pronounced the most conservative of the Hemiptera so far as concerns venation of the wings.
3. The genital organs are simple. Little progress has been made in developing these structures from the ancient type.
4. The pronotum, to be sure, is highly specialized, but it is not logical to weigh these modifications of purely mechanical structures against the more important phylogenetic evidence offered by the sensory, motor, and reproductive systems.

EXTERNAL ANATOMY OF THE MEMBRACIDAE

In a taxonomic study of the Homoptera the structure and homology of the various sclerites of the exoskeleton have in many groups furnished an excellent basis for classification. The following division of this study is therefore offered in the thought that a knowledge of such structures in the family Membracidae might prove valuable in systematic work, and as an explanation in detail of the structures used as characters in the preceding section in which technical descriptions are given.

The rank of the Membracidae among the other Homoptera is, as has been stated, a mooted point. The exceptional and bizarre development of certain thoracic regions seemingly represents an extreme degree of specialization; the poorly developed nervous system, on the other hand, suggests a low position in the scale of the Hemiptera. It is believed that a comparison of the sclerites of the family with those of other homopterous forms may throw some light on the question of general homologies and serve to aid in the correct interpretation of structural development.

To make this report of the greatest value, the forms studied have not been limited to the species of the basin, but material has been drawn from all parts of the world. About two hundred species, representing about forty genera, have been examined, and for many of the species nymphal and imaginal material has been compared.

TECHNIQUE

In most cases the insects were boiled in caustic potash, dehydrated and cleared, and studied unmounted under the binocular. It was often found necessary to cut the body wall down the median dorsal line and mount the exoskeleton, opened out flat, in balsam under a large cover slip. The head was usually mounted separately, since the angle at which the head joins the thorax in the Membracidae makes a mount of the complete skeleton unsatisfactory. Small forms, spread under pressure, made excellent slides for study under the compound microscope. The method suggested by Crawford (1914:4), of sectioning away half of an embedded specimen with the microtome and dissolving the paraffin from the unsectioned half, gave good results but was not found necessary for most forms. Without exception the last nymphal instar, when obtainable, showed best the delineations of the sclerites. This was probably due to the fact that at this stage of development the exoskeleton is not entirely chitinized and the regions between the sclerites are therefore exaggerated.

For comparative study the gross dissections were checked by the use of microtome serial sections, both cross and longitudinal. In this method the insects (fresh material) were carried thru the following series: Brasil's fluid (cold), 12 hours; 70-per-cent alcohol (wash), 24 hours; stain in toto borax carmine, 72 hours; destain 70-per-cent acidulated alcohol, 24 hours; 85-per-cent alcohol, 24 hours; 95-per-cent alcohol, 24 hours; absolute alcohol and cedar oil, 24 hours; cedar oil, 48 hours; section from 6 to 10 μ;

benzine, 5 minutes; 95-per-cent alcohol, 5 minutes; 3-per-cent lyons blue, 20 seconds; 95-per-cent alcohol, 3 minutes; carbol-xylol, 5 minutes; mount in balsam.

No attempt has been made in this study to work out the musculature, altho it has been necessary to refer to certain developments of the skeleton which function as points of muscle attachment.

TERMINOLOGY

The terminology used in the discussion of the sclerites of the head follows that of Comstock and Kochi (1902), based on those of Kirby (1802), Illiger (1806), and Newport (1839).

For the thorax the terminology follows that of Crampton (1909) and that of Snodgrass (1909). Both of these follow largely the old work of Auduin (1820).

The terminology used in the discussion of the abdomen follows that of Berlese (1909).

GENERAL STRUCTURE

The exoskeleton in the Membracidae is strongly but not uniformly chitinized. The head and the thorax, particularly the latter, are hard to the point of brittleness; but in the abdomen and in those parts of the meso- and the metathorax that are covered by the pronotum, the impregnation of chitin is much less heavy.

The exposed parts of the cuticle — in the Membracidae much of the actual body surface is not exposed but is covered by the pronotal developments — are modified by remarkable and grotesque punctuations, ridges, and areolations (Plate xxx, 1–8), the function of which is conjectural. The commonest decoration consists of irregular arrangements of punctures, varying in size and distribution but fairly constant in appearance. In fact, this punctuation, whether deep or light, fine or coarse, dense or scant, has been used by practically all systematic workers on the group, and there can be no question as to the taxonomic value of such structures at least as specific characters. These punctures are merely depressions, or pits, extending into or even thru the cuticle but in no case perforating the entire body wall. They apparently have no connection with tracheal or glandular development and must be regarded as being merely superficial sculpturing. Occasionally the pits give rise to hairs. This is, however,

PLATE XXX

1–8, Types of sculpturing in Membracidae

9, Position of head in *Entylia bactriana* Germar; 10, in *Ceresa bubalus* Fabricius; 11, in *Enchenopa binotata* Say; 12, in *Gargara nigrofasciata* Stål

13, Typical frontal view of membracid head

14, Position of ocelli in *Heteronotus strigosa* Butler; 15, in *Darnis partita* Walker; 16, in *Hyphinoe cornuta* Distant; 17, in *Nassunia bispina* Fairmaire

18, Structure of antenna

19, Cephalic view of head

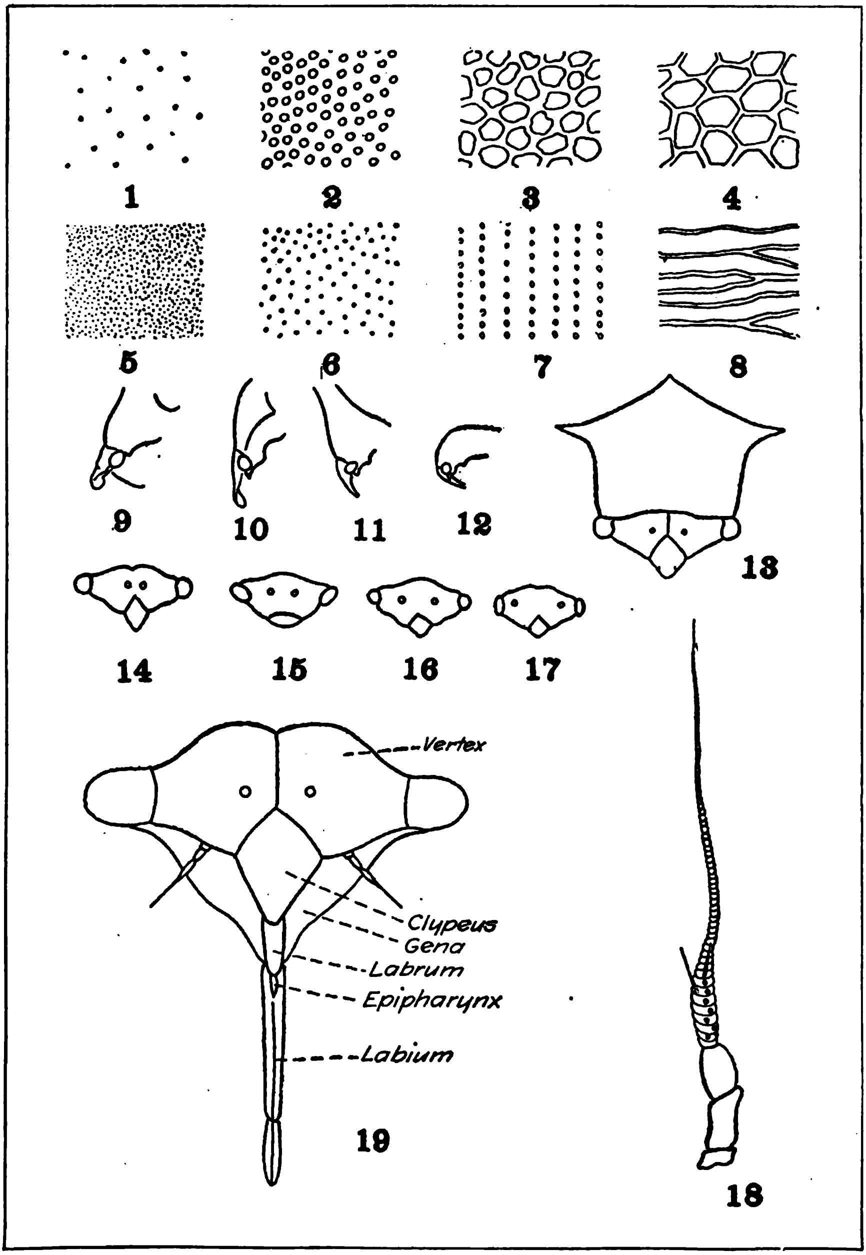

Vertex
Clypeus
Gena
Labrum
Epipharynx
Labium

PLATE XXX

of no significance so far as the association between the two structures is concerned, since in the very pubescent species the hairs arise as abundantly from between the punctures as from their centers. Moreover, many strongly punctate forms are entirely without hairs, while many hairy forms are entirely without punctures. The association of the two, therefore, is believed to be accidental.

Pubescence of various types is common thruout the family. It varies from thick, tangled mats to sparsely occurring thin hairs. Such growth occurs oftenest on the sides of the meso- and the metathorax and on the lateral areas of the pronotum. Special regions that are inclined to pubescence are noted in the discussion of the segments concerned.

The colors of the exoskeleton are in the main somber and dull. As might be expected from the phytophagous habits of the insects, the usual colors run to greens, yellows, and browns. The body colors are generally brown and black. A few tropical species show rather gaudy markings of red, yellow, and orange, and these colors occasionally appear in the nymphs. The colors in general, even the brighter ones, are permanent, with the exception of the various shades of green, which fade in cabinet specimens. Most colors, except the greens, change but little when the specimens are preserved in alcohol.

THE HEAD

In its essential parts the head of the membracid differs little from those of other Homoptera. It varies within the family in size and shape of the sclerites, but shows little variation in their location or relative position.

The position of the head varies decidedly and offers a good systematic character in certain subfamilies (Buckton, 1903:10). The variation ranges from an angle slightly greater than a right angle with the body, in certain Smiliinae, to an almost prone position in many of the Centrotinae (Plate xxx, 9–12). In no species does the head project straight forward on a line with the body, and in practically all species, no matter what the position of the head, the beak projects directly backward and lies between the coxae when at rest.

The *compound eyes* are large and prominent and are located at the extreme lateral margins of the head. In most cases the thorax is hollowed out to receive the eyes, and partly covers their upper and outer surfaces.

Two *ocelli* are present. These are located on the cephalic margin of the head, and their position with relation to each other and to the eyes is apparently constant within a species. This offers in some subfamilies, particularly the Darninae (Amyot and Serville, 1843:545), a good specific character. The ocelli are always between the eyes and usually on a line with each other; but they may be near together close to the epicranial suture or far apart near the inner margins of the eyes (Plate xxx, 14–17).

The *antennae* (Plate xxx, 18) are located below and slightly in front of the eyes. These organs are very poorly developed, and studies in the biology of the insects seem to indicate that their function is extremely limited. Three basal segments are present, each more or less cylindrical, with the first segment the shortest. The filament is fine and hairlike and very minutely segmented. From seventy-five to eighty-two segments may be counted in the filaments of the species of the Smiliinae, and a slightly smaller number in the other subfamilies. These segments are longer at the base, closely compressed in the center, and longest at the extreme tip, of the filament. At the swollen base of the filament are a series of pits, from eight to twelve in number, situated on the inner curvature and giving rise to two or more bristle-like setae. In the material studied these structures were best seen in certain species of the tribe Telamoninae of the subfamily Smiliinae. In all cases the antennae were proportionally better developed in the nymphs than in the adults.

The general arrangements of the head sclerites are diagrammatically shown in Plate xxx, 19, and in Plate xxxi, 1 and 2. From the data obtained it would seem that these figures represent the most generalized type of the forms of the family.

The *occiput* consists of two sclerites more or less distinctly separated from each other, occupying the extreme hind part of the dorsal surface of the head and forming caudad the upper boundary of the occipital foramen. This region is covered by the overlapping flange of the anterior prothorax, which forms with it an articulating surface and is not visible unless the head is separated from the body. The lower ends of the occiput behind are fused with the postgenae below them and the suture is very indistinct in the adult head. In the nymph, however, the line of demarcation can usually be determined. Apparently these two regions — occiput and postgenae — are intimately connected in the membracid head and are probably closely related as to origin. The ordinary lower boundary of the sclerites appears to be the upper line of the eye, but in a few cases (Plate xxxi, 3) the suture has migrated to a point considerably below this line.

PLATE XXXI

1, Caudal view of head; 2, lateral view

3, Caudal view of head of *Enchenopa binotata* Say; 4, of *Tragopa tripartita* Fairmaire

5, Clypeus in *Telamona ampelopsidis* Harris; 6, in *Enchophyllum maculatum* Walker; 7, in *Campylenchia latipes* Say; 8, in *Centrodontus atlas* Goding; 9, in *Carynota mera* Say; 10, in *Enchenopa binotata* Say

11, Frontal outline of head of *Ceresa bubalus* Fabricius; 12, of *Ceresa taurina* Fitch; 13, of *Ceresa constans* Walker; 14, of *Ceresa Palmeri* Van Duzee; 15, of *Ceresa borealis* Fairmaire; 16, of *Stictocephala lutea* Walker; 17, of *Stictocephala diminuta* Van Duzee; 18, of *Stictocephala substriata* Walker; 19, of *Stictocephala inermis* Fabricius; 20, of *Stictocephala pacifica* Van Duzee

21, Vertex and clypeus of *Spongophorus guerini* Fairmaire; 22, of *Hypsophora insignis* Buckton; 23, of *Xiphistes furcicornis* Germar

24, Vestigial segment in head of *Ceresa taurina* Fitch; 25, in head of nymph of *Oxyrhachis tarandus* Fabricius; 26, in head of nymph of *Heranice miltoglypta* Fairmaire; 27, in head of *Membracis tectigera* Olivier

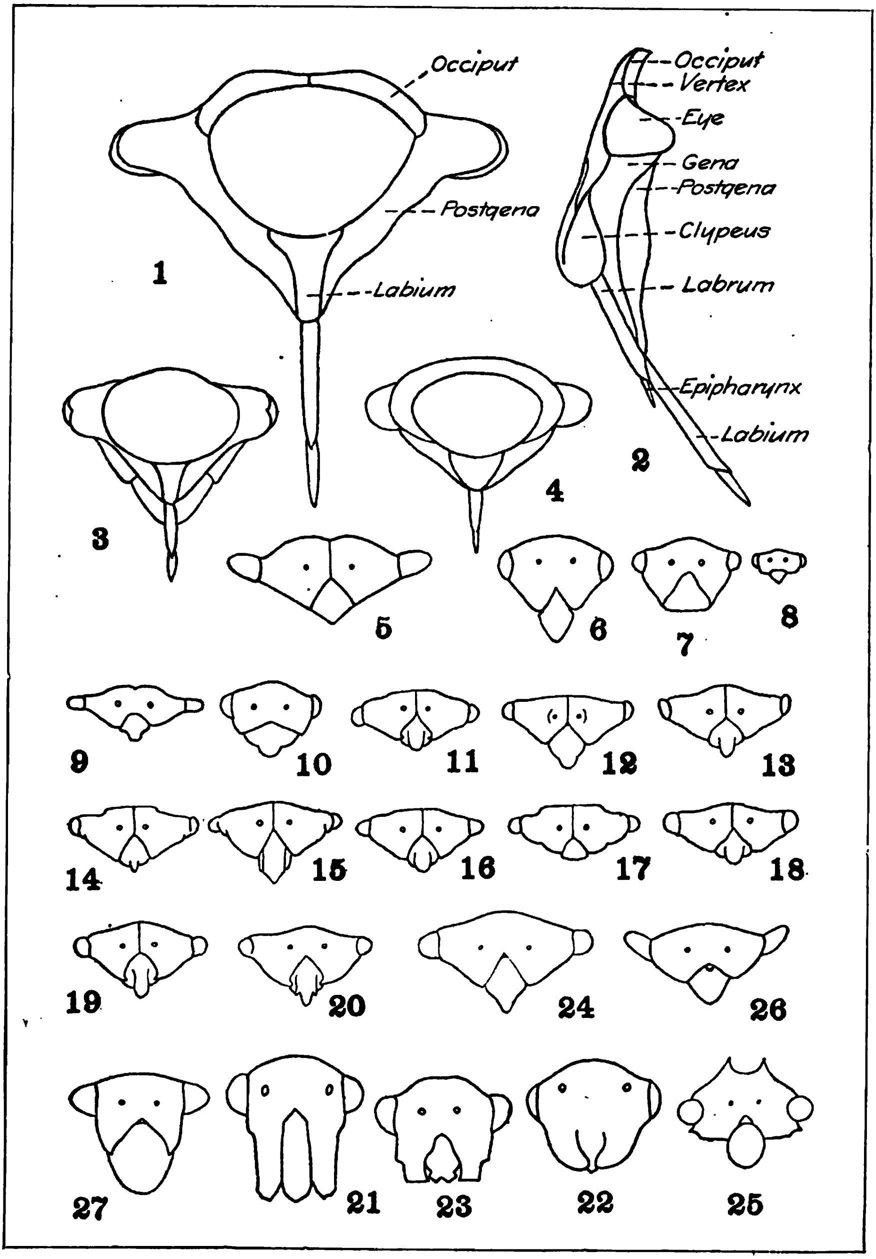

Occiput
Postgena
Labium
Occiput
Vertex
Eye
Gena
Postgena
Clypeus
Labrum
Epipharynx
Labium

Plate XXXI

The *vertex* likewise consists of two sclerites, separated by the *epicranial suture*, and makes up the largest area of the cephalic part of the head. The sclerites are equal in size and are complements of each other in shape and position. The vertex occupies all that part of the head between the compound eyes, and between the occiput above and the clypeus and genae below. In each sclerite is located an ocellus. As has been noted, the relative position of the ocelli in the vertex is variable, the migrations of these organs being both sidewise and up and down. They are always, however, in a line with each other horizontally, and equidistant from the epicranial suture. In shape each sclerite of the vertex is roughly pentagonal, the basal, or dorsal, part often being sinuate to follow the anterior margin of the prothorax into which it fits snugly. On the whole the vertex shows considerable variation in form, and the lower cephalic edge is often infolded to form a sharp angle over the base of the antennae.

The *clypeus* is one of the most variable, most prominent, most interesting, and most important of the sclerites of the head. The position of this sclerite with reference to the vertex is, however, constant and no difficulty is experienced in locating it. The position of the clypeus as an unpaired sclerite between the arms of the epicranial suture suggests at once the possibility of confusing it with the frons. This indeed would be the natural conclusion, did not the location of the sclerite with reference to the arms of the tentorium of the endoskeleton preclude such a possibility. The anterior arms of the tentorium have been shown (Comstock and Kochi, 1902:39–42) to arise as invaginations at the cephalo-lateral angle of the clypeus or between the clypeus and the frons. In the case of the Membracidae these arms undoubtedly reach the cephalic margin of the sclerite in question, altho they have migrated slightly to the laterad. It would be impossible, therefore, to reconcile the conclusion that this sclerite represents the frons, with any of the previous work done on the subject, and it seems evident that it must be considered as the clypeus. In fact such a conclusion accords perfectly with the work done by Bentley (1900) on the cicada, in which he shows that the large projecting sclerite commonly known as the frons in that insect is in reality the clypeus.

In shape the clypeus is generally subquadrangular as seen from before, but projects backward at its extremity to form a deep, rounded keel (Plate XXXI, 2). This keel articulates with the gena on either side, and lifts the distal end of the clypeus up from the anterior outline of the head to an extent which often leaves a sharp angle between the most cephalic part of the clypeus and the base of the labrum.

The variation in the shape of the clypeus and in the facial outline which it makes with the genae offers a systematic character of some importance. In general the character is generic (Distant, 1916:10) and apparently constant. The shape may vary from a broad, flat, almost perfect rectangle to a swollen rounded spindle or diamond, or, in some cases, nearly a circle (Plate XXXI, 5–10). It may continue with the genae an unbroken lower outline of the face, or may project far below the genae to form a long extension (Plate XXXI, 15, 24). This variation has been used as a specific character in certain American genera, particularly Ceresa and Stictocephala (Van Duzee, 1908a:42–43). Occasionally the outer margins of the clypeus are covered by the overlapping projections of the vertex (Plate XXXI, 21, 23); again, the vertex may be prolonged to a point below the clypeus. When such characters are present they have invariably been found good for systematic work. In fact the relation in position between the clypeus and the lateral margins of the vertex (the "cheeks" of the older writers) has been often noted as an excellent character in taxonomic tables.

The clypeus is much inclined to pubescence and the tip is usually decorated with stiff hairs or bristles which partly cover the base of the labium.

The *frons* is not represented as a distinct sclerite in the Membracidae. In certain forms, however, a vestigial segment which apparently represents this sclerite may occasionally be found between the vertex and the clypeus (Plate XXXI, 24–27). This has never been found as a constant, clean-cut, and well-marked sclerite, but numerous suggestions of its presence are offered, chiefly in nymphal material. Curiously enough the evidence is not limited to a single subfamily but is scattered thru widely separated genera. It seems reasonable to suppose that in the more primitive forms of insects the frons is present and bears the middle or the anterior ocellus. Comstock and Kochi (1902:14) state: "In the more generalized insects at least, if not in all, the front bears the median ocellus." Crawford (1914:5) notes, in connection with the psyllids:

> The *frons* has in most cases been overlooked in the Psyllidæ and the clypeus erroneously called the frons. In . . . . many . . . . genera the frons is scarcely visible as a sclerite, but in some species it is very prominent. . . . . In all cases it is present as a small or large sclerite bearing the anterior ocellus at its base or the end nearest the vertex.

In the Membracidae two ocelli only are present. It would appear, therefore, that in this family the frons has disappeared, and with it the median ocellus which it contains. If, then, the triocellar condition is the more primitive form, the Membracidae in this respect are rather highly specialized.

The *labrum* is a single, heavily chitinized, subcylindrical piece attached to the distal end of the clypeus and projecting usually ventro-caudad from that sclerite (Plate XXXI, 1–4). Because of the inclined or prone position of the head, this piece is not visible except occasionally at its basal part from a strictly cephalic view of the insect (Plate XXXII, 1). Little variation is noticed in the labrum, but in the subfamily Hoplophorinae it tends to be shorter and stouter than in other membracids. Altho in the Membracidae the labrum should perhaps be considered as one of the head segments, not as an appendage (Comstock and Kochi, 1902:16), it is more or less movable in life and probably serves to support and guide the rostrum.

At the extremity of the labrum arises a small triangular piece, the *epipharynx* (Plate XXXI, 2). This sclerite is always distinct in both nymph and adult. In the former it appears as a soft, light-colored, fleshy extension of the labrum; in the latter as a stiff, hard, sharp segment distinctly set off at its base. In position it follows the general course of the labrum.

The *genae* form the lateral outline of the head and give the facial contour which is sometimes used in systematic diagnosis. Each gena is irregular in shape, being bounded dorsad by the vertex and mesad by the clypeus. Its lower extremity is contiguous with the base of the labrum. In general outline it is usually a long, rather flat plate, beginning at the lower margin of the eye and continuing to the rostrum. In the Smiliinae the ends are more or less pointed and the middle is swollen; in the Membracinae the entire sclerite is inclined to be nearly quadrangular. The genae are not set in the same plane as the frontal surface, but extend slightly caudad, so that the width of the sclerites determines in part the depth of the head.

Just behind the genae and forming the basal surface of the epicranium are the *postgenae*. These sclerites extend from the occiput to the labrum (Plate XXXI, 1, 2) and are most irregular in shape. The upper extremity of each sclerite is projected laterad in a broad disk which almost entirely covers the hinder part of the eye. The inner edge bounds the occipital foramen and the lower end fuses with the lateral margin of the labrum. The extreme ventral projection follows the line of the labrum on the inner margin and the genae on the outer cephalic, and ends in an attenuated point.

The *occipital foramen*, as will be noted from the foregoing, is an almost circular opening, its edges lined with a thin connective-tissue membrane which is continuous with a like membrane from the inner body wall of the prothorax. This conjunctival membrane is of greater extent in the nymph than in the adult.

The *rostrum*, or beak, consists of a two-jointed labium containing the bristle-like maxillae and mandibles. It is stout and heavy, and is better developed in the nymph than in the adult. In the former it is rather fleshy and swollen, in the latter it is harder and more slender. The length of the rostrum has been used as a systematic character; but this character not only is of very doubtful value, but is hard to determine owing to the fact that the rostrum is carried flat against the ventral surface of the body. It may be hardly longer than the labrum or it may extend caudad beyond the hind coxae. This variation in length is, to be sure, great, but is not constant. Neither within the genus nor within the species has this character been found useful in systematic work.

The *labium* in the Membracidae does not differ essentially from that organ in other Homoptera. It consists of two segments, the basal segment being two or three times as long as the distal. The labium is grooved and bears within the groove the mandibular and the maxillary setae. The entire organ is movable, and when the insect is feeding it projects downward at right angles to the body. When not in use it is folded back between the coxae on the median ventral line of the body. In every form studied, the labium has been found to be straight, and no cases have been discovered in which the distal segment was bent forward as has been shown to be the case in certain other Hemiptera.

The *maxillae* are modified to form long, bristle-like setae. They originate from the interior surface of the vertex above the ocelli, at a point about midway between the ocelli and the margin of the occiput and slightly nearer than the ocelli to the epicranial suture (Plate XXXII, 3, 15). The

PLATE XXXII

1, Strictly cephalic view of head of *Enchenopa binotata* Say; 2, strictly ventral view; 15, caudal view, showing bases of maxillae and mandibles

3, Caudal view of head, showing maxillae and mandibles

4, Maxilla of *Membracis mexicana* Guerin; 5, of *Thelia bimaculata* Fabricius; 6, of *Gargara pulchripennis* Stål

7, Tip of mandible, highly magnified

8, *Spongophorus inflatus* Fowler (after Fowler); 9, *Pyrgonata bifoliata* Westwood; 10, *Heteronotus trinodosus* Butler; 11, *Telamona alta* Funkhouser; 12, *Spongophorus ballista* Germar

13, Frontal view of parts of prothorax and leg; 14, lateral view of parts of prothorax

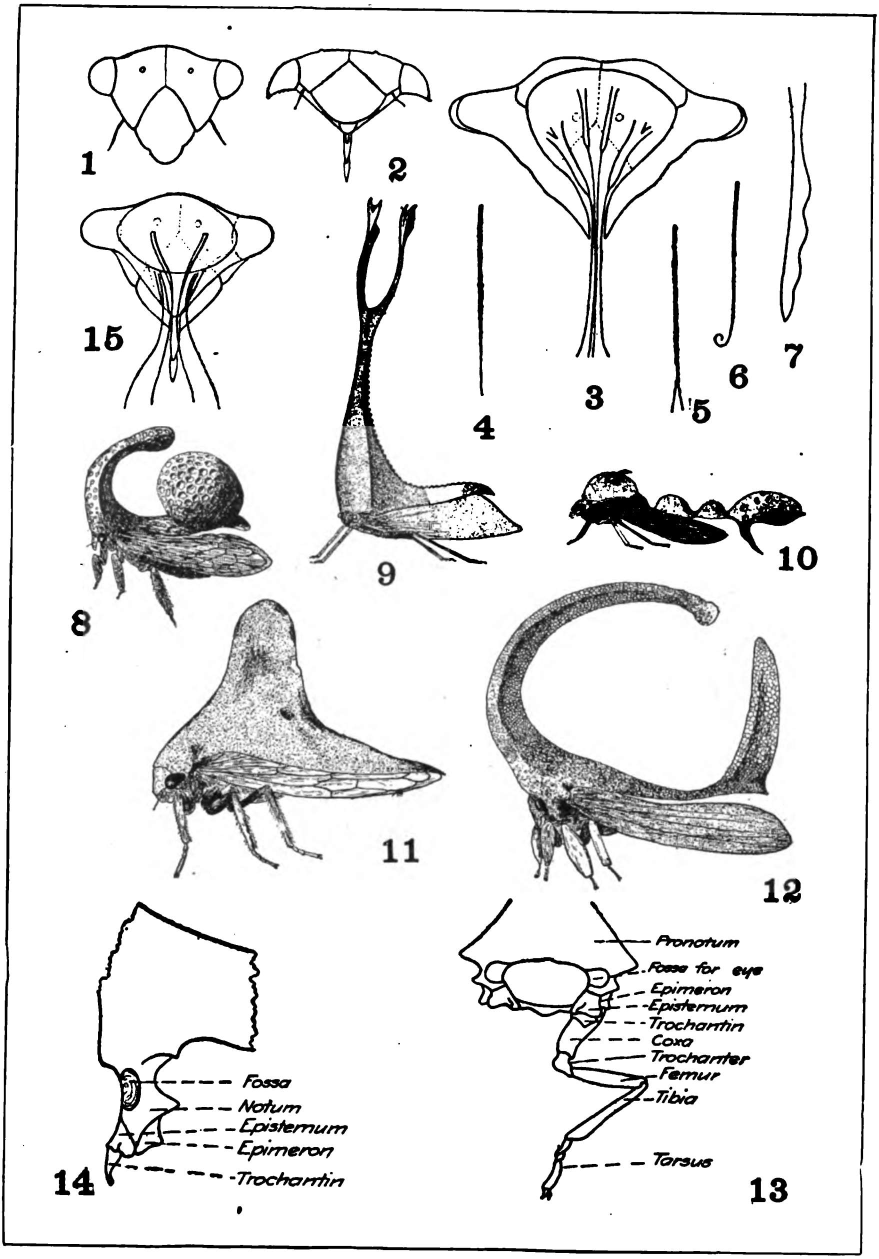

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
15
8
9
10
11
12
Pronotum
Fossa for eye
Epimeron
Episternum
Trochantin
Coxa
Trochanter
Femur
Tibia
Tarsus
13
Fossa
Notum
Episternum
Epimeron
Trochantin
14

PLATE XXXII

base of each maxilla is swollen to form a cylindrical club, which represents in length about one-third of that part of the maxilla inclosed in the head proper. The entire seta is uniformly cylindrical and smooth. It often extends for some length beyond the tip of the labium when extruded. The tip shows some variation, but in most forms it is gradually acuminate to a very sharp extremity. In one species of the genus Thelia (Plate xxxii, 5) the tips of the maxillae show a bifurcate condition, and in the genus Gargara (Plate xxxii, 6) they appear to be curled. It is doubtful, however, whether this is of anatomical significance.

The *mandibles* originate likewise from the vertex, but from a point latero-ventrad of the ocelli (Plate xxxii, 3). The base is broadly swollen and bicipital at its junction with the skeleton of the head. Like the maxilla, the mandible is extended in the form of a long, bristle-like seta; but, unlike the maxilla, this seta is not cylindrical but is flat and lance-like. The extremity is produced into a blade, which is smooth on the outer and sinuate on the inner edge (Plate xxxii, 7). In length the mandibles and the maxillae are about equal.

It will be noted that the attachment of the mandibular and the maxillary setae to the vertex does not agree with the conclusions reached in regard to other insects, in which these organs originate from the postgenae. In a large number of dissections of the membracids, however, this structure seemed to remain constant. Whether this condition represents a more or less specialized arrangement, or whether it is the result of migration of organs, can be determined only by investigations beyond the scope of this study.

The position of the base of the mandibles as described above has been found to vary only in a few of the species of one subfamily — the Membracinae. In this group it apparently arises from the upper part of the clypeus (Plate xxxii, 15). This may represent a still further migration, or a migration in a different direction from the generalized condition.

THE THORAX

Superficially the thorax presents the most striking and interesting part of the exoskeleton. This is of course due to the remarkable development of the pronotum, which is characteristic of the family. The promise of peculiar scleritic structure thus suggested is not fulfilled, however, when the anatomy is studied. Aside from the unusual and oftentimes grotesque enlargement of the prothoracic tergum, the general arrangement of the skeletal parts is comparatively simple and rather easily determined.

The prothorax is very weakly attached to the mesothorax and separates from this segment easily. The mesothorax and the metathorax are firmly joined and the sclerites occasionally overlap in such a fashion as to strongly unite these last two segments.

On the whole the tergum of each thoracic segment is broad, smooth, and, with the exception of the pronotum, simple. The pleuron is narrow, irregular, and more or less complicated, the sclerites are inclined to be twisted from a normal position. The sternum is broad, much sculptured, and indistinctly sutured.

THE PROTHORAX

No evidence of cervical sclerites has been found. The only suggestion of such structures is a slight thickening of the connecting membrane in the gular region, which in certain species is of sufficient size to warrant attention. On the whole the membranous connection between head and prothorax is remarkably thin and easily ruptured, and shows nothing that could be considered as intersegmentalia or could represent the *microthorax* of Verhoeff (1902).

The notum of the prothorax shows so much variation thruout the family that no general discussion of it can be attempted. The peculiarities of this region represent by far the most striking and easily recognized characters of the Membracidae.

This part of the prothorax is usually expanded into a more or less irregular plate, which covers the entire meso- and metanotum, often the entire thorax, and in some cases the abdomen as well, and bears on its surface a wide variety of processes extending to form most grotesque and bizarre structures. A discussion of such variations would be merely an endless catalog, and is of course not to be attempted. Apparently the pronotal structures have no anatomical significance and are merely hollow extensions of the chitinized wall, raised high above the basal membrane which represents the normal body outline. An attempt to explain the function of this structure leads at once into the realm of speculation. Poulton (1891 and 1903) has attempted to explain the meaning of a series of forms by mimicry and protective resemblance (fig. 39); Mann (1912) has noted a protective adaptation in a Brazilian membracid; and various authors have called attention to the resemblance of different species of Membracidae to parts of their hosts. No doubt the appearance of a large number of species may be explained by such theories; many more may be similarly accounted for by a liberal use of the imagination; by far a larger number, however, baffle the wildest flights of fancy. It is indeed hard to understand how it is possible for certain forms with wonderfully exaggerated pronotal processes to maintain their balance while flying. It is equally remarkable that these processes should not be at once broken off in the ordinary activities of the insect. Certainly it is hard to account for such developments by natural selection, and it seems more reasonable to regard the Membracidae as extreme examples of orthogenesis.

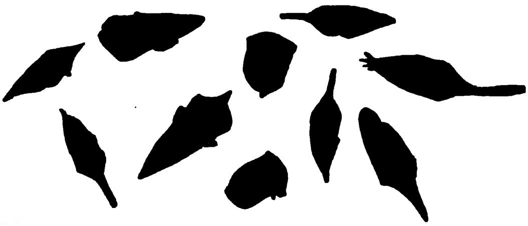


FIG. 39. FORMS OF MEMBRACIDAE SUPPOSED TO RESEMBLE SEEDS
(After Bastin)

Pronotal developments are, however, in spite of their questionable function, a boon to the writer of specific descriptions, and certain general structures in connection with such developments lend themselves well to generic diagnosis and are apparently constant. Some apply, at least as secondary characters, to each subfamily. It may be noted in this respect that the pronotum tends to develop in four principal directions — posteriorly, anteriorly, dorsally, and from the humeral angles (Plate XXXII, 8–12). These four great types of development may be found in various stages of enlargement thruout the family, and on them are based many attempts of subdivision into subfamilies, tribes, and genera. Modifications and combinations of these types are of course common, and in some species it is difficult to decide which type is dominant.

By far the commonest of these types is the development posteriorly, to cover the meso- and the metanotum and often the entire body of the insect. This posterior extension is found in so large a proportion of the forms that it appears to be a sort of foundation structure on which the other types of development are built, and is apparently one of the most generalized of the prothoracic processes. It may vary from a perfectly simple short prong to a long, ornate projection often branched and extravagantly decorated with barbs, spines, bulbs, and ridges (fig. 40). So constant and so important is this posterior process that it has been made the character on which the subfamily Centrotinae is separated. All forms that have the posterior process wanting or so poorly developed that the scutellum is distinct — and it would seem that the development of the scutellum increases as that of the posterior process decreases — have been placed in this subfamily, which as a result has received a rather heterogeneous collection of genera (Fowler, 1894–97).

In generic and specific diagnoses the pronotal structures have been more generally used than any other characters shown in the family. This is to be expected, from the fact that they are prominent and quickly noted. Moreover, they are on the whole reliable and of much value. In the use of such characters, various areas and processes have received arbitrary names, which, while of little anatomical significance, are of assistance in making uniform the terminology used by systematic workers in the family. A few of these are deserving of special mention.

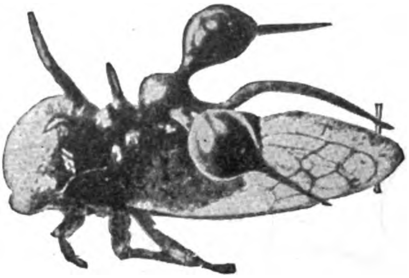


FIG. 40. UNUSUAL DEVELOPMENT OF POSTERIOR PROCESS
(After Bastin)

Metopidium (fig. 41, a) is a term originated by Fowler (1894–97:1) and commonly used by later authors (Van Duzee, 1908 a:30) to designate that area of the cephalic part of the pronotum reaching from the dorsum to the base of the head.

The *humeral angles* (fig. 41, b) are the swellings, very characteristic of the family, found on the lateral margins of the prothorax usually just above the bases of the forewings.

The *suprahumerals*, or *suprahumeral horns* (fig. 41, c), are the lateral projections on the edge of the metopidium just above the humeral angles.

The *posterior process* (fig. 41, d) is the posterior extension of the pronotum and is perhaps the most important and most commonly used character of all the prothoracic structures. Its size, shape, and development, and especially its length as compared with abdomen and wings, have furnished valuable taxonomic data.

The *dorsal carina* (fig. 41, e), as the name would imply, is the median dorsal ridge which in many forms extends the entire length of the pronotum. Even when not percurrent this ridge makes a valuable character in description.

The terms *dorsal crest* and *dorsal spine* (fig. 41, f) are likewise self-explanatory and refer to the elevation of the type indicated arising from any part of the dorsum.

It would be impracticable to attempt to indicate the great number of ways in which each of these structures may vary. It would seem, however, from an examination of a large number of species and genera, that the posterior structures are inclined to be more constant than the anterior; the posterior process, for this reason, is found to be available as a generic character, while the more variable metopidium and suprahumerals are suitable for the separation of species.

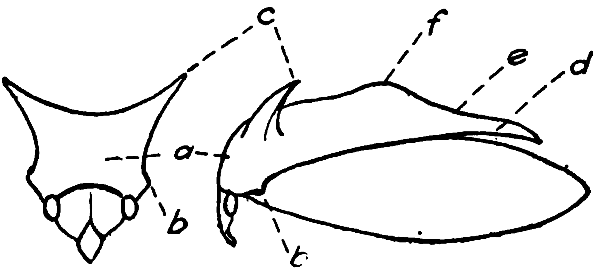


FIG. 41. FRONT AND LATERAL VIEWS OF TYPICAL MEMBRACID OUTLINE SHOWING PARTS OF PROTHORAX

The *pleuron* of the prothorax (Plate XXXII, 13) is joined directly to the notum without intervening sclerites. Two distinct lateral sclerites are found, the *episternum* and the *epimeron*. The notum projects downward between these sclerites in a triangular extension, the cephalic margin of which is hollowed out to form a fossa for the eye. Both episternum and epimeron are roughly triangular in shape as seen from a side view, the apex of the triangle pointing upward and the base forming part of the coxal cavity. Neither sclerite is subdivided but the episternum in some forms shows a slight indentation at the cephalo-ventral margin which suggests a coalescence. The *pleural suture* is not prominent, and is very short since the prolongation of the notum in this region forms a separating ridge which extends almost to the lateral margin of the segment. In certain foliaceous forms, as represented for example in many species of the Membracinae, this part of the lateral notum is inclined to be more or less swollen or flattened and truncate at its distal extremity (Plate XXXII, 13). This is a dependable character, but is unnecessary for systematic diagnosis since other more easily distinguished characters are always present with it. In the rather remarkable genus Oxyrhachis the lateral margin of the pronotum is produced in an extended tooth, a character peculiar to the genus and important as a distinctive taxonomic structure. Just below the cephalad end of the episternum is found a triangular *trochantin*. This piece likewise is a single sclerite without evidence of subdivision.

The *sternum* of the prothorax consists of a single transverse bar extending between the coxal cavities (Plate XXXIII, 8). Dorsally this sclerite is smooth, and slightly curved to form the floor of the body cavity. The cephalic edge is also comparatively smooth and articulates with the posterior margin of the head. Ventrally the sternum is irregular in shape but in the simpler forms is trilobed, the central lobe projecting downward farther than the lobe on either side.

In summarizing the taxonomic importance of the sclerites of the prothorax, it may be observed that the pronotum, because of its variation in form, offers the most valuable characters, not only of the segment, but also, perhaps, of the entire body; the pleural sclerites are doubtless of enough importance to warrant careful study, but, because of the pubescence which is prevalent in this region in most species, they are not suited for superficial examination; the sternum is of practically no importance because of its small size, irregularity of structure, and inconspicuous position between the mouth parts.

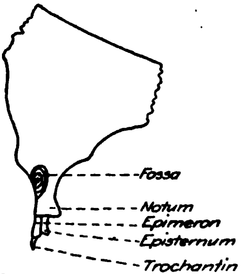
THE MESOTHORAX

The mesothorax is intimately connected with the metathorax and its dorsal surface is usually completely hidden by the posterior process of the prothorax. The sclerites of the pleura, however, may be distinguished in the mature insect and their extent and position readily verified in prepared material.

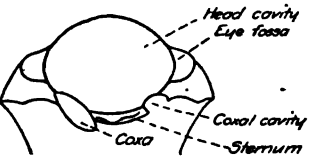
The *notum* of the mesothorax shows two distinct types, according to whether the scutellum is or is not developed into a posterior prolongation. In by far the greater number of the species of Membracidae the scutellum is simple, rounded, and not at all extended posteriorly (Plate XXXIII, 3); in a smaller number it is prolonged into a strong prong or thorn, which

PLATE XXXIII

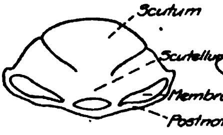
1, Lateral view of prothorax of *Enchenopa binotata* Say
2, Ventral view of prothorax
3, Mesonotum of *Telamona ampelopsidis* Harris; 4, of *Leptocentrus reponens* Walker
5, Mesopleuron in nymph; 6, in adult
7, Pleuron of mesothorax of *Enchenopa binotata* Say
8, Mesosternum
9, Ventral view of mesothorax; 10, dorsal view; 11, lateral view
12, Lateral view of metathorax
13, Prothorax and mesothorax of *Heteronotus nodosus* Germar, showing episternal hook
14, Metasternum



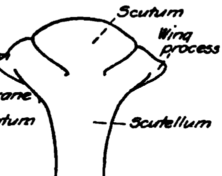
1.



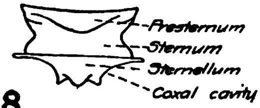
2



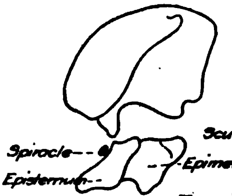
3



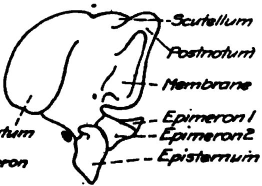
4



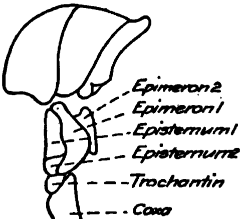
8



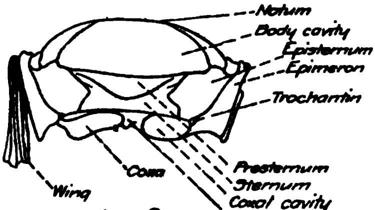
5



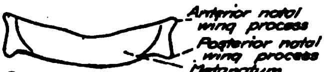
6



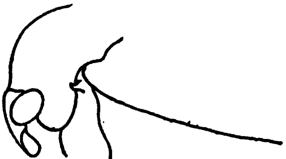
7



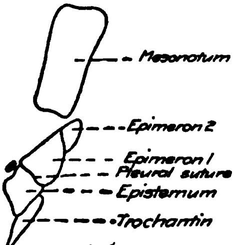
9



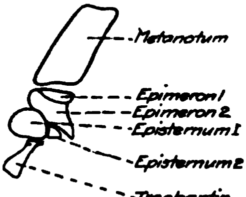
10



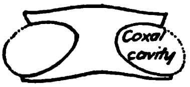
13



11



12



14

PLATE XXXIII

shows a wide range of shapes and positions (Plate XXXIII, 4). As has been noted, this difference has long served as a point of distinction between the subfamily Centrotinae and the other subfamilies. While this is a valuable and reliable character, it is unfortunate that it must be chosen as a primary distinctive structure of so large a group as a subfamily, since its determination often necessitates the destruction of the specimen.

The mesonotum usually shows three rather distinct areas, but these areas are apparently not separate sclerites since from the earliest nymphal forms they are evidently fused. In the adult, however, the regions are set off from one another by infoldings, or grooves, which may warrant the application of the usual names to these parts. The *scutum* is uniformly smooth, poorly developed, and weakly chitinized. Being covered by the pronotum it is not in reality an external sclerite at all and is not functional as far as protection is concerned. The *scutellum* when present forms the second region of the mesonotum, and, as has been noted often, develops to form a thick, heavy process; when undeveloped the scutellar region is indicated by a mere transverse fold. Both scutum and scutellum are often entirely membranous. Posterior to the scutellum is a third area, separated from the scutellum by a narrow band of connective tissue. This is probably homologous with the *pseudonotum* as described by Snodgrass (1909:522–523). Snodgrass has found (page 561 of reference cited) that in certain Hemiptera the mesopseudonotum is absent; but this judgment is based on the study of Heteroptera only, and the Membracidae are apparently representative of a different type of notal structure. In the more distinct forms this pseudonotum, or postnotum, is connected to the scutellum by one or more chitinized bridges (Plate XXXIII, 3), breaking the connecting membrane up into a series of lacunae. In two subfamilies, the Membracinae and the Darninae, an indication of a *postphragma* is found. This appears as an extra fold of the mesonotum, posterior to the pseudonotum, submembranous and irregular but of considerable size and fairly constant. Only one *wing process* is found, this being the posterior. The anterior process is barely indicated in a few forms by a thickening or doubling of the lateral margin of the scutum at its extreme ventro-caudal angle.

The *pleuron* of the mesothorax is more or less turned under the lateral margin of the notum, forming part of the ventral body wall. The position of the sclerites if they were spread out in one plane is diagrammatically represented by Plate XXXIII, 5, 6. The *episternum* is a single irregular sclerite, closely fused with the lateral notum in the mature insect but separated by the anteriorly extended wing cavity in the nymph. The distal (ventral) extremity is produced into the sternal region. The caudo-ventral margin forms the upper edge of the mesocoxal cavity. In certain forms of the subfamily Membracinae the episternum seems to be divided by a transverse suture across its lower third (Plate XXXIII, 7). In this subfamily, also, the entire episternum is elevated so that it forms part of the articulatory surface of the wing. It will be noted that in the more usual arrangement (Plate XXXIII, 6) the episternum is crowded downward, and the produced notum serves as both the dorsal and the ventral margin of the wing cavity at its anterior end and only braces the wing at the posterior extremity of this cavity. Just cephalad of the episternum is a well-developed *spiracle* situated in the intersegmental membrane.

The *epimeron* consists of two distinct sclerites. The larger is roughly subquadrangular and joins the notum cephalo-dorsad and the episternum cephalo-ventrad. The second is a small triangular piece attached to the dorso-caudal margin of the first and no doubt originating as part of that sclerite. In the nymphal exoskeleton (Plate XXXIII, 5) the suture between these two sclerites is indicated but is not pronounced. The dorsal margins of the two epimeral sclerites form the larger part of the lower margin of the wing cavity, while the ventral margin of the anterior sclerite forms part of the dorso-caudal boundary of the coxal cavity.

In general it would appear that both the pleural sclerites of the mesothorax of the Membracidae tend toward subdivision. This would agree with the anepimeron and katepimeron and the anepisternum and katepisternum of Crampton (1909:21–24), but the homologies are not clear if that author's terminology limits the division to "upper" and "lower" regions.

No paraptera of any description have been found. A much-wrinkled connecting membrane at the anterior base of the wing may represent an episternal parapterum or preparapterum, but there seems to be no indication of epimeral paraptera or postparaptera. The basal wing membranes are not thickened and certainly not chitinized.

Directly ventrad of the episternum is a small but well-defined *trochantin*. This sclerite is roughly triangular in shape, with the base against the episternum and the apex extending cephalo-ventrad to form part of the ventral margin of the coxal cavity.

The *sternum* of the mesothorax indicates by its sculpture a development from three distinct sclerites, but even in the nymphal forms these sclerites are not clearly distinguished. For the sake of convenience in description the areas may be given the usual terms of *presternum*, *sternum*, and *sternellum*, altho it is not at all certain that the regions so designated are strictly homologous with the same sclerites in other insects. The entire sternum is roughly shield-shaped (Plate XXXIII, 8) and in the mature insect shows an anterior fold, a central plate, and a rather distinct posterior piece consisting of a thin arm partly encircling the coxal cavity on each side with a lobed central extension. The *presternum* is very indistinctly set off from the sternum, and indeed in very few cases can the faint lateral lines that are believed to represent sutures be determined. The sclerite can be distinguished, however, by the ventral lobe which is produced downward just behind the presternum. The central *sternum* is a flat, irregular plate fused with the presternum anteriorly and extending almost to the coxal cavities posteriorly. Its lateral margins unite with the ventral edges of the episterna. The *sternellum* is always more or less distinct. The lateral arms form the anterior edge of the coxal cavities and the central disk separates these cavities. The central disk bears in many forms a median protuberance, or tooth, which extends directly ventrad. The coxal cavities are not completely closed by the sternal plates of the mesothorax.

Because of the fact that the notum of this segment projects farther cephalad than the anterior line of the sternum, and because the pleural sclerites are turned under the overhanging edge of the lateral margin of the notum, a strictly ventral view of the mesothorax shows much more than the sternum (Plate XXXIII, 9). No other segment of the thorax is so well developed ventrally as the mesothorax, and no other shows any indication of subdivision in the sternum.

THE METATHORAX

The metathorax is a narrow segment closely fused with the mesothorax but weakly joined to the abdomen. In general structure it conforms to the preceding segment but none of the areas are so well developed.

The *notum*, as in the mesothorax, is an arched saddle-shaped sclerite forming the entire dorsal surface of the segment (Plate XXXIII, 10). No subdivisions have been found and the entire piece is relatively smooth.

The metanotum is more strongly chitinized than the mesonotum, probably due to the fact that this segment is less protected by the pronotum in most forms. The lateral extremities of the sclerite are slightly bent outward and bear two wing processes, an *anterior notal wing process* and a *posterior notal wing process.* Of these the anterior is the better developed.

The *pleuron* consists of an episternum and an epimeron, homologous with those of the mesothorax but differing in position with reference to the body axis. In the metathorax the sclerites appear to be twisted out of position, so that instead of being side by side, as in the normal condition, they are in an oblique line, with the episternum clearly below the epimeron and the pleural suture extending more or less ventro-caudad rather than perpendicularly (Plate XXXIII, 12). The pleural sclerites are distinctly set off from the metanotum by the wing cavity, the only connection being the interscleritic membrane.

The metathorax agrees with the mesothorax in showing no traces of paraptera. It would appear that one of the distinctive structural characters of the family is the absence of these supporting sclerites. How representative this condition may be of the entire group of Homoptera is not known, but a superficial examination of the exoskeleton of the cicada seems to show the presence of at least one postparapterum in that insect.

The *episternum* is subquadrangular and inclined to be prolonged at its ventral angle. In certain forms of the subfamily Membracinae a small sclerite, apparently derived from the episternum, is found just cephalad of this sclerite (Plate XXXIII, 12), but this has been noted in only a few species even of that subfamily. A divided episternum, however, would not be an unnatural condition, as evidenced by the structure of the mesothorax. The *epimeron* is distinctly divided into two sclerites, the larger being cephalo-ventrad of the smaller. Aside from a slight shifting in position thruout the subfamilies, the epimeron is a constant and uniform structure.

It may be mentioned that the pleura of both the meso- and the metathorax are much inclined to pubescence in the Membracidae. In certain genera of the Centrotinae this region is usually covered also with a hairy white excrescence, which in the adult insect completely hides all anatomical structures. These white tomentose patches are remarkably persistent and do not rub off easily. They have been used, in fact, and apparently with success, as systematic characters (Distant, 1908 a:31), and are very distinctive in certain species. The nature and function of the deposit is unknown, but its presence in many forms entirely precludes the use of the scleritic structure for taxonomic purposes. This same woolly covering — described by various authors in various terms but often designated as "cretaceously sericeous" — is also commonly found on the exposed scutellum. In fresh specimens it is generally snow-white in color and is a most attractive decoration.

In the genus Oxyrhachis, previously mentioned, both the meso- and the metapleura are extended to form short, blunt teeth. Such developments are, however, rare in the family.

A striking development of the pleura which is characteristic of the Membracidae is found in the mesothoracic episternum. This is the *episternal hook* (Plate XXXIII, 13). This hook arises from near the upper anterior margin of the sclerite and projects forward, engaging the posterior margin of the pronotum. It is found in the great majority of the genera of the family, but not in all. Its function would appear to be the interlocking of the pro- and the mesothorax by an external mechanical means. It has been noted that internally these segments are but weakly joined, the intersegmental membrane being fragile and easily torn. The shape and the position of the hook vary but little, and in all cases the process is close to the wing base. It seems somewhat strange that this peculiar and rather conspicuous development should have escaped the notice of workers on the Membracidae, but there is apparently no mention of the structure in the systematic or the morphological literature of the family. The fact that it is absent in certain genera, but present in most, would seem to make it a valuable generic character. It has not been found to vary within a genus.

The *trochantin* of the metathorax is much larger than this sclerite in either of the other two thoracic segments. It shows the same general shape as in the other segments — an elongated wedge or triangle — but is longer, wider, and thicker. It forms part of the lateral margin of the coxal cavity and joins the cephalic bar of the sternum at its lateral extremity. No evidence has been found of either a transverse or a longitudinal divison of this sclerite, and nothing that would suggest the "trochantinus major" and the "trochantinus minor" which Crampton (1909:26–27) has found in other orders of insects.

In a very few instances small thickenings have been found in the coxal region, which suggest vestigial sclerites. So rare, however, have been such conditions that they cannot be said to be of importance in the family. In by far the larger number of forms the sclerites have been only of the number indicated, and no *accessory trochantinal* or *accessory coxal sclerites* (Snodgrass, 1909:541) are present. Neither does there appear to be any structure of a similar nature concealed by or hidden within the coxae, as has been shown to be the case in some hexapods (Crampton, 1909:32).

The metathoracic *spiracle* is located just cephalad of the upper angle of the episternum, in about the same relative position as that of the preceding segment. It will be seen that only two spiracles are found on each lateral of the thorax. Careful examination of the prothorax has been made for a like structure, with negative results. A prominent spiracle is located just caudad of the metathoracic pleuron and superficially appears to be a part of that segment; but, as will be noted later, this properly belongs to the first abdominal segment.

The *sternum* of the metathorax is much smaller than that of the mesothorax, and, altho its configuration suggests that it may be composed of two or more sclerites, absolutely no evidence has been found to bear out such an inference. Neither the nymphal nor the adult forms show sutures indicative of such development, and it seems necessary to discuss this part of the segment as a single sclerite. In shape the metasternum is roughly a transverse H (Plate XXXIII, 14), the openings at the ends of the figure representing the coxal cavities. The sclerite thus incloses the mesal curve and one-half of the cephalic and caudal margins of these cavities. The cephalic bar is slightly swollen ventrad, the middle connection is flat, and the caudal bar, again, is somewhat swollen.

As in the case of the preceding segment, a strictly ventral aspect of the metathorax shows more than the sternum (Plate XXXIV, 1). The lateral edge of the body is formed, not by a flat perpendicular pleural wall, but by the junction of the upper pleuron with the lateral ventral margin of the metanotum. The ventral view, therefore, shows the pleura as far dorsad as the wings.

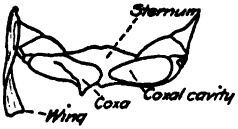
Because of the intimate connection between the sclerites of the meso- and the metathorax, their relation to each other may perhaps be best shown by means of diagrammatic figures representing various views of these two segments together. Such an attempt has been made in Plate

PLATE XXXIV

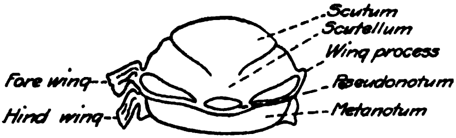
1, Ventral view of metathorax; 2, dorsal view, 3, lateral view, of meso- and metathorax; 4, ventral view of entire thorax with legs removed

5–7, Theoretical wing positions

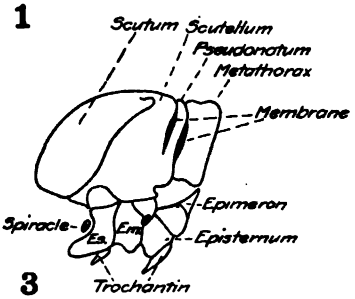
8, Base of fore wing; 9, episternum, showing groove; 10, axillary sclerites; 11, base of hind wing; 12, wing base of *Emphuses malleus* Walker, showing development of hooks



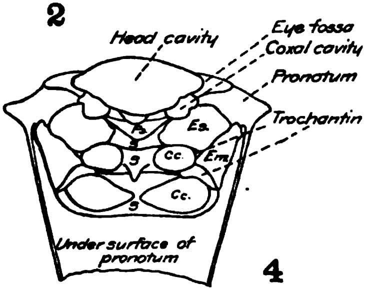
1



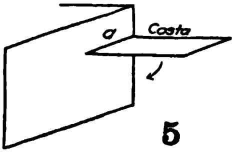
2



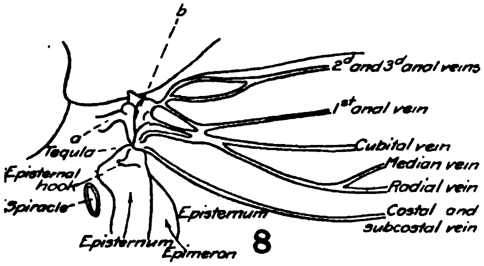
3



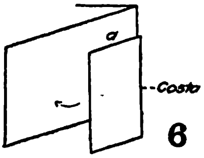
4



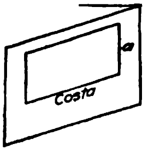
5



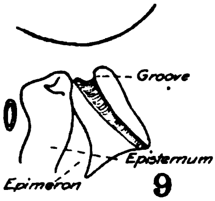
8



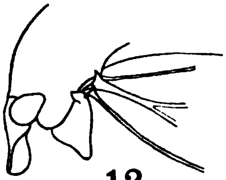
6



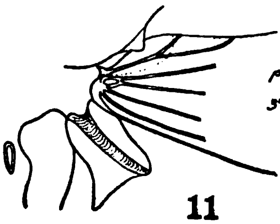
7



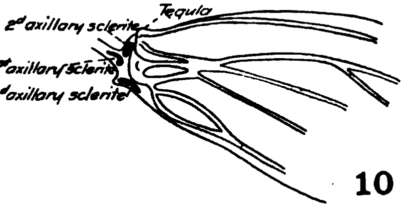
9



12



11



10

PLATE XXXIV

XXXIV, 2, 3. These figures are intended to represent the more usual forms as shown in the family as a whole. It would of course be impracticable to endeavor to depict the large number of minor variations occurring thruout the genera, and no one species has been found which could be figured as a perfectly representative type.

In the same way a ventral view of the entire thorax is shown in Plate XXXIV, 4. When the prothorax is thus attached, the undersurface of the posterior prolongation of the pronotum will, of course, form the background of such a figure. This, to be sure, would vary remarkably in different species, but may be regarded as more or less typical for all subfamilies with the exception of the Centrotinae.

THE WINGS

The wings of the Membracidae have been discussed by the writer in a previous paper (Funkhouser, 1913), and need not be discussed in further detail here except to call attention to certain points in connection with their attachment.

It must be remembered that in the Homoptera the wings are folded against the body with the costal margin downward. This makes an apparent, but not a real, reverse of the normal position in insects. Theoretically the wing of an insect may be considered as in a plane projecting horizontally from the pleural wall of the body, with the costal region extending directly cephalad (Plate XXXIV, 5). Supported in such a position, the anterior part of the articulating surface of the wing is attached to the anterior wing process of the notum and the upper wing process of the episternum, while the posterior surface is attached to the posterior process of the notum and the wing process or the postparapterum of the epimeron. Actually, however, in most orders of insects the plane of the wing is more likely to be tilted upward, the costal region pointing slightly dorso-cephalad and articulating chiefly with the anterior notal process, while the anal region extends ventro-caudad and finds its chief connection at the pleural wing process between the episternum and the epimeron.

In the Membracidae, on the other hand, the costal margin of the wing appears on superficial examination to be attached to the upper extremity of the episternum — in fact it actually lies in a groove in this sclerite when at rest — while the anal area is clearly folded against the lower margin of the notum. This position, which is not peculiar to the wings of the Membracidae but is found in most of the families of the Homoptera, causes a twisting and shifting of the parts of the wing base which requires special attention. If the theoretical position as above described is considered the normal, the position of the membracid wing may be conceived by imagining that the normal wing is first folded directly downward and then bent backward until its long axis is parallel with the longitudinal axis of the body. The movements necessary to accomplish such a change in position are diagrammatically represented in Plate XXXIV, 5–7. It is necessary to imagine that the horizontal plane representing the wing is attached at some one point, for example *a*, about which it is free to move. If then the distal end of the plane is moved downward until it is parallel with the body wall, it will illustrate the first movement required. This movement is not an unnatural one, since it represents a part of the normal movement of the wing in flying. In order to reach the position desired, however, the plane, still remaining flat against the body wall, must be swung upward thru an arc of ninety degrees so that the long axis of the plane is parallel to the long axis of the supporting wall. The plane is now in the position assumed by the membracid wing.

In order, however, to appreciate the mechanical changes that the wing base has undergone, it is necessary to conceive of two points of attachment instead of one, these points representing the anterior and posterior angles of the articulating surface. It will be seen that the anterior point will be pulled downward and backward, while the posterior point will be moved upward and forward.

This is apparently what has occurred in the wings of the Membracidae, and it will be understood at once that such a migration of basal structures renders difficult the homologizing of parts. In spite of the twisting, however, it is possible to reconcile to a large extent the shifted attachments as shown in this family with the commoner interpretation of the wing base in other insects. It has been noted, in the discussion of the pleural and the tergal sclerites, that in the Membracidae no anterior notal wing process could be determined, while the posterior process was prominent. This is probably explained by the fact that the anterior angle of the wing base has migrated away from its normal position, making the anterior process unnecessary; while the posterior angle has moved upward, increasing the musculature of the posterior region.

The position of the fore wing is shown in Plate XXXIV, 8. The principal point of attachment is a long, curved, partly chitinized cord, fused along the costal and the middle part of the wing base (the cephalo-ventral margin when in the normal position) and extending between the notum and the episternum into the body cavity, where it is connected with the wing muscles. This cord supports and probably directs the movement of that part of the wing which accommodates the bases of the costal, subcostal, radial, median, and cubital veins. It is rather sharply set off, however, from the tissue of the wing proper by a deep constriction. When the wing is separated from the body it usually breaks along this line. The extreme cephalic costal angle is supported by the dorsal margin of the mesothoracic episternum. When at rest and folded against the body, the basal fifth or sixth of the costal margin is supported by the metathoracic episternum, which is hollowed out to receive it. This deep groove in the episternum of the following segment (Plate XXXIV, 9) is indeed very characteristic of the family.

Results from the study of chitinized parts of the wing base are most unsatisfactory. The tissue of this region, when treated in the usual manner in caustic potash, is generally completely broken down and shows no evidence of impregnation. It is doubtful whether any true sclerites are present, but occasionally slight thickenings of irregular shape are noted which may represent such structures. When visible, these are indefinite in outline, but they may be represented by the shaded areas in Plate XXXIV, 10. They are here tentatively indicated as the first, second, and third axillary sclerites, but their homologies may well be questioned. In fact, histological studies would seem to indicate that the entire region is normally composed of muscular and connective tissue. No evidence of the fourth axillary sclerite has been found. This, however, is not surprising, since it has been shown that this sclerite is present only in a limited number of insect orders (Snodgrass, 1909:543). The cephalic costal angle is swollen into a protuberance, or tooth, which is probably homologous with the *tegula* of other insects. It is usually pubescent, if not actually hairy, but is not chitinized. The basal region of the fore wing is much given to the development of barbs, or hooks, which in some cases interlock with one another or with the notum and in some cases are isolated and seem to have no supporting or bracing function (Plate XXXIV, 12). These hooks have never been used as taxonomic characters, but there seems to be no reason why they should not be so used since they are apparently constant within a species and differ in appearance within a genus. The basal and costal areas of the wing are inclined, also, to be coriaceous, punctured, pubescent, or opaque. These features are commonly used as specific characters, and in some cases (Van Duzee, 1908 a: 55) as generic. In one subfamily, the Tragopinae, the fore wings are so dense and coriaceous that the veins are scarcely distinguishable. This character, indeed, is generally given as distinctive for this subfamily.

The hind wing (Plate XXXIV, 11) is similar to the fore wing in position and attachment. It rests partly on the dorso-caudal extremity of the metathoracic episternum, and is attached by strong muscles which extend into the body cavity just below the metanotum. The anal lobe is folded under the remainder of the anal area when the insect is at rest, as indicated by the dotted lines in the figure. At the base of the anal region is a strong hook, which is generally constant in appearance but the function of which is not evident. The caudal margin of the metanotum shows in some species an overhanging flap which engages the wing when folded.

No axillary sclerites have been found in the hind wing. From this fact it might be well to question the correctness of the interpretation of the structures described in the fore wing as axillaries. There is little doubt that the hind wing in the Membracidae is more generalized than the fore wing, and one would naturally expect to find in the more generalized wing the better evidence of primitive structures. The fact that such structures cannot be found would indicate either that the axillaries are not primitive in the family or that the thickenings in the fore wing are not true axillaries. The latter theory is perfectly tenable, since, as has been remarked in the discussion of these structures, their validity as chitinized sclerites may well be doubted. It is true that the full complement of axillaries has been recorded for other Hemiptera (Snodgrass, 1909: 594), but here again the forms studied belong to the Heteroptera. A study of the alary and the pedal apparatus would seem to indicate that the relationship between the Heteroptera and the Homoptera may not be so close in respect to locomotion as in other respects, and the presence of the sclerites in the former suborder need not necessarily presuppose their existence in the latter. In fact one or two orders, notably the Ephemerida and the Odonata, have thus far failed to show axillary sclerites and it would appear that the Homoptera might be grouped with these orders in this respect. It has already been noted that paraptera were lacking in the Membracidae, and if the axillary sclerites are also missing the wing base as a whole must be considered as being very poorly developed.

Aside from the basal region the wings of the Membracidae are usually membranous. It has been noted that in the small subfamily Tragopinae this is not the case, but this subfamily consists of only three genera containing a very limited number of species. In general the wing consists of a distinct corium and clavus, the claval suture occurring along the first anal vein. Both pairs of wings are well developed and expanded. Both are characterized by having a strongly scalloped margin outlined by the ends of the veins, and in most forms a distinct terminal membrane beyond this margin. The extent of this marginal membrane is considered a good taxonomic character and has been used in generic diagnosis (Amyot and Serville, 1843:533). The wings may be entirely, partly, or not at all concealed by the pronotum. This variation also has proved of value to systematists, and on it are based many keys and tables to genera and tribes.

Other general characters of the wings that are used in taxonomic work are the length as compared with each other, with the abdomen, and with the posterior process, the shape of the extremities, the colors and markings, and the venation. A discussion of the last-named character is here omitted, since it forms the subject of a previous paper by the writer. It may be stated, however, that for systematic purposes the wing veins yield many valuable characters. This is especially true of the hind wings, which are by far the more constant and apparently the more generalized. Unfortunately the hind wings are always covered by the fore wings and are usually much shorter than the fore wings, so that their examination necessitates the relaxing of the specimen. Moreover, in many cases both wings are entirely hidden under the pronotum. A more or less superficial character of the wing veins, but one which is believed to be of value at least for specific distinction, is the presence of punctures along their courses. In some species each vein is bordered by a double row of such punctures and often by corresponding rows of bristles.

THE LEGS

The legs in the Membracidae show some interesting features structurally and are of importance taxonomically. All three pairs of legs are normal in such general points as the number, position, and relative size of the segments, and the attachment to the torso. The individual segments, however, are much inclined to variation thruout the family. The simplest type of leg is found in the subfamily Smiliinae, in which there are but few differences in leg structure in the various genera (Plate xxxv, 1–5). The legs increase in length from before backward in practically all the genera, but in a few the first and second pairs are about equal in length. The hind legs are always the longest. It is possible that the relative leg lengths may be of value in systematic diagnosis, but the character would be a very hard one to determine in ordinary mounted material because of the fact that the legs are so often tightly folded against the lower part of the body. In life the front legs usually point forward and the second and third pairs backward. The front legs, in fact, are attached so closely to the head as to completely hide the mouth parts and the gular regions when the insect is at rest in its natural position. All the legs, and particularly the posterior pair, are very well developed, as would be expected from the jumping habits of the insects. The basal parts are heavy and swollen and cover most of the ventral surface of the thorax. The legs are much inclined to pubescence and often bear spines. Particular development of such structures will be discussed under the separate segments.

The *coxae* are heavy and stout. The posterior pair are usually the largest and closest together, and show the greatest tendency toward peculiar development. Each coxa consists of a flattened plate which fills up the coxal cavity, and a distal projection to which the trochanter is articulated. This distal projection is often bent at an angle to the other two-thirds of the segment and projects ventrad. Between the body of the coxa and its distal end is found in some cases a constriction, or neck (Plate xxxv, 6–9). The articulatory surface is generally swollen and often apparently distorted. In a large number of species the lateral end of the middle and the hind coxae is distinctly cut off, leaving a triangular piece laterad of the body of the segment but in the coxal cavity. In the adult this is represented by a deep suture (Plate xxxv, 1–2), and boiling in caustic potash shows that this is really a division between the chitinized areas. This separate piece is believed to be a subdivision of the coxa and originally a part of that sclerite. A comparative examination of the cicada shows the segment still more distinct and differently located in that insect

PLATE XXXV

1, Cephalic view of left front leg; 2, cephalic view, 3, caudal view, of left second leg; 4, cephalic view, 5, caudal view, of left hind leg

6–9, Types of coxae

10, Basal regions in middle leg of cicada; 11, in hind leg

12, Trochanter, showing hooks at coxal joint; 13, trochanter of *Thelia bimaculata* Fabricius; 14, of *Tricentrus fairmairei* Stål; 15, of *Enchenopa binotata* Say; 16, of *Centrotoscelus typus* Funkhouser; 17, of *Sipylus nodipennis* Funkhouser; 18, of *Tricentrus pilinervosus* Funkhouser; 19, of *Tricentrus capreolus* Walker

20, Knee joint

21, Femur-tibia joint in genus Carynota; 22, in genus Membracis; 23, in genus Leptocentrus; 24, in genus Tricentrus; 25, in genus Xiphistes; 26, in genus Heteronotus

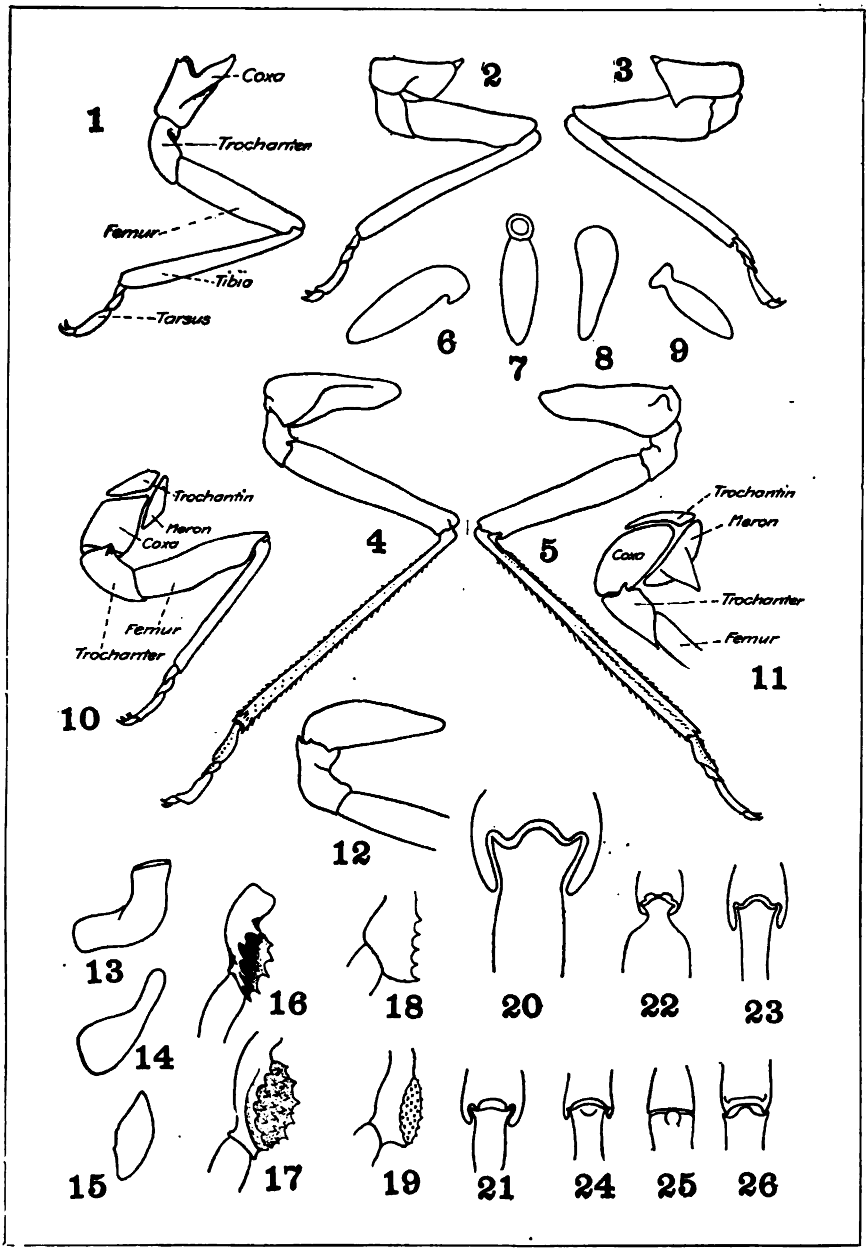

Coxa
Trochanter
Femur
Tibia
Tarsus
Trochantin
Meron
Coxa
Femur
Trochanter
Trochantin
Meron
Coxa
Trochanter
Femur

Plate XXXV

(Plate xxxv, 10, 11). This would suggest that perhaps the piece is a true *meron*, and indeed it might be considered as such in the cicada. In the cicada this meron of the posterior leg shows a strong spine and the entire piece is much enlarged. The coxa in the Membracidae also shows spines or protuberances in many species (Plate xxxv, 5), and the question arises as to whether these might be homologous with the meral spines of the cicada; but this interpretation would hardly be reasonable because of the fact that the spines are chiefly on the interior rather than the lateral margins and are never set off by sutures. In fact these spines, or teeth, are rather irregular in position and show much variation. In no case has any evidence been found that they are indicative of separate sclerites. The coxa has not been used for systematic work in the Membracidae, and it is doubtful whether it is of value for this purpose. Such distinctive structures as may be present, as spines or elbows, are usually on the mesal angles rather than on the ventral or the lateral angles, where they might be easily identified, and are, moreover, not at all constant in the forms that have been studied.

The *trochanter* is normally an elbow-shaped segment attached to the ventro-mesal extremity of the coxa (Plate xxxv, 12–15). The proximal half projects directly ventrad, while the distal half turns ventro-mesad. The segment is freely movable in the Membracidae, and the articulation with the coxa is comparatively weak. The coxa-trochanter joint, however, is often strengthened by the overlapping hooks or projections, which tend to overcome this weakness (Plate xxxv, 12). No special modifications are found in the trochanters of the first or the second pair of legs, but in those of the hind legs most interesting developments may be found. The commonest variation is that of general shape. In most species the segment is practically cylindrical, bent in the middle but nearly equal in diameter at each end (Plate xxxv, 13). This shape graduates to a roughly spatulate outline (Plate xxxv, 14), in which the proximal end is much narrowed and nearly cylindrical while the distal end is broadly flattened and paddle-like. In certain species of the subfamily Membracinae the segment is shortened and nearly straight, the internal angle being hardly recognizable and the articulatory surfaces almost in a line with each other (Plate xxxv, 15), giving the entire segment a spindle-shaped outline.

By far the most interesting modification of the trochanter, however, and one that is extremely valuable for systematic purposes, is the development of teeth on the internal surface of the distal half (Plate xxxv, 16–19). When teeth are present the distal end is expanded into a flat plate, or disk. In the simplest form the teeth are arranged around the edge of this disk (Plate xxxv, 16) and the disk is often hollowed out in the center. The commoner type, however, is the arrangement of the teeth over the surface of the disk (Plate xxxv, 17), with those on the margin slightly larger than the others. The disk is often elevated to a considerable distance above the body of the trochanter, and its surface between the spines is usually pebbled or thrown up into slight nodules. From a strictly lateral view the edge of the trochanter appears merely dentate (Plate xxxv, 18), and the opposite edges of the same disk are not uniform in number or position of the teeth. In some species the teeth are very small, and cone-shaped (Plate xxxv, 19), and in almost all cases they are jet-black in color.

An interesting feature in connection with the presence of the teeth is the shifting of the attachment of the femur. Ordinarily the femur is attached to the lateral end of the trochanter and extends more or less laterally from the body. When the teeth are present, the plate, or disk, that bears them is developed from the region at which the femur ordinarily articulates. This forces the base of the femur around to the mesal rather than the lateral angle, and the femur is thus forced to point farther inward or else develop a curve in its proximal end. The faces of the toothed disks of the two trochanters oppose each other when the legs are in the normal position, and if the legs are brought close together the teeth meet and interlock.

No explanation has ever been offered as to the function of these teeth, and their utility is questionable. They occur on both sexes and are very constant. The nymphs show no suggestion of the structures in the specimens that have been examined, but the material seen has been extremely limited since most of the species that show the modification are African and Asiatic and the immature forms are hard to obtain. So far as the biology of these species is known, their life histories differ in no respect from those of other forms that lack such structures.

Another character that is apparently closely related to the toothed condition is found in the hairs, or bristles, which often occur on the internal face of the trochanter in many species. The fact that these bristles are borne on the same area which gives rise to the teeth in the armed forms, and that the genera in which the bristles are found are closely related to those that bear teeth, would suggest that the two forms of modification may be the response to similar orthogenetic tendencies.

The spined trochanters were first used in systematic work by Stål (1866:89), as a character for the separation of his genera Tricentrus and Sipylus. They have since been used as the primary character for the genus Centrotoscelus (Funkhouser, 1914a:73). There can be little question as to their importance in characterizing these three genera. Distant (1908a:53), while admitting the value of the "armed trochanters" on which Stål so largely relied, raises an objection to their use as taxonomic characters on the ground that they are difficult to distinguish. This is hardly a valid criticism because of the fact that only the posterior pair need be observed and these are plainly visible from a caudal view. Moreover it is merely the presence or the absence of the spines, not their anatomical minutiae, which is required for diagnosis.

The *femora* show the least variation of any of the leg segments in the Membracidae. In shape the femur is usually club-like and often much curved. The proximal end is swollen, and the segment gradually narrows toward the distal end. The distal end is in some cases suddenly expanded to form a knob, or head, and before this is a slight constriction, or neck. The entire segment is subcylindrical, seldom flattened, and never angular. It is the largest and strongest segment of the leg and doubtless furnishes the chief power in jumping. The distal end is hollowed out to receive the end of the tibia, and usually projects slightly on either side into a plate to direct and strengthen the knee joint. The femur is much inclined to pubescence, but in this respect it follows the general tendency of the leg as a whole and does not differ from the other segments. It seldom possesses a color pattern, even in gaudily decorated species.

The *knee joint*, or joint between the femur and the tibia, offers an excellent illustration of adaptation of structure to habit and is mechanically interesting. The femur above is hollowed out on the dorsal margin of the joint to form a fossa for the reception of the head of the tibia. Laterad of this fossa occur smaller indentations to receive the lateral teeth with which the head of the tibia is usually equipped. Ventrolaterad of these indentations the lateral margins of the femoral head are expanded to form projecting plates which hold the proximal end of the tibia in place. The general structure is shown diagrammatically in

Plate xxxv, 20. The median lobe at the head of the tibia is smooth and polished and more or less spherical. Occasionally it is strikingly different in color from the remainder of the leg and stands out in sharp contrast; in a few species these rounded heads are snow-white and glisten like shining pearls, in others they are brilliant orange or red and very conspicuous. They are not, however, very constant even within a species, and therefore are not suitable for taxonomic characters.

The general structure of the joint, on the other hand, shows some interesting variations which appear to be constant enough to warrant more careful attention from the standpoint of systematic work. In a large number of forms studied, the structure proved to be distinct enough between species, and occasionally between genera, to be of real assistance in this respect, and, altho this structure has never been used in published diagnoses, it is believed to be of value. A few of the types of variations are figured in Plate xxxv, 21–26, these being chosen at random from common genera. It may at first thought seem extravagant to attempt to find in leg joints characters for taxonomic use. It must be remembered, however, that the Membracidae are primarily a jumping family, and the legs are used to a far greater extent than the wings. It would not be surprising, then, to find modifications in leg structure comparable to changes in wing structure in other insects, and, while it is not to be supposed that such modifications are of great phylogenetic importance, they may still be of enough value to warrant their careful consideration. Moreover they are well adapted for study, since the leg usually projects outward and brings the knee joint into a position which facilitates examination.

The *tibia* has attracted more attention in the Membracidae than any other segment of the leg. This is because in certain forms of the family this segment is broadly foliaceous and very striking in appearance. On the basis of this peculiarity the genus Membracis, the type genus of the family, was early separated (Fabricius, 1775:675), and the character has since stood as the distinguishing mark of the subfamily Membracinae which has been built up around this genus. This character in itself, however, is not sufficient to distinguish the subfamily, since a number of genera of the subfamily Centrotinae show the same flattened, leaf-like tibiae. It is valid only when considered in connection with the covered scutellum.

The foliaceous tibia as represented in the type genus (Plate XXXVI, 1–3) shows a decided variation in the three pairs of legs. In the first and second pairs the tibiae are broadly foliaceous, often three times as wide as the femur, and generally smooth and without spines or bristles. In the posterior pair of legs the tibiae are proportionately much narrower and less leaf-like, and are usually armed with strong teeth, or spines.

The fore tibia is the broadest in proportion to its length (Plate XXXVI, 1). The proximal end is lobed to conform to the configuration of the distal end of the femur. The anterior margin of the segment is suddenly swollen to form a wide lobe at about the middle. The posterior margin is less convex and rather regularly curved. The distal end is slightly notched in the middle to receive the first joint of the tarsus, which appears remarkably attenuated as compared with the broad tibia above. Buckton (1903:26) has described and figured a gland on the front tibia of *Membracis mexicana* Guer. This gland he represents as a disk-like, punctate organ, occupying nearly half the diameter of the distal extremity of the segment. A careful study of a series of specimens, both male and female, of this species fails to show the slightest evidence of such a structure, nor has any development approximating such a gland been found in any other species of the genus or in the family. Apparently no other workers in the Membracidae have noted such a modification of the tibia, and it would be interesting to know the exact data on which Buckton based his description.

The second tibia is longer than the first and proportionately not so broad. As in the fore leg, the anterior margin is more curved than the posterior, and the extremities are modified in a similar manner.

The hind tibia is longer, narrower, and less foliaceous than the first and the second. It is usually margined by teeth on both the anterior and the posterior edge, and smooth on the lateral and the mesal surface. Each segment is inclined to be hollowed out on the lateral surface and convex on the mesal (Plate XXXVI, 10–12), so that in cross section the segment is more or less curved. The fore tibia is more nearly uniform in thickness (Plate XXXVI, 10); the middle tibia is thickened toward the anterior margin (Plate XXXVI, 11); and the hind tibia is much swollen anteriorly to produce a heavy ridge (Plate XXXVI, 12). The hind tibia is often channeled or grooved along the anterior margin, giving a somewhat triquetrous appearance to the whole segment.

This description applies pretty generally to the tibiae of all the species in the subfamily Membracinae, and very few generic or specific structural characters have been noted. The legs are usually so placed when the insect is at rest in a natural position that the broad, flat, lateral faces of the tibiae completely hide all other parts of the legs and most of the ventral thorax. From a cephalic view (Plate XXXVI, 4–6) the tibiae appear less flattened, and in those that are spined only one row of spines is seen.

It has already been noted that foliaceous tibiae occur in species widely removed from the Membracinae. These are commonest in certain genera of the subfamily Centrotinae. In this group the tibiae are often even more leaflike than in the type genus described above, and more striking in appearance. One noticeable difference, however, is the fact that in the Centrotinae all three pairs of tibiae are foliaceous (Plate XXXVI, 7–9), and the hind pair are often as broad as either of the two preceding pairs. In these forms the hind tibia is seldom spurred, but all three pairs are inclined to develop short, stiff hairs along the margins. In cross section also a difference is noted (Plate XXXVI, 13–15), in that the segments seem to be developed from a central rod with the margins appearing as lateral expansions. This condition is most noticeable in the posterior tibia, in which the central rod has a decided midrib appearance (Plate XXXVI, 15). These characters are quite sufficient to distinguish most of the species of the Centrotinae which show the foliaceous type of leg.

In by far the larger number of forms of the family the tibia is round, oval, or triangular in cross section (Plate XXXVI, 16–18) and uniform in diameter (Plate XXXV, 1–5). In the non-foliaceous type of tibia the first and second pairs are most likely to be rounded while the posterior pair usually shows the three-cornered shape. In the latter form one angle points directly cephalad while the other two angles project latero-caudad to the right and left, leaving a flat posterior face. All three angles bear spines or hairs. It should be remembered in interpreting these terms that in the normal position the hind leg of the insect projects almost directly backward from the body, the coxa extending more or less meso-laterad, the trochanter latero-ventrad, the femur dorso-caudad, and the tibia ventro-caudad.

The tibiae show color patterns and various markings when the legs are at all decorated. These segments also are usually pubescent, or hairy, and the extremities generally show one or more rings of spines or bristles

PLATE XXXVI

1–3, Legs of *Membracis foliata* Linné; 4–6, of *Enchenopa binotata* Say; 7–9, tibiae of *Oxyrhachis tarandus* Fabricius

10–12, Cross sections of tibiae of *Membracis foliata* Linné; 13–15, of *Oxyrhachis tarandus* Fabricius; 16–18, of a non-foliaceous type

19, Left hind tarsus, showing spines

20–22, Lateral views of tarsi of *Ceresa bubalus* Fabricius; 23, dorsal, 24, ventral, and 25, lateral, views of hind tarsus; 26, lateral view of claw; 27, fore, 28, middle, and 29, hind, tarsi of *Platycotis sagittata* Germar

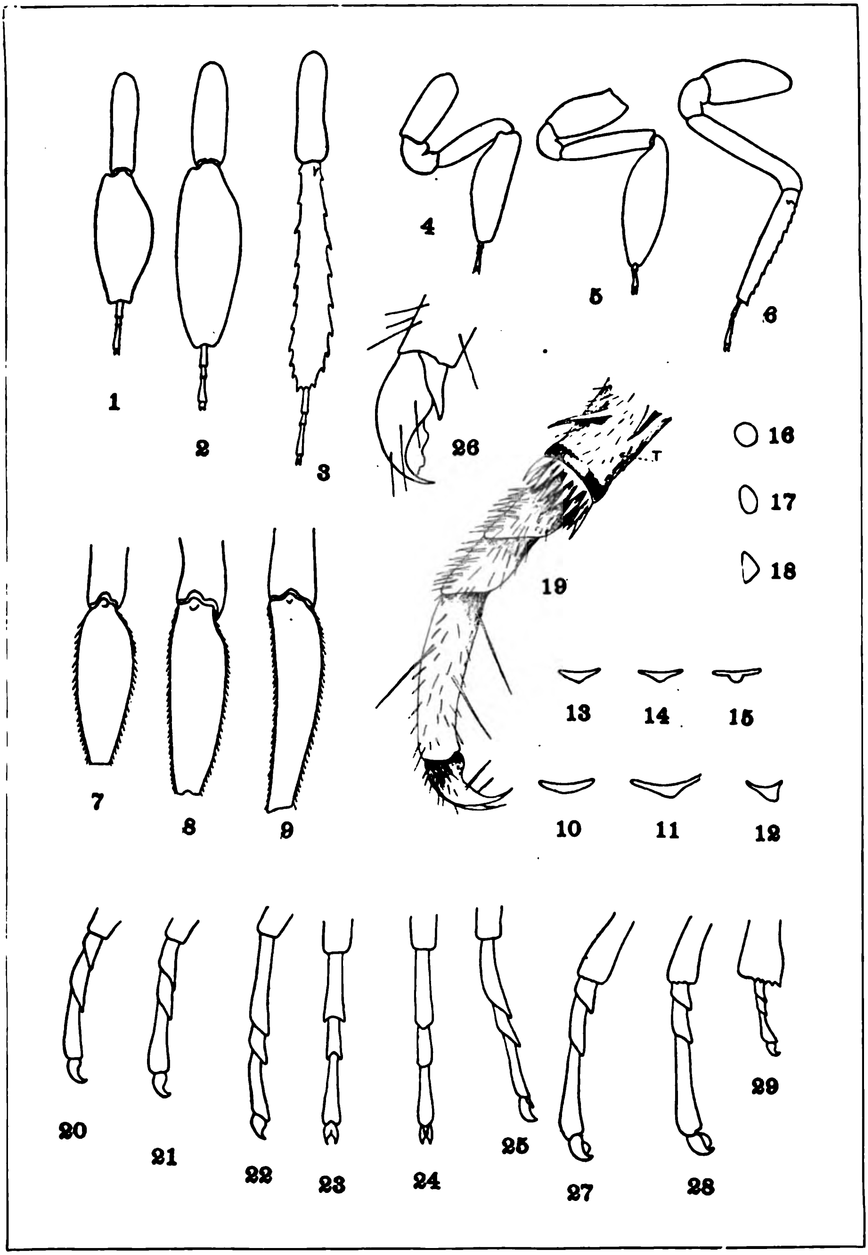

T

PLATE XXXVI

encircling the base of the first tarsal segment (Plate XXXVI, 19). Such developments are common on the tibiae of all three pairs of legs but are best shown on the posterior pair. The nymphs often show markings and ground colors on the tibiae which do not appear on the adult insect. Such colors are lost in the last molt, and, while of no importance in the general study of the body segments of the adult, have been found of value in recognizing the immature forms.

The *tarsus* is trimerous and comparatively uniform thruout the family. Of the three segments the middle one is usually the shortest (Plate XXXVI, 20–22); the first and the last vary with the leg, the first being the longest in the hind leg and the last being the longest in the first two pairs of legs. Each segment is somewhat club-shaped, narrower at its proximal and swollen at its distal end. At the distal ends the segments are not evenly truncate but are much extended on the underside and bilobed above (Plate XXXVI, 23–25). In some species this bilobed condition is much exaggerated, as in *Hebeticoides acutus* (Fowler, 1894–97, tab. IV, fig. 17 c).

Each tarsus bears a strong *claw*, distinctly articulated with the last segment (Plate XXXVI, 26). Each claw is heavy at its base and becomes gradually acuminate to a fine, sharp point. No pulvillus is present, but most forms show a broad, irregular membrane below each half of the claw. The claw is attached to the last tarsal segment by a strong tendon, which is slightly chitinized at its junction with the lower base of the claw and is conspicuous as a heavy cord.

The comparative length of the tarsal segments varies considerably, and this feature may be used as a specific character but it is of doubtful value. Usually the segments increase in length from in front backward, the hind tarsi being the longest. In most cases the first and second pairs of legs show this difference only slightly, while the hind tarsi are easily seen to be much longer than the others. A notable exception to this occurs in the subfamily Hoplophorinae, in which the hind tarsi are very much shorter than the anterior or the intermediate ones (Plate XXXVI, 27–29). This is the character on which the forms of this subfamily are separated and it is apparently reliable. The relative smallness of the posterior tarsi in these forms is made more conspicuous because of the fact that the posterior tibiae are much swollen at their distal ends, making the comparison between the tibiae and the tarsal segments all the more noticeable. It is interesting to observe that when any tarsal variation occurs in the Membracidae it appears in the hind leg rather than in either of the others.

The tarsi are much given to pubescence and hairiness. In some species this development is so remarkable as to be used in diagnosis, and unusual development of spines has been used as a generic character for the genus Antianthe (Fowler, 1894–97:137). In the subfamily Centrotinae the bristles, spines, or hairs are so numerous in many species as to completely hide the other structural characters of the tarsus.

Aside from its use as the distinguishing character of the subfamily Hoplophorinae, the tarsus has been little used for systematic purposes in the study of the Membracidae. There is little doubt but that enough variation exists to warrant more careful consideration of this part of the leg, and a further study of the hind tarsus may yield good taxonomic data.

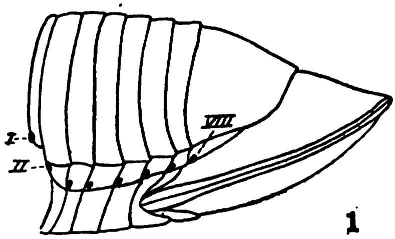
THE ABDOMEN

The abdomen consists normally of eleven segments, of which the first is only partially developed and the last two are more or less modified. The arrangement and number of segments is perhaps best shown in the nymph, in which the anal region is represented by a series of telescoping tubes (Plate xxxvii, 5). In this stage the first segment is hidden under the metathorax and the last is poorly developed, but the others are evident. In the adult the abdomen of the insect is so modified in the separate sexes as to require separate descriptions. The following general facts, however, may be noted.

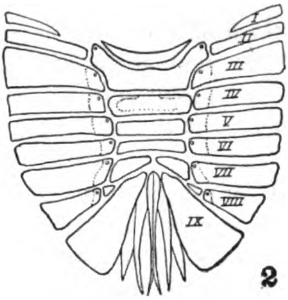
Each segment from the second to the seventh, inclusive, is ring-like in form and consists of a distinct tergum, pleuron, and sternum. The first segment consists of a tergum only (Plate xxxvii, 4), and this sclerite is only partially developed, the lateral extremities being shortened. The abdominal *terga* are long, horseshoe-shaped sclerites covering not only the dorsum but most of the lateral areas. They end in rather a sharp angle at the junction of the pleura. The *pleura* are short and subrectangular (Plate xxxvii, 1), and are located on the ventral rather than the lateral part of the abdomen. The first eight abdominal pleura bear *spiracles* in the extreme cephalic mesal angle of the sclerite. The spiracle for the first segment is, indeed, not in the chitinized part of the sclerite at all, but is located in the membrane between this sclerite and the metathorax in such a position that it appears as a part of the latter segment.

PLATE XXXVII

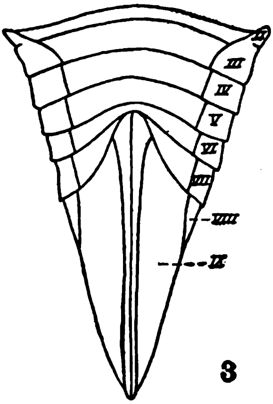
1, Ventro-lateral view of abdomen of female, showing spiracles
2, Spread abdomen of *Enchenopa binotata* Say (female), showing relative position of sclerites
3, Ventral view, 4, lateral view, of abdomen of female, with segments numbered; 6, dorsal view
5, Arrangement of abdominal segments in nymph
7, Cross section of abdomen, showing form and position of sclerites
8, Ventral view of abdomen of female, with styles separated



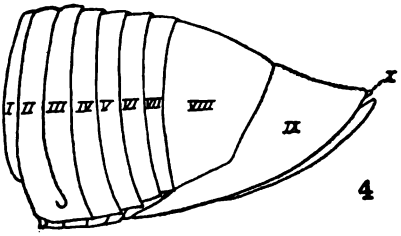
1



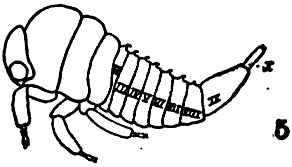
2



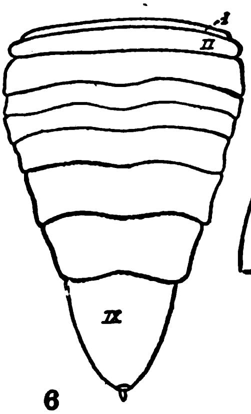
3



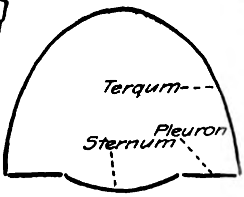
4



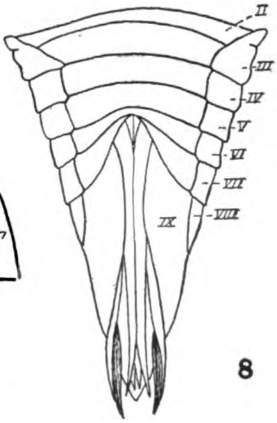
5



6



7



8

PLATE XXXVII

The positions of the thoracic spiracles, however, show that this one is a part of the first abdominal ring, and a section of the early nymphal stages leaves little doubt as to the correctness of this interpretation. The spiracle of the second segment, likewise, is usually found at the very edge of the sclerite if not actually in the membrane (Plate XXXVII, 1). The *sterna* are uniform in the anterior region of the abdomen (second to seventh segment, inclusive), but are modified in the posterior region in the two sexes. Each sternum is typically a long curved plate forming the ventral floor of the segment and connecting the pleura of each side. Usually it is smooth and unsculptured. The abdomen is much thicker at the anterior than at the posterior end, and for that reason the anterior sterna are the longest and widest (Plate XXXVII, 3).

The individual sclerites vary in certain respects in different genera, but on the whole they show no difference important enough to warrant special discussion. The relation of the various sclerites to one another is seen in Plate XXXVII, 2, in which the entire abdomen, cut along the median dorsal line, is shown as spread out flat. This species (*Enchenopa binotata*) of the subfamily Membracinae shows the more extreme type of variation. It will be noted that the first two sterna are rather peculiar in shape, the seventh is subdivided, and the eighth is represented only by two small triangular pieces. Aside from these not unusual peculiarities, the abdomen as figured may represent the usual structure in the female.

From an external view of a complete insect very little of the abdomen is visible. The projecting posterior process of the pronotum hides the dorsal surface, while the two pairs of wings fold tightly against the lateral regions and conceal these areas. For these reasons the dorsal and lateral parts of the abdomen are not suited for taxonomic study. It is doubtful, however, whether these areas would offer characters of value even if they were plainly visible. The color of the abdomen is usually uniform and agrees with the general color of the remainder of the body. The undersurface is generally darker than the upper, and the segments are in some cases bordered with a lighter shade than that of the ground color. The anterior end of the abdomen is inclined to be of a lighter hue than the posterior, and all the segments are likely to vary in this respect within a species. The entire abdomen, and particularly the ventral surface, is much given to pubescence; this is very noticeable in certain forms along the pleural sclerites. Occasionally the white tomentose patches are found on the abdomen as on the thorax. When present these are usually on the lateral areas of the first three segments and show thru the basal part of the wing. The terga are often punctate, but this condition is seldom seen on any part of the abdomen, and even on the terga the punctures are much less developed than on the head or the thorax.

Each segment of the abdomen is smaller than the one before it, so that the posterior margin of one segment overlaps the anterior edge of the next; and the segments decrease in size rapidly toward the apex of the body. In general the terga extend as far ventrad as the lowest line of the abdomen, the pleura project almost horizontally, and the sterna curve ventrally in a slightly convex line (Plate XXXVII, 7). The undersurface of the abdomen has been used in specific descriptions by various authors, but it cannot be depended upon as presenting structures of value, since both shape and color vary with the biological condition of the insect. The presence of hairs and other forms of pubescence is a more reliable character, but even this is not constant.

Altho the abdomen of the adult insect is of little importance for taxonomic study, the same region in the nymph abounds in characters that are of much value. The most noticeable of these characters are the spines, which in the immature insect arise from the dorsal surface of each abdominal segment. These spines are of many shapes and sizes, and differ in the various instars to such an extent that they may be used not only to identify the species but also to determine the nymphal stages represented (Funkhouser, 1915 b: 148–150). The nymphal abdomen also shows interesting color patterns which are of assistance in the determination of such material (Matausch, 1912 b). Again, the position and structure of the anal tube in the nymph has been found of value in systematic work, and the latero-ventral teeth might doubtless be used in the same way. All these structures (Plate XXIV, 2, 10, 15) usually disappear after the fifth instar, and the newly emerged imago shows few signs of the nymphal decorations. The dorsal spines persist in a few species of the subfamilies Membracinae and Centrotinae. It may be remarked that on examination these spines prove to be merely extensions of the most external part of the body wall, and are believed to be without function. Some of the larger projections are hollow, while the smaller are bristle-like.

The *anal tube* in the nymphal forms is deserving of special mention, not particularly because of its structure, which is not unusual, but because of its biological use. It is from this tube that the honeydew is ejected which is so eagerly sought by ants. There can be little doubt that this substance is entirely excretory in nature and probably represents nothing more than the usual intestinal waste product. Its elimination, however, in those species attended by ants, is a process of some interest. When approached by an ant, the membracid nymph elevates the ninth abdominal segment to almost a right angle with the body. The ant then strokes this segment with its antennae and forelegs, upon which the membracid protrudes the anal tube and exudes from this segment a drop of clear liquid which is at once taken by the ant. Not all species are attended by ants, but the anal structure seems to be about the same thruout the family. In some cases the adult as well as the nymph gives off this secretion. Careful histological study fails to reveal the presence of glands in the anal region, and there seems to be no physiological provision for any special secretions which might differentiate the waste of one species from that of another; so that the particular element which causes certain species to be sought after by ants, and others to be ignored, is not known.

The *apical segment* of the abdomen of the adult can be discussed only in relation to the different sexes, since the modifications in the sclerites caused by the development of genital organs are quite distinct in the male and the female.

The female

The genital structure in the female is shown in Plate XXXVII, 6, 8. The sterna of segments II to V, inclusive, are comparatively uniform, each being a broad, flat, slightly curved plate extending across the abdomen. The sixth sternum is indented at its median posterior margin, and the entire ventral part of the segment is usually much recurved. The sternum of the seventh segment is deeply notched in its median part to inclose the rounded base of the ovipositor. This is the last entire segment in the female abdomen and its shape varies greatly according to the type of ovipositor surrounded (Plate XXXVIII, 1–10). The structure of this sternum has been used successfully as a specific character in the genus Stictocephala (Van Duzee, 1908a:42) and will doubtless be found valuable in other genera. In some cases the sternum is so deeply indented that from an external view it appears as two separate sclerites. The eighth segment may or may not show a sternum, but if one is present it is reduced to a small triangular sclerite on either side of the ovipositor and does not extend entirely across the abdomen. In most cases no sternum occurs in this segment. The ninth abdominal segment consists only of the tergum, but this sclerite is much enlarged and makes up the larger part of the posterior end of the body. This segment is not represented by a pleuron in any species dissected and no spiracle is present to suggest such a structure. The sclerite bends around to form most of the body wall. The free ventral edges do not meet, but the space between them is occupied by the styles of the ovipositor. This segment is most inclined to show pubescence and well-developed hairs, and is the most conspicuous part of the female abdomen. The tenth and eleventh segments are more or less vestigial and are usually hidden under the posterior projection of the ninth. On dissection, however, they appear as very small tergal plates with a weakly chitinized ventral ring (Plate XXXVIII, 11, 12). In fresh material the segments may be dissected out, in which case the tenth segment appears as a complete ring with the dorsal surface firm and the remainder of the ring membranous (Plate XXXVIII, 13). On boiling in caustic potash the lateral and ventral parts of the segment sometimes disappear, leaving only the dorsal plate. The eleventh segment appears merely as a small triangular piece with membranous extensions. While these last two segments are much reduced, they no doubt represent the regular tenth and eleventh abdominal rings, and, as will be noted later, are more easily recognized in the male. The same interpretation has been made by Berlese (1909:263) for other Homoptera and seems entirely logical.

The *ovipositor* consists of three pairs of styles. The outer pair is the longest and incloses the middle pair, which in turn surrounds the inner. The *outer styles* (Plate XXXVIII, 14, 15) are roughly forceps-shaped, narrowed at the base, wide and flat at the center, and hollowed out on the inner surface to form a spoon, or paddle, the excavated part containing the middle styles. The edges are smooth and the tips pointed. The outer styles project below and beyond the ninth abdominal segment and are plainly visible from an external view of the insect. They are often densely pubescent, but seldom punctate. They are tightly closed except during oviposition and mating, and form a smooth, rounded, ventral surface for the apical end of the abdomen. The *middle styles* (Plate XXXVIII, 16, 17) are slightly smaller, narrower, and shorter than the outer styles, and fit

PLATE XXXVIII

1, Last ventral segment of female of *Stictocephala collina* Van Duzee; 2, of *Stictocephala festina angulata* Van Duzee; 3, of *Stictocephala inermis* Fabricius; 4, of *Stictocephala pacifica* Van Duzee; 5, of *Stictocephala substriata* Walker; 6, of *Stictocephala festina* Say; 7, of *Stictocephala diminuta* Van Duzee; 8, of *Stictocephala lutea* Walker; 9, of *Stictocephala Wickhami* Van Duzee; 10, of *Stictocephala Gilletti* Goding

11, Ventral dissection, 12, cross section, of apical end of abdomen; 13, tenth and eleventh abdominal segments dissected from the ninth

14, Dorso-lateral view, 15, ventral view, of outer styles of ovipositor

16, Dorso-lateral view, 17, ventral view, of middle styles of ovipositor

18, Dorso-lateral view, 19, ventral view, of inner styles of ovipositor

20, Dorsal view, 21, ventral view, of abdomen of male; 22, lateral view of abdomen of male, with genitalia labeled

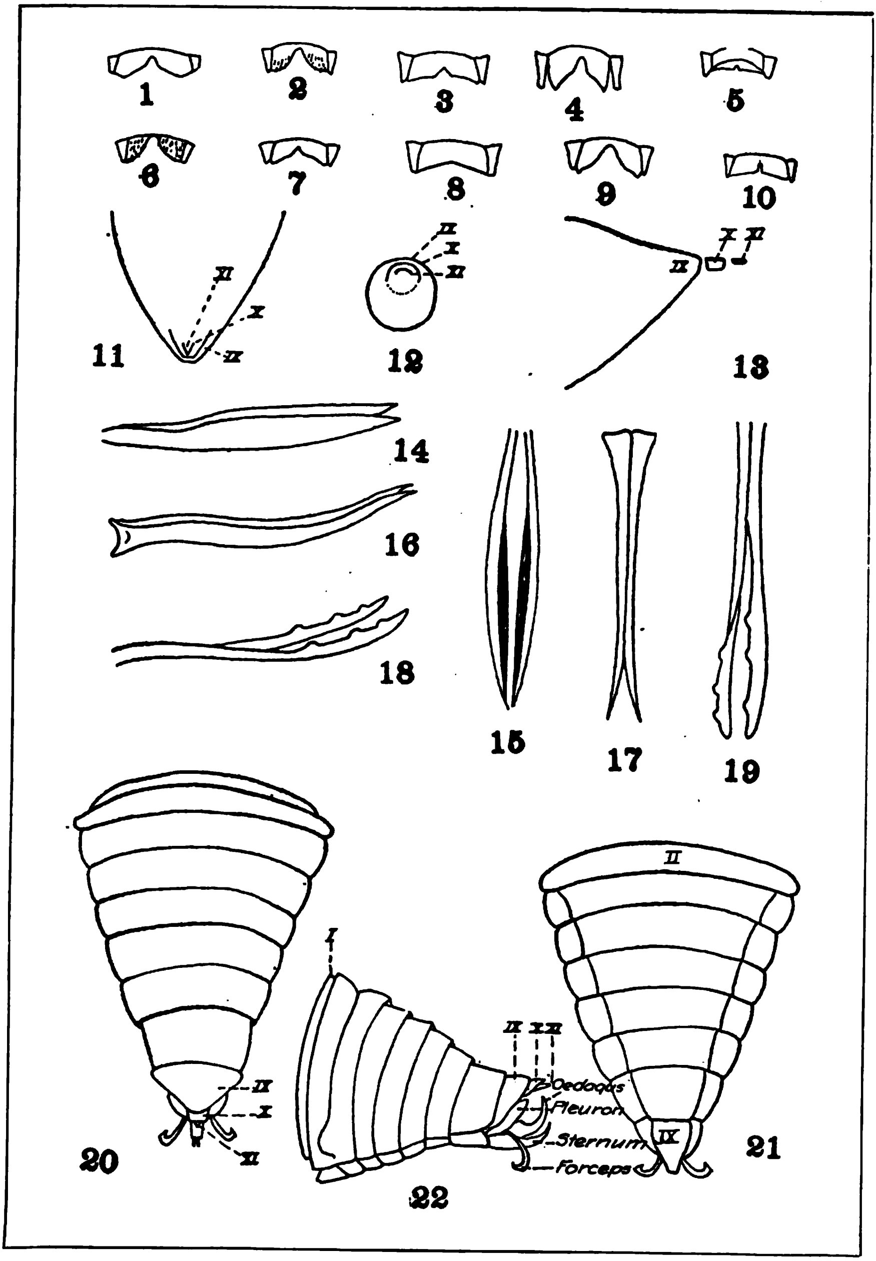


Plate XXXVIII

snugly into these. The base of the middle pair is flattened and expanded to form an articulatory joint (Plate XXXVIII, 16) resembling the lower maxillary joint of mammals. The shafts of the styles are doubly curved. the edges are smooth, and the extremities are very sharp. Like the outer styles, the middle pair are close together when not in use. The *inner styles* (Plate XXXVIII, 18, 19) are again forceps-shaped, the shafts being narrow and about equal in width thruout their length. The lateral and ventral margins of these styles are smooth, but the dorsal edge is thrown up into teeth, or nodules, of which there are from two to five on each style. Since the inner styles are located deeply within the other two pairs, they are not visible except on dissection.

The abdominal structures of the female show few characters suitable for taxonomic work. Aside from the shape of the last sternum, which has already been discussed, no parts of the abdomen of this sex have been used by systematic workers in the family for purposes of classification.

The male

The abdomen of the male differs from that of the female chiefly in the structure of the apical areas. As a whole the abdomen of the male is flatter, shorter, less robust, generally darker in color, and more inclined to pubescence, and the segments are more closely telescoped (Plate XXXVIII, 20–22). The extremity is more regularly and narrowly pointed. The tenth and eleventh terga are usually quite distinct and often project some distance beyond the ninth (Plate XXXVIII, 22). The ninth segment is modified, but in a different way from that seen in the female. In the female this segment shows no pleuron nor sternum, but the greatly enlarged tergum folds around the entire abdomen; in the male all the parts of the segment are apparently present, the pleura projecting as separate sclerites on each side or joined below, and the sternum produced and curved upward at the extremity. The first segment is modified as in the female, but the median segments are normal.

No modifications of the abdomen for the production of sound, such as the timbal and mirror of the cicada, are present. So far as is known, no species of membracid has any sort of sound-producing apparatus and the only noise made in the field is the sharp whir of the wings in flight.

The Membracidae are not characterized by the noxious odors common to many forms of the Hemiptera. The spiracles have been confused with supposed stink glands (Buckton, 1903:18), but no signs of the latter structures are shown in histological preparations.

The *male genitalia*, while comparatively simple in structure, are extremely interesting and are well deserving of more serious study than has been given to them in the past. Occasional attempts have been made to use the male genitalia for systematic purposes, but with little success. It is not unreasonable to believe, however, that these structures, which have proved of so much value in other groups of insects, should be equally distinctive in the Membracidae if the characters are patiently diagnosed for a large number of genera. It may naturally be supposed that sexual organs undergo less change when the insects are forced into new conditions and environments than do motor or protective structures, and, being less plastic, would preserve their characters and readily yield themselves to generic classifications. A tentative study has seemed to show that this is indeed the case. The organs have become modified in form and have developed various types of claspers, styles, and prongs, but the necessity of retaining the function of the organs has kept these modifications within bounds. Fowler (1894–97:2) states, regarding the Membracidae:

> It is probable that good characters may eventually be found in the male organs in certain genera; but, except in one or two cases, I have found them of very little practical value as yet, and this will be the case until more material for dissection is provided.

The same author has, however, used these characters successfully to distinguish the genera Ceresa and Stictocephala (pages 87, 102, 108, of same reference), and the differences noted appear to be well chosen and entirely satisfactory. Commenting on this character Van Duzee (1908a:42), in his discussion of the genus Stictocephala, states:

> Canon Fowler in the Biologia does not trust to the form of the pronotum but claims to have found other characters in the form of the male genitalia that are sufficient. I have however been unable to detect any such characters as he mentions without dissection of the insect, which generally is out of the question, and prefer to distinguish the genus on the form of the pronotum which I consider amply sufficient.

Van Duzee's criticism is well taken in so far as regards the difficulty of examination. This, indeed, is the objection to the use of the genital characters in the family. It is practically impossible to determine their structures without the destruction of the insect, and this, as Van Duzee states, is often entirely out of the question. The usual methods of relaxing or spreading the specimen, or the softening and pulling out of the genital apparatus, are not adaptable to the Membracidae, since in this family the tip of the abdomen not only is generally concealed by the posterior process of the pronotum but is often folded entirely within this structure. Since the pronotum is strongly chitinized and very rigid, and since the abdomen is not long enough to be extended beyond or pulled below this covering, the examination of the genital apparatus is, in a large number of species, rendered decidedly difficult if not impossible.

Nevertheless there are a number of reasons why the anatomy of the genital organs should be worked out and their taxonomic importance noted. In the first place, the known usable taxonomic characters of the Membracidae are extremely limited and any additional data on the subject are of great value. Again, there are many forms that lack the heavy posterior pronotal process, and in these the apex of the abdomen may be easily studied. Moreover, even in forms in which the abdomen is partly covered, it might often be possible to discern the particular characters necessary for diagnosis when all others are obscured. And finally, if the genital character gave absolute evidence it might often be worth while to dissect one specimen of a series in order to establish the validity of other specimens. For these reasons the structure of the male genitalia is here discussed in some detail in order that it may serve as a basis for more extended work on the subject. The actual value of such data can, of course, be known only when comparison is made of a large number of genera. Such a task is beyond the scope of this study, but the resultant data are much to be desired.

The literature relating to the structure of male genitalia in Hemiptera is very meager and the work done has been in rather widely separated families. Of the published works on the subject, the short report by Blümml (1899) on the Psyllidae shows conditions which more nearly approach those of the Membracidae than have been noted in any other family of Hemiptera. This bears out Crawford's (1914:16) suggestion that the relation of the psyllids to the Cicadidae and the Membracidae is probably close. The psyllids show, however, an arrangement of genital parts which, while homologous, is not strictly comparable to that of the membracids. The fact that the workers in various groups have been more or less independent of one another in the matter of terminology has resulted in a slight confusion of terms; but, since the structure of the membracid organs is comparatively simple, this subject needs no discussion in connection with the family. Whenever possible the terms used in this study have been those defined in the very complete reports on the lepidopterous genitalia by Pierce (1909 and 1914), while other structures have been described in terms relative to the parts of the abdominal segment.

It is apparently not yet decided how many segments are theoretically comprised in the development of the genital apparatus in either sex in the Hemiptera, but a knowledge of this subject is not necessary to a discussion of their external anatomy, nor does it affect the value of the structures for taxonomic use. The homologies of the parts in these as compared with other insects have not been determined, but it would seem that the Homoptera in general show a far less complicated arrangement of abdominal appendages than most of the orders for which these organs have been described.

The male genital organs of the Membracidae are not covered by any parts of the abdomen proper, altho they are more or less protected by the posterior process of the pronotum in some species and by the tips of the wings in most. Sharp (1890) has noted that in the Pentatomidae the male genital apparatus is exposed and incapable of being withdrawn into the body. He contrasts this with the protected parts in the Coleoptera, and explains the difference on the ground of the different method of copulation in the two orders. Unfortunately this author deals with the Pentatomidae only, and in this heteropterous family the arrangement of the genitalia is very different from that found in the Membracidae and Sharp's excellent figures offer little suggestion of homologies. The exposed genital chamber, or *terminal chamber* as it is designated by Sharp, is, however, common to both families. This term may be used to designate the external opening of the posterior abdomen below the rectum, which contains the structures in question. In the Membracidae it hardly deserves the name *chamber* in the sense of an inclosed cavity, since the appendages are all comparatively superficial.

The genitalia are shown diagrammatically in Plate XXXIX, 1, 2, in which the first outline represents the parts in their normal position and the second shows the same parts as dissected and spread apart. The *tergum* of the ninth abdominal segment overlaps and partially surrounds the *rectum*, which is located at the extreme dorsal angle of the exposed end. Below and on either side are two broad plates which are here termed,

PLATE XXXIX

1, Male genitalia, parts in position; 2, parts spread; 3, lateral view
4, Male genitalia of *Ceresa bubalus* Fabricius, caudal view; 5, lateral view; 6, tip of oedagus
7, Male genitalia of *Stictocephala festina* Say, caudal view; 8, lateral view; 9, tip of oedagus
10, Male genitalia of *Enchenopa binotata* Say, caudal view; 11, lateral view; 12, tip of oedagus
13, Male genitalia of *Oxyrhachis tarandus* Fabricius, caudal view; 14, lateral view
15, Male genitalia of *Platycotis sagittata* Germar, caudal view; 16, lateral view
17, Male genitalia of *Telamona ampelopsidis* Harris, caudal view; 18, lateral view
19, Male genitalia of *Thelia bimaculata* Fabricius, caudal view; 20, lateral view
21, Male genitalia of *Entylia sinuata* Fabricius, caudal view; 22, lateral view
23, Male genitalia of *Vanduzea arquata* Say, caudal view; 24, lateral view; 25, tip of oedagus
26, Male genitalia of *Atymna castaneae* Fitch, caudal view; 27, lateral view; 28, oedagus and styles

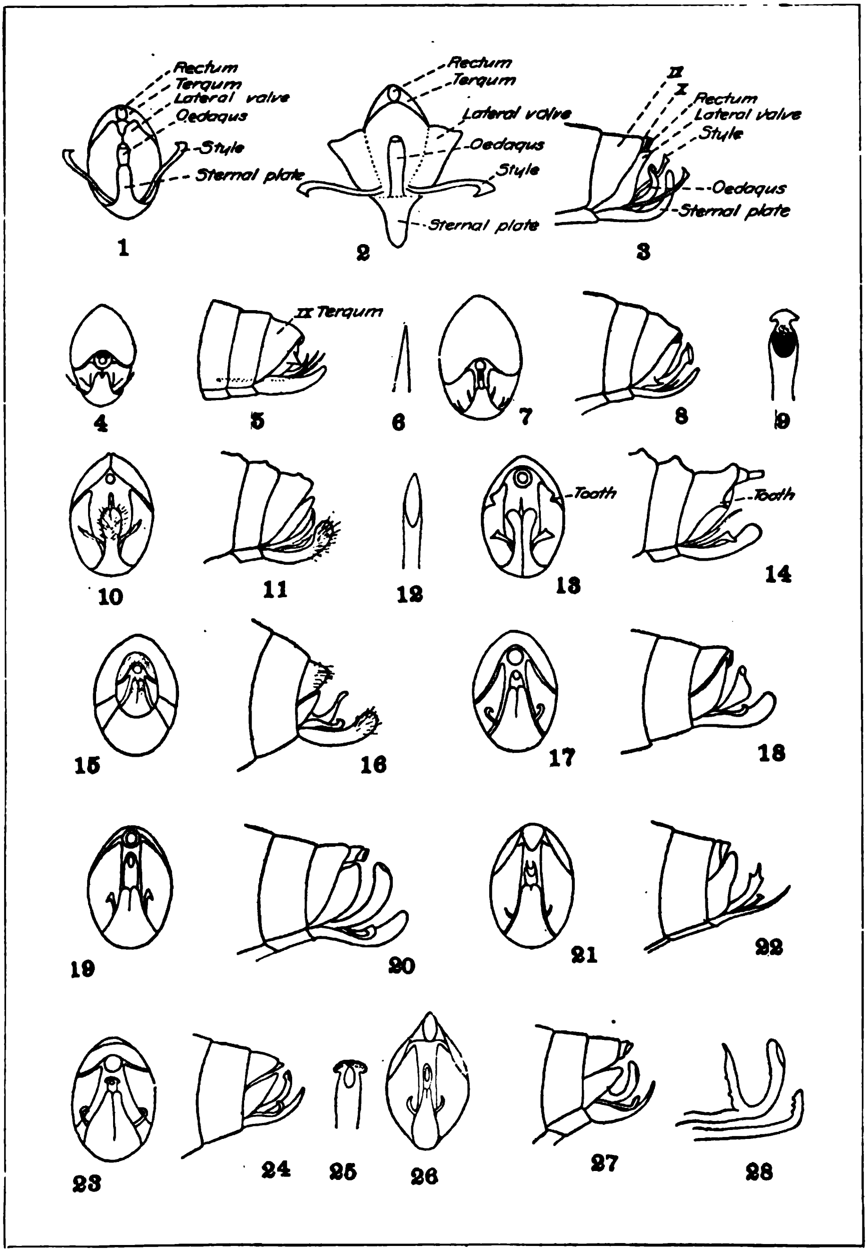

Rectum
Tergum
Lateral valve
Oedagus
Style
Sternal plate
1
Rectum
Tergum
Lateral valve
Oedagus
Style
Sternal plate
2
IX
X
Rectum
Lateral valve
Style
Oedagus
Sternal plate
3
4
IX Tergum
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
Tooth
13
Tooth
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

PLATE XXXIX

for want of a better name, the *lateral valves*. These are sometimes folded inward to meet each other, and sometimes they project directly caudad leaving the lower surface of the anal tube exposed. When the latter condition obtains, or when the lateral valves have been dissected away, the ventral part of the rectum is seen to consist of a somewhat chitinized plate which is probably the vestigial sternum of the tenth segment. The area below the rectum and cephalad of the valves is occupied by the intersegmental membrane. From the region between and at the base of the valves arises the *oedagus*. This structure is heavy and curved (Plate XXXIX, 3), extending first caudo-dorsad, then dorsad, and then dorsocephalad. Near the base of the oedagus arises a pair of *styles*, or forceps, which usually extend outward laterally and are subject to great modification in shape. The *sternal plate*, which is apparently the sternum of the ninth segment, bends almost directly upward at its tip and in some species extends so far dorsad as to form a posterior wall behind the oedagus (Plate XXXIX, 3). The oedagus contains the *penis*, a long, white, filamentous tube which is seen only on dissection.

The variation in position and structure of the parts of the genital apparatus is considerable (Plate XXXIX, 4–28), and it is this variation that suggests their taxonomic importance. So far as has been studied such variation is largely generic, and the figures have been purposely drawn from a rather wide range of genera. From their position the various plates seem to be only modifications of normal sclerites of the abdominal segments, but this assumption may prove incorrect if embryological evidence is obtained. In fact the paired condition of most of the plates — even the sternal plate, which superficially appears to be merely the extension of the ninth sternum — would suggest the possibility that these structures are true appendages, homologous with the very generalized developments on the abdomens of such low forms as certain Thysanura.

The *terga* of the ninth, tenth, and eleventh segments are usually visible in the male. In some cases the tenth and the eleventh are hidden within the ninth (Plate XXXIX, 5) and in some cases they are projected (Plate XXXIX, 14); but in all cases they cover the anal tube and form a dorsal roof over the rectum. The ninth tergum is the only one suitable for taxonomic use, and this is usually best seen from a lateral view. From this aspect the sclerite appears as a subtriangular piece (Plate XXXIX, 5) extending almost to the pleural line. This tergum may project almost directly caudad so that the rectum is located very near the dorsal margin of the segment and very little of the tergum is visible from a caudal view (Plate XXXIX, 18); or it may extend well ventrad so that the rectum appears nearly in the center of the segment and a large part of the tergum appears from a caudal view (Plate XXXIX, 4) as a broad sloping roof. In some cases the entire ninth segment is so small in diameter that from a caudal view the eighth segment is visible around it (Plate XXXIX, 15). In some species the tergum is armed with teeth on each side (Plate XXXIX, 14), such teeth probably functioning in the process of copulation. In a very few forms, particularly in the subfamily Membracinae, the tergum shows signs of median subdivision (Plate XXXIX, 10), but this is shown only after boiling in potash. Occasionally the tergum shows a process, or projection, on the median dorsal line (Plate XXXIX, 10, 13), which is probably the remains of the nymphal spines of that segment. In many cases the sclerite is pubescent (Plate XXXIX, 15), and the hairs may be developed to such an extent as to overhang and hide the rectal opening. The variation in lateral length may range from an almost complete arch (Plate XXXIX, 15) to a very narrow strip extending hardly one-third of the distance toward the pleural line (Plate XXXIX, 21).

The *lateral valves* are always present and are of considerable importance. From their position they would appear to be modifications of the pleura of the ninth segment, but, as has been suggested, this may be an incorrect interpretation. For systematic purposes the character most easily determined is whether they project directly caudad (Plate XXXIX, 24) to continue the lateral line of the abdomen, or turn inward to meet under the rectum (Plate XXXIX, 1) and form a posterior wall for the body cavity and an anterior wall before the oedagus. This is believed to be a constant and valuable generic character. In size the valves vary from narrow, triangular sclerites (Plate XXXIX, 15) to broad, flat plates (Plate XXXIX, 20) which occupy most of the lateral surface of the segment. They are often armed with teeth (Plate XXXIX, 5, 8), but the position of these teeth is variable as shown in the figures. Like the terga, these sclerites are often pubescent. In general the lateral valves seem to have little protective function, since the oedagus is well caudad, and they are probably used as copulatory organs of attachment. Whether they are homologous with the *harpes* of the Lepidoptera can be determined only by a comparative study of the two orders.

The *oedagus*, or penis sheath, is a heavy, partly chitinized covering for the penis. It is apparently of one piece and does not show the segments described for this organ in other orders of insects. In composition it is substantial enough to withstand the boiling and clearing necessary for examination under the microscope, and usually stands out well in such mounts. The oedagus seems to arise from the very base of the ninth segment, between the bases of the lateral valves and the sternal plate. Such an origin would agree with that found for the organ in certain beetles, and fairly well with the same structure in other orders. Muir (1915:151) states: "The oedeagus arises as a tubular organ at the base of an intersegmental invagination between the ninth and tenth sternites."

The function of the organ is undoubtedly protective, and it may be noted that practically no other protection is afforded to the penis since the entire genital chamber is so openly exposed. The oedagus itself is apparently of sufficient strength and rigidity to need no protection, altho in other orders it is generally covered by some parts of the genital chamber. In this connection Sharp (1890:421–422) states:

> It appears to be a great comfort or advantage to insects to be able to withdraw and cover over some of the sensitive parts of the body during repose, or when the parts are not in use . . . . . It is therefore quite consistent with what we find to obtain in insect economy that the alimentary canal . . . should be made to protect the oedeagus, and the fact justifies us to some extent in inferring that the oedeagus, or some part of it, is a sensitive organ; but it is, on the other hand, equally probable that the delicate structures of the oedeagus are covered simply to preserve them from injury.

In shape the oedagus is uniformly curved, bending upward and forward so that its apex points toward the rectum. It varies greatly in diameter in different genera and the tip is inclined to be much modified. Often the entire organ is gradually acuminate and sharp at the extremity (Plate XXXIX, 6); again, the tip may be swollen and surmounted by a knob-like projection (Plate XXXIX, 9). These two forms are the ones used by Fowler (1894–97) to separate the genera Ceresa and Stictocephala, and are believed to be sufficient characters for such distinction. In Stictocephala the apex of the oedagus is so broadly expanded, bell-shaped, and prominent as to be easily determined from a lateral view, and should serve as an excellent taxonomic character. The organ may be much swollen just below the apex (Plate XXXIX, 18, 20) — and occasionally the apex itself is hollowed out anteriorly and posteriorly (Plate XXXIX, 22, 23) — or surmounted by a heavy, punctate bar (Plate XXXIX, 25). The opening for the penis is almost invariably on the posterior surface of the apical end (Plate XXXIX, 12, 20, 25, 28). Even when the opening is strictly apical the oedagus is bent to turn the apex caudad so that the relative position is the same (Plate XXXIX, 16, 17).

A peculiar structure is noted at the base of the oedagus in certain genera of the subfamily Smiliinae (Plate XXXIX, 28). This consists of a stiff, toothed, internal appendage arising from the base of the curved external arm and extending almost directly dorsad into the eighth segment. Its function has not been determined.

The oedagus is usually smooth and without pubescence or hairs; its apex is occasionally punctured.

These variations are believed to be entirely sufficient for taxonomic use and should at least prove valuable as supplementary characters. In many cases the tip of the oedagus is protruded in the mounted insect, making the examination of the part possible. For this reason it is considered one of the most important parts of the genital apparatus from the standpoint of the systematist.

The *penis* is difficult to locate except in very fresh material. Since its structure is a problem of internal rather than external anatomy, no attempt has been made in the course of this study to work out its morphology. On superficial examination it appears to be a long, whitish filament, its length being surprising as compared with that of the oedagus. No indication has been found of any structure homologous to the *praepenis* as described by Harnisch (1915) for certain Coleoptera, nor do there appear to be any important variations in the basal structure of the organ.

The *styles*, or forceps, are very apparent in the Membracidae and in many forms extend far enough out of the genital chamber to make examination possible in the mounted specimen. Only one pair of these organs is present and the relative position in the segment is comparatively uniform thruout the family. Each style arises from the lateral margin of the segment near its base and usually between the lateral valves and the sternal plate (Plate XXXIX, 14). On dissection it is seen that the base extends into the abdomen and originates in the seventh segment (Plate XXXIX, 5). This can be seen in a well-cleared mount of the abdomen in toto. The style projects almost directly caudad and sometimes slightly laterad (Plate XXXIX, 10, 11). In shape the basal part is comparatively straight and the distal end bends upward in a gradual curve (Plate XXXIX, 5, 16, 18, 24) or sharply at an angle (Plate XXXIX, 27, 28). The tip is the most inclined to variation, and may range from a sharp, needle-like point (Plate XXXIX, 5, 8) to broadly angled plates (Plate XXXIX, 14, 22) or sharply toothed hooks (Plate XXXIX, 16, 27).

Study of the process of copulation in the living insects proves the function of the styles to be that of clasping or interlocking organs, as their shape would indicate. The terminal hook or angle always turns upward and in some cases forward. In a few species examined, the styles act in conjunction with the teeth of the lateral plates in the mating process.

As in the case of the oedagus, the structures of the styles offer good taxonomic characters and may be found useful in a number of genera.

The *sternal plate* is apparently a modified abdominal sternum, but its tendency to subdivision would suggest that it may be a fused or partly fused pair of appendages. The plate originates at the base of the ninth segment and is attached to the eighth abdominal sternum. It projects first caudad and then dorsad and is the most posterior of the genital organs. It may extend only a short distance upward (Plate XXXIX, 7), or it may extend so far in this direction as to hide the other genitalia when viewed from a caudal aspect (Plate XXXIX, 4, 15). As has been noted, it usually shows a division down the median line. This division may show only a slight notch (Plate XXXIX, 4), or the separation may be so apparent as to show two distinct plates (Plate XXXIX, 13); but in almost every case the two halves of the plate may be pulled apart after boiling in caustic potash, showing the real structure of the sclerite. For systematic purposes the appearance of the plate in the complete insect, rather than a theory as to its anatomical condition, is of course of more practical importance. This can usually be best ascertained from a strictly caudal view, and the characters most easily noted are the comparative length of the plate, the shape of the upcurved part, and the amount of splitting at the tip. All these points show sufficient variation to aid in diagnosis and all are relatively constant.

The sternal plate is usually pubescent and often covered with stiff, bristle-like hairs (Plate XXXIX, 10). It is freely movable and in the relaxed specimen may be pulled far downward without injury to itself or to the remainder of the genitalia. It may often be examined by merely separating the wing tips, and for that reason is the best adapted of all the genital parts for systematic work.

On the whole the male genitalia afford good taxonomic characters. The parts are simple and easy to dissect. The relative position of the plates and the structure of the individual pieces show sufficient variation thruout the family, and are constant enough within a genus, to furnish valuable data at least to supplement the more evident characters of the exoskeleton.

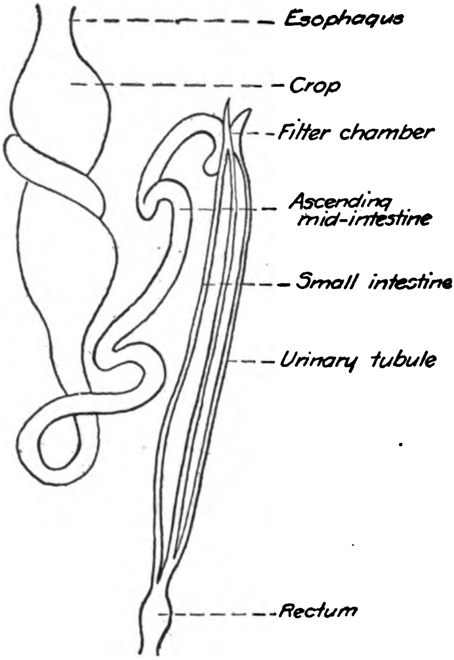


FIG. 42. STRUCTURE OF ALIMENTARY CANAL

INTERNAL ANATOMY OF THE MEMBRACIDAE

The internal anatomy of the membracid does not, on the whole, differ enough from that of other Hemiptera to warrant special discussion. The digestive system, however, is peculiar and shows some of the striking characters described by Kershaw (1913) for the species *Tricentrus albomaculatus* Dist. of the subfamily Centrotinae. This exotic species shows a formation of the mid-intestine much resembling that described by Witlaczil, Lang, and Packard for the Psyllidae (Packard, 1898:320).

No species of the Centrotinae have been available for dissection locally and the specimens examined in the course of this study have all been from the subfamily Smiliinae. These show some decided variations from the type described by Kershaw, the most noticeable difference being in the number and position of the urinary tubules.

The alimentary canal is short and much twisted (fig. 42) and the various parts are strikingly distinct in size and structure. The short esophagus opens directly into the crop, which is very large and has a peculiar twist at its center. At the posterior end of the crop the canal is much narrowed to form an ascending mid-intestine, which bends abruptly anteriorly, is irregularly coiled and twisted, and extends forward as far as the center of the crop. At the end of the ascending mid-intestine is a knot from which arise two urinary tubules; each of these tubules has a blind end projecting a short distance cephalad, while the tubule itself extends along the full length of the small intestine and joins the rectum by the side of the small intestine. From the knotted end of the mid-intestine arises the small intestine, which is very narrow in diameter and almost straight. The small intestine opens into the swollen rectum, which connects by a smaller rectal tube to the opening in the abdomen.

At the point where the mid-intestine ends and the small intestine begins, both these organs are somewhat looped and give rise to the urinary tubules. This part of the intestine has been called the filter chamber, and has been described in the Cercopidae by Licent (1911); but in the type of chamber shown by that family the mid-intestine and the urinary tubules are twisted many times around one another in an inclosed part of the canal. A similar filter chamber, tho not so elaborate, is described by Berlese (1909:733) for certain Coccidae.

Apparently such an arrangement of twisted intestine and nephridial organs is not uncommon in the Homoptera. The points of distinction to be noted in the subfamily Smiliinae are the two, rather than four, tubules and the peculiar caeca-like projections at the anterior ends of these tubes.

The respiratory system shows no peculiarities so far as has been observed. The spiracles have been discussed under the description of the external anatomy.

In the reproductive system the only points noted as applied particularly to the Membracidae are the number of eggs found in various species in life-history studies. It may be noted in this respect that the eggs are very large in proportion to the size of the insect, and are usually all matured at about the same time.

HISTOLOGY

Histological studies in the Membracidae show more interesting points in the comparative development of the various tissues than in their arrangement. The material has failed to show any but normal conditions in respect to the types of structure in the various parts of the body or in the organs. In regard to a few of the tissues, however, some space may be given to the discussion of special conditions that appear to be of interest in the family.

As of particular note the development of the chitin may be mentioned. This is deposited very strongly over the entire pronotum, but very weakly on the remainder of the body, due, no doubt, to the fact that the meso- and the metathorax and the abdomen are usually protected by the exaggerated dorsum of the prothorax. The undersurface of the entire body is soft, the beak, along with the interior body parts, being well chitinized. Internally the bases of the genital organs, and often the filter chamber of the intestine, show evidences of chitinization.

There is a surprisingly small amount of fatty tissue in both nymphs and adults. This might be explained in the latter case by the active life of the insect, but the nymphs are decidedly sluggish and heavy-bodied and the significance of the lack of fat in these forms is not apparent.

The musculature of the entire body is unusually well developed. Not only does this apply to the leg muscles, where such development might be expected, but it is equally true of the wing muscles and the muscular layers of the abdomen.

The connective tissue membranes thruout the body are strong and heavy. This is particularly true of the diaphragm-like division walls between the segments of the thorax, between the head and the prothorax, and between the metathorax and the abdomen. The intestine is likewise surrounded at various parts by heavy connective bands.

The nervous system is very poorly developed, and nerve tissue, aside from the ventral nerve cord, is hardly to be distinguished. This fact has been mentioned as one of the evidences of the low phylogenetic rank of the family.

LIFE HISTORY

APPEARANCE IN SPRING

Since most of the local species of Membracidae spend the winter in the egg stage, the first evidence of the family in the spring is the appearance of nymphs from the winter eggs. This occurs during April and May for most of the species, but a few delay emergence until June. Only one species, *Ceresa basalis*, regularly hatches as late as July. The approximate dates of emergence of the nymphs have been noted in the preceding section of this study with reference to each species, but it may be interesting to note more definitely the field records for certain species.

The first nymphs to appear are those of *Ceresa borealis*, which have been taken on April 15. Nymphs of *Ceresa taurina* are recorded for April 26. *Enchenopa binotata* has been recorded on May 3, *Ceresa bubalus* on May 10, *Ceresa diceros* on May 20, *Vanduzea arquata* on May 29, and *Thelia bimaculata* on May 30. During the first week in June most of the other species appear in rapid succession, and by the first of July all are out that are to be expected.

Meanwhile the two species that are known to winter over in the adult stage — *Entylia bactriana* and *Publilia concava* — appear sporadically in the warmer days and vary the dates of their appearance from season to season according to the weather. The appearance in the field of the adults of most of the species depends of course on the time required for the maturing of the nymphs, which varies with the species. Collecting begins on July 1 and lasts until the end of September.

MATING

Mating begins almost immediately after the insect reaches maturity. For most species this period includes the first two weeks of July. The position assumed in the process is the one not unusual in Hemiptera, with the caudal extremities together and the heads in opposite directions (Plate XL, 1). The insects are usually very sluggish at this time and seldom move unless disturbed. If molested they fall to the ground, not, however, becoming detached from each other. If movement takes place during copulation, the female generally moves forward dragging the male backward behind her. The process has been timed from five minutes to one hour in different species. No forms have been observed in flight while in copula.

During copulation the styles of the male function as clasping organs and the ovipositor of the female is drawn downward and forward.

Species that have more than one brood a year show more or less well-defined mating seasons during the summer; but in most such species the development of the nymphs is so irregular that the broods overlap and mating may be observed thruout the entire summer and fall.

OVIPOSITION

There are a number of rather distinct types of oviposition, as regards both the location of the eggs and the mechanics of the process. The eggs are most commonly deposited under the bark of the younger twigs, generally in wood one, two, or in some cases three years old. In most cases a single narrow slit is made in the bark, the ovipositor not reaching the cambium or, if reaching it, slipping down on one side of the twig between the bark and the wood and not penetrating the xylem. In this slit the eggs are deposited and the bark springs back into place over them. This type of oviposition is illustrated by most of the species of the genera Telamona, Carynota, Cyrtolobus, and Glossonotus. By this method little damage is done to the host, as the injury is not a severe one and quickly heals. Another type of twig oviposition is found in certain species of the genus Ceresa, of which *C. bubalus* is a well-known example. This species makes a curved slit in the bark, and another close beside it in such a fashion (Plate XXIV, 7, page 961) that the wound fails to close and not only affects the growth of the stem but affords entrance for various fungi and for other insects. A similar type of injury has been reported for certain species of Stictocephala on herbaceous stems, in which cases if the stems are small they may be punctured to such an extent as to cause them to break off at the point of injury.

A number of species deposit in the buds of the host. In this type of oviposition the eggs are laid just beneath the outer bud scales and the nymphs emerge at the time when these scales are first opening in the spring. In a few cases the eggs are not entirely covered but project slightly out of the bud tissue. This method of oviposition has little injurious effect on the host, since the outer bud scale, being entirely protective, may be damaged without injuring the plant. In the case of fruit buds the injury may be more serious, but in no case has it appeared to an extent great enough to be considered important. The most abundant of the species that oviposit in the bud are *Ceresa taurina*, *Ceresa borealis*, *Enchenopa binotata*, and *Vanduzea arquata*.

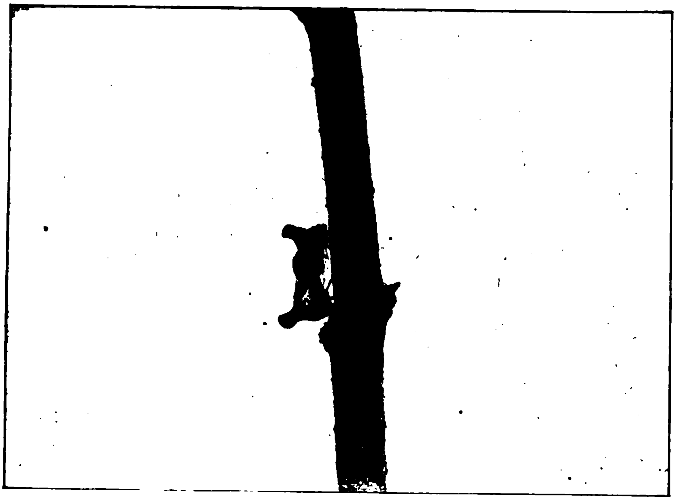
A few species lay their eggs in the leaves. This is notably true of *Entylia bactriana* and *Publilia concava*. The underside of the leaf is chosen for oviposition and the eggs are placed in two rows, one on each side of the midrib. The egg is not entirely within the leaf but the tip

PLATE XL

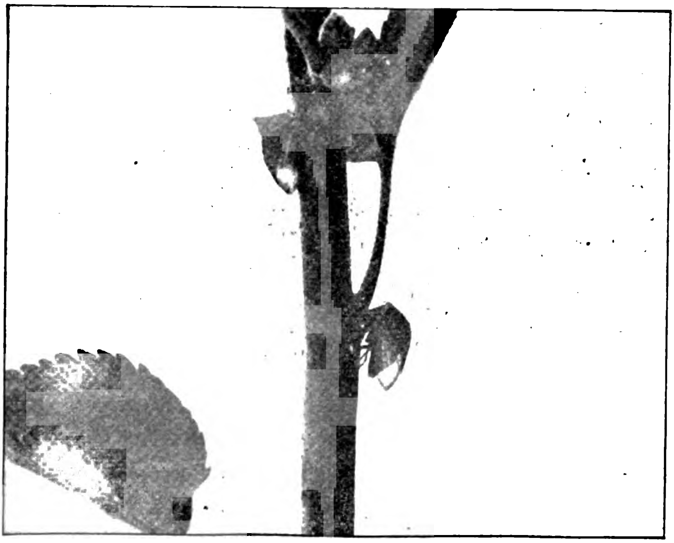
1, Copulation in *Glossonotus crataegi* Fitch

2, Oviposition in *Ceresa bubalus* Fabricius, showing ovipositor projecting at right angles to the body

(Photographs by H. H. Knight)



1



2

Plate XL

is plainly visible. The larger, lower leaves of the plant are most likely to show egg masses, probably because these leaves are the ones available in the early spring when oviposition begins. It will be remembered that these two species winter over in the adult stage and are therefore among the first of the membracids to lay their eggs in the spring. The leaf on which the eggs are laid usually withers and dies soon after the nymphs reach maturity. In the case of the thistle and the goldenrod, however, this is not serious to the plant, since the same thing takes place by midsummer as a result of natural conditions whether the leaves are infested or not.

Some species deposit their eggs in both the stems and the buds. This is true of *Enchenopa binotata*, *Ceresa borealis*, and *Cyrtolobus vau*. The choice of the position seems to depend in some cases on the host plant and in others on the season. *Enchenopa binotata*, for example, lays its eggs in the twigs of the locust but in the buds of the butternut; *Cyrtolobus vau* oviposits in the stems during the earlier part of the season and in the buds in the fall.

A number of species choose the axil of a leaf as the spot for oviposition. This seems to be the case invariably for *Telamona ampelopsidis* and occasionally for *Vanduzea arquata*.

One or two species oviposit in the roots or on the base of the stem below the surface of the ground. This peculiar method has been reported by the writer in a former paper for *Thelia bimaculata* (Funkhouser, 1915 b), and has been found true likewise for *Stictocephala festina*.

In all cases the eggs are protected only by the overlying bark or bud scales. The latter protection is probably the more efficacious since the pubescence on the inside of the scale tends to promote warmth and dryness.

The mechanics of oviposition differ decidedly in various species. In most cases the ovipositor is extended at right angles to the body and thrust perpendicularly into the host. Here it remains until all the eggs making the complement of a single egg mass are deposited. The ovipositor seems to move but slightly in the egg slit during the process, altho a decided movement of the abdomen is observable. All the species of the genera Telamona, Glossonotus, Carynota, and Cyrtolobus whose ovipositing habits have been observed show this method of depositing eggs.

In the case of the genus Ceresa the entire egg slit is made first. The ovipositor is inserted perpendicularly and then gradually moved backward during the process until it is almost parallel with the abdomen. During the insertion of the eggs the ovipositor is repeatedly withdrawn from the slit and forced back at a point slightly in advance of the last incision (Plate XL, 2).

Thelia bimaculata makes the egg slit and inserts the eggs at the same time. The ovipositor moves slowly thru the bark, forcing the tissues apart and depositing the eggs in one movement.

With a few species the ovipositor is withdrawn from the host after each egg has been deposited, and reinserted for the next egg. This is true of *Enchenopa binotata* and for all of the species of Stictocephala whose life histories have been studied.

Entylia bactriana lays a number of eggs, then rests, then moves forward along the same slit and deposits more—generally a different number—then rests again, and so on until a complete row has been finished.

The process of oviposition has been observed most commonly in the middle of the afternoon, when the sun is the warmest and the temperature the highest. It is usually noticed also on that side of the tree or plant which is exposed to the most direct rays of the sun at the time when the process is in progress, except in the case of *Entylia bactriana*, which chooses the underside of the leaf. Wildermuth (1915:350) has observed that in *Stictocephala festina* the eggs are usually laid at night or early in the morning, and suggests that the insects avoid extreme temperatures. This has not been found to be the case locally as the field records show, but the fact that Wildermuth's observations were made in a region of very different climatic conditions may explain the lack of agreement of the data.

The number of consecutive ovipositions made by one female varies with the species but has not been greater than five in any species noted. The average is not over three. In most cases the insect after depositing one egg mass moves along the twig for a short distance and repeats the process after a very short interval of rest. One female generally lays all her eggs on one twig or on twigs very close together, and it has never been observed that the insects move from one plant to another during the process.

While ovipositing the insect is entirely occupied with her work and does not respond to external influences. She refuses to be disturbed and may be touched or pushed without stopping the process. The writer has often attempted to take a female from a branch while oviposition was in progress, and in so doing has broken off the ovispositor, which remained in the egg slit.

The time required for a single oviposition varies from ten minutes to half an hour. Where several egg masses are deposited in succession the resting period between each insertion increases; so that if fifteen minutes elapse between the first and the second, a half hour may elapse between the second and the third, and often several hours before a fourth if so many are made. The same female may, however, continue to lay eggs for several days until a comparatively large number have been deposited. Hodgkiss (1910:87) reports one individual of *Ceresa bubalus* depositing 252 eggs in 59 scars during July and August, and another inserting 212 eggs in 39 wounds during the same period. Essig (1913) states for the same species that two or three hundred eggs are laid by one individual, but he does not specify the time required for such a number to be deposited.

It has not been practicable in the field to attempt to obtain more than daily records of oviposition, and laboratory experiments have not in all cases seemed convincing. These daily records would indicate that four or five egg masses may be deposited during the course of a day, but after that number has been reached the female remains quiescent for at least twenty-four hours, and very probably for several days, before another egg-laying period begins.

The number of eggs in each egg mass does not vary greatly for any of the membracids studied, and shows an average of four, with a minimum of one and a maximum of thirteen. The numbers of eggs in one egg mass as recorded for a number of the commoner species in this basin are shown in the table on the opposite page.

The most usual method of placing the eggs seems to be in a palmate arrangement with the bases close together and the tips projecting outward. In some species the eggs are laid singly, in others in straight rows, and in still others in irregular clusters.

The season for oviposition depends largely on the number of broods a year for the species concerned. If only one brood a season is usual, oviposition begins in July and extends thru September; but if several broods appear each year there is of course a more or less definite egg-laying season for each brood, tho, as has been remarked in connection with other points in the life history, the overlapping of broods makes such seasons difficult to delimit. The earliest field record for the process is May 11, for *Entylia bactriana*, and the latest is November 10, for *Ceresa basalis*.

Species	Number of eggs in egg mass			
	Minimum	Maximum	Average	Mode
Enchenopa binotata	3	20	6	7
Ceresa diceros	3	8	4	4
Ceresa bubalus	4	11	5	6
Ceresa taurina	1	8	3	4
Ceresa borealis	1	5	4	4
Stictocephala inermis	3	10	6	5
Carynota mera	1	9	3	4
Thelia bimaculata	3	6	5	6
Telamona reclivata	1	4	2	3
Telamona querci	2	5	3	3
Telamona ampelopsidis	3	10	7	6
Cyrtolobus vau	1	4	3	3
Ophiderma pubescens	2	13	7	7
Vanduzea arquata	3	6	4	4

The eggs are generally white or pearly, club-shaped or tooth-shaped, and about 1.5 millimeters long by 0.3 millimeter wide at the maximum diameter. The largest egg found locally is that of *Thelia bimaculata*, which averages 2.6 millimeters in length and 0.6 millimeter in diameter; the smallest is that of *Publilia concava*, which measures 0.7 millimeter in length and 0.17 millimeter in diameter. The egg may be smooth or sculptured, the base usually being rounded and the tip pointed. In the eggs of most species a distinct neck is visible, often grooved. The chorion is usually vitreous. The micropyle in most cases is oval, opening tangential to the longitudinal axis. The cap is comparatively large, and before hatching becomes swollen and wrinkled. The lateral margins of the egg are curved, one side often being more convex than the other. Just before the eggs hatch they become slightly larger.

DURATION OF EGG STAGE

Since most of the species winter over in the egg stage, the period of incubation for these eggs cannot be exactly determined. For those species that show several broods a year, however, it is possible to determine the duration of the egg stage. This has been noted both in the field and in the laboratory. The average length of this period is approximately twenty days. Miss Branch (1913:84) has found that nine days represents the egg stage of *Entylia sinuata*. No local species has shown so short a period. Wildermuth (1915:349) reports cases in which only twelve days are required for incubation of *Stictocephala festina*, but gives the average as twenty-two days, with a maximum of forty-one days, depending on the prevailing temperature. Even more remarkable is the record of Mr. Gibson, in Greenwood, Mississippi, who noted an incubation of the same species in four days (Wildermuth, 1915:349–350). In the course of this study no experiments with artificial temperatures in respect to temperature variation in the length of the egg stage have been made, but, as will be noted under the subject of ecology, the natural climatic conditions have had a decided influence on the incubation of the egg and the development of the nymphs.

DATES OF HATCHING

The time of hatching of the eggs depends largely on climatic conditions, being much later in some years than in others, but considerable variation is found in eggs of the same species in the same season. A difference of two weeks between the appearance of the first and the last records in the field is not unusual. It is presumed that in such cases the eggs hatching first were those deposited earliest in the preceding fall, but this is not known to be true.

Even in the same egg mass the eggs do not all hatch at the same time, a difference of nearly a week between the first and the last having been observed in some cases. The explanation of this variance is not forthcoming, since of course the eggs may be assumed to have been laid at one oviposition and the environmental conditions were identical for all.

MECHANICS OF HATCHING

The mechanics of the process of hatching is practically the same for all species studied. A few days before hatching, the egg appears somewhat swollen. This is followed by a cracking of the chorion about the neck and the upper end — that is, the end that leaves the ovipositor last and is nearest the surface of the host. Some days may elapse after the first splitting of the egg before the insect emerges. Finally the cap is forced upward and the head of the nymph appears. The head is quickly followed by the thorax and part of the abdomen. The nymph then appears to rest for a few minutes, after which the legs are slowly withdrawn in order, beginning with the first pair. At the same time the dorsal spines become protruded, while the insect is still held by the posterior end of the abdomen inside the shell. Finally this posterior end of the abdomen is pulled out, and the nymph creeps a very short distance away from the old shell and again rests. The entire time required for the emergence, from the time the head is first seen until the process is completed, is usually about half an hour. Hodgkiss (1910:88) has timed the process as from seven to nine minutes, but this speed has not been equaled by any of the local forms in the field. Wildermuth reports, for two specimens of *Stictocephala festina* timed, a period of eighteen and twenty-eight minutes, respectively.

INSTARS

All the species studied show five nymphal instars. Miss Branch (1913:84) reports only four instars for *Entylia sinuata*, but the nearest local relative of the species, *Entylia bactriana*, shows the usual five. Riley (1873) likewise observed that *Ceresa taurina* molted but four times before reaching maturity. His report called the species *Ceresa bubalus*, but it is now known that *Ceresa taurina* was the form he had in mind. This species is abundant in the Cayuga Lake Basin, and in all cases studied showed five instars. Each of the five instars is distinct enough to be recognized, and displays characters sufficient not only for the recognition of the species but also for the identification of the particular stage of development that it represents.

In the first instar the nymph is of course very small, not greatly exceeding in length the egg from which it hatched, very light-colored, and extremely soft-bodied. Most nymphs have characteristic dorsal spines on thorax and abdomen. In the first stage these spines are much inclined to be complex and branched, and are numerous on the head and the thorax with often more than one row on the abdomen. The head is very large, out of all proportion to the body, and the legs are feeble. The eyes are likely to be prominent, and the ocelli and the antennae not distinguishable. If the species is a pubescent one the hairs are usually not developed in this instar. No wing pads are visible from an external view and the abdomen is somewhat attenuated. The pronotum is not developed and the prothorax is about equal in size to the other thoracic segments.

In the second instar the size is usually doubled and the entire insect is much darker in appearance. The prothorax is inclined to be swollen dorsally but no distinguishing protuberance of the pronotum is apparent. No wing pads are visible. The head is more normal in comparative size and the eyes are not so prominent. The ocelli may usually be distinguished and likewise the antennae. The spines are still very complex and branched but seldom appear on the head. The anal segment of the abdomen is generally prolonged and the entire body is stouter.

In the third instar the characteristic enlargement of the pronotum begins to appear and the wing pads are evident. The prothorax is much larger than the other two thoracic segments. The head is normal in size and the eyes are usually not prominent. The antennae are plainly to be seen. The spines have lost much of their complexity and are much shorter and less branched. In this stage the spines of the head and the thorax are often entirely wanting and the whole body develops pubescence. The anal segment of the abdomen is still much enlarged and the anal tube is prominent.

In the fourth instar the pronotal enlargement is prominent, the posterior process usually covering the mesothorax. The wing pads are large and well developed, usually extending posteriorly as far as the third abdominal segment. The head is reduced in comparative size, the ocelli are prominent and the antennae are normal. The spines are much reduced in complexity if not in size. Often they appear as mere stubs or bristles, and are seldom on any other part of the body than the abdomen. The insect has increased much in size and often shows colors characteristic of the adult insect.

The fifth and last instar is usually the longest in duration and is by many authors called the *pupa*, tho by what authority is not clear. The activities of the insect are apparently in no way different from what they were in the preceding stages, and there is certainly no quiescence nor transformation that would justify the name. It is in fact confusing to apply the term *pupal stage* to insects having such a representative incomplete metamorphosis as do the Membracidae, and in this report the term is discarded. In this instar the nymph attains a size comparable with that of the imago. The pronotal developments are very pronounced and the wing pads are fully formed, usually reaching the fourth abdominal segment. The spines are heavy but generally rather simple. The head is much deflexed or prone, and eyes, ocelli, and antennae are normal. The beak is fully developed, generally extending posteriorly as far as the hind coxae. The legs are strong and stout and the abdomen is swollen. The anal tube is somewhat less prominent than in the preceding stages.

The above descriptions apply of course to the family in general and find many exceptions in various species. On the whole, however, they represent the general development of membracid nymphs. Certain particular characters may be noted as of interst and value in recognition. The development of the pronotum is noteworthy as it usually gives the clue to the species. Since all the local species of which the life history is known have the posterior pronotal process, the gradual extension of this structure is common to all nymphs. The anterior decorations are, however, generally distinct, and, in the last instar at least, the vestigial lateral horns of the Ceresas, the porrect spike of Thelia, the notch of Entylia, and the crest of the Telamonas, are strikingly suggestive.

The peculiar spines which are more or less characteristic of all the nymphs of the family are scarcely less important. Their number, position, arrangement, and type of branching are all guides in the determination of the species and of the nymphal instar. As has been noted, most species show these more abundantly on the head and the thorax in the earlier than in the later instars, and the abdominal bristles are inclined to be more elaborately branched in the first stages than in the last. This is not, however, always the case, for some forms retain these twig-like branched appendages until their last molt and a few have no such bristles in any of their nymphal stages. The shape of the individual spines is of interest — whether straight or curved, branched or simple, long or short, heavy or light; likewise the arrangement — whether singly or in pairs, in regular or irregular rows, opposite or indeterminable.

The coloration of the nymph seems to be of much less value, since many forms show much variation within the species. Size, likewise, should not be taken as a criterion, except perhaps in comparison of instars of the same species.

In general the nymphs of each genus show some character which is more or less distinct. The Ceresas and the Stictocephalas may be known by their bristling, forest-like growth of branched dorsal spines; the Carynotas by the lack of such spines and the crescent-shaped pronotum; Acutalis and Micrutalis by the fact that the abdominal spines lie almost flat against the body; the Telamonas by the very heavy dorsal abdominal teeth which take the place of the spines, and by the evidence of the pronotal crest; Thelia by the porrect horn on the prothorax; Cyrtolobus by the smooth body and the rounded thorax; Ophiderma by the small size, the hairy appearance, and the flattened dorsum; Campylenchia by the broad abdominal median dorsal plates; Entylia by the prominent notch on the pronotum; and Vanduzea by the straight dorsal line and the peculiar anal tube.

The time required for each nymphal instar varies not only for the different species, but also for the nymphs of a single species and even for the individuals in a single egg mass. For this reason the general subject of nymphal periods can be discussed only roughly. In general, however, it may be said that the average for each of the first four instars is about five days and for the fifth instar ten days, making a total of thirty days for the complete period of development from egg to adult. This may be shown for some of the more abundant of the local forms by the following table of averages.

	First instar	Second instar	Third instar	Fourth instar	Fifth instar
Enchenopa binotata	6 days	5 days	6 days	8 days	10 days
Ceresa diceros	7	4	5	5	8
Ceresa bubalus	7	7	7	7	14
Ceresa taurina	8	7	7	10	15
Ceresa borealis	5	11	9	10	12
Stictocephala inermis	9	8	8	9	13
Thelia bimaculata	7	5	6	6	11
Telamona reclivata	10	9	8	7	12
Telamona unicolor	10	6	5	10	14
Telamona ampelopsidis	6	7	10	10	15
Cyrtolobus vau	6	5	5	5	10
Vanduzea arquata	5	3	3	4	8
Entylia bactriana	5	5	5	5	8

The variation between the periods of development of the different species is probably normal and more or less indicative of the requirements for each species concerned.

The variation in one species in different years can probably be explained by climatic conditions, and the same factor may explain the varying periods required for different broods in the same season and even for nymphs from different egg masses hatching at about but not exactly the same time.

The variation in the length of time required for nymphs from a single egg mass is, however, not to be explained on this ground, and yet such variation is very common. The factors entering into the problem are rather numerous. When it is said that all the nymphs from one egg mass do not reach maturity at the same time, it must be remembered that all the eggs from this egg mass may not have hatched at the same time. It has been shown, however, that the nymphs from the eggs first hatched do not always reach maturity before those from the eggs last hatched. Moreover, the nymphs from eggs hatching at the same time do not reach maturity together. Still further, nymphs that have hatched at the same time and reached maturity at the same time have often not kept together during the different molts. For example, the records of two nymphs emerging on the same day showed respectively for the five instars 8–7–7–10–15 and 7–8–8–8–16 days, and transformed into adults on the same afternoon. Such variation can be explained only by individual and physiological differences not evident in the ordinary life-history studies. There is often a difference of as much as two weeks between the dates of maturing of the earliest and the latest individuals from the same egg mass, and as much as one week between individuals from eggs hatching on the same day.

ECDYSIS

There are various types of ecdysis, but seldom is there any variation in this respect within a genus. In most cases the nymph of the last instar fastens itself securely to the underside of a leaf just before its final molt, and the old exuviae may be found in this position for several days after the process has been completed. In some cases only the first pair of legs are thus attached, in others all six legs. Some species do not attach themselves and the old skin falls to the ground as soon as ecdysis is complete; in other species the old nymphal skin hangs to the end of the abdomen of the adult and is carried about for some time after molting.

Just before the last molt the skin dries out and becomes more or less transparent and scaly. Under the microscope it is possible to distinguish regions in which the integument has pulled away from the new skin even before splitting begins.

The splitting occurs down the dorsal line but does not always start at the same place. In most cases the first splitting occurs along the dorsal line of the head; in a considerable number it begins near the thorax, and in a few over the abdomen.

The head generally emerges first, then the thorax, then the legs, and lastly the abdomen. The various segments gradually enlarge as they are freed, and become decidedly swollen within a few minutes following ecdysis. In some species the thorax emerges before the head; in others the head, the thorax, and the abdomen before the legs; and in a few the last pair of legs and the last segments of the abdomen remain longest in the old skin. These rather distinct types of ecdysis may be illustrated by the common species *Vanduzea arquata*, *Thelia bimaculata*, and *Ceresa borealis*.

In *Vanduzea arquata* the nymph attaches itself securely by the first pair of legs to the underside of a leaf. The splitting begins over the thorax and the dorsal part of the thorax emerges first; this is followed by the head, then the legs, and then the abdomen. The old skin is very perfect and remains attached to the leaf.

In *Thelia bimaculata* the insect is not attached. The splitting begins over the head and this part of the body emerges first; then the thorax appears and the integument breaks around the coxae and the femora, leaving pieces of old skin attached to the legs for some time after ecdysis is completed; the abdomen is then removed, and lastly the legs. The old skin is very imperfect, being much broken and torn, and drops to the ground after the process is completed.

In *Ceresa borealis* the insect is not attached. The splitting begins over the head and gradually continues over the thorax and the abdomen. The head emerges first, then the thorax, then the first half of the abdomen, then the legs, and then the posterior half of the abdomen. The old skin is very perfect and remains attached to the tip of the abdomen, where it is dragged behind for some time.

The time required for the process is not subject to great variation within a species, but is rather different in various genera and usually ranges from five to forty-five minutes. The least time noted in field records for the process is three minutes, for *Enchenopa binotata*, and the greatest is seventy-five minutes, for *Telamona ampelopsidis*. The average for several common species, as worked out from one or more timed in each case, is as follows:

Enchenopa binotata	6 minutes
Ceresa diceros	10
Ceresa bubalus	11
Ceresa taurina	9
Ceresa borealis	8
Stictocephala inermis	25
Carynota mera	30
Thelia bimaculata	12
Telamona declivata	40
Telamona unicolor	33
Telamona ampelopsidis	28
Smilia camelus	17
Cyrtolobus vau	50
Ophiderma pubescens	8
Vanduzea arquata	10
Entylia bactriana	5

The exuviae, if perfect, may be used for diagnosis and correctly represent the last nymphal stage. Altho the splitting of the integument occurs along the median dorsal line, the spines in this region are seldom injured as the break appears on one side or the other at their bases. Even in broken specimens the injuries are usually around the bases of the legs or on the abdomen, and do not interfere with the characters necessary for recognition purposes.

The nymphs are active but they do not jump as do the adults. They are prone to hide themselves in crevices in the bark and in the axils of leaves, where their coloration renders them very inconspicuous. If disturbed they often creep around to the opposite side of the twig and are able to run fairly rapidly when in the later instars. They often have the habit of flattening themselves close to the twig if molested and remain without movement even when touched. During ecdysis they are of course comparatively helpless and may be studied with great ease.

The newly emerged adults are lighter in color than the normal hue of the species, and very soft-bodied. The exoskeleton becomes hardened, however, within a couple of hours and the normal colors appear in twenty-four hours. If the insects are injured during this period the injury becomes permanent and the mutilation may appear as a grotesque twist or bend in the hardened pronotum. It is not unlikely that such injured specimens have given rise to certain new species and varieties, the descriptions of which have been based on apparently new pronotal characters.

RELATION OF NYMPHS AND ADULTS TO HOSTS

After reaching the adult stage the insect often moves to a different host from that on which the eggs were laid. In fact such migration may take place during the last or the next to the last nymphal instar. In some cases a clear distinction between the host used for oviposition and that used as a food plant may be made; in other cases the insect spends its entire life on one plant which serves both as food and as an egg host. In the latter case both nymphs and adults may be taken together, and apparently they lead a more or less gregarious existence.

BROODS

Most of the local species have but one brood a year. A few exceptions, however, may be noted. *Campylenchia latipes* normally has two broods and some of the adults of the second brood winter over in that stage. *Ceresa borealis* has two broods, but the adults of the second brood die after depositing their eggs. *Stictocephala inermis* is believed to have two broods, at least in certain years when the seasons are favorable. Wildermuth (1915:357) reports four generations for the closely related species *S. festina* in Arizona, where no hibernation is required. *Cyrtolobus vau* has two broods, and in some seasons three if warm weather continues late in the fall. It may be that in some instances the adults of the last brood of this species may survive the winter. *Vanduzea arquata* may have four broods during the year, three from the summer and one from the winter eggs. This is the largest number of generations in a year for any of the species studied. *Entylia bactriana* has two, and possibly three, broods a year. Miss Branch (1913:84) estimates six or seven broods a year for the closely related species *Entylia sinuata* in Kansas.

The number of broods in a year is, however, very largely dependent on the weather conditions of the seasons concerned. It is very probable that a decided variation in number of broods may occur in different parts of the country, and that the data reported for the Cayuga Lake

Basin will be worthless when applied to other localities. As is noted later under the subject of ecology, even the variations found in local weather conditions have had their effect on the number of generations in a season, and it is reasonable to conclude that the number is not constant over a wide territory.

Even locally the estimation of the number of broods for the great majority of species must be based only on observations made in the field, since it is impracticable to maintain in the laboratory or the insectary the necessary hosts for oviposition and feeding thruout the year. Furthermore, the overlapping of the stages of nymphal development, and the consequent prolongation of mating periods after maturity with the resulting variation in periods of oviposition, make it impossible to state the exact number of days that may be assigned to each generation.

In the case of species having two or more generations a year, such as *Vanduzea arquata* and *Entylia bactriana*, the field records are made with great difficulty as it often happens that nymphs of all stages and adults of all ages may be collected from one host practically thruout the entire summer.

WINTERING OVER

Careful search has been made for evidence that membracids winter over in any other form than the egg stage, which is certainly the normal method. The results seem to show that *Entylia bactriana* and *Publilia concava* pass the winter as adults, and that occasionally *Cyrtolobus vau* may do likewise. These conclusions have been based on the fact that imagoes of these species have been found hibernating in soil and forest litter during the winter months and have become active on being brought into the laboratory, and the fact that adults have been collected in the spring at dates so early as to preclude the possibility of nymphal development. The usual methods of investigation have been to sift the earth and débris beneath the plants which the insects are known to inhabit; to make examinations of the leaves and the bark of such hosts during the winter; and to make early spring and late fall collections in order to note the stages taken.

It would appear from such investigations that the above-named species are the only ones that survive locally in the imago stage. If any others have similar habits they have not yet been discovered.

No evidence has been found to indicate that nymphs of any stage survive the winter months. This is not surprising when the life habits of the insects and the severity of the local winters are considered.

It may be that even in the case of species known to pass the winter in the egg stage some adults may survive likewise; but as a general rule it has been taken for granted that if winter eggs are commonly found the species depends on this method of hibernation for existence.

LIFE CYCLE

Summarizing in a general way the usual life history of the local species, the following outline may be considered correct:

Eggs: Laid in fall, hatch in early spring.
Nymphs: Emerge about the middle of May and require about six weeks to reach maturity.
Adults: Are common about July 1 and persist thruout summer and fall.
Mating: Takes place the first week after emergence.
Oviposition: Occurs within a week after mating.
Broods: Usually one but sometimes more, dependent on weather conditions.

For a single individual the life cycle would be somewhat as follows:

Egg stage:	From September to middle of May		8½ months
Nymph:	First instar	1 week	
	Second instar	1 week	
	Third instar	1 week	
	Fourth instar	1 week	
	Fifth instar	2 weeks	
	Total — from middle of May to July		1½ months
Adult:	From July to October (inclusive)		4 months
Entire life			14 months

LOCALITIES FOR COLLECTING

The following table has been prepared to show the best collecting grounds in the basin for the various species as shown by the collecting in recent years. For each species are given the station that has yielded the species most abundantly, the dates of the appearance in largest numbers of both nymphs and adults, the hosts on which the species has most commonly been taken, and notes as to the relative abundance of the forms in question. The dates are to be considered as inclusive. It is believed that this table will indicate the most favorable localities in which to search for the local forms of Membracidae and may prove an aid to the student in this respect.

Species	Stations	Nymphs	Adults	Hosts	Remarks
1. *Microcentrus caryae*	J, K, N	July 1–15	August	Hickory	Fairly common
2. *Campylenchia latipes*	D, H	June 10–20	July–August	Grass	Common
3. *Enchenopa binotata*	A, B, L	July–August	August–September	Locust, butternut	Very common
4. *Ceresa diceros*	B, P	July	August–September	Black elder	Common
5. *Ceresa bubalus*	All	May 1–15	June–September	Sweet clover	Common
6. *Ceresa taurina*	All	May	July–September	Apple	Common
7. *Ceresa constans*	A, D	No record	August 25	Locust	Fairly common
8. *Ceresa Palmeri*	J	July 1	August 20	Hickory	Rather rare
9. *Ceresa borealis*	L, N	May	June–July	Raspberry	Very common
10. *Ceresa basalis*	C, P	July 25	September 1	Rose	Common
11. *Stictocephala inermis*	D, I	June 1	August 12	Sweet clover	Common
12. *Stictocephala lutea*	A	Not known	August 20	Oak	Fairly common
13. *Acutalis tartarea*	Unknown	No record	July 20	No record	Very rare
14. *Micrutalis dorsalis*	Unknown	No record	August 3–13	No record	Rare
15. *Micrutalis calva*	Q	No record	August 15	Locust	Rare
16. *Carynota mera*	M, N, O, P	July 20	August 5	Hickory, butternut	Common
17. *Carynota porphyrea*	P, Q	No record	August 13	White oak	Scarce
18. *Thelia bimaculata*	All	June–September	August–September	Locust	Very abundant
19. *Glossonotus acuminatus*	N	No record	August 11–13	White oak	Very rare
20. *Glossonotus univittatus*	J	No record	August 21	Hazelnut	Extremely rare
21. *Glossonotus crataegi*	J	No record	August 14	Hawthorn	Rare
22. *Heliria scalaris*	I	No record	August 13	Unknown	Rare
23. *Telamona declivata*	Unknown	No record	July 12	Unknown	Very rare
24. *Telamona pyramidata*	N	No record	July 11	Chestnut oak	Rare
25. *Telamona barbata*	B	No record	June 13	White oak	Rare
26. *Telamona obsoleta*	O	No record	August	Oak	Rare
27. *Telamona Westcotti*	Unknown	No record	June 23	No record	Very rare
28. *Telamona reclivata*	I	July 1	August 10–20	Basswood	Very common
29. *Telamona monticola*	K, O	July 1–10	September 1	Oak	Questionable species
30. *Telamona querci*	R	June 25	August 6–25	Oaks	Abundant
31. *Telamona ampelopsidis*	D, H, R	June 10–30	July–August	Virginia creeper	Very abundant
32. *Telamona tristis*	J, R	No record	July 20	Hazelnut	Rare
33. *Telamona concava*	Unknown	No record	August 30	Unknown	Very rare
34. *Telamona projecta*	Unknown	No record	No record	Unknown	Extremely rare
35. *Telamona unicolor*	O	May 15–30	August–September	Hickory	Common in southern part of basin
36. *Telamona pruinosa*	Q	June 15–30	August 1–15	Sycamore	Rare
37. *Telamona decorata*	I	July 1	August 15	Linden	Common
38. *Archasia Belfragei*	A, B, C	No record	July 15–30	Locust	Rather common
39. *Smilia camelus*	A, E	May	June 15–July 15	Locust	Common
40. *Cyrtolobus ovatus*	T	No record	July 12	Grass	Very rare
41. *Cyrtolobus fuliginosus*	L	No record	June 20–July 10	White oak	Common
42. *Cyrtolobus muticus*	Unknown	No record	June 14–27	No record	Very rare
43. *Cyrtolobus tuberosus*	O, P	April 15–May 15	June 15–30	Oaks	Very common
44. *Cyrtolobus discoidalis*	Unknown	No record	June 30	Unknown	Very rare
45. *Cyrtolobus cinctus*	D, N	No record	July 1	White oak	Fairly common
46. *Cyrtolobus vau*	All	June 1–15	July–August	Oaks	Extremely abundant
47. *Cyrtolobus intermedius*	B, C	No record	July 18	Unknown	Not common
48. *Cyrtolobus cinereus*	B	No record	July 3	Oak	Rare

Species	Stations	Nymphs	Adults	Hosts	Remarks
49. *Cyrtolobus fuscipennis*	B	Unknown	July 1	Oak	Very rare
50. *Atymna castaneae*	All	June 15–30	July 1–15	Chestnut	Abundant
51. *Atymna querci*	M, S, V	June	July 1–10	Oak	Very common
52. *Atymna inornata*	F, V	No record	July–August	Oaks	Not common
53. *Xantholobus trilineatus*	O, P	June 1	July 1–10	Oaks	Common
54. *Xantholobus lateralis*	Unknown	No record	June 30	Unknown	Very rare
55. *Ophiderma salamandra*	A, B, Q	May	June 15–July 10	Oaks	Very common
56. *Ophiderma pubescens*	All	April 20	June 10–30	White oak	Abundant
57. *Ophiderma flavicephala*	J	No record	June 1–10	Unknown	Rare
58. *Ophiderma flava*	L	No record	June 5–20	Unknown	Rare
59. *Vanduzea arquata*	All	Entire summer	Entire summer	Locust	Commonest species in basin
60. *Entylia bactriana*	J	Entire summer	Entire summer	Thistle	Very abundant
61. *Publilia concava*	V	No record	June–September	Goldenrod	Rare

HOSTS

The Membracidae have shown themselves to be excellent botanists and in most cases confine themselves to very definite host plants both for feeding and for oviposition. In many cases the association between the membracid and the host is so characteristic that a knowledge of the one is sufficient for recognition of the other. This is particularly true for such species as *Telamona ampelopsidis*, which not only confine themselves to a single host but are the only species ever found on the host. A large number of species of the family have been named to indicate such associations, and the local forms with such specific names as *querci*, *castaneae*, *crataegi*, *ampelopsidis*, and the like, are representative of such species.

The host plants concerned may be divided into four rather well-defined groups of plants. The most important of these groups is represented by the Amentiferae, including such nut-bearing trees as oak, hickory, butternut, chestnut, beech, and hazelnut; of hardly less importance are the legumes, of which the local forms of locust, sweet clover, alfalfa, and red clover are favorite hosts for many species of membracids; the Rosaceae in general, but particularly apple, pear, berries, and cultivated roses, represent the third group; while the fourth includes a large number of succulent composites such as annual asters, sunflower, daisy, Joe-pye weed and thistle. Practically every plant that has been recorded as a host plant for any species of Membracidae may be included in one of these four groups.

The following tables are offered to show the combinations of plants and species as represented in the basin. Only those hosts on which the membracids have actually been taken while feeding or ovipositing are included, and the list is therefore purely local. The literature referring to various species occasionally mentions other hosts on which the forms have been taken in various parts of the country. In all cases such hosts, if represented in the local flora, have been carefully examined for verification of the record, but the name is not here included unless such verification has been established. No attempt has been made in this list to distinguish between the hosts sought for oviposition and those preferred for feeding, since the former have been separately discussed under the life history notes.

HOST — SPECIES

- White oak (*Quercus alba* L.)
    - *Microcentrus caryae*
    - *Ceresa bubalus*
    - *Ceresa diceros*
    - *Ceresa taurina*
    - *Ceresa borealis*
    - *Stictocephala lutea*
    - *Carynota mera*
    - *Carynota porphyrea*
    - *Glossonotus acuminatus*
    - *Telamona barbata*
    - *Telamona obsoleta*
    - *Telamona querci*
    - *Telamona tristis*
    - *Archasia Belfragei*
    - *Cyrtolobus fuliginosus*
    - *Cyrtolobus tuberosus*
    - *Cyrtolobus cinctus*
    - *Cyrtolobus vau*
    - *Atymna querci*
    - *Atymna inornata*
    - *Xantholobus trilineatus*
    - *Ophiderma salamandra*
    - *Ophiderma pubescens*
- Chestnut oak (*Quercus Prinus* L.)
    - *Microcentrus caryae*
    - *Ceresa borealis*
    - *Carynota mera*
    - *Telamona pyramidata*
    - *Telamona obsoleta*
    - *Telamona querci*
    - *Smilia camelus*
    - *Cyrtolobus vau*
    - *Atymna querci*
    - *Xantholobus trilineatus*
    - *Ophiderma salamandra*
- Red oak (*Quercus rubra* L.)
    - *Ceresa bubalus*
    - *Ceresa borealis*
    - *Cyrtolobus vau*
    - *Telamona decorata*
- Scarlet oak (*Quercus coccinea* Muench.)
    - *Ceresa diceros*
    - *Cyrtolobus tuberosus*
    - *Cyrtolobus vau*
- Locust (*Robinia pseudacacia* L.)
    - *Enchenopa binotata*
    - *Ceresa diceros*
    - *Ceresa bubalus*
    - *Ceresa taurina*
    - *Ceresa constans*
    - *Ceresa borealis*
    - *Micrutalis calva*
    - *Thelia bimaculata*
    - *Archasia Belfragei*
    - *Smilia camelus*
    - *Vanduzea arquata*
- Hickory (*Carya ovata* Koch)
    - *Microcentrus caryae*
    - *Enchenopa binotata*
    - *Ceresa bubalus*
    - *Ceresa taurina*
    - *Ceresa Palmeri*
    - *Ceresa borealis*
    - *Carynota mera*
    - *Telamona unicolor*
    - *Cyrtolobus tuberosus*
- Pignut (*Carya cordiformis* Koch)
    - *Ceresa bubalus*
    - *Ceresa borealis*

- Elm (*Ulmus americana* L.)
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
- Willow (*Salix nigra* Marsh.)
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
  - *Ceresa borealis*
- Quince (cultivated)
  - *Glossonotus crataegi*
- Hawthorn (sp.)
  - *Glossonotus crataegi*
- Crab apple (cultivated)
  - *Glossonotus crataegi*
- Sumac (*Rhus glabra* L.)
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
- Hazelnut (*Corylus americana* Walt.)
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
  - *Ceresa taurina*
  - *Glossonotus univittatus*
- Black elder (*Sambucus canadensis* L.)
  - *Ceresa diceros*
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
  - *Ceresa borealis*
- Red elder (*Sambucus racemosa* L.)
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
- Rose (cultivated)
  - *Ceresa basalis*
- Sunflower (cultivated)
  - *Entylia bactriana*
- Wild grape (*Vitis aestivalis* Michx.)
  - *Enchenopa binotata*
  - *Ceresa borealis*
- Bittersweet (*Celastrus scandens* L.)
  - *Enchenopa binotata*
  - *Ceresa taurina*
- Blackberry (cultivated)
  - *Ceresa diceros*
  - *Ceresa taurina*
- Raspberry (cultivated)
  - *Ceresa taurina*
  - *Ceresa borealis*
- Witch-hazel (*Hamamelis virginiana* L.)
  - *Ceresa taurina*
  - *Telamona tristis*
- Virginia creeper (*Psedera quinquefolia* L.)
  - *Telamona ampelopsidis*
- Daisy (*Chrysanthemum leucanthemum* L.)
  - *Enchenopa binotata*
  - *Campylenchia latipes*
  - *Stictocephala lutea*
- Joe-pye weed (*Eupatorium purpureum* L.)
  - *Enchenopa binotata*
  - *Campylenchia latipes*
  - *Entylia bactriana*
- Aster (*Aster novae-angliae* L.)
  - *Campylenchia latipes*
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
- Alfalfa (cultivated)
  - *Campylenchia latipes*
- Prickly lettuce (*Lactuca scariola* L.)
  - *Campylenchia latipes*
- Wild carrot (*Daucus carota* L.)
  - *Campylenchia latipes*
- Sweet clover (*Melilotus alba* Desr.)
  - *Ceresa diceros*
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
  - *Ceresa taurina*
  - *Stictocephala inermis*
- Potato (cultivated)
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
  - *Ceresa taurina*
- Dahlia (cultivated)
  - *Ceresa taurina*
- Bluegrass (cultivated)
  - *Ceresa taurina*
- Timothy (cultivated)
  - *Stictocephala inermis*
- Red clover (cultivated)
  - *Stictocephala inermis*
- Thistle (all species found locally)
  - *Entylia bactriana*
- Goldenrod (*Solidago canadensis* L.)
  - *Publilia concava*
- Butternut (*Juglans cinerea* L.)
  - *Enchenopa binotata*
  - *Ceresa diceros*
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
  - *Stictocephala inermis*
  - *Carynota mera*
  - *Telamona unicolor*
- Walnut (*Juglans nigra* L.) (Uncommon in the basin)
  - *Telamona unicolor*
- Chestnut (*Castanea dentata* Borkh.)
  - *Atymna castaneae*
- Sycamore (*Platanus occidentalis* L.)
  - *Enchenopa binotata*
  - *Ceresa diceros*
  - *Ceresa bubalus*
  - *Ceresa borealis*
  - *Telamona pruinosa*

Basswood (*Tilia americana* L.)
Telamona barbata
Telamona reclivata
Telamona tristis
Telamona unicolor
Telamona decorata

Dogwood (*Cornus florida* L.)
Enchenopa binotata

Poplar (*Populus deltoides* Marsh.)
Ceresa bubalus

Pear (cultivated)
Ceresa bubalus
Ceresa taurina
Ceresa borealis

Apple (cultivated)
Ceresa taurina
Ceresa bubalus
Stictocephala inermis
Ceresa borealis

Skunk cabbage (*Symplocarpus foetidus* L.)
Publilia concava

SPECIES — HOST

1. *Microcentrus caryae* — Hickory, oak
2. *Campylenchia latipes* — Aster, daisy, joe-pye weed, alfalfa, prickly lettuce, wild carrot
3. *Enchenopa binotata* — Locust, wild grape, bittersweet, hickory, sycamore, butternut, dogwood, daisy, joe-pye weed
4. *Ceresa diceros* — Locust, elder, oak, sycamore, sweet clover, blackberry, butternut
5. *Ceresa bubalus* — Sycamore, aster, poplar, potato, butternut, hazelnut, pear, sumac, oak, locust, elm, willow, elder, sweet clover, hickory, pignut, apple
6. *Ceresa taurina* — Raspberry, hickory, potato, blackberry, dahlia, hazelnut, locust, witch-hazel, bluegrass, oak, pear, apple, sweet clover, bittersweet
7. *Ceresa constans* — Locust
8. *Ceresa Palmeri* — Young hickory
9. *Ceresa borealis* — Wild grape, locust, elder, willow, oak, hickory, pignut, raspberry, sycamore, apple, pear
10. *Ceresa basalis* — Rose
11. *Stictocephala inermis* — Sweet clover, apple, timothy, red clover
12. *Stictocephala lutea* — Oak, daisy
13. *Acutalis tartarea* — Host unknown
14. *Micrutalis dorsalis* — Host unknown
15. *Micrutalis calva* — Locust
16. *Carynota mera* — Oak, hickory, butternut
17. *Carynota porphyrea* — White oak
18. *Thelia bimaculata* — Locust
19. *Glossonotus acuminatus* — White oak
20. *Glossonotus univittatus* — Hazelnut
21. *Glossonotus crataegi* — Hawthorn, crab apple, quince
22. *Heliria scalaris* — Host unknown
23. *Telamona declivata* — Host unknown
24. *Telamona pyramidata* — Chestnut oak
25. *Telamona barbata* — White oak, basswood
26. *Telamona obsoleta* — Various oaks
27. *Telamona Westcotti* — Host unknown
28. *Telamona reclivata* — Basswood
29. *Telamona monticola* — Oaks
30. *Telamona querci* — White oak, chestnut oak
31. *Telamona ampelopsidis* — Virginia creeper
32. *Telamona tristis* — Witch-hazel, basswood, oak, hazelnut
33. *Telamona concava* — Host unknown
34. *Telamona projecta* — Host unknown
35. *Telamona unicolor* — Hickory, butternut, walnut, basswood
36. *Telamona pruinosa* — Sycamore

37. *Telamona decorata* — Red oak, basswood
38. *Archasia Belfragei* — Locust, oak
39. *Smilia camelus* — Locust, oak
40. *Cyrtolobus ovatus* — Grass
41. *Cyrtolobus fuliginosus* — White oak
42. *Cyrtolobus muticus* — Host unknown
43. *Cyrtolobus tuberosus* — White oak, red oak, hickory
44. *Cyrtolobus discoidalis* — Host unknown
45. *Cyrtolobus cinctus* — White oak
46. *Cyrtolobus vau* — White oak, chestnut oak, red oak, scarlet oak
47. *Cyrtolobus intermedius* — Host unknown
48. *Cyrtolobus cinereus* — Oak
49. *Cyrtolobus fuscipennis* — Oak
50. *Atymna castaneae* — Chestnut
51. *Atymna querci* — White oak, chestnut oak
52. *Atymna inornata* — White oak
53. *Xantholobus trilineatus* — Oak
54. *Xantholobus lateralis* — Host unknown
55. *Ophiderma salamandra* — Oak
56. *Ophiderma pubescens* — White oak
57. *Ophiderma flavicephala* — Host unknown
58. *Ophiderma flava* — Host unknown
59. *Vanduzea arquata* — Locust
60. *Entylia bactriana* — Thistle, joe-pye weed, sunflower
61. *Publilia concava* — Goldenrod, skunk cabbage

It is interesting to note that certain species common in many parts of the country and having a wide geographical range shift from one host to another in varied localities. If the favorite host of the species is not represented a close relative is usually chosen. Thus, *Carynota mera*, common on pecan in the South, is found in the Cayuga Lake Basin on hickory.

In other cases the species seems to deliberately change its host even tho an apparently more constant host is abundant. Thus, *Enchenopa binotata*, which in most parts of the United States seems to prefer the hop tree (*Ptelea trifoliata* L.), is locally much more likely to be found on the locust or on the butternut; *Stictocephala inermis*, found in many parts of the country on alfalfa, has in this basin changed to sweet clover for food and to apple and pear for oviposition.

It has been noted that certain species change their hosts during the life cycle, the nymphs migrating from the host on which the eggs were laid to feed on another host and returning to the first for oviposition. These cases have been discussed in the life histories of the separate species, and may be illustrated without further discussion by referring to *Ceresa taurina*, which lays eggs on apple but feeds on aster, and to *Ceresa bubalus*, which lays eggs on elm but feeds on sweet clover.

The literature referring to hosts adopted by Membracidae is not extensive and is widely scattered. The most important contribution to the subject was made by Goding (1893 a) in a published list of food plants of the family; Miss Branch (1913:113-114) has published a list of the host plants on which the Kansas forms have been taken; Van Duzee (1908 a) mentions the hosts on which a number of species are commonly taken; and various economic papers (Hodgkiss, 1910; Wildermuth, 1915) and life history reports (Matausch, 1910, a and c, and 1912 a; Funkhouser, 1915, b, c, and f) have discussed the hosts of the particular species in question. These publications have, however, been ignored in this study except in so far as the data mentioned have been verified by actual observation as holding true for the Cayuga Lake Basin.

MIGRATIONS

The migration of the Membracidae is apparently very slow both as regards change of locality and change of host plants. So far as local records show there is no reason to believe that any species has changed its habitat to any great extent during the years in which this study has been in progress. The same forms may be found in the same locality year after year while neighboring localities offering the same natural conditions remain unentered. Records for other parts of the State and for the country in general would seem to indicate that this slowness of migration is characteristic of the family.

The same is true in regard to migrations from one plant to another. It often happens that one tree may be literally covered with individuals of a species, while another tree of the same kind, in close proximity to the first, may be unmolested; and these conditions may be noted season after season.

The reasons for such reluctance in seeking new localities and new hosts are not evident. The insects fly well for short distances and should be able without difficulty to spread over a considerable area in a season provided the desired host is abundant thruout the area. This, however, appears not to be the case and probably explains why the Membracidae are not often noted as economic pests.

The migration of the nymph from the hosts on which the eggs are laid to the feeding plant, in cases in which such movement is part of the life history, is regular and definite. The distance covered, however, from the one plant to the other is never great. Usually the nymph merely falls or creeps to the ground and finds a satisfactory food plant under the tree on which it was hatched.

The adults avoid flights of any distance, and if disturbed they generally leave the twig with a quick leap, fly rapidly in a short circle, and return to the plant from which they were driven. Even in a series of trees close together, all of the same kind and all inhabited by membracids of the same species, it is unusual to see the insect fly from one tree to another.

The greatest amount of movement noted in the field is found in fields of sweet clover or alfalfa, in which the insects may fly erratically about when disturbed.

HABITS

The Membracidae are sun-loving insects and are found oftenest on plants growing in open fields, along roadsides, and at the edges of timber. They are seldom seen in shady woods. In practically all cases they seem to prefer the younger plants; the tree-inhabiting species are most likely to be found on saplings, or, if on older trees, on the youngest twigs. Most forms stay close to the ground, and even those species that live on trees of considerable size are usually on branches not over twenty feet from the ground.

The adults have the interesting habit of ranging themselves in rows on the branches (Plate XLI, 1), often thirty or forty individuals placing themselves so close together that their bodies almost touch one another and remaining in this position for hours at a time. In the large majority of cases the adult rests with its head pointing toward the base of the branch, or pointing downward if it is on the trunk. By actual count over nine-tenths of the individuals noted in a test to establish this fact were found in this position (Plate XLI, 2). Whether this characteristic attitude is assumed in order to increase their resemblance to the thorns, twigs, or irregularities of growth of their host would be a matter of conjecture. The nymphs are usually found tightly flattened in crevices of the bark or pressed closely in the axil of a leaf or the crotch of a twig. In most cases the coloration of the nymphs is such that they are not easily seen when in such positions. The protective resemblance in many cases is strengthened by the presence of the dorsal spines of the immature insect, which carry out leaf and bark outlines to an extent which conduces to a most effective concealment.

Membracids are generally the most active during the warmest parts of the day. Feeding, mating, oviposition, and flight have all been observed oftenest during the hours from eleven o'clock in the morning until four in the afternoon, and more activity is shown on extremely warm days than on cool ones. This may be due to the fact that the bird enemies of the insects are less numerous during the heat of the day, but such an explanation can be advanced only as a theory. In the case of certain species attended by ants it has been thought that the activity of the membracids during the hours mentioned might be due to the activity of the ants at that time. This, however, may be the converse of the true reason, since it may be that the ants are influenced by the membracids, and in either case there is no apparent reason why either insect should show increased activity at definite periods.

When at rest the insect generally chooses the underside of the first- or second-year growth of trees or the upright stem of herbaceous plants. The legs are spread rather widely apart, allowing the abdomen to almost touch the host but keeping the hind legs in a suitable position for springing. This position may be held for long periods of time, often for hours together, tho actual records are not available owing to the fact that the patience of the writer in timing the resting period of an individual has never equaled the pleasure of the insect. Some species have the habit of moving spirally around the twig, the movement being very slow but sufficient to accomplish a complete circuit of the twig in an afternoon. It has been thought that this is done in an attempt to keep in the sunlight as the sun moves across the sky, but this again is merely a conjecture.

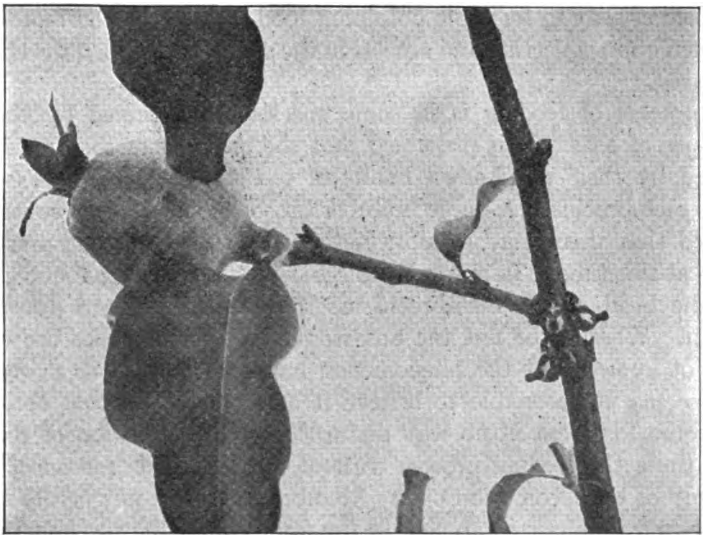
If approached, the insect usually moves around to the opposite side of the twig or stem and makes no attempt to fly except as a last resort in escaping. A slowly approaching object is not readily noticed, and the insect may be touched with the finger before it moves if care is taken to make the movement of the hand very slow and deliberate; a sharp, quick movement in the direction of the insect, on the other hand, results in its immediate flight. Few membracids respond quickly to stimuli of light or heat; the light from a mirror or the condensed rays of the sun as projected thru a lens have little effect on the resting insect if no other stimuli are present. Rain causes the membracid to move to the underside of the stem or leaf, but a strong wind merely causes it to cling more tightly to its host without a change of position.

PLATE XLI

1, Resting positions of *Glossonotus crataegi* Fitch
2, Characteristic positions of membracids, close together with heads pointing downward

(Photographs by H. H. Knight)

1



2

Plate XLI

In feeding, the insects display no peculiarities and the process is a leisurely one. The beak of the membracid is well fitted for piercing, being strong and heavy and fitted with bristle-like mandibular and maxillary setae as described in the discussion of the external anatomy. Both nymphs and adults have little difficulty in forcing the beak into the young stems and the petioles of the leaves, the parts of the plants on which they most commonly feed. It is doubtful whether in all cases the labrum or the labium actually enters the tissue, since it seems possible for the insect to make a sufficient puncture with the setae alone. A few species, notably *Entylia bactriana*, *Enchenopa binotata*, and *Atymna castaneae*, have been observed feeding on the blades of leaves, but this is unusual. Feeding may be observed at almost any hour of the day, depending on the species observed, but the most favored time appears to be the middle of the afternoon. Very little energy is displayed in the feeding movements. The insects remain in one spot for a long time, seeming to find an inexhaustible supply of sap at each insertion of the mouth parts, and they show little disposition to seek new feeding places. So deeply and firmly is the beak sometimes buried in the tissue of the host, and so absorbed do the insects appear to be while obtaining food, that often the mouth parts are broken off in collecting and are left in the stem or leaf when the specimen is captured.

The process of feeding is in some species accompanied by the close attendance of ants. It is presumed that the presence of the ants is to be explained by their well-known habits of seeking the honeydew secreted by the membracids. A large number of observations, however, have suggested that there may possibly be another reason for the presence of the ants at this time. In many instances the ants have been found grouped about the head of the membracid, as tho sharing the sap drawn from the stem. Whether or not the ant would be able to make use of such sap is not known, but the phenomenon has been noticed so many times that it seems unreasonable to believe it accidental. Be that as it may, the membracids seem in no way disturbed by the attention of the ants, and continue the feeding process without noticing their presence.

A study of the locomotion of the Membracidae does not justify the use of the term *tree hopper* as applied to the family. Of the three methods of locomotion — flying, walking, and jumping — the last is certainly the least used. The structure of the wings and of the legs has been discussed in previous paragraphs of this study, so that here only the general methods of locomotion need to be mentioned.

The insects fly well for short distances, with a sharp, whirring flight which in most cases is too rapid and too erratic to be followed by the eye. The flights, however, are seldom sustained for any great distance. The longest measured flight of any of the local species was made by a female of *Telamona unicolor*, which flew fifty yards from one tree to another in a rather irregular course, swinging for several feet from one side to the other of a straight line in the flight. Specimens of *Atymna castaneae* have been taken about electric lights, and it is evident that this species has the power of remaining on the wing for some little time. Since the membracids have large, powerful, well-developed wings, there seems to be no reason why they should not be capable of long, sustained flight unless they are handicapped by the weight and size of the over-developed pronotum. Buckton (1903:207) has called attention to the fact that the Membracidae, in spite of their abnormal pronotal structures, seem to have no difficulty in locomotion, and states on the authority of Mickeljohn that even the species *Bocydium globulare*, which is one of the most bizarre of the tropical forms, " flitted from one shrub to another without difficulty or apparent laboured flight." The fact remains, however, that even the local forms, which are far less embarrassed by grotesque appendages than are the exotic species, are unable to handle themselves in a creditable fashion tho the mechanism and development of their wings are excellent. It seems very reasonable to conclude, therefore, that the shape, size, and weight of the enormous pronotum proves more of a handicap to the insects than has been supposed. Certainly the Membracidae are far inferior to the closely related families Cicadidae, Fulgoridae, Jassidae, and Cercopidae in the matter of flight.

In the matter of jumping, the Membracidae seem to use this method of locomotion only when leaving the twig for flight. The insect leaves its support with a quick snap, which is apparently accomplished by means of the powerful hind legs tho the movement is entirely too rapid to be diagnosed by observation. The spring from the support on which the insect has rested seems to carry it for some little distance before the wings are spread. There is, however, no true leaping, or hopping, from twig to twig or from leaf to leaf in any species that has been studied in the field.

The commonest method of locomotion is merely walking about over the host. In this process all three pairs of legs seem to be equally functional. The movement is generally slow and deliberate, but when disturbed the insect is able to scramble rapidly around the twig in a rather awkward and amusing fashion. Both nymphs and adults adopt this method as the ordinary means of progress. The nymphs, of course, are unable to fly and in no case has a nymph been seen to attempt anything resembling a leap.

At this point in the discussion of habits it may be well to mention the subject of care of the young, or maternal affection, which has been given rather general circulation in connection with the Membracidae. The theory apparently originated in a report by Miss Murtfeldt (1887) which has been given wide credence and has often been quoted (for example, by Kirkaldy, 1906). Miss Murtfeldt describes the finding of an egg cluster of *Entylia sinuata*, with a female on the leaf, and expresses surprise that the insect did not fly away when touched but remained on the leaf while the latter was carried to the house and later after the eggs had hatched. The significant statement is made, however, regarding the female insect that " although I would not assert that she made any demonstrations of affection, she certainly seemed to enjoy having them [the nymphs] around her." This appears to be the total evidence for belief in the maternal solicitude which is attributed to the Membracidae. The truth is that the species in question is one of the most sluggish of all the membracids, and the most persistent in clinging to the host plant. The writer has often carried a thistle covered with Entylias for several miles along a country road without dislodging the specimens. Moreover, when an attempt is made to take the insect from the leaf, the insect not only does not spring off, but actually seems to cling more tightly to the hairy surface of the leaf to escape being captured. The experience of Miss Murtfeldt is therefore not unusual, nor is the behavior of the membracid in the case at all unnatural, and it is unlikely that the theory of maternal affection as based on her report can be proved. Efforts to substantiate such a theory by observation of local forms have yielded no evidence in its favor. Many forms have the habit of clinging closely to their host plant if disturbed, and this is true whether or not there are eggs or nymphs on the plant with them.

ATTENDANCE BY ANTS

The attendance by ants on various species of Membracidae has often been recorded. Interesting notes have been published on this subject by Belt (1874), Mrs. Rice (1893), Green (1900), Baer (1903), Buckton (1903:262), Poulton (1903), Miss Branch (1913:84), and Lamborn (1914), and attention has been called to the fact by many other authors.

The mutual relationship between these two kinds of insects offers a most interesting field for study and opportunities for delightful and fascinating observations of the insects in their natural habitat. The fact that there are a large number of unsolved problems in connection with this subject makes such study profitable as well as pleasurable, and it is hoped that some of the questions here left unanswered may suggest to students of the family the necessity for further work.

One of the first of these questions is suggested by the fact that some of the species are attended by ants while others are unattended altho there are apparently no physiological or anatomical differences to cause the distinction. Another question arises from the fact that certain species attended locally have never been reported as being attended in other parts of the country, while on the other hand some of the species that are never attended in this basin are always attended in other localities. Again, certain species that the ants ignore in this basin are represented by closely related species in other regions and these exotic forms — often of the same genus and very near systematically — are well attended.

The local species that seem to be always attended by ants are the following: *Thelia bimaculata*, *Telamona ampelopsidis*, *Telamona unicolor*, *Cyrtolobus vau*, *Atymna castaneae*, *Ophiderma pubescens*, *Vanduzea arquata*, *Entylia bactriana*, and *Publilia concava*. It is interesting to note that this list does not include any of the species of the very common genus Ceresa, altho no difference can be detected in the physiology of the forms of this genus as compared with those mentioned, and the nymphs, at least, appear to exude the characteristic anal fluid when disturbed.

The very abundant species *Enchenopa binotata* is not attended by ants locally and there seems to be no record in literature of such attendance. The nymphs of this species show the same extended anal tube as do the nymphs of those species that secrete the fluid which attracts the ants, and they appear in numbers sufficiently large to be easily discovered by the latter if there were any occasion for this mutual relationship. Moreover

PLATE XLII

1, **Characteristic positions of *Glossonotus crataegi* Fitch on stem and branch**
2, **Ants attending *Publilia concava* Say**

(Photographs by H. H. Knight)

1

2

PLATE XLII

Baer (1903:306) has described the closely related species *Enchenopa ferruginea* Walk. as being attended by ants, and he has observed this species giving off honeydew.

Nymphs of *Stictocephala inermis* have occasionally been seen attended, but the attendance may have been accidental since the insects have never been seen to give off the anal fluid. Careful studies of other species of this genus in other parts of the United States (cf. Wildermuth, 1915) have failed to record any such phenomena.

Records in literature of *Telamona ampelopsidis* give no mention of the presence of ants, but locally the nymphs of the species, at least, are attended.

The species of ants concerned in the process seem to be common to all the Membracidae. Where two species of Membracidae are abundant on a host at one time, the same kinds of ants may be found attending both species, but the same individual ant has never been observed to go from one species to the other in collecting the secretion. The local species of ants that attend the Membracidae have been determined by Professor W. M. Wheeler as follows: *Formica obscuriventris* Mayr., *Formica exsictoides* Foril, *Camponotus pennsylvanicus* DeGeer, *Crematogaster lineclata* Say, and *Prenolepis imparis* Say. Only those species are recorded that have actually been observed taking the secretion from the membracid. It is possible, therefore, that the list does not include all the ants which take part in the performance, but that other species may be added by future observations. Miss Branch (1913:81) reports *Formica fusca* and *Prenolepis imparis* as being attendant upon *Entylia sinuata*, and Mrs. Rice (1893) describes the same species of membracid as being attended by ants but neglects to mention the species of ants observed. Ball (1915) likewise records ants in attendance upon *Vanduzea vestita* Godg., but does not give the species. In fact, in very few of the cases in which this subject has been mentioned in literature in this country has the determination of the ant concerned been made and reported, altho records giving these data for exotic Membracidae are numerous. In the records available it would appear that the species of Formica are oftenest noted as attending Membracidae. Professor Wheeler, in determining ants taken with South African membracids collected by David Gunn, has written (in correspondence) as follows: "These ants [*Plagiolepsis custodiens* F. Smith] represent in South Africa our species of Formica and Lasiis and probably derive much of their food from membracids and coccids."

The behavior of both the ants and the membracids is much the same in all the cases studied. The ants stroke their charges with their antennae, whereupon the membracids give off from the anal tube a liquid that issues in bubbles in considerable quantity. The anal tube of the membracid is capable of great evagination, especially in the nymphs, in which it is long and cylindrical and usually tipped with a fringe of fine hairs. The honeydew is eagerly taken from the end of this tube by the ants. In many species the adults as well as the nymphs are sought, and the ants seem to be as attentive to one as to the other but the adults have not been observed to excrete the liquid to the same extent as the nymphs. In general the mutual relationship in the family seems to be much the same as that found between the ants and the aphids. That the ants are well repaid for their attendance can hardly be doubted when their industry around the congregations of Membracidae is noted. In many cases the hiding places of the membracid nymphs are at once betrayed by the swarms of ants present. It is not believed that the ants herd or segregate their charges as in the case of certain insects of the Aphididae, but shelters for membracid nymphs are not uncommon.

The advantage to the membracid is evident by the protection given by the ants, which do not hesitate to bite viciously the fingers of the collector who seeks to remove nymphs or adults from the host. The ants have been observed also to attack spiders and attempt to drive away Reduviidae in the neighborhood of membracid colonies.

It has been suggested in a preceding paragraph that in some cases the ants may take advantage of the punctures made by the membracids to procure sap. The best evidence of this is the fact that ants often remain gathered about the spot where the membracid has fed after the latter has moved away, and apparently they find something there to attract them. This may be explained, of course, by the theory that anal fluid from the membracid has been left on the plant, but it does not account for the fact that the ants are often at the anterior rather than the posterior end of the insect.

The part played by ants in other activities of the Membracidae is a mooted question. Miss Branch (1913:84–85) believes that the attendance of ants is necessary to the molting process in *Entylia sinuata*, and states:

"In my experiments indoors, without the presence of ants, the forms seemed unable to moult successfully and died before reaching maturity. This fact leads me to believe that the ants are necessary factors in the life of an individual membracid." Mrs. Rice (1893) reports that nymphs of the same species reach maturity in two weeks from the date of hatching if ants are present, and in one week if they are undisturbed by ants.

Experiments made in the course of this study give no support to such theories. Membracids of many species have been reared in the field and in the insectary with and without ants, and no difference has been noted in length of the instars or success of the molting process. The species studied by the authors named above, *Entylia sinuata*, is not available locally; but a very closely related species, *Entylia bactriana*, has been reared both in the field under netting and in the laboratory, in each case without the presence of ants, with no noticeable effect on the process of molting.

The feeding habits, likewise, of the Membracidae seem in no way affected by the presence of ants, which often swarm over them in large numbers while feeding is in progress. Both nymphs and adults are apparently oblivious of the presence of their hymenopterous companions, and continue their usual activities with equal serenity whether ants are present or absent.

The liquid sought by the ants has been much discussed in connection with the Aphididae and the Coccidae, and seems in no way different in the Membracidae. It is colorless and transparent, rather heavy, and somewhat sticky. When first exuded it is inclined to be frothy, due no doubt to bubbles of air which emerge with it, but it quickly clears on settling. It is practically tasteless even in comparatively large quantities, and many attempts to distinguish a sweet taste have proved unsuccessful. The term *honeydew*, therefore, commonly applied to the fluid, is hardly a descriptive one. It is very likely, of course, that the liquid may contain sugars not detected by the human tongue, and this would seem to be indicated by the fact that fermentation appears to begin if the substance is left exposed. No chemical analysis of honeydew has been made by the writer.

COMMUNAL LIFE

Some species of Membracidae are decidedly gregarious in habit, and congregate not only as individuals of the same species but also with other species. This depends largely, but not altogether, on the host plant.

Thelia bimaculata and *Vanduzea arquata* are usually found together on locust; the individuals are inclined to crowd in dense groups, often with the bodies touching and in some cases even one upon another, specimens of both species being in close harmony. Each of these species shows the same gregarious habits when the other is not present. *Enchenopa binotata* found on the same host is prone to cluster together as individuals, but not to such a noticeable extent as the two other species, and they are seldom found living with other Membracidae. Most of the species of Ceresa, particularly *Ceresa diceros,* show the same habits; the adults are found in rows or groups on the stems and the nymphs are usually grouped. These species, however, seldom congregate with other forms of the family. In the same manner the Telamonas live together as individuals of a species but seldom as species of a genus or with other genera. *Entylia bactriana* and *Publilia concava* are decidedly gregarious and are found in dense clusters on their respective hosts. The two species have not been found living together, however, and this fact is additional evidence toward the proof that the forms are not so close together taxonomically as has been supposed. *Micrutalis calva,* while rare in this basin, has been reported as living the same communal life (Matausch, 1912 b), while most species of Stictocephala, Platycotis, and Vanduzea in this country are known to have like habits.

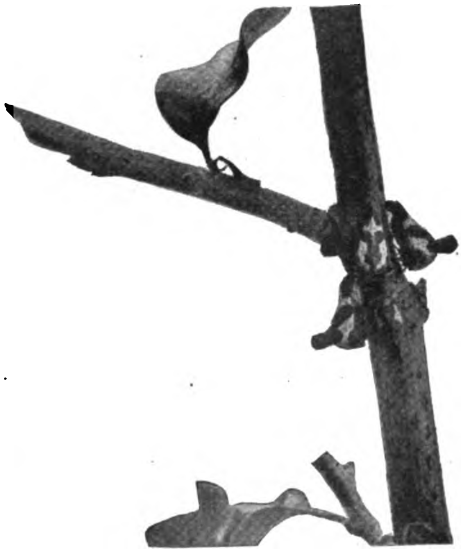
By this communal life is not meant any sort of division of labor, as is usually understood by the term as applied to certain Hymenoptera, but simply the habit of living together in colonies, the nymphs and the adults congregating in clusters or groups while feeding or resting (Plate XLIII, 1). So far as is known these habits have no significance beyond the mere indication of gregariousness. No actions have been observed which would tend to show that the individuals were mutually beneficial to one another in any way or that the community life affected in any manner the usual life history of the individual. It is interesting to note, however, that most of the species which lead such lives are attended by ants. It is easy to imagine that insects living in colonies may be more easily located by the ants than solitary species, but it is not believed that the ants have anything to do with the keeping of the individuals of the colony together.

It may be noted, also, that the individuals of certain species, such as *Ceresa bubalus,* live together as nymphs but separately as adults; this is no more than the natural result of the hatching of an egg mass and the subsequent scattering of the members. Other species are solitary and do

Plate XLIII

1, Gregarious habits of *Glossonotus crataegi* Fitch
2, *Ceresa bubalus* Fabricius in position for leaping

(Photographs by H. H. Knight)



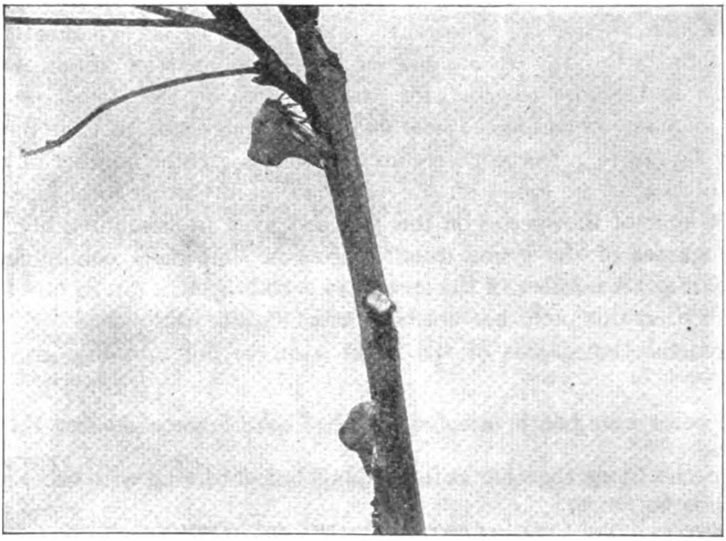
1

2

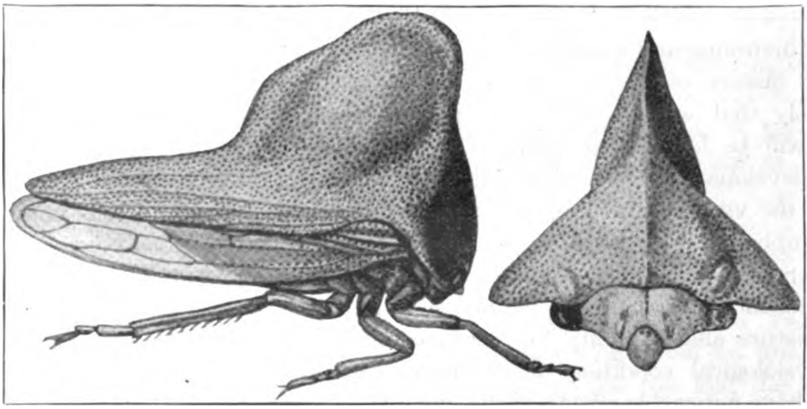
Plate XLIII

PLATE XLIV

1, *Telamona unicolor* Fitch
2, *Telamona collina* Walker



1



2

Plate XLIV

not congregate as individuals nor mingle with other Membracidae. Such species are illustrated by *Campylenchia curvata, Archasia Belfragei, Smilia camelus*, and *Ophiderma pubescens*. This is not to be explained by the host plant or by the attendance or non-attendance of ants. *Archasia Belfragei* and *Smilia camelus*, for example, live on the locust, on which host *Vanduzea arquata* and *Thelia bimaculata* congregate in large numbers. It may be noted in the same connection that a greater number of species of Membracidae are found on the oak than on any other local host plant, and yet none of the species on this tree are given to communal life.

The species of the genus usually agree in showing a communal or a solitary life. A number of the species of certain genera are so rare locally, however, that this point has not been satisfactorily established.

In general the species of the basin seem to fall into five groups, as follows:

1. Species living with other species—*Thelia bimaculata* and *Vanduzea arquata*.
2. Species living together as individuals but not living with other species —*Entylia bactriana*.
3. Species living together as nymphs but not as adults—*Ceresa bubalus*.
4. Species living together as adults but not as nymphs—*Carynota mera*.
5. Species entirely solitary as both nymphs and adults—*Smilia camelus*.

ECOLOGY

Environmental conditions undoubtedly play an important part in the life history of the various species of Membracidae, and it seems very likely that when a sufficient amount of experimental data is available it will be found that many of the seeming irregularities in the periods of development which have been noted for the local forms may be explained by the variation in temperature and moisture to which the eggs and the nymphs are subjected. The experiments and observations made in the course of this study seem to show that seasonal variations in weather conditions, extremes of temperature for both long and short periods, moisture and humidity for the basin and for definite localities, and the physiological condition of the hosts used for oviposition and feeding, all have noticeable effects on the life of the species of this family. Detailed reports of the separate experiments and field records would be more or less alike and would necessitate unnecessary repetition, but type illustrations may be used which it is believed are representative of the main factors in ecology as noted.

For comparison of the results of variation in moisture the summers of 1913 and 1914 may serve as excellent extremes. The summer of 1913 was the occasion of the worst drought that has been experienced in this locality for many years. Vegetation suffered greatly and the United States Weather Bureau reported that all recent records were broken for lack of rainfall at the Ithaca station. The spring of 1914, on the other hand, was marked by unusual precipitation and the early part of the summer was very wet. The dates of hatching of the first eggs of *Vanduzea arquata* for these two seasons, together with the number of broods for the years, may be tabulated as follows:

Vanduzea arquata	1913	1914
Eggs hatched	**May 15**	**April 26**
Second-brood eggs laid	**July 2**	**June 5**
Third-brood eggs laid	**September 16**	**July 18**
Fourth-brood eggs laid	**None**	**September 20**

In the same seasons the variations in the nymphal periods of *Ceresa diceros* were as follows:

Ceresa diceros	1913	1914
First instar	**5– 7 days**	**8–10 days**
Second instar	**5– 8**	**8– 9**
Third instar	**6– 7**	**7– 9**
Fourth instar	**9**	**10–12**
Fifth instar	**12–14**	**14–18**
Total	**37–45 days**	**47–58 days**

From these figures it would appear that the hatching of the eggs and the development of the nymphs are retarded by dry weather and accelerated by abundance of moisture. As a natural result the number of broods is reduced in dry weather. This may be due to the condition of the vegetation during the favorable and unfavorable seasons, and it seems probable that the relationship between the insects and their hosts gives rise to complicated problems. In connection with the subject of moisture conditions it may be recalled that Ball (1915) has reported the fact that in arid regions *Vanduzea vestita* Godg., *Campylenchia curvata* Fabr., and *Publilia modesta* Uhler have the habit of burrowing in the soil around the roots of the host plant as a protection against the sun and the dry air. In the Cayuga Lake Basin, where of course such conditions never prevail, the amount of moisture has no effect on the adult insect so far as has been observed.

It is not likely that excessively wet weather would greatly affect the eggs if temperature conditions were not adverse. The fact that the eggs are usually laid high up on the plants in buds and stems, where water would not remain, would preclude the possibility of their being drowned or injured by soaking.

Variations in temperature seem to have a like effect on the hatching of the eggs and the development of the nymphs. For data showing this variation the years 1914 and 1915 have been chosen as showing the widest extremes of temperature. The spring of 1914, besides being a season of much rainfall as already noted, was also warmer than usual; the same spring months of 1915, on the other hand, and in fact the entire summer of that year, were cold and disagreeable. The Weather Bureau reports show the following records for the months of May, June, July, and August, of 1914 and 1915:

AVERAGE MONTHLY TEMPERATURES

	May	June	July	August
1914	59°	66°	70°	69°
1915	52°	64°	69°	66°

The first records for these seasons, of nymphs and adults for a number of species, have been tabulated as follows:

Species	1914		1915	
	Nymphs	Adults	Nymphs	Adults
Enchenopa binotata	May 5	June 16	May 10	June 23
Ceresa diceros	May 17	July 29	May 20	August 2
Ceresa bubalus	May 12	July 2	May 10	June 30
Thelia bimaculata	June 1	July 6	June 3	July 10
Telamona ampelopsidis	June 2	July 10	June 2	July 14
Telamona unicolor	May 18	June 28	May 21	July 1
Cyrtolobus vau	May 29	July 13	June 4	July 20
Atymna castaneae	May 19	July 7	June 10	July 12
Ophiderma pubescens	June 4	August 1	May 28	July 25
Vanduzea arquata	April 26	May 16	May 2	June 1
Entylia bactriana	June 20	August 4	June 20	August 13

These figures show that only two species, *Ceresa bubalus* and *Ophiderma pubescens*, appeared earlier in 1915 than in 1914. Two others, *Telamona ampelopsidis* and *Entylia bactriana*, appeared on the same dates in both years, but each required a longer period for development in the colder season than in the warmer. The evidence is thus fairly conclusive that cold as well as dry weather is detrimental to the hatching of eggs.

Like results were obtained in the study of the length of nymphal instars. The record for *Thelia bimaculata* for 1914 and 1915 was as follows:

Thelia bimaculata	1914	1915
First instar	6– 7 days	6– 7 days
Second instar	5	6
Third instar	6	6
Fourth instar	6– 7	7
Fifth instar	7–12	9–16
Total	30–37 days	34–42 days

Since the year 1914 offered favorable conditions in moisture as well as in temperature, it is likely that the results obtained for that year were influenced by both conditions and it is of course impossible to determine the part played by moisture and temperature separately. The nearest approach to such a determination seems to be the comparison with records for some year in which normal conditions prevailed, which may be used as a check. The year that most nearly approached such conditions during the period embraced by this study was 1912. The average annual temperature for the basin, computed for a period of forty-one years since 1876,[6] has been found to be 47.2° F.; the average temperature for 1912 was 46°. The average annual precipitation for the same period was 33.44 inches; for 1912 the precipitation was 32.95 inches. Taking the year 1912 as a check, the field records show that the dates of first collection of the nymphs of the various species mentioned are very regularly between those of 1914 and 1915, while the length of the five instars of *Thelia bimaculata* averaged, respectively, 6, 5, 6, 6, and 12 days.

Variations in temperature seem to have little effect on the adults except that they appear more active in warm weather and remain later in the fall when the months of September, October, and November are warm. Many species have been collected in the field some time after the first few snows have fallen (Funkhouser, 1915 b:142 and 1915 f:185), and a number of forms may regularly be taken late in November even when the autumn has been cold.

---

[6] Monthly and annual meteorological summary and comparative data of Ithaca, N. Y. Weather Bureau Office, Ithaca, New York. December 31, 1916.

The condition of the host plant is believed to have an influence on the life history of the membracid, but in most cases the conditions concerned have been of a general rather than of a specific nature. As a whole the Membracidae seem to prefer young plants to old ones, and favor twigs and stems not over two years of age. Saplings are more likely than old trees to harbor the insects, and the young shoots and buds of annuals rather than the main trunk. Often water sprouts at the base of a tree are covered with membracids while the tree itself is hardly molested; this has been noticed particularly in the cases of *Atymna castanea* and *Ceresa borealis*. Other observations made on this subject may be entirely accidental but should perhaps be mentioned. It has been noticed that oaks severely infected with galls were seldom chosen by Membracidae; that shrubs and vines on which aphids were numerous likewise were free from the insects of this family; but that, peculiarly enough, heads of goldenrod which were stunted or "stung" were most likely to have colonies of *Publilia concava* on them. In the last-named case it was thought that the membracids themselves might be responsible for the condition of the host, but there is no evidence to show that this is the case. Mr. Knight reports that in Batavia, where the species is common, he has noted the same tendency.

From the preceding field data it seems logical to conclude that moisture and warmth hasten the development of eggs and nymphs while opposite conditions retard such development. Collecting has shown that in general more membracids are taken on warm days than on cool days, and that the insects are more active during the hottest days of the season. It has already been noted that the Membracidae prefer sunny spots, open growth of foliage, and positions close to the ground.

It is evident, however, that the factors entering into the problems of ecology are so complex that no results can be accepted as proved unless all other factors than the one concerned have been eliminated, and this would be possible only by an elaborate series of studies extending over a great number of years. Naturally any influence that hastens or retards the hatching of eggs or the development of nymphs would advance or delay the dates for mating and oviposition. The variation in these dates would of course affect the number of broods per season, and a variation in number of broods might in turn change all the dates for the following year. Thus the various phenomena in the life history of the insect are so closely bound together that the change of one condition may result in the upsetting of the entire structure of hypotheses in which this condition entered as a factor. It is not unreasonable to suppose that all the conditions that have been discussed, as well as many others on which no data have been obtained — such as sap conditions in the food plants, pathologic conditions in the insects themselves, and the like — enter into this complex ecology of which the foregoing can be considered as offering only the roughest suggestions.

ENEMIES

The Membracidae seem to have but few natural enemies and against these enemies the insects have a number of valuable methods of protection. The field notes show surprisingly few cases in which membracids have actually been seen taken by other animals or killed by natural foes.

PARASITES

Parasites are found on both eggs and adults. The egg parasites are common on the eggs of most species of the genera Ceresa, Stictocephala, Telamona, and Vanduzea. These in most cases are Chalcididae and only a few have been determined. A detailed study of this egg parasitism which has been made by the writer for an African species, *Oxyrhachis tarandus*, and which is to appear as a separate report, as well as observations on local forms from which the parasites were reared, seems to show that the method is the same in all cases. The parasite deposits its egg in the newly laid eggs of the membracid and passes its larval and pupal stages within the egg. On maturing, the adult hymenopteran emerges by breaking open the cap of the eggshell, which has meanwhile become discolored or blackened. The oviposition of the chalcid has not been observed for any of the local species, but parasitized eggs have been found from which the parasites have been reared. The only parasite thus reared locally has been *Polynema striaticorne* Gir. Miss Murtfeldt (1890) credits an undescribed Polynema with having destroyed membracid eggs in Missouri, and Hodgkiss (1910:91) states on the authority of Girault that the species in question was the same species and that it has been bred from eggs of *Ceresa bubalus* at Geneva. Apparently this is a common and widely distributed hymenopterous parasite of membracid eggs. Jack (1886 b) reports egg parasites from this species of membracid, and Ashmead (1888:107) has described a new species, *Trichogramma ceresarum* Ashm., from the same host. An egg parasite of *Vanduzea arquata* has been recorded (Funkhouser, 1915 f), but has not been reared.

Parasites in nymphs and adults are very common but have never been successfully reared. Larvae that were apparently hymenopterous have been found in the abdomens of insects of various species of Telamona, in *Ceresa borealis, Carynota mera, Cyrtolobus vau,* and *Thelia bimaculata,* but all attempts to bring the parasites to maturity have thus far proved failures. It is now believed that more than one season may be required to complete the life history of the parasites and that previous failures may be due to the fact that sufficient time was not allowed for such development. Matausch (1911) has reported similar parasitism in species of the genera Telamona, Carynota, Thelia, and Glossonotus, which he believes is responsible for the destruction of the sexual organs; but he was equally unsuccessful in rearing a single specimen of any of the parasites, altho he presents an excellent figure of the larvae. Apparently there is some phase of the life history of these parasites which does not lend itself to the usual methods of rearing. Dr. S. I. Kornhauser, of Northwestern University, reports, however, in correspondence, that he has been successful in rearing the parasites of *Thelia bimaculata,* and states that they are Dryinidae of the genus Aphelopus.

A small red mite occasionally appears as an external parasite on *Telamona ampelopsidis* and *Thelia bimaculata,* and Wildermuth (1915:359) reports a similar mite (*Erythraeus* sp.) feeding on the eggs of *Stictocephala festina* in the Southwest.

BIRDS

Very few of the local species are molested by birds. A few species of birds have been observed feeding on the nymphs but usually neglecting the adults, the latter being probably sufficiently protected from bird enemies by the hard pronotum and sharp processes. Various species of adult membracids have been thrown to birds in captivity; in general these have been refused but in a few cases they have been picked up only to be dropped again. Evidently the strong pronotal processes, which are often sharp and hard enough to pierce the skin if the insect is seized suddenly, are unpalatable and irritating. The only birds that have been actually observed eating membracids, with the species and form indicated, are as follows:

Bird	Nymph	Adult
Chipping sparrow	*Vanduzea arquata*	
Song sparrow	*Entylia bactriana*	*Entylia bactriana*
Catbird	*Telamona unicolor*	
Oriole	*Ceresa taurina*	
Warbler (various species)		*Vanduzea arquata*
Redstart		*Ophiderma pubescens*
Bobolink	*Stictocephala inermis*	
Bluebird	*Telamona ampelopsidis*	
Thrush (various species)	*Atymna castaneae*	*Atymna castaneae* (?)

While this list is sufficiently imposing as it stands, it must be remembered that the instances are in every case single ones and are the only observations obtained during a long period of collecting. The truth is that, so far as the data of the basin show, the birds are of little importance as membracid enemies.

Records from other parts of the country seem to indicate that birds are far more of a factor in this respect than is the case locally. Wildermuth (1915) reports that of thirty-one birds, representing eight different species, ten had from one to four adults of *Stictocephala festina* in their crops; and W. L. McAtee (recorded in correspondence) has taken the rare species *Idioderma virescens* VanD. from the stomach of a nighthawk.

OTHER ENEMIES

One instance has been noted of a toad industriously engaged in trying to take nymphs of *Thelia bimaculata* from the base of the trunk of a locust sapling. The operation seemed to be fraught with some difficulty because of the tenacity with which the membracids held to their host and because of their sheltered position in the cracks of the bark; they would doubtless have escaped unnoticed had it not been for the movements of the large ants running briskly about them. Two cases are recorded of toads feeding on both nymphs and adults of *Entylia bactriana*.

The asilids commonly carry off both nymphs and adults. This has been noted particularly in the cases of *Atymna castaneae*, *Carynota mera*, *Thelia bimaculata*, *Vanduzea arquata*, and *Telamona unicolor*. In only one case, however, was it possible to capture the asilid, in which instance it proved to be *Erax bastardii* Macq. There is no question that several species of this fly prey on Membracidae.

Spiders often capture membracids both in their webs and on twigs. An undetermined species of spider has been observed to seize adult specimens of *Vanduzea arquata* on the limb of a tree and spin a web around the body until the insect was inclosed in a cocoon-like mass, after which it was carried away; in these instances the membracids did not appear to have been bitten by the spider, at least not to such an extent as to cause paralysis, for the legs could be seen moving and the body struggling after incasement in the web — the hard pronotum probably serving here again as an excellent protection. Many cases are recorded in the field notes of spiders carrying away membracids, of membracids caught in the webs, and of their empty skeletons found in the spiders' retreats. Most of the common species of Membracidae are so listed but opportunity has not offered for the determination of the spiders concerned. Professor R. W. Harned, of Mississippi Agricultural College, has sent the writer a spider which he captured at Lake View, Mississippi, eating a specimen of *Vanduzea arquata*; this has been determined by Miss Anna Stryke as *Marxia* (*Plectana*) *stellata* var. *nobilis*.

One instance has been noted of a mantis (*Paratenodera sinensis* Sauss.) feeding on a nymph of *Vanduzea arquata*, and two cases of the same insect capturing adults of *Atymna castaneae*.

Assassin bugs (*Reduvius* sp.) have often been observed in the vicinity of colonies of Membracidae, but no actual instances have been recorded of their attacking such colonies.

PROTECTION

Considering the small number of their enemies, the Membracidae are remarkably well protected and their methods of protection are unusually varied.

The shapes and colors of both nymphs and adults of most species tend toward very effective concealment. Browns, greens, and grays in neutral tones predominate in the color scheme of the family, and these tones blend with those of the leaves and bark of the host plants to an extent which offers excellent protection. The shapes, even of the local forms which are of course far less bizarre than the grotesque exotic species, are of an interesting variety and present opportunities for a wide range of surmises. It has been noted in the discussion of the pronotal anatomy (page 1050) that many explanations have been offered for the unusual structures shown in the exoskeleton of this family, and that the theories both of natural selection and of orthogenesis may be well illustrated by certain forms of Membracidae. An elaboration of this subject would be out of place in a study limited to the forms of the Cayuga Lake Basin, since for an appreciation of the subject the entire family must be taken into consideration. Nevertheless it may be pertinent to call attention to a few of the local species which offer rather peculiar features apparently adapted for imitation or protection.

It has been remarked that the nymphs of *Thelia bimaculata* and *Vanduzea arquata* are almost indistinguishable when at rest in cracks of bark. This is due not only to their color but also to the dorsal protuberances, which closely resemble the irregularities of the plant. An even more striking instance is offered by the nymphs of *Enchenopa binotata*, the dorsal spines of which are wonderfully like the tiny unfolding leaves of the locust which are contemporary with them, even the light green color being common to both. In the mature insect the adult of *Thelia bimaculata* shows a pronotal projection which is easily mistaken for the thorns of the host plant, and in the adult of *Enchenopa binotata* the pronotal horn in the same manner imitates the spines and stipules of the locust. This certainly seems to be an adaptation which may be accounted for by natural selection. Poulton (1903:277) has called attention to the fact that it is hard to deny the theory of protective resemblance when the same object is accomplished by both the nymph and the adult but in different ways. In the case of the local forms mentioned above, the nymph imitates the uncurling leaf or the irregular bark by spines on both thorax and abdomen — chiefly the latter — while the adult imitates an entirely different part of the plant by the development of an entirely different part of the body. On the other hand, some of the commonest of the local species of Membracidae in no respect seem to resemble any part of the host on which they live, altho their shapes are decidedly peculiar. The high dorsal crest of the Telamonas, for example, can only by a stretch of the imagination be made to resemble any peculiarity of the oak twig on which the insects rest, and in fact they are very conspicuous on their host. Likewise the Ceresas, perhaps the most widely distributed genus in the basin, are plainly seen when in their natural surroundings, and the two prominent suprahumeral horns do not in the least resemble plant structures with which the insects are associated. The answer of the natural selectionist might be that at some previous time such adaptation had held, and this of course is unanswerable since we have no way of knowing what host plants may have been the home of the insects in bygone periods; but it is interesting to note that the genera Ceresa and Telamona, which now show little protective resemblance to parts of their hosts, are more numerous and apparently maintain an existence with greater ease than do those species that show very excellent protective resemblances.

It is unnecessary to take up separately each of the local forms in this respect. For each it is possible to suggest an explanation, reasonable or otherwise according to the degree of imagination possessed. But in general it must be said for the local forms, as for the family as a whole, that such speculation merely lies in the realm of conjecture.

The habits of the Membracidae afford a protection by no means unimportant. The fact that they remain motionless for hours at a time, pressed tightly into the axil of a leaf or the crotch of a twig, may explain their escape from many enemies. Their habit also of remaining quiet during that part of the day in which the birds are alert, and confining their activities to the hottest parts of the day when other animals are inclined to be at rest, has been suggested as tending toward their protection. The habits of both nymphs and adults of creeping around to the other side of a branch when approached is no doubt purely protective.

A most valuable and effective method of protection is the insect's quick flight when disturbed. The sharp spring from the twig followed by the erratic course thru the air is decidedly deceiving to the eye and is doubtless an efficient defense against the attack of any but the most active and keen-eyed enemies. In fact no enemy has been observed to capture a membracid while the latter was on the wing.

Finally, the hard pronotum and sharp spines of the thorax are doubtless sufficient protection against most foes. Very little of the soft parts of the membracid's body is exposed, and the tough, often hairy prothorax may be presumed to be far from tempting as a morsel of food. Moreover the sharp, hard spines which in many species project in many directions may deter the captor from swallowing the membracid even if captured. It should be remembered that besides the frontal horns possessed by many membracids, and the rough humeral angles possessed by most, the posterior process usually projects in a very sharp spine and is in some cases capable of inflicting a wound of no mean proportions.

Thus the shape, color, habits, ability to hide, power of flight, and skeletal armor are all to be included in the list of methods of protection — a list sufficiently long and varied to give satisfactory results.

ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE

As a family, the Membracidae are not to be considered as of great economic importance in the Cayuga Lake Basin. Even the three or four species that have been credited with destructiveness in other parts of the country and that are here represented are of no particular importance locally so far as damage to host plants is concerned.

The manner in which membracids have been known to cause damage is limited to two habits, feeding and oviposition. Of these the latter is the more harmful.

So far as feeding is concerned there is little evidence that Membracidae cause any injury to the host, either locally or otherwise. The quantity of sap consumed by the insects is negligible, and the wounds made by the incisions of their beaks are neither large enough to destroy tissue nor extensive enough to offer opportunity for infection. In fact such incisions cannot usually be found even with a microscope a few hours after the process. Trees that are literally covered with Membracidae seem in no way less healthy than those on which no insects are present. Careful examination of trees in the field show absolutely no indication of injury from feeding habits.

The egg-laying process may be more destructive, but even this process is of no local concern. In most cases the slit made by the ovipositor is clean and sharp and very superficial, seldom extending to the cambium and usually healing at once without a scar. The phloem tissue if injured is not so extensively damaged as to interfere with its function, and the injured part, in dicotyledons at least, would usually slough off naturally within the first or the second season. The ovipositor in most of the species is neither long nor powerful, and in those forms in which the eggs are laid in the stems of trees — which include the larger number of species — the organ either does not reach to the xylem or, reaching it, is not able to penetrate the harder wood and slips to one side, leaving the eggs between the wood and the bark. In the cases in which the eggs are laid in buds, the part of the bud chosen is usually the outer scales, which are not thereby prevented from performing their functions as protective organs and are of little importance in the later development of the plant.

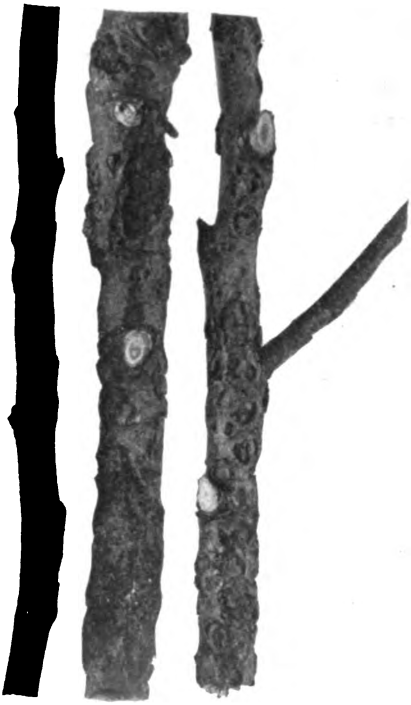


FIG. 43. TWIGS INJURED BY OVIPOSITION OF CERESA BUBALUS
Photograph by H. H. Knight

A few exceptions to these general conclusions may be noted. The species which has attracted the most attention from an economic standpoint and which is oftenest mentioned in literature as destructive to trees, is *Ceresa bubalus*. This species is peculiar in that it lays its eggs in curving, nearly parallel rows, in such a fashion that a definite area is cut out of the bark, which fails to heal and leaves a conspicuous line of scars (fig. 43). These scars persist for several years and are occasionally infected with fungi and offer an entrance for other insects. The first record of such injury seems to have been made by Marlatt (1887), and is followed by a detailed account, with excellent figures, by the same author (1894). Since that time a long series of references to the scars, particularly on apple trees, has appeared. Hodgkiss (1910) worked out the life history of the species on apple and pear, and credits it with doing considerable damage to the twigs (page 97 of reference cited). The species is very abundant in orchards in the vicinity of Ithaca, particularly in Hook's orchard on

West Hill and in Gilkey's orchard near by. An examination of the trees in these orchards shows plenty of the characteristic scars, but no cases have been found in which the trees seem to be seriously affected beyond the unsightly appearance of the twigs. Only one case of infection has been found. The species is very abundant locally also on young elms, on which the same unsightly wounds may be found. Here again, however, the trees seem in no way weakened by the presence of the insect.

Ceresa borealis likewise makes deep wounds which leave ugly scars on the twigs. This species is found on a large number of hosts and the scars are so characteristic that they are easily recognized. As in the case of *Ceresa bubalus,* attempts to show serious injury to the plants by this species have yielded little result.

It must be admitted that if such punctures are made in very young twigs or in the soft stems of annuals, especially if made close enough together to girdle the stems, the results will be very serious. This has been shown to be the habit of *Stictocephala festina* in the South (Wildermuth, 1915:357), and is known to be true of certain other southern and western forms (Jack, 1886 b, and Osborn, 1911). In this basin, however, there are so few forms which have this habit that the amount of injury is of no importance.

A far more serious type of injury is done by those species that lay their eggs in the buds, particularly if the buds happen to be small ones in which the internal tissues can be reached. *Ceresa taurina* and *Stictocephala inermis* both deposit their eggs in the buds of fruit trees. In most cases the buds chosen are large terminal buds and the eggs are so lightly inserted that they may be seen projecting on the outside of the buds. In these cases very little damage can result. In a few instances, however, the buds chosen have been so small and the eggs so deeply inserted that the buds have been deformed. In the case of a fruit bud this would of course result in economic loss, but the chances are so largely in favor of the choice of large buds, or of leaf buds which can be replaced without serious results, that the relative injury done is small.

The most serious damage to buds has been observed in the case of *Enchenopa binotata* on butternut (Funkhouser, 1915 c). Here the buds are not large, and the eggs are inserted so deeply and in such large numbers that the buds are occasionally entirely destroyed. The same insect has been reported as doing serious damage to other plants in various parts of the country (Fitch, 1851; Riley, 1880; Comstock, 1888; Packard, 1890; Saunders, 1904:242–243), and may probably be considered as the most important of the local Membracidae so far as injurious habits are concerned.

On the whole it is believed that the importance of the Membracidae as injurious insects has been exaggerated. The fact that many species of the family are very abundant locally and very little injury to hosts can be attributed to their activities, would seem to indicate that in this basin their economic importance may be discounted. This may of course be due to the fact that the combination of favorable crop and injurious species is not represented in the basin and does not discredit the reports from other localities.

CONTROL

Because of the fact that the Membracidae have not been considered as a pest in the basin, no control measures have been tried. With our present knowledge of the family, however, a number of methods suggest themselves as efficacious in case the insects should become destructive.

Since most of the species that might prove harmful are dependent on succulent weeds for nourishment during the nymphal stages, the removal of such weeds from the vicinity of the host infected would destroy the food plants necessary for their development.

The egg masses of the species concerned are easily located and the scars are sufficiently characteristic to insure instant recognition. Such egg masses are usually found on comparatively young stems, and could be removed by intelligent pruning and then destroyed.

The nymphs of all species are very soft-bodied and habitually rest in the crotches of twigs and the axils of leaves, where they could be easily reached by contact sprays. Liquid sprays of the miscible oil or nicotine type would run down the twigs and collect in such places, even if applied in a very careless and superficial manner to the tree.

Very few if any of the forms of the Homoptera are so poorly adapted by habits and like factors to resist the ordinary control measures of the entomologist, as are the tree-inhabiting species of the Membracidae, and it seems hardly likely that in orchards or forests in which the simplest kind of preventive work is done they will ever become a serious pest.

On small crops the problem would be more complex, since the use of contact sprays might not be advisable and the egg masses not easily taken. Even in such cases, however, the insects would doubtless depend on other hosts in which to lay the winter eggs, and if such hosts were not available they would probably not be able to winter over. In such cases, also, the membracids would probably yield as readily to the various types of hopperdozers as do most of the other grass- and grain-inhabiting insects.

The suggestions, then, for the control of the species of this family if they should become numerous enough and destructive enough to be considered as pests, would be, first, clean cultivation. In this work particular attention should be paid to leguminous weeds, such as sweet clover and alfalfa, in fence corners and around orchards. Secondly, careful pruning should destroy most of the egg masses. Thirdly, the use of contact sprays should kill the insects in the nymphal stages.

It is admitted that in the course of this study the main idea has been to preserve the membracids of the basin rather than to destroy them, and the above suggestions are entirely theoretical.

BREEDING EXPERIMENTS

Breeding experiments have been carried on both in the field and in the insectary.

In the field the most satisfactory method has been to cover an egg mass with fine netting and make regular observations during the period of development, taking such specimens from time to time as were necessary to show each of the instars. The eggs were usually located in the winter or early in the spring, and a large piece of the branch or twig was covered with netting — generally bolting cloth, but in some cases cheesecloth — in such a fashion as to prevent the escape of any of the insects and at the same time allow them a wide range of movement in their natural environment with natural sap conditions. The method had the additional advantage of preventing other insects, and particularly other specimens of membracids from neighboring colonies, from mingling with the brood studied. Practically all the species in the basin whose life histories have been worked out were reared in this manner. From such experiments valuable data have been obtained regarding the variation in nymphal periods of individuals from the same egg mass, as recorded in preceding paragraphs for a number of the species.

In a number of cases the host plants, with egg masses or colonies of nymphs, have been transplanted to the writer's garden for more convenient observation. This has proved very desirable in the case of thistles bearing *Entylia bactriana* and sweet clover infested with nymphs of *Stictocephala inermis* and various species of the genus Ceresa. In such instances only one plant of the host was brought into the garden, and it was not found necessary to cover the plants since with no other food plant in the vicinity the insects showed no inclination to migrate. The same method was used in rearing *Publilia concava*, which is rare in the basin but commonly found in other parts of the State on goldenrod. Small plants of goldenrod were transplanted from fields and roadsides, and on them were placed nymphs sent from Batavia, New York, by H. H. Knight. In this manner all the life history data were obtained with the exception of the oviposition and the first two instars.

In connection with the work on this species experiments were made to determine the validity of the theory that *Publilia concava* and *Entylia bactriana* were synonyms or varieties of the same species. Specimens of Publilia were placed on the thistle alone and with individuals of Entylia; specimens of Entylia were placed on the goldenrod alone and with individuals of Publilia; certain colonies in each case were inclosed, while others were allowed to change hosts at will. Careful observations were made on habits and behavior, especially with reference to mating and to the mingling of the forms. The results of these experiments will be the subject of a special report, but it may be mentioned here that no evidence has been found to show from a biological standpoint that the species are not distinct.

In the majority of cases, colonies inclosed in the field were visited at least every third day and sometimes oftener. In this manner fairly accurate data were obtained as to the progress of development. Notebook records were kept containing the observations of each visit and these records have been used as the basis for this study. Such field work was made possible by the fact that colonies of most of the species could be located in stations close to Ithaca, and regular routes worked out by means of which all could be visited.

Indoor breeding experiments fell into three groups: the hatching of eggs from buds and twigs brought into the laboratory in early spring; the rearing of nymphs on host plants that could be grown in the insectary; and the observation of adults on food that could be maintained in a fresh condition in the insectary.

In the first method, buds and small twigs containing egg masses were brought into the warm laboratory and placed in wide-mouthed bottles filled with water and plugged with cotton, the whole being covered with a lamp chimney topped with cheesecloth. In such cases the buds opened or the twigs were forced, hastening the hatching of the eggs and making possible the securing of the first and second instars. This practice also permitted the study of the escape of the insect from the egg and the collection of egg parasites if present. In most instances, however, the nymphs died after the first or the second molt, either because of the unnatural sap conditions of the twig, because they did not survive removal to fresh twigs, or because a different host was required for feeding from that on which they were hatched. The method was entirely satisfactory for the purposes for which it was conducted, and most of the early instars have been obtained in this fashion.

For the rearing of nymphs thru all their instars it was necessary to have young plants in the insectary. Unfortunately many of the species live only on trees, which could not be maintained in the limited quarters available for experimental work. In some cases a constant supply of fresh twigs and leaves were sufficient to keep the nymphs alive, but the method was not satisfactory. Fortunately, however, a number of the species spend the nymphal periods on small plants, which could be grown in the greenhouse. Sweet clover, alfalfa, joe-pye weed, thistle, goldenrod, aster, daisy, and clover were successfully potted and kept under bell jars, and on these hosts various species were brought thru to maturity. By this method it was possible to observe the process of molting and to get the cast skins after each molt. These cast skins proved to be of some value in making measurements. The chief difficulty experienced in this method was that of maintaining satisfactory temperature and moisture conditions. Under the greenhouse glass the heat often proved too severe for the nymphs, and the plants if neglected even for a short period were likely to wither. However, with constant care the nymphs of a number of species may be reared successfully, but it is a question whether the time records for the various molts are reliable since the conditions are undoubtedly different from those in the field. For this reason such records have been used merely as a check on the field records whenever the latter were available.

Adults brought into the insectary for observation thrive very well on twigs and branches of their usual host plants if the latter was renewed from time to time. The twigs are put in open jars containing plenty of water, the insects are put on the twigs, and a large bell jar, covered with netting only at the top, is placed over the whole. At first the insects are inclined to be restless and fly against the sides of the jar in their efforts to escape. Soon, however, they become quiet and settle down on the twigs. After a few days, during which their efforts to fly thru the glass have proved fruitless, the insects apparently become reconciled to their prison and the bell jar may be removed for hours at a time, the insects not realizing that the glass is not between them and liberty. Under such conditions the processes of feeding, mating, and oviposition may be observed at close range and very satisfactory results obtained. Practically all the commoner species of the basin have been thus confined and their habits noted.

On the whole, breeding experiments in the field have proved more satisfactory than those conducted in the insectary. Certainly they are far more easily made and the results are more indicative of the natural life of the insect studied.

METHODS OF COLLECTING

The methods of collecting Membracidae vary with the species desired and no general method is applicable to all forms. The four methods most commonly used locally have been sweeping, beating, using trap lanterns, and taking the insects by hand. Of these the last has been the most satisfactory.

A few of the local species — namely, *Campylenchia latipes*, *Stictocephala lutea*, *Stictocephala inermis*, *Ceresa bubalus*, *Ceresa taurina*, *Ceresa borealis*, *Entylia bactriana*, *Publilia concava*, and occasionally *Enchenopa binotata* — are taken by sweeping in pastures, along roadsides, in meadows, and among the weeds in and around orchards. The nymphs as well as the adults may be thus taken, and in the case of *Campylenchia latipes* sweeping has been found the most satisfactory method of collecting. For most of the forms, however, it is not productive of the best results, due to the fact that the insects often cling very tightly to their hosts when disturbed, and the hosts at the time when the insects are most numerous are not easily swept. For example, sweet clover, alfalfa, buckwheat, clover, and most of the common weeds on which membracids are found, are in full bloom or early fruit at the time when the insects are abundant; at this time sweeping is very difficult owing to the fragile condition of the flower heads and seed pods, which accumulate in the net to such an extent as to make the sorting of the catch most laborious. Moreover, at this season the above-mentioned plants are visited by countless numbers of bees, which do not welcome the presence of the collector and which make the vigorous sweeping of the plants a most unpleasant operation.

The use of the net in trees is usually out of the question. Not only do the branches interfere with the sweep of the net, but in many cases the hosts are thorny plants which quickly tear a net to pieces. This is particularly true of locust trees, berry bushes, rosebushes, hawthorns, and wild crabs, on which many species are prevalent.

Beating has not proved a satisfactory method of collecting, altho in a few cases good catches have been made by the use of a stout club and a collecting umbrella. In most cases the membracids either cling too tightly to the host to be dislodged, or else take flight instead of dropping to the ground as in the case of many Hemiptera. In practically all cases the insect leaves the branch with a quick spring when disturbed or when the plant is jarred, and makes a short flight to a neighboring branch. Many attempts to collect in this way have resulted in the abandonment of the method.

Trap lanterns have been used with little success. Apparently few membracids fly well enough or far enough to be taken in this manner, or else the insects are not attracted toward the light to as great an extent as are other insects. The only species taken with a trap lantern in the basin have been *Atymna castaneae*, *Cyrtolobus vau*, *Ophiderma pubescens*, and *Campylenchia latipes*, and these have been so taken only in rare instances.

By far the most satisfactory method of collecting Membracidae is that which may be termed *hand picking*. After a little experience it is not difficult to see the insect on the plant, especially after the habits of the various species have been learned. They may be approached without suspicion if care is taken to make the movements of the hand slow and regular. When the hand is within a few inches of the insect a quick grab secures the specimen. After a little practice individuals crowded close together on a branch may be picked off one by one without disturbing the others. It has been found best to approach the individual directly from the front, so that if its spring is made suddenly the insect will leap into the hand rather than away from it; in practically every case the insect leaps straight ahead when disturbed. This method has the additional advantage of always yielding a perfect specimen, since there is little chance of injury in the process. Moreover, the insect in the fingers may be easily transferred to the cyanide bottle without loss of time or opportunity for escape. The fact that Membracidae are harmless, cannot bite nor sting, and have none of the disagreeable odors common to so many of the Hemiptera, is an added advantage for this method of collecting. Moreover the natural joy of discovering and stalking a rare specimen and the satisfaction of making the capture without mechanical aid is an added inducement to the true hunter. But the greatest advantage of this method is the opportunity given to observe the habits of the insects in the field, whether or not the specimen is captured. It is a temptation at first to take the specimen at once, without waiting to note its actions; but if this inclination to seize the insect at once is overcome, the subsequent pleasure and profit in observing the life habits well repays the time spent.

No particular time of day has been found especially favorable for collecting, but, since the insects are most active during the hottest parts of the day, they are more easily seen and more of their habits are observable during those hours in which the temperature is highest.

The adults collected were usually placed directly in the cyanide bottle, and could be easily carried without danger of injury since their hard bodies and well-covered or closely folded wings prevented their mutilation by being jarred or shaken together.

Nymphs were placed in vials of 70-per-cent alcohol, of which a supply was always carried. If possible all nymphs of a single species, with their attendant ants, were placed in the same vial.

Eggs and egg masses, with the twigs or the leaves containing them, were placed in vials of 30-per-cent alcohol, and were removed from these to other containers on the return to the laboratory.

Adults or nymphs that were to be kept alive were placed in large, wide-mouthed vials together with bits of the food plant, and the necks of the vials were loosely plugged with cotton.

METHODS OF PRESERVING

For the permanent collection, adults were invariably pinned and nymphs were preserved in 70-per-cent alcohol. In some cases the nymphs of the last instar were preserved in both ways, some in alcohol and some on pins.

No special directions need be observed in pinning the local forms of the family, but in the preparation of exotic material in which characters are found in the trochanters it is very necessary to pin the specimen in such a manner that these appendages will not be destroyed.

The principal characters necessary for the recognition of the local forms are found on the head, the dorsal crest, and the wings. If, therefore, the pin is placed directly downward thru the prothorax on one side of the median dorsal line, it will usually not interfere with the structures needed for diagnosis. It has been found very convenient to mount a few individuals in each series with their wings spread out or at least removed from beneath the margin of the pronotum, since in a number of genera the cells of both the fore and the hind wings are used in systematic work.

The use of points is not to be advised in mounting Membracidae, since if the insects are securely glued to the point the abdomen and the femora, and even the beak, are likely to be hidden, and, as has been noted, these structures are often valuable in making determinations.

Species that are too small to be easily mounted on regular pins may be satisfactorily mounted on *minuten nadeln,* which have all the advantages of points without the disadvantage of obscuring any part of the body.

Individuals taken in copula are mounted on the same pin if large and on two *nadeln* on the same pin if small.

Date, locality, and host labels are placed on each pin if the data are available and the insect is intended for the permanent collection. No record has been kept of the particular station where the specimen was taken except in the field notes, and this record is not attached to individual specimens.

Nymphs may be kept indefinitely in 70-per-cent alcohol. The last two instars may be mounted on pins and preserved in fairly good shape, altho they are likely to dry out and are unreliable for use in making comparative measurements.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

ADAMS, C. F. Some insects of orchard and other fruits. Arkansas Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 92:1–17. 1907.

AMYOT, C.-J.-B., AND SERVILLE, J. G. AUDINET. Histoire naturelle des insectes. Hémiptères, p. 1–675. 1843.

ASHMEAD, WILLIAM H. Descriptions of some new North American Chalcididæ. Canad. ent. **20**:101–107. 1888.

AUDUIN, V. L'anatomie comparative des parties solides des insectes. Ann. gen. sci. phys. **7**:—. 1820.

BAER, G.-A. Note sur un membracide myrmécophile de la République Argentine [Hémipt.]. Soc. Ent. France. Bul. **1903**:306–308. 1903.

BAKER, C. F. Notes and descriptions of Membracidae. Canad. ent. **39**:114–118. 1907.

BALDWIN, C. H. Indiana State Entomologist. Ann. rept. **6** (1912–13): 1–224. 1914.

BALL, ELMER D. Descriptions of some new tree hoppers from the United States. Biol. Soc. Washington. Proc. **16**:177–182. 1904.

——— Some new Homoptera from the South and Southwest. Biol. Soc. Washington. Proc. **18**:117–120. 1906.

——— Adaptations to arid conditions in Cercopidæ and Membracidæ. Ent. Soc. America. Ann. **8**:365–368. 1915.

BELT, T. Honey-exuding Membracidae attended by ants. *In* Naturalist in Nicaragua, p. 227. 1874.

BENTLEY, GORDON MANSIR. A study of the Pentatomidae. Thesis for degree of B. S. A. (Unpublished.) 1900.

BERLESE, ANTONIO. Gli insetti. 1909.

BLANCHARD, ÉMILE. Histoire naturelle des insectes Orthoptères, Neuroptères, Hemiptères, Hymenoptères, Lepidoptères, et Diptères. 1840.

BLÜMML, EMIL K. Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Genitalorgane der Psylloden. Illus. Zeitsch. Ent. **4**:305–308. 1899.

BRANCH, HAZEL ELISABETH. Morphology and biology of the Membracidæ of Kansas. Kansas Univ. sci. bul. **8**:75–115. 1913.

BRAY, WILLIAM L. The development of the vegetation of New York State. Syracuse Univ., N. Y. State Coll. Forestry. Technical pub. **3**:1–186. 1915.

BROMLEY, STANLEY W. Asilids and their prey. Psyche **21**:192–198. 1914.

BRUNER, LAWRENCE. Insect enemies of the apple-tree and its fruit. *In* Nebraska State Hort. Soc., Rept. **25**:162, 176–177. 1894.

BUCKTON, G. BOWDLER. A monograph of the Membracidae, p. 1–285. 1903.

——— Observations on some undescribed or little-known species of Hemiptera-Homoptera of the family Membracidæ. Linnean Soc. London. Trans. 2d ser. (Zoology):**9**:329–338. 1905.

BURMEISTER, HERMANN. Monographie du genre Darnis. Silberman Revue ent. **4**:164–191. 1836.

——— Handbuch der Entomologie **2**:1–400. 1839.

BUTLER, ARTHUR GARDINER. On various genera of the homopterous family Membracidæ, with descriptions of new species. Cistula entomologica **2**:205–222, 337–361. 1877–78.

CAMERANO, LORENZO. Membracidi. *In* Gli insetti, p. 232. 1879.

CARPENTER, GEORGE H. Insects, their structure and life, p. 1–404. (Reference on p. 195.) 1899.

COCKERELL, T. D. A. Some insect pests of Salt River Valley and the remedies for them. Arizona Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 32:273–295. 1899.

COMSTOCK, JOHN HENRY. Membracidæ. *In* An introduction to entomology, p. 171–172. 1888.

COMSTOCK, JOHN HENRY, AND KOCHI, CHUJIRO. The skeleton of the head of insects. Amer. nat. **36**:13–45. 1902.

COMSTOCK, JOHN HENRY, AND NEEDHAM, JAMES GEORGE. Wings of insects. Amer. nat. **33**:—. 1899.

COOLEY, R. A. The Buffalo tree-hopper. Colorado State Entomologist. Rept. **1903**:252. 1903.

——— A manual of fruit pests with remedies. *In* First annual report of the State Entomologist of Montana. Montana Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 51:249–259. 1904.

——— Entomological features of the year. Montana State Entomologist. Ann. rept. **7**:52–53. 1910.

CRAMPTON, G. C. A contribution to the comparative morphology of the thoracic sclerites of insects. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philadelphia. Proc. **61**:3–54. 1909.

CRAWFORD, DAVID L. A monograph of the jumping plant-lice or Psyllidæ of the New World. U. S. Nat. Mus. Bul. 85:1–182. 1914.

DIMMOCK, ANNA KATHERINA. The insects of Betula in North America. Psyche **4**:239–243. 1885.

DISTANT, W. L. Scientific results of the second Yarkand mission. Rhynchota, p. 1–15. 1879.

——— Notes on exotic Rhynchota. Ent. mo. mag. **17**:222–223. 1881.

——— An enumeration of the Rhynchota received from Baron von Müller, and collected by Mr. Sayer in New Guinea during Mr. Cuthbertson's expedition. Ent. Soc. London. Trans. **1888**:475–489. 1888.

——— Family Membracidæ. *In* The fauna of British India, including Ceylon and Burma. Rhynchota **4**:1–78. 1908 a.

——— Insects transvaalensia **1**:205–227. 1908 b.

——— Homoptera (Membracidae and Jassidae) collected in the Lagos district by W. A. Lamborn. Ent. Soc. London. Trans. **1913**:515–520. 1914.

——— Rhynchotal notes. Ann. and mag. nat. hist. **16**:322–328, 489–496. 1915.

——— The fauna of British India, including Ceylon and Burma. Rhynchota **6**:—. Homoptera appendix. 1916.

DUDLEY, WILLIAM R. The Cayuga flora. Part I: A catalogue of the Phænogamia growing without cultivation in the Cayuga Lake Basin. Cornell Univ. Bul. **2**:i–xxx, 1–132. 1886.

DUFOUR, LEON. Recherches anatomiques et physiologiques sur les Hémiptères. Acad. Roy. Sci. Inst. France. Mémoires presentés par divers savans **4**:129–461. 1833.

DUNCAN, JAMES. Introduction to entomology. Jardine's Naturalist's library. Ent. **1**:1–331. 1843.

EMMONS, E. Homoptera. *In* New York State Agr. Rept. **5**:149–165. 1854.

ESSIG, E. O. The Buffalo tree-hopper. *In* Injurious and beneficial insects of California. California Comm. Hort. Monthly bul. **2**:40. 1913.

——— The Buffalo tree-hopper. *In* Injurious and beneficial insects of California. California Comm. Hort. Monthly bul. **4**, Suppl., p. 61–62. 1915.

FABRICIUS, JOHANN CHRISTIAN. Systema entomologiæ **4**:—. 1775.

——— Genera insectorum, p. 1–310. 1776.

——— Species insectorum **2**:1–494. 1781.

——— Mantissa insectorum **2**:1–382. 1787.

——— Entomologia systematica emendata et aucta **4**:1–472. 1794.

——— Supplementum entomologiae systematicae, p. 1–572. 1798.

——— Systema Rhyngotorum. 1803.

FAIRMAIRE, LÉON. Revue de la tribu des membracides. Soc. Ent. France. Ann. 2d ser.:**4**:235–320, 479–531. 1846.

FELT, EPHRAIM PORTER. Garden insects. *In* Twentieth report of the State Entomologist 1904. New York State Mus. Bul. 97:406–408. 1905.

FITCH, ASA. Catalogue with references and descriptions of the insects collected and arranged for the [New York] State Cabinet of Natural History, p. 43–69. 1851.

——— Insect tumors and wounds in raspberry stalks. Country gent. **19**:335. 1862 a.

——— The Buffalo tree-hopper the cause of scars on the twigs of fruit trees. Amer. agr. **21**:172–173. 1862 b.

——— The Buffalo tree-hopper. Country gent. **23**:386. 1864 a.

——— A curious insect. Country gent. **24**:79. 1864 b.

——— Buffalo tree-hopper, Ceresa bubalus, Fabricius. *In* Twelfth report on the noxious, beneficial, and other insects, of the State of New York. New York State Agr. Soc. Trans. **27**^{2} (1867):889–893. 1868.

FLETCHER, JAMES. Insects injurious to Ontario crops in 1905. Ent. Soc. Ontario. Ann. rept. **36** (1905): 81–90. 1906.

FOWLER, W. W. Some new species of Membracidæ. Ent. Soc. London. Trans. **1894**: 415–424. 1894.

——— Fam. Membracidæ. *In* Biologia Centrali-Americana 2^1: 1–169. 1894–97.

FROGGATT, WALTER W. Tree-hoppers. *In* Australian insects, p. 356–358. [1907.]

FUNKHOUSER, W. D. Homologies of the wing veins of the Membracidae. Ent. Soc. America. Ann. **6**: 74–97. 1913.

——— Some Philippine Membracidæ. Journ. ent. and zool. **6**: 67–74. 1914 a.

——— New Membracidæ from the East Indies. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **22**: 234–239. 1914 b.

——— New South American Membracidæ. Canad. ent. **46**: 357–363, 403–408. 1914 c.

——— Report on a collection of Membracidæ from the Colombian Andes, taken by Mr. John Thomas Lloyd. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **22**: 275–281. 1914 d.

——— New Membracidae from the United States (Hemip., Homop.). Ent. news **26**: 97–101. 1915 a.

——— Life history of Thelia bimaculata Fab. (Membracidæ). Ent. Soc. America. Ann. **8**: 140–151. 1915 b.

——— Note on the life history of Enchenopa binotata Say (Membracidæ) on the butternut. Journ. econ. ent. **8**: 368–371. 1915 c.

——— Types of Fitch's species of Membracidæ. Brooklyn Ent. Soc. Bul. **10**: 45–50. 1915 d.

——— A new membracid from Trinidad. Brooklyn Ent. Soc. Bul. **10**: 103–105. 1915 e.

——— Life history of Vanduzea arquata Say (Membracidæ). Psyche **22**: 183–198. 1915 f.

——— Review of the Philippine Membracidæ. Philippine journ. sci. **10** D: 365–405. 1915 g.

GARMAN, H. Apple orchard pests in Kentucky. *In* Kentucky Agr. Exp. Sta., Bul. 133: 14–71. 1908.

GEER, CHARLES DE. Mémoires pour servir à l'histoire des insectes **3**: —. 1773.

GEOFFROY, [ÉTIENNE LOUIS]. Histoire abrégée des insectes, dans laquelle ces animaux sont rangés suivant un ordre méthodique **1**: 1–523. (Reference on p. 422–424.) 1764.

GERMAR, E. F. Bemerkungen über einige Gattungen der Cicadarien. Mag. ent. **3**: 177–227. 1818.

——— Species Membracidum musci Germari et dispositio generum Membracidum. Silberman Revue ent. **3**: 223–261, and suppl., p. 307–311. 1835.

GIBSON, WILLIAM HAMILTON. A queer little family on the bittersweet. Harper's new mo. mag. **87**:432–436. 1893.

GILLETTE, C. P., AND BAKER, CARL F. A preliminary list of the Hemiptera of Colorado. Colorado Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 31:1–137. 1895.

GIRARD, MAURICE. Métamorphoses des insectes. 1884.

——— Tribu des membraciens. *In* Les insectes. Traité élémentaire d'entomologie **3**:866–870. 1885.

GIRAULT, A. A. Descriptions of three new North American species of the mymarid genus Polynema Halliday parasitic on membracid eggs, with a list of the species described since the year 1898. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **19**:12–23. 1911.

——— Hosts of insect eggparasites in Europe, Asia, Africa, and Australasia, with a supplementary American list. Zeitsch. wiss. Insektenbiol. **10**:87–91, 135–139, 175–178, 238–240. 1914.

GLOVER, TOWNSEND. List of Membracidae. *In* Report of the Entomologist and Curator of the Museum. U. S. Dept. Agr. Rept. **1876**:28–30. 1877.

GODING, F. W. Studies in North American Membracidæ. Ent. news **3**:108–111, 200–201. 1892 a.

——— A synopsis of the subfamilies and genera of the Membracidæ of North America. Amer. Ent. Soc. Trans. **19**:253–260. 1892 b.

——— Food-plants of some N. A. Membracidæ. Insect life **5**(1892): 92–93. 1893 a.

——— The Membracidæ of St. Vincent Island, W. I. Canad. ent. **25**: 53–56. 1893 b.

——— Fitch's types of N. A. Membracidæ. Canad. ent. **25**:171–172, 196. 1893 c.

——— Bibliographical and synonymical catalogue of the described Membracidæ of North America. Illinois State Lab. Nat. Hist. Bul. **3**:391–482. 1894.

——— Studies in N. A. Membracidæ. Canad. ent. **27**:274–277. 1895.

GOSSARD, H. A. List of Iowa clover insects and observation on some of them. Iowa Acad. Sci. Proc. **1**^{3} (1892):94–97. 1893.

GREEN, E. ERNEST. Note on the attractive properties of certain larval Hemiptera. Ent. mo. mag. **36**:185. 1900.

GUERIN-MENEVILLE, FELIX EDOUARD. Iconographie du règne animal de G. Cuvier, Part 7. 1838.

HARDWICKE, THOMAS. Observations on the loves of the ants and the aphides. Zool. journ. **4**:113–115. 1829.

HARNISCH, WILHELM. Über den männlichen Begattungsapparat einiger Chrysomeliden. Zeitsch. wiss. Zool. **114**:1–94. 1915.

HARRIS, THADDEUS WILLIAM. List of the insects of Massachusetts. *In* Report on the geology, mineralogy, botany, and zoology of Massachusetts, by Professor Hitchcock, p. 566–595. 1833.

——— Catalogue of the animals and plants of Massachusetts, with a copious index. (Reference on p. 32–82.) 1835.

——— A report on the insects of Massachusetts, injurious to vegetation, p. 1–459. 1841.

——— A treatise on some of the insects of New England, which are injurious to vegetation, p. 1–459. 1842.

——— Black warts on plum trees, and the insect Membracis bubalus. Hort. and journ. rural art and rural taste **8**:283–284. 1853 a.

——— Plum tree warts. Boston cult. **15**:250. 1853 b.

——— A treatise on some of the insects injurious to vegetation, p. 1–640. (Ed. by Charles L. Flint.) 1862.

——— Entomological correspondence. (Ed. by Samuel Hubbard Scudder.) Boston Soc. Nat. Hist. Occ. papers **1**:1–375. 1869.

HARVEY, F. L. Notes on the insects of the year. Maine Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. **12** (1896):117–123. 1897.

HILLMAN, F. H. Some common injurious insects of western Nevada. Nevada State Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 36:1–39. 1898.

HODGKISS, H. E. The apple and pear membracids. New York (Geneva) Agr. Exp. Sta. Technical bul. 17:81–112. 1910.

HOPKINS, A. D. Family Membracidae. *In* Catalogue of West Virginia forest and shade tree insects. West Virginia Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 32:230–231. 1893.

ILLIGER, KARL. Zusätze zu der Terminologie der Insekten. Mag. Insektenkunde **5**:1–27. 1806.

JACK, JOHN G. Notes of 1885 on some injurious and other common insects. Canad. ent. **18**:21–23. 1886 a.

——— Notes on Ceresa bubalus, Say. Canad. ent. **18**:51–54. 1886 b.

——— Entomological notes. Ent. Soc. Ontario. Ann. rept. **16**:15–16. 1886 c.

JACOBI, ARNOLD. Ueber ostafrikanische Homopteren. Gesell. naturf. Freunde Berlin. Sitzber. **1904**:14–17. 1904.

——— Mimikry und verwandte Erscheinungen. 1913.

KERSHAW, J.-G.-C. Anatomical notes on a membracid. Soc. Ent. Belgique. Ann. **57**:191–201. 1913.

KIRBY, WILLIAM. Monographia apum Angliæ **1**:1–258. 1802.

KIRKALDY, G. W. Bibliographical and nomenclatorial notes on the Hemiptera.— No. 3. Entomologist **37**:279–283. 1904.

——— Membracidae. *In* Leaf-hoppers and their natural enemies. Part IX. Leaf-hoppers — Hemiptera. Hawaiian Sug. Plant. Assoc. Exp. Sta., Div. Ent. Bul. 1:371–379. 1906.

——— Leaf-hoppers — Supplement (Hemiptera). Hawaiian Sug. Plant. Assoc. Exp. Sta., Div. Ent. Bul. 3:1–186. 1907.

KOLBE, H. J. Insektenkunde. (Reference on p. 241.)

Kornhauser, Sidney I. A comparative study of the chromosomes in the spermatogenesis of Enchenopa binotata (Say) and Enchenopa (Campylenchia Stål) curvata (Fabr.). Arch. Zellf. **12**:241–298. 1914.

Lamborn, W. A. Ants and Membracidae. *In* On the relationship between certain West African insects, especially ants, Lycænidæ, and Homoptera. Ent. Soc. London. Trans. **1913**:494–498. 1914.

Laporte, F.-L. de. Mémoire sur quelques nouveaux genres de l'ordre des Homoptères. Soc. Ent. France. Ann. **1**:221–231. 1832.

Latreille, P. A. Membrace. *In* Considérations générales sur l'ordre naturel des animaux composant les classes des crustacés, des arachnides, et des insectes, p. 264. 1810.

Licent, E. Signification de la dilatation proventriculaire chez les Homoptères supérieurs [Hem.]. Soc. Ent. France. Bul. **1911**:284–286. 1911.

Linné, Caroli a. Cicada, Membracis. *In* Systema naturae $\mathbf{1}^3$:2092–2096. 1788.

Lintner, J. A. Apple tree insects. Country gent. **42**:235. 1877 a.

——— Tree hoppers. Country gent. **42**:463. 1877 b.

——— An account of the collections which illustrate the labors of Dr. Asa Fitch. Psyche **2**:273–276. 1879.

——— The two-spotted tree hopper. Enchophyllum binotatum. Country gent. **45**:711. 1880.

——— First annual report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York, p. 1–381. (Reference on p. 281–288, 315, 318, 319, 331.) 1882.

——— The two-marked tree-hopper. Country gent. **52**:783. 1887.

——— Fourth report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist. Rept. **41**:1–237. (Reference on p. 146–147, 203, 208.) 1888.

——— Sixth report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist. Rept. **43**:97–203. (Reference on p. 177.) 1890.

——— Seventh report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York. New York State Mus. Rept. **44**:197–404. (Reference on p. 360.) 1891.

——— Eighth report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York for the year 1891. New York State Mus. Rept. **45**:103–320. (Reference on p. 294.) 1893 a.

——— Family Membracidæ. *In* Fitch's Catalogue of the insects collected and arranged for the State Cabinet of Natural History (reprinted with revisions by E. P. Van Duzee and C. V. Riley). *In* Ninth report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York for the year 1892. New York State Mus. Rept. **46**:387–392. 1893 b.

——— Tenth report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York for the year 1894. New York State Mus. Rept. **48**:337–633. (Reference on p. 493, 512.) 1895.

——— Eleventh report on the injurious and other insects of the State of New York for the year 1895. New York State Mus. Rept. **49**:85–325. (Reference on p. 270.) 1896.

LUGGER, OTTO. Family Membracidae. *In* Bugs injurious to our cultivated plants. Minnesota Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 69:104–114. 1900.

LUTZ, F. E. A membracid and mimicry. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **20**:67–68. 1912.

MANN, WILLIAM M. A protective adaptation in a Brazilian membracid. Psyche **19**:145–147. 1912.

——— Some myrmecophilous insects from Hayti. Psyche **22**:161–166. 1915.

MARLATT, C. L. Notes on the oviposition of the Buffalo tree-hopper. Kansas Acad. Sci. Trans. **10**:84–85. 1887.

——— The Buffalo tree-hopper. Insect life **7**:8–14. 1894.

MATAUSCH, IGNAZ. Gynandromorphic Membracidæ. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **17**:165. 1909.

——— Observations on Membracidæ in the vicinity of Elizabeth and Newark, N. J. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **18**:164–171. 1910 a.

——— Smilia camelus Fabricius and some of its variations. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **18**:171–172. 1910 b.

——— Entylia Germar and its different forms. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **18**:260–263. 1910 c.

——— The effects of parasitic castration in Membracidae. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **19**:194–196. 1911.

——— Observations on the life history of Enchenopa binotata Say. New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **20**:58–67. 1912 a.

——— Observations on Micoutalis calva Say. Psyche **19**:66–69. 1912 b.

——— Observations on some North American Membracidae in their last nymphal stages. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist. Bul. **31**:321–336. 1912 c.

MELICHAR, L. Homopteren-fauna von Ceylon, p. 1–248. 1903.

——— Rozbor krisu palearltickych z celedi Membracidae Stål a Cercopidae Stål. Vyestnik Klubu prirodovedeckeho v Prostejove **4**:3–34. 1904.

MERIAN, MARIA SIBYLLA. Metamorphosis insectorum surinamensium. 1705.

METCALF, Z. P. A list of Homoptera of North Carolina. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc. Journ. **31**:35–60. 1915.

——— The rediscovery of Membracis subulata Say, with a description of a new genus (Homop.). Ent. news **27**:1–3. 1916.

MILLER, GERRIT S., Jr. Preliminary list of the mammals of New York. New York State Mus. Bul. 6:271-390. 1899.

MUIR, F. Notes on the ontogeny of the genital tubes in Coleoptera. Psyche 22:147-152. 1915.

MURTFELDT, MARY E. Traces of maternal affection in Eutilia sinuata, Fabr. Ent. amer. 3:177-178. 1887.

——— General structure of insects. Missouri State Hort. Soc. Rept. 32(1889):449-467. 1890.

NEWPORT, GEORGE. Insecta. *In* Todd's Cyclo. anat. and physiol., p. 853-994. 1839.

OLIVIER, M. Membracis. *In* Encyclopédie méthodique 7:659-669. 1792.

OSBORN, HERBERT. Insects of the orchard. *In* Iowa Agr. Coll., Dept. Ent., Bul. 2:87-97. 1884.

——— Catalogue of the Hemiptera of Iowa. Iowa Acad. Sci. Proc. 1^2 (1890-91):120-131. 1892 a.

——— Fruit insects. Iowa State Agr. Soc. Rept. 1892:665-699. 1892 b.

——— Fruit and forest tree insects. Papers on Iowa insects, p. 24. 1893.

——— Economic importance of Stictocephala. Journ. econ. ent. 4: 137-140. 1911.

PACKARD, ALPHEUS S. Insects injurious to forest and shade trees, p. 1-957. Fifth report of the U. S. Entomological Commission. U. S. Dept. Agr. 1890.

——— A text-book of entomology, p. 1-729. 1898.

PERRIS, EDOUARD. On the connection of Tettigometra, Cercopis, Membracis, and Fulgora with ants. Pet. nouv. 1873:336. 1873.

PETTIT, R. H. Insects injurious to the apple. Michigan State Agr. Coll. Exp. Sta. Special bul. 24:5-32. 1914.

PIERCE, F. N. The genitalia of the Noctuidae. 1909.

——— The genitalia of the Geometridae. 1914.

POPENOE, E. A. The Buffalo tree-hopper. Kansas State Agr. Coll. Exp. Sta. Bul. 99 (Press bul. 68):52-53. 1900.

POULTON, EDWARD B. On an interesting example of protective mimicry discovered by Mr. W. L. Sclater in British Guiana. Zool. Soc. London. Proc. 1891:462-464. 1891.

——— Suggestions as to the meaning of the shapes and colours of the Membracidae, in the struggle for existence. *In* A monograph of the Membracidae (by G. Bowdler Buckton), p. 273-285. 1903.

——— Protective resemblance and mimicry in the Membracidae. Ent. Soc. London. Proc. 1913:xxxv-xxxviii. 1913.

PROVANCHER, L. Gen. Tragopa, Germar. *In* Description de plusieurs Hémiptères nouveaux. Nat. canad. 4:320. 1872.

——— Membracides. *In* Petite faune entomologique du Canada 3:225-251. 1886.

REED, HUGH D., AND WRIGHT, ALBERT H. The vertebrates of the Cayuga Lake Basin, N. Y. Amer. Philosoph. Soc. Proc. **48**:370–459. 1909.

REH, L. Membraciden. *In* Handbuch der Pflanzenkrankheiten (von Prof. Dr. Paul Sorauer) **3**:637–638. 1913.

RICE, MRS. M. E. Notes on Entilia sinuata. Insect life **5**:243–245. 1893.

RILEY, CHARLES V. Insects named. Amer. ent. and bot. **2**:245. 1870.

——— Eggs in grape canes and apple twigs. Amer. agr. **31**:302. 1872.

——— Fifth annual report on the noxious, beneficial, and other insects of the State of Missouri, p. 1–160. (Reference on p. 121–122.) 1873.

——— White waxy secretion on stems of bitter sweet. Amer. ent. **3**:254. 1880.

——— Covering of egg-puncture mistaken for Dorthesia. Amer. nat. **15**:574. 1881.

——— Buffalo tree-hopper injurious to potatoes. Amer. nat. **16**: 822–823. 1882.

——— Entomological notes of the year. Prairie farmer **55**:739. 1883.

——— New injurious insects of a year. Insect life **5** (1892):16–19. 1893 a.

——— Remarks on the eggs of Ceresa. Insect life **6**:206. 1893 b.

SANDERSON, E. DWIGHT, AND JACKSON, C. F. Plant-hoppers. *In* Elementary entomology, p. 124–125. 1912.

SAUNDERS, WILLIAM. Insects injurious to fruits, 2d ed., p. 1–436. 1904.

SAY, THOMAS. Narrative of an expedition to the source of St. Peter's River, Lake Winnipeek, Lake of the Woods, etc., etc., performed in the year 1823. Appendix to vol. 2, part 1, p. 253–400. 1824 a.

——— Report of Long's second expedition. Amer. ent. **1824**:199–202. 1824 b.

——— Descriptions of new North American hemipterous insects. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philadelphia. Journ. **5**:235–244, 299–314. 1831.

——— Descriptions of new North American hemipterous insects belonging to the first family of the section Homoptera of Latreille. Amer. ent. **1859**:376–380. 1859.

SHARP, DAVID. On the structure of the terminal segment in some male Hemiptera. Ent. Soc. London. Trans. **1890**:399–427. 1890.

SHELFORD, VICTOR E. Animal communities in temperate America. Geog. Soc. Chicago. Bul. **5**:1–362. 1913.

SLINGERLAND, MARK VERNON, AND CROSBY, CYRUS RICHARD. The Buffalo tree-hopper. *In* Manual of fruit insects, p. 160–162. 1914.

SMITH, JOHN B. List of insects known to occur in New Jersey. New Jersey Agr. Sta. Survey. 1890.

——— Insects of New Jersey. New Jersey State Bd. Agr. Suppl. Ann. rept. **27**:1–755. 1900.

——— Report of the insects of New Jersey. New Jersey State Mus. Ann. rept. **1909**:—. 1909 a.

——— Our insect friends and enemies. (Reference on p. 53.) 1909 b.

SNODGRASS, ROBERT EVANS. The thorax of insects and the articulation of the wings. U. S. Nat. Mus. Proc. **36**:511–595. 1909.

SNOW, F. H. Lists of Coleoptera, Lepidoptera, Diptera, and Hemiptera collected in Arizona by the entomological expeditions of the University of Kansas in 1902 and 1903. Kansas Univ. sci. bul. **2**:323–350. (Reference on p. 349.) 1904.

STÅL, CAROLUS. Bidrag till Rio Janeiro-traktens Hemipter-fauna. Kongl. Svenska Vetensk. Akad. Handl. **2**^{7}:1–75. 1858.

——— Hemiptera mexicana. Ent. Ztg. **25**:49–86. 1864.

——— Hemiptera africana **4**:1–275. 1866.

——— Bidrag till Hemipterernas Systematik. Öfvers. Kongl. Vetensk. Akad. Förhandl. **24**:491–560. 1867.

——— Hemiptera Fabriciana, Part 2. Kongl. Svenska Vetensk. Akad. Handl. **8**:1–130. 1869 a.

——— Bidrag till Membracidernas kännedom. Öfvers. Kongl. Vetensk. Akad. Förhandl. **26**:231–300. 1869 b.

——— Hemiptera insularum Philippinarum. Öfvers. Kongl. Vetensk. Akad. Förhandl. **27**:607–776. 1870.

STOLL, CASPAR. Natuurlyke en naar't Leeven naauwkeurig gekleurde Afbeeldingen en Beschryvingen der Cicaden en Wantzen in alle vier Waerelds deelen Europa, Asia, Africa, en America huishoudende, by een verzameld en Beschreeven door C. Stoll. 1780.

SUMMERS, H. E. Miscellaneous insects. Iowa Agr. Coll. Exp. Sta. Bul. 49:1–9. 1900.

SWENK, MYRON H. The Buffalo tree-hopper. Nebraska State Entomologist. Rept. **1907**:21–22. 1907.

——— The principal insects injurious to horticulture during 1906–1907. Nebraska State Hort. Soc. Bul. 19^1:1–24. 1908.

UHLER, PHILIP BEESE. List of Hemiptera of the region west of the Mississippi River, including those collected during the Hayden explorations of 1873. 1876.

VAN DUZEE, EDWARD P. Synonymy of the Homoptera described by Say, Harris, and Fitch. Psyche **5**(1888–90):387–391. 1891.

——— A list of the Hemiptera of Buffalo and vicinity. Buffalo Soc. Nat. Sci. Bul. **5**:167–204. 1897.

——— List of Hemiptera taken in the Adirondack Mountains. *In* Twentieth report of the State Entomologist 1904. New York State Mus. Bul. 97:546–556. 1905.

——— Studies in North American Membracidæ. Buffalo Soc. Nat. Sci. Bul. **9**:29–129. 1908 a.

——— List of Hemiptera taken by W. J. Palmer, about Quinze Lake, P. Que., in 1907. Canad. ent. **40**:109–116, 157–160. 1908 b.

——— Synonymical notes on North American Homoptera. Canad. ent. 41:380–384. 1909.

——— Telamona subfalcata n. sp. *In* Hemipterological gleanings. Buffalo Soc. Nat. Sci. Bul. 10:509. 1912.

——— Nomenclatural and critical notes on Hemiptera. Canad. ent. 46:377–389. 1914.

——— Check list of the Hemiptera (excepting the Aphididæ, Aleurodidæ, and Coccidæ) of America, north of Mexico, p. 1–111. New York Ent. Soc. 1916.

Verhoeff, Karl W. Ueber Dermapteren. Zool. Anz. 25:181–208. 1902.

Von Engeln, O. D. Effects of continental glaciation on agriculture. Amer. Geogr. Soc. Bul. 46:241–264, 336–355. 1914.

Vuillefroy, Félix de. Hémiptères nouveaux. Soc. Ent. France. Ann. 4th ser.: 4:141–142. 1864.

Walden, Benjamin Hovey. Guide to the insects of Connecticut. Connecticut Geol. and Nat. Hist. Survey. Bul. 16^2:39–169. 1911.

Walker, Francis. Membracina. *In* List of the specimens of homopterous insects in the collection of the British Museum. Cat. Brit. Mus. 2:472–636. 1851.

——— Fam. Membracina, Burm. *In* List of the specimens of homopterous insects in the collection of the British Museum. Cat. Brit. Mus., Suppl., p. 123–166. 1858.

Walsh, Benjamin D., and Riley, Charles V. The Buffalo tree-hopper. Amer. ent. 1:38. 1868.

——— Grape-vine insects. Amer. ent. 1:248. 1869 a.

——— Lightning-hoppers. Amer. ent. 1:250. 1869 b.

Washburn, F. L. Injurious insects of 1903. Minnesota Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 84:1–184. 1903.

——— An entomological calendar. *In* The cabbage maggot and other injurious insects of 1906. Minnesota Univ. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 100:41–54. 1906.

Webster, R. L. Membracid eggs in an apple. Journ. econ. ent. 2:193. 1909 a.

——— Insects of the year in Iowa. Journ. econ. ent. 2:210–212. 1909 b.

Weed, Clarence M. The Buffalo tree hopper. Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Bul. 2d ser.: 3^4:Art. VIII:130–132. 1890 a.

——— Ohio insects. Insect life 3:4. 1890 b.

——— The insect record for 1890. Ohio Agr. Exp. Sta. Ann. rept. 9 (1890):liii–lxv. 1891.

——— Review of Goding's North American Membracidæ. Amer. nat. 28:283–284. 1894.

——— The Buffalo tree hopper. *In* Insects and insecticides, p. 72–74. 1895.

WEISS, HARRY B. Additions to insects of New Jersey. Ent. news **26**: 101–107. 1915.

WESTWOOD, J. O. Characters of new insects from Manilla collected by Mr. Cuming. Zool. Soc. London. Proc. **5**: 127–130. 1837.

WILDERMUTH, V. L. Three-cornered alfalfa hopper. Journ. agr. research **3**: 343–362. 1915.

WIRTNER, P. MODESTUS. A preliminary list of the Hemiptera of western Pennsylvania. Carnegie Museum. Ann. **3**: 183–232. 1904.

WOODRUFF. LEWIS B. A new membracid from New York (Homop.). New York Ent. Soc. Journ. **23**: 44–47. 1915.

INDEX

A

PAGE

Acting Dean's report xiii
Adams, Bristow, report lxxii
Agricultural Chemistry, report of department li
Alfalfa diseases, control of 5
Ammonification and nitrification in soils, effects of oxygen and carbon dioxide on 399
Anderson, Leroy xlvii
Animal Husbandry, publications of department 39
Animal Husbandry, report of department xlvii
Animals, farm, computing rations for 39
Announcements, list of lxxiv
Annual report for 1916 lxxiv
Apple insects and diseases, control of 5
Apple rust 602, 606
Apple scab disease, dusting and spraying for 452
Apples, spraying schedule for 38
Apricot insects, control of 10
Asparagus rust, control of 10

B

Bacillus radicicola of soybean, physiological studies of 459
Baker, W. C., report liii
Bean diseases, control of 11
Beetle, pine bark 385
Biology of the Membracidae of the Cayuga Lake Basin 911
Bizzell, J. A 403
Blackberry insects, control of 11
Black rot, leaf spot, and canker of pomaceous fruits 153
Botany, publications of department .... xxxi, 459, 739
Botany, report of department xxxi
Bradley, J. C .... xv, 649, 920
Bulletins, experiment station, list of lxxii
Bulletins, extension, list of lxxiv
Bulletin 283 (reprint) 1
Bulletin 321 (reprint) 39
Bulletin 378 107
Bulletin 379 153
Bulletin 380 253
Bulletin 381 287
Bulletin 382 333
Bulletin 383 385
Bulletin 384 399
Bulletin 385 429
Bulletin 386 459
Bulletin 387 509
Bulletin 388 545
Bulletin 389 577
Bulletin 390 597

INDEX

PAGE
Bulletin 391 643
Burritt, M. C., report lxiii

C

Cabbage insects and diseases, control of 11
Canker of pomaceous fruits 153
Carbohydrates, influence of, on green plants 739
Carbon dioxide and oxygen, effects on nitrification and ammonification in soils 399
Carnation diseases, control of 13
Cassel, Fanny E 901
Cauliflower insects and diseases, control of 11
Cavanaugh, G. W., report li
Cayuga Lake Basin, climatology of 925
Cayuga Lake Basin, geography and physiography of 920
Cedar rust fungi 597
Celery diseases, control of 13
Chandler, W. H 337
Chandler, W. H., report xxxviii
Cherry insects and diseases, control of 14
Cherry leaf spot, dusting and spraying for 446
Chrysanthemum diseases, control of 14
Chupp, Charles 509
Clarification of milk 577
Classification of the varieties of cultivated oats, a 815
Clemens, W. A 385
Clubroot of cruciferous plants 509
Collingwood, G. H .... xv, xliv
Computing rations for farm animals 39
Control of insect pests and plant diseases, the 1
Cornell reading course for the farm lxi
Cornell reading-course lessons for the farm home, list of lxxiii
Cornell reading-course lessons for the farm, list of lxxiii
Cornell rural school leaflets, list of lxxiv
Coryell, Jay lxviii
Crataegus rust 623, 626, 633
Crawford, D. L 941
Crosby, C. R xv
Crosby, D. J., report lix
Cruciferous plants, clubroot of 509
Cucumber insects and diseases, control of 14
Currant insects and diseases, control of 15
Currant, leaf spots of, dusting and spraying for 440
Curtis, R. W., report lii

D

Dairy Industry, publications of department 577
Dairy Industry, report of department xlvi

INDEX

PAGE
Davis, E. G., report lii
Dean's report. *See* Acting Dean's report.
Demonstration schools lx
Dewberry insects, control of 16
Dewey, C. N 148
Drawing, report of department liii
Duggar, B. M 809
Dusting and spraying nursery stock 429

E

Ellis, W. W xv
Emerson, R. A., report xxix
Entomology, publications of department 1, 107, 385, 545, 643, 911
Entomology, report of department xlv
Etheridge, W. C 815
Experiment station bulletins, list of lxxii
Experiment station staff x
Extension activities xix
Extension bulletins, list of lxxiv
Extension Teaching, report of department lix

F

Faculty, changes in xv
Faculty, list of members v
Farm bureau circulars, list of lxxiv
Farm Bureau, report lxiii
Farm bureaus, work of xx
Farm Crops, publications of department 815
Farm Crops, report of department xxv
Farmers' Week lix
Farm Management, report of department xxiv
Farm Practice, report of department xxvii
Feeds, tables for 61
Felt, E. P 940
Financial affairs of College xiii
Financial report of College lxxvi
Fitzpatrick, H. M 258
Floriculture, report of department xxxix
Forestry, publications of department xliii
Forestry, report of department xlii
Fruits, pomaceous — black rot, leaf spot, and canker of 153
Fruit trees, sun-scald of 333
Fungicides 34
Funkhouser, W. D 911

G

Gilbert, A. W .... xv, xxix
Ginseng diseases, control of 16

Index

PAGE
Gladiolus, hard rot disease of 253
Gooseberry powdery mildew, control of 17
Grape insects and diseases, control of 17
Grasshopper, green-striped 145
Grasshopper, red-legged 141
Grasshopper, two-striped or yellow-striped 142
See also Lesser migratory locust.
Greenhouse insects, control of 18
Griffin, F. L liv
Guise, C. H xliv

H
Hadley, C. H., jr 107
Hard rot disease of gladiolus, the 253
Heidemann, O 649, 941
Herrick, G. W xv, 107
Hesler, L. R 153
Home Economics, report of department lvi
Horse-chestnut, leaf blotch of, dusting and spraying for 436
Hosmer, R. S., report xlii
Hudson, C. S 808
Hutchinson, C. B xv, xxix

I
Influence of certain carbohydrates on green plants 739
Information, report of office lxxii
Insecticides 31
Insect pests and plant diseases, control of 1
Investigative activities xvii

J
Johannsen, O. A 920

K
Knight, H. H 291, 643
Knudson, Lewis 505, 739

L
Landscape Art, report of department lii
Lauman, G. N., report liv
Leaf blotch of horse-chestnut, dusting and spraying for 436
Leaf smut of timothy 287
Leaf spot of cherry, dusting and spraying for 446
Leaf spot of plum, dusting and spraying for 443
Leaf spot of pomaceous fruits 153
Leaf spot of quince, dusting and spraying for 449
Leaf spots of currant, dusting and spraying for 440
Lesser migratory locust, the 107

INDEX

PAGE

Lettuce drop or rot, control of . . . 19
Locust, Carolina . . . 144
Locust — clear-winged, yellow-winged, or pellucid . . . 143
Locust, lesser migratory . . . 107
Lygus, revision of genus . . . 643
Lyon, T. L., report . . . xxxvi

M

McInerney, T. J . . . 577
Mailing cards, list of . . . lxxv
Mann, A. R., report . . . xiii
Massey, L. M . . . 253
Matheson, Robert . . . 545
Melon diseases, control of . . . 19
Melon insects, control of . . . 14
Membracidae of Cayuga Lake Basin, biology of . . . 911
Memoir 9 . . . 739
Memoir 10 . . . 815
Memoir 11 . . . 911
Memoirs, list of . . . lxxiii
Meteorology, report of department . . . lviii
Migratory locust, lesser . . . 107
Mildew of rose, dusting and spraying for . . . 454
Milk, clarification of . . . 577
Mix, A. J . . . 333
Montgomery, E. G . . . 901
Montgomery, E. G., report . . . xxv

N

Needham, J. G., report . . . xlv
Nitrification and ammonification in soils, effects of oxygen and carbon dioxide on . . . 399
Nodule production on soybean, physiological studies of factors influencing . . . 459
Nursery stock, control of insects and diseases . . . 19
Nursery stock, dusting and spraying . . . 429

O

Oats, cultivated, classification of varieties . . . 815
Oat smut, control of . . . 20
Onion insects and diseases, control of . . . 20
Orchard rust . . . 602
Osner, G. A . . . 287
Oxygen and carbon dioxide, effects on nitrification and ammonification in soils . . . 399

P

Parshley, H. M . . . 649
Peaches, spraying schedule for . . . 38

INDEX

PAGE
Peach insects and diseases, control of 21
Pear insects and diseases, control of 22
Pear rust 623, 624
Physiological studies of Bacillus radicicola of soybean (Soja max Piper) and of factors influencing nodule production 459
Pine bark beetle, the 385
Plant Breeding, report of department xxix
Plant diseases and insect pests, control of 1
Plant Pathology, publications of department ...... xxxiv, 1, 153, 253, 287, 429, 509, 597
Plant Pathology, report of department xxxiii
Plant Physiology, subreport xxxii
Plum insects and diseases, control of 23
Plum, leaf spot of, dusting and spraying for 443
Plummer, J. K 399
Pomaceous fruits — black rot, leaf spot, and canker of 153
Pomology, publications of department 333
Pomology, report of department xxxviii
Poplar and willow borer, the 545
Potato insects and diseases, control of 24
Poultry Husbandry, report of department xlviii
President's letter of transmittal xi
Prune insects, control of 27
Publications of College, list of lxxii
Publications of College, summary of lxxv
See also under separate departments.
Publications, place of xxi

Q

Quince insects and diseases, control of 27
Quince, leaf spot of, dusting and spraying for 449
Quince rust 624, 631

R

Raspberry insects and diseases, control of 28
Rations for farm animals, computing 39
Reading-course lessons. *See* Cornell reading-course lessons.
Recknagel, A. B xliii
Reddick, Donald ...... xv, 257, 291, 337, 601
Registration of students xiv
Revision, a, of the genus Lygus as it occurs in America north of Mexico, with biological data on the species from New York 643
Rice, J. E., report xlviii
Riley, H. W xv
Riley, H. W., report l
Riley, W. A 920
Rose, Flora, report lvi
Rose insects and diseases, control of 29
Rose mildew, dusting and spraying for 454

INDEX

	PAGE
Ross, H. E.	xv
Rot disease of gladiolus, hard	253
Rural Economy, report of department	liv
Rural Education, report of department	liv
Rural Engineering, report of department	l
Rural school leaflets. *See* Cornell rural school leaflets.	
S	
Savage, E. S	39
Scab disease of apple, dusting and spraying for	452
Schurman, J. G., letter of transmittal	xi
Smith, C. D	xv
Smut, leaf, of timothy	287
Soils, effects of oxygen and carbon dioxide on nitrification and ammonification in	399
Soil Technology, publications of department	xxxvii, 399
Soil Technology, report of department	xxxvi
Some effects of oxygen and carbon dioxide on nitrification and ammonification in soils	399
Soybean, physiological studies of Bacillus radicicola of	459
Spraying and dusting nursery stock	429
Spraying schedule for apples and peaches	38
Spray materials	31
Squash insects and diseases, control of	14
Staff, changes in	xv
Staff, experimenting	x
Staff of instruction and extension work	v
Stewart, F. C	3, 258
Stewart, V. B	429, 601
Stocking, W. A., report	xlvi
Stone, J. L., report	xxvii
Strawberry insects and diseases, control of	29
Stryke, Anna C	xlv
Studies on clubroot of cruciferous plants	509
Summer school in agriculture	xiv
Sun-scald of fruit trees: a type of winter injury	333
T	
Teaching activities	xvi
Three cedar rust fungi: their life histories and the diseases they produce	597
Timothy, leaf smut of	287
Tomato diseases, control of	30
Turnip diseases, control of	30
V	
Van Duzee, E. P	649, 940, 941
Van Dyke, E. C	xv
Van Rensselaer, Martha, report	lvi
Vegetable Gardening, report of department	xl

W PAGE
Warburton, C. W.......... 901
War measures.......... xxii, lxvi
Warren, G. F., report.......... xxiv
Weimer, J. L.......... 597
Wheat diseases, control of.......... 30
Whetzel, H. H.......... 257, 291, 337, 513, 601
Whetzel, H. H., report.......... xxxiii
White, E. A., report.......... xxxix
Wiegand, K. M., report.......... xxxi
Wiggans, R. G.......... xxv
Willow and poplar borer.......... 545
Wilson, J. K.......... 459, 808
Wilson, W. M., report.......... lviii
Wing, H. H., report.......... xlvii
Winter injury to fruit trees by sun-scald.......... 333
Woodford, L. L.......... 148
Work, Paul, report.......... xl
Works, G. A., report.......... liv